ON COOKING

A Textbook of Culinary Fundamentals

Second Edition

Sarah R. Labensky Alan M. Hause

On Cooking

A Textbook of Culinary Fundamentals

Second Edition

Sarah R. Labensky
Alan M. Hause

with Steven Labensky
Photographs by Richard Embery
Drawings by Stacey Winters Quattrone

Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, New Jersey 07458

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Labensky, Sarah R.
On cooking : a textbook of culinary fundamentals / Sarah R. Labensky, Alan M. Hause; photographs by Richard Embery; drawings by Stacey Winters Quattrone. —2nd ed.
p. cm.
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN 0-13-862640-5
1. Cookery. I. Hause, Alan M. II. Title.
TX651.L32 1999
641.5—dc21 98-17965
CIP

Acquisitions editor: Neil Marquardt
Editorial/production supervision: Barbara Marttine Cappuccio
Managing editor: Mary Carnis
Director of production and manufacturing: Bruce Johnson
Manufacturing buyer: Ed O'Dougherty
Development editor: Judith Casillo
Marketing manager: Frank Mortimer, Jr.
Editorial assistant: Jean Auman
Creative director: Marianne Frasco
Interior design: Laura C. Ierardi
Cover design: Ruta K. Fiorino
Cover photograph: StockFood/Eising
Additional drawings: William Ingram

Photo Credits:
Portrait of Fannie Farmer—courtesy of The Schlesinger Library, Radcliffe College
Portrait of Auguste Escoffier—courtesy of Musée de l'Art Culinaire, Villeneuve-Loubet (Village) France
Portraits of Alexis Soyer and Antonin Carême—courtesy of Barbara Wheaton
Drawing of the Reform Club's Kitchen—courtesy of the Reform Club, London, England

©1999, 1995 by Prentice-Hall, Inc.
Simon & Schuster / A Viacom Company
Upper Saddle River, New Jersey 07458

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, in any form or by any means, without permission in writing from the publisher.

Printed in the United States of America
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

ISBN 0-13-862640-5

Prentice-Hall International (UK) Limited, *London*
Prentice-Hall of Australia Pty. Limited, *Sydney*
Prentice-Hall Canada Inc., *Toronto*
Prentice-Hall Hispanoamericana, S.A., *Mexico*
Prentice-Hall of India Private Limited, *New Delhi*
Prentice-Hall of Japan, Inc., *Tokyo*
Simon & Schuster Asia Pte. Ltd., *Singapore*
Editora Prentice-Hall do Brasil, Ltda., *Rio de Janeiro*

Contents

Part 1 Professionalism 1

Chapter 1 Professionalism 2

Chapter 2 Food Safety and Sanitation 18

Chapter 3 Nutrition 36

Chapter 4 Recipes and Menus 58

Part 2 Preparation 75

Chapter 5 Tools and Equipment 76

Chapter 6 Knife Skills 104

Chapter 7 Kitchen Staples 118

Chapter 8 Dairy Products 146

PART 3
COOKING 165

CHAPTER 9
PRINCIPLES
OF COOKING 166

CHAPTER 10
STOCKS AND SAUCES 178

CHAPTER 11
SOUPS 230

CHAPTER 12
PRINCIPLES OF
MEAT COOKERY 262

CHAPTER 13
BEEF 292

CHAPTER 14
VEAL 312

CHAPTER 15
LAMB 334

CHAPTER 16
PORK 358

CHAPTER 17
POULTRY 376

CHAPTER 18
GAME 430

CHAPTER 19
FISH AND
SHELLFISH 454

CHAPTER 20
EGGS 534

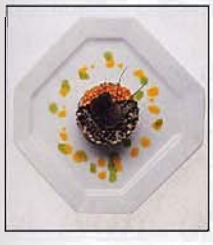
CHAPTER 25
FRUITS 718

CHAPTER 21
DEEP-FRYING 558

CHAPTER 26
SANDWICHES 760

CHAPTER 22
VEGETABLES 572

CHAPTER 27
CHARCUTERIE 786



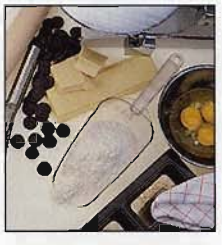
CHAPTER 23
POTATOES, GRAINS
AND PASTA 632

CHAPTER 28
HORS D'OEUVRE
AND CANAPÉS 828

PART 4
GARDE MANGER 679

CHAPTER 24
SALADS AND
SALAD DRESSINGS 680

PART 5
BAKING 861



CHAPTER 29
PRINCIPLES OF
THE BAKESHOP 862

CHAPTER 30
QUICK BREADS 886

CHAPTER 31
YEAST BREADS 906

CHAPTER 32
PIES, PASTRIES AND COOKIES 940

CHAPTER 33
CAKES AND FROSTINGS 994

CHAPTER 34
CUSTARDS, CREAMS, FROZEN DESSERTS AND SAUCES 1038

PART 6
PRESENTATION 1081

CHAPTER 35
PLATE PRESENTATION 1082

CHAPTER 36
BUFFET PRESENTATION 1096

APPENDIX I
PROFESSIONAL ORGANIZATIONS 1113

APPENDIX II
MEASUREMENT AND CONVERSION CHARTS 1115

BIBLIOGRAPHY AND RECOMMENDED READING 1117

GLOSSARY 1121

INDEX 1137

PREFACE

Learning to cook is much more than simply learning to follow a recipe. Consequently, this is not a cookbook or a collection of recipes. It is a carefully designed text intended to teach you the fundamentals of the culinary arts and to prepare you for a rewarding career in the food service industry.

Many chapters have extensive illustrated sections identifying foods and equipment. Throughout the book, we emphasize culinary principles, not recipes (although we include more than 750 of them). Whenever possible, we focus on the general procedure highlighting fundamental principles and skills whether it be for preparing a yeast bread or grilling a piece of fish. We discuss both the how and why of cooking. Only then are specific applications and sample recipes given.

Numerous hotel and restaurant chefs throughout the country have contributed recipes to this book, usually accompanied by photographs of the dishes as prepared in their kitchens. These recipes and illustrations allow you to explore different techniques and presentation styles.

In order to provide you with a sense of the rich traditions of cookery, informative sidebars on food history, chef biographies and other topics are scattered throughout the book. Also included are several short essays written by prominent culinarians on topics ranging from tempering chocolate to tasting spicy foods.

We wish you much success in your culinary career and hope that this text will continue to inform and inspire you long after graduation.

A NOTE ON RECIPES

Recipes are important and useful as a means of standardizing food preparation and recording information. We include recipes that are primarily designed to reinforce and explain techniques and procedures presented in the text. Many recipe yields are intentionally low in order to be less intimidating to beginning cooks and more useful in small schools and kitchens.

All ingredients are listed in both U.S. and metric measurements. The metric equivalents are rounded off to even, easily measured amounts. So, you should consider these ingredient lists as separate recipes or formulas; do not measure some ingredients according to the metric amounts and other ingredients according to the U.S. amount or the proportions will not be accurate and the intended result will not be achieved.

Throughout this book, unless otherwise noted:

- *mirepoix* refers to a preparation of 2 parts onion, 1 part celery and 1 part carrot by weight
- *pepper* refers to ground black pepper, preferably freshly ground

- *butter* refers to whole, unsalted butter
- *milk* refers to whole or reduced fat (not nonfat) milk, and
- *TT* means "to taste"

A nutritional analysis is provided with each recipe. This information is provided as a reference only. There is a 20% margin of error, due primarily to choices for specific ingredients and variations in the size of fruits and vegetables. When a recipe offers a choice of ingredients, the first-mentioned ingredient was the one used in the calculations. Ingredients listed as "to taste" (TT) and "as needed" were generally omitted from the analysis. In addition, olive oil and 3% whole milk were used throughout for "vegetable oil" and "milk," respectively. When given a choice of serving or weight, the first mentioned was used.

Recipes marked with the pyramid symbol are particularly low in calories, fat, saturated fat and/or sodium; some may also be a good source of vitamins, protein, fiber or calcium. These dishes are not necessarily dietetic, however. Rather, they should be consumed as part of a well-balanced diet.

Detailed procedures for standard techniques are presented in the text and generally are not repeated in each recipe (for example, "deglaze the pan" or "monter au beurre"). No matter how detailed the written recipe, however, we must assume that you have certain knowledge, skills and judgment.

Variations appear at the end of selected recipes. These give you the opportunity to see how one set of techniques or procedures can be used to prepare different dishes with only minor modifications.

You should also rely upon the knowledge and skills of your instructor for guidance. Although some skills and an understanding of theory can be acquired through reading and study, no book can substitute for repeated, hands-on preparation and observation.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

This book would not have been possible without the assistance and support of many people. We are particularly indebted to Steve Labenksy for his countless hours with a sharp pencil, his comments and criticism and his constant support. Special thanks to our photographer, Richard Embery, for his talent, professionalism and commitment to quality and to Sharon Salomon, MS, RD, for preparation of the Nutrition chapter. The nutritional analysis for this edition was prepared by William Miller, whose thoroughness is appreciated. Thanks also to Kate Nelson, Dominic O'Neil, Leland Atkinson, Erich Wagner, James DuVal and Richard Martinez, and to Stacey Winters Quattrone and William E. Ingram for their artistry. We are also grateful to the many chefs, restaurateurs, writers and culinary professionals who provided recipes and essays for this book.

Finally, Alan is especially grateful to his wife Chantal Hause for her support, helpfulness, love and patience.

The authors wish to thank the following companies for their generous donations of equipment and supplies: J.A. Henckels Zwillingswerk, Inc., All-Clad Metalcrafters, Inc. and Parrish's Cake Decorating Supplies, Inc. We also wish to thank Shamrock Foods Company, East Coast Seafood of Phoenix Inc., KitchenAid Home Appliances, Taylor Environmental Instruments, Hobart Corporation, Jeff and Sue Reising of Arizona Ostrich Fillet, Williams-Sonoma, architect Michael Apostolos, and Randy Dougherty of ISF International.

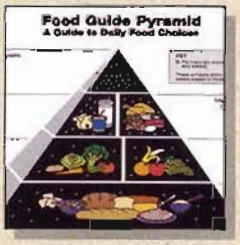
Finally, we wish to thank everyone involved in this project at Prentice Hall, including Neil Marquardt, Acquisitions Editor; Barbara Cappuccio, Production Editor; Judith Casillo, Development Editor; Marianne Frasco, Creative Director; Mary Carnis, Managing Editor; Ed O'Dougherty, Production Coordinator; Laura Ierardi, Designer; Ruta K. Fiorino, Director of Advertising, and Frank Mortimer, Jr., Marketing Manger. We also remain indebted to Robin Baliszewski, Acquisitions Editor of the first edition, for her support and friendship.

The authors would also like to acknowledge the following reviewers for their comments and assistance.

First Edition: Richard W. Alford, University of Akron; Earl Arrowood, Bucks County Community College; Mike Artlip, Culinary School of Kendall College; Leland Atkinson; James Belch, Pennsylvania Institute of Culinary Arts; Lane Berrent, Pennsylvania Institute of Culinary Arts; Thom Boehm, Pennsylvania Institute of Culinary Arts; James Bressi, New England Culinary Institute; John D. Britto, San Joaquin Delta College; Walter Bronowitz CEE, Edmonds Community College; Mark Clink, Pennsylvania Institute of Culinary Arts; George Conte, New York Restaurant School; Noel Cullen, CMC, Boston University; Jeanne Curtis, Newbury College; William Day, Johnson & Wales University; Jim Douglas CEC: CCE, Everett Community College; Rolf Epprecht, Swiss Hospitality Institute; John Fitzpatrick; Maureen Garfolo, Pennsylvania Institute of Culinary Arts; George Geary; Jeff Graves, University of Houston/Conrad N. Hilton Hotel School; Bill Greathouse, Ivy Technical College; Kimberly Harris; Brenda Harsh, Pennsylvania Institute of Culinary Arts; Elizabeth S. Leite, Scottsdale Culinary Institute; Robert Lombardi, Spokane Community College; Deborah Lynch, Middlesex County College; Sylvia Marple M.S., R.D., University of New Hampshire; Don McNicol, Madison Area Technical College; James Muth, Grand Rapids Community College; John Noe, Joliet Junior College; Philip H. Nudle CEC, Middlesex County College; Michael Piccinino, Shasta College; Marcia Rango; Ernst Reck; Christine Stamm, Johnson & Wales University; Clifford Steiner, New York Restaurant School; Cicely Stetson; Peter G. Tobin, Spokane Community College; and Susan Ward, Academy of Culinary Arts/Atlantic Community College.

Second Edition: George Anbinder, Culinary Arts Department, Newbury College; Neil Becker, New York Restaurant School; Deane Cobber, Columbus State Community College; Linda Cullen, Greater New Bedford Vocational and Technical High School; Albert D'Addario, Newbury College; Janet De Lucia, Cuyahoga Community College; Fred T. Faria, The Hospitality College, Johnson & Wales University; Deborah Foster, Ball State University; Martin Goldman, Mercer County Community College; Joe Harrold, Florida Community College at Jacksonville; Connie Holt, Widener University; William Jarvie, The Hospitality College, Johnson & Wales University; David Kamen, New York Restaurant School; Lisa R. Kennon, Hotel & Restaurant Management, University of North Texas; George Krieger, Baltimore International Culinary College; Lew Lichtman, New York Restaurant School; Deborah K. Lynch, Middlesex County College; John Martin, ATI Career Institute; Fedele Panzarino, New York City Technical College; David F. Schneider, Macomb Community College; Greg Tompkins, California Culinary Academy; Michael Varnava, New York Restaurant School; Michael Vignapiano, New York Restaurant School.

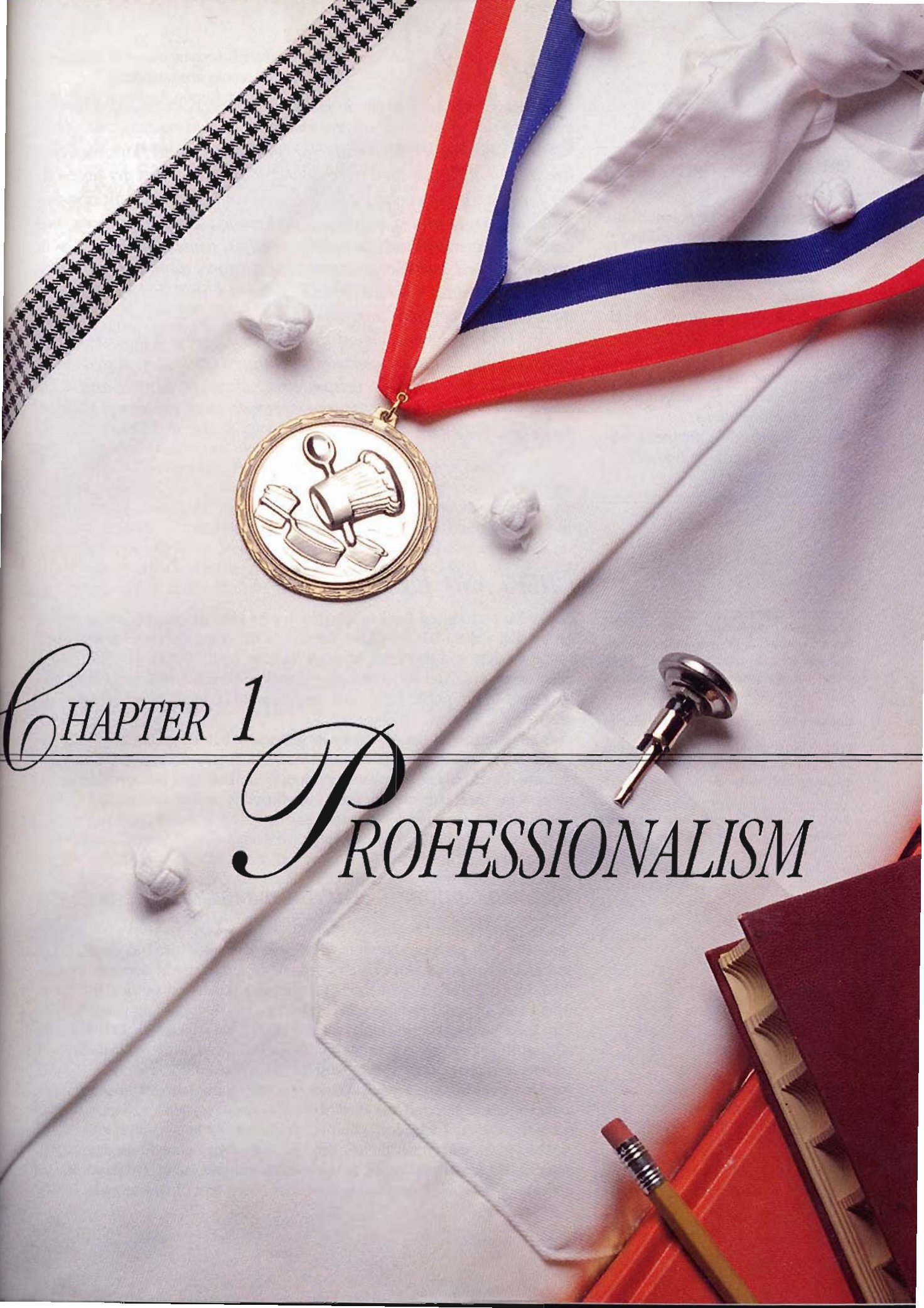
Part One
Professionalism



Chefs must be able to do more than properly prepare and present foods. They must understand traditions and factors influencing change. They are responsible for making sure that the food served is wholesome and safe to eat and that they and those around them work in a safe and efficient manner. Further, chefs must make sure that the foods they serve are nutritious, or at least they should offer their customers sufficient selections so that the customers can construct a nutritious meal. And, finally, chefs are responsible for writing menus and producing food in a consistent and cost-effective manner.

Part I opens with a chapter on professionalism. It traces the history of chefs and restaurants, discusses the modern food service operation and factors influencing its development and explains what attributes a student chef must have to become a professional chef. The following chapters address food safety and sanitation, nutrition and menus and recipes.

ZWILLING
J.A. HENCKELS
SOLINGEN GERMANY
VIER STERNE MESSER
FRIODUR



CHAPTER 1 PROFESSIONALISM

"Cookery is become an art, a noble science; cooks are gentlemen."
—Robert Burton, British author, 1621

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- discuss the development of the modern food service industry
- name key historical figures responsible for developing food service professionalism
- explain the organization of classic and modern kitchen brigades
- appreciate the role of the professional chef in modern food service operations
- understand the attributes a student chef needs to become a professional chef

Substitute "professionals" for "gentlemen," and Burton's words are as true today as they were almost four hundred years ago. Like the fine arts, great cookery requires taste and creativity, an appreciation of beauty and a mastery of technique. Like the sciences, successful cookery demands knowledge and an understanding of basic principles. And like the "gentlemen" of Burton's days, today's professional chefs must exercise sound judgment and be committed to achieving excellence in their endeavors.

This books helps implement Burton's philosophy. It describes foods and cooking equipment, explains culinary principles and cooking techniques and provides recipes using these principles and techniques. This book cannot, however, provide taste, creativity, commitment and judgment. For these, we rely on you.

CHEFS AND RESTAURANTS

Cooking—*(1) the transfer of energy from a heat source to a food; this energy alters the food's molecular structure, changing its texture, flavor, aroma and appearance; (2) the preparation of food for consumption.*

Cookery—*the art, practice or work of cooking.*

Professional cooking—*a system of cooking based on a knowledge of and appreciation for ingredients and procedures.*

Cooks have produced food in quantity for as long as people have eaten together. For millennia, chefs have catered to the often elaborate dining needs of the wealthy and powerful, whether they be Asian, Native American, European or African. And for centuries, vendors in China, Europe and elsewhere have sold to the public foods that they prepared themselves or bought from others.

But the history of the professional chef is of relatively recent origin. Its cast is mostly French, and it is intertwined with the history of restaurants. For only with the development of restaurants during the late 18th and early 19th centuries were chefs expected to produce, efficiently and economically, different dishes at different times for different diners.

The 18th Century—Boulanger's Restaurant

The word *restaurant* is derived from the French word *restaurer* (to restore). Since the 16th century, the word *restorative* had been used to describe rich and highly flavored soups or stews capable of restoring lost strength. Restoratives, like all other cooked foods offered and purchased outside the home, were made by guild members. Each guild had a monopoly on preparing certain food items. For example, during the reign of Henri IV of France (1553–1610), there were separate guilds for *rotisseurs* (who cooked *la grosse viande*, the main cuts of meat), *patissiers* (who cooked poultry, pies and tarts), *tamisiers* (who baked breads), *vinaigriers* (who made sauces and some stews, including some restoratives), *traiteurs* (who made ragouts) and *porte-chapes* (caterers who organized feasts and celebrations).

The French claim that the first modern restaurant opened one day in 1765 when a Parisian tavernkeeper, a Monsieur Boulanger, hung a sign advertising the sale of his special restorative, a dish of sheep feet in white sauce. His es-

tablishment closed shortly thereafter as the result of a lawsuit brought by a guild whose members claimed that Boulanger was infringing on their exclusive right to sell prepared dishes. Boulanger triumphed in court and later reopened.

Boulanger's establishment differed from the inns and taverns that had existed throughout Europe for centuries. These inns and taverns served foods prepared (usually off premises) by the appropriate guild. The food—of which there was little choice—was offered by the keeper as incidental to the establishment's primary function: providing sleeping accommodations or drink. Customers were served family style and ate at communal tables. Boulanger's contribution to the food service industry was to serve a variety of foods prepared on premises to customers whose primary interest was dining.

Several other restaurants opened in Paris during the succeeding decades, including the Grande Taverne de Londres in 1782. Its owner, Antoine Beauvilliers (1754–1817), was the former steward to the Comte de Provence, later King Louis XVIII of France. He advanced the development of the modern restaurant by offering his wealthy patrons a menu listing available dishes during fixed hours. Beauvilliers's impeccably trained wait staff served patrons at small, individual tables in an elegant setting.

The French Revolution (1789–1799) had a significant effect on the budding restaurant industry. Along with the aristocracy, guilds and their monopolies were generally abolished. The revolution also allowed the public access to the skills and creativity of the well-trained, sophisticated chefs who had worked in the aristocracy's private kitchens. Although many of the aristocracy's chefs either left the country or lost their jobs (and, some, their heads), a few opened restaurants catering to the growing urbanized middle class.

The Early 19th Century—Carême and Grande Cuisine

As the 19th century progressed, more restaurants opened, serving a greater selection of items and catering to a wider clientele. By midcentury, several large, grand restaurants in Paris were serving elaborate meals, decidedly reminiscent of the *grande cuisine* (also known as *haute cuisine*) of the aristocracy. ***Grande cuisine***, which arguably reached its peak of perfection in the hands of Antonin Carême, was characterized by meals consisting of dozens of courses of elaborately and intricately prepared, presented, garnished and sauced foods. Other restaurateurs blended the techniques and styles of *grande cuisine* with the simpler foods and tastes of the middle class (*cuisine bourgeoisie*) to create a new cuisine simpler than *grande cuisine* but more than mere home cooking.

Grande cuisine—*the rich, intricate and elaborate cuisine of the 18th- and 19th-century French aristocracy and upper classes. It is based on the rational identification, development and adoption of strict culinary principles. By emphasizing the how and why of cooking, grande cuisine was the first to distinguish itself from regional cuisines, which tend to emphasize the tradition of cooking.*

The Late 19th Century—Escoffier and Cuisine Classique

Following the lead set by the French in both culinary style and the restaurant business, restaurants opened in the United States and throughout Europe during the 19th century. Charles Ranhofer (1836–1899) was the first internationally renowned chef of an American restaurant, Delmonico's in New York City. In 1893, Ranhofer published his "franco-american" encyclopedia of cooking, *The Epicurean*, containing more than 3500 recipes.

Classic cuisine—*a late 19th- and early 20th-century refinement and simplification of French grande cuisine. Classic (or classical) cuisine relies on the thorough exploration of culinary principles and techniques, and emphasizes the refined preparation and presentation of superb ingredients.*

Marie-Antoin (Antonin) Carême (1783–1833)

Carême, known as the "cook of kings and the king of cooks," was an acknowledged master of French *grande cuisine.* Abandoned on the streets of Paris as a child, he worked his way from cook's helper in a working-class restaurant to become one of the most prestigious chefs of his (or, arguably, any other) time. During his career, he was chef to the famous French diplomat and gourmand Prince de Talleyrand, the Prince Regent of England (who became King George IV), Tsar Alexander I of Russia and Baron de Rothschild, among others.

His stated goal was to achieve "lightness," "grace," "order" and "perspicuity" in the preparation and presentation of food. As a *patissier,* he designed and prepared elaborate and elegant pastry and confectionery creations, many of which were based on architectural designs. (He wrote that "the fine arts are five in number, namely: painting, sculpture, poetry, music, architecture—the main branch of which is confectionery.") As a showman, he garnished his dishes with ornamental hatelets (skewers) threaded with colorful ingredients such as crayfish and intricately carved vegetables, and presented his creations on elaborate socles (bases). As a *saucier,* he standardized the use of roux as a thickening agent, perfected recipes and devised a system for classifying sauces. As a *garde-manger,* Carême popularized cold cuisine, emphasizing molds and aspic dishes. As a culinary professional, he designed kitchen tools, equipment and uniforms.

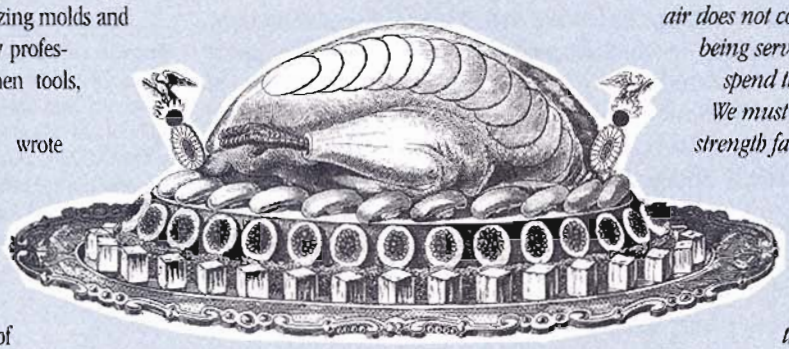
As an author, he wrote and illustrated important texts on the culinary arts, including *Le Maitre d'hotel francais* (1822), describing the hundreds of

Courtesy of Barbara Wheaton

dishes he personally created and cooked in the capitals of Europe; *Le Patissier royal parisian* (1825), containing fanciful designs for *les pieces montées,* the great decorative centerpieces that were the crowning glory of grand dinners; and his five-volume masterpiece on the state of his profession, *L'Art de la cuisine au XIXe siecle* (1833), the last two volumes of which were completed after his death by his associate Plumerey. Carême's writings almost single-handedly refined and summarized five hundred years of culinary evolution. But his treatises were not mere cookbooks. Rather, he analyzed cooking, old and new, emphasizing procedure and order and covering every aspect of the art known as *grande cuisine.*

Carême died before the age of 50, burnt out, according to Laurent Tailhade, "by the flame of his genius and the coal of the spits." But this may have been the glory he sought, for he once wrote:

Imagine yourself in a large kitchen at the moment of a great dinner. . . . [S]ee twenty chefs coming, going, moving with speed in this cauldron of heat, look at the great mass of charcoal, a cubic meter for the cooking of entrées, and another mass on the ovens for the cooking of soups, sauces, ragouts, for frying and the water baths. Add to that a heap of burning wood in front of which four spits are turning, one which bears a sirloin weighing 45–50 pounds, the other fowl or game. In this furnace everyone moves with speed; not a sound is heard, only the chef has a right to speak, and at the sound of his voice, everyone obeys. Finally, the last straw; for about half an hour, all windows are closed so that the air does not cool the dishes as they are being served. This is the way we spend the best years of our lives. We must obey even when physical strength fails, but it is the burning charcoal that kills us. . . . [C]harcoal kills us but what does it matter? The shorter the life, the greater the glory.



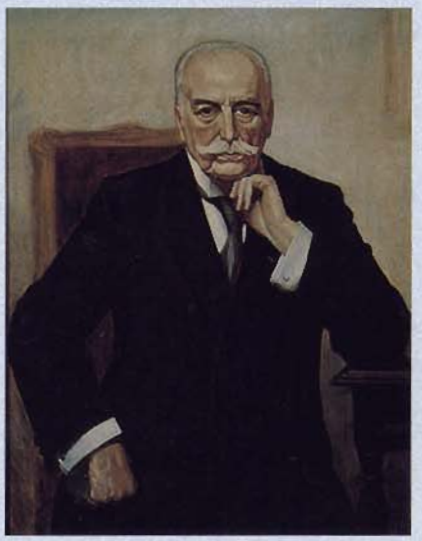
One of the finest restaurants outside France was the dining room at London's Savoy Hotel, opened in 1898 under the directions of Cesar Ritz (1850–1918) and Auguste Escoffier. Escoffier is generally credited with refining the *grande cuisine* of Carême to create *cuisine classique* or **classic cuisine**. By doing so, he brought French cuisine into the 20th century.

Auguste Escoffier
(1846–1935)

Escoffier's brilliant culinary career began at the age of 13 in his uncle's restaurant and continued until his death at the age of 89. Called the "Emperor of the world's kitchens," he is perhaps best known for defining French cuisine and dining during *La Belle Epoque* (the "Gay Nineties").

Unlike Carême, Escoffier never worked in an aristocratic household. Rather, he exhibited his culinary skills in the dining rooms of the finest hotels in Europe, including the Place Vendôme in Paris and the Savoy and Carlton Hotels in London.

Escoffier did much to enhance the *grande cuisine* that arguably reached its perfection under Carême. Crediting Carême with providing the foundation for great—that is, French—cooking, Escoffier simplified the profusion of flavors, dishes and garnishes typifying Carême's work. He also streamlined some of Carême's overly elaborate and fussy procedures and classifications. For example, he reduced Carême's elaborate system of classifying sauces into the five families of sauces still recognized today. Escoffier sought simplicity and aimed for the perfect balance of a few superb ingredients. Some consider his refinement of *grande cuisine* to have been so radical as to credit him with the development of a new cuisine referred to as *cuisine classique* (classic or classical cuisine).



His many writings include *Le Livre des menus* (1912), in which, discussing the principles of a well-planned meal, he analogizes a great dinner to a symphony with contrasting movements that should be appropriate to the occasion, the guests, and the season, and *Ma cuisine* (1934), surveying *cuisine bourgeoisie*. But his most important contribution is a culinary treatise intended for the professional chef entitled *Le Guide culinaire* (1903). Still in use today, it is an astounding collection of more than 5000 classic cuisine recipes and garnishes. In it, Escoffier emphasizes the mastery of techniques, the thorough understanding of cooking, principles and the appreciation of ingredients; attributes he considered to be the building blocks professional chefs should use to create great dishes.

Escoffier was honored as a Chevalier of the French Legion of Honour in 1920 for his work in enhancing the reputation of French cuisine.

The 20th Century—Point and Nouvelle Cuisine

This century has witnessed a trend toward lighter, more naturally flavored and more simply prepared foods. Fernand Point was a master practitioner of this movement. But this master's goal of simplicity and refinement was carried to even greater heights by a generation of chefs Point trained: principally, Paul Bocuse, Jean and Pierre Troisgros, Alain Chapel, Francois Bise and Louis

Fernand Point
(1897–1955)

A massive man with a monumental personality, Point refined and modernized the classic cuisine of Escoffier. By doing so, he laid the foundations for *nouvelle cuisine*.

Point received his early training in some of the finest hotel-restaurant kitchens in Paris. In 1922, he and his family moved to Vienne, a city in southwest France near Lyon, and opened a restaurant. Two years later his father left the restaurant to Fernand, who renamed it *La Pyramide*. During the succeeding years, it became one of the culinary wonders of the world.

Point disdained dominating sauces and distracting accompaniments and garnishes. He believed that each dish should have a single dominant ingredient, flavor or theme; garnishes must be simple and match "like a tie to a suit." Procedure was of great importance. He devoted equal efforts to frying an egg and creating the marjolaine (a light almond and hazelnut spongecake filled with chocolate and praline buttercreams). His goal was to use the finest of raw ingredients to produce perfect food that looked elegant and simple. But simplicity was not easy to achieve. As he once said, "a bearnaise sauce is simply an egg yolk, a shallot, a little tarragon vinegar, and butter, but it takes years of practice for the result to be perfect."

Nouvelle cuisine—*literally, "new cooking," a mid-20th-century movement away from many classic cuisine principles and toward a lighter cuisine based on natural flavors and simpler preparations.*

Outhier. They, along with Michel Guérard and Roger Vergé, were the pioneers of **nouvelle cuisine** in the early 1970s.

Their culinary philosophy was principled on the rejection of overly rich, needlessly complicated dishes. These chefs emphasized healthful eating. The ingredients must be absolutely fresh and of the highest possible quality; the cooking methods should be simple and direct whenever possible. The accompaniments and garnishes must be light and contribute to an overall harmony; the completed plates must be elegantly designed and decorated. Following these guidelines, some traditional cooking methods have been applied to untraditional ingredients, and ingredients have been combined in new and previously unorthodox fashions. For chefs with knowledge, skill, taste and judgment, this works.

Influences on Modern Food Service Operations

From Monsieur Boulanger's humble establishment, a great industry has grown. Today, more than 700,000 public dining facilities are in the United States alone. The dramatic growth and diversification of the food service industry is due in part to the Industrial Revolution and the social and economic changes it wrought, including the introduction of new technologies, foods, concerns and consumers.

New Technologies

Technology has always had a profound effect on cooking. For example, the development of clay and, later, metal vessels that could contain liquids and withstand as well as conduct heat offered prehistoric cooks the opportunity to stew, make soups and porridge, pickle and brine foods and control fermentation. But it was not until the rapid technological advances fostered by the Industrial Revolution that anything approaching the modern kitchen was possible.

One of the most important advancements was the introduction of the cast iron stove. Prior to the 19th century, most cooking was done on spits or grills or in cauldrons or pots set on or in a wood- or coal-burning hearth. Hearthside cooking did not lend itself well to the simultaneous preparation of many items nor to items requiring constant and delicate attention. With the introduction of cast iron stoves during the 1800s (first wood- and coal-burning, then by midcentury, gas and by the early 20th century, electric), cooks could more comfortably and safely approach the heat source and control its temperatures. They were also able to efficiently prepare and hold for later use or service a multitude of smaller amounts of items requiring different cooking methods or ingredients, a necessity at a restaurant simultaneously catering to different diners' demands.

Also of great importance were developments in food preservation and storage techniques. For thousands of years, food had been preserved by sun-drying, salting, smoking, pickling, sugar-curing or fermenting. Although useful, these procedures destroy or distort the appearance and flavor of most foods. By the early 19th century, preserving techniques that had minimal effect on appearance and flavor began to emerge. For example, by 1800, the Frenchman

François Appert successfully "canned" foods by subjecting foods stored in sterilized glass jars to very high heat. An early mechanical refrigerator was developed by the mid-1800s; soon reliable iceboxes, refrigerators and, later, freezers were available. During the 20th century, freeze-drying, vacuum-packing and irradiation have become common preservation techniques.

While advancements were being made in preservation and storage techniques, developments in transportation technology were also underway. During the 19th century, steam-powered ships and railroads were able to bring foods quickly to market from distant suppliers. Indeed, by the 1870s, Chicago meatpackers were routinely supplying Europe with beef from the western plains. During the 20th century, temperature-controlled cargo ships, trains, trucks and airplanes all have been used as part of an integrated worldwide food transportation network.

Combined with dependable food preservation and storage techniques, improved transportation networks have freed chefs from seasonal and geographic limitations in their choice of foods and have expanded consumers' culinary horizons.

Engineering advancements also have facilitated or even eliminated much routine kitchen work. Since the start of the Industrial Revolution, chefs have come to rely increasingly on mechanical and motorized food processors, mixers and cutters as well as a wealth of sophisticated kitchen equipment such as high-carbon stainless steel knife blades and convection steamers.

New Foods

Modern food preservation, storage and transportation techniques have made both fresh and exotic foods regularly available to chefs and consumers. Many of these foods are themselves more wholesome as the result of progress in agriculture and animal husbandry.

Advancements in agriculture such as the switch from organic to chemical fertilizers and the introduction of pesticides and drought- or pest-resistant strains have resulted in increased yields of healthy crops. Traditional hybridization techniques and, more recently, genetic engineering have produced new or improved grains and, for better or for worse, fruits and vegetables that have a longer shelf life and are more amenable to mass-production handling, storage and transportation methods.

Likewise, advancements in animal husbandry and aquaculture have led to a more reliable supply of leaner, healthier meat, poultry and fish. Moreover, foods found traditionally only in the wild (for example, game, wild rice and many mushrooms) are now being raised commercially and are routinely available.

Food preservation and processing techniques have also led to the development of prepackaged, prepared convenience foods, some of which are actually quite good. After careful thought and testing, today's chef can rely on some of these products. Doing so allows greater flexibility and more time to devote to other preparations.

New Concerns

Consumer concerns about nutrition and diet, particularly during the last decade or so, have fueled changes in the food service industry. Obviously, what we eat affects our health. Adequate amounts of certain nutrients promote

good health by preventing deficiencies; good nutrition also helps prevent chronic diseases and increases longevity. Chefs should provide their customers with nutritious foods.

The public has long been concerned about food safety. Federal, state and local governments have helped promote food safety by inspecting and grading meats and poultry, regulating label contents for packaged foods and setting sanitation standards. All these standards, especially sanitation standards, affect the way foods are prepared, stored and served.

Concerns about nutrition and food safety have also resulted in renewed interest in organically grown fruits and vegetables and free-range-raised animals.

New Consumers

National cuisine—*the characteristic cuisine of a nation.*

Regional cuisine—*a set of recipes based upon local ingredients, traditions and practices; within a larger geographical, political, cultural or social unit, regional cuisines are often variations of one another that blend together to create a national cuisine.*

Ethnic cuisine—*the cuisine of a group of people having a common cultural heritage as opposed to the cuisine of a group of people bound together by geography or political factors.*

Demographic and social changes have contributed to the diversification of the food service industry by creating or identifying new consumer groups with their own desires or needs. By tailoring their menu, prices and décor accordingly, food service operations can cater to consumers defined by age (baby boomers and seniors, in particular), type of household (singles, couples and families), income, education and geography.

During this century, especially in the decades following World War II, there has also been a rapid increase in the number and types of institutions providing food services. These include hospitals, schools, retirement centers, hotels and resorts (which may, in turn, have fine dining, coffee shop, banquet and room service facilities), factories and office complexes. Each of these institutions presents the professional chef with unique challenges, whether they be culinary, dietary or budgetary.

Through travel or exposure to the many books and magazines about food, consumers are becoming better educated and more sophisticated. Educated consumers provide a market for new foods and cuisines as well as an appreciation for a job well done.

Although some consumers may frequent a particular restaurant because its chef or owner is a celebrity or the restaurant is riding high on a crest of fad or fashion, most consumers choose a restaurant—whether it be a fast-food burger place or an elegant French restaurant—because it provides quality food at a cost they are willing to pay. To remain successful, then, the restaurant must carefully balance its commitment to quality with marketplace realities.

THE FOOD SERVICE OPERATION

Brigade—*a system of staffing a kitchen so that each worker is assigned a set of specific tasks; these tasks are often related by cooking method, equipment or the types of foods being produced.*

To function efficiently, a food service operation must be well organized and staffed with appropriate personnel. This staff is sometimes called a **brigade**. Although a chef will be most familiar with the back of the house or kitchen brigade, he or she should also understand how the dining room or front of the house operates.

Staffing any food service facility ultimately depends on the type and complexity of the menu. (Types and styles of menus are discussed in Chapter 4, Menus and Recipes.)

The Classic Kitchen Brigade

Escoffier is credited with developing the kitchen brigade system used in large restaurant kitchens. From the chaos and redundancy found in the private kitchens of the aristocracy, he created a distinct hierarchy of responsibilities and functions for commercial food service operations.

At the top is the *chef du cuisine* or *chef*, who is responsible for all kitchen operations, developing menu items and setting the kitchen's tone and tempo.

His or her principal assistant is the *sous-chef* (the under chef or second chef), who is responsible for scheduling personnel and replacing the chef and station chefs as necessary. The *sous-chef* also often functions as the *aboyeur* (expediter or announcer), who accepts the orders from the dining room, relays them to the various station chefs and then reviews the dishes before service.

The *chefs de partie* (station chefs) produce the menu items and are under the direct supervision of the chef or *sous-chef*. Previously, whenever a cook needed an item, he or his assistants produced it; thus several cooks could be making the same sauce or basic preparation. Under Escoffier's system, each station chef is assigned a specific task based on either the cooking method and equipment or the category of items to be produced. They include:

- The *saucier* (sauté station chef), who holds one of the most demanding jobs in the kitchen, is responsible for all sautéed items and most sauces.
- The *poissonier* (fish station chef) is responsible for fish and shellfish items and their sauces. This position is occasionally combined with the sauce station.
- The *grillardin* (grill station chef) is responsible for all grilled items.
- The *friturier* (fry station chef) is responsible for all fried items.
- The *rotisseur* (roast station chef) is responsible for all roasted items and jus or other related sauces. The grill and fry stations are sometimes subsumed into the roast station.
- The *potager* (soup station chef) is responsible for soups and stocks.
- The *legumier* (vegetable station chef) is responsible for all vegetable and starch items.
- The *potager* and *legumier* functions are often combined into a single vegetable station whose chef is known as the *entremetier*. *Entremets* were the courses served after the roast and usually comprised vegetables, fruits, fritters or sweet items (the sorbet served before the main course in some contemporary restaurants is a vestigial *entremet*).
- The *garde-manger* (pantry chef) is responsible for cold food preparations, including salads and salad dressings, cold appetizers, charcuterie items, pâtés, terrines and similar dishes. The *garde-manger* supervises the *boucher* (butcher), who is responsible for butchering meats and poultry (fish and shellfish are usually fabricated by the fish station chef), as well as the chefs responsible for hors d'oeuvre and breakfast items.
- The *tournant*, also known as the roundsman or swing cook, works where needed.
- The *patissier* (pastry chef) is responsible for all baked items, including breads, pastries and desserts. Unlike the several station chefs, the patissier is not necessarily under the *sous-chef's* direct supervision. The *patissier* supervises the *boulanger* (bread baker), who makes the breads, rolls and baked dough containers used for other menu items (for example, *bouchées* and *feuilletés*); the *confiseur*, who makes candies and petits fours; the *glacier*, who makes all chilled and frozen desserts; and the *decorateur*, who makes showpieces and special cakes.
- Depending upon the size and needs of any station or area, there are one or more *demi-chefs* (assistants) and *commis* (apprentices) who work with the station chef or pastry chef to learn the area.

The Modern Kitchen Brigade

Today, most food service operations use a simplified version of Escoffier's kitchen brigade.

The **executive chef** coordinates kitchen activities and directs the kitchen staff's training and work efforts. Considering such factors as food costs, food availability and popularity as well as labor costs, kitchen skills and equipment, the executive chef plans menus and creates recipes. He or she sets and enforces nutrition, safety and sanitation standards and participates in (or at least observes) the preparation and presentation of menu items to ensure that quality standards are rigorously and consistently maintained. He or she is also responsible for purchasing food items and, often, equipment. In some food service operations, the executive chef may assist in designing the menu, dining room and kitchen. He or she educates the dining room staff

The Dining Room

Like the back of the house (that is, kitchen) staff, the front of the house (that is, dining room) staff is also organized into a brigade. A traditional dining room brigade is led by the **dining room manager** (French *maître d'hotel* or *maître d'*), who generally trains all service personnel, oversees wine selections and works with the chef to develop the menu. He or she organizes the seating chart and may also seat the guests. Working subordinate to him or her are:

The **wine steward** (French *chef de vin* or *sommelier*), who is responsible for the wine service, including purchasing wines, assisting guests in selecting wines and then serving the wines.

The **headwaiter** (French *chef de salle*), who is responsible for service throughout the dining room or a section of it. In smaller operations, his or her role may be assumed by the *maître d'* or a captain.

The **captains** (French *chefs d'étage*), who are responsible for explaining the menu to guests and taking their orders. They are also responsible for any tableside preparations.

The **front waiters** (French *chefs de rang*), who are responsible for assuring that the tables are set properly for each course, foods are delivered properly to the proper tables and the needs of the guests are met.

The **back waiters** (French *demi-chefs de rang* or *commis de rang*, also known as dining room attendants or buspersons), who are responsible for clearing plates, refilling water glasses and other general tasks appropriate for new dining room workers.

Whether a restaurant uses this entire array of staff depends upon the nature and size of the restaurant and the type of service provided. With **American service**, there is one waiter (also called a server) who takes the order and brings the food to the table. The table is then cleaned by a dining room attendant. With **French service**, there are two waiters: a captain and a waiter. The captain takes the order, does the tableside cooking and brings the drinks, appetizers, entrées and desserts to the table. The waiter serves bread and water, clears each course, crumbs the table and serves the coffee. With **Russian service**, the entrée, vegetables and potatoes are served from a platter onto a plate by the waiter. With **buffet service**, usually found in specialty restaurants and some institutional settings such as schools and correctional facilities, diners generally serve themselves or are served by workers assigned to specific areas of the buffet. Restaurants offering buffet service generally charge by the meal; if they charge by the dish, they are known as cafeterias.

so that they can correctly answer questions about the menu. He or she may also work with food purveyors to learn about new food items and products, as well as with catering directors, equipment vendors, food stylists, restaurant consultants, public relations specialists, sanitation engineers, nutritionists and dietitians.

The executive chef is assisted by a **sous-chef** or **executive sous-chef**, who participates in, supervises and coordinates the preparation of menu items. His or her primary responsibility is to make sure that the food is prepared, portioned, garnished and presented according to the executive chef's standards. The sous-chef may be the cook principally responsible for producing menu items and supervising the kitchen.

Large hotels and conference centers with multiple dining facilities may have one or more **area chefs**, each responsible for a specific facility or function. There could be, for instance, a restaurant chef and a banquet chef. Area chefs usually report to the executive chef. Each area chef, in turn, has a brigade working under him or her.

Like Escoffier's station chefs, **line cooks** (or section cooks) are responsible for preparing menu items according to recipe specifications. Making the most of time, talent, space and equipment, the chef assigns responsibilities to each of the line cooks. Depending upon the size and type of operation, the sauté, broiler, fry, soup and vegetable stations may be combined into one position, as may be the pantry, cold foods and salad stations.

The **pastry chef** is responsible for developing recipes for and preparing desserts, pastries, frozen desserts and breads. He or she is usually responsible for purchasing the food items used in the bakeshop.

And, as in Escoffier's days, **assistants** and **apprentices** are assigned where needed in today's kitchens.

New styles of dining have created new positions since Escoffier's days. The most notable is the **short-order cook**, who is responsible for quickly preparing foods to order in smaller operations. He or she will work the broiler, deep-fat fryer and griddle as well as make sandwiches and even some sautéed items.

Another is the **institutional cook**, who generally works with large quantities of prepackaged or prepared foods for a captive market such as a school, hospital or prison.

THE PROFESSIONAL CHEF

Although there is no one recipe for producing a good professional chef, we believe that with knowledge, skill, taste, judgment, dedication and pride a student chef will mature into a professional chef.

Knowledge

Chefs must be able to identify, purchase, utilize and prepare a wide variety of foods. They should be able to train and supervise a safe, skilled and efficient staff. To do all this successfully, chefs must possess a body of knowledge and understand and apply certain scientific and business principles. Schooling helps. A culinary program—whether at the secondary or postsecondary level—should, at a minimum, provide the student chef with a basic knowledge of foods, food styles and the methods used to prepare foods. Student chefs

should also have an understanding of sanitation, nutrition and business procedures such as food costing.

This book is designed to help you learn these basics. Many chapters have extensive sections identifying foods and equipment. Throughout this book, we emphasize culinary principles, not recipes. Whenever possible, whether it be preparing puff pastry or grilling a steak, we focus on the general procedure, highlighting fundamental principles and skills; we discuss both the how and why of cooking. Only then are specific applications and sample recipes given. We also want you to have a sense of the rich tradition of cookery, so informative sidebars on food history, chef biographies and other topics are scattered throughout the book.

In this way, we follow the trail blazed by Escoffier, who wrote in the introduction to *Le Guide culinaire* that his book is not intended to be a compendium of recipes slavishly followed, but rather his treatise should be a tool that leaves his colleagues "free to develop their own methods and follow their own inspiration; . . . the art of cooking . . . will evolve as a society evolves, . . . only basic rules remain unalterable."

As with any profession, an education does not stop at graduation. The acquisition of knowledge continues after the student chef joins the ranks of the employed. He or she should take additional classes on unique or ethnic cuisines, nutrition, business management or specialized skills. He or she should regularly review some of the many periodicals and books devoted to cooking, travel and try new dishes to broaden his or her culinary horizons. The professional chef should also become involved in professional organizations (see Appendix I) in order to meet his or her peers and exchange ideas.

Skill

Culinary schooling alone does not make a student a chef. Nothing but practical, hands-on experience will provide even the most academically gifted student with the skills needed to produce, consistently and efficiently, quality foods or to organize, train, motivate and supervise a staff.

Many food service operations recognize that new workers, even those who have graduated from culinary programs, need time and experience to develop and hone their skills. Therefore, many graduates start at entry-level positions. They should not be discouraged; advancement will come, and the training pays off in the long run. Today, culinary styles and fashions change frequently. What does not go out of fashion are well-trained, skilled and knowledgeable chefs. They can adapt.

Taste

Gastronomy—*the art and science of eating well.*

Gourmet—*a connoisseur of fine food and drink.*

Gourmand—*a connoisseur of fine food and drink, often to excess.*

Gourmet foods—*foods of the highest quality, perfectly prepared and beautifully presented.*

No matter how knowledgeable or skilled the chef, he or she must be able to produce foods that taste great, or the consumer will not return. A chef can do so only if he or she is confident about his or her own sense of taste.

Our total perception of taste is a complex combination of smell, taste, sight, sound and texture. All senses are involved in the enjoyment of eating; all must be considered in creating or preparing a dish. The chef should develop a taste memory by sampling foods, both familiar and unfamiliar. The chef should also think about what he or she tastes, making notes and experimenting with flavor combinations and cooking methods. But a chef should not be inventive simply for the sake of invention. Rather, he or she must consider how the flavors, appearances, textures and aromas of various foods will interact to create a total taste experience.

On Taste

Taste is composed of about 10,000 compounds. When we think of taste, we normally think in terms of the language we are familiar with and the foods we grew up with. The structure of our taste is formed very early, basically when we start eating baby food. As Westerners, we divide taste into four major groups: sweet, salty, bitter and sour. The Chinese include a fifth, hot (spicy), and Southeast Asians add aromatic and pungent. So, there are actually seven or more types. Americans, however, largely rely on sweet and salty. They don't use sour and bitter very much. They certainly don't use hot very much. Nor do they use aromatic or strong pungent things like fish paste very often. We really use only about 30 percent of our palate. To compare this to sight, it's as if we are color-blind, unable to perceive and enjoy fully five out of every seven colors we see. This is why we sometimes have trouble "acquiring" a taste for ethnic foods.

Westerners have a lineal palate, which is set up on sweet, salty, with very few counterpoints and harmonies. For instance, if you eat in the European manner, you usually begin with an appetizer, which may be salty or hot. Then you have soup, then a fish course, then a meat course, then a sweet. You are using different parts of your palate, but one after another, or linearly. In Asian cuisines, however, you use sweet, hot, bitter and sour at the same time. You're eating circularly. The meal is not a lineal progress to some point, like dessert. You may have already had fruit or a sweet in the meal, which is a much more satisfying and actually much more healthy way to eat. European food, like European art, is more concerned with finished form. Most ethnic things are concerned with process and expression.

You must train your mind to go after flavor characteristics and become involved in the process of eating. You must look for flavors in different parts of your mouth. Think about how quickly flavors appear in the mouth and how long the flavors are. Think about the finish. You must develop a very good sensitivity to the finish of the product; otherwise, you overseason and lose the compositional balance.

—from Mark Miller, *chef/owner Red Sage, Washington DC, and Coyote Cafe, Santa Fe, NM*

Judgment

Selecting menu items, determining how much of what item to order, deciding whether and how to combine ingredients and approving finished items for service are all matters of judgment. Although knowledge and skill play a role in developing judgment, sound judgment comes only with experience.

Dedication

Becoming a chef is hard work; so is being one. The work is often physically taxing, the hours are usually long and the pace is frequently hectic. Despite these pressures, the chef is expected to efficiently produce consistently fine foods that are properly prepared, seasoned, garnished and presented. To do so, the chef must be dedicated to the job.

The dedicated chef should never falter. The food service industry is competitive and depends upon the continuing goodwill of an often fickle public. One bad dish or one off night can result in a disgruntled diner and lost business. The chef should always be mindful of the food prepared and the customer served.

The chef must also be dedicated to his or her staff. Virtually all food service operations rely on teamwork to get the job done well. Good teamwork requires dedication to a shared goal as well as a positive attitude.

Pride

Not only is it important that the job be well done, but the professional chef should have a sense of pride in doing it well. Pride should also extend to personal appearance and behavior in and around the kitchen. The professional chef should be well-groomed and in uniform when working.

The professional chef's uniform consists of comfortable shoes, trousers (either solid white, solid black, black-and-white checked or black-and-white striped), a white double-breasted jacket, an apron and a neckerchief usually knotted or tied cravat style. The uniform has certain utilitarian aspects: Checked trousers disguise stains; the double-breasted white jacket can be rebuttoned to hide dirt, and the double layer of fabric protects from scalds and burns; the neckerchief absorbs facial perspiration; and the apron protects the uniform and insulates the body. This uniform should be worn with pride. Shoes should be polished; trousers and jacket should be pressed.

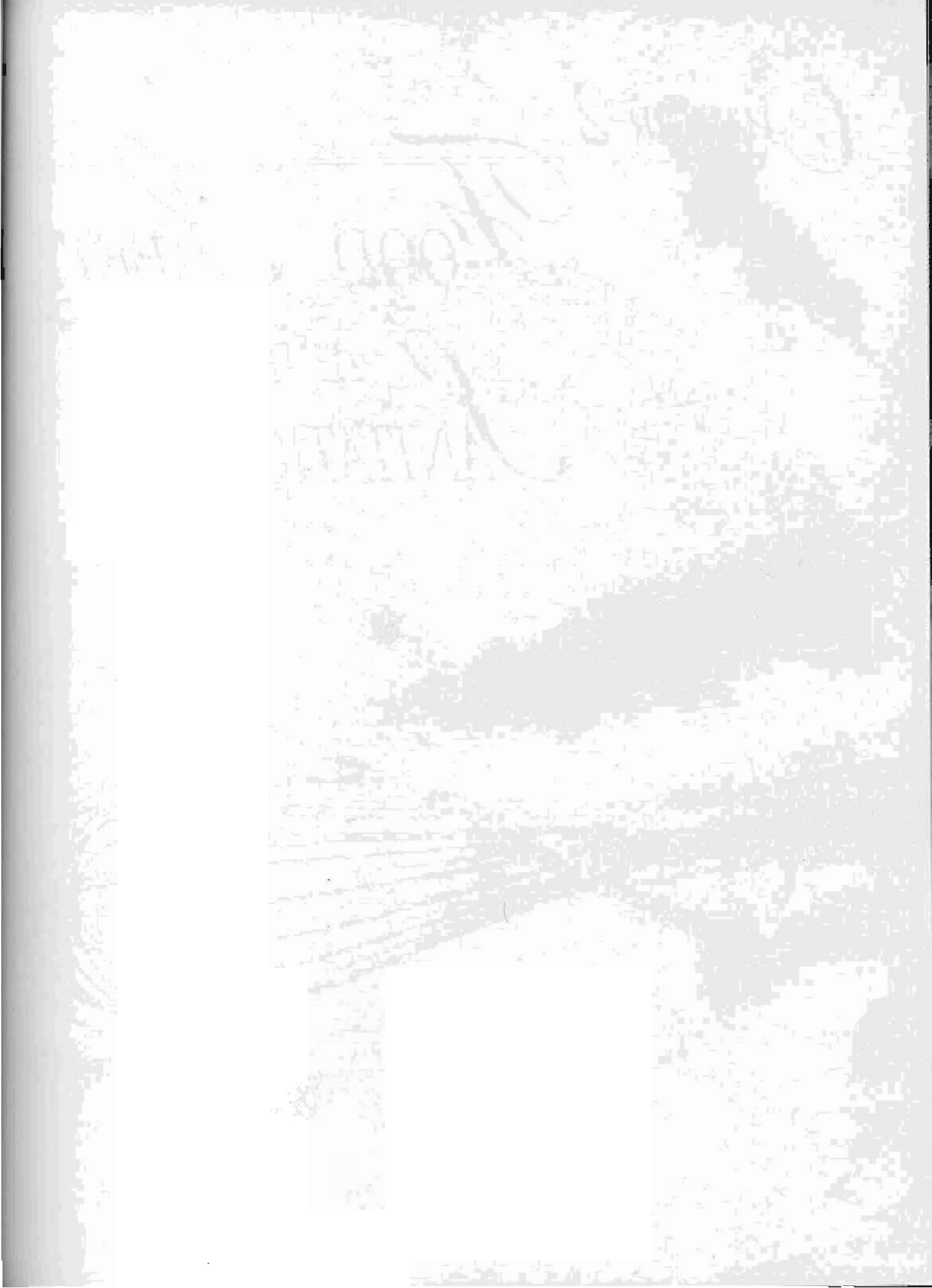
The crowning element of the uniform is the toque. A toque is the tall white hat worn by chefs almost everywhere. Although the toque traces its origin to the monasteries of the 6th century, the style worn today was introduced at the end of the 19th century. Most chefs now wear a standard six- or nine-inch-high toque, but historically, a cook's rank in the kitchen dictated the type of hat worn. Beginners wore flat-topped calottes; cooks with more advanced skills wore low toques and the master chefs wore high toques called dodin-bouffants. Culinary lore holds that the toque's pleats—101 in all—represent the 101 ways its wearer can successfully prepare eggs.

CONCLUSION

The art and science of cookery form a noble profession with a rich history and long traditions. With knowledge, skill, taste, judgment, dedication and pride, the student chef can become part of this profession. In this book, we provide you with the basic knowledge and describe the techniques at which you must become skilled. Dedicate yourself to learning this information and mastering your skills. Once you have done so, take pride in your accomplishments. Good luck.

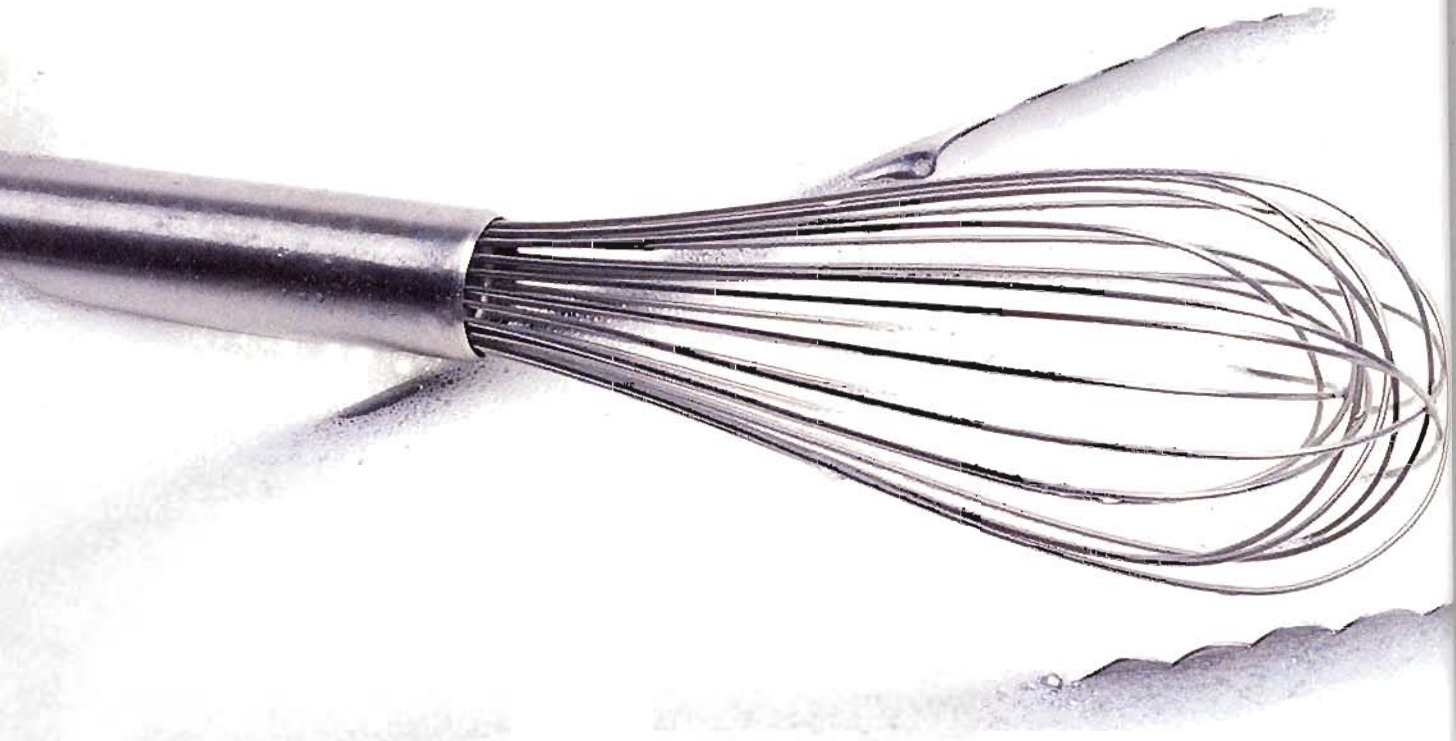
QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

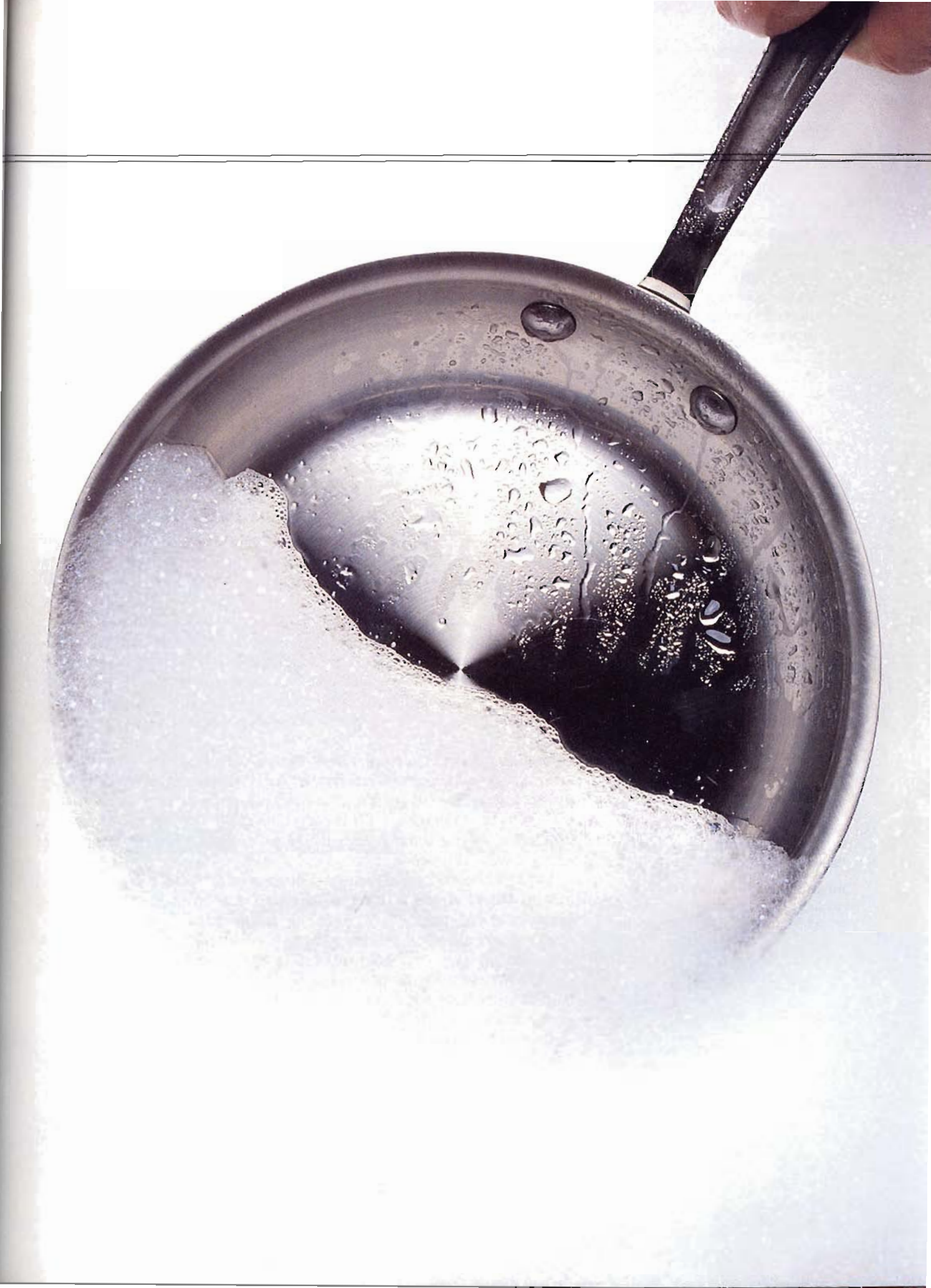
1. Describe the kitchen brigade system. What is its significance in today's professional kitchens?
2. What are the roles of a chef, sous-chef and line cook in a modern kitchen?
3. Describe the differences in a meal prepared by Carême and one prepared by Point.
4. List and explain three technological advances affecting food preparation.
5. Discuss the societal changes that have contributed to diversification in the modern food service industry.



CHAPTER 2

FOOD SAFETY AND SANITATION





After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- identify the causes of food-borne illnesses
- handle foods in a safe manner
- take appropriate actions to create and maintain a safe and sanitary working environment

The U.S. Public Health Service identifies more than 40 diseases that can be transmitted though food. Many can cause serious illness; some are even deadly. Therefore, providing consumers with safe food is the food handler's most important responsibility. Unfortunately, food handlers, who include anyone coming into contact with food or food preparation equipment, are also the primary cause of food-related illnesses.

By understanding what causes food-borne illnesses and what can be done to prevent them, you will be better able to protect your customers. This chapter, however, is not meant to be a complete discussion of sanitation in food service operations. But it should alert you to practices that can result in food-borne illnesses.

Federal, state, county and municipal health, building and other codes are designed in part to ensure that food is handled in a safe and proper manner. Always consult your local health department for information and guidance. And always be conscious of what you can do to create and maintain a safe product and a safe environment for your customers, your fellow employees and yourself.

Biological hazard—*a danger to the safety of food caused by disease-causing microorganisms such as bacteria, molds, yeasts, viruses or fungi.*

Chemical hazard—*a danger to the safety of food caused by chemical substances, especially cleaning agents, pesticides and toxic metals.*

Physical hazard—*a danger to the safety of food caused by particles such as glass chips, metal shavings, bits of wood or other foreign matter.*

Sanitation refers to the creation and maintenance of conditions that will prevent food contamination or food-borne illness. **Contamination** refers to the presence, generally unintended, of harmful organisms or substances. Contaminants can be (1) biological, (2) chemical or (3) physical. When consumed in sufficient quantities, food-borne contaminants can cause illness or injury, long-lasting disease or even death.

Contamination occurs in two ways: direct contamination and cross-contamination. **Direct contamination** is the contamination of raw foods, or the plants or animals from which they come, in their natural settings or habitats. Chemical and biological contaminants such as bacteria and fungi are present in the air, soil and water. So, foods can be easily contaminated by their general exposure to the environment: Grains can become contaminated by soil fumigants in the field, and shellfish can become contaminated by ingesting toxic marine algae.

Chemicals and microorganisms generally cannot move on their own, however. They need to be transported, an event known as **cross-contamination**. The major cause of cross-contamination is people. Food handlers can transfer biological, chemical and physical contaminants to food while processing, preparing, cooking or serving it. It is therefore necessary to view sanitation as the correction of problems caused by direct contamination and the prevention of cross-contamination during processing and service.

DIRECT CONTAMINATION

Biological Contaminants

Several **microorganisms**, primarily bacteria, parasites, viruses and fungi, can cause biologically based food-borne illnesses. By understanding how these organisms live and reproduce, you can better understand how to protect food from them.

Microorganisms—*single-celled organisms as well as tiny plants and animals that can be seen only through a microscope.*

Bacteria

Bacteria, which are single-celled microorganisms, are the leading cause of food-borne illnesses. See Figure 2.1. Most bacteria reproduce by binary fission: Their genetic material is first duplicated and the nucleus then splits, each new nucleus taking some of the cellular material with it. See Figure 2.2. Under favorable conditions each bacterium can divide every 15–30 minutes. Within 12 hours, one bacterium can become a colony of 72 billion bacteria, more than enough to cause serious illness.

Some rod-shaped bacteria are capable of forming spores. Spores are thick-walled structures used as protection against a hostile environment. The bacteria essentially hibernate within their spores where they can survive extreme conditions that would otherwise destroy them. When conditions become favorable, the bacteria return to a viable state. This is important in food sanitation because heating or sanitizing techniques may not destroy bacterial spores.

Some bacteria are beneficial, such as those that aid in digesting food or decomposing garbage. Other bacteria spoil food, but without rendering it unfit for human consumption. These bacteria, called **putrefactives**, are not a sanitation concern. (Indeed, in some cultures, they are not even a culinary concern. Cultures differ on what constitutes "bad" meat, for example, and game is sometimes hung for a time to allow bacteria to grow.)

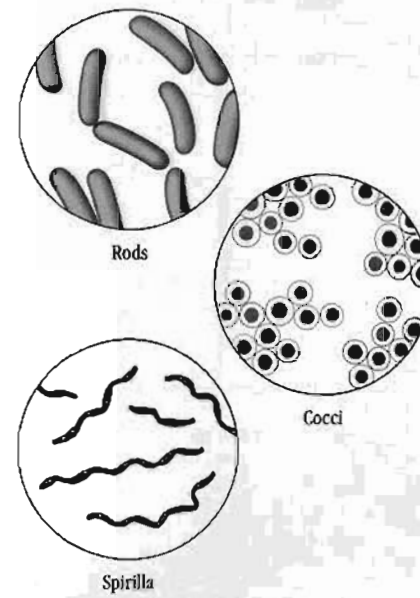


FIGURE 2.1 *Bacteria can be classified by shape: Rods are short, tubular structures; cocci are discs, some of which form clusters; and spirilla are corkscrews.*

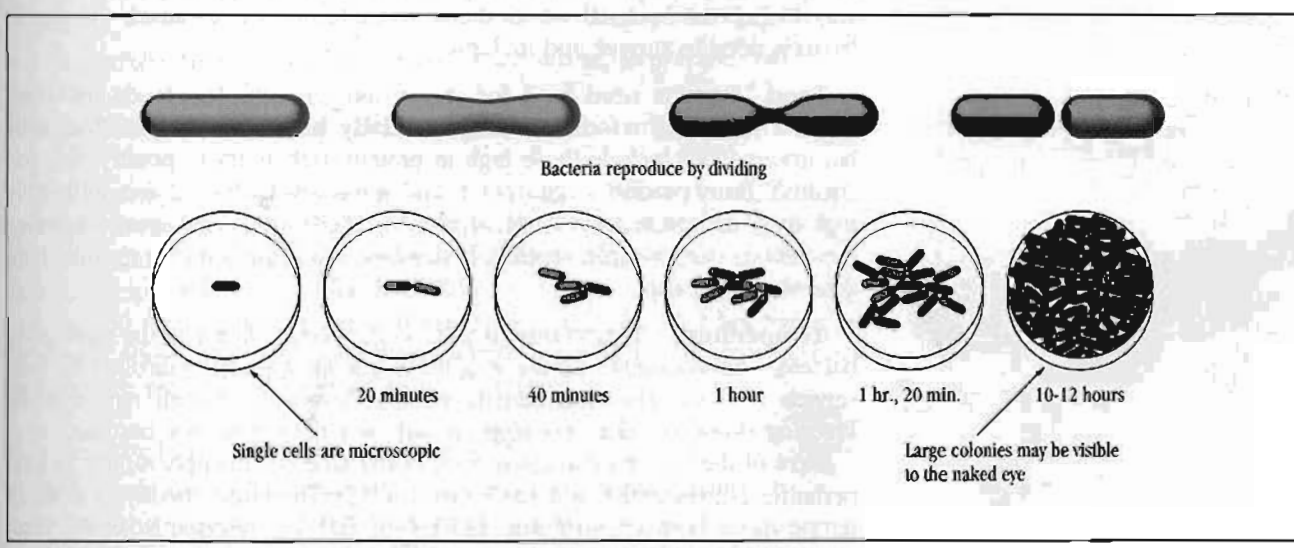


Figure 2.2 *One bacterium divides into two; the two bacteria each divide, creating four; the four become 16 and so on. It takes only a very short time for one bacterium to produce millions more.*

Pathogen—*a living microorganism that can cause disease.*

The bacteria that are dangerous when consumed by humans are called **pathogenic**. These are the bacteria that must be destroyed or controlled in a food service operation.

Intoxications and Infections

Depending upon the particular microorganism, pathogenic bacteria can cause illnesses in humans in one of three ways: by intoxication, infection or toxin-mediated infection. See Table 2.3, p. 25.

Botulism is a well-known example of an **intoxication**. Certain bacteria produce **toxins**, byproducts of their life processes. You cannot smell, see or taste toxins. Ingesting these toxin-producing bacteria by themselves does not cause illness. But when their toxins are ingested, the toxins can poison the consumer. Proper food-handling techniques are critical in preventing an intoxication because, even if a food is cooked to a sufficiently high temperature to kill all bacteria present, the toxins they leave behind are usually not destroyed.

The second type of bacterial illness is an **infection**. Salmonella is an especially well-known example. An infection occurs when live pathogenic bacteria (infectants) are ingested. The bacteria then live in the consumer's intestinal tract. It is the living bacteria, not their waste products, that cause an illness. Infectants must be alive when eaten for them to do any harm. Fortunately, these bacteria can be destroyed by cooking foods to sufficiently high temperatures, usually 165°F (74°C) or higher.

The third type of bacterial illness has characteristics of both an intoxication and an infection, and is referred to as a **toxin-mediated infection**. Examples are Clostridium perfringens and Escherichia coli 0157:H7. When these living organisms are ingested, they establish colonies in human or animal intestinal tracts where they then produce toxins. These bacteria are particularly dangerous for young children, the elderly or the infirm.

Preventing Bacterial Intoxications and Infections

All bacteria, like other living things, need certain conditions in order to complete their life cycles. Like humans, they need food, a comfortable temperature, moisture, the proper pH, the proper atmosphere and time. The best way to prevent bacterial intoxications and infections is to attack the factors bacteria need to survive and multiply.

Food Bacteria need food for energy and growth. The foods on which bacteria thrive are referred to as **potentially hazardous foods**. Potentially hazardous foods include those high in protein such as meat, poultry, fish and shellfish. Dairy products, eggs, grains and some vegetables are also sufficiently high in protein to support bacterial growth. These foods and items containing these foods (for example, custard, hollandaise sauce and quiche) must be handled with great care.

Temperature Temperature is the most important factor in the pathogenic bacteria's environment because it is the factor most easily controlled by food service workers. Most microorganisms are destroyed at high temperatures. Freezing slows, but does not stop, growth, nor does it destroy bacteria.

Most of the bacteria that cause food-borne illnesses multiply rapidly at temperatures between 60°F and 120°F (16°C–49°C). Therefore, the broad range of temperatures between 40°F and 140°F (4°C–60°C) is referred to as the **temperature danger zone**. See Figure 2.3. By keeping foods out of the temperature danger zone, you decrease the bacteria's ability to thrive and reproduce. (The Food and Drug Administration's *Model Food Code* states that the temperature danger zone begins at 41°F (5°C), whereas regulations in some localities

state that the danger zone begins at 45°F (7°C). Here we use the broader range recommended by the U.S. Department of Agriculture—40°F–140°F—since this provides a slightly greater margin of safety.)

To control the growth of any bacteria that may be present, it is important to maintain the internal temperature of food at 140°F (60°C) or above or 40°F (4°C) or below. Simply stated: *Keep hot foods hot and cold foods cold.*

This is known as the **time-and-temperature principle**. Potentially hazardous foods should be heated or cooled quickly so that they are within the temperature danger zone as briefly as possible.

Keep hot foods hot. The high internal temperatures reached during cooking (165°F–212°F/74°C–100°C) kill most of the bacteria that can cause food-borne illnesses. When reheating foods, the internal temperature should reach or exceed 165°F (74°C) in order to kill any bacteria that may have grown during storage. Once properly heated, hot foods must be held at temperatures of 140°F (60°C) or above. Foods that are to be displayed or served hot must be heated rapidly to reduce the time within the temperature danger zone. When heating or reheating foods:

- Heat small quantities at a time.
- Stir frequently.
- Heat foods as close to service time as possible.
- Use preheated ingredients whenever possible to prepare hot foods.
- Never use a steam table for heating or reheating foods. Bring the food to an appropriate internal temperature (at least 165°F/74°C) before placing it in the steam table for holding.

Keep cold foods cold. Foods that are to be displayed, stored, or served cold must be cooled rapidly. When cooling foods:

- Refrigerate semisolid foods at 40°F (4°C) or below in containers that are less than 2 inches deep. (Increased surface area decreases cooling time.)
- Avoid crowding the refrigerator; allow air to circulate around foods.
- Vent hot foods in an ice water bath, as illustrated in Chapter 10, Stocks and Sauces.
- Use prechilled ingredients, for example, mayonnaise, to prepare cold foods.
- Store cooked foods above raw foods to prevent cross-contamination.

Keep frozen foods frozen. Freezing at 0°F (–18°C) or below essentially stops bacterial growth but will not kill the bacteria. But do not place hot foods in a standard freezer. They will not cool more rapidly, and the release of heat can raise the temperature of other foods in the freezer. Only a special blast freezer can be used for chilling hot items. If one is not available, cool hot foods as mentioned above before freezing them. When frozen foods are thawed, bacteria that are present will begin to grow. Therefore:

- Never thaw foods at room temperature.
- Thaw foods gradually under refrigeration. Place them in a container to prevent cross-contamination from dripping or leaking liquids.
- Thaw foods under running water at a temperature of 70°F (21°C) or cooler.
- Thaw foods in a microwave only if the food will be prepared and served immediately.

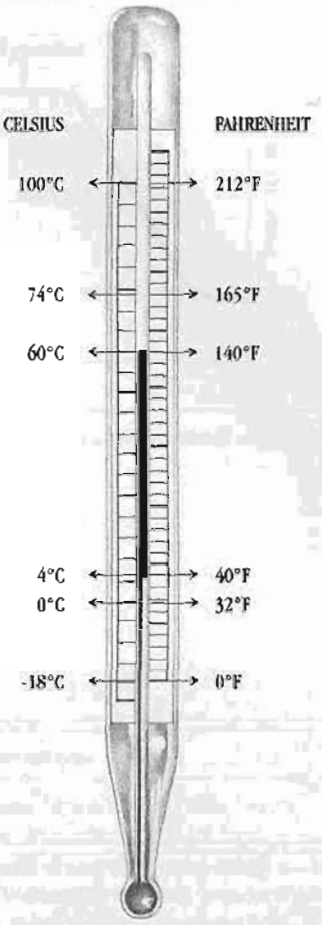


FIGURE 2.3 *The Temperature Danger Zone*

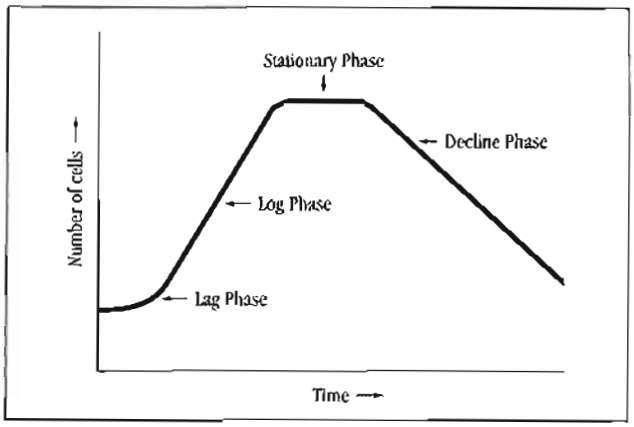


FIGURE 2.4 *Bacterial Growth Curve*

Time When bacteria are moved from one place to another, they require time to adjust to new conditions. This resting period, during which very little growth occurs, is known as the **lag phase** and may last from one to four hours. It is followed by the **log phase**, a period of accelerated growth, which lasts until the bacteria begin to crowd others within their colony, creating competition for food, space and moisture. This begins the **decline** or **negative growth phase**, during which bacteria die at an accelerated rate. See Figure 2.4.

Because of the lag phase, foods can be in the temperature danger zone for *very short periods* during preparation without an unacceptable increase in bacterial growth. Exposure to the temperature danger zone is cumulative, however, and should not exceed four hours total. The less time food is in the temperature danger zone, the less opportunity bacteria have to multiply.

Moisture Bacteria need a certain amount of moisture, which is expressed as water activity or A_w. Water itself has an A_w of 1.0. Any food with an A_w of .85 or greater is considered potentially hazardous. See Table 2.1. Bacteria cannot flourish where the Aw is too low, usually below .85. This explains why dry foods such as flour, sugar or crackers are rarely subject to bacterial infestations. A low A_w only halts bacterial growth, however; it does not kill the microorganisms. When a dried food such as beans or rice is rehydrated, any bacteria present can flourish and the food may become potentially hazardous.

pH—*a measurement of the acid or alkali content of a solution. Expressed on a scale of 0 to 14.0, 7.0 is considered neutral or balanced. The lower the pH value, the more acidic the substance. The higher the pH value, the more alkaline the substance.*

Acid/Alkali Balance Bacteria are affected by the **pH** of their environment. See Table 2.2. Although they can survive in a wider range, they prefer a neutral environment with a pH of 6.6 to 7.5. Growth is usually halted if the pH is 4.6 or less. So, acidic foods such as lemon juice, tomatoes and vinegar create an unfavorable environment for bacteria. Simply adding an acidic ingredient to foods should not, however, be relied upon to destroy bacteria or preserve foods. The amount of acidity appropriate for flavoring is not sufficient to ensure the destruction of bacteria.

TABLE 2.1 WATER ACTIVITY OF COMMON FOODS

0.0	
.1	
.2	
.3	
.4	
.5	dried pasta
.6	
.7	flour, dry milk
.75	jam, jelly, crisp cooked bacon
.8	
.85	MINIMUM FOR BACTERIAL GROWTH
.9	raw bacon
.95	soft cheese
.98	poultry and meat
1.0	distilled water

Atmosphere Bacteria need an appropriate atmosphere. Some bacteria, known as **aerobic**, thrive on oxygen, whereas others, known as **anaerobic**, cannot survive in its presence. Still others, known as **facultative**, can adapt and will survive with or without oxygen. Unfortunately, most pathogenic bacteria are facultative. See Table 2.3.

Canning, which creates an anaerobic atmosphere, destroys bacteria that need oxygen. But it also creates a favorable atmosphere for anaerobic and facultative bacteria. A complete vacuum need not be formed for anaerobic bacteria to thrive, however. A tight foil covering, a complete layer of fat, even a well-fitting lid can create an atmosphere sufficiently devoid of oxygen to permit the growth of anaerobic bacteria.

Parasites

Parasites are tiny organisms that depend on nutrients from a living host to complete their life cycle. Meat

TABLE 2.2 pH OF COMMON FOODS

	0	
	1.0	
A	2.0	limes, lemons
C	3.0	commercial mayonnaise
I	4.0	orange juice
D	4.6	bananas
	5.0	most vegetables (5.0 to 7.0)
	6.4	chicken and fresh meats
NEUTRAL	7.0	distilled water, fish
	8.0	crackers, hominy
A	8.5	baking soda in water
L	9.0	
K	10.0	
A	11.0	
L	12.0	household ammonia
I	13.0	
	14.0	

TABLE 2.3 CHARACTERISTICS OF BACTERIAL ILLNESSES

Common Name	Organism	Form	Common Sources	Prevention
Staph	Staphylococcus aureus	Toxin	Starchy foods, cold meats, bakery items, custards, milk products, humans with infected wounds or sores	Wash hands and utensils before use; exclude unhealthy food handlers; avoid having foods at room temperature
Perfringens or CP	Clostridium perfringens	Cells and toxin	Reheated meats, sauces, stews, casseroles	Keep cooked foods at an internal temperature of 140°F (60°C) or higher; reheat leftovers to an internal temperature of 165°F (74°C) or higher
Botulism	Clostridium botulinum	Toxin, cells, spores	Cooked foods held for an extended time at warm temperatures with limited oxygen, rice, potatoes, smoked fish, canned vegetables	Keep cooked foods at an internal temperature of 140°F (60°C) or higher or 40°F (4°C) or lower; reheat leftovers thoroughly; discard swollen cans
Salmonella	Salmonella	Cells	Poultry, eggs, milk, meats, fecal contamination	Thoroughly cook all meat, poultry, fish and eggs; avoid cross-contamination with raw foods; maintain good personal hygiene
Strep	Streptococcus	Cells	Infected food handlers	Do not allow employees to work if ill; protect foods from customers' coughs and sneezes
E. coli or 0157	Escherichia coli 0157:H7 (enteropathogenic strains)	Cells and toxins	Any food, especially raw milk, raw vegetables, raw or rare beef, humans	Thoroughly cook or reheat items
Listeria	Listeria monocytogenes	Cells	Milk products, humans, deli meats	Avoid raw milk and cheese made from unpasteurized milk; keep storage areas clean

animals, fish, shellfish and humans can all play host to parasites. Several types of very small parasitic worms can enter an animal through contaminated feed, then settle in the host's intestinal tract or muscles, where they grow and reproduce. The ones most commonly found in foods are *trichinella spiralis* and *anisakis*.

Trichinosis is caused by eating undercooked game or pork infected with trichina larvae. Although trichinosis has been virtually eradicated by grain-feeding hogs and testing them before slaughter, some cases still occur each year. Traditionally, it was thought that pork must be cooked to internal temperatures of 170°F (77°C) or higher to eradicate the larvae. This generally resulted in a dry, tough product. Scientists have now determined that trichina larvae are killed if held at 137°F (58°C) for 10 seconds. The FDA currently recommends cooking pork products to an internal temperature of 150°F (66°C). (All commercially packaged cured or smoked pork products must be heated to an internal temperature of 155°F (68°C) during processing.) The National Livestock and Meat Board continues to recommend cooking all pork products to 170°F (77°C), however.

Anisakiasis is another illness caused by parasitic roundworms. Anisakis worms reside in the organs of fish, especially bottom feeders or those taken from contaminated waters. Raw or undercooked fish are most often implicated in anisakiasis. Fish should be thoroughly cleaned immediately after being caught so that the parasites do not have an opportunity to spread. Thorough cooking to a minimum internal temperature of 140°F (60°C) is the only way to destroy the larvae since they can survive even highly acidic marinades.

Cyclospora infections are caused by a single-celled parasite found in water or food contaminated by infected feces. Produce from undeveloped countries is a common source of cyclospora parasites, as is untreated water. Avoiding such products is the best prevention method.

Viruses

Viruses cause other biologically based food-borne illnesses such as hepatitis A and Norwalk virus. Viruses are the smallest known forms of life. They invade the living cells of a host, take over those cells' genetic material, and cause the cells to produce more viruses.

Viruses do not require a host to survive, however. They can survive—but not multiply—while lying on any food or food contact surface. Unlike bacteria, viruses can be present on any food, not just a potentially hazardous food. The food or food contact surface simply becomes a means of transportation between hosts.

Unlike bacteria, viruses are not affected by the water activity, pH or oxygen content of their environment. Some, however, can be destroyed by temperatures higher than 176°F (80°C). Basically, the only way to prevent food-borne viral illnesses is to prevent contamination in the first place.

Hepatitis A often enters the food supply through shellfish harvested from polluted waters. The virus is carried by humans, some of whom may never know they are infected, and is transmitted by poor personal hygiene and cross-contamination. The actual source of contamination may be hard to establish, though, because it sometimes takes months for symptoms to appear.

The **Norwalk virus** is spread almost entirely by poor personal hygiene among infected food handlers. The virus is found in human feces, contaminated water or vegetables fertilized by manure. The virus can be destroyed by high cooking temperatures but not by sanitizing solutions or freezing. In fact, Norwalk virus has even been found in ice cubes.

Foods most likely to transmit viral diseases are those that are not heated after handling. These include salads, sandwiches, milk, baked products, uncooked fish and shellfish and sliced meats. The best techniques for avoiding viral food-borne illnesses are to observe good personal hygiene habits, avoid cross-contamination, and use only foods obtained from reputable sources.

Fungi

Fungi are a large group of plants ranging from single-celled organisms to giant mushrooms. Fungi are everywhere: in the soil, air and water. Poisonous mushrooms, a type of fungus, can cause illness or death if consumed. The most common fungi, however, are molds and yeasts.

Molds

Molds are algaelike fungi that form long filaments or strands. These filaments often extend into the air, appearing as cottony or velvety masses on food. Large colonies of mold are easily visible to the naked eye. Although many food molds are not dangerous, and some are even very beneficial, rare types known as mycotoxicoses do form toxins that have been linked to food-borne illnesses. For the most part, however, molds affect only the appearance and flavor of foods. They cause discoloration, odors and off-flavors.

Unlike bacteria, molds can grow on almost any food at almost any temperature, moist or dry, acidic or alkaline. Mold cells can be destroyed by heating to 140°F (60°C) for 10 minutes. Their toxins are heat resistant, however, and are not destroyed by normal cooking methods. Therefore, foods that develop mold should be discarded, and any container or storage area cleaned and sanitized.

Yeasts

Yeasts require water and carbohydrates (sugar or starch) for survival. As the organisms consume carbohydrates, they expel alcohol and carbon dioxide gas through a process known as **fermentation**. Fermentation is of great benefit in making breads and alcoholic beverages.

Although naturally occurring yeasts have not been proved to be harmful to humans, they can cause foods to spoil, developing off-flavors, odors and discoloration. Yeasts are killed at temperatures of 136°F (58°C) or above.

Chemical Contaminants

The contamination of foods by a wide variety of chemicals is a very real and serious danger, one about which the public has shown a strong interest. Chemical contamination is usually inadvertent and invisible, making it extremely difficult to detect. The only way to avoid such hazards is for everyone working in a food service operation to follow proper procedures when handling foods or chemicals.

Chemical hazards include contamination with (1) residual chemicals used in growing the food supply, (2) food service chemicals and (3) toxic metals.

Residual Chemicals

Chemicals such as antibiotics, fertilizers, insecticides and herbicides have brought about great progress in controlling plant, animal and human diseases, permitting greater food yields and stimulating animal growth. The benefits derived from these chemicals, however, must be contrasted with the adverse effects on humans when they are used indiscriminately or improperly.

The danger of these chemicals lies in the possible contamination of human foods, which occurs when chemical residues remain after the intended goal is achieved. Fruits and vegetables must be washed and peeled properly to reduce the risk of consuming residual chemicals.

Food Service Chemicals

A more common contamination problem involves the common chemicals found in most every food service operation. Cleaners, polishes, pesticides and abrasives are often poisonous to humans. Illness and even death can result from foods contaminated by such common items as bug spray, drain cleaner, oven cleaner or silver polish. These chemicals pose a hazard if used or stored near food supplies. Even improperly washing or rinsing dishes and utensils leaves a soap residue, which is then transmitted via food to anyone using the item.

To avoid food service chemical contamination, make sure all cleaning chemicals are clearly labeled and stored well away from food preparation and storage areas. Always use these products as directed by the manufacturer; never reuse a chemical container or package.

Toxic Metals

Another type of chemical contamination occurs when metals such as lead, mercury, copper, zinc and antimony are dispersed in food or water. For example:

- Metals can accumulate in fish and shellfish living in polluted waters or in plants grown in soil contaminated by the metals.
- Using an acidic food such as tomatoes or wine in a zinc (galvanized) or unlined copper container causes metal ions to be released into the food.
- Antimony is used in bonding enamelware; it can be released into food when the enamel is chipped or cracked, so the use of enamelware is prohibited in food service facilities.
- Lead enters the water supply from lead pipes and solder, and is found in the glaze on some imported ceramic items.

Consuming any of these metals can cause poisoning.

To prevent metal contamination, use only approved food service equipment and utensils and re-tin copper cookware as needed. Never serve fish or shellfish that was illegally harvested or obtained from uninspected sources.

Physical Contaminants

Physical contaminants include foreign objects that find their way into foods by mistake. Examples include metal shavings created by a worn can opener, pieces of glass from a broken container, hair and dirt. Physical contaminants may be created by intentional tampering, but they are most likely the result of poor safety and sanitation practices or a lack of training.

CROSS-CONTAMINATION

Generally, microorganisms and other contaminants cannot move by themselves. Rather, they are carried to foods and food contact surfaces by humans, rodents or insects. This transfer is referred to as cross-contamination.

Cross-contamination is the process by which one item, such as your finger or a cutting board, becomes contaminated and then contaminates another food or tool. For example, a chef's knife and cutting board are used in butchering a potentially hazardous food such as a chicken. In this case, the chicken had been directly contaminated with salmonella at the hatchery. If the knife and board are not cleaned *and sanitized* properly, anything that touches them can also become contaminated. So, even though cooking the chicken to an appropriate internal temperature may destroy the salmonella in the chicken, the uncooked salad greens cut on the same cutting board or with the same knife can contain live bacteria.

Cross-contamination can occur with bacteria or other microorganisms, chemicals, dirt and debris. Side towels are an especially common source of cross-contamination. If a cook uses a side towel to wipe a spill off the floor, then uses that same towel to dry his hands after visiting the restroom, he has recontaminated his hands with whatever bacteria or dirt was on the floor. Cross-contamination also occurs when raw foods come in contact with cooked foods. Never store cooked food below raw food in a refrigerator, and never return cooked food to the container that held the raw food. Cross-contamination can also occur easily from smoking, drinking or eating, unless hands are properly washed after each of these activities.

Reducing Cross-Contamination

Cross-contamination can be reduced or even prevented by (1) personal cleanliness, (2) dish and equipment cleanliness and (3) pest management.

Personal Cleanliness

To produce clean, sanitary food, all food handlers must maintain high standards of personal cleanliness and hygiene. This begins with good grooming.

Humans provide the ideal environment for the growth of microorganisms. Everyone harbors bacteria in the nose and mouth. These bacteria are easily spread by sneezing or coughing, by not disposing of tissues properly and by not washing hands frequently and properly. Touching your body, then touching food or utensils, transfers bacteria. Human waste carries many dangerous microorganisms, so it is especially important to wash your hands thoroughly after visiting the restroom. An employee who is ill should not be allowed in the kitchen.

Current research shows that the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), the causative agent of AIDS, is not spread by food. According to the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, food service workers infected with HIV should not be restricted from work unless there is another infection or illness.

There are several things you can do to decrease the risk of an illness being spread by poor personal hygiene:

- Wash your hands frequently and thoroughly. Gloves are not a substitute for proper hand washing.
- Keep your fingernails short, clean and neat. Do not bite your nails or wear nail polish.
- Keep any cut or wound antiseptically bandaged. An injured hand should also be covered with a disposable glove.
- Bathe daily, or more often if required.
- Keep your hair clean and restrained.

PROPER HAND WASHING PROCEDURE

- Use hot running water.
- Wet hands and forearms.
- Apply an antibacterial soap.
- Rub hands and arms briskly with soapy lather for at least 20 seconds.
- Scrub between fingers and clean nails with a clean nail brush.
- Rinse thouroughly under hot running water.
- Reapply soap and scrub hands and forearms for another 5–10 seconds.
- Rinse again.
- Dry hands and arms using a single-use towel.
- Use the towel to turn off the water.
- Discard the towel in a trash receptacle.

- Wear work clothes that are clean and neat. Avoid wearing jewelry or watches.
- Do not eat, drink, smoke or chew gum in food preparation areas.

Dish and Equipment Cleanliness

Clean—*to remove visible dirt and soil.*

Sanitize—*to reduce pathogenic organisms to safe levels.*

Sterilize—*to destroy all living microorganisms.*

One of the requirements for any food service facility is cleanability. But there is an important difference between clean and sanitary. **Clean** means that the item has no visible soil on it. **Sanitary** means that harmful substances are reduced to safe levels. Thus, something may be clean without being sanitary; the visible dirt can be removed, but disease-causing microorganisms can remain.

The cleaning of dishes, pots, pans and utensils in a food service operation involves both removing soil and sanitizing. Soil can be removed manually or by machine. Sanitizing can be accomplished with heat or chemical disinfectants.

Procedures for manually washing, rinsing and sanitizing dishes and equipment generally follow the three-compartment sink setup shown in Figure 2.5. The dishwasher must:

1. Scrape and spray the item to remove soil.
2. Wash the item in the first sink compartment using an approved detergent. A brush or cloth may be used to remove any remaining soil.
3. Rinse the item in the second sink compartment using clear, hot water.
4. Sanitize the item in the third sink compartment by either:
   a. immersing it in 170°F (77°C) water for at least 30 seconds, or
   b. immersing it in an approved chemical sanitizing solution according to the manufacturer's directions.
5. Empty, clean and refill each sink compartment as necessary, and check the water temperature regularly.

Food service items, dishes, silverware and utensils should always be allowed to air-dry, as towel-drying may recontaminate them.

Machine-washing dishes or utensils follows a similar procedure. The dishwasher should first scrape and rinse items as needed, then load the items into dishwasher racks so that the spray of water will reach all surfaces. The machine cleans the items with a detergent, then sanitizes them with either a hot-water rinse (at least 180°F/82°C) or chemical disinfectant. When the machine

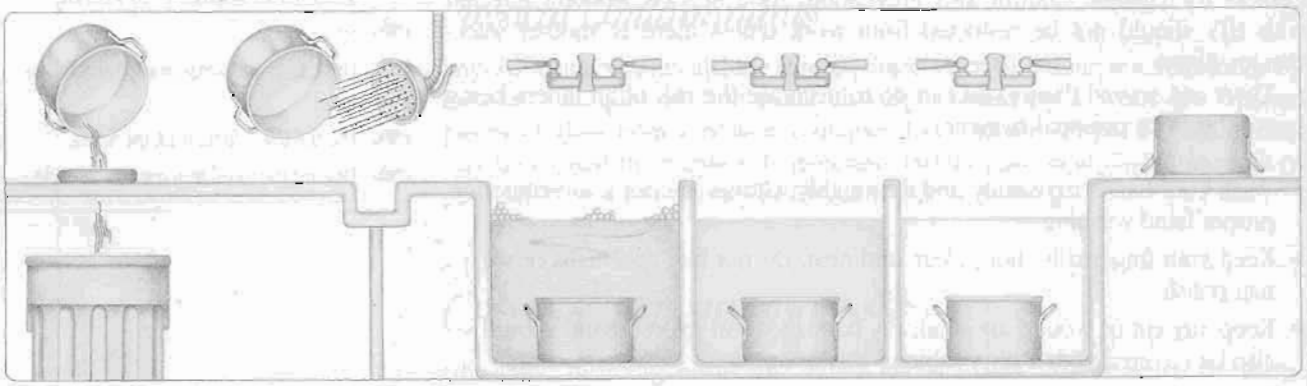


FIGURE 2.5 *The Three-Compartment Sink Procedure—scrape, spray, wash, rinse, sanitize and air-dry each item.*

cycle is complete, items should be inspected for residual soil, allowed to air-dry and stored in a clean area.

Work tables and stationary equipment must also be cleaned and sanitized properly. Equipment and surfaces, including floors, walls and work tables, should be easily exposed for inspection and cleaning and should be constructed so that soil can be removed effectively and efficiently with normal cleaning procedures. A thorough cleaning schedule should be implemented and closely monitored to prevent problems from developing.

The following points are important to the safety and cleanliness of any food service facility:

- Equipment should be disassembled for cleaning; any immersible pieces should be cleaned and sanitized like other items.
- All work tables or other food contact surfaces should be cleaned with detergent, then sanitized with a clean cloth dipped in a sanitizing solution. Combining one gallon (4 liters) of lukewarm water with one tablespoon (15 milliliters) of chlorine bleach makes an acceptable sanitizing solution. This solution must be replaced every two hours. Other chemical sanitizers should be prepared and used according to health department and manufacturer's directions.
- Surfaces, especially work surfaces with which food may come in contact, should be smooth and free of cracks, crevices or seams in which soil and microorganisms can hide.
- Floors should be nonabsorbent and should not become slippery when wet.
- Walls and ceilings should be smooth and light-colored so that soil is easier to see.
- Light should be ample and well located throughout food preparation and storage areas. All light bulbs should be covered with a sleeve or globe to protect surroundings from shattered glass.

A kitchen's design can also affect food safety and sanitation. Food preparation equipment should be arranged in such a way as to decrease the chances of cross-contamination. The workflow should eliminate crisscrossing and backtracking. Employees should be able to reach storage, refrigeration and cleanup areas easily. Dish- and pot-washing areas and garbage facilities should be kept as far from food preparation and storage areas as possible. Cleaning supplies and other chemicals should be stored away from foods.

In most communities, the design of a food service facility is controlled in part by public health regulations. The local health and building codes should be consulted when planning any construction or remodeling, or when purchasing and installing new equipment.

Pest Management

Food can be contaminated by insects (for example, roaches and flies) and rodents (for example, mice and rats). These pests carry many harmful bacteria on their bodies, thus contaminating any surface with which they come in contact. An insect or rodent infestation is usually considered a serious health risk and should be dealt with immediately and thoroughly. Pests must be controlled by (1) building them out of the facility, (2) creating an environment in which they cannot find food, water or shelter, and (3) relying on professional extermination.

The best defense against pests is to prevent infestations in the first place by building them out. Any crack-no matter how small-in door frames, walls or window sills should be repaired immediately, and all drains, pipes and vents should be well-sealed. Inspect all deliveries thoroughly, and reject any packages or containers found to contain evidence of pests.

Flies are a perfect method of transportation for bacteria because they feed and breed on human waste and garbage. Use screens or "fly fans" (also known as air curtains) to keep them out in the first place. Controlling garbage is also essential because moist, warm, decaying organic material attracts flies and provides favorable conditions for eggs to hatch and larvae to grow.

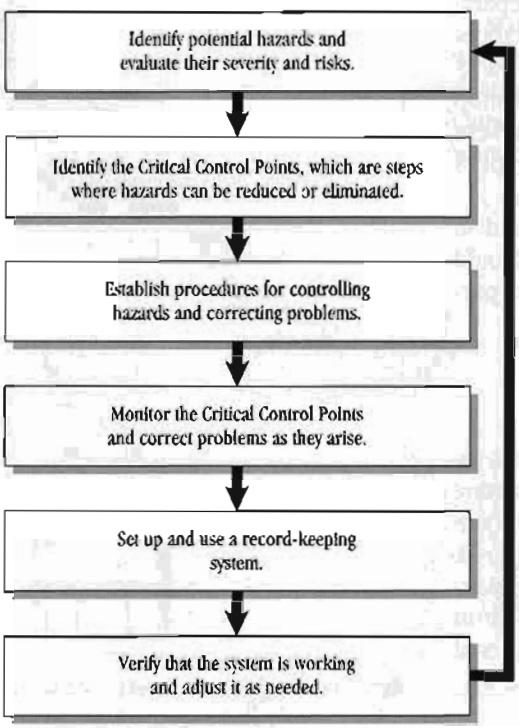
Pest management also requires creating an inhospitable environment for pests. Store all food and supplies at least 6 inches off the floor and 6 inches away from walls. Rotate stock often to disrupt nesting places and breeding habits. Provide good ventilation in storerooms to remove humidity, airborne contaminants, grease and fumes. Do not allow water to stand in drains, sinks or buckets, as cockroaches are attracted to moisture. Clean up spills and crumbs immediately and completely to reduce their food supply.

Despite your best efforts to build pests out and maintain proper housekeeping standards, it is still important to watch for the presence of pests. For example, cockroaches leave a strong, oily odor and feces that look like large grains of pepper. Cockroaches prefer to search for food and water in the dark, so seeing any cockroach on the move in the daylight is an indication of a large infestation.

Rodents (mice and rats) tend to hide during the day, so an infestation may be rather serious before any creature is actually seen. Rodent droppings, which are shiny black to brownish gray, may be evident, however. Rodent nests made from scraps of paper, hair or other soft materials may be spotted.

Should an infestation occur, consult a licensed pest control operator immediately. With early detection and proper treatment, infestations can be eliminated. Be very careful in attempting to use pesticides or insecticides yourself. These chemicals are toxic to humans as well as to pests. Great care must be used to prevent contaminating food or exposing workers or customers to the chemicals.

A HACCP SYSTEM FLOWCHART



HACCP Systems

Now that you understand what contaminants are and how they can be destroyed or controlled, it is necessary to put this information into practice during day-to-day operations. Although local health departments regularly inspect all food service facilities, continual self-inspection and control are essential for maintaining sanitary conditions.

Hazard Analysis Critical Control Points (HACCP) is proving to be an effective and efficient method for managing and maintaining sanitary conditions in all types of food service operations. Developed in 1971 for NASA to ensure food safety for astronauts, HACCP—and a similar system adopted by the National Restaurant Association known as Sanitary Assessment of the Food Environment (S.A.F.E.)—is a rigorous system of self-inspection. It focuses on the flow of food through the food service facility, from the decision to include an item on the menu through service to the consumer.

TABLE 2.4 HACCP ANALYSIS—THE FLOW OF FOOD

Control Point	Hazards	Critical Action
Menu and recipes	Potentially hazardous foods; human hands involved in food preparation	Plan physical work flow; train employees
Receiving	Contaminated or spoiled goods	Inspect and reject deliveries if necessary
Storage	Cross-contamination to and from other foods; bacterial growth; spoilage	Maintain proper temperatures; rotate stock; discard if necessary
Preparation	Cross-contamination; bacterial growth	Wash hands and utensils; avoid temperature danger zone
Cooking	Bacterial survival; physical or chemical contamination	Cook to proper temperatures; store foods properly
Holding and service	Contamination; bacterial growth	Use clean equipment; maintain proper temperatures
Cooling leftovers	Bacterial survival and growth	Cool rapidly, cover and refrigerate
Reheating	Bacterial survival and growth	Heat rapidly to 165°F (74°C); maintain temperatures; do not mix old and new products

An HACCP critical control point is any step during the processing of a food when a mistake can result in the transmission, growth or survival of pathogenic bacteria. At each of these steps, there is some hazard of contamination. The HACCP process begins by identifying the steps and evaluating the type and severity of hazard that can occur. It then identifies what actions can be taken to reduce or prevent each risk of hazard. See Table 2.4. The activities that present the highest risk of hazard should be monitored most closely. For example, a cook's failure to wash his or her hands before handling cooked food presents a greater risk of hazard than does a dirty floor. In other words, hazards must be prioritized, and the correction of critical concerns should take priority.

Whatever system is followed, however, all personnel must be constantly aware of and responsive to problems and potential problems associated with the safety of the food they are serving.

THE SAFE WORKER

Kitchens are filled with objects that can cut, burn, break, crush or sprain the human body. The best ways to prevent work-related injuries are proper training, good work habits and careful supervision.

The federal government enacted legislation designed to reduce hazards in the work area, thereby reducing accidents. The Occupational Safety and

Health Act (OSHA) covers a broad range of safety matters. Employers who fail to follow its rules can be severely fined. Unfortunately, human error is the leading cause of accidents, and no amount of legislation can protect someone who doesn't work in a safe manner.

Safe behavior on the job reflects pride, professionalism and consideration for fellow workers. The following list should alert you to conditions and activities aimed at preventing accidents and injuries:

- Clean up spills as soon as they occur.
- Learn to operate equipment properly; always use guards and safety devices.
- Wear clothing that fits properly; avoid wearing jewelry, which may get caught in equipment.
- Use knives and other equipment for their intended purposes only.
- Walk, do not run.
- Keep exits, aisles and stairs clear and unobstructed.
- Always assume pots and pans are hot; handle them with dry towels.
- Position pot and pan handles out of the aisles so that they do not get bumped.
- Get help or use a cart when lifting or moving heavy objects.
- Avoid back injury by lifting with your leg muscles; stoop, don't bend, when lifting.
- Use a well-placed ladder or stool for climbing; do not use a chair, box, drawer or shelf.
- Keep breakable items away from food storage or production areas.
- Warn people when you must walk behind them, especially when carrying a hot pan.

Some accidents will inevitably occur, and it is important to act appropriately in the event of an injury or emergency. This may mean calling for help or providing first aid. Every food service operation should be equipped with a complete first-aid kit. Municipal regulations may specify the exact contents of the kit. Be sure that the kit is conveniently located and well stocked at all times.

The American Red Cross and local public health departments offer training in first aid, cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) and the Heimlich Maneuver used for choking victims. All employees should be trained in basic emergency procedures. A list of emergency telephone numbers should be posted by each telephone.

CONCLUSION

All food service workers are responsible for supplying food that is safe to eat. Microorganisms that cause food-borne illnesses are found in all types of food; they can be destroyed, or their growth can be severely limited by proper food-handling procedures. By learning about food contaminants, how they are spread and how they can be prevented or controlled, you can help ensure customer safety. You are also responsible for your own physical safety as well as that of your customers and fellow workers. Maintaining sanitary and safe facilities as well as high standards of personal hygiene are necessary parts of this responsibility.

QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

1. Foods can be contaminated in several ways. Explain the differences between biological, chemical and physical contamination. Give an example of each.
2. Under what conditions will bacteria thrive? Explain what you can do to alter these conditions.
3. What is the temperature danger zone? What is its significance in food preparation?
4. Explain how improper or inadequate pest management can lead to food-borne illnesses.
5. Define HACCP. How is this system used in a typical food service facility?

CHAPTER 3
NUTRITION

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- identify categories of nutrients and explain their importance in a balanced diet
- understand the effects storage and preparation techniques have on various foods' nutritional values
- appreciate the use of ingredient substitutes and alternatives
- understand product nutrition labels
- provide diners with nutritious foods

Since the days of prehistoric hunters and gatherers, people have understood that some animals and plants are good to eat and others are not. For thousands of years, cultures worldwide have attributed medicinal or beneficial effects to certain foods, particularly plants, and have recognized that foods that would otherwise be fine to eat may be unhealthy if improperly prepared or stored.

But not until the past few decades have people become increasingly concerned about understanding how all foods affect their health and what foods can and should be consumed in order to promote good health. These concerns compose the study of nutrition.

This chapter cannot provide an in-depth study of the nutritional sciences. Rather, it sets forth basic information about nutrients, food additives, and ingredient substitutes and alternatives. It also provides guidelines for reading package labels and preparing nutritious meals.

Detailed nutritional information about many specific foods is found throughout the book. All recipes are accompanied by a nutritional analysis; recipes for dishes particularly low in calories, fat or sodium are marked with a .

Nutrition is the science that studies nutrients, (chemical) substances found in food, that nourish the body by promoting growth, maintenance and repair and by facilitating body functions. Some nutrients also provide energy.

The six categories of nutrients are carbohydrates, fats, proteins, vitamins, minerals and water. **Essential nutrients** are those that must be provided by food because the body does not produce them in sufficient quantities or cannot make them at all. Some nutritional components are considered nonessential because healthy, well-nourished bodies can make them in sufficient quantities to satisfy their needs.

Our bodies depend upon the various nutrients for different purposes and require different amounts of each depending on age, sex and health. In addition, some nutrients depend on one another for proper functioning. For example, calcium and vitamin D work together in the body: Vitamin D promotes the absorption of the calcium that the body utilizes for proper bone growth. Because foods differ with regard to their nutritional content, it is important to eat a variety of foods in order to achieve a proper nutritional balance.

Essential Nutrients

Calorie—*the unit of energy measured by the amount of heat required to raise 1000 grams of water one degree Celsius; it is also written as kilocalorie or kcal.*

Three of the essential nutrients provide calories or energy. Sometimes referred to as macronutrients, they are carbohydrates, fats and proteins.

A **calorie** (abbreviated *kcal*) is the way we describe the amount of energy in food. The number of calories in a food is measured by a device called a calorimeter, which burns the food and measures the heat the food gives off.

TABLE 3.1 ESSENTIAL NUTRIENTS

Essential nutrients are those that must be provided because the human body does not produce them in sufficient quantities. They are:

Energy Nutrients
- Carbohydrates
- Fats (lineolic and linolenlic acids)
- Proteins (the amino acids: histidine, isoleucine, leucine, lysine, methionine, phenylalanine, threonine, tryptophan and valine)

Water

Vitamins (thiamine, riboflavin, niacin, pantothenic acid, biotin, vitamin B_6, vitamin B_{12}, folate, vitamin C, vitamin A, vitamin D, vitamin E and vitamin K)

Minerals (calcium, chloride, magnesium, phosphorous, potassium, sodium, sulfur, selenium, zinc, chromium, copper, fluoride, iodide, iron, manganese, and molybdenum)

From that measurement, an estimate for how the food would be burned in the body is calculated. The results of that calculation are the calorie designations assigned to the energy nutrients.

One gram of pure fat supplies 9 kcal; one gram of pure carbohydrate supplies 4 kcal, as does one gram of pure protein. Most foods are a combination of carbohydrates, proteins and fats; their kcal content may not be easily determined unless we know how much of each nutrient the food contains.

Vitamins and minerals are essential nutrients and must be provided through the diet because the body cannot manufacture them in quantities adequate to ensure good health. They have no calories. Because they are needed in smaller amounts than the other nutrients, they are sometimes referred to as the micronutrients.

Carbohydrates

Carbohydrates comprise carbon, hydrogen and oxygen and are found exclusively in plant foods and milk sugars. **Simple carbohydrates** include monosaccharides (single sugars) and disaccharides (double sugars). See Table 3.2. Simple carbohydrates are found in the naturally occurring sugars in fruit, vegetables and milk, as well as sweeteners such as honey, corn syrup and table sugar. **Complex carbohydrates** are composed of long chains of the monosaccharide glucose. Starch is a complex carbohydrate. Complex carbohydrates are found in vegetables, fruits and cereal grains such as wheat, barley and oats. The body digests (or breaks down) these sugars and starches into glucose. Glucose, also known as blood sugar, is a very important source of energy for the body.

Another complex carbohydrate is fiber. Fiber is a unique carbohydrate because humans cannot digest it, so they do not derive calories from it. **Dietary fiber**, which generally comes from the seeds and cell walls of fruits, vegetables and cereal grains, plays an important role in health. Because the body cannot digest dietary fiber, it passes through the digestive system almost completely unchanged. This helps keep the digestive tract running smoothly. Fiber increases fecal bulk, which encourages proper elimination of waste products from the large intestines and helps avoid some forms of gastrointestinal distress. Some forms of fiber also reduce serum cholesterol.

TABLE 3.2 SUGARS

Monosaccharides	Disaccharides
Glucose (blood sugar)	Lactose (milk sugar)
Fructose (fruit sugar)	Maltose (malt sugar)
Galactose (part of milk sugar)	Sucrose (table sugar)

Fats

Fats, like carbohydrates, are composed of carbon, hydrogen and oxygen. The differences between carbohydrates and fats are the number and arrangement of the carbon, hydrogen and oxygen atoms. Fats are found in both animal and plant foods, although fruits contain very little fat. Fats provide calories, help carry fat soluble vitamins and give food a creamy, pleasant mouthfeel.

Depending upon their structure, the fats in foods can be classified as saturated, monounsaturated or polyunsaturated. Most foods contain a combination of the three, although one kind may predominate. If saturated fat is the most abundant kind (as in the fat surrounding muscle meats), we describe the food as being saturated even though it contains a mixture of all three fats.

Saturated fats are found mainly in animal products such as milk, eggs and meats, as well as in tropical oils such as coconut and palm. Monounsaturated fats come primarily from plants and plant foods such as avocados and olives and the oils made from them. Polyunsaturated fats come from plants (soy and corn, for example) and fish.

Vegetable oils like rapeseed (canola) and olive are high in monounsaturated fat. Cottonseed, sunflower, corn and safflower oils are high in polyunsaturated fat. All oils, however, are a combination of the three kinds of fat.

Saturated fats such as butter, lard and other animal fats are usually solid at room temperature. Monounsaturated and polyunsaturated fats are usually liquid at room temperature. Hydrogenation is a process by which a liquid fat is made more solid (or saturated) by the addition of hydrogen atoms. Hydrogenation increases the percentage of saturated fatty acids, resulting in a more solid product (such as margarine made from a polyunsaturated oil like corn oil). It also reduces the tendency to rancidity so shelf life is increased.

The body has more difficulty breaking down saturated fats than it does monounsaturated and polyunsaturated fats. Research suggests that high-fat diets, especially diets high in saturated fat, may be linked to heart disease, obesity and certain forms of cancer. Saturated fats are also linked to high levels of blood cholesterol, which are associated with arteriosclerosis (hardening of the arteries). Although the liver can produce all the cholesterol the body needs, additional cholesterol is often provided in the diet. Dietary cholesterol is found only in foods of animal origin. Meats, poultry, fish, shellfish, eggs and dairy products are all sources of dietary cholesterol. Fruits, vegetables and grains are cholesterol free.

Proteins

Proteins are found in both animal and plant foods. They differ from carbohydrates and fats in that they contain nitrogen as well as carbon, hydrogen and oxygen. Protein chains consist of amino acids, the building blocks of protein.

There are 20 amino acids, 9 of which are essential. People who eat a varied diet with adequate calories and protein can easily get all the essential amino acids. The specific combination of amino acids gives each protein its unique characteristics and properties.

Proteins are necessary for manufacturing, maintaining and repairing body tissues. They are essential for the periodic replacement of the outer layer of skin as well as for blood clotting and scar tissue formation. Hair and nails, which provide a protective cover for the body, are composed of proteins.

Another important function of protein is the regulation of body processes. Proteins regulate the balance of water, acids and bases, and move nutrients in and out of cells. Proteins contribute to the immune system by producing antibodies, which are necessary for combating diseases. Proteins also form the enzymes that act as catalysts for body functions and the hormones that help direct body processes.

Water

The human body is approximately 60% water. Water is necessary for transporting nutrients and wastes throughout the body. It cushions the cells, lubricates the joints, maintains stable body temperatures and assists waste elimination. It also promotes functioning of the nervous system and muscles.

Although the principal sources of water are beverages, water is also the predominant nutrient by weight in most foods. Some foods such as tomatoes, oranges, watermelon and iceberg lettuce are particularly high in water. Others such as dried fruits, nuts and seeds are lower. Water is also formed by the body when other nutrients are metabolized.

The average adult should consume at least 8 to 10 glasses (64 fluid ounces or 2 liters) of water a day to ensure adequate intake. People who exercise should replace body water lost through sweat by drinking more.

Vitamins

Vitamins are vital dietary substances needed to regulate **metabolism** and for normal growth and body functions. They are essential and noncaloric, and needed in the body in small amounts.

There are 13 vitamins. Table 3.3 lists them, their principal functions in the human body, the foods that contain high concentrations of these nutrients and some of the preparation and storage techniques that help retain the maximum amount of the various vitamins in their food sources.

Vitamins are divided into two categories: fat soluble and water soluble. The fat-soluble vitamins are A, D, E and K and are found in foods containing fat. Excess supplies of these vitamins may be stored in fatty tissues and the liver. Water-soluble vitamins are vitamin C and the B complex vitamins, including thiamin (B_1), riboflavin (B_2), niacin (B_3), cyano-cobalamin (B_{12}), pyridoxine (B_6), pantothenic acid, biotin and folate. Vitamins B_1 and B_2 are commonly referred to by their names, thiamin and riboflavin, respectively; whereas cobalamin and pyridoxine are commonly referred to by their letter designations, B_{12} and B_6, respectively. Water-soluble vitamins are not stored to the extent that fat-soluble vitamins are, and excesses may be excreted in the urine. Because of these differences, deficiencies in water-soluble vitamins usually develop more rapidly.

Virtually all foods contain some vitamins. Many factors contribute to a particular food's vitamin concentration: an animal's feed; the manner by which the produce is harvested, stored or processed; even the type of soil, sunlight, rainfall and temperature have significant effects on a food's vitamin content. For example, tomatoes have a higher concentration of vitamin C when picked ripe

Acidulated water—*a mildly acidic solution of water and lemon juice or vinegar used to prevent cut fruits and vegetables from darkening.*

Artesian-well water—*water obtained from an underground source; the water rises to the surface under pressure.*

Bottled water—*any water, either still or sparkling, that is bottled and sold.*

Deionized water—*water that has had the cations and anions removed by passing it over a bed of ion-exchange resins.*

Demineralized water—*water that has had all the minerals and impurities removed by passing it over a bed of ion-exchange resins.*

Distilled water—*water that has had all the minerals and impurities removed through distillation; it is generally used for pharmaceutical purposes.*

Drinking water—*water that comes from a government-approved source and has undergone some treatment and filtration; it can be bottled or available on tap and is used for drinking and general culinary purposes.*

Fluoridated water—*water, either naturally fluoridated or treated with a fluorine-containing compound, intended to promote healthy teeth by preventing tooth decay.*

Hard water—*water with relatively high calcium and magnesium concentrations.*

Mineral water—*drinking water that comes from a protected underground water source and contains at least 250 parts per mineral of total dissolved solids such as calcium.*

Natural water—*bottled drinking water not derived from a municipal water supply; it can be mineral, spring, well or artesian-well water.*

Purified water—*bottled water produced by distillation, reverse osmosis, deionization or suitable processes that meet governmental standards.*

Seltzer water—*a flavorless natural mineral water with carbonation, originally from the German town of Nieder Selters.*

Soda water—*a flavorless water with induced carbonation consumed plain or used as a mixer for alcoholic drinks or soda fountain confections; also known as club soda and seltzer.*

Soft water—*water with a relatively high sodium concentration.*

Spring water—*water obtained from an underground source that flows naturally to the earth's surface.*

Metabolism—*all the chemical reactions and physical processes that continually occur in living cells and organisms.*

TABLE 3.3 VITAMINS: THEIR FUNCTIONS, SOURCES AND TECHNIQUES FOR RETAINING MAXIMUM NUTRIENT CONTENT

Vitamin	Functions in the Human Body	Sources	Techniques for Nutrient Reaction
Vitamin A	Keeps skin healthy; protects eyes; protects mouth and nose linings; supports immune functioning	Deep yellow and orange vegetables, leafy green vegetables, deep orange fruits, egg yolks, liver, fortified milk	Serve fruits and vegetables raw or lightly cooked; store vegetables covered and refrigerated; steam vegetables; roast or broil meats
Vitamin D	Helps body absorb calcium; regulates calcium and phosphorous in the bones; assists bone mineralization	Fortified milk, butter, some fish oils, egg yolks (exposure to sunlight produces vitamin D in the body)	It is stable under heat and insoluble in water; therefore it is unaffected by cooking
Vitamin E	Antioxidant; protects membranes and cell walls	Vegetable oils, whole grains, dark leafy vegetables, wheat germ, nuts, seeds, whole grains	Use whole-grain flours; store foods in airtight containers; avoid exposing the food to light and air
Vitamin K	Assists blood-clotting proteins	Liver, dark green leafy vegetables (bacteria in the intestinal track also produce some vitamin K)	Steam or microwave vegetables; do not overcook meats
Vitamin C (ascorbic acid)	Supports immune system functioning; repairs connective tissues; promotes healing; assists amino acid metabolism	Citrus fruits, green vegetables, strawberries, cantaloupes, tomatoes, broccoli, potatoes	Serve fruits and vegetables raw; steam or microwave vegetables
Thiamin (Vitamin B_1)	Assists energy metabolism; supports nervous system functioning	Meats (especially pork), legumes, whole grains	Use enriched or whole-grain pasta or rice; do not wash whole grains before cooking or rinse afterwards; steam or microwave vegetables; roast meats at moderate temperatures; cook meats only until done
Riboflavin (Vitamin B_2)	Assists energy metabolism	Milk, cheese, yogurt, fish, enriched grain breads and cereals, dark green leafy vegetables	Store foods in opaque containers; roast or broil meats or poultry
Niacin (Vitamin B_3)	Promotes normal digestion; supports nervous system functioning; assists energy metabolism	Meats, poultry, fish, dark green leafy vegetables, whole grain or enriched breads and cereals, nuts	Steam or microwave vegetables; roast or broil beef, veal, lamb and poultry (pork retains about the same amount of niacin regardless of cooking method)
Vitamin B_6	Necessary for protein metabolism and red blood cell formation	Meats, fish, poultry, shellfish, whole grains, dark green vegetables, potatoes, liver	Serve vegetables raw; cook foods in a minimum amount of water and for the shortest possible time; roast or broil meats and fish
Vitamin B_{12}	Helps produce red blood cells; assists metabolism	Animal foods only, particularly milk, eggs, poultry and fish	Roast or broil meats, poultry and fish
Folate	Necessary for protein metabolism and red blood cell formation	Orange juice, dark green leafy vegetables, organ meats, legumes, seeds	Serve vegetables raw; steam or microwave vegetables; store vegetables covered and refrigerated
Biotin	Coenzyme in energy metabolism, glycogen synthesis and fat metabolism	Widespread in foods	
Pantothenic Acid	Coenzyme in energy metabolism	Widespread in foods	

from the vine than when picked green. Furthermore, different varieties of fruits and vegetables have different vitamin contents. A Wegener apple, for example, has 19 mg of vitamin C, whereas a Red Delicious has only 6 mg.

You can control vitamin concentration and retention through careful food preparation:

1. Try to prepare vegetables as close to service time as possible; vegetables cut long before service lose more vitamins than those cut immediately before cooking.
2. Whether a vegetable is boiled, steamed or microwaved also determines the amount of vitamins it retains. Because the B complex vitamins and vitamin C are water soluble, they are easily leached (washed out) or destroyed by food processing and preparation techniques involving high temperatures and water. Steaming and microwaving help retain nutrients (when steaming, keep the water level below the vegetables). But microwave cooking is best because it cooks vegetables with minimal water in less time.
3. In general, roasting and grilling meats, poultry, fish and shellfish preserve more vitamins than stewing and braising. The temperatures to which foods are cooked and length of time they are cooked may affect vitamin retention as well.
4. Storage affects vitamin concentrations. For example, long exposure to air may destroy vitamin C. Using airtight containers prevents some of this loss. Riboflavin is sensitive to light, so milk products (which are good sources of riboflavin) should be stored in opaque containers.

Minerals

Minerals cannot be manufactured by the body. They are obtained by eating plants that have drawn minerals from the ground or the flesh of animals that have eaten such plants.

Minerals are a critical component in hard and soft tissues (for example, the calcium, magnesium and phosphorus present in bones and teeth). Minerals also regulate certain necessary body functions. For example, nerve impulses are transmitted through an exchange of sodium and potassium ions in the nerve cells.

Minerals are divided into two categories: trace minerals and major minerals. Trace minerals such as iron are needed in only very small amounts. Major minerals such as calcium are needed in relatively larger quantities. Table 3.4 lists some minerals, their principal functions in the human body and the foods that contain high concentrations of these nutrients.

As with vitamins, food processing and preparation can reduce a food's mineral content. Soaking or cooking in large amounts of water can leach out small quantities of water-soluble minerals. Processing or refining grains, such as the wheat used to make white flour, also removes minerals.

Eating for Health

It is generally recognized that a balanced diet is an important component of a healthy lifestyle. Eating well and exercising can contribute to a longer, healthier life.

Health Organization Recommendations

Planning a diet to enhance health is made simpler by diet and exercise recommendations from organizations such as The American Heart Association and

Lighten Up!

On the night before their trials on the Colosseum floor, gladiators ate meat to make themselves strong. Until a few years ago, modern-day gladiators and coaches insisted that athletes needed meat the night before the game. Of course, being more scientific, they referred to their training-table steak as protein.

Times change, the pendulum swings, and who ever thought a brawny athlete would admit to being a vegetarian? The new message from The American Heart Association and the U.S. Dietary Goals is that we needn't stop eating meat entirely. Instead, we should reduce our consumption of beef, turning to alternative sources of protein such as fish, poultry, lowfat dairy products, nuts, beans and seeds, and increase our consumption of fresh fruits, vegetables, grains and other complex carbohydrates. The results: fewer fats, more fiber and lower cholesterol, helping to create a slimmer, energetic, longer-lasting body.

This new "fresh," "nutrient-dense," "light," "natural," "heart-healthy" approach to dining has gone from fad to fashion to fact of life. From formal French to Mexican fast food, facilities offering portions of innovative, tasty, eye-catching healthy cuisine will surely win allegiance and accolades from patrons. So lighten up. Replace the deep-fat fryer with a griddle. Garnish with fresh fruit. Serve whole grain bread, but take heed: Balance is paramount. An occasional indulgence is a joy. There will always be room for chocolate.

HARRIS GOLDEN, *formerly Executive Chef of Elizabeth Arden's MAINE CHANCE HEALTH RESORT, currently owns and operates TRIANGLES RESTAURANT in La Jolla, California. Golden is also the author of two cookbooks.*

TABLE 3.4 MINERALS: THEIR FUNCTIONS AND SOURCES

Mineral	Functions in the Human Body	Sources
Major minerals:		
Calcium	Helps build bones and teeth; helps blood clot; promotes muscle and nerve functions	Dairy products, canned salmon and sardines, broccoli, kale, tofu, turnips
Magnesium	Muscle entraction; assists energy metabolism; bone formation	Green leafy vegetables, whole grains, legumes, fish, shellfish, cocoa
Phosphorus	Helps build bones and teeth; assists energy metabolism; formation of DNA	All animal tissues, milk, legumes, nuts
Potassium	Maintains electrolyte and fluid balance; promotes normal body functions; assists protein metabolism	Meats, poultry, fish, fruits (especially bananas, oranges, and cantaloupes), legumes, vegetables
Sodium	Maintains normal fluid balance; necessary for nerve impulse transmission	Salt, soy sauce, processed foods, MSG
Chloride	With sodium, involved in fluid balance; component of stomach acid	Salt, soy sauce, meats, milk, processed foods
Sulfur	A component of some proteins, insulin, and the vitamins biotin and thiamin	All protein-containing foods
Trace minerals:		
Iron	Part of hemoglobin (the red substance in blood that carries oxygen); prevents anemia	Liver, meats, shellfish, enriched breads and cereals, legumes
Zinc	A component of insulin; enhances healing; a component of many enzymes; involved in taste perception; bone formation	Protein foods, whole-grain breads and cereals, fish, shellfish, poultry, vegetables
Selenium	Antioxidant	Fish, shellfish, meats, eggs, grains (depends on soil conditions)
Iodine	Component of thyroid hormone	Iodized salt, fish, shellfish, bread, plants grown in iodide-rich soil
Copper	Facilitates iron absorption; part of enzymes	Meats, fish, shellfish, nuts, seeds
Fluoride	Necessary for bone and teeth formation; helps teeth resist tooth decay	Fluoridated drinking water, fish, shellfish
Chromium	Insulin cofactor	Liver, whole grains, brewer's yeast, nuts, oils
Molybdenum	Cofactor in metabolism	Legumes, cereals
Manganese	Cofactor in metabolism	Whole grains, nuts, organ meats
Cobalt	Component of vitamin B_{12} (cobalamin)	

The American Cancer Society. Both stress the importance of controlling the amount of fat in the diet and consuming in greater quantities plant foods such as vegetables, fruits and whole grains.

Another useful planning tool is *The Dietary Guidelines for Americans,* published by the federal government. The seven guidelines recommend moderating the consumption of fat, cholesterol, sugar, salt and alcohol while increasing the consumption of grains, fruits and vegetables. Moderation and variety are the guidelines' key concepts. The guidelines suggests that you should:

1. Eat a variety of foods.
2. Balance the food you eat with physical activity to maintain or improve your weight.
3. Choose a diet with plenty of grain products, vegetables and fruits.
4. Choose a diet low in fat, saturated fat and cholesterol.
5. Choose a diet moderate in sugars.
6. Choose a diet moderate in salt and sodium.
7. If you drink alcoholic beverages, do so in moderation.

The Recommended Dietary Allowance

Recommended Dietary Allowances (RDAs) were first established during World War II to provide a guideline for assessing the enlisted men's diets and planning the military's meals. The RDAs have been updated periodically since then. These updates are based on carefully scrutinized research and data from both human and animal studies. The RDAs represent nutrient recommendations to prevent deficiency diseases and are considered generous allowances that provide a margin of safety.

The RDAs are used to evaluate the diets of Americans as a group, to establish guidelines for programs such as school breakfasts and lunches, for food labeling information and to develop government nutrition policies and educational programs.

The Food Guide Pyramid

The most useful diet planning tool available is the Food Guide Pyramid developed by the USDA. It prioritizes and proportions food according to groupings that provide similar nutrients. The size of each section of the pyramid visually represents the number of daily servings recommended.

The base or foundation of the pyramid conveys the idea that a healthy diet is based on the consumption of adequate whole grains and cereals. As you move up the pyramid, fruits and vegetables are next in amount. Meats, poultry, fish, beans, eggs and nuts, as well as milk, yogurt and cheese are allotted smaller sections above the fruits and vegetables. Although they provide essential nutrients such as protein, vitamins and minerals, these foods may be high in fat and calories, and their intake should be moderated. The small tip of the

Food Groupies

For many years, nutritionists and others have attempted to define a healthy, balanced diet. Most plans divide foods into general categories and recommend that a certain number of servings or calories be consumed from each category for a balanced diet.

Before 1956, the USDA recognized seven food groups: (1) meats, eggs, dried peas and beans, (2) milk, cheese and ice cream, (3) potatoes and other vegetables and fruits, (4) green leafy and yellow vegetables, (5) citrus fruits, tomatoes and raw cabbage, (6) breads and flours and (7) butter and fortified margarine.

In 1956, the USDA reduced the seven groups to four: (1) milk and cheese, (2) meats and fish, (3) fruits and vegetables and (4) grains. An optional fifth category was sweets and fats. From these Four Basic Food Groups, the USDA recommended the average adult eat a total of 12 servings daily. Two or more servings should come from each of the meat and milk groups, and four or more servings from each of the other two groups.

In 1992, the USDA replaced the Four Basic Food Groups with the Food Guide Pyramid. The Food Guide Pyramid prioritizes and proportions the food choices among the six food categories and gives a visual presentation of proper daily nutrition. The pyramid emphasizes flexibility and is designed to be used by people of all ages and backgrounds.

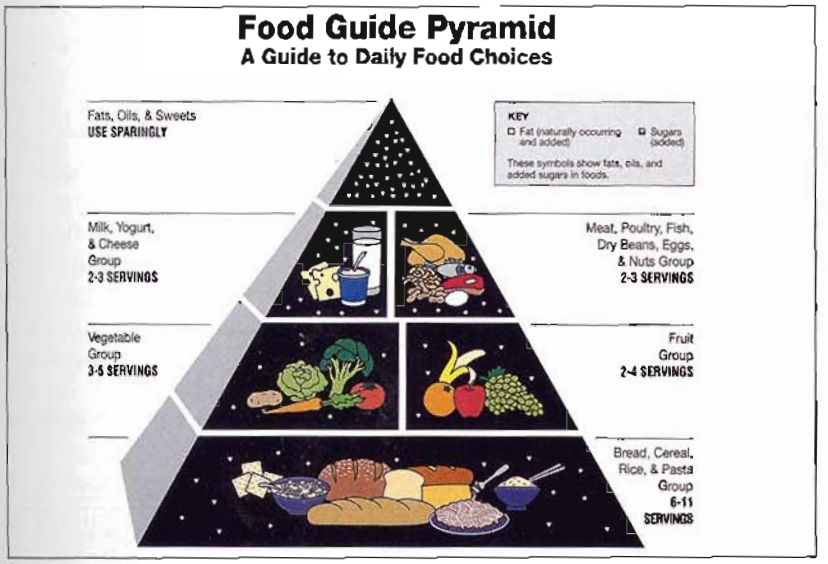


FIGURE 3.1 *The Food Guide Pyramid*

TABLE 3.5 SERVINGS AND SELECTIONS FROM THE FOOD GUIDE PYRAMID

Food Group and Serving Size	Nutrients Provided	Selection Tips
Bread, Cereal, Rice and Pasta Group (6–11 Servings)		
1/2 cup cooked cereal 1 ounce dry cereal 1 slice bread 2 cookies 1/2 medium doughnut	B vitamins, fiber, iron, magnesium, zinc	Choose whole-grain breads, cereals and grains like whole wheat or rye bread, oatmeal and brown rice. Moderate the intake of high-fat, high-sugar baked goods like cakes, cookies and pastries. Limit fats and sugars added as spreads, sauces or toppings.
Vegetable Group (3–5 Servings)		
1/2 cup cooked or raw chopped vegetables 1 cup raw leafy vegetables 3/4 cup vegetable juice 10 french fries	Vitamin A, vitamin C, folate, magnesium, iron, fiber	Eat a variety of vegetables, including dark green leafy vegetables (e.g., spinach and broccoli), deep-yellow vegetables (e.g., carrots and sweet potatoes), starchy vegetables (e.g., potatoes and corn), legumes (e.g., kidney beans) and other vegetables such as green beans and tomatoes. Cook vegetables by steaming or baking. Avoid frying and limit high-fat spreads or dressings.
Fruit Group (2–4 Servings)		
1 medium apple, banana or orange 1/2 cup chopped, cooked or canned fruit 3/4 cup fruit juice 1/4 cup dried fruit	Vitamin A, vitamin C, potassium, fiber	Choose fresh fruit, fruit frozen without sugar, dried fruit or fruit canned in water or juice. If canned in heavy syrup, rinse with water before eating. Eat whole fruits more often than juices since they are higher in fiber. Regularly eat citrus fruits, melons or berries rich in vitamin C. Only 100% fruit juice should be counted as a fruit.
Milk, Yogurt and Cheese Group (2–3 Servings)		
1 cup milk or yogurt 1 1/2 ounces natural cheese 2 ounces processed cheese 2 cups cottage cheese 1 1/2 cups ice cream 1 cup frozen yogurt	Protein, calcium, riboflavin	Use skim or lowfat milk for healthy people over two years of age. Choose lowfat and nonfat yogurt, "part skim" and lowfat cheeses and lower-fat frozen desserts like ice milk and frozen yogurt. Limit high-fat cheeses and ice cream.
Meat, Poultry, Fish, Dry Beans, Eggs and Nuts Group (2–3 Servings)		
2–3 ounces cooked lean meat, fish or poultry 2–3 eggs 4–6 tablespoons peanut butter 1 1/2 cups cooked dry beans 1 cup nuts	Protein, niacin, vitamin B_{12}, iron, zinc	Select lean meat, poultry without skin, fish and dry beans. Trim fat and cook by broiling, roasting, grilling or boiling rather than frying. Limit egg yolks, which are high in cholesterol, and nuts and seeds, which are high in fat. Be aware of serving size; 3 ounces of meat is the size of an average hamburger.
Fats, Oils and Sweets (use sparingly)		
Butter, mayonnaise, salad dressing, cream cheese, sour cream, jam, jelly		These are high in energy and low in micronutrients. Substitute lowfat dressings and spreads.

U.S. Department of Agriculture. *The Food Guide Pyramid. Home and Garden Bulletin No. 252.* Hyattsville, MD: Human Nutrition Information Service, 1992

The Federal Government Guards Our Larder

The federal government plays an important role in the way various foodstuffs are grown, raised, slaughtered, processed, marketed, stored and transported. The principal actors are the Food and Drug Administration of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (FDA) and the U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA).

The FDA's activities are directed toward protecting the nation's health against impure and unsafe foods, as well as drugs, cosmetics, medical devices and other things. It develops and administers programs addressing food safety. For example, the FDA must approve any new food additive before a manufacturer markets it to food producers and processors. To gain FDA approval, the manufacturer must prove to the FDA's satisfaction that the additive (1) is effective for the intended purpose, (2) can be detected and measured in the final product and (3) is safe. The FDA holds public hearings during which experts and consumers provide evidence and opinions before it decides to grant or deny approval. If it grants approval, the FDA issues regulations identifying the amount of the additive that can be used and the foods to which it can be added. The FDA also sets standards for labeling foods, including nutrition labels. Labeling regulations not only address the type of information that must be conveyed, but also the way it is presented.

The USDA's principal responsibility is to make sure that individual food items are safe, wholesome and accurately labeled. It attempts to meet these responsibilities through inspection and grading procedures. The USDA also provides consumer services. It conducts and publishes research on nutrition and assists those producing our food to do so efficiently and effectively.

Other federal agencies that have a role in the nation's health and food supply include the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), which track illnesses, including those caused by food-borne pathogens; the National Institutes of Health (NIH), which do basic biological and nutritional research; and the Department of the Interior, which sets environmental and land-use standards.

pyramid includes fats, oils and sweets. The size and placement of these indicate that they can be a part of a healthy diet if used sparingly.

Ingredient Substitutes and Alternatives

More and more people are becoming health conscious consumers. Many are trying to cut down on foods high in salt, fat, added sugar and cholesterol. To a degree, people can accomplish their goals—and chefs can assist them—by turning to ingredient substitutes and alternatives where possible.

Here we use the term **ingredient substitute** to mean the replacement of one ingredient with another of presumably similar—although not necessarily identical—flavor, texture, appearance and other characteristics. The substitute may be more nutritious, however. So, if someone is avoiding fats, he or she can use reduced fat or nonfat sour cream in place of regular sour cream when baking quick breads. The differences in flavor, texture, appearance and baking quality should be minimal.

We use the term **ingredient alternative** to mean the replacement of one ingredient with another of different flavor, texture, appearance or other characteristic, but one that will not compromise—although it may change—the flavor of the dish. As with the ingredient substitute, the ingredient alternative may be more nutritious. Lemon juice and herbs, for instance, can be used as flavoring alternatives to salt; a salsa of fresh vegetables can replace a cream-based sauce. The dishes will not taste the same, but they will still taste good.

In attempting to modify a recipe, the chef should first identify the ingredient(s) or cooking method(s) that may need to be changed. He or she can then use the following principles—reduce, replace or eliminate—to make a dish healthier:

1. Reduce the amounts of the ingredient(s).
2. Replace the ingredient(s) with a substitute that will do the least to change the flavor and appearance of the dish.
3. Eliminate the ingredient(s).

Salt Substitutes and Alternatives

A concern in the American diet is excessive sodium (salt). The average American consumes 3000 to 7000 mg of sodium per day, well in excess of daily needs. Research has linked excessive amounts of sodium to hypertension (high blood pressure), heart and kidney diseases and strokes.

Chefs can contribute to a more healthful diet by decreasing the amount of salt and other high-sodium products like soy sauce. Salt substitutes, which contain potassium chloride instead of sodium chloride, are available. "Lite" salt has a portion of the sodium content replaced by potassium but still contains some real salt for a truer flavor.

In addition, pepper, lemon, herbs, spices, fruits and flavored vinegars can be used as salt alternatives to heighten flavor.

Artificial Sweeteners

Saccharin, the oldest artificial sugar substitute, has been used for nearly a century. A petroleum derivative, it has no calories and tastes 300 times sweeter than table sugar. Saccharin has a bitter aftertaste, however, and many people find it unpalatable. Along with its sweetness, come health concerns. Some studies have linked saccharin with tumors in rats.

Aspartame (also known as Nutrasweet®), approved by the FDA in 1981, comprises the amino acids aspartic acid and phenylalanine. Unlike saccharin, aspartame does not have an aftertaste. It is 180 times sweeter than table sugar. It is now widely used in soft drinks, frozen yogurts, fruit spreads, candies and similar products. Aspartame breaks down when heated, so it cannot be used in cooked foods. According to the FDA, aspartame is a safe substitute for sugar, although it is a risk for those people with the rare disorder phenylketonuria (PKU), who cannot metabolize the phenylalanine in aspartame. Appropriate warnings are printed on all aspartame-sweetened foods.

Another sugar substitute is Acesulfame K (also known as Sunnette®), which the FDA approved in 1988. The body cannot metabolize Acesulfame K, so it passes through the digestive system unchanged. Like aspartame, it has no aftertaste. Acesulfame K is used in chewing gum, dry beverage mixes, instant coffees and teas, gelatins and nondairy creamers. It is more stable than aspartame, so it can be used in baking.

Fat Substitutes and Alternatives

Several types of fat substitutes are available; they are either synthetic or derived from naturally occurring food substances. Two of the more recent products are Olestra® and Simplesse®.

Olestra® is made of sucrose and vegetable oil. The two are bonded together, and the final product consists of molecules too large to be digested. Because it cannot be digested, Olestra® does not add any calories. Currently, Olestra® is used in snack foods such as potato chips. It may become a useful substitute for fats in baking or cooking, but health concerns have kept it from being widely available.

Simplesse® is a fat substitute used in frozen desserts such as ice creams and yogurt. Simplesse®, made from egg whites or milk proteins, has a rich, creamy texture similar to fat but is fat free. Products made with Simplesse® are not usually fat free because other fat-containing ingredients are added.

Caprenin and salarim are fat substitutes used in the candy industry and not available for home or restaurant use.

Other Ingredient Substitutes and Alternatives

There are many other ingredient substitutes, some of which are identified in Table 3.6. Often ingredient substitutes and alternatives will have a dramatic impact on the nutritional values of a completed dish. For example, in Figures 3.2a and 3.2b we list the ingredients for a sheet pan of traditional fudge brownies and one made with ingredient substitutes. Note the differences, especially in the values for fat and cholesterol.

Ingredient substitutes and, especially, ingredient alternatives will change the nutritional values of a dish; they may also change its flavor, texture or appearance. Sometimes these changes will be acceptable; sometimes they will not. Because some ingredient substitutes and alternatives result in unsatisfactory flavors, textures or appearance, many recipes may not be suitable for substitution or alteration. Use your judgment.

Additives—*substances added to many foods to prevent spoilage or improve appearance, texture, flavor or nutritional value; they may be synthetic materials copied from nature (for example, sugar substitutes) or naturally occurring substances (for example, lecithin).*

Incidental food additives—*those inadvertently or unintentionally added to foods during processing, such as pesticide residues on fruits.*

Intentional food additives—*those added to foods on purpose, such as the chemicals used to ensure longer shelf life or food colorings.*

PACKAGE LABELING

In an effort to provide chefs and consumers with greater information about the nutritional values of foods they purchase, the FDA requires that most food products be clearly labeled. The FDA also closely regulates the language used on these labels. The FDA labeling requirements address (1) product identification, (2) product claims and (3) nutritional information.

Product Identification

The FDA requires that products be clearly labeled with (1) the common name of the product, (2) the name and address of the manufacturer, packer or dis-

TABLE 3.6 INGREDIENT SUBSTITUTES

Instead of	Use
Bacon	Canadian bacon or well-cooked, drained bacon
Butter	Powdered butter granules plus liquid (either skim milk or water) or butter-flavored oil sprays
Chocolate	Cocoa (vegetable oil may be added as needed)
Cream cheese	Reduced-fat cream cheese or fat-free cream cheese
Emulsified salad dressing	Start with a base of reduced-fat or nonfat yogurt, sour cream or mayonnaise, then thin with skim milk. Or use a slurry-thickened broth or juice as the oil and add vinegar and other seasonings. Or blend silken tofu with other ingredients for a creamy dressing
Light cream	Equal portions of 1% milk and skim evaporated milk
Mayonnaise	Reduced-fat mayonnaise (it can be mixed with reduced-fat or nonfat sour cream)
Sour cream	Reduced-fat or nonfat sour cream; drained reduced-fat or nonfat plain yogurt without gelatin
Whipped cream	Whipped chilled evaporated skim milk; the milk and beaters need to be very cold (needs to be stabilized)

BACK TO BASICS

Great strides in agriculture have been made during the past two centuries. Pesticides, fungicides and herbicides now eliminate or control pests that once would have devoured, ruined or choked crops. Chemical fertilizers increase yields of many of the world's staples. But not everyone has greeted these developments with open arms.

During the past few decades, scientific and medical investigators have documented, or at least suggested, health risks associated with certain synthetic pesticides, fertilizers and other products. These findings have led to a renewed interest in a now multi-billion dollar a year back-to-the-basics approach to farming: organic farming. Specialty farms, orchards and even wineries now offer organically grown products (or, in the case of wineries, wines made from organically grown grapes). These products come with few, if any, intentional additives and should be free of any incidental additives. Proponents argue that these products are better for you and better for the health of the farm workers.

The U.S. Department of Agriculture regulates the production and labeling of organically grown foods. It requires that any natural food labeled "organic" or carrying the organic seal must be 100% organic—that is, grown and manufactured without the use of added hormones, pesticides, synthetic fertilizers, and so on; soil cannot have been treated with unapproved synthetics for three years for a crop to be called organic. To be labeled organic, processed foods must contain at least 95% organic ingredients. Processed foods with 50–95% organic ingredients may be labeled "made with certain organic ingredients" and processed foods with less than 50% organic ingredients may use the word organic only in the list of ingredients.

TRADITIONAL FUDGE BROWNIES

Yield: 88 2-inch squares

Unsweetened chocolate	2 lb.	1 kg
Butter	2 lb.	1 kg
Eggs	20	20
Sugar	5 lb. 12 oz.	2.9 kg
Vanilla extract	2 oz.	60 ml
All-purpose flour	1 lb. 10 oz.	750 g
Pecan pieces	1 lb.	500 g

Nutritional values per two-inch square:

Calories	343	Total carbohydrate	41 g
Total fat	17 g	Protein	4 g
Saturated fat	9 g	Sodium	16 mg
Cholesterol	70 mg	Vitamin C	0

The complete recipe is produced as Recipe 33.26.

FIGURE 3.2a

BROWNIES MADE WITH INGREDIENT SUBSTITUTES

Yield: 88 2-inch squares

Unsweetened chocolate	4 oz.	120 g
Cake flour	1 lb.	450 g
Cocoa powder	9 oz.	270 g
Salt substitute	2 tsp.	10 ml
Egg whites	12	12
Whole eggs	8	8
Granulated sugar	2 lb. 2 oz.	1 kg
Corn syrup	2 lb.	900 g
Unsweetened applesauce	1 1/2 pt.	670 ml
Canola oil	7 oz.	210 g
Vanilla extract	2 Tbsp.	30 ml

Nutritional values per two-inch square:

Calories	150	Total carbohydrate	26 g
Total fat	5 g	Protein	2 g
Saturated fat	.8 g	Sodium	82 mg
Cholesterol	19 mg	Vitamin C	4 mg

The complete recipe is produced as Recipe 33.27.

FIGURE 3.2b

tributor, (3) the ingredients in descending order of predominance by weight and (4) the net contents by weight, measure or count. See Figure 3.3.

Product Claims

The FDA requires that words such as "low fat" and "fat free" be used according to specific standards. The FDA has approved the following uses:

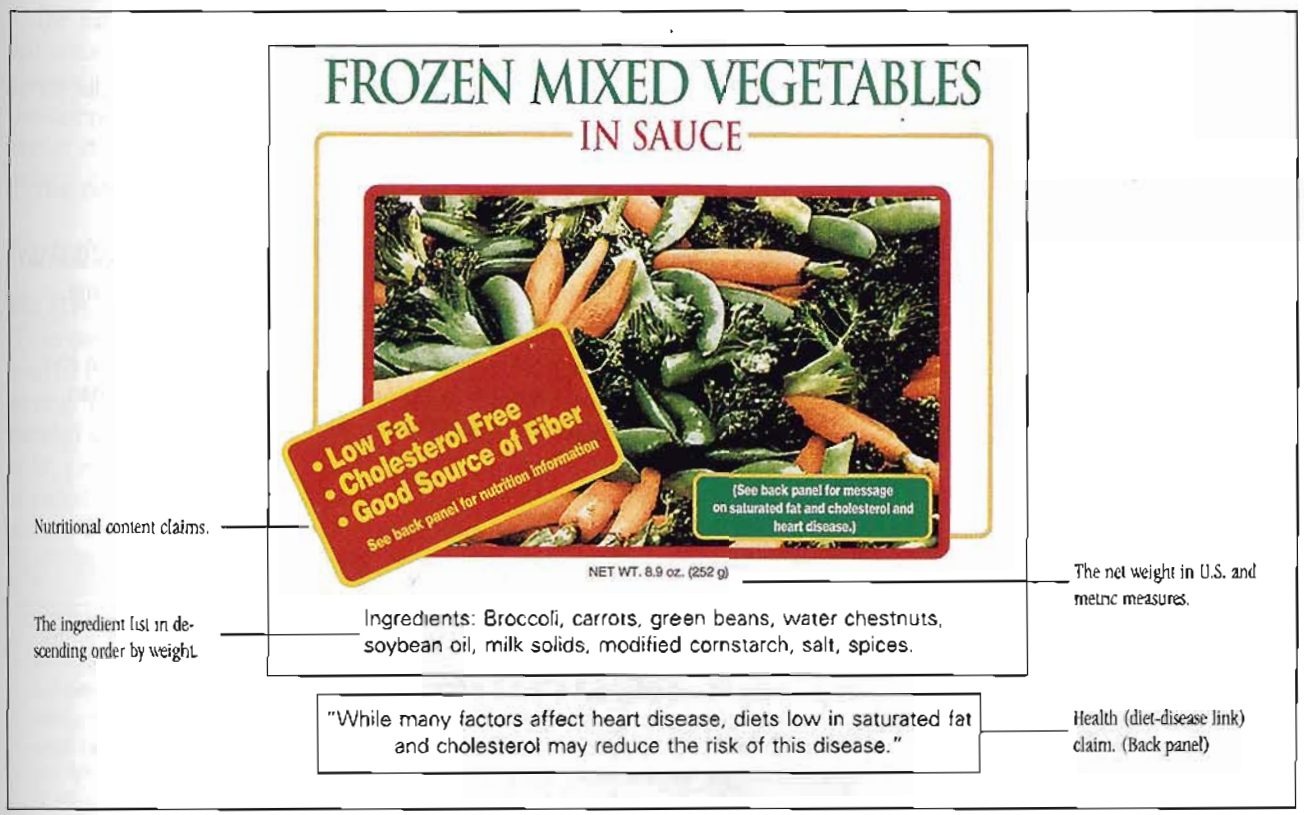


FIGURE 3.3 *Label Illustrating Product Identification and Product Claim Requirements*
Illustration Source: Food and Drug Administration 1993

- *Free*—The food must contain no or only "physiologically inconsequential" amounts of fat, saturated fat, cholesterol, sodium, sugars or calories.
- *Low, Little, Few and Low Source of*—The food can be eaten frequently without exceeding dietary guidelines for fat, saturated fat, cholesterol, sodium or calories.

Specific uses include:

Low fat—The food has 3 grams or less of fat per serving.

Low saturated fat—The food has 1 gram or less of saturated fat per serving; not more than 15% of serving's calories are from saturated fat.

Low sodium—The food has 140 mg or less of salt per serving.

Very low sodium—The food has 35 mg or less of salt per serving.

Low cholesterol—The food has 20 mg or less of cholesterol per serving.

Low calorie—The food has 40 calories or fewer per serving.

Reduced, less and fewer—The nutritionally altered product must contain at least 25% fewer calories than the regular or reference (that is, FDA standard) food product.

Light or Lite—The nutritionally altered product must contain at least one third or 50% less fat than the reference product. Light in sodium means that the nutritionally altered product contains 50% or less sodium than the regular or reference product. Light may still be used to describe color, as in "light brown sugar."

High—The food must contain 20% or more of the daily value for a desirable nutrient per serving.

More—The food must contain at least 10% or more of the daily value for protein, vitamins, minerals, dietary fiber or potassium than the reference product.

Good source—The food contains 10% to 19% of the daily value per serving for the specific nutrient such as calcium or dietary fiber.

Lean—The meat, poultry, game, fish or shellfish item contains less than 10 grams of fat, less than 4 grams of saturated fat and less than 95 mg cholesterol per serving and per 100 grams.

Extra lean—The meat, poultry, game, fish or shellfish item contains less than 5 grams of fat, less than 2 grams of saturated fat and less than 95 mg cholesterol per serving and per 100 grams.

TABLE 3.7 DIET–DISEASE LINKS AND APPROVED HEALTH CLAIMS

Food or Nutrient	Disease	Typical Foods	FDA-Approved Claim
Calcium	Osteoporosis	Lowfat and skim milks, yogurt, tofu, calcium-fortified citrus drinks, some calcium supplements	"Regular exercise and a healthy diet with enough calcium helps teen and young adult white and Asian women maintain good bone health and may reduce their high risk of osteoporosis later in life."
Sodium	Hypertension	Unsalted tuna, salmon, fruits and vegetables, lowfat milk and yogurt, cottage cheese, sherbet, cereal, flour and pasta (not egg pasta)	"Diets low in sodium may reduce the risk of high blood pressure, a disease associated with many factors."
Dietary fiber	Cancer	Fruits, vegetables, reduced-fat milk products, cereals, flours, sherbet	"Development of cancer depends on many factors. A diet low in total fat may reduce the risk of some cancers."
Dietary saturated fat and cholesterol	Coronary heart disease	Fruits, vegetables, skim and lowfat milks, cereals, whole-grain products, pasta (not egg pasta)	"While many factors affect heart disease, diets low in saturated fat and cholesterol may reduce the risk of this disease."
Fruits, vegetables and grain products that contain fiber	Cancer	Fruits and vegetables, and whole-grain breads and cereals	"Low-fat diets rich in fiber-containing grain products, fruits, and vegetables may reduce the risk of some types of cancer, a disease associated with many factors."
Fruits, vegetables and grain products that contain fiber	Coronary heart disease	Fruits, vegetables and whole-grain breads and cereals	"Diets low in saturated fat and cholesterol and rich in fruits, vegetables, and grain products that contain some types of dietary fiber, particularly soluble fiber, may reduce the risk of heart disease, a disease associated with many factors."
Fruits and vegetables	Cancer	Fruits and vegetables	"Low-fat diets rich in fruits and vegetables (foods that are low in fat and may contain dietary fiber, vitamin A, or vitamin C) may reduce the risk of some types of cancer, a disease associated with many factors. Broccoli is high in vitamins A and C, and it is a good source of dietary fiber."

The FDA recognizes that there is a link between some foods or nutrients and certain diseases. It allows manufacturers and retailers (or their advertising agencies) to make certain specific claims regarding their products and these diet-disease links. See Table 3.7. For example, because the frozen mixed vegetables in Figure 3.3 are "low fat" and "cholesterol free," the manufacturer can make a specific claim about its product and the risk of heart disease.

Nutritional Information

The FDA requires that labels identify specific nutritional information including (1) serving size, (2) total number of calories per serving, (3) number of calories from fat per serving, and (4) the percent of daily values for certain nutrients per serving. The labels must also include reference information such as the recommended daily values for certain nutrients and the number of calories per gram of fat, protein and carbohydrate. Products with limited label space do not have to include the reference information. Figure 3.4 reproduces a sample FDA nutritional label for the frozen mixed vegetables package illustrated in Figure 3.3.

Serving Size: The FDA has defined standard serving sizes for approximately 150 food categories, making it easier for consumers to compare different brands. The serving sizes reflect the amounts people actually eat.

Percent Daily Value: This section shows how the food fits into the daily diet. Most people are concerned about getting too much fat, saturated fat, cholesterol and sodium in their daily diet. This section identifies the grams per serving for each of these nutrients and the percent of the daily recommended amount of that nutrient each serving provides. The percentage is based on a 2000-calorie daily diet. For example, a person on a 2000-calorie daily diet (the FDA standard) should consume no more than 65 grams of fat. The 3 grams of total fat per serving of this frozen-mixed-vegetables product is 5% of the person's recommended daily intake of fat.

Calories per Gram: This is placed on all labels to remind consumers that carbohydrates and protein have 4 calories per gram and fat has 9 calories per gram.

Nutrition Facts

Serving Size ½ cup (114g)
Servings Per Container 4

Amount Per Serving

Calories 90	Calories from Fat 30
	% Daily Value*
Total Fat 3g	**5%**
Saturated Fat 0g	**0%**
Cholesterol 0mg	**0%**
Sodium 300mg	**13%**
Total Carbohydrate 13g	**4%**
Dietary Fiber 3g	**12%**
Sugars 3g	
Protein 3g	

Vitamin A	80%	• Vitamin C	60%
Calcium	4%	• Iron	4%

* Percent Daily Values are based on a 2,000 calorie diet. Your daily values may be higher or lower depending on your calorie needs:

	Calories	2,000	2,500
Total Fat	Less than	65g	80g
Sat Fat	Less than	20g	25g
Cholesterol	Less than	300mg	300mg
Sodium	Less than	2,400mg	2,400mg
Total Carbohydrate		300g	375g
Fiber		25g	30g

Calories per gram:
Fat 9 • Carbohydrate 4 • Protein 4

Calories from Fat: Current dietary recommendations provide that no more than 30% of a person's daily caloric intake come from fat. To help consumers meet these dietary guidelines, the number of calories per serving from fat is identified.

The Recommended Daily Intake or RDI: These values represent the percentage of the daily recommended intake of important vitamins and minerals per serving. They were selected from the Recommended Dietary Allowances (RDA), which is discussed below. But unlike the RDA, the RDI sets the recommended amount of each vitamin and mineral for a so-called standard adult; it does not account for sex, age, health or other attributes. The RDI was formerly known as the U.S. RDA but was changed because of confusion with the RDA.

Daily Values: This outlines the basics of a good diet and is used to show how the food fits into such a daily diet. Some of the recommended intakes are maximums. For example, someone on a 2000-calorie-per-day diet should consume 65 grams or less of fat; someone on a 2500-calorie-per-day diet should consume 80 grams or less of fat. Other intakes are minimums; for example, 300 grams or more of carbohydrates for someone on a 2000-calorie daily diet. This section remains the same on all labels and is intended as a guide for the consumer when reading the Percent Daily Value information.

FIGURE 3.4 *Label Illustrating Nutritional Information Requirements*
Illustration Source: Food and Drug Administration 1993

Nutrition Labeling for Restaurant Menus

The FDA also sets standards for the nutrition claims that can be made on restaurant menus. The language for menus is the same as that for product labels. Restaurateurs, however, are required to supply nutrition information only if they make a claim about a specific dish. For example, if a menu selection is described as "low fat," the dish must have 3 grams or less of fat per serving and the nutrition information (nutrient analysis) should be available to anyone who requests it. Restaurateurs and chefs should consult the FDA and the National Restaurant Association for guidance in complying with these labeling regulations.

Consumer Concerns About Food and Nutrition

Many food ingredients have been linked to medical conditions. Some of the links are tenuous at best; others may be well supported by research. Nutrition is a science, and new information about the relationship of food to health and disease is always changing.

Americans have voiced concerns about the possible links of certain fats and dietary cholesterol to heart disease; they want to know if sugar intake is related to obesity, diabetes and heart disease. Some people are concerned that pesticide residues in produce may be dangerous and they will seek out restaurants that serve organically grown produce. Some people are curious about the alleged medicinal or health benefits of foods. Others have metabolic or digestive conditions that make it difficult or even dangerous for them to eat specific ingredients. Because of these concerns, patrons may request that their meals be prepared in special ways or that ingredients be deleted from or added to a dish.

The tremendous public interest in nutrition presents a special challenge to chefs. They should be able to prepare and serve food that meets the high standards for health demanded by some patrons, while maintaining the flavor and appearance important to everyone.

Nutrition and the Chef

The Food Guide Pyramid was designed to guide food consumption for a more healthful life. It presents a plan for a balanced diet. Chefs can use it to plan balanced menus as well. As the Food Guide Pyramid suggests, chefs do not need to use only meat as the center of the plate presentation. It demands that a variety of breads, pasta and grains be included on the menu along with an interesting selection of vegetable dishes. And it cautions against the use of too much fat and sugar.

Although not every food service operation can (or should) be devoted to "health food," to the extent appropriate you should offer healthful dining alternatives. Your ability to do so depends, of course, upon your facility. Chefs at hospitals, prisons and schools have much greater control over the foods their guests consume. Therefore, they have a far greater opportunity and responsibility to provide selections for a well-balanced diet. Chefs at most restaurants, however, do not have such captive audiences. But that does not mean that you can shirk your responsibilities.

The Customers Who Count

I have spent 19 years of my professional life in the "fine dining" or "gourmet" field. As of the date of this publication, I will have completed more than 20 years in transition to what I now call a "Minimax" lifestyle.

Minimax is not the opposite of fine "gourmet dining." As a culinary philosophy it has its place about midway. *Minimax* is a constructed word that can be understood internationally. *Mini* refers to *minimum*, in this case to risks encountered by unwise or excessive consumption of food. *Max*, on the other hand, refers to *maximum* possible enhancement of food, using natural aromas, colors and textures rather than the classic western dependence on salts, fats and sugars.

Your future customers will be involved in a struggle when they read your menu. With their subjective right brains, they will be remembering former meals with enormous relish. With their objective left brains, they will apply what they know about fat, calories and sodium. Without some help they will either be confused, perplexed, rebellious or guilty.

Somehow then, you, who will make up the educated center of the restaurant business of the future, will have to address the needs of those who want to make changes and still celebrate a night out at a comforting restaurant.

My suggestion is that you devise recipes that avoid fat as a primary source of calories for *at least* two appetizers, two entrees and one dessert. I would simply describe these on the menu for what they contain and not call them "lowfat" or "diet" or, for that matter, by any special name (even Minimax!). I would then present a small, very attractive, folded menu card with a phrase such as "For Our Customers Who Count" on the outside, and then simply list the nutritional benefits from the lowfat specials in an attractive, easy-to-read manner.

If your management chooses to establish such a menu, it will be extremely important that you weigh each dish correctly and have it analyzed by an approved nutrition system.

The reason for accuracy is that some, if not most, of the "customers who count" do so for very critical reasons. To give someone an oversized portion of meat with a great sauce that far exceeds, say, 30% calories from fat is actually highly irresponsible and may even attract possible litigation in the future.

When you reduce fat in a classical dish, there will be a reduction in flavor, since "fat carries flavor." By drawing attention away from the taste change and enhancing the sense of smell (aroma), sight (color and presentation) and touch (texture), you can actually improve the finished dish.

I have found that the fusion idea has helped make this a reality. Fusion is simply merging seasonings from one culture with those from another. In this way it helps to see Northern European specialties that use abundant dairy products as "velvet memories," and North African and Asian seasonings as "future bright notes."

It is then possible to consider a modification to, say, sauce hollandaise by lowering the fat and adding a good Asian fish sauce to which shreds of mint and flecks of red pepper are added to spike interest with aroma, color and texture.

Whatever you choose to do, let me give you this last word of encouragement. Study hard, read the classics and see the future through them. If you've ever skipped smooth stones on flat water you'll know that the first bounce really matters. If your attitude to very rich classics is negative and condemning, then what you try to achieve will certainly fail to go the distance.

Therefore, don't condemn anyone's work. Aim to please today's customer with all the skills that our exciting profession has developed for thousands of years.

You have my very best wishes for a most successful career. Now go skip your stone . . . for your customers' sakes!

GRAHAM KERR, *author, chef and host of "THE GALLOPING GOURMET" and GRAHAM KERR'S "KITCHEN," seen on PBS-TV and The Discovery Channel*

You assist customers when you:

1. Use proper purchasing and storage techniques in order to preserve nutrients.
2. Offer a variety of foods from each tier of the Food Guide Pyramid so that customers have a choice.
3. Offer entrees that emphasize plant instead of animal foods.
4. Offer dishes that are considerate of special dietary needs such as low fat or low salt.
5. Use cooking procedures that preserve rather than destroy nutrients.
6. Use cooking procedures that minimize the use of added fat (for example, stocks, sauces and soups can be cooled and the congealed fats removed; foods can be browned in the oven instead of being sautéed in hot fat).

7. Use equipment that minimizes the use of added fat (for example, nonstick pans).
8. Train the wait staff to respond properly to nutritional questions diners may have about menu items.
9. Use ingredient alternatives or substitutes where appropriate. If a dish does not lend itself to ingredient alternatives or substitutes, consider creating a new dish that replaces less nutritious traditional foods or preparations with more nutritious ones. For example, instead of serving a sauce made with butter, flour and cream, you can reduce an appropriately seasoned wine, stock or juice and then thicken it with fruit or vegetable purées or cornstarch.

All of the recipes in this book were analyzed using highly respected nutritional analysis software. Information used for the analysis came from the USDA nutrient database, private companies and independent studies. The nutrient information provided here is only as a reference. There is a 20% margin of error, due primarily to choices for specific ingredients and variations in the size of fruits and vegetables. Preparation techniques and serving sizes may also significantly alter the values of many nutrients. When a recipe offers a choice of ingredients, the first-mentioned ingredient was the one used in the calculations. Ingredients listed as "to taste" (TT) and "as needed" were omitted from the analysis. In addition, olive oil and 3% whole milk were used throughout for "vegetable oil" and "milk," respectively. When given a choice of serving size or weight, the first mentioned was used.

Throughout this book are recipes marked with the pyramid symbol illustrated in Figure 3.5. This symbol identifies dishes that are particularly low in calories, fat, saturated fat or sodium; if appropriate, they may also be a good source of vitamins, protein, fiber or calcium. These dishes are not necessarily dietetic, however. Rather, they should be consumed as part of a well-balanced diet.

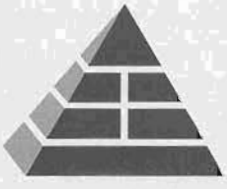


FIGURE 3.5 *The Symbol for a Healthful Recipe*

CONCLUSION

A basic understanding and appreciation of nutrition are important for both the consumer and those who prepare the foods consumed.

What you serve is important. Carbohydrates, proteins, fats, water, vitamins and minerals, in varying amounts, are all necessary for good health. The Food Guide Pyramid can guide selections to create and maintain a healthful diet.

How foods are prepared is also important. Remember that some cooking and storage techniques preserve nutrients; others do not. In addition, by substituting or modifying ingredients and preparation methods, many dishes can be made more nutritious.

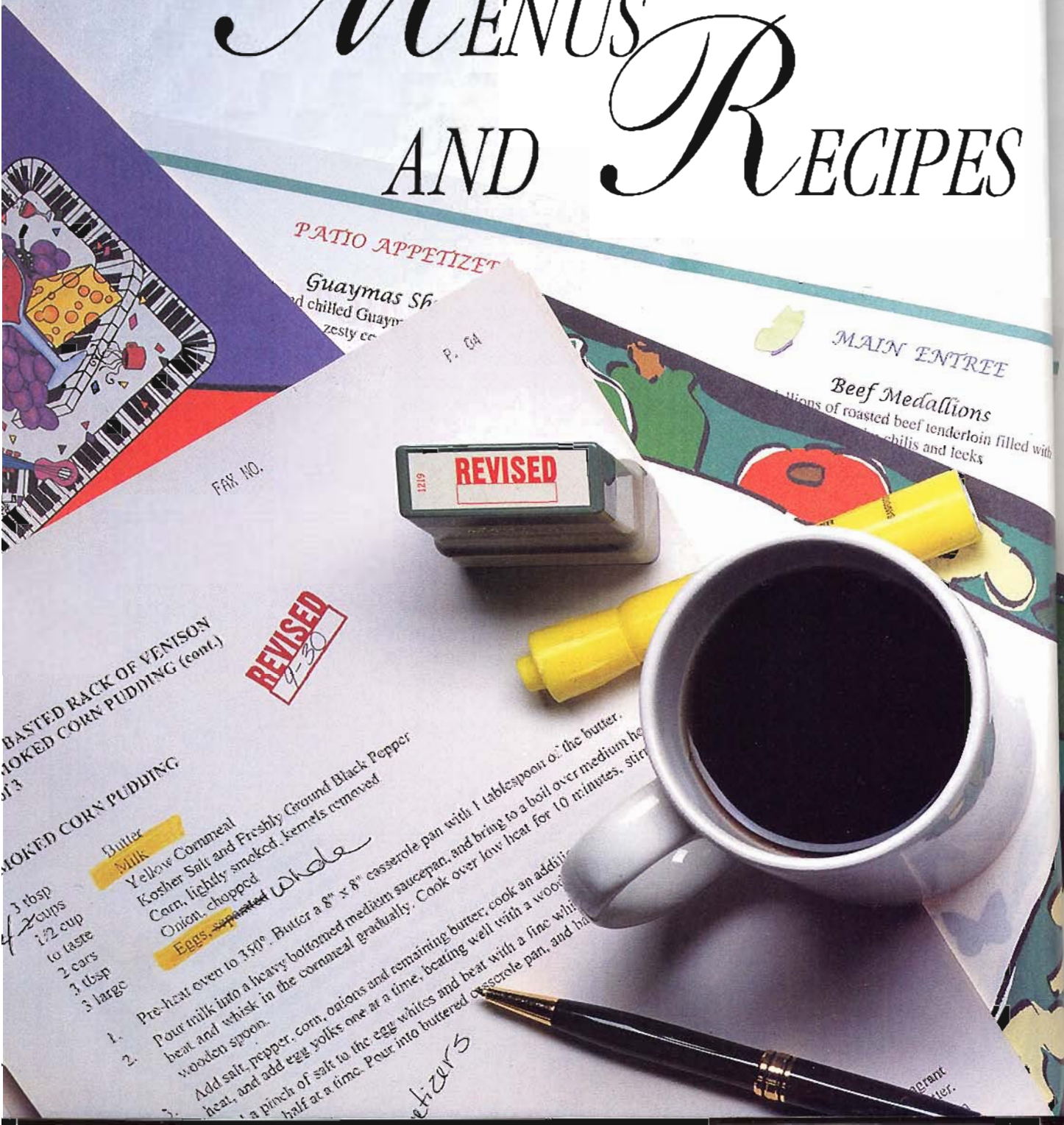
QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

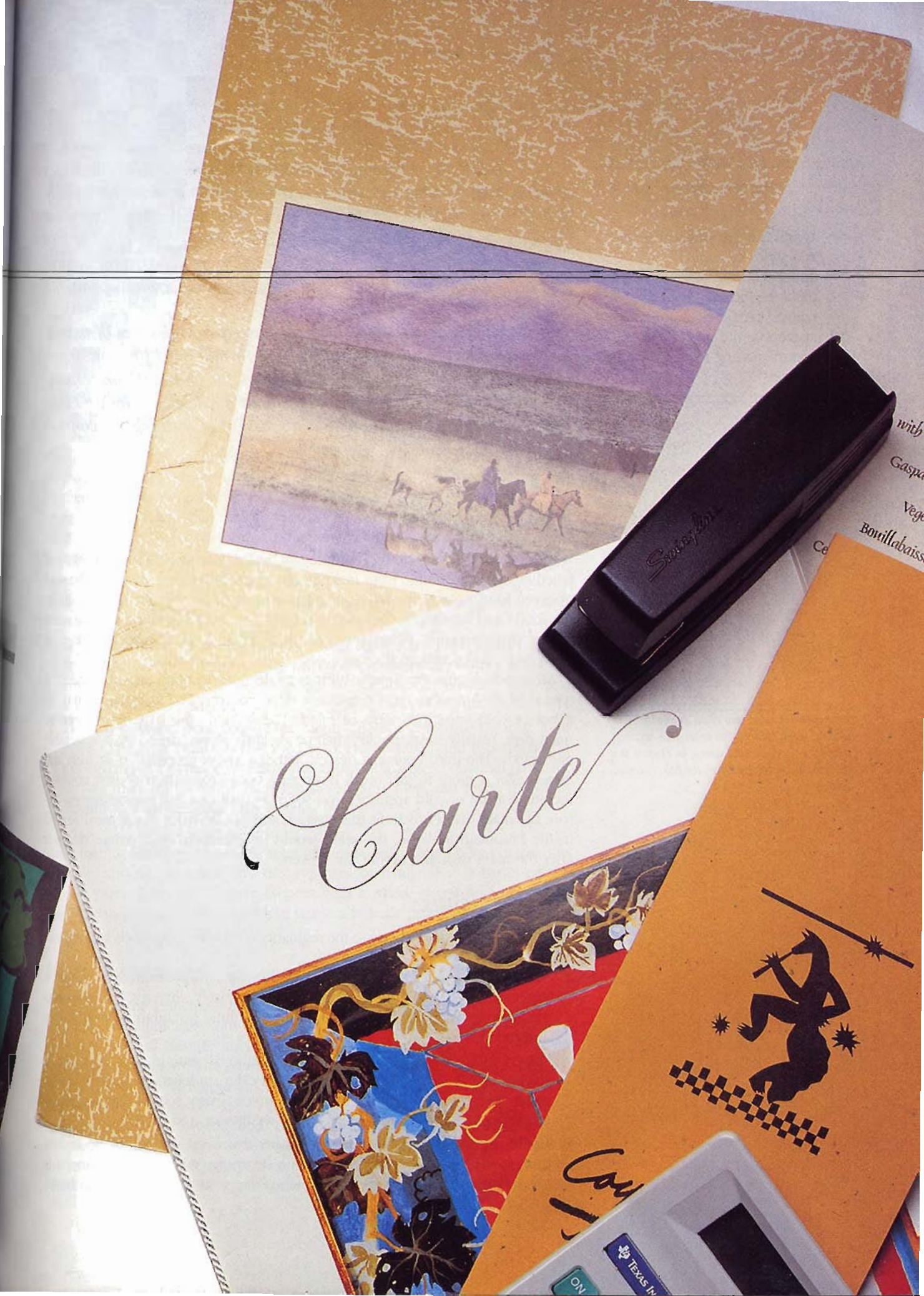
1. Identify the six categories of nutrients, and list two sources for each.
2. What are the differences between saturated fats and unsaturated fats? Identify two sources for each.
3. List four things you can do to reduce the loss of minerals and vitamins when storing or preparing foods.

4. Describe the Food Guide Pyramid. Explain how a chef can use it to plan well-balanced meals and how a consumer can use it to establish a healthful diet. What other diet planning tools can be used along with the pyramid?
5. Create two menus for a Thanksgiving dinner, both nutritionally balanced, but one high in calories, fat and so on, and one including the traditional foods but reduced in fat, calories, cholesterol and sodium.

CHAPTER 4

MENUS AND RECIPES




Carte

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- appreciate the different types and styles of menus
- understand the purpose of standardized recipes
- convert recipe yield amounts
- appreciate the need for cost controls in any food service operation

Today's professional chef must master more than the basics of béchamel, butchering and bread baking. You must be equally skilled in the business of food services. This means knowing what products cost and how to control and maintain food costs. It also means understanding how accurate measurements, portion control and proper food handling directly affect the food service operation's bottom line.

This chapter introduces you to various types and styles of menus. It then explains a standardized recipe format and presents information on measurements and techniques for changing or converting recipe yields. It then describes methods for determining unit and recipe costs and concludes with a discussion of methods for controlling food costs.

THE MENU

Whether it lists Afghan dishes, hamburgers, just desserts or classic cuisine, and whether the prices range from inexpensive to exorbitant, the menu is the soul of every food service operation. Its purposes are to identify for the consumer the foods and beverages the operation offers, to create consumer enthusiasm and to increase sales. When combined with good food and good service, a good menu helps ensure success.

Most menus offer consumers sufficient selections to build an entire meal. A typical North American meal consists of three courses. The first course may be a hot or cold appetizer, soup or salad. The second course is the **entrée** or main dish, usually meat, poultry, fish or shellfish accompanied by a vegetable and starch. The third course is dessert, either a sweet preparation or fruit and cheese. For a more formal meal, there may be a progression of first courses, including a hot or cold appetizer and soup, as well as a fish course served before the main dish (which, in this case, would not be fish). For a meal served in the European tradition, the salad would be presented as a palate cleanser after the main dish and before the dessert.

Entrée—*the main dish of an American meal, usually meat, poultry, fish or shellfish accompanied by a vegetable and starch; in France, it is the first course, served before the fish and meat courses.*

Types of Menus

Menus are classified according to the regularity with which the foods are offered:

1. **Static menu**—All patrons are offered the same foods every day. Once a static menu is developed and established, it rarely changes. Static menus are typically found in fast-food operations, ethnic restaurants, steakhouses and the like.

   Static menus can also be used in institutional settings. For example, a static menu at an elementary school could offer students, along with a vegetable and dessert, the same luncheon choices every school day: a cheeseburger, fish sticks, chicken tacos, pizza wedges or a sandwich.

2. **Cycle menu**—A cycle menu is developed for a set period; at the end of that period it repeats itself (that is, on a seven-day cycle, the same menu is used every Monday). Some cycle menus are written on a seasonal basis,

with a new menu for each season to take advantage of product availability. Cycle menus are used commonly in schools, hospitals and other institutions. Although cycle menus may be repetitious, the repetition is not necessarily noticeable to diners because of the length of the cycles.

3. **Market menu**—A market menu is based upon product availability during a specific period; it is written to use foods when they are in peak season or readily available. Market menus are becoming increasingly popular with chefs (and consumers) since they challenge the chef's ingenuity in using fresh, seasonal products. Market menus are short-lived, however, because of limited product availability and perishability. In fact, they often change daily.
4. **Hybrid menu**—A hybrid menu combines a static menu with a cycle menu or a market menu of specials.

Food service operations may have separate menus for breakfast, lunch or dinner. If all three meals are available all day and are listed on the same menu, the menu is often called a California menu; California menus are typically found in 24-hour restaurants. Depending on the food service operation's objectives, separate specialty menus for drinks, hors d'oeuvres, desserts, brunch or afternoon tea, for example, are used.

Regardless of whether the menu is static, cycle, market or hybrid, it can offer consumers the opportunity to purchase their selections à la carte, semi à la carte, table d'hôte or some combination of the three.

1. **À la carte**—Every food and beverage item is priced and ordered separately.
2. **Semi à la carte**—With this popular menu style, some food items (particularly appetizers and desserts) are priced and ordered separately, while the entrée is accompanied by and priced to include other items, such as a salad, starch or vegetable.
3. **Table d'hôte** or **prix fixe**—This menu offers a complete meal at a set price. (The term *table d'hôte* is French for "host's table" and is derived from the innkeeper's practice of seating all guests at a large communal table and serving them all the same meal.) A table d'hôte meal can range from very elegant to a diner's blue-plate special.

Many menus combine à la carte, semi à la carte and table d'hôte choices. For example, appetizers, salads and desserts may be available à la carte; entrées may be offered semi à la carte (served with a salad, starch and vegetable), while the daily special is a complete (table d'hôte or prix fixe) meal.

Menu Language

The menu is the principal way in which the food service operation, including the chef, communicates with the consumer. A well-designed menu often reflects the input of design, marketing, art and other consultants as well as the chef and management. The type of folds, cover, artwork, layout, typefaces, colors and paper are all important considerations. But the most important consideration is the language.

The menu should list the foods offered. It may include descriptions such as the preparation method, essential ingredients and service method as well as the quality, cut and quantity of product. For example, the menu can list "Porterhouse Steak" or "Mesquite Grilled 16-oz. Angus Beef Porterhouse Steak."

Truth in Advertising

Federal as well as some state and local laws require that certain menu language be accurate. Areas of particular concern include statements about quantity, quality, grade and freshness. Accurate references to an item's source are also important. If brand names are used, those brands must be served. If the restaurant claims to be serving "Fresh Dover Sole," it must be just that, not frozen sole from New England. (On the other hand, like French or Russian dressing, "English mint sauce" is a generic name for a style of food, so using that geographical adjective is appropriate even if the mint sauce is made in Arizona.) A reference to "our own fresh-baked" desserts means that the restaurant regularly bakes the desserts on premises, serves them soon after baking and does not substitute commercially prepared or frozen goods.

Nutritional Statements

As discussed in Chapter 3, Nutrition, the FDA carefully regulates the language used on packaged food labels. In 1997, the FDA extended its nutrition labeling regulations to restaurant menus. These regulations are intended to prevent restaurants from making misleading health or nutrition claims. For example, terms such as "Light," "Healthy" or "Heart Healthy" must be accurate and documented. The standards for calculating and presenting that information are far less stringent than the regulations for packaged foods, however. Restaurants may support their claims with data from any "reasonable" source, and may present that information in any format, including verbally. Nutritional data is not required for menu items that do not carry a nutritional content or health claim.

STANDARDIZED RECIPES

Recipe—*a set of written instructions for producing a specific food or beverage; also known as a formula.*

Standardized recipe—*a recipe producing a known quality and quantity of food for a specific operation.*

Menu writing and **recipe** development are mutually dependent activities. Once the menu is created, standardized recipes should be prepared for each item. A **standardized recipe** is one that will produce a known quality and quantity of food for a specific operation. It specifies (1) the type and amount of each ingredient, (2) the preparation and cooking procedures, and (3) the yield and portion size.

Standardized recipes are not found in books or provided by manufacturers; they are recipes customized to your operation—cooking time, temperature and utensils should be based on the equipment actually available. Yield should be adjusted to an amount appropriate for your operation. A recipe must be tested repeatedly and adjusted to fit your facility and your needs before it can be considered standardized.

Standardized recipes are a tool for the chef and management. The written forms assist with training cooks, educating service staff and controlling financial matters. They also help ensure that the customer will receive a consistent quality and quantity of product. Accurate recipe costing and menu pricing depends on having and using standardized recipes.

Although formats differ, a standardized recipe form such as that reproduced in Figure 4.1 will usually include:

- Name of product
- Yield
- Portion size
- Presentation and garnish

STANDARD RECIPE CARD FOR ITEM: _____ DATE REVISED _____

QUANTITY PRODUCED _____ RECIPE FILE NO. _____

PORTION SIZE _____ RESTAURANT _____

NO. OF PORTIONS PRODUCED _____ SALES PRICE _____

			DATE:		DATE:		DATE:		
INGREDIENTS	QTY/ WEIGHT	PURCH UNIT	UNIT COST	TOTAL	UNIT COST	TOTAL	UNIT COST	TOTAL	PREPARATION PROCEDURE
TOTAL COST									
COST PER PORTION									
COST % PER PORTION									

FIGURE 4.1 *Standardized Recipe Form*

- Ingredient quality and quantity
- Preparation procedures
- Cooking time and temperature
- Holding procedures

The form may also include information on costing and a photograph of the finished dish. Each form should be complete, consistent and simple to read and follow. The forms should be stored in a readily accessible place. Index cards, notebook binders or a computerized database may be used, depending on the size and complexity of the operation.

MEASUREMENTS AND CONVERSIONS

Measurement Formats

Accurate measurements are among the most important aspects of food production. Ingredients and portions must be measured correctly to ensure consistent product quality. In other words, the chef must be able to prepare a recipe the same way each time, and portion sizes must be the same from one order to the next.

TABLE 4.1
COMMON ABBREVIATIONS

teaspoon	=	tsp.
tablespoon	=	Tbsp.
cup	=	c.
pint	=	pt.
quart	=	qt.
gram	=	g
milliliter	=	ml
liter	=	lt
ounce	=	oz.
fluid ounce	=	fl. oz.
pound	=	lb.
kilogram	=	kg

In a kitchen, measurements may be made in three ways: weight, volume and count.

Weight refers to the mass or heaviness of a substance. It is expressed in terms such as grams, ounces, pounds and tons. Weight may be used to measure liquid or dry ingredients (for example, 2 pounds of eggs for a bread recipe) and portions (for example, 4 ounces of sliced turkey for a sandwich). Since weight is generally the most accurate form of measurement, portion scales or balance scales are commonly used in kitchens.

Volume refers to the space occupied by a substance. This is mathematically expressed as *height* × *width* × *length*. It is expressed in terms such as cups, quarts, gallons, teaspoons, fluid ounces, bushels and liters. Volume is most commonly used to measure liquids. It may also be used for dry ingredients when the amount is too small to be weighed accurately (for example, 1/4 teaspoon of salt). Although measuring by volume is somewhat less accurate than measuring by weight, volume measurements are generally quicker to do.

Frequently, mistakes are made in food preparation by chefs who assume wrongly that weight and volume are equal. Do not be fooled! One cup does not always equal 8 ounces. Although it is true that one standard cup contains 8 *fluid* ounces, it is not true that the contents of that standard cup will *weigh* 8 ounces. For example, the weight of 1 cup of diced apples will vary depending on the size of the apple pieces. Errors are commonly made in the bakeshop by cooks who assume that 8 ounces of flour is the same as one cup of flour. In fact, one cup of flour weighs only about 4-1/2 ounces.

It is not unusual to see both weight and volume measurements used in a single recipe. When a recipe ingredient is expressed in weight, weigh it. When it is expressed as a volume, measure it. Like most rules, however, this one has exceptions. The weight and volume of water, butter, eggs and milk are, in each case, the same. For these ingredients you may use whichever measurement is most convenient.

Count refers to the number of individual items. Count is used in recipes (for example, 4 eggs) and in portion control (for example, 2 fish fillets or 1 ear of corn). Count is also commonly used in purchasing to indicate the size of the individual items. For example, a "96 count" case of lemons means that a 40-pound case contains 96 individual lemons; a "115 count" case means that the same 40-pound case contains 115 individual lemons. So, each lemon in the 96-count case is larger than those in the 115-count case. Shrimp is another item commonly sold by count. One pound of shrimp may contain from eight to several hundred shrimp, depending on the size of the individual pieces. When placing an order, the chef must specify the desired count. For example, when ordering one pound of 21–25-count shrimp, the chef expects to receive not fewer than 21 nor more than 25 pieces.

Measurement Systems

The measurement formats of weight, volume and count are used in both the U.S. and metric measurement systems. Both of these systems are used in modern food service operations, so you should be able to prepare recipes written in either one.

The **U.S. system**, with which you are probably familiar, is actually the more difficult system to understand. It uses pounds for weight and cups for volume.

The **metric system** is the most commonly used system in the world. Developed in France during the late 18th century, it was intended to fill the need for a mathematically rational and uniform system of measurement. The metric system is a decimal system in which the gram, liter and meter are the basic units of weight, volume and length, respectively. Larger or smaller units of weight, volume and length are formed by adding a prefix to the words *gram,*

Fannie Merritt Farmer (1857–1915)

Fannie Farmer is more than the name on a cookbook. She was an early, vigorous and influential proponent of scientific cooking, nutrition and academic training for culinary professionals.

At the age of 30, Farmer enrolled in the Boston Cooking School. The school's curriculum was not designed to graduate chefs, but rather to produce cooking teachers. After graduating from the two-year course, Farmer stayed on, first as assistant principal and then as principal.

During her years there (and, indeed, for the rest of her career) she was obsessed with accurate measurements. She waged a campaign to eliminate measurements such as a "wine glass" of liquid, a "handful" of flour, a chunk of butter the "size of an egg" or a "heaping spoonful" of salt. For, as she once wrote, "correct measurements are absolutely necessary to insure the best results." Farmer also sought to replace the European system of measuring ingredients by weight with, for her, a more scientific measurement system based on volume and level measures (e.g., a level tablespoon). To a great degree, she succeeded.

Her writings reflect her concern for accurate measurements. Her first book, *The Boston Cooking School Cookbook* (1896), includes clearly written recipes with precise measurements. Later editions add recipe yields, oven temperatures and baking times.

After leaving the Boston Cooking School, she opened "Miss Farmer's School of Cookery." The curriculum listed 60 lessons divided into six courses. The first course covered the basics: laying a fire and using a gas stove; making breads, eggs, soups, potatoes and coffee. The second and third courses emphasized more advanced cooking. Pastry, desserts and salads were taught during the fourth course; presentation and service were taught during the fifth course. Quite progressively for the time, her sixth course taught cooking for nurses and emphasized nutrition and the dietary needs of the sick and elderly. (This may have reflected Farmer's personal interests, for she was partially disabled and in poor health from time to time.)

Farmer wrote other cookbooks, including *Food and Cookery for the Sick and Convalescent* (1904) and *A New Book of Cookery* (first published in 1912 and republished in several revised versions). Her writings never address the joys of cooking and eating; rather, they reflect a scientific approach to cooking and rely on clearly written, accurately measured recipes for good, solid food.

liter or *meter*. Some of the more commonly used prefixes in food service operations are deca- (10), kilo- (1000), deci- (1/10) and milli- (1/1000). Thus, a kilogram is 1000 grams; a decameter is 10 meters; a milliliter is 1/1000 of a liter. Because the metric system is based on multiples of 10, it is extremely easy to increase or decrease amounts.

The most important thing for a chef to know about the metric system is that *you do not need to convert between the metric system and the U.S. system in recipe preparation*. If a recipe is written in metric units, use metric measuring equipment; if it is written in U.S. units, use U.S. measuring equipment. Luckily, most modern measuring equipment is calibrated in both U.S. and metric increments. The need to convert amounts will arise only if the proper equipment is unavailable.

TABLE 4.2 COMMON CONVERSIONS

Dash	=	1/8 teaspoon
3 teaspoons	=	1 tablespoon
2 tablespoons	=	1 fl. oz.
4 tablespoons	=	1/4 cup (2 fl. oz.)
5-1/3 tablespoons	=	1/3 cup (2-2/3 fl. oz.)
16 tablespoons	=	1 cup (8 fl. oz.)
2 cups	=	1 pint (16 fl. oz.)
2 pints	=	1 quart (32 fl. oz.)
4 quarts	=	1 gallon (128 fl. oz.)
2 gallons	=	1 peck
4 pecks	=	1 bushel
1 gram	=	0.035 ounce (1/30 oz.)
1 ounce	=	28.35 grams
454 grams	=	1 pound
2.2 pounds	=	1 kilogram (1000 grams)
1 teaspoon	=	5 milliliters
1 tablespoon	=	15 milliliters
1 cup	=	.24 liters
1 gallon	=	3.80 liters

Converting Grams and Ounces

As you can see from Table 4.2, 1 ounce equals 28.35 grams. So, *to convert ounces to grams, multiply the number of ounces by 28* (rounded for convenience).

8 ounces × 28 = 224 grams

And *to convert grams to ounces, divide the number of grams by 28.*

224 ÷ 28 = 8 ounces

To help you develop a framework for judging conversations, remember that:

- A kilogram is about 2.2 pounds
- A gram is about 1/30 ounce
- A pound is about 450 grams
- A liter is slightly more than a quart
- A centimeter is slightly less than 1/2 inch
- 0° Celsius is the freezing point of water (32°F)
- 100° Celsius is the boiling point of water (212°F)

These approximations are not a substitute for accurate conversions, however. Appendix II contains additional information on equivalents and metric conversions. There is no substitute for knowing this information. In fact, it should become second nature to you.

RECIPE CONVERSIONS

Yield—*the total amount of a product made from a specific recipe; also, the amount of a food item remaining after cleaning or processing.*

Whether 6 servings or 60, every recipe is designed to produce or **yield** a specific amount of product. A recipe's yield may be expressed in *volume, weight* or *servings* (for example, 1 quart of sauce; 8 pounds of bread dough; 8 half-cup servings). If the expected yield does not meet your needs, you must convert (that is, increase or decrease) the ingredient amounts. Recipe conversion is sometimes complicated by *portion size conversion.* For example, it may be necessary to convert a recipe that initially produces 24 8-ounce servings of soup into a recipe that produces 62 6-ounce servings.

Conversion factor (C.F.)—*the number used to increase or decrease ingredient quantities and recipe yields.*

It is just as easy to change yields by uneven amounts as it is to double or halve recipes. The mathematical principle is the same: *Each ingredient is multiplied by a* **conversion factor**. Do not take shortcuts by estimating recipe amounts or conversion factors. Inaccurate conversions lead to inedible foods, embarrassing shortages or wasteful excesses. Take the time to learn and apply proper conversion techniques.

Converting Total Yield

When portion size is unimportant or remains the same, recipe yield is converted by a simple two-step process:

STEP 1: Divide the desired (new) yield by the recipe (old) yield to obtain the conversion factor (C.F.).

new yield ÷ old yield = conversion factor

Step 2: Multiply each ingredient quantity by the conversion factor to obtain the new quantity.

old quantity × conversion factor = new quantity

Example 4.1

You need to convert a recipe for cauliflower soup. The present recipe yields 1 1/2 gallons. You only need to make 3/4 gallon.

Step 1: Determine the conversion factor:

.75 gallon ÷ 1.5 gallons = .50

The same conversion factor can be obtained after first converting the recipe amounts to fluid ounces:

96 fluid ounces ÷ 192 fluid ounces = .50

Step 2: Apply the conversion factor to each ingredient in the soup recipe:

Cauliflower Soup

	old quantity	×	C.F.	=	new quantity
Cauliflower, chopped	5 lb.	×	.5	=	2 1/2 lb.
Celery stalks	4	×	.5	=	2
Onion	1	×	.5	=	1/2
Chicken stock	2 qt.	×	.5	=	1 qt.
Heavy cream	3 pt.	×	.5	=	1 1/2 pt.

Converting Portion Size

A few additional steps are necessary to convert recipes when portion sizes must also be changed.

Step 1: Determine the total yield of the existing recipe by multiplying the number of portions by the portion size.

original portions × original portion size = total (old) yield

Step 2: Determine the total yield desired by multiplying the new number of portions by the new portion size.

desired portions × desired portion size = total (new) yield

Step 3: Obtain the conversion factor as described earlier.

total (new) yield) ÷ total (old) yield = conversion factor

Step 4: Multiply each ingredient quantity by the conversion factor.

old quantity × conversion factor = new quantity

Example 4.2

Returning to the cauliflower soup: The original recipe produced 1 1/2 gallons or 48 4-ounce servings. Now you need 72 6-ounce servings.

Step 1: Total original yield is 48 × 4 = 192 ounces.
Step 2: Total desired yield is 72 × 6 = 432 ounces.
Step 3: The conversion factor is calculated by dividing total new yield by total old yield:

432 ÷ 192 = 2.25

STEP 4: Old ingredient quantities are multiplied by the conversion factor to determine the new quantities:

CAULIFLOWER SOUP

	old quantity	×	C.F.	=	new quantity
Cauliflower, chopped	5 lb.	×	2.25	=	11.25 lb.
Celery stalks	4	×	2.25	=	9
Onion	1	×	2.25	=	2.25
Chicken stock	2 qt.	×	2.25	=	4.5 qt.
Heavy cream	3 pt.	×	2.25	=	6.75 pt.

Additional Conversion Problems

When making large recipe changes—for example, from 5 to 25 portions or 600 to 300 portions—you may encounter additional problems. The mathematical conversions described here do not take into account changes in equipment, evaporation rates, unforeseen recipe errors or cooking times. Chefs learn to use their judgment, knowledge of cooking principles and skills to compensate for these factors.

Equipment

When you change the size of a recipe, you must often change the equipment used as well. Problems arise, however, when the production techniques previously used no longer work with the new quantity of ingredients. For example, if you normally make a muffin recipe in small quantities by hand and you increase the recipe size, it may be necessary to prepare the batter in a mixer. But if mixing time remains the same, the batter may become overmixed, resulting in poor-quality muffins. Trying to prepare a small amount of product in equipment that is too large for the task can also affect its quality.

Evaporation

Equipment changes can also affect product quality because of changes in evaporation rates. Increasing a soup recipe may require substituting a tilt skillet for a saucepan. But because a tilt skillet provides more surface area for evaporation than does a saucepan, reduction time must be decreased to prevent overthickening the soup. The increased evaporation caused by an increased surface area may also alter the strength of the seasonings.

Recipe Errors

A recipe may contain errors in ingredients or techniques that are not obvious when it is prepared in small quantities. When increased, however, small mistakes often become big (and obvious) ones, and the final product suffers. The only solution is to test recipes carefully and rely on your knowledge of cooking principles to compensate for unexpected problems.

Time

Do not multiply time specifications given in a recipe by the conversion factor used with the recipe's ingredients. All things being equal, *cooking time* will not change when recipe size changes. For example, a muffin requires the same amount of baking time whether you prepare 1 dozen or 14 dozen. Cooking time will be affected, however, by changes in evaporation rate or heat conduction caused by equipment changes. *Mixing time* may change when recipe size is changed. Different equipment may perform mixing tasks more or less efficiently than previously used equipment. Again, rely on experience and good judgment.

Calculating Unit Costs and Recipe Costs

Unit Costs

Food service operations purchase most foods from suppliers in bulk or wholesale packages. For example, canned goods are purchased by the case; produce by the flat, case or lug; and flour and sugar by 25- or 50-pound bags. Even fish and meats are often purchased in large cuts, not individual serving-sized portions. The purchased amount is rarely used for a single recipe, however. It must be broken down into smaller units such as pounds, cups, quarts or ounces.

In order to allocate the proper ingredient costs to the recipe being prepared, it is necessary to convert **as-purchased costs or prices** to **unit costs or prices**. To find the unit cost (that is, the cost of a particular unit, say, a single egg) in a package containing multiple units (for example, a 30-dozen case), divide the as-purchased cost (A.P. cost) of the package by the number of units in the package.

As-purchased (A.P.)—*the condition or cost of an item as it is purchased or received from the supplier.*

Unit cost—*the price paid to acquire one of the specified units.*

A.P. cost ÷ number of units = cost per unit

Example 4.3

A case of #10 cans contains six individual cans. If a case of tomato paste costs $23.50, then each can costs $3.92.

$$\$23.50 \div 6 = \$3.92$$

If your recipe uses less than the total can, you must continue dividing the cost of the can until you arrive at the appropriate unit amount. Continuing with the tomato paste example, if you need only 1 cup of tomato paste, divide the can price ($3.92) by the total number of cups contained in the can to arrive at the cost per cup (unit). The list of canned good sizes in Appendix II shows that a #10 can contains approximately 13 cups. Using the formula, each cup costs $0.30.

$$\$3.92 \div 13 = .30$$

The cost of one cup can be reduced even further if necessary. If the recipe uses only 2 tablespoons of tomato paste, divide the cost per cup by the number of tablespoons in a cup. As you can see, the final cost for 2 tablespoons of this tomato paste is $0.037.

$$.30 \div 16 = .018 \times 2 = \$0.037$$

Recipe Costs

With a typical recipe, you calculate the **total recipe cost** with the following two-step procedure:

Total recipe cost—*the total cost of ingredients for a particular recipe; it does not reflect overhead, labor, fixed expenses or profit.*

Step 1: Determine the cost for the given quantity of each recipe ingredient with the unit costing procedures described earlier.

Step 2: Add all the ingredient costs together to obtain the total recipe cost.

The total recipe cost can then be broken down into the **cost per portion**, which is the most useful figure for food cost controls. To arrive at cost per portion, divide the total recipe cost by the total number of servings or portions produced by that recipe.

Cost per portion—*the amount of the total recipe cost divided by the number of portions produced from that recipe; the cost of one serving.*

total recipe cost ÷ number of portions = cost per portion

RECIPE COSTING FORM

Menu Item _____ Date _____

Ingredient	Quantity	COST			TOTAL COST
		As Purchased	Yield %	Edible Portion	

TOTAL COST OF RECIPE $ _____

Total Yield _____ Size of Portion _____
Cost per Portion _____

Food Cost Percentage _____ Selling Price _____

FIGURE 4.2 *Recipe Costing Form*

The Recipe Costing Form shown in Figure 4.2 is useful for organizing recipe costing information. It provides space for listing each ingredient, the quantity of each ingredient needed, the cost of each unit and the total cost for the ingredient. Total yield, portion size and cost per portion are listed at the bottom of the form. Note that there is no space for recipe procedures, since these are irrelevant in recipe costing.

CONTROLLING FOOD COSTS

Many things affect food costs in any given operation; most can be controlled by the chef or manager. These controls do not require mathematical calculations or formulas, just basic management skills and a good dose of common sense. The following factors all have an impact on the operation's bottom line:

- Menu
- Purchasing/ordering
- Receiving
- Storing
- Issuing
- Kitchen procedures
  - Establishing standard portions
  - Waste
- Sales and service

Chefs tend to focus their control efforts in the area of kitchen preparation. Although this may seem logical, it is not adequate. A good chef will be involved in all aspects of the operation to help prevent problems from arising or to correct those that may occur.

Menu

A profitable menu is based upon many variables, including customer desires, physical space and equipment, ingredient availability, cost of goods sold, employee skills and competition. All management personnel, including the chef, should be consulted when planning the menu. Menu changes, though possibly desirable, must be executed with as much care as the original design.

Purchasing/Ordering

Purchasing techniques have a direct impact on cost controls. On the one hand, **parstock** must be adequate for efficient operations; on the other hand, too much inventory wastes space and resources and may spoil. Before any items are ordered, purchasing specifications should be established and communicated to potential purveyors. Specifications should precisely describe the item, including grade, quality, packaging and unit size. Each operation should design its own form to best meet its specific needs. A sample specification form is shown in Figure 4.3. This information can be used to obtain price quotes from several purveyors. Update these quotes periodically to ensure that you are getting the best value for your money.

Parstock (Par)—*the amount of stock necessary to cover operating needs between deliveries.*

Receiving

Whether goods are received by a full-time clerk, as they are in a large hotel, or by the chef or kitchen manager, certain standards should be observed. The person signing for merchandise should first confirm that the items were actually ordered. Second, determine whether the items listed on the invoice are the ones being delivered and that the price and quantity listed are accurate. Third, the items, especially meats and produce, should be checked for quality, freshness and weight. Established purchase specifications should be readily available.

MEAT PURCHASING SPECIFICATIONS	
Product:	
Menu Item:	
Grade/Quality:	NAMP/IMPS#:
Packaging:	
Pricing Unit:	
Delivery Conditions:	
Comments:	

FIGURE 4.3 *Specification Form*

Storing

Proper storage of foodstuffs is crucial in order to prevent spoilage, pilferage and waste. Stock must be rotated so that the older items are used first. Such a system for rotating stock is referred to as FIFO: First In, First Out. Storage areas should be well ventilated and lit to prevent infestation and mold.

Issuing

It may be necessary, particularly in larger operations, to limit storeroom access to specific personnel. Maintaining ongoing inventory records or parstock sheets helps the ordering process. Controlling issuances elimi-

nates waste caused by multiple opened containers and ensures proper stock rotation.

Kitchen Procedures: Establishing Standard Portions

Standardizing portions is essential to controlling food costs. Unless portion quantity is uniform, it will be impossible to compute portion costs accurately. Portion discrepancies can also confuse or mislead customers.

Actual portion sizes depend on the food service operation itself, the menu, the prices and the customers' desires. Some items are generally purchased preportioned for convenience (for example, steaks are sold in uniform cuts, baking potatoes are available in uniform sizes, butter comes in preportioned pats and bread comes sliced for service). Other items must be portioned by the establishment prior to service. Special equipment makes consistent portioning easy. There are machines to slice meats, cutting guides for cakes and pies and portion scales for weighing quantities. Standardized portion scoops and ladles are indispensable for serving vegetables, soups, stews, salads and similar foods. Many of these items are discussed and illustrated in Chapter 5, Tools and Equipment.

Once acceptable portion sizes are established, employees must be properly trained to present them. If each employee of a sandwich shop prepared sandwiches the way he or she would like to eat them, customers would probably never receive the same sandwich twice. Customers may become confused and decide not to risk a repeat visit. Obviously, carelessness in portioning can also drastically affect food cost.

Kitchen Procedures: Waste

The chef must also control waste from overproduction or failure to use leftovers. With an adequate sales history, the chef can accurately estimate the quantity of food to prepare for each week, day or meal. If the menu is designed properly, the chef can also use leftovers and trim from product fabrication. The less waste generated in food preparation, the lower the overall food cost will be.

Sales and Service

An improperly trained sales staff can undo even the most rigorous of food cost controls. Front-of-the-house personnel are, after all, ultimately responsible for the sales portion of the food cost equation. Proper training is once again critical. Prices charged must be accurate and complete. Poor service can lead to the need to serve for free ("comp") an excessive amount of food. Dropped or spilled foods do not generate revenues.

CONCLUSION

No food service operation becomes a success on the chef's cooking ability alone. A well-designed, enticing and accurately priced menu is also necessary. By following a standardized recipe, you should be able to repeatedly produce a known quality and quantity of food for your specific food service operation. Based upon the regularity with which you offer these foods, your menu can be classified as static, cycle, market or hybrid. You can offer your menu items either à la carte, semi à la carte or table d'hôte.

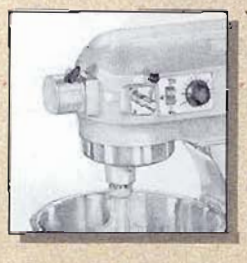
You must be able to understand and apply proper techniques for converting recipes, food costing and loss control. Although computers are useful and

are becoming more common in kitchens, no machine can substitute for a chef's watchful eye and hands-on controls.

Questions for Discussion

1. Describe the four types of menus. Can each type of menu offer foods à la carte, semi à la carte and/or table d'hôte? Explain your answer.
2. Discuss three factors in food preparation that affect successful recipe size changes.
3. Why is it important to calculate the portion cost of a recipe in professional food service operations? Why is the full recipe cost inadequate?
4. List several factors, other than kitchen procedures, that a chef should examine when looking for ways to control food costs.

PART TWO
PREPARATION



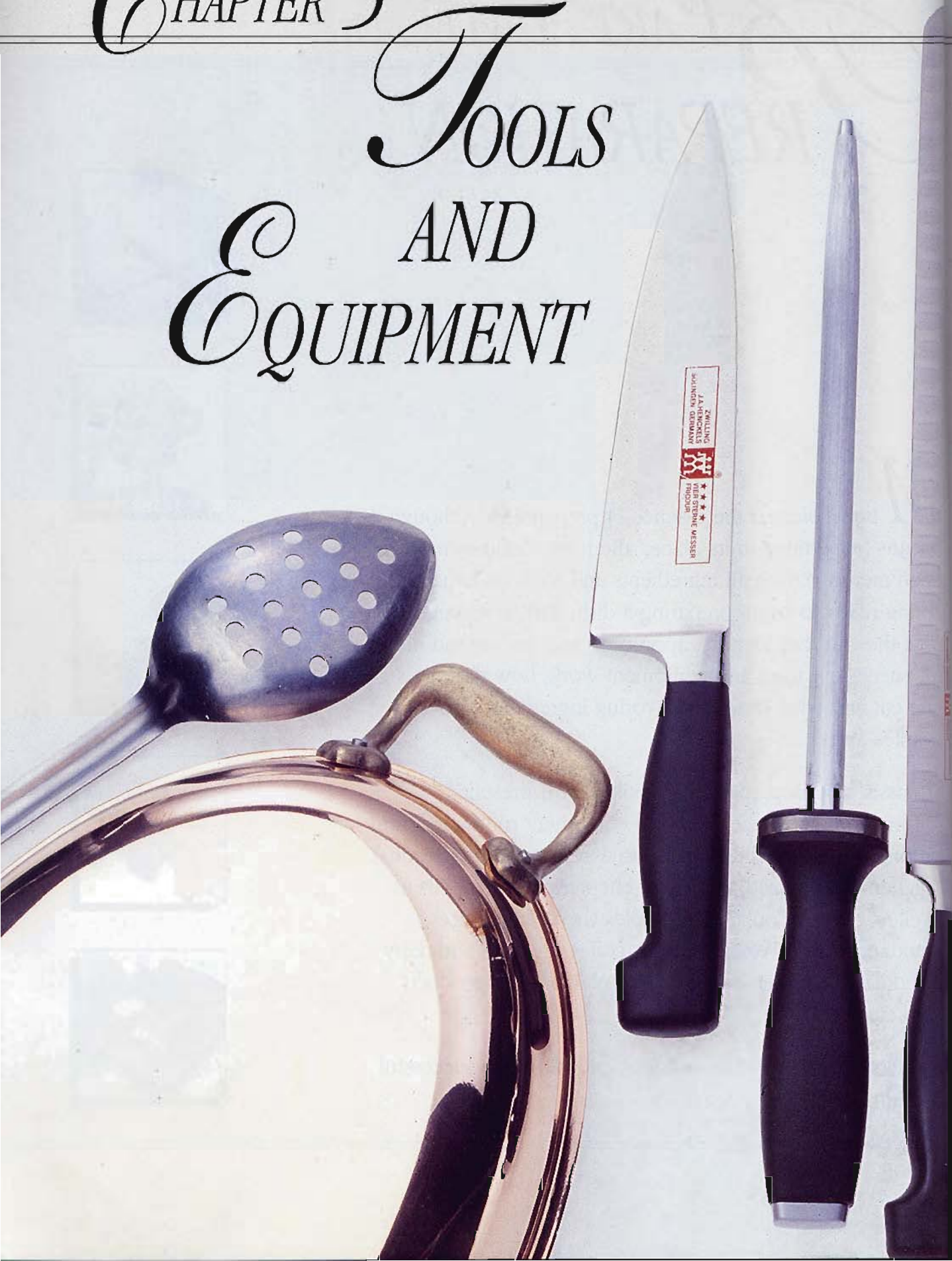
Mise en place is the essence of preparation. Although it means "everything in its place," the term connotes more than merely having all ingredients and tools on hand and being ready to begin preparing a dish. Rather, it suggests that the chef can identify, appreciate and understand how the necessary tools and equipment work, how the foods are cut and what the basic flavoring ingredients and staples are.

To assist you in preparing to cook, Part II presents information about the tools and equipment routinely found in professional kitchens, then discusses how a professional kitchen is organized. There is a chapter on knife skills as well as chapters on kitchen staples (herbs and spices, condiments, oils, vinegars, nuts, coffee and tea) and dairy products (including milk, cream, cultured milk products and cheese).

Understanding this information is critical before successful cooking can begin.

CHAPTER 5

TOOLS AND EQUIPMENT



J.A. HENCKELS
SOLINGEN GERMANY

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- recognize a variety of professional kitchen tools and equipment
- select and care for knives
- understand how a professional kitchen is organized

Having the proper tools and equipment for a particular task may mean the difference between a job well done and one done carelessly, incorrectly or even dangerously. This chapter introduces most of the tools and equipment typically used in a professional kitchen. Items are divided into categories according to their function: hand tools, knives, measuring and portioning devices, cookware, strainers and sieves, processing equipment, storage containers, heavy equipment, buffet equipment and safety equipment.

A wide variety of specialized tools and equipment is available to today's chef. Breading machines, croissant shapers and doughnut glazers are designed to speed production by reducing handwork. Other devices—for instance, a duck press or a couscousière—are used only for unique tasks in preparing a few menu items. Much of this specialized equipment is quite expensive and found only in food manufacturing operations or specialized kitchens; a discussion of it is beyond the scope of this chapter. Brief descriptions of some of these specialized devices are, however, found in the Glossary. Baking pans and tools are discussed in Chapter 28, Principles of the Bakeshop.

This chapter is illustrated with generic drawings because manufacturers' designs differ. We end this chapter with a discussion of how a professional kitchen should be designed and organized.

Before using any equipment, study the operator's manual or have someone experienced with the particular item instruct you on proper procedures for its use and cleaning. And remember, always think safety.

STANDARDS FOR TOOLS AND EQUIPMENT

NSF International (NSF), previously known as the National Sanitation Foundation, promulgates consensus standards for the design, construction and installation of kitchen tools, cookware and equipment. Many states and municipalities require that food service operations use only NSF-certified equipment. Although NSF certification is voluntary, most manufacturers submit their designs to NSF for certification to show that they are suitable for use in professional food service operations. Certified equipment bears the NSF mark shown in Figure 5.1.

NSF standards reflect the following requirements:

1. Equipment must be easily cleaned.
2. All food contact surfaces must be nontoxic (under intended end use conditions), nonabsorbent, corrosion resistant and nonreactive.
3. All food contact surfaces must be smooth, that is, free of pits, cracks, crevices, ledges, rivet heads and bolts.

FIGURE 5.1 *The NSF Mark*

4. Internal corners and edges must be rounded and smooth; external corners and angles must be smooth and sealed.
5. Coating materials must be nontoxic and easily cleaned; coatings must resist chipping and cracking.
6. Waste and waste liquids must be easily removed.

SELECTING TOOLS AND EQUIPMENT

In general, only commercial food service tools and equipment should be used in a professional kitchen. Household tools and appliances not NSF certified may not withstand the rigors of a professional kitchen. Look for tools that are well constructed. For example, joints should be welded, not bonded with solder; handles should be comfortable, with rounded borders; plastic and rubber parts should be seamless.

Before purchasing or leasing any equipment, you should evaluate several factors:

1. Is this equipment necessary for producing menu items?
2. Will this equipment perform the job required in the space available?
3. Is this equipment the most economical for the operation's specific needs?
4. Is this equipment easy to clean, maintain and repair?

Table-Mounted Can Opener

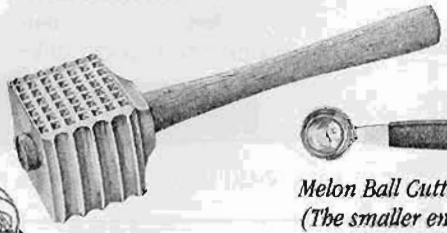
Plain, Slotted and Perforated Spoons

HAND TOOLS

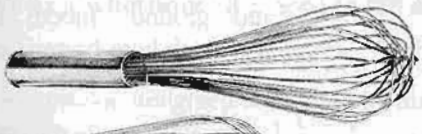
Hand tools are designed to aid in cutting, shaping, moving or combining foods. They have few, if any, moving parts. Knives, discussed separately later, are the most important hand tools. Others are metal or rubber spatulas, spoons, whisks, tongs and specialized cutters. In addition to the items shown here, many hand tools designed for specific tasks, such as pressing tortillas or pitting cherries, are available. Sturdiness, durability and safety are the watchwords when selecting hand tools. Choose tools that can withstand the heavy use of a professional kitchen and those that are easily cleaned.

Vegetable Peeler

Chef's Fork



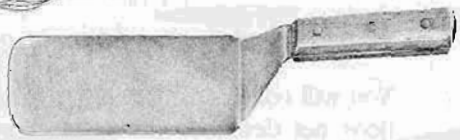
Melon Ball Cutter
(The smaller end is also known as a Parisian Scoop)



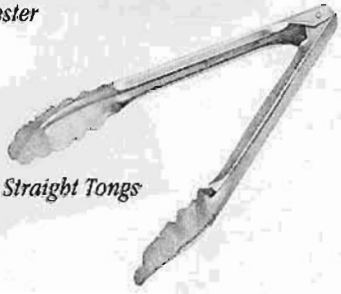
Meat Mallet

Zester

Balloon and Rigid Whisks



Grill Spatula



Straight Tongs

Rubber Spatula

Straight Spatula (Cake Spatula)

KNIVES

Knives are the most important items in your tool kit. With a sharp knife, the skilled chef can accomplish a number of tasks more quickly and efficiently than any machine. Good-quality knives are expensive but will last for many years with proper care. Select easily sharpened, well-constructed knives that are comfortable and balanced in your hand. Knife construction and commonly used knives are discussed here; knife safety and care as well as cutting techniques are discussed in Chapter 6, Knife Skills.

Knife Construction

A good knife begins with a single piece of metal, stamped, cut or—best of all—forged and tempered into a blade of the desired shape. The metals generally used for knife blades are:

1. **Carbon steel**—An alloy of carbon and iron, it is traditionally used for blades because it is soft enough to be sharpened easily. It corrodes and discolors easily, however, especially when used with acidic foods.
2. **Stainless steel**—It will not rust, corrode or discolor and is extremely durable. But a stainless steel blade is much more difficult to sharpen than a carbon steel one, although once an edge is established, it lasts longer than the edge on a carbon steel blade.
3. **High carbon stainless steel**—An alloy combining the best features of carbon steel and stainless steel, it neither corrodes nor discolors and can be sharpened almost as easily as carbon steel. It is now the most frequently used metal for blades.

A portion of the blade, known as the tang, fits inside the handle. The best knives are constructed with a full tang running the length of the handle; they also have a bolster where the blade meets the handle (the bolster is part of the blade, not a separate collar). Less expensive knives may have a 3/4-length tang or a thin "rattail" tang. Neither provides as much support, durability or balance as a full tang.

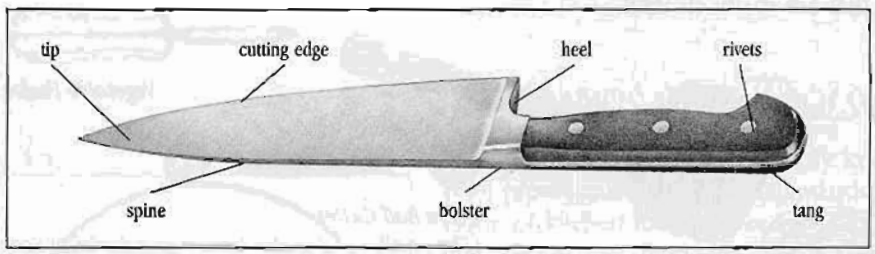


FIGURE 5.2 *The parts of a Chef's Knife*

Knife handles are often made of hard woods infused with plastic and riveted to the tang. Molded polypropylene handles are permanently bonded to a tang without seams or rivets. Any handle should be shaped for comfort and ground smooth to eliminate crevices where bacteria can grow.

Knife Shapes and Sharpening Equipment

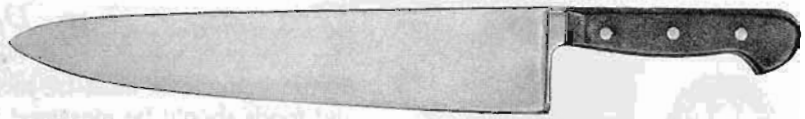
You will collect many knives during your career, many with specialized functions not described here. This list includes only the most basic knives and sharpening equipment.

French or Chef's Knife

An all-purpose knife used for chopping, slicing and mincing. Its rigid 8- to 14-inch-long blade is wide at the heel and tapers to a point at the tip.

Utility Knife

An all-purpose knife used for cutting fruits and vegetables and carving poultry. Its rigid 6- to 8-inch-long blade is shaped like a chef's knife but narrower.



French or Chef's Knife

Boning Knife

A smaller knife with a thin blade used to separate meat from bone. The blade is usually 5 to 7 inches long and may be flexible or rigid.

Utility Knife

Rigid Boning Knife

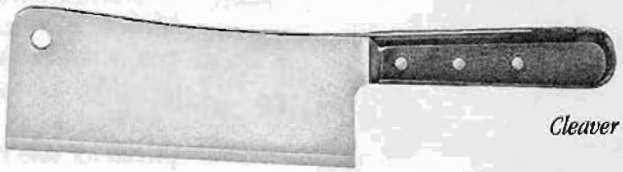
Paring Knife

A short knife used for detail work or cutting fruits and vegetables. The rigid blade is from 2 to 4 inches long. A tournée or **bird's beak knife** is similar to a paring knife but with a curved blade; it is used for cutting curved surfaces or tournéeing vegetables.

Paring Knife

Cleaver

The large, heavy rectangular blade is used for chopping or cutting through bones.



Cleaver

Slicer

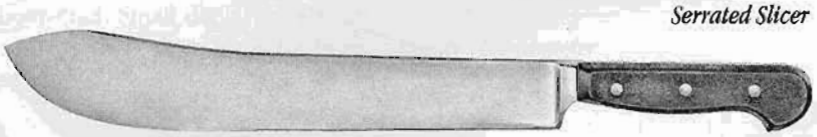
A knife with a long, thin blade used primarily for slicing cooked meat. The tip may be round or pointed, and the blade may be flexible or rigid. A similar knife with a serrated edge is used for slicing bread or pastry items.

Flexible Slicer

Serrated Slicer

Butcher Knife

Sometimes known as a **scimitar** because the rigid blade curves up in a 25-degree angle at the tip, it is used for fabricating raw meat and is available with 6- to 14-inch blades.



Butcher Knife or Scimitar

Oyster and Clam Knives

The short, rigid blades of these knives are used to open oyster and clam shells. The tips are blunt; only the clam knife has a sharp edge.

Oyster Knife

Clam Knife

Sharpening Stone

Also known as a **whetstone**, it is used to put an edge on a dull blade.

Steel

It is used to hone or straighten a blade immediately after and between sharpenings.

Steel

Three-Sided Sharpening Stone or Whetstone

MEASURING AND PORTIONING DEVICES

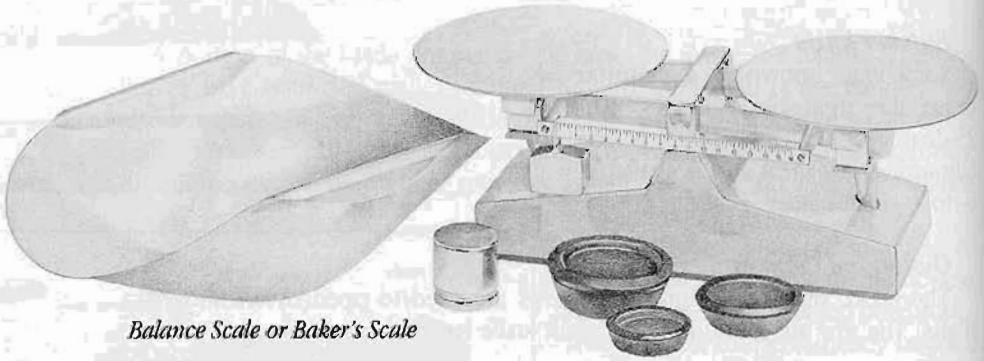
Recipe ingredients must be measured precisely, especially in the bakeshop, and foods should be measured when served to control portion size and cost. The devices used to measure and portion foods are, for the most part, hand tools designed to make food preparation and service easier and more precise. The accuracy they afford prevents the cost of mistakes made when accurate measurements are ignored.

Measurements may be based upon weight (for example, grams, ounces, pounds) or volume (for example, teaspoons, cups, gallons). Therefore, it is necessary to have available several measuring devices, including liquid and dry measuring cups and a variety of scales. Thermometers and timers are also measuring devices and are discussed here. When purchasing measuring devices, look for quality construction and accurate markings.

Portion Scale

Scales

Scales are necessary to determine the weight of an ingredient or a portion of food (for example, the sliced meat for a sandwich). Portion scales use a spring mechanism, round dial and single flat tray. They are available calibrated in grams, ounces or pounds. Electronic scales also use a spring mechanism but provide digital readouts. They are often required by law where foods are priced for sale by weight. Balance scales (also known as baker's scales) use a two-tray and free-weights counterbalance system. A balance scale allows more weight to be measured at one time because it is not limited by spring capacity. Any scale must be properly used and maintained to provide an accurate reading.



Balance Scale or Baker's Scale

Measuring Spoons

Volume Measures

Ingredients may be measured by volume using measuring spoons and measuring cups. Measuring spoons sold as a set usually include 1/4-, 1/2-, 1-teaspoon and 1-tablespoon units (or the metric equivalent). Liquid measuring cups are available in capacities from 1 cup to 1 gallon. They have a lip or pour spout above the top line of measurement to prevent spills. Measuring cups for dry ingredients are usually sold in sets of 1/4-, 1/3-, 1/2-, and 1-cup units. They do not have pour spouts, so the top of the cup is level with the top measurement specified. Glass measuring cups are not recommended because they can break. Avoid using bent or dented measuring cups as the damage may distort the measurement capacity.

Liquid Measuring Cup

Dry Measuring Cups

Ladles

Long-handled ladles are useful for portioning liquids such as stocks, sauces and soups. The capacity, in ounces, is stamped on the handle.

Portion Scoops

Portion scoops (also known as dishers) resemble ice cream scoops. They come in a range of standardized sizes and have a lever-operated blade for releasing their contents. Scoops are useful for portioning salads, vegetables, muffin batters or other soft foods. A number, stamped on either the handle or the release mechanism, indicates the number of level scoopfuls per quart. The higher the scoop number, the smaller the scoop's capacity.

Thermometers

Various types of thermometers are used in the kitchen.

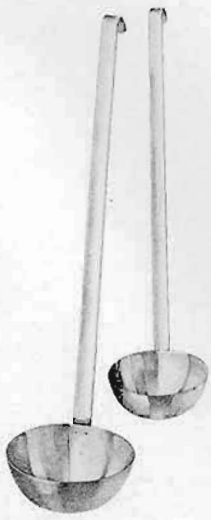
Stem-type thermometers, including instant-read models, are inserted into foods to obtain temperature readings between 0°F (–18°C) and 220°F (104°C). Temperatures are shown on either a dial noted by an arrow or a digital readout. An instant-read thermometer is a small stem-type model, designed to be carried in a pocket and used to provide quick temperature readings. An instant-read thermometer should not be left in foods that are cooking because doing so damages the thermometer.

Candy and fat thermometers measure temperatures up to 400°F (204°C) using mercury in a column of glass. A back clip attaches the thermometer to the pan, keeping the chef's hands free. Be careful not to subject glass thermometers to quick temperature changes as the glass may shatter.

Because proper temperatures must be maintained for holding and storing foods, oven and refrigerator thermometers are also useful. Select thermometers with easy-to-read dials or column divisions.

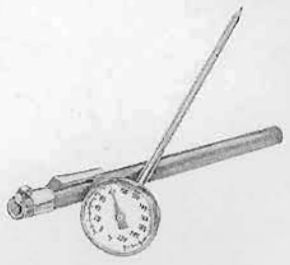
Timers

Portable kitchen timers are useful for any busy chef. Small digital timers can be carried in a pocket; some even time three functions at once. Select a timer with a loud alarm signal and long timing capability.



Ladles

Portion Scoop



Instant-Read Thermometer

Candy Thermometer

TABLE 5.1 PORTION SCOOP CAPACITIES

Scoop Number	Volume		Approximate Weight*	
	U.S.	Metric	U.S.	Metric
6	2/3 c.	160 ml	5 oz.	160 g
8	1/2 c.	120 ml	4 oz.	120 g
10	3 fl. oz.	90 ml	3-3 1/2 oz.	85–100 g
12	1/3 c.	80 ml	2 1/2–3 oz.	75–85 g
16	1/4 c.	60 ml	2 oz.	60 g
20	1 1/2 fl. oz.	45 ml	1 3/4 oz.	50 g
24	1 1/3 fl. oz.	40 ml	1 1/3 oz.	40 g
30	1 fl. oz.	30 ml	1 oz.	30 g
40	0.8 fl. oz.	24 ml	0.8 oz.	23 g
60	1/2 fl. oz.	15 ml	1/2 oz.	15 g

*Weights are approximate because they vary by food.

HOW TO CALIBRATE A STEM-TYPE THERMOMETER

All stem-type thermometers should be calibrated at least weekly as well as whenever they are dropped. To calibrate a stem-type thermometer, fill a glass with shaved ice, then add water. Place the thermometer in the ice slush and wait until the temperature reading stabilizes. Following the manufacturer's directions, adjust the thermometer's calibration nut until the temperature reads 32°F (0°C). Check the calibration by returning the thermometer to the slush. Then repeat the procedure, substituting boiling water for the ice slush, and calibrate the thermometer at 212°F (100°C).

COOKWARE

Cookware includes the sauté pans and stockpots used on the stove top as well as the roasting pans, hotel pans and specialty molds used inside the oven. Cookware should be selected for its size, shape, ability to conduct heat evenly and overall quality of construction.

Metals and Heat Conduction

Cookware that fails to distribute heat evenly may cause hot spots that burn foods. Because different metals conduct heat at different rates, and thicker layers of metal conduct heat more evenly than thinner ones, the most important considerations when choosing cookware are the type and thickness (known as the *gauge*) of the material used. No one cookware or material suits every process or need, however; always select the most appropriate material for the task at hand.

Copper

Copper is an excellent conductor: It heats rapidly and evenly and cools quickly. Indeed, unlined copper pots are unsurpassed for cooking sugar and fruit mixtures. But copper cookware is extremely expensive. It also requires a great deal of care and is often quite heavy. Moreover, because copper may react with some foods, copper cookware usually has a tin lining, which is soft and easily scratched. Because of these problems, copper is now often sandwiched between layers of stainless steel or aluminum in the bottom of pots and pans.

Aluminum

Aluminum is the metal used most commonly in commercial utensils. It is lightweight and, after copper, conducts heat best. Aluminum is a soft metal, though, so it should be treated with care to avoid dents. Do not use aluminum containers for storage or for cooking acidic foods because the metal reacts chemically with many foods. Light-colored foods, such as soups or sauces, may be discolored when cooked in aluminum, especially if stirred with a metal whisk or spoon.

Anodized aluminum has a hard, dark, corrosion-resistant surface that helps prevent sticking and discoloration.

Stainless Steel

Although stainless steel conducts and retains heat poorly, it is a hard, durable metal particularly useful for holding foods and for low-temperature cooking where hot spots and scorching are not problems. Stainless steel pots and pans are available with aluminum or copper bonded to the bottom or with an aluminum-layered core. Although expensive, such cookware combines the rapid, uniform heat conductivity of copper and aluminum with the strength, durability and nonreactivity of stainless steel. Stainless steel is also ideal for storage containers because it does not react with foods.

Cast Iron

Cast-iron cookware distributes heat evenly and holds high temperatures well. It is often used in griddles and large skillets. Although relatively inexpensive, cast iron is extremely heavy and brittle. It must be kept properly conditioned and dry to prevent rust and pitting.

Glass

Glass retains heat well but conducts it poorly. It does not react with foods. Tempered glass is suitable for microwave cooking provided it does not have any metal band or decoration. Commercial operations rarely use glass cookware because of the danger of breakage.

Ceramics

Ceramics, including earthenware, porcelain and stoneware, are used primarily for baking dishes, casseroles and baking stones because they conduct heat uniformly and retain temperatures well. Ceramics are nonreactive, inexpensive and generally suitable for use in a microwave oven (provided there is no metal in the glaze). Ceramics are easily chipped or cracked, however, and should not be used over a direct flame. Also, quick temperature changes may cause the cookware to crack or shatter.

Plastic

Plastic containers are frequently used in commercial kitchens for food storage or service, but they cannot be used for heating or cooking except in a microwave oven. Plastic microwave cookware is made of phenolic resin. It is easy to clean, relatively inexpensive and rigidly shaped, but its glasslike structure is brittle, and it can crack or shatter.

Enamelware

Pans lined with enamel should not be used for cooking; in many areas, their use in commercial kitchens is prohibited by law. The enamel can chip or crack easily, providing good places for bacteria to grow. Also, the chemicals used to bond the enamel to the cookware can cause food poisoning if ingested.

Roman Pots, Southern Stills and Craft Fairs

Lead is poisonous. Ingesting it can cause severe gastrointestinal pains, anemia and central nervous system disorders, including intelligence and memory deficits and behavioral changes.

The unwitting and dangerous consumption of lead is not limited to children eating peeling paint chips. Some historians suggest that the use of lead cookware and lead-lined storage vessels and water pipes may have caused pervasive lead poisoning among the elite of the Roman Empire and thus contributed to the Empire's decline. There is also ample evidence that from ancient times until just a few hundred years ago, wine was heated in lead vessels to sweeten it. This had a disastrous effect on the drinker and, for several centuries in countries throughout Europe, on the wine purveyor as well. The former could be poisoned, and the latter could be punished by death for selling adulterated wine. More recently, it was found that much of the moonshine whiskey produced in the American South contained lead in potentially toxic ranges. The source was determined to be the lead solder used in homemade stills, some of which even included old lead-containing car radiators as condensers.

Although commercially available cookware will not contain lead, be careful of imported pottery and those lovely hand-thrown pots found at craft fairs—there could be lead in the glaze.

Stockpot with Spigot

Nonstick Coatings

Without affecting a metal's ability to conduct heat, a polymer (plastic) known as polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) and marketed under the trade-names Teflon® and Silverstone® may be applied to many types of cookware. It provides a slippery, nonreactive finish that prevents food from sticking and allows the use of less fat in cooking. Cookware with nonstick coatings requires a great deal of care, however, since the coatings can scratch, chip and blister. Do not use metal spoons or spatulas in cookware with nonstick coatings.

Common Cookware

Pots

Pots are large round vessels with straight sides and two loop handles. Available in a range of sizes based on volume, they are used on the stove top for making stocks or soups, or for boiling or simmering foods, particularly where rapid evaporation is not desired. Flat or fitted lids are available.

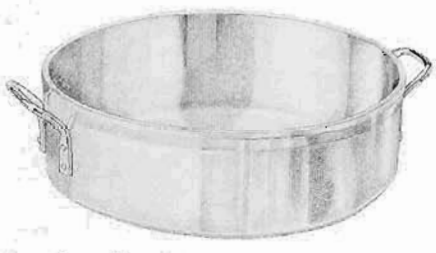
Pans

Pans are round vessels with one long handle and straight or sloped sides. They are usually smaller and shallower than pots. Pans are available in a range of diameters and are used for general stove top cooking, especially sauté ing, frying or reducing liquids rapidly.

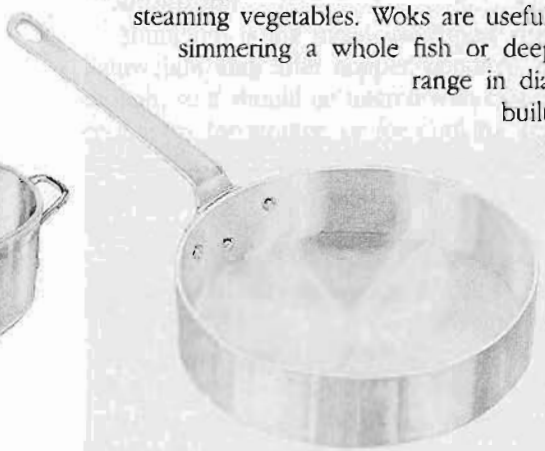
Woks

Originally used to prepare Asian foods, woks are now found in many professional kitchens. Their round bottoms and curved sides diffuse heat and make it easy to toss or stir contents. Their large domed lids retain heat for steaming vegetables. Woks are useful for quickly sautéing strips of meat, simmering a whole fish or deep-frying appetizers. Stove top woks range in diameter from 12 to 30 inches; larger built-in gas or electric models are also available.

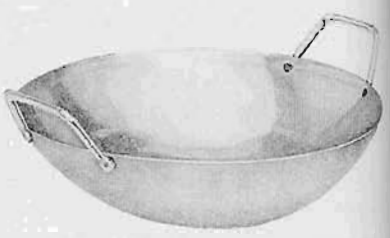
Sauce Pot



Rondeau/*Brazier*



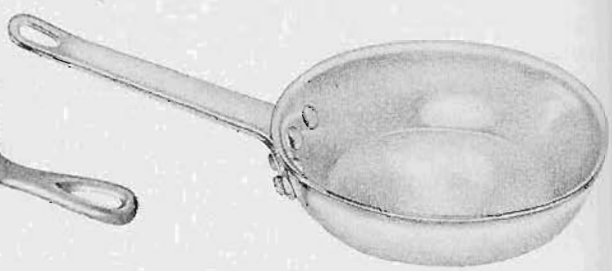
Sautoir *(Straight Sides)*



Wok

Saucepan

Cast-Iron Skillet (Griswold)



Sauteuse *(Sloped Sides)*

Hotel Pans

Hotel pans (also known as steam table pans) are rectangular stainless steel pans designed to hold food for service in steam tables. Hotel pans are also used for baking, roasting or poaching inside an oven. Perforated pans useful for draining, steaming or icing down foods are also available. The standard full-size pan is 12 by 20 inches, with pans one-half, one-third, one-sixth and other fractions of this size available. Hotel pan depth is standardized at 2 inches (referred to as a "200 pan"), 4, 6 and 8 inches.

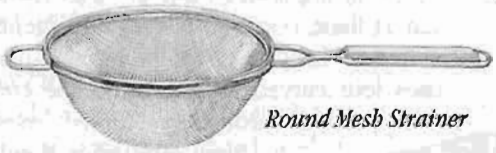
Hotel Pans

Molds

Pâté molds are available in several shapes and sizes, and are usually made from tinned steel. Those with hinged sides, whether smooth or patterned, are more properly referred to as *pâté en croûte* molds. The hinged sides make it easier to remove the baked pâté. Terrine molds are traditionally lidded earthenware or enameled cast-iron containers used for baking ground meat mixtures. They may be round, oval or rectangular. Timbale molds are small (about 4 ounces) metal or ceramic containers used for molding aspic or baking individual portions of mousse, custard or vegetables. Their slightly flared sides allow the contents to release cleanly when inverted.

Timbales

Pâté en Croûte Mold



Round Mesh Strainer

Colander

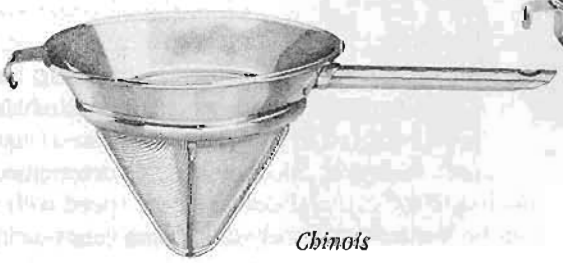
Strainers and Sieves

Strainers and sieves are used primarily to aerate and remove impurities from dry ingredients and drain or purée cooked foods. Strainers, colanders, drum sieves, china caps and chinois are nonmechanical devices with a stainless steel mesh or screen through which food passes. The size of the mesh or screen varies from extremely fine to several millimeters wide; select the fineness best suited for the task at hand.

Drum Sieve (Tamis)

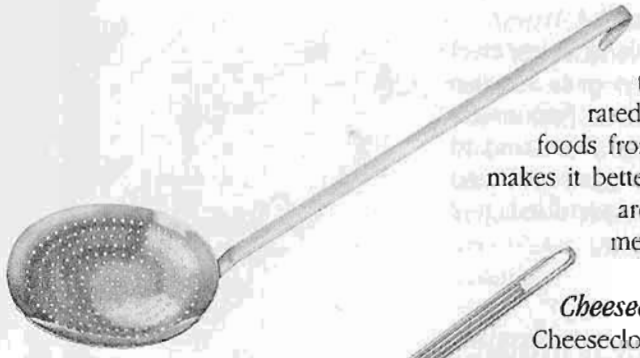
Chinois and China Cap

Both the chinois and china cap are cone-shaped metal strainers. The conical shape allows liquids to filter through small openings. A chinois is made from a very fine mesh, while a china cap has a perforated metal body. Both are used for straining stocks and sauces, with the chinois being particularly useful for consommé. A china cap can also be used with a pestle to purée soft foods.



Chinois

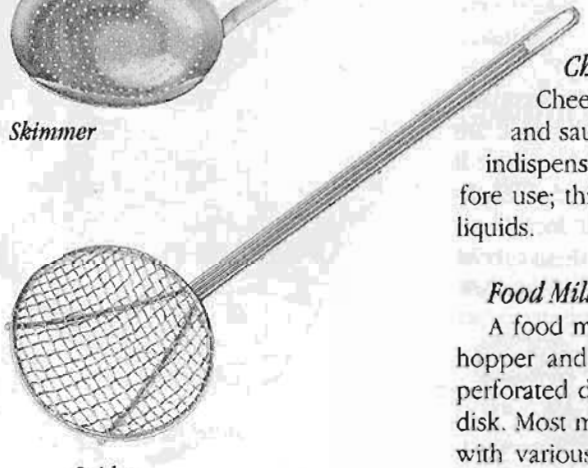
China Cap



Skimmer

Skimmer and Spider

Both the skimmer and spider are long-handled tools used to remove foods or impurities from liquids. The flat, perforated disk of a skimmer is used for skimming stocks or removing foods from soups or stocks. The spider has a finer mesh disk, which makes it better for retrieving items from hot fat. Wooden-handled spiders are available but are less sturdy and harder to clean than all-metal designs.



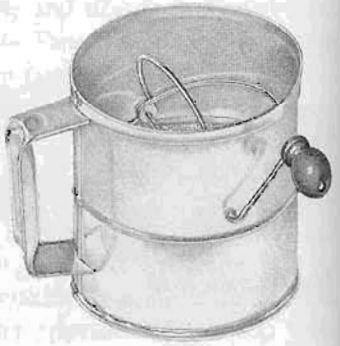
Spider

Cheesecloth

Cheesecloth is a loosely woven cotton gauze used for straining stocks and sauces and wrapping poultry or fish for poaching. Cheesecloth is also indispensable for making sachets. Always rinse cheesecloth thoroughly before use; this removes lint and prevents the cheesecloth from absorbing other liquids.

Food Mill

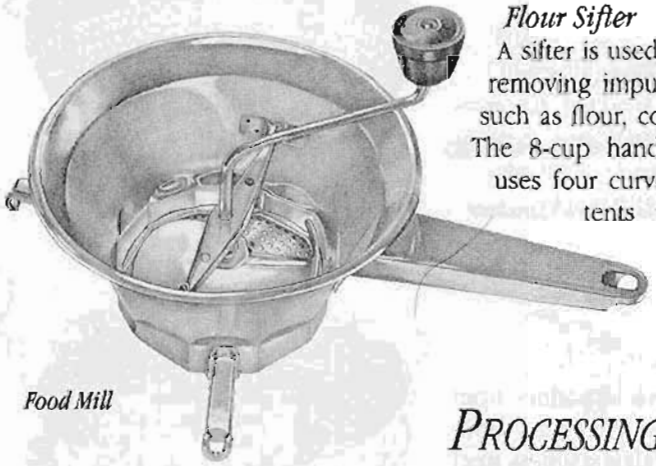
A food mill purées and strains food at the same time. Food is placed in the hopper and a hand-crank mechanism turns a blade in the hopper against a perforated disk, forcing the food through the disk. Most models have interchangeable disks with various-sized holes. Choose a mill that can be taken apart easily for cleaning.



Flour Sifter

Flour Sifter

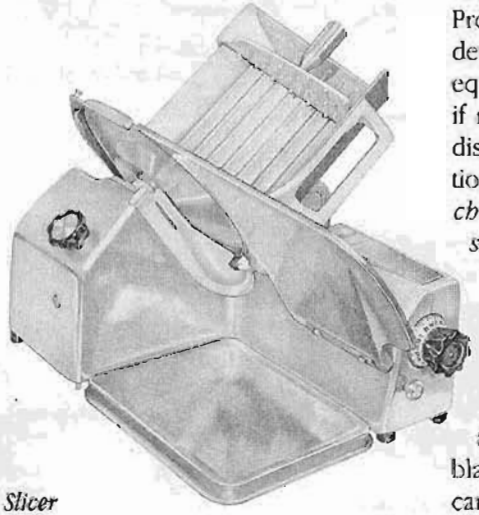
A sifter is used for aerating, blending and removing impurities from dry ingredients such as flour, cocoa and leavening agents. The 8-cup hand-crank sifter shown here uses four curved rods to brush the contents through a curved mesh screen. The sifter should have a medium-fine screen and a comfortable handle.



Food Mill

PROCESSING EQUIPMENT

Processing equipment includes both electrical and nonelectrical mechanical devices used to chop, purée, slice, grind or mix foods. Before using any such equipment, be sure to review its operating procedures and ask for assistance if necessary. Always turn the equipment off and disconnect the power before disassembling, cleaning or moving the appliance. Any problems or malfunctions should be reported immediately. *Never place your hand into any machinery when the power is on. Processing equipment is powerful and can cause serious injury.*



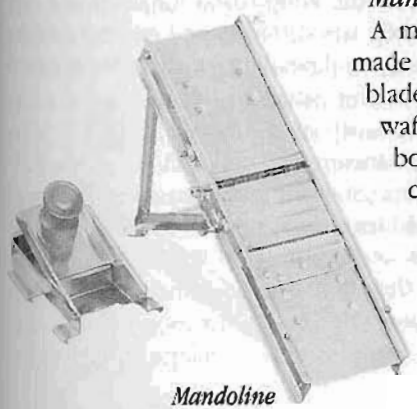
Slicer

Slicer

An electric slicer is used to cut meat, bread, cheese or raw vegetables into uniform slices. It has a circular blade that rotates at high speed. Food is placed in a carrier, then passed (manually or by an electric motor) against the blade. Slice thickness is determined by the distance between the blade and the carrier. Because of the speed with which the blade rotates, foods can be cut into extremely thin slices very quickly. An electric slicer is conve-

nient for preparing moderate to large quantities of food, but the time required to disassemble and clean the equipment makes it impractical when slicing only a few items.

Mandoline

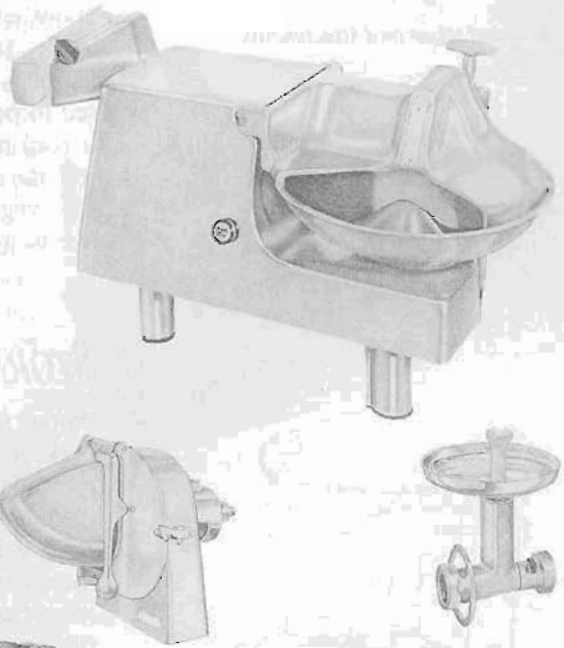


Mandoline

A mandoline is a manually operated slicer made of stainless steel with adjustable slicing blades. It is also used to make julienne and waffle-cut slices. Its narrow, rectangular body sits on the work counter at a 45-degree angle. Foods are passed against a blade to obtain uniform slices. It is useful for slicing small quantities of fruits or vegetables when using a large electric slicer would be unwarranted. To avoid injury, always use a hand guard or steel glove when using a mandoline.

Food Chopper or Buffalo Chopper

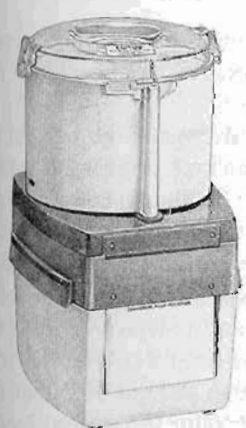
This chopper is used to process moderate to large quantities of food to a uniform size, such as chopping onions or grinding bread for crumbs. The food is placed in a large bowl rotating beneath a hood where curved blades chop it. The size of the cut depends on how long the food is left in the machine. Buffalo choppers are available in floor or tabletop models. The motor can usually be fitted with a variety of other tools such as a meat grinder or a slicer/shredder, making it even more useful.



Buffalo Chopper with Slicer and Meat Grinder Attachments

Food Processor

A food processor has a motor housing with a removable bowl and S-shaped blade. It is used, for example, to purée cooked foods, chop nuts, prepare compound butters and emulsify sauces. Special disks can be added that slice, shred or julienne foods. Bowl capacity and motor power vary; select a model large enough for your most common tasks.

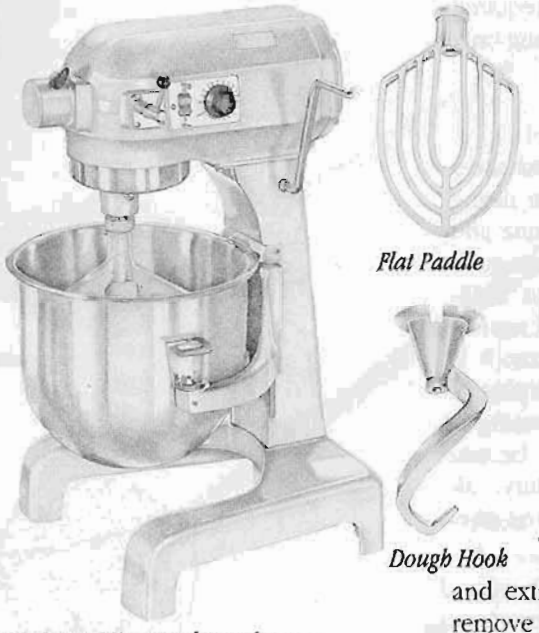


Food Processor

Blender

Though similar in principle to a food processor, a blender has a tall, narrow food container and a four-pronged blade. Its design is better for processing liquids or liquefying foods quickly. A blender is used to prepare smooth drinks, purée soups and sauces, blend batters and chop ice. A **vertical cutter/mixer** (VCM) operates like a very large, powerful blender. A VCM is usually floor-mounted and has a capacity of 15 to 80 quarts.

Heavy-Duty Blender



20-Quart Mixer and Attachments

Flat Paddle

Whip

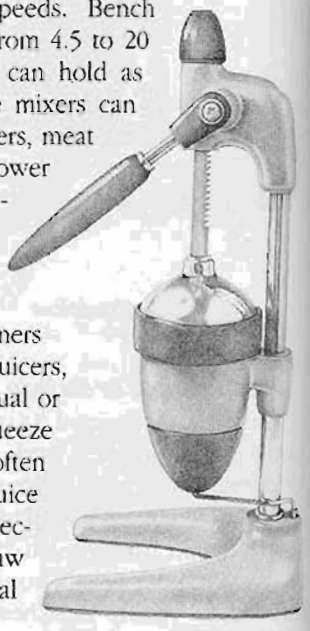
Dough Hook

Mixer

A vertical mixer is indispensable in the bakeshop and most kitchens. The U-shaped arms hold a metal mixing bowl in place; the selected mixing attachment fits onto the rotating head. The three common mixing attachments are the whip (used for whipping eggs or cream), the paddle (used for general mixing) and the dough hook (used for kneading bread). Most mixers have several operating speeds. Bench models range in capacity from 4.5 to 20 quarts, while floor mixers can hold as much as 140 quarts. Some mixers can be fitted with shredder/slicers, meat grinders, juicers or power strainers, making the equipment more versatile.

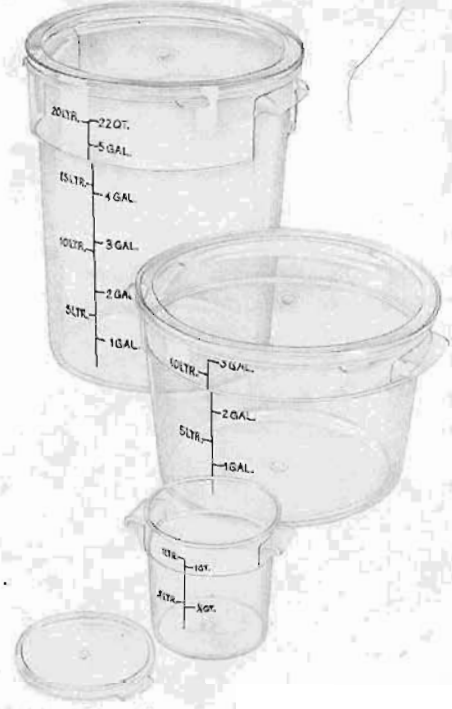
Juicer

Two types of juicers are available: reamers and extractors. Reamers, also known as citrus juicers, remove juice from citrus fruits. They can be manual or electric. Manual models use a lever arm to squeeze the fruit with increased pressure. They are most often used to prepare small to moderate amounts of juice for cooking or beverages. Juice extractors are electrical devices that create juice by liquefying raw fruits, vegetables and herbs. They use centrifugal force to filter out fiber and pulp.



Citrus Juicer

STORAGE CONTAINERS



Storage Containers

Proper storage containers are necessary for keeping leftovers and opened packages of food safe for consumption. Proper storage can also reduce the costs incurred by waste or spoilage.

Although stainless steel pans such as hotel pans are suitable and useful for some items, the expense of stainless steel and the lack of air-tight lids makes these pans impractical for general storage purposes. Aluminum containers are not recommended because the metal can react with even mildly acidic items. Glass containers are generally not allowed in commercial kitchens because of the hazards of broken glass. The most useful storage containers are those made of high-density plastic such as polyethylene and polypropylene.

Storage containers must have well-fitting lids and should be available in a variety of sizes, including some that are small enough to hold even minimal quantities of food without allowing too much exposure to oxygen. Round and square plastic containers are widely available. Flat, snap-on lids allow containers to be stacked for more efficient storage. Containers may be clear or opaque white, which helps protect light-sensitive foods. Larger containers may be fitted with handles and spigots, making them especially suited for storing stock. Some storage containers are marked with graduated measurements so that content quantity can be determined at a glance.

Large quantities of dry ingredients, such as flour, sugar and rice, can be stored in rolling bins. The bins should be seamless with rounded corners for easy cleaning. They should have well-fitting but easy-to-open lids and should move easily on well-balanced casters.

HEAVY EQUIPMENT

Heavy equipment includes the gas-, electric- or steam-operated appliances used for cooking, reheating or holding foods. Heavy equipment also includes dishwashers and refrigeration units. Heavy equipment should be installed in a fixed location determined by the kitchen's traffic flow and space limitations.

Heavy equipment may be purchased or leased new or used. Used equipment is most often purchased in an effort to save money. Although the initial cost is generally less for used equipment, the buyer should also consider the lack of a manufacturer's warranty or dealership guarantee and how the equipment was maintained by the prior owner. Functional used equipment is satisfactory for back-of-the-house areas, but it is usually better to purchase new equipment if it will be visible to the customer. Leasing equipment may be appropriate for some operations. The cost of leasing is less than purchasing and, if something goes wrong with the equipment, the operator is generally not responsible for repairs or service charges.

Stove Tops

Stove tops or ranges are often the most important cooking equipment in the kitchen. They have one or more burners powered by gas or electricity. The burners may be open or covered with a cast-iron or steel plate. Open burners supply quick, direct heat that is easy to regulate. A steel plate, known as a **flat top**, supplies even but less intense heat. Although it takes longer to heat than a burner, the flat top supports heavier weights and makes a larger area available for cooking. Many stoves include both flat tops and open burner arrangements.

Griddles are similar to flat tops except they are made of a thinner metal plate. Foods are usually cooked directly on the griddle's surface, not in pots or pans which can nick or scratch the surface. The surface should be properly cleaned and conditioned after each use. Griddles are popular for short-order and fast-food-type operations.

Griddle

Ovens

An oven is an enclosed space where food is cooked by being surrounded with hot, dry air. Conventional ovens are often located beneath the stove top. They have a heating element located at the unit's bottom or floor, and pans are placed on adjustable wire racks inside the oven's cavity. See Figure 5.3. Conventional ovens may also be separate, free-standing units or decks stacked one on top of the other. In stack ovens, pans are placed directly on the deck or floor and not on wire racks.

Convection ovens use internal fans to circulate the hot air. This tends to cook foods more quickly and evenly. Convection ovens are almost always free-standing units, powered either by gas or electricity. Because convection ovens cook foods more quickly, temperatures may need to be reduced by 25°F to 50°F (10°C to 20°C) from those recommended for conventional ovens.

Stack Oven

Microwave Ovens

Microwave ovens are electrically powered ovens used to cook or reheat foods. They are available in a range of sizes and power settings. Microwave ovens will not brown foods unless fitted with special browning elements. Microwave cooking is discussed in more detail in Chapter 9, Principles of Cooking.

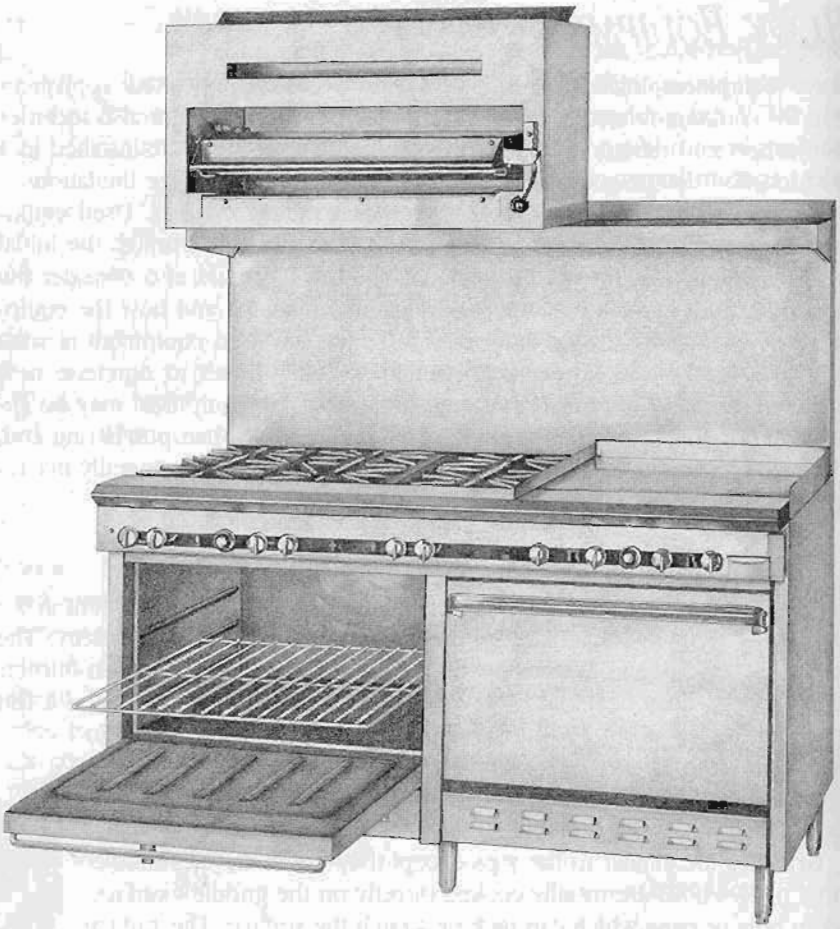
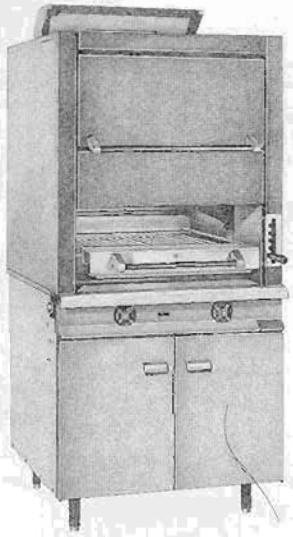


FIGURE 5.3 *Gas burner and flat-top range with dual ovens and an overhead broiler (salamander).*

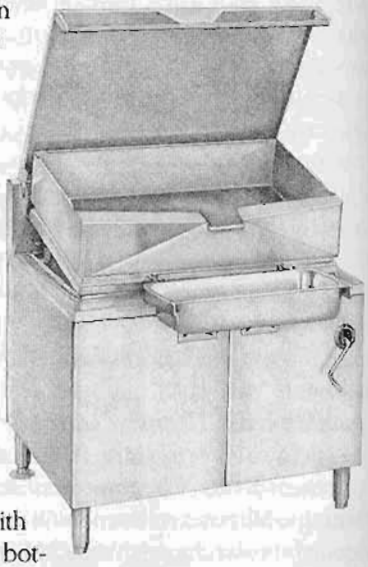


Overhead Broiler

Gas Grill

Broilers and Grills

Broilers and grills are generally used to prepare meats, fish and poultry. For a grill, the heat source is beneath the rack on which the food is placed. For a broiler, the heat source is above the food. Most broilers are gas powered; grills may be gas or electric or may burn wood or charcoal. A **salamander** is a small overhead broiler primarily used to finish or top-brown foods. See Figure 5.3. A **rotisserie** is similar to a broiler except that the food is placed on a revolving spit in front of the heat source. The unit may be open or enclosed like an oven; it is most often used for cooking poultry or meats.



Tilt Skillet

Tilting Skillets

Tilting skillets are large, free-standing, flat-bottomed pans about 6 inches deep with an internal heating element below the pan's bottom. They are usually made of stainless steel with

a cover, and have a hand-crank mechanism that turns or tilts the pan to pour out the contents. Tilting skillets can be used as stockpots, braziers, fry pans, griddles or steam tables, making them one of the most versatile of commercial appliances.

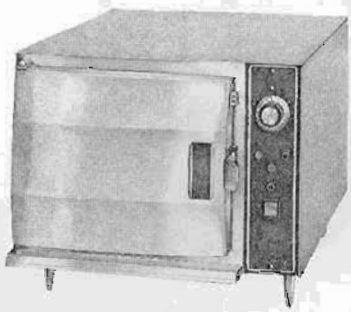
Steam Kettles

Steam kettles (also known as steam-jacketed kettles) are similar to stockpots except they are heated from the bottom and sides by steam circulating between layers of stainless steel. The steam may be generated internally or from an outside source. Because steam heats the kettle's sides, foods cook more quickly and evenly than they would in a pot sitting on the stove top. Steam kettles are most often used for making sauces, soups, custards or stocks. Steam kettles are available in a range of sizes, from a 2-gallon tabletop model to a 100-gallon floor model. Some models have a tilting mechanism that allows the contents to be poured out; others have a spigot near the bottom through which liquids can be drained.

Steam Kettle

Steamers

Pressure and convection steamers are used to cook foods rapidly and evenly, using direct contact with steam. Pressure steamers heat water above the boiling point in sealed compartments; the high temperature and sealed compartment increase the internal pressure in a range of 4 to 15 pounds per square inch. The increased pressure and temperature cook the foods rapidly. Convection steamers generate steam in an internal boiler, then release it over the foods in a cooking chamber. Both types of steamer are ideal for cooking vegetables with a minimal loss of flavor or nutrients.



Convection Steamer

Deep-Fat Fryers

Deep-fat fryers are used only to fry foods in hot fat. The fryers may be either gas or electric and should have thermostatic controls to maintain the fat at a preset temperature. Frying procedures are discussed in Chapter 21, Deep-Frying.

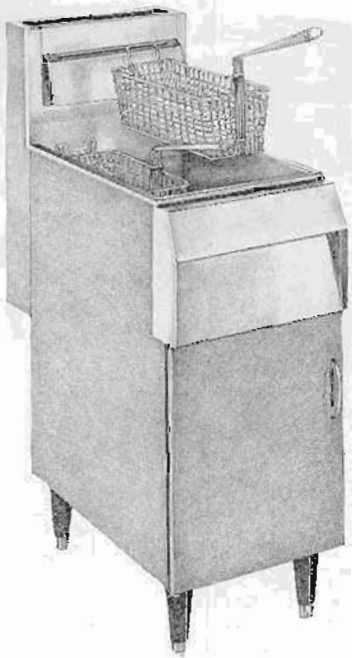
Refrigerators

Proper refrigeration space is an essential component of any kitchen. Many foods must be stored at low temperatures to maintain quality and safety. Most commercial refrigeration is of two types: walk-in units and reach-in or upright units.

A walk-in is a large, room-sized box capable of holding hundreds of pounds of food on adjustable shelves. A separate freezer walk-in may be positioned nearby or even inside a refrigerated walk-in.

Reach-ins may be individual units or parts of a bank of units, each with shelves approximately the size of a full sheet pan. Reach-in refrigerators and freezers are usually located throughout the kitchen to provide quick access to foods. Small units may also be placed beneath the work counters. Freezers and refrigerators are available in a wide range of sizes and door designs to suit any operation.

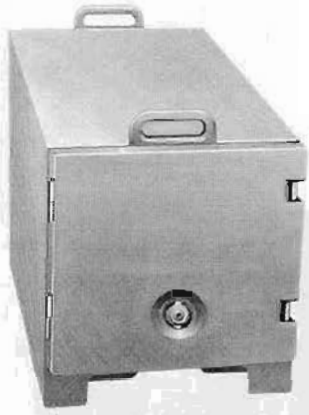
Other forms of commercial refrigeration include chilled drawers located beneath a work area that are just large enough to accommodate a hotel pan, and display cases used to show foods to the customer.



Deep-Fat Fryer

Dishwashers

Mechanical dishwashers are available to wash, rinse and sanitize dishware, glassware, cookware and utensils. Small models clean one rack of items at a time, while larger models can handle several racks simultaneously



Insulated Carrier

Heat Lamp

Chafing Dish

on a conveyor belt system. Sanitation is accomplished either with extremely hot water (180°F/82°C) or with chemicals automatically dispensed during the final rinse cycle. Any dishwashing area should be carefully organized for efficient use of equipment and employees, and to prevent recontamination of clean items.

BUFFET EQUIPMENT

Food service operations that prepare buffets or cater off-premise events need a variety of specialized equipment to ensure that food is handled safely and efficiently and displayed appropriately. Proper temperatures must be maintained during transportation, display and service.

Insulated carriers hold food at its current temperature for a time. They are designed to hold hotel pans or sheet pans, and are available with wheels for easy movement. Some are available with a spigot for serving hot or cold beverages. Any carrier should be easy to clean and of a convenient size for the space available and the type of operation.

Temperature remains a concern when arranging food on a buffet table. **Chafing dishes** are commonly used for keeping hot foods hot during service. Chafing dishes are designed so that cans of solid fuel can be placed under a deep hotel pan of hot water. Like a bain marie, the hot water then helps maintain the temperature of food placed in a second hotel pan suspended over the first. Chafing dishes, however, should never be used to heat food. Chafing dishes are available in several sizes and shapes, but the most convenient are those based on the size of a standard hotel pan. Round, deep chafing dishes are useful for serving soups or sauces. Exteriors can be plain or ornate, and made of silver, copper or stainless steel.

Roast beef, turkey, ham or other large cuts of meat are sometimes carved on a buffet in front of guests. **Heat lamps** can be used to keep these foods warm. Heat lamps are also useful for maintaining the temperature of pizza or fried foods, which might become soggy if held in a chafing dish.

Pastries, breads and cold foods can be arranged on a variety of platters, trays, baskets and serving pieces, depending on the size and style of the buffet. Some of the most elegant and traditional serving pieces are flat display mirrors. These may be plastic or glass and are available in a wide variety of shapes and sizes. The edges should be sealed in an easy-to-clean plastic to prevent chipping.

Although many of these items can be rented, operations that regularly serve buffets may prefer to invest in their own transportation and serving equipment.

SAFETY EQUIPMENT

Certain items are critical to the well-being of a food service operation although they are not used in food preparation. These are safety devices, many of which are required by federal, state or local law. Failing to include safety equipment in a kitchen or failing to maintain it properly endangers workers and customers.

TABLE 5.2 FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

Class	Symbol	Use
Class A	▲	Fires involving wood, paper, cloth or plastic
Class B	■	Fires involving oil, grease or flammable chemicals
Class C	●	Fires involving electrical equipment or wiring

Combination extinguishers—AB, BC and ABC—are also available.

Fire Extinguishers

Fire extinguishers are canisters of foam, dry chemicals (such as sodium bicarbonate or potassium bicarbonate) or pressurized water used to extinguish small fires. They must be placed within sight of and easily reached from the work areas in which fires are likely to occur. Different classes of extinguishers use different chemicals to fight different types of fires. The appropriate class must be used for the specific fire. See Table 5.2. Fire extinguishers must be recharged and checked from time to time. Be sure they have not been discharged, tampered with or otherwise damaged.

Ventilation Systems

Ventilation systems (also called ventilation hoods) are commonly installed over cooking equipment to remove vapors, heat and smoke. Some systems include fire extinguishing agents or sprinklers. A properly operating hood makes the kitchen more comfortable for the staff and reduces the danger of fire. The system should be designed, installed and inspected by professionals, then cleaned and maintained regularly.

First-Aid Kits

First-aid supplies should be stored in a clearly marked box, conspicuously located near food preparation areas. State and local laws may specify the kit's exact contents. Generally, they should include a first-aid manual, bandages, gauze dressings, adhesive tape, antiseptics, scissors, cold packs and other supplies. The kit should be checked regularly and items replaced as needed. In addition, cards with emergency telephone numbers should be placed inside the first-aid kit and near a telephone.

THE PROFESSIONAL KITCHEN

The kitchen is the heart of the food service operation. There, food and other items are received, stored, prepared and plated for service; dining room staff places orders, retrieves foods ready for service and returns dirty service items; dishes and other wares are cleaned and stored; and the chef conducts business. But commercial space is expensive, and most food service operators recognize that the greater number of customers served, the greater the revenues. Often this translates into a large dining area and small kitchen and storage facilities. Therefore, when designing a kitchen, it is important to use the space wisely so that each of its functions can be accomplished efficiently.

Alexis Soyer (1809–1858)

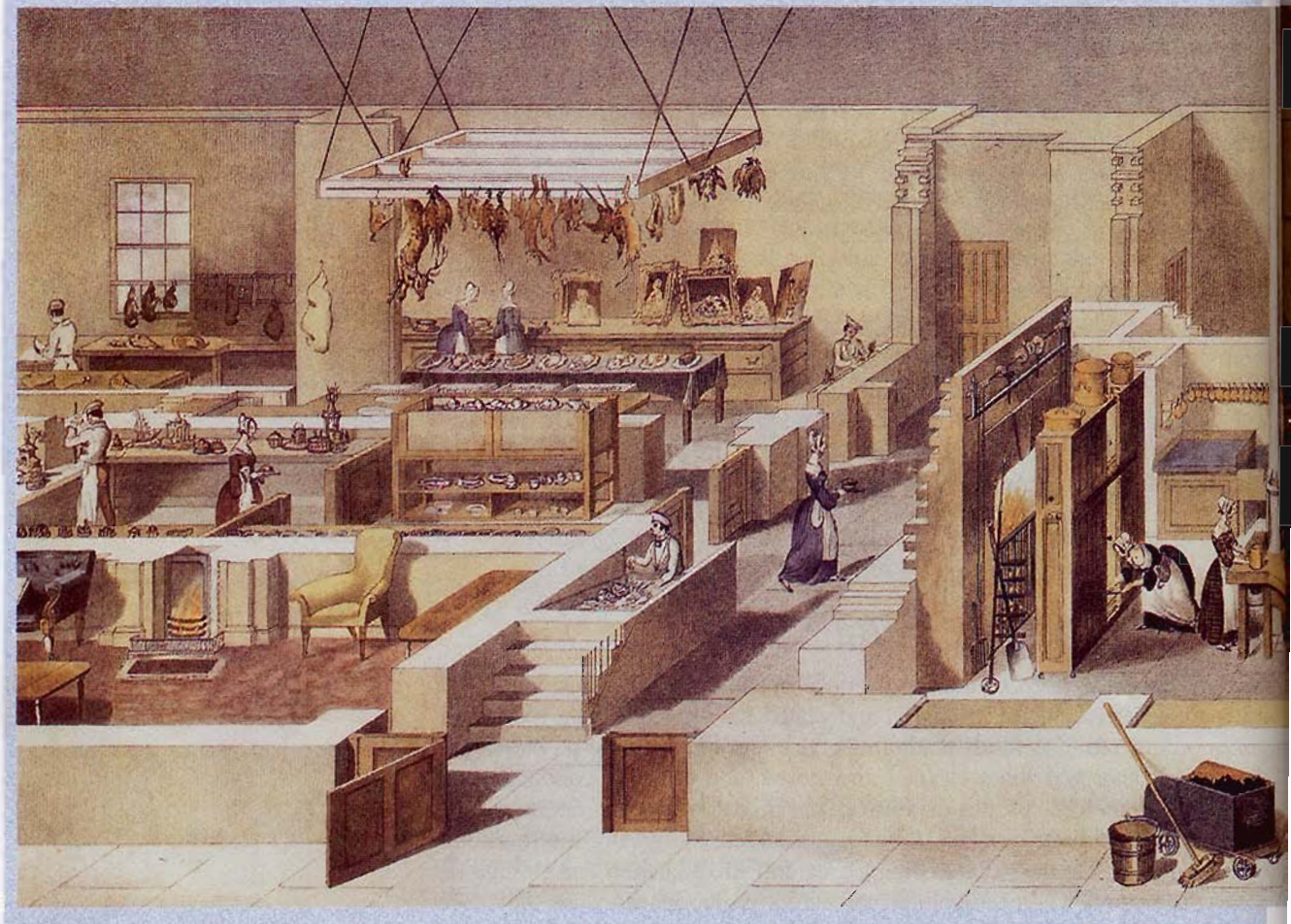
The father of the contemporary celebrity chef was Alexis Soyer, a Frenchman whose tragically short working life was spent mostly in London. He was a flamboyant, talented and egocentric showman. He was also a renowned chef, restaurateur, social activist, author, purveyor of prepared foods and inventor.

In 1831, Soyer left his thriving catering business and restaurant in Paris for London. (A scandal was rumored to be behind his sudden departure.) There he quickly established a reputation as a talented chef in the latest French fashion. By 1838, he was employed at a gentlemen's club called the Reform. Able to assist in planning the club's new kitchen facility, Soyer installed the most modern equipment: gas ovens with temperature controls, a steam-driven mechanical spit and a storage locker cooled by running water. From this modern kitchen he produced his signature dish: lamb chops Reform.

Alexis Soyer
Photo courtesy of Barbara Wheaton.

The Reform was founded by members of the Liberal party, a political party interested in social reform. Their chef soon joined the party

"The Kitchen Department of the Reform Club" (1841). "To show them at one glance," wrote the *Spectator*, "the partition walls are cut away, and a bird's eye view is given of the several kitchens, larders, scullieries, and batterie de cuisine; the different functionaries are at their posts, and the accomplished chef, Monsieur Soyer, is in the act of pointing out to a favoured visitor the various contrivances suggested by his ingenuity and experience."



ranks. He developed recipes for inexpensive, nutritious soups for the working class and in 1847 went to Ireland and opened soup kitchens to feed those who were starving as a result of the Potato Famine.

His most important writings reflect his interests in good food for the masses. The intended audience for *The Modern Housewife* (1849) was the middle class; the growing urban working class was the intended audience for his second book, *A Schilling Cookery for the People* (1855).

In 1851, Soyer opened his own lavishly decorated and expensively equipped restaurant called the Gastronomic Symposium of All Nations. It closed shortly thereafter, in part because of Soyer's debts, in part because he lost his operating license as a result of the rowdiness in the restaurant's American-style bar, at which customers were publicly served cocktails for the first time in London.

In addition to cooking and writing, Soyer created and marketed several prepared food items: Soyer's Sauce, Soyer's Nectar and Soyer's Relish. He was also fascinated with kitchen gadgets and invented several, including a sink stopper, jelly mold, egg cooker and coffeepot. The most notable, however, was a portable "Magic Stove" weighing less than 4 pounds, similar to a modern chafing dish. Soyer's final triumph was in the Crimean War (1854--1857). He developed army rations, reorganized field and hospital kitchens and introduced one of his last inventions, the campaign stove. Portable, efficient and requiring little fuel, it was used by the British army for the next 90 years.

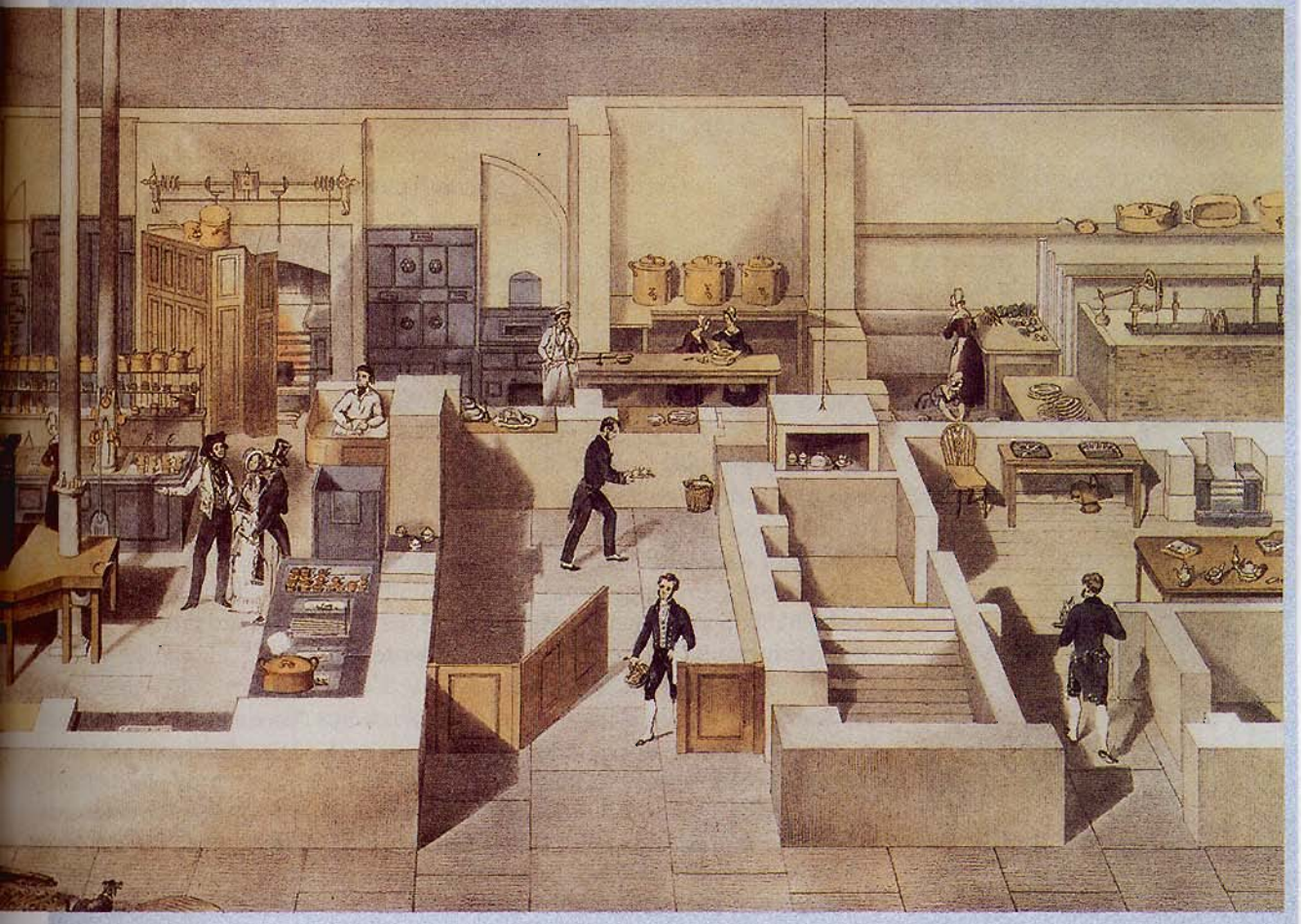


TABLE 5.3 WORK SECTIONS AND THEIR STATIONS

Sections	Stations
Hot-foods section	Broiler station Fry station Griddle station Sauté/sauce station Holding
Garde-manger section	Salad greens cleaning Salad preparation Cold foods preparation Sandwich station Showpiece preparation
Bakery section	Mixing station Dough holding and proofing Dough rolling and forming Baking and cooling Dessert preparation* Frozen dessert preparation* Plating desserts*
Banquet section	Steam cooking Dry heat cooking (roasting, broiling) Holding and plating
Short-order section	Griddle station Fry station Broiler station
Beverage section	Hot beverage station Cold beverage station Alcoholic beverage station

*These stations are sometimes found in the *garde-manger* section.

Regardless of the kitchen's size, its design begins with a consideration of the tasks to be performed. Analyzing the menu identifies these tasks. A restaurant featuring steaks and chops, for example, will need areas to fabricate and grill meats. If it relies on commercially prepared desserts and breads, it will not need a bakeshop but will still need space to hold and plate baked goods.

Once all food preparation tasks are identified, a work area for each particular task is designated. These work areas are called **work stations**. At a steak restaurant, an important work station is the broiler. If the restaurant serves fried foods, it will also need a fry station. The size and design of each work station is determined by the volume of food the operation intends to produce.

Usually work stations using the same or similar equipment for related tasks are grouped into **work sections**. See Table 5.3. (Note that work stations correspond to the kitchen brigade system discussed in Chapter 1, Professionalism.) For example, in a typical full-service restaurant, there will be a single hot-foods section. It can consist of broiler, fry, griddle, sauté and sauce stations. Both advance preparation and last-minute cooking may be performed in the hot-foods section. The principal cooking equipment (a range, broiler, deep-fat fryer, oven, griddle, and so on) will be arranged in a line under a ventilation hood. A typical plan for this hot-foods section is shown in Figure 5.4. Although each work station within the hot-foods section may be staffed by a different line cook, the proximity of the stations allows one line cook to cover more than one station if the kitchen is short-handed or when business is slow.

Merely considering the plan of the work station or section is not enough, however. When designing the work area, one must also consider the elevation. That is, a kitchen designer not only examines what equipment should be placed next to the other (for example, the range next to the deep-fat fryer), but also what equipment and storage facilities can be placed beneath or on top of the other. For example, in a bakeshop, rolling storage carts for flour and sugar or an under-the-counter refrigerator for eggs and dairy products may be located beneath the work surface, while mixing bowls and dry ingredients are stored on shelves above. Figure 5.5 illustrates the elevation for the hot-foods section whose plan is shown in Figure 5.4. Ideally, each station should be designed so that the cook takes no more than three steps in any direction to perform all of his or her assigned station tasks.

In addition to the work sections where the menu items are produced, a typical restaurant kitchen includes areas dedicated to:

1. *Receiving and storing foods and other items.* There should be separate freezer, refrigerator and dry-goods storage facilities. Each should have proper temperature, humidity and light controls in order to properly and safely maintain the stored items. Depending upon the operation's size and the work stations' specific needs, either there can be a central storage area or each station or section can maintain its own storage facilities. Typically, however, there is a combination of central and section storage. For example, up to 100 pounds of flour and sugar can be stored in rolling bins

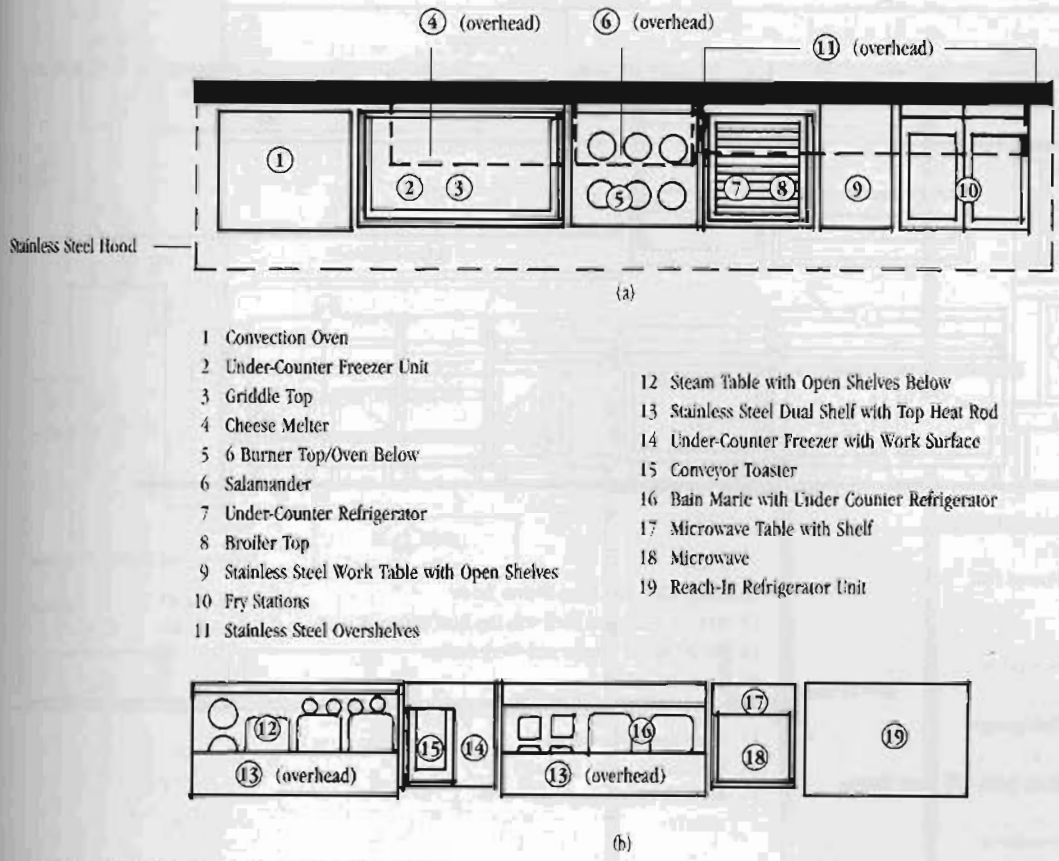


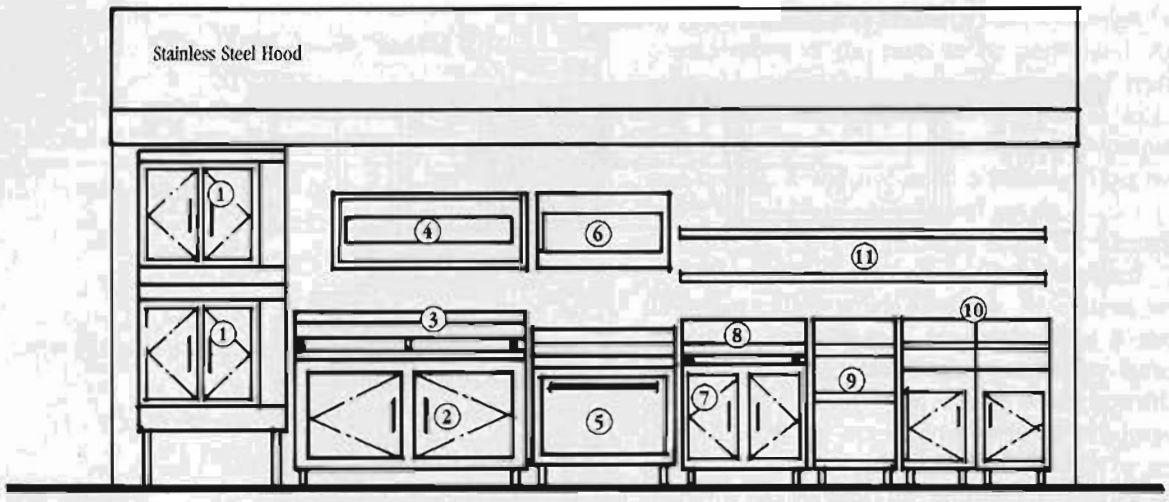
FIGURE 5.4 *Typical Hot-Foods Section Floor Plan*

under a work table in the bakeshop, while several hundreds of pounds more remain in a central dry goods area. Similarly, one box of salt can be stored near the hot line for immediate use, while the remainder of the case is stored in a central dry goods area. Additional storage space will be needed for cleaning and paper supplies, dishes and other service ware. *Never store cleaning supplies and other chemicals with foods.*

2. *Washing dishes and other equipment.* These dish- and equipment-washing facilities should have their own sinks. Food-preparation and hand-washing sinks should be separate.
3. *Employee use.* Restrooms, locker facilities and an office are also found in most food service facilities.

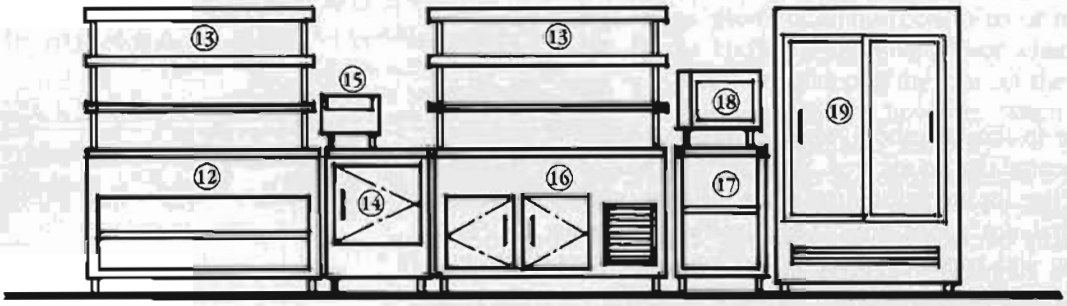
The guiding principle behind a good kitchen design is to maximize the flow of goods and staff from one area to the next and within each area itself. Maximizing flow creates an efficient work environment and helps reduce preparation and service time.

Figure 5.6 shows the several sections of a professional kitchen. It includes an area for front-of-the-house staff to circulate, drop off orders, retrieve finished dishes and return dirty dishes. The design accounts for the flow of foods from receiving, to storage, to food preparation areas, to holding and service areas and then to the dining room as well as the flow of dirty dishes from the dining room back into the kitchen. The work sections are arranged to take ad-



(a)

1 Convection Oven
2 Under-Counter Freezer Unit
3 Griddle Top
4 Cheese Melter
5 6 Burner Top/Oven Below
6 Salamander
7 Under-Counter Refrigerator
8 Broiler Top
9 Stainless Steel Work Table with Open Shelves
10 Fry Stations
11 Stainless Steel Overshelves
12 Steam Table with Open Shelves Below
13 Stainless Steel Dual Shelf with Top Heat Rod
14 Under-Counter Freezer with Work Surface
15 Conveyor Toaster
16 Bain Marie with Under Counter Refrigerator
17 Microwave Table with Shelf
18 Microwave
19 Reach-In Refrigerator Unit



(b)

FIGURE 5.5 *Typical Hot-Foods Section Elevation*

vantage of shared equipment. For instance, by placing the bakeshop next to the hot-foods section, they can share ovens. The *garde-manger* and dessert sections, both of which rely on refrigerated foods, are conveniently located near the walk-in refrigerator and freezer area. The beverage station is located near the dining room entrance so that food servers do not have to walk through food preparation areas to fill beverage orders. The office is next to receiving so that the chef can easily check and receive orders. The central storage areas are easily accessible to the receiving area as well as to the food production areas, while the cleaning-supply storage is near the dishwashing area. In general, the design eliminates the need for staff from one work station or section to cross through another station or section.

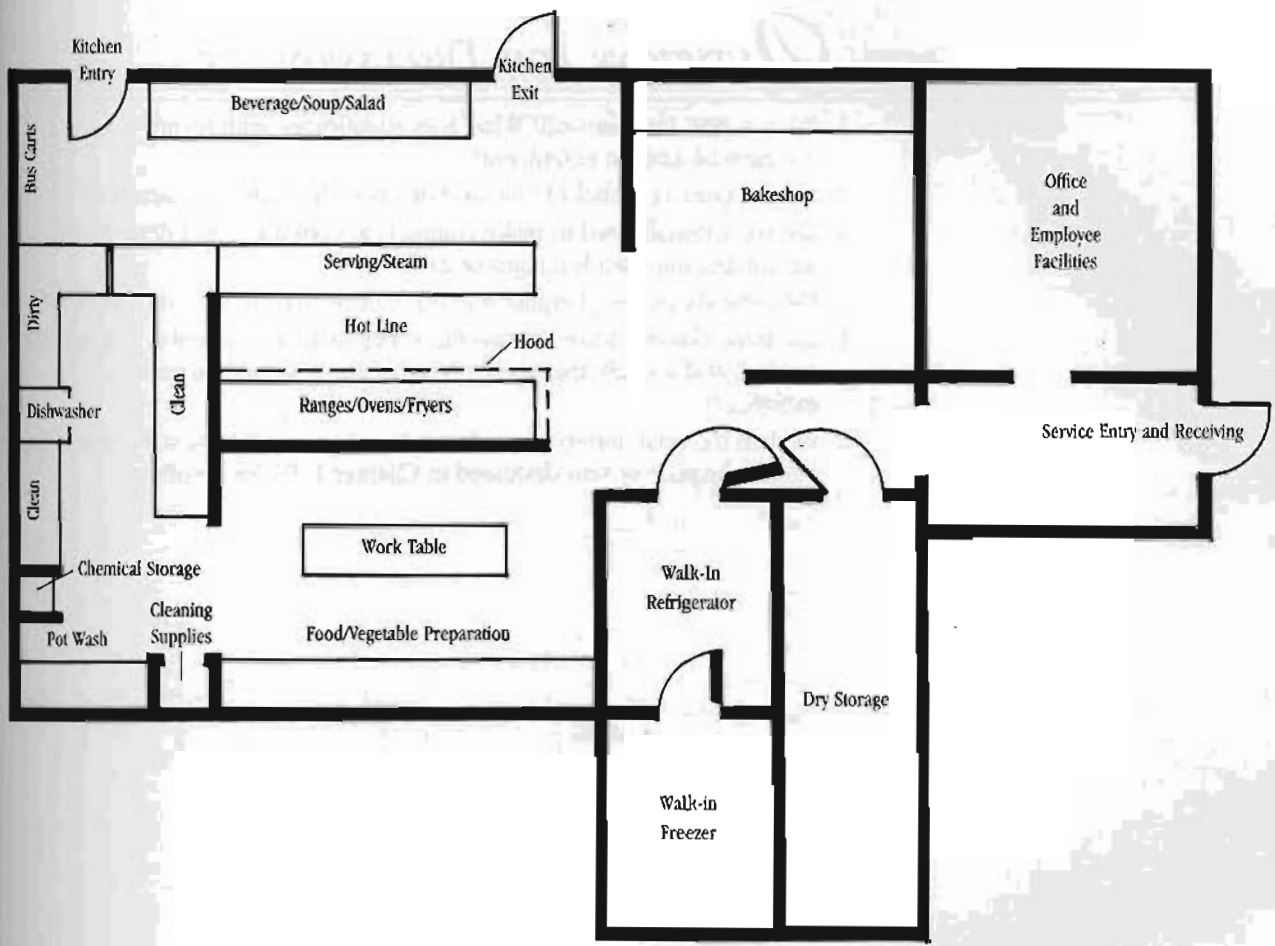


FIGURE 5.6 *Diagram of Kitchen*

Governmental building, health, fire and safety codes will dictate, to a degree, certain aspects of a professional kitchen's design. But to make the most of these spaces, the well-designed kitchen should reflect a sound understanding of the tasks to be performed and the equipment necessary to perform them.

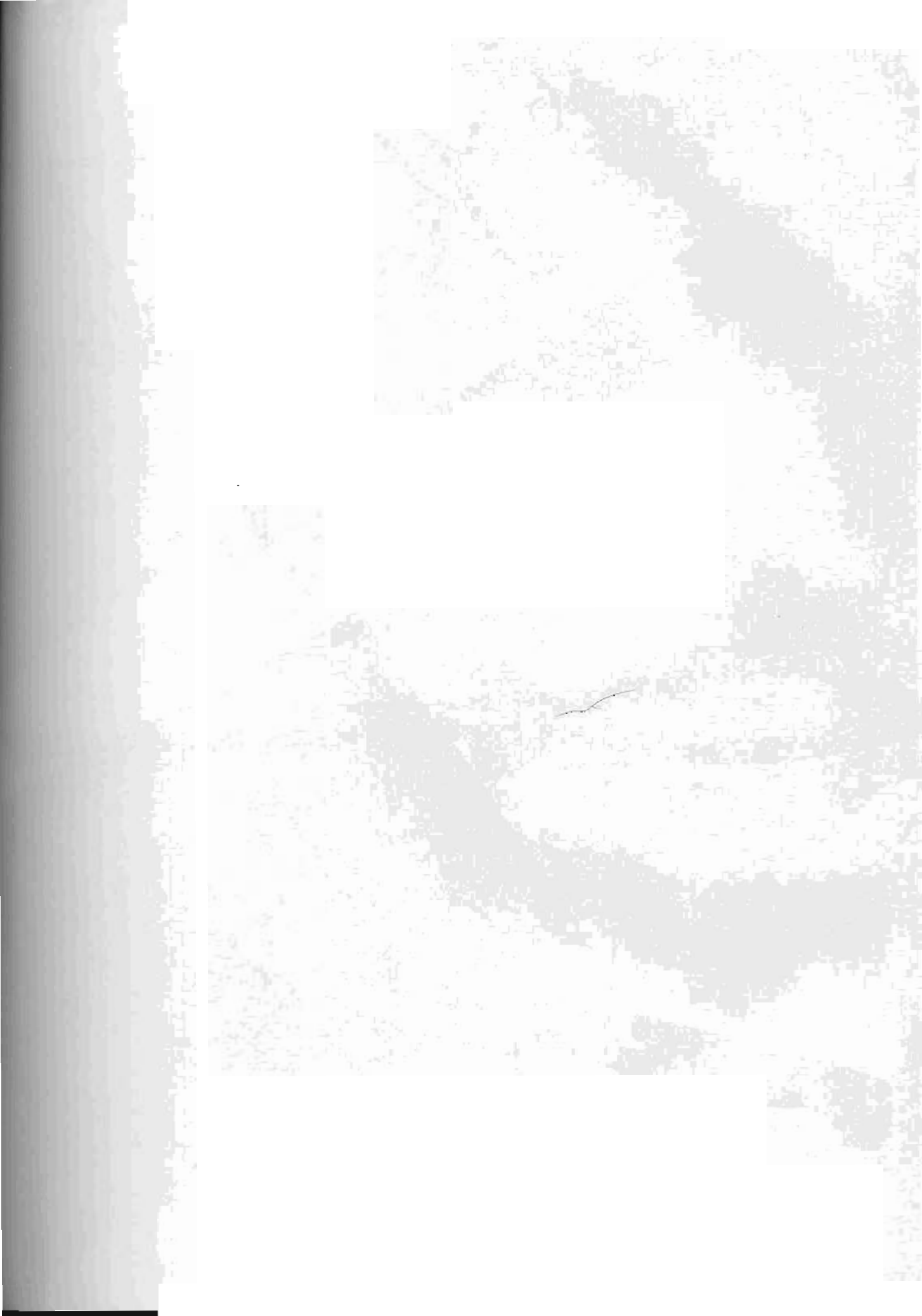
CONCLUSION

Hundreds of tools and pieces of equipment can help you prepare, cook, store and present food. Every year, manufacturers offer new or improved items. Throughout your career, you will use many of them. Select those that are well constructed, durable and best suited for the task at hand. Then use them in a safe and efficient manner.

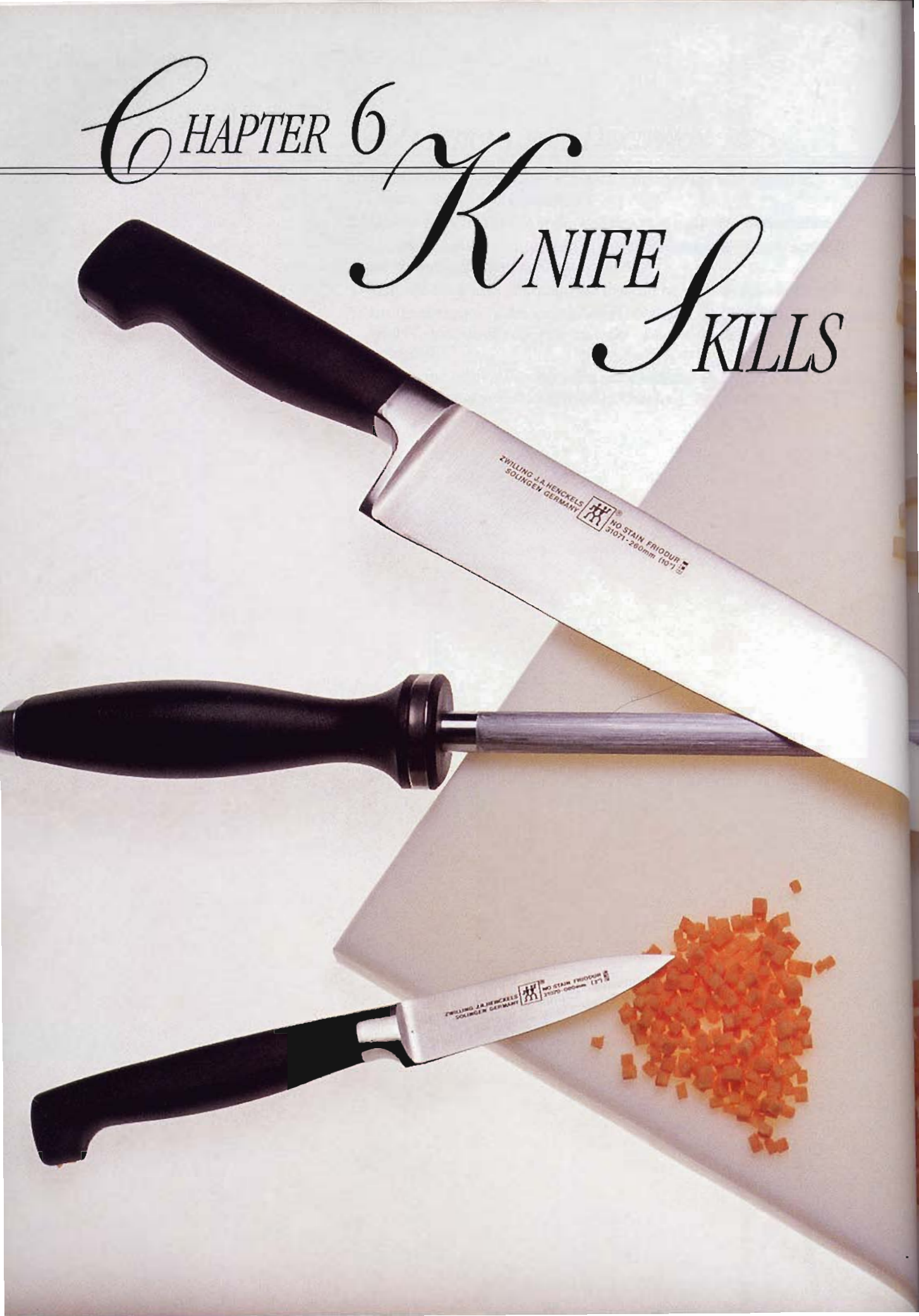
The way in which equipment is arranged and stored in a kitchen is also important. Good kitchen design emphasizes the efficient flow of goods and staff from one work section to another as well as within each work section or station.

Questions for Discussion

1. What is NSF International? What is its significance with regard to commercial kitchen equipment?
2. List the parts of a chef's knife, and describe the knife's construction.
3. List six materials used to make commercial cookware, and describe the advantages and disadvantages of each.
4. Describe six pieces of equipment that can be used to slice or chop foods.
5. List three classes of fire extinguishers. For each one, describe its designating symbol, and identify the type or types of fire it should be used to extinguish.
6. Explain the relationship between work sections and work stations and the kitchen brigade system discussed in Chapter 1, Professionalism.



CHAPTER 6 KNIFE SKILLS



After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- care for knives properly
- use knives properly
- cut foods into a variety of classic shapes

Every professional must become skilled in the use of certain tools. The professional chef is no exception. One of the most important tools the student chef must master is the knife. Good knife skills are critical to a chef's success because the knife is the most commonly used tool in the kitchen. Every chef spends countless hours slicing, dicing, mincing and chopping. Learning to perform these tasks safely and efficiently is an essential part of your training.

At first, professional knives may feel large and awkward and the techniques discussed in this chapter may not seem all that efficient. But as you become familiar with knives and practice your knife skills, using knives correctly will become second nature.

Knives are identified in Chapter 5, Tools and Equipment. Here we show how they are used to cut vegetables. The techniques presented, however, can be used for most any food that holds its shape when cut. Knife skills for butchering and fabricating meat, poultry, fish and shellfish are discussed in Chapter 12, Principles of Meat Cookery, through Chapter 19, Fish and Shellfish.

A note about language: Many of the classic cuts are known by their French names: julienne, for example. Although these words are nouns and entered the English language as nouns (for example, a julienne *of carrot), they are also used as verbs (to* julienne *a carrot) and adjectives (*julienned *carrots).*

Using Your Knife Safely

The first rule of knife safety is to *think about what you are doing*. Other basic rules of knife safety are:

1. Use the correct knife for the task at hand.
2. Always cut away from yourself.
3. Always cut on a cutting board. Do not cut on glass, marble or metal.
4. Keep knives sharp; a dull knife is more dangerous than a sharp one.
5. When carrying a knife, hold it point down, parallel and close to your leg as you walk.
6. A falling knife has no handle. Do not attempt to catch a falling knife; step back and allow it to fall.
7. Never leave a knife in a sink of water; anyone reaching into the sink could be injured or the knife could be dented by pots or other utensils.

CARING FOR YOUR KNIFE

Knife Sharpening

A sharpening stone called a **whetstone** is used to put an edge on a dull knife blade. To use a whetstone, place the heel of the blade against the whetstone at a 20-degree angle. Keeping that angle, press down on the blade while pushing it away from you in one long arc, as if to slice off a thin piece of the stone. The entire length of the blade should come in contact with the stone during each sweep. Repeat the procedure on both sides of the blade until sufficiently sharp. With a triple-faced stone, such as that shown to the right, you progress from the coarsest to the finest surface. Any whetstone can be moistened with either water or mineral oil, but not both. Do not use vegetable oil on a whetstone since it will soon become rancid and gummy.

A **steel** does not sharpen a knife. Instead, it is used to hone or straighten the blade immediately after and between sharpenings. To use a steel, place the blade against the steel at a 20-degree angle. Then draw the blade along the entire length of the steel. Repeat the technique several times on each side of the blade.

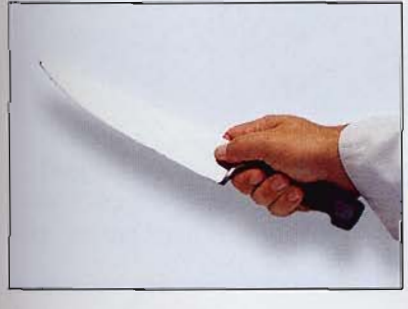
A final note on knife care: Do not wash knives in commercial dishwashers. The heat and harsh chemicals can damage the edge and the handle. The blade can also be damaged if it knocks against cookware or utensils. In addition, the knife could injure an unsuspecting worker. Always wash and dry your knives by hand immediately after each use.

When sharpening a knife against a three-sided whetstone, go from the coarsest to the finest surface.

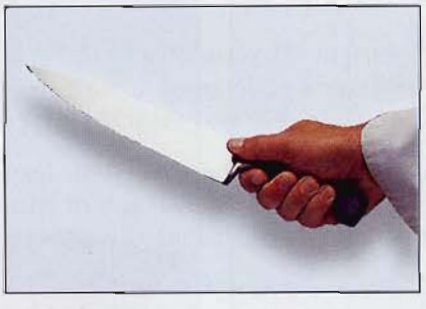
Honing a knife against a steel straightens the blade between sharpenings.

GRIPPING YOUR KNIFE

There are several different ways to grip a knife. Use the grip that is most comfortable for you or the one dictated by the job at hand. Whichever grip you use should be firm but not so tight that your hand becomes tired. Gripping styles are shown below.



The most common grip: Hold the handle with three fingers while gripping the blade between the thumb and index finger.



A variation on the most common grip: Grip the handle with four fingers and place the thumb on the front of the handle.

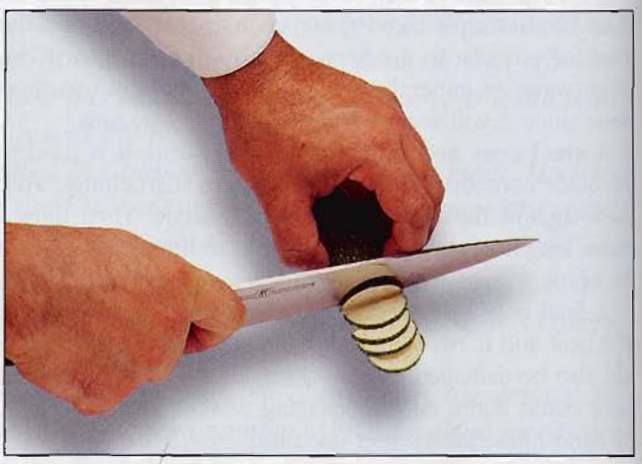
The underhand grip for a rigid boning knife: Grip the handle in a fist with four fingers and thumb. This grip allows you to use the knife tip to cut around joints and separate flesh from bone when boning meat and poultry.

CONTROLLING YOUR KNIFE

To safely produce even cuts, you must control (or guide) your knife with one hand and hold the item being cut with the other. Always allow the blade's sharp edge to do the cutting. Never force the blade through the item being cut. Use smooth, even strokes. Using a dull knife or excessive force with any knife produces, at best, poor results and, at worst, a significant safety risk. Cutting without using your hand as a guide may also be dangerous. Two safe cutting methods that produce good results are shown below.

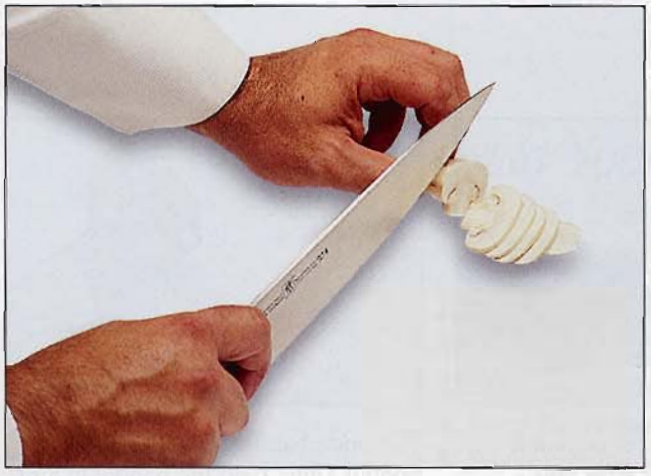
Method A

1. Keeping your fingertips curled back, grip the item being cut with three fingertips and your thumb. Hold the knife in the other hand. While keeping the knife's tip on the cutting board, lift the heel of the knife.

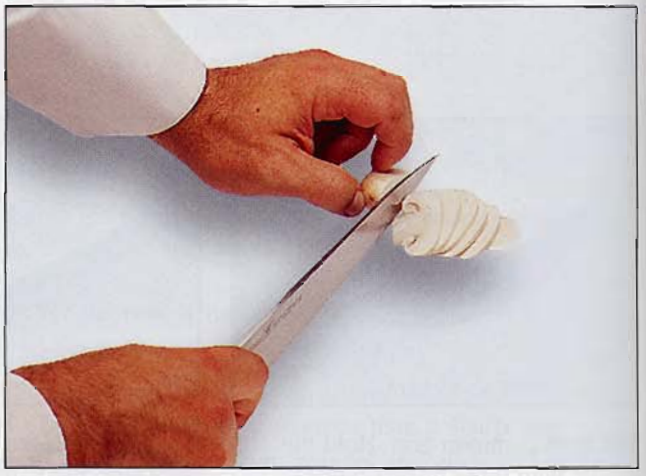


2. Using the second joint of your index finger as a guide, cut a slice using a smooth, even, downward stroke. Adjust the position of the guiding finger after each slice to produce slices of equal size. After a few cuts, slide your fingertips and thumb down the length of the item and continue slicing. For this slicing technique, the knife's tip acts as the fulcrum.

Method B



1. Grip the item as described above. Using the second joint of your index finger as a guide, lift the knife's tip and slice by drawing the knife slightly back toward you and down through the item, cutting the item to the desired thickness.



2. The motion of the knife should come almost entirely from the wrist, not the elbow. Allow the weight of the knife to do most of the work; very little downward pressure needs to be applied to the knife. For this slicing technique, your wrist should act as the fulcrum.

CUTTING WITH YOUR KNIFE

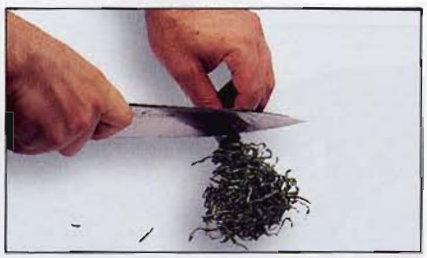
A knife is used to shape and reduce an item's size. Uniformity of size and shape ensures even cooking and enhances the appearance of the finished product. Items are shaped by slicing, chopping, dicing, mincing and other special cutting techniques.

Slicing

To slice is to cut an item into relatively broad, thin pieces. Slices may be either the finished cut or the first step in producing other cuts. Slicing is typically used to create three specialty cuts: the chiffonade, rondelle and diagonal. Slicing skills are also used to produce oblique or roll cuts, and lozenges.

A **chiffonade** is a preparation of finely sliced or shredded leafy vegetables used as a garnish or a base under cold presentations. As shown here, slicing spinach *en chiffonade* is a relatively simple process.

1. Wash and destem the leaves as necessary. Stack several leaves on top of each other and roll them tightly like a cigar.

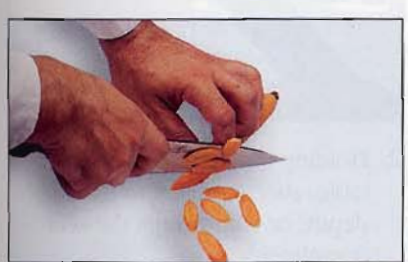


2. Make fine slices across the leaves while holding the leaf roll tightly.

As seen below, **rondelles** or **rounds** are easily made disk-shaped slices of cylindrical vegetables or fruits.

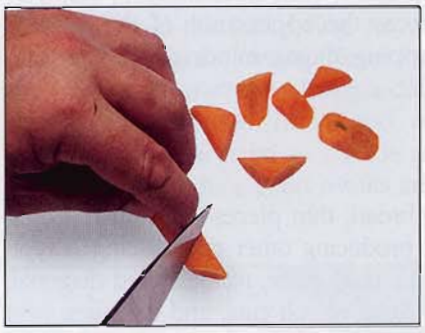
Peel the item (if desired) and place it on a cutting board. Make even slices perpendicular to the item being cut.

Diagonals are elongated or oval-shaped slices of cylindrical vegetables or fruits. They are produced with a cut similar to that used to cut rondelles except that the knife is held at an angle to the item being cut.



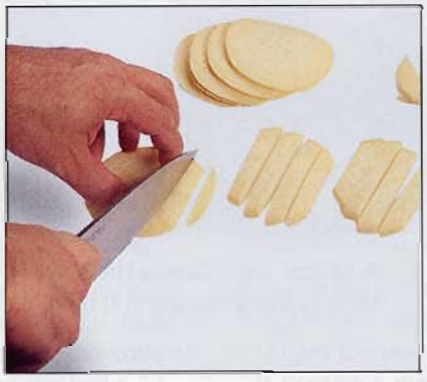
Peel the item (if desired) and place it on a cutting board. Position the knife at the desired angle to the item being cut and slice it evenly.

Oblique or roll-cut items are small pieces with two angle-cut sides. It is a relatively simple cut most often used on carrots and parsnips.



Place the peeled item on a cutting board. Holding the knife at a 45-degree angle, make the first cut. Roll the item a half turn, keeping the knife at the same angle, and make another cut. The result is a wedge-shaped piece with two angled sides.

Lozenges are diamond-shaped cuts prepared from firm vegetables such as carrots, turnips, rutabagas and potatoes.



1. Slice the item into long slices of the desired thickness. Then cut the slices into strips of the desired width.

2. Cut the strips at an angle to produce diamond shapes.

Horizontal Slicing

Butterfly—*to slice boneless meat, poultry or fish nearly in half lengthwise so that it spreads open like a book.*

To horizontal slice is to **butterfly** or cut a pocket into meats, poultry or fish. It is also a method of cutting used to thinly slice soft vegetables.

1. With your hand opened and your fingers arched upward, hold the item to be cut firmly in the center of your palm.

2. Holding the knife parallel to the table, slice a pocket to the desired depth, or cut through the item completely.

Chopping

To chop is to cut an item into small pieces where uniformity of size and shape is neither necessary (for example, coarsely chopped onions for a *mirepoix* that will be removed from the stock before service) nor feasible (for example, parsley).

Coarse Chopping

Coarse chopping does not mean carelessly hacking up food. Rather, the procedure is identical to that used for slicing but without the emphasis on uniformity. Coarsely chopped pieces should measure approximately 3/4 inch × 3/4 inch × 3/4 inch (2 cm × 2 cm × 2 cm).

Grip the knife as for slicing. Hold the item being chopped with your other hand. It may not be necessary to use your finger as a guide because uniformity is not crucial.

Chopping Parsley and Similar Foods

Parsley can be cut very coarsely or very finely. As shown below, it is easy to chop parsley and similar foods properly regardless of the desired fineness.

1. Wash the parsley in cold water; drain well. Remove the parsley sprigs from the stems.

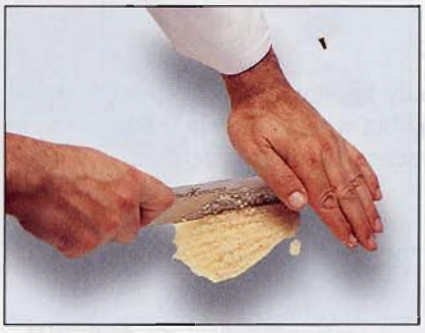
2. Grip the knife in one hand. With the other hand spread flat, hold the knife's tip on the cutting board. Keeping the knife's tip on the board, chop the parsley sprigs by rocking the curved blade of the knife up and down while moving the knife back and forth over the parsley.

3. Place the chopped parsley in a clean kitchen towel or a double layer of cheesecloth. Rinse it under cold water and squeeze out as much water as possible. The chopped parsley should be dry and fluffy.

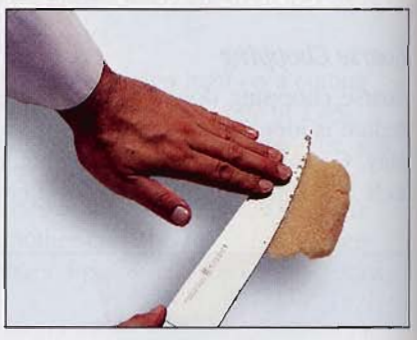
Chopping Garlic

A daily chore in many food service facilities, peeling and chopping garlic is a simple job made easy with the procedure shown here.

1. Break the head of garlic into individual cloves with your hands. Lightly crush the cloves using the flat edge of a chef's knife or a mallet. They will break open and the peel can be separated easily from the garlic flesh.



2. With a flat hand, hold the knife's tip on the cutting board. Using a rocking motion, chop the garlic cloves to the desired size. Garlic is usually chopped very finely.



3. Garlic paste can be made by first finely chopping the garlic and then turning the knife on an angle and repeatedly dragging the edge of the knife along the cutting board, mashing the garlic.

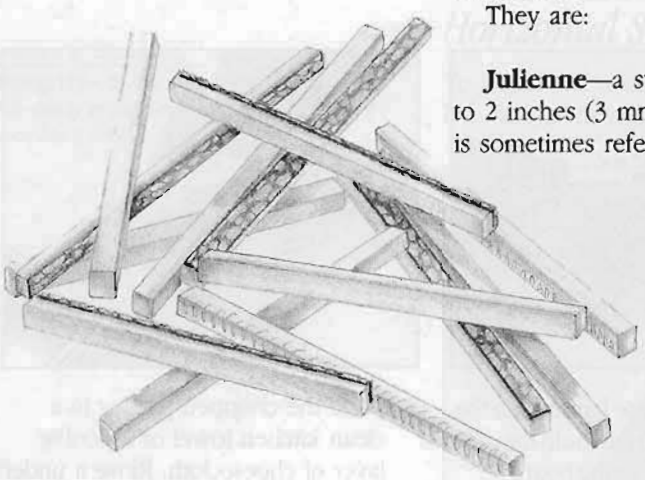
Cutting Sticks and Dicing

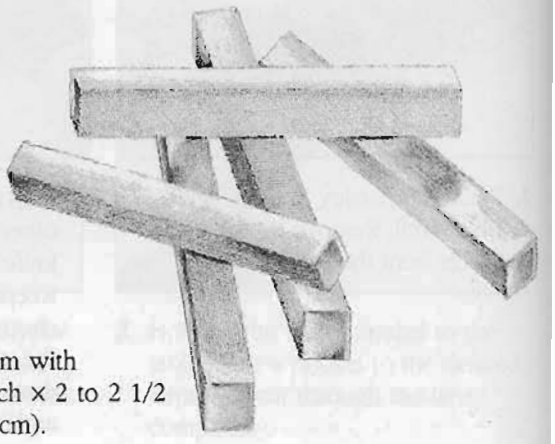
To dice is to cut an item into cubes. The techniques described here are most often used when uniformity of size and shape is important (for example, julienned carrots for a salad or brunoised vegetables for a garnish).

Before an item can be diced, it must be cut into sticks such as juliennes and batonnets. These sticks are then reduced through dicing into the classic cuts known as brunoise, small dice, medium dice, large dice and paysanne. Although most cooks have some notion of what size and shape "small diced" potatoes or julienne carrots may be, there are specific sizes and shapes for these cuts.

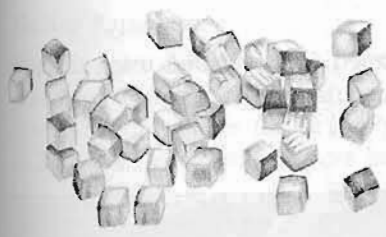
They are:

Julienne—a stick-shaped item with dimensions of 1/8 inch × 1/8 inch × 1 to 2 inches (3 mm × 3 mm × 2.5 to 5 cm). When used with potatoes, this cut is sometimes referred to as an *allumette*.





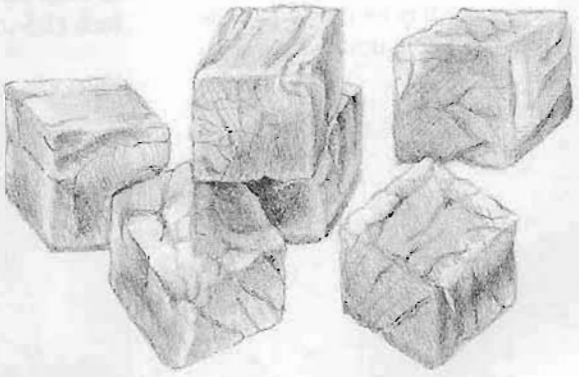
Batonnet—a stick-shaped item with dimensions of 1/4 inch × 1/4 inch × 2 to 2 1/2 inches (6 mm × 6 mm × 5 to 6 cm).



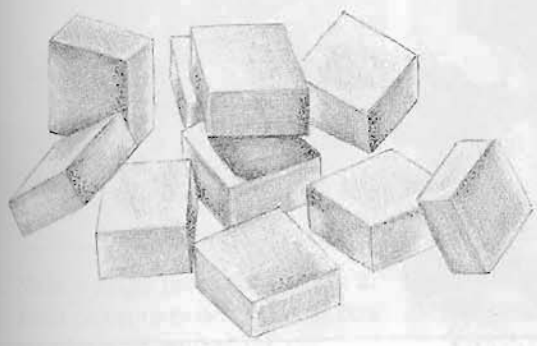
Brunoise—a cube-shaped item with dimensions of 1/8 inch × 1/8 inch × 1/8 inch (3 mm × 3 mm × 3 mm).

Small dice—a cube-shaped item with dimensions of 1/4 inch × 1/4 inch × 1/4 inch (6 mm × 6 mm × 6 mm).

Medium dice—a cube-shaped item with dimensions of 3/8 inch × 3/8 inch × 3/8 inch (9 mm × 9 mm × 9 mm).



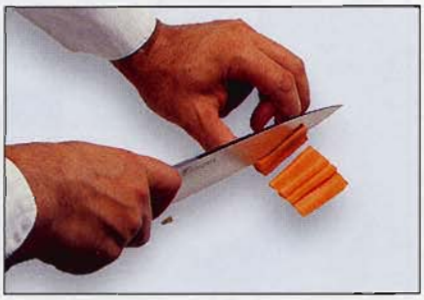
Large dice—a cube-shaped item with dimensions of 5/8 inch × 5/8 inch × 5/8 inch (1.5 cm × 1.5 cm × 1.5 cm).



Paysanne—a flat, square-shaped item with dimensions of 1/2 inch × 1/2 inch × 1/4 inch (1.2 cm × 1.2 cm × 6 mm).

Cutting Julienne and Batonnet

Julienne and batonnet are matchstick-shaped cuts prepared using the same procedure as cutting sticks for dicing.

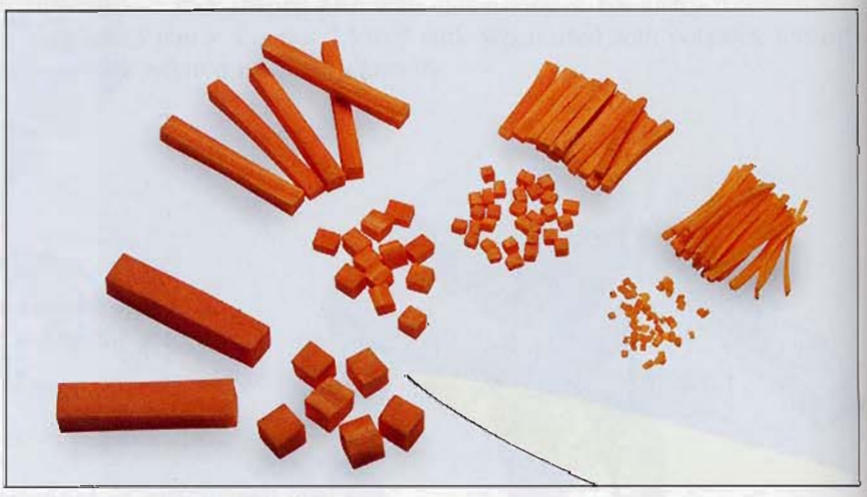


1. Peel the item (if desired) and square off the sides. Trim the item so that the slices cut from it will be the proper length. Cut even slices of the desired thickness, 1/8 inch (3 mm) for julienne or 1/4 inch (6 mm) for batonnet.

2. Stack the slices and cut them evenly into sticks (also referred to as "planks") that are the same thickness as the slices.

Cutting Brunoise and Small, Medium and Large Dice

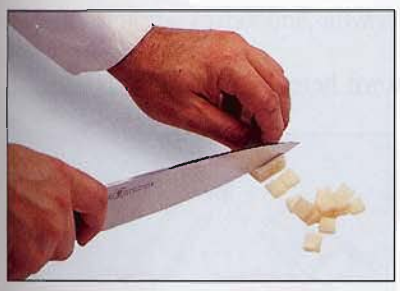
Brunoise as well as small, medium and large dice are made by first cutting the item into sticks following the procedure for cutting julienne or batonnet, then making cuts perpendicular to the length of the sticks to produce small cubes. Making a 1/8-inch (3-mm) cut perpendicular to the length of a julienne produces a brunoise. Making a 1/4-inch (6-mm) cut perpendicular to the length of a batonnet produces a small dice. A 3/8-inch (9-mm) cut from a 3/8-inch (9-mm) stick produces a medium dice, and a 5/8-inch (1.5-cm) cut from a 5/8-inch (1.5-cm) stick produces a large dice.



Julienne and batonnet sticks and the large, medium, small and brunoise dices cut from them.

Cutting Paysanne

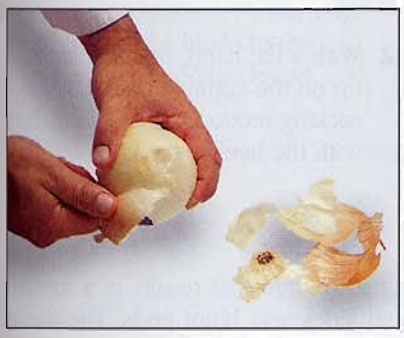
Paysanne is a classic vegetable cut for garnishing soups and other dishes. It resembles a 1/2-inch dice that has been cut in half. It is produced by following the procedures for dicing, but in the final step the 1/2-inch × 1/2-inch (1.2-cm × 1.2-cm) sticks are cut into slices 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick.



Cutting paysanne from a 1/2-inch × 1/2-inch (6-mm × 6-mm) stick.

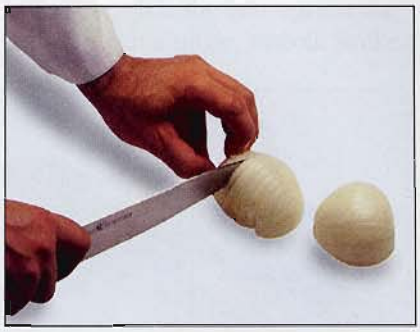
Dicing an Onion

Onions are easily peeled and diced to any size desired using the procedure shown here.

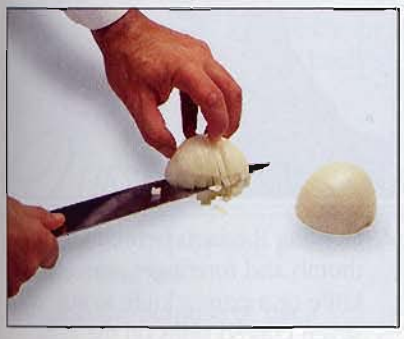


1. Using a paring knife, remove the stem end. Trim the root end but leave it nearly intact (this helps prevent the onion from falling apart while dicing). Peel away the outer skin; be careful not to remove and waste too much onion.

2. Cut the onion in half through the stem and root. Place the cut side down on the cutting board.



3. Cut parallel slices of the desired thickness vertically through the onion from the root toward the stem end without cutting completely through the root end.



4. Make a single horizontal cut on a small onion or two horizontal cuts on a large onion through the width of the onion, again without cutting through the root end.

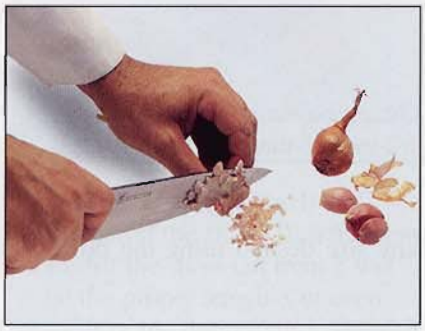
5. Turn the onion and cut slices perpendicular to the other slices to produce diced onion.

Mincing

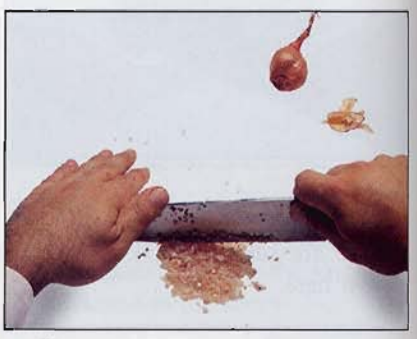
To mince is to cut an item into very small pieces. The terms *finely chopped* and *minced* are often used interchangeably and are most often used when referring to garlic, shallots, herbs and other foods that do not have to be uniform in shape.

Mincing Shallots

The procedure for mincing shallots is shown here.



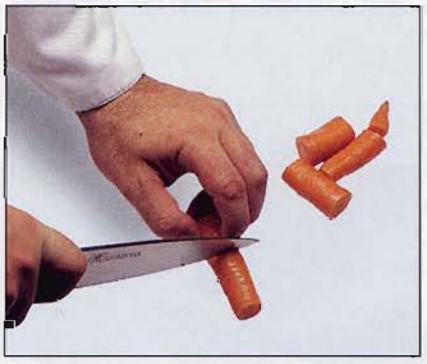
1. Peel and dice the shallots, following the procedure for peeling and dicing an onion.



2. With a flat hand, hold the knife's tip on the cutting board. Using a rocking motion, mince the shallots with the heel of the knife.

Tourner

Tourner ("to turn" in French) is a cutting technique that results in a football-shaped finished product with seven equal sides and blunt ends. The size of the finished product may vary, the most common being 2 inches (5 cm) long. This is a more complicated procedure than other cuts and takes considerable practice to produce good results.



1. Cut the item being "turned" into pieces 2 inches (5 cm) × 3/4 to 1 inch (2–2.5 cm). Each piece should have flat ends. (Potatoes, turnips and beets may be cut into as many as six or eight pieces; carrots can simply be cut into 2-inch lengths.) Peeling is optional because in most cases the item's entire surface area is trimmed away.

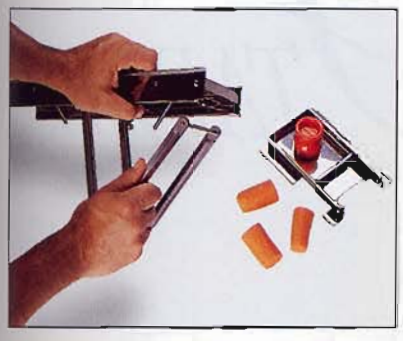
2. Holding the item between the thumb and forefinger, use a tourné knife or a paring knife to cut seven curved sides on the item, creating a flat-ended, football-shaped product.

Using a Mandoline

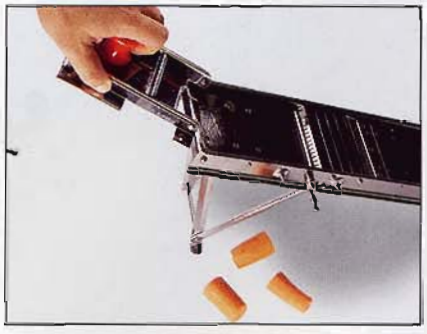
The mandoline is a nonmechanical cutting tool. It does jobs that can be done with a chef's knife, such as very thinly sliced apples or large quantities of julienned vegetables, quickly, easily, and very accurately. It can also produce cuts such as a ridged slice or **gaufrette** that cannot be done with a conventional chef's knife.

When using the mandoline, always use the guard or a steel-mesh glove to protect your hand.

Gaufrette—*a thin lattice or waffle-textured slice of vegetable cut on a mandoline.*



1. To use a mandoline, position the legs and set the blade to the desired shape and thickness.



2. Slide the guard into place.

3. To slice, slide the item against the blade with a single, smooth stroke.

4. To cut gaufrette, select the ridged blade and set it to the desired thickness. Make the first slice, turn the item 60° to 90° and make a second slice. Turn the item back to the original position and make another slice, and so on.

Conclusion

Although many slicing and dicing machines are available, none can ever completely replace a skilled chef with a sharp knife. As a student chef, becoming efficient with your knives should be a high priority. Possessing good knife skills allows you to produce more attractive products in a safe and efficient manner. You will use the classic cuts and techniques outlined in this chapter throughout your career. You should memorize the procedures and practice them often. And remember, a dull or carelessly handled knife is dangerous.

Questions for Discussion

1. Explain the step-by-step procedures for sharpening a knife using a three-sided whetstone.
2. What is the purpose of steel?
3. Why is it necessary to cut vegetables into uniform shapes and sizes?
4. Describe the following cutting procedures: slicing, chopping and dicing.
5. Identify the dimensions of the following cuts: julienne, batonnet, brunoise, small dice, medium dice, large dice and paysanne.
6. Describe the procedure for making tournéed vegetables.
7. Describe three preparations for which a mandoline would be useful.

CHAPTER 7
KITCHEN STAPLES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- recognize and use a variety of herbs, spices, nuts, oils, vinegars and condiments
- prepare and serve quality coffees and teas

Certain foods are used in almost all stations of the kitchen with such regularity that they have become known as staples. Included are many of the processed, packaged items we often take for granted: salt, pepper, flour, sugar, oil and flavorings. There is, however, no single list of staples. Each food service operation will have its own list depending on the menu and the cooking methods used.

This chapter identifies and discusses selected herbs and spices, salt, nuts, oils, vinegars and condiments as well as two popular beverages, coffee and tea. We provide identifying characteristics for some of the more common staples and set forth standards of quality and usage. Other staples, such as flour and sugar, are covered in Chapter 29, Principles of the Bakeshop.

Seasoning—*an item added to enhance the natural flavors of a food without dramatically changing its taste; salt and pepper are the most common seasonings.*

Flavoring—*an item that adds a new taste to a food and alters its natural flavors; flavorings include herbs, spices, vinegars and condiments. The terms* seasonings *and* flavorings *are often used interchangeably.*

Aromatic—*an item added to enhance the natural aromas of a food; aromatics include most flavorings, such as herbs and spices, as well as some vegetables.*

Condiment—*traditionally, any item added to a dish for flavor, including herbs, spices and vinegars; now also refers to cooked or prepared flavorings such as prepared mustards, relishes, bottled sauces and pickles.*

Herb—*any of a large group of aromatic plants whose leaves, stems or flowers are used as a flavoring; used either dried or fresh.*

Spice—*any of a large group of aromatic plants whose bark, roots, seeds, buds or berries are used as a flavoring; usually used in dried form, either whole or ground.*

Herbs and Spices

Herbs and spices are the kitchen staples used as **flavorings**. **Herbs** refer to the large group of **aromatic** plants whose leaves, stems or flowers are used to add flavors to other foods. Most herbs are available fresh or dried. Because drying alters their flavors and aromas, fresh herbs are generally preferred and should be used if possible. **Spices** are strongly flavored or aromatic portions of plants used as flavorings, **condiments** or aromatics. Spices are the bark, roots, seeds, buds or berries of plants, most of which grow naturally only in tropical climates. Spices are almost always used in their dried form, rarely fresh, and can usually be purchased whole or ground. Some plants—dill, for example—can be used as both an herb (its leaves) and a spice (its seeds).

Herbs

Basil

Basil (Fr. *basilique*) is considered one of the great culinary herbs. It is available in a variety of "flavors"—cinnamon, garlic, lemon, even chocolate—but the most common is sweet basil. **Sweet basil** has light green, tender leaves and small white flowers. Its flavor is strong, warm and slightly peppery, with a hint of cloves. Basil is used in Mediterranean cuisines and has a special affinity for garlic and tomatoes. When purchasing fresh basil, look for bright green leaves; avoid flower buds and wilted or rust-colored leaves. Dried sweet basil is readily available but has a decidedly weaker flavor.

Opal Basil

Opal basil is named for its vivid purple color. It has a tougher, crinkled leaf and a medium-strong flavor. Opal basil may be substituted for sweet basil in cooking, and its appearance makes it a distinctive garnish.

Bay Leaves

Bay (Fr. *laurier*), also known as sweet laurel, is a small tree from Asia that produces tough, glossy leaves with a sweet balsamic aroma and peppery flavor. Bay symbolized wisdom and glory in ancient Rome; the leaves were used to form crowns or "laurels" worn by emperors and victorious athletes. In cooking, dried bay leaves are often preferred over the more bitter fresh leaves. Essential in French cuisine, bay leaves are part of the traditional bouquet garni and court bouillon. Whole dried leaves are usually added to a dish at the start of cooking, then removed when sufficient flavor has been extracted.

Chervil

Chervil (Fr. *cerfeuil*), also known as sweet cicely, is native to Russia and the Middle East. Its lacy, fernlike leaves are similar to parsley and can be used as a garnish. Chervil's flavor is delicate, similar to parsley but with the distinctive aroma of anise. It should not be heated for long periods. Chervil is commonly used in French cuisine and is one of the traditional *fines herbes*.

Chives

Chives (Fr. *ciboulette*) are perhaps the most delicate and sophisticated members of the onion family. Their hollow, thin grass-green stems grow in clumps and produce round, pale purple flowers, which are used as a garnish. Chives may be purchased dried, quick-frozen or fresh. They have a mild onion flavor and bright green color. Chives complement eggs, poultry, potatoes, fish and shellfish. They should not be cooked for long periods or at high temperatures. Chives make an excellent garnish when snipped with scissors or carefully chopped and sprinkled over finished soups or sauces.

Garlic Chives

Garlic chives, also known as Chinese chives, actually belong to another plant species. They have flat, solid (not hollow) stems and a mild garlic flavor. They may be used in place of regular chives if their garlic flavor is desired.

Cilantro is the green leafy portion of the plant that yields seeds known as coriander. The flavors of the two portions of this plant are very different and cannot be substituted for each other.

Cilantro, also known as Chinese parsley, is sharp and tangy with a strong aroma and an almost citrus flavor. It is widely used in Asian, Mexican and South American cuisines, especially in salads and sauces. It should not be subjected to heat, and cilantro's flavor is completely destroyed by drying. Do not use yellow or discolored leaves or the tough stems.

Cilantro

Dill (Fr. *aneth*), a member of the parsley family, has tiny, aromatic, yellow flowers and feathery, delicate blue-green leaves. The leaves taste like parsley, but sharper, with a touch of anise. Dill seeds are flat, oval and brown, with a bitter flavor similar to caraway. Both the seeds and the leaves of the dill plant are used in cooking. Dill is commonly used in Scandinavian and central European cuisines, particularly with fish and potatoes. Both leaves and seeds are used in pickling and sour dishes. Dill leaves are available fresh or dried but lose their aroma and flavor during cooking,

Dill

Epazote

so add them only after the dish is removed from the heat. Dill seeds are available whole or ground and are used in fish dishes, pickles and breads.

Epazote, also known as wormseed or stinkweed, grows wild throughout the Americas. It has a strong aroma similar to kerosene and a wild flavor. Fresh epazote is used in salads and as a flavoring in Mexican and Southwestern cuisines. It is often cooked with beans to reduce their gaseousness. Dried epazote is brewed to make a beverage.

Fine herbs (Fr. *fines herbes*) are a combination of parsley, tarragon, chervil and chives widely used in French cuisine. The mixture is available dried, or you can create your own from fresh ingredients.

Lemon Grass

Lavender is an evergreen with thin leaves and tall stems bearing spikes of tiny purple flowers. Although lavender is known primarily for its aroma, which is widely used in perfumes, soaps and cosmetics, the flowers are also used as a flavoring, particularly in Middle Eastern and Provençal cuisines. These flowers have a sweet, lemony flavor and can be crystallized and used as a garnish. Lavender is also used in jams and preserves and to flavor teas and tisanes.

Lavender

Lemon grass, also known as citronella grass, is a tropical grass with the strong aroma and taste of lemon. It is similar to scallions in appearance but with a woody texture. Only the lower base and white leaf stalks are used. Available fresh or quick-frozen, lemon grass is widely used in Indonesian and Southeast Asian cuisines.

Marjoram

Marjoram (Fr. *marjolaine*), also known as sweet marjoram, is a flowering herb native to the Mediterranean and used since ancient times. Its flavor is similar to thyme but sweeter; it also has a stronger aroma. Marjoram is now used in many European cuisines. Although it is available fresh, marjoram is one of the few herbs whose flavor increases when dried. Wild marjoram is more commonly known as oregano.

Mint (Fr. *menthe*), a large family of herbs, includes many species and flavors (even chocolate). **Spearmint** is the most common garden and commercial variety. It has soft, bright green leaves and a tart aroma and flavor. Mint does not blend well with other herbs, so its use is confined to specific dishes, usually fruits or fatty meats such as lamb. Mint has an affinity for chocolate. It can also be brewed into a beverage or used as a garnish.

Spearmint

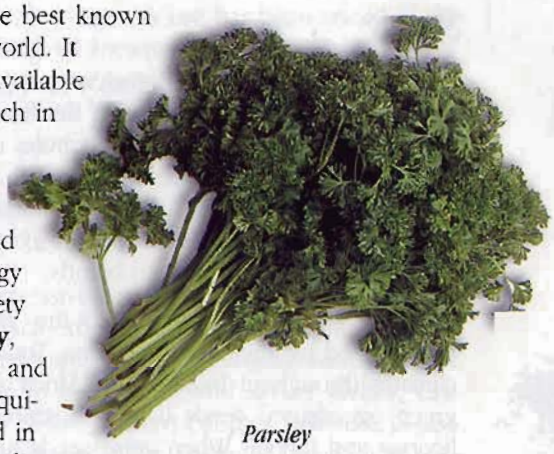
Peppermint has thin, stiff, pointed leaves and a sharper menthol flavor and aroma. Fresh peppermint is used less often in cooking or as a garnish than spearmint, but peppermint oil is a common flavoring in sweets and candies.

Peppermint

Oregano

Oregano (Fr. *origan*), also known as wild marjoram, is a pungent, peppery herb used in Mediterranean cuisines, particularly Greek and Italian, as well as in Mexican cuisine. It is a classic complement to tomatoes. Oregano's thin, woody stalks bear clumps of tiny, dark green leaves, which are available dried and crushed.

Parsley (Fr. *persil*) is probably the best known and most widely used herb in the world. It grows in almost all climates and is available in many varieties, all of which are rich in vitamins and minerals. The most common type in the United States and Northern Europe is **curly parsley**. It has small curly leaves and a bright green color. Its flavor is tangy and clean. Other cuisines use a variety sometimes known as **Italian parsley**, which has flat leaves, a darker color and coarser flavor. Curly parsley is a ubiquitous garnish; both types can be used in virtually any food except sweets. Parsley stalks have a stronger flavor than the leaves and are part of the standard bouquet garni. Chopped parsley forms the basis of any fine herb blend.



Parsley

Italian Parsley

Rosemary (Fr. *romarin*) is an evergreen bush that grows wild in warm, dry climates worldwide. It has stiff, needlelike leaves; some varieties bear pale blue flowers. It is highly aromatic, with a slight odor of camphor or pine. Rosemary is best used fresh. When dried, it loses flavor, and its leaves become very hard and unpleasant to chew. Whole rosemary stems may be added to a dish such as a stew and then removed when enough flavor has been imparted. They may also be added to a bouquet garni. Rosemary has a great affinity for roasted and grilled meats, especially lamb.

Rosemary

Sage (Fr. *sauge*) was used as a medicine for centuries before it entered the kitchen as a culinary herb. Culinary sage has narrow, fuzzy, gray-green leaves and blue flowers. Its flavor is strong and balsamic, with notes of camphor. Sage is used in poultry dishes, with fatty meats or brewed as a beverage. Sage's strong flavor does not blend well with other herbs. It dries well and is available in whole or chopped leaves or rubbed (coarsely ground).

Sage

Savory (Fr. *sariette*), also known as summer savory, has been used since ancient times. Its leaves are small and narrow, and it has a sharp, bitter flavor, vaguely like thyme. It dries well and is used in bean dishes, sausages and herb mixtures.

Savory

Tarragon (Fr. *estragon*), another of the great culinary herbs, is native to Siberia. It is a bushy plant with long, narrow, dark green leaves and tiny gray flowers. Tarragon goes well with fish and tomatoes and is essential in many French dishes such as béarnaise sauce and fine herb blends. Its flavor is strong and diffuses quickly through foods. It is available dried, but drying may cause haylike flavors to develop.

Tarragon

Thyme (Fr. *thym*) has been popular since 3500 B.C., when Egyptians used it as a medicine and for embalming. Thyme is a small, bushy plant with woody stems, tiny green-gray leaves and purple flowers. Its flavor is strong but refined, with notes of sage. Thyme dries well and complements virtually all types of meat, poultry, fish, shellfish and vegetables. It is often included in a bouquet garni or added to stocks.

Thyme

Allspice

Spices

Allspice, also known as Jamaican pepper, is the dried berry of a tree that flourishes in Jamaica, and one of the few spices still grown exclusively in the New World. Allspice is available whole; in berries that look like large, rough, brown peppercorns; or ground. Ground allspice is not a mixture of spices although it does taste like a blend of cinnamon, cloves and nutmeg. Allspice is now used throughout the world, in everything from cakes to curries, and is often included in peppercorn blends.

Anise Seeds

Anise (Fr. *anis*) is native to the eastern Mediterranean, where it was widely used by ancient civilizations. Today, it is grown commercially in warm climates throughout India, North Africa and southern Europe. The tiny, gray-green egg-shaped seeds have a distinctively strong, sweet flavor, similar to licorice and fennel. When anise seeds turn brown, they are stale and should be discarded. Anise is used in pastries as well as fish, shellfish and vegetable dishes, and is commonly used in alcoholic beverages (for example, Pernod and ouzo). The green leaves of the anise plant are occasionally used fresh as an herb or in salads.

Star Anise

Star anise, also known as Chinese anise, is the dried, star-shaped fruit of a Chinese magnolia tree. Although botanically unrelated, its flavor is similar to anise seeds but more bitter and pungent. It is an essential flavor in many Chinese dishes and one of the components of five-spice powder.

Capers

Capers (Fr. *capres*) come from a small bush that grows wild throughout the Mediterranean basin. Its unopened flower buds have been pickled and used as a condiment for thousands of years. Fresh capers are not used as the sharp, salty-sour flavor develops only after curing in strongly salted white vinegar. The finest capers are the smallest, known as *nonpareils*, which are produced in France's Provence region. Capers are used in a variety of sauces (tartare, remoulade) and are excellent with fish and game. Capers will keep for long periods if moistened by their original liquid. Do not add or substitute vinegar, however, as this causes the capers to spoil.

A Pinch of History

Spices have been used for many purposes for thousands of years. Egyptian papyri dating back to 2800 B.C. identify several spices native to the Middle and Far East that were used by the ruling and priestly classes for therapeutic, cosmetic, medicinal, ritualistic and culinary purposes.

By A.D. 300, the Romans were regularly importing spices for use as perfumes, medicines, preservatives and ingredients from China and India via long, difficult caravan journeys over sea and land. Spices were extremely expensive and unavailable to all but the wealthiest citizens.

After Rome fell in the second half of the 5th century A.D., much of the overland route through southern Europe became prey to bandits; and after Constantinople fell in 1453, the spice routes through the Middle East were controlled by the Ottoman Turks. Spice costs soared, and economies based upon the spice trade, such as that of Venice, were at risk.

By then highly spiced food had become common, especially in wealthier households. So, in part to maintain their culinary norm, the Europeans set out to break the Ottoman Turk monopoly. These efforts led to Columbus's discovery of the Americas and Vasco de Gama's discovery of a sea route to India. Although the New World contained none of the spices for which Columbus was searching, it provided many previously unknown foods and flavorings that changed European tables forever, including chiles, vanilla, tomatoes, potatoes and chocolate.

Formation of the Dutch East India Company in 1602 marked the start of the Dutch colonial empire and made spices widely available to the growing European middle classes. The transplantation and cultivation of spice plants eventually weakened the once-powerful trading empires until, by the 19th century, no European country could monopolize trade. Prices fell dramatically.

Caraway is perhaps the world's oldest spice. Its use has been traced to the Stone Age, and seeds have been found in ancient Egyptian tombs. The caraway plant grows wild in Europe and temperate regions of Asia. It produces a small, crescent-shaped brown seed with the peppery flavor of rye. Seeds may be purchased whole or ground. (The leaves have a mild, bland flavor and are rarely used in cooking.) Caraway is a very European flavor, used extensively in German and Austrian dishes, particularly breads, meats and cabbage. It is also used in alcoholic beverages and cheeses.

Caraway Seeds

Cardamom is one of the most expensive spices, second only to saffron in cost. Its seeds are encased in 1/4-inch- (6-millimeter-) long light green or brown pods. Cardamom is highly aromatic. Its flavor, lemony with notes of camphor, is quite strong and is used in both sweet and savory dishes. Cardamom is widely used in Indian and Middle Eastern cuisines, where it is also used to flavor coffee. Scandinavians use cardamom to flavor breads and pastries. Ground cardamom loses its flavor rapidly and is easily adulterated, so it is best to purchase whole seeds and grind your own as needed.

Cardamom Seeds

Chiles, including paprika, chile peppers, bell peppers and cayenne, are members of the *capsicum* plant family. Although cultivated for thousands of years in the West Indies and Americas, capsicum peppers were unknown in the Old World prior to Spanish explorations during the 15th century. Capsicum peppers come in all shapes and sizes, with a wide range of flavors, from sweet to extremely hot. Some capsicums are used as a vegetable, while others are dried, ground and used as a spice. Fresh chiles and bell peppers are discussed in Chapter 22, Vegetables. Capsicums are botanically unrelated to *piper nigrum*, the black peppercorns discussed later.

For our purposes, chile *refers to the plant,* chili *refers to the stewlike dish containing chiles and* chilli *refers to the commercial spice powder.*

Cayenne Pepper

Cayenne, sometimes simply labeled "red pepper," is ground from a blend of several particularly hot types of dried red chile peppers. Its flavor is extremely hot and pungent; it has a bright orange-red color and fine texture.

Paprika, also known as Hungarian pepper, is a bright red powder ground from particular varieties of red-ripened and dried chiles. The flavor ranges from sweet to pungent; the aroma is distinctive and strong. It is essential to many Spanish and eastern European dishes. Mild paprika is meant to be used in generous quantities and may be sprinkled on prepared foods as a garnish.

Paprika

Chile powders are made from a wide variety of dried chile peppers, ranging from sweet and mild to extremely hot and pungent. The finest pure chile powders come from dried chiles that are simply roasted, ground and sieved. Commercial chilli powder, an American invention, is actually a combination of spices—oregano, cumin, garlic and other flavorings—intended for use in Mexican dishes. Each brand is different and should be sampled before using.

Chilli Powder

Crushed chiles, also known as chile flakes, are blended from dried, coarsely crushed chiles. They are quite hot and are used in sauces and meat dishes.

Crushed Chiles

Cinnamon (Fr. *cannelle*) and its cousin **cassia** are among the oldest known spices: cinnamon's use is recorded in China as early as 2500 B.C., and the Far East still produces most of these products. Both cinnamon and cassia come from the bark of small evergreen trees, peeled from branches in thin layers and dried in the sun. High-quality cinnamon should be pale brown and thin, rolled up like paper into sticks known as quills. Cassia is coarser and has a stronger, less subtle flavor than cinnamon. Consequently, it is cheaper than true cinnamon. Cinnamon is usually purchased ground because it is difficult to grind. Cinnamon sticks are used when long cooking times allow for sufficient flavor to be extracted (for example, in stews or curries). Cinnamon's flavor is most often associated with pastries and sweets, but it has a great affinity for

Ground Cinnamon and Cinnamon Sticks

Cloves

lamb and spicy dishes. Labeling laws do not require that packages distinguish between cassia and cinnamon, so most of what is sold as cinnamon in the United States is actually cassia, blended for consistent flavor and aroma.

Cloves (Fr. *girofles*) are the unopened buds of evergreen trees that flourish in muggy tropical regions. When dried, whole cloves have hard, sharp prongs that can be used to push them into other foods, such as onions or fruit, in order to provide flavor. Cloves are extremely pungent, with a sweet, astringent aroma. A small amount provides a great deal of flavor. Cloves are used in desserts and meat dishes, preserves and liquors. They may be purchased whole or ground.

Coriander Seeds

Coriander seeds come from the cilantro plant. They are round and beige, with a distinctive sweet, spicy flavor and strong aroma. Unlike other plants in which the seeds and the leaves carry the same flavor and aroma, coriander and cilantro are distinct. Coriander seeds are available whole or ground and are frequently used in Indian cuisine and pickling mixtures.

Cumin

Cumin is the seed of a small delicate plant of the parsley family that grows in North Africa and the Middle East. The small seeds are available whole or ground and look (but do not taste) like caraway seeds. Cumin has a strong earthy flavor and tends to dominate any dish in which it is included. It is used in Indian, Middle Eastern and Mexican cuisines, in sausages and a few cheeses.

Fennel

Fennel (Fr. *fenouil*) is a perennial plant with feathery leaves and tiny flowers long cultivated in India and China as a medicine and cure for witchcraft. Its seeds are greenish brown with prominent ridges and short, hairlike fibers. Their taste and aroma are similar to anise though not as sweet. Whole seeds are widely used in Italian stews and sausages; central European cuisines use fennel with fish, pork, pickles and vegetables. Ground seeds can also be used in breads, cakes and cookies. The same plant produces a bulbous stalk used as a vegetable.

Fenugreek

Fenugreek (Fr. *fenugrec*), grown in Mediterranean countries since ancient times, is a small, beanlike plant with a tiny flower. The seeds, available whole or ground, are pebble shaped and transfer their pale orange color to the foods with which they are cooked. Their flavor is bittersweet, like burnt sugar with a bitter aftertaste. Fenugreek is a staple in Indian cuisines, especially curries and chutneys.

Ginger Root

Ginger (Fr. *gingembre*) is a well-known spice obtained from the root of a tall, flowering tropical plant. Fresh ginger root is known as a "hand" because it looks vaguely like a group of knobby fingers. It has grayish-tan skin and a pale yellow, fibrous interior. Fresh ginger should be plump and firm with smooth skin. It should keep for about a month under refrigeration. Its flavor is fiery but sweet, with notes of lemon and rosemary. Fresh ginger is widely available and is used in Indian and Asian cuisines. It has a special affinity for chicken, beef and curries. Ginger is also available peeled and pickled in vinegar, candied in sugar or preserved in alcohol or syrup. Dried, ground ginger is a fine yellow powder widely used in pastries. Its flavor is spicier and not as sweet as fresh ginger.

Juniper Berries

Juniper is an evergreen bush grown throughout the northern hemisphere. It produces round purple berries with a sweet flavor similar to pine. Juniper berries are used for flavoring gin and other alcoholic beverages, and are crushed and incorporated in game dishes, particularly venison and wild boar.

Mustard seeds (Fr. *moutarde*), available in black, brown and yellow, come from three different plants in the cabbage family. Mustard seeds are small, hard spheres with a bitter flavor. The seeds have no aroma, but their flavor is sharp and fiery hot. Yellow seeds have the mildest and black seeds the strongest flavor. All are sold whole and can be crushed for cooking. Mustard seeds are a standard component of pickling spices and are processed and blended for prepared mustards, which we discuss later. Ground or dry mustard is a bright yellow powder made from a blend of ground seeds, wheat flour and turmeric.

Mustard Seeds

Ground Mustard

Nutmeg (Fr. *muscade*) and **mace** come from the yellow plumlike fruit of a large tropical evergreen. These fruits are dried and opened to reveal the seed known as nutmeg. The seed is surrounded by a bright red lacy coating or aril; the aril is the spice mace. Whole nutmegs are oval and look rather like a piece of smooth wood. The flavor and aroma of nutmeg are strong and sweet, and a small quantity provides a great deal of flavor. Nutmeg should be grated directly into a dish as needed; once grated, flavor loss is rapid. Nutmeg is used in many European cuisines, mainly in pastries and sweets, but is also important in meat and savory dishes.

Mace is an expensive spice, with a flavor similar to nutmeg but more refined. It is almost always purchased ground and retains its flavor longer than other ground spices. Mace is used primarily in pastry items.

Whole Nutmegs with Mace (left) and Ground Nutmeg (right)

Peppercorns (Fr. *poivre*) are the berries of a vine plant (*piper nigrum*) native to tropical Asia. Peppercorns should not be confused with the chile (capsicum) peppers discussed earlier. Peppercorns vary in size, color, pungency and flavor. Many of these differences are the result of variations in climate and growing conditions. Good-quality pepper is expensive and should be purchased whole and ground fresh in a peppermill as needed. Whole peppercorns will last indefinitely if kept dry. They should be stored well-covered in a cool, dark place.

Black and **white peppercorns** are produced from the same plant, but are picked and processed differently. For black peppercorns, the berries are picked when green and simply dried whole in the sun. Black pepper has a warm, pungent flavor and aroma. Tellicherry peppercorns from the southwest coast of India are generally considered the finest black peppercorns in the world and are priced accordingly.

Black Pepper (left) and White Pepper (right)

For white peppercorns, the berries are allowed to ripen until they turn red. The ripened berries are allowed to ferment, then the outer layer of skin is washed off. Nowadays, white pepper may be produced by mechanically removing the outer skin from black peppercorns. This is not true white pepper, and the resulting product should be labeled "decorticated." White pepper has less aroma than black pepper but is useful in white sauces or where the appearance of black speckles is undesirable.

Green peppercorns are unripened berries that are either freeze-dried or pickled in brine or vinegar. Pickled green peppercorns are soft, with a fresh, sour flavor similar to capers. They are excellent in spiced butters and sauces or with fish.

Green Peppercorns

Pink peppercorns are actually the berries of a South American tree, not a vine pepper plant. Pink peppercorns are available dried or pickled in vinegar. Although attractive, their flavor is bitter and pinelike, with less spiciness than true pepper. Pink peppercorns are no longer available in some areas because of reported toxic side effects.

Pink Peppercorns

Poppy seeds (Fr. *pavot*) are the ripened seeds of the opium poppy, which flourishes in the Middle East and India. (When ripe, the seeds do not contain any of the medicinal alkaloids found elsewhere in the plant.) The tiny blue-gray seeds are round and hard with a sweet, nutty flavor. Poppy seeds are used in pastries and breads.

Poppy Seeds

Saffron

Saffron (Fr. *safran*) comes from the dried stigmas of the saffron crocus. Each flower bears only three threadlike stigmas, and each must be picked by hand. It takes about 250,000 flowers to produce one pound of saffron, making it the most expensive spice in the world. Beware of bargains; there is no such thing as cheap saffron. Luckily, a tiny pinch is enough to color and flavor a large quantity of food. Good saffron should be a brilliant orange color, not yellow, with a strong aroma and a bitter, honeylike taste. Saffron produces a yellow dye that diffuses through any warm liquid. Valencia or Spanish saffron is considered the finest. It is commonly used with fish and shellfish (a necessity for bouillabaisse) and rice dishes such as paella and risotto. When using saffron threads, first crush them gently, then soak them in some hot liquid from the recipe. Powdered saffron is less expensive but more easily adulterated. It may be added directly to the other ingredients when cooking.

Sesame Seeds

Sesame seeds, also known as benne seeds, are native to India. They are small, flat ovals, with a creamy white color. Their taste is nutty and earthy, with a pronounced aroma when roasted or ground into a paste (known as tahini). Sesame seeds are the source of sesame oil, which has a mild, nutty flavor and does not go rancid easily. Sesame seeds are roasted and used in or as a garnish for breads and meat dishes. They are popular in Indian and Asian cuisines, with a black variety of seeds most popular as a Japanese condiment.

Tumeric

Turmeric, also known as Indian saffron, is produced from the roots of a flowering tropical plant related to ginger. Unlike ginger, fresh turmeric is not used in cooking. It is only available dried and usually ground. Turmeric is renowned for its vibrant yellow color and is used as a food coloring and dye. Turmeric's flavor is distinctive and strong; it should not be substituted for saffron. Turmeric is a traditional ingredient in Indian curries, to which it imparts color as well as flavor.

Spice Blends

Many countries and cuisines have created recognizable combinations of spice flavors that are found in a variety of dishes. Although many of these blends are available ready-prepared for convenience, most can be mixed by the chef as needed. A few of the more common spice blends are described here.

Five-Spice Powder

Chinese five-spice powder is a combination of equal parts finely ground Szechuan pepper, star anise, cloves, cinnamon and fennel seeds. This blend is widely used in Chinese and some Vietnamese foods and is excellent with pork and in pâtés.

Curry powder is a European invention that probably took its name from the Tamil word *kari*, meaning a sauce. Created by 19th-century Britons returning from colonial India, it was meant to be the complete spicing for a "curry" dish. There are as many different formulas for curry powder as there are manufacturers, some mild and sweet (Bombay or Chinese style), others hot and pungent (Madras style). Typical ingredients in curry powder are black pepper, cinnamon, cloves, coriander, cumin, ginger, mace and turmeric.

Pickling Spice

Pickling spice, as with other blends, varies by manufacturer. Most pickling spice blends are based on black peppercorns and red chiles, with some or all of the following added: allspice, cloves, ginger, mustard seeds, coriander seeds, bay leaves and dill. These blends are useful in making cucumber or vegetable pickles as well as in stews and soups.

Quatre-épices, literally "four spices" in French, is a peppery mixture of black peppercorns with lesser amounts of nutmeg, cloves and dried ginger. Sometimes cinnamon or allspice is included. Quatre-épices is used in charcuterie and long-simmered stews.

Using Herbs and Spices

Herbs and spices are a simple, inexpensive way to bring individuality and variety to foods. Their proper use leads to better-flavored and distinctively different dishes. They add neither fat nor sodium and virtually no calories to foods; most contain only 3 to 10 calories per teaspoon. Table 7.1 lists just a few uses for some of the more common herbs and spices.

TABLE 7.1 USES FOR SOME COMMON HERBS AND SPICES

Flavoring	Form	Suggested Uses
Allspice	Whole or ground	Fruits, relishes, braised meats
Anise	Whole or ground	Asian cuisines, pastries, breads, cheeses
Basil	Fresh or dried	Tomatoes, salads, eggs, fish, chicken, lamb, cheeses
Caraway	Whole or ground	Rye bread, cabbage, beans, pork, beef, veal
Chervil	Fresh or dried	Chicken, fish, eggs, salads, soups, vegetables
Chives	Fresh or dried	Eggs, fish, chicken, soups, potatoes, cheeses
Cilantro	Fresh leaves	Salsa, salads, Mexican cuisine, fish, shellfish, chicken
Cloves	Whole or ground	Marinades, baked goods, braised meats, pickles, fruits, beverages, stocks
Cumin	Whole or ground	Chili, sausages, stews, eggs
Dill	Fresh or dried leaves; whole seeds	Leaves or seeds in soups, salads, fish, shellfish, vegetables, breads; seeds in pickles, potatoes, vegetables
Fennel	Whole seeds	Sausages, stews, sauces, pickling, lamb, eggs
Ginger	Fresh root or powder	Asian, Caribbean and Indian cuisines, pastries, curries, stews, meats
Marjoram	Fresh or dried	Sausages, pâtés, meats, poultry, stews, green vegetables, tomatoes, game
Nutmeg	Ground	Curries, relishes, rice, eggs, beverages
Rosemary	Fresh or dried	Lamb, veal, beef, poultry, game, marinades, stews
Saffron	Threads or ground	Rice, breads, potatoes, soups, stews, chicken, fish, shellfish
Sage	Fresh or dried	Poultry, charcuterie, pork, stuffings, pasta, beans, tomatoes
Tarragon	Fresh or dried	Chicken, fish, eggs, salad dressings, sauces, tomatoes
Thyme	Fresh or dried	Fish, chicken, meats, stews, charcuterie, soups, tomatoes
Turmeric	Ground	Curries, relishes, rice, eggs, breads

Flavor Concepts

In *Ethnic Cuisine: The Flavor Principle Cookbook*, Elisabeth Rozin writes: "Every culture tends to combine a small number of flavoring ingredients so frequently and so consistently that they become definitive of that particular cuisine" (p. xiv). She calls these defining flavors "flavor principles" and notes that they are "designed to abstract what is absolutely fundamental about a cuisine and, thus, to serve as a guide in cooking and developing new recipes" (p. xvii). She identifies the following flavor principles:

Central Asia: cinnamon, fruit and nuts
China: generally–soy sauce, rice wine and ginger root
Northern China (Mandarin/Peking)–miso and/or garlic and/or sesame
Western China (Szechuan)–sweet, sour and hot
Southern China (Canton)–black beans, garlic
Eastern Europe (Jewish): onion and chicken fat
Eastern and Northern Europe: sour cream and dill or paprika or allspice or carraway
France: generally–olive oil, garlic and basil *or* wine and herb *or* butter and/or sour cream and/or cheese plus wine and/or stock
Provence–olive oil, thyme, rosemary, marjoram, sage plus tomato as a variation
Normandy–apple, cider, Calvados
Greece: tomato, cinnamon or olive oil, lemon, oregano
India: Northern–cumin, ginger, garlic
Southern–mustard seed, coconut, tamarind, chile
Italy: generally–olive oil, garlic, basil
Northern Italy–wine vinegar, garlic
Southern Italy–olive oil, garlic, parsley, anchovy, tomato
Japan: soy sauce, sake, sugar
Mexico: –tomato and chile *or* lime and chile
North Africa: cumin, coriander, cinnamon, ginger, onion and/or tomato and/or fruit
Spain: olive oil, garlic, nut *or* olive oil, onion, pepper, tomato
Thailand: fish sauce, curry, chile
West Africa: tomato, peanut, chile

Although the flavors and aromas of fresh herbs are generally preferred, dried herbs are widely used because they are readily available and convenient. Purchase only the amount of dried herbs that can be used within a short time. If stored in a closed container in a cool, dry place, dried herbs should last for two to three months.

Use less dried herbs than you would fresh herbs. The loss of moisture strengthens and concentrates the flavor in dried herbs. In general, you should use only one half to one third as much dried herb as fresh in any given recipe. For example, if a recipe calls for one *tablespoon* of fresh basil, you should substitute only one *teaspoon* of dried basil. You can usually add more later if necessary.

Spices are often available whole or ground. Once ground, they lose their flavors rapidly, however. Whole spices should keep their flavors for many months if stored in air-tight containers in a cool, dry place away from direct light. Stale spices lose their spicy aroma and develop a bitter or musty aftertaste. Discard them.

Because ground spices release their flavors quickly, they should be added to cooked dishes near the end of the cooking period. In uncooked dishes that call for ground spices (for example, salad dressings), the mixture should be allowed to stand for several hours to develop good flavor.

Although some combinations are timeless—rosemary with lamb, dill with salmon, nutmeg with spinach, caraway with rye bread—less common pairings can be equally delicious and far more exciting. A chef must be willing and able to experiment with new flavors. But first you must be familiar with the distinctive flavor and aroma of the herb or spice. Then you can experiment, always bearing in mind the following guidelines:

- Flavorings should not hide the taste or aroma of the primary ingredient.
- Flavorings should be combined in balance, so as not to overwhelm the palate.
- Flavorings should not be used to disguise poor quality or poorly prepared products.

Even when following a well-tested recipe, the quantity of flavorings may need to be adjusted because of a change in brands or the condition of the ingredients. A chef should strive to develop his or her palate to recognize and correct subtle variances as necessary.

Bouquet Garni and Sachet

The *bouquet garni* and the *sachet* are used to introduce flavorings, seasonings and aromatics into stocks, sauces, soups and stews.

A bouquet garni, shown in Figure 7.1, is a selection of herbs (usually fresh) and vegetables tied into a bundle with twine. The twine makes it easy to remove the bouquet when sufficient flavor has been extracted. A standard bouquet garni consists of parsley stems, celery, thyme, leeks and carrots.

A sachet (also known as a *sachet d'épices*), shown in Figure 7.2, is made by tying seasonings together in cheesecloth. A standard sachet consists of peppercorns, bay leaves, parsley stems, thyme, cloves and, optionally, garlic. The exact quantity of these ingredients is determined by the amount of liquid the sachet is meant to flavor.

Bouquets garni and sachets are used to add flavors in such a way that the ingredients can be easily removed from a dish when the flavors have been extracted. A similar technique, although less commonly used, is an **onion**

FIGURE 7.1 *Bouquet Garni*

FIGURE 7.2 *Sachet*

piquet. To prepare an onion piquet, peel the onion and trim off the root end. Attach one or two dried bay leaves to the onion using whole cloves as pins. The onion piquet is then simmered in milk or stock to extract flavors.

Onion Piquet

SALT

Salt (Fr. *sel*) is the most basic seasoning, and its use is universal. It preserves foods, heightens their flavors and provides the distinctive taste of saltiness. The presence of salt can be tasted easily but not smelled. Temperature affects saltiness. The cooler a food, the saltier it tastes, so it is best to undersalt hot foods that will be chilled prior to service (chilled soups, for example).

Culinary or **table salt** is sodium chloride (NaCl), one of the minerals essential to human life. Salt contains no calories, proteins, fats or carbohydrates. It is available from several sources, each with its own flavor and degree of saltiness.

Rock salt, mined from underground deposits, is available in both edible and nonedible forms. It is used for home freezing.

Common kitchen or table salt is produced by pumping water through underground salt deposits, then bringing the brine to the surface to evaporate, leaving behind crystals. Chemicals are usually added to prevent table salt from absorbing moisture and thus keep it free-flowing. Iodized salt is commonly used in the United States. The iodine has no effect on the salt's flavor or use; it is simply added to provide an easily available source of iodine, an important nutrient, to a large number of people.

Sea salt is obtained, not surprisingly, by evaporating sea water and purifying the crystals left behind. Many chefs consider its flavor stronger or purer than mined salt.

Kosher salt has large, irregular crystals and is used in the "koshering" or curing of meats. It is purified rock salt that contains no iodine or additives. It can be substituted for common kitchen salt.

Because it is nonorganic, salt keeps indefinitely. It will, however, absorb moisture from the atmosphere, which prevents it from flowing properly. Salt is

About Flavors

Flavor is to food what hue is to color. It is what timbre is to music. Flavor is adjective; food is noun. Each ingredient has its own particular character, which is altered by every other ingredient it encounters. A secret ingredient is one that mysteriously improves the flavor of a dish without calling attention to itself. It is either undetectable or extremely subtle, but its presence is crucial because the dish would not be nearly as good without it.

Primary flavors are those that are obvious, such as the flavors of chicken and tarragon in a chicken tarragon, shrimp and garlic in a shrimp scampi, or beef and red wine in a beef *à la Bourguignon*. Secret ingredients belong to the realm of secondary flavors. However obvious it is that you need tarragon to prepare a chicken tarragon, you would not achieve the most interesting result using *only* tarragon. Tarragon, in this case, needs secondary ingredients—a hint of celery seed and anise—to make it taste more like quintessential tarragon and at the same time more than tarragon. In this way, primary flavors often depend on secret ingredients to make them more interesting and complex. Using only one herb or spice to achieve a certain taste usually results in a lackluster dish—each mouthful tastes the same. Whether they function in a primary or secondary way, flavors combine in only three different ways: They marry, oppose, or juxtapose.

When flavors marry, they combine to form one taste. Some secondary flavors marry with primary ones to create a new flavor greater than the sum of its parts, and often two flavors can do the job better than one. It may sound like an eccentric combination, but vanilla marries with the flavor of lobster, making it taste more like the essence of lobster than lobster does on its own. And when ginger and molasses marry, they create a flavor superior to either alone.

Opposite flavors can highlight or cancel each other; they can cut or balance each other. Sweet/sour, sweet/salty, sweet/hot, salty/sour, and salty/tart are all opposites. Salt and sugar are so opposed, in fact, that when used in equal amounts they cancel each other entirely. Sweet relish helps to cancel the salty flavor of hot dogs. Chinese sauces usually contain some sugar to help balance the saltiness of soy sauce.

Because flavors are sensed on different parts of the tongue and palate, and because they are tasted at different times, we can juxtapose them, using flavors side by side or in layers. The layering of flavors makes the food we taste more interesting because each mouthful is different.

Knowing how to combine many flavors and aromas to achieve a simple and pure result (and knowing when not to combine flavors) will make you a better, more confident cook. Good cooks over the centuries have known these things intuitively—but they've had neither the huge variety of ingredients nor the knowledge of world cuisines that we have today.

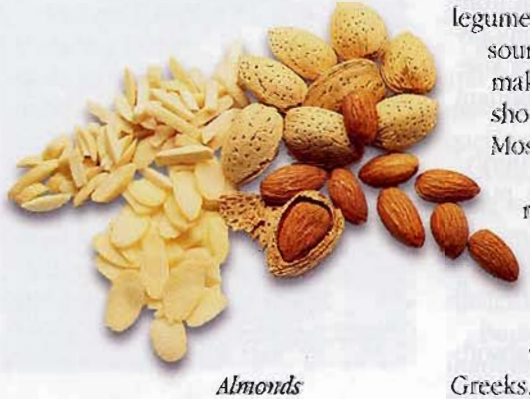
from Secret Ingredients
by Chef Michael Roberts

a powerful preservative; its presence stops or greatly slows down the growth of many undesirable organisms. Salt is used to preserve meats, vegetables and fish. It is also used to develop desirable flavors in bacon, ham, cheeses and fish products as well as pickled vegetables.

Nuts

A **nut** (Fr. *noix*) is the edible single-seed kernel of a fruit surrounded by a hard shell. A hazelnut is an example of a true nut. The term is used more generally, however, to refer to any seed or fruit with an edible kernel in a hard shell. Walnuts and peanuts are examples of non-nut "nuts" (peanuts are legumes that grow underground; walnuts have two kernels). Nuts are a good source of protein and B vitamins but are high in fat. Their high fat content makes them especially susceptible to rancidity and odor absorption. Nuts should be stored in nonmetal, air-tight containers in a cool, dark place. Most nuts may be kept frozen for up to one year.

Nuts are used in foods to provide texture and flavor. They are often roasted in a low (275°F/135°C) oven before use to heighten their flavor. Allowing roasted nuts to cool to room temperature before grinding prevents them from releasing too much oil.



Almonds

Almonds (Fr. *almande*) are the seeds of a plumlike fruit. Native to western India, the almond was first cultivated by the ancient Greeks. It is now a major commercial crop in California. Almonds are available

whole, sliced, slivered or ground. Blanched almonds have had their brown, textured skins removed; natural almonds retain their skins. Unless the brown color of natural almond skin is undesirable, the two types can be used interchangeably in recipes. Almonds are frequently used in pastries and candies and are the main ingredient in marzipan.

Cashews

Cashews, native to the Amazon, are now cultivated in India and east Africa. The cashew nut is actually the seed of a plant related to poison ivy. Because of toxins in the shell, cashews are always sold shelled. They are expensive and have a strong flavor. Cashews are used in some Asian cuisines and make a wonderful addition to cookies and candies.

Chestnuts

Chestnuts (Fr. *marrons*) are true nuts that must be cooked before using. Available steamed, dried, boiled or roasted, they are often sold as a canned purée, with or without added sugar. Candied or glazed chestnuts are also available. Most chestnuts are grown in Europe, primarily Italy, but new varieties are beginning to flourish in North America. Their distinctive flavor is found in many sweet dishes and pastries. Because of their high starch content, chestnuts are also used in soups and sauces and may be served as a side dish.

Coconuts

Coconuts (Fr. *noix de coco*) are the seeds from one of the largest of all fruits. They grow on the tropical coconut palm tree. The nut is a dark brown oval, covered with coarse fibers. The shell is thick and hard; inside is a layer of white, moist flesh. The interior also contains a clear liquid known as coconut water. (This is not the same as coconut milk or coconut cream, both of which are prepared from the flesh.) Coconut has a mild aroma, a sweet, nutty flavor and a crunchy, chewy texture. Fresh coconuts are readily available but require some effort to use. Coconut flesh is available shredded or flaked, with or without added sugar. Coconut is most often used in pastries and candies and is also an important ingredient in Indian and Caribbean cuisines. A good fresh coconut should feel heavy; you should be able to hear the coconut water sloshing around inside. Avoid cracked, moist or moldy coconuts.

Hazelnuts

Hazelnuts (Fr. *noisette*) are true nuts that grow wild in the Northeast and Upper Midwest states. The cultivated form, known as a **filbert**, is native to temperate regions throughout the Northern Hemisphere. A bit larger than the hazelnut, it has a weaker flavor than its wild cousin. Both nuts look like smooth brown marbles. Filberts are more abundant, so are generally less expensive. Hazelnuts are often ground for use in cakes or pastries. Their distinctive flavor goes well with chocolate and coffee.

To remove the hazelnut's bitter skin, roast whole nuts in a 275°F (135°C) oven for 12 to 15 minutes. They should give off a good aroma and just begin to darken. While still hot, rub the nuts in a dry towel or against a mesh sifter to remove the skin.

Macadamias

Macadamias, although commercially significant in Hawaii, are actually native to Australia. This small round nut is creamy white with a sweet, rich flavor and high fat content. Its shell is extremely hard and must be removed by machine, so the macadamia is always sold out of the shell. Its flavor blends well with fruits, coconut and white and dark chocolate.

Peanuts

Peanuts (Fr. *arachide*), also known as groundnuts, are actually legumes that grow underground. The peanut is native to South America; it made its way into North America via Africa and the slave trade. Peanuts are a good source of protein and fat and became an important source of food and oil during World War II. They may be eaten raw or roasted and are available shelled or unshelled, with or without their thin red skins. Peanuts are used in Asian cuisines and are ubiquitous ground with a bit of oil into peanut butter.

Pecans

Pecans (Fr. *noix de pacane*), native to the Mississippi River Valley, are perhaps the most popular nuts in America. Their flavor is rich and mapley and appears most often in breads, sweets and pastries. They are available whole in the shell or in various standard sizes and grades of pieces.

Pine nuts (Fr. *pignon*), also known as pinon nuts and pignole, are the seeds of several species of pine tree. The small, creamy white, teardrop-shaped nuts are commonly used in dishes from Spain, Italy and the American Southwest. They are rarely chopped or ground because of their small size, and will need roasting only if being used in a dish that will not receive further cooking. Pine nuts are used in breads, pastries and salads and are essential to classic pesto sauce.

Pine Nuts

Pistachios (Fr. *pistaches*) are native to central Asia, where they have been cultivated for more than 3000 years. California now produces most of the pistachios marketed in this country. Pistachios are unique for the green color of their meat. When ripe, the shell opens naturally at one end, aptly referred to as "smiling," which makes shelling the nuts quite easy. Red pistachios are dyed, not natural. Pistachios are sold whole, shelled or unshelled, and are used in pastries and meat dishes, particularly pâtés.

Pistachios

TABLE 7.2 NUTRITIONAL VALUES OF COMMON NUTS

Per 1 Ounce (28 g) Serving	Calories	Protein (g)	Carbohydrates (g)	Total Fat (g)	Saturated Fat (g)	Sodium (mg)
Almonds, whole kernels	167	5.7	5.8	14.8	1.4	3
Cashews, dry roasted	163	4.4	9.3	13.2	2.6	4
Chestnuts, roasted and peeled	70	0.9	15.0	0.6	0.1	1
Filberts, blanched	191	3.6	4.5	19.1	1.4	1
Macadamias	199	2.4	3.9	20.9	3.1	1
Peanuts, raw	159	7.2	4.5	13.8	1.9	5
Pecans	190	2.2	5.2	19.2	1.5	trace
Walnuts, English	182	4.1	5.2	17.6	1.6	3

The Corinne T. Netzer Encyclopedia of Food Values 1992

Walnuts (Fr. *noix*), relatives of the pecan, are native to Asia, Europe and North America. The black walnut, native to Appalachia, has a dark brown meat and a strong flavor. The English walnut, now grown primarily in California, has a milder flavor, is easier to shell and is less expensive. Walnuts are more popular than pecans outside the United States. They are used in baked goods and are pressed for oil.

English Walnuts

Oils

Oils (Fr. *huile*) are a type of fat that remains liquid at room temperature. Cooking oils are refined from various seeds, plants and vegetables. (Other fats, such as butter and margarine, are discussed in Chapter 8, Dairy Products; animal and solid fats are discussed in Chapter 29, Principles of the Bakeshop.)

When purchasing oils, you should consider their use, **smoke point**, flavor and cost. Fats, including oils and **shortenings**, are manufactured for specific purposes such as deep-frying, cake-baking, salad dressings and sautéing. Most food service operations purchase different ones for each of these needs.

Smoke point—*the temperature at which a fat begins to break down and smoke.*

Shortening—*a fat, usually made from vegetable oils, that is solid at room temperature.*

Fats break down at different temperatures. The temperature at which a given fat begins to break down and smoke is known as its smoke point. Choose fats with higher smoke points for high temperature cooking such as deep-frying and sautéing. If a fat with a low smoke point is used for high temperature cooking, it may break down, burn and impart undesirable flavors.

The flavor and cost of each oil must also be considered. For example, both corn oil and walnut oil may be used in a salad dressing. Their selection may depend on balancing cost (corn oil is less expensive) against flavor (walnut oil has a stronger, more distinctive flavor).

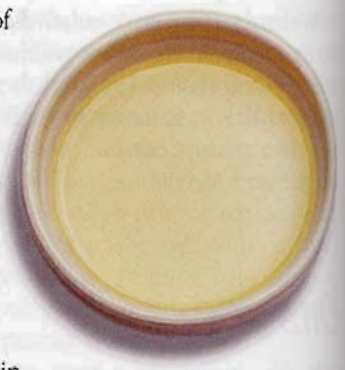
When fats spoil, they are said to go **rancid**. Rancidity is a chemical change caused by exposure to air, light or heat. It results in objectionable flavors and odors. Different fats turn rancid at different rates, but all fats benefit from refrigerated storage away from moisture, light and air. (Some oils are packaged in colored glass containers because certain tints of green and yellow block the damaging light rays that can cause an oil to go rancid.) Although oils may become thick and cloudy under refrigeration, this is not a cause for concern. The oils will return to their clear, liquid states at room temperature. Stored fats should also be covered to prevent the absorption of odors.

Vegetable oils are extracted from a variety of plants, including corn, cottonseed, peanuts and soybeans, by pressure or chemical solvents. The oil is then refined and cleaned to remove unwanted colors, odors or flavors. Vegetable oils are virtually odorless and have a neutral flavor. Because they contain no animal products, they are cholesterol-free. If a commercial product contains only one type of oil, it is labeled "pure" (as in "pure corn oil"). Products labeled "vegetable oil" are blended from several sources. Products labeled "salad oil" are highly refined blends of vegetable oil.

Canola oil is processed from rapeseeds. Its popularity is growing rapidly because it contains no cholesterol and has a high percentage of monounsaturated fat. Canola oil is useful for frying and general cooking because it has no flavor and a high smoke point.

Canola Oil

Nut oils are extracted from a variety of nuts and are almost always packaged as a "pure" product, never blended. A nut oil should have the strong flavor and aroma of the nut from which it was processed. Popular examples are walnut and hazelnut oils. These oils are used to give flavor to salad dressings, marinades and other dishes. But heat diminishes their flavor, so nut oils are not recommended for frying or baking. Nut oils tend to go rancid quickly and therefore are usually packaged in small containers.



Hazelnut Oil

Olive oil (Fr. *huile d'olive*) is the only oil that is extracted from a fruit rather than a seed, nut or grain. Olive oil is produced primarily in Spain, Italy, France, Greece and North Africa; California produces a relatively minor amount of olive oil. Like wine, olive oils vary in color and flavor according to the variety of tree, the ripeness of the olives, the type of soil, the climate and the producer's preferences. Colors range from dark green to almost clear, depending on the ripeness of the olives at the time of pressing and the amount of subsequent refining. Color is not a good indication of flavor, however. Flavor is ultimately a matter of personal preference. A stronger-flavored oil may be desired for some foods, while a milder oil is better for others. Good olive oil should be thicker than refined vegetable oils, but not so thick that it has a fatty texture.

Extra Virgin Olive Oil

The label designations—extra virgin, virgin and pure—refer to the acidity of the oil (a low acid content is preferable) and the extent of processing used to extract the oil. The first cold-pressing of the olives results in virgin oil. (The designation "virgin" is used only when the oil is 100% unadulterated olive oil, unheated and without any chemical processing.) Virgin oil may still vary in quality depending on its acidity level. Extra virgin oil is virgin oil with an acidity level of not more than 1%; virgin oil may have an acidity level of up to 3%. Pure olive oil is processed from the pulp left after the first pressing using heat and chemicals. Pure oil is lighter in flavor and less expensive than virgin oil.

Flavored oils, also known as **infused oils**, are an interesting and increasingly popular condiment. These oils may be used as a cooking medium or flavoring accent in marinades, dressings, sauces or other dishes. Flavors include basil and other herbs, garlic, citrus and spice. Flavored oils are generally prepared with olive oil for additional flavor or canola oil, both considered more healthful than other fats.

Top-quality commercially flavored oils are prepared by extracting aromatic oils from the flavoring ingredients and then emulsifying them with a high-grade oil; any impurities are then removed by placing the oil in a centrifuge. Using the aromatic oils of the flavoring ingredients yields a more intense flavor than merely steeping the same ingredients in the oil. Flavored oils should be stored as you would any other high-quality oil.

THE OLIVE

Olives are the fruit of a tree native to the Mediterranean area. Green olives are those harvested unripened; black olives are fully ripened. The raw fruit is inedibly bitter and must be washed, soaked and pickled before eating. Green olives should have a smooth, tight skin. Ripe olives will be glossy but softer, with a slightly wrinkled skin. Many varieties and flavors are available, from the tiny black Niçoise to the large purplish Kalamata. Olives are packaged in a range of sizes, from medium (the smallest) to jumbo (the largest). (Colossal and super colossal olives are actually smaller than jumbos.) Pitted olives are also available. The cavity may be filled with strips of pimento, jalapeo pepper, almonds or other foods for flavor and appearance.

Olives are used as a finger food for snacks or hors d'oeuvres, or added to salads or pasta. They may even be cooked in breads, soups, sauces, stews and casseroles. A paste made of minced ripe olives, known as tapenade, is used as a dip or condiment.

TABLE 7.3 THE SMOKE POINT AND NUTRITIONAL VALUES OF COMMON FATS

Per 1 Ounce (28 g) Serving	Smoke Point	Calories	Total Fat (g)	Saturated Fat (g)
Olive oil	437°F/225°C	251	28.4	3.8
Peanut oil	425°F/218°C	251	28.4	4.8
Lard	370°F/188°C	230	25.6	10.0
Canola oil	425°F/218°C	251	28.4	2.0
Walnut oil	325–400°F/ 163–204°C	240	28.0	4.0
Butter, clarified*	400°F/204°C	248	28.2	17.6
Whole butter, unsalted*	260°F/127°C	200	22.8	14.2

The Corinne T. Netzer Encyclopedia of Food Values 1992
*Discussed in Chapter 8

VINEGARS

Vinegar (Fr. *vinaigre*) is a thin, sour liquid used for thousands of years as a preservative, cooking ingredient, condiment and cleaning solution. Vinegar is obtained through the fermentation of wine or other alcoholic liquid. Bacteria attacks the alcohol in the solution, turning it into acetic acid. No alcohol will remain when the transformation is complete. The quality of vinegar depends upon the quality of the wine or other liquid on which it is based. Vinegar flavors are as varied as the liquids from which they are made.

Vinegars should be clear and clean looking, never cloudy or muddy. Commercial vinegars are pasteurized, so an unopened bottle should last indefinitely in a cool, dark place. Once opened, vinegars should last about three months if tightly capped. Any sediment that develops can be strained out; if mold develops, discard the vinegar.

Wine vinegars are as old as wine itself. They may be made from white or red wine, sherry or even champagne, and should bear the color and flavor hallmarks of the wine used. Wine vinegars are preferred in French and Mediterranean cuisines.

Malt vinegar is produced from malted barley. Its slightly sweet, mild flavor is used as a condiment, especially with fried foods.

Distilled vinegar, made from grain alcohol, is completely clear with a stronger vinegary flavor and higher acid content than other vinegars. It is preferred for pickling and preserving.

Cider vinegar is produced from unpasteurized apple juice or cider. It is pale brown in color with a mild acidity and fruity aroma. Cider vinegar is particularly popular in the United States.

Rice vinegar is a clear, slightly sweet product brewed from rice wine. Its flavor is clean and elegant, making it useful in a variety of dishes.

Flavored vinegars are simply traditional vinegars in which herbs, spices, fruits or other foods are steeped to infuse their flavors. They are easily produced from commercial wine or distilled vinegars, using any herb, spice or fruit desired. The use of flavored vinegars is extremely popular but definitely not new. Clove, raspberry and fennel vinegars were sold on the streets of Paris during the 13th century. Making fruit-flavored vinegars was also one of the responsibilities of American housewives during the 18th and 19th centuries.

Balsamic Vinegar, Raspberry Vinegar and Cider Vinegar

Balsamic vinegar (It. *aceto Balsamico*) is newly popular in the United States, though it has been produced in Italy for more than 800 years. To produce balsamic vinegar, red wine vinegar is aged in a succession of wooden barrels made from a variety of woods—oak, cherry, locust, ash, mulberry and juniper—for at least 4, but sometimes up to 50, years. The resulting liquid is dark reddish-brown and sweet. Balsamic has a high acid level, but the sweetness covers the tart flavor, making it very mellow. True balsamic is extremely expensive because of the long aging process and the small quantities available. Most of the commercial products imported from Italy are now made by a quick carmelization and flavoring process. Balsamic is excellent as a condiment or seasoning and has a remarkable affinity for tomatoes and strawberries.

CONDIMENTS

Strictly speaking, a condiment is any food added to a dish for flavor, including herbs, spices and vinegars. Today, however, condiments more often refer to cooked or prepared flavorings, such as prepared mustards, **relishes**, bottled sauces and **pickles**. We discuss several frequently used condiments here. These staples may be used to alter or enhance the flavor of a dish during cooking or added to a completed dish at the table by the consumer.

Relish—*A cooked or pickled sauce usually made with vegetables or fruits; can be smooth or chunky, sweet or savory and hot or mild.*

Pickle—*1. To preserve food in a brine or vinegar solution. 2. Food that has been preserved in a seasoned brine or vinegar, especially cucumbers. Pickled cucumbers are available whole, sliced, in wedges, or chopped as a relish, and may be sweet, sour, dill-flavored or hot and spicy.*

Yellow Mustard

Dijon Mustard

Whole-grain Mustard

Brown Mustard

Prepared mustard is a mixture of crushed mustard seeds, vinegar or wine and salt or spices. It can be flavored in many ways—with herbs, onions, peppers and even citrus zest. It can be a smooth paste or coarse and chunky, depending on how finely the seeds are ground and whether the skins are strained out. Prepared mustard gets its tangy flavor from an essential oil that forms only when the seeds are crushed and mixed with water. Prepared mustard can be used as a condiment, particularly with meat and charcuterie items, or as a flavoring ingredient in sauces, stews and marinades.

Dijon mustard takes its name from a town and the surrounding region in France that produces about half of the world's mustard. French mustard labeled "Dijon" must, by law, be produced only in that region. Dijon and Dijon-style mustards are smooth with a rich, complex flavor.

English and Chinese mustards are made from mustard flour and cool water. They are extremely hot and powerful. American or "ballpark" mustard is mild and vinegary with a bright yellow color.

Mustard never really spoils, its flavor just fades away. Because of its high acid content, mustard does not turn rancid, but it will oxidize and develop a dark surface crust. Once opened, mustard should be kept well-covered and refrigerated.

Soy sauce is a thin, dark brown liquid fermented from cooked soy beans, wheat and salt. Available in several flavors and strengths, it is ubiquitous in most Asian cuisines. Light soy sauce is thin, with a light brown color and a very salty flavor. Dark soy sauce is thicker and dark brown, with a sweet, less salty flavor. Necessary for preparing many Asian dishes, soy sauce is also used in marinades and sauces and as an all-purpose condiment. Other soy-based condiments include tamari, teriyaki sauce and fermented bean paste (miso).

Ketchup (also known as catsup or catchup) originally referred to any salty extract from fish, fruits or vegetables. Prepared tomato ketchup is really a sauce, created in America and used worldwide as a flavoring ingredient or condiment. It is bright red and thick, with a tangy, sweet-sour flavor. Ketchup can be stored either in the refrigerator or at room temperature; it should keep well for up to four months after opening. Ketchup does not turn rancid or develop mold, but it will darken and lose flavor as it ages.

From Your Grocer's Shelf

Even the most sophisticated food service operation occasionally uses prepared condiments or flavorings. The products described here are widely used and available from grocery stores or wholesale purveyors. Some are brand-name items that have become almost synonymous with the product itself; others are available from several manufacturers.

Barbecue sauce—Like ketchup, commercial barbecue sauce is a mixture of tomatoes, vinegar and spices; it tends to be hotter and sweeter than ketchup, however. Commercial barbecue sauce is used primarily for marinating or basting meat, poultry or fish. A tremendous variety of barbecue sauces is available, with various flavors, textures and aromas. Sample several before selecting the most appropriate for your specific needs.

Fish sauce—Fish sauce is a thin, dark brown liquid made from anchovy extract and salt. It is the quintessential Thai seasoning, but is used throughout Southeast Asia. It is extremely salty with a powerful aroma. There is no substitute; only a small amount is necessary for most dishes.

Hoisin—Hoisin sauce is a dark, thick, salty-sweet sauce made from fermented soy beans, vinegar, garlic and caramel. It is used in Chinese dishes or served as a dipping sauce.

Old Bay® seasoning—Old Bay® is a dry spice blend containing celery salt, dry mustard, paprika and other flavorings. It is widely used in shellfish preparations, especially boiled shrimp and crab.

Oyster sauce—Oyster sauce is a thick, dark sauce made from oyster extract. It has a salty-sweet flavor and a rich aroma. Oyster sauce is often used with stir-fried meats and poultry.

Pickapeppa® sauce—Pickapeppa® sauce is a dark, thick, sweet-hot blend of tomatoes, onions, sugar, vinegar, mango, raisins, tamarinds and spices. Produced in Jamaica, West Indies, it is used as a condiment for meat, game or fish and as a seasoning in sauces, soups and dressings.

Tabasco® sauce—Tabasco® sauce is a thin, bright red liquid blended from vinegar, chiles and salt. Its fiery flavor is widely used in sauces, soups and prepared dishes; it is a popular condiment for Mexican, southern and southwestern cuisines. Tabasco® sauce has been produced in Louisiana since 1868. Other "Louisiana-style" hot sauces (those containing only peppers, vinegar and salt) may be substituted.

Worcestershire sauce—Worcestershire sauce is a thin, dark brown liquid made from malt vinegar, tamarind, molasses and spices. It is used as a condiment for beef and as a seasoning in sauces, soups, stews and prepared dishes. Its flavor should be rich and full, but not salty.

Coffees and Teas

Coffee and tea are the staples of most beverage menus. Despite their relatively low price, a good cup of coffee or tea can be extremely important to a customer's impression of your food service operation. A cup of coffee is often either the very first or the very last item consumed by a customer. Tea, whether iced or hot, is often consumed throughout the meal. Consequently, it is important that you learn to prepare and serve these beverages properly.

Coffee

Coffee (Fr. *café*) begins as the fruit of a small tree grown in tropical and subtropical regions throughout the world. The fruit, referred to as a cherry, is bright red with translucent flesh surrounding two flat-sided seeds. These seeds are the coffee beans. When ripe, the cherries are harvested by hand, then cleaned, fermented and hulled, leaving the green coffee beans. The beans are then roasted, blended, ground and brewed. Note that any coffee bean can be roasted to any degree of darkness, ground to any degree of fineness and brewed by any number of methods.

Only two species of coffee bean are routinely used: arabica and robusta. Arabica beans are the most important commercially and the ones from which the finest coffees are produced. Robusta beans do not produce as flavorful a drink as arabica. Nevertheless, robusta beans are becoming increasingly significant commercially, in part because robusta trees are heartier and more fertile than arabica trees.

The conditions in which the beans are grown have almost as much effect on the final product as subsequent roasting, grinding and brewing. Because coffee takes much of its flavor and character from the soil, sunlight and air, the beans' origin is critical to the product's final quality. Each valley and mountain produces coffee distinct from all others, so geographic names are used to identify the beans whether they are from arabica or robusta trees. Thus, purveyors may offer beans known as Columbian, Chanchamayo (from Peru), Kilimanjaro (from Tanzania), Blue Mountain (from Jamaica), Java, Sumatra or Kona (from Hawaii), to name a few.

Although many so-called gourmet coffees are made from a single type of bean, nearly all coffee sold in the United States is a blend of various qualities and types of bean.

Roasting Coffee

Roasting releases and enhances the flavors in coffee. It also darkens the beans and brings natural oils to the surface. Traditionally, almost everyone roasted their own coffee beans because all coffee beans were sold green. Today, however, roasting is left to experts who possess the necessary equipment.

It is important to recognize and understand some of the standard descriptions used for various types of roasting. No single international organization controls the naming of roasted coffee, however, so a coffee roaster may refer to products by any name. The following descriptions are based on the most common terminology:

Green Coffee Beans

City-roast Beans

French-roast Beans

- **City roast:** Also called American or brown roast, city roast is the most widely used coffee style in this country. City roast produces a beverage that may lack brilliance or be a bit flat, yet it is the roast most Americans assume they prefer because it is the roast most often used in grocery store blends.
- **Brazilian:** Somewhat darker than a city roast, Brazilian roast should begin to show a hint of dark-roast flavor. The beans should show a trace of oil. In this context, the word *Brazilian* has no relationship to coffee grown in Brazil.
- **Viennese:** Also called medium-dark roast, Viennese roast generally falls somewhere between a standard city roast and French roast.
- **French roast:** French roast, also called New Orleans or dark roast, approaches espresso in flavor without sacrificing smoothness. The beans should be the color of semi-sweet chocolate, with apparent oiliness on the surface.
- **Espresso roast:** Espresso roast, also called Italian roast, is the darkest of all. The beans are roasted until they are virtually burnt. The beans should be black with a shiny, oily surface.

Grinding Coffee

Unlike roasting, which is best left to the experts, the grinding of coffee beans is best left to the consumer or food service operation. Whole coffee beans stay fresh longer than ground coffee. Ground coffee kept in an air-tight container away from heat and light will stay fresh for three or four days. Whole beans will stay fresh for a few weeks and may be kept frozen for several months, as long as they are dry and protected from other flavors. Frozen coffee beans do not need to be thawed before grinding and brewing. Do not refrigerate coffee.

The fineness of the grind depends entirely on the type of coffee maker being used. The grind determines the length of time it takes to achieve the op-

timum (19%) extraction from the beans. The proper grind is simply whatever grind allows this to happen in the time it takes a specific coffee maker to complete its brewing cycle. Follow the directions for your coffee maker, or ask your specialty coffee purveyor for guidance.

Brewing Coffee

Coffee is brewed by one of two methods: decoction or infusion. **Decoction** means boiling a substance until its flavor is removed. Boiling is the oldest method of making coffee, but is no longer used except in preparing extremely strong Turkish coffee. **Infusion** refers to the extraction of flavors at temperatures below boiling. Infusion techniques include steeping (mixing hot water with ground coffee), filtering (slowly pouring hot water over ground coffee held in a disposable cloth or paper filter) and dripping (pouring hot water over ground coffee and allowing the liquid to run through a strainer). Percolating is undesirable, as the continuous boiling ruins the coffee's flavor.

The secrets to brewing a good cup of coffee are knowing the exact proportion of coffee to water as well as the length of time to maintain contact between the two. The best results are nearly always achieved by using two level tablespoons of ground coffee per 3/4 measuring cup (6 ounces) of water. (A standard cup of coffee is three-quarters the size of a standard measuring cup; one pound of coffee yields approximately 80 level tablespoons or enough for 40 "cups" of coffee.) An Approved Coffee Measure (ACM) was developed by the Coffee Brewing Institute to measure two level tablespoons accurately. ACM scoops are readily available and are often included with retail coffee packages.

Premeasured packages of ground coffee are generally used with commercial brewing equipment. These packages are available in a range of sizes for making single pots or large urns of coffee.

If stronger coffee is desired, use more coffee per cup of water, not a longer brewing time. For weaker coffee, prepare regular-strength coffee and dilute it with hot water. Never reuse coffee grounds.

Coffeepots and carafes should be cleaned well with hot water between each use; coffee makers should be disassembled and cleaned according to the manufacturer's directions. Unless properly cleaned, oils from coffee form an invisible film on the inside of the maker and pots, imparting a rancid or stale flavor to each subsequent batch.

Finally, coffee should be served as soon as it is brewed. Oxidation takes a toll on the aroma and flavor, which soon become flat and eventually bitter. Coffee may be held for a short time on the coffeemaker's hot plate at temperatures of 185°F to 190°F (85°C to 88°C). A better holding method, however, is to immediately pour freshly brewed coffee into a thermal carafe. Never attempt to reheat cold coffee, as drastic temperature shifts destroy flavor.

Tasting Coffee

Coffee can be judged on four characteristics: aroma, acidity, body and flavor.

As a general rule, coffee will taste the way it smells. Some coffees, particularly Colombian, are more fragrant than others, however.

Acidity, also called wininess, refers to the tartness of the coffee. Acidity is a desirable characteristic that indicates snap, life or thinness. Kenyan and Guatemalan are examples of particularly acidic coffees.

Body refers to the feeling of heaviness or thickness that coffee provides on the palate. Sumatran is generally the heaviest, with Mexican and Venezuelan being the lightest.

Don't Wreck the Ending

Lots of time and thought are spent on selecting the wines to accompany the various savory courses of a meal, but too often at the sweet course the dessert wine finds itself up against its worst enemy: chocolate. A good sauterne, or a good-quality dessert wine of almost any kind, works best with a fruit tart or with noncitrus sorbets accompanied by "dry cookie-like things," to use Richard Olney's phrase. Chocolate, whether in the form of pastry or confection, belongs with coffee, whose aromatic bitterness is a perfect foil for it.

The Late Richard H. Graff,
Chairman, Chalone Wine Group

Flavor, of course, is the most ambiguous as well as the most important characteristic. Terms such as mellow, harsh, grassy or earthy are used to describe the rather subjective characteristics of flavor.

Serving Coffee

Coffee may be served unadorned, unsweetened and black (without milk or cream). The customer then adds the desired amount of sugar and milk. Other coffee beverages are made with specific additions and provide value-added menu alternatives. The most common ways of serving coffee are described here.

- Espresso: Espresso refers to a unique brewing method in which hot water is forced through finely ground and packed coffee under high pressure. Properly made, it will be strong, rich and smooth, not bitter or acidic. Espresso is usually made with beans that have been roasted very dark, but any type of bean may be used. A single serving of espresso uses about 1/4 ounce (7 grams) of coffee to 1 1/2 ounces (45 milliliters) of water. Americans tend to prefer a larger portion, known as espresso lungo, made with 2 to 3 ounces (60 to 90 grams) of water.
- Espresso machiatto: Espresso "marked" with a tiny portion of steamed milk.
- Cappuccino: One third espresso, one third steamed milk and one third foamed milk; the total serving is still rather small, about 4 to 6 ounces (120 to 180 grams).
- Caffè latte: One third espresso, two thirds steamed milk without foam; usually served in a tall glass.
- Café au lait: the French version of the Italian caffè latte, café au lait (or café creme) is made with strong coffee instead of espresso and hot, not steamed, milk. It is traditionally served in a handleless bowl.
- Caffè mocha: One third espresso, two thirds steamed milk, flavored with chocolate syrup; usually topped with whipped cream and chocolate shavings or cocoa.
- Flavored coffees: Dried, ground chicory root has long been added to coffee, particularly by the French who enjoy its bitter flavor. Toasted barley, dried figs and spices have also been used by various cultures for years. Coffees flavored with vanilla, chocolate, liquors, spices and nuts have recently become popular in the United States. These flavors are added to roasted coffee beans by tumbling the beans with special flavoring oils. The results are strongly aromatic flavors such as vanilla hazelnut, chocolate raspberry or maple walnut.

Steamed milk—*milk that is heated with steam generated by an espresso machine; it should be approximately 150°F to 170°F (65°C to 76°C).*

Foamed milk—*milk that is heated and frothed with air and steam generated by an espresso machine; it will be slightly cooler than steamed milk.*

Decaffeinated Coffee

Caffeine is an alkaloid found in coffee beans (as well as in tea leaves and cocoa beans). It is a stimulant that can improve alertness or reduce fatigue. In excess, however, caffeine can cause some people to suffer palpitations or insomnia. Regular filtered coffee contains from 85 to 100 milligrams of caffeine per cup. Robusta beans contain more caffeine than the better-quality arabica beans. Decaffeinated coffee (with 97% or more of the caffeine removed) is designed to meet consumer desires for a caffeine-free product.

Other Uses

In addition to its use as a beverage, coffee is frequently an ingredient in mixed drinks such as Irish coffee (with whiskey and cream) or café brulot (with orange, cloves and brandy). Coffee is also used in stews, sauces and pan gravy. It may be added to breads, such as rye and pumpernickel, cakes, custards, ice creams, dessert sauces and frostings. The flavor of coffee has a strong affinity for chocolate, nuts and rum.

A Cup of Coffee History

Some anthropologists suggest that coffee was initially consumed by central African warriors in the form of a paste made from mashed coffee beans and animal fat rolled into balls. Eaten before battle, the animal fat and bean protein provided nourishment; the caffeine provided a stimulant.

A hot coffee drink may first have been consumed sometime during the 9th century A.D. in Persia. Made by a decoction of ripe beans, the drink was probably very thick and acrid. Nevertheless, by the year 1000, the elite of the Arab world were regularly drinking a decoction of dried coffee beans. The beans were harvested in Abyssinia (Ethiopia) and brought to market by Egyptian merchants. Within a century or so, kahwa became immensely popular with members of all strata of Arab society. Coffeehouses opened throughout the Levant, catering to customers who sipped the thick, brown brew while discussing affairs of heart and state.

Although European travelers to the Ottoman Empire had tasted coffee, and a few Arab or Turkish merchants living in Marseilles offered their guests a chance to sample the rare drink, coffee did not become popular in Europe until the 17th century. Its popularity is due in great part to Suleiman Aga, the Grand Panjandrum of the Ottoman Empire. In 1669, he arrived at the court of King Louis XIV of France as ambassador, bringing with him many exotic treasures, including caffe. Offered at his opulent parties, caffe soon became the drink of choice for the French aristocracy.

Coffee became popular in Vienna as a fortune of war. By 1683, the Turks were at the gates of Vienna. A decisive battle was fought, and the Turks fled, leaving behind stores of gold, equipment, supplies and a barely known provision—green coffee beans. One of the victorious leaders, Franz George Kolschitzky, recognized the treasure, took it as his own and soon opened the first coffeehouse in Vienna, The Blue Bottle.

Despite its growing popularity, coffee was exorbitantly expensive, in part, the result of the Sultan's monopoly on coffee beans. His agents, principally in Marseilles, controlled the sale of beans. But the monopoly was not to survive. By the end of the 17th century, the Dutch had stolen coffee plants from Arabia and began cultivating them in Java. By the early 18th century, the French had transported seedlings to the West Indies; from there coffee plantations spread throughout the New World.

Tea

Tea (Fr. *thê*) is the name given to the leaves of Camellia sinensis, a tree or shrub that grows at high altitudes in damp tropical regions. Although tea comes from only one species of plant, there are three general types of tea—black, green and oolong. The differences among the three are the result of the manner in which the leaves are treated after picking.

Black tea is amber-brown and strongly flavored. Its color and flavor result from fermenting the leaves. Black tea leaves are named or graded by leaf size. Because larger leaves brew more slowly than smaller ones, teas are sorted by leaf size for efficient brewing. Souchong denotes large leaves, pekoe denotes medium-sized leaves and orange pekoe denotes the smallest whole leaves. (Note that orange pekoe does not refer to any type of orange flavor.) Broken tea, graded as either broken orange pekoe or broken pekoe, is smaller, resulting in a darker, stronger brew. Broken tea is most often used in tea bags. These grades apply to both Chinese and Indian black teas.

Green tea is yellowish-green in color with a bitter flavor. Leaves used for green tea are not fermented. Chinese green tea leaves are also graded according to leaf size and age. The finest green tea is Gunpowder, followed by Imperial and Hyson.

Tea Flavors

The following descriptions apply to some of the teas frequently available through wholesalers or gourmet suppliers. Taste several different ones to find the best for your purposes. Remember that the same tea from different blenders or distributors may taste different, and that different flavors will be more or less appropriate for different times of the day. You may wish to offer your patrons a selection of flavors.

Assam—a rich black tea with a reddish color from Northern India. It is valued by connoisseurs, especially for breakfast.

Ceylon—a full-flavored black tea with a golden color and delicate fragrance. Ideal for serving iced, it does not become cloudy when cold.

Darjeeling—the champagne of teas, grown in the foothills of the Himalayas. It is a full-bodied, black tea with a muscat flavor.

Earl Grey—a blend of black teas, usually including Darjeeling, flavored with oil of bergamot. A popular choice for afternoon tea.

English Breakfast—an English blend of Indian and Sri Lankan black teas; it is full-bodied and robust, with a rich color.

Gunpowder—a green Chinese tea with a tightly curled leaf and gray-green color. It has a pungent flavor and a light straw color. It is often served after the evening meal.

Keemum—a mellow black Chinese tea with a strong aroma. It is less astringent than other teas and is delicious iced.

Lapsang Souchong—a large-leafed (souchong) tea from the Lapsang district of China. It has a distinctive tarry, smoky flavor and aroma, appropriate for afternoon tea or dinner.

Formosa Oolong—a unique and expensive large-leafed oolong tea with the flavor of ripe peaches. It is appropriate for breakfast or afternoon tea.

Tisanes—*herbal infusions that do not contain any "real" tea; examples include chamomile, ginseng and lemon balm. Tisanes are prepared in the same way as tea infusions.*

Oolong tea is partially fermented to combine the characteristics of black and green teas. Oolong is popular in China and Japan, often flavored with jasmine flowers. Oolong tea leaves are also graded by size and age.

As with coffee, tea takes much of its flavor from the geographic conditions in which it is grown. Teas are named for their place of origin, for example, Darjeeling, Ceylon (now Sri Lanka) or Assam. Many popular and commercially available teas are actually blends of leaves from various sources. Blended and unblended teas may also be flavored with oils, dried fruit, spices, flowers or herbs.

Brewing Tea

Tea may be brewed by the cup or the pot. In either case, it is important to use the following procedure:

1. Always begin with clean equipment and freshly drawn cold water. Water that has been sitting in a kettle or hot water tank contains less air and will taste flat or stale.
2. Warm the teapot by rinsing its interior with hot water. This begins to relax the tea leaves and ensures that the water will stay hot when it comes in contact with the tea.
3. Place one teaspoon (5 millimeters) of loose tea or one tea bag per 3/4 cup (6 ounces/180 grams) of water capacity in the warmed teapot.
4. As soon as the water comes to a boil, pour the appropriate amount over the tea. Do not allow the water to continue boiling as this removes the oxygen, leaving a flat taste. The water should be at a full boil when it comes in contact with the tea so that the tea leaves will uncurl and release their flavor.
5. Replace the lid of the teapot and allow the tea to infuse for 3 to 5 minutes. Time the brew. Color is not a reliable indication of brewing time: Tea leaves release color before flavor, and different types of tea will be different colors when properly brewed.
6. Remove the tea bags or loose tea from the water when brewing is complete. This can be accomplished easily if the teapot is fitted with a removable leaf basket or if a tea bag or a perforated tea ball is used. Otherwise, decant the tea through a strainer into a second warmed teapot.
7. Serve immediately, accompanied with sugar, lemon, milk (not cream) and honey as desired. Dilute the tea with hot water if necessary.
8. Do not reuse tea leaves. One pound of tea yields 200 cups, making it the most inexpensive beverage after tap water.

For iced tea, prepare regular brewed tea using 50% more tea. Then pour the tea into a pitcher or glass filled with ice. The stronger brew will hold its flavor better as the ice melts.

Serving Tea

Black and oolong tea may be served hot or cold, but green tea is best served hot. Black tea is served with milk or lemon and sugar; green and oolong tea are most often served plain. Adding milk to hot tea is a British preference (not normally followed in Europe or Asia) that reduces the astringency of the tea. Iced tea, an American invention, may be served plain or sweetened, and is often garnished with lemon, orange or fresh mint.

A Cup of Tea History

Some believe that the Chinese Emperor Shen Nung discovered tea drinking in 2737 B.C. Legend holds that the Emperor was boiling his drinking water beneath a tree when some leaves fell into the pot. Enchanted with the drink, he began to cultivate the plant. Whether myth or truth, it is known that a hot drink made from powdered dried tea leaves whipped into hot water was regularly consumed in China sometime after the 4th century. Later, decoctions of tea leaves (as well as rice, spices and nuts) became popular. But it was not until the Ming dynasty (A.D. 1368–1644) that infusions of tea leaves became commonplace.

By the 9th century, tea drinking had spread to Japan. In both Chinese and Japanese cultures, tea drinking developed into a ritual. For the Chinese, a cup of tea became the mirror of the soul. For the Japanese, it was the drink of immortality.

Tea was first transported from China to Europe by Dutch merchants during the early 1600s. By mid-century, it was introduced into England. In 1669, the East India Company was granted a charter by Queen Elizabeth I to import tea, a monopoly it held until 1833. To ensure a steady supply, the English surreptitiously procured plants from China and started plantations throughout the Indian subcontinent, as did the Dutch.

Tea drinking became fashionable in England, at least in court circles, through Charles II (raised in exile at The Hague in Holland, he reigned from 1660 until 1685) and his Portuguese wife, Catherine of Braganza. Queen Anne of England (reigned 1702–1714) introduced several concepts that eventually became part of the English tea custom. For example, she substituted tea for ale at breakfast and began using large silver pots instead of tiny china pots.

The social custom of afternoon tea began in the late 1700s, thanks to Anna, Duchess of Bedford. Historians attribute to her the late afternoon ritual of snacking on sandwiches and pastries accompanied by tea. She began the practice in order to quell her hunger pangs between breakfast and dinner (which was typically served at 9:30 or 10:00 P.M.).

Eventually, two distinct types of teatime evolved. Low tea was aristocratic in origin and consisted of a snack of pastries and sandwiches, with tea, served in the late afternoon as a prelude to the evening meal. High tea was bourgeois in origin, consisting of leftovers from the typically large middle-class lunch, such as cold meats, bread and cheeses. High tea became a substitute for the evening meal.

Conclusion

Kitchen staples include fresh and dried herbs, spices, salt, nuts, oils, vinegars, condiments, coffees and teas. You must be able to recognize, purchase, store and use many of these staples.

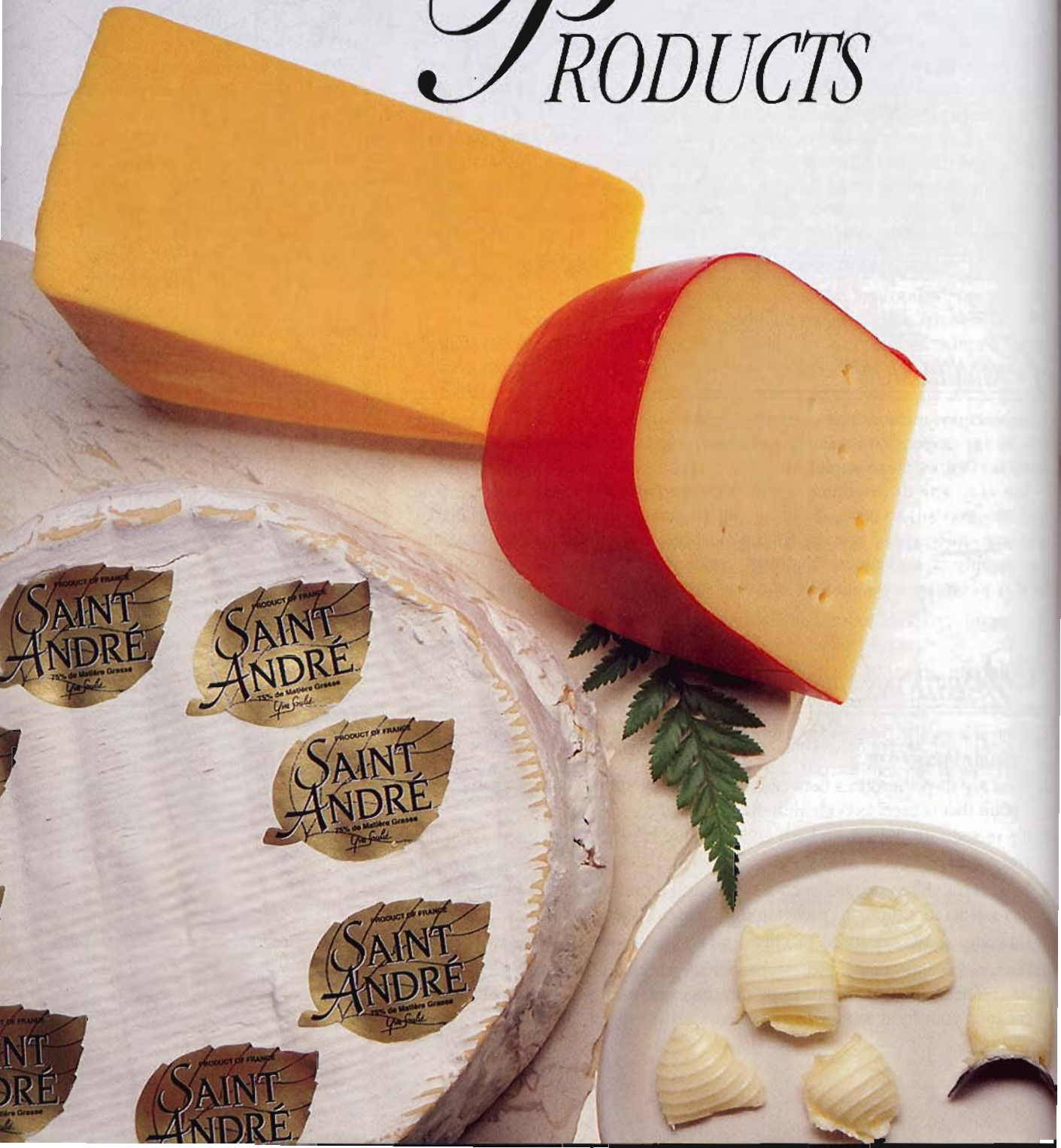
The only way to determine which brand or type of staple is best for your particular needs is to taste, smell, sample and use a variety of those available. Cost, convenience and storage factors must also be considered. By maintaining a supply of seasonings, flavorings, condiments and other staples, you will be able to create new dishes or enhance standard ones at a moment's notice.

Questions for Discussion

1. What is a staple? Does every kitchen keep the same staples on hand? Explain your answer.
2. What are the differences between an herb and a spice? Give an example of a plant that is used as both an herb and a spice.
3. If a recipe calls for a fresh herb and you only have the herb dried, what do you do? Explain your answer.
4. What is the difference between a sachet and a bouquet garni? Identify the ingredients in a standard sachet and a standard bouquet garni.
5. How are condiments used by chefs and by customers?
6. Discuss the importance of using proper preparation and service techniques for coffee and tea. How can these beverages be used to improve or enhance your food service operation?

CHAPTER 8

DAIRY PRODUCTS



THE GENUINE
SAFR PORT SALUT'
PRODUCT OF FRANCE - 53 OZ
SEMI-SOFT CHEESE
PORT SALUT'
SAFR
PORT SALUT' IS A REGISTERED TRADEMARK OWNED BY S.A.F.R. FRANCE
NET WEIGHT 68 oz (4 1/4 lb - 1950 g)

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- identify, store and use a variety of milk-based products
- identify, store and serve a variety of fine cheeses

Dairy products *include cow's milk and foods produced from cow's milk such as butter, yogurt, sour cream and cheese. The milk of other mammals, namely, goats, sheep (ewe) and buffaloes, is also made into cheeses that are used in commercial food service operations. Dairy products are extremely versatile and are used throughout the kitchen, served either as is or as ingredients in everything from soups and salads to breads and desserts. They need to be handled with care, however.*

MILK

Ewe's milk—*is milk produced by a female sheep; it has approximately 7.9% milkfat, 11.4% milk solids and 80.7% water.*

Goat's milk—*is milk produced by a female goat; it has approximately 4.1% milkfat, 8.9% milk solids and 87% water.*

Water buffalo's milk—*is milk produced by a female water buffalo; it has approximately 7.5% milkfat, 10.3% milk solids and 82.2% water.*

Milk is not only a popular beverage, it is also used in the preparation of many dishes. It provides texture, flavor, color and nutritional value for cooked or baked items. Indeed, milk is one of the most nutritious foods available, providing proteins, vitamins and minerals (particularly calcium). But milk is also highly perishable and an excellent bacterial breeding ground. Care must be exercised in the handling and storage of milk and other dairy products.

Whole milk—that is, milk as it comes from the cow—consists of water primarily (about 88%). It contains approximately 3.5% milkfat and 8.5% other milk solids (proteins, milk sugar [lactose] and minerals).

Whole milk is graded A, B or C according to standards recommended by the U.S. Public Health Service. Grades are assigned based on bacterial count, with Grade A products having the lowest count. Grades B and C, though still safe and wholesome, are rarely available for retail or commercial use. Fresh whole milk is not available raw, but must be processed as we describe shortly.

Processing Techniques

Pasteurization

By law, all Grade A milk must be pasteurized prior to retail sale. Pasteurization is the process of heating milk to a sufficiently high temperature for a sufficient length of time to destroy pathogenic bacteria. This typically requires holding milk at a temperature of 161°F (72°C) for 15 seconds. Pasteurization also destroys enzymes that cause spoilage thus increasing shelf life. Milk's nutritional value is not significantly affected by pasteurization.

Ultra-Pasteurization

Ultra-pasteurization is a process in which milk is heated to a very high temperature (275°F/135°C) for a very short time (2 to 4 seconds) in order to destroy virtually all bacteria. Ultra-pasteurization is most often used with whipping cream and individual creamers. Although the process may reduce cream's whipping properties, it extends its shelf life dramatically.

Ultra High Temperature Processing

Ultra high temperature (UHT) processing is a form of ultra-pasteurization in which milk is held at a temperature of 280°F to 300°F (138°C–150°C) for 2 to 6 seconds. It is then packed in sterile containers under sterile conditions and aseptically sealed to prevent bacteria from entering the container. Unopened

UHT milk can be stored without refrigeration for at least three months. Although UHT milk can be stored unrefrigerated, it should be chilled before serving and stored like fresh milk once opened. UHT processing may give milk a slightly cooked taste, but it has no significant effect on milk's nutritional value. Long available in Europe, it has been approved for sale in the United States.

Homogenization

Homogenization is a process in which the fat globules in whole milk are reduced in size and permanently dispersed throughout the liquid. This prevents the fat from clumping together and rising to the surface as a layer of cream. Although homogenization is not required, milk sold commercially is generally homogenized because it ensures a uniform consistency, a whiter color and a richer taste.

Certification

Certification is a method of controlling the quality of milk by controlling the condition of the animals from which milk is obtained. Certification is not a true processing technique; rather, it requires frequent veterinary examinations of the cows and health department inspections of the dairy farm, the equipment and the employees who handle the milk. Pasteurization has replaced the need for certification, but milk from certified herds is still available in a few areas.

Milkfat Removal

Whole milk can also be processed in a centrifuge to remove all or a portion of the milkfat, resulting in **lowfat milk** and **skim milk**.

Lowfat milk is whole milk from which sufficient milkfat has been removed to produce a liquid with .5% to 2.0% milkfat. (All lowfat milks must still contain approximately 8.25% milk solids.) Vitamin A is added to lowfat milk to replace that removed along with the milkfat. It will be labeled with either the fat content or the nonfat percentage. For example, milk containing 1% milkfat may be labeled "99% fat free" or "1% lowfat."

Skim milk, also referred to as **nonfat milk**, has had as much milkfat removed as possible. The fat content must be less than .5%. Skim milk must also contain at least 8.25% milk solids and be fortified with vitamin A.

Storage

Fluid milk should be kept refrigerated at or below 40°F (4°C). Its shelf life is reduced by half for every five-degree rise in temperature above 40°F (4°C). Keep milk containers closed to prevent absorption of odors and flavors. Freezing is not recommended.

Concentrated Milks

Concentrated or condensed milk products are produced by using a vacuum to remove all or part of the water from whole milk. The resulting products have a high concentration of milkfat and milk solids and an extended shelf life.

Evaporated milk is produced by removing approximately 60% of the water from whole, homogenized milk. Evaporated milk must contain at least 7.25% milkfat and 25.5% milk solids. The concentrated liquid is canned and heat-sterilized. This results in a cooked flavor and darker color. Evaporated

Imitation and Artificial Dairy Products

Coffee whiteners, imitation sour cream, whipped topping mixes and some whipped toppings in pressurized cans are made from nondairy products. These products usually consist of corn syrup, emulsifiers, vegetable fats, coloring agents and artificial flavors. These products are generally less expensive and have a longer shelf life than the real dairy products they replace, but their flavors are no match. Imitation and artificial products may be useful, however, for persons with allergies or on a restricted diet. If you choose to use these products, you cannot claim to be using real dairy products on menus or labels.

skim milk, with a milkfat content of .5%, is also available. A can of evaporated milk requires no refrigeration until opened, although the can should be stored in a cool place. Evaporated milk can be reconstituted with an equal amount of water and used like whole milk for cooking or drinking.

Sweetened condensed milk is similar to evaporated milk in that 60% of the water has been removed. But unlike evaporated milk, sweetened condensed milk contains large amounts of sugar (40 to 45%). Sweetened condensed milk is also canned; the canning process darkens the color and adds a caramel flavor. Sweetened condensed milk cannot be substituted for whole milk or evaporated milk because of its sugar content. Its distinctive flavor is most often found in desserts and confections.

Dry milk powder is made by removing virtually all the moisture from pasteurized milk. The moisture content must be less than 5% by weight. Dry whole milk contains between 26% and 40% milkfat. Nonfat milk powder is made from skim milk and must contain less than 1.5% milkfat by weight. Both types of dry milk are usually fortified with vitamins A and D.

The lack of moisture prevents the growth of microorganisms and allows dry whole and nonfat milk powders to be stored for extended periods without refrigeration. However, because of its high milkfat content, dried whole milk can turn rancid if not stored in a cool place. Either type of dry milk can be reconstituted with water and used like fresh milk. Milk powder may also be added to foods directly, with additional liquid included in the recipe. This procedure is typical in bread making and does not alter the function of the milk or the flavor in the finished product.

Cream

Cream is a rich, liquid milk product containing at least 18% fat. It must be pasteurized or ultra-pasteurized and may be homogenized. Cream has a slight yellow or ivory color and is more viscous than milk. It is used throughout the kitchen to give flavor and body to sauces, soups and desserts. Whipping cream, containing not less than 30% milkfat, can be whipped into a stiff foam and used in pastries and desserts. Cream is marketed in several forms with different fat contents, as described here.

Half-and-half is a mixture of whole milk and cream containing between 10% and 18% milkfat. It is often served with cereal or coffee, but does not contain enough fat to whip into a foam.

Light cream, coffee cream and **table cream** are all products with more than 18% but less than 30% milkfat. These products are often used in baked goods or soups as well as with coffee, fruit and cereal.

Light whipping cream or, simply, **whipping cream**, contains between 30% and 36% milkfat. It is generally used for thickening and enriching sauces and making ice cream. It can be whipped into a foam and used as a dessert topping or folded into custards or mousses to add flavor and lightness.

Heavy whipping cream or, simply, **heavy cream**, contains not less than 36% milkfat. It whips easily and holds its whipped texture longer than other creams. It must be pasteurized, but is rarely homogenized. Heavy cream is used throughout the kitchen in the same ways as light whipping cream.

Storage

Ultra-pasteurized cream will keep for six to eight weeks if refrigerated. Unwhipped cream should not be frozen. Whipped, sweetened cream can be frozen, tightly covered, for up to three months, then slowly thawed in the

refrigerator. Keep cream away from strong odors and bright lights, as they can adversely affect its flavor.

Cultured Dairy Products

Cultured dairy products such as yogurt, buttermilk and sour cream are produced by adding specific bacterial cultures to fluid dairy products. The bacteria convert the milk sugar lactose into lactic acid, giving these products their body and tangy, unique flavors. The acid content also retards the growth of undesirable microorganisms; thus cultured products have been used for centuries to preserve milk.

Buttermilk originally referred to the liquid remaining after cream was churned into butter. Today, buttermilk is produced by adding a culture (*Streptococcus lactis*) to fresh, pasteurized skim or lowfat milk. This results in a tart milk with a thick texture. Buttermilk is most often used as a beverage or in baked goods.

Sour cream is produced by adding the same culture to pasteurized, homogenized light cream. The resulting product is a white, tangy gel used as a condiment or to give baked goods a distinctive flavor. Sour cream must have a milkfat content of not less than 18%.

Crème fraîche is a cultured cream popular in French cuisine. Although thinner and richer than sour cream, it has a similar tart, tangy flavor. It is used extensively in soups and sauces, especially with poultry, rabbit and lamb dishes. It is easily prepared from the following recipe.

RECIPE 8.1

CRÈME FRAÎCHE

Yield: 1 pint (500 ml)

Heavy cream	16 oz.	500 g
Buttermilk, with active cultures	1 oz.	30 g

1. Heat the cream (preferably not ultra-pasteurized) to approximately 100°F (43°C).
2. Remove the cream from the heat and stir in the buttermilk.
3. Allow the mixture to stand in a warm place, loosely covered, until it thickens, approximately 12 to 36 hours.
4. Chill thoroughly before using. Crème fraîche will keep for up to 10 days in the refrigerator.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 90, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 35 mg, **Sodium** 10 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 10 percent, **Claims**—very low sodium

Yogurt is a thick, tart, custardlike product made from milk (either whole, lowfat or nonfat) cultured with *Lactobacillus bulgaricus* and *Streptococcus thermophilus*. Though touted as a health or diet food, yogurt contains the same amount of milkfat as the milk from which it is made. Yogurt may also contain a variety of sweeteners, flavorings and fruits. Yogurt is generally eaten as is, but may be used in baked products, salad dressings and frozen desserts. It is used in many Middle Eastern cuisines.

Storage

Cultured products should be kept refrigerated at 40°F (4°C) or below. Under proper conditions, sour cream will last up to four weeks, yogurt up to three weeks and buttermilk up to two weeks. Freezing is not recommended for these products, but dishes prepared with cultured products generally can be frozen.

Butter

Butter is a fatty substance produced by agitating or churning cream. Its flavor is unequaled in sauces, breads and pastries. Butter contains at least 80% milkfat, not more than 16% water and 2–4% milk solids. It may or may not contain added salt. Butter is firm when chilled and soft at room temperature. It melts into a liquid at approximately 98°F (38°C) and reaches the smoke point at 260°F (127°C).

Government grading is not mandatory, but most processors submit their butters for testing. The USDA label on the package assures the buyer that the butter meets federal standards for the grade indicated:

- USDA Grade AA—butter of superior quality, with a fresh, sweet flavor and aroma, a smooth, creamy texture and good spreadability.
- USDA Grade A—butter of very good quality, with a pleasing flavor and fairly smooth texture.
- USDA Grade B—butter of standard quality, made from sour cream; has an acceptable flavor but lacks the flavor, texture and body of Grades AA and A. Grade B is most often used in the manufacturing of foods.

Salted butter is butter with up to 2.5% salt added. This not only changes the butter's flavor, it also extends its keeping qualities. When using salted butter in cooking or baking, the salt content must be considered in the total recipe.

Whipped butter is made by incorporating air into the butter. This increases its volume and spreadability, but also increases the speed with which the butter will become rancid. Because of the change in density, whipped butter should not be substituted in recipes calling for regular butter.

Storage

Butter should be well wrapped and stored at temperatures between 32°F and 35°F (0°C–2°C). Unsalted butter is best kept frozen until needed. If well wrapped, frozen butter will keep for up to nine months at a temperature of 0°F (–18°C).

Clarified Butter

Unsalted whole butter is approximately 80% fat, 15% water and 5% milk solids. Although whole butter can be used for cooking or sauce making, sometimes a more stable and consistent product will be achieved by using butter that has had the water and milk solids removed by a process called clarification.

Procedure for Clarifying Butter

1. Slowly warm the butter in a saucepan over low heat without boiling or agitation. As the butter melts, the milk solids rise to the top as a foam and the water sinks to the bottom.

MARGARINE: FROM LABORATORY BENCH TO DINNER TABLE

Margarine was invented by a French chemist in 1869 after Napoleon III offered a prize for the development of a synthetic edible fat. Originally produced from animal fat and milk, margarine is now made almost exclusively from vegetable fats.

In *On Food and Cooking, The Science and Lore of the Kitchen*, Harold McGee recounts the history of margarine. He explains that margarine caught on quickly in Europe and America, with large-scale production underway by 1880. But the American dairy industry and the U.S. government put up fierce resistance. First, margarine was defined as a harmful drug and its sale restricted. Then it was heavily taxed; stores had to be licensed to sell it and, like alcohol and tobacco, it was bootlegged. The U.S. government refused to purchase it for use by the armed forces. And, in an attempt to hold it to its true colors, some states did not allow margarine to be dyed yellow (animal fats and vegetable oils are much paler than butter); the dye was sold separately and mixed in by the consumer. World War II, which brought butter rationing, probably did the most to establish margarine's respectability. But it was not until 1967 that yellow margarine could be sold in Wisconsin.

2. When the butter is completely melted, skim the milk solids from the top.
3. When all the milk solids have been removed, ladle the butterfat into a clean saucepan, being careful to leave the water in the bottom of the pan.
4. The clarified butter is now ready to use. One pound (454 grams) of whole butter will yield approximately 12 ounces (340 grams) of clarified butter (a yield of 75%).

Clarified butter will keep for extended periods in either the freezer or refrigerator.

Skimming milk solids from the surface of melted butter.

Ladling the butterfat into a clean pan.

Margarine

Margarine is not a dairy product but is included in this section because it is so frequently substituted for butter in cooking, baking and table service. Margarine is manufactured from animal or vegetable fats or a combination of such fats. Flavorings, colorings, emulsifiers, preservatives and vitamins are added, and the mixture is firmed or solidified by exposure to hydrogen gas at very high temperatures, a process known as hydrogenation. Generally, the firmer the margarine, the greater the degree of hydrogenation and the longer its shelf life. Like butter, margarine is approximately 80% fat and 16% water. But even the finest margarine cannot match the flavor of butter.

Margarine packaged in tubs is softer and more spreadable than solid products and generally contains more water and air. Indeed, diet margarine is approximately 50% water. Because of their decreased density, these soft products should not be substituted for regular butter or margarine in cooking or baking.

Specially formulated and blended margarine is available for commercial use in making puff pastry, croissant doughs, frostings and the like.

NUTRITION

Dairy products are naturally high in vitamins, minerals and protein. Often liquid products such as milk are fortified with additional vitamins and minerals. Their fat content varies depending upon the amount of milkfat left after processing. Specific nutritional values for selected dairy products are found in Table 8.1.

TABLE 8.1 NUTRITIONAL VALUES OF DAIRY PRODUCTS

Per 8-ounce (225 g) Serving	Calories	Protein (g)	Carbohydrates (g)	Total Fat (g)	Saturated Fat (g)	Cholesterol (mg)	Sodium (mg)
Whole milk (3.3% milkfat)	150	8	11	8.2	5.1	33	120
Nonfat milk	85	8.4	12	0.4	0.3	4	126
Buttermilk	100	8.1	12	2.2	1.3	9	257
Heavy whipping cream	821	5	6.6	88	55	326	89
Half and half	315	7.2	10.4	27.8	17.3	89	98
Sour cream	493	7.3	9.8	48.2	30	102	123

The Corinne T. Netzer Encyclopedia of Food Values, 1992

NATURAL CHEESES

Cheese (Fr. *fromage*, It. *fromaggio*) is one of the oldest and most widely used foods known to man. It is served alone or as a principal ingredient in or an accompaniment to countless dishes. Cheese is commonly used in commercial kitchens, appearing in everything from breakfast to snacks to desserts.

Literally hundreds of natural cheeses are produced worldwide. Although their shapes, ages and flavors vary according to local preferences and traditions, all natural cheeses are produced in the same basic fashion as has been used for centuries. Each starts with a mammal's milk; cows, goats and sheep are the most commonly used. The milk proteins (known as *casein*) are coagulated with the addition of an enzyme, usually rennet, which is found in calves' stomachs. As the milk coagulates, it separates into solid curds and liquid whey. After draining off the whey, either the curds are made into fresh cheese, such as ricotta or cottage cheese, or the curds are further processed by cutting, kneading and cooking. The resulting substance, known as "green cheese," is packed into molds to drain. Salt or special bacteria may be added to the molded cheeses, which are then allowed to age or ripen under controlled conditions to develop the desired texture, color and flavor.

Cheeses are a product of their environment, which is why most fine cheeses cannot be reproduced outside their native locale. The breed and feed of the milk animal, the wild spores and molds in the air and even the wind currents

TABLE 8.2 NUTRITIONAL VALUES OF COMMON CHEESES

Per 1-ounce (28 g) Serving	Calories	Protein (g)	Carbohydrates (g)	Total Fat (g)	Saturated Fat (g)	Cholesterol (mg)	Sodium (mg)
Blue	100	6.1	0.7	8.2	5.3	21	396
Cheddar	114	7.1	0.4	9.4	6	30	176
Cottage, low fat	25	3.9	1	0.5	0.3	2	115
Feta	75	4	1.2	6	4.2	25	316
Goat's milk	132	2.7	12.1	8.4	5.4	n/a	170
Mozzarella, part skim	72	6.9	0.8	4.5	2.9	16	132
Swiss	110	8	1	8	5	25	20
Processed cheese (*Velveeta*)	100	6	3	7	4	20	410

The Corinne T. Netzer Encyclopedia of Food Values, 1992

in a storage area can affect the manner in which a cheese develops. (Roquefort, for example, develops its distinctive flavor from aging in particular caves filled with crosscurrents of cool, moist air.)

Some cheeses develop a natural rind or surface because of the application of bacteria (bloomy rind) or by repeated washing with brine (washed rind). Most natural rinds may be eaten if desired. Other cheeses are coated with an inedible wax rind to prevent moisture loss. Fresh cheeses have no rind whatsoever.

Moisture and fat contents are good indicators of a cheese's texture and shelf life. The higher the moisture content, the softer the product and the more perishable it will be. Low-moisture cheeses may be used for grating and will keep for several weeks if properly stored. (Reduced water activity levels prohibit bacterial growth.) Fat content ranges from low fat (less than 20% fat) to double cream (at least 60% fat) and triple cream (at least 72% fat). Cheeses with a high fat content will be creamier and have a richer flavor and texture than low-fat products.

Most cheeses contain high percentages of fat and protein. Cheese is also rich in calcium, phosphorus and vitamin A. As animal products, natural cheeses contain cholesterol. Today, many low-fat, even nonfat, processed cheeses are available. Sodium has also been reduced or eliminated from some modern products. See Table 8.2.

Cheese Varieties

Cheeses can be classified by country of origin, ripening method, fat content or texture. Here we classify fine cheeses by texture and have adopted five categories: fresh or unripened, soft, semi-soft, firm and hard. A separate section on goat's-milk cheeses is also included.

Fresh or Unripened Cheeses

Fresh cheeses are uncooked and unripened. Referred to as *fromage blanc* or *fromage frais* in French, they are generally mild and creamy with a tart tanginess. They should not taste acidic or bitter. Fresh cheeses have a moisture content of 40% to 80% and are highly perishable.

Cream cheese is a soft cow's-milk cheese from the United States containing approximately 35% fat. It is available in various-sized solid white blocks or whipped and flavored. It is used throughout the kitchen in baking, dips, dressings and confections and is popular as a spread for bagels and toast.

Feta

Feta is a semi-soft Greek or Italian product made from sheep's and/or goat's milk. It is a white, flaky cheese that is pickled (but not ripened) and stored in brine water, giving it a shelf life of four to six weeks. Its flavor becomes sharper and saltier with age. Feta is good for snacks and salads and melts easily for sauces and fillings.

Mascarpone is a soft cow's-milk cheese originally from Italy's Lombard region. It contains 70% to 75% fat, and is extremely smooth and creamy. Mascarpone is highly perishable and is available in bulk or in 8- or 16-ounce tubs. Its pale ivory color and rich, sweet

Mascarpone

Making Mozzarella

In Italy, mozzarella is made every day; it is meant to be consumed just as often. Before there was refrigeration, the balls of mozzarella were stored in well water to keep them cool, which is where the tradition originated of storing fresh mozzarella in liquid.

Once the milk is coagulated and the curds are cut, the mass is slowly stirred to enhance the whey's expulsion. A few hours later, when the curds are mature, they are removed from the whey, chopped or shredded and then mixed with hot water.

To test the exact amount of maturity, a handful of curds is dipped into a bucket of hot water for 10 seconds. When the curds are removed, they should be kneaded briefly and then, holding the mass with two hands, it should be pulled and stretched out to determine its maturity. When it is exactly ready to be strung, it can be stretched as thin and opaque as tissue paper. At this point, small amounts of curd are dumped into a small vat and stirred with hot water using a paddle. This is known as "stringing" the cheese because as the curds are mixed with the water they begin to melt somewhat and become stringy. The more the cheese is stirred, the longer the strings are stretched. Eventually, all the strings come together to make a large mass of satiny-smooth cheese. In Italian, the word *filare* means "to string"; therefore, all cheeses that are strung are members of the *pasta filata* family.

When stringing is complete, the cheese is ready to be shaped and hand-formed into balls. The balls are tossed immediately into vats of cool water so they will maintain the desired shapes. When cool, the balls are immersed in brine solution and then wrapped in parchment paper.

PAULA LAMBERT, *owner*
MOZZARELLA COMPANY, Dallas, Texas

Mozzarella

Ricotta

flavor is useful in both sweet and savory sauces as well as desserts. It is also eaten plain, with fresh fruit, or spread on bread and sprinkled with cocoa or sugar.

Mozzarella is a firm Italian cheese traditionally made with water buffalo's milk (today, cow's milk is more common) and containing 40% to 45% fat. Mozzarella becomes elastic when melted and is well known as "pizza cheese." Fresh mozzarella is excellent in salads or topped simply with olive oil and herbs. It is a very mild white cheese best eaten within hours of production. Commercial mozzarella is rather bland and rubbery and is best reserved for cooking, for which it may be purchased already shredded.

Ricotta is a soft Italian cheese, similar to American cottage cheese, made from the whey left when other cow's-milk cheeses are produced. It contains only 4% to 10% fat. It is white or ivory in color and fluffy, with a small grain and sweet flavor. Ricotta is an important ingredient in many pasta dishes and desserts.

Soft Cheeses

Soft cheeses are characterized by their thin skins and creamy centers. They are among the most delicious and popular of cheeses. They ripen quickly and are at their peak for only a few days, sometimes less. Moisture content ranges from 50% to 75%.

Bel paese is a 20th-century Italian creation made from cow's milk and containing approximately 50% fat. It is mild and creamy with a fruity flavor. The inside is yellowish, and the outside is brown or gray. Bel paese is excellent for snacking and melts easily.

Brie is a rind-ripened French cheese made with cow's milk and containing about 60% fat. Brie is made in round, flat disks weighing 2 or 4 pounds; it is coated with a bloomy white rind. At the peak of ripeness, it is creamy and rich, with a texture that oozes. Selecting a properly ripened Brie is a matter of judgment and experience. Select a cheese that is bulging a bit inside its rind; there should be just the beginning of a brown coloring on the rind. If underripe, Brie will be bland with a hard, chalky core. Once the cheese is cut, it will not ripen any further. If overripe, Brie will have a brownish rind that may be gummy or sagging and will smell strongly of ammonia. The rind is edible, but trim it off if preferred. The classic after-dinner cheese, Brie is also used in soups, sauces and hors d'oeuvres.

Brie

Boursin is a triple-cream cow's-milk cheese from France containing approximately 75% fat. Boursin is usually flavored with peppers, herbs or garlic. It is rindless, with a smooth, creamy texture, and is packed in small, foil-wrapped cylinders. Boursin is a good breakfast cheese and a welcome addition to any cheese board. It is also a popular filling for baked chicken.

Camembert is a rind-ripened cheese from France containing approximately 45% fat. Bavaria also produces a Camembert, though of a somewhat lesser quality. Camembert is creamy, like Brie, but milder. It is shaped in small round or oval disks and is coated with a white bloomy rind. Selecting a properly ripened Camembert is similar to selecting a Brie, but Camembert will become overripe and ammoniated even more quickly than Brie. Camembert is an excellent dessert or after-dinner cheese and goes particularly well with fruit.

Leftover Cheese

Never discard those little leftover bits and pieces of cheese lurking in your refrigerator. The tag ends of Brie, cheddar, farmer cheese, chevre, Roquefort, Mozzarella, and scores of other cheese can be quickly transformed into a tasty mixture which the thrifty French call *fromage fort* ("strong Cheese"). Seasoned with fresh garlic and a few splashes of wine, it makes an assertively flavored topping for toast or thick slices of bread and tastes best when briefly melted under the broiler.

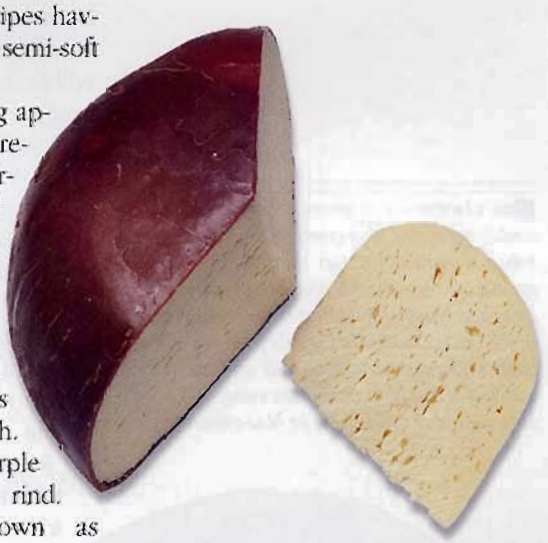
To make *fromage fort*, gather together 1 pound of leftover cheese (3 kinds is enough, 6 or 7 will be even better). Trim off any mold or very dried out parts from the surface. Toss 3 or 4 peeled cloves of garlic into a food processor and process for several seconds until coarsely chopped. Add the cheese to the garlic along with 1/2 cup dry white wine and at least 1 teaspoon of freshly ground black pepper. Process until the mixture becomes soft and creamy, about 30 seconds. Remove the mixture from the processor and transfer it to a crock or bowl. Cover tightly with plastic wrap and refrigerate.

From Steve Jenkins Cheese Primer, by Steve Jenkins.

Semi-Soft Cheeses

Semi-soft cheeses include many mild, buttery cheeses with smooth, sliceable textures. Some semi-soft cheeses are also known as monastery or Trappist cheeses because their development is traced to monasteries, some recipes having originated during the Middle Ages. The moisture content of semi-soft cheeses ranges from 40% to 50%.

Doux de Montagne is a cow's-milk cheese from France containing approximately 45% fat. Produced in the foothills of the Pyrenees, it is also referred to as **pain de Pyrenees**. Doux de Montagne is pale yellow with irregular holes and a mellow, sweet, nutty flavor. It is sometimes studded with green peppercorns, which provide a tangy flavor contrast. It is usually shaped in large, slightly squashed spheres and coated with brown wax. Doux de Montagne is good before dinner and for snacking.



Doux de Montagne

Fontina is a cow's-milk cheese from Italy's Piedmont region containing approximately 45% fat. The original, known as **fontina Val D'Aosta**, has a dark gold, crusty rind; the pale gold, dense interior has a few small holes. It is nutty and rich. The original must have a purple trademark stamped on the rind. Imitation fontinas (known as **fontal** or **fontinella**) are produced in Denmark, France, Sweden, the United States and other regions of Italy. They tend to be softer, with less depth of flavor, and may have a rubbery texture. Real fontina is a good after-dinner cheese; the imitations are often added to sauces, soups or sandwiches.

Gorgonzola

Gorgonzola is a blue-veined cow's-milk cheese from Italy containing 48% fat. Gorgonzola has a white or ivory interior with bluish-green veins. It is creamier than Stilton or Roquefort, with a somewhat more pungent, spicy, earthy flavor. White gorgonzola has no veins but a similar flavor, while aged gorgonzola is drier and

crumbly with a very strong, sharp flavor. The milder gorgonzolas are excellent with fresh peaches or pears or crumbled in a salad. Gorgonzola is also used in sauces and in the *torta con basilico*, a cakelike cheese loaf composed of layers of cheese, fresh basil and pine nuts.

Gouda is a Dutch cheese containing approximately 48% fat. Gouda is sold in various-sized wheels covered with red or yellow wax. The cheese is yellow with a few small holes and a mild, buttery flavor. Gouda may be sold soon after production, or it may be aged for several months, resulting in a firmer, more flavorful cheese. Gouda is widely popular for snacking and in **fondue**.

Fondue—*a Swiss specialty made with melted cheese, wine and flavorings; eaten by dipping pieces of bread into the hot mixture with long forks.*

Havarti is a cow's-milk monastery-style cheese from Denmark containing 45% to 60% fat. Havarti is also known as **Danish Tilsit** or by the brand name **Dofino**. Pale yellow with many small, irregular holes, it is sold in small rounds, rectangular blocks or loaves. Havarti has a mild flavor and creamy texture. It is often flavored with dill, caraway seeds or peppers. Havarti is very popular for snacking and in sandwiches.

Havarti

Port du Salut is a monastery cow's-milk product from France containing approximately 50% fat. Port du Salut (also known as Port Salut) is smooth, rich and savory. It is shaped in thick wheels with a dense, pale yellow interior and an edible, bright orange rind. The Danish version is known as **Esrom**. One of the best and most authentic Port du Saluts has the initials S.A.F.R. stamped on the rind. Lesser-quality brands may be bland and rubbery. It is popular for breakfast and snacking, especially with fruit.

Blue cheese—*1. A generic term for any cheese containing visible blue-green molds that contribute a characteristic tart, sharp flavor and aroma; also known as a blue-veined cheese or bleu. 2. A group of Roquefort-style cheeses made in the United States and Canada from cow's or goat's milk rather than ewe's milk and injected with molds that form blue-green veins; also known as blue mold cheese or blue-veined cheese.*

Roquefort is a blue-veined sheep's-milk cheese from France containing approximately 45% fat. One of the oldest cheeses, Roquefort is intensely pungent with a rich, salty flavor and strong aroma. It is a white paste with veins of blue mold and a thin natural rind shaped into thick, foil-wrapped cylinders. Roquefort is always aged for at least three months in the limestone caves of Mount Combalou. Since 1926, no producer outside this region can legally use the name Roquefort or even "Roquefort-style." Roquefort is an excellent choice for serving before or after dinner and is, of course, essential for Roquefort dressing.

Stilton is a blue-veined cow's-milk cheese from Great Britain containing 45% fat. Stilton is one of the oldest and grandest cheeses in the world. It has a white or pale yellow interior with evenly spaced blue veins. Stilton's distinctive flavor is pungent, rich and tangy, combining the best of blues and cheddars. It is aged in cool ripening rooms for four to six months to develop the blue veining; it is then sold in tall cylinders with a crusty, edible rind. Stilton should be wrapped in a cloth dampened with salt water and stored at cool temperatures, but not refrigerated. It is best served alone, with plain crackers, dried fruit or vintage port.

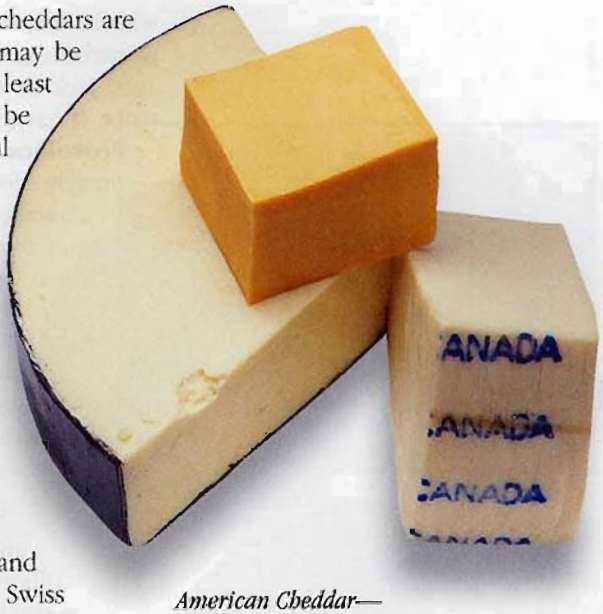
Stilton

Firm Cheeses

Firm cheeses are not hard or brittle. Some are close-textured and flaky, like cheddar; others are dense, holey cheeses like Swiss Emmenthaler. Most firm cheeses are actually imitators of these two classics. Their moisture content ranges from 30% to 40%.

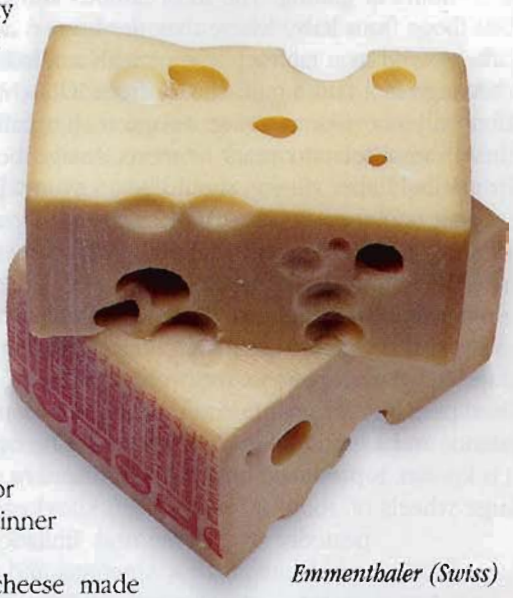
Cheddars are produced in both North America and Great Britain. **American Cheddar** is a cow's-milk cheese made primarily in New York, Wisconsin,

Vermont and Oregon, containing from 45% to 50% fat. The best cheddars are made from raw milk and aged for several months. (Raw milk may be used in the United States provided the cheese is then aged at least 60 days.) They have a dense, crumbly texture. Cheddars may be white or colored orange with vegetable dyes, depending on local preference. Flavors range from mild to very sharp, depending on the age of the cheese. **Colby** and **longhorn** are two well-known mild, soft-textured Wisconsin cheddars. Cheddars are sold in a variety of shapes and sizes, often coated with wax. Good-quality cheddars are welcome additions to any cheese board, while those of lesser quality are better reserved for cooking and sandwiches. **English Cheddar** is a variety of cow's-milk cheese produced in Great Britain containing approximately 45% fat. Perhaps the most imitated cheese in the world, true English cheddar is rarely seen in the United States because of import restrictions. It is a moist yet sliceable cheese, aged at least six months.



American Cheddar—Wisconsin Sharp, Vermont Cabot, Canadian Black Diamond

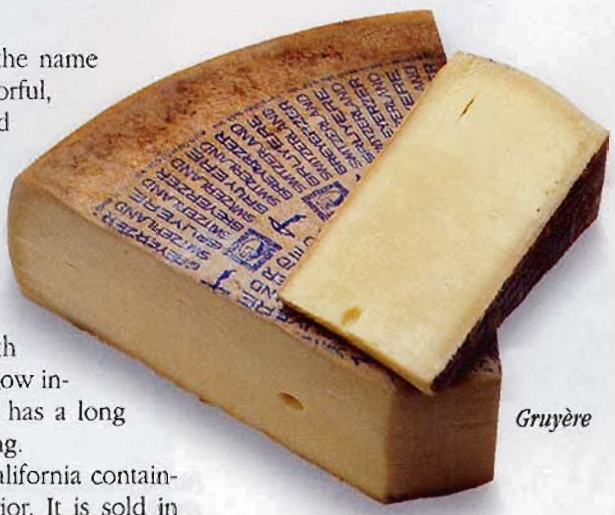
Emmenthaler (Swiss) is a cow's-milk cheese from Switzerland containing approximately 45% fat. Emmenthaler is the original Swiss cheese; it accounts for more than half of Switzerland's cheese production. It is mellow, rich and nutty with a natural rind and a light yellow interior full of large holes. It is ripened in three stages with the aid of fermenting bacteria. The holes or "eyes" are caused by gases expanding inside the cheese during fermentation. Authentic Emmenthaler is sold in 200-pound wheels with the word *Switzerland* stamped on the rind like the spokes of a wheel. Emmenthaler, one of the basic fondue cheeses, is also popular for sandwiches, snacks and after dinner with fruit and nuts.



Emmenthaler (Swiss)

Gruyère is a cow's-milk cheese made near Fribourg in the Swiss Alps and containing approximately 45% to 50% fat. Gruyère is often imitated, as the name is not legally protected. True Gruyère is moist and highly flavorful, with a sweet nuttiness similar to Emmenthaler. Gruyère is aged for up to 12 months and then sold in huge wheels. It should have small, well-spaced holes and a brown, wrinkled rind. Gruyère melts easily and is often used with meats and in sauces, but it is also appropriate before or after dinner.

Jarlsberg is a Swiss-type cow's-milk cheese from Norway containing approximately 45% fat. Jarlsberg closely resembles Swiss Emmenthaler in both flavor and appearance. It is mild with a delicate, sweet flavor and large holes. Jarlsberg has a pale yellow interior; it is coated with yellow wax and sold in huge wheels. It has a long shelf life and is popular for sandwiches, snacks and in cooking.



Gruyère

Monterey Jack is a cheddarlike cow's-milk cheese from California containing 50% fat. It is very mild and rich, with a pale ivory interior. It is sold in

wheels or loaves coated with dark wax. "Jack" is often flavored with peppers or herbs and is good for snacking, sandwiches and in Mexican dishes. Dry-aged Jack develops a tough, wrinkled brown rind and a rich, firm yellow interior. It has a nutty, sharp flavor and is dry enough for grating.

Provolone is a cow's-milk cheese from southern Italy containing approximately 45% fat. Provolone *dolce*, aged only two months, is mild, with a smooth texture. Provolone *piccante*, aged up to six months, is stronger and somewhat flaky or stringy. Smoked provolone is also popular, especially for snacking. Provolone is shaped in various ways, from huge salamis to plump spheres to tiny piglets shaped by hand. It is excellent in sandwiches and for cooking, and is often used for melting and in pizza and pasta dishes.

Provolone

Hard Cheeses

Hard cheeses are not simply cheeses that have been allowed to dry out. Rather, they are carefully aged for extended periods and have a moisture content of about 30%. Hard cheeses are most often used for grating; the best flavor will come from cheeses grated as needed. Even the finest hard cheeses begin to lose their flavor within hours of grating. The most famous and popular of the hard cheeses are those from Italy, where they are known as *grana*. Hard cheeses can also be served as a table cheese or with a salad.

Asiago is a cow's-milk cheese from Italy containing approximately 30% fat. After only one year of aging, Asiago is sharp and nutty with a cheddarlike texture. If aged for two years or more, Asiago becomes dry, brittle and suitable for grating. Either version should be an even white to pale yellow in color with no dark spots, cracks or strong aromas. It is sold in small wheels and keeps for long periods if well wrapped. Asiago melts easily and is often used in cooking.

Asiago

Parmigiano-Reggiano (Parmesan) is a cow's-milk cheese made exclusively in the region near Parma, Italy, containing from 32% to 35% fat. Parmigiano-Reggiano is one of the world's oldest and most widely copied cheeses. Used primarily for grating and cooking, it is rich, spicy and sharp with a golden interior and a hard oily rind. It should not be overly salty or bitter. Reggiano, as it is known, is produced only from mid-April to mid-November. It is shaped into huge wheels of about 80 pounds (36 kilos) each, with the name stenciled repeatedly around the rind. Imitation Parmesan is produced in the United States, Argentina and elsewhere, but none can match the distinctive flavor of freshly grated Reggiano.

Parmigiano-Reggiano (Parmesan)

Pecorino Romano is a sheep's-milk cheese from central and southern Italy containing approximately 35% fat. Romano is very brittle and sharper than other grating cheeses, with a "sheepy" tang. Its light, grainy interior is whiter than Parmesan or Asiago. It is packed in large cylinders with a yellow rind. Romano is often substituted for, or combined with, Parmesan in cooking, but it is also good eaten with olives, sausages and red wine.

Goat's-Milk Cheeses

Because of their increasing popularity, cheeses made from goat's milk deserve a few words of their own. Although goats give less milk than cows, their milk is

higher in fat and protein and richer and more concentrated in flavor. Cheeses made with goat's milk have a sharp, tangy flavor. They may range in texture from very soft and fresh to very hard, depending on age.

Chevre (French for "goat") refers to small, soft, creamy cheeses produced in a variety of shapes: cones, disks, pyramids or logs. Chevres are often coated with ash, herbs or seasonings. They are excellent for cooking and complement a wide variety of flavors. Unfortunately, they have a short shelf life, perhaps only two weeks. Cheese labeled *pur chevre* must be made with 100% goat's milk, while others may be a mixture of cow's and goat's milk.

The finest goat's-milk cheeses usually come from France. Preferred brands include Bucheron, exported from France in 5-pound (2-kilo) logs; Chevrotin, one of the mildest; and Montrachet, a tangy soft cheese from the Burgundy wine region. Spurred on by the increased popularity of chevre, a few American producers have developed excellent cheeses in a wide variety of shapes and styles.

Goat's Milk Cheeses

PROCESSED CHEESES

Pasteurized processed cheese is made from a combination of aged and green cheeses that are mixed with emulsifiers and flavorings, pasteurized and poured into molds to solidify. Manufacturers can thus produce cheeses with consistent textures and flavors. Processed cheeses are commonly used in food service operations because they are less expensive than natural cheeses. And, because they will not age or ripen, their shelf life is greatly extended. Nutritionally, processed cheeses generally contain less protein, calcium and vitamin A and more sodium than natural cheeses.

Processed cheese food contains less natural cheese (but at least 51% by weight) and more moisture than regular processed cheese. Often vegetable oils and milk solids are added, making cheese food soft and spreadable.

Imitation cheese is usually manufactured with dairy byproducts and soy products mixed with emulsifiers, colorings and flavoring agents and enzymes. Although considerably less expensive than natural cheese, imitation cheese tends to be dense and rubbery, with little flavor other than that of salt.

AMERICAN CHEESE PRODUCTION

The first cheese factory in the United States was built in 1851 in Oneida County, New York. Herkimer County, which adjoins Oneida County, soon became the center of the American cheese industry and remained so for the next 50 years. During this time, the largest cheese market in the world was at Little Falls, New York, where farm-produced cheeses and cheeses from more than 200 factories were sold. At the turn of the century, as New York's population increased, there was a corresponding increase in demand for fluid milk. Because dairymen could receive more money for fluid milk than for cheese, cheese production declined.

Although New York still produces some outstanding cheddars, the bulk of the American cheese industry gradually moved westward, eventually settling in Wisconsin's rich farmlands. The United States is now the world's largest manufacturer of cheeses, producing nearly twice as much as its nearest competitor, France.

Cheese Terminology

The following terms often appear on cheese labels and may help you identify or appreciate new or unfamiliar cheeses:

Affine—French term for a washed-rind cheese.

Bleu—French term for blue.

Brique or *briquette*—refers to a group of French brick-shaped cheeses.

Brosse—French term for cheeses that are brushed during ripening.

Capra—Italian for goat's-milk cheese.

Carré—French term for square, flat cheeses.

Cendre—French term for cheeses ripened in ashes.

Coulant—French for "flowing," used to describe Brie, Camembert and other cheeses when their interiors ooze or flow.

Ferme or fermier—French term for farm-produced cheeses.

Fromage à tartiner—French term for melting cheese, often applied to processed cheeses.

Kaas—Dutch for cheese.

Kase—German for cheese.

Lait cru—French term for raw milk.

Laiterie or *laitier*—French for dairy; appears on factory-made cheeses.

Mi chevre—a French product so labeled must contain at least 25 percent goat's milk.

Ost—Scandinavian term for cheese.

Pecorino—Italian term for all sheep's-milk cheeses.

Queso—Spanish term for cheese.

Rape—French term applied to cheeses that are suitable for grating.

Tome or *tomme*—term used by the French, Italians and Swiss to refer to mountain cheeses, particularly from the Pyrenees or Savoie regions.

Tyrophile—one who loves cheese.

Vaccino—Italian term for cow's-milk cheese.

Serving Cheeses

Cheeses may be served at any time of day. In Northern Europe, they are common for breakfast; in Great Britain, they are a staple at lunch. Cheeses are widely used for sandwiches, snacks and cooking in America, and they are often served following the entree or instead of dessert at formal dinners.

The flavor and texture of natural cheeses are best at room temperature. So, except for fresh cheeses, all cheeses should be removed from the refrigerator 30 minutes to an hour before service to allow them to come to room temperature. Fresh cheeses, such as cottage and cream, should be eaten chilled.

Any selection of fine cheeses should include a variety of flavors and textures: from mild to sharp, from soft to creamy to firm. Use a variety of shapes and colors for visual appeal. Do not precut the cheeses as this only causes them to become dry. Provide an adequate supply of serving knives so that stronger-flavored cheeses will not combine with and overpower milder ones. Fine cheeses are best appreciated with plain bread and crackers, as salted or seasoned crackers can mask the cheese's flavor. Noncitrus fruits are also a nice accompaniment.

Storage

Most cheeses are best kept refrigerated, well wrapped to keep odors out and moisture in. Firm and hard cheeses can be kept for several weeks; fresh cheeses will spoil in 7 to 10 days because of their high moisture content. Some cheeses that have become hard or dry may still be grated for cooking or baking. Freezing is possible but not recommended because it changes the cheese's texture, making it mealy or tough.

Cheeseboard Set for Service

WINE AND CHEESE: CLASSIC COMBINATIONS

Some cheeses are delicious with beers or ales. Others are best with strong coffee or apple cider, and nothing accompanies a cheddar cheese sandwich as well as ice-cold milk. For most cheeses, however, the ultimate partner is wine. Wine and cheese bring out the best in each other. The proteins and fats in cheeses take the edge off harsh or acidic wines, while the tannins and acids in wines bring out the creamy richness of cheeses.

Because of their natural affinity, certain pairings are universal favorites: Stilton with port, Camembert with Bordeaux, Roquefort with Sauternes and English cheddar with Burgundy. Although taste preferences are an individual matter, cheese-wine marriages follow two schools of thought: either pair likes or pair opposites.

Pairing like with like is simple: Cheeses are often best served with wines produced in the same region. For example, a white burgundy such as Montrachet would be an excellent choice for cheeses from Burgundy; and goat cheeses from the Rhone Valley go well with wines of that region. Hearty Italian wines such as Chianti, Barolo and Valpolicella are delicious with Italian cheese—gorgonzola, provolone, taleggio. And a dry, aged Monterey Jack is perhaps the perfect mate for California zinfandel.

Opposites do attract, however. Sweet wines such as Sauternes and Gewürztraminer go well with sharp, tangy blues, especially Roquefort. And light, sparkling wines such as Champagne or Spanish Cava are a nice compliment to rich, creamy cheeses like Brie and Camembert.

CONCLUSION

Dairy products are versatile foods used throughout the kitchen. They may be served as is or incorporated into many dishes, including soups, sauces, entrees, breads and desserts. Fine natural cheeses are useful in prepared dishes but are most important for buffets, as the cheese course during a meal or whenever cheese is the primary ingredient or dominant flavor. Dairy products spoil easily and must be handled and stored properly.

QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

1. What is milkfat, and how is it used in classifying milk-based products?
2. If a recipe calls for whole milk and you have only dried milk, what do you do? Explain your answer.
3. What is clarified butter, and when is it used? Describe the procedure for clarifying butter.
4. The texture and shelf life of cheese depend on what two factors?
5. Cheeses are categorized as fresh, soft, semi-soft, firm and hard. Give two examples of each, and explain how they are generally used.

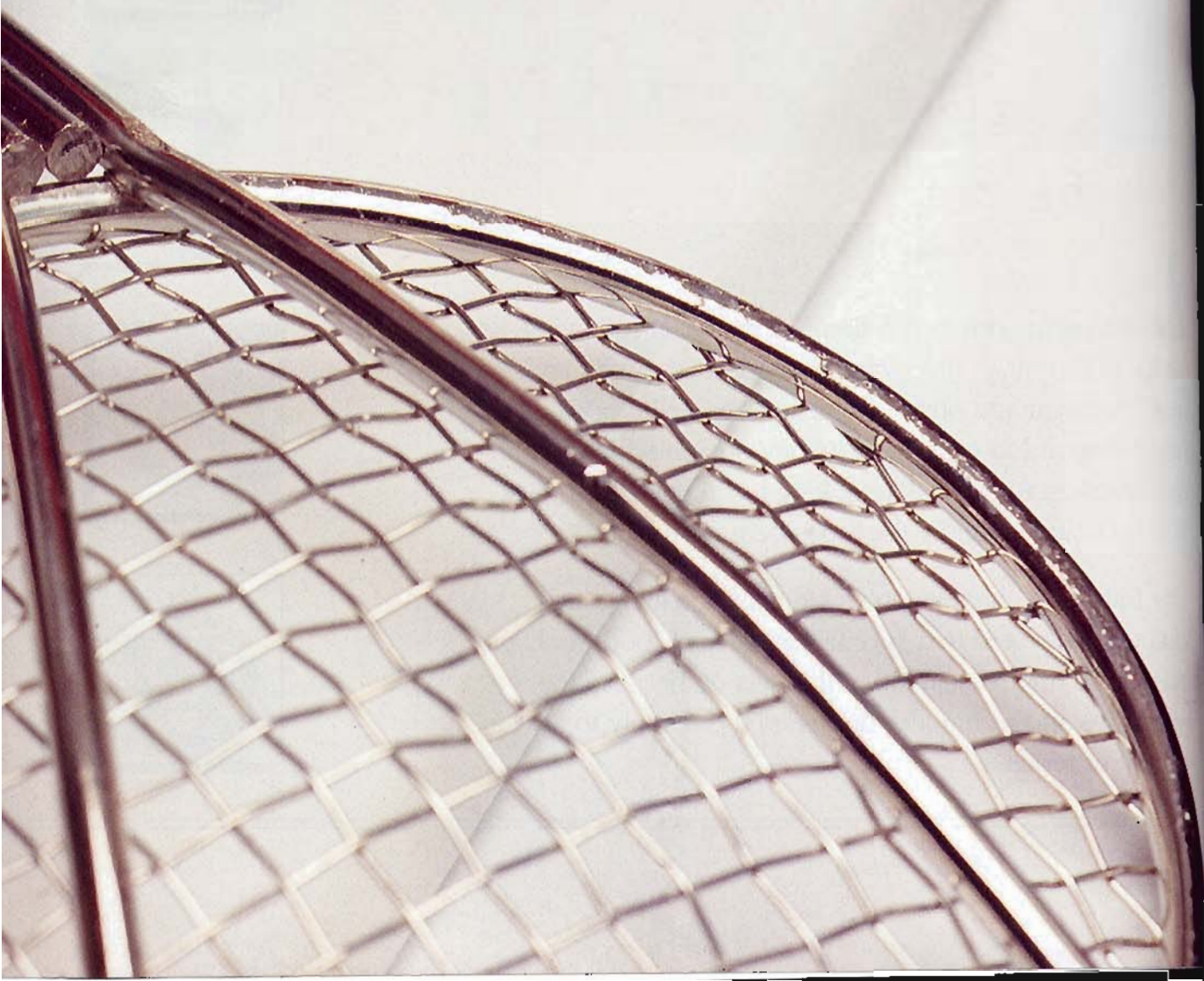
PART THREE
COOKING

Learning to cook is not simply a matter of following recipes. You must understand and appreciate why and how chemical and physical reactions occur in foods, why foods respond to heat the way they do and which foods respond best to particular cooking techniques. You must also be able to identify the foods being used.

The following chapters present this information; each chapter is devoted to a specific category of food. A chapter on deep-frying is included in this section because the principles and techniques discussed there apply to a wide variety of foods.

CHAPTER 9

PRINCIPLES OF COOKING



After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- understand how heat is transferred to foods through conduction, convection and radiation
- understand how heat affects foods
- understand the basic principles of various cooking methods

Cooking can be defined as the transfer of energy from a heat source to a food. This energy alters the food's molecular structure, changing its texture, flavor, aroma and appearance. But why is food cooked at all? The obvious answer is that cooking makes food taste better. Cooking also destroys undesirable microorganisms and makes foods easier to ingest and digest.

To cook foods successfully, you must first understand the ways in which heat is transferred: conduction, convection and radiation. You should also understand what the application of heat does to the proteins, sugars, starches, water and fats in foods.

Perhaps most important, you must understand the cooking methods used to transfer heat: broiling, grilling, roasting and baking, sautéing, pan-frying, deep-frying, poaching, simmering, boiling, steaming, braising and stewing. Each method is used for many types of food, so you will be applying one or more of them every time you cook. The cooking method you select gives the finished product a specific texture, appearance, aroma and flavor. A thorough understanding of the basic procedures involved in each cooking method helps you produce consistent, high-quality products.

This chapter discusses each of the cooking methods in general terms without applying them to any specific food. We will discuss these methods again in more detail as they are used in the following chapters.

HEAT TRANSFER

Heat is a type of energy. When a substance gets hot, its molecules have absorbed energy, which causes the molecules to vibrate rapidly, expand and bounce off one another. As the molecules move, they collide with nearby molecules, causing a transfer of heat energy. The faster the molecules within a substance move, the higher its temperature. This is true whether the substance is air, water, an aluminum pot or a sirloin steak.

Heat energy may be transferred to foods via conduction, convention or radiation. Heat then travels *through* foods by conduction. Only heat is transferred—cold is simply the absence of heat, so cold cannot be transferred from one substance to another.

Conduction

Conduction is the most straightforward means of heat transfer. It is simply the movement of heat from one item to another through direct contact. For example, when the flame of a gas burner touches the bottom of a sauté pan, heat is conducted to the pan. The metal of the pan then conducts heat to the surface of the food lying in that pan.

Some materials conduct heat better than others. Water is a better conductor of heat than air. This explains why a potato cooks much faster in boiling water than in an oven, and why you cannot place your hand in boiling water at a temperature of 212°F (100°C), but can place your hand, at least very briefly, into a 400°F (200°C) oven. Generally, metals are good conductors (as discussed in Chapter 5, Tools and Equipment, copper and aluminum are the best conductors), while liquids and gases are poor conductors.

Conduction is a relatively slow method of heat transfer because there must be physical contact to transfer energy from one molecule to adjacent molecules. Consider what happens when a metal spoon is placed in a pot of simmering soup. At first the spoon handle remains cool. Gradually, however, heat travels up the handle, making it warmer and warmer, until it becomes too hot to touch.

Conduction is important in all cooking methods because it is responsible for the movement of heat from the surface of a food to its interior. As the molecules near the food's exterior gather energy, they move more and more rapidly. As they move, they conduct heat to the molecules nearby, thus transferring heat *through* the food (from the exterior of the item to the interior).

In conventional heating methods (nonmicrowave), the heat source causes food molecules to react largely from the surface inward so that layers of molecules heat in succession. This produces a range of temperatures within the food, which means that the outside can brown and form a crust long before the interior is noticeably warmer. That is why a steak can be fully cooked on the outside but still rare on the inside.

Convection

Convection refers to the transfer of heat through a fluid, which may be liquid or gas. Convection is actually a combination of conduction and a mixing in which molecules in a fluid (whether air, water or fat) move from a warmer area to a cooler one. There are two types of convection: natural and mechanical.

Natural convection occurs because of the tendency of warm liquids and gases to rise while cooler ones fall. This causes a constant natural circulation of heat. For example, when a pot of stock is placed over a gas burner, the molecules at the bottom of the pot are warmed. These molecules rise while cooler, heavier molecules sink. Upon reaching the pot's bottom, the cooler molecules are warmed and begin to rise. This ongoing cycle creates currents within the stock, and these currents distribute the heat throughout the stock.

Mechanical convection relies on fans or stirring to circulate heat more quickly and evenly. This explains why foods heat faster and more evenly when stirred. Convection ovens are equipped with fans to increase the circulation of air currents, thus speeding up the cooking process. But even conventional ovens (that is, not convection ovens) rely on the natural circulation patterns of heated air to transfer heat energy to items being baked or roasted.

Radiation

Unlike conduction and convection, **radiation** does not require physical contact between the heat source and the food being cooked. Instead, energy is transferred by waves of heat or light striking the food. Two kinds of radiant heat are used in the kitchen: infrared and microwave.

Infrared cooking uses an electric or ceramic element heated to such a high temperature that it gives off waves of radiant heat that cook the food. Radiant heat waves travel at the speed of light in any direction (unlike convection heat,

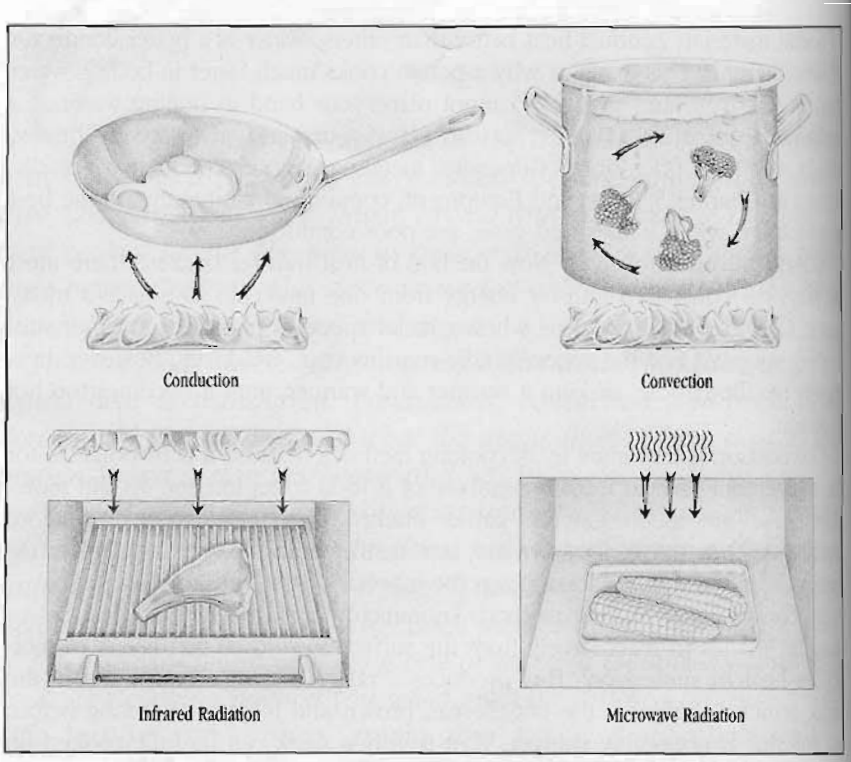


FIGURE 9.1 *Arrows indicate heat patterns during conduction, convection and radiation.*

INDUCTION— THE NEWEST HEAT SOURCE

Induction cooking uses a special induction coil placed below the stove top's surface in combination with specially designed cookware made of cast iron or magnetic stainless steel. The coil generates a magnetic current so that the cookware is heated rapidly with magnetic friction. Heat energy is then transferred from the cookware to the food by conduction. The cooking surface, which is made of a solid ceramic material, remains cool. Only the cookware and its contents get hot.

Induction cooking is a relatively new process, more popular in Europe than the United States. But it is gaining acceptance in professional kitchens because of the speed with which foods can be heated and the ease of cleanup.

which only rises) until they are absorbed by a food. Infrared cooking is commonly used with toasters and broilers. The glowing coals of a fire are another example of radiant heat.

Microwave cooking relies on radiation generated by a special oven to penetrate the food, where it agitates water molecules, creating friction and heat. This energy then spreads throughout the food by conduction (and by convection in liquids). Microwave cooking is much faster than other methods because energy penetrates the food up to a depth of several centimeters, setting all water molecules in motion at the same time. Heat is generated quickly and uniformly throughout the food. Microwave cooking does not brown foods, however, and often gives meats a dry, mushy texture, making microwave ovens an unacceptable replacement for traditional ovens.

Because microwave radiation affects only water molecules, a completely waterless material (such as a plate) will not get hot. Any warmth felt in a plate used when microwaving food results from heat being conducted from the food to the plate.

Microwave cooking requires the use of certain types of utensils, usually heat-resistant glass or microwavable plastic. Even heat-resistant glass can shatter and is not recommended for professional use, however. The aluminum and stainless steel utensils most common in professional kitchens cannot be used because metal deflects microwaves, and this can damage the oven.

THE EFFECTS OF HEAT

Foods are composed of proteins, carbohydrates (starches and sugars), water and fats, plus small amounts of minerals and vitamins. Changes in shape, texture, color and flavor of foods may occur when heat is applied to each of these nutrients. By understanding these changes and learning to control them,

you will be able to prepare foods with the characteristics desired. Although volumes are written on these subjects, it is sufficient for you to know the following processes as you begin your study of cooking.

Proteins Coagulate

The proper term for the cooking of proteins is **coagulation**. Proteins are large, complex molecules found in every living cell, plant as well as animal. Coagulation refers to the irreversible transformation of proteins from a liquid or semi-liquid state to a solid state. As proteins cook, they lose moisture, shrink and become firm. Common examples of coagulation are the firming of meat fibers during cooking, egg whites changing from a clear liquid to a white solid when heated and the setting of the structure of wheat proteins (known as gluten) in bread during baking. Most proteins complete coagulation at 160°F to 185°F (71°C–85°C).

Starches Gelatinize

Gelatinization is the proper term for the cooking of starches. Starches are complex carbohydrates present in plants and grains such as potatoes, wheat, rice and corn. When a mixture of starch and liquid is heated, remarkable changes occur. The starch granules absorb water, causing them to swell, soften and clarify slightly. The liquid visibly thickens because of the water being absorbed into the starch granules and the granules themselves swelling to occupy more space.

Gelatinization occurs gradually over a range of temperatures—150°F to 212°F (66°C–100°C)—depending on the type of starch used. Starch gelatinization affects not only sauces or liquids to which starches are added for the express purpose of thickening, but also any mixture of starch and liquid that is heated. For example, the flour (a starch) in cake batter gelatinizes by absorbing the water from eggs, milk or other ingredients as the batter bakes. This causes part of the firming and drying associated with baked goods.

Sugars Caramelize

The process of cooking sugars is properly known as **caramelization**. Sugars are simple carbohydrates used by all plants and animals to store energy. As sugars cook, they gradually turn brown and change flavor. Caramelized sugar is used in many sauces, candies and desserts. But caramelized sugar is also partly responsible for the flavor and color of bread crusts and the browning of meats and vegetables. In fact, it is the process of caramelization that is responsible for most flavors we associate with cooking.

Sucrose (common table sugar) begins to brown at about 338°F (170°C). The naturally occurring sugars in other foods such as maltose, lactose and fructose also caramelize, but at varying temperatures. Because high temperatures are required for browning (that is, caramelizing), most foods will brown only on the outside and only through the application of dry heat. Because water cannot be heated above 212°F (100°C), foods cooked with moist-heat methods do not get hot enough to caramelize. Foods cooked with dry-heat methods, including those using fats, will reach the high temperatures at which browning occurs.

Water Evaporates

All foods contain some water. Some foods, especially eggs, milk and leafy vegetables, are almost entirely water. Even as much as 75% of raw meat is water. As the internal temperature of a food increases, water molecules move faster

and faster until the water turns to a gas (steam) and vaporizes. This **evaporation** of water is responsible for the drying of foods during cooking.

Fats Melt

Fat is an energy source for the plant or animal in which it is stored. Fats are smooth, greasy substances that do not dissolve in water. Their texture varies from very firm to liquid. Oils are simply fats that remain liquid at room temperature. Fats **melt** when heated; that is, they gradually soften, then liquefy. Fats will not evaporate. Most fats can be heated to very high temperatures without burning, so they can be used as a cooking medium to brown foods.

Cooking Methods

Foods can be cooked in air, fat, water or steam. These are collectively known as cooking **media**. There are two general types of cooking **methods**: dry heat and moist heat.

Dry-heat cooking methods are those using air or fat. They are broiling, grilling, roasting and baking, sautéing, pan-frying and deep-frying. Foods cooked using dry-heat cooking methods have a rich flavor caused by browning.

Moist-heat cooking methods are those using water or steam. They are poaching, simmering, boiling and steaming. Moist-heat cooking methods are used to emphasize the natural flavors of food.

Other cooking methods employ a combination of dry- and moist-heat cooking methods. The two most significant of these **combination cooking methods** are braising and stewing.

Table 9.1 Cooking Methods

Method	Medium	Equipment
Dry-Heat Cooking Methods		
Broiling	Air	Overhead broiler, salamander, rotisserie
Grilling	Air	Grill
Roasting	Air	Oven
Baking	Air	Oven
Sautéing	Fat	Stove
Pan-frying	Fat	Stove, tilt skillet
Deep-frying	Fat	Deep-fat fryer
Moist-Heat Cooking Methods		
Poaching	Water or other liquid	Stove, oven, steam-jacketed kettle, tilt skillet
Simmering	Water or other liquid	Stove, steam-jacketed kettle, tilt skillet
Boiling	Water or other liquid	Stove, steam-jacketed kettle, tilt skillet
Steaming	Steam	Stove, convection steamer
Combination Cooking Methods		
Braising	Fat then liquid	Stove (and oven), tilt skillet
Stewing	Fat then liquid	Stove (and oven), tilt skillet

Each of these cooking methods can be applied to a wide variety of foods—meats, fish, vegetables and even pastries. Here, we discuss only the general characteristics of these cooking methods. Detailed procedures for applying these methods to specific foods are found in subsequent chapters.

Dry-Heat Cooking Methods

Cooking by dry heat is the process of applying heat either directly, by subjecting the food to the heat of a flame, or indirectly, by surrounding the food with heated air or heated fat.

Broiling

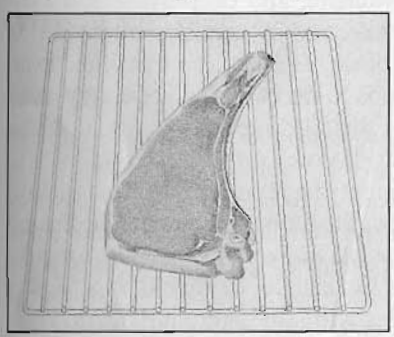
Broiling uses radiant heat from an overhead source to cook foods. The temperature at the heat source can be as high as 2000°F (1093°C). The food to be broiled is placed on a preheated metal grate. Radiant heat from overhead cooks the food, while the hot grate below marks it with attractive cross-hatch marks.

Delicate foods that may be damaged by being placed directly on a metal grate or foods on which cross-hatch marks are not desirable may be placed on a preheated heat-proof platter then placed under the broiler. Cooking will take place through indirect heat from the preheated platter as well as from the direct heat from the broiler's overhead heat source.

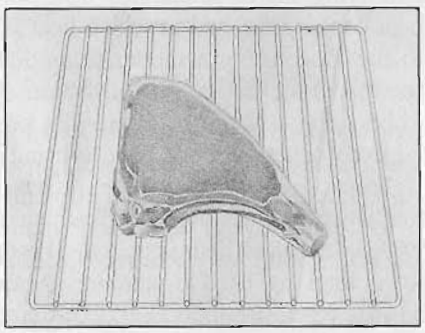
Grilling

Although similar to broiling, grilling uses a heat source located beneath the cooking surface. Grills may be electric or gas, or they can burn wood or charcoal, which will add a smoky flavor to the food. Specific woods such as mesquite, hickory or vine clippings can be used to create special flavors. Grilled foods are often identified by crosshatch markings. Figure 9.2 shows the correct procedure for positioning foods on the grill to create these markings.

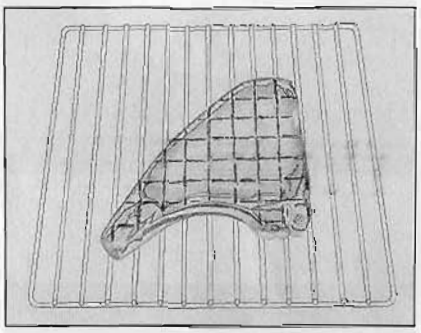
FIGURE 9.2 *Procedure for Creating Crosshatch Markings*



1. Decide which side of the grilled food will be presented face up to the customer. Place the food on the hot grill with this side facing down. If the item is oblong, place it at a 45-degree angle to the bars on the cooking grate. Cook long enough for the food to develop dark charred lines where it touches the grate.



2. Rotate the food 90 degrees and allow it to cook long enough for the grates to char it to the same extent as in step 1.



3. Turn the food over and finish cooking it. It is usually unnecessary to create the crosshatch markings on the reverse side since this will not be seen by the customer.

Roasting and Baking

Roasting and baking are the processes of surrounding a food with dry, heated air in a closed environment. The term *roasting* is usually applied to meats and poultry, while *baking* is used when referring to fish, fruits, vegetables, starches, breads or pastry items. Heat is transferred by convection to the food's surface, and then penetrates the food by conduction. The surface dehydrates, and the food browns from caramelization, completing the cooking process.

Sautéing

Sautéing is a dry-heat cooking method that uses conduction to transfer heat from a hot sauté pan to food with the aid of a small amount of fat. Heat then penetrates the food through conduction. High temperatures are used to sauté, and the foods are usually cut into small pieces to promote even cooking.

To sauté foods properly, begin by heating a sauté pan on the stove top, then add a small amount of fat. The fat should just cover the bottom of the pan. Heat the fat or oil to the point where it just begins to smoke. The food to be cooked should be as dry as possible when it is added to the pan to promote browning and to prevent excessive spattering. Place the food in the pan in a single layer. The heat should be adjusted so that the food cooks thoroughly; it should not be so hot that the outside of the food burns before the inside is cooked. The food should be turned or tossed periodically to develop the proper color. Larger items should be turned using tongs without piercing the surface. Smaller items are often turned by using the sauteuse's sloped sides to flip them back on top of themselves. When tossing sautéed foods, keep the pan in contact with the heat source as much as possible to prevent it from cooling. Sautéing sometimes includes the preparation of a sauce directly in the pan after the main item has been removed.

Stir-frying is a variation of sautéing. A wok is used instead of a sauté pan; the curved sides and rounded bottom of the wok diffuse heat and facilitate tossing and stirring. Otherwise, stir-frying procedures are the same as those outlined for sautéing and will not be discussed separately here.

Pan-Frying

Pan-frying shares similarities with both sautéing and deep-frying. It is a dry-heat cooking method in which heat is transferred by conduction from the pan to the food, using a moderate amount of fat. Heat is also transferred to the food from the hot fat by convection. Foods to be pan-fried are usually coated in breading. This forms a seal that keeps the food moist and prevents the hot fat from penetrating the food causing it to become greasy.

To pan-fry foods properly, first heat the fat in a sauté pan. Use enough fat so that when the food to be cooked is added, the fat comes one third to one half way up the item being cooked. The fat should be at a temperature somewhat lower than that used in sautéing; it should not smoke but should be hot enough so that when the food is added it crackles and spatters from the rapid vaporization of moisture. If the temperature is too low, the food will absorb excessive amounts of fat; if it is too high, the food will burn on the outside before the interior is fully cooked. When the food is properly browned on one side, turn it without piercing it, using tongs. Always turn the food away from you to prevent being burned by any fat that may splash. When the food is fully cooked, remove it from the pan, drain it on absorbent paper and serve it immediately.

Deep-Frying

Deep-frying is a dry-heat cooking method that uses convection to transfer heat to food submerged in hot fat. Heat then penetrates the food, cooking the in-

terior through conduction. Foods to be deep-fried are usually first coated in batter or breading. This preserves moisture and prevents the food from absorbing excessive quantities of fat. Deep-fried foods should cook thoroughly while developing an attractive deep golden-brown color. Foods to be deep-fried should be of a size and shape that allows them to float freely in the fat.

Today, most deep-frying is done in specially designed commercial fryers. These deep-fat fryers have built-in thermostats, making temperature control more precise. To deep-fry food, first heat the fat or oil to temperatures between 325°F and 375°F (160°C–190°C). Slowly place the food in the fat, where it should float freely. Use tongs to turn it if necessary. When the food is done, remove it from the fat, drain it on absorbent paper and serve it immediately.

Moist-Heat Cooking Methods

Cooking with moist heat is the process of applying heat to food by submerging it directly into a hot liquid or by exposing it to steam.

Poaching

Poaching is a moist-heat cooking method that uses convection to transfer heat from a liquid to a food. For poaching, the food is submerged in a liquid held at temperatures between 160°F and 180°F (71°C–82°C). The surface of the liquid should show only slight movement, but no bubbles.

The flavor of the poaching liquid strongly affects the ultimate flavor of the finished product, so stock, court bouillon or broth is generally used. Poaching is most often associated with foods that do not require lengthy cooking to tenderize them, such as eggs or fish.

To poach food, first bring the poaching liquid to a boil in a suitably shaped cooking vessel. Add the food to be poached either by placing it directly into the liquid or by lowering it into the liquid using a specially designed rack. Adjust the heat as necessary to maintain the desired temperature throughout the cooking process. Do not allow the liquid to reach a boil since the agitation will cause meats to become tough and stringy and will destroy tender foods such as fresh fruit or fish. The liquid used to poach food is sometimes used to make an accompanying sauce.

Poaching

Simmering

Simmering is another moist-heat cooking method that uses convection to transfer heat from a liquid to a food. For simmering, the food is submerged in a liquid held at temperatures between 185°F and 205°F (85°C–96°C). Because simmering temperatures are slightly higher than those used for poaching, there should be more action on the liquid's surface, with a few air bubbles breaking through.

As with poaching, the liquid used for simmering has a great effect on the food's flavor. Be sure to use a well-flavored stock or broth and to add mirepoix, herbs and seasonings as needed. Simmered foods should be moist and very tender.

Simmering

Boiling

Boiling is another moist-heat cooking method that uses the process of convection to transfer heat from a liquid to a food. Boiling uses large amounts of rapidly bubbling liquid to cook foods. The turbulent waters and the relatively high temperatures cook foods more quickly than do poaching or simmering. Few foods, however, are cooked by true boiling. Most "boiled" meats are actu-

Boiling

TABLE 9.2 MOIST-HEAT COOKING METHODS

Method	Liquid's Temperature	Liquid's Condition	Uses
Poaching	160–180°F 71–82°C	Liquid moves slightly but no bubbles	Eggs, fish, fruits
Simmering	185–205°F 85–96°C	Small bubbles break through the liquid's surface	Meats, stews, chicken
Boiling	212°F 100°C	Large bubbles and rapid movement	Vegetables, pasta
Steaming	212°F or higher 100°C or higher	Food is in contact only with the steam generated by a boiling liquid	Vegetables, fish, shellfish

ally simmered. Even "hard-boiled" eggs are really only simmered. Starches such as pasta and potatoes are among the only types of food that are truly boiled.

Under normal atmospheric pressure at sea level, water boils at 212°F (100°C). The addition of other ingredients or a change in atmospheric pressure can change the boiling point, however. As altitude increases, the boiling point decreases because of the drop in atmospheric pressure. For every 1000 feet above sea level, the boiling point of water drops 2°F (1°C). In the mile-high city of Denver, for example, water boils at 203°F (95°C). Because the boiling temperature is lower, it will take longer to cook foods in Denver than in, for example, Miami.

The addition of alcohol also lowers the boiling point of water because alcohol boils at about 175°F (80°C). In contrast, the addition of salt, sugar or other substances raises the boiling point slightly. This means that foods cooked in salted water cook faster because the boiling point is one or two degrees higher than normal.

Steaming

Steaming is a moist-heat cooking method that uses the process of convection to transfer heat from the steam to the food being cooked. The food to be steamed is placed in a basket or rack above a boiling liquid. The food should not touch the liquid; it should be positioned so that the steam can circulate around it. A lid should be placed on the steaming pot to trap the steam and also create a slight pressure within the pot that speeds the cooking process. The liquid used to steam the food is sometimes used to make a sauce served with the item.

Another type of steaming uses a convection steamer. Convection steamers use pressurized steam to cook food very quickly in an enclosed chamber. Convection steamer cooking does not result in a flavored liquid that can be used to make a sauce.

Combination Cooking Methods

Some cooking methods employ both dry-heat and moist-heat cooking techniques. The two principal combination methods are braising and stewing. In both methods, the first step is usually to brown the main item using dry heat. The second step is to complete cooking by simmering the food in a liquid. Combination methods are good for less tender but flavorful cuts of meat.

Braising

Braised foods benefit from the best qualities of both dry- and moist-heat cooking methods. Foods to be braised are usually large pieces that are first browned in a small amount of fat at high temperatures. As with sautéing, heat is transferred from the pan to the food mainly by the process of conduction. Vegetables and seasonings are added, and enough sauce or liquid is added to come one third to one half way up the item being cooked. The pan is covered, and the heat is reduced. The food is then cooked at low heat, using a combination of simmering and steaming to transfer heat from the liquid (conduction) and the air (convection) to the food. This can be done on the stove top or in the oven. A long, slow cooking period helps tenderize the main item. Braised foods are usually served with a sauce made from the cooking liquid.

Stewing

Stewing also uses a combination of dry- and moist-heat cooking methods. Stewing is most often associated with smaller pieces of food that are first cooked either by browning them in a small amount of fat or oil, or by **blanching** them in a liquid. Cooking is then finished in a liquid or sauce. Stewed foods have enough liquid added to cover them completely and are simmered at a constant temperature until tender. Cooking time is generally shorter for stewing than for braising because the main items are smaller.

Blanch—*to very briefly and partially cook a food in boiling water or hot fat; used to assist preparation (for example, to loosen peels from vegetables), as part of a combination cooking method or to remove undesirable flavors.*

CONCLUSION

Cooking is the transfer of heat energy to foods by conduction, convection or radiation. Cooking changes the molecular structure of certain nutrients. When heat is applied, proteins coagulate, starches gelatinize, sugars caramelize, fats melt and water evaporates. Foods can be cooked using a variety of methods. Some use dry heat: broiling, grilling, roasting and baking, sautéing, pan-frying and deep-frying. Others use moist heat: poaching, simmering, boiling and steaming. Still others use a combination of the two: braising and stewing. The method used affects the texture, appearance and flavor of the cooked foods. You must understand these principles in order to ensure that foods are cooked properly.

QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

1. Describe the differences between conduction and convection. Identify four cooking methods that rely on both conduction and convection to heat foods. Explain your choices.
2. Identify two cooking methods that rely on infrared heat. What is the principal difference between these methods?
3. At the same temperature, will a food cook faster in a convection oven or a conventional oven? Explain your answer.
4. Describe the process of caramelization and its significance in food preparation. Will a braised food have a caramelized surface? Explain your answer.
5. Describe the process of coagulation and its significance in food preparation. Will a pure fat coagulate if heated? Explain your answer.
6. Describe the process of gelatinization and its significance in food preparation. Will a pure fat gelatinize? Explain your answer.

CHAPTER 10
STOCKS AND SAUCES

Citrus, Los Angeles, CA
Chef Michel Richard

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- prepare a variety of stocks
- recognize and classify sauces
- use thickening agents properly
- prepare a variety of classic and modern sauces

A stock *is a flavored liquid; a good stock is the key to a great soup, sauce or braised dish. The French appropriately call a stock fond ("base"), as stocks are the basis for many classic and modern dishes.*

A ***sauce*** *is a thickened liquid used to flavor and enhance other foods. A good sauce adds flavor, moisture, richness and visual appeal. A sauce should complement food; it should never disguise it. A sauce can be hot or cold, sweet or savory, smooth or chunky.*

Although the thought of preparing stocks and sauces may be intimidating, the procedures are really quite simple. Carefully follow the basic procedures outlined in this chapter, use high-quality ingredients and, with practice and experience, you will soon be producing fine stocks and sauces.

This chapter addresses classical hot sauces as well as coulis, contemporary broths, flavored oils, salsas and relishes. Cold sauces, generally based on mayonnaise, are discussed in Chapter 24, Salads and Salad Dressings; dessert sauces are discussed in Chapter 34, Custards, Creams, Frozen Desserts and Dessert Sauces.

STOCKS

There are several types of stocks. Although they are all made from a combination of bones, vegetables, seasonings and liquids, each type uses specific procedures to give it distinctive characteristics.

A **white stock** is made by simmering chicken, veal or beef bones in water with vegetables and seasonings. The stock remains relatively colorless during the cooking process.

A **brown stock** is made from chicken, veal, beef or game bones and vegetables, all of which are caramelized before being simmered in water with seasonings. The stock has a rich, dark color.

Both a **fish stock** and a **fumet** are made by slowly cooking fish bones or crustacean shells and vegetables without coloring them, then simmering them in water with seasonings for a short time. For a fumet, wine and lemon juice are also added. The resulting stock or fumet is a strongly flavored, relatively colorless liquid.

A **court bouillon** is made by simmering vegetables and seasonings in water and an acidic liquid such as vinegar or wine. It is used to poach fish or vegetables.

Ingredients

The basic ingredients of any stock are bones, a vegetable mixture known as a **mirepoix**, seasonings and water.

Bones

Bones are the most important ingredient; they add flavor, richness and color to the stock. Traditionally, the kitchen or butcher shop saved the day's bones to make stock. But because many meats and poultry items are now purchased

pre-cut or portioned, food service operations often purchase bones specifically for stock making.

Different bones release their flavor at different rates. Even though the bones are cut into 3- to 4-inch (8- to 10-cm) pieces, a stock made entirely of beef and/or veal bones requires six to eight hours of cooking time, while a stock made entirely from chicken bones requires only five to six hours.

Beef and Veal Bones

The best bones for beef and veal stock are from younger animals. They contain a higher percentage of **cartilage** and other **connective tissue** than do bones from more mature animals. Connective tissue has a high **collagen** content. Through the cooking process, the collagen is converted into **gelatin** and water. The gelatin adds richness and body to the finished stock.

The best beef and veal bones are back, neck and shank bones as they have high collagen contents. Beef and veal bones should be cut with a meat saw into small pieces, approximately 3 to 4 inches (8 to 10 cm) long so that they can release as much flavor as possible while the stock cooks.

Chicken Bones

The best bones for chicken stock are from the neck and back. If a whole chicken carcass is used, it can be cut up for easier handling.

Fish Bones

The best bones for fish stock are from lean fish such as sole, flounder, whiting or turbot. Bones from fatty fish (for example, salmon, tuna and swordfish) do not produce good stock because of their high fat content and distinctive flavors. The entire fish carcass can be used, but it should be cut up with a cleaver or heavy knife for easy handling and even extraction of flavors. After cutting, the pieces should be rinsed in cold water to remove blood, loose scales and other impurities.

Other Bones

Lamb, turkey, game and ham bones can also be used for white or brown stocks. Although mixing bones is generally acceptable, be careful of blending strongly flavored bones, such as those from lamb or game, with beef, veal or chicken bones. The former's strong flavors may not be appropriate or desirable in the finished product.

Mirepoix

A mirepoix is a mixture of onions, carrots and celery added to a stock to enhance its flavor and aroma. Although chefs differ on the ratio of vegetables, generally a mixture of 50% onions, 25% carrots and 25% celery, by weight, is used. (Unless otherwise noted, any reference to mirepoix in this book refers to this ratio.) For a brown stock, onion skins may be used to add color. It is not necessary to peel the carrots or celery because flavor, not aesthetics, is important.

The size in which the mirepoix is chopped is determined by the stock's cooking time: The shorter the cooking time, the smaller the vegetables must be chopped to ensure that all possible flavor is extracted. For white or brown stocks made from beef or veal bones, the vegetables should be coarsely chopped into large, 1- to 2-inch (2 1/2- to 5-cm) pieces. For chicken and fish stocks, the vegetables should be more finely chopped into 1/2-inch (1 1/4-cm) pieces.

A white mirepoix is made by replacing the carrots in a standard mirepoix with parsnips and adding mushrooms and leeks. Some chefs prefer to use a white mirepoix when making a white stock, as it produces a lighter product. Sometimes parsnips, mushrooms and leeks are added to a standard mirepoix for additional flavors.

Connective tissue—*tissue found throughout an animal's body that binds together and supports other tissues such as muscles.*

Cartilage—*or gristle, a tough, elastic, whitish connective tissue that helps give structure to an animal's body.*

Collagen—*a protein found in nearly all connective tissue; it dissolves when cooked with moisture.*

Gelatin—*a flavorless, odorless and brittle mixture of proteins extracted from boiling bones, connective tissue and other animal parts; when dissolved in a hot liquid and then cooled, it forms a jellylike substance used as a thickener and stabilizer.*

Mirepoix Ingredients

Seasonings

Principal stock seasonings are peppercorns, bay leaves, thyme, parsley stems, and optionally, garlic. These seasonings generally can be left whole. A stock is cooked long enough for all of their flavors to be extracted so there is no reason to chop or grind them. Seasonings generally are added to the stock at the start of cooking. Some chefs do not add seasonings to beef or veal stock until midway through the cooking process, however, because of the extended cooking times. Seasonings can be added as a sachet d'épices or a bouquet garni.

Salt, an otherwise important seasoning, is not added to stock. Because a stock has a variety of uses, it is impossible for the chef to know how much salt to add when preparing it. If, for example, the stock was seasoned to taste with salt, the chef could not reduce it later; salt is not lost through reduction, and the concentrated product would taste too salty. Similarly, seasoning the stock to taste with salt could prevent the chef from adding other ingredients that are high in salt when finishing a recipe. Unlike many seasonings whose flavors must be incorporated into a product through lengthy cooking periods, salt can be added at any time during the cooking process with the same effect.

Principles of Stock Making

The following principles apply to all stocks. You should follow them in order to achieve the highest-quality stocks possible.

A. Start the Stock in Cold Water

The ingredients should always be covered with cold water. When bones are covered with cold water, blood and other impurities dissolve. As the water heats, the impurities coagulate and rise to the surface, where they can be removed easily by skimming. If the bones were covered with hot water, the impurities would coagulate more quickly and remain dispersed in the stock without rising to the top, making the stock cloudy.

If the water level falls below the bones during cooking, add water to cover them. Flavor cannot be extracted from bones not under water, and bones exposed to the air will darken and discolor a white stock.

B. Simmer the Stock Gently

The stock should be brought to a boil and then reduced to a simmer, a temperature of approximately 185°F (85°C). While simmering, the ingredients release their flavors into the liquid. If kept at a simmer, the liquid will remain clear as it reduces and a stock develops.

Never boil a stock for any length of time. Rapid boiling of a stock, even for a few minutes, causes impurities and fats to blend with the liquid, making it cloudy.

Start the stock in cold water.
Simmer the stock gently.
Skim the stock frequently.
Strain the stock carefully.
Cool the stock quickly.
Store the stock properly.
Degrease the stock.

FIGURE 10.2 *Principles of Stock Making*

C. Skim the Stock Frequently

A stock should be skimmed often to remove the fat and impurities that rise to the surface during cooking. If they are not removed, they may make the stock cloudy.

D. Strain the Stock Carefully

Once a stock finishes cooking, the liquid must be separated from the bones, vegetables and other solid ingredients. In order to keep the liquid clear, it is important not to disturb the solid ingredients when removing the liquid. This is easily accomplished if the stock is cooked in a steam kettle or stockpot with a spigot at the bottom.

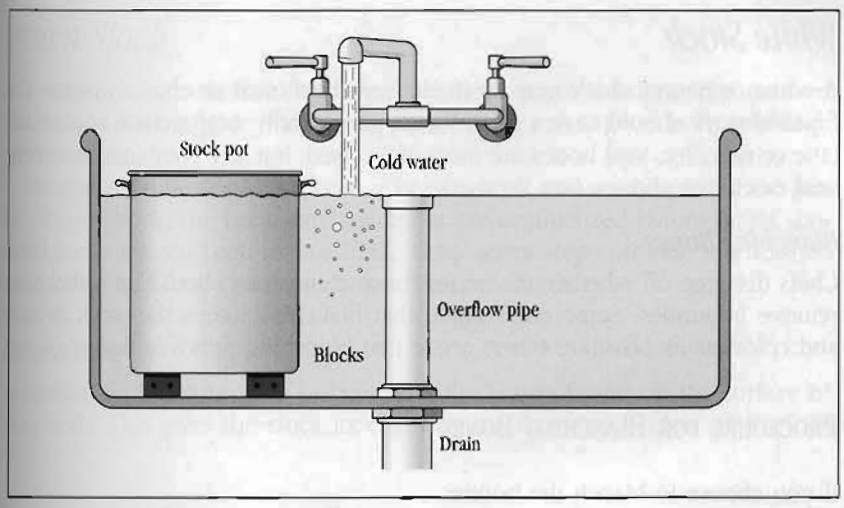


FIGURE 10.1 *Venting a Stockpot*

If the stock is cooked in a standard stockpot, to strain it:

1. Skim as much fat and as many impurities from the surface as possible before removing the stockpot from the heat.
2. After removing the pot from the heat, carefully ladle the stock from the pot without stirring it.
3. Strain the stock through a china cap lined with several layers of cheesecloth.

E. Cool the Stock Quickly

Most stocks are prepared in large quantities, cooled and held for later use. Great care must be taken when cooling a stock to prevent food-borne illnesses or souring. A stock can be cooled quickly and safely with the following procedure:

1. Keep the stock in a metal container. A plastic container insulates the stock and delays cooling.
2. Vent the stockpot in an empty sink by placing it on blocks or a rack. This allows water to circulate on all sides and below the pot when the sink is filled with water. See Figure 10.1.
3. Install an overflow pipe in the drain, and fill the sink with cold water or a combination of cold water and ice. Make sure that the weight of the stockpot is adequate to keep it from tipping over.
4. Let cold water run into the sink and drain out the overflow pipe. Stir the stock frequently to facilitate even, quick cooling.

F. Store the Stock Properly

Once the stock is cooled, transfer it to a sanitized covered container (either plastic or metal) and store it in the refrigerator. As the stock chills, fat rises to its surface and solidifies. If left intact, this layer of fat helps preserve the stock. Stocks can be stored for up to one week under refrigeration or frozen for several months.

G. Degrease the Stock

Degreasing a stock is simple: When a stock is refrigerated, fat rises to its surface, hardens and is easily lifted or scraped away before the stock is reheated.

FIGURE 10.3 *Lifting Fat from the Surface of a Cold Stock*

Degrease—*to remove fat from the surface of a liquid such as a stock or sauce by skimming, scraping or lifting congealed fat.*

White Stock

A white or neutral stock may be made from beef, veal or chicken bones. The finished stock should have a good flavor, good clarity, high gelatin content and little or no color. Veal bones are most often used, but any combination of beef, veal or chicken bones may be used.

Blanching Bones

Chefs disagree on whether the bones for a white stock should be blanched to remove impurities. Some chefs argue that blanching keeps the stock as clear and colorless as possible; others argue that blanching removes flavor.

Procedure for Blanching Bones

If you choose to blanch the bones:

1. Wash the cut-up bones; place them in a stockpot, and cover them with cold water.
2. Bring the water to a boil over high heat.
3. As soon as the water boils, skim the rising impurities. Drain the water from the bones and discard it.
4. Refill the pot with cold water, and proceed with the stock recipe.

RECIPE 10.1

White Stock

Yield: 2 gal. (8 lt)

Bones, veal, chicken or beef	15 lb.	7 kg
Cold water	3 gal.	11 lt
Mirepoix	2 lb.	1 kg
Sachet:		
Bay leaves	2	2
Dried thyme	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Peppercorns, crushed	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Parsley stems	8	8

1. Cut the washed bones into pieces approximately 3–4 inches (8–10 cm) long.
2. Place the bones in a stockpot and cover them with cold water. If blanching, bring the water to a boil, skimming off the scum that rises to the surface. Drain off the water and the impurities. Then add the 3 gallons (11 liters) of cold water and bring to a boil. Reduce to a simmer.
3. If not blanching the bones, bring the cold water to a boil. Reduce to a simmer and skim the scum that forms.
4. Add the mirepoix and sachet to the simmering stock.
5. Continue simmering and skimming the stock for 6 to 8 hours. (If only chicken bones are used, simmer for 5 to 6 hours.)
6. Strain, cool and refrigerate.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-ml) serving: **Calories** 4, **Total fat** .1 g, **Saturated fat** .1 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 5 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 0 g, **Protein** .2 g, **Claims**—fat free; very low sodium

Brown Stock

A brown stock is made from chicken, veal, beef or game bones. The finished stock should have a good flavor, rich dark brown color, good body and high gelatin content.

The primary differences between a brown stock and a white stock are that for a brown stock, the bones and mirepoix are caramelized before being simmered and a tomato product is added. These extra steps provide the finished stock with a rich dark color and a more intense flavor.

Caramelizing

Caramelization is the process of browning the sugars found on the surface of most foods. This gives the stock its characteristic flavor and color.

Procedure for Caramelizing Bones

For caramelizing, do not wash or blanch the bones as this retards browning. To caramelize:

1. Place the cut-up bones in a roasting pan one layer deep. It is better to roast several pans of bones than to overfill one pan.
2. Roast the bones for approximately 1 hour in a hot oven (375°F/190°C). Stirring occasionally, brown the bones thoroughly, but do not allow them to burn.
3. Transfer the roasted bones from the pan to the stockpot.

Deglazing the Pan

After the bones are caramelized, the excess fat should be removed and reserved for future use. The caramelized and coagulated proteins remaining in the roasting pan are very flavorful. To utilize them, you **deglaze** the pan.

Deglaze—*to swirl or stir a liquid (usually wine or stock) in a sauté pan or other pan to dissolve cooked food particles remaining on the bottom; the resulting mixture often becomes the base for a sauce.*

Procedure for Deglazing the Pan

1. Place the pan on the stove top over medium heat, and add enough water to cover the bottom of the pan approximately 1/2 inch (12 mm) deep.
2. Stir and scrape the pan bottom to dissolve and remove all the caramelized materials while the water heats.
3. Pour the deglazing liquid (also known as the deglazing liquor) over the bones in the stockpot.

Procedure for Caramelizing Mirepoix

1. Add a little of the reserved fat from the roasted bones to the roasting pan after it has been deglazed. (Or use a sautoir large enough to contain all the mirepoix comfortably.)
2. Sauté the mirepoix, browning all the vegetables well and evenly without burning them.
3. Add the caramelized mirepoix to the stockpot.

Most any tomato product can be used in a brown stock: fresh tomatoes, canned whole tomatoes, crushed tomatoes, tomato purée or paste. If using a

Remouillage—*(French for "rewetting") a stock produced by reusing the bones left from making another stock. After draining the original stock from the stockpot, add fresh mirepoix, a new sachet and enough water to cover the bones and mirepoix, and a second stock can be made. A remouillage is treated like the original stock; allow it to simmer for four to five hours before straining. A remouillage will not be as clear or as flavorful as the original stock, however. It is often used to make glazes or in place of water when making stocks.*

concentrated tomato product such as paste or purée, use approximately half the amount by weight of fresh or canned tomatoes. The tomato product should be added to the stockpot when the mirepoix is added.

RECIPE 10.2

Brown Stock

Yield: 2 gal. (8 lt)

Bones, veal or beef, cut in 3–4 in. (8–10 cm) pieces	15 lb.	7 kg
Cold water	3 gal.	11 lt
Mirepoix	2 lb.	1 kg
Tomato paste	8 oz.	250 g
Sachet:		
Bay leaves	2	2
Dried thyme	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Peppercorns, crushed	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Garlic cloves, crushed	3	3
Parsley stems	12	12

1. Place the bones in a roasting pan, one layer deep, and brown in a 375°F (190°C) oven. Turn the bones occasionally to brown them evenly.
2. Remove the bones and place them in a stockpot. Pour off the fat from the roasting pan and reserve it.
3. Deglaze the roasting pan with part of the cold water.
4. Add the deglazing liquor and the rest of the cold water to the bones, covering them completely. Bring to a boil and reduce to a simmer.
5. Add a portion of the reserved fat to the roasting pan and sauté the mirepoix until evenly browned. Then add it to the simmering stock.
6. Add the tomato paste and sachet to the stock and continue to simmer for 6 to 8 hours, skimming as necessary.
7. Strain, cool and refrigerate.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-ml) serving: **Calories** 3, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** .3 mg, **Sodium** 105 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 0 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—fat free; low sodium

1. Caramelizing the bones.

2. Deglazing the pan with water.

3. Caramelizing the mirepoix.

4. Adding the proper amount of water.

Fish Stock and Fish Fumet

A fish stock and a fish fumet are similar and can be used interchangeably in most recipes. Both are clear with a pronounced fish flavor and very light body. A fumet, however, is more strongly flavored and aromatic.

The fish bones and crustacean shells used to make a fish stock or fumet should be washed but never blanched because blanching removes too much flavor. Because of the size and structure of fish bones and crustacean shells, stocks and fumets made from them require much less cooking time than even a chicken stock; 30 to 45 minutes is usually sufficient to extract full flavor. Mirepoix or other vegetables should be cut small so that all of their flavors can be extracted during the short cooking time.

The procedure for making a fish stock is very similar to that for making a white stock.

RECIPE 10.3

FISH STOCK

Yield: 1 gal. (4 lt)

Fish bones or crustacean shells	10 lb.	4.5 kg
Water	5 qts.	5 lt
Mirepoix, small dice	1 lb.	450 g
Mushroom trimmings	8 oz.	250 g
Sachet:		
Bay leaves	2	2
Dried thyme	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Peppercorns, crushed	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Parsley stems	8	8

1. Combine all ingredients in a stockpot.
2. Bring to a simmer and skim impurities as necessary.
3. Simmer for 30 to 45 minutes.
4. Strain, cool and refrigerate.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-ml) serving: **Calories** 5, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 100 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 0 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Claims**—fat free; low sodium

Sweat—*to cook a food in a pan (usually covered), without browning, over low heat until the item softens and releases moisture; sweating allows the food to release its flavor more quickly when cooked with other foods.*

A fish stock is sometimes used to make a fish fumet; if so, the resulting product is very strongly flavored. A fish fumet is also flavored with white wine and lemon juice. When making a fumet, **sweat** the bones and vegetables before adding the cooking liquid and seasonings.

RECIPE 10.4

Fish Fumet

Yield: 2 gal. (8 lt)

Whole butter	2 oz.	60 g
Onion, small dice	1 lb.	500 g
Parsley stems	12	12
Fish bones	10 lb.	5 kg
Dry white wine	1 1/2 pt.	750 ml
Lemon juice	2 oz.	60 ml
Cold water or fish stock	7 qt.	7 lt
Mushroom trimmings	2 oz.	60 g
Fresh thyme	1 sprig	1 sprig
Lemon slices	10	10

1. Melt the butter in a stockpot.
2. Add the onion, parsley stems and fish bones. Cover the pot and sweat the bones over low heat.
3. Sprinkle the bones with the white wine and lemon juice.
4. Add the cold water or fish stock, mushroom trimmings, thyme and lemon slices. Bring to a boil, reduce to a simmer and cook approximately 30 minutes, skimming frequently.
5. Strain, cool and refrigerate.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-ml) serving: **Calories** 5, **Total fat** .7 g, **Saturated fat** .2 g, **Cholesterol** .5 mg, **Sodium** 90 g, **Total carbohydrates** 0 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Claims**—fat free; low sodium

1. Sweating the onions, parsley stems and fish bones.

2. Adding cold water and seasonings.

Vegetable Stock

A good vegetable stock should be clear and light colored. Because no animal products are used, it has no gelatin content. A vegetable stock can be used instead of a meat-based stock in most recipes. This substitution is useful when preparing vegetarian dishes or as a lighter, more healthful alternative when preparing sauces and soups. Although almost any combination of vegetables can be used for stock making, more variety is not always better. Sometimes a vegetable stock made with one or two vegetables that complement the finished dish particularly well will produce better results than a stock made with many vegetables.

RECIPE 10.5

VEGETABLE STOCK

Yield: 1 gal. (4 lt)

Vegetable oil	2 oz.	60 ml
Mirepoix, small dice	2 lb.	900 g
Leek, whites and greens, chopped	8 oz.	250 g
Garlic cloves, chopped	4	4
Fennel, small dice	4 oz.	120 g
Turnip, diced	2 oz.	60 g
Tomato, diced	2 oz.	60 g
White wine	8 oz.	250 ml
Water	1 gal.	4 lt
Sachet:		
Bay leaf	1	1
Dried thyme	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Peppercorns, crushed	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Parsley stems	8	8

1. Heat the oil. Add the vegetables and sweat for 10 minutes.
2. Add the white wine, water and sachet.
3. Bring the mixture to a boil, reduce to a simmer and cook for 45 minutes.
4. Strain, cool and refrigerate.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-ml) serving: **Calories** 5, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 0 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—fat free; low calorie

Court Bouillon

A court bouillon, though not actually a stock, is prepared in much the same manner as stocks, so it is included here. A court bouillon (French for "short broth") is a flavored liquid, usually water and wine or vinegar, in which vegetables and seasonings have been simmered to impart their flavors and aromas.

Court bouillon is most commonly used to poach foods such as fish and shellfish. Recipes vary depending upon the foods to be poached. Although a court bouillon can be made in advance and refrigerated for later use, its simplicity lends itself to fresh preparation whenever needed.

COMMERCIAL BASES

Commercially produced flavor (or convenience) bases are widely used in food service operations. They are powdered or dehydrated flavorings added to water to create stocks or, when used in smaller amounts, to enhance the flavor of sauces and soups. Although inferior to well-made stocks, flavor bases do reduce the labor involved in the production of stocks, sauces and soups. Used properly, they also ensure a consistent product. Because bases do not contain gelatin, stocks and sauces made from them do not benefit from reduction.

Bases vary greatly in quality and price. Sodium (salt) is the main ingredient in most bases. Better bases are made primarily of meat, poultry or fish extracts. To judge the quality of a flavor base, prepare it according to package directions and compare the flavor to that of a well-made stock. The flavor base can be improved by adding a mirepoix, standard sachet and a few appropriate bones to the mixture, then simmering for one or two hours. It can then be strained, stored and used like a regular stock. Although convenience bases are widely used in the industry, it is important to remember that even the best base is a poor substitute for a well-made stock.

RECIPE 10.6

COURT BOUILLON

Yield: 1 gal. (4 lt)

Water	1 gal.	4 lt
Vinegar	6 oz.	180 ml
Lemon juice	2 oz.	60 ml
Salt	1/2 oz.	15 g
Mirepoix	1 lb. 8 oz.	650 g
Peppercorns, crushed	1 tsp.	5 ml
Bay leaves	4	4
Dried thyme	pinch	pinch
Parsley stems	1 bunch	1 bunch

1. Combine all ingredients and bring to a boil.
2. Reduce to a simmer and cook for 45 minutes.
3. Strain and use immediately or cool and refrigerate.

NOTE: This recipe can be used for poaching almost any fish, but it is particularly well suited to salmon, trout and shellfish. When poaching freshwater fish, replace the water and vinegar with equal parts white wine and water.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-ml) serving: **Calories** 3, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 70 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 0 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—fat free; low sodium

Nage

An aromatic court bouillon is sometimes served as a light sauce or broth with fish or shellfish. This is known as a nage, and dishes served in this manner are described as *à la nage* (Fr. for "swimming"). After the fish or shellfish is cooked, additional herbs and aromatic vegetables are added to the cooking liquid, which is then reduced slightly and strained.

Alternatively, the used court bouillon can be strained, chilled, and clarified with egg whites and aromatic vegetables in the same manner as a consommé. Finally, whole butter or cream may be added to a nage for richness.

Glaze

A glaze is the dramatic reduction and concentration of a stock. One gallon (4 liters) of stock produces only 1 to 2 cups (2 1/2 to 5 deciliters) of glaze. *Glace de viande* is made from brown stock, reduced until it becomes dark and syrupy. *Glace de volaille* is made from chicken stock, and *glace de poisson* from fish stock.

Glazes are added to soups or sauces to increase and intensify flavors. They are also used as a source of intense flavoring for several of the small sauces discussed next.

PROCEDURE FOR REDUCING A STOCK TO A GLAZE

1. Simmer the stock over very low heat. Be careful not to let it burn and skim it often.

TABLE 10.1 TROUBLESHOOTING CHART FOR STOCKS

Problem	Reason	Solution
Cloudy	Impurities	Start stock in cold water
	Stock boiled during cooking	Strain through layers of cheesecloth
Lack of flavor	Not cooked long enough	Increase cooking time
	Inadequate seasoning	Add more flavoring ingredients
	Improper ratio of bones to water	Add more bones
Lack of color	Improperly caramelized bones and mirepoix	Caramelize bones and mirepoix until darker
	Not cooked long enough	Cook longer
Lack of body	Wrong bones used	Use bones with a higher content of connective tissue
	Insufficient reduction	Cook longer
	Improper ratio of bones to water	Add more bones
Too salty	Commercial base used	Change base or make own stock; do not salt stock
	Salt added during cooking	

2. As it reduces and the volume decreases, transfer the liquid into progressively smaller saucepans. Strain the liquid each time it is transferred into a smaller saucepan.
3. Strain it a final time, cool and refrigerate. A properly made glaze will keep for several months under refrigeration.

SAUCES

With a few exceptions, a sauce is a liquid plus thickening agent plus seasonings. Any chef can produce fine sauces by learning to:

1. Make good stocks
2. Use thickening agents properly to achieve the desired texture, flavor and appearance
3. Use seasonings properly to achieve the desired flavors

Classic hot sauces are divided into two groups: **mother** or **leading sauces** (Fr. *sauce mère*) and **small** or **compound sauces**. The five classic mother sauces are béchamel, velouté, espagnole (brown), tomato and hollandaise. Except for hollandaise, leading sauces are rarely served as is; more often they are used to create the many small sauces.

Not all sauces fall into the traditional classifications, however. Some sauces use purées of fruits or vegetables as their base; they are known as **coulis**. Others, such as **beurre blanc** (French for "white butter") and **beurre rouge** ("red butter"), are based on an acidic reduction in which whole butter is incorporated. **Flavored butters**, **flavored oils**, **salsas**, **relishes** and **pan gravy** are also used as sauces in modern food service operations.

Thickening Agents

Although there are exceptions, most sauces are thickened by the gelatinization of starches. As discussed in Chapter 9, Principles of Cooking, gelatinization is the process by which starch granules absorb moisture when placed in a liquid and heated. As the moisture is absorbed, the product thickens. Starches generally used to thicken sauces are flour, cornstarch and arrowroot. Gelatinization may sound easy, but it takes practice to produce a good sauce that:

- Is lump-free
- Has a good clean flavor that is not pasty or floury
- Has a consistency that will coat the back of a spoon (the French call this *nappé*)
- Will not separate or break when the sauce is held or reduced

Roux

Roux is the principal means used to thicken sauces. It is a combination of equal parts, by weight, of flour and fat, cooked together to form a paste. Cooking the flour in fat coats the starch granules with the fat and prevents them from lumping together or forming lumps when introduced into a liquid. In large production kitchens, large amounts of roux are prepared and held for use as needed. Smaller operations may make roux as required for each recipe.

There are three types of roux:

White, Blond and Brown Roux

1. **White roux**—It is cooked only briefly and should be removed from the heat as soon as it develops a frothy, bubbly appearance. It is used in white sauces, such as béchamel, or in dishes where little or no color is desired.
2. **Blond roux**—Cooked slightly longer than white roux, blond roux should begin to take on a little color as the flour caramelizes. It is used in ivory-colored sauces, such as velouté, or where a richer flavor is desired.
3. **Brown roux**—It is cooked until it develops a darker color and a nutty aroma and flavor. Brown roux is used in brown sauces and dishes where a dark color is desired. It is important to remember that cooking a starch before adding a liquid breaks down the starch granules and prevents gelatinization from occurring. Therefore, because brown roux is cooked longer than white roux, more brown roux is required to thicken a given quantity of liquid.

Procedure for Preparing Roux

Whether it will be white, blond or brown, the procedure for making roux is the same:

Cooking the Roux

1. Using a heavy saucepan to prevent scorching, heat the clarified butter or other fat.
2. Add all the flour and stir to form a paste. Although all-purpose flour can be used, it is better to use cake or pastry flour because they contain a higher percentage of starch. Do not use high gluten flour because of its greatly reduced starch content. (Flours are discussed in Chapter 29, Principles of the Bakeshop.)
3. Cook the paste over medium heat until the desired color is achieved. Stir the roux often to avoid burning. Burnt roux will not thicken a liquid; it will simply add dark specks and an undesirable flavor.

A Saucy History

The word *sauce* is derived from the Latin word *salus*, meaning "salted." This derivation is appropriate. For millennia, salt has been the basic condiment for enhancing or disguising the flavor of many foods. Over the centuries, sauces have also been used for these purposes.

Cooks of ancient Rome flavored many dishes with *garum*, a golden-colored sauce made from fermented fish entrails combined with brine, condiments, water and wine or vinegar. They also used a sauce referred to as a "single" made from oil, wine and brine. When boiled with herbs and saffron, it became a "double" sauce. To this the Byzantines later added pepper, cloves, cinnamon, cardamom and coriander or spikenard (a fragrant ointment made from grains).

During the Middle Ages, chefs (and their employers) were fond of either very spicy or sweet-and-sour sauces. A typical sauce for roasted meat consisted of powdered cinnamon, mustard, red wine and a sweetener such as honey. It was thickened, if at all, with bits of stale or grilled bread. Other sauces were based on verjuice, an acidic stock prepared from the juice of unripe grapes. To it were added other fruit juices, honey, flower petals and herbs or spices. Indeed, most medieval sauces were heavily spiced. Perhaps this was done to hide the taste of salt-cured or less-than-fresh meats. More likely, however, these sauces were served to showcase the host's wealth.

Guillaume Tirel (c. 1312–1395), who called himself **Taillevent**, was the master chef for Charles V of France. Around 1375, Taillevent wrote *Le Viandier*, the oldest-known French cookbook. The cooking style he describes relies heavily on pounding, puréeing and spicing most foods so that the finished dish bears little resemblance in shape, texture or flavor to the original ingredients. Included in his methods are 17 sauces. Among them is a recipe for a *cameline* sauce. It is made from grilled bread soaked in wine; the wine-soaked bread is then drained, squeeze-dried and ground with cinnamon, ginger, pepper, cloves and nutmeg; this mixture is then diluted with vinegar. There is also a recipe for a sauce called *taillemaslée*, made of fried onions, verjuice, vinegar and mustard. (Appropriately, on his grave marker, Taillevent is dressed as a sergeant-at-arms whose shield is decorated with three cooking pots.)

Recipes for some sauces of the Renaissance, such as *poivrade* or *Robert*, are recognizable today. Most sauces enjoyed in Renaissance-era Italy and France consisted of some combination of concentrated cooking juices, wines, herbs and spices (especially pepper), sometimes thickened with bread. Sweet, fruit-based sauces were also popular. Most important for the development of modern cuisine, however, was the growing use of sauces based on broths thickened with cream, butter and egg yolks and flavored with herbs and spices.

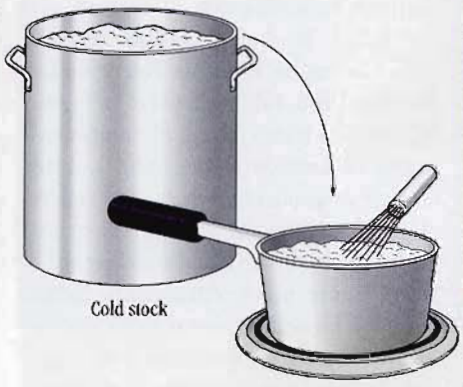
Although he died in relative obscurity, many now consider **François Pierre de La Varenne** (1618–1678) to be one of the founding fathers of French cuisine. His treatises, especially *Le Cuisinier français* (1651), detail the early development, methods and manners of French cuisine. His analysis and recipes mark a departure from medieval cookery and a French cuisine heavily influenced by Italian traditions. His writings were uniquely modern in that he included recipes for new foods (especially fruits and vegetables native to the Americas or the Far East) and for indigenous foods (such as saltwater fish) that were gradually becoming more popular. La Varenne is credited with introducing roux as a thickening agent for sauces, especially velouté sauces. He emphasized the importance of properly prepared *fonds* and the reduction of cooking juices to concentrate flavors. He also popularized the use of bouquets garni to flavor stocks and sauces.

Sometime during the early 18th century, the chef to the French Duc de Levis-Mirepoix pioneered the use of onions, celery and carrots to enhance the flavor and aroma of stocks. The mixture, named for the chef's employer, soon became the standard way of enriching stocks. An enriched stock greatly improves the quality of the sauces derived from it.

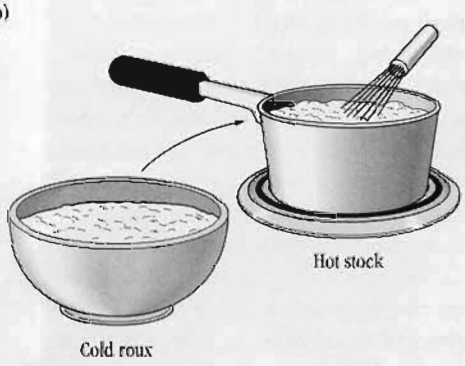
During the early 19th century, **Antonin Carême** developed the modern system for classifying hundreds of sauces. It is unknown how many sauces Carême actually invented himself, but he wrote treatises containing the theories and recipes for many of the sauces still used today. Carême's extravagant lists of sauces were reduced and simplified by chefs later in the 19th century, most notably by **Auguste Escoffier**.

The temperature and amount of roux being prepared determine the exact length of cooking time. Generally, however, a white roux needs to cook for only a few minutes, long enough to minimize the raw flour taste. Blond roux is cooked longer, until the paste begins to change to a slightly darker color. Brown roux requires a much longer cooking time to develop its characteristic color and aroma. A good roux will be stiff, not runny or pourable.

(a)



(b)



When thickening stock with roux, either
(a) add cold stock to hot roux, or
(b) add cold roux to hot stock.

TABLE 10.2 PROPORTIONS OF ROUX TO LIQUID

Flour	+	Butter	=	Roux	+	Liquid	=	Sauce
6 oz./190 g	+	6 oz./190 g	=	12 oz./375 g	+	1 gal./4 lt	=	light
8 oz./250 g	+	8 oz./250g	=	1 lb./500 g	+	1 gal./4 lt	=	medium
12 oz./375 g	+	12 oz./375 g	=	24 oz./750 g	+	1 gal./4 lt	=	heavy

VARIABLES: The starch content of a flour determines its thickening power. Cake flour, being lowest in protein and highest in starch, has more thickening power than bread flour, which is high in protein and low in starch. In addition, a dark roux has less thickening power than a lighter one, so more will be needed to thicken an equal amount of liquid.

INCORPORATING ROUX INTO A LIQUID

There are two ways to incorporate roux into a liquid without causing lumps:

1. Cold stock can be added to the hot roux while stirring vigorously with a whisk.
2. Room-temperature roux can be added to a hot stock while stirring vigorously with a whisk.

When the roux and the liquid are completely incorporated and the sauce begins to boil, it is necessary to cook the sauce for a time to remove any raw flour taste that may remain. Most chefs feel a minimum of 20 minutes is necessary.

GUIDELINES FOR USING ROUX

1. Avoid using aluminum pots. The scraping action of the whisk will turn light sauces gray and will impart a metallic flavor.
2. Use sufficiently heavy pots to prevent sauces from scorching or burning during extended cooking times.
3. Avoid extreme temperatures. Roux should be no colder than room temperature so that the fat is not fully solidified. Extremely hot roux is dangerous and can spatter when combined with a liquid. Stocks should not be ice cold when combined with roux; the roux will become very cold, and the solidified pieces may be very difficult to work out with a whisk.
4. Avoid overthickening. Roux does not begin to thicken a sauce until the sauce is almost at the boiling point; the thickening action continues for several minutes while the sauce simmers. If a sauce is to cook for a long time, it will also be thickened by reduction.

Cornstarch

Cornstarch, a very fine white powder, is a pure starch derived from corn. It is used widely as a thickening agent for hot and cold sauces and is especially popular in Asian cuisines for thickening sauces and soups. Liquids thickened with cornstarch have a glossy sheen that may or may not be desirable.

One unit of cornstarch thickens about twice as much liquid as an equal unit of flour. Sauces thickened with cornstarch are less stable than those thickened

with roux because cornstarch can break down and lose its thickening power after prolonged heating. Products thickened with cornstarch should not be reheated.

Incorporating Cornstarch

Cornstarch must be mixed with a cool liquid before it is introduced into a hot one. The cool liquid separates the grains of starch and allows them to begin absorbing liquid without lumping. A solution of starch and cool liquid is called a **slurry**.

Slurry—*solution of raw starch and a cold liquid used for thickening.*

The starch slurry may be added to either a hot or cold liquid. If added to a hot liquid, it must be stirred continuously during incorporation. Unlike roux, cornstarch begins to thicken almost immediately if the liquid is hot. Sauces thickened with cornstarch must be cooked gently until the raw starch flavor disappears, usually about five minutes.

Arrowroot

Arrowroot, derived from the roots of several tropical plants, is similar in texture, appearance and thickening power to cornstarch and is used in exactly the same manner. Arrowroot does not break down as quickly as cornstarch, and it produces a slightly clearer finished product although it is much more expensive.

Beurre Manié

Beurre manié is a combination of equal amounts, by weight, of flour and soft whole butter. The flour and butter are kneaded together until smooth. The mixture is then formed into pea-sized balls and whisked into a simmering sauce. Beurre manié is used for quick thickening at the end of the cooking process. The butter also adds shine and flavor to the sauce as it melts.

Liaison

Unlike the thickeners already described, a liaison does not thicken a sauce through gelatinization. A liaison is a mixture of egg yolks and heavy cream; it adds richness and smoothness with minimal thickening. Special care must be taken to prevent the yolks from coagulating when they are added to a hot liquid because this could curdle the sauce.

1. Adding hot liquid to the egg yolk and cream mixture.

2. Adding the tempered egg yolk and cream liaison to the hot liquid.

Tempering—*gradually raising the temperature of a cold liquid by slowly stirring in a hot liquid.*

Procedure for Using a Liaison

1. Whisk together one part egg yolk and three parts whipping cream. Combining the yolk with cream raises the temperature at which the yolk's proteins coagulate, making it easier to incorporate them into a sauce without lumping or curdling.
2. **Temper** the egg yolk and cream mixture by slowly adding a small amount of the hot liquid while stirring continuously.
3. When enough of the hot liquid has been added to the liasion to warm it thoroughly, begin adding the warmed liasion to the remaining hot liquid. Be sure to stir the mixture carefully to prevent the yolk from overcooking or lumping. Plain egg yolks coagulate at temperatures between 149°F and 158°F (65°C–70°C). Mixing them with cream raises the temperatures at which they coagulate to approximately 180°F–185°F (82°C–85°C). Temperatures over 185°F (85°C) will cause the yolks to curdle. Great care must be taken to hold the sauce above 140°F (60°C) for food safety and sanitation reasons, yet below 185°F (85°C) to prevent curdling.

Finishing Techniques

Reduction

As sauces cook, moisture is released in the form of steam. As steam escapes, the remaining ingredients concentrate, thickening the sauce and strengthening the flavors. This process, known as **reduction**, is commonly used to thicken sauces because no starches or other flavor-altering ingredients are needed. Sauces are often finished by allowing them to reduce until the desired consistency is reached.

Reduction—*cooking a liquid such as a sauce until its quantity decreases through evaporation. To reduce by one half means that one half of the original amount remains. To reduce by three quarters means that only one quarter of the original amount remains. To reduce au sec means that the liquid is cooked until nearly dry.*

Straining

Smoothness is important to the success of most sauces. They can be strained through either a china cap lined with several layers of cheesecloth or a fine mesh chinois. As discussed later, often vegetables, herbs, spices and other seasonings are added to a sauce for flavor. Straining removes these ingredients as well as any lumps of roux or thickener remaining in the sauce after the desired flavor and consistency have been reached.

Monter au Beurre

Monter au beurre is the process of swirling or whisking whole butter into a sauce to give it shine, flavor and richness. Compound or flavored butters, discussed later, can be used in place of whole butter to add specific flavors. Monter au beurre is widely used to enrich and finish small sauces.

Sauce Families

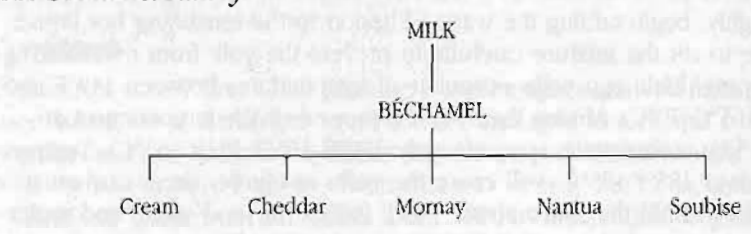
Leading or **mother sauces** are the foundation for the entire classic repertoire of hot sauces. The five leading sauces—béchamel, velouté, espagnole (also known as brown), tomato and hollandaise—can be seasoned and garnished to create a wide variety of small or compound sauces. These five leading sauces are distinguished principally by the liquids and thickeners used to create them. See Table 10.3.

Small or **compound sauces** are grouped into families based on their leading sauce. Some small sauces have a variety of uses; others are traditional accompaniments for specific foods. A small sauce may be named for its ingredients, place of origin or creator. Although there are numerous classic small sauces, we have included only a few of the more popular ones following each of the leading sauce recipes.

TABLE 10.3 SAUCE FAMILIES

Liquid	Thickener	Mother Sauce
Milk	Roux	Béchamel
White Stock veal stock chicken stock fish stock	Roux	Velouté Veal Velouté Chicken Velouté Fish Velouté
Brown Stock	Roux	Espagnole (Brown Sauce)
Tomato	Roux-optional	Tomato Sauce
Butter	Egg yolks	Hollandaise

The Béchamel Family



Named for its creator, Louis de Béchameil (1630–1703), steward to Louis XIV of France, béchamel sauce is the easiest mother sauce to prepare. Traditionally, it is made by adding heavy cream to a thick veal velouté. Although some chefs still believe a béchamel should contain veal stock, today the sauce is almost always made by thickening scalded milk with a white roux and adding seasonings. Often used for vegetable, egg and gratin dishes, béchamel has fallen into relative disfavor recently because of its rich, heavy nature. It is nevertheless important to understand its production and its place in traditional sauce making.

A properly made béchamel is rich, creamy and absolutely smooth with no hint of graininess. The flavors of the onion and clove used to season it should be apparent but not overwhelm the sauce's clean, milky taste. The sauce should be the color of heavy cream and have a deep luster. It should be thick enough to coat foods lightly but should not taste like the roux used to thicken it.

RECIPE 10.7

BÉCHAMEL

Yield: 1 gal. (4 lt)

Onion piquet	1	1
Milk	1 gal.	4 lt
Flour	8 oz.	250 g
Clarified butter	8 oz.	250 ml
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
Nutmeg	TT	TT

1. Add the onion piquet to the milk in a heavy saucepan and simmer for 20 minutes.
2. In a separate pot, make a white roux with the flour and butter.
3. Remove the onion piquet from the milk. Gradually add the hot milk to the roux while stirring constantly with a whisk to prevent lumps. Bring to a boil.
4. Reduce the sauce to a simmer, add the seasonings and continue cooking for 30 minutes.
5. Strain the sauce through a china cap lined with cheesecloth. Melted butter can be carefully ladled over the surface of the sauce to prevent a skin from forming. Hold for service or cool in a water bath.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (213-g) serving: **Calories** 240, **Total fat** 15 g, **Saturated fat** 9 g, **Cholesterol** 50 mg, **Sodium** 180 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 18 g, **Protein** 7 g, **Vitamin A** 15%, **Calcium** 25%

Béchamel

Small Béchamel Sauces

With a good béchamel, producing the small sauces in its family is quite simple. The quantities indicated below are for 1 quart (1 liter) of béchamel. The final step for each recipe is to season to taste with salt and pepper.

Cream Sauce Add to béchamel 8–12 ounces (250–360 milliliters) scalded cream and a few drops of lemon juice.

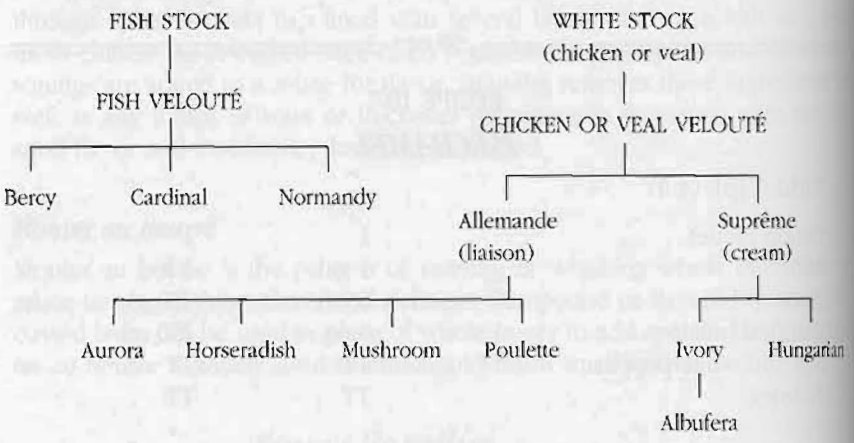
Cheddar Add to béchamel 8 ounces (250 grams) grated cheddar cheese, a dash of Worcestershire sauce and 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) dry mustard.

Mornay Add to béchamel 4 ounces (120 grams) grated Gruyère and 1 ounce (30 grams) grated Parmesan. Thin as desired with scalded cream. Remove the sauce from the heat and swirl in 2 ounces (60 grams) whole butter.

Nantua Add to béchamel 4 ounces (120 milliliters) heavy cream and 6 ounces (180 grams) crayfish butter (page 211). Add paprika to achieve the desired color. Garnish the finished sauce with diced crayfish meat.

Soubise (modern) Sweat 1 pound (500 grams) diced onion in 1 ounce (30 grams) butter without browning. Add béchamel and simmer until the onions are fully cooked. Strain through a fine chinois.

The Velouté Family



Allemande—*an intermediary sauce made by adding lemon juice and a liaison to chicken or veal velouté.*

Suprême—*an intermediary sauce made by adding cream to chicken velouté.*

Velouté sauces are made by thickening a white stock or fish stock with roux. The white stock can be made from veal or chicken bones. A fish velouté sauce, made from fish stock, is used to create a few small sauces. A velouté sauce made from veal or chicken stock is usually used to make one of two intermediary sauces—allemande and suprême—from which many small sauces are derived. **Allemande** sauce is made by adding lemon juice and a liaison to either a veal or chicken velouté. (The stock used depends upon the dish with which the sauce will be served.) **Suprême** sauce is made by adding cream to a chicken velouté. See Table 10.4.

A properly made velouté should be rich, smooth and lump-free. If made from chicken or fish stock, it should taste of chicken or fish. A velouté made from veal stock should have a more neutral flavor. The sauce should be ivory colored, with a deep luster. It should be thick enough to cling to foods without tasting like the roux used to thicken it.

TABLE 10.4 VELOUTÉ SAUCES

Fish stock	+	Roux	=	Velouté				
Chicken stock	+	Roux	=	Velouté	+	Cream	=	Suprême
Chicken stock	+	Roux	=	Velouté	+	Liaison and lemon	=	Allemande
Veal stock	+	Roux	=	Velouté	+	Liaison and lemon	=	Allemande

RECIPE 10.8

VELOUTÉ

Yield: 1 gal. (4 lt)

Clarified butter	8 oz.	250 ml
Flour	8 oz.	250 g
Chicken, veal or fish stock	5 qt.	5 lt
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT

1. Melt the butter in a heavy saucepan. Add the flour and cook to make a blond roux.
2. Gradually add the stock to the roux, stirring constantly with a whisk to prevent lumps. Bring to a boil and reduce to a simmer. (Seasonings are optional; their use depends upon the seasonings in the stock and the sauce's intended use.)
3. Simmer and reduce to 1 gallon (4 liters), approximately 30 minutes.
4. Strain through a china cap lined with cheesecloth.
5. Melted butter may be carefully ladled over the surface of the sauce to prevent a skin from forming. Hold for service or cool in a water bath.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 25, **Total fat** 1.5 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 5 mg, **Sodium** 140 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 1 g

Velouté

Small Fish Velouté Sauces

A few small sauces can be made from fish velouté. The quantities given are for 1 quart (1 liter) fish velouté sauce. The final step for each recipe is to season to taste with salt and pepper.

Bercy Sauté 2 ounces (60 grams) finely diced shallots in butter. Then add 8 ounces (250 milliliters) dry white wine and 8 ounces (250 milliliters) fish stock. Reduce this mixture by one third and add the fish velouté. Finish with butter and garnish with chopped parsley.

Cardinal Add 8 ounces (250 milliliters) fish stock to 1 quart (1 liter) fish velouté. Reduce this mixture by half and add 1 pint (500 milliliters) heavy cream and a dash of cayenne pepper. Bring to a boil and swirl in 1 1/2 ounces (45 grams) lobster butter (page 211). Garnish with chopped lobster coral at service time.

Normandy Add 4 ounces (120 grams) mushroom trimmings and 4 ounces (120 milliliters) fish stock to 1 quart (1 liter) fish velouté. Reduce by one third and finish with an egg yolk and cream liaison. Strain through a fine chinois.

RECIPE 10.9

ALLEMANDE SAUCE

Yield: 1 gal. (4 lt)

Veal or chicken velouté sauce	1 gal.	4 lt
Egg yolks	8	8

Continued

Heavy cream	24 oz.	675 ml
Lemon juice	1 oz.	30 ml
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT

1. Bring the velouté to a simmer.
2. In a stainless steel bowl, whip the egg yolks with the cream to create a liaison. Ladle approximately one third of the hot velouté sauce into this mixture, while whisking, to temper the yolk and cream mixture.
3. When one third of the velouté has been incorporated into the now-warmed yolk and cream mixture, gradually add the liaison to the remaining velouté sauce while whisking continuously.
4. Reheat the sauce. Do not let it boil.
5. Add the lemon juice; season with salt and white pepper to taste.
6. Strain through a china cap lined with cheesecloth.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 40, **Total fat** 3.5 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 25 mg, **Sodium** 95 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 4%

Small Allemande Sauces

Several small sauces are easily produced from an allemande sauce made with either a chicken or veal velouté. The quantities given are for 1 quart (1 liter) allemande. The final step for each recipe is to season to taste with salt and pepper.

Aurora Add to allemande 2 ounces (60 grams) tomato paste and finish with 1 ounce (30 grams) butter.

Horseradish Add to allemande 4 ounces (120 milliliters) heavy cream and 1 teaspoon (5 milliliters) dry mustard. Just before service add 2 ounces (60 grams) freshly grated horseradish. The horseradish should not be cooked with the sauce.

Mushroom Sauté 4 ounces (120 grams) sliced mushrooms in 1/2 ounce (15 grams) butter; add 2 teaspoons (10 milliliters) lemon juice. Then add the allemande to the mushrooms. Do not strain.

Poulette Sauté 8 ounces (250 grams) sliced mushrooms and 1/2 ounce (15 grams) diced shallots in 1 ounce (30 grams) butter. Add to the allemande; then add 2 ounces (60 milliliters) heavy cream. Finish with lemon juice and 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) chopped parsley.

RECIPE 10.10

SUPRÊME SAUCE

Yield: 1 gal. (4 lt)

Chicken velouté sauce	1 gal.	4 lt
Mushroom trimmings	8 oz.	225 g
Heavy cream	1 qt.	1 lt
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT

1. Simmer the velouté sauce with the mushroom trimmings until reduced by one fourth.
2. Gradually whisk in the heavy cream and return to a simmer.

3. Adjust the seasonings.
4. Strain through a china cap lined with cheesecloth.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 45, **Total fat** 4 g, **Saturated fat** 2.5 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 95 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 4%

Small Suprême Sauces

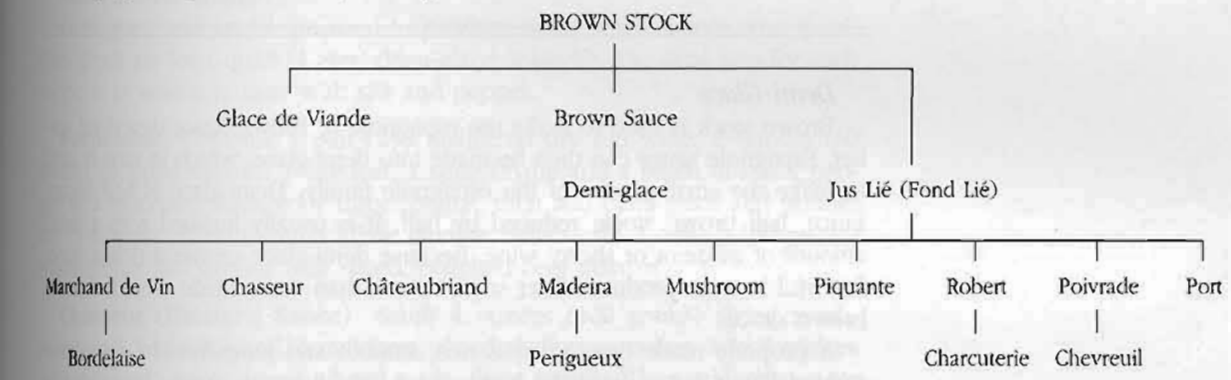
The following small sauces are easily made from a suprême sauce. The quantities given are for 1 quart (1 liter) suprême sauce. The final step for each recipe is to season to taste with salt and pepper.

Albufera Add to suprême 3 ounces (90 milliliters) glace de volaille and 2 ounces (60 grams) red pepper butter (page 212).

Hungarian Sweat 2 ounces (60 grams) diced onion in 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) butter. Add 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) paprika. Stir in the suprême sauce. Cook for 2–3 minutes, strain and finish with butter.

Ivory Add to suprême 3 ounces (90 milliliters) glace de volaille.

The Espagnole (Brown Sauce) Family



The mother sauce of the espagnole or brown sauce family is full-bodied and rich. It is made from brown stock to which brown roux, mirepoix and tomato purée are added. Most often this sauce is used to produce demi-glace. Brown stock is also used to make jus lié. Demi-glace and jus lié are intermediary sauces used to create the small sauces of the espagnole family.

RECIPE 10.11

ESPAGNOLE (BROWN SAUCE)

Yield: 1 gal. (4 lt)

Mirepoix, medium dice	2 lb.	1 kg
Clarified butter	8 oz.	250 ml
Flour	8 oz.	250 g
Brown stock	5 qt.	5 lt

Continued

Espagnole

Tomato purée	8 oz.	250 g
Sachet:		
Bay leaf	1	1
Dried thyme	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Peppercorns, crushed	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Parsley stems	8	8
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Sauté the mirepoix in butter until well caramelized.
2. Add the flour and cook to make a brown roux.
3. Add the brown stock and tomato purée. Stir to break up any lumps of roux. Bring to a boil; reduce to a simmer.
4. Add the sachet.
5. Simmer for approximately 1 1/2 hours, allowing the sauce to reduce. Skim the surface as needed to remove impurities.
6. Strain the sauce through a china cap lined with several layers of cheesecloth. Adjust seasonings and cool in a water bath or hold for service.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 35, **Total fat** 2 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 5 mg, **Sodium** 150 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 4 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 6%, **Claims**—low fat, low calorie

Demi-Glace

Brown stock is used to make the espagnole or brown sauce described earlier. Espagnole sauce can then be made into demi-glace, which in turn is used to make the small sauces of the espagnole family. Demi-glace is half brown sauce, half brown stock, reduced by half. It is usually finished with a small amount of madeira or sherry wine. Because demi-glace creates a richer, more flavorful base, it produces finer small sauces than those made directly from a brown sauce.

A properly made demi-glace is rich, smooth and lump-free. Its prominent roasted flavor comes from the bones used for the brown stock. There should be no taste of roux. The caramelized bones and mirepoix as well as the tomato product contribute to its glossy dark brown, almost chocolate, color. It should be thick enough to cling to food without being pasty or heavy.

RECIPE 10.12

DEMI-GLACE

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Brown stock	1 qt.	1 lt
Brown sauce	1 qt.	1 lt

1. Combine the stock and sauce in a saucepan over medium heat.
2. Simmer until the mixture is reduced by half (a yield of 1 quart or 1 liter).
3. Strain and cool in a water bath.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 30, **Total fat** 1.5 g, **Saturated fat** .5 g, **Cholesterol** 5 mg, **Sodium** 200 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 4 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 6%, **Claims**—low fat, low calorie

Demi-Glace

Jus Lié

Jus lié, also known as fond lié, is used like a demi-glace, especially to produce small sauces. Jus lié is lighter and easier to make than a demi-glace, however. It is made in one of two ways:

1. A rich brown stock is thickened with cornstarch or arrowroot and seasoned.
2. A rich brown stock is simmered and reduced so that it thickens naturally because of the concentrated amounts of gelatin and other proteins.

The starch-thickened method is a quick alternative to the long-simmering demi-glace. But because it is simply a brown stock thickened with cornstarch or arrowroot, it will only be as good as the stock with which it was begun. Sauces made from reduced stock usually have a better flavor but can be expensive to produce because of high food costs and lengthy reduction time.

A properly made jus lié is very rich and smooth. It shares many flavor characteristics with demi-glace. Its color should be dark brown and glossy from the concentrated gelatin content. Its consistency is somewhat lighter than demi-glace, but it should still cling lightly to foods.

Small Brown Sauces

Demi-glace and jus lié are used to produce many small sauces. The quantities given are for 1 quart (1 liter) demi-glace or jus lié. The final step for each recipe is to season to taste with salt and pepper.

Bordelaise Combine 1 pint (250 milliliters) dry red wine, 2 ounces (60 grams) chopped shallots, 1 bay leaf, 1 sprig thyme and a pinch of black pepper in a saucepan. Reduce by three fourths, then add demi-glace and simmer for 15 minutes. Strain through a fine chinois. Finish with 2 ounces (60 grams) whole butter and garnish with sliced, poached beef marrow.

Chasseur (Hunter's Sauce) Sauté 4 ounces (120 grams) sliced mushrooms and 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) diced shallots in butter. Add 8 ounces (250 milliliters) white wine and reduce by three fourths. Then add demi-glace and 6 ounces (170 grams) diced tomatoes; simmer for 5 minutes. Do not strain. Garnish with chopped parsley.

Châteaubriand Combine 1 pint (500 milliliters) dry white wine and 2 ounces (60 grams) diced shallots. Reduce the mixture by two thirds. Add demi-glace and reduce by half. Season to taste with lemon juice and cayenne pepper. Do not strain. Swirl in 4 ounces (120 grams) butter to finish and garnish with chopped fresh tarragon.

Chevreuil Prepare a poivrade sauce but add 6 ounces (170 grams) bacon or game trimmings to the mirepoix. Finish with 4 ounces (120 milliliters) red wine and a dash of cayenne pepper.

Madeira or Port Bring demi-glace to a boil, reduce slightly. Then add 4 ounces (120 milliliters) madeira wine or ruby port.

Marchand de Vin Reduce 8 ounces (250 milliliters) dry red wine and 2 ounces (60 grams) diced shallots by two thirds. Then add demi-glace, simmer and strain.

Mushroom Blanch 8 ounces (250 grams) mushroom caps in 8 ounces (250 milliliters) boiling water seasoned with salt and lemon juice. Drain the mushrooms, saving the liquid. Reduce this liquid to 2 tablespoons (30 milliliters) and add it to the demi-glace. Just before service stir in 2 ounces (60 grams) butter and the mushroom caps.

Poivrade Pour Gibier

Poivrade is also the name given a flavorful sauce traditionally made with game stock and seasoned with peppercorns. It is used for the wonderful *Sauce Grand Veneur*, one of the most complex small sauces in the classic repertoire. For *Grand Veneur*, game stock is flavored with demi-glace and finished with cream and currant jelly. The sweetness balances the strong flavor of the game meats.

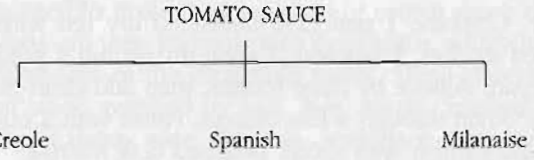
Périgueux Add finely diced truffles to madeira sauce. **Périgourdine** sauce is the same, except that the truffles are cut into relatively thick slices.

Piquant Combine 1 ounce (30 grams) shallots, 4 ounces (120 milliliters) white wine and 4 ounces (120 milliliters) white wine vinegar. Reduce the mixture by two thirds. Then add demi-glace and simmer for 10 minutes. Add 2 ounces (60 grams) diced cornichons, 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) fresh tarragon, 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) fresh parsley and 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) fresh chervil. Do not strain.

Poivrade Sweat 12 ounces (340 grams) mirepoix in 2 tablespoons (30 milliliters) oil. Add 1 bay leaf, a sprig of thyme and 4 parsley stems. Then add 1 pint (500 milliliters) vinegar and 4 ounces (120 milliliters) white wine. Reduce by half, add demi-glace and simmer for 40 minutes. Then add 20 crushed peppercorns and simmer for 5 more minutes. Strain through a fine chinois and finish with up to 2 ounces (60 grams) butter.

Robert Sauté 8 ounces (250 grams) chopped onion in 1 ounce (30 grams) butter. Add 8 ounces (250 milliliters) dry white wine and reduce by two thirds. Add demi-glace and simmer for 10 minutes. Strain and then add 2 teaspoons (10 milliliters) prepared Dijon mustard and 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) sugar. If the finished Robert sauce is garnished with sliced sour pickles, preferably cornichons, it is known as **Charcuterie**.

The Tomato Sauce Family



Classic tomato sauce is made from tomatoes, vegetables, seasonings and white stock and thickened with a blond or brown roux. In today's kitchens, however, most tomato sauces are not thickened with roux. Rather, they are created from tomatoes, herbs, spices, vegetables and other flavoring ingredients simmered together and puréed.

Gastrique—*caramelized sugar deglazed with vinegar; used to flavor tomato or savory fruit sauces.*

A **gastrique** is sometimes added to reduce the acidity of a tomato sauce. To prepare a gastrique, caramelize a small amount of sugar, then thin or deglaze with vinegar. This mixture is then used to finish the tomato sauce.

A properly made tomato sauce is thick, rich and full-flavored. Its texture should be grainier than most other classic sauces, but it should still be smooth. The vegetables and other seasonings should add flavor, but none should be pronounced. Tomato sauce should not be bitter, acidic or overly sweet. It should be deep red and thick enough to cling to foods.

RECIPE 10.13

Tomato Sauce

Yield: 1 gal. (4 lt)

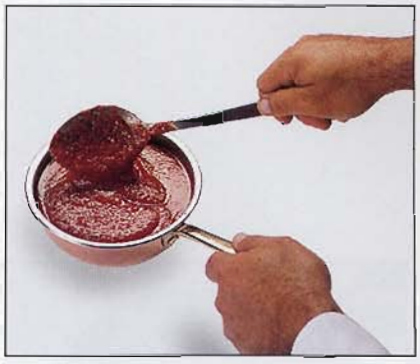
Salt pork, small dice	4 oz.	120 g
Mirepoix	1 lb. 8 oz.	750 g

Tomato, fresh or canned	3 qt.	3 lt
Tomato purée	2 qt.	2 lt
Sachet:		
Dried thyme	1 tsp.	5 ml
Bay leaves	3	3
Garlic cloves	3	3
Parsley stems	10	10
Peppercorns, crushed	1/2 tsp.	3 ml
Salt	1 1/2 oz.	45 g
Sugar	3/4 oz.	20 g
White stock	3 qt.	3 lt
Pork bones	2 lb.	1 kg

1. Render the salt pork over medium heat.
2. Add the mirepoix and sauté, but do not brown.
3. Add the tomatoes and tomato purée, sachet, salt and sugar.
4. Add the white stock and bones.
5. Simmer slowly for 1/2 to 2 hours or until the desired consistency has been reached.
6. Remove the bones and sachet, and pass the sauce through a food mill. Cool in a water bath and refrigerate.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 30, **Total fat** .5 g, **Saturated fat** .2 g, **Cholesterol** .7 mg, **Sodium** 240 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 4 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Vitamin A** 6%, **Claims**—low fat; low calorie

1. Passing the sauce through a food mill.



2. The finished sauce.

Small Tomato Sauces

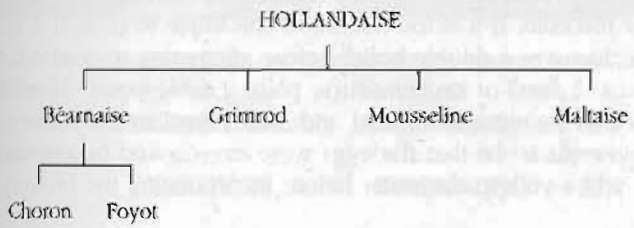
The following small sauces are made by adding the listed ingredients to 1 quart (1 liter) tomato sauce. The final step for each recipe is to season to taste with salt and pepper.

Creole Sauté 6 ounces (170 grams) finely diced onion, 4 ounces (120 grams) thinly sliced celery and 1 teaspoon (5 milliliters) garlic in 1 ounce (30 milliliters) oil. Add tomato sauce, a bay leaf and a pinch of thyme; simmer for 15 minutes. Then add 4 ounces (120 grams) finely diced green pepper and a dash of hot pepper sauce; simmer for 15 minutes longer. Remove bay leaf.

Milanaise Sauté 5 ounces (140 grams) sliced mushrooms in 1/2 ounce (15 grams) butter. Add tomato sauce and then stir in 5 ounces (140 grams) cooked ham (julienne) and 5 ounces (140 grams) cooked tongue (julienne). Bring to a simmer.

Spanish Prepare creole sauce as directed, adding 4 ounces (120 grams) sliced mushrooms to the sautéed onions. Garnish with sliced black or green olives.

The Hollandaise Family



Emulsification—*the process by which generally unmixable liquids such as oil and water are forced into a uniform distribution.*

Hollandaise and the small sauces derived from it are **emulsified** sauces. Egg yolks, which contain large amounts of lecithin, a natural emulsifier, are used to emulsify warm butter and a small amount of water, lemon juice or vinegar. By vigorously whipping the egg yolks with the liquid, while slowly adding the warm butter, the lecithin coats the individual oil droplets and holds them in suspension in the liquid.

A properly made hollandaise is smooth, buttery, pale lemon-yellow colored and very rich. It is lump-free and should not exhibit any signs of separation. The buttery flavor should dominate but not mask the flavors of the egg, lemon and vinegar. The sauce should be frothy and light, not heavy like a mayonnaise.

Temperatures and Sanitation Concerns

Temperatures play an important role in the proper production of a hollandaise sauce. As the egg yolks and liquid are whisked together, they are cooked over a bain marie until they thicken to the consistency of slightly whipped cream. Do not overheat this mixture because even slightly cooked eggs lose their ability to emulsify. The clarified butter used to make the sauce should be warm but not so hot as to further cook the egg yolks. Although hollandaise sauce can be made from whole butter, a more stable and consistent product will be achieved by using clarified butter. (Clarification is described in Chapter 8, Dairy Products.)

Emulsified butter sauces must be held at the specific temperatures most conducive to bacterial growth: 40°F–140°F (4°C–60°C). If the sauce is heated above 150°F (65°C), the eggs will cook and the sauce will break and become grainy. If the sauce temperature falls below 45°F (7°C), the butter will solidify, making the sauce unusable. In order to minimize the risk of food-borne illnesses:

1. Always use clean, sanitized utensils.
2. Schedule sauce production as close to the time of service as possible. Never hold hollandaise-based sauces more than 1 1/2 hours.
3. Make small batches of sauce.
4. Never mix an old sauce with a new one.

With practice, classic hollandaise can be produced quickly and efficiently. Nevertheless, a recipe for blender hollandaise is included for those operations with a need for this technique.

Procedure for Rescuing a Broken Hollandaise

Occasionally, a hollandaise will break or separate and appear thin, grainy or even lumpy. A sauce breaks when the emulsion has not formed or the emulsified butter, eggs and liquid have separated. This may happen for several reasons: The temperature of the eggs or butter may have been too high or too low; the butter may have been added too quickly; the egg yolks may have been overcooked; too much butter may have been added or the sauce may not have been whipped vigorously enough.

To rescue and re-emulsify broken hollandaise you must first determine if it is too hot or too cold. If it is too hot, allow the sauce to cool. If it is too cold, reheat the sauce over a double boiler before attempting to rescue it.

For 1 quart (1 liter) of broken sauce, place 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) of water in a clean stainless steel bowl and slowly beat in the broken sauce. If the problem seems to be that the eggs were overcooked or too much butter was added, add a yolk to the water before incorporating the broken sauce.

RECIPE 10.14

HOLLANDAISE

Yield: 1 1/2 qt. (1.5 lt)

White peppercorns, crushed	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
White wine vinegar	6 oz.	180 ml
Water	4 oz.	120 ml
Egg yolks	10	10
Lemon juice	2 1/2 oz.	75 ml
Clarified butter, warm	1 qt.	1 lt
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
Cayenne pepper	TT	TT

1. Combine the peppercorns, vinegar and water in a small saucepan and reduce by one half.
2. Place the egg yolks in a stainless steel bowl. Strain the vinegar and pepper reduction through a chinois, into the yolks.
3. Place the bowl over a double boiler, whipping the mixture continuously with a wire whip. As the yolks cook, the mixture will thicken. When the mixture is thick enough to leave a trail across the surface when the whip is drawn away, remove the bowl from the double boiler. Do not overcook the egg yolks.
4. Whip in 1 ounce (30 milliliters) lemon juice to stop the yolks from cooking.
5. Begin to add the warm clarified butter to the egg yolk mixture a drop at a time, while constantly whipping the mixture to form an emulsion. Once the emulsion is started, the butter may be added more quickly. Continue until all the butter is incorporated.
6. Whip in the remaining lemon juice. Adjust the seasonings with salt, white pepper and cayenne pepper.
7. Strain the sauce through cheesecloth if necessary and hold for service in a warm (not simmering) bain marie.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g)-serving: **Calories** 170, **Total fat** 18 g, **Saturated fat** 11 g, **Cholesterol** 90 mg, **Sodium** 180 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 0 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 20%

1. Combining the egg yolks with the vinegar and pepper reduction in a stainless steel bowl.

2. Whipping the mixture over a double boiler until it is thick enough to leave a trail when the whip is removed.

3. Using a kitchen towel and saucepot to firmly hold the bowl containing the yolks, add the butter slowly while whipping continuously.

4. Hollandaise at the proper consistency.

RECIPE 10.15

Hollandaise, Blender Method

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Egg yolks	9	9
Water, warm	3 oz.	90 ml
Lemon juice	1 oz.	30 ml
Cayenne pepper	TT	TT
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
White pepper	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Tabasco sauce	TT	TT
Whole butter	24 oz.	750 ml

1. Place the egg yolks, water, lemon juice, cayenne pepper, salt, white pepper and Tabasco sauce in the bowl of the blender. Cover and blend on high speed for approximately 5 seconds.
2. Heat the butter to approximately 175°F (80°C). This allows the butter to cook the yolks as it is added to them.
3. Turn the blender on and immediately begin to add the butter in a steady stream. Incorporate all the butter in 20 to 30 seconds. Adjust the seasonings.
4. If any lumps are present, strain the sauce through cheesecloth. Transfer the sauce to a stainless steel container and adjust the seasonings. Hold for service in a bain marie, remembering the sanitation precautions discussed earlier.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 120, **Total fat** 12 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 70 mg, **Sodium** 170 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 0 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 15%

Small Hollandaise Sauces

The following small sauces are easily made by adding the listed ingredients to 1 quart (1 liter) of hollandaise. The final step for each recipe is to season to taste with salt and pepper. Béarnaise is presented here as a small sauce although some chefs consider it a leading sauce.

Béarnaise Combine 2 ounces (60 grams) chopped shallots, 5 tablespoons (75 milliliters) chopped fresh tarragon, 3 tablespoons (45 milliliters) chopped fresh chervil and 1 teaspoon (5 milliliters) crushed peppercorns with 8 ounces (250 milliliters) white wine vinegar. Reduce to 2 ounces (60 milliliters). Add this reduction to the egg yolks and proceed with the hollandaise recipe. Strain the finished sauce and season to taste with salt and cayenne pepper. Garnish with additional chopped fresh tarragon.

Choron Combine 2 ounces (60 grams) tomato paste and 2 ounces (60 grams) heavy cream; add the mixture to a béarnaise.

Foyot Add to béarnaise 3 ounces (90 milliliters) melted glace de viande.

Grimrod Infuse a hollandaise sauce with saffron.

Maltaise Add to hollandaise 2 ounces (60 milliliters) orange juice and 2 teaspoons (10 milliliters) finely grated orange zest. Blood oranges are traditionally used for this sauce.

Mousseline (Chantilly sauce) Whip 8 ounces (250 milliliters) heavy cream until stiff. Fold it into the hollandaise just before service. Mousseline sauce is also used as a **glaçage** coating.

Glaçage—*browning or glazing a food, usually under a salamander or broiler.*

Beurre Blanc and Beurre Rouge

Beurre blanc and beurre rouge are emulsified butter sauces made without egg yolks. The small amounts of lecithin and other emulsifiers naturally found in butter are used to form an oil-in-water emulsion. Although similar to hollandaise in concept, they are not considered either classic leading or compound sauces. Beurre blancs are thinner and lighter than hollandaise and béarnaise. They should be smooth and slightly thicker than heavy cream.

Beurre blanc and beurre rouge are made from three main ingredients: shallots, white (Fr. *blanc*) wine or red (Fr. *rouge*) wine and whole butter (not clarified). The shallots and wine provide flavor, while the butter becomes the sauce. A good beurre blanc or beurre rouge is rich and buttery, with a neutral flavor that responds well to other seasonings and flavorings, thereby lending itself to the addition of herbs, spices and vegetable purées to complement the dish with which it is served. Its pale color changes depending upon the flavorings added. It should be light and airy yet still liquid, while thick enough to cling to food.

Beurre Noir—*French for "black butter"; used to describe whole butter cooked until dark brown (not black); sometimes flavored with vinegar or lemon juice, capers and parsley and served over fish, eggs and vegetables.*

Beurre Noisette—*French for "brown butter"; used to describe butter cooked until it is a light brown color; flavored and used in much the same manner as beurre noir.*

Procedure for Preparing Beurre Blanc or Beurre Rouge

1. Use a nonaluminum pan to prevent discoloring the sauce. Do not use a thin-walled or nonstick pan, as heat is not evenly distributed in a thin-walled pan and a nonstick pan makes it difficult for an emulsion to set.
2. Over medium heat, reduce the wine, shallots and herbs or other seasonings, if used, until *au sec* (that is, nearly dry). Some chefs add a small amount of heavy cream at this point and reduce the mixture. Although not necessary, the added cream helps stabilize the finished sauce.
3. Whisk in cold butter a small amount at a time. The butter should be well chilled, as this allows the butterfat, water and milk solids to be gradually incorporated into the sauce as the butter melts and the mixture is whisked.
4. When all the butter is incorporated, strain and hold the sauce in a bain marie.

Temperature

Do not let the sauce become too hot. At 136°F (58°C) some of the emulsifying proteins begin to break down and release the butterfat they hold in emulsion. Extended periods at temperatures over 136°F (58°C) will cause the sauce to separate. If the sauce separates, it can be corrected by cooling to approximately 110°F–120°F (43°C–49°C) and whisking to reincorporate the butterfat.

If the sauce is allowed to cool below 85°F (30°C), the butterfat will solidify. If the sauce is reheated it will separate into butterfat and water; whisking will not re-emulsify it. Cold beurre blanc can be used as a soft, flavored butter, however, simply by whisking it at room temperature until it smoothes out to the consistency of mayonnaise.

RECIPE 10.16

Beurre Blanc

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

White wine	1 oz.	30 g
White wine vinegar	4 oz.	120 ml
Salt	1 1/2 tsp.	7 ml
White pepper	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Shallots, minced	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Whole butter, chilled	2 lb.	1 kg

1. Combine the white wine, white wine vinegar, salt, white pepper and shallots in a small saucepan. Reduce the mixture until approximately 2 tablespoons (30 milliliters) of liquid remain. If more than 2 tablespoons of liquid are allowed to remain, the resulting sauce will be too thin. For a thicker sauce, reduce the mixture au sec.
2. Cut the butter into pieces approximately 1 ounce (30 grams) in weight. Over low heat, whisk in the butter a few pieces at a time, using the chilled butter to keep the sauce between 100°F and 120°F (43°C–49°C).
3. Once all the butter has been incorporated, remove the saucepan from the heat. Strain through a chinois and hold the sauce between 100°F and 130°F (38°C–54°C) for service.

Variations: *Lemon-Dill*—Heat 2 tablespoons (30 milliliters) lemon juice and whisk it into the beurre blanc. Stir in 4 tablespoons (60 milliliters) chopped fresh dill.

Pink Peppercorn—Add 2 tablespoons (30 milliliters) coarsely crushed pink peppercorns to the shallot-wine reduction when making beurre rouge. Garnish the finished sauce with whole pink peppercorns.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 210, **Total fat** 23 g, **Saturated fat** 14 g, **Cholesterol** 60 mg, **Sodium** 340 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 0 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Vitamin A** 20%

1. Reducing the shallots and wine *au sec*.

2. Whisking in the cold butter a little at a time.

3. Straining the sauce.

Compound Butters

A compound butter is made by incorporating various seasonings into softened whole butter. These butters, also known as *beurres composés*, give flavor and color to small sauces or may be served as sauces in their own right. For example, a slice of maître d'hôtel butter (parsley butter) is often placed on a grilled steak or piece of fish at the time of service. The butter quickly melts, creating a sauce for the beef or fish.

Butter and flavoring ingredients can be combined with a blender, food processor or mixer. Using parchment paper or plastic wrap, the butter is then rolled into a cylinder, chilled and sliced as needed. Or it can be piped into rosettes and refrigerated until firm. Most compound butters will keep for two to three days in the refrigerator, or they can be frozen for longer storage.

1. Placing the butter on the plastic wrap.

2. Rolling the butter in the plastic wrap to form a cylinder.

Recipes for Compound Butters

For each of the following butters, add the listed ingredients to 1 pound (500 grams) of softened, unsalted butter. The compound butter should then be seasoned with salt and pepper to taste.

Basil Butter Mince 2 ounces (60 grams) basil and 2 ounces (60 grams) shallots; add to the butter with 2 teaspoons (10 milliliters) lemon juice.

Herb Butter Add to the butter up to 1 cup (250 milliliters) of mixed chopped fresh herbs such as parsley, dill, chives, tarragon or chervil.

Lobster or Crayfish Butter Grind 8 ounces (250 grams) cooked lobster or crayfish meat, shells and/or coral with 1 pound (500 grams) butter. Place in a saucepan and clarify. Strain the butter through a fine chinois lined with cheesecloth. Refrigerate, then remove the butterfat when firm.

Maître d'Hôtel Mix into the butter 4 tablespoons (60 milliliters) finely chopped parsley, 3 tablespoons (45 milliliters) lemon juice and a dash of white pepper.

Montpelier Blanch 1 ounce (30 grams) parsley, 1 ounce (30 grams) chervil, 1 ounce (30 grams) watercress and 1 ounce (30 grams) tarragon in

boiling water. Drain thoroughly. Mince two hard-boiled egg yolks, two garlic cloves and two gherkin pickles. Blend everything into the butter.

Red Pepper Purée 8 ounces (250 grams) roasted, peeled red bell peppers until liquid, then add to the butter.

Shallot Butter Blanch 8 ounces (250 grams) of peeled shallots in boiling water. Dry and finely dice them and mix with the butter.

Pan Gravy

Pan gravy is aptly named: It is made directly in the pan used to roast the poultry, beef, lamb or pork that the gravy will accompany. Pan gravy is actually a sauce; it is a liquid thickened with a roux. Pan gravy gains additional flavors from the drippings left in the roasting pan and by using a portion of the fat rendered during the roasting process to make the roux. This technique is used in Recipe 17.3, Roast Turkey with Giblet Gravy.

A properly made pan gravy should have all the characteristics of any brown sauce except that it has a meatier flavor as a result of the pan drippings.

Procedure for Preparing Pan Gravy

1. Remove the cooked meat or poultry from the roasting pan.
2. If mirepoix was not added during the roasting process, add it to the pan containing the drippings and fat.
3. Place the roasting pan on the stove top and clarify the fat by cooking off any remaining moisture.
4. Pour off the fat, reserving it to make the roux.
5. Deglaze the pan using an appropriate stock. The deglazing liquid may be transferred to a saucepan for easier handling, or the gravy may be finished directly in the roasting pan.
6. Add enough stock or water to the deglazing liquid to yield the proper amount of finished gravy.
7. Determine the amount of roux needed to thicken the liquid and prepare it in a separate pan, using a portion of the reserved fat.
8. Add the roux to the liquid and bring the mixture to a simmer. Simmer until the mirepoix is well cooked, the flavor is extracted and the flour taste is cooked out.
9. Strain the gravy and adjust the seasonings.

Coulis

The term *coulis* most often refers to a sauce made from a purée of vegetables and/or fruit. A vegetable coulis can be served as either a hot or a cold accompaniment to other vegetables, starches, meat, poultry, fish or shellfish. It is often made from a single vegetable base (popular examples include broccoli, tomatoes and sweet red peppers) cooked with flavoring ingredients such as onions, garlic, shallots, herbs and spices and then puréed. An appropriate liquid (stock, water or cream) may be added to thin the purée if necessary. Vegetable coulis are often prepared with very little fat and served as a healthy alternative to a heavier, classic sauce.

A fruit coulis, often made from fresh or frozen berries, is generally used as a dessert sauce. It is usually as simple as puréed fruit thinned to the desired consistency with sugar syrup.

Typically, both vegetable and fruit coulis have a texture similar to that of thin tomato sauce. But their textures can range from slightly grainy to almost lumpy, depending on their intended use. The flavor and color of a coulis

should be that of the main ingredient. The flavors of herbs, spices and other flavoring ingredients should only complement and not dominate the coulis.

Procedure for Preparing a Coulis

Here, we include a procedure for making a vegetable coulis. Procedures for making fruit coulis are included as recipes in Chapter 34, Custards, Creams, Frozen Desserts and Dessert Sauces.

1. Cook the main ingredient and any additional flavoring ingredients with an appropriate liquid.
2. Purée the main ingredient and flavoring ingredients in a food mill, blender or food processor.
3. Combine the purée with the appropriate liquid and simmer to blend the flavors.
4. Thin and season the coulis as desired.

RECIPE 10.17

Red Pepper Coulis

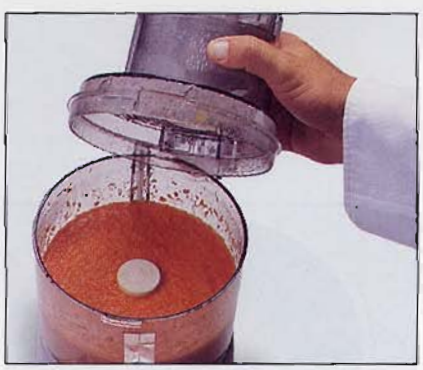
Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Vegetable oil	1 oz.	30 ml
Garlic, chopped	2 tsp.	10 ml
Onion, small dice	3 oz.	90 g
Red bell pepper, medium dice	3 lb.	1.25 kg
White wine	8 oz.	250 ml
Chicken stock	1 pt.	450 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Heat the oil and sauté the garlic and onion until translucent, without browning.
2. Add the red pepper and sauté until tender.
3. Deglaze the pan with the white wine.
4. Add the chicken stock, bring to a simmer and cook for 15 minutes. Season with salt and pepper.
5. Purée in a blender or food processor and strain through a china cap.
6. Adjust the consistency and seasonings and hold for service.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 20, **Total fat** 1 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 45 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin C** 50% , **Claims**—low fat, low sodium, low calorie

1. Sautéing the red peppers.



2. Puréeing the cooked peppers.

3. Straining the coulis.

Contemporary Sauces

Modern chefs and menu writers are relying less on traditional sauces and more on salsas, relishes, juices, broths, essences and infused oils in their work. Unlike classic sauces, these modern accompaniments do not rely on meat-based stocks and starch thickeners, but rather on fresh vegetables, vegetable juices, aromatic broths and intensely flavored oils. The names for these sauces are not codified, as are those in the classic sauce repertoire. Chefs apply various terms freely, using whatever name best fits the dish and the overall menu. Most of these contemporary sauces can be prepared more quickly than their classic counterparts,

and the use of fresh fruits and vegetables enhances the healthfulness of the dish. These so-called modern sauces may have a lighter body and less fat than classic sauces, but they are still derived from classical culinary techniques and principles. The sauces should be appropriate in flavor, texture and appearance and should complement, not overwhelm, the food they accompany.

Chutney—*a sweet-and-sour condiment made of fruits, vegetables or both and cooked in vinegar with sugar and spices until it has a consistency of jam. Some chutneys are reduced to a purée; others retain recognizable pieces of their ingredients.*

Salsa and Relish

Many people think of salsa (Spanish for "sauce") as a chunky mixture of raw vegetables and chiles eaten with chips or ladled over Mexican food; they think of relish as a sweet green condiment spooned on a hot dog. But salsas and relishes—generally, cold chunky mixtures of herbs, spices, fruits and/or vegetables—can be used as sauces for many meat, poultry, fish and shellfish items. They can include ingredients such as oranges, pineapple, papaya, black beans, jicama, tomatillos and an array of vegetables.

Although not members of any classic sauce family, salsas and relishes are currently enjoying great popularity because of their intense fresh flavors, ease of preparation and low fat and calorie content. Salsas and relishes are often a riot of colors, textures and flavors, simultaneously cool and hot, spicy and sweet.

Procedure for Preparing a Salsa or Relish

1. Cut or chop the ingredients.
2. Precook and chill items as directed in the recipe.
3. Toss all ingredients together and refrigerate, allowing the flavors to combine for at least 30 minutes before service.

RECIPE 10.18

Tomato Salsa (Pico de Gallo)

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Tomatoes, seeded, small dice	5	5
Green onions, sliced	1 bunch	1 bunch
Garlic cloves, minced	3	3
Cilantro, chopped	1/2 bunch	1/2 bunch
Jalapeño peppers, chopped fine	3	3
Lemon juice	2 oz.	60 ml
Cumin, ground	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Combine all ingredients and gently toss. Adjust seasonings and refrigerate.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 5, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 30 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—fat free; very low sodium; low calorie

Mixing Tomato Salsa

Vegetable Juice Sauces

Juice extractors make it possible to prepare juice from fresh, uncooked vegetables such as carrots, beets and spinach. Thinner and smoother than a purée, vegetable juice can be heated, reduced, flavored and enriched with butter to

create colorful, intensely flavored sauces. Cream or stock can be added to finish the sauce. Sauces made from vegetable juices are sometimes referred to as **essence** or **tea** on menus.

Juice from a single type of vegetable provides the purest, most pronounced flavor, but two or more vegetables sometimes can be combined successfully. Be careful of mixing too many flavors and colors in the juice, however. Juiced vegetable sauces are particularly appropriate with pasta, fish, shellfish and poultry, and can be useful in vegetarian cuisine or as a healthier alternative to classic sauces.

Procedure for Preparing a Vegetable Juice Sauce

1. Wash and peel vegetables as needed.
2. Process the vegetables through a juice extractor.
3. Place the juice in a saucepan and add stock, lemon juice, herbs or other flavorings as desired.
4. Bring the sauce to a simmer and reduce as necessary.
5. Strain the sauce through a fine chinois.
6. Adjust the seasonings and whisk in whole butter to finish.

RECIPE 10.19

Thyme-Scented Celery Essence

STOUFFER STANFORD COURT HOTEL, San Francisco, CA
Former Chef Ercolino Crugnale

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Celery juice	1 qt.	1 lt
Tomato juice	1 pt.	500 ml
Fresh thyme, chopped	1/2 oz.	15 g
Whole butter	6 oz.	180 g
Salt	TT	TT
Tabasco sauce	TT	TT

1. Combine the celery juice, tomato juice and thyme. Bring to simmer and reduce to 1 1/2 pints (750 milliliters).
2. Whisk in the butter and adjust the seasonings with salt and Tabasco sauce.
3. Strain through a chinois.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (42-g) serving: **Calories** 50, **Total fat** 4.5 g, **Saturated fat** 2.4 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 200 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 0 g

Broth

Broth, which also appears on menus as a **tea, au jus**, **essence** or **nage**, is a thin, flavorful liquid served in a pool beneath the main food. The broth should not be so abundant as to turn an entrée into a soup, but it should provide moisture and flavor. The essence, broth or nage is often made by simply reducing and straining the liquid in which the main food was cooked. Alternatively, a specifically flavored stock, tomato, for example, can be prepared, then clarified like consommé to create a broth or essence to accompany an appetizer or entrée.

Flavored Oil

Small amounts of intensely flavored oils can be used to dress or garnish a variety of dishes. Salads, soups, vegetable and starch dishes, as well as entrées, can be enhanced with a drizzle of colorful, appropriately flavored oil. Because such small quantities are used, these oils provide flavor and moisture without adding too many calories or fat.

Unless the flavoring ingredient goes especially well with olive oil (for example, basil), select a high-quality, but neutral oil such as peanut, safflower or canola. Although flavoring ingredients can be simply steeped in oil for a time, a better way to flavor oil is to crush, purée or cook the flavoring ingredients first.

Procedure for Preparing a Flavored Oil

1. Purée or chop fresh herbs, fruits or vegetables. Sweat dry spices or seeds in a small amount of oil to form a paste.
2. Place the selected oil and the flavoring ingredients in a jar or other tightly lidded container.
3. Allow the mixture to stand at room temperature until sufficient flavor is extracted. This may take from 1 to 24 hours. Shake the jar periodically. Do not allow the flavoring ingredients to remain in the oil indefinitely, as it may become harsh or bitter.
4. Strain the oil through a chinois lined with a coffee filter.
5. Store the flavored oil in a covered container in the refrigerator.

RECIPE 10.20

Shallot Curry Oil

Yield: 8 oz. (225 ml)

Canola oil	8 oz.	225 ml
Shallot, minced	1	1
Curry powder	4 Tbsp.	60 ml
Water	2 oz.	60 ml

1. In a small saucepan, heat 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) of oil over medium heat. Add the shallot and sauté until softened and translucent. Do not allow the shallot to brown.
2. Add the curry powder and sauté for 1 to 2 minutes.
3. Stir in the water and bring the mixture to a boil. Reduce the heat and simmer until most of the water evaporates, leaving a paste of curry and shallots.
4. Remove from the heat and stir in the remaining oil.
5. Place the mixture in a lidded jar and set aside at room temperature for 6 to 8 hours. Shake the jar occasionally.
6. Strain the oil through a chinois lined with a coffee filter. Place the flavored oil in a covered container and refrigerate until ready to use.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (31-g) serving: **Calories** 208, **Total fat** 23 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 1 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—no cholesterol; no sodium

Table 10.5 Using Sauces

Sauce	Qualities	Small Sauce or Flavorings	Use
Béchamel	Smooth, rich and creamy; no graininess; cream-colored with rich sheen	Cream sauce	Vegetables, pasta, eggs, fish
		Cheddar	Vegetables, pasta
		Mornay	Fish, shellfish, poultry, vegetables
		Nantua	Fish, shellfish
		Soubise	Veal, pork, eggs
Velouté	Smooth and rich; ivory-colored; good flavor of the stock used; not pasty or heavy	Fish velouté	
		Bercy	Poached fish
		Cardinal	Lobster, white fish, crab, eggs
		Normandy	Delicate white fish, oysters
		Allemande (veal or chicken)	
		Aurora	Eggs, chicken, sweetbreads
		Horseradish	Roast beef, corned beef, baked ham
		Mushroom	Sautéed poultry, white meats
		Poulette	Vegetables, sweetbreads
		Suprême (chicken)	
		Albufera	Braised poultry, sweetbreads
		Hungarian	Eggs, chicken, chops, sweetbreads
		Ivory	Eggs, braised poultry
Espagnole	Smooth and rich; dark brown color; good meat flavor	Bordelaise	Sautéed or grilled meats
		Chasseur	Sautéed or grilled meats and poultry
		Châteaubriand	Broiled meats
		Chevreuil	Roasted meats and game
		Madeira/Port	Grilled or roasted meats and game, ham
		Mushroom	Sautéed or grilled meats and poultry
		Périgueux/Périgourdine	Sautéed poultry, grilled meats and game, sweetbreads
		Piquant	Pork
		Poivrade	Grilled or roasted meats, game
		Robert	Pork
Tomato	Thick and rich; slightly grainy; full-flavored	Tomato	Meats, poultry, vegetables, pasta and for making small sauces
		Creole	Fish, eggs, chicken
		Spanish	Eggs, fish
		Milanaise	Pasta, grilled or sautéed poultry and white meats
Hollandaise	Smooth and rich; buttery flavor; light and slightly frothy; pale yellow color; no signs of separating	Béarnaise	Grilled or sautéed meats and fish
		Choron	Grilled meats and fish
		Foyot	Grilled meats and fish
		Grimrod	Eggs, poached fish
		Mousseline	Poached fish, eggs, vegetables
		Maltaise	Poached fish
Beurre blanc and beurre rouge	Rich and buttery; thinner than hollandaise; light and airy; pale-colored	Wide variety of seasonings and flavorings may be used	Steamed, grilled or poached fish, chicken or vegetables
Compound butter	Flavor ingredients should be evenly distributed	Wide variety of seasonings and flavorings may be used	Grilled meats, poultry and fish; finishing sauces
Pan gravy	Smooth; deep rich color; meaty flavor	Made from pan drippings	Roasted meats and poultry
Coulis	Rich color; moderately thin, grainy texture; strongly flavored	Made with a wide variety of vegetables or fruits	Vegetables, grilled or poached meats, poultry and fish
Salsa and relish	Chunky; bright colors; not watery	Made with a wide variety of vegetables, fruits and seasonings	Meats, fish, vegetables and poultry; used as a sauce or condiment
Flavored oil	Smooth; bright colors; intense flavors	Made with a variety of herbs, spices and seasonings	Used as a garnish

USING SAUCES

Although many classic sauces were designed for or intended to be used with specific dishes, modern chefs often mix and match sauces with foods in unique or nontraditional ways. Nonclassic sauces, such as a beurre blanc, salsa or relish may be prepared in a range of flavors using a wide variety of ingredients.

The uses shown in Table 10.5 for classic and nonclassic sauces are just suggestions. Most sauces can be used in many different dishes. It depends on your taste, creativity and judgment.

CONCLUSION

In *Le Guide culinaire*, Auguste Escoffier wrote "Indeed, stock is everything in cooking . . . without it, nothing can be done. If one's stock is good, what remains of the work is easy; if, on the other hand, it is bad or merely mediocre, it is quite hopeless to expect anything approaching a satisfactory result." Because stocks and the sauces made from them are still the basis for much of contemporary cuisine, Escoffier's words are as true today as when he wrote them.

Both the classic mother sauces and the small sauces derived from them as well as sauces such as beurre blanc and beurre rouge, coulis, flavored oils, salsas and relishes that are not based on classic recipes all share two goals: to complement the foods with which they are served and neither mask nor disguise poorly prepared foods. With practice and care (and the right ingredients), you will be able to make great sauces.

QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

1. Why are the bones of younger animals preferred for making stocks?
2. Why should a stock made from beef or veal bones cook longer than a stock made from fish bones? What is the result if a stock does not cook long enough?
3. What can cause a stock to become cloudy? How can you prevent this from happening?
4. List three differences in the production of a white stock and a brown stock.
5. List the five classic mother sauces, and explain how they are used to prepare small sauces.
6. Why is demi-glace preferred when making brown sauces? Is jus lié different from classic demi-glace? Can they be used interchangeably?
7. Why are temperatures important when making hollandaise sauce? What precautions must be taken when holding hollandaise for service?
8. Compare a beurre blanc and a hollandaise sauce. How are they similar? How are they different?
9. How are compound butters used in making sauces? What are the ingredients for a traditional maître d'hôtel butter?
10. What are the differences between a salsa, chutney and relish? Can these items be used in place of classic sauces? Explain your answer.

ADDITIONAL SAUCE RECIPES

RECIPE 10.21

MUSHROOM TARTS WITH GARLIC CREAM

NOTE: This dish appears in the Chapter Opening photograph.

CITRUS, LOS ANGELES, CA
Chef Michel Richard

Yield: 6 servings

GARLIC CREAM

Garlic cloves, peeled	30	30
Heavy cream	1 pt.	500 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Place the garlic in a saucepan. Cover with 3 inches (8 cm) of cold water and bring to a boil. Drain and rinse the garlic with cold water. Repeat the process two more times. Then thinly slice the garlic and return it to the saucepan.
2. Add cream. Bring to a boil. Reduce the heat and simmer gently until reduced by half or to a thick, saucelike consistency, stirring occasionally.
3. Season with salt and pepper.

PUFF PASTRY

Puff pastry	8 oz.	225 g

1. Line a large baking sheet with parchment paper. Roll the pastry into a 10- × 9-inch (25- × 22.5-cm) rectangle on a lightly floured surface.
2. Cut into six 3- × 5-inch (7.5- × 12.5-cm) squares using a fluted pastry cutter. Transfer to a baking sheet and dock the dough with a fork.
3. Cover and refrigerate for at least 1 hour before baking.
4. Bake at 350°F (180°C) until puffed, browned and baked through, approximately 30 minutes.

MUSHROOMS

Fresh shiitake mushrooms	1 1/2 to 2 lb.	750 to 1000 g
Olive oil	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Trim the ends of the mushrooms. Heat a sauté pan over medium-high heat and film with oil. Add the mushrooms and cook until lightly brown and tender, approximately 5 minutes, stirring frequently.
2. Season with salt and pepper.
3. To serve the tart, slice each piece of puff pastry in half horizontally, using a serrated knife. Arrange on six plates.
4. Rewarm the garlic cream and mushrooms. Spoon cream onto the bottom of each piece of pastry. Overlap the mushrooms on top of cream, alternating light and dark pieces. Set the top pieces of pastry at an angle over the mushrooms so that the filling is visible.
5. Serve with marchand de vin (p. 203) and garnish with an herb sprig, if desired.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 670, **Total fat** 50 g, **Saturated fat** 22 g, **Cholesterol** 115 mg, **Sodium** 135 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 46 g, **Protein** 8 g, **Vitamin A** 35%

RECIPE 10.22

Red-Wine Thyme Sauce

VINCENT ON CAMELBACK, PHOENIX, AZ
Chef Vincent Guerithault

Red wine	8 oz.	250 ml
Garlic, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Shallots, chopped	2 oz.	60 g
Veal stock	1 qt.	1 lt
Fresh rosemary	1 sprig	1 sprig
Fresh thyme	1 sprig	1 sprig
Bay leaves	2	2
Unsalted butter	1 oz.	30 g

1. Reduce the red wine, garlic and shallots by one quarter.
2. Add the veal stock, rosemary, thyme and bay leaves and reduce by one quarter.
3. Remove from the heat and strain. Monté au beurre.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (84-g) serving: **Calories** 40, **Total fat** 2 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 5 mg, **Sodium** 210 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 4 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 10%, **Claims**—low fat; low calorie; no sugar

RECIPE 10.23

Roasted Garlic Sauce

Chef Leland Atkinson, WASHINGTON, DC

Yield: 12 oz.

Shallots, minced	4 Tbsp.	60 ml
Clarified butter	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Madeira	4 oz.	120 ml
Fresh thyme	1 sprig	1 sprig
Bay leaf	1	1
Garlic head, trimmed and roasted	1	1
Demi-glace	1 pt.	450 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Sauté the shallots lightly in the clarified butter until slightly caramelized.
2. Add the Madeira, thyme and bay leaf and reduce by one third.
3. Squeeze in the garlic, discarding the skins and root.
4. Add the demi-glace and reduce by one third.
5. Thicken slightly with roux if desired, adjust the seasonings and force through a fine strainer.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 15, **Total fat** 1 g, **Saturated fat** .5 g, **Cholesterol** 5 mg, **Sodium** 240 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 0 g, **Protein** 0 g

RECIPE 10.24

Duxelles Sauce

Yield: 1 1/2 pt. (750 ml)

Mushrooms, chopped fine	8 oz.	250 g
Shallots, chopped fine	3 oz.	90 g
Clarified butter	1 oz.	30 ml
Olive oil	1 oz.	30 ml
Dry white wine	12 oz.	700 ml
Demi-glace	1 pt.	500 ml
Heavy cream	2 oz.	60 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Parsley, chopped fine	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Sauté the mushrooms and the shallots in the butter and oil. The mushrooms will release their liquid and darken. Cook until completely dry.
2. Deglaze with the white wine and reduce by two thirds.
3. Add the demi-glace. Bring to a boil, then simmer for five minutes.
4. Stir in the cream. Adjust the seasonings. Garnish with parsley.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (49-g) serving: **Calories** 100, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 30 mg, **Sodium** 40 g, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 15%

RECIPE 10.25

Barbecue Sauce

Yield: 1 1/2 qt. (1.5 lt)

Onion, small dice	8 oz.	250 g
Garlic, chopped	1 oz.	30 g
Vegetable oil	1 oz.	30 ml
Red wine vinegar	6 oz.	180 ml
Brown sugar	1 oz.	30 g
Honey	2 oz.	60 g
Beef stock	8 oz.	250 ml
Ketchup	10 oz.	300 g
Dry mustard	1 oz.	30 g
Worcestershire sauce	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Cayenne pepper	TT	TT

1. Sweat the onions and garlic in the oil until tender.
2. Combine the remaining ingredients and simmer for 30 minutes.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (23-g) serving: **Calories** 25, **Total fat** 1 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 80 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 4 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—low fat; low sodium; low calorie

RECIPE 10.26

Mignonette Sauce

Yield: 1 pt. (500 ml)

White pepper	2 tsp.	10 ml
Red wine vinegar	16 oz.	500 ml
Shallots, minced	4 oz.	120 g
Salt	TT	TT

1. Combine all ingredients.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (36-g) serving: **Calories** 5, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** .8 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—fat free; very low sodium; low calorie

RECIPE 10.27

Fresh Tomato Sauce for Pasta

Yield: 2 1/2 qt. (2.5 lt)

Onion, small dice	8 oz.	250 g
Carrot, small dice	4 oz.	120 g
Garlic, minced	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Olive oil	2 oz.	60 ml
Tomato concassée	7 lb.	3.1 kg
Fresh oregano	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh thyme	2 tsp.	10 ml
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Pepper	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Fresh basil, chopped	1/2 oz.	15 g

1. Sweat the onion, carrot and garlic in the olive oil until tender.
2. Add the concasse, oregano and thyme. Simmer for approximately 1 hour or until the desired consistency is reached.
3. Pass the sauce through a food mill if a smooth consistency is desired. Do not purée if a chunkier sauce is desired.
4. Adjust the seasonings and add the chopped basil.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (45-g) serving: **Calories** 20, **Total fat** 1 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 35 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Vitamin C** 15%, **Claims**—low fat; low sodium; low calorie

RECIPE 10.28

Bolognese Sauce

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Mirepoix, fine dice	8 oz.	250 g
Olive oil	2 oz.	60 ml
Whole butter	1 oz.	30 g
Ground beef	1 lb.	500 g
White wine	8 oz.	250 ml
Milk	6 oz.	180 ml
Nutmeg	TT	TT
Tomato concassée	2 lb.	1 kg
White stock	approx. 8 oz.	approx. 250 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Sauté the mirepoix in the olive oil and butter until tender. Add the beef and cook until no pink remains. Drain fat if necessary.
2. Add the wine. Cook and reduce the wine until nearly dry.
3. Add the milk and season with nutmeg. Cook and reduce the milk until nearly dry.
4. Add the tomatoes and 8 ounces (250 milliliters) of stock; season with salt and pepper. Simmer for 3 to 4 hours, adding stock as needed to prevent scorching. Adjust the seasonings.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (53-g) serving: **Calories** 50, **Total fat** 4 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 115 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Vitamin C** 10%

RECIPE 10.29

Tomato Vinaigrette

Yield: 4 8-oz. (250-g) servings

Vinaigrette:		
Tomato concassée	8 oz.	250 g
Fresh basil, thyme or marjoram	1 oz.	30 g
Balsamic vinegar	3 oz.	90 ml
Shallots, minced	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Olive oil	8 oz.	250 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Pasta, cooked	1 lb.	500 g

1. Combine all vinaigrette ingredients. Season to taste with salt and pepper. Set aside for 20 to 30 minutes to allow the flavors to blend.
2. Toss the sauce with 1 pound (500 grams) warm or cold cooked pasta such as spaghetti or fettuccine. Adjust the seasonings. Serve immediately or refrigerate and serve chilled.

Approximate values per 8-oz. (258-g) serving: **Calories** 700, Total fat 58 g, **Saturated fat** 8 g, **Cholesterol** 35 mg, **Sodium** 600 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 38 g, **Protein** 7 g, **Vitamin C** 20%

1. Combining the pesto ingredients.

2. The finished pesto sauce.

RECIPE 10.30

Pesto Sauce

Yield: 1 1/2 pt. (750 ml)

Olive oil	12 oz.	360 ml
Pine nuts	3 oz.	90 g
Fresh basil leaves	6 oz.	180 g
Garlic, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Parmesan, grated	4 oz.	120 g
Romano, grated	4 oz.	120 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Place one third of the olive oil in a blender or food processor and add all the remaining ingredients.
2. Blend or process until smooth. Add the remaining olive oil and blend a few seconds to incorporate.

Variation: *Walnut Pesto*—Substitute walnuts for pine nuts in the recipe.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (35-g) serving: **Calories** 200, **Total fat** 19 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 250 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Calcium** 15%

RECIPE 10.31

Citrus Beurre Blanc

VINCENT ON CAMELBACK, PHOENIX, AZ
Chef Vincent Guerithault

Yield: 4 servings

Orange juice	8 oz.	225 ml
Lime juice	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Lemon juice	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
White wine	8 oz.	225 ml
White wine vinegar	8 oz.	225 ml
Shallots, chopped fine	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Heavy cream	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Unsalted butter	1 lb.	450 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Orange rind, grated and blanched	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Lime rind, grated and blanched	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Lemon rind, grated and blanched	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Combine the citrus juices, wine, vinegar and shallots and reduce au sec over moderate heat.
2. Whisk in the cream, then whisk in the butter 2 ounces (60 grams) at a time.
3. Strain the sauce, season with salt and pepper and stir in the citrus rinds. Keep hot for service.

Approximate values per 5-oz. (160-g) serving: **Calories** 890, **Total fat** 94 g, **Saturated fat** 58 g, **Cholesterol** 255 mg, **Sodium** 600 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 9 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Vitamin A** 90%

RECIPE 10.32

Lobster Beurre Blanc

Chef Leland Atkinson, WASHINGTON, DC

Yield: 10 oz.

Shallots, peeled and sliced	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Clarified butter	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh tarragon	1 sprig	1 sprig
Bay leaf	1	1
White wine	8 oz.	250 ml
Lobster stock	1 pt.	450 ml
Champagne vinegar	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Lemon juice	2 tsp.	10 ml
Ginger, peeled, chopped coarse	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Heavy cream, hot	6 oz.	180 ml
Unsalted butter	4 oz.	120 g
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT

1. Sauté the shallots in clarified butter until lightly caramelized.
2. Add the tarragon, bay leaf, white wine, lobster stock, vinegar, lemon juice and ginger. Bring to a boil and reduce to approximately 8 ounces (250 milliliters).
3. Add the cream and reduce by half or until thick.
4. Monté au beurre, adjust the seasonings and strain. Hold in a warm place until service.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (105-g) serving: **Calories** 170, **Total fat** 17 g, **Saturated fat** 11 g, **Cholesterol** 50 mg, **Sodium** 400 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Vitamin A** 15%

RECIPE 10.33

Sorrel Sauce

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt) Method: puréeing

Shallots, chopped coarsely	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Whole butter	1 oz.	30 g
White wine	8 oz.	250 ml
Heavy cream	1 pt.	500 ml
Sorrel, stemmed	8 oz.	250 g
Spinach, stemmed	8 oz.	250 g
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
Lemon juice	1 oz.	30 ml

1. Sauté the shallots in the butter until tender.
2. Add the white wine and reduce by half.
3. Add the cream and reduce until it begins to thicken.
4. Add the sorrel and spinach leaves to the cream and cook just until the leaves are wilted.
5. Purée the sauce in a blender or food processor and season with salt, pepper and lemon juice. Serve the sauce with egg, chicken, veal or rich fish dishes.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (32-g) serving: **Calories** 70, **Total fat** 7 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 25 mg, **Sodium** 90 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 10%

RECIPE 10.34

Peanut Sauce

Yield: 28 oz. (800 g)

Garlic, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Onion, small dice	6 oz.	180 g
Red pepper flakes, crushed	1 tsp.	5 ml
Kaffir lime leaves (optional)	4	4
Curry powder	2 tsp.	10 ml
Lemon grass, minced	1 oz.	30 g
Vegetable oil	1 oz.	30 ml
Coconut milk	8 oz.	250 ml
Cinnamon sticks	2	2
Bay leaves	4	4
Lime juice	1 oz.	30 ml
Rice wine vinegar	4 oz.	120 ml
Chicken stock	10 oz.	300 ml
Peanut butter	10 oz.	300 g

1. Sauté the garlic, onion, red pepper flakes, lime leaves, curry powder and lemon grass in the vegetable oil for 5 minutes.
2. Add the remaining ingredients and simmer for 30 minutes. Stir often, as the sauce can easily burn. Serve warm.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (43-g) serving: **Calories** 100, **Total fat** 8 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 115 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 5 g, **Protein** 3 g

RECIPE 10.35

Apple Horseradish Sauce

Yield: 1 pt. (500 ml)

Granny Smith apples	4	4
Cider vinegar	2 oz.	60 ml
Fresh horseradish, grated	2 oz.	60 g
Paprika	1 tsp.	5 ml
White wine	1 oz.	30 ml

1. Grate the apples and moisten them with vinegar.
2. Add the horseradish and paprika.
3. Add wine to thin to the desired consistency.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (41-g) serving: **Calories** 25, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 6 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—fat free; no sodium; low calorie

RECIPE 10.36

Thai Melon Salsa

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Assorted melons such as honeydew, cantaloupe, crenshaw	1 qt.	1 lt
Garlic, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Brown sugar	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Thai fish sauce	1 oz.	30 ml
Serrano chiles, minced	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Lime juice	2 oz.	60 ml
Unsalted peanuts, roasted, chopped fine	4 Tbsp.	60 ml
Fresh mint	4 Tbsp.	60 ml

1. Cut the melons into small dice or shape into small balls using a parisienne scoop.
2. Combine remaining ingredients and toss with the melon pieces. Chill thoroughly. Serve with fish, shellfish or chicken.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (29-g) serving: **Calories** 20, **Total fat** .5 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 70 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 4 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Vitamin C** 10%, **Claims**—low fat; low sodium; low calorie

RECIPE 10.37

Tomatillo Salsa

Yield: 2 qt. (2 lt)

Tomatillos	5 lb.	2 kg
Water	8 oz.	250 ml
Jalapeños	3	3
Salt	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Pepper	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Garlic	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Onions, chopped	4 oz.	120 g
Cilantro, chopped	2 oz.	60 g

1. Remove the husks from the tomatillos.
2. Combine the tomatillos with the water, jalapeños, salt, pepper, garlic and onions. Bring to a boil and simmer until tender, approximately 20 minutes.
3. Chop all ingredients in a food chopper or purée them in a blender for a smoother sauce.
4. Add the cilantro and adjust the seasonings. The sauce may be served warm or cold.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (43-g) serving: **Calories** 20, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 120 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 3 g, **Protein** 1 g **Claims**—fat free; low sodium; low calorie

RECIPE 10.38

Star Fruit Chutney

Yield: 2 lb. (900 g)

Limes	3	3
Fresh ginger, julienne	4 oz.	120 g
Sugar	3 oz.	90 g
Apples, peeled, medium dice	2	2
Golden raisins	2 oz.	60 g
Dark raisins	2 oz.	60 g
Star fruit, peeled, medium dice	1 1/2 lb.	1.3 kg
Cider vinegar	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Cayenne pepper	TT	TT

1. Zest 2 limes.
2. Squeeze the limes to make 4 ounces (120 grams) of juice.
3. Combine the lime juice, zest, ginger and sugar. Bring to a boil and simmer until the sugar is caramelized.
4. Add the apples and raisins; simmer until the apples are soft but not mushy.
5. Add the star fruit and bring back to a boil. Remove from heat. Add the vinegar. Season to taste with salt, pepper and cayenne pepper.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (25-g) serving: **Calories** 45, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 10 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Claims**—fat free; no sodium

RECIPE 10.39

Herb Oil

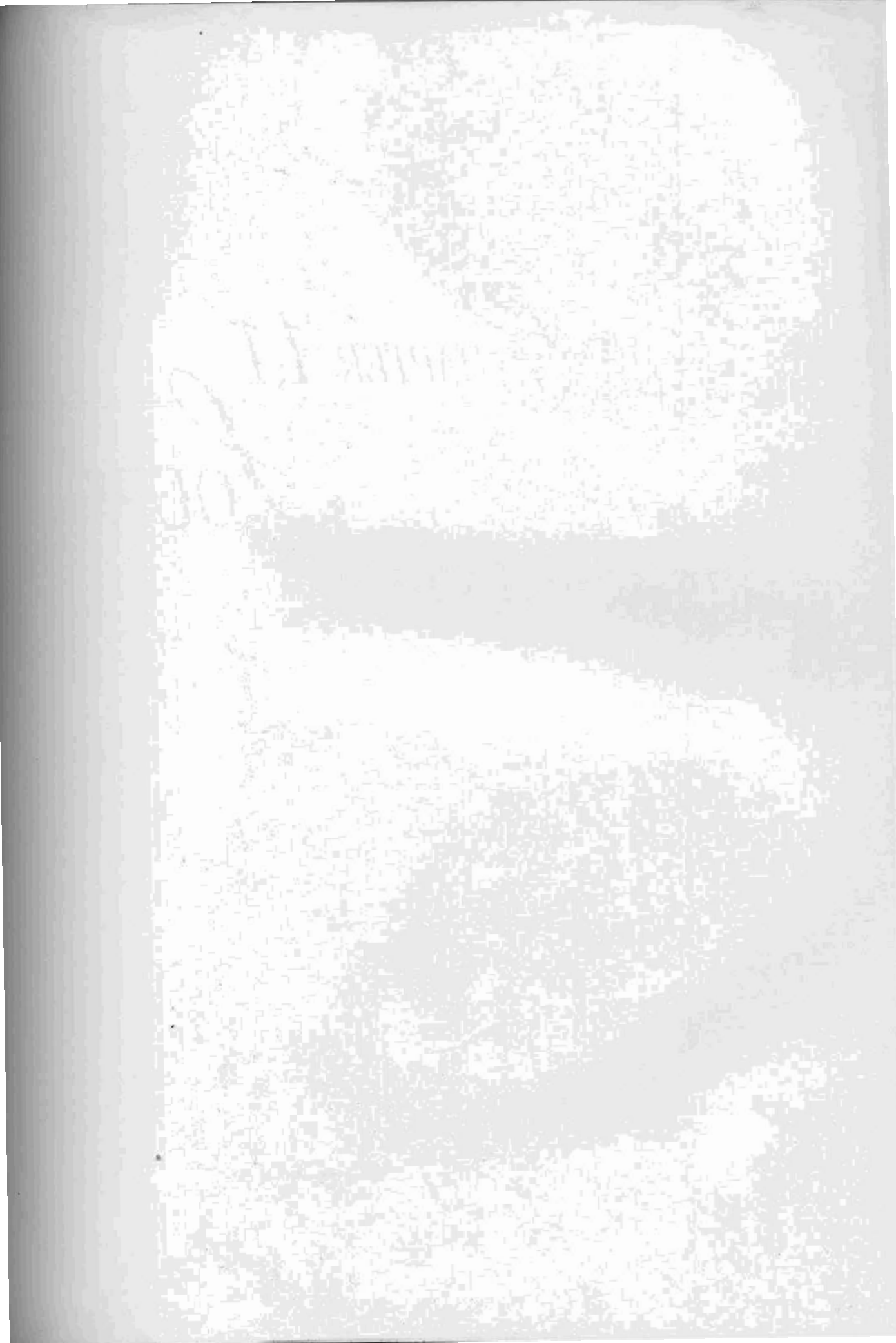
STANFORD COURT HOTEL, San Francisco, CA
Former Chef Ercolino Crugnale

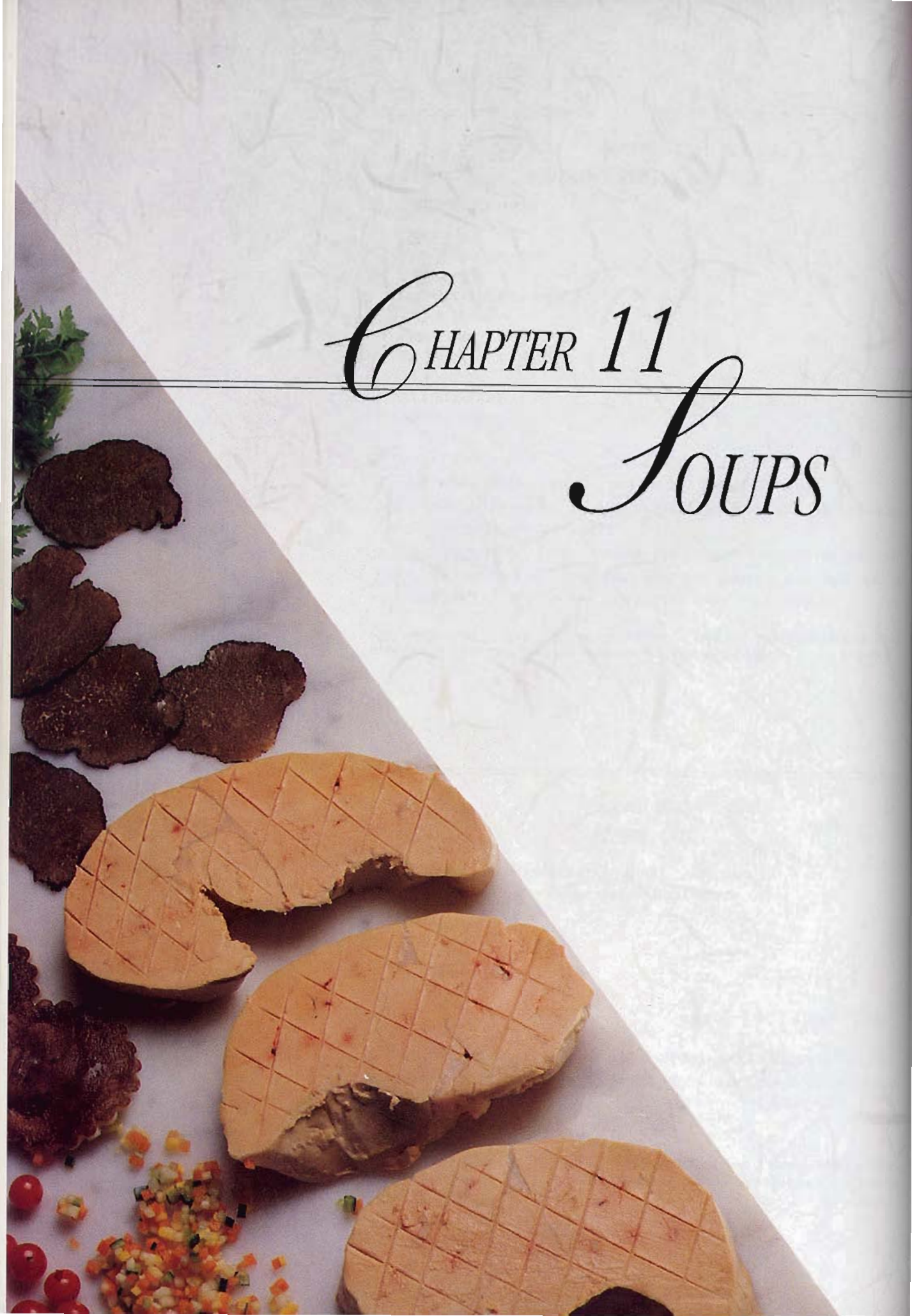
Yield: 4 oz. (120 g)

Fresh parsley	2 oz.	60 g
Fresh tarragon	1 oz.	30 g
Fresh thyme	1 oz.	30 g
Olive oil	approx. 4 oz.	approx. 120 ml

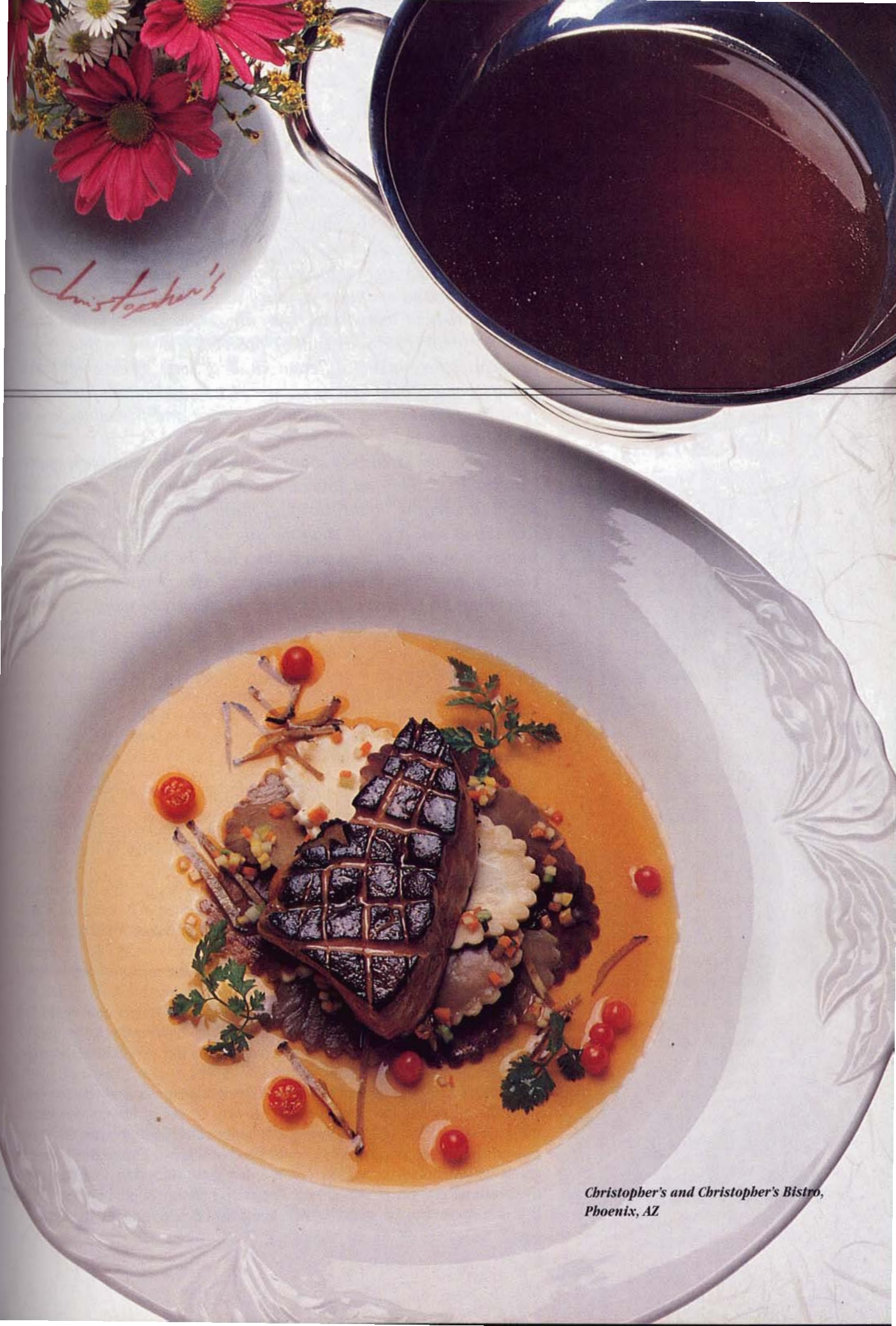
1. Blanch the herbs in hot water for 10 seconds. Cool and dry thoroughly.
2. Measure the volume of the herbs and put them in a blender. Add an equal volume of olive oil.
3. Purée and strain through a mesh strainer.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 110, **Total fat** 8 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 35 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 8 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Vitamin A** 20%, **Iron** 70% **Claims**—no cholesterol; low sodium





CHAPTER 11
SOUPS



Christopher's and Christopher's Bistro,
Phoenix, AZ

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- prepare a variety of clear and thick soups
- garnish and serve soups appropriately

Many classic soups are prepared successfully only if the recipes are followed strictly. The successful preparation of other soups depends upon the mastery of specialized techniques. But when classic recipes need not be followed nor special techniques employed, perhaps no other area of the kitchen allows the chef to use his or her imagination and creativity as much as the soup station.

The variety of ingredients, seasonings and garnishes that can be used for soups is virtually endless, provided you understand the basic procedures for making different kinds of soup. Great soups can be made from the finest and most expensive ingredients or from leftovers from the previous evening's dinner service and trimmings from the day's production.

This chapter extends to soups the skills and knowledge learned in Chapter 10, Stocks and Sauces. In Chapter 10, we discussed making stocks, thickening liquids, using a liaison and skimming impurities, techniques that apply to soup making as well. Here we discuss techniques such as clarifying consommés and thickening soups with vegetable purées. This chapter also covers cream soups, cold soups and guidelines for garnishing and serving a variety of soups.

Most soups can be classified by cooking technique and appearance as either clear or thick.

Clear soups include **broths** made from meat, poultry, game, fish or vegetables as well as **consommés**, which are broths clarified to remove impurities.

Thick soups include cream soups and purée soups. The most common **cream soups** are those made from vegetables cooked in a liquid that is thickened with a starch and puréed; cream is then incorporated to add richness and flavor. **Purée soups** are generally made from starchy vegetables or legumes. After the main ingredient is simmered in a liquid, the mixture—or a portion of it—is puréed.

Some soups (notably **bisques** and **chowders** as well as **cold soups** such as gazpacho and fruit soup) are neither clear nor thick soups. Rather, they use special preparation methods or a combination of the methods mentioned before.

A soup's quality is determined by its flavor, appearance and texture. A good soup should be full flavored, with no off or sour tastes. Flavors from each of the soup's ingredients should blend and complement, with no one flavor overpowering another. Consommés should be crystal clear. The vegetables in vegetable soups should be brightly colored, not gray. Garnishes should be attractive and uniform in size and shape. The soup's texture should be very precise. If it is supposed to be smooth, then it should be very smooth and lump-free.

If the soft and crisp textures of certain ingredients are supposed to contrast, the soup should not be overcooked, as this causes all the ingredients to become mushy and soft.

Garnishing is an important consideration when preparing soups. When applied to soups, the word *garnish* has two meanings. The first is the one more typically associated with the word. It refers to foods added to the soup as decoration—for example, a broccoli floret floated on a bowl of cream of broccoli soup. The second refers to foods that may serve not only as decorations but also as critical components of the final product—for example, noodles in a bowl of chicken noodle soup. In this context, the noodles are not ingredients because they are not used to make the chicken soup. Rather, they are added to chicken soup to create a different dish. These additional items are still referred to as garnishes, however.

Clear Soups

All clear soups start as broth. Broths may be served as finished items, used as the base for other soups or refined (clarified) into consommés.

Broths

The techniques for making stocks discussed in Chapter 10 are identical to those used for making broths. Like stocks, broths are prepared by simmering flavoring ingredients in a liquid for a long time. Broths and stocks differ, however, in two ways. First, broths are made with meat instead of just bones. Second, broths (often with a garnish) can be served as finished dishes, while stocks are generally used to prepare other items.

Broths are made from meat, poultry, fish or vegetables cooked in a liquid. An especially full-flavored broth results when a stock and not just water is used as the liquid. Cuts of meat from the shank, neck or shoulder result in more flavorful broths, as will the flesh of mature poultry. Proper temperature, skimming and straining help produce well-flavored, clear broths.

Procedure for Preparing Broths

1. Truss or cut the main ingredient.
2. Brown the meat; brown or sweat the mirepoix or vegetables as necessary.
3. Place the main ingredient and mirepoix or vegetables in an appropriate stockpot and add enough cold water or stock to cover. Add a bouquet garni or sachet d'épices if desired.
4. Bring the liquid slowly to a boil; reduce to a simmer and cook, skimming occasionally, until the main ingredient is tender and the flavor is fully developed.
5. Carefully strain the broth through a china cap lined with cheesecloth; try to disturb the flavoring ingredients as little as possible in order to preserve the broth's clarity.
6. Cool and store following the procedures for cooling stocks. Or bring to a boil, garnish as desired and hold for service.

Escoffier's Classification of Soups

In his 1903 culinary treatise *Le Guide culinaire*, Auguste Escoffier recognized many more categories of soups than we do today. They include:

Clear soups, which are always "clear consommés with a slight garnish in keeping with the nature of the consommé."

Purées, which are made from starchy vegetables and are thickened with rice, potato or soft bread crumbs.

Cullises, which use poultry, game or fish for a base and are thickened with rice, lentils, espagnole sauce or bread soaked in boiling salted water.

Bisques, which use shellfish cooked with a mirepoix as a base and are thickened with rice.

Veloutés, which use velouté sauce as a base and are finished with a liaison of egg yolks and cream.

Cream soups, which use béchamel sauce as a base and are finished with heavy cream.

Special soups, which are those that do not follow the procedures for veloutés or creams.

Vegetable soups, which are usually *paysanne* or peasant-type and "do not demand very great precision in the apportionment of the vegetables of which they are composed, but they need great care and attention, notwithstanding."

Foreign soups, "which have a foreign origin whose use, although it may not be general, is yet sufficiently common."

Because of changes in consumer health consciousness and kitchen operations, many of the distinctions between Escoffier's classic soups have now become blurred and, in some cases, eliminated. As discussed in this chapter, for example, clear consommés and vegetable soups are now made with stocks or broths; most cream soups use velouté as a base and are finished with milk or cream rather than a liaison. But not everything has changed: The procedures for making purées and bisques are essentially the same today as they were when Escoffier haunted the great kitchens of Europe.

RECIPE 11.1

Beef Broth

Yield: 8 qt. (8 lt)

Beef shank, neck or shoulder cut in 2-in. (5-cm) thick pieces	12 lb.	5.5 kg
Vegetable oil	8 oz.	250 g
Water or beef stock, cold	2 gal.	8 lt
Mirepoix	2 lb.	900 g
Turnip, medium dice	8 oz.	250 g
Leek, medium dice	8 oz.	250 g
Tomato, seeded and diced	8 oz.	250 g
Sachet:		
Bay leaf	1	1
Dried thyme	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Peppercorns, crushed	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Parsley stems	8	8
Garlic cloves, crushed	2	2
Salt TT	TT	

1. Brown the meat in 4 ounces (120 grams) of oil, then place it in a stockpot. Add the stock or water and bring to a simmer. Simmer gently for 2 hours, skimming the surface as necessary.
2. After the meat has simmered for 2 hours, caramelize the mirepoix in the remaining oil and add it to the liquid. Add the turnips, leeks, tomato and sachet.
3. Simmer until full flavor has developed, approximately 1 hour. Skim the surface as necessary.
4. Carefully strain the broth through cheesecloth and season to taste. Cool and refrigerate.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (205-g) serving: **Calories** 70, **Total fat** 6 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 2 mg, **Sodium** 630 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 2 g

Broth-Based Soups

Broths are often used as bases for such familiar soups as vegetable, chicken noodle and beef barley.

Transforming a broth into a broth-based vegetable soup, for example, is quite simple. Although a broth may be served with a vegetable (or meat) garnish, a broth-based vegetable soup is a soup in which the vegetables (and meats) are cooked directly in the broth, adding flavor, body and texture to the finished product. Any number of vegetables can be used to make a vegetable soup; it could be a single vegetable as in onion soup or a dozen different vegetables for a hearty minestrone. Making a mixed vegetable soup allows the chef to use his or her imagination and whatever produce may be on hand.

When making broth-based vegetable soups, each ingredient must be added at the proper time so that all ingredients are cooked when the soup is finished. The ingredients must cook long enough to add their flavors and soften sufficiently but not so long that they lose their identity and become too soft or mushy.

Because broth-based vegetable soups are made by simmering ingredients directly in the broth, they are generally not as clear as plain broths. But ap-

pearances are still important. So, when cutting ingredients for the soup, pay particular attention so that the pieces are uniform and visually appealing. Small dice, julienne, batonnet or paysanne cuts are recommended.

Procedure for Preparing Broth-Based Vegetable Soups

1. Sweat long-cooking vegetables in butter or fat.
2. Add the appropriate stock or broth and bring to a simmer.
3. Add seasonings such as bay leaves, dried thyme, crushed peppercorns, parsley stems and garlic, in a sachet, allowing enough time for the seasonings to fully flavor the soup.
4. Add additional ingredients according to their cooking times.
5. Simmer the soup to blend all the flavors.
6. If the soup is not going to be served immediately, cool and refrigerate it.
7. Just before service, add any garnishes that were prepared separately or do not require cooking.

RECIPE 11.2

Hearty Vegetable Beef Soup

Yield: 5 qt. (5 lt)

Butter or beef fat	6 oz.	170 g
Mirepoix, small dice	3 lb.	1.5 kg
Turnip, small dice	8 oz.	250 g
Garlic cloves, chopped	2	2
Beef broth or stock	4 qt.	4 lt
Beef, small dice	1 lb.	450 g
Sachet:		
Bay leaf	1	1
Dried thyme	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Peppercorns, crushed	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Parsley stems	8	8
Tomato concassée	12 oz.	350 g
Corn kernels, fresh, frozen or canned	12 oz.	350 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. In a soup pot, sweat the mirepoix and turnip in the butter or fat until tender.
2. Add the garlic and sauté lightly.
3. Add the beef broth or stock and the diced beef; bring to a simmer. Add the sachet. Skim or degrease as necessary.
4. Simmer until the beef and vegetables are tender, approximately 1 hour.
5. Add the tomato concassée and corn; simmer for 10 minutes. Season to taste with salt and pepper.
6. Cool and refrigerate or hold for service.

Variations: A wide variety of vegetables can be added or substituted in this recipe. If leeks, rutabagas, parsnips or cabbage are used, they should be sweated to bring out their flavors before the liquid is added. Potatoes, fresh beans, summer squash and other vegetables that cook more quickly should be

Tomato concassée—*peeled, seeded and diced tomato.*

1. Sweating the vegetables.

2. The finished Vegetable Beef Soup.

added according to their cooking times. Rice, barley and pasta garnishes should be cooked separately and added just before service.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (208-g) serving: **Calories** 170, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 5 g, **Cholesterol** 30 mg, **Sodium** 600 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 12 g, **Protein** 7 g, **Vitamin A** 20%

Consommés

A consommé is a stock or broth that has been clarified to remove impurities so that it is crystal clear. Traditionally, all clear broths were referred to as consommés; a clear broth further refined using the process described later was referred to as a double consommé. The term *double consommé* is still used occasionally to describe any strongly flavored consommé.

Well-prepared consommés should be rich in the flavor of the main ingredient. Beef and game consonmés should be dark in color; consommés made from poultry should have a golden to light amber color. They should have substantial body as a result of their high gelatin content, and all consommés should be perfectly clear with no trace of fat.

Because a consommé is a refined broth, it is absolutely essential that the broth or stock used be of the highest quality. Although the clarification process adds some flavor to the consommé, the finished consommé will be only as good as the stock or broth from which it was made.

The Clarification Process

To make a consommé, you clarify a stock or broth. The stock or broth to be clarified must be cold and grease-free. To clarify, the cold degreased stock or broth is combined with a mixture known as a **clearmeat** or **clarification**. A clearmeat is a mixture of egg whites; ground meat, poultry or fish; mirepoix, herbs and spices; and an acidic product, usually tomatoes, lemon juice or wine. (An **onion brûlée** is also often added to help flavor and color the consommé.)

Onion brûlée—*literally, burnt onion, made by charring onion halves; used to flavor and color stocks and sauces.*

The stock or broth and clearmeat are then slowly brought to a simmer. As the albumen in the egg whites and meat begins to coagulate, it traps impurities suspended in the liquid. As coagulation continues, the albumen-containing items combine with the other clearmeat ingredients and rise to the liquid's surface, forming a **raft**. As the mixture simmers, the raft ingredients release their flavors, further enriching the consommé.

After simmering, the consommé is carefully strained through several layers of cheesecloth to remove any trace of impurities. It is then completely degreased, either by cooling and refrigerating, then removing the solidified fat, or by carefully ladling the fat from the surface. The result is a rich, flavorful, crystal-clear consommé.

Procedure for Preparing Consommés

1. In a suitable stockpot (one with a spigot makes it much easier to strain the consommé when it is finished), combine the ground meat, lightly beaten egg white and other clearmeat ingredients.
2. Add the cold stock or broth and stir to combine with the clearmeat ingredients.
3. Over medium heat, slowly bring the mixture to a simmer, stirring occasionally.

4. As the raft forms, make a hole in its center so that the liquid can bubble through, cooking the raft completely and extracting as much flavor as possible from the raft ingredients.
5. Simmer the consommé until full flavor develops, approximately 1 to 1 1/2 hours.
6. Carefully strain the consommé through several layers of cheesecloth and degrease completely.
7. If the consommé will not be used immediately, it should be cooled and refrigerated, following the procedures for cooling stocks discussed in Chapter 10. When the consommé is completely cold, remove any remaining fat that solidifies on its surface.
8. If, after reheating the consommé, small dots of fat appear on the surface, they can be removed by blotting with a small piece of paper towel.

1. Combining the ingredients for the clearmeat.

2. Making a hole in the raft to allow the liquid to bubble through.

3. Degreasing the consommé with a paper towel.

4. The finished consommé.

RECIPE 11.3

Beef Consommé

Yield: 4 qt. (4 lt)

Egg whites	10	10
Ground beef, lean, preferably shank, neck or shoulder	2 lb.	1 kg
Mirepoix	1 lb.	450 g
Tomato, seeded and diced	12 oz.	340 g
Beef broth or stock, cold	5 qt.	5 lt
Onion brûlée	2	2
Sachet:		
Bay leaves	2	2
Dried thyme	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Peppercorns, crushed	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Parsley stems	8	8
Cloves, whole	2	2
Salt	TT	TT

1. Whip the egg whites until slightly frothy.
2. Combine the egg whites, beef, mirepoix and tomatoes in an appropriate stockpot.
3. Add the cold beef stock or broth; mix well and add the onions brûlée and sachet.
4. Bring the mixture to a simmer over moderate heat, stirring occasionally. Stop stirring when the raft begins to form.
5. Break a hole in the center of the raft to allow the consommé to bubble through.
6. Simmer until full flavor develops, approximately 1 1/2 hours.
7. Strain through several layers of cheesecloth, degrease and adjust the seasonings. Cool and refrigerate or hold for service.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (315-g) serving: **Calories** 210, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 3.5 g, **Cholesterol** 40 mg, **Sodium** 870 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 14 g, **Protein** 15 g, **Vitamin A** 20%, **Vitamin C** 10%

NOTE: Guidelines for garnishing consommés as well as some classic garnishes are listed on page 248.

Correcting a Poorly Clarified Consommé

A clarification may fail for a variety of reasons. For example, if the consommé is allowed to boil or if it is stirred after the raft has formed, a cloudy consommé can result. If the consommé is insufficiently clear, a second clarification can be performed using the following procedure. This second clarification should be performed only once, however, and only if absolutely necessary, because the eggs not only remove impurities but also some of the consommé's flavor and richness.

1. Thoroughly chill and degrease the consommé.
2. Lightly beat four egg whites per gallon (4 liters) of consommé and combine with the cold consommé.
3. Slowly bring the consommé to a simmer, stirring occasionally. Stop stirring when the egg whites begin to coagulate.
4. When the egg whites are completely coagulated, carefully strain the consommé.

THICK SOUPS

There are two kinds of thick soups: cream soups and purée soups. In general, cream soups are thickened with a roux or other starch, while purée soups rely on a purée of the main ingredient for thickening. But in certain ways the two soups are very similar: Some purée soups are finished with cream or partially thickened with a roux or other starch.

Cream Soups

Most cream soups are made by simmering the main flavoring ingredient (for example, broccoli for cream of broccoli soup) in a white stock or thin velouté sauce to which seasonings have been added. The mixture is then puréed and strained. After the consistency has been adjusted, the soup is finished by adding cream. In classic cuisine, thin béchamel sauce is often used as the base for cream soups and can be substituted for velouté in many cream soup recipes, if desired.

Both hard vegetables (for example, celery and squash) and soft or leafy vegetables (for example, spinach, corn, broccoli and asparagus) are used for cream soups. Hard vegetables are generally sweated in butter without browning before the liquid is added. Soft and leafy vegetables are generally added to the soup after the liquid is brought to a boil. Because cream soups are puréed, it is important to cook the flavoring ingredients until they are soft and can be passed through a food mill easily.

All cream soups are finished with milk or cream. Using milk thins the soup while adding richness; using the same amount of cream adds much more richness without the same thinning effect. Cold milk and cream curdle easily if added directly to a hot or acidic soup. To prevent curdling, you should:

1. Never add cold milk or cream to hot soup. Bring the milk or cream to a simmer before adding it to the soup. Or, temper the milk or cream by gradually adding some hot soup to it and then incorporating the warmed mixture into the rest of the soup.
2. If possible, add the milk or cream to the soup just before service.
3. Do not boil the soup after the milk or cream has been added.

4. The presence of roux or other starch helps prevent curdling. Therefore, béchamel or cream sauce is often used instead of milk or cream to finish cream soups.

(Recall from Chapter 10 that a béchamel sauce is made by thickening milk with a roux, and a cream sauce is made by adding cream to a béchamel sauce.)

Procedure for Preparing Cream Soups

1. In a soup pot, sweat hard vegetables such as squash, onions, carrots and celery in oil or butter without browning.
2. In order to thicken the soup:
   (a) add flour and cook to make a blond roux, then add the cooking liquid (that is, the stock), or
   (b) add the stock to the vegetables, bring the stock to a simmer and add a blond roux that was prepared separately, or
   (c) add a thin velouté or béchamel sauce to the vegetables.
3. Bring to a boil and reduce to a simmer.
4. Add any soft vegetables such as broccoli or asparagus, and a sachet or bouquet garni as desired.
5. Simmer the soup, skimming occasionally, until the vegetables are very tender.
6. Purée the soup by passing it through a food mill, blender, food processor or vertical chopper mixer (VCM) and strain through a china cap. If the soup is too thick, adjust the consistency by adding boiling white stock.
7. Finish the soup by adding hot milk or cream or a thin béchamel or cream sauce. Adjust the seasonings and serve.

RECIPE 11.4

Cream of Broccoli Soup

Yield: 6 qt. (6 lt)

Whole butter	3 oz.	90 g
Onion, medium dice	12 oz.	340 g
Celery, medium dice	3 oz.	90 g
Broccoli, chopped	3 lb.	1.4 kg
Chicken velouté sauce, hot	4 qt.	4 lt
Chicken stock, hot	approx. 2 qt.	approx. 2 lt
Heavy cream, hot	24 oz.	700 g
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
Broccoli florets	8 oz.	250 g

1. Sweat the onions, celery and broccoli in the butter, without browning, until they are nearly tender.
2. Add the velouté sauce. Bring to a simmer and cook until the vegetables are tender, approximately 15 minutes. Skim the surface periodically.
3. Purée the soup, then strain it through a fine china cap or chinois.

Continued

1. Adding the velouté sauce.

2. Puréeing the soup through a food mill.

3. Garnishing the finished soup.

4. Return the soup to the stove and thin it to the correct consistency with the hot chicken stock.
5. Bring the soup to a simmer and add the hot cream. Season to taste with salt and white pepper.
6. Garnish with blanched broccoli florets just before service.

VARIATIONS: To make cream of asparagus, cauliflower, corn, pea or spinach soup, substitute an equal amount of the chosen vegetable for the broccoli. If using fresh spinach, precook the leaves slightly before proceeding with the recipe.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (180-g) serving: **Calories** 140, **Total fat** 12 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 40 mg, **Sodium** 340 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 5 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Vitamin** A 20%, **Vitamin C** 70%

Purée Soups

Purée soups are hearty soups made by cooking starchy vegetables or legumes in a stock or broth, then puréeing all or a portion of them to thicken the soup. Purée soups are similar to cream soups in that they both consist of a main ingredient that is first cooked in a liquid, then puréed. The primary difference is that unlike cream soups, which are thickened with starch, purée soups generally do not use additional starch for thickening. Rather, purée soups depend on the starch content of the main ingredient for thickening. Also, purée soups are generally coarser than cream soups and are typically not strained after puréeing. When finishing purée soups with cream, follow the guidelines discussed previously for adding cream to cream soups.

Purée soups can be made with dried or fresh beans such as peas, lentils and navy beans, or with any number of vegetables, including cauliflower, celery root, turnips and potatoes. Diced potatoes or rice are often used to help thicken vegetable purée soups.

PROCEDURE FOR PREPARING PURÉE SOUPS

1. Sweat the mirepoix in butter without browning.
2. Add the cooking liquid.
3. Add the main ingredients and a sachet or bouquet garni.
4. Bring to a boil, reduce to a simmer and cook until all the ingredients are soft enough to purée easily. Remove and discard the sachet or bouquet garni.
5. Reserve a portion of the liquid to adjust the soup's consistency. Purée the rest of the soup by passing it through a food mill, food processor, blender or VCM.
6. Add enough of the reserved liquid to bring the soup to the correct consistency. If the soup is still too thick, add hot stock as needed.
7. Return the soup to a simmer and adjust the seasonings.
8. Add hot cream to the soup if desired.

Adjusting the Consistency of Thick Soups

Cream and purée soups tend to thicken when made in advance and refrigerated. To dilute a portion being reheated, add a small amount of stock, broth, water or milk.

RECIPE 11.5

Purée of Split Pea Soup

Yield: 4 qt. (4 lt)

Bacon, diced	3 oz.	90 g
Mirepoix, medium dice	1 lb.	450 g
Garlic cloves, chopped	2	2
Chicken stock	3 qt.	3 lt
Split peas, washed and sorted	1 lb.	450 g
Ham hocks or meaty ham bones	1 1/2 lb.	650 g
Sachet:		
Bay leaves	2	2
Dried thyme	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Peppercorns, crushed	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Croutons, sautéed in butter	as needed for garnish	

1. In a stockpot, **render** the bacon by cooking it slowly and allowing it to release its fat; sweat the mirepoix and garlic in the fat without browning them.
2. Add the chicken stock, peas, ham hocks or bones and sachet. Bring to a boil, reduce to a simmer and cook until the peas are soft, approximately 1 to 1 1/2 hours.
3. Remove the sachet and ham hocks or bones. Pass the soup through a food mill and return it to the stockpot.
4. Remove the meat from the hocks or bones. Cut the meat into a medium dice and add it to the soup.
5. Bring the soup to a simmer and, if necessary, adjust the consistency by adding hot chicken stock. Adjust the seasonings with salt and pepper and serve, garnished with croutons.

Variations: White beans, yellow peas and other dried beans can be soaked overnight in water and used instead of split peas.

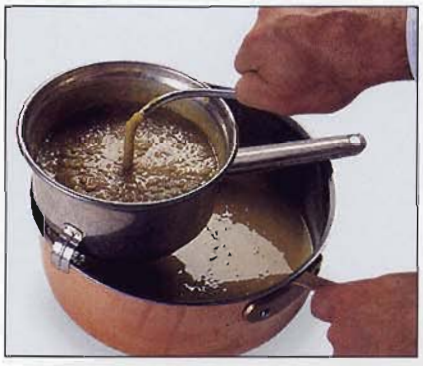
Approximate values per 6-oz. (206-g) serving: **Calories** 110, **Total fat** 4 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 20 mg, **Sodium** 870 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 6 g, **Protein** 11 g

If the soup is too thin, additional roux, beurre manié or cornstarch mixed with cool stock can be used to thicken it. If additional starch is added to thicken the soup, it should be used sparingly and the soup should be simmered a few minutes to cook out the starchy flavor. A liaison of egg yolks and heavy cream can be used to thicken cream soups when added richness is also desired. Remember, the soup must not boil after the liaison is added or it may curdle.

Other Soups

Several popular types of soup do not fit the descriptions of or follow the procedures for either clear or thick soups. Soups such as bisques and chowders as well as many cold soups use special methods or a combination of the methods used for clear and thick soups.

1. Adding peas to the stockpot.



2. Puréeing the split pea soup.

3. Garnishing the finished soup.

Render—*to melt and clarify fat.*

Bisques

Traditional bisques are shellfish soups thickened with cooked rice. Today bisques are prepared using a combination of the cream and purée soup procedures. They are generally made from shrimp, lobster or crayfish and are thickened with a roux instead of rice for better stability and consistency.

Much of a bisque's flavor comes from crustacean shells, which are simmered in the cooking liquid, puréed (along with the mirepoix), returned to the cooking liquid and strained after further cooking. Puréeing the shells and returning them to the soup also adds the thickness and grainy texture associated with bisques.

Bisques are enriched with cream, following the procedures for cream soups, and can be finished with butter for additional richness. The garnish should be diced flesh from the appropriate shellfish.

Procedure for Preparing Bisques

1. Caramelize the mirepoix and main flavoring ingredient in fat.
2. Add a tomato product and deglaze with wine.
3. Add the cooking liquid (stock or velouté sauce).
4. Incorporate roux if needed.
5. Simmer, skimming as needed.
6. Strain the soup, reserving the solids and liquid. Purée the solids in a food chopper or processor and return them to the liquid. Return to a simmer.
7. Strain the soup through a fine chinois or a china cap lined with cheesecloth.
8. Return the soup to a simmer and finish with hot cream.

To add even more richness to the bisque, monté au beurre with whole butter or a compound butter such as shrimp or lobster butter just before the soup is served. Also, if desired, add 3 ounces (90 milliliters) of sherry to each gallon (4 liters) of soup just before service.

RECIPE 11.6

Shrimp Bisque

Yield: 4 qt. (4 lt)

Clarified butter	3 oz.	90 g
Mirepoix, small dice	1 lb.	450 g
Shrimp shells and/or lobster or crayfish shells and bodies	2 lb.	1 kg
Garlic cloves, chopped	2	2
Tomato paste	2 oz.	60 g
Brandy	4 oz.	120 g
White wine	12 oz.	350 g
Fish velouté (made with shrimp stock)	4 qt.	4 lt
Sachet:		
Bay leaf	1	1
Dried thyme	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Peppercorns, crushed	1/2 tsp.	2 ml

Parsley stems	8	8
Heavy cream, hot	1 pt.	500 ml
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
Cayenne pepper	TT	TT
Shrimp, peeled and deveined	1 lb.	450 g

1. Caramelize the mirepoix and shrimp shells in the butter.
2. Add the garlic and tomato paste and sauté lightly.
3. Add the brandy and flambé.
4. Add the white wine. Deglaze and reduce the liquid by half.
5. Add the velouté and sachet and simmer for approximately 1 hour, skimming occasionally.
6. Strain, discarding the sachet and reserving the liquid and solids. Purée the solids and return them to the liquid. Return to a simmer and cook for 10 minutes.
7. Strain the bisque through a fine chinois or china cap lined with cheesecloth.
8. Return the bisque to a simmer and add the hot cream.
9. Season to taste with salt, white pepper and cayenne pepper.
10. Cook the shrimp and slice or dice them as desired. Garnish each portion of soup with cooked shrimp.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (80-g) serving: **Calories** 110, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 60 mg, **Sodium** 160 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Vitamin A** 10%

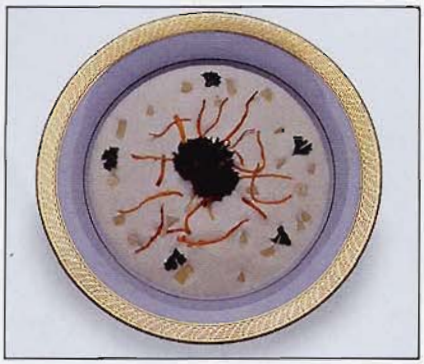
Chowders

Although chowders are usually associated with the eastern United States where fish and clams are plentiful, they are of French origin. Undoubtedly the word *chowder* is derived from the Breton phrase *faire chaudière*, which means to make a fish stew in a caldron. The procedure was probably brought to Nova Scotia by French settlers and later introduced into New England.

Chowders are hearty soups with chunks of the main ingredients (including, virtually always, diced potatoes) and garnishes. With some exceptions (notably, Manhattan clam chowder), chowders contain milk or cream. Although there are thin chowders, most chowders are thickened with roux. The procedures for making chowders are similar to those for making cream soups except that chowders are not puréed and strained before the cream is added.

Procedure for Preparing Chowders

1. Render finely diced salt pork over medium heat.
2. Sweat mirepoix in the rendered pork.
3. Add flour to make a roux.
4. Add the liquid.
5. Add the seasoning and flavoring ingredients according to their cooking times.
6. Simmer, skimming as needed.
7. Add milk or cream.



RECIPE 11.7

New England Style Clam Chowder

Yield: 3 qt. (3 lt)

Canned clams with juice*	2 qt.	2 lt
Water or fish stock	approx. 1 1/2 qt.	approx. 1.5 lt
Potato, small dice	1 lb. 4 oz.	600 g
Salt pork, small dice	8 oz.	250 g
Onion, small dice	1 lb.	500 g
Celery, small dice	8 oz.	250 g
Flour	4 oz.	120 g
Milk	1 qt.	1 lt
Heavy cream	8 oz.	250 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Tabasco sauce	TT	TT
Worcestershire sauce	TT	TT
Fresh thyme	TT	TT

1. Drain the clams, reserving both the clams and their liquid. Add enough water or stock so that the total liquid equals 2 quarts (2 liters).
2. Simmer the potatoes in the clam liquid until nearly cooked through. Strain and reserve the potatoes and the liquid.
3. Render the salt pork without browning it. Add the onions and celery and sweat until tender.
4. Add the flour and cook to make a blond roux.
5. Add the clam liquid to the roux, whisking away any lumps.
6. Simmer for 30 minutes, skimming as necessary.
7. Bring the milk and cream to a boil and add to the soup.
8. Add the clams and potatoes, and season to taste with salt, pepper, Tabasco, Worcestershire and thyme.
9. Garnish each serving with fresh herbs.

* If using fresh clams for the chowder, wash and steam approximately 1/2 bushel of chowder clams in a small amount of water to yield 1 1/4 quarts (1.25 liters) of clam meat. Chop the clams. Strain the liquid through several layers of cheesecloth to remove any sand that may be present. Add enough water or stock so that the total liquid is 2 quarts (2 liters). Continue with the recipe, starting at step 2.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (401-g) serving: **Calories** 250, **Total fat** 15 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 45 mg, **Sodium** 930 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 17 g, **Protein** 11 g, **Vitamin A** 10%, **Vitamin C** 10%, **Calcium** 15%

Cold Soups

Cold soups can be as simple as a chilled version of a cream soup or as unique as a cold fruit soup blended with yogurt. Other than the fact that they are cold, cold soups are difficult to classify because many of them use unique or combination preparation methods. Regardless, they are divided here into two categories: cold soups that require cooking and those that do not.

Cooked Cold Soups

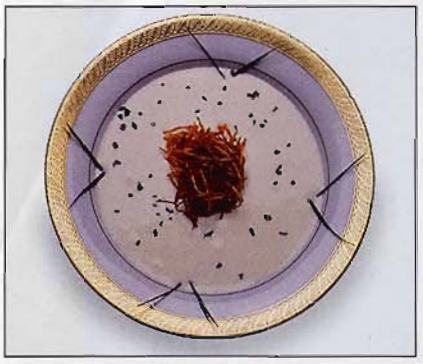
Many cold soups are simply a chilled version of a hot soup. For example, consommé madriléne and consommé portugaise are prepared hot and served cold. Vichyssoise, probably the most popular of all cold soups, is a cold version of purée of potato-leek soup. When serving a hot soup cold, there are several considerations:

1. If the soup is to be creamed, add the cream at the last minute. Although curdling is not as much of a problem as it is with hot soups, adding the cream at the last minute helps extend the soup's shelf life.
2. Cold soups should have a thinner consistency than hot soups. To achieve the proper consistency, use less starch if starch is used as the thickener, or use a higher ratio of liquid to main ingredient if the soup is thickened by puréeing. Consistency should be checked and adjusted at service time.
3. Cold dulls the sense of taste, so cold soups require more seasoning than hot ones. Taste the soup just before service and adjust the seasonings as needed.
4. Always serve cold soups as cold as possible.

RECIPE 11.8

VICHYSSOISE (COLD POTATO-LEEK SOUP)

Yield: 4 qt. (4 lt)



Leek, white part only	2 lb.	1 kg
Whole butter	8 oz.	250 g
Potato, large dice	2 lb.	1 kg
Chicken stock	3 1/2 qt.	3 1/2 lt
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
Heavy cream	24 oz.	700 g
Chives, snipped	as needed	as needed
Fried sweet potato frizzles	as needed	as needed

1. Split the leeks lengthwise and wash well to remove all sand and grit. Slice them thinly.
2. Sweat the leeks in the butter without browning them.
3. Add the potatoes and chicken stock, season with salt and pepper and bring to a simmer.
4. Simmer until the leeks and potatoes are very tender, approximately 45 minutes.
5. Purée the soup in a food processor, blender or food mill; strain through a fine sieve.
6. Chill the soup well.
7. At service time, incorporate the heavy cream and adjust the seasonings. Serve in chilled bowls, garnished with snipped chives and sweet potato frizzles.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (301-g) serving: **Calories** 300, **Total fat** 22 g, **Saturated fat** 13 g, **Cholesterol** 70 mg, **Sodium** 660 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 19 g, **Protein** 6 g, **Vitamin A** 20%, **Vitamin C** 20%

Many cooked cold soups use fruit juice (typically apple, grape or orange) as a base and are thickened with cornstarch or arrowroot as well as with puréed fruit. For additional flavor, wine is sometimes used in lieu of a portion of the fruit juice. Cinnamon, ginger and other spices that complement fruit are commonly added, as is lemon or lime juice, which adds acidity as well as flavor. Crème fraîche, yogurt or sour cream can be used as an ingredient or garnish to add richness.

RECIPE 11.9

CHILLED CHERRY SOUP

Yield: 4 qt. (4 lt)

Cherries, pitted	5 lb.	2.25 kg
Apple juice	approx. 2 qt.	approx. 2 lt
Sachet:		
Cinnamon sticks	2	2
Cloves, whole	4	4
Honey	6 oz.	170 g
Cornstarch	1 oz.	30 g
Lemon juice	TT	TT
Dry champagne or sparkling wine	8 oz.	250 g
Crème fraîche	as needed for garnish	
Toasted almonds	as needed for garnish	

1. Combine the cherries, apple juice, sachet and honey. Bring to a simmer and cook for 30 minutes. Remove the sachet.
2. Dilute the cornstarch with a small amount of cold apple juice. Add it to the soup for thickening. Simmer the soup for 10 minutes to cook out the starchy flavor.
3. Purée the soup in a food processor or blender and strain if desired.
4. Chill the soup thoroughly.
5. At service, adjust the seasoning with the lemon juice. Stir in the chilled champagne or sparkling wine and serve garnished with crème fraîche and toasted, slivered almonds.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (229-g) serving: **Calories** 150, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 34 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin C** 15%, **Claims**—fat free; no sodium; good source of fiber

Uncooked Cold Soups

Some cold soups are not cooked at all. Rather, they rely only on puréed fruits or vegetables for thickness, body and flavor. Cold stock is sometimes used to adjust the soup's consistency. Dairy products such as cream, sour cream or crème fraîche are sometimes added to enrich and flavor the soup.

Because uncooked cold soups are never heated, enzymes and bacteria are not destroyed and the soup can spoil quickly. When preparing uncooked cold soups, always prepare small batches as close to service time as possible.

RECIPE 11.10

GAZPACHO

Yield: 4 qt. (4 lt)

Tomato, peeled and diced	2 lb. 8 oz.	1.2 kg
Onion, medium dice	8 oz.	250 g
Green pepper, medium dice	1	1
Red pepper, medium dice	1	1
Cucumber, peeled, seeded, medium dice	1 lb.	500 g
Garlic, minced	1 oz.	30 g
Red wine vinegar	2 oz.	60 g
Lemon juice	2 oz.	60 g
Olive oil	4 oz.	120 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Cayenne pepper	TT	TT
Fresh bread crumbs (optional)	3 oz.	90 g
Tomato juice	3 qt.	3 lt
White stock	as needed	as needed
Garnish:		
Tomato, peeled, seeded, small dice	8 oz.	250 g
Red pepper, small dice	4 oz.	120 g
Green pepper, small dice	4 oz.	120 g
Yellow pepper, small dice	4 oz.	120 g
Cucumber, peeled, seeded, small dice	3 oz.	90 g
Green onion, sliced fine	2 oz.	60 g
Fresh basil	as needed	as needed

1. Combine and purée all ingredients except the tomato juice, stock and garnish in a VCM, food processor or blender.
2. Stir in the tomato juice.
3. Adjust the consistency with the stock.
4. Stir in the vegetables, the garnishes and adjust the seasonings.
5. Serve in chilled cups or bowls garnished with fresh basil.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (272-g) serving: **Calories** 70, **Total fat** .5 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 600 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 14 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Vitamin A** 15%, **Vitamin C** 70%, **Claims**—low fat; no cholesterol

GARNISHING SOUPS

Garnishes can range from a simple sprinkle of chopped parsley on a bowl of cream soup to tiny profiteroles stuffed with foie gras adorning a crystal-clear bowl of consommé. Some soups are so full of attractive, flavorful and colorful foods that are integral parts of the soup (for example, vegetables and chicken in chicken vegetable soup) that no additional garnishes (as either a decoration or component) are necessary. In others, the garnish determines the type of soup. For example, a beef broth garnished with cooked barley and diced beef becomes beef barley soup.

CLASSIC CONSOMMÉS

Many classic consommés are known by their garnishes:

Consommé brunoise—blanched or sautéed brunoise of turnip, leek, celery and onion.

Consommé julienne—blanched or sautéed julienne of carrot, turnip, leek, celery, cabbage and onion.

Consommé paysanne—blanched or sautéed paysanne of leek, turnip, carrot, celery and potato.

Consommé bouquetière—assorted blanched vegetables.

Consommé royale—cooked custard cut into tiny shapes.

Angels' hair consommé—cooked angel hair (vermicelli) pasta.

Consommé with profiteroles—tiny profiteroles (pâté à choux rounds) stuffed with foie gras.

Guidelines for Garnishing Soups

Although some soups (particularly consommés) have traditional garnishes, many soups depend on the chef's imagination and the kitchen's inventory for the finishing garnish. The only rules are:

1. The garnish should be attractive.
2. The meats and vegetables used should be neatly cut into an appropriate and uniform shape and size. This is particularly important when garnishing a clear soup such as a consommé, as the consommé's clarity highlights the precise (or imprecise) cuts.
3. The garnish's texture and flavor should complement the soup.
4. Starches and vegetables used as garnishes should be cooked separately, reheated and placed in the soup bowl before the hot soup is added. If they are cooked in the soup, they may cloud or thicken the soup or alter its flavor, texture and seasoning.
5. Garnishes should be cooked just until done; meat and poultry should be tender but not falling apart, vegetables should be firm but not mushy, and pasta and rice should maintain their identity. These types of garnishes are usually held on the side and added to the hot soup at the last minute to prevent overcooking.

Garnishing Suggestions

- Clear soups—any combination of julienne cuts of the same meat, poultry, fish or vegetable that provides the dominant flavor in the stock or broth, vegetables (cut uniformly into any shape), pasta (flat, small tortellini or tiny ravioli), gnocchi, quenelles, barley, spaetzle, white or wild rice, croutons, crepes, tortillas or won tons.

TABLE 11.1 SOUPS, THEIR THICKENING AGENTS AND FINISHES

Category	Type	Thickening Agent or Method	Finish
Clear soups	Broths	None	Assorted garnishes
	Consommés	None	Assorted garnishes
Thick soups	Cream soups	Roux and/or puréeing	Assorted garnishes, cream or béchamel sauce
	Purée soups	Puréeing	Assorted garnishes; cream is optional
Other soups	Bisques	Roux or rice and puréeing	Garnish of main ingredient, cream and/or butter
	Chowders	Roux	Cream
Cold soups	Cooked cold soups	Roux, arrowroot, cornstarch, puréeing, sour cream, yogurt	Assorted garnishes, cream, crème fraîche or sour cream
	Uncooked cold soups	Puréeing	Assorted garnishes, cream, crème fraîche or sour cream

- Cream soups, hot or cold—toasted slivered almonds, sour cream or crème fraîche, croutons, grated cheese or puff pastry fleurons; cream vegetable soups are usually garnished with slices or florets of the main ingredient.
- Purée soups—julienne cuts of poultry or ham, sliced sausage, croutons, grated cheese, bacon bits.
- Any soup—finely chopped fresh herbs, snipped chives, edible flower blossoms or petals, parsley or watercress.

Soup Service

Preparing Soups in Advance

Most soups can be made ahead of time and reheated as needed for service. To preserve freshness and quality, small batches of soup should be heated as needed throughout the meal service.

Clear soups are quite easy to reheat because there is little danger of scorching. If garnishes are already added to a clear soup, care should be taken not to overcook the garnishes when reheating the soup. All traces of fat should be removed from a consommé's surface before reheating.

Thick soups present more of a challenge. To increase shelf life and reduce the risk of spoilage, cool and refrigerate a thick soup when it is still a base (that is, before it is finished with milk or cream). When needed, carefully reheat the soup base just before service using a heavy-gauge pot over low heat. Stir often to prevent scorching. Then finish the soup (following the guidelines noted earlier) with boiling milk or cream, a light béchamel sauce or a liaison and adjust the seasonings. Always taste the soup after reheating and adjust the seasonings as needed.

Temperatures

The rule is simple: Serve hot soup hot and cold soup cold. Hot clear soups should be served near boiling; 210°F (99°C) is ideal. Hot cream soups should be served at slightly lower temperatures; 190°F–200°F (90°C–93°C) is acceptable. Cold soups should be served at a temperature of 40°F (4°C) or below, and are sometimes presented in special serving pieces surrounded by ice.

Conclusion

Soup, often served as the first course, may determine the success or failure of an entire meal. Although a wide variety of ingredients can be used to make both clear and thick soups, including trimmings and leftovers, poor-quality ingredients make poor-quality soups. By using, adapting and combining the basic techniques described in this chapter with different ingredients, you can create an infinite number of new and appetizing hot or cold soups. But exercise good judgment when combining flavors and techniques; they should blend well and complement each other. Moreover, any garnishes that are added should contribute to the appearance and character of the finished soup. And remember, always serve hot soups hot and cold soups cold.

Questions for Discussion

1. What are the differences between a stock and a broth?
2. What are the differences between a beef consommé and a beef-based broth? How are they similar?
3. What are the differences between a cream soup and a purée soup? How are they similar?
4. Create a recipe for veal consommé.
5. Discuss several techniques for serving soup. What can be done to ensure that soups are served at the correct temperature?
6. Explain how and why soups are garnished. Why is it sometimes said that the noodles in a chicken noodle soup are actually a garnish?

Additional Soup Recipes

RECIPE 11.11

Wild Mushroom Soup with Foie Gras

Note: *This dish appears in the Chapter Opening photograph.*

CHRISTOPHER'S AND CHRISTOPHER'S BISTRO, Phoenix, AZ

Yield: 8 servings

Chanterelles	4 oz.	120 g
Port	6 oz.	180 ml
Duck stock	2 qt.	2 lt
White mushroom caps	4 oz.	120 g
Olive oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Shallots, chopped fine	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Tomato concassée	4 oz.	120 g
Fresh tarragon or chervil, chopped	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Foie gras, sinew and veins trimmed	12 oz.	350 g
Fresh truffle (winter or summer)	1	1
White truffle oil	1 tsp.	5 ml
Current tomatoes	as needed	as needed
Fresh herbs	as needed	as needed

1. Trim the stems from the chanterelles and set aside.
2. Reduce the port to 2 ounces (60 milliliters). Bring the stock to a boil and add the port and any mushroom stems or peels. Simmer 5 minutes; strain and reserve in a warm place.
3. Sauté the chanterelle caps with the white mushroom caps in the olive oil. Add the shallots and cook until they become soft and translucent.
4. Place the mushrooms, tomato concassée and tarragon or chervil in the bottom of eight shallow soup bowls.
5. Portion the foie gras into 8 slices. Mark each slice with crosshatch marks using the back of a knife blade. Sear the foie gras briefly in a very hot, dry pan.

6. Place a slice of the foie gras on top of the mushrooms in the center of each bowl.
7. Julienne the truffle and arrange a portion in each bowl.
8. Pour the hot soup into the bowls and add a drop of truffle oil to each bowl. Garnish with current tomatoes and fresh herbs.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 180, **Total fat** 6 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 220 mg, **Sodium** 920 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 20 g, **Protein** 11 g, **Vitamin A** 420%, **Iron** 80%

RECIPE 11.12

Wild Mushrooms and Veal Soup

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Garlic, minced	2 tsp.	10 ml
Olive oil	4 oz.	120 ml
Assorted wild mushrooms, such as shiitake, oyster, cèpes and morels	8 oz.	250 g
Brown veal stock	24 oz.	700 ml
Fresh parsley, minced	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Fresh mint, minced	4 Tbsp.	60 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
French bread croutons	as needed for garnish	
Fresh parsley, chopped fine	as needed for garnish	

1. Briefly sauté the garlic in the olive oil. Add the mushrooms and cook until tender and the liquid has evaporated.
2. Add the veal broth, parsley and mint; simmer for 15 minutes. Season to taste.
3. Place one crouton in each soup bowl. Ladle in the soup and garnish with the finely chopped parsley.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (211-g) serving: **Calories** 280, **Total fat** 24 g, **Saturated fat** 3.5 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 460 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 15 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Vitamin A** 15%

RECIPE 11.13

Chicken Soup with Matzo Balls

MATZO BALLS

Yield: 48 balls

Eggs	4	4
Water	2 oz.	60 ml
Chicken fat or butter, softened	2 oz.	60 g
Matzo meal	4 oz.	120 g
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT

1. Beat the eggs with the water. Stir in the fat.
2. Add matzo meal, salt and pepper. The batter should be as thick as mashed potatoes.

Continued

3. Chill for at least 1 hour.
4. Bring 2 quarts of water to a gentle boil. Using a #70 portion scoop, shape the batter into balls. Carefully drop each ball into the hot water. Cover and simmer until fully cooked, approximately 30 minutes. Remove the matzo balls from the water and serve in hot chicken soup.

RICH CHICKEN BROTH

Yield: 2 gal. (8 lt)

Chicken pieces	8–10 lb.	4–4.4 kg
Chicken stock	10 qt.	10 lt
Mirepoix	1 lb.	500 g
Sachet:		
Bay leaf	1	1
Dried thyme	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Peppercorns, crushed	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Parsley stems	10	10
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Fresh parsley, chopped	as needed for garnish	

1. Simmer the chicken in the stock for 2 hours, skimming as necessary.
2. Add the mirepoix and sachet. Simmer for another hour.
3. Strain and degrease the broth. Adjust seasonings.
4. Bring to a boil at service time. Portion into heated bowls, garnish with one or two matzo balls and chopped parsley.

Approximate values per 6-oz. plus 2 matzo ball (254-g) serving: **Calories** 60, **Total fat** 3 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 25 mg, **Sodium** 800 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 3 g, **Protein** 6 g, **Claims**—low fat

RECIPE 11.14

FRENCH ONION SOUP

Yield: 4 qt. (4 lt)

Yellow onion, sliced thin	10 lb.	4.4 kg
Clarified butter	8 oz.	250 g
Beef stock	4 qt.	4 lt
Chicken stock	4 qt.	4 lt
Fresh thyme	1/2 oz.	15 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Sherry	8 oz.	250 ml
Toasted French bread slices	as needed for garnish	
Gruyère, grated	as needed for garnish	

1. Sauté the onions in the butter over low heat. Carefully caramelize them thoroughly without burning.
2. Deglaze the pan with 8 ounces (250 milliliters) of the beef stock. Cook au sec. Repeat this process until the onions are a very dark, even brown.
3. Add the remaining beef stock, the chicken stock and thyme.
4. Bring to a simmer and cook 20 minutes to develop flavor. Adjust the seasonings and add the sherry.

5. Serve in warm bowls. Top each portion with a slice of toasted French bread and a thick layer of cheese. Place under the broiler or salamander until the cheese is melted and lightly browned.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (180-g) serving: **Calories** 280, **Total fat** 12 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 25 mg, **Sodium** 1370 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 34 g, **Protein** 9 g, **Vitamin A** 25%, **Vitamin C** 20%

RECIPE 11.15

Perfumed Shrimp Consommé

SCOTTSDALE COMMUNITY COLLEGE, SCOTTSDALE, AZ
Executive Chef Dominic O'Neill

Yield: 1 gallon (4 lt)

Shrimp shells	2 lb.	900 g
Shrimp meat	1 lb.	450 g
Vegetable oil	2 oz.	60 ml
Celery, chopped	3/4 c.	180 ml
Onion, chopped	3/4 c.	180 ml
Carrot, chopped	3/4 c.	180 ml
Brandy	3 oz.	90 ml
Tomato paste	1 oz.	30 g
Dry vermouth	8 oz.	250 ml
Shrimp or fish stock	5 qt.	5 lt
Sachet:		
Whole black peppercorns	5	5
Garlic cloves	2	2
Bay leaves	2	2
Coriander seeds	5	5
Whole fennel seeds	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Shrimp, peeled, halved and steamed	6 pieces per serving	
Rosemary sprigs	as needed for garnish	
Italian parsley leaves	as needed for garnish	
Pansy flowers	as needed for garnish	

1. Sauté the shrimp shells and the 1 pound (450 grams) of shrimp meat in the oil. Add the vegetables and sweat. Deglaze the pan with brandy.
2. Add the tomato paste, then the vermouth and stock. Bring to a boil, then reduce to a simmer. Add the sachet and simmer for 4 hours. Strain through cheesecloth.
3. Adjust the seasonings and reheat for service.
4. Arrange the steamed shrimp and fresh herbs in the serving bowls. Pour the hot consommé over the herbs and garnish with pansy flowers.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (180-ml) serving: **Calories** 263, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 167 mg, **Sodium** 404 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 8 g, **Protein** 21 g, **Vitamin A** 51%, **Vitamin C** 16%, **Iron** 19%

RECIPE 11.16

MINESTRONE

Minestrone is a rich vegetable soup of Italian heritage. Northern Italian versions are made with beef stock, butter, rice and ribbon-shaped pasta. Southern Italian versions, such as the one given here, contain tomatoes, garlic, olive oil and tubular-shaped pasta. The vegetables should be fresh and varied. Substitute or change those listed as necessary to reflect the season.

Yield: 2 gal. (8 lt)

Dry white beans	1 lb.	450 g
Olive oil	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Onion, diced	10 oz.	300 g
Garlic cloves, minced	2	2
Celery, diced	1 lb.	450 g
Carrot, diced	12 oz.	340 g
Zucchini, diced	1 lb.	450 g
Green beans, cut in 1/2-inch (1.25-cm) pieces	10 oz.	300 g
Cabbage, diced	1 lb.	450 g
Vegetable stock	5 qt.	5 lt
Tomato concassée	1 lb.	450 g
Tomato paste, low-sodium	12 oz.	340 g
Fresh oregano, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh basil, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Fresh chervil, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh parsley, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Elbow macaroni, cooked	4 oz.	120 g
Parmesan, grated	as needed for garnish (optional)	

1. Soak the beans in cold water overnight, then drain.
2. Cover the beans with water and simmer until tender, about 40 minutes. Reserve the beans.
3. Sauté the onions in the oil. Add the garlic, celery and carrots and cook for 3 minutes.
4. Add the remaining vegetables (except the tomatoes), one type at a time, cooking each briefly.
5. Add the stock, tomatoes and tomato paste. Cover and simmer for 2 1/2 to 3 hours.
6. Stir in the chopped herbs and season to taste with salt and pepper.
7. Add the drained beans and cooked macaroni.
8. Bring the soup to a simmer and simmer 15 minutes. Serve in warm bowls, garnished with Parmesan.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (208-g) serving: **Calories** 70, **Total fat** 1.5 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 1 mg, **Sodium** 530 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 10 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Vitamin A** 20%, **Vitamin C** 20%, **Claims**—low fat

RECIPE 11.17

Cheddar and Leek Soup

Yield: 2 qt. (2 lt)

Whole butter	1 oz.	30 g
Mirepoix, chopped fine	8 oz.	250 g
Leek, chopped fine	8 oz.	250 g
Flour 2 oz.	60 g	
Chicken stock	1 1/2 qt.	1 1/2 lt
Sachet:		
Bay leaf	1	1
Dried thyme	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Peppercorns, crushed	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Dry white wine or flat beer	4 oz.	120 g
Half-and-half	4 oz.	120 ml
Cheddar cheese, grated	1 lb.	500 g
Salt TT	TT	
Cayenne pepper	TT	TT
Fresh parsley, chopped	as needed for garnish	
Croutons	as needed for garnish	

1. Sweat mirepoix and leeks in the butter until tender.
2. Stir in the flour and cook to make a blond roux.
3. Add stock and sachet and bring to a boil. Add wine (or beer), half-and-half and cheese. Simmer for 1 hour.
4. Strain; adjust seasonings with salt and cayenne pepper. Thin with additional warm half-and-half, if necessary.
5. Serve in warm bowls, garnished with parsley and croutons.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (231-g) serving: **Calories** 250, **Total fat** 18 g, **Saturated fat** 11 g, **Cholesterol** 55 mg, **Sodium** 730 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 8 g, **Protein** 14 g, **Vitamin A** 15%, **Calcium** 35%

RECIPE 11.18

Spelt Soup

Chef Odette Fada
of the former REX IL RISTORANTE, Los Angeles, CA

Yield: 6 servings

Extra-virgin olive oil	5 Tbsp.	75 ml
Mirepoix	10 oz.	300 g
Shallot, minced	1	1
Leek, small, chopped fine	1	1
Garlic cloves, minced	2	2
Bay leaves	2	2
Dried rosemary	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Dried thyme	1 tsp.	5 ml
Spelt (whole, toasted wheat berries)	4 oz.	120 g

Continued

Vegetable stock	1 1/2 qt.	1 1/2 lt
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Prosciutto	2 slices	2 slices
Spinach leaves	10	10

1. Sauté the mirepoix, shallot, leek, garlic and herbs in 3 tablespoons (45 milliliters) of the olive oil for 5 minutes.
2. Add the spelt and stock; simmer for 50 minutes. Remove the bay leaves.
3. Purée the soup, adding more stock to thin if necessary. Adjust seasonings.
4. Julienne the prosciutto. Cut the spinach in a chiffonade.
5. Serve the soup in hot bowls. Top each portion with some of the prosciutto and spinach and 1 teaspoon (5 milliliters) of olive oil.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (167-g) serving: **Calories** 146, **Total fat** 8 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 3 mg, **Sodium** 296 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 14 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Vitamin A** 57%, **Vitamin C** 26%

RECIPE 11.19

Southwestern Black Bean Soup

Yield: 4 qt. (4 lt)

Dried black beans, soaked	1 lb.	500 g
Vegetable stock or water	5 qt.	5 lt
Sachet:		
Bay leaves	2	2
Dried thyme	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Peppercorns, cracked	10	10
Canola oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Onion, diced	4 oz.	120 g
Garlic cloves, minced	2	2
Anaheim chiles, diced	1 oz.	30 g
Jalapeño or Serrano chiles, minced	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Cumin, ground	1 tsp.	5 ml
Coriander, ground	1 tsp.	5 ml
Dried oregano	1 tsp.	5 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Lime wedges	as needed for garnish	
Cilantro	as needed for garnish	

1. Combine the beans and stock or water and bring to a simmer. Add the sachet.
2. Sauté the onions, garlic and chiles in the oil. Add to the saucepot.
3. Stir in the cumin, coriander and oregano.
4. Simmer the soup, uncovered, approximately 2–3 hours. The beans should be very soft, just beginning to fall apart. Add additional water or stock if necessary.
5. Purée about half of the soup, then stir it back into the remaining soup. Season to taste with salt and black pepper.
6. Serve in warmed bowls garnished with lime wedges and chopped cilantro.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (271-g) serving: **Calories** 70, **Total fat** 2 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 1010 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 9 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Claims**—low fat; no saturated fat; no cholesterol

RECIPE 11.20

Roasted Corn Chowder

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Corn, unshucked	10 ears	10 ears
Milk, warmed	3 pt.	1500 ml
Salt pork, small dice	4 oz.	120 g
Celery, small dice	5 oz.	150 g
Onion, small dice	10 oz.	300 g
Garlic cloves, minced	4	4
Flour	2 oz.	60 g
Cream, warmed	4 oz.	120 ml
Worcestershire sauce	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh thyme	1 tsp.	5 ml
Nutmeg, ground	TT	TT
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
Parsley, chopped fine	as needed for garnish	

1. Roast the ears of corn, in their husks, in a 400°F (200°C) oven for 45 minutes. Cool, shuck the corn and cut off the kernels. Purée half the corn kernels in a blender, adding a small amount of milk if necessary.
2. Render the salt pork. Add the celery, onions and garlic, and sauté lightly.
3. Stir in the flour and cook to make a blond roux.
4. Add the remaining warm milk and bring to a simmer.
5. Add the puréed corn and the remaining corn kernels. Simmer 10 minutes.
6. Add the warm cream; adjust the seasonings with Worcestershire sauce, thyme, nutmeg, salt and white pepper.
7. Serve in warm bowls garnished with chopped parsley.

Approximate values per 6.5-oz. (583-g) serving: **Calories** 620, **Total fat** 31 g, **Saturated fat** 16 g, **Cholesterol** 90 mg, **Sodium** 590 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 60 g, **Protein** 24 g, **Vitamin** A 20%, **Vitamin** C 35%, **Calcium** 45%

RECIPE 11.21

Chicken and Sausage Gumbo

Gumbo, a thick, spicy stew, is traditional fare in the delta region of the American South. Gumbo is usually made with poultry, fish, shellfish or sausage and is thickened with dark roux. Okra or filé powder (ground sassafras leaves) may also be added for thickening. Filé powder is sometimes added at the time of service for additional flavor. Gumbo is traditionally served over white rice.

Yield: 3 qt. (3 lt)

Chicken pieces	3–4 lb.	1.3–1.8 kg
Flour	as needed	as needed
Onion powder	as needed	as needed
Salt	as needed	as needed
Cayenne pepper	as needed	as needed

Continued

Vegetable oil	8 oz.	250 ml
Flour	4 oz.	120 g
Onion, medium dice	6 oz.	170 g
Celery, medium dice	3 oz.	90 g
Green bell pepper, medium dice	6 oz.	170 g
Garlic, minced	1 tsp.	5 ml
Okra, sliced and blanched	5 oz.	140 g
Chicken stock, hot	2 qt.	2 lt
Jalapeño, minced	1 tsp.	5 ml
Dried thyme	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Dried oregano	1 tsp.	5 ml
Tomato paste	4 oz.	120 g
Andouille sausage	8 oz.	250 g
Filé powder, optional	as needed	as needed
White rice, boiled	as needed	as needed

1. Dredge the chicken in flour seasoned with onion powder, salt and cayenne pepper.
2. Pan-fry in the oil until done; drain.
3. Degrease the pan, reserving 4 ounces (120 milliliters) of the oil.
4. Add the flour to the pan and cook to make a very dark brown roux.
5. Add the onions, celery, green pepper and garlic and sauté briefly. Add the okra.
6. Add the chicken stock. Stir in the jalapeños, thyme, oregano and tomato paste. Simmer uncovered for 30 minutes.
7. Bone the cooked chicken and cut the meat into 1/2-inch (1.2-centimeter) pieces.
8. Slice the sausage on a diagonal into thin pieces and sauté. Remove and drain.
9. Add the chicken and sausage pieces to the gumbo. Adjust the seasonings and simmer 30 minutes.
10. If filé powder is used, stir 1–2 teaspoons (5–10 milliliters) into each portion at service time.
11. Serve ladled over bowls of white rice.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (276-g) serving: **Calories** 380, **Total fat** 25 g, **Saturated fat** 5 g, **Cholesterol** 80 mg, **Sodium** 640 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 9 g, **Protein** 30 g, **Vitamin C** 20%

RECIPE 11.22

Chilled Beet and Buttermilk Soup

BISHOP'S RESTAURANT, VANCOUVER, BC
Chefs Michael Allemeier and Dennis Green

Yield: 4 servings

Beets	4 large	4 large
Red onion, sliced	1	1
Red wine vinegar	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Sugar	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Buttermilk	1 pt.	500 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

Chives, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Sour cream or crème fraîche	2 Tbsp.	30 ml

1. In a medium saucepan, combine beets, onion, vinegar and sugar with enough water to cover. Bring to a boil, reduce heat and simmer until tender, about 30 minutes. Strain, reserving liquid for later use.
2. Purée beets using a blender or food processor, adding enough of the reserved liquid to facilitate a smooth purée.
3. When cooled to room temperature, stir in the buttermilk and season to taste with salt and pepper. If the soup is too thick, dilute it with some of the reserved cooking liquid. Chill thoroughly.
4. Garnish with freshly chopped chives, and a quenelle of sour cream or crème fraîche.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (180-g) serving: **Calories** 120, **Total fat** 3 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 7 mg, **Sodium** 170 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 19 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin C** 10%

RECIPE 11.23

Fresh Peach and Yogurt Soup

Yield: 2 qt. (2 lt)

Fresh peaches	4 lb.	1.8 kg
Dry white wine	24 oz.	700 ml
Honey	4 oz.	120 g
Lemon juice	2 oz.	60 ml
Cinnamon, ground	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Plain yogurt, nonfat	8 oz.	225 g
Heavy cream	TT	TT
Pistachios, chopped fine	as needed for garnish	

1. Pit and coarsely chop the peaches without peeling. Place in a nonreactive saucepan. Add wine, honey and lemon juice. Cover and simmer for 30 minutes.
2. Purée the peach mixture in a blender. Strain and chill.
3. Stir in cinnamon, yogurt and heavy cream.
4. Chill thoroughly. Serve in chilled bowls, garnished with finely chopped pistachio nuts.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (292-g) serving: **Calories** 140, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 20 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 32 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Vitamin A** 10%, **Vitamin C** 25%, **Claims**—fat free; very low sodium; good source of fiber

RECIPE 11.24

CHILLED ROASTED RED PEPPER COULIS

RIVIERA RESTAURANT, ATLANTA, GA
Chef Jack Shoop, CMC

Yield: 2 servings

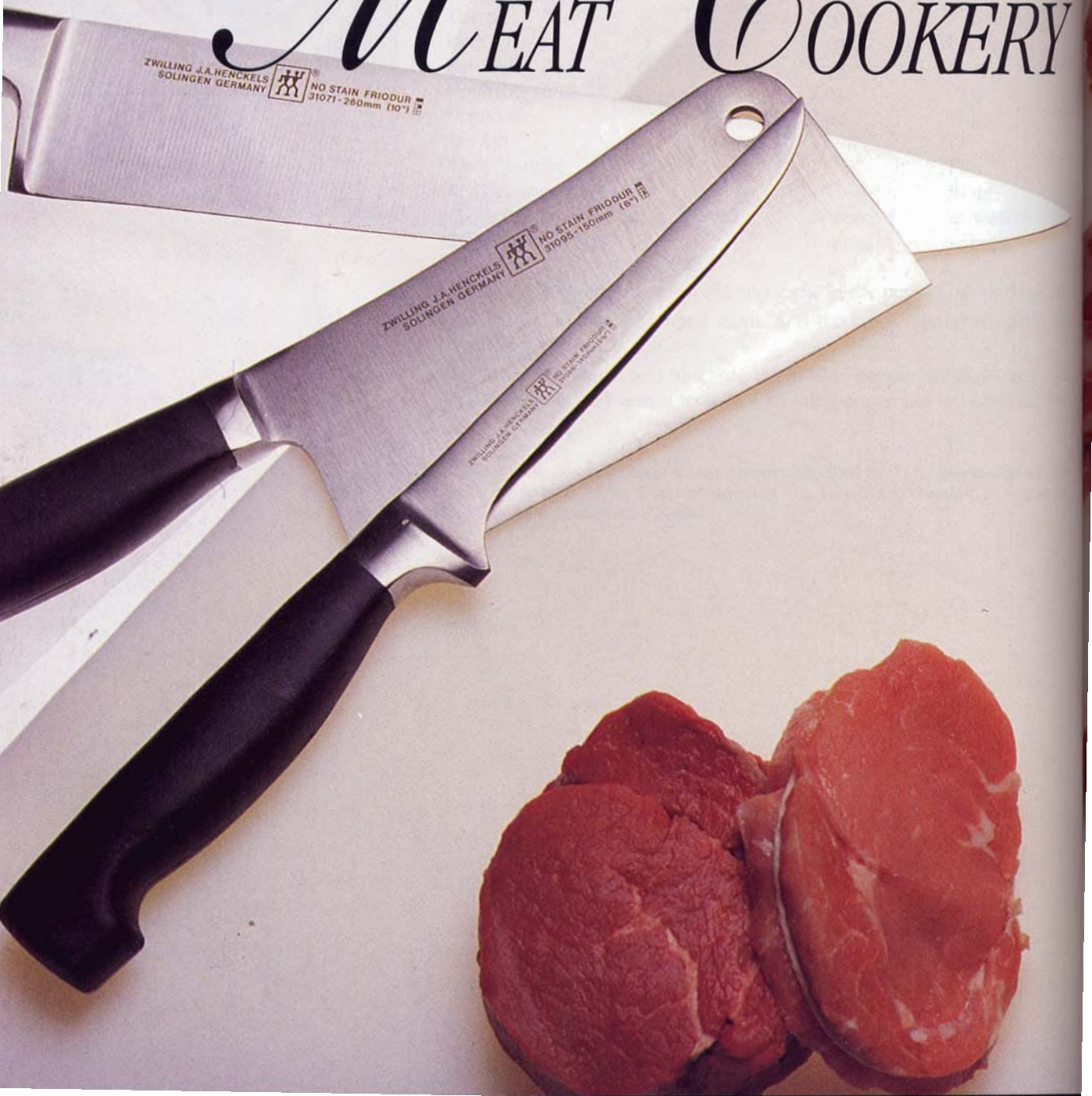
Peppers, roasted in oil and peeled, (reserve the oil)	12 oz.	360 g
Red onion, diced	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Leeks, sliced	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Garlic, minced	2 cloves	2 cloves
Reserved pepper oil	2 oz.	60 ml
Thyme	1 sprig	1 sprig
Basil	1 sprig	1 sprig
Bay leaf	1	1
Vegetable stock	2 oz.	60 g
Vermouth	2 oz.	60 g
Sea salt	TT	TT
White pepper	TT	TT
Red balsamic vinegar	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Cucumber, thinly sliced	as needed	as needed
Italian parsley	4 sprigs	4 sprigs

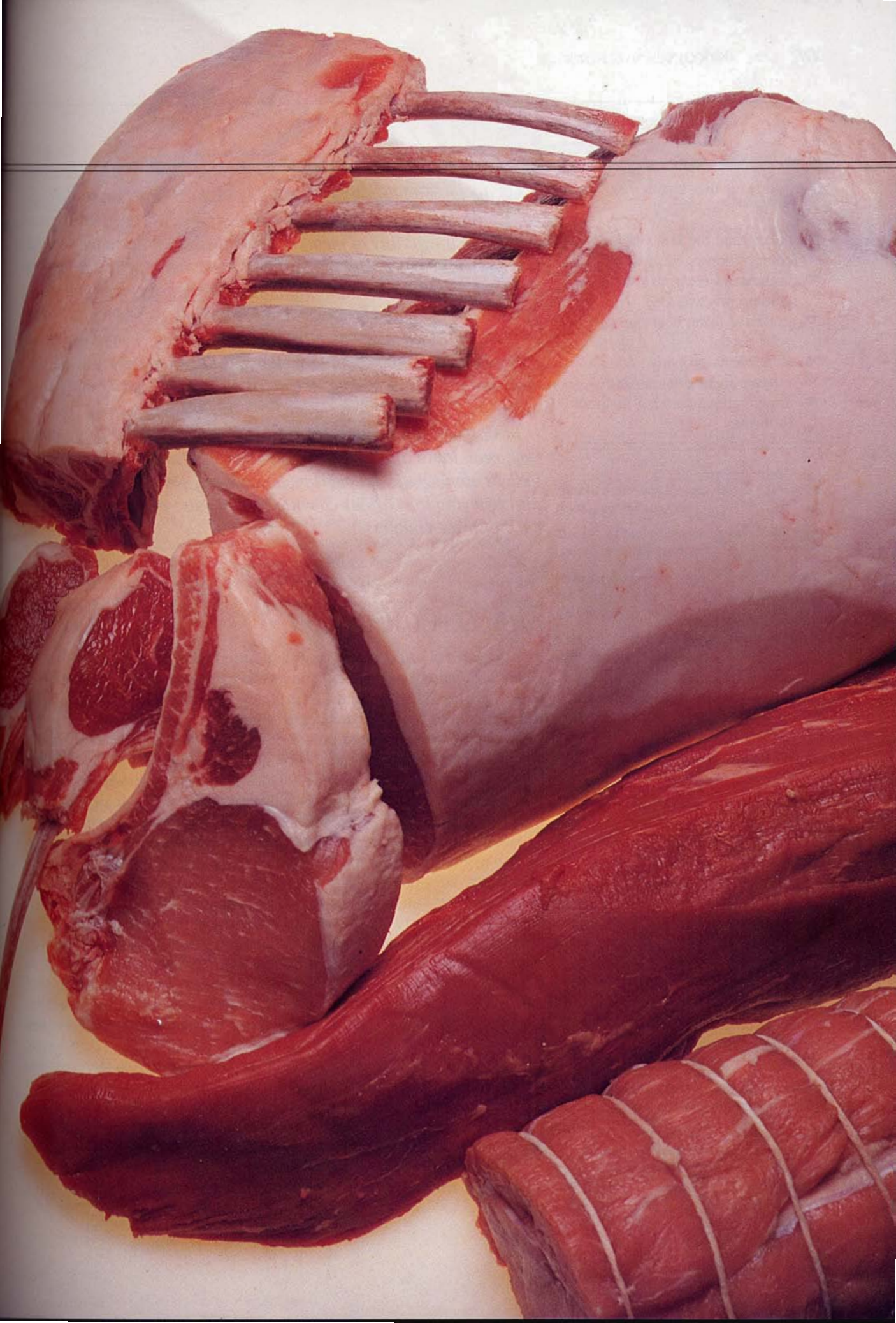
1. Sweat the peppers, onions, leeks and garlic in the pepper oil for 3 minutes.
2. Tie the herbs into a bouquet garni. Add the stock, vermouth and herbs. Simmer the soup 20 minutes.
3. Remove the herbs and discard. Purée the pepper mixture until very smooth. Strain and season to taste with salt, pepper and red balsamic vinegar.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (180-g) serving: **Calories** 125, **Total fat** .75 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 150 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 53 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Vitamin C** 230%, **Iron** 20%. **Claims**—low fat; no cholesterol; high fiber

CHAPTER 12

PRINCIPLES OF MEAT COOKERY





After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- understand the structure and composition of meats
- understand meat inspection and grading practices
- purchase meats appropriate for your needs
- store meats properly
- prepare meats for cooking
- apply various cooking methods to meats

Meats—beef, veal, lamb and pork—often consume the largest portion of your food purchasing dollar. In this chapter, we discuss how to protect your investment. You will learn how to determine the quality of meat, how to purchase meat in the form that best suits your needs and how to store it. We also discuss several of the dry-heat, moist-heat and combination cooking methods introduced in Chapter 9, Principles of Cooking, and how they can best be used so that a finished meat item is appealing to both the eye and palate. Although each of the cooking methods is illustrated with a single beef, veal, lamb or pork recipe, the analysis is intended to apply to all meats.

In Chapters 13 through 16, you will learn about the specific cuts of beef, veal, lamb and pork typically used in food service operations, as well as some basic butchering procedures. Recipes using these cuts and applying the various cooking methods are included at the end of each of those chapters.

Muscle Composition

Primal cuts—*the primary divisions of muscle, bone and connective tissue produced by the initial butchering of the carcass.*

Subprimal cuts—*the basic cuts produced from each primal.*

Fabricated cuts—*individual portions cut from a subprimal.*

The carcasses of cattle, sheep, hogs and furred game animals consist mainly of edible lean muscular tissue, fat, connective tissue and bones. They are divided into large cuts called **primals**. Primal cuts are rarely cooked; rather, they are usually reduced to **subprimal cuts**, which in turn, can be cooked as is or used to produce **fabricated cuts**. For example, the beef primal known as a short loin can be divided into subprimals, including the strip loin. The strip loin can be fabricated into other cuts, including New York steaks. The primals, subprimals and fabricated cuts of beef, veal, lamb and pork are discussed in Chapters 13 through 16, respectively; game is discussed in Chapter 18.

Muscle tissue gives meat its characteristic appearance; the amount of connective tissue determines the meat's tenderness. Muscle tissue is approximately 72% water, 20% protein, 7% fat and 1% minerals. A single muscle is composed of many bundles of muscle cells or fibers held together by connective tissue. See Figures 12.1 and 12.2. The thickness of the cells, the size of the cell bundles and the connective tissues holding them together form the grain of the meat and determine the meat's texture. When the fiber bundles are small, the meat has a fine grain and texture. Grain also refers to the direction in which the muscle fibers travel. When an animal fattens, some of the water and proteins in the lean muscle tissue are replaced with fat, which appears as **marbling**.

Marbling—*whitish streaks of inter- and intramuscular fat.*

Subcutaneous fat—*the fat layer between the hide and muscles, also known as exterior fat.*

Elastin—*a protein found in connective tissues, particularly ligaments and tendons; it often appears as the white or silver covering on meats known as silverskin.*

Connective tissue forms the walls of the long muscle cells and binds them into bundles. It surrounds the muscle as a membrane and also appears as the tendons and ligaments that attach the muscles to the bone. Most connective tissue consists of either collagen or **elastin**. Collagen breaks down into gelatin and water when cooked using moist heat. Elastin, on the other hand, will not break down under normal cooking conditions. Because elastin remains stringy and tough, tendons and ligaments should be trimmed away before meat is cooked.

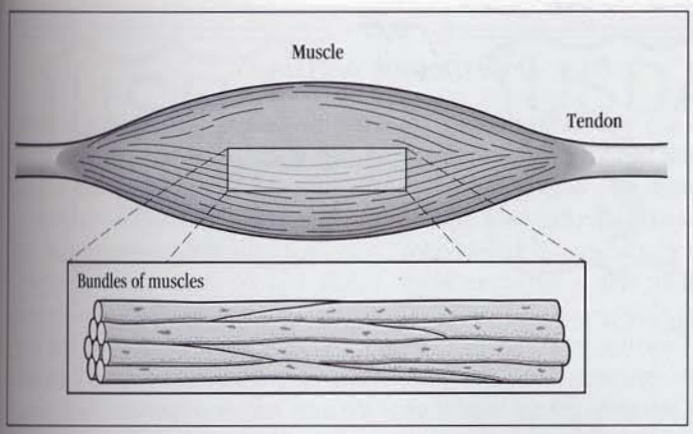


FIGURE 12.1 *Muscle Tissue*

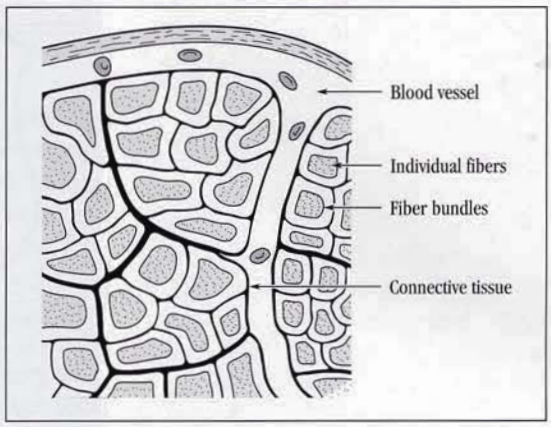


FIGURE 12.2 *Crosscut of a Bundle of Muscle Fibers*

Connective tissue develops primarily in the frequently used muscles. Therefore, cuts of meat from the shoulder (also known as the chuck), which the animal uses constantly, tend to be tougher than those from the back (also known as the loin), which are used less frequently. As an animal ages, the collagen present within the muscles becomes more resistant to breaking down through moist heat cooking. Therefore, the meat of an older animal tends to be tougher than that of a younger one. Generally, the tougher the meat, the more flavorful it is.

Butcher—*to slaughter and dress or fabricate animals for consumption.*

Dress—*to trim or otherwise prepare an animal carcass for consumption.*

Fabricate—*to cut a larger portion of raw meat (for example, a primal or subprimal), poultry or fish into smaller portions.*

Carve—*to cut cooked meat or poultry into portions.*

NUTRITION

Although the nutritional content of beef, veal, pork and lamb differs, generally, all are high in protein, saturated fats and cholesterol. See Table 12.1. Consumed in moderate quantities, however, meat can be part of a healthful diet.

TABLE 12.1 NUTRITIONAL VALUES OF MEATS

For 1 ounce (28 grams) Uncooked Lean Meat	Kcal	Protein (g)	Total Fat (g)	Saturated Fat (g)	Cholesterol (mg)	Sodium (mg)
Beef—brisket	94	4.6	8.2	3.4	22	18
Beef—T-bone steak	77	5.0	6.2	2.5	19	14
Beef—ground lean	75	5.0	5.9	2.4	21	20
Veal—chop	46	5.4	2.6	1.1	23	25
Veal—ground leg and shoulder	41	5.5	1.9	0.8	23	23
Lamb—leg	36	5.8	1.3	0.5	18	18
Lamb—chop	106	4.1	9.8	4.3	22	16
Pork—spareribs	81	4.9	6.7	2.7	22	21
Pork—shoulder (picnic)	40	5.6	1.8	0.6	18	23

The Corrine T. Netzer Encyclopedia of Food Values 1992

Domestication of Animals

Early humans were hunter-gatherers, dependent on what their immediate environment offered for food. As "opportunistic" meat eaters, they ate meat when they could obtain it.

Anthropologists believe that the cultivation of grains and the birth of agriculture, which took place sometime around 9000 B.C., led directly to the domestication of animals. Sheep and goats were attracted to the fields of grain, and dogs and pigs to the garbage heaps of the new communities. Rather than allow these animals to interfere with food production, they were tamed, thus providing a steadier supply of meat. The first animals to be domesticated were most likely sheep, soon followed by goats. These animals—ruminants—can digest cellulose (humans cannot), so they could feed on stalks instead of valuable grains. Dogs and pigs, which prefer the same foods as humans, were tamed later, once there were more certain food supplies. Cattle were the most recently domesticated food animal, probably coming under control between 6100 and 5800 B.C.

Inspection and Grading of Meats

Inspection

All meat produced for public consumption in the United States is subject to USDA inspection. Inspections ensure that products are processed under strict sanitary guidelines and are wholesome and fit for human consumption. Inspections do not indicate a meat's quality or tenderness, however. Whole carcasses of beef, pork, lamb and veal are labeled with a round stamp identifying the slaughterhouse. See Figure 12.3. The stamp shown in Figure 12.4 is used for fabricated or processed meats and is found either on the product or its packaging.

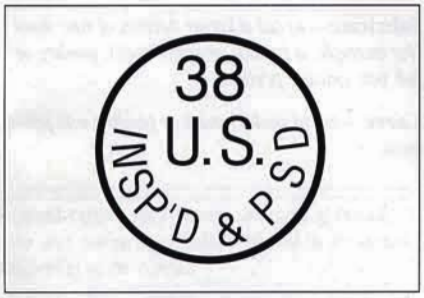


FIGURE 12.3 *USDA Inspection Stamp for Whole Carcasses*

FIGURE 12.4 *USDA Inspection Stamp for Fabricated or Processed Meats*

Grading

USDA grading provides a voluntary, uniform system by which producers, distributors and consumers can measure differences in the quality of meats and make price-quality comparisons. There are two parts to this grading system: quality grades and yield grades.

Quality grades, established in 1927, are a guide to the eating qualities of meat: its tenderness, juiciness and flavor. Based on an animal's age and the meat's color, texture and degree of marbling, the USDA quality grades are:

- Beef—USDA Prime, Choice, Select, Standard, Commercial, Utility, Cutter and Canner
- Veal—USDA Prime, Choice, Good, Standard, Utility
- Lamb—USDA Prime, Choice, Good, Utility
- Pork—USDA No. 1, No. 2, No. 3, Utility

USDA Prime meats are produced in limited quantities for use in the finest restaurants, hotels and gourmet markets. They are well marbled and have thick coverings of firm fat. See Figure 12.5.

USDA Choice meat is the most commonly used grade in quality food service operations and retail markets. Choice meat is well marbled (but with less fat than Prime) and will produce a tender and juicy product.

FIGURE 12.5 *Grade Stamp for USDA Prime*

FIGURE 12.6 *USDA Yield Grade Stamp*

Although lacking the flavor and tenderness of the higher grades, beef graded USDA Select or USDA Standard, and lamb and veal graded USDA Good, are also used in food service operations and retail outlets.

The lower grades of beef, lamb and veal are usually used for processed, ground or manufactured items such as meat patties or canned meat products.

Yield grades, established in 1965, measure the amount of usable meat (as opposed to fat and bones) on a carcass and provide a uniform method of identifying cutability differences among carcasses. Yield grades apply only to beef and lamb and appear in a shield similar to that used for the quality grade stamp. The shields are numbered from 1 to 5, with number 1 representing the greatest yield and number 5 the smallest. See Figure 12.6. Beef and lamb can be graded for either quality or yield or both.

Grading is a voluntary program. Many processors, purveyors and retailers (especially pork and veal producers) develop and use their own labeling systems to provide quality assurance information. These private systems do not necessarily apply the USDA's standards.

A History of Meat Safety Measures

Ancient times: The biblical books of Exodus, Leviticus and Deuteronomy set forth strict instructions about the kinds of animals that should be eaten and how they should be slaughtered.

13–14th centuries: The first laws regarding meat hygiene were enacted in Florence (Italy). They required butchers to be licensed and to renew their licenses annually; prohibited misrepresentations, substitutions and unsanitary practices; and provided for inspections.

1706: New France (Canada) enacted the first meat inspection laws in North America. They required butchers to notify authorities when animals were to be slaughtered so that the meat could be inspected. Farmers were required to certify that animals destined for slaughter were healthy.

1880s: During this period of rising American meat exports, rumors circulated in Europe that American beef was diseased. Partially to allay these fears, Congress enacted laws providing for final product inspection upon the request of a buyer, seller or exporter.

1891 and 1895: U.S. meat inspection laws were strengthened. They did not, however, establish a national meat inspection system.

1906: Fueled in part by Upton Sinclair's novel *The Jungle*, in which he describes the horrendous working and sanitary conditions in Chicago slaughterhouses, public pressure persuaded Congress to pass the Comprehensive Meat Inspection Act. This act strengthened requirements for sanitary conditions in packinghouses and required inspection of meat sold in interstate commerce.

1938: National legislation prohibited on-the-farm slaughter of animals and restricted commercial slaughter operations to packing plants.

1967: The Wholesome Meat Act enabled the USDA to regulate transporters, processors of meat byproducts, cold storage warehouses and animal food manufacturers. Hygiene requirements for imported meats were toughened and inspection of all animals before slaughter became mandatory.

1978: The Humane Methods of Slaughter Act amended previous laws to require that humane methods be used when slaughtering livestock.

Present: Meat inspection has been administered by the USDA's Food Safety and Inspection Service (FSIS) since 1981. The current deregulatory trend places heightened quality-control responsibilities on the management of slaughter facilities. This reflects the belief that the wholesomeness of the final product is the responsibility of both industry and government.

A Tender History

In *Food in History*, Reay Tannahill suggests that prehistoric hunters developed weapons and stealth tactics in order to kill their quarry without alerting it to danger and provoking fright, fight or flight. She notes that muscle tissues from animals that die placidly contain glycogen. At death, glycogen breaks down into various substances, including lactic acid, a natural preservative. Animals experiencing fright, fight or flight just before death, however, use up their glycogen. Tannahill theorizes that prehistoric hunters recognized and responded to what science much later confirmed: Meat from animals that die peacefully is sweeter and more tender.

Vacuum packaging—*a food preservation method in which fresh or cooked food is placed in an airtight container (usually plastic). Virtually all air is removed from the container through a vacuum process, and the container is then sealed.*

Aging Meats

When animals are slaughtered, their muscles are soft and flabby. Within 6 to 24 hours, rigor mortis sets in, causing the muscles to contract and stiffen. Rigor mortis dissipates within 48 to 72 hours under refrigerated conditions. All meats should be allowed to rest, or age, long enough for rigor mortis to dissipate completely. Meats that have not been aged long enough for rigor mortis to dissipate, or that have been frozen during this period, are known as "green meats." They will be very tough and flavorless when cooked.

Typically, initial aging takes place while the meat is being transported from the slaughterhouse to the supplier or food service operation. Beef and lamb are sometimes aged for longer periods to increase their tenderness and flavor characteristics. Pork is not aged further because its high fat content turns rancid easily, and veal does not have enough fat to protect it during an extended aging period.

Wet Aging

Today, most preportioned or precut meats are packaged and shipped in vacuum-sealed plastic packages (sometimes known generically by the manufacturer's trade name, Cryovac®). Wet aging is the process of storing vacuum-packaged meats under refrigeration for up to six weeks. This allows natural enzymes and microorganisms time to break down connective tissue, which tenderizes and flavors the meat. As this chemical process takes place, the meat develops an unpleasant odor that is released when the package is opened; the odor dissipates in a few minutes.

Dry Aging

Dry aging is the process of hanging fresh meats in an environment of controlled temperature, humidity and air flow for up to six weeks. This allows enzymes and microorganisms to break down connective tissues. Dry aging is actually the beginning of the natural decomposition process. Dry aged meats can lose from 5% to 20% of their weight through moisture evaporation. They can also develop mold, which adds flavor but must be trimmed off later. Moisture loss combined with additional trimming can substantially increase the cost of dry aged meats. Dry aged meats are generally available only through smaller distributors and specialty butchers.

Purchasing and Storing Meats

Several factors determine the cuts of meat your food service operation should use:

1. Menu: The menu identifies the types of cooking methods used. If meats are to be broiled, grilled, roasted, sautéed or fried, more tender cuts should be used. If they are to be stewed or braised, flavorful cuts with more connective tissue can be used.
2. Menu price: Cost constraints may prevent an operation from using the best-quality meats available. Generally, the more tender the meat, the more expensive it is. But the most expensive cuts are not always the best choice for a particular cooking method. For example, a beef tenderloin is one of

the most expensive cuts of beef. Although excellent grilled, it will not necessarily produce a better braised dish than the fattier brisket.

3. Quality: Often, several cuts of meat can be used for a specific dish, so each food service operation should develop its own quality specifications.

Purchasing Meats

Once you have identified the cuts of meat your operation needs, you must determine the forms in which they will be bought. Meats are purchased in a variety of forms: as large as an entire carcass that must be further fabricated or as small as an individual cut (known as **portion control** or **P.C.**) ready to cook and serve. You should consider the following when deciding how to purchase meats:

1. Employee skills: Do your employees have the skills necessary to reduce large pieces of meat to the desired cuts?
2. Menu: Can you use the variety of bones, meat and trimmings that result from fabricating large cuts into individual portions?
3. Storage: Do you have ample refrigeration and freezer space so that you can be flexible in the way you purchase your meats?
4. Cost: Considering labor costs and trim usage, is it more economical to buy larger cuts of meat or P.C. units?

IMPS/NAMP

The USDA publishes Institutional Meat Purchasing Specifications (IMPS) describing products customarily purchased in the food service industry. IMPS identifications are illustrated and described in *The Meat Buyers Guide*, published by the National Association of Meat Purveyors (NAMP). The IMPS/NAMP system is a widely accepted and useful tool in preventing miscommunications between purchasers and purveyors. Meats are indexed by a numerical system: Beef cuts are designated by the 100 series, lamb by the 200 series, veal by the 300 series, pork by the 400 series, and portion cuts by the 1000 series. Commonly used cuts of beef, veal, lamb and pork and their IMPS numbers, as well as applicable cooking methods and serving suggestions, are discussed in Chapters 13 through 16.

Storing Meats

Meat products are highly perishable, so temperature control is the most important thing to remember when storing meats. Fresh meats should be stored at temperatures between 30°F and 35°F (−1°C to 2°C). Vacuum-packed meats should be left in their packaging until they are needed. Under proper refrigeration, vacuum-packed meats with unbroken seals have a shelf life of three to four weeks. If the seal is broken, shelf life is reduced to only a few days. Meats that are not vacuum packed should be loosely wrapped or wrapped in air-permeable paper. Do not wrap meats tightly in plastic wrap, as this creates a good breeding ground for bacteria and will significantly shorten a meat's shelf life. Store meats on trays and away from other foods to prevent cross-contamination.

Meats freeze at about 28°F (−2°C). When freezing meats, the faster the better. Slow freezing produces large ice crystals that tend to rupture the muscle tissues, allowing water and nutrients to drip out when the meat is thawed. Most commercially packaged meats are frozen by blast freezing, which quickly

No, It Doesn't Glow

Fresh and frozen beef, lamb, pork and poultry can be irradiated in order to control the presence of microorganisms, such as E. coli and Salmonella, which can cause foodborne illnesses. Although the permitted dose of ionizing radiation kills significant numbers of insects, pathogenic bacteria and parasites on and in the meat, it does not make food radioactive or compromise the food's nutritional values. Nor does radiation noticeably alter a food's flavor, texture or appearance.

The FDA requires that any packaged food subjected to radiation for preservation be labeled "treated with radiation" or "treated by irradiation" and display the radura symbol shown here.

cools by blasting −40°F (−40°C) air across the meat. Most food service facilities, however, use a slower and more conventional method known as still-air freezing. Still-air freezing is the common practice of placing meat in a standard freezer at about 0°F (−18°C) until it is frozen.

The ideal temperature for maintaining frozen meat is −50°F (−45°C). Frozen meat should not be maintained at any temperature warmer than 0°F (−18°C). Moisture- and vaporproof packaging will help prevent **freezer burn**. The length of frozen storage life varies with the species and type of meat. As a general rule, properly handled meats can be frozen for six months. Frozen meats should be thawed at refrigerator temperatures, not at room temperature or in warm water.

Freezer burn—*the surface dehydration and discoloration of food that results from moisture loss at below-freezing temperatures.*

Preparing Meats

Certain procedures are often applied to meats before cooking to add flavor and/or moisture. These include marinating, barding and larding.

Marinating

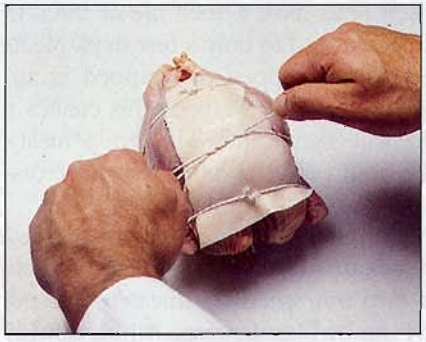
Marinating Chicken Breasts

Marinating is the process of soaking meat in a seasoned liquid to flavor and tenderize it. Marinades can be simple blends (herbs, seasonings and oil) or a complicated cooked recipe (red wine, fruit and other ingredients). Mild marinades should be used on more delicate meats, such as veal. Game and beef require strongly flavored marinades. In wine-based marinades, white wine is usually used for white meats and red wine for red meats. Not only does the wine add a distinctive flavor, the acids in it break down connective tissues and help tenderize the meat.

Veal and pork generally require less time to marinate than game, beef and lamb. Smaller pieces of meat take less time than larger pieces. When marinating, be sure to cover the meat completely and keep it refrigerated. Stir or turn the meat frequently to ensure that the marinade penetrates evenly.

Barding

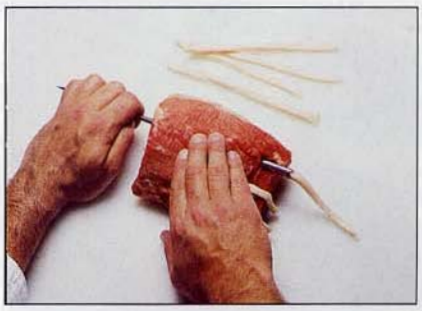
Barding is the process of covering the surface of meat or poultry with thin slices of pork fatback and tying them in place with butcher's twine. Barded meat or poultry is usually roasted. As the item cooks, the fatback continuously bastes it, adding flavor and moisture. A drawback to barding is that the fatback prevents the meat or poultry from developing the crusty exterior associated with roasting.



Barding a Pheasant

Larding

Larding is the process of inserting small strips of pork fat into meat with a larding needle. Larded meat is usually cooked by braising. During cooking, the added fat contributes moisture and flavor. Although once popular, larding is rarely used today because advances in selective breeding produce consistently tender, well-marbled meat.



Larding Meat

Applying Various Cooking Methods

In Chapter 9, Principles of Cooking, you learned the basic techniques for broiling, grilling, roasting, sautéing, pan-frying, poaching, simmering, braising and stewing. In Chapters 13 through 16, you will learn more about applying these cooking methods to beef, veal, lamb and pork. Here we apply these methods to meat cookery in general. Deep-frying is covered in Chapter 21, Deep-Frying.

Dry-Heat Cooking Methods

Dry-heat cooking methods subject food directly to the heat of a flame (broiling and grilling), hot air (roasting) or heated fat (sautéing and pan-frying). These cooking methods firm proteins without breaking down connective tissue. They are not recommended for tougher cuts or those high in connective tissue.

Broiling and Grilling

To serve a good-quality broiled or grilled product, you must start with good-quality meat. The broiling or grilling process adds flavor; additional flavors are derived from the seasonings. The broiler or grill should brown the meat, keeping the interior juicy. The grill should leave appetizing crosshatch marks on the meat's surface.

Selecting Meats to Broil or Grill

Only the most tender cuts should be broiled or grilled because direct heat does not tenderize. Fat adds flavor as the meat cooks, so the meat should be well marbled. Some external fat is also beneficial. Too much fat, however, will cause the broiler or grill to flare up, burning or discoloring the meat and adding objectionable flavors. Connective tissue toughens when meat is broiled or grilled, so trim away as much of it as possible.

Seasoning Meats to be Broiled or Grilled

Meats that have not been marinated should be well seasoned with salt and pepper just before being placed on the broiler or grill. If they are preseasoned and allowed to rest, the salt will dissolve and draw out moisture, making it difficult to brown the meat properly. Some chefs feel so strongly about this that they season broiled or grilled meats only after they are cooked. Pork and veal, which have a tendency to dry out when cooked, should be basted with seasoned butter or oil during cooking to help keep them moist. Meats can be glazed or basted with barbecue sauce as they cook.

Cooking Temperatures

Red meats should be cooked at sufficiently high temperatures to caramelize their surface, making them more attractive and flavorful. At the same time, the broiler or grill cannot be too hot, or the meat's exterior will burn before the interior is cooked.

FIGURE 12.7 *Degrees of Doneness*
Meat cooked rare, medium rare, medium and medium well.

Because veal and pork are normally cooked to higher internal temperatures than beef and lamb, they should be cooked at slightly lower temperatures so that their exteriors are not overcooked when their interiors are cooked properly. The exterior of white meats should be a deep golden color when finished.

Degrees of Doneness

Consumers request and expect meats to be properly cooked to specific degrees of doneness. It is your responsibility to understand and comply with these requests. Meats can be cooked very rare (or bleu), rare, medium rare, medium, medium well or well done. Figure 12.7 shows the proper color for these different degrees of doneness. This guide can be used for red meats cooked by any method.

Larger cuts of meat, such as a châteaubriand or thick chops, are often started on the broiler or grill to develop color and flavor and then finished in the oven to ensure complete, even cooking.

Determining Doneness

Broiling or grilling meat to the proper degree of doneness is an art. Larger pieces of meat will take longer to cook than smaller ones, but how quickly a piece of meat cooks is determined by many other factors: the temperature of the broiler or grill, the temperature of the piece of meat when placed on the broiler or grill, the type of meat and the thickness of the cut. Because of these variables, timing alone is not a useful tool in determining doneness.

The most reliable method of determining doneness is by pressing the piece of meat with a finger and gauging the amount of resistance it yields. Very rare (bleu) meat will offer almost no resistance and feel almost the same as raw meat. Meat cooked rare will feel spongy and offer slight resistance to pressure. Meat cooked medium will feel slightly firm and springy to the touch. Meat cooked well done will feel quite firm and spring back quickly when pressed. See Table 12.2.

Accompaniments to Broiled and Grilled Meats

Because a broiler or grill cannot be deglazed to form the base for a sauce, compound butters or sauces such as béarnaise are often served with broiled or grilled meats. Brown sauces such as bordelaise, chasseur, périgueux or brown mushroom sauce also complement many broiled or grilled items. Additional sauce suggestions are found in Table 10.5.

TABLE 12.2 DETERMINING DONENESS

Degree of Doneness	Color	Degree of Resistance
Very rare (bleu)	Very red and raw-looking center (the center is cool to the touch)	Almost no resistance
Rare	Large deep red center	Spongy; very slight resistance
Medium rare	Bright red center	Some resistance; slightly springy
Medium	Rosy pink to red center	Slightly firm; springy
Medium well	Very little pink at the center, almost brown throughout	Firm; springy
Well done	No red	Quite firm; springs back quickly when pressed

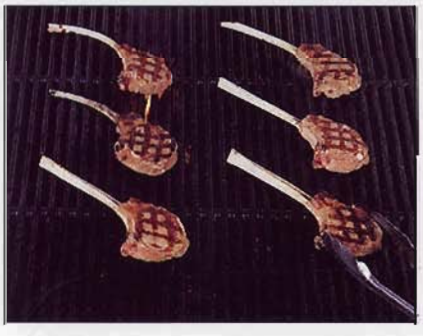
Procedure for Broiling or Grilling Meats

1. Heat the broiler or grill.
2. Use a wire brush to remove any charred or burnt particles that may be stuck to the broiler or grill grate. The grate can be wiped with a lightly oiled towel to remove any remaining particles and to help season it.
3. Prepare the item to be broiled or grilled by trimming off any excess fat and connective tissue and marinating or seasoning it as desired. The meat may be brushed lightly with oil to help protect it and keep it from sticking to the grate.
4. Place the item in the broiler or on the grill. Following the example in Chapter 9, turn the meat to produce the attractive crosshatch marks associated with grilling. Use tongs to turn or flip the meat without piercing the surface (this prevents valuable juices from escaping).
5. Cook the meat to the desired doneness while developing the proper surface color. To do so, adjust the position of the meat on the broiler or grill, or adjust the distance between the grate and heat source.

1. Brushing the lamb chops with oil.

2. Placing the lamb chops on the grill.

3. Rotating the lamb chops 90 degrees to create crosshatch marks.



4. Turning the chops over to finish them on the other side.

RECIPE 12.1

Grilled Lamb Chops with Herb Butter

Yield: 2 servings

Lamb chops, loin or rib, approx. 1 in. (2.5 cm) thick	6	6
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Oil	as needed	as needed
Herb butter	6 thin slices or 6 small rosettes	

1. Preheat the grill for 15 minutes.
2. Season the lamb chops with salt and pepper; brush with oil.
3. Place the lamb chops on the grill, turning as necessary to produce the proper crosshatching. Cook to the desired doneness.
4. Remove the lamb chops from the grill and place a slice or rosette of herb butter on each chop.
5. Serve immediately as the herb butter melts. The plate can be placed under the broiler for a few seconds to help melt the herb butter.

Approximate values per 6.5-oz. (185-g) serving: **Calories** 623, **Total fat** 50 g, **Saturated fat** 27 g, **Cholesterol** 224 mg, **Sodium** 1186 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 0 g, **Protein** 42 g, **Vitamin A** 40%

Roasting

Properly roasted meats should be tender, juicy and evenly cooked to the appropriate degree of doneness. They should have a pleasant appearance when whole as well as when sliced and plated.

Selecting Meats to Roast

Because roasting is a dry-heat cooking method and will not tenderize the finished product, meats that are to be roasted should be tender and well marbled. They are usually cut from the rib, loin or leg sections.

TABLE 12.3

Degree of Doneness	Internal Temperature	Minutes per Pound*
Very rare	125–130°F 52–54°C	12–15
Rare	130–140°F 54–60°C	15–18
Medium	140–150°F 60–66°C	18–20
Well done	150–165°F 66–74°C	20–25

*Assumes meat was at room temperature before roasting and cooked at a constant 325°F (162°C).

FIGURE 12.8 *The Proper Placement of an Instant-Read Thermometer*

Carryover cooking—*the cooking that occurs after a food is removed from a heat source; it is accomplished by the residual heat remaining in the food.*

Seasoning Meats to be Roasted

Seasonings are especially important with smaller roasts and roasts with little or no fat covering. With these roasts, some of the seasonings penetrate the meat while the remainder help create the highly seasoned crust associated with a good roast. A large roast with heavy fat covering (for example, a steamship round or prime rib) does not benefit from being seasoned on the surface because the seasonings will not penetrate the fat layer, which is trimmed away before service.

When practical, a roast with excess fat should be trimmed, leaving just a thin fat layer so that the roast bastes itself while cooking. A lean roast can be barded or larded before cooking to add richness and moisture. Lamb legs are sometimes studded with garlic cloves by piercing the meat with a paring knife and then pressing slivers of raw garlic into the holes.

A roast is sometimes cooked on a bed of mirepoix, or mirepoix is added to the roasting pan as the roast cooks. The mirepoix raises the roast off the bottom of the roasting pan, preventing the bottom from overcooking. This mirepoix, however, does not add any flavor to the roast. Rather, it combines with the drippings to add flavor to the jus, sauce or gravy that is made with them.

Cooking Temperatures

Small roasts such as a rack of lamb or a beef tenderloin should be cooked at high temperatures, 375°F–450°F (190°C–230°C) so that they develop good color during their short cooking times.

Traditionally, large roasts were started at high temperatures to sear the meat and seal in the juices; they were then finished at lower temperatures. Studies have shown, however, that roasts cooked at constant, low temperatures provide a better yield with less shrinkage than roasts that have been seared. Temperatures between 275°F and 325°F (120°C–160°C) are ideal for large roasts. These temperatures will produce a large, evenly cooked pink center portion.

Determining Doneness

The doneness of small roasts such as a rack of lamb is determined in much the same way as broiled or grilled meats. With experience, the chef develops a sense of timing as well as a feel for gauging the amount of resistance by touching the meat. These techniques, however, are not infallible, especially with large roasts.

Although timing is useful as a general guide for determining doneness, there are too many variables for it to be relied upon exclusively. With this caution in mind, Table 12.3 lists general cooking times for roasted meats.

The best way to determine the doneness of a large roast is to use an instant-read thermometer, as shown in Figure 12.8. The thermometer is inserted into the center or thickest part of the roast and away from any bones. The proper finished temperatures for roasted meats are listed in Table 12.3.

Carryover Cooking and Resting

Cooking does not stop the moment a roast is removed from the oven. Through conduction, the heat applied to the outside of the roast continues to penetrate, cooking the center for several more minutes. Indeed, the internal temperature of a small roast can rise by as much as 5°F–10°F (3°C–6°C) after being removed from the oven. With a larger roast, such as a 50-pound steamship round, it can rise by as much as 20°F (11°C). Therefore, remove roasted meats before they reach the desired degree of doneness, and allow carryover cooking to complete the cooking process. The temperatures listed in Table 12.3 are internal temperatures after allowing for carryover cooking.

As meat cooks, its juices flow toward the center. If the roast is carved immediately after it is removed from the oven, its juices would run from the

meat, causing it to lose its color and become dry. Letting the meat rest before slicing allows the juices to redistribute themselves evenly throughout the roast so that the roast will retain more juices when carved. Small roasts, like a rack of lamb, need to rest only 5 to 10 minutes; larger roasts such as a steamship round of beef require as much as an hour.

Accompaniments to Roasted Meats

Roasts may be served with a sauce based on their natural juices (called *au jus*), as described in Recipe 12.2, Roast Prime Rib of Beef Au Jus, or with a pan gravy made with drippings from the roast. Additional sauce suggestions are found in Table 10.5.

Procedure for Roasting Meats

1. Trim excess fat, tendons and silverskin from the meat. Leave only a thin fat covering, if possible, so that the roast bastes itself as it cooks.
2. Season the roast as appropriate and place it in a roasting pan. The roast may be placed on a bed of mirepoix or on a rack.
3. Roast the meat, uncovered, at the desired temperature (the larger the roast, the lower the temperature), usually 275°F–425°F (135°C–220°C).
4. If a jus or pan gravy is desired and a mirepoix was not added at the start of cooking, it may be added 30 to 45 minutes before the roast is done, thus allowing it to caramelize while the roast finishes cooking.
5. Cook to the desired temperature.
6. Remove the roast from the oven, allowing carryover cooking to raise the internal temperature to the desired degree of doneness. Allow the roast to rest before slicing or carving it. As the roast rests, prepare the jus, sauce or pan gravy.

RECIPE 12.2

Roast Prime Rib of Beef Au Jus

Yield: 18 8-oz. (250-g) boneless servings

Oven-ready rib roast		
IMPS #109, approx. 16 lb. (7.5 kg)	1	1
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Garlic, chopped	TT	TT
Mirepoix	1 lb.	500 g
Brown stock	2 qt.	2 lt

1. Pull back the netting, fold back the fat cap and season the roast well with the salt, pepper and chopped garlic. Replace the fat cap and netting; place the roast in an appropriate-sized roasting pan. Roast at 300°F–325°F (160°C–165°C).
2. Add the mirepoix to the pan approximately 45 minutes before the roast is finished cooking. Continue cooking until the internal temperature reaches 125°F (52°C), approximately 3 to 4 hours. Carryover cooking will raise the internal temperature of the roast to approximately 138°F (59°C).
3. Remove the roast from the pan and allow it to rest in a warm place for 30 minutes.

Continued

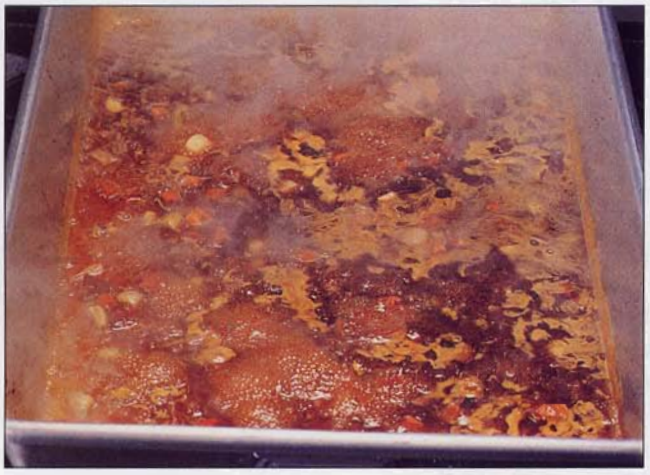
4. Drain the excess fat from the roasting pan, reserving the mirepoix and any drippings in the roasting pan.
5. Caramelize the mirepoix on the stove top; allow the liquids to evaporate, leaving only brown drippings in the pan.
6. Deglaze the pan with brown stock. Stir to loosen all the drippings.
7. Simmer the jus, reducing it slightly and allowing the mirepoix to release its flavor; season with salt and pepper if necessary.
8. Strain the jus through a china cap lined with cheesecloth. Skim any remaining fat from the surface with a ladle.
9. Remove the netting from the roast. Trim and slice the roast as described opposite and serve with approximately 1 to 2 ounces (30 to 60 milliliters) jus per person.

Approximate values per 9-oz. (254-g) serving: **Calories** 951, **Total fat** 79 g, **Saturated fat** 32 g, **Cholesterol** 214 mg, **Sodium** 278 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 56 g, **Iron** 40%

1. Draining off the excess fat.

2. Caramelizing the mirepoix.

3. Deglazing the pan with brown stock.



4. Simmering the jus, reducing it slightly and allowing the mirepoix to release its flavors.

5. Straining the jus through a china cap and cheesecloth.

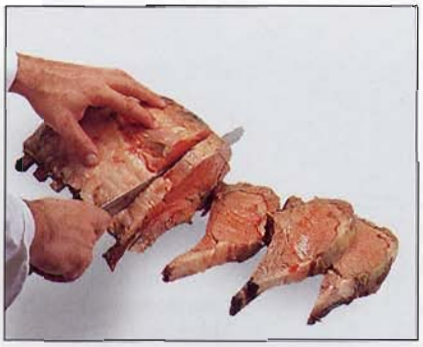
Carving Roasts

All the efforts that went into selecting and cooking a perfect roast will be wasted if the roast is not carved properly. Roasts are always carved against the grain; carving it with the grain produces long stringy, tough slices. Cutting across the muscle fibers produces a more attractive and tender portion. Portions may be cut in a single thick slice, as with Roast Prime Rib of Beef, or in many thin slices. The following photographs illustrate several different carving procedures.

Carving Prime Rib

1. Removing the netting, cap fat and chine bones.

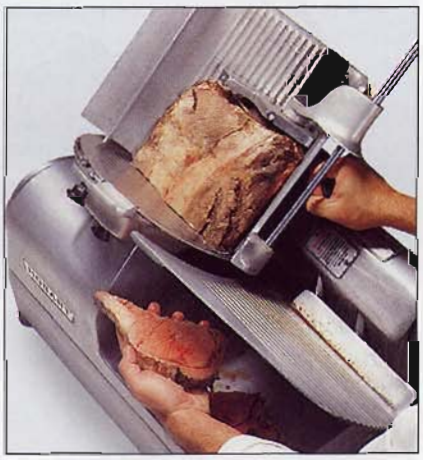
2. Trimming the excess fat from the eye muscle.



3. Slicing the rib in long, smooth strokes, the first cut (end cut) without a rib bone, the second cut with a rib bone, the third without, and so on.

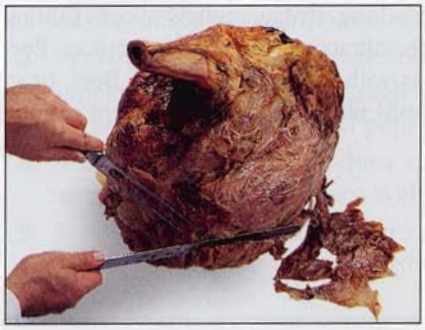
Carving Prime Rib on the Slicer

1. When producing large quantities of prime rib, it is often more practical to slice it on a slicing machine. Following the steps illustrated above, remove the netting, cap fat and chine bone; trim excess fat from the eye muscle. Then use a long slicer and completely remove the rib eye from the rib bones, being careful to stay as close as possible to the bones to avoid wasting any meat.

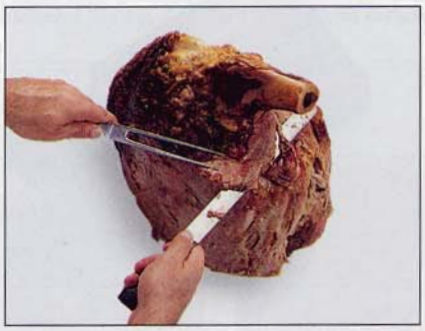


2. After placing the rib on the slicing machine, set the machine to the desired thickness. The blade will have to be adjusted often because a roast's thickness fluctuates.

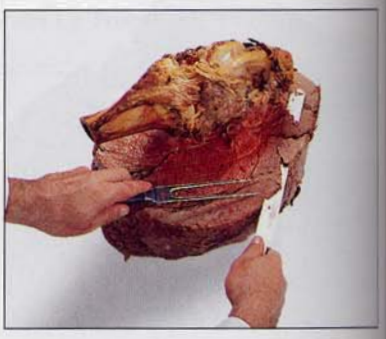
Carving a Steamship Round of Beef



1. After setting the roast on the cutting board with the exposed femur bone (large end of the roast) down and the tibia (shank bone) or "handle" up, trim the excess exterior fat to expose the lean meat.

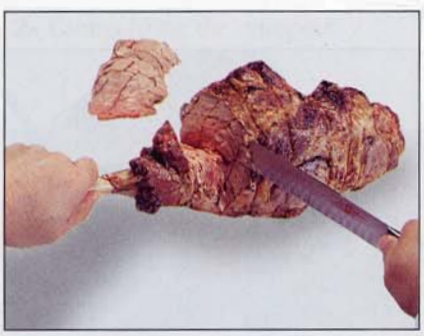


2. Begin slicing with a horizontal cut toward the shank bone, then make vertical cuts to release the slices of beef.

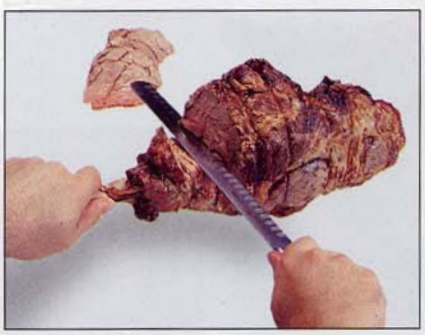


3. Keeping the exposed surface as level as possible. Continue carving, turning the roast as necessary to access all sides.

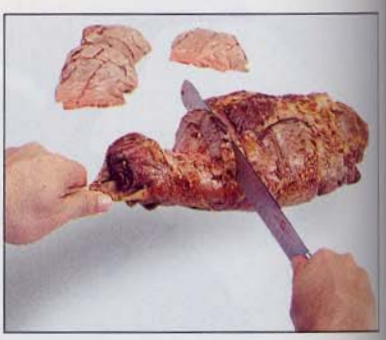
Carving a Leg of Lamb



1. Holding the shank bone firmly, cut toward the bone.



2. Cutting parallel to the shank bone to remove the slices.



3. Rotating the leg as needed to access the meat on all sides.

Sautéing

Sautéing is a dry-heat cooking method in which heat is conducted by a small amount of fat. Sautéed meats should be tender (a reflection of the quality of the raw product), of good color (determined by proper cooking temperatures) and have a good overall flavor. Any accompanying sauce should be well seasoned and complement the meat without overpowering it.

Selecting Meats to Sauté

As with broiling, grilling and roasting, you should use tender meats of the highest quality in order to produce good results when sautéing. The cuts should be uniform in size and shape in order to promote even cooking.

Seasoning Meats to be Sautéed

The sauces that almost always accompany sautéed meats provide much of the seasoning. The meat, however, can be marinated or simply seasoned with salt and pepper. If marinated, the meat must be patted dry before cooking to ensure proper browning. Some meats are dusted with flour before cooking to seal in juices and promote even browning.

Determining Doneness

As with broiled and grilled meats, the doneness of sautéed meats is determined by touch and timing. Red meats should be well browned; veal and pork should be somewhat lighter.

Accompaniments to Sautéed Meats

Sauces served with sautéed meats are usually made directly in the sauté pan, using the **fond**. They often incorporate a previously thickened sauce. Sauce suggestions for sautéed meats are found in Table 10.5.

Fond—*(1) French for stock or base; (2) the concentrated juices, drippings and bits of food left in pans after foods are roasted or sautéed; it is used to flavor sauces made directly in the pans in which the foods were cooked.*

Procedure for Sautéing Meats

1. Heat a sauté pan and add enough oil or clarified butter to just cover the bottom. The pan should be large enough to hold the meat in a single layer. A pan that is too large may cause the fat or meat to burn.
2. Cut the meat into **cutlets, scallops, émincés, medallions, mignonettes, noisettes, chops** or small even-sized pieces. Season the meat and dredge in flour if desired.
3. Add the meat to the sauté pan in a single layer. Do not crowd the pan.
4. Adjust the temperature so that the meat's exterior browns properly without burning and the interior cooks. The heat should be high enough to complete the cooking process before the meat begins to stew in its own juices.
5. Small items may be tossed using the sauté pan's sloped sides to flip them back on top of themselves. Do not toss the meat more than necessary, however. The pan should remain in contact with the heat source as much as possible to maintain proper temperatures. Larger items should be turned using tongs or a kitchen fork. Avoid burns by not splashing hot fat.
6. Larger items can be finished in an oven. Either place the sauté pan in the oven or transfer the meat to another pan. The latter procedure allows a sauce to be made in the original pan as the meat continues to cook.

Cutlet—*a relatively thick, boneless slice of meat.*

Scallop—*a thin, boneless slice of meat.*

Émincé—*a small, thin, boneless piece of meat.*

Paillard—*a scallop of meat pounded until thin, usually grilled.*

Medallion—*a small, round, relatively thick slice of meat.*

Mignonette—*a medallion.*

Noisette—*a small, usually round, portion of meat cut from the rib.*

Chop—*a cut of meat, including part of the rib.*

Procedure for Preparing a Sauce in the Sauté Pan

1. If a sauce is to be made in the pan, hold the meat in a warm spot while preparing the sauce. When the meat is removed from the pan, leave a small amount of fat as well as the fond. If there is excessive fat, degrease the pan, leaving just enough to cover its bottom. Add ingredients such as garlic, shallots and mushrooms that will be used as garnishes and sauce flavorings; sauté them.

2. Deglaze the pan with wine or stock. Scrape the pan, loosening the fond and allowing it to dissolve in the liquid. Reduce the deglazing liquid by approximately three quarters.
3. Add jus lié or stock to the pan. Cook and reduce the sauce to the desired consistency.
4. Add any ingredients that do not require cooking such as herbs and spices. Adjust the seasonings with salt and pepper.
5. For service, the meat may be returned to the pan for a moment to reheat it and coat it with the finished sauce. The meat should remain in the sauce just long enough to reheat. Do not attempt to cook the meat in the sauce.

1. Adding the veal scallops to the pan. Note the relationship of scallops to pan size.

2. Adding the chopped shallots to the pan and sautéing them.

RECIPE 12.3

Sautéed Veal Scallops with White Wine Lemon Sauce

Yield: 6 servings

Veal scallops, 3 oz. (90 g) each	12	12
Clarified butter	2 oz.	60 ml
Flour	4 oz.	120 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Shallots, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
White wine	6 oz.	180 ml
Lemon juice	2 oz.	60 ml
Brown veal stock	4 oz.	120 ml
Unsalted butter	2 oz.	60 g
Lemon wedges	12	12

1. Pound the scallops to a uniform thickness, as described in Chapter 14, Veal.
2. Heat a sauté pan and add the clarified butter.
3. Dredge the scallops in seasoned flour and add to the pan in a single layer. Sauté on each side for 1–2 minutes. As the first scallops are done, remove them to a warm platter and sauté the remaining scallops.
4. Add the chopped shallots to the pan and sauté.
5. Deglaze the pan with the white wine and lemon juice.
6. Add the brown veal stock and reduce by half.
7. Swirl in the butter (monté au beurre).

3. Deglazing the pan with white wine and lemon juice.

4. Adding the brown veal stock and reducing by half.

5. Swirling in the butter and adjusting the seasonings.

8. Adjust the seasonings with salt and pepper.
9. Serve two scallops per person with approximately 1 ounce (30 milliliters) of sauce. Garnish with lemon wedges.

Approximate values per 8-oz. (232-g) serving: **Calories** 537, **Total fat** 28 g, **Saturated fat** 13 g, **Cholesterol** 208 mg, **Sodium** 325 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 17 g, **Protein** 47 g, **Vitamin A** 22%

Pan-Frying

Pan-frying uses more fat than sautéing to conduct heat. Pan-fried meats should be tender (a reflection of the quality of the raw product), of good color (determined by proper cooking temperatures) and with a good overall flavor. Meats to be pan-fried are usually breaded. In addition to providing flavor, breading seals the meat. The breading should be free from breaks, thus preventing the fat from coming into direct contact with the meat or collecting in a pocket formed between the meat and the breading. Pan-fried items should be golden in color, and the breading should not be soggy.

Selecting Meats to Pan-Fry

As with other dry-heat cooking methods, tender meats of high quality should be used because the meat will not be tenderized by the cooking process. Meats that are pan-fried are often cut into cutlets or scallops.

Seasoning Meats to be Pan-Fried

Pan-fried meats are usually seasoned lightly with salt and pepper either by applying them directly to the meat or by adding them to the flour and bread crumbs used in the breading procedure.

Determining Doneness

The most accurate way to determine the doneness of a pan-fried item is by timing. The touch method is difficult to use because of the large amounts of hot fat. It also may not be as accurate as with broiled or grilled meats because pan-fried meats are often quite thin.

Accompaniments to Pan-Fried Meats

Any sauce served with pan-fried meats is usually made separately because there is no fond created during the pan-frying process. Sauce suggestions are listed in Table 10.5.

Procedure for Pan-Frying Meats

1. Slice and pound the meat into scallops, as described in Chapter 14, Veal.
2. Bread the meat using the standard breading procedure detailed in Chapter 21, Deep-Frying.
3. Heat a moderate amount of fat or oil in a heavy pan. The temperature should be slightly lower than that used to sauté so that the breading will be nicely browned when the item is fully cooked.
4. Place the meat in the pan, being careful not to splash the hot fat. The fat should come one third to one half way up the side of the meat. Fry until brown. Turn and brown the other side. Ideally, pan-fried meats should be fully cooked when they are well browned on both sides.
5. Remove the meat from the pan; drain it on absorbent paper before serving.

RECIPE 12.4

Breaded Veal Cutlets

Yield: 10 servings

Veal cutlet, 4 oz. (120 g) each	10	10
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Standard breading:	as needed	as needed
Flour		
Eggs		
Milk		
Bread crumbs		
Vegetable oil	as needed	as needed
Butter	6 oz.	180 g
Lemon wedges	20	20

1. Using a mallet, pound the cutlets to an even thickness, approximately 1/4 inch (6 millimeters).
2. Season the cutlets with salt and pepper.
3. Bread the cutlets using the standard breading procedure described in Chapter 21, Deep-Frying.
4. Heat a heavy pan to moderate heat; add approximately 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) of oil.
5. Add the cutlets in a single layer. Do not crowd the pan. Brown on one side, then the other. Total cooking time should be approximately 4 minutes.
6. Remove the cutlets and drain on absorbent paper.
7. Melt the butter in a small pan until it foams.
8. Place one cutlet on each plate and pour approximately 1/2 ounce (15 milliliters) butter over each portion. Garnish with lemon wedges.

Approximate values per 5-oz. (152-g) serving: **Calories** 501, **Total fat** 37 g, **Saturated fat** 17 g, **Cholesterol** 193 mg, **Sodium** 338 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 5 g, **Protein** 36 g, **Vitamin A** 17%

1. Adding the breaded cutlets to the hot pan. Note the amount of oil in the pan.

2. Turning the cutlets to brown on the second side.

3. Melting the butter in a separate pan until it foams.

4. Pouring the butter over the cutlet.

Moist-Heat Cooking Methods

Moist-heat cooking methods subject food to heat and moisture. Moist heat is often, but not always, used to tenderize tougher cuts of meat through long, slow cooking. Simmering is the only moist-heat cooking method discussed here as it is the only one frequently used with meat.

Simmering

Simmering is usually associated with specific tougher cuts of meat that need to be tenderized through long, slow, moist cooking. Quality simmered meats have good flavor and texture. The flavor is determined by the cooking liquid; the texture is a result of proper cooking temperatures and time.

Selecting Meats to Simmer

Meats such as fresh or corned beef brisket, fresh or cured hams and tongue are often simmered. Beef briskets and tongues, pork butts and hams are often simmered whole.

Seasoning Meats to be Simmered

If the meat to be simmered was cured by either smoking (as with cured hams, ham hocks and smoked pork butt) or pickling (as with corned beef and pickled tongue), the cooking liquid will not be used to make a sauce and should not be seasoned. Indeed, simmering cured meats helps leach out some of the excess salt, making the finished dish more palatable.

Cooking Temperatures

Moist-heat cooking methods generally use lower temperatures than dry-heat cooking methods. Meats are normally simmered at temperatures between 180°F and 200°F (82°C–85°C). In larger food service operations, meats such as hams and corned beef are cooked at temperatures as low as 150°F (66°C) for up to 12 hours. Although lower cooking temperatures result in less shrinkage and a more tender finished product, cooking times can be increased to the point that very low cooking temperatures may not be practical.

Determining Doneness

Simmered meats are always cooked well done, which is determined by tenderness. The size and quality of the raw product determines the cooking time. Undercooked meats will be tough and chewy. Overcooked meats will be stringy and may even fall apart.

To test large cuts of meat for doneness, a kitchen fork should be easily inserted into the meat and the meat should slide off the fork. Smaller pieces of meat should be tender to the bite or easily cut with a table fork.

Accompaniments to Simmered Meats

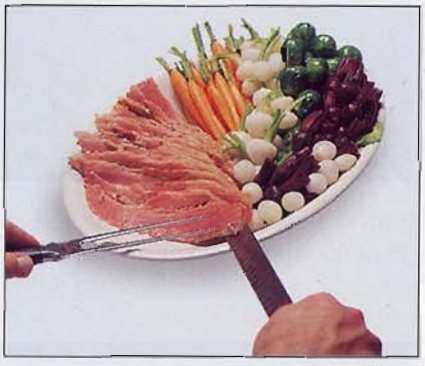
Simmered meats are often served with boiled or steamed vegetables, as in the case of corned beef and cabbage. Pickled meats are usually served with mustard or horseradish sauce on the side.

Procedure for Simmering Meats

1. Cut, trim or tie the meat according to the recipe.
2. Bring an adequate amount of liquid to a boil. There should be enough liquid to cover the meat completely. Too much liquid will leach off much of the meat's flavor; too little will leave a portion of the meat exposed, preventing it from cooking. Because the dish's final flavor is determined by the flavor of the liquid, use plenty of mirepoix, flavorings and seasonings.
3. When simmering smoked or cured items, start them in cold water. This helps draw off some of the strong smoked or pickled flavors.
4. Add the meat to the liquid.
5. Reduce the heat to the desired temperature and cook until the meat is tender. Do not allow the cooking liquid to boil. Boiling results in a tough

or overcooked and stringy product. If the simmered meat is to be served cold, a moister and juicier product can be achieved by removing the pot from the stove before the meat is fully cooked. The meat and the liquid can be cooled in a water bath like that for a stock, as described in Chapter 10, Stocks and Sauces. This allows the residual heat in the cooking liquid to finish cooking the meat.

1. Placing the corned beef and sachet in an appropriate pot and covering with stock.



2. Presenting the carved beef with the vegetable garnish.

RECIPE 12.5

New England Boiled Dinner

Yield: 12 6-oz (180-g) servings

Corned beef brisket, 8 lb. (6.5 kg)	1	1
White stock	as needed	as needed
Sachet:		
Bay leaves	2	2
Dried thyme	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Peppercorns, cracked	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Parsley stems	10	10
Mustard seeds	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Cinnamon sticks	2	2
Allspice berries	4	4
Baby red beets	24	24
Baby turnips	24	24
Baby carrots	24	24
Brussels sprouts	24	24
Pearl onions	24	24
Potatoes, Red Bliss	24	24

1. Place the beef in a pot and add enough stock to cover it. Add the sachet, bring to a boil and reduce to a simmer.
2. Simmer until the beef is tender, approximately 3 hours. Remove the beef and hold in a hotel pan in a small amount of the cooking liquid.
3. Peel or prepare the vegetables and potatoes as needed and cook separately in a portion of the cooking liquid.
4. Carve the beef and serve with two of each of the vegetables and horseradish sauce (page 200).

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 1067, **Total fat** 58 g, **Saturated fat** 19 g, **Cholesterol** 29 mg, **Sodium** 3844 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 73 g, **Protein** 64 g, **Vitamin A** 27%, **Vitamin C** 200%, **Iron** 66%

Combination Cooking Methods

Braising and stewing are referred to as combination cooking methods because both dry heat and moist heat are used to achieve the desired results.

Braising

Braised meats are first browned and then cooked in a liquid that serves as a sauce for the meat. A well-prepared braised dish has the rich flavor of the meat in the sauce and the moisture and flavor of the sauce in the meat. It

should be almost fork tender but not falling apart. The meat should have an attractive color from the initial browning and final glazing.

Selecting Meats to Braise

Braising can be used for tender cuts (such as those from the loin or rib) or tougher cuts (such as those from the chuck or shank). Any meat to be braised should be well marbled with an ample fat content in order to produce a moist finished product.

If tender cuts such as veal chops or pork chops are braised, the finished dish has a uniquely different flavor and texture than if the meats were cooked by a dry-heat method. Tender cuts require shorter cooking times than tougher cuts because lengthy cooking is not needed to break down connective tissue.

More often, braising is used with tougher cuts that are tenderized by the long, moist cooking process. Cuts from the chuck and shank are popular choices, as they are very flavorful and contain relatively large amounts of collagen, which adds richness to the finished product.

Large pieces of meat can be braised, then carved like a roast. Portion control cuts and diced meats can also be braised.

Seasoning Meats to be Braised

The seasoning and overall flavor of a braised dish is largely a function of the quality of the cooking liquid and the mirepoix, herbs, spices and other ingredients that season the meat as it cooks. However, braised meats can be marinated before they are cooked to tenderize them and add flavor. The marinade is then sometimes incorporated into the braising liquid. Salt and pepper may be added to the flour if the meat is dredged before it is browned, or the meat may be seasoned directly (although the salt may draw out moisture and inhibit browning).

A standard sachet and a tomato product are usually added at the start of cooking. The tomato product adds flavor and color to the finished sauce as well as acid to tenderize the meat during the cooking process. Final seasoning should not take place until cooking is complete and the sauce will not be reduced further.

Cooking Temperatures

Braised meats are always browned before simmering. As a general rule, smaller cuts are floured before browning; larger cuts are not. Flouring seals the meat, promotes even browning and adds body to the sauce that accompanies the meat. Whether floured or not, the meat is browned in fat. After browning, white meats should be golden to amber in color; red meats should be dark brown. Do not brown the meat too quickly at too high a temperature since it is important to develop a well-caramelized surface. The caramelized surface adds color and flavor to the final product.

The meat and the braising liquid are brought to a boil over direct heat. The temperature is then reduced below boiling, and the pot is covered. Cooking can be finished in the oven or on the stove top. The oven provides gentle, even heat without the risk of scorching. If the braise is finished on the stove top, proper temperatures must be maintained carefully throughout the cooking process, and great care must be taken to prevent scorching or burning. Lower temperatures and longer cooking times result in more even cooking and thorough penetration of the cooking liquid, providing a more flavorful final product.

Finishing Braised Meats

Near the end of the cooking process, the lid may be removed from oven-braised meats. Finishing braised meats without a cover serves two purposes. First, the meat can be glazed by basting it often. (As the basting liquid evaporates, the meat is browned and a strongly flavored glaze is formed.) Second,

removing the lid allows the cooking liquid to reduce, thickening it and concentrating its flavors for use as a sauce.

Determining Doneness

Braised meats are done when they are tender. A fork inserted into the meat should meet little resistance. Properly braised meats should remain intact and not fall apart when handled gently.

Braised meats that fall apart or are stringy are overcooked. If the finished product is tough, it was probably undercooked or cooked at too high a temperature. If the entire dish lacks flavor, the meat may not have been properly browned or the cooking liquid may have been poorly seasoned.

Accompaniments to Braised Meats

Large braised items are often served like roasts. They are carved against the grain in thin slices and served with their sauce. Vegetables can be cooked with the braised meat, cooked separately and added when the main item has finished cooking or added at service. If the vegetables are cooked with the main item, they should be added at intervals based on their individual cooking times to prevent overcooking.

Procedure for Braising Meats

The liquid used for braising is usually thickened in one of three ways:

1. With a roux added at the start of the cooking process; the roux thickens the sauce as the meat cooks.
2. Prethickened before the meat is added.
3. Thickened after the meat is cooked either by puréeing the mirepoix or by using roux, arrowroot or cornstarch.

The procedure for braising meats includes variations for whichever thickening method is selected.

1. Heat a small amount of oil in a heavy pan.
2. Dredge the meat to be braised in seasoned flour, if desired, and add it to the oil.
3. Brown the meat well on all sides and remove from the pan.
4. Add a mirepoix to the pan and caramelize it well. If using roux, it should be added at this time.
5. Add the appropriate stock or sauce so that when the meat is returned to the pan the liquid comes approximately one third of the way up the side of the meat.
6. Add aromatics and seasonings.
7. Return the meat to the sauce. Tightly cover the pot and bring it to a simmer. Cook slowly either on the stove top or by placing the covered pot directly in an oven at 250°F–300°F (120°C–150°C).
8. Cook the item, basting or turning it often so that all sides of the meat benefit from the moisture and flavor of the sauce.
9. When the meat is done, remove it from the pan and hold it in a warm place while the sauce is finished.
10. The sauce may be reduced on the stove top to intensify its flavors. If the meat was braised in a stock, the stock may be thickened using a roux, arrowroot or cornstarch. Strain the sauce or, if desired, purée the mirepoix and other ingredients and return them to the sauce. Adjust the sauce's consistency as desired.

RECIPE 12.6

Aunt Ruthie's Pot Roast

Yield: 12 6-oz. (180-g) meat and 4-oz. (120-g) sauce servings

Vegetable oil	3 oz.	90 g
Beef brisket	6 lb.	2.7 kg
Onion, thinly sliced	3 lb.	1.4 kg
Garlic, minced	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Brown veal stock	1 qt.	1 lt
Tomato sauce	1 pt.	450 ml
Brown sugar	4 oz.	120 g
Paprika	1 tsp.	5 ml
Dry mustard	2 tsp.	10 ml
Lemon juice	8 oz.	250 ml
Ketchup	8 oz.	250 g
Red wine vinegar	8 oz.	250 ml
Worcestershire sauce	2 oz.	60 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Heat the oil in a large skillet. Add the beef and brown thoroughly. Remove and reserve the brisket.
2. Add the onions and garlic to the pan and sauté.
3. Add the stock and tomato sauce to the pan.
4. Return the brisket to the pan, cover tightly and bring to a boil. Braise at 325°F (160°C) for 1 1/2 hours, basting or turning the brisket often.
5. Combine the remaining ingredients and add to the pan.
6. Continue cooking and basting the brisket until tender, approximately 1 hour.
7. Remove the brisket, degrease the sauce and adjust its consistency and seasonings. Do not strain the sauce.
8. Slice the brisket against the grain and serve with the sauce.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 803, **Total fat** 52 g, **Saturated fat** 16 g, **Cholesterol** 224 mg, **Sodium** 3290 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 40 g, **Protein** 46 g, **Vitamin A** 25%, **Vitamin C** 100%

1. Browning the brisket.

2. Sautéing the onions and garlic.

3. Basting the brisket. Note the proper amount of cooking liquid.

Stewing

Stewing, like braising, is a combination cooking method. In many ways, the procedures for stewing are identical to those for braising although stewing is usually associated with smaller or bite-sized pieces of meat.

There are two main types of stews: brown stews and white stews.

When making **brown stews**, the meat is first browned in fat; then a cooking liquid is added. The initial browning adds flavor and color to the finished product. The same characteristics apply to a good brown stew that apply to a good braised dish: It should be fork tender and have an attractive color and a rich flavor.

There are two types of **white stews**: **fricassees**, in which the meat is first cooked in a small amount of fat without coloring, then combined with a cooking liquid; and **blanquettes**, in which the meat is first blanched, then rinsed and added to a cooking liquid. A white stew should have the same flavor and texture characteristics as a brown stew, but should be white or ivory in color.

Stew Terminology

Ragout—A general term that refers to white or brown stews in which the meat is cooked by dry heat before a liquid is added. In French, ragout means "to bring back the appetite."

Fricassee—A white ragout usually made from white meat or small game, seared without browning and garnished with small onions and mushrooms.

Navarin—A brown ragout generally made with turnips, other root vegetables, onions, peas and lamb.

Blanquette—A white stew in which the meat is first blanched, then added to a stock or sauce to complete the cooking and tenderizing process. Blanquettes are finished with a liaison of egg yolks and heavy cream.

Chili con carne—A ragout of ground or diced meat cooked with onions, chile peppers, cumin and other spices. Despite the objections of purists, chili sometimes contains beans.

Goulash—A Hungarian beef stew made with onions and paprika and garnished with potatoes.

Selecting Meats to Stew

Stewing uses moist heat to tenderize meat just as braising does; therefore, many of the same cuts can be used. Meats that are to be stewed should be trimmed of excess fat and connective tissue and cut into 1- to 2-inch (2.5- to 5-cm) cubes.

Seasoning Meats to be Stewed

Stews, like braised meats, get much of their flavor from their cooking liquid. A stew's seasoning and overall flavor is a direct result of the quality of the cooking liquid and the vegetables, herbs, spices and other ingredients added during cooking.

Cooking Temperatures

Meats for brown stews are first cooked at high temperatures over direct heat until well browned. Meats for fricassees are first sautéed at low temperatures so that they do not develop color.

Once the cooking liquid has been added and the moist-heat cooking process has begun, do not allow the stew to boil. Stews benefit from low-temperature cooking. If practical, stews can be covered and finished in the oven.

Determining Doneness

Stewed meats are done when they are fork tender. Test them by removing a piece of meat to a plate and cutting it with a fork. Any vegetables that are cooked with the meat should be added at the proper times so that they and the meat are completely cooked at the same time.

Accompaniments to Stewed Meats

Stews are often complete meals in themselves, containing meat, vegetables and potatoes in one dish. Stews that do not contain a starch are often served with pasta or rice.

Procedure for Stewing Meats—Brown Stews

Red meats, lamb and game are used in brown stews. The procedure for making a brown stew is very similar to braising.

1. Trim the meat of excess fat and silverskin and cut into 1- to 2-inch (2.5- to 5-cm) pieces.
2. Dredge the meat in flour if desired. Heat an appropriate-sized pan and add enough oil to cover the bottom. Cook the meat in the oil, browning it well on all sides. Onions and garlic can be added at this time and browned.
3. Add flour to the meat and fat and cook to make a brown roux.
4. Gradually add the liquid to the roux, stirring to prevent lumps. Bring the stew to a boil and reduce to a simmer.
5. Add a tomato product and a sachet or a bouquet garni. Cover and place in the oven or continue to simmer on the stove top until the meat is tender. Add other ingredients such as vegetables or potatoes at the proper time so that they will be done when the meat is tender.
6. When the meat is tender, remove the sachet or bouquet garni. The meat may be strained out and the sauce thickened with roux, cornstarch or arrowroot or reduced to concentrate its flavors.
7. If not added during the cooking process, vegetables and other garnishes may be cooked separately and added to the finished stew.

RECIPE 12.7

BROWN BEEF STEW

Yield: 8 8-oz. (250-g) servings

Oil	2 oz.	60 ml
Beef chuck or shank, trimmed and cut into 1 1/2-in. (3.5-cm) cubes	4 lb. 8 oz.	2 kg
Salt	2 tsp.	10 ml
Pepper	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Onion, small dice	10 oz.	300 g
Garlic, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Flour	1 1/2 oz.	45 g
Red wine	8 oz.	250 ml
Brown stock	1 qt.	1 lt
Tomato purée	4 oz.	120 g
Sachet:		
Bay leaves	2	2
Dried thyme	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Peppercorns, crushed	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Parsley stems	10	10

1. Heat a heavy pot until very hot and add the oil.
2. Season the beef and add it to the pot, browning it well on all sides. Do not overcrowd the pot. If necessary, cook the beef in several batches.
3. Add the onions and garlic and sauté until the onions are slightly browned.
4. Add the flour and stir to make a roux. Brown the roux lightly.
5. Add the red wine and brown stock slowly, stirring to prevent lumps.
6. Add the tomato purée and the sachet.
7. Bring to a simmer and cook until the beef is tender, approximately 1 1/2 to 2 hours.
8. Optional: Remove the cooked beef from the sauce and strain the sauce. Return the beef to the sauce.
9. Degrease the stew by skimming off the fat.

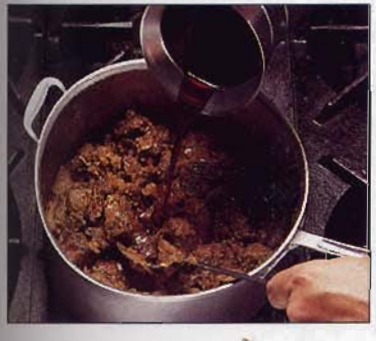
VARIATION: Vegetables such as turnips, carrots, celery and pearl onions can be cooked separately and added to the stew as garnish.

Approximate values per 8-oz. (250-g) serving: **Calories** 590, **Total fat** 32 g, **Saturated fat** 11 g, **Cholesterol** 185 mg, **Sodium** 710 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 15 g, **Protein** 58 g, **Vitamin A** 45%, **Iron** 40%

1. Browning the beef.

2. Sautéing the garlic and onions until slightly browned.

3. Adding the flour and making a roux.



4. Adding the red wine and beef stock.

5. Adding the tomato purée and sachet.

6. Degreasing the stew.

Procedure for Stewing Meats—Braised White Stews (Fricassees)

The procedure for making fricassees is similar to the procedure for brown stews. The primary difference is that the meat is sautéed but not allowed to brown. The braised white stew (fricassee) procedure outlined here is the basis for Recipe 14.12, Veal Fricassee.

1. Trim the meat of excess fat and silverskin and cut into 1- to 2-inch (2.5- to 5-cm) pieces.
2. Heat an appropriate-sized pan and add enough oil to cover the bottom. Add the meat (and often an onion) to the pan and cook without browning.
3. Sprinkle the meat (and onion) with flour and cook to make a blond roux.
4. Gradually add the liquid, stirring to prevent lumps. Bring the stew to a boil and reduce to a simmer.
5. Add a bouquet garni and seasonings. Cover the stew and place in the oven or continue to simmer on the stove top, being careful not to burn or scorch the stew.
6. Continue to cook until the meat is tender. If the sauce is too thin, remove the meat from the sauce and hold the meat in a warm place. Reduce the sauce to the proper consistency on the stove top or thicken it by adding a small amount of blond roux, cornstarch or arrowroot.

Procedure for Stewing Meats—Simmered White Stews (Blanquettes)

Unlike fricassees, blanquettes contain meat that was blanched, not sautéed. (Because the meat is cooked only by moist heat and never by dry heat, the blanquette cooking process is not a true combination cooking method; nevertheless, because of its striking similarities to stewing, it is included here.) The most common blanquette is made with veal and is known as blanquette de veau, but any white meat or lamb can be prepared in this manner using a variety of garnishes. The simmered white stew (blanquette) procedure outlined here is the basis for Recipe 15.15, Blanquette of Lamb.

1. Trim the meat of excess fat and silverskin and cut into 1- to 2-inch (2.5- to 5-cm) pieces.
2. Blanch the cubed meat by placing the meat in an appropriate pot, covering with cool water, adding salt, and bringing it rapidly to a boil. Drain the water. Rinse the meat to remove any impurities.
3. Return the meat to the pot and add enough stock to cover. Add a bouquet garni, salt and pepper. Simmer until the meat is tender, approximately 1 to 1 1/2 hours.
4. Strain the meat from the stock. Discard the bouquet garni. Bring the stock to a boil, thicken it with a blond roux and simmer for 15 minutes.
5. Return the meat to the thickened stock. Add a liaison of cream and egg yolks to enrich and thicken the stew. Heat the stew to a simmer. Do not boil or the egg yolks will curdle.
6. If any vegetables are to be added, they should be cooked separately and added to the thickened stock with the meat.
7. Adjust the seasonings with a few drops of lemon juice, nutmeg or salt and pepper as needed.

CONCLUSION

Because meat may account for the largest portion of your food-cost dollar, it should be purchased carefully, stored properly and fabricated appropriately. The various cuts and flavors of meat (beef, veal, lamb and pork) can be successfully broiled, grilled, roasted, sautéed, pan-fried, simmered, braised or stewed, provided you follow a few simple procedures and learn which cuts respond best to the various cooking methods.

QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

1. Explain the difference between primals, subprimals and fabricated cuts of meat. Why is it important to be skilled in meat fabrication?
2. What is connective tissue composed of, and where is it found? What happens to connective tissues at normal cooking temperatures?
3. Discuss the government's role in regulating the marketing and sale of meat.
4. At what temperature should fresh meat be stored? At what temperature should frozen meat be stored?
5. Would it be better to grill or braise a piece of meat that contains a great deal of connective tissue? Explain your answer.
6. List three ways to improve the cooking qualities of lean meats. What techniques can be used to compensate for the lack of fat?
7. Describe the similarities between sautéing meats and pan-frying them. Describe the differences.
8. Describe the similarities between braising meats and stewing them. Describe the differences.

CHAPTER 13 BEEF

Ruth's Chris Steakhouse, Phoenix, AZ

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- identify the primal, subprimal and fabricated cuts of beef
- perform basic butchering procedures
- apply appropriate cooking methods to several common cuts of beef

Beef is the meat of domesticated cattle. Most of the beef Americans eat comes from steers, which are male cattle castrated as calves and specifically raised for beef. Although Americans are consuming less beef today than we once did, we still consume far more beef than any other meat. The beef we are eating is leaner than that of years past thanks to advances in animal husbandry and closer trimming of exterior fat.

NOT ALL CATTLE ARE CALLED "DAISY"

Cattle is the collective name for all domesticated oxen (genus *Bos*). Cattle are classified as:

Bulls—male cattle, usually not raised to be eaten.

Calves—young cows or bulls prized for their meat.

Cows—female cattle after their first calving, raised in this country principally for milk and calf production. In France, cows are used for beef when they are no longer needed for milk.

Heifers—young cows or cows before their first calving. Heifer meat and organs are becoming increasingly popular as a food source.

Stags—male cattle castrated after maturity, principally used for dog food.

Steers—male cattle castrated prior to maturity and principally raised for beef.

PRIMAL AND SUBPRIMAL CUTS OF BEEF

After the steer is slaughtered, it is cut into four pieces (called quarters) for easy handling. This is done by first splitting the carcass down the backbone into two bilateral halves. Each half is divided into the forequarter (the front portion) and hindquarter (the rear portion) by cutting along the natural curvature between the 12th and 13th ribs. The quartered carcass is then further reduced into the primal cuts and the subprimal and fabricated cuts.

The primal cuts of beef are the chuck, brisket and shank, rib, short plate, short loin, sirloin, flank and round. Figure 13.1 shows the relationship between a steer's bone structure and the primal cuts. It is important to know the location of bones when cutting or working with meats. This makes meat fabrication and carving easier and aids in identifying cuts. Figure 13.2 shows the primal cuts of beef and their location on the carcass. An entire beef carcass can range in weight from 500 to more than 800 pounds (225–360 kg).

Forequarter

Chuck

The primal chuck is the animal's shoulder; it accounts for approximately 28% of carcass weight. It contains a portion of the backbone, five rib bones and portions of the blade and arm bones.

Because an animal constantly uses its shoulder muscles, chuck contains a high percentage of connective tissue and is quite tough. This tough cut of beef, however, is one of the most flavorful.

The primal chuck is used less frequently than other primal cuts in food service operations. If cooked whole, the chuck is difficult to cut or carve because of the large number of bones and relatively small muscle groups that travel in different directions.

The primal chuck produces several fabricated cuts: cross rib pot roast, chuck short ribs, cubed or tenderized steaks, stew meat and ground chuck. Because the meat is tough, the fabricated cuts usually benefit from moist-heat cooking or combination cooking methods such as stewing and braising.

Brisket and Shank

The brisket and shank are located beneath the primal chuck on the front half of the carcass. Together, they form a single primal that accounts for approximately 8% of carcass weight. This primal consists of the steer's breast (the

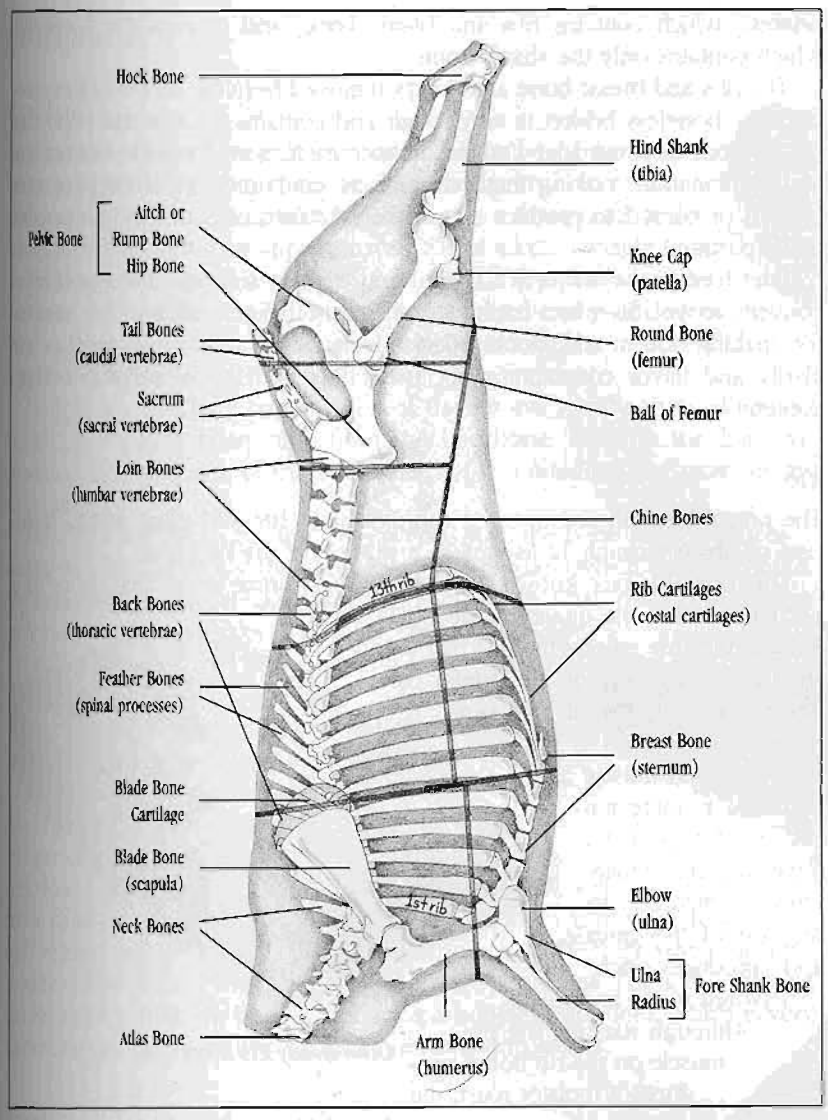


FIGURE 13.1 *The Skeletal Structure of a Steer*

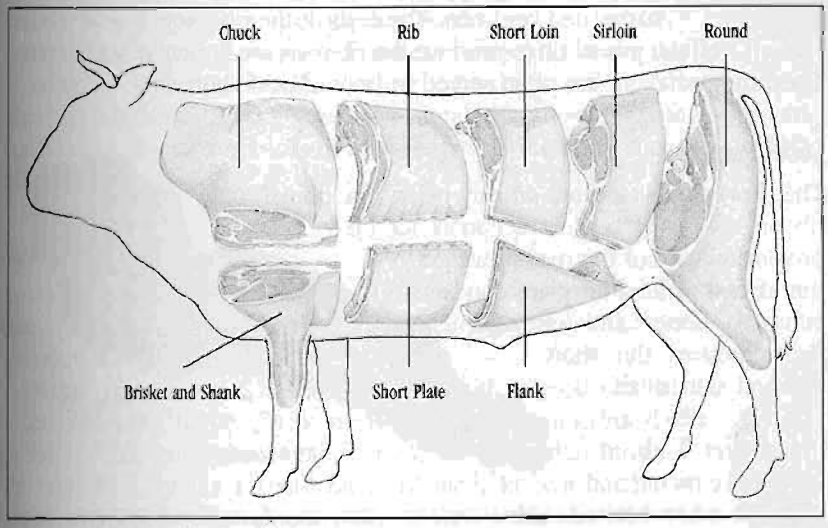


FIGURE 13.2 *The Primal Cuts of Beef*

brisket), which contains ribs and breast bone, and its arm (the foreshank), which contains only the shank bone.

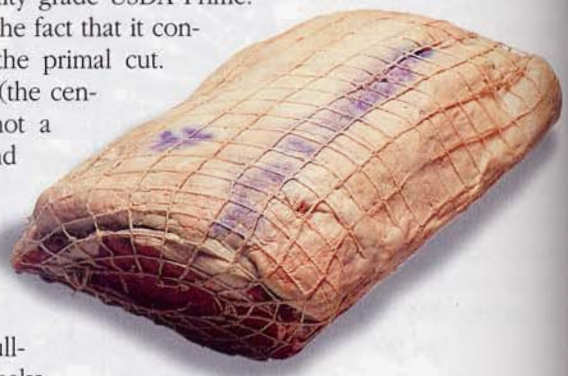
The ribs and breast bone are always removed from the brisket before cooking. The boneless brisket is very tough and contains a substantial percentage of fat, both intermuscular and subcutaneous. It is well suited for moist-heat and combination cooking methods such as simmering or braising. It is often pickled or corned to produce corned beef brisket, or cured and peppered to make pastrami.

Beef foreshanks are very flavorful and high in collagen. Because collagen converts to gelatin when cooked using moist heat, foreshanks are excellent for making soups and stocks. Ground shank meat is often used to help clarify and flavor consommés because of its rich flavor and high collagen content.

Rib

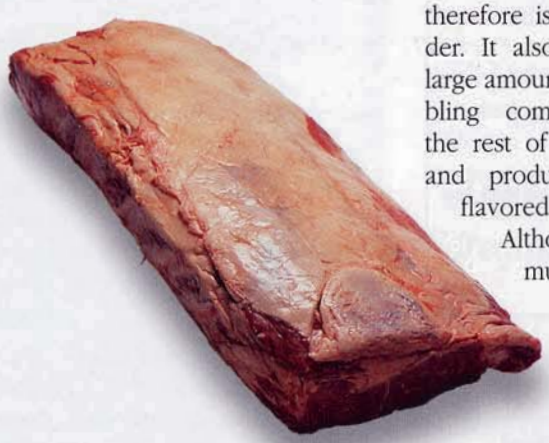
The primal beef rib accounts for approximately 10% of carcass weight. It consists of ribs 6 through 12 as well as a portion of the backbone.

This primal is best known for yielding roast prime rib of beef. Prime rib is not named after the quality grade USDA Prime. Rather, its name reflects the fact that it constitutes the majority of the primal cut. The eye meat of the rib (the center muscle portion) is not a well-exercised muscle and therefore is quite tender. It also contains large amounts of marbling compared to the rest of the carcass and produces rich, full-flavored roasts and steaks.



Oven-Ready Rib Roast

Although roasting the eye muscle on the rib bones produces a moister roast, the eye meat can be removed to produce a boneless rib eye roast or cut into rib eye steaks. The rib bones that are separated from the rib eye meat are quite meaty and flavorful and can be served as barbecued beef ribs. The ends of the rib bones that are trimmed off the primal rib to produce the rib roast are known as beef short ribs. They are meaty and are often served as braised beef short ribs.



Beef Rib Eye Roll

Short Plate

The short plate is located directly below the primal rib on a side of beef; it accounts for approximately 9% of the overall weight of the carcass. The short plate contains rib bones and cartilage and produces the short ribs and skirt steak.

Skirt Steak

Short ribs are meaty, yet high in connective tissue, and are best when braised. Skirt steak is often marinated and grilled as fajitas. Other, less meaty portions of the short plate are trimmed and ground.

Hindquarter

Short Loin

The short loin is the anterior (front) portion of the beef loin. It is located just behind the rib and becomes the first primal cut of the hindquarter when the side of beef is divided into a forequarter and hindquarter. It accounts for approximately 8% of carcass weight.

Porterhouse Steak

The short loin contains a single rib, the 13th, and a portion of the backbone. With careful butchering, this small primal can yield several subprimal and fabricated cuts, all of which are among the most tender, popular and expensive cuts of beef.

The loin eye muscle, a continuation of the rib eye muscle, runs along the top of the T-shaped bones that form the backbone. Beneath the loin eye muscle on the other side of the backbone is the tenderloin, the most tender cut of all.

When the short loin is cut in cross sections with the bone in, it produces—starting with the rib end of the short loin—club steaks (which do not contain any tenderloin), T-bone steaks (which contain only a small portion of tenderloin) and porterhouse steaks (which are cut from the sirloin end of the short loin and contain a large portion of tenderloin).

Strip Loin

The whole tenderloin can also be removed and cut into châteaubriand, filet mignon and tournedos. A portion of the tenderloin is located in the sirloin portion of the loin. When the entire beef loin is divided into the primal short loin and primal sirloin, the large end of the tenderloin (the butt tenderloin) is separated from the remainder of the tenderloin and remains in the sirloin; the smaller end of the tenderloin (the short tenderloin) remains in the short loin. If the tenderloin is to be kept whole, it must be removed before the short loin and sirloin are separated. The loin eye meat can be removed from the bones, producing a boneless strip loin, which is very tender and can be roasted or cut into boneless strip steaks.

Tenderloin

Sirloin

The sirloin is located in the hindquarter, between the short loin and the round. It accounts for approximately 7% of carcass weight and contains part of the backbone as well as a portion of the hip bone.

The sirloin produces bone-in or boneless roasts and steaks that are flavorful and tender. With the exception of the tenderloin portion, however, these subprimals and fabricated cuts are not as tender as those from the strip loin. Cuts from the sirloin are cooked using dry-heat methods such as broiling, grilling or roasting.

Top Sirloin Butt

Flank

The flank is located directly beneath the loin, posterior to (behind) the short plate. It accounts for approximately 6% of carcass weight. The flank contains no bones.

Although quite flavorful, it is tough meat with a good deal of fat and connective tissue. Flank meat is usually trimmed and ground, with the exception of the flank steak or London broil. The flank also contains a small piece of meat known as the hanging tenderloin. Although not actually part of the tenderloin, it is very tender and can be cooked using any method.

Flank Steak

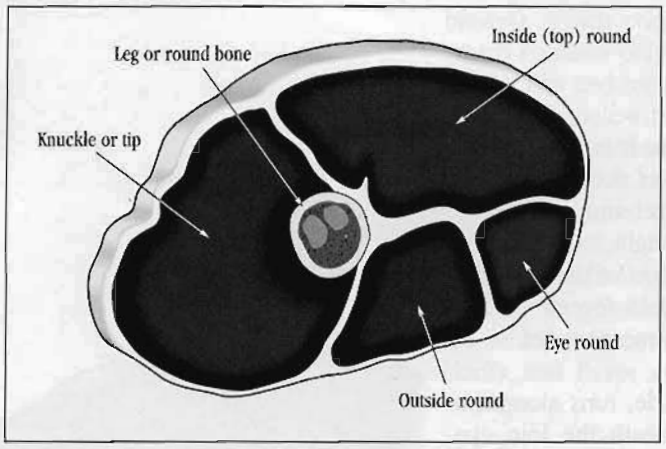
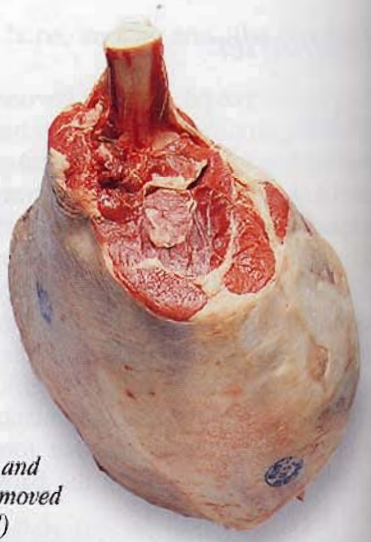


FIGURE 13.3 *Cross Cut of Muscles in a Whole Round*



Beef Round Rump and Shank Partially Removed (Steamship Round)

Top (or Inside) Round

Round

The primal round is very large, weighing as much as 200 pounds (90 kg) and accounting for approximately 24% of carcass weight. It is the hind leg of the animal and contains the round, aitch, shank and tail bones.

Meat from the round is flavorful and fairly tender. The round yields a wide variety of subprimal and fabricated cuts: the top round, outside round, eye round (the outside round and the eye round together are called the bottom round), knuckle and shank. See Figure 13.3. Steaks cut from the round are tough, but because they have large muscles and limited intermuscular fat, the top round and knuckle make good roasts. The bottom round is best when braised. The hindshank is prepared in the same fashion as the foreshank.

BEEF: FROM COLUMBUS TO CATTLE DRIVES

Although cattle have been domesticated for several thousand years, they have been in the New World only since 1493, when Columbus brought them along on his second expedition to the West Indies. During the succeeding decades, the Spanish brought cattle to Florida and Texas, where they thrived in the dry, hot climates.

The New World's desire for beef steadily grew from the 1500s to the early 1800s. By the mid-1800s, America's demand for beef outpaced the supply available from local family farms, and so cattle ranching was born. Based principally in the Southwest and West, ranchers used the open range to support large cattle herds. Texas longhorns, descended from the original Spanish cattle stock, were the animal of choice. Prized for the quality of their meat, longhorns are hardy animals that live off the range and demand little care. They grow rapidly on forage such as mesquite beans, prickly pear, weeds, shrubs and buffalo grass. Ranchers brought the cattle from the range to slaughterhouses near consumer markets or to places like Kansas City with rail links to the populous East Coast.

The open range, so vital to the 19th-century cattle industry, began to disappear rapidly after the signing of the Homestead Act of 1862. Squabbles with sheep ranchers further eroded the range land available for the great cattle herds to roam. And, as the railroads expanded westward, the cattle drives shortened and the economies of scale that supported cattle ranching began to dwindle. Although there are still many large cattle ranches, by the early 20th century, great cattle drives had become nothing more than fodder for Hollywood.

Organ Meats

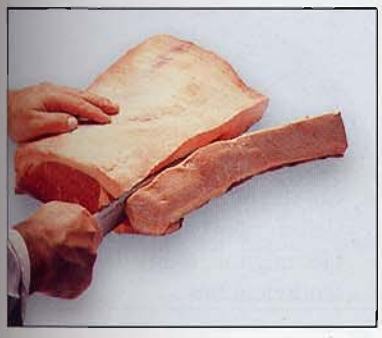
Several organ meats are used in food service operations. This group of products is known as **offal**. It includes the heart, kidney, tongue, tripe (stomach lining) and oxtail. Offal benefit from moist-heat cooking and are often used in soup, stew or braised dishes.

Offal—*also called variety meats, edible entrails (for example, the heart, kidneys, liver, sweetbreads and tongue) and extremities (for example, oxtail and pig's feet) of an animal.*

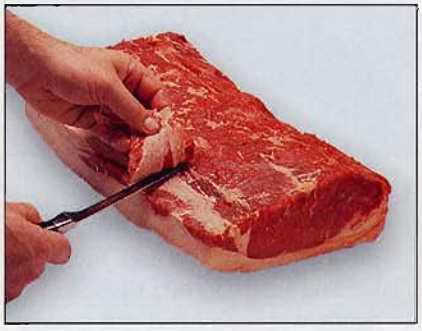
Butchering Procedures

Although many food service operations buy their beef previously cut and portioned, you still should be able to fabricate cuts of beef and perform basic butchering tasks.

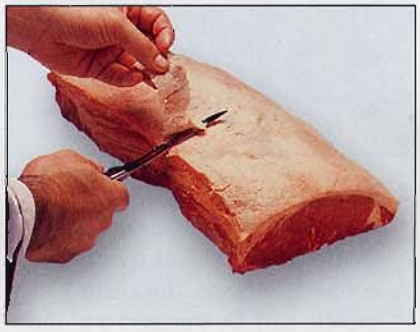
Procedure for Cutting a New York Steak from a Boneless Strip Loin



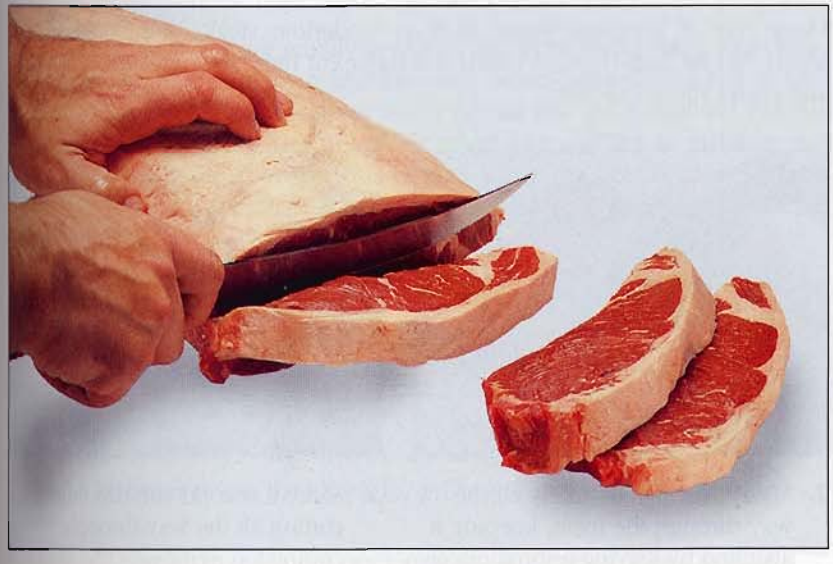
1. Square up the strip loin by trimming off the lip so it extends 1 to 2 inches (2.5 to 5 cm) from the eye muscle.



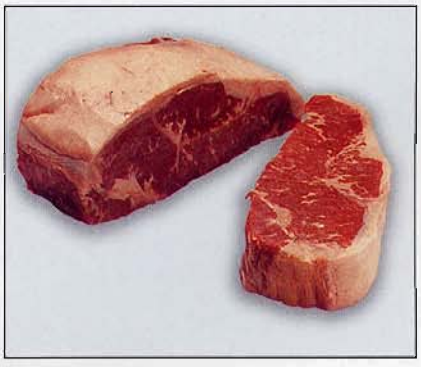
2. Turn the strip over and trim off any fat or connective tissue.



3. Turn the strip back over and trim the fat covering to a uniform thickness of 1/4 inch (6 mm).

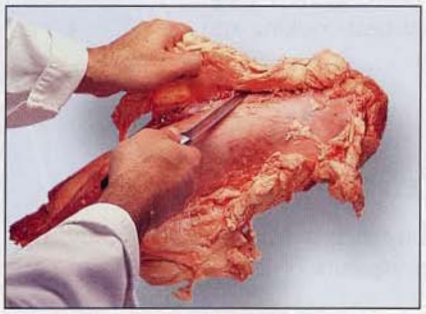


4. Cut the steaks to the thickness or weight desired.

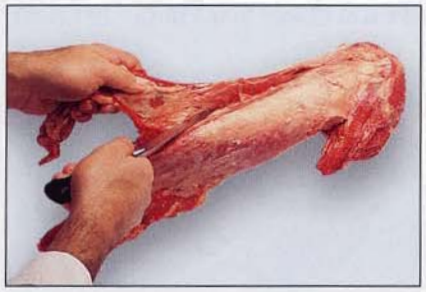


5. The eye meat of steaks located on the sirloin end of the strip is divided by a strip of connective tissue. Steaks cut from this area are called vein steaks and are inferior to steaks cut from the rib end of the strip.

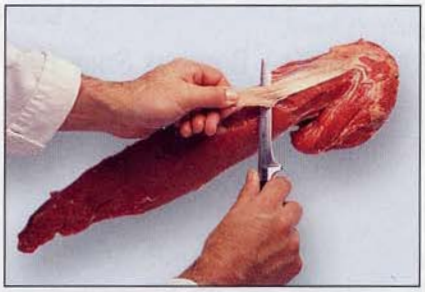
Procedure for Trimming a Full Beef Tenderloin and Cutting It into Châteaubriand, Filet Mignon and Tender Tips



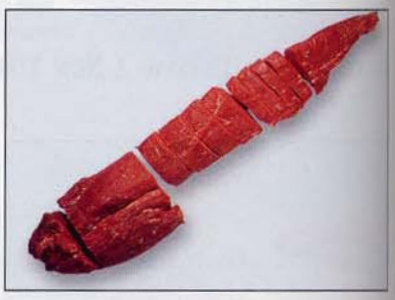
1. Cut and pull the excess fat from the entire tenderloin to expose the meat.



2. Remove the chain muscle from the side of the tenderloin. (Although it contains much connective tissue, the chain muscle may be trimmed and the meat used as tenderloin trimmings in various dishes.)



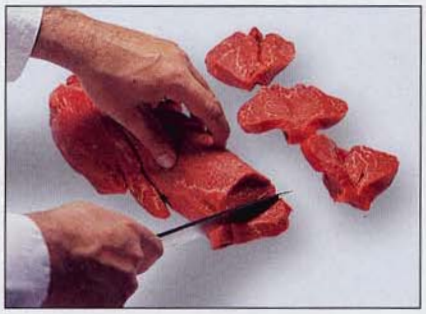
3. Trim away all of the fat and silverskin. Do so by loosening a small piece of silverskin, then, holding the loosened silverskin tightly with one hand, cut it away in long strips, angling the knife up toward the silverskin slightly so that only the silverskin is removed and no meat is wasted.



4. Cut the tenderloin as desired into (left to right) tips, châteaubriand, filet mignon, tournedo tips, and tenderloin tips.

Procedure for Butterflying Meats

Many cuts of boneless meats such as tenderloin steaks and boneless pork chops can be butterflied to create a thinner cut that has a greater surface area and cooks more quickly.



1. Make the first cut nearly all the way through the meat, keeping it attached by leaving approximately 1/4 inch (6 mm) uncut.

2. Make a second cut, this time cutting all the way through, completely removing the steak from the tenderloin.

TABLE 13.1 USING COMMON CUTS OF BEEF

Primal	Subprimal or Fabricated Cut	IMPS	Cooking Methods	Serving Suggestions
Chuck	Chuck roll tied	116A	Combination (braise; stew)	Pot roast; beef stew
	Stew meat	135A	Combination (stew)	Beef stew
	Ground beef	136	Dry heat (broil or grill; roast)	Hamburgers; meatloaf
			Combination (braise; stew)	Chili con carne; beef stews
Brisket and Shank	Brisket	120	Moist heat (simmer)	Corned beef; New England boiled dinner
			Combination (braise)	Pot roast
	Shank	117	Combination (braise)	Shredded beef for tamales or hash
Rib	Oven-ready rib roast	109	Dry heat (roast)	Roast prime rib
	Rib eye roll	112	Dry heat (roast)	Roast prime rib
Short Plate	Skirt steak	121D	Dry heat (broil or grill)	Steak; fajitas
	Short ribs	123A	Combination (braise)	Braised short ribs
Short Loin	Porterhouse or T-bone steaks	173, 174	Dry heat (broil or grill)	Steaks
	Strip loin	180	Dry heat (broil or grill; roast; sauté)	New York steak; minute steak entrecôtes bordelaise
	Tenderloin	189	Dry heat (broil or grill; roast)	Tournedos Rossini; beef Wellington
Flank	Flank steak	193	Dry heat (broil or grill)	London broil
			Combination (braise)	Braised stuffed flank steak
Round	Steamship round	160	Dry heat (roast)	Roast beef
	Top (inside) round	168	Dry heat (roast)	Roast beef
			Combination (braise)	Braised beef roulade

CONCLUSION

Antonin Carême once said that "beef is the soul of cooking." It is also the most popular meat consumed in the United States and undoubtedly will play an important role on almost any menu. Beef's assertive flavor stands up well to most any sauce and seasonings.

Prefabricated products are readily available. But performing some basic fabrication procedures in your own kitchen saves money and allows you to cut the meat to your exact specifications. Each primal and subprimal cut has its own distinct characteristics. The primal rib, short loin and sirloin produce the most popular and most expensive cuts of beef. Once the beef is properly fabricated, choose the appropriate dry-heat, moist-heat or combination cooking method for that cut.

QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

1. List each beef primal cut, and describe its location on the carcass. For each primal cut, identify two subprimal or fabricated cuts taken from it.
2. Would it be better to use the chuck for grilling or stewing? Explain your answer.
3. Which fabricated cuts contain a portion of the tenderloin? What cooking methods are best suited for these cuts? Explain your answer.

4. Name four cuts that can be produced from a whole beef tenderloin. Describe a preparation procedure for each cut.
5. Most steaks are cut from the hindquarter. What popular steak is cut from the forequarter, and why is it tender when other cuts from the forequarter are relatively tough?

Additional Beef Recipes

RECIPE 13.1

T-Bone Steak

Note: *This dish appears in the Chapter Opening photograph.*

RUTH'S CHRIS STEAK HOUSE, Phoenix, AZ

Yield: 1 Serving **Method:** Broiling

T-bone steak, 24 oz. (700 g)	1	1
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Whole butter, melted	1 oz.	30 g
Parsley, chopped	as needed	as needed

1. Season both sides of the steak with the salt and pepper.
2. Broil the steak to the desired degree of doneness and place on a very hot serving platter.
3. Ladle the melted butter over the steak and sprinkle with chopped parsley.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 2244, **Total fat** 168 g, **Saturated fat** 71 g, **Cholesterol** 6[illegible] mg, **Sodium** 1710 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 3 g, **Protein** 172 g, **Vitamin A** 45%, **Vitamin C** 6[illegible]%, **Iron** 133%, **Calcium** 175%

RECIPE 13.2

Marinated London Broil

Yield: 6 5 to 8-oz. (150- to 250-g) Servings **Method:** Grilling

Marinade:		
Olive oil	4 oz.	120 ml
Balsamic vinegar	4 oz.	120 ml
Fresh rosemary, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Garlic, minced	2 oz.	60 g
Pepper	1 tsp.	5 ml
Beef flank steak, 2–3 lb. (1–1 1/2 kg)	1	1

1. Combine the marinade ingredients in a hotel pan.
2. Add the flank steak to the marinade and coat completely. Allow the meat to marinate for at least 4 hours.
3. Grill the steak rare to medium rare. If cooked further, the meat will become extremely tough.
4. Carve into 1/4-inch (6-millimeter) thick slices, cutting diagonally across the grain..

Approximate values per 8-oz. (227-g) serving: **Calories** 470, **Total fat** 23 g, **Saturated fat** 10 g, **Cholesterol** 152 mg, **Sodium** 188 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 0 g, **Protein** 61 g, **Iron** 40%

RECIPE 13.3

CHÂTEAUBRIAND

Chef Leland Atkinson, WASHINGTON, DC

Yield: 2 Servings | Method: Roasting

Beef filet, cut from the "head" of the tenderloin, 16–24 ounces (500–750 grams)	1	1
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Clarified butter	as needed	as needed

1. Tie the beef with butcher's twine and season with salt and pepper.
2. Sauté the beef in clarified butter until it is well browned.
3. Transfer the beef to a 450°F (230°C) oven and roast until done, approximately 10–12 minutes for rare (internal temperature of 125°F/52°C), or 15–18 minutes for medium (140°F/60°C).
4. Remove the beef from the oven and allow it to rest for at least 5 minutes before carving.
5. At service time, slice the beef evenly on a slight diagonal bias.

Approximate values per 10-oz. (301-g) serving: **Calories** 705, **Total fat** 40 g, **Saturated fat** 18 g, **Cholesterol** 270 mg, **Sodium** 1350 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 80 g, **Vitamin A** 13%, **Iron** 66%

Châteaubriand is traditionally served with béarnaise sauce and a bouquetière of vegetables.

RECIPE 13.4

HOME-STYLE MEATLOAF

Yield: 16 8-oz. (250-g) Servings | Method: Baking

Onion, small dice	1 lb.	450 g
Celery, small dice	8 oz.	250 g
Garlic, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Oil	2 oz.	60 ml
Fresh bread crumbs	6 oz.	180 g
Tomato juice	12 oz.	350 ml
Ground beef	4 lb.	1.8 kg
Ground pork	4 lb.	1.8 kg
Eggs, beaten	6	6
Salt	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Pepper	1 tsp.	5 ml
Parsley, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml

1. Sauté the onions, celery and garlic in the oil until tender. Remove from the heat and cool.
2. Combine all ingredients; mix well.
3. Form into loaves of the desired size and place in loaf pans.

Continued

4. Bake at 350°F (180°C) until the meat loaf reaches an internal temperature of 165°F (74°C), approximately 1 to 1 1/2 hours.
5. Allow the loaves to rest 15 minutes before slicing. Cut slices of the desired thickness and serve with a tomato or mushroom sauce.

Approximate values per 10-oz. (293-g) serving: **Calories** 755, **Total fat** 50 g, **Saturated fat** 19 g, **Cholesterol** 275 mg, **Sodium** 667 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 11 g, **Protein** 60 g, **Iron** 32%

RECIPE 13.5

Tournedos Rossini

Yield: 4 Servings		Method: Sautéing
Tournedos, 3 oz. (90 g) each	8	8
Clarified butter	as needed	as needed
Croutons, cut to the size of the tournedos	8	8
Foie gras, 1-oz. (30-g) slices	8	8
Truffle slices	8	8
Madeira	4 oz.	120 ml
Demi-glace	8 oz.	225 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Sauté the beef in clarified butter to the desired doneness. Place each tournedos on top of a crouton. Top each with a slice of foie gras, then a slice of truffle. Hold in a warm place.
2. Degrease the pan. Deglaze the pan with the madeira and add the demi-glace.
3. Reduce the sauce to the desired consistency and adjust the seasonings.
4. Warm the tournedos briefly under a broiler or in the oven. Pour the sauce around the tournedos. Garnish with watercress, sautéed asparagus and château potatoes.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 652, **Total fat** 29 g, **Saturated fat** 13 g, **Cholesterol** 460 mg, **Sodium** 860 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 36 g, **Protein** 60 g, **Vitamin A** 682%, **Iron** 164%

RECIPE 13.6

Minute Steak Dijonaise

Yield: 2 Servings		Method: Sautéing
Sirloin steak, trimmed, 6 oz. (170 g)	2	2
Dijon mustard	1 oz.	30 g
Onion, small dice	2 oz.	60 g
Clarified butter	1 oz.	30 ml
Heavy cream	3 oz.	90 ml
Whole butter	1 oz.	30 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Pound the steaks to a 1/4-inch (6-millimeter) thickness.
2. Cover one side of each sirloin first with 1 1/2 teaspoons (8 milliliters) of the mustard and then half the onions, pressing the onions firmly into the steak.
3. Sauté the steaks in the clarified butter, presentation (onion) side down first. Remove and hold in a warm place.

4. Degrease the pan. Add the cream and reduce by half. Add the rest of the Dijon mustard.
5. Monté au beurre. Adjust the seasonings and serve the steaks with the sauce.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 671, **Total fat** 45 g, **Saturated fat** 23 g, **Cholesterol** 255 mg, **Sodium** 2050 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 6 g, **Protein** 60 g, **Vitamin A** 36%, **Iron** 44%

RECIPE 13.7

Beef Stroganoff

Yield: 8 8-oz. (250-g) Servings — Method: Sautéing

Tenderloin tips, émincé	2 lb.	1 kg
Clarified butter	1 1/2 oz.	45 ml
Onion, medium dice	4 oz.	120 g
Mushrooms, halved	1 lb.	450 g
Demi-glace	10 oz.	300 ml
Heavy cream	10 oz.	300 ml
Sour cream	8 oz.	250 g
Dijon mustard	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh dill, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh parsley, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Egg noodles, cooked	24 oz.	700 g

1. Sauté the tenderloin tips in the butter, searing on all sides. Remove the meat and set aside.
2. Add the onion to the pan and sauté lightly. Add the mushrooms and sauté until dry.
3. Add the demi-glace. Bring to a boil, reduce to a simmer and cook 10 minutes.
4. Add the cream, sour cream, mustard and any meat juices that accumulated while holding the meat.
5. Return the meat to the sauce to reheat. Stir in the dill and parsley. Adjust the seasonings and serve over egg noodles.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 635, **Total fat** 39 g, **Saturated fat** 20 g, **Cholesterol** 201 mg, **Sodium** 510 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 32 g, **Protein** 40 g, **Vitamin A** 41%, **Iron** 46%, **Calcium** 11%

RECIPE 13.8

Entrecôtes Bordelaise

Yield: 4 Servings — Method: Sautéing

Beef marrow	4 oz.	120 g
Entrecôtes, 14 oz. (400 g) each	2	2
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Clarified butter	2 oz.	60 ml
Shallots, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Red wine	8 oz.	250 ml
Demi-glace	12 oz.	340 ml
Whole butter	1 oz.	30 g

Continued

1. Slice the marrow into rounds and poach in salt water for 3 minutes. Drain the marrow and set it aside.
2. Season the steaks and sauté them in the clarified butter to the desired doneness. Finish in the oven if desired. Remove to a platter and hold in a warm place.
3. Sauté the shallots in the same pan.
4. Deglaze the pan with the wine and reduce by half. Add the demi-glace; simmer for 5 minutes.
5. Monté au beurre.
6. Add the marrow to the sauce. Adjust the seasonings and serve the steaks with the sauce.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 610, **Total fat** 35 g, **Saturated fat** 17 g, **Cholesterol** 200 mg, **Sodium** 810 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 5 g, **Protein** 57 g, **Vitamin A** 21%, **Iron** 44%

RECIPE 13.9

Pepper Steak

Yield: 2 Servings **Method:** Sautéing

Boneless strip steaks, approx. 8 oz. (250 g) each	2	2
Salt	TT	TT
Peppercorns, cracked	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Clarified butter	1 oz.	30 ml
Cognac	2 oz.	60 ml
Heavy cream	4 oz.	120 ml
Whole butter	2 oz.	60 g

1. Season the steaks with salt. Spread the peppercorns in a hotel pan and press the steaks into them, lightly coating each side.
2. Sauté the steaks in the clarified butter over high heat for 2 to 3 minutes on each side.
3. Remove the pan from the heat. Pour the cognac over the steaks, return the pan to the heat and flambé. When the flames subside, remove the steaks from the pan and keep them warm on a plate.
4. Add the cream to the pan. Bring to a boil and reduce for 2 minutes over high heat; monté au beurre. Pour this sauce over the steaks and serve immediately.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 950, **Total fat** 73 g, **Saturated fat** 42 g, **Cholesterol** 300 mg, **Sodium** 1525 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 8 g, **Protein** 51 g, **Vitamin A** 72%, **Iron** 46%, **Calcium** 13%

RECIPE 13.10

Swiss Steak

Yield: 10 Servings **Method:** Braising

Beef bottom round steaks, 6 oz. (180 g) each	10	10
Flour, for dredging	as needed	as needed
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Oil	2 oz.	60 ml
Onion, small dice	1 lb.	450 g

Garlic cloves, crushed	3	3
Celery	8 oz.	250 g
Flour	4 oz.	120 g
Brown stock	5 pt.	2.2 lt
Tomato purée	6 oz.	180 g
Sachet:		
Bay leaves	2	2
Dried thyme	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Peppercorns, crushed	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Parsley stems	8	8

1. Dredge the steaks in flour seasoned with salt and pepper.
2. Heat the oil in a roasting pan and brown the steaks well on both sides. Remove the steaks.
3. Add the onions, garlic and celery; sauté until tender.
4. Add the flour and cook to a brown roux.
5. Gradually, add the brown stock, whisking until the sauce is thickened and smooth. Add the tomato purée and sachet.
6. Return the steaks to the braising pan, cover and cook in a 300°F (150°C) oven until tender, approximately 2 hours.
7. Remove the steaks from the sauce. Discard the sachet. Strain the sauce and adjust the seasonings. Serve the steaks with the sauce.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 601, **Total fat** 26 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 170 mg, **Sodium** 390 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 30 g, **Protein** 61 g, **Vitamin A** 49%, **Vitamin C** 12%, **Iron** 52%

RECIPE 13.11

Braised Short Ribs of Beef

Yield: 8 8-oz. (230-g) Servings — Method: Braising

Flour	4 oz.	120 g
Salt	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Pepper	1 tsp.	5 ml
Dried rosemary	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Short ribs of beef, cut in 2-in. (5-cm) portions	6 lb.	2.7 kg
Vegetable oil	1 oz.	30 ml
Onion, chopped	6 oz.	170 g
Celery, chopped	4 oz.	120 g
Brown beef stock	24 oz.	700 ml
Roux	as needed	as needed
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Combine the flour, salt, pepper and rosemary. Dredge the ribs in the seasoned flour.
2. Heat the oil and brown the ribs well in a heavy brazier. Remove and hold in a warm place.
3. Add the vegetables to the brazier and sauté lightly.
4. Return the ribs to the pan, add the stock and cook in a 300°F (150°C) oven until done, approximately 2 1/2 hours.

Continued

5. Remove the ribs from the liquid and skim off the excess fat.
6. Bring the liquid to a boil on the stove top; thicken it with roux to the desired consistency and simmer for 15 minutes. Strain the sauce and adjust the seasonings. Return the ribs to the sauce and simmer for 5 minutes.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 1150, **Total fat** 70 g, **Saturated fat** 27 g, **Cholesterol** 3[illegible] mg, **Sodium** 1154 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 18 g, **Protein** 110 g, **Vitamin A** 18%, **Iron** 85%

RECIPE 13.12

Hungarian Goulash

Yield: 10 8-oz. (250-g) Servings **Method:** Stewing

Lard or vegetable oil	2 oz.	60 ml
Onion, medium dice	2 lb.	900 g
Hungarian paprika	4 Tbsp.	60 ml
Garlic, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Caraway seeds	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Salt	TT	TT
Pepper	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
White stock	1 qt.	1 lt
Tomato paste	4 oz.	120 g
Beef stew meat, cut in 1 1/2-in. (4-cm) cubes	5 lb.	2.2 kg

1. Sauté the onions in the lard or oil, browning lightly.
2. Add the paprika, garlic, caraway seeds, salt and pepper; mix well.
3. Add the white stock and tomato paste. Bring to a boil, then reduce to a simmer.
4. Add the meat and continue simmering until the meat is very tender, approximately 1 1/2 hours. Adjust the seasonings and serve.

Approximate values per 12-oz. (361-g) serving: **Calories** 645, **Total fat** 32 g, **Saturated fat** 12 g, **Cholesterol** 235 mg, **Sodium** 910 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 13 g, **Protein** 73 g, **Vitamin A** 28%, **Vitamin C** 20%, **Iron** 63%

RECIPE 13.13

Beef Bourguignon

Yield: 10 8-oz. (250-g) Servings **Method:** Stewing

Marinade:		
Garlic cloves, crushed	3	3
Onions, sliced	3	3
Carrots, sliced	2	2
Parsley stems	10	10
Bouquet garni:		
Carrot stick, 4 in. (10 cm)	1	1
Leek, split, 4-in. (10-cm) piece	1	1
Fresh thyme	1 sprig	1 sprig
Bay leaf	1	1
Peppercorns, crushed	10	10

Salt	TT	TT
Dry red wine, preferably Burgundy	26 oz.	750 ml
Beef chuck, cubed for stew	4 lb.	1.8 kg
Vegetable oil	2 oz.	60 ml
Flour	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Tomato paste	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Tomatoes, quartered	4	4
Brown stock	1 pint	450 ml
Mushrooms, quartered	1 lb.	450 g
Unsalted butter	1 1/2 oz.	45 g
Pearl onions, boiled and peeled	30	30
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Combine the garlic, onions, carrots, parsley, bouquet garni, peppercorns, salt and wine to make a marinade.
2. Marinate the meat for several hours under refrigeration.
3. Remove and drain the meat. Reserve the marinade.
4. Dry the beef and sauté it in the oil until well browned. Do this in several batches if necessary.
5. Return all the meat to the pot. Sprinkle with flour and cook to make a blond roux.
6. Stir in the tomato paste and cook for 5 minutes.
7. Add the reserved marinade, tomatoes and brown stock. Cook in a 350°F (180°C) oven until the meat is tender, approximately 2 1/2 hours.
8. Remove the meat from the sauce. Strain the sauce through a china cap, pressing to extract all the liquid. Discard the solids. Return the liquid and the beef to the pot.
9. Sauté the mushrooms in the butter and add them to the meat and sauce. Add the onions and adjust the seasonings. Simmer for 10 minutes to blend the flavors.

Approximate values per 8-oz. (227-g) serving: **Calories** 315, **Total fat** 15 g, **Saturated fat** 6.5 g, **Cholesterol** 97 mg, **Sodium** 640 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 8 g, **Protein** 30 g, **Vitamin A** 27%, **Vitamin C** 13%, **Iron** 26%

RECIPE 13.14

Chili Con Carne

Yield: 1 gal. (4 lt) Method: Braising

Onion, medium dice	1 lb.	450 g
Vegetable oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Garlic, chopped	1/2 oz.	15 g
Ground beef	2 lb. 8 oz.	1.2 kg
Tomato, crushed	2 lb.	1 kg
Tomato, diced	4 lb.	1.8 kg
Tomato paste	4 oz.	120 g
Brown stock	1 pt.	450 ml
Chilli powder	1 oz.	30 g
Cumin	2 tsp.	10 ml
Bay leaves	4	4

Continued

Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Dry kidney beans, soaked and simmered in water until tender	12 oz.	350 g

1. Sauté the onions in the oil until tender. Add the garlic and sauté 1 minute.
2. Add the beef and brown, stirring occasionally. Drain off the excess fat.
3. Add the remaining ingredients, bring to a simmer, cover and cook for 1 hour.
4. Remove the bay leaves and adjust the seasonings.

Approximate values per 10-oz. (309-g) serving: **Calories** 310, **Total fat** 16 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 62 mg, **Sodium** 535 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 19 g, **Protein** 21 g, **Vitamin A** 20%, **Vitamin C** 44%, **Iron** 32%, **Calcium** 93%

RECIPE 13.15

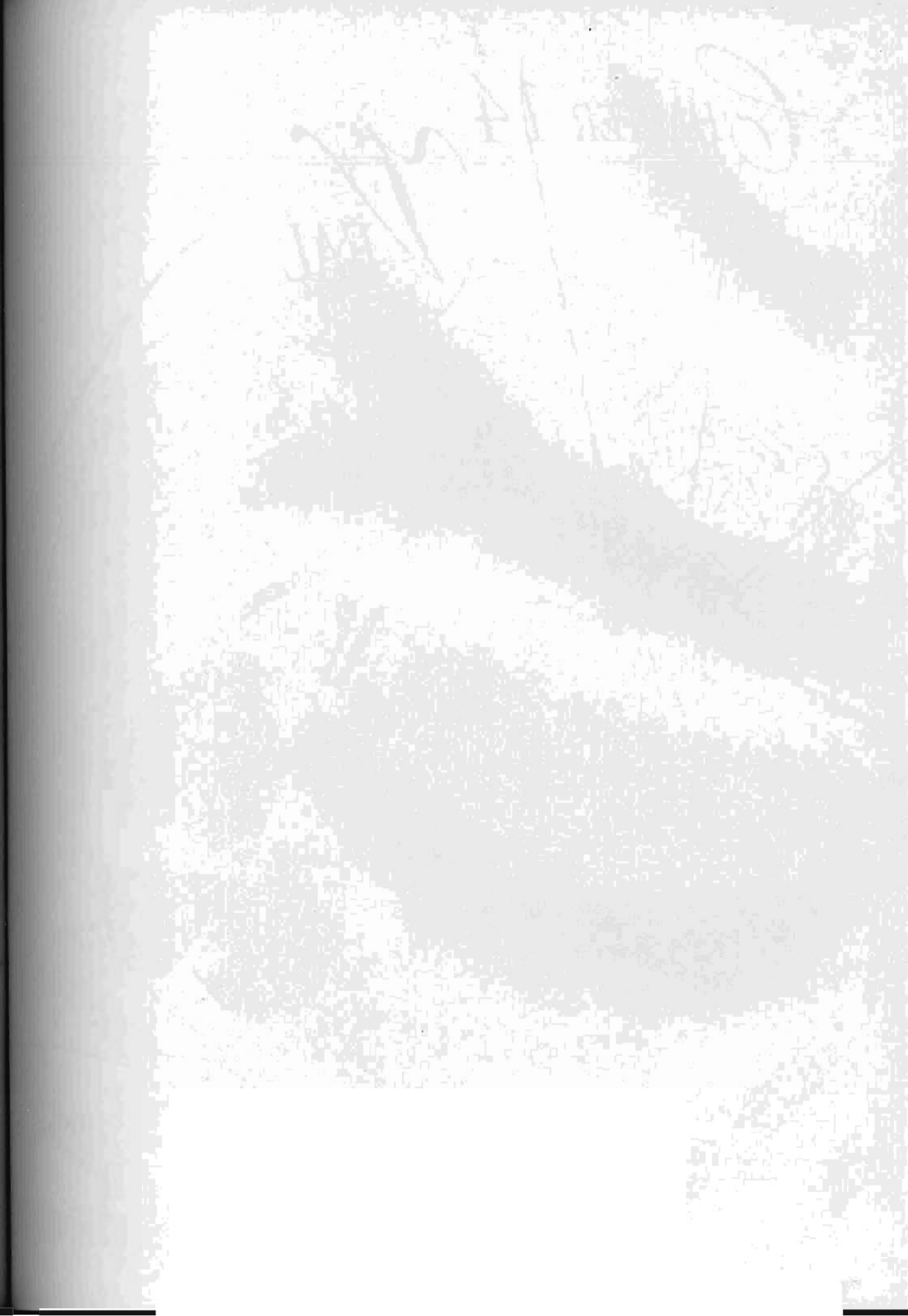
CARPACCIO

Yield: 8 Servings

Beef tenderloin, trimmed of all silverskin and fat	1 lb.	450 g
Mayonnaise, fresh	8 oz.	250 g
Dijon mustard	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Onion	4 oz.	120 g
Capers, chopped	4 tsp.	20 ml
Cracked black pepper	TT	TT
Olive oil	3 Tbsp.	45 ml

1. Place the tenderloin in the freezer until nearly frozen.
2. Combine the fresh mayonnaise with the mustard. Season with salt and pepper.
3. Peel the onion and cut it in half from the stem to the root end. Slice it very thin.
4. Slice the nearly frozen tenderloin on an electric slicer very thin, almost transparent. On a very cold plate, arrange one slightly overlapping layer of thin slices of beef.
5. Sprinkle each plate of beef with 1/2 teaspoon (2.5 milliliters) of capers, a generous amount of cracked black pepper, salt and 1/2 ounce (15 grams) of shaved onion. Drizzle with 1 teaspoon (5 milliliters) of the olive oil and spoon 1/2 ounce (15 grams) of the mayonnaise in the center of each plate. Serve very cold.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (108-g) serving: **Calories** 360, **Total fat** 33 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 70 mg, **Sodium** 250 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 16 g



CHAPTER 14 VEAL

Mango Restaurant, Chicago, IL
Chef Steven Chiappetti

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- identify the primal, subprimal and fabricated cuts of veal
- perform basic butchering procedures
- apply appropriate cooking methods to several common cuts of veal

Cows must calve before they begin to give milk. These calves are the basis of today's veal industry. Veal is the meat of calves under the age of nine months. Most veal comes from calves slaughtered when they are 8 to 16 weeks old, however. Veal is lighter in color than beef, has a more delicate flavor and is generally more tender. Young veal has a firm texture, light pink color and very little fat. As soon as a calf starts eating solid food, the iron in the food begins to turn the young animal's meat red. Meat from calves slaughtered when they are older than five months is called calf. It tends to be a deeper red, with some marbling and external fat.

Veal's low fat content makes it a popular meat, especially among those looking for an alternative to beef. Its delicate flavor is complemented by both classic and modern sauces.

Formula-Fed Veal Versus Free-Range Veal

Most veal produced today is known as formula-fed veal. Formula-fed calves are fed only nutrient-rich liquids; they are tethered in pens only slightly larger than their bodies in order to restrict their movements. Preventing the calves from eating grasses and other foods containing iron keeps their flesh white; restricting movement keeps their muscles from toughening. In recent years, controversy and allegations of cruelty have arisen concerning these methods.

An alternative to formula-fed veal is free-range veal. Free-range veal is produced from calves that are allowed to roam freely and eat grasses and other natural foods. Because they consume feed containing iron, their flesh is a reddish pink and has a substantially different flavor than meat from formula-fed calves of the same age.

Opinions differ on which has the better flavor. Some chefs prefer the consistently mild, sweet taste of formula-fed veal. Others prefer the more substantial flavor of free-range veal. The two are interchangeable in recipes. Cost, however, may be the ultimate deciding factor when determining which to use. Free-range veal is more expensive than formula-fed veal because of its limited production.

Primal and Subprimal Cuts of Veal

After slaughter, the calf carcass can be split down the backbone into two bilateral halves or, more typically, cut along the natural curvature between the 11th and 12th ribs into a foresaddle (front portion) and a hindsaddle (rear portion). The veal carcass yields five primal cuts: three from the foresaddle (the shoulder, foreshank and breast, and rib), and two from the hindsaddle (the loin and leg). The veal shoulder, rib and loin primals contain both bilateral portions; that is, a veal loin contains both sides of the animal's loin.

Figure 14.1 shows the relationship between the calf's bone structure and the primal cuts. As with all meats, it is important to know the location of bones when cutting or working with veal. This makes meat fabrication and carving easier and aids in identifying cuts. Figure 14.2 shows the primal cuts of veal and their location. A veal carcass weighs in a range of 60 to 245 pounds (27–110 kg).

Foresaddle

Shoulder

Similar to the beef shoulder or chuck, the veal shoulder accounts for 21% of the carcass weight. It contains four rib bones (as opposed to five in the beef chuck) and portions of the backbone, blade and arm bones.

The backbone, blade and arm bones are sometimes removed and the meat roasted or stuffed and roasted. Although shoulder chops and steaks can be fabricated, they are inferior to the chops cut from more tender areas such as the loin or rib. Often the shoulder meat is ground or cubed for stew. Because of the relatively large amount of connective tissue it contains, meat from the shoulder is best braised or stewed.

Foreshank and Breast

The foreshank and breast are located beneath the shoulder and rib sections on the front half of the carcass. They are considered one primal cut. Combined, they account for approximately 16% of the carcass weight. This primal contains

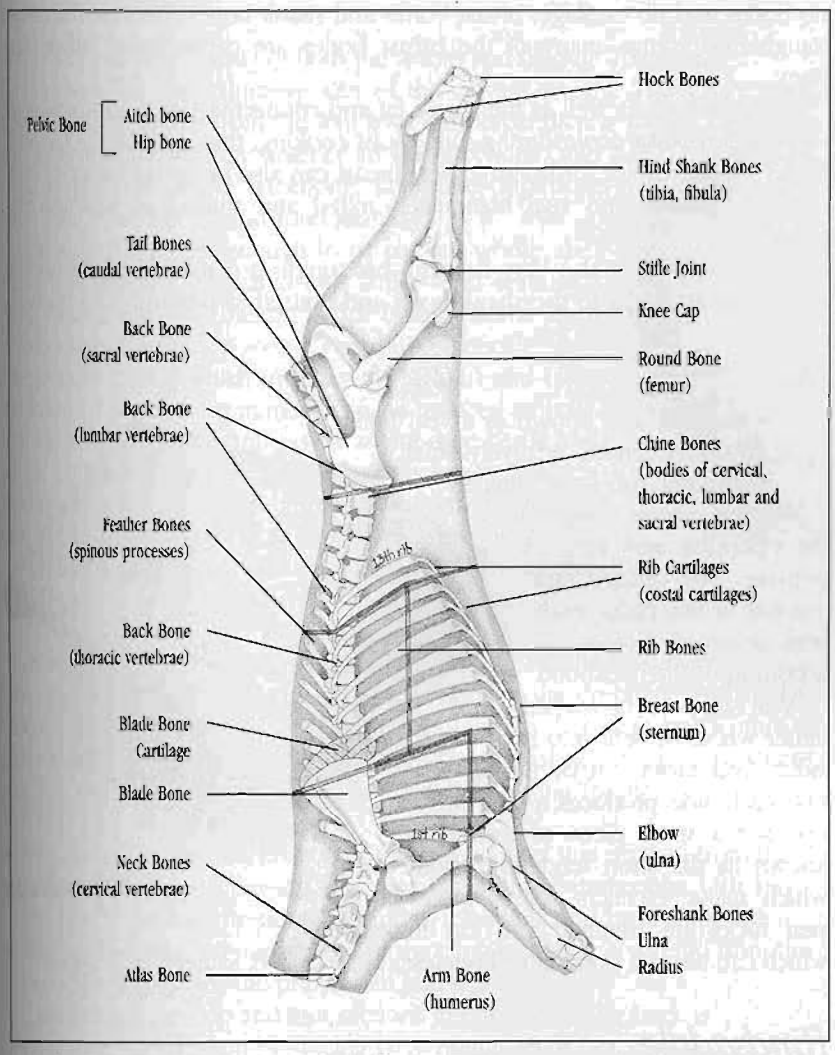


FIGURE 14.1 *The Skeletal Structure of a Calf*

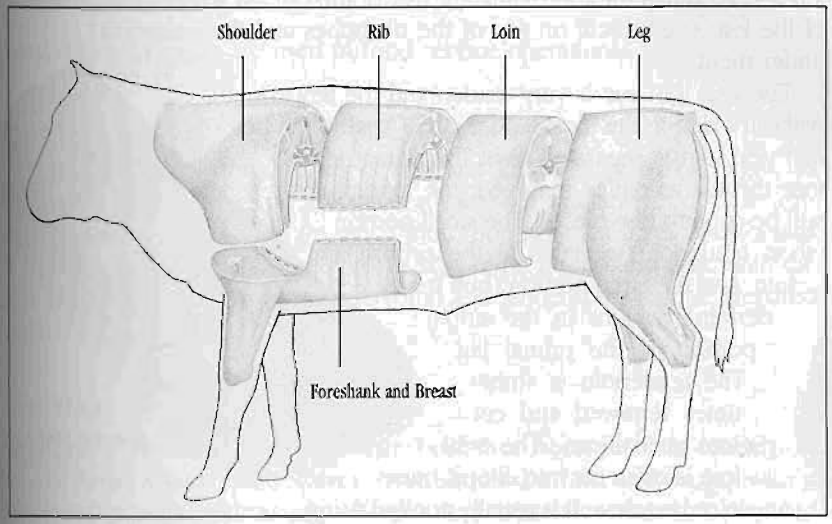


FIGURE 14.2 *The Primal Cuts of Veal*

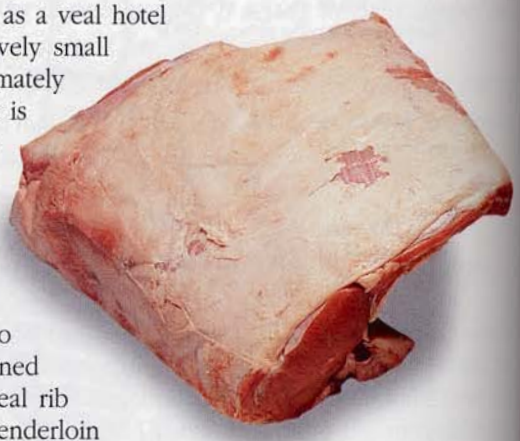
rib bones and rib cartilage, breast bones and shank bones. Because the calf is slaughtered young, many of the breast bones are cartilaginous rather than bony.

This cartilage, as well as the ample fat and connective tissue also present in the breast, breaks down during long moist cooking, thus making the flavorful breast a good choice for braising. Veal breast can also be cubed for stews such as veal fricassee and veal blanquette, rolled and stuffed, or trimmed and ground.

The foreshank is also very flavorful but tough. It can be braised whole or sliced perpendicular to the shank bone and braised to produce osso buco.

Rib

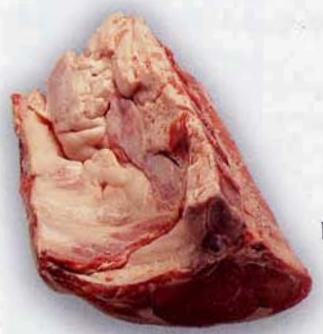
The double rib, also known as a veal hotel rack, is a very tender, relatively small cut accounting for approximately 9% of the carcass weight. It is very popular and very expensive. The double rack consists of two racks, each with seven rib bones and a portion of the backbone.



Veal Hotel Rack, Split

Veal racks can be roasted either whole or split into two sides. Veal racks can be boned out; each side produces a veal rib eye and a small piece of tenderloin known as the short tenderloin, both of which make excellent roasts. More often, veal racks are trimmed and cut into chops, which can also be bone-in or boneless, to be grilled, sautéed or braised.

Hindsaddle

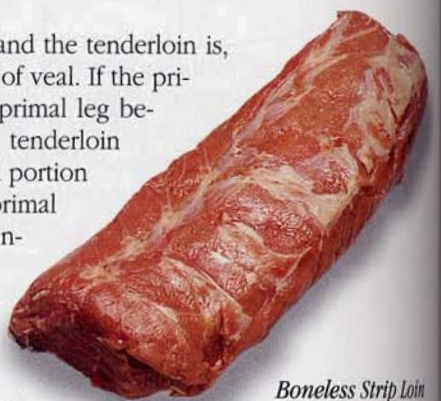


Veal Loin

Loin

The veal loin is posterior to the primal rib, contains two ribs (numbers 12 and 13) and accounts for approximately 10% of the carcass weight. The loin consists of the loin eye muscle on top of the rib bones and the tenderloin under them.

The veal loin eye is very tender, and the tenderloin is, without a doubt, the most tender cut of veal. If the primal veal loin is separated from the primal leg before the tenderloin is removed, the tenderloin will be cut into two pieces. The small portion (short tenderloin) remains in the primal loin, and the large portion (butt tenderloin) remains in the sirloin portion of the primal leg. The tenderloin is sometimes removed and cut into medallions. The veal loin is often cut into chops, bone-in or boneless. It is usually cooked using dry-heat methods such as broiling, grilling, roasting or sautéing.



Boneless Strip Loin

Loin Chops

Leg

The primal veal leg consists of both the sirloin and the leg. Together, they account for approximately 42% of the carcass weight. The primal leg is separated from the loin by a cut perpendicular to the backbone immediately anterior to the hip bone, and it contains portions of the backbone, tail bone, hip bone, aitch bone, round bone and hind shank.

Although it is tender enough to be roasted whole, the veal leg is typically fabricated into cutlets and scallops. To fabricate these cuts, the leg is first broken down into its major muscles: the top round, eye round, knuckle, sirloin, bottom round (which includes the sirloin) and butt tenderloin. Each of these muscles can be reduced to scallops by trimming all fat and visible connective tissue and slicing against the grain to the desired thickness. The scallops then should be pounded carefully to tenderize them further and to prevent them from curling when cooked.

The hindshank is somewhat meatier than the foreshank, but both are prepared and cooked in the same manner.

Veal Leg

Because the veal carcass is small enough to be handled easily, it is sometimes purchased in forms larger than the primal cuts described earlier. Depending on employee skill, available equipment and storage space and an ability to utilize fully all the cuts and trimmings that fabricating meat produces, you may want to purchase veal in one of the following forms:

- *Foresaddle:* The anterior portion of the carcass after it is severed from the hindsaddle by a cut following the natural curvature between the 11th and 12th ribs. It contains the primal shoulder, foreshank and breast, and rib.
- *Hindsaddle:* The posterior portion of the carcass after it is severed from the foresaddle. It contains the primal loin and leg.
- *Back:* The trimmed rib and loin sections in one piece. The back is particularly useful when producing large quantities of veal chops.
- *Veal side:* One bilateral half of the carcass, produced by cutting lengthwise thorough the backbone.

Top Round

Hindshank Cut for Osso Buco

Organ Meats

Several calf organ meats are used in food service operations.

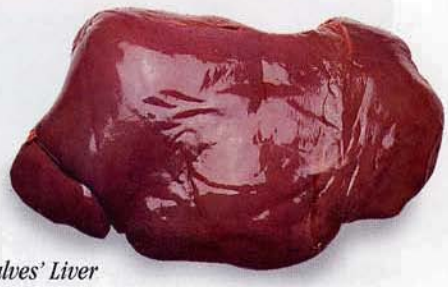
Sweetbreads

Sweetbreads are the thymus glands of veal and lamb. As an animal ages, its thymus gland shrinks; therefore, sweetbreads are not available from older cattle or sheep. Veal sweetbreads are much more popular than lamb sweetbreads in this country. Good-quality sweetbreads should be plump and firm, with the exterior membrane intact. Delicately flavored and tender, they can be prepared by almost any cooking method.

Sweetbreads

Calves' Liver

Calves' liver is much more popular than beef liver because of its tenderness and mild flavor. Good-quality calves' liver should be firm and moist, with a shiny appearance and without any off-odor. It is most often sliced and sautéed or broiled and served with a sauce.



Calves' Liver

Kidneys

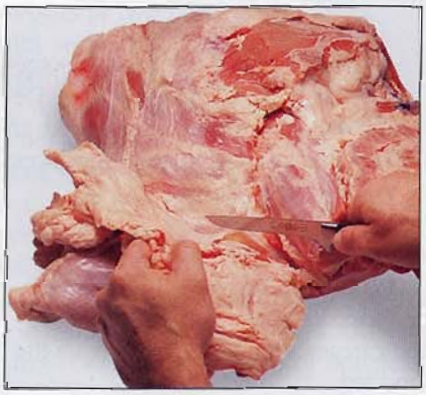
Kidneys

Kidneys are more popular in other parts of the world than in the United States. Good-quality kidneys should be plump, firm and encased in a shiny membrane. Properly prepared kidneys have a rich flavor and firm texture; they are best prepared by moist-heat cooking methods and are sometimes used in stew or kidney pie.

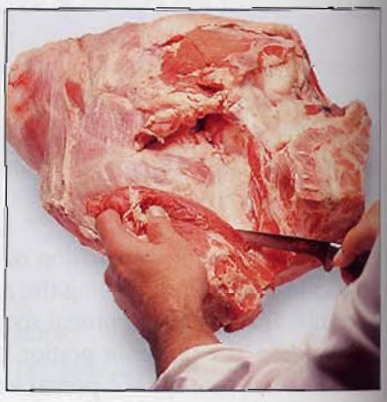
Butchering Procedures

Many food service operations purchase veal in primal or other large cuts and fabricate it in-house to their own specifications. There are several important veal fabrication and butchering techniques you should master.

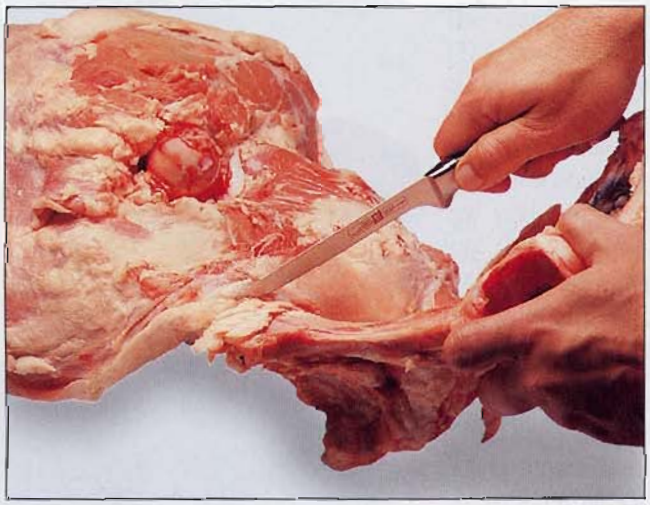
Procedure for Boning a Leg of Veal



1. Remove the shank by cutting through the knee joint. Remove the excess fat and flank meat.



2. Remove the butt tenderloin from the inside of the pelvic bone.

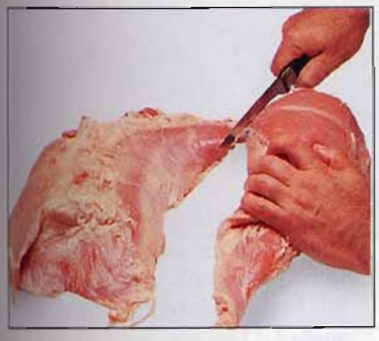


3. Remove the pelvic bone by carefully cutting around the bone, separating it from the meat. Continue until the bone is completely freed from the meat.

4. With the inside of the leg up, remove the top round by cutting along the natural seam.

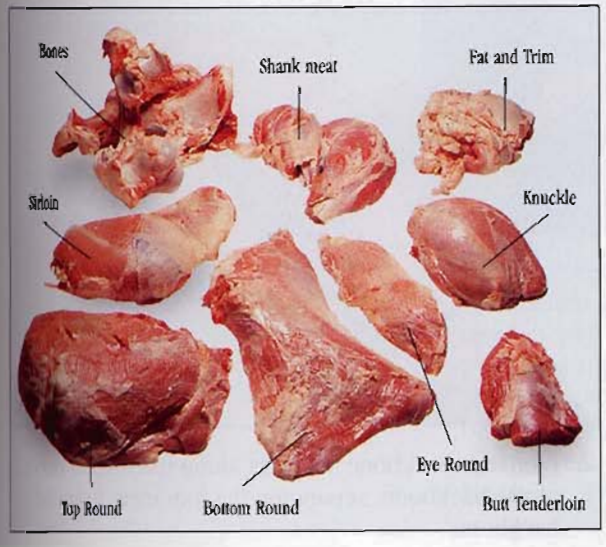
5. Remove the shank meat. (It is the round piece of meat lying between the eye round and the bone, on the shank end of the leg.)

6. Remove the round bone and the knuckle together by cutting around the bone and through the natural seams separating the knuckle from the other muscles. Separate the knuckle meat from the bone.



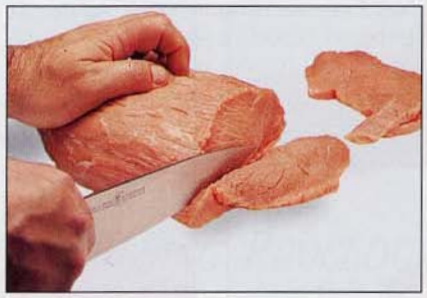
7. Remove the sirloin.

8. Remove the eye round from the bottom round.



9. The completely boned-out veal leg, producing a top round, eye round, knuckle, shank meat, butt tenderloin, sirloin, bottom round bones and trimmings.

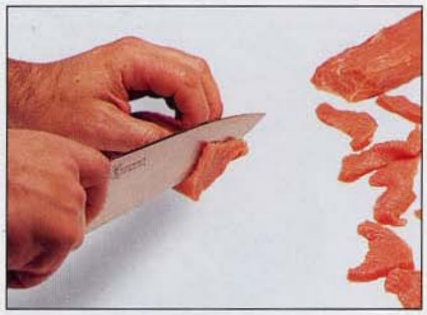
Procedure for Cutting and Pounding Scallops



1. Veal scallops are cut from relatively large pieces of veal (here, a portion of the top round). All fat and silverskin must be trimmed. Going against the grain, cut slices approximately 1/4 inch (3 millimeter) thick; cut on the bias to produce larger pieces.

2. Place the scallops between two pieces of plastic wrap and pound lightly to flatten and tenderize the meat. Be careful not to tear or pound holes in the meat.

Procedure for Cutting Émincé



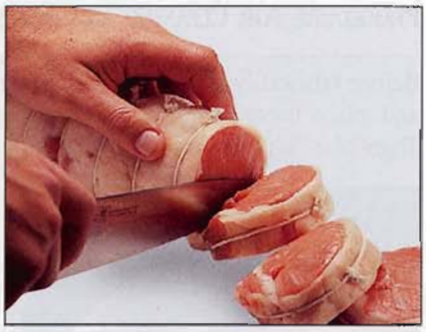
1. Émincé is cut from relatively small, lean pieces of meat. Here veal is cut across the grain into small, thin slices.

Procedure for Boning a Veal Loin and Cutting It into Boneless Veal Chops

1. Remove the tenderloin in a single piece from the inside of the loin by following the vertebrae and cutting completely around the tenderloin.

2. From the backbone side, cut along the natural curve of the backbone, separating the loin meat from the backbone.

3. Trim any excess fat from the loin, and trim the flank to create a 3-inch (7.5-centimeter) lip. Tightly roll up the loin with the flank on the outside.



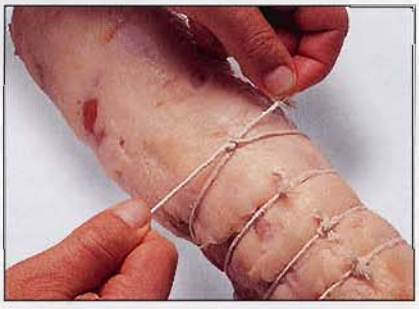
4. Tie the loin, using the procedure described below, at 1-inch (2.5-centimeter) intervals. Cut between the pieces of twine for individual boneless loin chops.

Procedure for Tying Meats

Here we apply the tying procedure to a boneless veal loin; the same procedure can be used on any type of meat.

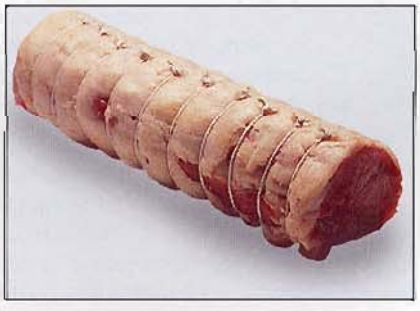
1. Cut a piece of string long enough to wrap completely around the loin. Holding one end between the thumb and forefinger, pass the other end around it and cross the strings. Loop the loose end of the string around your finger.

2. Wrap the string around itself and pass the loose end back through the hole.



3. Pull to tighten the knot. Adjust the string so it is snug against the meat.

4. Loop one end of the string around your thumb and forefinger. Reach through with your thumb and forefinger and pull the other string back through the loop. Pull both strings to tighten the knot, thus preventing the first knot from loosening. Trim the ends of the strings.



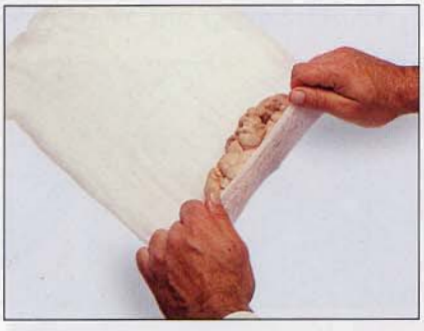
5. Continue in this fashion until the entire loin is tied. The strings should be tied at even intervals, just snug enough to hold the shape of the loin; they should not dig into or cut the meat.

Procedure for Cleaning and Pressing Sweetbreads

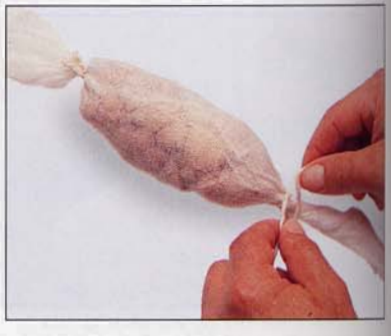
Before fabrication, you should submerge the sweetbreads in cold water, cover, and place them in the refrigerator overnight in order to soak out any blood. Then blanch them in a court bouillon for 20 minutes.

1. Remove the sweetbreads from the poaching liquid and allow them to cool.

2. Using your hands, pull off any sinew or membranes that may be present on the surface of the sweetbreads.



3. Wrap the sweetbreads in cheesecloth.

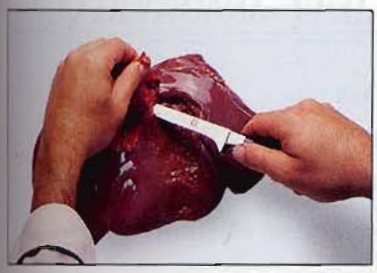


4. Tie the ends with butcher's twine.

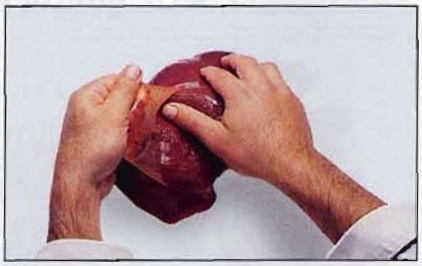
5. Place the wrapped sweetbreads in a half hotel pan or similar container.

6. Place another half hotel pan on top of the sweetbreads; place a weight in the pan to press the sweetbreads. Pressing sweetbreads in this manner improves their texture.

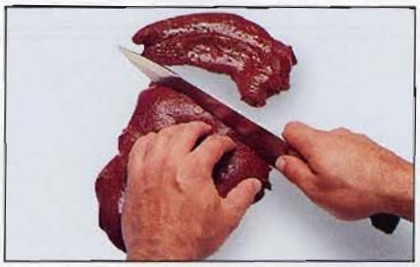
Procedure for Cleaning Calves' Liver



1. Trim the large sinew and outer membrane from the bottom of the liver.



2. Turn the liver over and peel the membrane off with your hands.

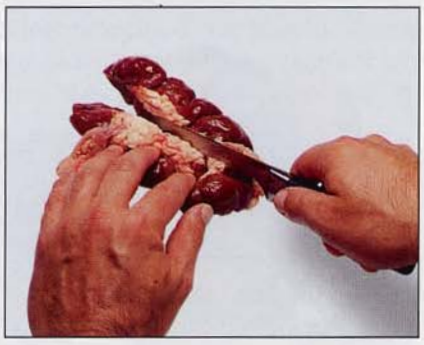


3. The liver can be cut into thick or thin slices as needed.

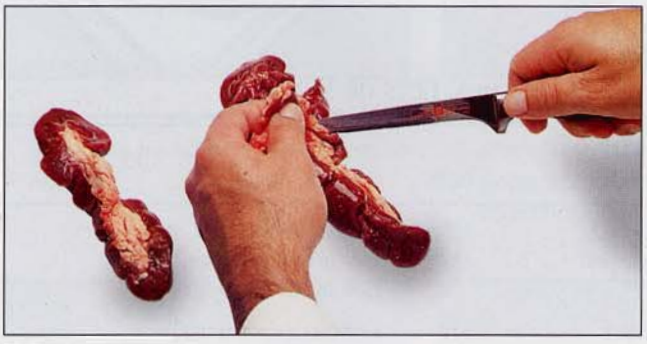
Table 14.1 Using Common Cuts of Veal

Primal	Subprimal or Fabricated Cut	IMPS	Cooking Methods	Serving Suggestions
Shoulder	Cubed veal	1395	Combination (stew)	Blanquette or fricassee
	Ground veal	1396	Dry heat (broil or grill)	Veal patties
			Combination (braise)	Stuffing; meatballs
Foreshank and breast	Foreshank	312	Combination (braise)	Osso buco
	Breast	313	Combination (braise)	Stuffed veal breast
Rib	Hotel rack	306	Dry heat (broil or grill; roast)	Grilled veal chop; roast veal with porcini mushrooms
	Rib chops	1306	Dry heat (broil or grill)	Grilled veal chop
			Combination (braise)	Braised veal chop with risotto
	Rib eye	307	Dry heat (broil or grill; roast)	Broiled veal rib eye with chipotle sauce; roasted veal rib eye marchand de vin
			Combination (braise)	Braised rib eye
Loin	Veal loin	331	Dry heat (broil or grill; roast; sauté)	Roasted veal loin with wild mushrooms; Sautéed veal medallions with green peppercorn sauce;
	Loin chops	1332	Dry heat (broil or grill; sauté)	Broiled or sautéed veal chops with mushroom sauce
			Combination (braise)	Braised veal chops lyonnaise
	Boneless strip loin	344	Dry heat (broil or grill; roast; sauté)	Roasted veal loin sauce poulette
	Veal tenderloin	346	Dry heat (broil or grill; roast; sauté)	Grilled tenderloin; roasted tenderloin; sautéed tenderloin with garlic and herbs
Leg	Leg	334	Dry heat (roast; sauté)	Veal scallopini
			Combination (stew)	Blanquette
	Top round	349A	Dry heat (roast; sauté)	Veal marsala
	Bottom round	NA	Dry heat (sauté)	Sautéed scallops with Calvados
			Combination (braise)	Stuffed veal scallops
	Hindshank	337	Moist heat (simmer)	Veal broth
			Combination (braise)	Osso buco
Offal	Sweetbreads	715	Dry heat (pan-fry; sauté)	Sautéed sweetbreads beurre noisette
			Combination (braise)	Braised sweetbreads madeira
	Calves' liver	704	Dry heat (broil or grill; sauté)	Broiled or sautéed calves' liver with onion and bacon
	Kidneys	NA	Combination (braise)	Kidney pie

Procedure for Cleaning Veal Kidneys



1. Split the kidneys lengthwise, exposing the fat and sinew.



2. With a sharp knife, trim away the fat and sinew. The kidney is now ready for cooking.

Conclusion

Although veal may not be as popular as beef or pork, it is versatile, easy to cook and adds variety to menus. Veal is much more delicately flavored than beef, with a finer texture and lighter color. Its flavor blends well with a variety of sauces and other ingredients without overpowering them. Veal can be cooked by almost any dry-heat, moist-heat or combination cooking method.

Veal quality varies greatly among purveyors. Purchase only from reputable companies to be sure you are receiving a consistently high-quality product. Because veal carcasses are relatively small, they are sometimes purchased as primal cuts for your further fabrication.

Questions for Discussion

1. Compare the appearance and flavor of beef and veal.
2. What are the differences between milk-fed veal and free-range veal?
3. Describe two differences between a beef carcass and a veal carcass.
4. List each veal primal, and describe its location on the carcass. For each primal, identify two subprimals or fabricated cuts taken from it.
5. Would it be better to use a veal loin for grilling or braising? Explain your answer.
6. What are veal sweetbreads? Describe how sweetbreads should be prepared for cooking.

Additional Veal Recipes

RECIPE 14.1

Roasted Veal Chop with Morel and Green Bean Ragout

Note: This dish appears in the Chapter Opening photograph.

MANGO RESTAURANT, Chicago, IL
Chef Steven Chiappetti

Yield: 2 Servings		Method: Roasting
Veal chops, 8 oz. (250 g) each	2	2
Shallots, minced	2	2
Olive oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh morels, sliced lengthwise	1 pt.	500 ml
White wine	8 oz.	250 ml
Veal or beef stock	8 oz.	250 ml
Heavy cream	2 oz.	60 ml
Whole butter	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh green beans, trimmed and steamed	4 oz.	120 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Beer-Battered Onion Rings (Recipe 21.3)	as needed	as needed
Potato croquettes	2	2

1. Sear the veal chops on a hot grill to produce crosshatch marks. Then transfer the chops to a roasting pan and finish cooking to medium in a 375°F (190°C) oven, approximately 10 minutes.
2. Sauté the shallots in the olive oil until tender. Add the morels and sauté until lightly browned. Add the wine and reduce by half.
3. Add the stock and reduce the sauce until it coats the back of a spoon. Stir in the cream.
4. Monté au beurre with the 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) of whole butter, add the cooked beans and season with salt and pepper.
5. Cut each veal chop in half and arrange on a plate so that the bone stands up. Drape onion rings over the end of the veal bone. Serve with the morel and green bean ragout and a potato croquette.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 792, **Total fat** 49 g, **Saturated fat** 19 g, **Cholesterol** 243 mg, **Sodium** 1115 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 36 g, **Protein** 36 g, **Vitamin A** 86%, **Vitamin C** 51%, **Calcium** 10%, **Iron** 24%

RECIPE 14.2

Rosemary-Roasted Veal Chops with Porcini Mushrooms

THE FOUR SEASONS, New York, NY
Chef Christian Albin

Yield: 4 Servings **Method:** Roasting

Veal chops, 12–14 oz. (350–400 g) each	4	4
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Fresh rosemary	4 sprigs	4 sprigs
Flour	as needed	as needed
Paprika	TT	TT
Clarified butter	4 oz.	120 g
White wine	4 oz.	120 ml
Brown veal stock	1 pt.	450 ml
Unsalted butter	2 oz.	60 g

1. Season the veal chops with salt and pepper. Press a rosemary sprig onto one side of each chop. Mix the flour and paprika and dredge the chops (both sides) in this mixture.
2. Heat the clarified butter in a sauté pan. Place the chops in the pan, rosemary side down. Roast in a preheated 375°F (190°C) oven for 7 minutes. Turn the chops carefully to keep the rosemary sprigs intact. Roast for 5–6 minutes more. Remove the chops and keep warm.
3. To make the sauce, degrease the pan and deglaze with the white wine. Add the veal stock and any juices that have accumulated under the chops. Simmer to reduce to 8 ounces (250 grams). Monté au beurre, strain and adjust the seasonings.

4. Serve the chops with grilled porcini mushrooms, roasted shallots and roasted red and yellow peppers.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 1138, **Total fat** 67 g, **Saturated fat** 31 g, **Cholesterol** 519 mg, **Sodium** 828 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 9 g, **Protein** 117 g, **Vitamin A** 50%, **Iron** 33%, **Calcium** 19%

RECIPE 14.3

Veal Kebabs

Yield: 4 Servings — Method: Grilling

Onion	1	1
Green pepper	1	1
Boneless veal leg, cut in 1-in. (2.5-cm) cubes	2 lb.	1 kg
Marinade:		
Olive oil	4 oz.	120 ml
White wine	2 oz.	60 ml
Lemon juice	2 oz.	60 ml
Assorted fresh herbs such as parsley, tarragon, sage and dill, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Cut the onion and green pepper into 1-inch (2.5-centimeter) chunks.
2. Prepare the kebabs by threading the veal, onions and peppers onto each of four skewers, alternating the items.
3. Prepare the marinade by combining the oil, wine, lemon juice, herbs, salt and pepper.
4. Marinate the skewers, refrigerated, for 3 hours.
5. Drain the kebabs; season with salt and pepper and grill to the desired doneness.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 650, **Total fat** 40 g, **Saturated fat** 8 g, **Cholesterol** 234 mg, **Sodium** 691 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 6 g, **Protein** 64 g, **Vitamin C** 35%, **Iron** 20%

RECIPE 14.4

Roast Veal Loin

Yield: 6 6-oz. (180-g) Servings — Method: Roasting

Boneless veal loin roast, 3 lb. (1.5 kg)	1	1
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Onions, chopped medium	2	2
Carrots, chopped medium	2	2
Garlic cloves, chopped	4	4
Fresh thyme	3 sprigs	3 sprigs
Bay leaves	2	2
Jus lié	1 pt.	500 ml

Continued

1. Tie the veal loin roast with butcher's twine.
2. Season the meat with salt and pepper and place it in a roasting pan. Scatter the onions, carrots, garlic, thyme and bay leaves around it.
3. Roast at 425°F (220°C) for approximately 45 minutes.
4. Remove the meat from the roasting pan and cut away the twine. Hold in a warm place for service.
5. Deglaze the roasting pan with the jus lié. Strain the vegetables and liquid through a chinois into a small saucepan. Discard the solids.
6. Bring the sauce to a boil and skim as much fat as possible from the surface. Season with salt and pepper. Spoon a portion of the sauce over the veal; serve the remainder on the side.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 526, **Total fat** 31 g, **Saturated fat** 12 g, **Cholesterol** 209 mg, **Sodium** 509 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 6 g, **Protein** 54 g, **Vitamin A** 47%, **Iron** 16%

RECIPE 14.5

Sautéed Veal Scallops with Calvados

Yield: 6 Servings **Method:** Sautéing

Mushrooms, sliced	12 oz.	340 g
Clarified butter	4 oz.	120 g
Golden Delicious apples	3	3
Veal scallops, pounded, 6 oz. (170 g) each	6	6
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Shallots, minced	2	2
Calvados	2 oz.	60 ml
Crème fraîche	8 oz.	250 g
Fresh parsley, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Sauté the mushrooms in a portion of the clarified butter until dry. Remove and reserve.
2. Peel and core the apples. Cut each into 12 wedges.
3. Sauté the apple wedges in a portion of the clarified butter until slightly browned and tender. Remove and reserve.
4. Season the veal scallops with salt and pepper. Sauté in the remaining clarified butter. (This may be done in two or three batches.) Remove and reserve.
5. Add the shallots to the pan and sauté without browning.
6. Deglaze with the Calvados. Flambé the Calvados.
7. Add the sautéed mushrooms and crème fraîche. Bring to a boil and reduce until it thickens slightly.
8. Return the scallops to the pan to reheat. Serve each scallop with sauce, garnished with six apple slices and chopped parsley.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 650, **Total fat** 41 g, **Saturated fat** 21 g, **Cholesterol** 295 mg, **Sodium** 710 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 14 g, **Protein** 56 g, **Vitamin A** 30%

RECIPE 14.6

Sautéed Calves' Liver with Onions

Yield: 10 Servings | Method: Sautéing

Onion, julienne	1 lb. 8 oz.	700 g
Clarified butter	3 oz.	90 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
White wine	8 oz.	250 ml
Fresh parsley, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Calves' liver, 6-oz. (180-g) slices	10	10
Flour	as needed	as needed

1. Sauté the onions in 1 ounce (30 grams) of butter until golden brown. Season with salt and pepper.
2. Add the white wine, cover and braise until the onions are tender, approximately 10 minutes. Stir in the chopped parsley.
3. Dredge the liver in flour seasoned with salt and pepper.
4. In a separate pan, sauté the liver in the remaining clarified butter until done. The liver should be slightly pink in the middle.
5. Serve the liver with a portion of the onions and their cooking liquid.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (180-g) serving: **Calories** 270, **Total fat** 9 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 535 mg, **Sodium** 520 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 16 g, **Protein** 30 g, **Vitamin A** 1190%, **Vitamin C** 50%

RECIPE 14.7

Veal Marengo

Yield: 6 10-oz. (300-g) Servings | Method: Braising

Lean boneless veal, cut in 2-in. (5-cm) cubes	2 lb. 8 oz.	1.1 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Flour for dredging the veal	as needed	as needed
Vegetable oil	1 1/2 oz.	45 g
Clarified butter	3 oz.	90 g
Onion, sliced fine	12 oz.	350 g
Carrot, sliced fine	10 oz.	300 g
Garlic cloves, crushed	2	2
Tomato paste	1 oz.	30 g
Flour	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Dry white wine	6 oz.	170 ml
Brown veal stock	1 pt.	450 ml
Bouquet garni:		
Carrot stick, 4 in. (10 cm)	1	1
Leek, split, 4-in. (10-cm) piece	1	1
Fresh thyme	1 sprig	1 sprig
Bay leaf	1	1
Mushrooms, washed and quartered	8 oz.	250 g
Tomato, diced	1 lb.	500 g
Pearl onions, boiled and peeled	24	24

Continued

1. Season the veal cubes with salt and pepper and dredge in flour.
2. Sauté the veal in 1 ounce (30 grams) of oil and 1 ounce (30 grams) of butter, browning well on all sides. Remove the meat and set aside.
3. Add 1 1/2 ounces (45 grams) of butter and sauté the onions, carrots and garlic without coloring. Stir in the tomato paste and return the veal to the pan. Sprinkle with the 2 tablespoons (30 milliliters) flour and cook to make a blond roux.
4. Add the wine, stock and bouquet garni to the pan; bring to a boil. Cover and braise until the meat is tender, approximately 1 1/2 hours.
5. Sauté the mushrooms until dry in the remaining oil and butter without browning. Add the tomatoes to the pan and sauté over high heat for 3 minutes. Season with salt and pepper. Remove from the heat and reserve.
6. When the veal is tender, remove it from the pan with a slotted spoon and set aside. Strain the sauce.
7. Return the veal to the sauce along with the mushrooms, tomatoes and pearl onions. Bring to a boil and simmer for 5 minutes. Adjust the seasonings.

Approximate values per 10-oz. (300-g) serving: **Calories** 340, **Total fat** 16 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 125 mg, **Sodium** 490 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 15 g, **Protein** 32 g, **Vitamin A** 70%, **Vitamin C** 25%

RECIPE 14.8

SWEETBREADS GRENOBLE

Yield: 8 Servings **Method:** Sautéing

Sweetbreads, blanched and pressed	8	8
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Flour	as needed	as needed
Clarified butter	2 oz.	60 ml
Dry white wine	2 oz.	60 ml
Whole butter	4 oz.	120 g
Capers	1/2 c.	250 ml
Lemons, cut into segments, membranes removed	3	3
Veal demi-glace	2 oz.	60 ml

1. Slice the sweetbreads and season with salt and pepper. Dust each piece lightly with flour.
2. Heat the clarified butter in a large sauté pan, add the sweetbreads and cook on each side for 1 to 2 minutes, until golden brown. Transfer the sweetbreads to a roasting pan and bake in a 375°F (190°C) oven for 5 minutes.
3. Deglaze the sauté pan with the wine. Add the whole butter, capers and lemon segments and cook over high heat for 1 to 2 minutes. Add the demi-glace and cook until thoroughly heated, approximately 1 more minute.
4. Arrange the sweetbreads on plates and top with the sauce.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 345, **Total fat** 22 g, **Saturated fat** 13 g, **Cholesterol** 512 mg, **Sodium** 461 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 4 g, **Protein** 33 g, **Vitamin A** 14%, **Vitamin C** 51%

RECIPE 14.9

Osso Buco

Chef Leland Atkinson, WASHINGTON, DC

Yield: 4 Servings | Method: Braising

Veal shank, cut in 1-in. (2.5-cm) pieces	8–12 pieces	8–12 pieces
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Flour	4 oz.	120 g
Olive oil	as needed	as needed
Garlic clove, minced	1	1
Carrot, diced	4 oz.	120 g
Lemon zest, grated	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
White wine	8 oz.	250 ml
Brown veal stock	1 qt.	1 lt
Tomato purée	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Gremolada:		
Garlic clove, chopped fine	1	1
Lemon zest	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh Italian parsley, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Season the veal with salt and pepper and dredge the pieces in flour. Sauté them in olive oil until brown on both sides.
2. Add the garlic and carrot and sauté briefly.
3. Add the lemon zest, wine, stock and tomato purée. Bring to a boil and reduce to a simmer. Braise on the stove top or in a 325°F (160°C) oven until the meat is tender but not falling from the bone, approximately 40–60 minutes.
4. Remove the cover and reduce the sauce until thick. Adjust the seasonings.
5. At service time, transfer the meat to a serving platter and ladle the sauce over it. Combine the gremolada ingredients and sprinkle over the meat and sauce.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 350, **Total fat** 12 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 55 mg, **Sodium** 1500 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 41 g, **Protein** 20 g, **Vitamin A** 80%, **Vitamin C** 20%, **Iron** 20%

RECIPE 14.10

Stuffed Breast of Veal

Yield: 12 8-oz. (250-g) Servings | Method: Braising

Stuffing:		
Onion, small dice	8 oz.	250 g
Garlic, chopped	2 tsp.	10 ml
Whole butter	1 oz.	30 g
Ground veal	1 lb.	450 g
Fresh bread crumbs	4 oz.	120 g
Nutmeg	TT	TT
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Eggs, beaten	2	2
Mushrooms, sliced	1 lb.	450 g

Continued

Clarified butter	2 oz.	60 g
Spinach leaves, stemmed and washed	4 oz.	120 g
Veal breast, approx. 8 lb. (3.6 kg)	1	1
Mirepoix, large dice	1 lb.	450 g
White wine	8 oz.	250 ml
Brown veal stock	3 pt.	1.5 lt
Garlic, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Bouquet garni:		
Carrot stick, 4 in. (10 cm)	1	1
Leek, split, 4-in. (10-cm) piece	1	1
Fresh thyme	1 sprig	1 sprig
Bay leaf	2	2

1. To make the stuffing, sauté the onions and garlic in the butter until tender. Cool. Combine with the remaining stuffing ingredients and mix well.
2. Sauté the mushrooms in 1 ounce (30 grams) of the clarified butter and cool.
3. Blanch the spinach and cool.
4. Bone the veal breast. Reserve the bones.
5. Butterfly the veal breast and open it into a large rectangular shape.
6. Spread the stuffing over the breast; leave a 1-inch (2.5-centimeter) border around the edges.
7. Open the spinach leaves and carefully lay them on top of the stuffing. Sprinkle the mushrooms on top of the spinach leaves.
8. Roll the breast up in a cylindrical shape so that the spinach leaves form a spiral in the center. Tie with butcher's twine.
9. Brown the breast in the remaining clarified butter.
10. Remove the breast and pour off all but 1 ounce (30 grams) of the grease. Add the mirepoix to the pan and sauté.
11. Add the reserved veal bones and place the veal breast on top of the bones.
12. Add the wine, stock, garlic and bouquet garni.
13. Cover and braise the breast until tender, approximately 2 1/2 hours.
14. Remove the breast from the pan and remove the twine. Skim any fat from the sauce.
15. Reduce the sauce and, if desired, thicken it slightly with a small amount of roux or beurre manié. Strain it through a fine chinois and adjust the seasonings.
16. Slice the veal breast and serve with the sauce.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 750, **Total fat** 30 g, **Saturated fat** 11 g, **Cholesterol** 445 mg, **Sodium** 660 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 11 g, **Protein** 109 g, **Vitamin A** 15%, **Iron** 30%

RECIPE 14.11

Veal Marsala

Yield: 6 Servings **Method:** Sautéing

Veal scallops, pounded, 3 oz. (90 g) each	12	12
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Flour	approx. 2 oz.	approx. 60 g
Clarified butter	2 oz.	60 g
Olive oil	2 oz.	60 g

Dry marsala	6 oz.	180 ml
Brown veal stock	4 oz.	120 ml
Whole butter	1 1/2 oz.	45 g

1. Season the scallops with salt and pepper. Dredge in flour and sauté the scallops in a mixture of the clarified butter and oil, a few at a time, until all are cooked.
2. Remove the scallops and set aside. Degrease the pan and deglaze with marsala. Add the stock and reduce until it begins to thicken.
3. Return the scallops to the sauce to reheat. Remove the scallops to plates or a serving platter.
4. Reduce the sauce until it becomes syrupy; adjust the seasonings. Monté au beurre and spoon the sauce over the veal.

Approximate values per 7-oz. (213-g) serving: **Calories** 430, **Total fat** 28 g, **Saturated fat** 12 g, **Cholesterol** 165 mg, **Sodium** 650 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 9 g, **Protein** 36 g, **Vitamin A** 15%

RECIPE 14.12

VEAL FRICASSEE

Yield: 16 8-oz. (250-g) Servings **Method:** Stewing

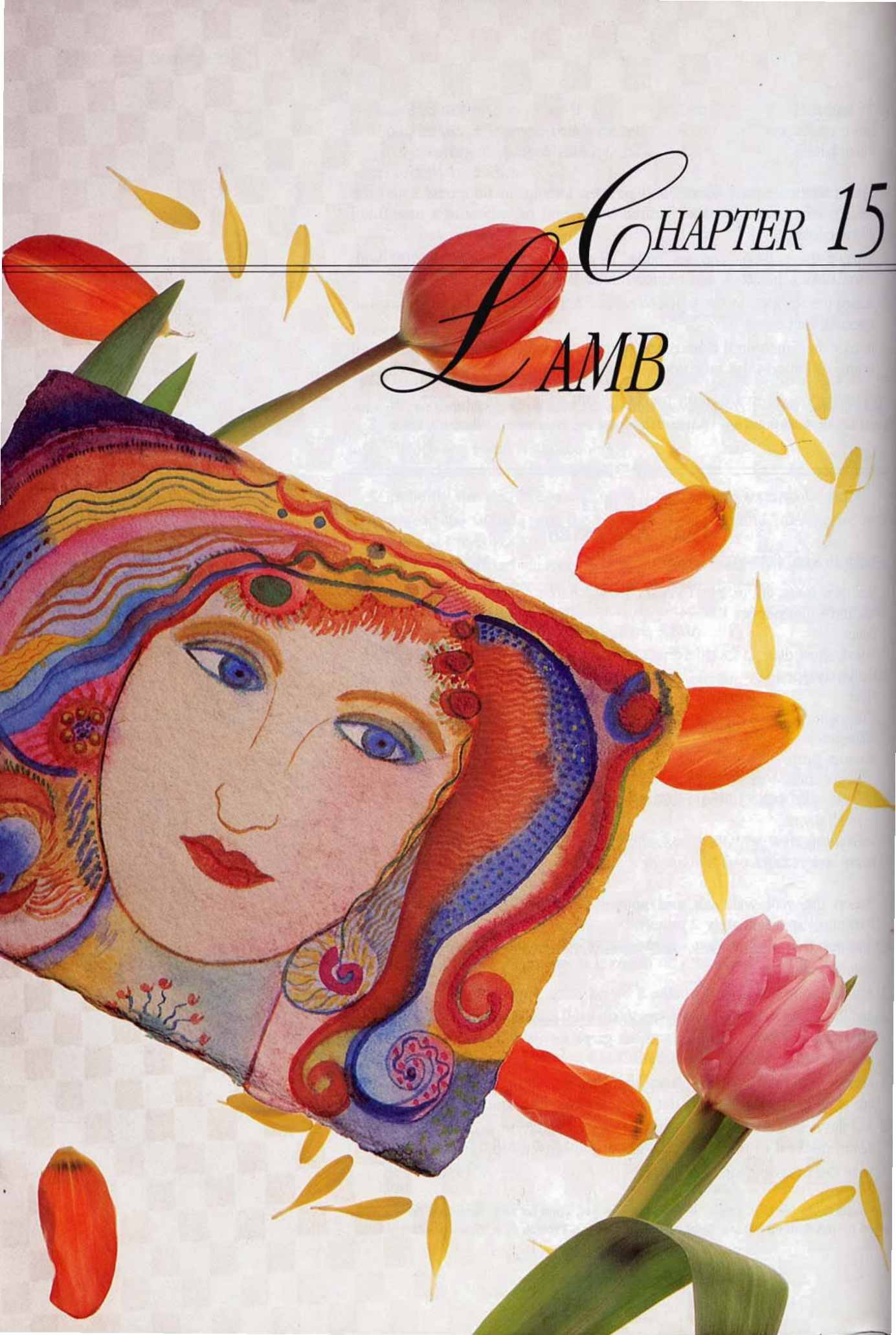
Veal stew meat, cut in 2-in. (5-cm) cubes	8 lb.	3.5 kg
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
Butter	6 oz.	180 g
Onion, small dice	12 oz.	350 g
Garlic, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Flour	6 oz.	180 g
White wine	4 oz.	120 ml
White stock	3 qt.	3 lt
Bouquet garni:		
Carrot stick, 4 in. (10 cm)	1	1
Leek, split, 4-in. (10-cm) piece	1	1
Fresh thyme	1 sprig	1 sprig
Bay leaf	1	1
Heavy cream, hot	1 pt.	450 ml

1. Season the veal with salt and pepper and sauté in the butter without browning, approximately 2 minutes.
2. Add the onions and garlic and sauté without coloring, approximately 2 minutes.
3. Add the flour and cook to make a blond roux, approximately 3 minutes.
4. Add the white wine and white stock, stir well to remove any lumps of roux and bring to a boil. Add the bouquet garni, cover and braise until the veal is tender, approximately 30 minutes.
5. Remove the veal from the sauce and reserve. Strain the sauce through a fine chinois and return it to the pan. Degrease the sauce.
6. Add the heavy cream to the sauce. Reduce slightly to thicken if necessary. Return the veal to the sauce and adjust the seasonings.
7. Serve the fricassee with rice pilaf.

Approximate values per 8-oz. (250-g) serving: **Calories** 340, **Total fat** 18 g, **Saturated fat** 8 g, **Cholesterol** 165 mg, **Sodium** 540 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 6 g, **Protein** 40 g, **Vitamin A** 10%

CHAPTER 15

LAMB



Bishop's Restaurant, Vancouver, B.C.
Painting by Alexandria Dikeakos, Vancouver, B.C.

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- identify the primal, subprimal and fabricated cuts of lamb
- perform basic butchering procedures
- apply appropriate cooking methods to several common cuts of lamb

Lamb is the meat of sheep slaughtered when they are less than one year old. Meat from sheep slaughtered after that age is called mutton. Spring lamb is young lamb that has not been fed grass or grains. Because lamb is slaughtered at an early age, it is quite tender and can be prepared by almost any cooking method.

Lamb has a strong and distinctive flavor. It goes well with boldly flavored sauces and accompaniments.

Imperialist, Colonialist and Revolutionary Sheep

Columbus brought sheep to the New World on his second voyage in 1493. The Spanish soon established breeding centers in the Caribbean islands, then in Mexico and Panama. In 1565, men and livestock, including sheep, settled in St. Augustine, Florida.

During the 16th and 17th centuries, the Spanish established missions in Texas, New Mexico, Arizona and California in order to bridge their Florida and Mexico settlements. They brought sheep with them as an easily cared-for source of food and wool.

Sheep raising was not as easily established in the British Colonies along the eastern seaboard. Many of the sheep brought with the early colonists were consumed for food during the harsh winters. More and more sheep had to be imported in order to satisfy the colonists' competing demands for food and clothing. By the mid-17th century, however, sheep were flourishing in the New England colonies and supplying an abundance of meat and wool.

In an attempt to maintain control of the wood trade, the British restricted the export of sheep to the American colonies and forbade the import of colonial wool and woolens. Retaliating against these restrictive trade practices, the colonists passed laws forbidding the use of sheep for food in order to preserve the flocks for wool. This protectionist scheme helped assure a strong supply of materials for the domestic woolen industry that flourished after the Revolutionary War.

Primal and Subprimal Cuts of Lamb

After the young sheep is slaughtered, it is usually reduced to the primal cuts: shoulder, breast, rack, loin and leg. Like some veal primals, lamb primals are crosscut sections and contain both bilateral halves (for example, the primal leg contains both hind legs). Lamb primals are not classified into a forequarter and hindquarter like beef, or a foresaddle and hindsaddle like veal.

Figure 15.1 shows the relationship between the lamb's bone structure and the primal cuts. As with all meats, it is important to know the location of bones when cutting or working with lamb. This makes meat fabrication and carving easier and aids in identifying cuts. Figure 15.2 shows the primal cuts of lamb and their location on the carcass. A lamb carcass generally weighs between 41 and 75 pounds (20 to 35 kg).

Shoulder

The primal lamb shoulder is a relatively large cut accounting for 36% of the carcass weight. The lamb shoulder contains four rib bones and the arm, blade and neck bones as well as many small, tough muscles whose grains travel in different directions.

All these bones and muscle groups make it nearly impossible to cook and carve a whole shoulder. Although the shoulder may be cut into chops, or boned and then roasted or braised, with or without stuffing, it is more commonly diced for stew or ground for patties.

Breast

The primal lamb breast contains the breast and foreshank portions of the carcass. Together they account for approximately 17% of the carcass weight and contain the rib, breast and shank bones. The primal breast is located beneath the primal rack and contains the rib tips, which are cut off to produce the rack. When separated from the rest of the breast, these small ribs are called Denver ribs and can be substituted for pork ribs where desired.

Although the breast is not used extensively in food service operations, it can be stuffed and braised, either bone-in or boneless. Lamb foreshanks are quite meaty and may be braised and served as an entrée, used for broths, or ground.

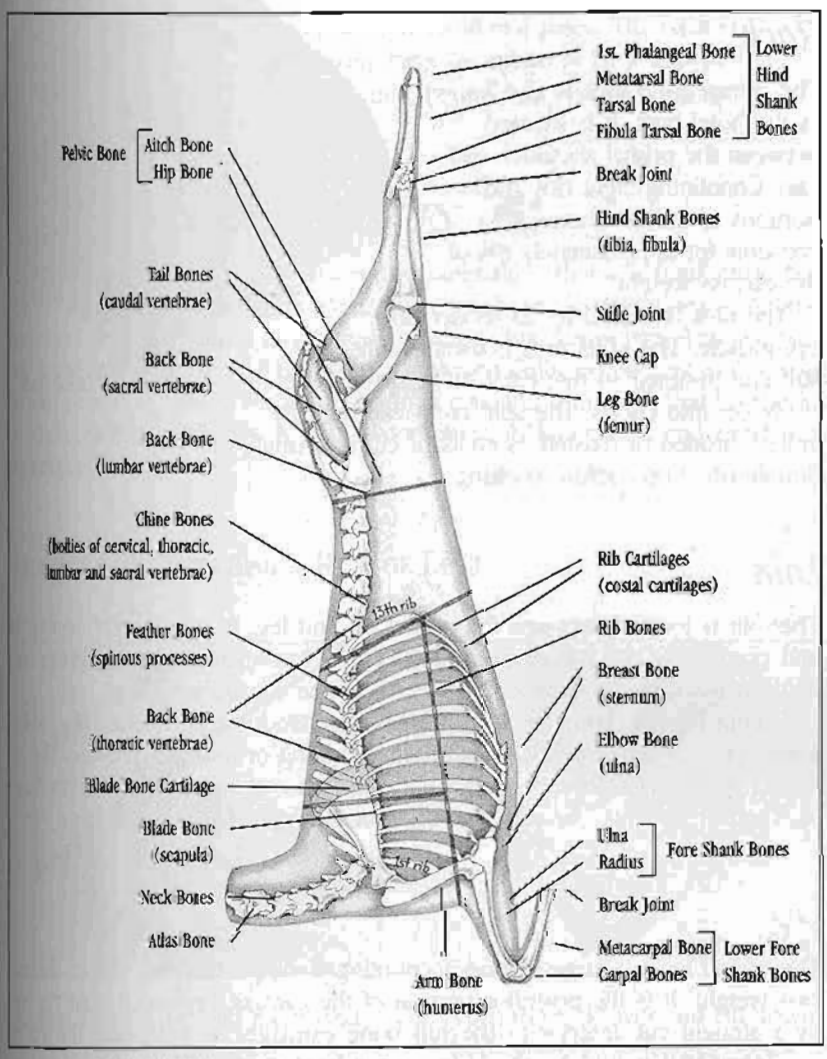


FIGURE 15.1 *The Skeletal Structure of a Lamb*

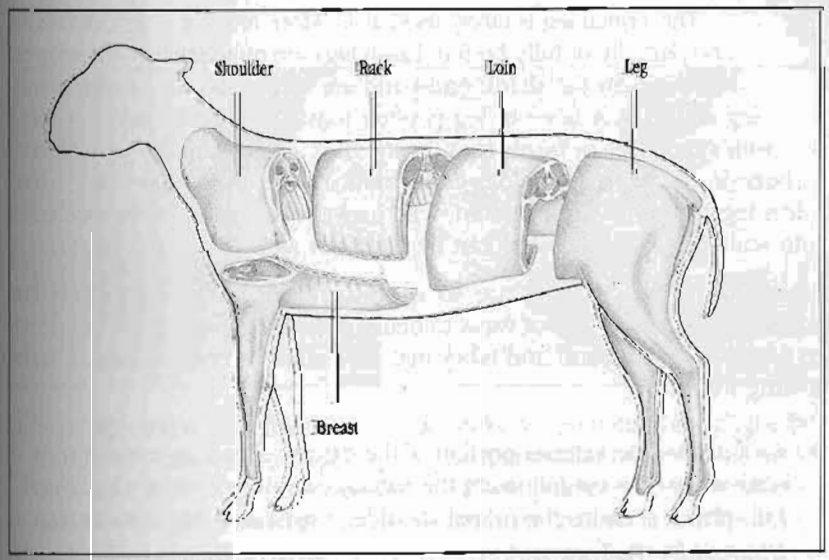
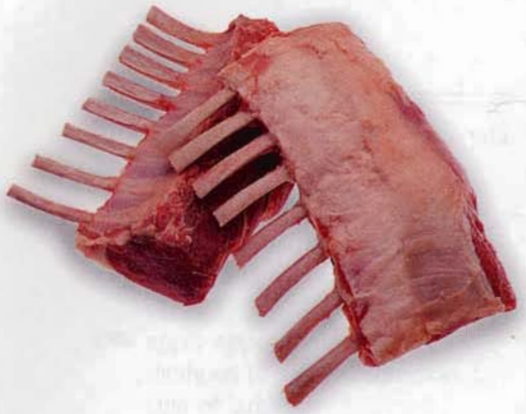


FIGURE 15.2 *The Primal Cuts of Lamb*



Frenched Lamb Rack

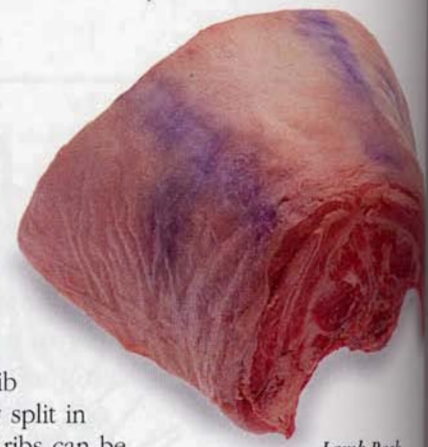
French—*a method of trimming racks or individual chops of meat, especially lamb, in which the excess fat is cut away leaving the eye muscle intact; all meat and connective tissue are removed from the rib bone.*

Lamb Loin Trimmed

Lamb Leg

Boned, Rolled and Tied Leg of Lamb

Rack



Lamb Rack

The primal lamb rack is also known as the hotel rack. It is located between the primal shoulder and loin. Containing eight ribs and portions of the backbone, it accounts for approximately 8% of the carcass weight.

The rack is valued for its tender rib eye muscle. The hotel rack is usually split in half and trimmed so that each set of ribs can be easily cut into chops. The split racks can then be grilled, broiled or roasted as racks or cut into single or double rib chops before cooking.

Loin

The loin is located between the primal rib and leg. It contains rib number 13 and portions of the backbone as well as the loin eye muscle, tenderloin and flank. It accounts for approximately 13% of the carcass weight.

Except for the flank, the loin meat is very tender and is invariably cooked using a dry-heat method such as broiling, grilling or roasting. The loin may be boned to produce boneless roasts or chops or cut into chops with the bone in. The loin eye may be removed and cut into medallions or noisettes.

Leg

The primal leg is a large section accounting for approximately 34% of the carcass weight. It is the posterior portion of the carcass, separated from the loin by a straight cut anterior to the hip bone cartilage. As with veal, the cut of meat that would be the sirloin on a beef carcass is separated from the lamb loin by this cut and becomes part of the primal leg. The lamb leg contains several bones: the backbone, tail, hip, aitch, round and shank bones.

The primal leg is rarely used as is. More often, it is split into two legs and partially or fully boned. Lamb legs are quite tender—the sirloin end more so than the shank end—and are well suited to a variety of cooking methods. A bone-in leg is often roasted for buffet service or braised with vegetables or beans for a hearty dish. Steaks can also be cut from the bone-in leg, with the sirloin end producing the most tender cuts. A boneless leg can be tied and roasted, with or without stuffing, or trimmed and cut into scallops. The shank end can be diced for stew or ground for patties.

Because lamb carcasses are so easily handled, purveyors often sell them whole or cut in a variety of ways to better meet their customers' needs. As well as whole carcass, primal and fabricated cuts, lamb can be purchased in the following forms:

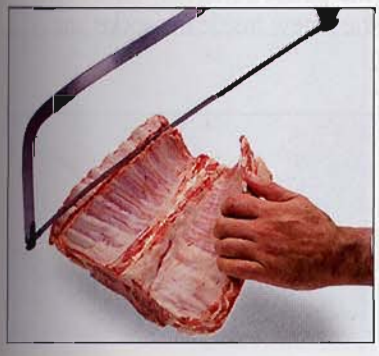
- *Foresaddle*: The anterior portion of the carcass after it is severed from the hindsaddle by a cut following the natural curvature between the 12th and 13th ribs. It contains the primal shoulder, breast and foreshank and rack.
- *Hindsaddle*: The posterior portion of the carcass after it is severed from the foresaddle. It contains the primal loin and leg together with the kidneys.

- *Back:* The trimmed rack and loin sections in one piece. The back is particularly useful when producing large quantities of lamb chops.
- *Bracelet:* The primal hotel rack with the connecting breast sections.

BUTCHERING PROCEDURES

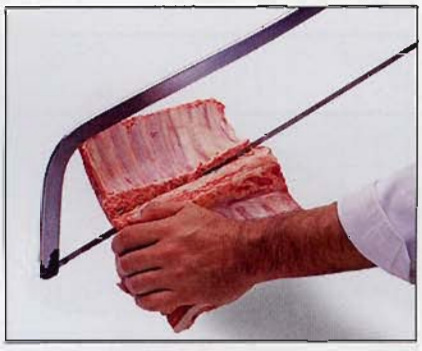
Lamb is unique among the common meat animals in that it is small enough to be handled easily in its carcass form. Thus, food service operations sometimes purchase lamb whole and fabricate the desired cuts themselves. This is practical if the operation has the necessary employee skills, equipment and storage space, as well as a need for all the various cuts and trimmings that butchering a whole carcass produces. A few important lamb fabrication and butchering techniques follow.

PROCEDURE FOR FRENCHING A RACK OF LAMB



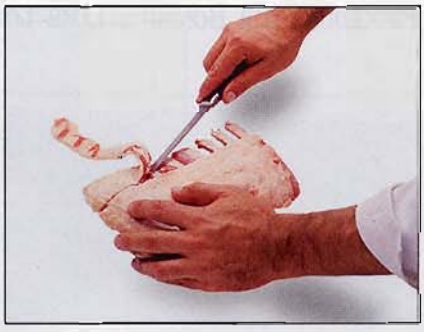
1. With a meat saw, trim the ribs to approximately 3 inches (7.5 centimeters), measuring from the rib eye on each side of the rack.

2. Turn the rack over and cut down both sides of the feather bones, completely separating the meat from the bone.



3. Turn the rack back over. Using a meat saw, cut between the ribs and the chine bone at a 45-degree angle, exposing the lean meat between the ribs and the vertebral junctures.

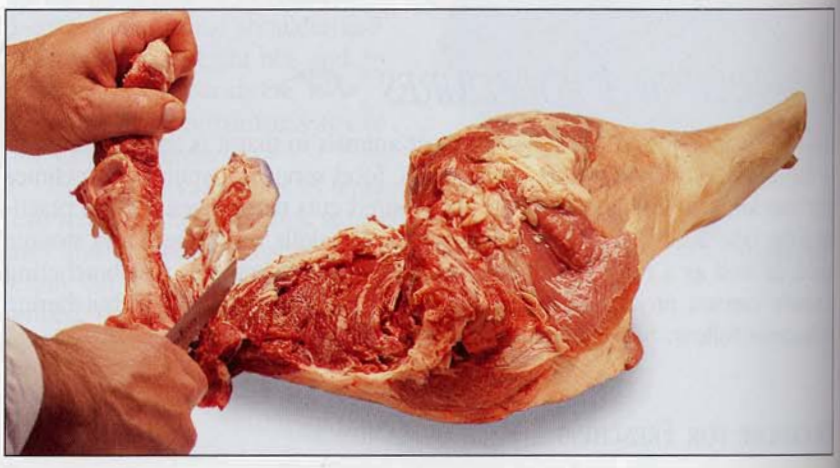
4. By pulling and cutting along the natural seam, remove the thick layers of fat and the meat between them from the rack's surface.



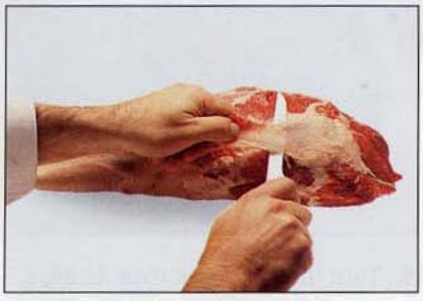
5. Make an even cut through the fat, perpendicular to the ribs, 1 inch (25 centimeters) from the rib eye. Trim away all meat and fat from the rib ends. The ribs should be completely clean.

6. Trim away the fat covering. Leave either a thin layer to protect the meat during cooking or trim the fat away completely to produce a very lean rack. The rack can also be cut into chops.

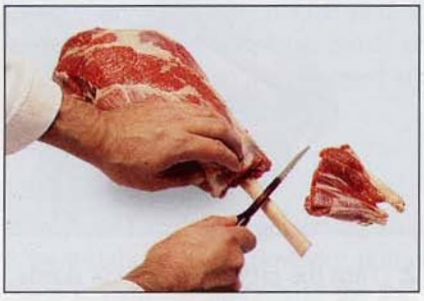
Procedure for Trimming and Boning a Lamb Leg for Roasting or Grilling



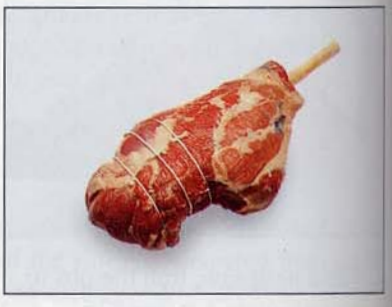
1. With the tip of the knife, trim around the pelvic bone; stay close to the bone to avoid wasting any meat. Cut the sinew inside the socket and remove the bone.



2. Trim away most of the exterior fat.

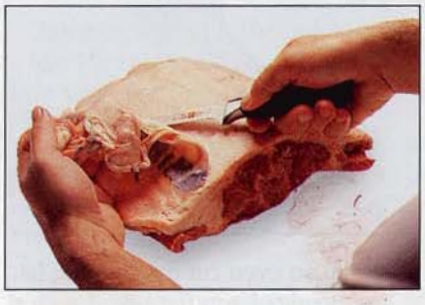


3. Cut off the shank portion completely and scrape the bone clean. This makes a handle to hold while carving the lamb.



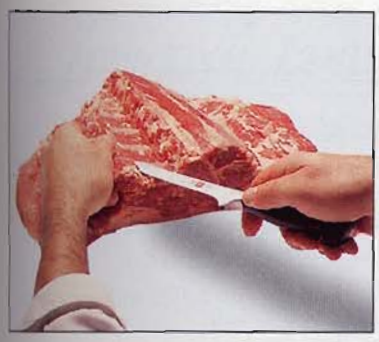
4. Fold the flap of the sirloin over on top of the ball of the leg bone and tie with butcher's twine. This helps the leg cook evenly.

Procedure for Boning a Lamb Loin for Roasting

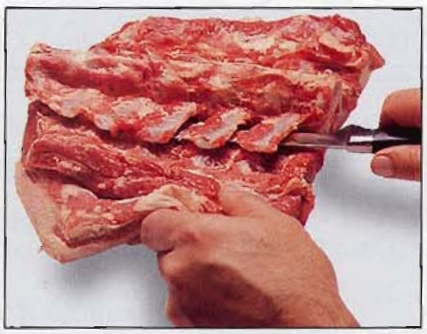


1. Start with a trimmed lamb loin (double). With the skin side up, trim the thin layer of connective tissue called the fell from the loin's surface.

2. Turn the loin over and trim the fat from around the tenderloins.

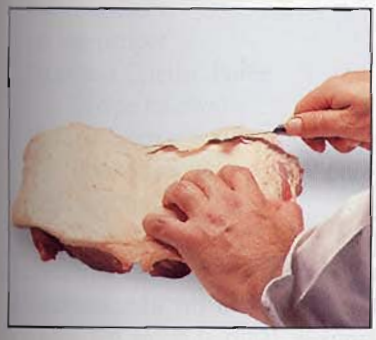


3. Starting in the middle of the backbone, cut between the tenderloin and the vertebrae, separating them but leaving the tenderloin attached to the flank. Continue until you reach the end of the vertebrae. Repeat on the other side.

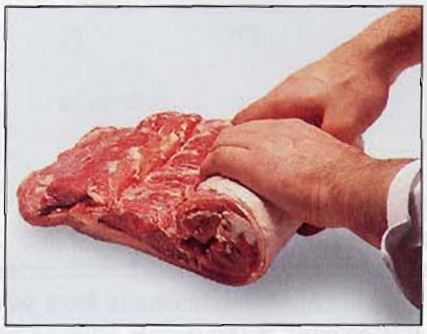


4. Slide the knife under the vertebrae and rib and cut back all the way to the backbone, separating the eye muscle from the vertebrae.

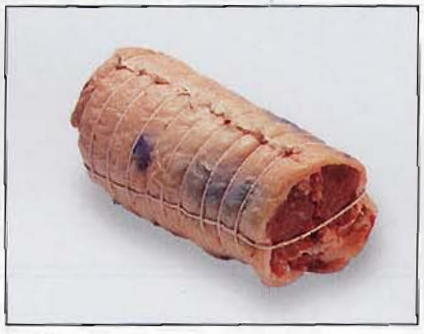
5. Pull the backbone out with your hands, keeping the loins intact.



6. Turn the loins over and trim the surface fat to 1/4 inch (6 millimeters).

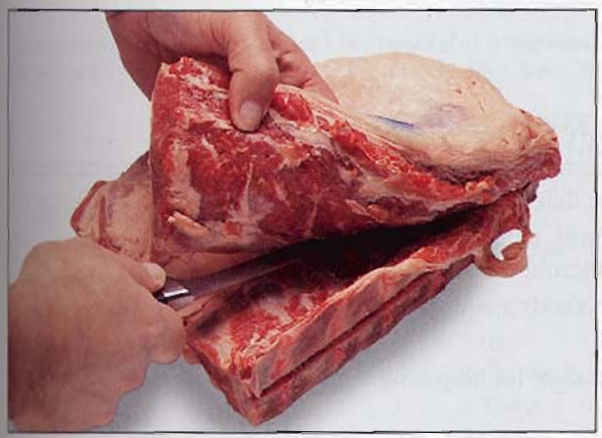


7. Roll the flank flaps under from each side.

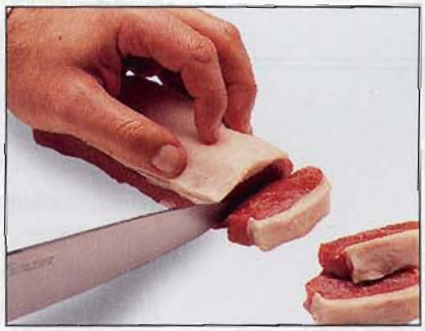


8. Tie the roast with butcher's twine at even intervals.

Procedure for Cutting Lamb Noisettes from a Loin



1. Remove the loin eye muscle by cutting down along the backbone and along the vertebrae. Trim the eye muscle, leaving a thin layer of fat if desired.



2. Cut the eye meat into noisettes of the desired thickness.

TABLE 15.1 USING COMMON CUTS OF LAMB

Primal	Subprimal or Fabricated Cut	IMPS	Cooking Methods	Serving Suggestions
Shoulder	Shoulder lamb chop	1207	Dry heat (broil or grill)	Broiled or grilled lamb chops
	Diced lamb	1295	Combination (stew)	Lamb stew; lamb curry
	Ground lamb	1296	Dry heat (broil or grill; sauté)	Patties
Breast	Breast	209	Combination (braise)	Lamb breast stuffed with mushrooms
Hotel Rack	Lamb rack	204	Dry heat (broil or grill; roast; sauté)	Roast rack of lamb with garlic and rosemary
	Frenched lamb rack	204C	Dry heat (broil or grill; roast; sauté)	Broiled lamb with mustard and hazelnut crust
Loin	Lamb loin trimmed	232	Dry heat (broil or grill; roast; sauté)	Noisettes of lamb with roasted garlic sauce
	Loin chops	1232	Dry heat (broil or grill; sauté)	Broiled loin chops with herb butter
Leg	Lamb leg	233A	Dry heat (broil or grill; roast)	Kebabs; roast leg of lamb
	Boned rolled tied leg of lamb	233B	Dry heat (roast)	Roast leg of lamb

CONCLUSION

Even though lamb accounts for a small percentage of the meat consumed in this country, many people who do not prepare lamb at home will order it at a restaurant. Because lamb is slaughtered under the age of one year, its meat is tender and it can be prepared by almost any cooking method. Its strong, distinctive flavor allows you to offer bold, robust sauces and accompaniments that might mask the flavors of other meats.

QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

1. Describe the basic differences between a lamb carcass and a beef carcass.
2. List each lamb primal, and describe its location on the carcass. Identify two subprimals or fabricated cuts taken from each primal.
3. Which cooking methods are most appropriate for a breast of lamb? Explain your answer.
4. Describe the procedure for preparing a frenched rack of lamb from a primal hotel rack.
5. What is the best way to purchase lamb for a food service operation that cuts its own meat and uses large quantities of lamb chops? Explain your answer.

Additional Lamb Recipes

RECIPE 15.1

Roast Rack of Lamb with Mint and Celeriac Sauce

Note: This dish appears in the Chapter Opening photograph.

BISHOP'S RESTAURANT, Vancouver, BC
Chefs Michael Allemeier and Dennis Green

Yield: 4 Servings		Method: Roasting
Lamb rack, cleaned and frenched 2 lb. (1 kg) each	2	2
Fresh white bread cubes, crusts removed	1 pt.	500 ml
Fresh mint, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Fresh parsley, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Fresh chives, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Dijon mustard	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Potato and Celeriac Purée (recipe follows)	as needed	as needed
Mint and Celeriac Sauce (recipe follows)	as needed	as needed
Fresh mint sprigs	2	2

1. Season the lamb racks with salt and pepper and sear on both sides.
2. Transfer the lamb to a roasting pan and roast in a 400°F (200°C) oven until medium rare, approximately 15–20 minutes.
3. Meanwhile, combine the bread crumbs and the herbs in a food processor and process until well blended. Set aside.
4. Remove the lamb from the roasting pan and smear with the mustard. Coat the racks with the bread crumb mixture.
5. Allow the lamb to rest for 10 minutes before carving.
6. Serve with Potato and Celeriac Purée and Mint and Celeriac Sauce. Garnish with fresh mint.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 1240, **Total fat** 64 g, **Saturated fat** 22 g, **Cholesterol** 400 mg, **Sodium** 880 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 40 g, **Protein** 126 g, **Iron** 70%

POTATO AND CELERIAC PURÉE

Yield: 8 Servings		
Potatoes, peeled and cut into pieces	1 lb. 8 oz.	750 g
Celeriac (celery root), peeled and cut into 1-inch (2.5-cm) pieces	8 oz.	250 g
Heavy cream	8 oz.	250 ml
Whole butter	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

Continued

1. Combine the potatoes and celeriac in a saucepan and cover with water. Bring to a boil, reduce the heat, and simmer until tender, approximately 30 minutes.
2. Strain. Mash the potatoes and celeriac using a food mill or potato ricer.
3. Heat the cream and the butter just to a boil. Add to the hot potato mixture. Using an electric mixer fitted with the whip attachment, whip the purée until fluffy. Season to taste with salt and pepper.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 225, **Total fat** 14 g, **Saturated fat** 9 g, **Cholesterol** 50 mg, **Sodium** 125 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 22 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Vitamin A** 15%, **Vitamin C** 22%

MINT AND CELERIAC SAUCE

Yield: 1 pint (500 ml)

Whole butter	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Shallots, chopped fine	4 oz.	120 g
Garlic, minced	2 cloves	2 cloves
Celeriac (celery root), peeled and chopped	4 oz.	120 g
Red wine vinegar	2 oz.	30 ml
Port	4 oz.	120 ml
Fresh mint, chopped	1/2 cup	120 ml
Demi-glace	1 pt.	500 ml

1. Melt the butter in a sauce pan. Add the shallots, garlic and celeriac and sauté until tender, but not brown.
2. Add the vinegar and reduce au sec.
3. Add the port and mint and reduce by half.
4. Add the demi-glace and simmer for 30 minutes. Strain and keep warm for service. The sauce can be made up to one day in advance and refrigerated, then reheated as needed.

Approximate values per 2-oz. (70-g) serving: **Calories** 70, **Total fat** 6 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 90 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Vitamin A** 8%, **Claims**—low sodium; no sugar

RECIPE 15.2

RACK OF LAMB WITH MUSTARD AND HAZELNUTS

Yield: 4 Servings Method: Roasting

Lamb racks, frenched, 2 lb. to 2 lb. 8 oz. (.9 to 1.1 kg) each	2	2
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Olive oil	2 oz.	60 ml
Dijon mustard	2 oz.	60 g
Fresh bread crumbs	1 oz.	30 g
Hazelnuts, chopped fine	2 oz.	60 g
Molasses	1 oz.	30 g

1. Season the racks with salt and pepper and brown well in the olive oil.
2. Spread the mustard over the surface of the racks.

3. Combine the bread crumbs, nuts and molasses and press this mixture into the mustard to form a crust.
4. Roast the racks at 375°F (190°C) until medium rare, approximately 30 minutes.
5. Allow the racks to rest 15 minutes. Carve into chops and serve with marchand de vin sauce made with lamb jus lié (Recipe 10.12).

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 700, **Total fat** 43 g, **Saturated fat** 10 g, **Cholesterol** 195 mg, **Sodium** 880 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 14 g, **Protein** 64 g, **Iron** 35%

RECIPE 15.3

Shish Kebab

Yield: 10 Servings — Method: Grilling or Broiling

Marinade:		
Onion, small dice	12 oz.	350 g
Garlic, chopped	1 oz.	30 g
Lemon juice	4 oz.	120 ml
Salt	2 Tbs.	30 ml
Pepper	1 tsp.	5 ml
Fresh oregano, chopped	2 tsp.	10 ml
Olive oil	8 oz.	250 ml
Cumin, ground	2 tsp.	10 ml
Coriander, ground	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh mint, chopped	2 tsp.	10 ml
Lamb leg or shoulder, boneless, trimmed and cut in 2-in. (15-cm) cubes	5 lb.	2.2 kg

1. Combine the marinade ingredients and add the lamb. Marinate for 2 hours.
2. Place 3–4 cubes of lamb on each of ten skewers. Grill or broil to the desired doneness. Serve with rice pilaf.

Approximate values per 7.5-oz. (227-g) serving: **Calories** 410, **Total fat** 17 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 205 mg, **Sodium** 170 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 0 g, **Protein** 64 g, **Iron** 30%

RECIPE 15.4

Lamb Patties with Mint

Yield: 6 Servings — Method: Grilling or Broiling

Ground lamb	1 lb. 12 oz.	800 g
Fresh bread crumbs	2 oz.	60 g
Egg, beaten	1	1
Onion, minced	3 oz.	90 g
Garlic cloves, crushed	2	2
Fresh mint, chopped	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

Continued

1. Place the lamb in a bowl and mix in the bread crumbs, egg, onion, garlic and mint. Add salt and pepper to taste and mix well. Form the mixture into six patties.
2. Grill or broil the patties until browned on both sides. Garnish with extra mint if desired.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (172-g) serving: **Calories** 430, **Total fat** 28 g, **Saturated fat** 11 g, **Cholesterol** 165 mg, **Sodium** 590 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 9 g, **Protein** 35 g, **Iron** 20%

RECIPE 15.5

Broiled Lamb Kidneys

Yield: 10 Servings — Method: Broiling

Lamb kidneys	20	20
Bacon fat	2 oz.	60 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Grain mustard	16 oz.	480 g

1. Split the lamb kidneys lengthwise; remove the fat and gristle.
2. Arrange the kidney halves on skewers, four halves per skewer.
3. Brush the kidneys with bacon fat, season with salt and pepper and broil, turning once halfway through cooking, until well browned but still pink in the center, approximately 6–8 minutes.
4. Serve four halves per portion with 1 1/2 ounces (45 grams) of grain mustard each.

Approximate values per 7-oz. (222-g) serving: **Calories** 320, **Total fat** 15 g, **Saturated fat** 4.5 g, **Cholesterol** 965 mg, **Sodium** 1080 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 4 g, **Protein** 43 g, **Vitamin A** 25%, **Vitamin C** 35%, **Iron** 120%

RECIPE 15.6

Roast Leg of Lamb with Jalapeño

VINCENT ON CAMELBACK, PHOENIX, AZ
Chef Vincent Guerithault

Yield: 12 5- to 6-oz. (150- to 180-g) Servings — Method: Roasting

Leg of lamb, 6–8 lb. (2.7–3.6 kg)	1	1
Jalapeño peppers	6	6
Olive oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Dixon (or Chimayo) chile powder	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Garlic heads	12	12
Fresh thyme	1 sprig	1 sprig
Fresh rosemary	1 sprig	1 sprig
Water	8 oz.	250 ml
Chicken glaze	2 oz.	60 g

1. Trim the leg, removing most of the fat; leave the bone intact.
2. Roast the jalapeños over an open flame. When they are blackened, remove the skin and cut each pepper in half. Make 12 slits in the lamb and slide one half jalapeño pepper into each slit.
3. Brush the lamb with olive oil and dust with the Dixon or Chimayo chile powder, salt and pepper.
4. Sauté the lamb over a high flame or grill, turning frequently.
5. When the lamb is golden in color, transfer it to a roasting pan. Surround the lamb with the garlic heads, thyme and rosemary. Roast at 400°F (200°C) for 45 minutes, turning the leg three or four times. When the lamb is done, remove it and the garlic from the pan and set aside.
6. To make the sauce, add the water and chicken glaze to the pan and bring to a boil. Simmer 5 minutes and strain.
7. Serve each lamb portion with one head of garlic. (Cut off the bottom of each garlic head before serving.) Top each serving with 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) of sauce.

Approximate values per 9-oz. (279-g) serving: **Calories** 540, **Total fat** 26 g, **Saturated fat** 9 g, **Cholesterol** 245 mg, **Sodium** 530 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 75 g, **Iron** 35%

RECIPE 15.7

Stuffed Leg of Lamb

Yield: 12 5- to 6-oz. (150- to 180-g) Servings — Method: Roasting

Bacon, fine dice	3 oz.	90 g
Fennel, fine dice	1 bulb	1 bulb
Garlic cloves, chopped fine	2	2
Wild mushrooms such as shiitake, chanterelles or porcini, chopped	12 oz.	340 g
Parsley, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Fresh thyme	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Fresh rosemary	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Dry white wine	8 oz.	250 ml
Fresh bread crumbs	3 oz.	90 g
Leg of lamb 6–8 lb. (2.7–3.6 kg)	1	1
Mirepoix	1 lb.	500 g

1. To make the stuffing, sauté the bacon until crisp. Add the fennel and sauté lightly.
2. Add the garlic and sauté. Add the mushrooms, parsley, thyme, rosemary, salt and pepper and sauté for an additional 2 minutes.
3. Deglaze with white wine and reduce by three quarters. Remove from the heat.
4. Stir in the bread crumbs.
5. Completely bone out the leg, following the natural seams in the meat. Cut off the shank meat for use in another recipe. Fill the cavity left by the bone with stuffing.

Continued

6. Season the lamb with salt and pepper. Close the leg around the stuffing and seal the opening by tying with butcher's twine.
7. Place the stuffed leg in a roasting pan on a bed of mirepoix.
8. Roast at 375°F (190°C) until medium rare, approximately 1 hour. Serve au jus or with a pan gravy.

Approximate values per 10-oz. (332-g) serving: **Calories** 540, **Total fat** 20 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 230 mg, **Sodium** 630 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 12 g, **Protein** 78 g, **Iron** 35%

RECIPE 15.8

Grilled Rack of Lamb with Rosemary and Spicy Bell Pepper Jelly

VINCENT ON CAMELBACK, PHOENIX, AZ
Chef Vincent Guerithault

Yield: 8 Servings		Method: Grilling
Red bell peppers	2	2
Yellow bell peppers	2	2
Red Serrano chiles	8	8
Sugar	8 oz.	250 g
Lamb racks, frenched, 9 oz. (270 g) each	4	4
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Dried rosemary sprigs*	8	8

1. To make the pepper jelly, julienne the peppers and chiles. Mix with the sugar and refrigerate overnight.
2. At service time, cook the pepper mixture (along with the liquid formed while refrigerated) over low heat for approximately 10–15 minutes. Cool and keep the pepper jelly at room temperature.
3. Cut each lamb rack in half. Season with salt and pepper.
4. Grill the lamb over mesquite to the desired temperature.
5. Cut the racks into chops and plate the lamb and pepper jelly. Garnish each plate with a dried rosemary sprig and flame. When the rosemary flames, blow it out at once and serve immediately so that the essence of rosemary is fresh.

*To dry rosemary, place fresh rosemary sprigs in a 350°F (180°C) oven for approximately 10 minutes.

Approximate values per 9-oz. (275-g) serving: **Calories** 430, **Total fat** 17 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 110 mg, **Sodium** 400 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 34 g, **Protein** 35 g, **Vitamin A** 45%, **Vitamin C** 280%, **Iron** 20%

RECIPE 15.9

Grilled Lamb Chops with Smoked Corn and Wild Mushroom Polenta and Pumpkinseed Cream

THE BOULDERS RESORT, CAREFREE, AZ
Chef Jarett Forsberg

Yield: 4 Servings | Method: Grilling

Olive oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Assorted fresh mushrooms such as chanterelle, morel, shiitake, and so on, cut into equal-sized pieces	1 pt.	500 ml
Assorted baby braising greens such as red chard, kale, spinach, frisee, and so on	1 1/2 pt.	750 ml
Kosher salt	TT	TT
Freshly ground pepper	TT	TT
Double cut lamb chops	8	8
Smoked Corn Polenta (recipe follows)	1 pt.	500 ml
Pumpkinseed Cream (recipe follows)		

1. Prepare a mesquite or charcoal grill. Heat olive oil in a large sauté pan, add the mushrooms and cook until tender approximately 15 minutes. Add the greens and wilt briefly. Season with salt and pepper.
2. Season the lamb chops with salt and pepper. Grill to desired temperature; keep warm.
3. Spoon 1/2 cup (125 milliliters) of the polenta onto each plate and top with one quarter of the mushroom mixture. Arrange two chops on the polenta and drizzle with pumpkinseed cream.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 820, **Total fat** 37 g, **Saturated fat** 13 g, **Cholesterol** 175 mg, **Sodium** 630 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 64 g, **Protein** 58 g, **Vitamin A** 20%, **Iron** 40%

SMOKED CORN POLENTA

Yield: 1 1/2 pints (750 ml)

Sweet corn	4 ears	4 ears
Chicken stock	20 oz.	600 ml
Butter	1 Tbsp.	30 ml
Olive oil	1 Tbsp.	30 ml
White onion, diced	1 small	1 small
Garlic cloves, minced	2	2
White wine	2 oz.	60 ml
Yellow cornmeal	1 pt.	500 ml
Heavy cream	2 oz.	60 ml
Kosher salt	TT	TT
Freshly ground black pepper	TT	TT

1. Lightly smoke the ears of corn and remove the kernels.

Continued

2. Pour 4 ounces (120 milliliters) of chicken stock into a blender. Add half of the corn kernels and purée. Pass the purée through a coarse strainer.
3. Heat butter and oil in a large, heavy-bottomed sauce pot. Add the onions and garlic and sauté until tender. Add the white wine and stir well; reduce au sec.
4. Add the remaining chicken stock, the corn purée and the remaining whole corn kernels. Bring to a boil.
5. Slowly whisk in the cornmeal. Cook for 10 minutes over medium heat, stirring constantly.
6. Add the heavy cream and cook an additional 5 minutes. Season with salt and pepper.

Approximate values per 1-cup (277-g) serving: **Calories** 340, **Total fat** 11 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 20 mg, **Sodium** 420 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 53 g, **Protein** 9 g, **Vitamin A** 10%

PUMPKINSEED CREAM

Yield: 8 oz. (250 ml)

Olive oil	2 tsp.	10 ml
Garlic, minced	1 tsp.	5 ml
Pumpkinseeds, roasted and ground	1/4 cup	60 ml
Anaheim chile, roasted, peeled seeded, finely chopped	1	1
Cumin, freshly toasted and ground	1/2 tsp.	3 ml
Crème Fraîche	6 oz.	180 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Heat the olive oil in a small skillet and sauté the garlic.
2. Transfer the garlic to a mixing bowl; add the pumpkinseeds, chile and cumin. Mix well.
3. Fold in the crème fraîche and season to taste with salt and pepper.

Approximate values per 1/2-oz. (15-g) serving: **Calories** 53, **Total fat** 5 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 8 mg, **Sodium** 38 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 1 g

RECIPE 15.10

HONEY-MUSTARD DENVER RIBS

Yield: 14 lb. (6.2 kg) **Method:** Roasting

Lamb ribs, trimmed	20 lb.	9 kg
Salt	4 oz.	120 g
Pepper	2 oz.	60 g
Honey	4 lb.	1.8 kg
Dijon mustard	3 lb.	1.4 kg
Lemon juice	1 pt.	450 ml

1. Rub the ribs with salt and pepper.
2. Place the ribs on a rack and roast at 375°F (190°C) for 30 minutes.
3. Combine the honey, mustard and lemon juice.
4. Baste the ribs generously with the honey-mustard mixture. Roast an additional 30 minutes, basting every 10 minutes.

Approximate values per 8-oz. (250-g) serving: **Calories** 1020, **Total fat** 47 g, **Saturated fat** 16 g, **Cholesterol** 285 mg, **Sodium** 2110 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 61 g, **Protein** 88 g, **Vitamin C** 15%, **Iron** 35%

RECIPE 15.11

Sautéed Lamb Loin with Stuffed Rösti Potatoes and Cherry Confit

Chef Leland Atkinson, WASHINGTON, DC

Yield: 6 5-oz. (150-g) Servings

Method: Sautéing

Idaho potatoes, large	2	2
Parmesan, grated	5 oz.	150 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Clarified butter	as needed	as needed
Goat cheese	6 oz.	180 g
Fresh rosemary, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Fresh chives, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Lamb, eye of loin, trimmed, 2 lb. 4 oz. (1 kg)	1	1
Clarified butter	2 oz.	60 ml
Port	4 oz.	120 ml
Lamb jus lié	12 oz.	350 ml
Whole butter	1 oz.	30 g
Cherry Confit (Recipe 25.13)	as needed	as needed

1. Peel and julienne the potatoes.
2. Combine the potatoes with the Parmesan, salt and pepper.
3. Heat the clarified butter in an 8-inch (20-centimeter) nonstick pan. Add the potato mixture and pack it tightly with the back of a spoon. Cook over moderate heat until the potatoes begin to brown.
4. Flip the rösti potatoes and place the pan in a 350°F (180°C) oven. Flipping once, cook until the potatoes are crisp and evenly browned on the outside and soft in the center, approximately 20 minutes on each side.
5. Transfer the rösti potatoes to a wire cooling rack to rest.
6. Slice the rösti horizontally into two round halves. Spread the bottom half with the room-temperature goat cheese. Grind black pepper over the cheese, sprinkle the herbs evenly over the surface and carefully replace the top.
7. Season the lamb and sauté it in the 2 ounces (60 grams) of clarified butter, turning frequently, until the desired doneness is achieved, approximately 8–12 minutes.
8. Remove the lamb and allow it to rest before slicing.
9. Deglaze the pan with the port and add the lamb jus lié. Reduce by half and monté au beurre.
10. At service time, ladle the sauce onto six warm plates, slice the lamb and arrange over the sauce. Cut the rösti into wedges and arrange on the plate. Spoon cherry confit (Recipe 25.13) around the lamb and serve at once.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 660, **Total fat** 39 g, **Saturated fat** 21 g, **Cholesterol** 215 mg, **Sodium** 1260 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 12 g, **Protein** 64 g, **Vitamin A** 60%, **Calcium** 45%

RECIPE 15.12

Lamb Shank with Persillade

Yield: 6 Servings | Method: Braising

Lamb shanks, trimmed, 2 lb.–2 lb. 8 oz. (.9–1.1 kg) each	6	6
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Olive oil	as needed	as needed
Shallots, minced	8 oz.	250 g
Carrot, chopped	8 oz.	250 g
Celery, chopped	8 oz.	250 g
Peppercorns, crushed	6	6
Fresh thyme	2 tsp.	10 ml
Garlic, chopped	2 tsp.	10 ml
Dry white wine	12 oz.	350 ml
Lamb stock	1 qt.	1 lt
Demi-glace	1 pt.	450 ml
Persillade:		
Garlic, minced	1 tsp.	5 ml
Fresh parsley, chopped	1 oz.	30 g
Fresh bread crumbs	2 oz.	60 g
Whole butter, melted	2 oz.	60 g
Dijon mustard	as needed	as needed

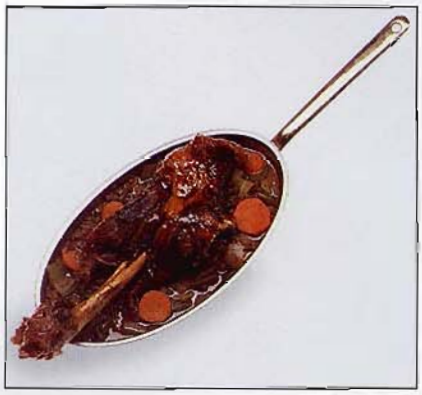
1. Season the shanks with salt and pepper; brown in olive oil.
2. Remove the shanks and add the vegetables, peppercorns, thyme and garlic to the pan. Sauté until tender.
3. Place the shanks on top of the vegetables.
4. Add the wine, lamb stock and demi-glace.
5. Bring to a simmer, cover and braise in a 350°F (180°C) oven until tender, approximately 2 hours, adding more lamb stock if necessary.
6. Remove the shanks and hold for service.
7. Degrease the sauce and reduce to the desired consistency.
8. Strain the sauce and adjust the seasonings.
9. To make the persillade, combine all the ingredients and toss together.
10. Warm the shanks thoroughly. Brush with mustard and sprinkle with the persillade. Brown under a broiler and serve with the sauce.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 1120, **Total fat** 46 g, **Saturated fat** 17 g, **Cholesterol** 460 mg, **Sodium** 1540 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 31 g, **Protein** 147 g, **Vitamin A** 170%, **Iron** 100%

RECIPE 15.13

CHIAPPETTI'S LAMB SHANK WITH LENTILS AND COUNTRY VEGETABLES

MANGO RESTAURANT, CHICAGO, IL
Chef Steve Chiappetti



Yield: 2 Servings — Method: Braising

Vegetable oil	as needed	as needed
Lamb shanks, approx. 1 lb. 8 oz. (720 g) each	2	2
Onions, diced	4 oz.	120 g
Carrots, sliced	4 oz.	120 g
Celery, diced	4 oz.	120 g
Bay leaves	2	2
Lamb stock	1 qt.	1 lt
Soy sauce	4 oz.	120 ml
Molasses	5 1/2 oz.	165 g
Lentil, soaked	8 oz.	250 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Heat a small amount of oil in a sauté pan. Sear the lamb shanks.
2. Add the onions, carrots, celery and bay leaves to the pan. Then add the lamb stock, soy sauce and molasses to the pan and dissolve the fond with the liquid.
3. Place the pan with the lamb shanks and vegetables in a 400°F (205°C) oven and cook, uncovered, for 1 1/2 hours.
4. Frequently baste the lamb with the molasses-soy broth.
5. Add the lentils and cook for another hour. Season to taste with salt and pepper.
6. Serve the lamb shanks, vegetables and lentils on a large platter.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 1660, **Total fat** 45 g, **Saturated fat** 16 g, **Cholesterol** 710 mg, **Sodium** 6300 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 92 g, **Protein** 222 g, **Vitamin A** 90%, **Calcium** 35%, **Iron** 130%

RECIPE 15.14

IRISH LAMB STEW

Yield: 12 8-oz. (250-g) Servings — Method: Stewing

Lamb shoulder, 1 1/2-in. (4-cm) cubes	4 lb.	1.8 kg
White stock	3 pt.	1.5 lt
Sachet:		
Bay leaf	1	1
Dried thyme	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Peppercorns, crushed	1/2 tsp.	2 ml

Continued

Parsley stems	10	10
Garlic cloves, crushed	4	4
Onion, sliced	1 lb.	450 g
Leek, sliced	8 oz.	225 g
Potato, peeled, large dice	1 lb. 8 oz.	700 g
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
Carrots, tournéed or batonnet	20	20
Turnips, tournéed or batonnet	20	20
Potatoes, tournéed or batonnet	20	20
Pearl onions, peeled	20	20
Fresh parsley, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Combine the lamb, stock, sachet, onions, leeks and diced potatoes. Season with salt and white pepper. Bring to a simmer and skim the surface. Simmer the stew on the stove top or cover and cook in the oven at 350°F (180°C) until the lamb is tender, approximately 1 hour.
2. Degrease the stew; remove and discard the sachet.
3. Remove the pieces of diced potato and purée them in a food mill or ricer. Use the potato purée to thicken the stew to the desired consistency.
4. Simmer the stew for 10 minutes to blend the flavors.
5. Cook the tournéed or batonnet vegetables, potatoes and pearl onions separately. At service, heat the vegetable garnishes and add to each portion of stew.
6. Garnish with chopped parsley and serve.

Approximate values per 8-oz. (250-g) serving: **Calories** 560, **Total fat** 26 g, **Saturated fat** 10 g, **Cholesterol** 175 mg, **Sodium** 840 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 26 g, **Protein** 54 g, **Vitamin A** 80%, **Iron** 30%

RECIPE 15.15

Blanquette of Lamb

Yield: 10 8-oz. (250-g) Servings **Method:** Stewing

White beans, dried	1 lb.	500 g
Onion piquet	2	2
Bouquet garni, for each:	2	2
Carrot stick, 4 in. (10 cm)	1	1
Leek, split, 4-in. (10-cm) piece	1	1
Fresh thyme	1 sprig	1 sprig
Bay leaf	1	1
Lamb leg or shoulder, cut in 1 1/2-inch (4-cm) cubes	4 lb.	1.8 kg
White stock	1 1/2 qt.	1 1/2 lt
Sachet:		
Bay leaf	1	1
Dried thyme	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Peppercorns, crushed	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Parsley stems	10	10
Garlic cloves, crushed	4	4
Salt	TT	TT
Blond roux	2 oz.	60 g
Heavy cream	10 oz.	280 ml

Dijon mustard	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Egg yolks	4	4

1. Soak the beans in cold water for 12 hours. Drain, then add enough fresh water to cover the beans by 2–4 inches (5–10 centimeters).
2. Add one onion piquet and one bouquet garni and cook until the beans are tender, approximately 1 1/2 hours. Remove and discard the onion piquet and bouquet garni.
3. Blanch the lamb cubes in boiling salted water.
4. Place the blanched lamb in a pot. Add the stock and the second onion piquet, the second bouquet garni, the sachet and salt. Simmer until the meat is tender, approximately 1 1/2 hours.
5. Remove the meat from the liquid and reserve. Reduce the cooking liquid to 1 quart (1 liter). Incorporate the roux.
6. Combine the heavy cream, mustard and egg yolks and add to the reduced stock as a liaison.
7. Return the lamb to the sauce and adjust the seasonings. Heat the sauce and meat thoroughly but do not allow it to boil. Serve the blanquette with the cooked beans.

Approximate values per 8-oz. (250-g) serving: **Calories** 710, **Total fat** 43 g, **Saturated fat** 19 g, **Cholesterol** 315 mg, **Sodium** 740 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 14 g, **Protein** 67 g, **Vitamin A** 15%, **Iron** 40%

RECIPE 15.16

LAMB NAVARIN

Yield: 10 10-oz. (300-g) Servings — Method: Stewing

Olive oil	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Lean lamb shoulder, large dice	3 lb.	1.5 kg
Sugar	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Flour	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
White stock	1 qt.	1 lt
White wine	4 oz.	120 ml
Tomato concassée	8 oz.	250 g
Bouquet garni:		
Carrot stick, 4 in. (10 cm)	1	1
Leek, split, 4-in. (10-cm) piece	1	1
Fresh thyme	1 sprig	1 sprig
Bay leaf	1	1
Potato, peeled, medium dice	1 lb. 8 oz.	650 g
Carrot, medium dice	1 lb.	450 g
White turnip, peeled, medium dice	1 lb.	450 g
Pearl onions, peeled	12	12
Fresh green peas	6 oz.	170 g

1. In a braiser, brown the meat in the olive oil.
2. Sprinkle the meat with the sugar and season with salt and pepper.
3. Add the flour and cook to make a blond roux.

Continued

4. Add the stock and wine. Add the tomatoes and bouquet garni; bring to a boil. Cover and cook in the oven at 375°F (190°C) until the meat is almost tender, approximately 1 to 1 1/2 hours.
5. Remove the meat and hold it in a warm place. Strain the sauce and skim off any excess fat.
6. Combine the sauce, meat, potatoes, carrots, turnips and onions. Cover and cook until the vegetables are almost tender, approximately 25 minutes.
7. Add the peas and cook for 10 minutes more.

Approximate values per 10-oz. (300-g) serving: **Calories** 450, **Total fat** 16 g, **Saturated fat** 5 g, **Cholesterol** 145 mg, **Sodium** 480 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 27 g, **Protein** 50 g, **Vitamin A** 110%, **Vitamin C** 35%

RECIPE 15.17

Noisettes of Lamb with Garlic Sauce

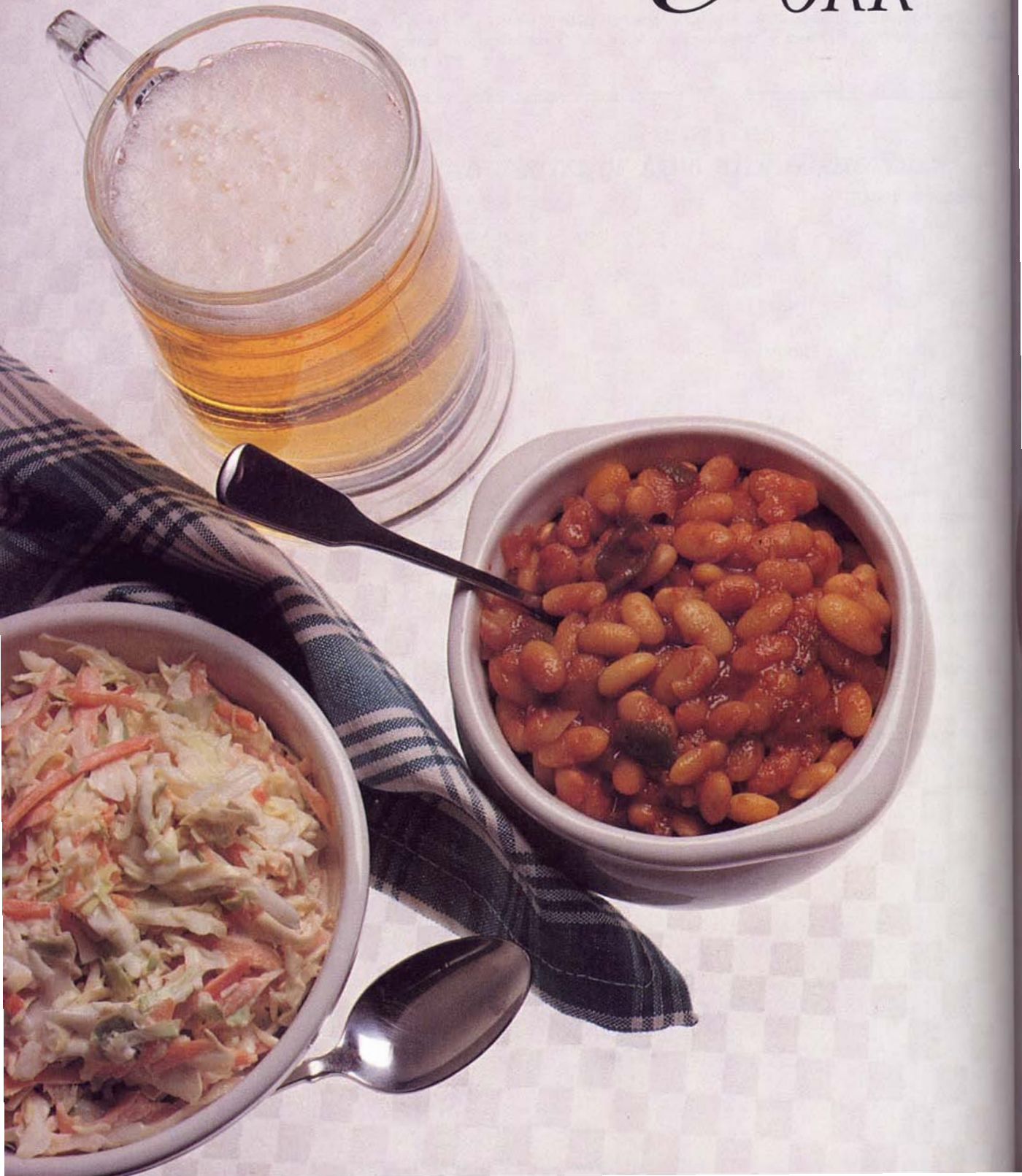
Yield: 4 Servings **Method:** Sautéing

Lamb noisettes, 2–3 oz. (60–90 g) each	8	8
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Fresh thyme	1 tsp.	5 ml
Garlic heads	3	3
Fresh rosemary	1 sprig	1 sprig
Olive oil	2 oz.	60 ml
Red wine	4 oz.	120 ml
Jus lié	1 pt.	450 ml

1. Season the noisettes with salt, pepper and thyme.
2. Break the garlic into cloves. Cook the cloves with the rosemary in 1 ounce (30 grams) of oil over low heat until they are very soft, approximately 10 minutes.
3. Deglaze with the wine. Add the jus lié; simmer and reduce by half.
4. Strain the sauce through a china cap, pushing to extract some of the garlic. Return the sauce to the saucepan and adjust the consistency and seasonings.
5. Sauté the noisettes to the desired degree of doneness in the remaining oil; serve with the sauce.

Approximate values per 5.5-oz. (167-g) serving: **Calories** 370, **Total fat** 26 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 105 mg, **Sodium** 660 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 32 g

CHAPTER 16 PORK



Carolina Barbecued Ribs
What's the Occassion?
Catering, Phoenix, AZ

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- identify the primal, subprimal and fabricated cuts of pork
- perform basic butchering procedures
- apply appropriate cooking methods to several common cuts of pork

Pork is the meat of hogs usually butchered before they are one year old. With the exception of beef, Americans consume more pork than any other meat. The pork we eat is leaner and healthier than it once was because of advances in animal husbandry.

Since hogs are butchered at a young age, their meat is generally very tender with a delicate flavor. It is well suited to a variety of cooking methods. More than two thirds of the pork marketed in the United States is cured to produce products such as smoked hams and smoked bacon. Cured pork products are discussed in Chapter 27, Charcuterie.

Primal and Subprimal Cuts of Pork

After a hog is slaughtered, it is generally split down the backbone, dividing the carcass into bilateral halves. Like the beef carcass, each side of the hog carcass is then further broken down into the primal cuts: shoulder, Boston butt, belly, loin and fresh ham.

Hogs are bred specifically to produce long loins: The loin contains the highest-quality meat and is the most expensive cut of pork. Pork is unique in that the ribs and loin are considered a single primal. They are not separated into two different primals, as are the ribs and loin of beef, veal and lamb.

Figure 16.1 shows the relationship between the hog's bone structure and the primal cuts. As with all meats, it is important to know the location of bones when cutting or working with pork. This makes meat fabrication and carving easier and aids in identifying cuts. Figure 16.2 shows the primal cuts of pork and their location on the carcass. A hog carcass generally weighs in a range of 120 to 210 pounds (55–110 kg).

Shoulder

The primal shoulder, known as the picnic ham, is the lower portion of the hog's foreleg; it accounts for approximately 20% of the carcass weight. The shoulder contains the arm and shank bones and has a relatively high ratio of bone to lean meat.

Because all pork comes from hogs slaughtered at a young age, the shoulder is tender enough to be cooked by any method. It is, however, one of the toughest cuts of pork. It is available smoked or fresh. The shoulder is fairly inexpensive and, when purchased fresh, it can be cut into shoulder butt steaks or boned and cut for sautéing or stewing.

The foreshank is called the shoulder hock and is almost always smoked. Shoulder hocks are often simmered for long periods in soups, stews and braised dishes to add flavor and richness.

Boston Butt

The primal Boston butt is a square cut located just above the primal pork shoulder. It accounts for approximately 7% of the carcass weight.

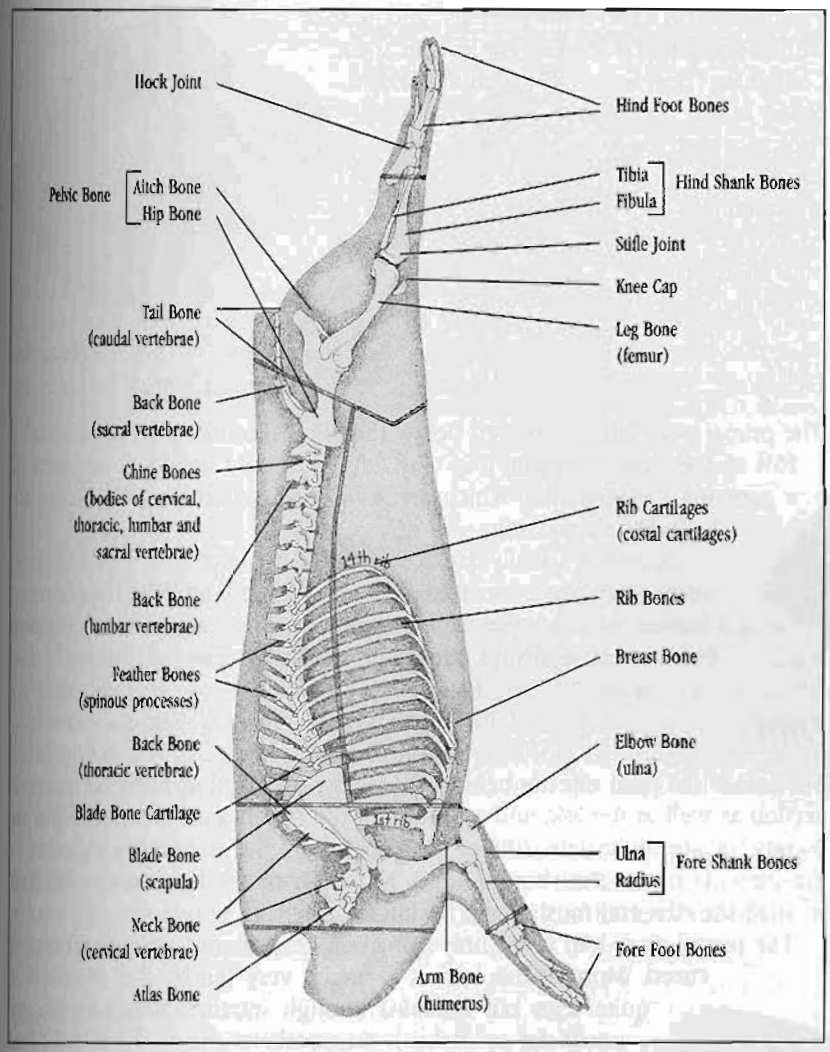


FIGURE 16.1 *The Skeletal Structure of a Hog*

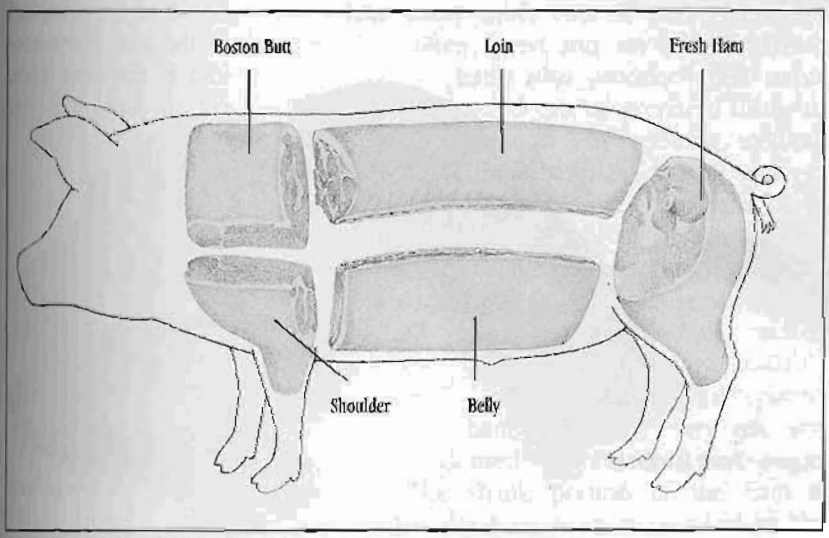


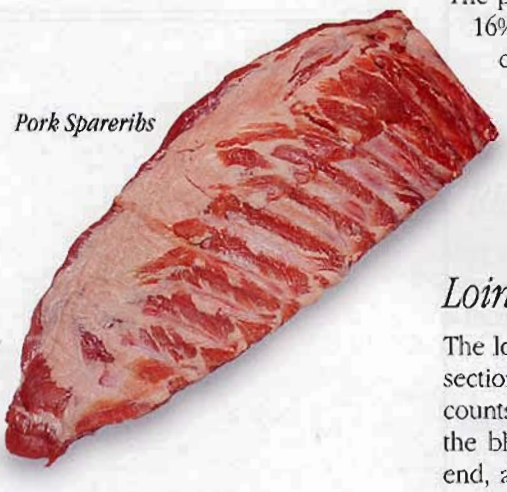
FIGURE 16.2 *The Primal Cuts of Pork*

The Boston butt is very meaty and tender, with a good percentage of fat to lean meat. Containing only a small portion of the blade bone, the Boston butt is a good choice when a recipe calls for a solid piece of lean pork. The fresh Boston butt is sometimes cut into steaks or chops to be broiled or sautéed. When the Boston butt is smoked, it is usually boneless and called a cottage ham.

Boston Butt

Belly

The primal pork belly is located below the loin. Accounting for approximately 16% of the carcass weight, it is very fatty with only streaks of lean meat. It contains the spareribs, which are always separated from the rest of the belly before cooking.



Pork Spareribs

Spareribs usually are sold fresh but can also be smoked. Typically, they are simmered and then grilled or baked while being basted with a spicy barbecue sauce. The remainder of the pork belly is nearly always cured and smoked to produce bacon.

Loin

The loin is cut from directly behind the Boston butt and includes the entire rib section as well as the loin and a portion of the sirloin area. The primal loin accounts for approximately 20% of the carcass weight. It contains a portion of the blade bone on the shoulder end, a portion of the hip bone on the ham end, all the ribs and most of the backbone.

The primal pork loin is the only primal cut of pork not typically smoked or cured. Most of the loin is a single, very tender eye muscle. It is quite lean but contains enough intramuscular and subcutaneous fat to make it an excellent choice for a moist-heat cooking method such as braising. Or it can be prepared with dry-heat cooking methods such as roasting or sautéing. The loin also contains the pork tenderloin, located on the inside of the rib bones on the sirloin end of the loin. The tenderloin is the most tender cut of pork; it is very

Pork Loin

Pork Tenderloin

Pork Backribs

Pork Loin Chops

Hogs: A Source for Slogans

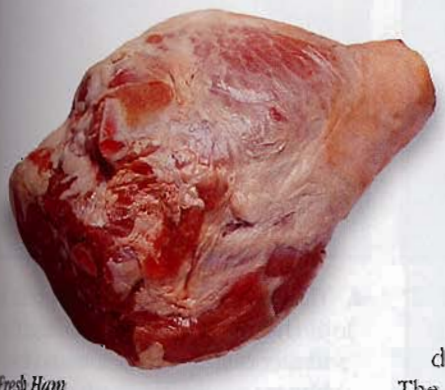
Hogs were first brought to Florida by Spanish explorers in 1539, and they thrived in this heavenly new environment. The British shipped hogs to the colonies, and as early as 1639, Virginia's colonists were supplying England with ham and bacon. During colonial days, pork was packed in barrels for shipment, giving rise to the term "meat packing." During the War of 1812, the U.S. government shipped pork to American soldiers in barrels stamped with the letters "US" and the name of the meat packer, Sam Wilson. The soldiers referred to the meat as "Uncle Sam's meat," thus giving birth to the national government's nickname, Uncle Sam.

versatile and can be trimmed, cut into medallions and sautéed, or the whole tenderloin can be roasted or braised. The most popular cut from the loin is the pork chop. Chops can be cut from the entire loin, the choicest being center-cut chops from the primal loin after the blade bone and sirloin portions at the front and rear of the loin are removed. The pork loin can be purchased boneless or boned and tied as a roast. A boneless pork loin is smoked to produce Canadian bacon. The rib bones, when trimmed from the loin, can be served as barbecued pork back ribs.

Although not actually part of the primal loin, fatback is the thick layer of fat—sometimes more than an inch (2.5 centimeters) thick—between the skin and the lean eye muscle. It has a variety of uses in the kitchen, especially in the preparation of charcuterie items.

Fresh Ham

The primal fresh ham is the hog's hind leg. It is a rather large cut accounting for approximately 24% of the carcass weight. The ham contains the aitch, leg and hind shank bones. Fresh ham, like the legs of other meat animals, contains large muscles with relatively small amounts of connective tissue.



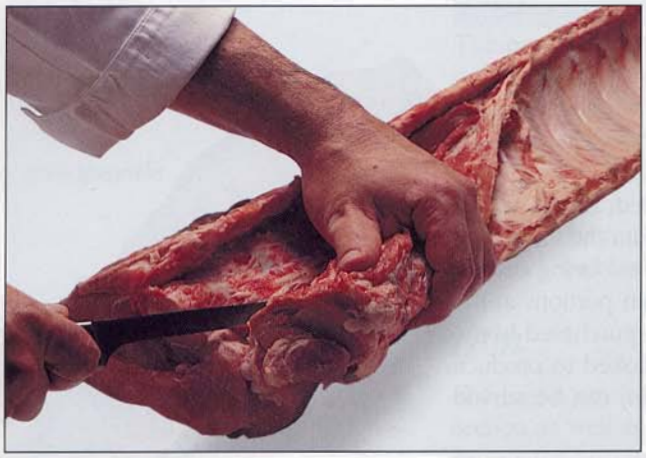
Fresh Ham

Like many other cuts of pork, hams are often cured and smoked. But fresh hams also produce great roasts and can be prepared using almost any cooking method. When cured and smoked, hams are available in a variety of styles; they can be purchased bone-in, shankless or boneless, partially or fully cooked. Fully cooked hams are also available canned. There is a specific ham for nearly every use and desired degree of convenience. The shank portion of the ham is called the ham hock. It is used in the same manner as the shoulder hock.

BUTCHERING PROCEDURES

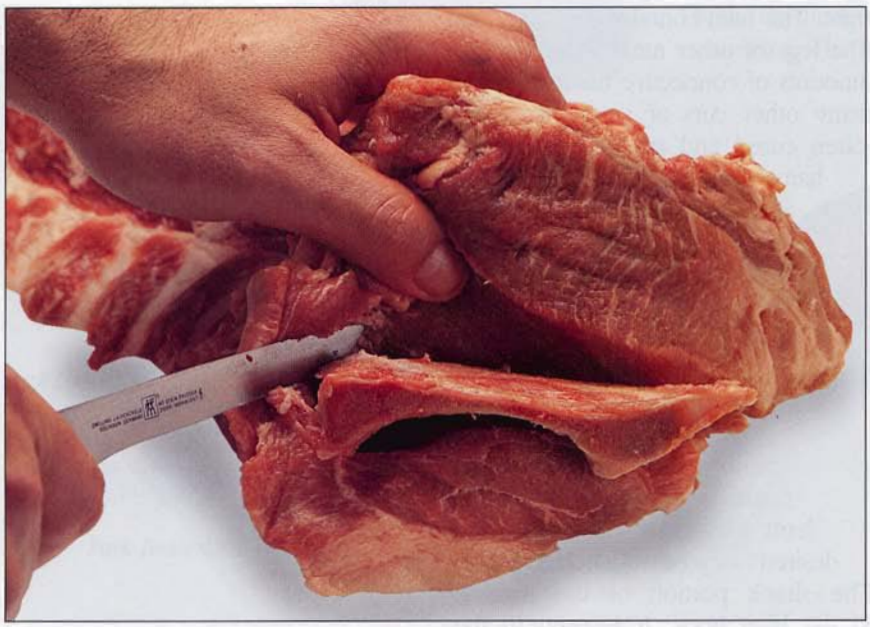
Other than suckling pigs (which are very young, very small whole pigs used for roasting or barbecuing whole), pork products generally are not purchased in forms larger than the primal cuts described earlier. There are a few important pork fabrication and butchering techniques that you should master, however.

PROCEDURE FOR BONING A PORK LOIN



1. Starting on the sirloin end of a full pork loin, remove the tenderloin in one piece by making smooth cuts against the inside of the rib bones. Pull gently on the tenderloin as you cut.

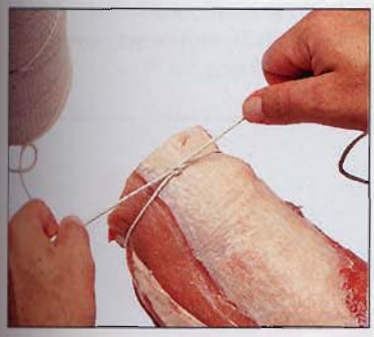
2. Turn the loin over and cut between the ribs and the eye meat. Continue separating the meat from the bones, following the contours of the bones, until the loin is completely separated from the bones.



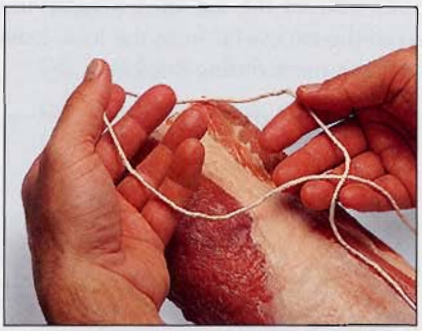
3. Trim around the blade bone on the shoulder end of the loin and remove it.

4. The fully boned loin will consist of (from left to right) cartilege, the tenderloin, boneless loin and loin bones.

Procedure for Tying a Boneless Pork Roast with the Half-Hitch Method

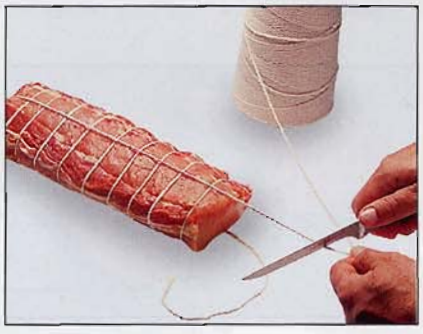


1. Wrap the loose end of the string around the pork loin and tie it with a double knot.

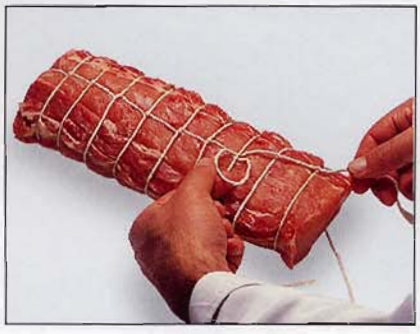


2. Make a loop and slide it down over the roast to approximately 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) from the first knot.

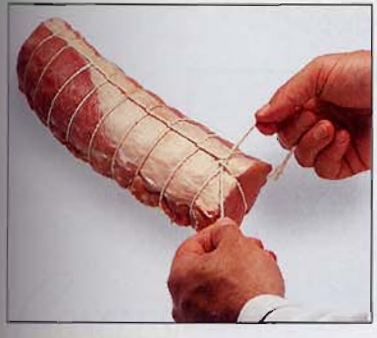
3. Make another loop and slide it down. Continue in this fashion until the whole roast has been tied.



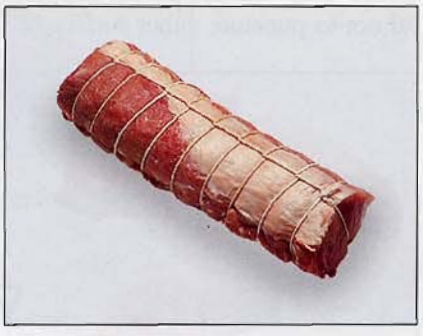
4. Turn the roast over and cut the string, leaving enough to wrap lengthwise around the roast to the original knot.



5. Wrap the string around the end of the roast, then around the string that formed the last loop. Continue in this fashion for the length of the roast, pulling the string tight after wrapping it around each loop.



6. Turn the roast back over. Wrap the string around the front end of the roast and secure it to the first loop at the point where you tied the first knot.



7. The finished roast. Note the even intervals at which the strings are tied. They should be just snug enough to hold the shape of the roast; they should not dig in or cut the meat.

Procedure for Cutting a Chop from a Pork Loin

Center-cut pork chops can be cut from the center portion of a bone-in pork loin without the aid of a saw by using a boning knife and a heavy cleaver. Trim the excess fat from the loin, leaving a 1/4-inch (6-millimeter) layer to protect the meat during cooking.

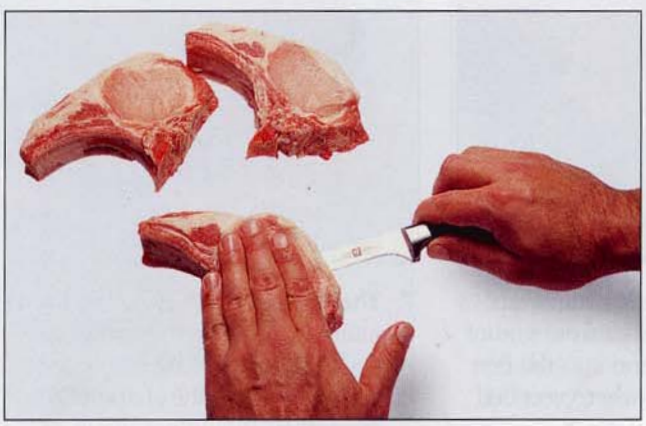
1. Cut through the meat with the knife.

2. Use the cleaver to chop through the chine bone.

3. To produce a cleaner chop, trim the meat from the end of the rib bone. Then, with the boning knife, separate the loin meat from the chine bones and separate the chine bone from the rib with the cleaver.

Procedure for Cutting a Pocket in a Pork Chop

To make a pocket in a pork chop for stuffing, start with a thick chop or a double rib chop. Cut the pocket deep enough to hold ample stuffing, but be careful not to puncture either surface of the chop.



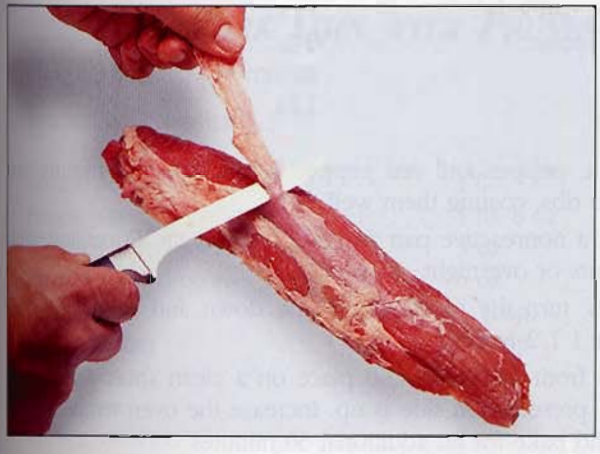
1. Use the tip of a boning knife to cut a pocket.

TABLE 16.1 USING COMMON CUTS OF PORK

Primal	Subprimal or Fabricated Cut	IMPS	Cooking Methods	Serving Suggestions
Shoulder	Picnic shoulder	405	Dry heat (roast or bake)	Smoked picnic shoulder
Boston butt	Boston butt	406	Dry heat (broil or grill; sauté) Moist heat (simmer)	Broiled Boston butt steaks Choucroute
Belly	Bacon	539	Dry heat (sauté) Moist heat (simmer) Combination (braise)	Breakfast meat Seasoning Seasoning
	Spareribs	416A	Combination (steam then grill)	Barbecued spareribs
Loin	Pork loin	410	Dry heat (roast) Combination (braise)	Roast pork Braised pork chops
	Pork tenderloin	415	Dry heat (broil or grill; sauté; roast)	Roast pork tenderloin
	Pork back ribs	422	Combination (steam then grill)	Barbecued back ribs
	Pork loin chops	1410	Dry heat (broil or grill) Combination (braise)	Broiled loin chop with mushroom sauce Braised loin chop with leeks and fennel
Fresh ham	Fresh ham	401A	Dry heat (roast)	Roast pork with apricots and almonds

PROCEDURE FOR TRIMMING A PORK TENDERLOIN

As with a beef tenderloin, the pork tenderloin must be trimmed of all fat and silverskin. Follow the procedures outlined in Chapter 13, Beef, for trimming a beef tenderloin.



Use a boning knife to remove the silverskin from a pork tenderloin.

CONCLUSION

Pork can be enjoyed cured, processed or fresh. The mild flavor of fresh pork blends well with many different seasonings, making it a popular menu item. It is naturally tender and can be prepared by almost any dry-heat, moist-heat or combination cooking method. Properly fabricated and prepared, it can be a nutritious meat.

QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

1. List each pork primal, and describe its location on the carcass. Identify two subprimals or fabricated cuts taken from each primal.
2. What is unique about the primal pork loin as compared to the beef or veal loin?
3. Are fatback and bacon taken from the same primal? How are they different?
4. What is the only primal cut of pork that is not typically smoked or cured? How is it best cooked? Explain your answer.

ADDITIONAL PORK RECIPES

RECIPE 16.1

CAROLINA BARBECUED RIBS

NOTE: *This dish appears in the Chapter Opening photograph.*

Yield: 6 Servings, approx. 4 ribs each **Method:** Roasting

Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Crushed red pepper flakes	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Pork back ribs, 3–4 lb. (1.3–1.8 kg) slab	2	2
White vinegar	1 pt.	450 ml
Sauce:		
Onion, chopped coarse	5 oz.	150 g
Garlic cloves	3	3
Green bell pepper, chopped coarse	4 oz.	120 g
Plum tomatoes, canned	1 pt.	450 ml
Red Devil hot sauce	8 oz.	225 g
Brown sugar	10 oz.	300 g
Lemon juice	2 oz.	60 ml

1. Combine the salt, pepper and red pepper flakes. Rub this mixture over both sides of the ribs, coating them well.
2. Place the ribs in a nonreactive pan and add the vinegar. Cover and refrigerate several hours or overnight.
3. Uncover the ribs, turn the presentation side down and bake in a 375°F (190°C) oven for 1 1/2 hours.
4. Remove the ribs from the liquid and place on a clean sheet pan, turning them so that the presentation side is up. Increase the oven temperature to 400°F (200°C) and bake for an additional 30 minutes.
5. Prepare the sauce by puréeing the onion, garlic, green pepper and tomatoes in a food processor or blender. Pour this mixture into a nonreactive saucepan and add the remaining sauce ingredients.
6. Simmer the sauce over low heat until it thickens, approximately 15 to 20 minutes.
7. Brush the ribs with the sauce and serve additional sauce on the side. Serve with Creamy Cole Slaw, Recipe 24.33, and Baked Beans, Recipe 22.24.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 1410, **Total fat** 68 g, **Saturated fat** 23 g, **Cholesterol** 315 mg, **Sodium** 1280 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 65 g, **Protein** 134 g, **Vitamin A** 20%, **Vitamin C** 120%, **Iron** 35%

RECIPE 16.2

Chinese Barbecued Spareribs

Yield: approx. 24 ribs | Method: Roasting

Spareribs racks, 2 lb. 8 oz. (1.1 kg) each	2	2
Garlic cloves, crushed	2	2
Tomato catsup	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Soy sauce	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Hoisin sauce	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Red wine	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Fresh ginger, grated	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Honey	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Cut the spareribs into individual ribs and arrange them on a rack in a baking pan. Roast for 45 minutes at 300°F (150°C).
2. Combine the remaining ingredients into a sauce. Brush the spareribs lightly with the sauce. Roast for 30 minutes more.
3. Turn the spareribs and brush with more sauce. Roast until the ribs are well browned, approximately 30 minutes.

Approximate values per 8-rib (600-g) serving: **Calories** 1450, **Total fat** 85 g, **Saturated fat** 29 g, **Cholesterol** 395 mg, **Sodium** 940 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 8 g, **Protein** 164 g, **Iron** 30%

RECIPE 16.3

Pork Loin with Prunes

Yield: 6 6-oz. (180-g) Servings | Method: Roasting

Boneless pork loin roast, 3 lb. (1.5 kg)	1	1
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Prunes, pitted	1 lb. 8 oz.	750 g
Carrot, chopped coarse	3 oz.	90 g
Onion, chopped coarse	6 oz.	170 g
Vegetable oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Clarified butter	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh rosemary	1 tsp.	5 ml
Fresh thyme	1 tsp.	5 ml
Bay leaf, crushed	1	1
Garlic cloves	2	2
Apple juice	8 oz.	250 ml
White stock	8 oz.	250 ml
Sugar	2 oz.	60 g
Vinegar	2 oz.	60 ml

1. Trim and butterfly the pork loin; reserve the trimmings. (To butterfly the loin, slice it partway through the center and open it like a book, then flatten it into a rectangular shape.) Season with salt and pepper.

Continued

2. Reserve 12 prunes and arrange the remaining prunes along the length of the loin. Roll up the loin and tie with butcher's twine.
3. Brown the pork roll and pork trimmings, carrots and onions in the oil and butter.
4. Add the herbs and garlic and roast the pork on the bed of trimmings and vegetables at 350°F (170°C), basting frequently with the fat that accumulates in the pan, until done, approximately 45–60 minutes.
5. Poach the reserved prunes in the apple juice until plump; set aside.
6. Remove the roast from the pan and keep it warm. Degrease the pan and deglaze with white stock. Simmer for 15 minutes, then strain.
7. Combine the sugar and vinegar in a saucepan. Bring to a boil and cook without stirring until the mixture turns a caramel color. Immediately remove from the heat and add the juices from the roasting pan. When the sputtering stops, return the pan to the heat and skim any fat from the surface; keep the sauce warm over low heat.
8. Drain the prunes. Remove the twine from the roast. Slice and serve the meat with the sauce and prunes.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 850, **Total fat** 16 g, **Saturated fat** 5 g, **Cholesterol** 185 mg, **Sodium** 530 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 110 g, **Protein** 66 g, **Vitamin A** 45%, **Vitamin C** 15%, **Iron** 30%

RECIPE 16.4

Bourbon Baked Ham

Yield: 16 6-oz (180-g) Servings — Method: Baking

Ham, fully cooked, bone in, 12–14 lb. (5.4–6.3 kg)	1	1
Brown sugar	6 oz.	170 g
Cloves, ground	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Crushed pineapple, with juice	16 oz.	500 g
Bourbon	8 oz.	250 ml
Orange marmalade	8 oz.	250 g

1. Peel the skin from the ham and trim the exterior fat to an even thickness of 1/4 inch (6 millimeters).
2. Combine the sugar and cloves and pat this mixture evenly over the top of the ham. Roast the coated ham at 350°F (170°C) for 30 minutes.
3. Combine the pineapple, bourbon and marmalade in a saucepan over medium heat. Do not allow the bourbon to flame.
4. Pour the sauce over the ham and cook until done, basting frequently, approximately 3 hours.
5. Remove the ham from the roasting pan. Keep it warm and allow it to rest for 30 minutes before carving.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (407-g) serving: **Calories** 610, **Total fat** 19 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 185 mg, **Sodium** 4520 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 24 g, **Protein** 85 g, **Iron** 20%

RECIPE 16.5

Beer-Marinated Pork Tenderloin

Yield: 6 6-oz. (180-g) Servings | Method: Grilling

Pork tenderloins, approx. 14 oz. (400 g) each	3	3
Marinade:		
Light soy sauce	4 oz.	120 ml
Beer, room temperature	12 oz.	360 ml
Light brown sugar	2 oz.	60 g
Fresh ginger, grated	1 1/2 Tbsp.	22 ml

1. Clean the tenderloins, removing all visible fat and silverskin.
2. Combine the marinade ingredients, stirring until the sugar dissolves.
3. Place the tenderloins in a hotel pan and cover with the marinade. Cover the pan and refrigerate for 2 to 6 hours.
4. Remove the tenderloins from the marinade and grill over medium-hot coals, turning as needed.
5. Allow the cooked tenderloins to rest for 5 minutes, then slice thinly on the bias.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 592, **Total fat** 42 g, **Saturated fat** 16 g, **Cholesterol** 143 mg, **Sodium** 762 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 13 g, **Protein** 35 g, **Iron** 13%

RECIPE 16.6

Sautéed Pork Medallions with Red Pepper and Citrus

Yield: 8 Servings | Method: Sautéing

Pork loin, boneless, 3 lb. (1.4 kg)	1	1
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Olive oil	6 oz.	180 ml
Orange juice	6 oz.	180 ml
Lemon juice	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Green onion, sliced	4 oz.	120 g
Oranges	4	4
Flour	as needed	as needed
Red bell pepper, julienne	12 oz.	350 g
Grand Marnier	4 oz.	120 ml
Demi-glace	1 pt.	450 ml

1. Season the pork with salt and pepper and marinate overnight in 4 ounces (120 milliliters) of the olive oil, 4 ounces (120 milliliters) of the orange juice, 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) of the lemon juice and 2 ounces (60 grams) of the green onions.
2. Zest the oranges. Blanch and refresh the zest. Peel and section the oranges.

Continued

3. Cut the pork into 3-ounce (90-gram) medallions and pound lightly.
4. Dredge the medallions in flour seasoned with salt and pepper.
5. Sauté the medallions in the remaining olive oil until done, approximately 5 minutes. Remove from the pan and reserve.
6. Add the red peppers and remaining green onions to the pan and sauté lightly.
7. Remove the pan from the flame and deglaze with Grand Marnier.
8. Add the demi-glace, orange zest, and remaining orange and lemon juices. Adjust the seasonings.
9. Serve two medallions of pork per portion with sauce. Garnish with the orange sections.

Approximate values per 12-oz. (365-g) serving: **Calories** 550, **Total fat** 30 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 135 mg, **Sodium** 390 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 21 g, **Protein** 50 g, **Vitamin C** 120%

RECIPE 16.7

Stuffed Pork Chops

Yield: 10 Servings — Method: Braising

Thick-cut pork chops, approx. 8 oz. (250 g) each	10	10
Celery, small dice	4 oz.	120 g
Onion, small dice	6 oz.	170 g
Whole butter, melted	6 oz.	170 g
Fresh bread cubes, 1/2 in. (1.2 cm)	8 oz.	250 g
Parsley, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
White stock	approx. 8 oz.	approx. 250 ml
Olive oil	2 oz.	60 ml
Demi-glace	1 qt.	1 lt

1. Cut pockets in the chops.
2. Sauté the celery and onions in 2 ounces (60 grams) of butter until tender.
3. Combine the celery, onions and remaining butter with the bread cubes, parsley, salt and pepper. Add enough stock to moisten the dressing.
4. Stuff the mixture into each of the pork chops. Seal the pockets with toothpicks and tie with butcher's twine.
5. In a braiser, brown the stuffed chops well on each side in the olive oil.
6. Add the demi-glace. Bring to a simmer, cover and place in a 325°F (160°C) oven. Cook until tender, approximately 45 minutes.
7. Remove the chops from the pan. Degrease the sauce and reduce to the desired consistency. Strain the sauce and adjust the seasonings.

Approximate values per 10-oz. (309-g) serving: **Calories** 650, **Total fat** 38 g, **Saturated fat** 16 g, **Cholesterol** 225 mg, **Sodium** 390 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 5 g, **Protein** 70 g, **Vitamin A** 15%, **Iron** 15%

RECIPE 16.8

CHOUCROUTE

Yield: 12 Servings, 4 oz. (120 g) sauerkraut
1 sausage and 7 oz. (200 g) pork

Method: Braising

Bacon, medium dice	8 oz.	250 g
Onion, medium dice	12 oz.	340 g
Garlic, chopped fine	1 1/2 oz.	45 g
Granny Smith apples, medium dice	8 oz.	250 g
Sauerkraut	2 lb. 8 oz.	1 kg
Dry white wine	4 oz.	120 ml
White wine vinegar	4 oz.	120 ml
Chicken stock	1 pt.	500 ml
Sachet:		
Juniper berries	6	6
Bay leaves	3	3
Cloves	2	2
Caraway seeds	1 tsp.	5 ml
Boneless pork butt, 4 lb. (1.8 kg)	1	1
Smoked pork loin	2 lb.	1 kg
Red potatoes, peeled and quartered	3 lb.	1.4 kg
Bratwurst	12 links	12 links
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Render the bacon.
2. Sauté the onions, garlic and apples in the bacon fat without browning.
3. Rinse the sauerkraut and squeeze out the liquid. Add the sauerkraut to the pan.
4. Stir in the wine, vinegar, stock and sachet.
5. Place the pork butt on the sauerkraut. Cover and braise in a 325°F (160°C) oven for 1 hour.
6. Add the smoked pork loin and potatoes and braise an additional 30 minutes.
7. Add the bratwurst and braise until all the meats are tender and the potatoes are done, approximately 30 minutes. Remove and discard the sachet. Season to taste with salt and pepper.
8. Carve the meats and serve with a portion of the sauerkraut and potatoes.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 940, **Total fat** 50 g, **Saturated fat** 18 g, **Cholesterol** 255 mg, **Sodium** 1910 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 33 g, **Protein** 90 g, **Vitamin C** 35%, **Iron** 30%

RECIPE 16.9

CASSOULET

Chef Leland Atkinson, WASHINGTON, DC

Yield: 8 Servings, 8 oz. (250 g) pork stew
1 1/2 oz. (45 g) sausage and
1 piece of duck each

Method: Stewing

Continued

White beans	1 lb.	450 g
White stock	2 qt.	2 lt
Smoked ham, large dice	8 oz.	250 g
Bouquet garni:		
Carrot stick, 4-in. (10-cm)	1	1
Leek, split, 4-in. (10-cm) piece	1	1
Fresh thyme	1 sprig	1 sprig
Bay leaf	1	1
Lamb or other sausage	1 lb.	450 g
Onion, medium dice	6 oz.	180 g
Garlic, chopped	1/2 oz.	15 g
Pork butt, cut in 2-in. (5-cm) cubes	1 lb. 8 oz.	700 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Olive oil	1 oz.	30 ml
Mirepoix	8 oz.	250 g
White wine	6 oz.	180 ml
Tomato concassée	1 lb.	250 g
Demi-glace	1 pt.	450 ml
Brown stock	8 oz.	250 ml
Sachet:		
Bay leaf	1	1
Dried thyme	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Peppercorns, cracked	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Parsley stems	8	8
Garlic cloves, crushed	2	2
Duck Confit (Recipe 17.21)	8 pieces	8 pieces

1. To make the bean stew, soak the white beans overnight in water. Drain and combine with the white stock, ham and bouquet garni. Bring to a simmer and cook for 30 minutes. Add the lamb sausage, onions and garlic; simmer until the beans are tender.
2. Remove and reserve the sausage.
3. Drain the beans, reserving both the beans and the cooking liquid. Reduce the cooking liquid by half and combine with the beans.
4. To make the meat stew, season the pork with salt and pepper and brown it in olive oil. Remove and reserve the meat.
5. Add the mirepoix to the pan and sauté. Deglaze with the white wine and add the tomato concassée, demi-glace, brown stock and sachet. Cover and simmer the pork until tender, approximately 45 minutes.
6. Remove the meat from the sauce and reserve. Discard the sachet. Reduce the sauce until thick; return the meat to the sauce.
7. To serve, scrape the excess fat from the duck confit. Place the duck in a roasting pan and roast at 350°F (180°C) until the meat is hot and the skin is crisp, approximately 20 minutes.
8. Place a portion of hot beans in a soup plate. Place a portion of the duck confit in the plate. Arrange a portion of the meat stew on top of the beans and around the duck.
9. Slice the lamb sausage and add it to the plate. Garnish with fresh herbs.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 630, **Total fat** 37 g, **Saturated fat** 12 g, **Cholesterol** 130 mg, **Sodium** 2360 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 23 g, **Protein** 53 g, **Vitamin C** 25%, **Iron** 30%

CHAPTER 17 POULTRY

The Four Seasons, New York, NY
Chef Christian Albin

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- understand the structure and composition of poultry
- identify various kinds and classes of poultry
- understand poultry inspection and grading practices
- purchase poultry appropriate for your needs
- store poultry properly
- prepare poultry for cooking
- apply various cooking methods to poultry

Poultry is the collective term for domesticated birds bred for eating. They include chickens, ducks, geese, guineas, pigeons and turkeys. (Game birds such as pheasant, quail and partridge are described in Chapter 18, Game; farm-raised ratites—ostrich, emu and rhea—are discussed here.) Poultry is generally the least expensive and most versatile of all main dish foods. It can be cooked by almost any method, and its mild flavor goes well with a wide variety of sauces and accompaniments.

In this chapter, we discuss the different kinds and classes of poultry and how to choose those that best suit your needs. You will learn how to store poultry properly to prevent food-borne illnesses and spoilage; how to butcher birds to produce the specific cuts you need and how to apply a variety of cooking methods properly.

Many of the cooking methods discussed here have been applied previously to meats. Although there are similarities with these methods, there are also many distinct differences. As you study this chapter, review the corresponding cooking methods for meats and note the similarities and differences.

Muscle Composition

The muscle tissue of poultry is similar to that of mammals in that it contains approximately 72% water, 20% protein, 7% fat and 1% minerals; it consists of bundles of muscle cells or fibers held together by connective tissue. Unlike red meat, poultry does not contain the intramuscular fat known as marbling. Instead, a bird stores fat in its skin, abdominal cavity and the fat pad near its tail.

Free-Range Chickens

Chicken has become increasingly popular in recent years, in part because it is inexpensive, versatile and considered healthier than meat. Indeed, more than 100 million chickens are processed weekly in this country. To meet an ever-increasing demand, chickens are raised indoors in huge chicken houses that may contain as many as 20,000 birds. They are fed a specially formulated mixture composed primarily of corn and soybean meal. Animal protein, vitamins, minerals and small amounts of antibiotics are added to produce quick-growing, healthy birds.

Many consumers feel that chickens raised this way do not have the flavor of chickens that are allowed to move freely and forage for food. Some consumers are concerned about the residual effects of the vitamins, minerals and antibiotics added to the chicken feed. To meet the demand for chickens raised the "old-fashioned way," some farmers raise (and many fine establishments offer) free-range chickens.

Although the USDA has not standardized regulations for free-range chicken, generally the term *free-range* applies to birds that are allowed unlimited access to the area outside the chicken house. Often they are raised without antibiotics, fed a vegetarian diet (no animal fat or byproducts), processed without the use of preservatives and raised under more humane growing methods than conventionally grown birds. Most free-range chickens are marketed at 9–10 weeks old and weigh 4 1/2 to 5 pounds (2 to 2 1/2 kilograms)—considerably more mature and heavier than conventional broilers. They are generally sold with heads and feet intact and are more expensive than conventionally raised chickens.

Many consumers (in both the dining room and the kitchen) feel that free-range chicken is superior in flavor and quality. Others find no perceptible differences. As a consumer, you will have to decide whether any difference is worth the added expense.

Poultry fat is softer and has a lower melting point than other animal fats. It is easily rendered during cooking.

As with red meats, poultry muscles that are used more often tend to be tougher than those used less frequently. Also, the muscles of an older bird tend to be tougher than those of a younger one. Because the majority of poultry is marketed at a young age, however, it is generally very tender.

The breast and wing flesh of chickens and turkeys is lighter in color than the flesh of their thighs and legs. This color difference is due to a higher concentration of the protein myoglobin in the thigh and leg muscles. Myoglobin is the protein that stores oxygen for the muscle tissues to use. More active muscles require more myoglobin and tend to be darker than less active ones. Because chickens and turkeys generally do not fly, their breast and wing muscles contain little myoglobin and are therefore a light color. Birds that do fly have only dark meat. Dark meat also contains more fat and connective tissue than light meat, and its cooking time is longer.

Skin color may vary from white to golden yellow, depending on what the bird was fed. Such color differences are not an indication of overall quality.

Rock Cornish Game Hen

Chicken Broiler/Fryer

Capon

IDENTIFYING POULTRY

The USDA recognizes six categories or **kinds** of poultry: chicken, duck, goose, guinea, pigeon and turkey. Each poultry kind is divided into **classes** based predominantly on the bird's age and tenderness. The sex of young birds is not significant for culinary purposes. It does matter, however, with older birds: Older male birds are tough and stringy and have less flavor than older female birds. Tables 17.1 through 17.6 list identifying characteristics and suggested cooking methods for each of the various kinds and classes of poultry.

Chicken

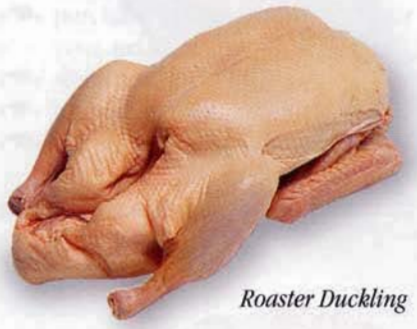
Chicken (Fr. *poulet*) is the most popular and widely eaten poultry in the world. It contains both light and dark meat and has relatively little fat. A young, tender chicken can be cooked by almost any method; an older bird is best stewed

TABLE 17.1 CHICKEN CLASSES

Class	Description	Age	Weight	Cooking Method
Game hen	Young or immature progeny of Cornish chickens or of a Cornish chicken and a White Rock chicken; very flavorful	5–6 weeks	2 lb. (1 kg) or less	Split and broil or grill; roast
Broiler/fryer	Young with soft, smooth-textured skin; relatively lean; flexible breastbone	13 weeks	3 lb. 8 oz. (1.5 kg) or less	Any cooking method; very versatile
Roaster	Young with tender meat and smooth-textured skin; breastbone is less flexible than broiler's	3–5 months	3 lb. 8 oz.–5 lb. (1.5–2 kg)	Any cooking method
Capon	Surgically castrated male; tender meat with soft, smooth-textured skin; bred for well-flavored meat; contains a high proportion of light to dark meat and a relatively high fat content	Under 8 months	6–10 lb. (2.5–4.5 kg)	Roast
Hen/stewing	Mature female; flavorful but less tender meat; nonflexible breastbone	Over 10 months	2 lb. 8 oz.–8 lb. (1–3.5 kg)	Stew or braise

TABLE 17.2 DUCK CLASSES

Class	Description	Age	Weight	Cooking Method
Broiler/fryer	Young bird with tender meat; a soft bill and windpipe	8 weeks or less	3 lb. 8 oz.–4 lb. (1.5–1.8 kg)	Roast at high temperature
Roaster	Young bird with tender meat; rich flavor; easily dented windpipe	16 weeks or less	4–6 lb. (1.8–2.5 kg)	Roast
Mature	Old bird with tough flesh; hard bill and windpipe	6 months or older	4–6 lb. (1.8–2.5 kg)	Braise



Roaster Duckling

Duckling—*a duck slaughtered before it is eight weeks old.*

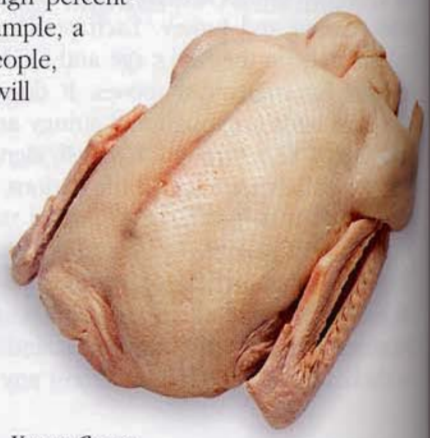
or braised. Chicken is extremely versatile and may be seasoned, stuffed, basted or garnished with almost anything. Chicken is inexpensive and readily available, fresh or frozen, in a variety of forms.

Duck

The duck (Fr. *canard*) used most often in commercial food service operations is a roaster **duckling**. It contains only dark meat and large amounts of fat. In order to make the fatty skin palatable, it is important to render as much fat as possible. Duck has a high percentage of bone and fat to meat; for example, a 4-pound duck will serve only two people, while a 4-pound roasting chicken will serve four people.

Goose

A goose (Fr. *oie*) contains only dark meat and has very fatty skin. It is usually roasted at high temperatures to render the fat. Roasted goose is popular at holidays and is often served with an acidic fruit-based sauce to offset the fattiness.



Young Goose

TABLE 17.3 GOOSE CLASSES

Class	Description	Age	Weight	Cooking Method
Young	Rich, tender dark meat with large amounts of fat; easily dented windpipe	6 months or less	6–12 lb. (2.5–5.5 kg)	Roast at high temperature, accompany with acidic sauces
Mature	Tough flesh and hard windpipe	Over 6 months	10–16 lb. (4.5–7 kg)	Braise or stew

Young Guinea

Guinea

A guinea or guinea fowl (Fr. *pintade*) is the domesticated descendant of a game bird. It has both light and dark meat and a flavor similar to pheasant. Guinea is tender enough to sauté. Because it contains little fat, a guinea is usually barded prior to roasting. Guinea, which is relatively expensive, is not as popular here as it is in Europe.

TABLE 17.4 GUINEA CLASSES

Class	Description	Age	Weight	Cooking Method
Young	Tender meat; flexible breastbone	3 months	12 oz.–1 lb. 8 oz. (.3–.7 kg)	Bard and roast; sauté
Mature	Tough flesh; hard breastbone	Over 3 months	1–2 lb. (.5–1 kg)	Braise or stew

TABLE 17.5 PIGEON CLASSES

Class	Description	Age	Weight	Cooking Method
Squab	Immature pigeon; very tender, dark flesh and a small amount of fat	4 weeks	12 oz.–1 lb. 8 oz. (.3–.7 kg)	Broil, roast or sauté
Pigeon	Mature bird; coarse skin and tough flesh	Over 4 weeks	1–2 lb. (.5–1 kg)	Braise or stew

Pigeon

The young pigeon (Fr. *pigeon*) used in commercial food service operations is referred to as squab. Its meat is dark, tender and well suited for broiling, sautéing or roasting. Squab has very little fat and benefits from barding.

Squab

Turkey

Turkey (Fr. *dinde*) is the second most popular poultry kind in the United States. It has both light and dark meat and a relatively small amount of fat. Younger turkey is economical and can be prepared in almost any manner.

Turkey

TABLE 17.6 TURKEY CLASSES

Class	Description	Age	Weight	Cooking Method
Fryer/roaster	Immature bird of either sex (males are called toms); tender meat with smooth skin; flexible breastbone	16 weeks or less	4–9 lb. (2–4 kg)	Roast or cut into scallops and sauté or pan-fry
Young	Tender meat with smooth skin; less-flexible breastbone	8 months or less	8–22 lb. (3.5–10 kg)	Roast or stew
Yearling	Fully matured bird; reasonably tender meat and slightly coarse skin	15 months or less	10–30 lb. (4.5–13 kg)	Roast or stew
Mature	Older bird with coarse skin and tough flesh	15 months or older	10–30 lb. (4.5–13 kg)	Stew, ground or used in processed products

A Turkey by Any Other Name . . .

In *Food In History*, Reay Tannahill explains why we call a turkey a turkey and not a peru. Turkeys were known as *uexolotl* to 16th-century native Central Americans. They were first brought to Europe by returning Spanish explorers early in the 1500s. Turkish merchants visiting Seville, Spain, on their journeys to and from the eastern Mediterranean brought these exotic birds to England, where the English dubbed them "turkie-cocks." This was eventually shortened to "turkeys." The Turks called these birds "hindi," suggesting that they believed the birds originated in India (as opposed to the Indies). This was a belief shared by the French, who called the bird *coq d'Inde*, which was later corrupted to *dinde* or *dindon*. The Germans followed suit, calling the bird *indianische Henn*, as did the Italians, who called it *galle d'India*. Meanwhile, in India, the bird was called a *peru*—which was a little closer to the geographical mark.

Ratites

Ratites are a family of flightless birds with small wings and flat breastbones. They include the ostrich (which is native to Africa), emu (native to Australia) and rhea (native to South America).

Ostrich Fan

Ratite meat, which is classified as red meat, even though it is poultry flesh, is a dark, cherry-red color with a flavor similar to beef, but a little sweeter. It is low in fat and calories. Most ratite meat is from birds slaughtered at 10 to 13 months of age. It is generally cut from the back (which contains the very tender tenderloin), the thigh (also known as the fan) and the leg, and is available as steaks, filets, medallions, roasts, cubes or ground.

Ratite meat is often prepared like veal. The more tender cuts, such as those from the back or thigh, can be marinated and then cooked by dry-heat cooking methods, especially broiling and grilling, roasting and pan-frying. Because it has little fat, care must be taken to avoid overcooking, and these products are usually served medium rare to medium. Tougher cuts, such as those from the leg, are best ground or prepared with combination cooking methods.

Livers, Gizzards, Hearts and Necks

Livers, gizzards, hearts and necks are commonly referred to as **giblets**. Although most poultry kinds are sold with giblets, chickens can be purchased with or without them, depending on your needs.

Chicken Giblets

Giblets can be used in a variety of ways. Gizzards (a bird's second stomach), hearts and necks are most often used to make giblet gravy. Gizzards are sometimes trimmed and deep-fried; hearts are sometimes served sautéed and creamed.

Necks are very flavorful and can be added to stocks for flavor and richness. Livers, hearts and gizzards are not added to stocks, however, because of their strong flavors.

Chicken livers are often used in pâtés, sautéed or broiled with onions and served as an entree.

Foie Gras

Foie gras is the enlarged liver of a duck or goose. Considered a delicacy since Roman times, it is now produced in many parts of the world, including the United States. Foie gras is produced by methodically fattening the birds by force-feeding them specially prepared corn while limiting their activity. Fresh foie gras consists of two lobes that must be separated, split and deveined. Good foie gras will be smooth, round and putty-colored. It should not be yellow or grainy. Goose foie gras is lighter in color and more delicate in flavor than that of duck. Duck foie gras has a deeper, winy flavor and is far more common than goose foie gras. Fresh foie gras can be grilled, roasted, sautéed or made into pâtés or terrines. No matter which cooking method is used, care must be taken not to overcook the liver. Foie gras is so high in fat that overcooking will result in the liver actually melting away. Most foie gras used in this country is pasteurized or canned. Canned foie gras may consist of solid liver or small pieces of liver compacted to form a block. Canned foie gras mousse is also available. Truffles are a natural accompaniment to foie gras and are used in many canned preparations.

Duck Foie Gras

NUTRITION

Poultry is an economical source of high-quality protein. Poultry's nutritional values are similar to other meats, except that chicken and turkey breast meat is lower in fat and higher in niacin than other lean meats. (Compare Table 12.1 with Table 17.7.) Generally, dark meat contains more niacin and riboflavin than white meat.

TABLE 17.7 NUTRITIONAL VALUES OF POULTRY

For 1 oz. (28 g) uncooked poultry with skin	Kcal	Protein (g)	Total fat (g)	Saturated fat (g)	Cholesterol (mg)	Sodium (mg)
Chicken, breast	49	5.9	2.6	0.8	18	18
Chicken, thigh	60	4.9	4.3	1.2	24	22
Duck	115	3.3	11.2	3.7	22	18
Goose	105	4.5	9.5	2.8	23	21
Ostrich	36	7.4	0.8	na	21.7	na
Squab	83	5.2	6.7	2.4	mq	mq
Turkey, breast	45	6.2	2.0	0.5	18	17
Turkey, leg	41	5.5	1.9	0.6	20	21

The Corinne T. Netzer Encyclopedia of Food Values 1992; ostrich values from Texas A & M University, 1994.
mq = measurable quantity, but data is unavailable

FIGURE 17.1 *USDA Inspection Stamp for Poultry*

FIGURE 17.2 *Grade Stamp for USDA Grade A Poultry.*

Inspection and Grading of Poultry

Inspection

All poultry produced for public consumption in the United States is subject to USDA inspection. Inspections ensure that products are processed under strict sanitary guidelines and are wholesome and fit for human consumption. Inspections do not indicate a product's quality or tenderness. The round inspection stamp illustrated in Figure 17.1 can be found either on a tag attached to the wing or included in the package labeling.

Grading

Grading poultry is voluntary but virtually universal. Birds are graded according to their overall quality with the grade (USDA A, B or C) shown on a shield-shaped tag affixed to the bird or on a processed product's packaging. See Figure 17.2.

According to the USDA, Grade A poultry is free from deformities, with thick flesh and a well-developed fat layer; free of pinfeathers, cuts or tears and broken bones; the carcass is free from discoloration and, if it is frozen, free from defects that occur during handling or storage. Nearly all poultry used in wholesale and retail outlets is Grade A. Grade B and C birds are used primarily for processed poultry products.

Quality grades have no bearing on the product's tenderness or flavor. A bird's tenderness is usually indicated by its class (for example, a "young turkey" is younger and more tender than a yearling). Its grade (USDA A, B or C) within each class is determined by its overall quality.

Purchasing and Storing Poultry

Purchasing Poultry

Poultry can be purchased in many forms: fresh or frozen, whole or cut up, bone-in or boneless, portion controlled (P.C.), individually quick frozen (IQF) or ground. Chicken and turkey are also widely used in prepared and convenience items and are available fully cooked and vacuum-wrapped or boned and canned. Although purchasing poultry in a ready-to-use form is convenient, it is not always necessary: Poultry products are easy to fabricate and portion. Whole fresh poultry is also less expensive than precut or frozen products.

As with meats, you should consider your menu, labor costs, storage facilities and employee skills when deciding whether to purchase whole fresh poultry or some other form.

Storing Poultry

Poultry is highly perishable and particularly susceptible to contamination by salmonella bacteria. It is critical that poultry be stored at the correct temperatures.

Fresh chickens and other small birds can be stored on ice or at 32°F–34°F (0°C–2°C) for up to two days; larger birds can be stored up to four days at these temperatures. Frozen poultry should be kept at 0°F (–18°C) or below

A History of Poultry Safety Measures

1926—An outbreak of "fowl plague" in the New York Central Railroad Yards prompted the passage of legislation requiring inspection of all poultry intended for interstate or foreign commerce.

1957—Poultry Products Inspection Act extended inspection laws to include ante- and post-mortem inspections as well as inspection of slaughter and processing facilities.

1968—Wholesale Poultry Products Act extended inspection laws to all poultry products intended for interstate and intrastate commerce; the law requires that all poultry marketed in the United States be processed under sanitary conditions and be free from disease.

(the colder the better) and can be held for up to six months. It should be thawed gradually under refrigeration, allowing two days for chickens and as many as four days for larger birds. Never attempt to cook poultry that is still partially frozen: It will be impossible to cook the product evenly, and the areas that were still frozen may not reach the temperatures necessary to destroy harmful bacteria. Never partially cook poultry one day and finish cooking it later: Bacteria are more likely to grow under such conditions.

Sanitation and Cross-Contamination

Review the information in Chapter 2, Food Safety and Sanitation, before butchering any poultry. Be sure that all work surfaces, cutting boards, knives, hands and other equipment used to prepare poultry products are clean and sanitary. Be careful that juices and trimmings from poultry do not come in contact with other foods. Anything coming in contact with raw poultry should be cleaned and sanitized before it comes in contact with any other food. Cooked foods should never be placed in containers that were used to hold the raw product. Kitchen towels that are used to handle poultry or clean up after butchering should be sanitized before being reused to prevent cross-contamination.

Butchering Procedures

Poultry is easier to butcher than meats and is often processed on-site. You should be able to perform the following commonly encountered procedures. Because the different kinds of poultry are similar in structure, these procedures apply to a variety of birds.

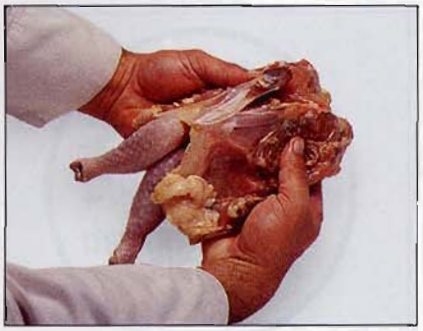
Procedure for Cutting a Bird in Half

Often the first step in preparing poultry is to cut the bird in half. Broiler and fryer chickens are often split to make two portions. This procedure removes the backbone and breast bone (also known as the keel bone) for a neat finished product.

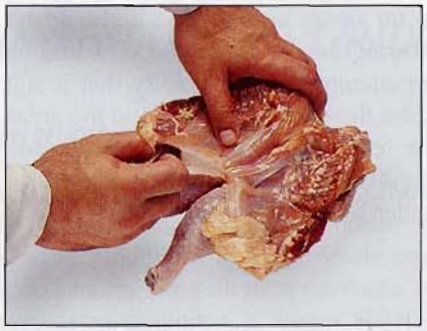
1. Square up the bird by placing it on its back and pressing on the legs and breast to create a more uniform appearance.

2. Place the bird on its breast and hold the tail tightly with the thumb and forefinger of one hand. Using a rigid boning knife and in a single swift movement, cut alongside the backbone from the bird's tail to head.

3. Lay the bird flat on the cutting board and remove the backbone by cutting through the ribs connecting it to the breast.



4. Bend the bird back, breaking the breast bone free.



5. Run your fingers along the bone to separate the breast meat from it; pull the bone completely free. Be sure to remove the flexible cartilage completely.

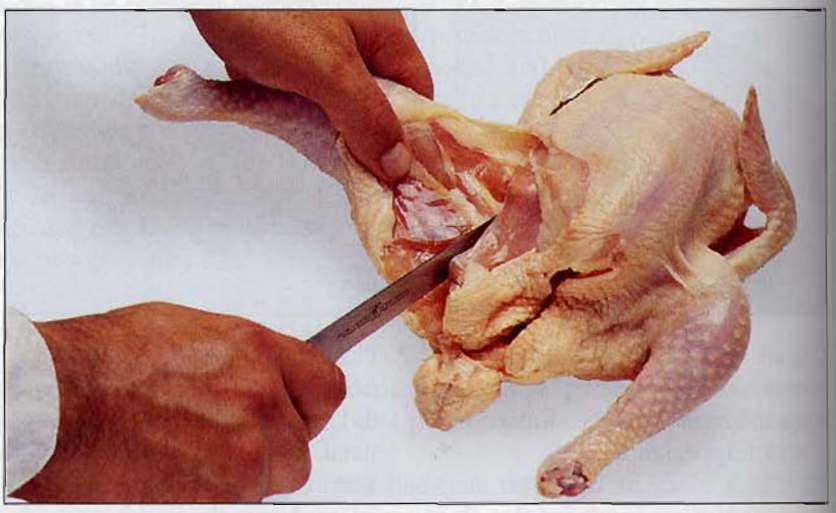
6. Cut through the skin to separate the bird into two halves. The halves are ready to be cooked; for a more attractive presentation, follow steps 7 and 8.

7. Trim off the wing tips and the ends of the leg bone.

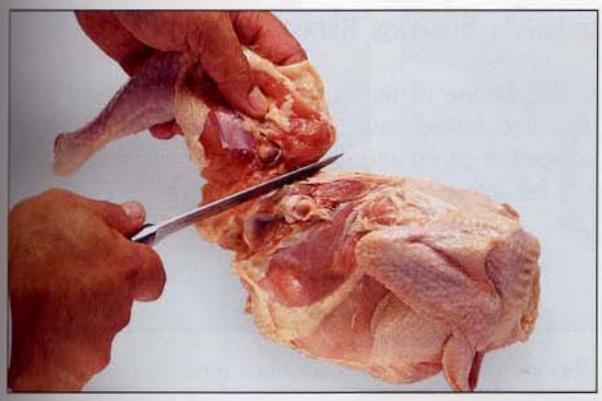
8. Make a slit in the skin below the leg and tuck the leg bone into the slit.

Procedure for Cutting a Bird into Pieces

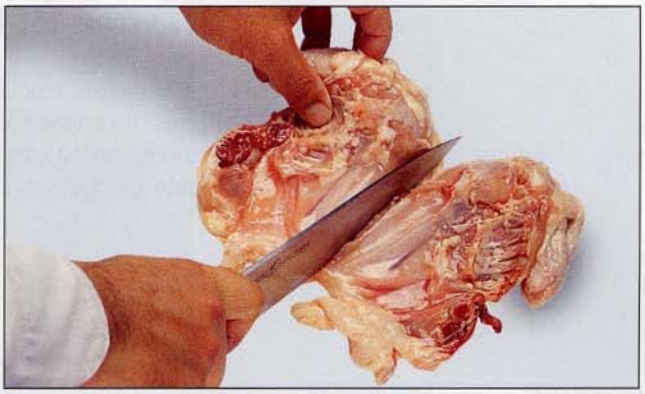
This is one of the most common butchering procedures. It is also very simple once you understand the bird's structure and are able to find each of its joints.



1. Remove the leg by pulling the leg and thigh away from the breast and cutting through the skin and flesh toward the thigh joint.



2. Cut down to the thigh joint, twist the leg to break the joint and cut the thigh and leg from the carcass. Be careful to trim around the oyster meat (the tender morsel of meat located next to the backbone); leave it attached to the thigh. Repeat with the other leg.



3. To split the breast, follow steps 2 through 6 for cutting a bird in half. Cut the breast into two halves.

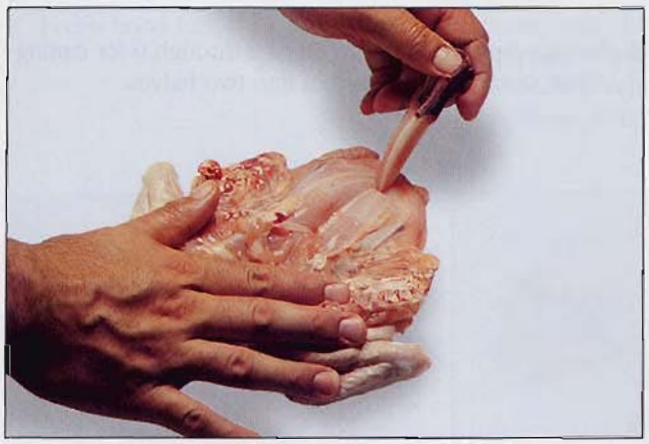
4. The bird is now cut into four quarters.

5. To cut the bird into six pieces, separate the thigh from the leg by making a cut guided by the line of fat on the inside of the thigh and leg.

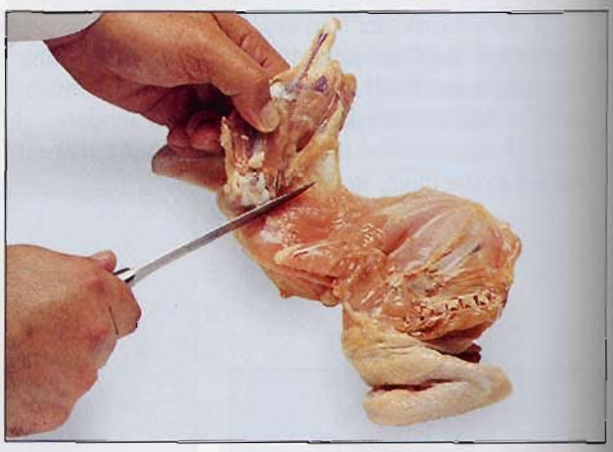
6. To cut the bird into eight pieces, separate the wing from the breast by cutting through the joint, or split the breast, leaving a portion of the breast meat attached to the wing.

Procedure for Preparing a Boneless Breast

A boneless chicken breast is one of the most versatile and popular poultry cuts. It can be broiled, grilled, baked, sautéed, pan-fried or poached. Boneless turkey breast can be roasted or sliced and sautéed as a substitute for veal. The skin can be removed or left intact.



1. Remove the keel bone from the bone-in breast, following steps 4, 5 and 6 for cutting a bird in half.



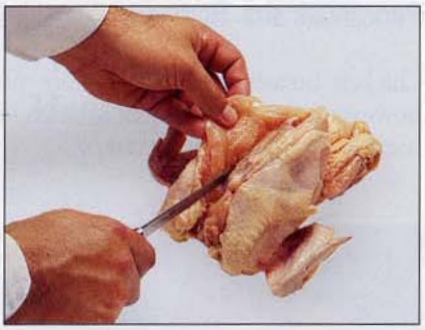
2. With the chicken breast lying skin side down, separate the rib bones, wing and wishbone from the breast. Leave the two tender pieces of meat known as the tenderloins attached to the breast. Repeat the procedure on the other side, being sure to remove the small wishbone pieces from the front of the breast.

3. The skin may be left intact or removed to produce a skinless boneless breast.

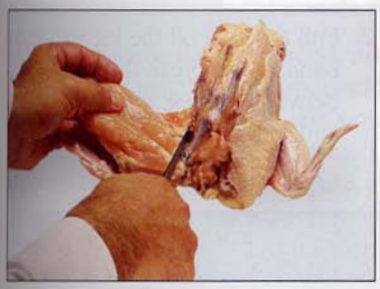
Procedure for Preparing a Suprême or Airline Breast

A chicken suprême or airline breast is half of a boneless chicken breast with the first wing bone attached. The tip of the wing bone is removed, yielding a neat and attractive portion that can be prepared by a variety of cooking methods. The skin can be left on or removed.

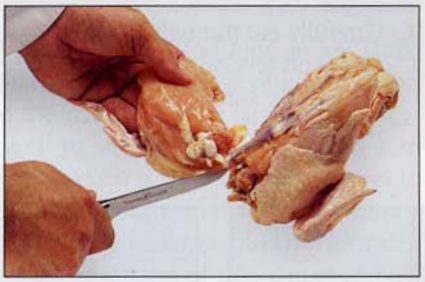
1. Remove the legs from a chicken following steps 1 and 2 for cutting a bird into pieces. Place the bird on its back. Locate the wishbone, trim around it and remove it.



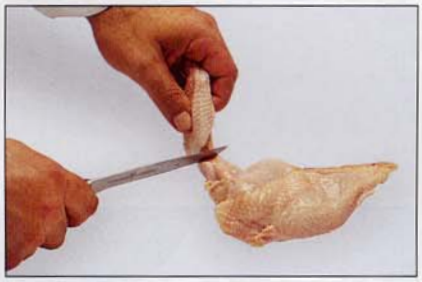
2. Cut along one side of the breast bone, separating the meat from the bone.



3. Following the natural curvature of the ribs, continue cutting to remove the meat from the bones.



4. When you reach the wing joint, cut through the joint, keeping the wing attached to the breast portion. Cut the breast free from the carcass.



5. Make a cut on the back of the joint between the first and second wing bones.

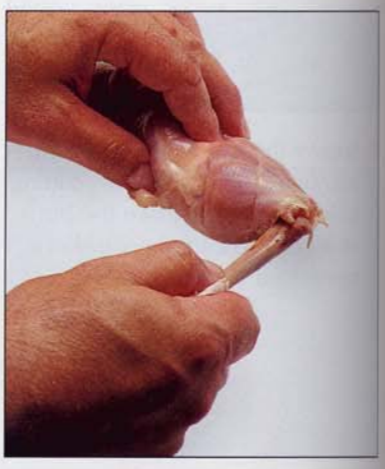
6. Break the joint and pull the meat and skin back to expose a clean bone. Trim the wing bone.

7. The suprême can be prepared skin-on or skinless.

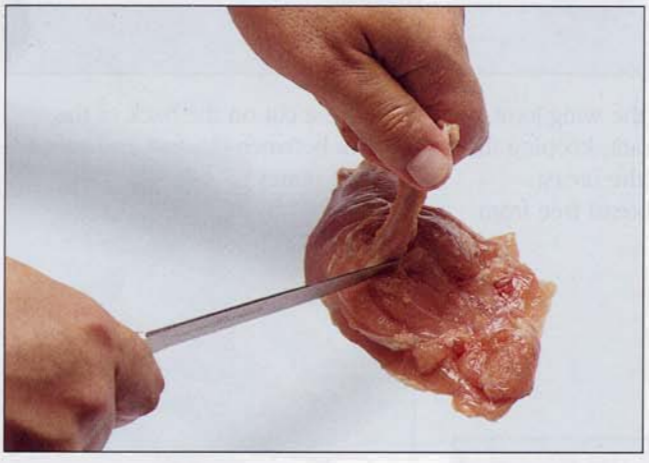
Procedure for Boning a Chicken Leg

Chicken breasts are usually more popular than legs and thighs. There are, however, uses for boneless, skinless leg and thigh meat; they can be stuffed or used for ballotines, for example.

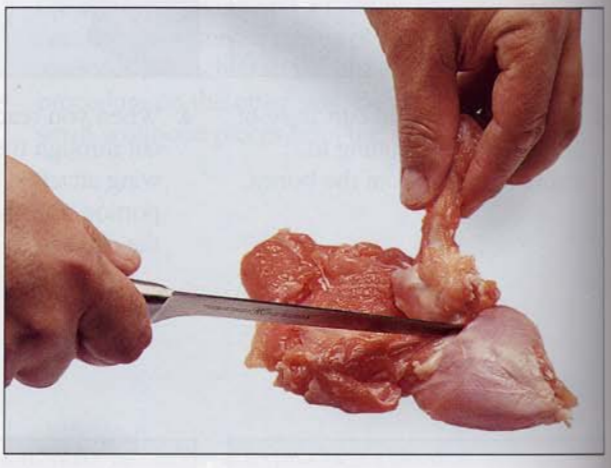
1. Carefully cut through the skin, meat and tendons at the base of the leg. Be sure to cut through completely to the bone.



2. Pull the skin off the leg with your hands, then break the joint between the leg and thigh. Twist and pull out the leg bone.



3. Working from the inside of the thigh, cut along both sides of the thigh bone, separating it from the meat.



4. Cut around the cartilage at the joint between the leg and thigh and remove the thigh bone and cartilage.

Marinating Poultry

Most poultry is quite mild in flavor, so a marinade is often used to add flavor and moisture, especially to poultry that will be broiled or grilled. Barbecued chicken is a simple and popular example of marinated poultry. Other poultry marinades can be a mixture of white wine or lemon juice, oil, salt, pepper, herbs and spices, such as that given in Recipe 17.1.

RECIPE 17.1

WHITE WINE MARINADE

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Garlic, minced	2 tsp.	10 ml
Onion, small dice	5 oz.	150 g
Dry white wine	24 oz.	750 ml
Bay leaves	2	2
Dried thyme	2 tsp.	10 ml
White pepper	1 tsp.	5 ml
Salt	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Lemon juice	1 oz.	30 ml
Vegetable oil	4 oz.	120 ml

1. Combine all ingredients.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 35, **Total fat** 3.5 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 220 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—no saturated fat; no cholesterol; no sugar; low calorie

Poultry absorbs flavors quickly, so if pieces are left too long in an acidic marinade, they may take on undesirable flavors. Two hours is often sufficient, with smaller pieces requiring less time in the marinade than larger ones.

If the marinade contains oil, drain it well to avoid flare-up when the item is placed on the broiler or grill. Use a clean kitchen towel or a paper towel to wipe excess moisture from the poultry's surface so that it browns more easily. The marinade can be used to baste the item during cooking, but leftover marinade should not be served uncooked or reused because of the danger of bacterial contamination from the raw poultry.

APPLYING VARIOUS COOKING METHODS

The principles of cooking discussed in Chapter 9 and applied to meats in earlier chapters also apply to poultry. Dry-heat methods are appropriate for young, tender birds. Moist-heat methods should be used with older, less-tender products.

Dry-Heat Cooking Methods

Cooking poultry with dry-heat methods—broiling and grilling, roasting, sautéing, pan-frying and deep-frying—presents some unique challenges. Large birds like turkeys benefit from low-heat cooking but are better when served with the crispy skin gained through higher temperatures. Duck and goose skins contain a great deal of fat that must be rendered during the cooking process. Small birds such as squab must be cooked at sufficiently high temperatures to crisp their skins but can be easily overcooked. Boneless chicken breasts, particularly flavorful and popular when broiled or grilled, are easily overcooked and become dry because they do not contain bones to help retain moisture during cooking. Proper application of the following dry-heat cooking methods will help meet these challenges and ensure a good-quality finished product.

Broiling and Grilling

Broiled and grilled poultry should have a well-browned surface and can show crosshatched grill marks. It should be moist, tender and juicy throughout. It may be seasoned to enhance its natural flavors or marinated or basted with any number of flavored butters or sauces.

Selecting Poultry to Broil or Grill

Smaller birds such as Cornish hens, chickens and squab are especially well suited for broiling or grilling. Whole birds should be split or cut into smaller pieces before cooking; their joints may be broken so that they lie flat. Quail and other small birds can be skewered before being broiled to help them cook evenly and retain their shape. Be especially careful when cooking breast portions or boneless pieces: The direct heat of the broiler or grill can overcook the item very quickly.

Seasoning Poultry to be Broiled or Grilled

Poultry is fairly neutral in flavor and responds well to marinating. Poultry may also be basted periodically during the cooking process with flavored butter, oil or barbecue sauce. At the very least, broiled or grilled poultry should be well seasoned with salt and pepper just before cooking.

Determining Doneness

With the exception of duck breasts and squab, which are sometimes left pink, broiled or grilled poultry is always cooked well done. This makes the poultry particularly susceptible to becoming dry and tough because it contains little fat and is cooked at very high temperatures. Particular care must be taken to ensure that the item does not become overcooked.

Four methods are used to determine the doneness of broiled or grilled poultry:

1. *Touch*—When the item is done, it will have a firm texture, resist pressure and spring back quickly when pressed with a finger.
2. *Temperature*—Use an instant-read thermometer to determine the item's internal temperature. This may be difficult, however, because of the item's size and the heat from the broiler or grill. Insert the thermometer in the thickest part of the item away from any bones. It should read 165°F–170°F (74°C–77°C) at the coolest point.
3. *Looseness of the joints*—When bone-in poultry is done, the leg will begin to move freely in its socket.
4. *Color of the juices*—Poultry is done when its juices run clear or show just a trace of pink. This degree of doneness is known in French as ***à point***.

Accompaniments to Broiled and Grilled Poultry

If the item was basted with an herb butter, it can be served with additional butter; if the item was basted with barbecue sauce, it should be served with the same sauce. Be careful, however, that any marinade or sauce that came in contact with the raw poultry is not served unless it is cooked thoroughly to destroy harmful bacteria. Additional sauce suggestions are found in Table 10.5.

Broiled or grilled poultry is very versatile and goes well with almost any side dish. Seasoned and grilled vegetables are a natural accompaniment, and deep-fried potatoes are commonly served.

Procedure for Broiling or Grilling Poultry

As with meats, broiled or grilled poultry can be prepared by placing it directly on the grate. Poultry is also often broiled using a rotisserie.

1. Heat the broiler or grill.
2. Use a wire brush to remove any charred or burnt particles that may be stuck to the broiler or grill grate. The grate can be wiped with a lightly oiled towel to remove any remaining particles and help season it.
3. Prepare the item to be broiled or grilled by marinating or seasoning as desired; it may be brushed lightly with oil to keep it from sticking to the grate.
4. Place the item on the grate, presentation side (skin side) down. Following the example in Chapter 9, turn the item to produce the attractive crosshatch marks associated with grilling. Baste the item often. Use tongs to turn or flip the item without piercing the surface so that juices do not escape.
5. Develop the proper surface color while cooking the item until it is done *à point*. To do so, adjust the position of the item on the broiler or grill, or adjust the distance between the grate and heat source. Large pieces and bone-in pieces that are difficult to cook completely on the broiler or grill can be finished in the oven.

A commonly used procedure to cook a large volume of poultry is to place the seasoned items in a broiler pan or other shallow pan and then place the pan directly under the broiler. Baste the items periodically, turning them once when they are halfway done. Items begun this way can be easily finished by transferring the entire pan to the oven.

RECIPE 17.2

Grilled Squab with Basil Butter

Yield: 4 Servings

Squab, whole	4	4
Fresh basil leaves	16	16
White Wine Marinade (Recipe 17.1)	1 pt.	450 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Basil butter	6 oz.	170 g

1. Remove the backbone and breast bone from each squab. The birds will lie flat and remain in one piece.
2. Make a slit below each leg and tuck the leg bone into the slit.
3. Carefully slide two basil leaves under the skin over each breast to cover the meat.
4. Marinate the squab in the white wine marinade for 1–2 hours.
5. Heat and prepare the grill.
6. Remove the squab from the marinade and pat dry.
7. Melt approximately 4 ounces (120 grams) of the basil butter, leaving enough for eight thin slices to be served with the finished dish.
8. Brush the squab with basil butter and place it skin side down on the grill. Grill the squab, turning once and basting periodically with the melted basil butter. Finish in the oven if necessary.
9. Serve the squab with a slice of basil butter melting over each breast.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 690, **Total fat** 50 g, **Saturated fat** 26 g, **Cholesterol** 260 mg, **Sodium** 1070 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 0 g, **Protein** 60 g, **Vitamin A** 40%

1. Marinating the squab in white wine marinade.

2. Drying the squab.

3. Brushing the squab with the melted basil butter.

4. Grilling the squab.

5. Serving the squab with a slice of basil butter.

Roasting

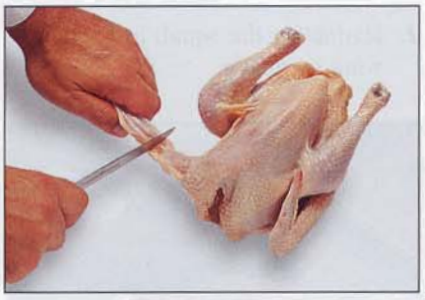
Properly roasted (or baked) poultry is attractively browned on the surface and tender and juicy throughout. Proper cooking temperatures ensure a crisp exterior and juicy interior. Most roasted poultry is cooked until the juices run clear. Squab and duck breasts are exceptions: They are often served medium rare or pink.

Selecting Poultry to Roast

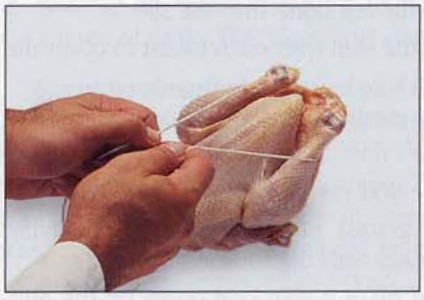
Almost every kind of poultry is suitable for roasting, but younger birds produce a more tender finished product. Because of variations in fat content, different kinds of poultry require different roasting temperatures and procedures.

Procedure for Trussing Poultry

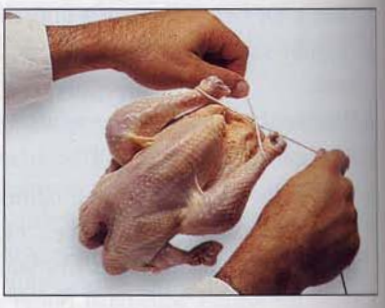
Trussing is tying a bird into a more compact shape with thread or butcher's twine. Trussing allows the bird to cook more evenly, helps the bird retain moisture and improves the appearance of the finished product. There are many methods for trussing poultry, some of which require a special tool called a trussing needle. Here we show a simple method using butcher's twine.



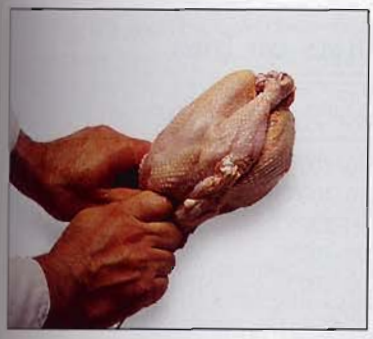
1. Square up the bird by pressing it firmly with both hands. Tuck the first joint of the wing behind the back or trim off the first and second joints as shown.



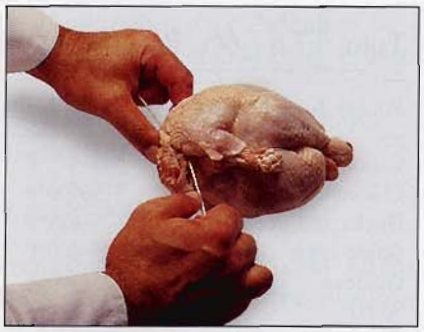
2. Cut a piece of butcher's twine approximately three times the bird's length. With the breast up and the neck toward you, pass the twine under the bird approximately 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) in front of the tail.



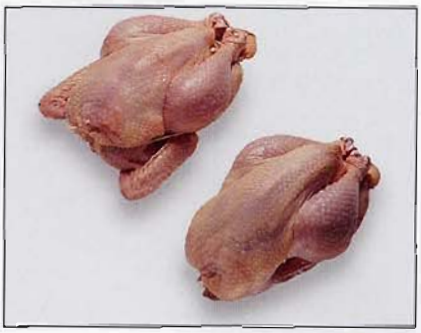
3. Bring the twine up around the legs and cross the ends, creating an X between the legs. Pass the ends of the twine below the legs.



4. Pull the ends of the twine tightly across the leg and thigh joints and across the wings if the first and second joints are trimmed off, or just above the wings if they are intact.



5. Pull the string tight and tie it securely just above the neck.



6. Two examples of properly trussed birds: one with the wings intact and one with the first and second wing joints removed.

Seasoning Poultry to be Roasted

Although the mild flavor of most poultry is enhanced by a wide variety of herbs and spices, roasted poultry is often only lightly seasoned with salt and pepper. Poultry that is roasted at high temperatures should never be seasoned with herbs on its surface because the high cooking temperatures will burn them. If herbs or additional spices are used, they should be stuffed into the cavity. A mirepoix or a bouquet garni may also be added to the cavity for additional flavor. The cavities of dark-meated birds such as ducks and geese are often stuffed with fresh or dried fruits.

Barding Poultry to be Roasted

Guineas, squabs or any skinless birds without an adequate fat covering to protect them from drying out during roasting can be barded. Bard the bird by covering its entire surface with thin slices of fatback, securing them with butcher's twine. See page 270.

Cooking Temperatures

Small birds such as squab and Cornish game hens should be roasted at the relatively high temperatures of 375°F–400°F (190°C–200°C). These temperatures help produce crisp, well-colored skins without overcooking the flesh. Chickens are best roasted at temperatures between 350°F and 375°F (180°C–190°C). This temperature range allows the skin to crisp and the flesh to cook without causing the bird to stew in its own juices. Large birds such as capons and turkeys are started at high temperatures of 400°F–425°F (200°C–220°C) to brown the skin, then finished at lower temperatures of 275°F–325°F (135°C–160°C) to promote even cooking and produce a moister product. Ducks and geese, which are very high in fat, must be roasted at the high temperatures of 375°F–425°F (190°C–220°C) to render as much fat from the skin as possible. Duck and goose skins are often pricked before roasting so that the rendered fat can escape; this helps create a crispy skin.

Basting Roasted Poultry

With the exception of fatty birds such as ducks and geese, all poultry items should be basted while they roast in order to help retain moisture. To baste a bird, spoon or ladle the fat that collects in the bottom of the roasting pan over the bird at 15-to-20-minute intervals. Lean birds that are not barded will not produce enough fat for basting and may be brushed with butter in the same manner.

TABLE 17.8 ROASTING TEMPERATURES AND TIMES

Poultry Kind or Class	Cooking Temperatures		Minutes per lb. (500 g)
Capons	350–375°F	180–190°C	18–20 min.
Chickens	375–400°F	190–200°C	15–18 min.
Ducks and geese	375–425°F	190–220°C	12–15 min.
Game hens	375–400°F	190–200°C	45–60 min. total
Guineas	375–400°F	190–200°C	18–20 min.
Squab	400°F	200°C	30–40 min. total
Turkeys (large)	325°F	160°C	12–15 min.

Determining Doneness

Four methods are used to determine the doneness of roasted poultry. It is best to use a combination of these methods.

1. *Temperature*—Test the internal temperature of the bird with an instant-read thermometer. The thermometer should be inserted in the bird's thigh, which is the last part to become fully cooked. It should not touch the bone and should read 165°F–170°F (74°C–77°C) at the coolest point. This method works best with large birds such as capons and turkeys. Large birds are subject to some degree of carryover cooking. This is not as much of a concern with poultry as it is with meat because large birds are always cooked well done.
2. *Looseness of the joints*—The thigh and leg will begin to move freely in their sockets when the bird is done.
3. *Color of juices*—This method is used with birds that are not stuffed. Use a kitchen fork to tilt the bird, allowing some of the juices that have collected in the cavity to run out. Clear juices indicate that the bird is done. If the juices are cloudy or pink, the bird is undercooked.
4. *Time*—Because there are so many variables, timing alone is less reliable than other methods. It is useful, however, for planning production when large quantities are roasted and as a general guideline when used with other methods. Table 17.8 gives some general timing guidelines for roasting several kinds of poultry.

Dressing—*another name for a bread stuffing used with poultry.*

Accompaniments to Roasted Poultry

The most common accompaniments to roasted poultry are bread stuffing and gravy. Large birds, such as capons and turkeys, produce adequate drippings for making sauce or pan gravy. Small birds, such as squab and Cornish game hens, are often stuffed with wild rice or other ingredients and served with a sauce that is made separately.

Ducks and geese are complemented by stuffings containing rice, fruits, berries and nuts. They are very fatty, and if stuffed, they should be roasted on a rack or mirepoix bed to ensure that the fat that collects in the pan during roasting does not penetrate the cavity, making the stuffing greasy. Ducks and geese are often served with a citrus- or fruit-based sauce. Its high acid content complements these rich, fatty birds.

PROCEDURE FOR STUFFING POULTRY

Small birds such as Cornish game hens, small chickens and squab can be stuffed successfully. Stuffing larger birds, especially for volume production, is impractical and can be dangerous for the following reasons:

1. Stuffing is a good bacterial breeding ground, and because it is difficult to control temperatures inside a stuffed bird, there is a risk of food-borne illness.
2. Stuffing poultry is labor intensive.
3. Stuffed poultry must be cooked longer to cook the stuffing properly; this may cause the meat to be overcooked, becoming dry and tough.

When stuffing any bird, use the following guidelines:

1. Always be aware of temperatures when mixing the raw ingredients. All ingredients should be cold when they are mixed together, and the mixture's temperature should never be allowed to rise above 45°F (7°C).
2. Stuff the raw bird as close to roasting time as possible.
3. The neck and main body cavities should be loosely stuffed. The stuffing will expand during cooking.
4. After the cavities are filled, their openings should be secured with skewers and butcher's twine or by trussing.
5. After cooking, remove the stuffing from the bird and store separately.

Procedure for Roasting Poultry

1. Season, bard, stuff and/or truss the bird as desired.
2. Place the bird in a roasting pan. It may be placed on a rack or a bed of mirepoix in order to prevent scorching and promote even cooking.
3. Roast uncovered, basting every 15 minutes.
4. Allow the bird to rest before carving to allow even distribution of juices. As the bird rests, prepare the pan gravy or sauce.

RECIPE 17.3

Roast Turkey with Chestnut Dressing and Giblet Gravy

Yield: 16 portions—4 oz. (120 g) turkey, 3 oz. (90 g) dressing, 4 oz. (120 ml) gravy.

Young turkey, 12–15 lb. (5.5–6.5 kg) with giblets	1	1
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Mirepoix	20 oz.	600 g
Onion, small dice	8 oz.	225 g
Celery, small dice	6 oz.	180 g
Whole butter	4 oz.	120 g
Dried bread cubes	2 lb.	1 kg
Eggs, beaten	2	2
Fresh parsley, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Chicken stock	2 1/4 qt.	2 lt
Chestnuts, cooked and peeled, chopped coarse	8 oz.	225 g
All-purpose flour	3 oz.	90 g

Continued

1. Placing the trussed turkey in the roasting pan.

2. Adding the mirepoix to the roasting pan.

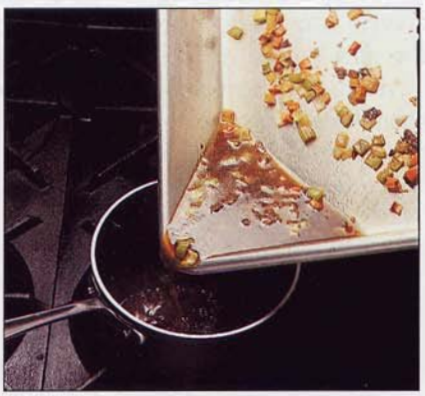
1. Remove the giblets from the turkey's cavity and set aside. Season the turkey inside and out with salt and pepper. Truss the turkey.
2. Place the turkey in a roasting pan. Roast at 400°F (200°C) for 30 minutes. Reduce the temperature to 325°F (160°C) and continue cooking the turkey to an internal temperature of 160°F (71°C), approximately 2 1/2 to 3 hours. Baste the turkey often during cooking. Approximately 45 minutes before the turkey is done, add the mirepoix to the roasting pan. If the turkey begins to overbrown, cover it loosely with aluminum foil.
3. To make the dressing, sauté the diced onion and celery in the butter until tender.
4. In a large bowl, toss together the bread cubes, salt, pepper, eggs, parsley, sautéed onions and celery, 4 ounces (120 milliliters) of chicken stock and the chestnuts.
5. Place the dressing in a buttered hotel pan and cover with aluminum foil or buttered parchment paper. Bake at 350°F (180°C) until done, approximately 45 minutes.
6. As the turkey roasts, simmer the giblets (neck, heart and gizzard) in 1 quart (1 liter) of the chicken stock until tender, approximately 1 1/2 hours.
7. When the turkey is done, remove it from the roasting pan and set aside to rest. Degrease the roasting pan, reserving 3 ounces (90 grams) of the fat to make a roux.
8. Place the roasting pan on the stove top and brown the mirepoix.
9. Deglaze the pan with a small amount of chicken stock. Transfer the mirepoix and stock to a saucepot, and add the remaining stock and the broth from the giblets. Bring to a simmer and degrease.
10. Make a blond roux with the reserved fat and the flour. Add the roux to the liquid, whisking well to prevent lumps. Simmer 15 minutes. Strain the gravy through a china cap lined with cheesecloth.
11. Remove the meat from the turkey neck. Trim the gizzard. Finely chop the neck meat, heart and gizzard and add to the gravy. Adjust the seasonings.
12. Carve the turkey and serve with a portion of chestnut dressing and giblet gravy.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 720, **Total fat** 23 g, **Saturated fat** 9 g, **Cholesterol** 250 mg, **Sodium** 700 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 41 g, **Protein** 87 g, **Vitamin A** 6%, **Iron** 40%

3. Tossing the dressing ingredients together.

4. Browning the mirepoix.

5. Deglazing the roasting pan.



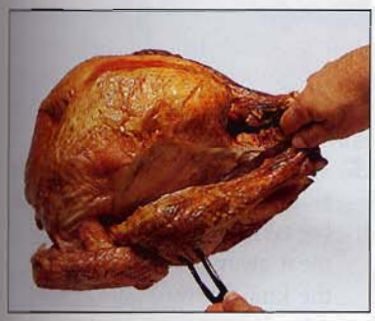
6. Transferring the mirepoix and stock to a saucepot.

7. Straining the gravy through a china cap and cheesecloth.

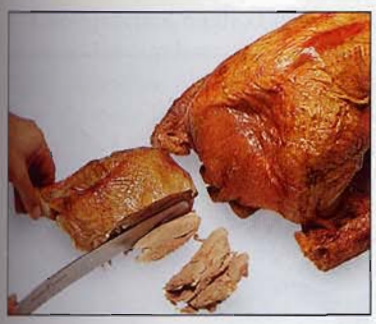
Carving Roasted Poultry

Poultry can be carved in the kitchen, at tableside or on a buffet in a variety of manners. The carving methods described next produce slices of both light and dark meat.

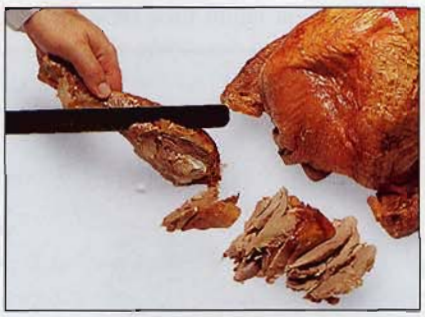
Procedure for Carving a Turkey, Capon or Other Large Bird



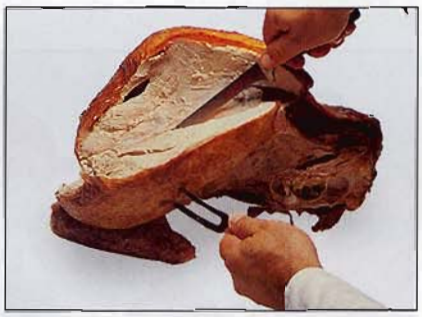
1. After roasting, allow the turkey to stand for 20 minutes so that the juices can redistribute themselves. Holding the turkey firmly with a carving fork, pry a leg outward and locate the joint. Remove the leg and thigh in one piece by cutting through the joint with the tip of a knife.



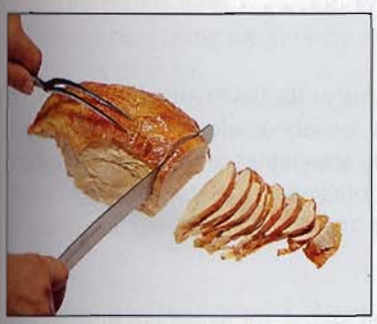
2 Repeat the procedure on the other side. Once both legs and thighs have been removed, slice the meat from the thigh by holding the leg firmly with one hand and slicing parallel to the bone.



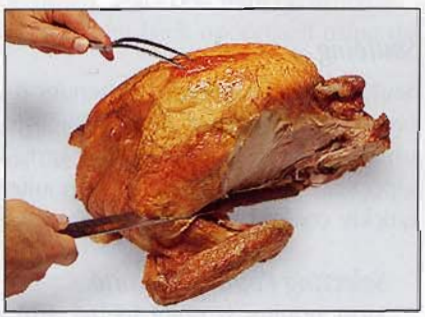
3. Separate the thigh from the leg bone by cutting through the joint. Slice the meat from the leg by cutting parallel to the bone.



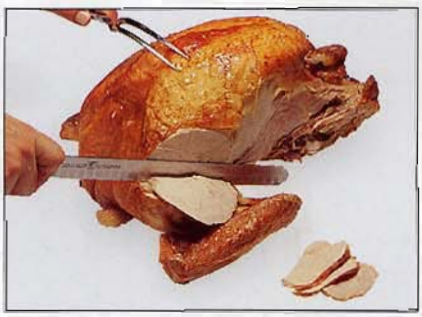
4. Cut along the backbone, following the natural curvature of the bones separating the breast meat from the ribs.



5. Remove an entire half breast and slice it on the cutting board as shown. Cut on an angle to produce larger slices.

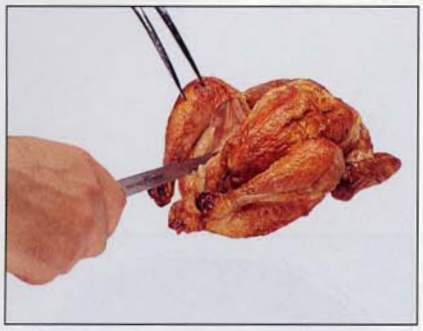


6. Alternatively, the breast can be carved on the bird. Make a horizontal cut just above the wing in toward the rib bones.

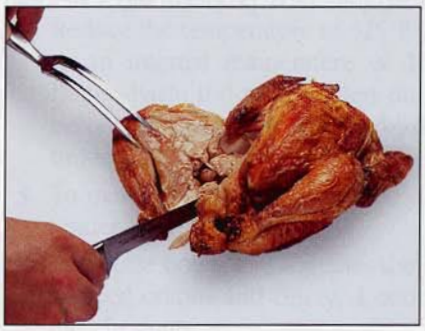


7. Slice the breast meat as shown.

Procedure for Carving a Chicken or Other Small Bird



1. After allowing the roasted chicken to rest for 15 minutes so that the juices can redistribute themselves, cut through the skin between the leg and breast.



2. Use a kitchen fork to pry the leg and thigh away from the breast. Locate the thigh's ball joint and cut through it with the knife tip, separating it completely from the rest of the chicken. Be sure to cut around the delicate oyster meat, leaving it attached to the thigh.

3. With the knife tip, cut through the skin and meat on one side of the breast bone. Cut and pull the meat away from the bones with the knife.

4. Cut through the wing joint, separating the breast meat and wing from the carcass. Repeat this procedure on the other side of the bird.

5. The chicken is now quartered.

6. To cut it into eight pieces, separate the wings from the breasts and the thighs from the legs.

Sautéing

Sautéed poultry should be tender and juicy, its flavor developed by proper browning. Additional flavors come from a sauce made by deglazing the pan, usually with wine, and adding garnishes, seasonings and liquids. Stir-frying is a popular method of sautéing poultry; boneless pieces are cut into strips and quickly cooked with assorted vegetables and seasonings.

Selecting Poultry to Sauté

Most poultry is quite tender and well suited for sautéing. Although small birds such as squab can be sautéed bone-in, large pieces and bone-in cuts from larger birds should not be sautéed. Boneless breasts, suprêmes, scallops and cutlets are the most common and practical cuts for sautéing. Because they are high in fat, boneless duck breasts (called *magrets*) can be sautéed without additional fat.

Seasoning Poultry to be Sautéed

Poultry has a delicate flavor that is enhanced by a wide variety of herbs, spices, condiments and marinades. Flavor combinations are limited only by your imagination. When poultry items are dusted with flour before sautéing, the seasonings may first be added to the flour.

Cooking Temperatures

The sauté pan and the cooking fat must be hot before the poultry is added. The temperature at which the poultry is then sautéed is determined by its thickness and the desired color of the finished product. A thin, boneless slice requires relatively high temperatures so that its surface is browned before the center is overcooked. A thicker cut such as a suprême requires lower temperatures so that neither its surface nor the fond are burned before the item is fully cooked. Adjust the temperature throughout the cooking process in order to achieve the desired results, never letting the pan become too cool.

If the pan is overcrowded or otherwise allowed to cool, the poultry will cook in its own juices and absorb oil from the pan, resulting in a poor-quality product.

Determining Doneness

Thin cuts of poultry cook very quickly, so timing is a useful tool; it is less useful with thicker cuts. Experienced cooks can tell the doneness of an item by judging the temperature of the sauté pan and the color of the item being cooked.

A more practical method is to press the item with your finger and judge the resistance. Very undercooked poultry will offer little resistance and feel mushy. Slightly underdone poultry will feel spongy and will not spring back when your finger is removed. Properly cooked poultry will feel firm to the touch and will spring back when your finger is removed. Overcooked poultry will feel very firm, almost hard, and will spring back quickly when your finger is removed.

Accompaniments to Sautéed Poultry

Sautéed poultry is usually served with a sauce made directly in the pan in which the item was cooked. The sauce uses the fond for added flavor. A wide variety of ingredients, including garlic, onions, shallots, mushrooms and tomatoes, are commonly added to the pan as well as wine and stock. Table 10.5 suggests several sauces for sautéed poultry.

Sautéed items are often served with a starch such as pasta, rice or potatoes.

Procedure for Sautéing Poultry

1. Heat a sauté pan and add enough fat or oil to just cover the bottom.
2. Add the poultry item, presentation side down, and cook until browned.
3. Turn the item, using tongs or by tossing the item back upon itself using the pan's sloped sides.
4. Larger items can be finished in an oven. Either place the sauté pan in the oven or transfer the poultry to another pan. The latter procedure allows a sauce to be made in the original pan as the poultry cooks in the oven. Hold smaller pieces that are thoroughly cooked in a warm place so that the pan can be used for making the sauce.

Procedure for Preparing a Sauce in the Sauté Pan

1. Pour off any excess fat or oil from the sauté pan, leaving enough to sauté the sauce ingredients.
2. Add ingredients such as garlic, shallots and mushrooms that will be used as garnishes and sauce flavorings; sauté them.

3. Deglaze the pan with wine, stock or other liquids. Scrape the pan, loosening the fond and allowing it to dissolve in the liquid. Reduce the liquid.
4. Add any ingredients that do not require long cooking times such as herbs and spices. Adjust the sauce's consistency and seasonings.
5. For service, the poultry can be returned to the pan for a moment to reheat it and to coat it with the sauce. The poultry should remain in the sauce just long enough to reheat. Do not attempt to cook the poultry in the sauce.
6. Serve the poultry with the accompanying sauce.

1. Sautéing the breasts in butter.

2. The fond left in the pan after sautéing the chicken.

3. Sautéing the onions and garlic.

RECIPE 17.4

Chicken Sauté with Onions, Garlic and Basil

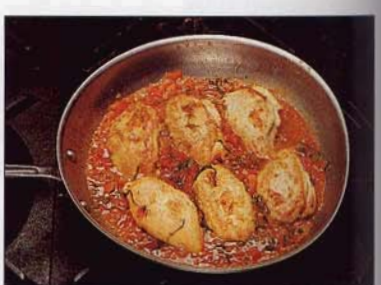
Yield: 6 Servings

Chicken breasts, boneless, skinless, approx. 8 oz. (250 g) each	3	3
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Flour	as needed	as needed
Clarified butter	1 oz.	30 ml
Onion, small dice	2 oz.	60 g
Garlic cloves, chopped	6	6
Dry white wine	4 oz.	120 ml
Lemon juice	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Tomato concassée	6 oz.	180 g
Chicken stock	4 oz.	120 ml
Fresh basil leaves, chiffonade	6	6

1. Split the chicken breasts and remove the cartilage connecting the two halves.
2. Season the chicken with salt and pepper; dredge in flour.
3. Sauté the breasts in the butter, browning them and cooking *à point*. Hold in a warm place.
4. Add the onions and garlic to the fond and butter in the pan; sauté until the onions are translucent.
5. Deglaze the pan with the white wine and lemon juice.
6. Add the tomato concassée and chicken stock. Sauté to combine the flavors; reduce the sauce to the desired consistency.

4. Deglazing the pan with white wine and lemon juice.

5. Adding the tomatoes and chicken stock and sautéing to combine the flavors.



6. Returning the chicken to the pan to reheat.

7. Add the basil to the sauce and return the chicken breasts for reheating. Adjust the seasonings and serve 1/2 breast per portion with a portion of the sauce.

Approximate values per 5-oz. (143-g) serving: **Calories** 230, **Total fat** 8 g, **Saturated fat** 3.5 g, **Cholesterol** 90 mg, **Sodium** 580 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 9 g, **Protein** 30 g, **Vitamin C** 10%, **Iron** 10%

Pan-Frying

Pan-fried poultry should be juicy. Its coating or batter should be crispy, golden brown, not excessively oily and free from any breaks that allow fat to penetrate. Both the poultry and the coating should be well seasoned.

Selecting Poultry to Pan-Fry

The most common pan-fried poultry is fried chicken. Young tender birds cut into small pieces produce the best results. Other cuts commonly pan-fried are boneless portions such as chicken breasts and turkey scallops.

Seasoning Poultry to be Pan-Fried

Pan-fried poultry is usually floured, breaded or battered before cooking. (Breadings and batters are discussed in Chapter 21, Deep-Frying.) Typically, the seasonings are added to the flour, breading or batter before the poultry is coated. Seasonings can be a blend of any number of dried herbs and spices. But often only salt and pepper are required because the poultry will be served with a sauce or other accompaniments for additional flavors.

Cooking Temperatures

The fat should always be hot before the poultry is added. The temperature at which it is cooked is determined by the length of time required to cook it thoroughly. Pan-frying generally requires slightly lower temperatures than those used for sautéing. Within this range, thinner items require higher temperatures to produce good color in a relatively short time. Thicker items and those containing bones require lower cooking temperatures and longer cooking times.

Determining Doneness

Even the largest pan-fried items may be too small to be accurately tested with an instant-read thermometer, and using the touch method can be difficult and dangerous because of the amount of fat used in pan-frying. So, timing and experience are the best tools to determine doneness. Thin scallops cook very quickly, so it is relatively easy to judge their doneness. On the other hand, fried chicken can take as long as 30–45 minutes to cook, requiring skill and experience to determine doneness.

Accompaniments to Pan-Fried Poultry

Because pan-frying does not produce fond or drippings that can be used to make a sauce, pan-fried poultry is usually served with lemon wedges, a vegetable garnish or a separately made sauce. Fried chicken is an exception; it is sometimes served with a country gravy made by degreasing the pan, making a roux with a portion of the fat and adding milk and seasonings.

Procedure for Pan-Frying Poultry

1. Heat enough fat in a heavy sauté pan to cover the item to be cooked one quarter to halfway up its side. The fat should be at approximately 325°F (160°C).
2. Add the floured, breaded or battered item to the hot fat, being careful not to splash. The fat must be hot enough to sizzle and bubble when the item is added.
3. Turn the item when the first side is the proper color; it should be half cooked at this point. Larger items may need to be turned more than once to brown them properly on all sides.
4. Remove the browned poultry from the pan and drain it on absorbent paper.

RECIPE 17.5

Pan-Fried Chicken with Pan Gravy

Yield: 8 2-piece Servings

Frying chickens, 2 lb. 8 oz.–3 lb. each (1.1–1.4 kg), cut in 8 pieces	2	2
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Garlic powder	2 tsp.	10 ml
Onion powder	2 tsp.	10 ml
Dried oregano	1 tsp.	5 ml
Dried basil	1 tsp.	5 ml
Flour	9 1/2 oz.	270 g
Buttermilk	8 oz.	250 ml
Oil	as needed	as needed
Onion, small dice	4 oz.	120 g
Half-and-half or chicken stock	1 1/2 pt.	750 ml

1. Season the chicken with salt and pepper.
2. Add the herbs and spices to 8 ounces (250 grams) of the flour.
3. Dip the chicken pieces in the buttermilk.
4. Dredge the chicken in the seasoned flour.
5. Pan-fry the chicken in 1/4 to 1/3 inch (1 centimeter) of oil until done, approximately 40 minutes, turning so that it cooks evenly. Reduce the heat

1. Dipping the chicken pieces in the buttermilk.

2. Dredging the chicken in the flour mixture.

3. Adding the chicken to the oil. The bubbling fat indicates the proper cooking temperature.

4. Turning the chicken so that it cooks evenly.

as necessary to prevent the chicken from becoming too dark. Or remove the chicken when well browned, drain it and finish cooking it in the oven.

6. To make the pan gravy, pour off all but 1 1/2 ounces (45 grams) of oil from the pan, carefully reserving the fond.
7. Add the diced onions and sauté until translucent.
8. Add 1 1/2 ounces (45 grams) of flour and cook to make a blond roux.
9. Whisk in the liquid and simmer approximately 15 minutes.
10. Strain through cheesecloth and adjust the seasonings.
11. Serve 1/4 chicken (2 pieces) per person with 4 ounces (120 milliliters) gravy.

Approximate values per 7-oz. (212-g) serving: **Calories** 510, **Total fat** 4.5 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 7780 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 104 g, **Protein** 13 g

5. Sautéing the diced onions until translucent.

6. Adding the liquid to the roux.

Moist-Heat Cooking Methods

The moist-heat cooking methods most often used with poultry are poaching and simmering. Poaching is used to cook tender birds for short periods. Simmering is used to cook older, tougher birds for longer periods in order to tenderize them. Poaching and simmering are similar procedures, the principal differences being the temperature of the cooking liquid and the length of cooking time.

Poaching and Simmering

Poached or simmered poultry should be moist, tender and delicately flavored. Although cooked in water, overcooking will cause the poultry to become dry and tough. During cooking, some of the poultry's flavor is transferred to the cooking liquid, which can be used to make a sauce for the finished product.

Selecting Poultry to Poach or Simmer

Young birds are best suited for poaching; boneless chicken pieces are the most commonly used parts. Older, tougher birds are usually simmered. Duck and geese are rarely poached or simmered because of their high fat content.

Seasoning Poultry to be Poached or Simmered

When poaching poultry, it is especially important to use a well-seasoned and highly flavored liquid in order to infuse as much flavor as possible into the item being cooked. Either strong stock with a sachet or a mixture of stock or water and white wine with a bouquet garni or onion piquet produces good results. The poultry should be completely covered with liquid so that it cooks evenly. However, if too much liquid is used and it is not strongly flavored, flavors may be leached out of the poultry, resulting in a bland finished product.

Poultry is often simmered in water instead of stock. A sachet and a generous mirepoix should be added to help flavor it. Typically, simmering birds results in a strong broth that may be used to complete the recipe or reserved for other uses.

Cooking Temperatures

For best results, poultry should be poached at low temperatures, between 160°F and 175°F (70°C–80°C). Cooking poultry to the proper doneness at these temperatures produces a product that is moist and tender.

Simmering is done at slightly higher temperatures, between 185°F (85°C) and the boiling point. When simmering, do not allow the liquid to boil, as this may result in a dry, tough and stringy finished product.

Determining Doneness

Poached poultry, whether whole or boneless, is cooked just until done. An instant-read thermometer inserted in the thigh or thicker part of the bird should read 165°F (74°C). Any juices that run from the bird should be clear or show only a trace of pink.

Simmered poultry is usually cooked for longer periods to allow the moist heat to tenderize the meat. A chicken that weighs 3 pounds 8 ounces (1.5 kilograms), for example, may take 2 1/2 hours to cook.

Accompaniments to Poached and Simmered Poultry

Poached or simmered poultry can be served hot or cold. The meat from these birds can be served cold in salads, hot in casseroles or used in any dish that calls for cooked poultry.

Poached items are typically served with a flavored mayonnaise or a sauce made from the reduced poaching liquid, such as sauce suprême. Poultry is also often poached as a means of producing a low-calorie dish. If so, a vegetable coulis makes a good sauce, or the poultry can be served with a portion of its cooking liquid and a vegetable garnish.

Simmered poultry to be served cold will be moister and more flavorful if it is cooled in its cooking liquid. To do so, remove the pot containing the bird and the cooking liquid from the heat when the bird is still slightly undercooked. Cool the meat and broth in a water bath following the procedures in Chapter 10, Stocks and Sauces. Once cooled, remove the meat and wipe off any congealed broth before proceeding with the recipe.

Procedure for Poaching or Simmering Poultry

1. Cut or truss the item to be cooked as directed in the recipe.
2. Prepare the cooking liquid and bring it to a simmer. Submerge the poultry in the cooking liquid, or arrange the items to be poached in an appropriate pan and add the poaching liquid to the pan.
3. Poach or simmer the item to the desired doneness in the oven or on the stove top. Maintain the proper cooking temperature throughout the process.
4. Remove the poultry and hold it for service in a portion of the cooking liquid or, using an ice bath, cool the item in its cooking liquid.
5. The cooking liquid may be used to prepare an accompanying sauce or reserved for use in other dishes.

RECIPE 17.6

Poached Breast of Chicken with Tarragon Sauce

Yield: 8 Servings

Chicken breasts, boneless, skinless, approx. 8 oz. (250 g) each	4	4
Whole butter	1 1/2 oz.	45 g

Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
White wine	4 oz.	120 ml
Chicken stock	1 pt.	450 ml
Bay leaf	1	1
Dried thyme	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Dried tarragon	1 tsp.	5 ml
Flour	1 oz.	30 g
Heavy cream	4 oz.	120 ml
Fresh tarragon sprigs	as needed	as needed

1. Trim any rib meat and fat from the breasts. Cut the breasts into two pieces, removing the strip of cartilage that joins the halves.
2. Select a pan that will just hold the breasts when they are placed close together. Rub the pan with approximately 1/2 ounce (15 grams) of butter.
3. Season the chicken breasts with salt and pepper, and arrange them in the buttered pan, presentation side up.
4. Add the white wine, stock, bay leaf, thyme and dried tarragon.
5. Cut and butter a piece of parchment paper and cover the chicken breasts.
6. Bring the liquid to a simmer and reduce the temperature to poach the chicken.
7. Make a blond roux with 1 ounce (30 grams) of butter and 1 ounce (30 grams) of flour; set aside to cool.
8. When the breasts are done, remove them from the liquid. Thicken the liquid with the roux. Add the cream. Simmer and reduce to the desired consistency.
9. Strain the sauce through cheesecloth and adjust the seasonings.
10. Serve each half breast napped with approximately 2 fluid ounces (60 milliliters) of sauce; garnish each portion with a sprig of fresh tarragon.

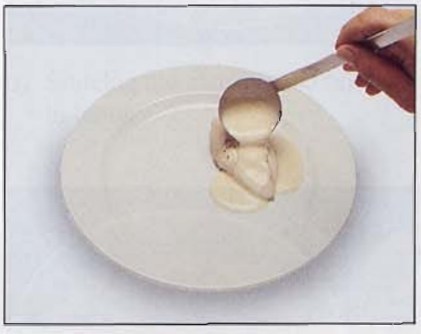
Approximate values per 4-oz. (115-g) serving: **Calories** 250, **Total fat** 13 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 105 mg, **Sodium** 590 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 4 g, **Protein** 29 g, **Vitamin A** 10%

1. Arranging the breasts in an appropriate pan.

2. Adding the white wine, chicken stock and seasonings to the pan.

3. Covering the breasts with a piece of buttered parchment paper.

4. Adding the cream to the thickened sauce.



5. Plating the poached chicken breast.

Combination Cooking Methods

Braising and stewing use both dry and moist heat to produce a moist, flavorful product. The principal difference between braising and stewing when applied to meats is the size of the cut being cooked: Large cuts of meat are

braised; smaller ones are stewed. Because most poultry is relatively small, this distinction does not readily apply in poultry cookery; therefore, the two cooking methods are discussed together here.

Braising and Stewing

Braised or stewed poultry should be moist and fork tender. The poultry is always served with the liquid in which it was cooked. Ducks and geese are braised or stewed in much the same way as red meats. Chicken cacciatore, coq au vin and chicken fricassee are examples of braised or stewed chicken dishes.

Selecting Poultry to Braise or Stew

Braising and stewing, being slow, moist cooking processes, are often thought of as a means to tenderize tough meats. Although they can be used to tenderize older, tougher birds, these cooking methods are more often selected as a means of adding moisture and flavor to poultry that is inherently tender, such as young ducks and chickens. Typically, the birds are disjointed and cooked bone-in, just until done, so that they retain their juiciness.

Seasoning Poultry to be Braised or Stewed

Braised or stewed items obtain much of their flavor from the cooking liquid and other ingredients added during the cooking process. The main item and the cooking liquid should be well seasoned. If other seasonings such as an onion piquet, sachet, bouquet garni or dried herbs and spices are required, they should be added at the beginning of the cooking process rather than at the end. This allows the flavors to blend and penetrate the larger pieces of poultry. If the poultry is dredged in flour prior to browning, seasonings may be added directly to the flour. As with all dishes using combination cooking methods, the finished dish should have the flavor of the poultry in the sauce and the moisture and flavor of the sauce in the poultry.

Cooking Temperatures

Some recipes, such as chicken cacciatore and coq au vin, require the main item to be thoroughly browned during the initial stages; others, such as chicken fricassee, do not. In either case, after the liquid is added, it is important to maintain a slow simmer rather than a rapid boil. This can be done on the stove top or in the oven. Low temperatures control the cooking and produce a tender, juicy finished product.

Determining Doneness

Tenderness is the key to determining doneness. It can be determined by inserting a kitchen fork into the poultry. There should be little resistance, and the poultry should freely fall off the fork. The pieces should retain their shape, however; if they fall apart, they are overdone. Small boneless pieces can be tested by cutting into them with a fork.

Accompaniments to Braised or Stewed Poultry

All braises and stews are cooked in a liquid that results in a sauce or broth served as part of the finished dish. Rice, pasta or boiled potatoes are natural accompaniments to almost any braised or stewed dish, as are boiled vegetables.

PROCEDURE FOR BRAISING OR STEWING POULTRY

1. Sear the main item in butter or oil, developing color as desired.
2. Add vegetables and other ingredients as called for in the recipe and sauté.

3. Add flour or roux if used.
4. Add the appropriate liquid.
5. Cover and simmer on the stove top or in the oven until done.
6. Add seasonings and garnishes at the appropriate times during the cooking process.
7. Finish the dish by adding cream or a liaison to the sauce or by adjusting its consistency. Adjust the seasonings.
8. Serve a portion of the poultry with the sauce and appropriate garnish.

RECIPE 17.7

Chicken Fricassee

Yield: 8 2-piece Servings

Frying chickens, 2 lb. 8 oz.–3 lb. each (1.1–1.4 kg), cut into 8 pieces	2	2
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
Clarified butter	3 oz.	90 ml
Onion, medium dice	10 oz.	300 g
Flour	3 oz.	90 g
Dry white wine	8 oz.	250 ml
Chicken stock	1 qt.	1 lt
Sachet:		
Bay leaf	1	1
Dry thyme	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Peppercorns, cracked	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Parsley stems	8	8
Garlic clove, crushed	1	1
Heavy cream	8 oz.	250 ml
Nutmeg	TT	TT

1. Season the chicken with salt and white pepper.
2. Sauté the chicken in the butter without browning. Add the onions and continue to sauté until they are translucent.
3. Sprinkle the flour over the chicken and onions and stir to make a roux. Cook the roux for 2 minutes without browning.
4. Deglaze the pan with white wine. Add the chicken stock and sachet; season with salt. Cover and simmer until done, approximately 30–45 minutes.

1. Sautéing the chicken and onions in butter.

2. Sprinkling the flour over the chicken.

3. Deglazing the pan with white wine.

4. Removing the chicken from the pot.

Continued

5. Straining the sauce through cheesecloth.

6. Returning the chicken to the sauce to reheat it for service.

5. Remove the chicken from the pan and hold in a warm place. Strain the sauce through cheesecloth and return it to a clean pan.
6. Add the cream and bring the sauce to a simmer. Add the nutmeg and adjust the seasonings. Return the chicken to the sauce to reheat it for service.

Approximate values per 8-oz. (253-g) serving: **Calories** 700, **Total fat** 20 g, **Saturated fat** 12 g, **Cholesterol** 60 mg, **Sodium** 7950 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 113 g, **Protein** 15 g, **Vitamin A** 20%

Conclusion

The renowned French gastronome and author Jean-Anthelme Brillat-Savarin (1755–1826) once observed that "poultry is for the cook what canvas is for the painter." He meant, of course, that poultry, including chicken, duck, goose, guinea, pigeon and turkey, are wonderfully versatile foods that can be cooked by almost any method and with almost any seasonings, and can be served with many accompaniments and garnishes.

Questions for Discussion

1. List the six categories or kinds of poultry recognized by the USDA. How are these categories then divided into classes?
2. How should fresh poultry be stored? Discuss several procedures that should be followed carefully when working with poultry to prevent cross-contamination.
3. What is a suprême? Describe the step-by-step procedure for preparing a chicken suprême.
4. What is trussing? Why is this technique used with poultry?
5. Which poultry items are best suited for broiling or grilling? Explain your answer.
6. Describe the characteristics of properly roasted poultry. Which classes of poultry are recommended for roasting?
7. What is foie gras? Why must you be extremely careful when cooking foie gras?

ADDITIONAL POULTRY RECIPES

RECIPE 17.8

ROAST DUCK WITH RÖSTI POTATOES

NOTE: This dish appears in the Chapter Opening photograph.

THE FOUR SEASONS, NEW YORK, NY
Chef Christian Albin

Yield: 4 Servings		Method: Roasting
Ducks, 4 1/2 lb. (2 kg) each	2	2
Marinade:		
Fresh ginger, peeled and sliced thin	1 oz.	30 g
Garlic cloves, unpeeled and halved	2	2
Orange zest, julienne	1/2 orange	1/2 orange
Coriander seeds, crushed	2 tsp.	10 ml
Black peppercorns	1 1/2 tsp.	8 ml
Soy sauce	8 oz.	250 ml
Honey	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Jasmine tea leaves, loose	4 Tbsp.	60 ml
Szechuan pepper	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Sugared Orange Zest and Orange Sauce (recipe follows)	as needed	as needed

1. Cut the wings off the ducks at the second joint and reserve. Remove the fat from the ducks' cavities.
2. Place the ducks on a rack in the refrigerator, breast sides up, a few inches apart. Air must circulate around the ducks so that the skin will dry. Leave the birds for 3 days.
3. Combine all the marinade ingredients and refrigerate for 3 days, stirring daily.
4. Prick the duck skin with a knife point, except for the skin on the breast. Avoid touching or pressing on the breasts, as this will leave dark spots after roasting.
5. Place the ducks on a rack over a shallow pan. Strain the marinade and brush it liberally over the entire surface of both ducks. Spoon the remaining marinade into the ducks' cavities.
6. Let the ducks dry, breast side up, on the rack for 15 minutes. Scrape any marinade drippings from the pan into the cavities.
7. Adjust the oven racks so that one is at the lowest level and the other is directly above the first.
8. Place 3 quarts (3 liters) water in a roasting pan and add the tea leaves. Place the pan on the lower rack of a 350°F (180°C) oven.
9. Position the ducks on the higher oven rack directly over the roasting pan (the ducks should not be touching). Roast undisturbed for 1 1/2 hours.
10. Remove the ducks from the oven. Drain and reserve the juices that have accumulated in the cavity.
11. Sprinkle the ducks with the Szechuan pepper; allow them to rest, then carve.

Continued

12. To serve, spoon a layer of Orange Sauce over the bottom of a warmed serving platter.
13. Arrange a pair of drumsticks, wing bones and thighs at each end of the platter. Place the breast in the center and garnish with orange segments. Sprinkle with the Sugared Orange Zest. Serve the duck with rösti potatoes (Recipe 23.13) and the remaining sauce on the side.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 1200, **Total fat** 20 g, **Saturated fat** 4.5 g, **Cholesterol** 1390 mg, **Sodium** 950 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 7 g, **Protein** 249 g, **Vitamin A** 15%.

SUGARED ORANGE ZEST AND ORANGE SAUCE

Yield: 12 oz. (350 g)

Oranges	2	2
Sugar	3 oz.	90 g
Sugar	as needed	as needed
Grand Marnier	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Currant jelly	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Basic Duck Sauce, hot (recipe follows)	12 oz.	350 ml
Lightly salted butter	1 oz.	30 g
Kosher salt and black pepper	TT	TT

1. Remove the zest from the oranges and julienne. Blanch for 3 minutes in boiling water; drain.
2. Squeeze the oranges and boil the juice until reduced by one quarter.
3. Place 3 ounces (90 grams) of sugar and 8 ounces (250 milliliters) of water in a saucepan and bring to a boil. Add the julienned zest. Boil until the syrup begins to caramelize, turning light brown.
4. Have a bowl ready with a layer of granulated sugar. Remove the zest from the syrup and toss in the sugar until the zest is completely coated. Set the zest aside to cool.
5. Continue cooking the syrup until it becomes a dark caramel syrup. Stir in the Grand Marnier, currant jelly and reduced orange juice. Whisk until smooth.
6. Pour in the Basic Duck Sauce and whisk until smooth. Cook for a few minutes to thicken slightly. Monté au beurre and season with salt and pepper.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 100, **Total fat** 3 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 350 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 17 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Vitamin A** 10%, **Claims**—low fat; low cholesterol

BASIC DUCK SAUCE

Yield: 1 1/2 pt. (700 ml)

Vegetable oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Necks and wing tips from 2 ducks		
Celery, chopped	3 oz.	90 g
Carrot, chopped	3 oz.	90 g
Onion, chopped	6 oz.	180 g
Bay leaf	1	1
Mushrooms, large, halved	3	3
Garlic cloves	4	4
Black pepper, crushed	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Whole cloves	6	6
Tomato purée	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Flour	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Dry red wine	8 oz.	250 ml

Brown veal stock	2 pt.	900 ml
Cavity juices reserved from 2 roasted ducks		

1. Heat the oven to 400°F (200°C).
2. Heat the oil in a large sauté pan. Add the duck pieces and sauté until they are well caramelized. Place the pan in the oven and roast the duck pieces for 25 minutes at 350°F (180°C), stirring occasionally.
3. Add the celery, carrot, onion, bay leaf, mushrooms, garlic, pepper and cloves. Roast for 5 minutes.
4. Place the sauté pan on the stove top and add the tomato purée. Sprinkle the flour over the mixture and stir.
5. Add the red wine and brown stock. Stir; bring to a boil. Reduce the heat and simmer for 3 hours.
6. Stir in the cavity juices and cook for 10 minutes more.
7. Strain the sauce through a china cap into a saucepan. Press a ladle against the solids to remove as much liquid as possible.
8. Degrease the sauce and reduce until thick.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 40, **Total fat** 1 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 5 mg, **Sodium** 140 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 5 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Vitamin A** 10%, **Claims**—no saturated fat; low fat; low cholesterol; low calorie

RECIPE 17.9

Roast Cornish Game Hen with Wild Rice Stuffing

Yield: 6 Servings Method: Roasting

Whole butter, melted	6 oz.	180 g
Onion, fine dice	3 oz.	90 g
Mushrooms, chopped	6 oz.	180 g
Wild rice, cooked	1 1/2 c.	350 ml
Dried thyme, crushed	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Dried marjoram, crushed	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Rock Cornish game hens	6	6

1. Sauté the onions and mushrooms in 2 ounces (60 grams) of melted butter until tender. Cool.
2. Stir in the rice and herbs and season to taste with salt and pepper.
3. Stuff the cavity of each hen loosely with the rice mixture. Truss and place in a roasting pan.
4. Brush the hens with the remaining butter and season with salt and pepper. Roast at 400°F (200°C) for 15 minutes.
5. Reduce the oven temperature to 300°F (150°C) and roast until the juices run clear, approximately 30 minutes. Baste two or three times with melted butter.
6. Serve the hens with a pan gravy or a sauce made separately, such as mushroom sauce.

Approximate values per 14-oz. (419-g) serving: **Calories** 970, **Total fat** 65 g, **Saturated fat** 26 g, **Cholesterol** 330 mg, **Sodium** 1580 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 12 g, **Protein** 86 g, **Vitamin A** 35%, **Iron** 25%

RECIPE 17.10

Coq au Vin

Yield: 8 2-piece Servings

Method: Braising

Chickens, 2 lb. 8 oz.–3 lb. (1–1.4 kg)	2	2
Flour for dredging	as needed	as needed
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Clarified butter	2 oz.	60 ml
Brandy	4 oz.	120 ml
Bouquet garni:		
Carrot stick, 4 in. (10 cm)	1	1
Leek, split, 4-in. (10-cm) piece	1	1
Fresh thyme	1 sprig	1 sprig
Bay leaf	1	1
Garlic cloves, peeled and crushed	6	6
Red wine	24 oz.	700 ml
Chicken stock	8 oz.	250 ml
Bacon **lardons**	4 oz.	120 g
Pearl onions, peeled	18	18
Mushrooms, medium, quartered	10	10
Beurre manie	as needed	as needed
Large triangular croutons	8	8

Lardon—*bacon cut into 1/4 in. × 1/4 in. × 2 in. (6 mm × 6 mm × 5 cm) strips; used to moisten braised dishes and stews.*

1. Cut each chicken into 8 pieces and dredge in flour seasoned with salt and pepper.
2. Heat the clarified butter in a braising pan; brown the chicken.
3. Add the brandy and ignite. When the flame dies, add the bouquet garni, garlic, red wine and chicken stock. Bring to a boil, then reduce to a simmer.
4. Cover the pan and simmer until the chicken is tender, approximately 40 minutes.
5. In a separate pan, sauté the bacon until the fat begins to render. Add the onions and sauté until they begin to brown. Cook the bacon and onions covered, over low heat, until the onions are tender. Add the mushroom caps and cook them until tender.
6. Remove the chicken from the pan and adjust the sauce's consistency with the beurre manie. Strain the sauce through a china cap and adjust the seasonings.
7. Spoon the bacon, onions and mushrooms onto a serving platter, place the chicken over them and ladle the sauce over the finished dish. Serve with triangular croutons.

Approximate values per 12-oz. (367-g) serving: **Calories** 860, **Total fat** 51 g, **Saturated fat** 17 g, **Cholesterol** 330 mg, **Sodium** 910 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 17 g, **Protein** 83 g, **Vitamin A** 60%, **Iron** 35%

RECIPE 17.11

CHICKEN CACCIATORE

Yield: 8 2-piece Servings | Method: Braising

Frying chickens, 2 lb. 8 oz.–3 lb. each (1.1–1.4 kg)	2	2
Flour	2 oz.	60 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Olive oil	2 oz.	60 ml
Onion, medium dice	4 oz.	120 g
Garlic cloves, chopped	3	3
Mushrooms, sliced	8 oz.	250 g
Dried thyme	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
White wine	2 oz.	60 ml
Brandy	1 oz.	30 ml
Demi-glace	16 oz.	450 ml
Tomato concassée	12 oz.	340 g

1. Cut each chicken into 8 pieces and dredge in flour seasoned with salt and pepper.
2. Heat the oil in a heavy braiser and brown the chicken well. Remove the chicken from the pan. Degrease the pan, leaving 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) of fat.
3. Add the onions and garlic and sauté lightly. Add the mushrooms and thyme and continue sautéing until the mushrooms are tender.
4. Deglaze the pan with the white wine and brandy. Add the demi-glace and tomato concassée.
5. Return the chicken to the pan and season with salt and pepper. Cover and cook until the chicken is done, approximately 30 minutes.
6. Serve 2 pieces of chicken with a portion of sauce.

Approximate values per 13-oz. (396-g) serving: **Calories** 650, **Total fat** 29 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 235 mg, **Sodium** 500 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 11 g, **Protein** 86 g, **Vitamin A** 10%, **Iron** 25%

RECIPE 17.12

CHICKEN WITH 40 CLOVES OF GARLIC

Yield: 4 2-piece Servings | Method: Braising

Chicken, 2 lb. 8 oz. (1.1 kg) cut in eight pieces	1	1
Dry white wine	26 oz.	750 ml
Flour	as needed	as needed
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Olive oil	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Garlic cloves, unpeeled	40	40
Fresh thyme	4 sprigs	4 sprigs
Fresh rosemary	1 sprig	1 sprig

Continued

French bread croutons	8	8
Fresh parsley, chopped	as needed for garnish	

1. Marinate the chicken pieces in the white wine for 1–2 hours under refrigeration. Remove and pat dry.
2. Dredge the chicken in flour and season lightly with salt and pepper. Sauté the chicken in the olive oil.
3. Remove the chicken from the pan and sauté the garlic until it begins to brown. Place the chicken on top of the garlic in a single layer. Add the wine marinade and herbs and cover.
4. Braise in a 325°F (160°C) oven until tender, approximately 45 minutes.
5. Remove the chicken and garlic from the pan and reserve. Remove and discard the herbs. Place the pan on the stove top and reduce the sauce until slightly thick. Season with salt and pepper.
6. Serve 2 pieces of chicken and several of the garlic cloves resting on 2 French bread croutons. Top with a portion of the sauce and garnish with chopped parsley.

Approximate values per 12.5-oz. (378-g) serving: **Calories** 600, **Total fat** 18 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 240 mg, **Sodium** 820 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 20 g, **Protein** 91 g, **Vitamin C** 15%, **Iron** 25%

RECIPE 17.13

CHICKEN YAKITORI

Yield: 8 Servings **Method**: Grilling

Soy sauce	8 oz.	250 ml
Sake	8 oz.	250 ml
Granulated sugar	2 oz.	60 g
Chicken breasts, boneless	2 lb.	1 kg
Cornstarch	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Sesame seeds	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Combine the soy sauce, sake and sugar. Reserve 8 ounces (250 milliliters) of the mixture.
2. Brush the chicken with a portion of the reserved soy sauce mixture and grill over hot charcoal until done, basting regularly.
3. To make the sauce, combine 2 ounces (60 milliliters) of the soy sauce mixture with the cornstarch. Bring the remainder to a boil in a small saucepan and stir in the cornstarch slurry. Stirring constantly, continue boiling until the sauce thickens. Simmer 1 minute.
4. Serve with short-grain white rice and garnish with sesame seeds.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (179-g) serving: **Calories** 240, **Total fat** 4.5 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 95 mg, **Sodium** 1700 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 12 g, **Protein** 37 g

RECIPE 17.14

Chicken and Snow Peas in Black Bean Sauce

Yield: 4 Servings Method: Stir-frying

Chicken breasts, boneless, skinless	2 lb.	1 kg
Egg white	1	1
Chinese rice wine	6 oz.	180 g
Cornstarch	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Soy sauce	2 oz.	60 ml
Granulated sugar	2 tsp.	10 ml
Onions, small	2	2
Peanut oil	4 oz.	120 ml
Garlic, minced	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh ginger, minced	2 tsp.	10 ml
Fermented black beans, mashed	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Snow peas, fresh	4 oz.	120 g

1. Slice the chicken into thin strips, approximately 1 1/2 inches by 1/4 inch (4 centimeters by .6 centimeters).
2. Combine the egg white, 1/3 of the wine and 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) of the cornstarch. Add the chicken and refrigerate for 2 hours.
3. For the sauce, mix the soy sauce, sugar and the remaining wine and cornstarch.
4. Quarter the onions and separate the layers.
5. Stir-fry the chicken in 3 ounces (90 milliliters) of oil. Remove and set aside.
6. If necessary, add all the remaining oil and stir-fry the garlic and ginger for 30 seconds. Add the onions and mashed beans and stir-fry for 30 seconds. Add the snow peas and cook for 1 minute.
7. Return the chicken to the wok, add the sauce mixture and stir-fry until hot and the sauce has thickened.
8. Serve immediately with short-grain white rice.

Variation: Add 2 ounces (60 grams) sliced mushrooms and reduce the amount of snow peas by half.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 750, **Total fat** 46 g, **Saturated fat** 10 g, **Cholesterol** 190 mg, **Sodium** 1050 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 14 g, **Protein** 71 g, **Vitamin C** 25%

RECIPE 17.15

Chicken Curry

Yield: 4 Servings

Onions, small dice	8 oz.	250 g
Garlic, crushed	2 tsp.	10 ml
Ghee (or clarified butter)	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Fresh ginger, fine dice	2 oz.	60 g
Turmeric	1 1/2 tsp.	8 ml
Coriander seeds, ground	1 1/2 tsp.	8 ml

Continued

Cumin seeds, ground	1 tsp.	5 ml
Cayenne pepper	1 tsp.	5 ml
Fenugreek, ground	1/2 tsp.	3 ml
Coconut milk	20 oz.	575 ml
Roasting chicken, 3 lb. (1.3 kg), cut into 8 pieces	1	1
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Green chiles, slit lengthwise	3	3
Lemon juice	1 oz.	30 ml

1. Stir-fry the onions and garlic in the ghee until the onions are golden brown.
2. To make the wet masala, mix the ginger, turmeric, coriander, cumin, cayenne pepper and fenugreek; add just enough of the coconut milk to form a paste.
3. Add the wet masala to the onions and stir-fry for 8 minutes.
4. Add the chicken pieces and cook, turning them frequently, for 6–8 minutes.
5. Add the remaining coconut milk, salt and chiles. Bring to a boil, cover and reduce to a simmer. Cook until the chicken is done, approximately 45 minutes.
6. Just before service, stir in the lemon juice and adjust the seasonings. Serve with Saffron Rice (Recipe 23.22) and a chutney.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 1130, **Total fat** 64 g, **Saturated fat** 39 g, **Cholesterol** 285 mg, **Sodium** 1070 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 32 g, **Protein** 107 g, **Vitamin C** 25%, **Iron** 70%

RECIPE 17.16

Chicken Stuffed with Spinach and Ricotta Cheese in Saffron Sauce

Chef Leland Atkinson, WASHINGTON, DC

Yield: 4 Servings **Method:** Sautéing

Spinach, stemmed	1 lb.	450 g
Ricotta	4 oz.	120 g
Egg whites, lightly beaten	2	2
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Airline chicken breast, skin on, 9 oz. (250 g) each	4	4
Clarified butter	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
White wine	1 pt.	450 ml
Saffron	1 pinch	1 pinch
Chicken velouté	8 oz.	250 ml
Heavy cream, hot	2 oz.	60 ml

1. Blanch, refresh and drain the spinach. Squeeze it tightly to remove as much moisture as possible, then chop it finely.
2. To make the stuffing, combine the cheese, egg whites and spinach in a mixing bowl; season to taste.

3. Place the chicken breasts on a cutting board, skin side down. Using a boning knife, carefully make a pocket that runs the length of each breast.
4. Put the stuffing in a pastry bag and pipe the stuffing into each pocket. Do not overfill the chicken breasts because the stuffing expands as it cooks.
5. Sauté the chicken in the clarified butter until well browned. Transfer the chicken to a sheet pan and finish in a 350°F (180°C) oven, approximately 10–12 minutes.
6. Deglaze the sauté pan with the white wine.
7. Add the saffron, bring to a boil and reduce by half.
8. Add the velouté and the cream. Adjust the seasonings and consistency; strain.
9. Ladle the sauce onto 4 warm plates. Slice and then arrange the chicken in the sauce; garnish as desired.

Approximate values per 17-oz. (512-g) serving: **Calories** 880, **Total fat** 40 g, **Saturated fat** 16 g, **Cholesterol** 265 mg, **Sodium** 3190 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 42 g, **Protein** 88 g, **Vitamin A** 110%, **Vitamin C** 25%, **Iron** 30%

RECIPE 17.17

ROMAN-STYLE FREE-RANGE CHICKEN

Chef Odette Fada
of the former REX IL RISTORANTE, LOS ANGELES, CA

Yield: 4 Servings | Method: Sautéing

Extra virgin olive oil	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Free-range chicken breast halves, suprême cut	4	4
Salt	TT	TT
Vegetable or chicken broth	8 oz.	225 ml
Garlic cloves, chopped fine	4	4
Anchovy fillets in oil, chopped fine	3	3
Fresh rosemary, chopped fine	TT	TT
White wine vinegar	2 Tbsp.	30 ml

1. Sauté the chicken breasts in the olive oil; skin side down. Season with salt.
2. Cook until the chicken begins to brown, then turn it and cook for an additional 2 minutes.
3. Add the broth and reduce by two-thirds, approximately 5 minutes.
4. Combine the garlic, anchovies, rosemary and vinegar.
5. When the chicken is done, add the vinegar mixture to the cooking liquid.
6. Remove the chicken from the heat, slice each breast in 6 pieces and arrange on a hot plate. Pour the sauce over the sliced chicken.

Approximate values per 7.5-oz. (227-g) serving: **Calories** 360, **Total fat** 19 g, **Saturated fat** 4.5 g, **Cholesterol** 125 mg, **Sodium** 820 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 3 g, **Protein** 46 g, **Vitamin A** 15%

RECIPE 17.18

Sautéed Chicken with Kentucky Bourbon

Yield: 1 Serving | Method: Sautéing

Chicken breast, boneless, skinless	1	1
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Flour	as needed	as needed
Olive oil	as needed	as needed
Garlic, minced	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Shallots, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Spinach	1 oz.	30 g
Kentucky bourbon	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Chicken stock	1 oz.	30 ml
Heavy cream	2 oz.	60 ml

1. Season the chicken breast with salt and pepper and dredge it in flour. Sauté in olive oil until done and remove from the pan.
2. Add the garlic and shallots to the pan and sauté until tender. Add the spinach and sauté until wilted.
3. Add the bourbon and flame. Then add the chicken stock and cream and reduce until slightly thickened.
4. Return the chicken to the sauce to reheat.
5. Pour the spinach and sauce on a plate and arrange the chicken on top.

Approximate values per 9-oz. (283-g) serving: **Calories** 670, **Total fat** 42 g, **Saturated fat** 17 g, **Cholesterol** 230 mg, **Sodium** 2590 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 15 g, **Protein** 58 g, **Vitamin A** 50%, **Iron** 20%

RECIPE 17.19

Braised Chicken with Apple Cider and Cashew Butter

Chef Leland Atkinson, Washington, DC

Yield: 8 Servings | Method: Braising

Clarified butter	2 1/2 oz.	75 ml
Shallots, minced	2 oz.	60 g
Calvados	12 oz.	375 ml
Fresh thyme, chopped	2 tsp.	10 ml
Cashews	3 oz.	90 g
Honey	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Unsalted butter	1 lb.	450 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Chickens, 3 lb. 8 oz. (1.6 kg) each, quartered	2	2
Flour for dredging	as needed	as needed
Mirepoix	12 oz.	350 g
Garlic head, cut in half	1	1
Apple cider	1 pt.	450 ml
Cider vinegar	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

Chicken stock	3 pt.	1350 ml
Bay leaves	2	2
Fresh thyme	1 sprig	1 sprig
Blond roux	as needed	as needed

1. To make the cashew butter, lightly sauté the shallots in 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) of the clarified butter. Add 4 ounces (120 milliliters) of the Calvados and the chopped thyme and reduce au sec. Remove from the heat and cool.
2. Place the cashews in a food processor and process to a medium-fine consistency. Add the cooled shallots, honey and unsalted butter. Season with salt and pepper and process well.
3. Season the chicken with salt and pepper and dredge in flour.
4. Brown the chicken evenly in the remaining clarified butter.
5. Remove the chicken. Add the mirepoix and garlic to the pan; sauté for 1 minute.
6. Add the remaining Calvados, cider and vinegar; reduce by half.
7. Return the chicken to the pan and add the chicken stock and herbs. Cover and braise until done, approximately 15 minutes. Remove the chicken from the pan. (The breasts and wings will cook more quickly and must be removed before the thigh and leg pieces.)
8. Reduce the stock by one half. Use the roux to thicken to a light consistency.
9. Strain the sauce, monté au beurre with the cashew butter and season to taste with salt and pepper. Ladle the sauce over the chicken and serve at once.

Approximate values per 17-oz. (533-g) serving: **Calories** 1265, **Total fat** 73 g, **Saturated fat** 38 g, **Cholesterol** 480 mg, **Sodium** 1220 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 22 g, **Protein** 130 g, **Vitamin A** 60%

RECIPE 17.20

Warm Duck Breast Salad with Asian Spices and Hazelnut Vinaigrette

FETZER VINEYARDS, HOPLAND, CA
Culinary Director John Ash

Yield: 4 Servings Method: Sautéing

Whole boneless duck breasts, 12 oz. (350 g) each	2	2
Marinade:		
Garlic, minced	1 tsp.	5 ml
Green onions, minced	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Oyster sauce	2 tsp.	10 ml
Light soy sauce	1 tsp.	5 ml
Rice wine or dry sherry	1 tsp.	5 ml
Sugar	1 tsp.	5 ml
Five spice powder	1/2 tsp.	3 ml

Continued

Hazelnut Vinaigrette:		
Garlic, minced	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Hazelnut oil	3 oz.	90 ml
Walnut or light olive oil	3 oz.	90 ml
Chives, minced	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Balsamic vinegar	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Light soy sauce	1 tsp.	5 ml
Sugar	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Mixed baby greens	4–6 oz.	120–180 g
Hazelnuts, toasted, skinned and chopped coarse	2 oz.	60 g

1. Trim the excess fat from the duck breasts and separate the breasts into halves.
2. Combine the marinade ingredients. Thoroughly coat the duck with the marinade and marinate for at least 2 hours.
3. Combine the hazelnut vinaigrette ingredients at least 2 hours before service so that the flavors will develop.
4. Wipe the marinade from the breasts and sauté them, skin side down first, in a dry sauté pan until medium rare, approximately 2 1/2 minutes per side. Do not overcook.
5. Arrange a mixture of baby greens on 4 plates. Slice the breasts on the diagonal and arrange on the plates with the greens. Drizzle the hazelnut vinaigrette over the greens, sprinkle with hazelnuts and serve.

Approximate values per 9-oz. (266-g) serving: **Calories** 820, **Total fat** 68 g, **Saturated fat** 10 g, **Cholesterol** 230 mg, **Sodium** 240 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 7 g, **Protein** 44 g, **Vitamin C** 20%, **Iron** 35%

RECIPE 17.21

Duck Confit

Yield: 4 Servings

Duck, 4 lb. (1.8 kg), cut into 4 pieces	1	1
Kosher salt	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Black pepper, cracked	1 tsp.	5 ml
Bay leaves	4	4
Fresh thyme	6 sprigs	6 sprigs
Garlic cloves, crushed	6	6
Duck or goose fat, melted	2 lb.	900 g

1. Rub the duck with the salt. Place skin side down in a roasting pan just large enough to hold the pieces in one layer; season with the black pepper, crumbled bay leaves, thyme and garlic. Cover and refrigerate overnight.
2. Bake the duck at 325°F (160°C) until brown, approximately 15–20 minutes. Add enough melted duck or goose fat to cover the pieces completely.
3. Cover the pan and cook in a 300°F (150°C) oven until the duck is very tender, approximately 2 hours.

4. Remove the duck from the fat and place in a deep hotel pan. Ladle enough of the cooking fat over the pieces to cover them completely. Be careful not to add any of the cooking juices.
5. Cover the pan and refrigerate for 2 days to allow the flavors to mellow.
6. To serve, remove the duck from the fat and scrape off the excess fat. Bake at 350°F (180°C) until the skin is crisp and the meat is hot, approximately 30 minutes.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 670, **Total fat** 16 g, **Saturated fat** 4.5 g, **Cholesterol** 700 mg, **Sodium** 3960 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 6 g, **Protein** 125 g, **Vitamin C** 25%, **Iron** 130%

RECIPE 17.22

Duck Confit Rolled in Brick Dough

THE RITZ CARLTON, CHICAGO, IL
Executive Chef George Bumbaris

Yield: 4 Servings — Method: Deep-frying

Shallots, minced	1/2 c.	120 ml
Duck fat	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Duck confit meat, shredded	1 c.	250 ml
Whole butter	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Heavy whipping cream	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Potato purée	1/4 c.	60 ml
Chives, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Brick dough (available from speciality purveyors) or wonton wrappers	4 sheets	4 sheets
Egg, beaten	1	1
Oil for frying	1 qt.	1 lt

1. In a large skillet, sauté the shallots in the duck fat over medium heat. Add the shredded duck meat.
2. Mix the whole butter, cream and potato purée. Add this mixture to the duck meat. Heat thoroughly then remove from the heat and add the chives.
3. Evenly divide the duck mixture onto 4 sheets of brick dough or wonton wrappers.
4. Brush the edges of the dough with the beaten egg. Roll the filled dough into a very tight cigar shape. Turn the edges in so that the duck is completely sealed inside the dough.
5. Deep-fry the rolls until they are golden brown and crisp. Slice the rolls in half on the bias and serve hot.

Approximate values per roll: **Calories** 130, **Total fat** 13 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 80 mg, **Sodium** 80 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Vitamin A** 15%

RECIPE 17.23

Duck à l'Orange

Chef Leland Atkinson, Washington, DC

Yield: 4 Servings **Method:** Roasting

Duckling, 5–6 lb. (2.2–2.8 kg)	1	1
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Duck or chicken stock	8 oz.	250 ml
Sugar	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Champagne vinegar	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Brandy	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Orange juice	12 oz.	350 ml
Lemon juice	from 1 lemon	from 1 lemon
Whole butter	1 tsp.	5 ml
Oranges, peeled and sectioned	4	4
Orange zest, julienne	4 Tbsp.	60 ml

1. Prick the duck with a fork and season well with salt and pepper.
2. Roast the duck at 400°F (200°C) for 15 minutes. Reduce the heat to 350°F (180°C) and cook until done, approximately 45–60 minutes. Remove the duck from the roasting pan and hold in a warm place.
3. Degrease the roasting pan. Place the pan on the stove top and deglaze with the stock.
4. Melt the sugar and vinegar together in a saucepan and lightly caramelize the mixture.
5. Remove the caramelized sugar from the stove top and add the brandy.
6. Add the stock, pan drippings and juices to the pan of sugar and reduce until the sauce is slightly thickened, approximately 10 minutes. Monté au beurre. Strain and degrease the sauce.
7. Blanch the orange zest in boiling water.
8. Place the duck on a warm serving platter. Arrange the orange sections around it. Sprinkle the zest over the duck. Pour the sauce over the duck and serve additional sauce on the side.

Approximate values per 28-oz. (840-g) serving: **Calories** 1810, **Total fat** 147 g, **Saturated fat** 54 g, **Cholesterol** 475 mg, **Sodium** 1050 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 30 g, **Protein** 91 g, **Vitamin A** 60%, **Vitamin C** 190%, **Iron** 50%

RECIPE 17.24

Roast Goose with Cabbage and Apples

Yield: 8 6-oz. (180-g) Servings **Method:** Roasting

Goose, approx. 12 lb. (6 kg)	1	1
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Caraway seeds	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Onion, large dice	6 oz.	180 g
Carrot, large dice	3 oz.	90 g
Celery, large dice	3 oz.	90 g
Green cabbage, shredded	1 lb.	450 g

Potato, large dice	3 lb.	1.4 kg
Tart apple, cored and diced	1 lb.	450 g
Apple cider	1 qt.	1 lt

1. Remove the giblets from the goose; remove the fat from its cavity. Rinse the goose and pat dry. Sprinkle its interior and exterior with salt, pepper and caraway seeds. Truss the goose and place breast side up on a rack in a roasting pan.
2. Roast in a 425°F (220°C) oven for 30 minutes. Prick the skin all over with a fork to release fat.
3. Reduce the oven temperature to 350°F (180°C) and continue roasting for another 45 minutes. Baste the bird occasionally with the fat accumulating in the pan.
4. Meanwhile, combine the vegetables and apples, and season with salt and pepper.
5. After roasting for a total of 1 1/4 hours, remove the goose from the pan and drain off all but 3 tablespoons (45 milliliters) of fat. Place the vegetable mixture in the roasting pan and toss to coat with the fat.
6. Place the goose on top of the vegetable mixture and pour the apple cider over all. Return to the oven and continue roasting until done, approximately 1 1/2 hours.
7. Remove the bird from the roasting pan and allow it to rest for 20–30 minutes before carving. Serve with the cooked vegetable and apple mixture.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 1230, **Total fat** 62 g, **Saturated fat** 18 g, **Cholesterol** 205 mg, **Sodium** 670 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 101 g, **Protein** 66 g, **Vitamin A** 35%, **Vitamin C** 60%, **Iron** 60%

RECIPE 17.25

Squab Salad with Melon

Chef Odette Fada
of the former REX IL RISTORANTE, Los Angeles, CA

Yield: 6 Servings | Method: Sautéing

Squab	3	3
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Extra virgin olive oil	as needed	as needed
Dry black currants	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Tahitian squash, thin slices	18	18
Mâche lettuce, small bunches	6	6

1. Bone the squab breasts and remove the thighs and legs. Season with salt and pepper and sauté the breasts and thighs in olive oil until done, approximately 10–15 minutes.
2. Place the currants in a bowl and cover with hot water.
3. Cook the squash slices in boiling water for 40 seconds. Cut the slices in half and arrange them on each of 6 plates as fans opening toward the plate's border.

Continued

4. On the other side of each plate, arrange some mâche lettuce; season with salt and pepper.
5. Slice the breasts; arrange the meat with the legs on the squash. Keep the plates in a warm place.
6. Drain the currants and sauté in 2 tablespoons (30 milliliters) of olive oil. Sprinkle the currants around the plates and serve.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 230, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 2.5 g, **Cholesterol** 85 mg, **Sodium** 460 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 3 g, **Protein** 31 g, **Vitamin A** 20%, **Vitamin C** 30%

RECIPE 17.26

Spiced Ostrich Tenderloin

Yield: 2 Servings **Method:** Broiling

Cumin seeds	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fennel seeds	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Black peppercorns	2 tsp.	10 ml
White peppercorns	2 tsp.	10 ml
Garlic cloves, minced	2	2
Ostrich tenderloin, 4 oz. (120 g) each	2	2
Olive oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Salt	TT	TT

1. Grind the cumin, fennel and peppercorns together in a spice grinder. Combine the ground spices with the garlic.
2. Brush the tenderloin with the olive oil, coat with the spice mixture and season lightly with salt.
3. Cook the ostrich under a broiler to the desired degree of doneness.
4. Remove from the broiler and slice into thin pieces for service.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 169, **Total fat** 5 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 91 mg, **Sodium** 106 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 5 g, **Protein** 27 g, **Iron** 46%

RECIPE 17.27

Turkey Scallopine with Capers and Lemon

Yield: 4 Servings **Method:** Sautéing

Turkey breast, cut into 1/8-in. (3-mm) scallopines, 3 oz. (90 g) each	8	8
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
Flour	as needed	as needed
Clarified butter	2 oz.	60 ml
Dry white wine	4 oz.	120 ml
Fresh lemon juice	2 oz.	60 ml
Capers	3 Tbsp.	45 ml

1. Gently pound each turkey slice with a meat mallet. Season with salt and pepper and dredge in flour.
2. Sauté the turkey in the clarified butter until golden brown. Remove and hold in a warm place.

3. Deglaze the pan with the wine, then add the lemon juice and capers. Return the turkey to the pan to coat with the sauce and reheat.
4. Serve 2 slices with a portion of the sauce.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (180-g) serving: **Calories** 390, **Total fat** 13 g, **Saturated fat** 8 g, **Cholesterol** 180 mg, **Sodium** 910 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 13 g, **Protein** 56 g, **Vitamin A** 10%

RECIPE 17.28

Sautéed Chicken Livers

Yield: 4 4-oz. (120-g) Appetizer Servings — Method: Sautéing

Chicken livers, trimmed	1 lb.	450 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Flour	as needed	as needed
Vegetable oil	1 oz.	30 ml
Shallots, minced	2 Tbsp.	60 ml
Raspberry vinegar	4 oz.	120 ml
Raspberry jam	2 Tbsp.	60 ml
French bread croutons	4	4
Watercress	as needed for garnish	

1. Rinse the livers and pat dry. Season with salt and pepper and dredge in flour.
2. Sauté the livers in the oil until just barely pink, approximately 3–4 minutes. Remove the livers from the pan and hold in a warm place.
3. Using the fat remaining in the pan, sauté the shallots until tender. Deglaze with the vinegar.
4. Add the jam. Simmer until thickened. Return the livers to the pan and toss to coat with the sauce.
5. Serve on warm plates with French bread croutons; garnish with watercress.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 330, **Total fat** 14 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 715 mg, **Sodium** 660 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 22 g, **Protein** 30 g, **Vitamin A** 560%, **Iron** 60%

RECIPE 17.29

Sautéed Foie Gras on Wild Mushroom Duxelles with Toasted Brioche

Chef Leland Atkinson, Washington DC

Yield: 4 Servings

Fresh foie gras, A grade	1 lb.	450 g
Wild mushrooms	1 lb.	450 g
Shallots, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Garlic, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Whole butter	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Tomato paste	1 tsp.	5 ml
Brandy	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

Continued

Fresh thyme	1 tsp.	5 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Madeira Sauce (Recipe 10.12)	8 oz.	250 ml
Brioche (Recipe 31.18)	8 slices	8 slices

1. Allow the foie gras to come to near room temperature. With a sharp knife, scrape the thin membrane from the outside of the liver. Gently pull the pieces apart. Gently pull out any visible veins. Slice the liver on a slight bias into slices approximately 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) thick. Cover and chill until service.
2. To make the duxelles, clean and chop the wild mushrooms.
3. Sauté the shallots and garlic in the butter.
4. Add the mushrooms and cook until they first release their moisture and then begin to dry, approximately 5 minutes.
5. Add the tomato paste and brandy and cook until dry, stirring often.
6. Add the thyme and adjust the seasonings with salt and pepper. Remove the duxelles from the heat.
7. Quickly sauté the foie gras in a hot dry pan until it is browned on both sides but still bright pink in the middle, approximately 2 minutes.
8. Portion the duxelles onto four warm serving plates. Ladle the Madeira Sauce around the duxelles. Blot the foie gras on a dry towel and arrange it over the top of the duxelles. Serve with toasted brioche and fresh thyme garnish.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 1160, **Total fat** 75 g, **Saturated fat** 23 g, **Cholesterol** 330 mg, **Sodium** 1450 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 92 g, **Protein** 30 g, **Vitamin A** 150%, **Iron** 60%

RECIPE 17.30

Jerk Foie Gras with Green Lentils in Balsamic Vinegar

From *Allen Susser's New World Cuisine and Cookery,*
by ALLEN SUSSER, North Miami Beach, FL

Yield: 8 Servings **Method:** Grilling

Allspice, ground	1/4 c.	60 ml
Cinnamon, ground	1 tsp.	5 ml
Nutmeg, grated	1/2 tsp.	3 ml
Fresh cilantro, minced	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Whole scallions, chopped	4	4
Garlic, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Tamarind pulp	1 tsp.	5 ml
Dry red wine	1 c.	250 ml
Olive oil	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Kosher salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Scotch bonnet chile, minced	1 tsp.	5 ml
Fresh foie gras	1 lb.	500 g
Green Lentils in Balsamic Vinegar (recipe follows)	8 servings	8 servings

1. Combine the spices, cilantro, scallions, garlic, tamarind, red wine, olive oil, salt and Scotch bonnet chile.

2. Separate the 2 lobes of the liver. Clean them and remove the veins. Cut each lobe into 1 1/2-inch (4-centimeter) thick medallions. Marinate with the jerk seasonings in a ceramic bowl for 2 hours.
3. Preheat the grill, then grill each piece of foie gras for only 30 seconds on each side, charring the outside yet leaving the inside medium rare.
4. Mound the Green Lentils on a bright ceramic plate and place the medallions of foie gras on top.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (101-g) serving: **Calories** 160, **Total fat** 9 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 290 mg, **Sodium** 450 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 8 g, **Protein** 10 g, **Vitamin A** 530%, **Iron** 100%

GREEN LENTILS IN BALSAMIC VINEGAR

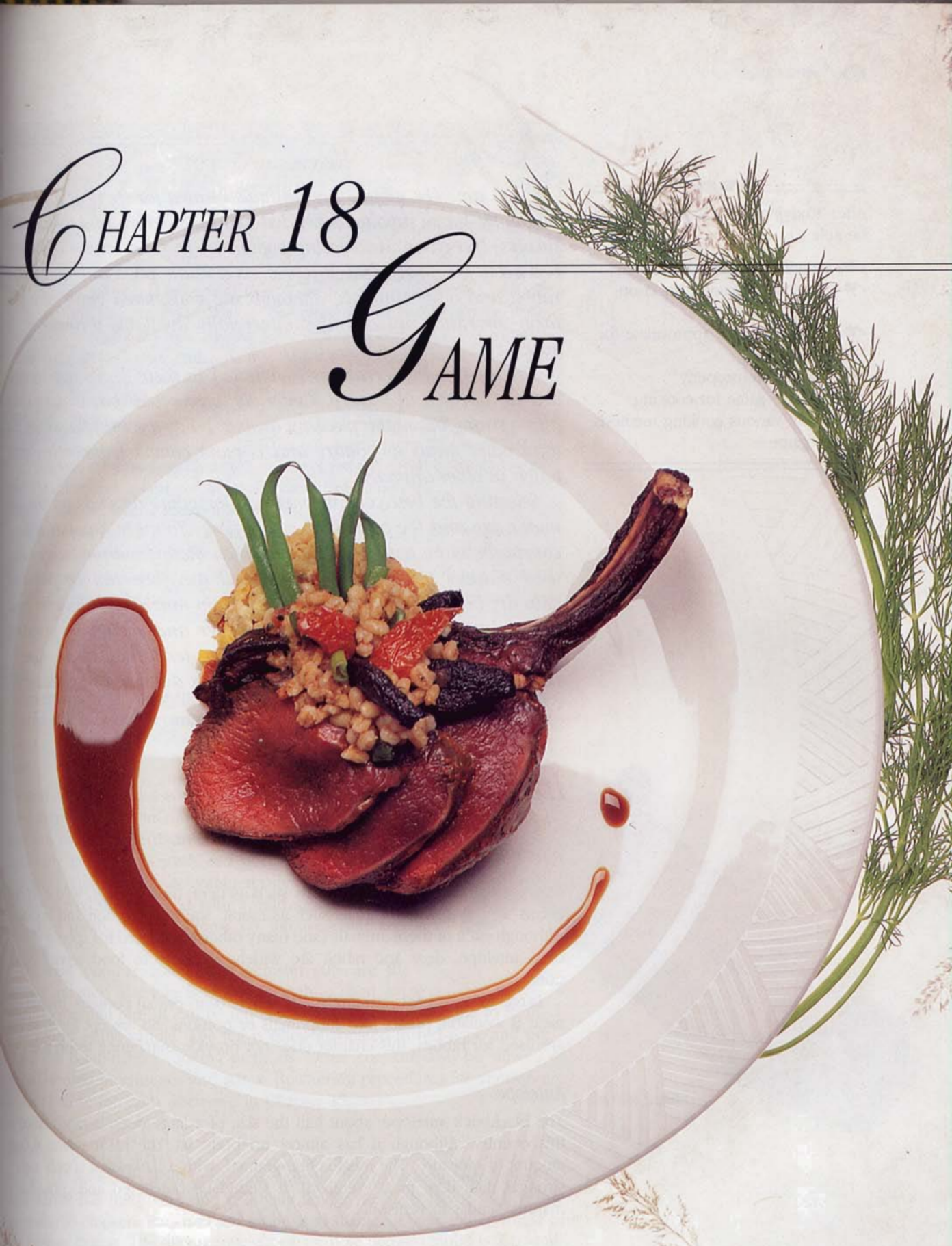
Yield: 8 Servings

Green lentils	2 1/2 c.	1560 ml
Olive oil	1/4 c.	60 ml
Onion, small dice	1/2 c.	120 ml
Garlic, small dice	2 tsp.	10 ml
Carrot, small dice	1/2 c.	120 ml
Celery, small dice	1/2 c.	120 ml
Water	1 1/2 pt.	720 ml
Bay leaves	2	2
Lime zest	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Balsamic vinegar	1/4 c.	60 ml

1. Wash the lentils thoroughly.
2. Heat the oil in a sauté pan; add the onion and cook until it is translucent. Add the garlic and cook for another minute. Add the carrot and celery. Continue cooking for 2 more minutes.
3. Add the lentils, water and bay leaves. Simmer for 20 minutes, or until the lentils are only slightly firm. Remove the bay leaves.
4. Stir the lime zest and balsamic vinegar into the lentils and serve hot.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (96-g) serving: **Calories** 290, **Total fat** 7 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 15 g, **Total carbohydrates** 38 g, **Protein** 17 g, **Vitamin A** 20%, **Iron** 15%, **Claims**—low saturated fat; no cholesterol; very low sodium; high fiber

Chapter 18
Game



The Boulder's Resort, Carefree AZ
Corporate Executive Chef
Charles Wiley

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- identify a variety of game
- understand game inspection practices
- purchase game appropriate for your needs
- store game properly
- prepare game for cooking
- apply various cooking methods to game

Game (Fr. gibier*) are animals hunted for sport or food. Traditionally, game supplies depended upon the season and the hunter's success. But game's increasing popularity in food service operations has led to farm-raising techniques. As a result, pheasant, quail, deer, rabbit and other animals, although still considered game, are now farm- or ranch-raised and commercially available throughout the year.*

The life of game creatures is reflected in their flesh's appearance, aroma, flavor and texture. Generally, game flesh has a dark color and a strong but not unpleasant aroma. It has a robust flavor, less fat than other meats or poultry and is more compact, becoming quite tough in older animals.

Selecting the best cooking methods for game depends on the animal's age and the particular cut of flesh. Younger animals will, of course, be more tender than older ones. Flesh from the loin or less-used muscles will also be tender and therefore can be prepared with dry-heat cooking methods. Flesh from much-used muscles, such as the leg and shoulder, will be tougher and should be prepared with combination cooking methods. Less-tender cuts can also be used in sausages, pâtés and forcemeats, as discussed in Chapter 27, Charcuterie.

IDENTIFYING GAME

Furred or Ground Game

Furred game includes large animals such as deer, moose, bear, wild boar and elk as well as smaller animals such as rabbit, squirrel, raccoon and opossum. Although each of these animals (and many others) is hunted for sport and food, only antelope, deer and rabbit are widely available to food service operations.

Large game animals are rarely sold whole or in primal portions. Instead, the meat is available precut into subprimals or portions. So, except for those that are used for rabbits, this chapter does not provide butchering techniques.

Antelope

The blackbuck antelope, about half the size of a large deer, is ranch-raised in this country. Although it has almost no body fat, the meat retains a high amount of moisture. The meat is fine-grained, with a flavor that is only slightly stronger than deer meat (venison). It should be butchered and cooked in a manner similar to venison.

Bison (American Buffalo)

Once found in huge herds roaming the plains states, bison or buffalo were hunted into near extinction during the 19th century. Buffalo now live on reser-

Meat of the Future: Beefalo

Beefalo is produced by cross-breeding a bison with a domestic beef animal. To be a registered full-blooded beefalo, the animal has to be three-eighths bison and five-eighths domestic beef. The five-eighths domestic beef portion is not restricted to any breed; it is often a combination of two or more breeds such as Hereford, Angus or Charolais. In 1985, the USDA approved a special label for beefalo; it is labeled either "Beef from Beefalo" or "Beefalo Beef."

Beefalo looks and tastes much like modern beef. The animal itself is hard to distinguish from any other beef animal. Beefalo meat is tender because the animals gain weight faster and go to market at younger ages. The meat is slightly sweeter in taste than beef.

Beefalo is lower in cholesterol than beef, fish or chicken and lower in calories and fat than beef. It offers a great alternative to beef for the diet- and health-conscious guest. The per-pound cost of beefalo may be slightly higher than beef cuts, but its low amount of interior and exterior fat gives it a higher yield with a price per usable pound comparable to beef.

Because of beefalo's finer fiber and low-fat content, it cooks in one third to one half the time of beef and should be cooked to either rare or medium rare.

James J. Muth, *MBA, CFBE*
Chef Instructor,
Grand Rapids Community College

vations or ranches, where they are raised like beef cattle. Their meat is juicy, flavorful and may be prepared in the same manner as lean beef.

Deer

The deer family includes elk, moose, reindeer, red-tailed deer, white-tailed deer (Fr. *chevreuil*) and mule deer. Meat from any of these animals is known as **venison** (Fr. *venaisan*). Farm-raised venison, particularly from the Scottish red deer bred in New Zealand and the United States, is commercially available all year. Venison is typically dark red with a mild aroma. It is leaner than other meats, having almost no intramuscular fat or marbling.

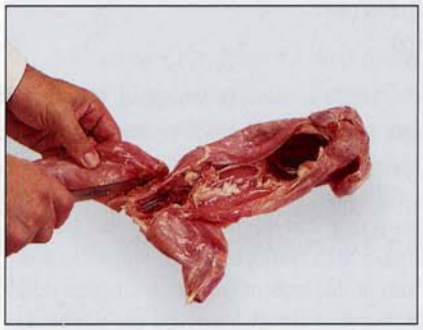
The most popular commercial venison cuts are the loin, leg and rack. The loin is tender enough to roast, sauté or grill to medium rare. It can be left attached along the backbone to form a cut known as the saddle. The leg is often marinated in red wine and prepared with combination cooking methods. Other cuts can also be stewed or braised or used in sausages and pâtés. Butchering procedures for venison are similar to those for lamb discussed in Chapter 15.

Venison Saddle

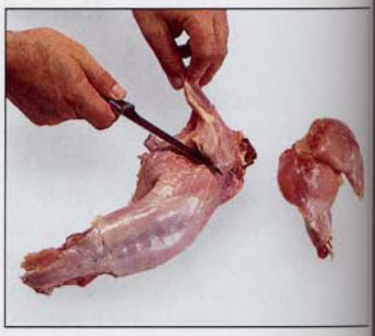
Rabbit

Rabbits (Fr. *lapin*) are small burrowing animals that have long been raised for food. Rabbit has mild, lean and relatively tender flesh. Its flavor and texture are similar to chicken. Ranch-raised rabbit is available all year, either whole or cut, fresh or frozen. The average weight of a whole dressed rabbit is 2 pounds 8 ounces to 3 pounds (1.2–1.4 kilograms). Young rabbit can be roasted, pan-fried, stewed or braised and is popular in rustic "country-style" dishes, especially casseroles and pâtés.

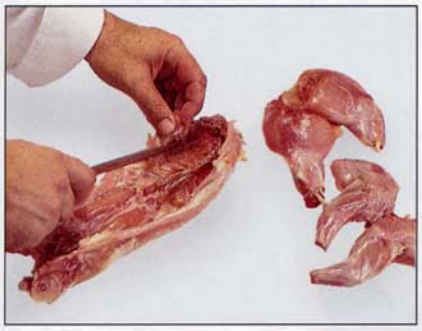
Procedure for Butchering a Rabbit



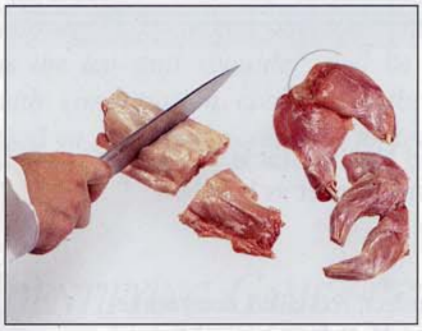
1. Place the rabbit on its back. Remove the hind legs by cutting close to the backbone and through the joint on each side. Each thigh and leg can be separated by cutting through the joint.



2. Remove the forelegs by cutting beneath the shoulder blades.



3. Cut through the breast bone and spread open the rib cage. Using a boning knife, separate the flesh from the rib bones and remove the bones.



4. Cut through the backbone to divide the loin into the desired number of pieces.

5. The cut-up rabbit: hind legs, thighs, loin in three pieces, forelegs.

Boar Saddle

Wild Boar

A close relative of the domesticated hog, wild boar (Fr. *sanglier*) is leaner, with a stronger flavor. Though plentiful in Europe and parts of America, wild boar is available only during autumn. A limited supply of farm- or ranch-raised boar is available all year, however. Baby boar (under six months old) is considered a delicacy, but mature animals (one to two years old) have the best flavor. The meat is most often roasted, and may be used in sausages or terrines. Boar can often be substituted in recipes for venison or pork.

Feathered or Winged Game

Feathered game includes upland birds such as wild turkeys, pheasants, quails, doves and woodcocks; songbirds such as larks; and waterfowl such as wild geese and ducks. Wild birds cannot be sold in the United States. An ever-

TABLE 18.1 USING FURRED GAME

Animal	Commonly Purchased Cuts	Cooking Methods	Suggested Use
Antelope	Purchased and prepared in the same manner as deer		
Bison	Purchased and prepared in the same manner as lean beef		
Deer	Loin	Dry heat (roast; sauté; grill)	Sautéed medallions; whole roast loin; grilled steaks
	Leg	Combination (braise; stew)	Marinate and braise; pot roast with cranberries; chili; sausage; forcemeat
	Rack	Dry heat (roast; grill)	Grilled chops
Rabbit	Full carcass	Dry heat (sauté; pan-fry; roast; grill)	Pan-fried rabbit with cream gravy
		Combination (braise; stew)	Braised rabbit with mushrooms
Wild Boar	Loin	Dry heat (roast)	Roast loin with mustard crust
	Chops	Combination (braise)	Marinate and braise; stew with red wine and sour cream; sausage; forcemeat

increasing number of these birds are being farm-raised to meet increased consumer demand, however.

Game birds are available whole or precut into pieces, fresh or frozen. Butchering techniques will not be shown in this chapter as they are the same as those for domesticated poultry discussed in Chapter 17.

Because game birds tend to have less fat than other poultry, they are often barded with fat and cooked to medium rare. If cooked well done, they become dry and stringy.

Partridge

Chukar Partridge

The Hungarian and chukar partridges (Fr. *perdrix*) of Europe were introduced into the United States and Canada during the 19th century. Now found principally in the prairie and western mountain states, partridges are widely raised on game preserves and farms, producing a good commercial supply.

Their flavor is less delicate than that of pheasant, and the meat tends to be tougher. Partridge may be roasted or cut into pieces and sautéed or braised. Each bird weighs about 1 pound (450 grams) dressed.

Pheasant

The most popular of game birds, the pheasant (Fr. *faisan*) was introduced into Europe from Asia during the Middle Ages. Its mild flavor is excellent for roasting, stewing or braising. The hen is smaller and more tender than the cock. Stock made from the carcass is often used for consommé or sauce.

Farm-raised birds are available fresh or frozen. A dressed bird weighs about 1 pound 8 ounces to 2 pounds 4 ounces (680 grams to 1 kilogram) and serves two people.

Quail

Quail

The quail (Fr. *caille*) is a migratory game bird related to the pheasant. The more popular European and Californian species are farm-raised and available all year.

THE DARING DINER

Although venison, boar and pheasant may seem unusual to many Americans, even rarer meats are available to the daring diner. Zebra, bear, wildebeest and other "big game" animals are sometimes available through exotic game purveyors based in major metropolitan areas. Most often the meat is grilled, roasted or stewed.

Reptiles, particularly rattlesnake, crocodile and alligator, are now also being raised on farms to meet increased demand. Reptiles may be braised, or sliced and deep-fried. They have a mild flavor with a texture similar to lobster.

Pheasant

Faisan à la Sainte-Alliance

Any dish prepared *à la sainte-alliance* evokes the festivities surrounding the 1815 signing of the Treaty of Paris, which ended the reign of Napoleon Bonaparte, forcing him into exile on Elba. *Faisan à la sainte-alliance* is a roast pheasant stuffed with woodcock and served on toast topped with woodcock purée. The renowned gastronome Brillat-Savarin gives the following recipe in his *Physiologie du Gout*, published in 1825:

When the pheasant has reached [its peak of ripeness], it is plucked, and not before, and it is larded carefully, with the freshest and firmest of material.

. . . [T]he time has come to stuff it, and in the following manner:

Bone and draw a brace of woodcock, in such a way that you have one supply of the flesh, and another of the entrails.

Take the flesh and make a forcemeat of it by chopping it with some steamed beef marrow, a little scraped bacon, pepper, salt, fresh herbs, and enough fine truffles to make just the amount of stuffing needed to fill the pheasant.

Prepare a slice of bread that will be about two inches bigger on every side than the bird laid lengthwise. Then take the woodcock livers and entrails, and grind them in a mortar with two large truffles, an anchovy, a little finely minced bacon, and a sizeable lump of the best fresh butter.

Spread this paste evenly on the bread slice, and place it under the pheasant, already stuffed . . . so that it will catch every drop of juice which will appear while the bird is roasting.

When the bird is done, serve it lying gracefully upon this crisp little couch; surround it with bitter oranges, and be assured of the fortunate outcome.

Brillat-Savarin,
The Physiology of Taste,
translated and annotated by M. F. K. Fisher
(North Point Press, 1986),
pp. 374–375.

Frogs

Frogs are amphibians that can be prepared like poultry or fish. Their texture and flavor are similar to those of chicken. Most of the frogs used in food service operations are farm-raised, so their meat is quite tender. Typically, only the legs are eaten. They are sold frozen, in pairs, attached by a small portion of backbone.

Quail are rather small, with only about 1–2 ounces (30–60 grams) of breast meat each. Quail may be grilled (especially on skewers), roasted, broiled or sautéed and are often boned and served whole with a stuffing of forcemeat or rice. Because they are so lean, roasted quail benefit from barding.

Nutrition

Even ranch-raised game animals live in the wild and are generally more active and less well fed than domesticated animals. This lifestyle produces animals whose meat has less fat than that of domesticated animals. Most game is also lower in cholesterol and has approximately one-third fewer calories than beef. Game is also generally high in protein and minerals. Compare Table 18.2 with Tables 12.1 (Meats) and 17.7 (Poultry).

TABLE 18.2 NUTRITIONAL VALUES OF GAME

For 1 oz. (28 g) Uncooked Lean Meat	Kcal	Protein (g)	Total Fat (g)	Saturated Fat (g)	Cholesterol (mg)	Sodium (mg)
Beefalo	41	6.6	1.4	0.6	13	22
Bison (American buffalo)	31	6.1	0.5	0.2	18	15
Deer (venison)	34	6.5	0.7	0.3	24	15
Rabbit	39	5.7	1.6	0.5	16	12
Wild boar	35	6.1	1.0	0.3	mq	mq
Pheasant	51	6.4	2.6	0.8	mq	11
Quail	54	5.6	3.4	1.0	mq	15

The Corinne T. Netzer Encyclopedia of Food Values 1992
mq = measurable quantity but data is unavailable

WILD GAME— DELICIOUS, NUTRITIOUS AND AVAILABLE

Wild game is now widely available for use in restaurants and at home. The best of wild game provides a safe, delicious and nutritious dining experience.

In almost all states, our native game animals are protected from harvesting for commercial purposes. It is a violation of state wildlife laws to kill and sell the meat from native species such as the whitetail deer, mule deer, pronghorn antelope, etc. These laws were written when only native game was present in America. Since then, a growing number of non-native species of deer and antelope have been introduced to ranches in America and this has made it possible to harvest deer and antelope legally for meat production.

Oddly enough, however, meats such as antelope, venison, rabbit, and most other game meats are not subject to inspection under federal and most state meat inspection regulations. This is not because the authorities do not believe the meat should be inspected. When the meat inspection laws were written, these meats were not legally available and therefore were not included in the Federal Meat Act. County and city health codes, however, do require that any meat served to the public must be from "an approved source" which is interpreted as "inspected." Therefore, any game meat served in a restaurant should be certified as inspected by either state or federal meat inspection authorities.

Game meat is available from farmed (domesticated) deer and from free-ranging (ranched) deer and antelope. Most farmed deer are taken to a fixed conventional slaughterhouse where they are slaughtered and processed in the same way as cattle, sheep, and goats. Ranched deer can be properly harvested only by an elaborate procedure which involves taking a mobile slaughter facility and meat inspector to the field where the animals are killed by shooting them with a high powered rifle under the supervision of the meat inspector. The carcass is then processed inside the mobile facility to avoid any contamination of the meat. This field harvesting eliminates any stress which might occur in transport of farmed deer to the slaughterhouse.

Farmed deer tend to be relatively more uniform in size and flavor. Free-ranging deer and antelope produce meat of more complex flavor due to the variety of their diet. The difference is somewhat like the difference in cultivated mushrooms and wild mushrooms, or pen-raised chickens compared with free-range chickens. Meat from free-range animals is more expensive due to higher labor and inspection costs.

Meat from both deer and antelope can be legally labeled "venison." All venison is relatively lean when compared with conventional red meats and requires special attention when cooking to avoid drying out the meat and toughening it. Tender cuts should be cooked as little as possible (rare to medium rare) to retain the maximum amount of moisture. Quick sautéing, grilling or roasting to retain a medium rare center is most satisfactory for tender cuts such as the loin, tenderloin, and leg.

Braising is the most effective method for cooking the less tender cuts such as the shoulder, ribs and shanks. Beef broth or red wine are good liquids for braising. The toughest cut of meat will be very satisfactorily tenderized if braised for a sufficient period of time (which may be as long as two or three hours). When properly cooked, these cuts can surpass the more tender cuts in flavor.

MIKE HUGHES,
BROKEN ARROW RANCH, Ingram, Texas

INSPECTION OF GAME

The USDA and most states restrict the sale of wild game. Truly wild game can be served only by those who hunt and share their kill.

Domestic Game

Farm- or ranch-raised game is only subject to voluntary inspections for wholesomeness. Generally, however, game is processed under the same federal inspection requirements as domesticated meats and poultry. State regulations vary and are constantly being expanded and improved in response to consumer demands. Also, unlike meat and poultry from domesticated animals, game is not graded for quality.

Imported Game

Only USDA-approved countries are permitted to export game to the United States. Upon arrival in this country, game shipments are subject to USDA spot inspections.

PURCHASING AND STORING GAME

Purchasing Game

Furred game meats are available fresh or frozen. Game birds are available cleaned and boned, fresh or frozen. Use the same criteria to determine the freshness of game as you would any other meat or poultry: The flesh should be firm, without slime or an off-odor.

Fresh game is sometimes **hung** before cooking to allow the meat to mature or age. During hanging, carbohydrates (glycogen) stored in muscle tissues are converted to lactic acid. This process tenderizes the flesh and strengthens its flavor. But hanging is not necessary, especially if you object to "gamy" flavors. Commercially sold game is generally fully aged and ready to use when delivered. It does not need, nor will it benefit from, hanging.

Storing Game

As with any fresh or frozen meat, game should be well wrapped and stored under refrigeration at temperatures below 40°F (4°C). Because the flesh is generally dry and lean, frozen game should be used within four months. Thaw frozen game slowly under refrigeration to prevent moisture loss.

MARINATING FURRED GAME

Tradition calls for marinating game, particularly furred game, in strong mixtures of red wine, herbs and spices. Commercially raised game does not necessarily have to be marinated. Modern animal husbandry techniques used at game ranches assure the chef of receiving meat from young, tender animals. Farm-raised game animals also have a naturally milder flavor than their truly wild cousins.

For those preferring the flavors imparted by traditional marinades, the following red wine marinade is included. After the meat is removed, the marinade may be added to the cooking liquid or reduced and used in a sauce. Do not serve uncooked marinade.

HOW TO HANG GAME

The following information may be useful if you find yourself with a need to hang freshly killed game. Most game should be eviscerated (drawn or gutted) as soon as possible, then suspended by either the hind legs or the head in a dry, well-ventilated place. Because the fur or feathers help prevent bacterial contamination, they should be left intact during hanging; game should be skinned or plucked just before butchering. The length of time necessary for hanging depends on the species and age of the animal. Two days may be sufficient for a rabbit, while up to three weeks may be necessary for a deer or boar. Hanging is generally complete when the first whiff of odor is detected (although traditionalists prefer pheasant to be hung until extremely ripe).

RECIPE 18.1

RED-WINE GAME MARINADE

Yield: 1 1/2 qt. (1.5 lt)

Carrot, chopped fine	2 oz.	60 g
Onion, chopped fine	2 oz.	60 g
Garlic, minced	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Dried thyme	1 tsp.	5 ml
Bay leaves	2	2
Juniper berries, whole	2 tsp.	10 ml
Peppercorns, whole	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Sage, ground	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Red wine	1 qt.	1 lt
Red wine vinegar	4 oz.	120 ml

1. Combine all ingredients.
2. Place the meat in the marinade and marinate for the desired time. Tender, farm-raised game may need only 30 minutes; older, wild animals may need 1–2 days.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 5, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Vitamin A** 6%, **Claims**—fat free; no saturated fat; no cholesterol; no sodium; low calorie

CONCLUSION

Game is becoming increasingly popular because of consumer desires for leaner, healthier meats. Only farm-raised game can be used in food service operations. Luckily, many popular game items are now farm-raised, government-inspected and readily available. Generally, game flesh has a dark color, a strong but not unpleasant aroma and a robust flavor. You should butcher, prepare and cook game according to the comparable guidelines for other meats and poultry.

QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

1. Explain the differences between truly wild game and ranch-raised game.
2. What is hanging? Is it necessary for modern food service operations to hang game?
3. Which cuts of furred game are best suited to dry-heat cooking methods? Which are best for combination cooking methods?
4. Can game birds be purchased whole? How are they fabricated?
5. What degree of doneness is best suited for game birds? Explain your answer.

ADDITIONAL GAME RECIPES

RECIPE 18.2

ACHIOTE-BASTED RACK OF VENISON WITH SMOKED CORN PUDDING

NOTE: This dish appears in the Chapter Opening photograph.

THE BOULDERS RESORT, CAREFREE, AZ
Corporate Executive Chef Charles Wiley

Yield: 4 Servings **Method:** Grilling

Venison chops, 6 oz. (180 g) each	4	4
Achiote Paste (recipe follows)	1/2 c.	120 ml
Kosher salt	TT	TT
Pepper	TT	TT
Olive oil	1 tsp.	5 ml
Shiitake mushroom caps	8	8
Haricot vert, blanched and shocked	24	24
Roma tomatoes, quartered	2	2
Smoked Corn Pudding (recipe follows)	2 c.	500 ml
Barley Risotto (recipe follows)	4 servings	4 servings
Venison Red Wine Jus (recipe follows)	4 oz.	120 ml

1. Prepare a mesquite or gas grill. Brush the chops with Achiote Paste and season with salt and pepper. Grill to medium rare, brushing with additional Achiote Paste. Remove the chops from the grill, cover loosely and keep warm.
2. Heat the oil in a small sauté pan and add the mushrooms. Cook for 2–3 minutes over medium heat. Add the haricot vert and tomatoes; season with salt and pepper. Cook for an additional 2–3 minutes; remove from the heat.
3. Spoon 1/2 cup (120 milliliters) of the Smoked Corn Pudding in the center of a warm dinner plate. Spoon 1/4 of the haricot vert mixture on top of the pudding. Cut each chop in thirds and arrange the pieces around the pudding. Top with barley risotto and pour 1 ounce (30 milliliters) of Red Wine Jus around the venison. Serve immediately.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 930, **Total fat** 37 g, **Saturated fat** 17 g, **Cholesterol** 370 mg, **Sodium** 1660 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 87 g, **Protein** 63 g, **Vitamin A** 100%, **Vitamin C** 60%, **Iron** 60%

ACHIOTE PASTE

Yield: 1/2 c. (120 ml)

Ancho chiles	3	3
Garlic clove	1	1
Allspice	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Cumin seeds, toasted and ground	1/2 tsp.	3 ml
Annato seeds	1 tsp.	5 ml
Olive oil	1 tsp.	5 ml
White wine vinegar	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Orange juice	1/4 c.	60 ml
Kosher salt	1/2 tsp.	3 ml

1. Toast the ancho chiles in a skillet over medium heat for 2 minutes, or until they release some oil and have a toasted aroma. Let cool slightly, then core, seed and tear into strips.
2. Place the ancho strips in a blender with the remaining ingredients and purée until smooth.

Approximate values per 1.5-oz. (52-g) serving: **Calories** 25, **Total fat** 1.5 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 200 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 3 g, **Protein** 0 g

SMOKED CORN PUDDING

Yield: 2 c. (500 ml)

Whole butter	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Milk	1 pt.	500 ml
Yellow cornmeal	1/2 c.	120 ml
Kosher salt	TT	TT
Pepper	TT	TT
Corn, lightly smoked, kernels removed	2 ears	2 ears
Onion, chopped	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Eggs, separated	3	3

1. Coat an 8-inch (20-centimeter) square pan with 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) of butter.
2. In a medium saucepan, bring the milk to a boil. Lower the heat and gradually whisk in the cornmeal. Cook over low heat for 10 minutes, stirring with a wooden spoon.
3. Add the salt, pepper, corn, onions and remaining butter; cook for an additional 3 minutes. Remove from the heat and add the egg yolks one at a time, beating well with a wooden spoon after each addition.
4. Add a pinch of salt to the egg whites and beat with a fine whisk until stiff. Fold the whipped egg whites into the cornmeal mixture, one half at a time. Pour into the buttered pan and bake at 350°F (180°C) until golden brown, approximately 30 minutes.

Approximate values per 1/2-cup (257-g) serving: **Calories** 340, **Total fat** 18 g, **Saturated fat** 9 g, **Cholesterol** 200 mg, **Sodium** 200 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 31 g, **Protein** 12 g, **Vitamin A** 20%, **Calcium** 15%

BARLEY RISOTTO

Yield: 4 servings

Barley	1/2 c.	120 ml
Water	1 pt.	500 ml
Whole butter	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Garlic cloves, chopped	4	4
Chicken stock	1 c.	250 ml
Green onions or chives, sliced	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Asiago, grated	1/4 c.	60 ml
Kosher salt	TT	TT
Pepper	TT	TT

1. Cook the barley in the water until barely done; strain.
2. Melt the butter in a large saucepan over medium heat. Add the garlic and cook until fragrant, approximately 2 minutes. Add the barley and stir with a wooden spoon to coat completely with the butter.

Continued

3. Increase the heat and add 1/2 cup (125 milliliters) of the chicken stock. Stir until all the stock is absorbed, then add the remaining stock. Cook until almost all the stock is absorbed and remove from heat.
4. Stir in the green onions and cheese, and season to taste with salt and pepper.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 180, **Total fat** 9 g, **Saturated fat** 5 g, **Cholesterol** 25 mg, **Sodium** 280 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 20 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin A** 10%, **Claims**—no sugar; good source of fiber

VENISON RED WINE JUS

Yield: 1 pt. (500 ml)

Bacon, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Shallots, chopped	2	2
Carrots, chopped	1/2 c.	120 ml
Garlic, chopped	2 tsp.	10 ml
Celery, chopped	1 rib	1 rib
Onion, chopped	1/2 c.	120 ml
Red wine	1 pt.	500 ml
Venison or venison/veal stock	1 qt.	1 lt

1. In a medium saucepan, render the bacon over low heat. Add the shallots, carrots, garlic, celery and onion; cook until tender.
2. Add the red wine and reduce to a glaze.
3. Add the stock and reduce by two thirds. Pass through a fine strainer and check the consistency. Return to the saucepan and reduce further if necessary.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-ml) serving: **Calories** 30, **Total fat** 1 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 1.5 mg, **Sodium** 228 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 5 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 15%, **Claims**—low fat; low cholesterol

RECIPE 18.3

MARINATED LOIN OF VENISON ROASTED WITH MUSTARD

FETZER VINEYARDS, HOPLAND, CA
John Ash, Culinary Director

Yield: 8 to 10 6–8 oz. (180–250 g) Servings **Method:** Roasting

Marinade:		
Carrots, medium	3	3
Yellow onion, large	1	1
Shallots, whole	3	3
Garlic cloves	3	3
Olive oil	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Hearty red wine	40 oz.	1200 ml
Red wine vinegar	4 oz.	120 ml
Bay leaves	4	4
Parsley stalks	6	6
Juniper berries, whole	16	16
Sea salt	2 tsp.	10 ml
Peppercorns	12	12

Mustard coating:		
Garlic cloves	3	3
Green onion, chopped	2 oz.	60 g
Chardonnay	3 oz.	90 ml
Fresh sage	1 tsp.	5 ml
Fresh thyme	1 tsp.	5 ml
Dijon mustard	1 c.	250 ml
Olive oil	2 oz.	60 ml
Sea salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Venison loin, 5 lb. (2.2 kg), well-trimmed	1	1

1. For the marinade, coarsely chop the vegetables and sauté them in the oil until lightly browned.
2. Add the wine, vinegar and remaining marinade seasonings and bring to a boil.
3. Reduce the heat and simmer 10 minutes. Cool before using.
4. For the mustard coating, place all ingredients in a food processor or blender and quickly process until smooth. The mixture should be very thick. Cover and refrigerate.
5. In a nonreactive pan, pour the cooled marinade over the loin and marinate, covered, in the refrigerator for up to 24 hours. Turn occasionally.
6. Remove the meat from the marinade, pat dry and quickly sear the meat in a hot sauté pan or on the grill.
7. Place the loin in a roasting pan and coat well with the mustard coating. Roast at 450°F (230°C) for 5 minutes; then reduce the heat to 375°F (190°C) and roast for an additional 10–15 minutes, until the meat is medium rare.
8. Serve on warm plates with Creamy Polenta with Wild Mushrooms (Recipe 23.18).

Approximate values per 8-oz. (250-g) serving: **Calories** 340, **Total fat** 13 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 190 mg, **Sodium** 460 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 4 g, **Protein** 53 g, **Iron** 50%

RECIPE 18.4

Braised Antelope in Sour Cream

Yield: 8 6–8 oz. (180–250 g) Servings — Method: Braising

Salt pork	3 oz.	90 g
Bottom round of antelope, 4–5 lb. (2–2.5 kg)	1	1
Onion, small dice	12 oz.	350 g
Garlic cloves, sliced	2	2
Carrot, sliced	8 oz.	250 g
Red wine	24 oz.	700 ml
Veal or game stock	3 pt.	1.5 lt
Bay leaves	2	2
Fresh rosemary, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Fresh thyme	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Juniper berries, crushed	10	10
Tomato paste	2 Tbsp.	30 ml

Continued

Clarified butter	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Flour	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Sour cream	1 pt.	500 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Render the salt pork. Brown the meat well in the fat.
2. Add the onions, garlic and carrots; sauté until the vegetables are tender.
3. Add the red wine, stock, herbs, juniper berries and tomato paste. Braise in a 325°F (160°C) oven until the meat is tender, approximately 1 1/2 to 2 hours.
4. Remove the meat from the pan. If necessary, make a blond roux with the butter and flour and use it to thicken the sauce. Bring to a simmer, then strain the sauce.
5. Add the sour cream, heat the sauce thoroughly and season to taste with salt and pepper.

Approximate values per 8-oz. (250-g) serving: **Calories** 580, **Total fat** 21 g, **Saturated fat** 11 g, **Cholesterol** 320 mg, **Sodium** 1110 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 24 g, **Protein** 72 g, **Vitamin A** 80%

RECIPE 18.5

Chilli-Rubbed Venison with Caramelized Berry Sauce

PHOENIX BREWING COMPANY, Atlanta, GA
Executive Chef Kevin Fonzo

Yield: 4 Servings **Method:** Sautéing

Chilli powder	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Pepper	1 tsp.	5 ml
Olive oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Venison leg, 5-oz. (150-g) portions	4	4
Mashed potatoes	as needed	as needed
Caramelized Berry Sauce (recipe follows)	8 oz.	250 ml

1. In a small bowl, combine the chilli powder, salt and pepper. Rub the venison with this mixture until well coated.
2. Heat the olive oil in a medium-sized sauté pan. Cook the venison to medium rare, making sure to brown all sides of the meat.
3. Remove the venison from the pan and allow it to rest for 1 minute, then slice into medallions.
4. Mound the mashed potatoes into the center of each plate. Arrange the venison in a fan around the potatoes. Ladle on the Caramelized Berry Sauce and garnish as desired.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 330, **Total fat** 13 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 116 mg, **Sodium** 1654 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 10 g, **Protein** 43 g, **Vitamin A** 26%, **Vitamin C** 14%, **Iron** 51%

CARAMELIZED BERRY SAUCE

Yield: 2 qt. (2 lt)

Sugar	6 oz.	180 g
Water	4 oz.	120 ml
Strawberries, sliced	1 c.	250 ml
Raspberries	1 1/2 pt.	750 ml
Blackberries	1 pt.	500 ml
Blueberries	1 c.	250 ml
Veal stock	1 gal.	4 lt.

1. Combine the sugar and water in a large saucepot. Bring to a boil and cook to a rich, golden brown.
2. Add all the berries to the caramelized sugar. Cook for 1 minute.
3. Add the veal stock and bring to a boil. Lower the heat to a simmer and reduce by half. Strain the sauce through a fine chinoise and keep warm for service.

Approximate values per 2-oz. (60-ml) serving: **Calories** 39, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 580 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 9 g, **Protein** 1g, **Vitamin C** 13%

RECIPE 18.6

VENISON MEDALLIONS GRAND VENEUR

Yield: 2 Servings Method: Sautéing

Venison medallions, 3 oz. (90 g) each	4	4
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Clarified butter	1 oz.	30 g
White wine	1 oz.	30 ml
Poivrade sauce (pg 204)	6 oz.	180 ml
Red currant jelly	2 tsp.	10 ml
Heavy cream	1 oz.	30 ml

1. Season the medallions with salt and pepper, and sauté in the clarified butter to the desired doneness. Remove and reserve.
2. Degrease the pan and deglaze with the white wine.
3. Add the poivrade sauce and bring to a simmer. Stir in the currant jelly, add the cream and adjust the seasonings.
4. Return the medallions to the sauce to reheat. Serve 2 medallions per person with a portion of the sauce.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (180-g) serving: **Calories** 410, **Total fat** 21 g, **Saturated fat** 12 g, **Cholesterol** 195 mg, **Sodium** 1250 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 15 g, **Protein** 39 g, **Vitamin A** 15%

RECIPE 18.7

Venison and Black Bean Chili

Yield: 4 qt. (4 lt) **Method:** Braising

Dried black beans	1 lb.	450 g
Water	2 qt.	2 lt
Peanut oil	3 oz.	90 ml
Venison round, trimmed, medium dice	3 lb.	1.3 kg
Garlic cloves, minced	6	6
Onion, small dice	1 lb. 8 oz.	680 g
Jalapeños, seeded and chopped fine	3	3
Masa harina (corn flour)	2 oz.	60 g
Chilli powder	1 oz.	30 g
Cayenne pepper	1 tsp.	5 ml
Cumin, ground	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Peeled tomatoes, canned	1 lb. 8 oz.	680 g
Veal stock	1 qt.	1 lt
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Tabasco sauce	TT	TT

1. Soak the beans in water overnight. Drain and simmer in 2 quarts (2 liters) of water until tender, approximately 30–40 minutes.
2. Sauté the venison in the oil until brown. Remove and reserve.
3. Sauté the garlic, onions and jalapeño in the same pan until tender. Add the masa harina, chilli powder, cayenne and cumin. Cook 5 minutes.
4. Add the tomatoes, stock and reserved meat. Cover and braise on the stove top or in a 325°F (160°C) oven for 30–40 minutes.
5. Add the beans and cook an additional 15 minutes. Season to taste with salt, pepper and Tabasco sauce. Thin with additional stock if necessary.

Approximate values per 8-oz. (240-g) serving: **Calories** 320, **Total fat** 9 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 70 mg, **Sodium** 510 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 31 g, **Protein** 28 g, **Vitamin A** 15%, **Iron** 30%

RECIPE 18.8

Grilled Loin of Rabbit with Spinach, Fennel and White Beans

GOTHAM BAR AND GRILL, New York, NY
Chef/Owner Alfred Portale

Yield: 6 Servings **Method:** Grilling

Rabbit saddles	6	6
Bacon slices	6	6
Lemon, sliced thin	1	1
Shallots, minced	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh sage	1 bunch	1 bunch
Fresh rosemary	3 sprigs	3 sprigs
Fresh thyme	3 sprigs	3 sprigs

Garlic cloves, sliced thin	2	2
White peppercorns, cracked	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Olive oil	as needed	as needed
Baby fennel, steamed until tender	12 heads	12 heads
Fresh spinach, steamed	1 lb.	450 g
White Beans (recipe follows)	as needed	as needed
Rabbit Sauce (recipe follows)	as needed	as needed

1. Bone the saddles, removing the 2 loins and tenderloins.
2. Tightly wrap each loin and tenderloin together with half of a slice of bacon.
3. Place the rolled loins and tenderloins in a shallow container. Sprinkle with the lemon, shallots, herbs, garlic and cracked pepper and drizzle with olive oil; cover and refrigerate for 6–8 hours.
4. Bring the rabbit to room temperature. Remove from the marinade and grill over a medium fire until golden, approximately 6–8 minutes.
5. Cut each loin into medallions and arrange on the plates. Serve with fennel, spinach, White Beans and Rabbit Sauce.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 390, **Total fat** 19 g, **Saturated fat** 8 g, **Cholesterol** 140 mg, **Sodium** 700 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 20 g, **Protein** 36 g, **Vitamin A** 70%

WHITE BEANS

Yield: 2 lb. (.9 kg)

Dried Great Northern beans, soaked	8 oz.	250 g
Sachet:		
Onion, small	1	1
Carrot, 3-in. (8-cm) piece	1	1
Celery, 2-in. (5-cm) piece	1	1
Fresh thyme	1 sprig	1 sprig
Fresh rosemary	1 sprig	1 sprig
Black peppercorns	1 tsp.	5 ml
Garlic clove, minced	1	1
Parsley, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh rosemary	TT	TT
Fresh thyme	TT	TT
Whole butter, softened	4 oz.	120 g
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
Heavy cream	2 oz.	60 ml

1. Place the beans and the sachet in a large pot and cover with cold water. Bring to a simmer and cook until tender, approximately 45 minutes.
2. Cream together the garlic, parsley, rosemary, thyme and butter. Season with salt and white pepper.
3. Remove the sachet from the cooked beans and pour off all but 3–4 tablespoons (45–60 milliliters) of the cooking liquid. Return to the heat and swirl in the herb butter and cream. Keep warm.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 45, **Total fat** 3.5 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 105 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 4%, **Claims**—low cholesterol; low sodium; no sugar

Continued

RABBIT SAUCE

Yield: 1 pt. (450 ml)

Shallots, chopped	1 oz.	30 g
White peppercorns	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Clarified butter	2 tsp.	10 ml
White wine	4 oz.	120 ml
Brown stock, made from chicken and rabbit bones	24 oz.	700 ml
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
Whole butter	3 Tbsp.	45 ml

1. Sauté the shallots and peppercorns in the clarified butter over low heat until browned.
2. Add the white wine and reduce by one third. Add the stock and reduce by one third.
3. Season with salt and white pepper. Monté au beurre just before service.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 45, **Total fat** 3 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 320 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 3 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 8%, **Claims**—low fat; low cholesterol; no sugar

RECIPE 18.9

Braised Rabbit with Cavatelli Pasta

FETZER VINEYARDS, HOPLAND, CA
John Ash, Culinary Director

Yield: 4 Servings **Method:** Braising

Rabbit, 4 lb. (1.8 kg), cut into quarters	1	1
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Olive oil	2 oz.	60 ml
Chanterelle or shiitake mushrooms, stemmed and sliced	8 oz.	250 g
Yellow onion, sliced	6 oz.	170 g
Garlic, slivered	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Carrot, small dice	3 oz.	90 g
Celery, sliced thin	3 oz.	90 g
Sun-dried tomatoes, sliced	1 pt.	500 ml
Zinfandel wine	1 pt.	500 ml
Tomato concassée	1 pt.	500 ml
Fresh thyme	1 tsp.	5 ml
Fresh sage, minced	1 tsp.	5 ml
Rabbit or chicken stock	1 qt.	1 lt
Parsley, chopped fine	4 Tbsp.	60 ml
Fresh basil, chopped	4 Tbsp.	60 ml
Cavatelli, cooked	24 oz.	700 g
Fresh basil sprigs	as needed for garnish	
Asiago, Parmesan or Dry Jack cheese, shaved	as needed for garnish	

1. Season the rabbit pieces with salt and pepper.
2. In a large saucepan, heat the oil and quickly brown the rabbit. Remove and reserve.
3. Add the mushrooms, onion, garlic, carrots and celery and sauté until very lightly browned.
4. Return the rabbit to the pan and add the sun-dried tomatoes, wine, tomatoes, thyme, sage and stock. Cover and simmer until the rabbit is tender and begins to pull away from the bones, approximately 45–50 minutes.
5. Remove the rabbit, separate the meat from the bones, discard the bones, and cut the meat into bite-sized pieces.
6. Strain the sauce, reserving the vegetables, and return the sauce to the sauce pan. Bring to a boil and cook over high heat for 8–10 minutes to reduce and thicken slightly.
7. Adjust the seasonings. Add the reserved meat and vegetables and heat. Stir in the basil and parsley just before serving.
8. Toss the hot pasta with the rabbit sauce. Garnish with basil sprigs and cheese.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 1270, **Total fat** 47 g, **Saturated fat** 11 g, **Cholesterol** 285 mg, **Sodium** 2220 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 90 g, **Protein** 122 g, **Vitamin A** 60%, **Iron** 100%

RECIPE 18.10

Grilled Buffalo Steak

Yield: 1 Serving — Method: Grilling

Buffalo strip loin steak, 8 oz. (250 g)	1	1
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Season the steak well with salt and pepper.
2. Brush with oil and grill to the desired degree of doneness.
3. Serve the steak with a full-flavored sauce such as a bordelaise (pg 203) or poivrade sauce (pg 204).

Approximate values per serving, without sauce: **Calories** 400, **Total fat** 18 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 140 mg, **Sodium** 1290 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 61 g, **Iron** 30%

RECIPE 18.11

Roast Pheasant with Cognac and Apples

Yield: 2 Servings — Method: Roasting

Pheasant	1	1
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Fatback	as needed	as needed
Mirepoix	12 oz.	350 g
Tart apples	2	2

Continued

Whole butter	1 oz.	30 g
Cognac	3 oz.	90 ml
Crème fraîche	4 oz.	120 g

1. Season the pheasant with salt and pepper. Bard the body with fatback.
2. Roast on a bed of mirepoix at 350°F (170°C) until done, approximately 1 1/2 hours.
3. Peel, core and slice each apple into 8 pieces. Sauté the apples in butter just until tender.
4. When the pheasant is done, remove it from the pan and reserve in a warm place. Deglaze the pan with the cognac, add the crème fraîche and bring to a simmer. Strain the sauce and adjust the seasonings.
5. Serve one-half pheasant per person, accompanied by the sliced apples and sauce.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 630, **Total fat** 40g, **Saturated fat** 23g, **Cholesterol** 220mg, **Sodium** 1360mg, **Total carbohydrates** 21g, **Protein** 46g, **Vitamin A** 45%

RECIPE 18.12

Stuffed Breast of Pheasant

Yield: 4 Servings Method: Roasting

Stuffing:		
Prunes, chopped fine	4 oz.	120 g
Apple, chopped fine	4 oz.	120 g
Dried apricots, chopped fine	1 oz.	30 g
Walnuts, chopped fine	2 oz.	60 g
Onion, chopped fine	2 oz.	60 g
Salt	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Pepper	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Fresh thyme	1/2 tsp.	3 ml
Pheasant breast, boneless	4	4
Bacon, thin slices	8	8
Ivory sauce (pg. 201)	8 oz.	250 ml

1. Combine the stuffing ingredients and set aside.
2. Separate each pheasant breast into 2 pieces. Pound each to a thickness of 1/4 inch (6 millimeters).
3. Place a portion of the stuffing in the center of 4 of the pieces of breast meat. Place a second piece of breast meat over the stuffing. Wrap each parcel tightly with 2 slices of bacon and tie with butcher's twine.
4. Bake at 325°F (160°C) until done, approximately 45 minutes.
5. Remove the twine, carve each bundle into slices and serve with 2 ounces (60 milliliters) of ivory sauce.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 690, **Total fat** 20 g, **Saturated fat** 4.5 g, **Cholesterol** 210 mg, **Sodium** 270 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 33 g, **Protein** 93 g, **Vitamin A** 25%, **Vitamin C** 40%

RECIPE 18.13

Grilled Quail with Potato Galette, Artichoke Wedges and Balsamic Raspberries

STANFORD COURT HOTEL, San Francisco, CA
former Chef Ercolino Crugnale

Yield: 6 Servings | Method: Grilling

Bobwhite quail	6	6
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Asparagus tips, 2 in. (5 cm) long, peeled and blanched	18 pieces	18 pieces
Artichoke Wedges (recipe follows)	18 pieces	18 pieces
Roma tomatoes, concassée	3	3
Cipolline onions, peeled and glazed with chicken stock and whole butter	12	12
Olive oil	3 oz.	90 ml
Chicken stock	6 oz.	180 ml
Dry white wine	6 oz.	180 ml
Shallots, minced	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Fresh tarragon, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Fresh parsley, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Potato Galette (recipe follows)	6 pieces	6 pieces
Mixed greens such as butter lettuce, yellow frisee and radicchio, torn into 1-in. (2.5-cm) pieces	1 1/2 c.	375 ml
Basic vinaigrette dressing	4 Tbsp.	60 ml
Balsamic Raspberries (recipe follows)		
Extra virgin olive oil	3 oz.	90 ml

1. Season the quail with salt and pepper, and grill on both sides until cooked just under medium.
2. Sauté the asparagus, artichoke wedges, tomatoes and onions in the pure olive oil.
3. Deglaze the pan with chicken stock and white wine. Add the shallots, tarragon and parsley. Season with salt and pepper.
4. To serve, place a potato galette on each plate. Arrange the vegetables around the potato.
5. Dress the mixed greens with the basic vinaigrette dressing and place a small amount in the center of each plate. Place the quail on greens.
6. Place raspberries around the plate; drizzle with extra virgin olive oil.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 534, **Total fat** 40 g, **Saturated fat** 10 g, **Cholesterol** 94 mg, **Sodium** 1534 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 14 g, **Protein** 33 g, **Vitamin A** 95%, **Vitamin C** 146%, **Iron** 71%

Continued

POTATO GALETTE

Yield: 6 Galettes

Clarified butter	as needed	as needed
Idaho potatoes, peeled and sliced thin on a mandoline	3	3
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. For each galette, completely line the bottom of a buttered 8-inch (20-centimeter) pan with potato slices, arranging the slices in a circular, overlapping pattern.
2. Season with salt and pepper, and sauté until golden brown on each side. Hold at room temperature.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 150, **Total fat** 4 g, **Saturated fat** 2.5 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 150 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 25 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Vitamin A** 4%

ARTICHOKE WEDGES

Yield: 20 Pieces

Olive oil	4 oz.	120 g
Artichoke bottoms, turned and cleaned, cut in quarters	5	5
Garlic, minced	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Fresh thyme, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Chicken stock	1 pt.	500 ml
Lemon juice	2 oz.	60 g
White wine	4 oz.	120 g
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT

1. Over high heat, sauté the artichokes in the olive oil for 2 minutes.
2. Add the garlic, thyme and 4 ounces (120 grams) chicken stock; reduce au sec.
3. Add the lemon juice, white wine and seasonings; reduce au sec.
4. Add another 6 ounces (170 grams) chicken stock; reduce au sec.
5. Add the remaining chicken stock; reduce au sec. The artichokes should be glazed, crisp and tender.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 60, **Total fat** 6 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 120 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Claims**—low saturated fat; no cholesterol; low sodium; no sugar

BALSAMIC RASPBERRIES

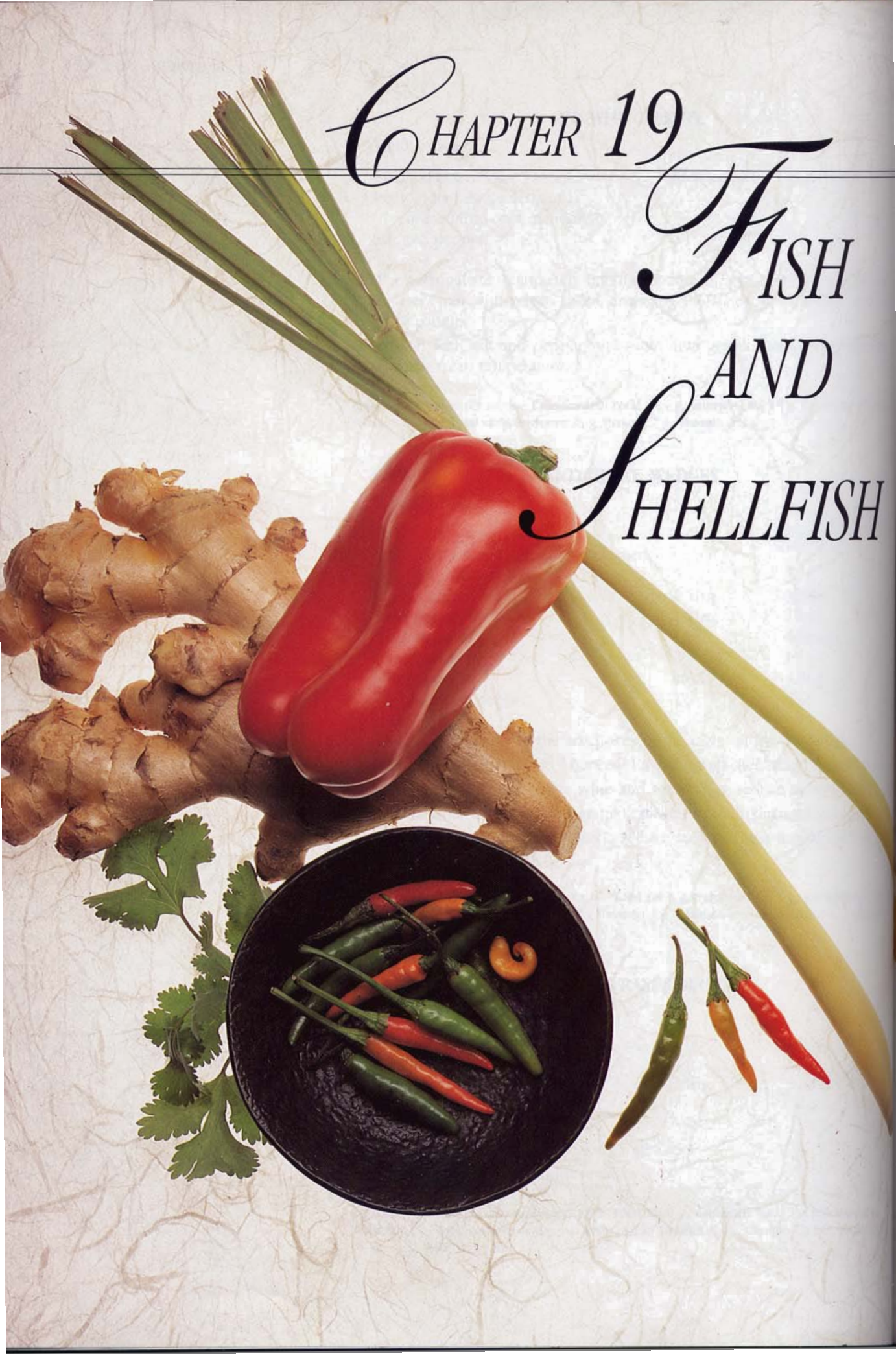
Yield: 1 qt.

Raspberries, ripe but firm	1 qt.	1 lt
Balsamic vinegar	6 oz.	170 g
Pepper	1 tsp.	5 ml

1. Gently combine all ingredients.
2. Let the raspberries macerate for 15 minutes.
3. Strain off the vinegar and reserve.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 15, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 4 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Vitamin A** 0%, **Claims**—fat free; no saturated fat; no cholesterol; no sodium

CHAPTER 19
FISH AND SHELLFISH



Flying Fish, Seattle, WA
Chef-Owner Christine Keff

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- understand the structure and composition of fish and shellfish
- identify a variety of fish and shellfish
- purchase fish and shellfish appropriate for your needs
- store fish and shellfish properly
- prepare fish and shellfish for cooking
- apply various cooking methods to fish and shellfish

Fish are aquatic vertebrates with fins for swimming and gills for breathing. Of the more than thirty thousand species known, most live in the seas and oceans; freshwater species are far less numerous. Shellfish are aquatic invertebrates with shells or carapaces. They are found in both fresh and salt water.

Always an important food source, fish and shellfish have become increasingly popular in recent years, due in part to demands from health-conscious consumers. Because of increased demand and improved preservation and transportation techniques, good-quality fish and shellfish, once found only along seacoasts and lakes, are now readily available to almost every food service operation.

Many fish and shellfish species are very expensive; all are highly perishable. Because their cooking times are generally shorter and their flavors more delicate than meat or poultry, special attention must be given to fish and shellfish to prevent spoilage and to produce high-quality finished products.

In this chapter, you will learn how to identify a large assortment of fish and shellfish as well as how to properly purchase and store them, fabricate or prepare them for cooking and cook them by a variety of dry-heat and moist-heat cooking methods. This chapter presents many of the cooking methods applied to meats and poultry in the previous chapters. Review the corresponding procedures for meats and poultry, and note the similarities and differences.

Structure and Muscle Composition

The fish and shellfish used in food service operations can be divided into three categories: fish, mollusks and crustaceans.

Fish (Fr. *poisson*) include both fresh- and saltwater varieties. They have fins and an internal skeleton of bone and cartilage. Based upon shape and skeletal structure, fish can be divided into two groups: round fish and flatfish. **Round fish** swim in a vertical position and have eyes on both sides of their heads. Their bodies may be truly round, oval or compressed. **Flatfish** have asymmetrical, compressed bodies, swim in a horizontal position and have both eyes on top of their heads. Flatfish are bottom dwellers; most are found in deep ocean waters around the world. The skin on top of their bodies is dark, to camouflage them from predators, and can change color according to their surroundings. Their scales are small, and their dorsal and anal fins run the length of their bodies.

Mollusks (Fr. *mollusque*) are shellfish characterized by soft, unsegmented bodies with no internal skeleton. Most mollusks have hard outer shells. Single-shelled mollusks such as abalone are known as **univalves**. Those with two shells, such as clams, oysters and mussels, are known as **bivalves**. Squid and octopus, which are known as **cephalopods**, do not have a hard outer shell. Rather, they have a single thin internal shell called a *pen* or *cuttlebone*.

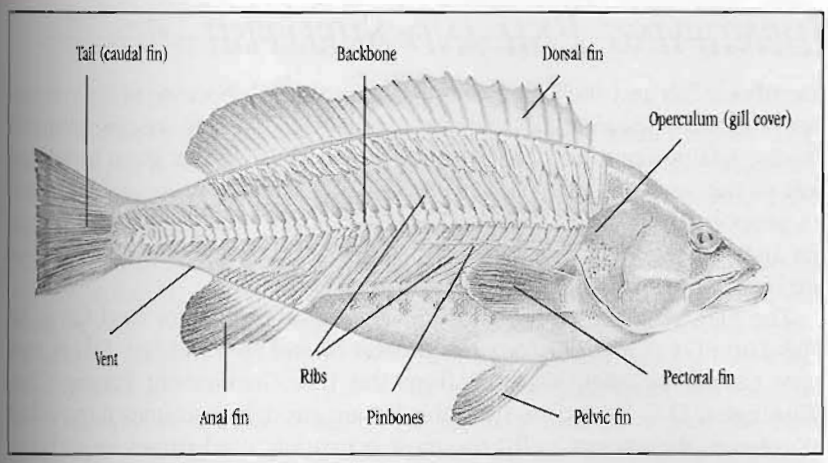


FIGURE 19.1 *Bone Structure of a Round Fish*

Crustaceans (Fr. *crustacé*) are also shellfish. They have a hard outer skeleton or shell and jointed appendages. Crustaceans include lobsters, crabs and shrimp.

The flesh of fish and shellfish consists primarily of water, protein, fat and minerals. Fish flesh is composed of short muscle fibers separated by delicate sheets of connective tissue. Fish, as well as most shellfish, are naturally tender, so the purpose of cooking is to firm proteins and enhance flavor. The absence of the oxygen-carrying protein myoglobin makes fish flesh very light or white in color. (The orange color of salmon and some trout comes from pigments found in their food.) Compared to meats, fish do not contain large amounts of intermuscular fat. But the amount of fat a fish does contain affects the way it responds to cooking. Fish containing a relatively large amount of fat, such as salmon and mackerel, are known as fatty or oily fish. Fish such as cod and haddock contain very little fat and are referred to as lean fish. Shellfish are also very lean.

SEAFOOD

Seafood means different things to different people. For some, the term applies just to shellfish or to shellfish and other small edible marine creatures. For others, it is limited to saltwater shellfish or to saltwater shellfish and fish. For yet others, it refers to all fish and shellfish, both freshwater and saltwater. Because of the term's vagueness, it is not used here.

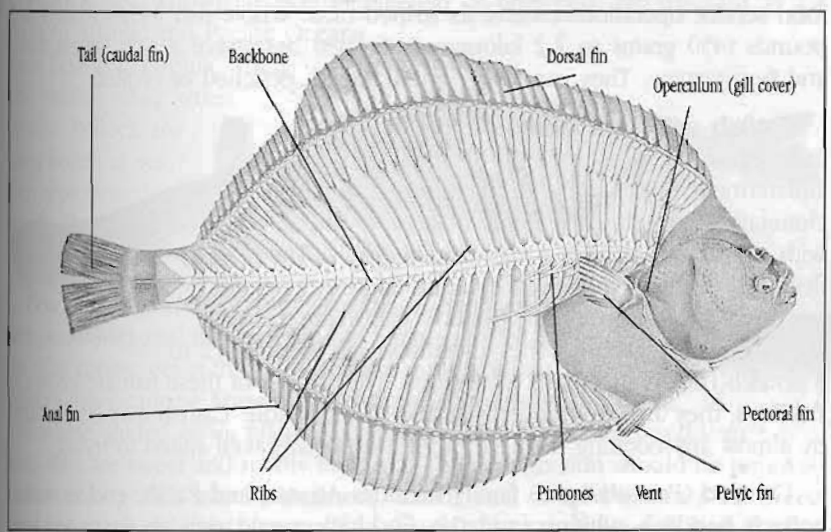


FIGURE 19.2 *Bone Structure of a Flatfish*

IDENTIFYING FISH AND SHELLFISH

Identifying fish and shellfish properly can be difficult because of the vast number of similar-appearing fish and shellfish that are separate species within each family. Adding confusion are the various colloquial names given to the same fish or the same name given to different fish in different localities. Fish with an unappealing name may also be given a catchier name or the name of a similar but more popular item for marketing purposes. Moreover, some species are referred to by a foreign name, especially on menus.

The FDA publishes a list of approved market names for food fish in *The Fish List: FDA Guide to Acceptable Market Names for Food Fish Sold in Interstate Commerce* 1988, available from the U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington D.C. Deviations from this list are strongly discouraged but difficult to enforce. We attempt to list the most commonly used names for each item, whether they are zoologically accurate or not.

Fish

Round Fish

Bass (Fr. *bar*) commonly refers to a number of unrelated spiny-finned fish. The better-known freshwater bass varieties (largemouth, smallmouth, redeye and black) are actually members of the sunfish family. They are lean and delicate but, as game, not commercially available in the United States. The saltwater bass varieties (black sea bass and striped bass) are popular commercial items.

Black Sea Bass

Striped Bass

Black sea bass are sometimes referred to as rock sea bass. They have a lean, firm white flesh with a mild flavor and flaky texture. They usually weigh from 1 1/2 to 3 pounds (680–1360 grams) and are most prevalent in the Atlantic Ocean between New York and North Carolina. Black sea bass can be prepared by almost any cooking method and are often served whole in Chinese and Italian cuisines.

Striped bass, often erroneously referred to as rockfish, are **anadromous**. True striped bass cannot be marketed because pollution and overfishing have damaged the supply. A hybrid of striped bass and either white bass or white perch is being **aquafarmed** for commercial use, however. It is this hybrid that food service operations receive as striped bass. Whole fish weigh from 1 to 5 pounds (450 grams to 2.2 kilograms). Striped bass have a rich, sweet flavor and firm texture. They can be steamed, baked, poached or broiled.

Anadromous—*a fish that migrates from a saltwater habitat to spawn in fresh water.*

Aquafarming—*also known as aquaculture, is the business, science and practice of raising large quantities of fish and shellfish in tanks, ponds or ocean pens; used especially for catfish, trout, salmon, shrimp and other popular fish and shellfish.*

Catfish are scaleless freshwater fish common in southern lakes and rivers and now aquafarmed extensively. Aquafarm raising eliminates the "muddy" flavor once associated with catfish and ensures a year-round supply. The flesh is pure white with a moderate fat content, a mild, sweet flavor and firm texture. Channel catfish are the most important commercially. They usually weigh from 1 1/2 to 5 pounds (650 grams to 2.2 kilograms). The smaller of these fish are known as **fiddlers**; they are often deep-fried and served whole. Catfish may be prepared by almost any cooking method, but are especially well suited to frying.

Catfish

The **cod** (Fr. *cabillaud*) family includes Atlantic and Pacific cod as well as pollock, haddock, whiting and hake. Cod have a mild, delicate flavor and lean, firm white flesh that flakes apart easily. Cod can be prepared by most cooking

SURIMI

Surimi is made from a highly processed fish paste colored, flavored and shaped to resemble shrimp, lobster, crab or other shellfish. Most surimi is based on Alaskan pollock, but some blends include varying amounts of real crab, shrimp or other items. Available chilled or frozen, surimi is already fully cooked and ready to add to salads, pasta, sauces or other dishes. Surimi is very low in fat and relatively high in protein. Because of processing techniques, however, it has more sodium and fewer vitamins and minerals than the real fish or shellfish it replaces. Americans now consume more than 100 million pounds of surimi each year, and its popularity continues to grow. The FDA requires that all surimi products be labeled "imitation."

methods, although grilling is not recommended because the flesh is too flaky.

Atlantic cod are the best-selling fish in America. They are available fresh, whole or drawn, or cut into fillets or steaks. They are also available frozen and are often used for precooked or prebreaded sticks or portions. Smoked cod and salt cod are also available. Although cod may reach 200 pounds (90 kilograms), most market cod weigh 10 pounds (4.4 kilograms) or less. **Scrod** is a marketing term for cod weighing less than 2 1/2 pounds (1.1 kilograms).

Atlantic Cod

Haddock, the second most commercially important fish, look like thin, small Atlantic cod and weigh about 2 to 5 pounds (900 grams to 2.3 kilograms). They have a stronger flavor and more delicate texture than Atlantic cod.

Pacific cod, also known as gray cod, are found in the northern Pacific Ocean and are not as abundant as their Atlantic cousins. Pacific cod are most often available frozen; they should be labeled "true cod" to distinguish them from rock cod and black cod, which are unrelated.

Pollock, also known as Boston bluefish or blue cod, are plentiful in the northern Atlantic and Pacific Oceans. Their flesh is gray-pink when raw, turning white when cooked. Pollock are often frozen at sea, then reprocessed into surimi. They can also be salted or smoked.

Pollock

Eels (Fr. *anguille*) are long, snakelike freshwater fish with dorsal and anal fins running the length of their bodies. (The conger eel is from a different family and has little culinary significance.) American and European eels are available live, whole, gutted or as fillets. Eels have a high fat content and firm flesh; they are sweet and mildly flavored. Their tough skin should be removed before cooking. Eels may be steamed, baked, fried or used in stews. Baby eels are a springtime delicacy, especially in Spain, where they are pan-fried in olive oil and garlic with hot red peppers. Smoked eels are also available.

Eel

The **grouper** family includes almost four hundred varieties found in temperate waters worldwide. The more common Atlantic Ocean varieties are the yellowfin grouper, black grouper, red grouper and gag; the Pacific Ocean varieties are the sea bass (also known as jewfish and different from the black sea bass) and spotted cabrilla. Although some species can reach 800 pounds or more, most commercial varieties are sold in the 5-to-20-pound (2.2-to-8.8-kilogram) range. They have lean white flesh with a mild to sweet flavor and very firm texture. Their skin, which is tough and strongly flavored, is generally removed before cooking. Grouper fillets may be baked, deep-fried, broiled or grilled.

Grouper

Herring (Fr. *hareng*) are long, silvery-blue fish found in both the northern Atlantic and Pacific Oceans. Their strongly flavored flesh has a moderate to high fat content. Whole herring weigh up to 8 ounces (225 grams). Fresh herring may be butterflied or filleted and roasted, broiled or grilled. But because herring are very soft and tend to spoil quickly, they are rarely available fresh. More often, they are smoked (and known as kippers) or cured in brine.

Sardines (Fr. *sardine*) are young, small herring with a fatty, oily flesh that has a flaky texture. Sardines are usually sold canned, whole or as skinned and boned fillets, or fried or smoked and packed in oil or sauce. Sardines are used primarily for sandwiches and salads.

John Dory, also known as St. Peter's fish, have a distinctive round, black spot with a yellow halo on each side of the body. Their flesh is white, firm and finely flaked. They may be filleted and prepared like flounder and are a classic bouillabaisse ingredient.

John Dory

Mackerel

Mackerel (Fr. *maquereau*) of culinary importance include king and Spanish mackerel as well as tuna and wahoo, which are discussed separately later. The species known as Atlantic and Pacific mackerel are not generally used for food because of their small size and high fat content. Mackerel flesh has a high fat content, gray to pink coloring, a mild flavor and flaky texture. The flesh becomes firm and off-white when cooked. Mackerel are best broiled, grilled, smoked or baked.

Mahi-mahi is the more commonly used name for dolphin or dolphinfish; this Hawaiian name is used to distinguish them from the marine mammal of the same name. (Dolphins and porpoises are marine mammals.) Also known by their Spanish name, *dorado*, mahi-mahi are brilliantly colored fish found in tropical seas. Mahi-mahi weigh about 15 pounds (6.6 kilograms) and are sold whole or as fillets. Their flesh is off-white to pink, lean and firm with a sweet flavor. Dolphinfish can be broiled, grilled or baked. The meat may become dry when cooked, however, so a sauce or marinade is recommended.

Mahi-Mahi

Monkfish Tail

Monkfish are also known as angler fish, goosefish, rape and lotte. These extraordinarily ugly fish are rarely seen whole, for the large head is usually discarded before reaching market. Only the tail is edible; it is available in fillets, fresh or frozen. The scaleless skin must be removed. The flesh is lean, pearly white and very firm. Its texture and flavor have earned monkfish the nickname of "poor man's lobster." Monkfish absorb flavors easily and are baked, steamed, fried, grilled or broiled. They are also used for stews and soups.

Orange roughy are caught in the South Pacific off the coasts of New Zealand and Australia. They have bright orange skin and firm, pearly-white flesh with a low fat content and extremely bland flavor. Orange roughy are almost always marketed as skinless, boneless frozen fillets, averaging 6 to 8 ounces (140 to 225 grams) each. Widely available year-round, they can be broiled, steamed, grilled or prepared in the same manner as cod.

Red snapper is also known as the American or northern red snapper. Although there are many members of the snapper family, only one is the true red snapper. Red-skinned rockfish are often mislabeled as the more popular red snapper or Pacific snapper, a practice that is currently legal only in California. True red snapper has lean, pink flesh that becomes white when cooked; it is sweet flavored and flaky. They are sold whole or as fillets with the skin left on for identification. Red snapper may reach 35 pounds, but most are marketed at only 4 to 6 pounds (1.8 to 2.7 kilograms) or as 1- to 3-pound (450-gram to 1.3-kilogram) fillets. Red snapper can be prepared using almost any cooking method. The head and bones are excellent for stock.

Red Snapper

Salmon (Fr. *saumon*) flourish in both the northern Atlantic and Pacific Oceans, returning to the freshwater rivers and streams of their birth to spawn. Salmon flesh gets its distinctive pink-red color from fat-soluble carotenoids found in the crustaceans on which they feed.

Atlantic salmon is the most important commercially, accounting for one quarter of all salmon produced worldwide. Extensive aquafarms in Norway, Canada and Scotland produce a steady supply of Atlantic salmon. For marketing purposes, the fish's point of origin is often added to the name (for example, Norwegian, Scottish or Shetland Atlantic salmon). Atlantic salmon have a rich pink color and moist flesh. Their average weight is from 4 to 12 pounds (1.8 to 5.4 kilograms). Wild Atlantic salmon are almost never available.

Atlantic Salmon

Chinook or **king salmon** from the Pacific are also highly desirable. They average from 5 to 30 pounds (2.2 to 13.2 kilograms) and have red-orange flesh with a high fat content and rich flavor. Like other salmon, their flesh separates into large flakes when cooked. Chinooks are often marketed by the name of the river from which they are harvested (for example, Columbia, Yukon or Copper Chinook salmon). They are distinguished by the black interior of their mouth.

Chinook or King Salmon

Coho or **silver** salmon have a pinkish flesh and are available fresh or frozen, wild or from aquafarms. Wild coho average from 3 to 12 pounds (1.3 to 5.4 kilograms), while aquafarmed coho are much smaller, usually less than 1 pound (450 grams).

Other varieties, such as chum, sockeye, red, blueback and pink salmon, are usually canned but may be available fresh or frozen.

Salmon can be prepared by many cooking methods: broiling, grilling, poaching, steaming or baking. Frying is not recommended, however, because of their high fat content. Salmon fillets are often cured or smoked. **Gravlax** is salmon that has been cured for one to three days with salt, sugar and dill. **Lox** is salmon that has been cured in a salted brine and then, typically, cold-smoked. **Nova** is used in the eastern United States to refer to a less-salty, cold-smoked salmon.

Mini Coho Salmon

Blacktip Shark

Sharks provide delicious eating, despite their less-than-appealing appearance and vicious reputation. Mako and blue sharks are the most desirable, with mako often being sold as swordfish. Sand shark, sharpnose, blacktip, angel and thresher are also available commercially. Most sharks have lean flesh with a mild flavor and firm texture. The flesh is white with tinges of pink or red when raw, turning off-white when cooked. Makos weigh from 30 to 250 pounds (13.5 to 112.5 kilograms); other species may reach as much as 1000 pounds (450 kilograms). All sharks have cartilaginous skeletons and no bones; therefore, they are not actually fish, but rather marine invertebrates. Sharks are usually cut into loins or wheels, then into steaks or cubes. They can be broiled, grilled, baked or fried. An ammonia smell indicates that the shark was not properly treated when caught. Do not buy or eat it.

Swordfish take their name from the long, swordlike bill extending from their upper jaw. These popular fish average about 250 pounds (112.5 kilograms). Their flesh is lean and sweet with a very firm, meatlike texture; it may be gray, pink or off-white when raw, becoming white when cooked. Swordfish are most often available cut into wheels or portioned into steaks perfect for grilling or broiling.

Swordfish Wheel

Tilapia

Tilapia is the name given to several species of freshwater, aquafarm-raised fish bred worldwide. They grow quickly in warm water, reaching about 3 pounds (1.3 kilograms); they are available whole or filleted, fresh or frozen. The flesh is similar to catfish—lean, white and sweet, with a firm texture. Tilapia are sometimes marketed as cherry snapper or sunshine snapper, even though they are not members of the snapper family.

Trout (Fr. *truite*) are members of the salmon family. Most of the freshwater trout commercially available are aquafarm-raised rainbow trout, although brown trout and brook trout are also being aquafarmed. Some trout species spend part of their lives at sea, returning to fresh water to spawn. On the West Coast, these are called salmon trout or steelhead. Trout have a low to moderate fat content, a flaky texture and a delicate flavor that can be easily overwhelmed by strong sauces. The flesh may be white, orange or pink. Trout are usually marketed at 8 to 10 ounces (225 to 280 grams) each, just right for an individual portion. Lake trout, sometimes known as char, are not aquafarmed and have little commercial value because of their extremely high fat content. Trout can be baked, pan-fried, smoked or steamed.

Red Mountain Trout

Rainbow Trout

Tuna (Fr. *thon*) varieties include the bluefin, yellowfin, bonito, bigeye and blackfin. Ahi is the popular market name for either yellowfin or bigeye tuna. All are members of the mackerel family and are found in tropical and sub-

tropical waters around the world. Tuna are large fish, weighing up to several hundred pounds each. Bluefin, the finest and most desirable for sashimi, are becoming very scarce because of overfishing. Regular canned tuna is usually prepared from yellowfin or skipjack; canned white tuna is prepared from albacore, also known as longfin tuna. Pacific tuna that is frozen at sea to preserve its freshness is referred to as clipper fish. Any of these species may be found fresh or frozen, however. Tuna is usually cut into four boneless loins for market. The loins are then cut into steaks, cubes or chunks. The flesh has a low to moderate fat content (a higher fat content is preferred for sashimi) and a deep red color. The dark, reddish-brown muscle that runs along the lateral line is very fatty and can be removed. Tuna flesh turns light gray when cooked and is very firm, with a mild flavor. Tuna work well for grilling or broiling and may be marinated or brushed with seasoned oil during cooking. Tuna are often prepared medium rare to prevent dryness.

Yellowfin Tuna

Wahoo, also known as ono, are found throughout tropical and subtropical waters, but are particularly associated with Hawaii (*ono* even means "good to eat" in Hawaiian). They are actually a type of mackerel and are cooked like any other mackerel.

Wahoo

Whitefish species inhabit the freshwater lakes and streams of North America. Lake whitefish, the most important commercially, are related to salmon. They are marketed at up to 7 pounds (3.2 kilograms) and are available whole or filleted. The flesh is firm and white, with a moderate amount of fat and a sweet flavor. Whitefish may be baked, broiled, grilled or smoked and are often used in processed fish products.

Whitefish

Flatfish

Flounder (Fr. *flet*) have lean, firm flesh that is pearly or pinkish-white with a sweet, mild flavor. Although they are easily boned, most are deheaded and gutted at sea and sold as fresh or frozen fillets. These fillets are very thin and can dry out or spoil easily, so extra care should be taken in handling, preparing and storing them. Recipes that preserve moisture work best with flounder; poaching, steaming or frying are recommended. Many types of flounder are marketed as sole, perhaps in an attempt to cash in on the popularity of true sole. The FDA permits this practice.

English sole are actually flounder caught off the West Coast of the United States. They are usually marketed simply as "fillet of sole." They are a plentiful species of fair to average quality.

Petrale sole, another West Coast flounder, are generally considered the finest of the domestic "soles." They are most often available as fillets, which tend to be thicker and firmer than other sole fillets.

English Sole

Petrale Sole

Trash Fish

Ocean pout are considered a "trash fish," or fish that fishermen throw away because there is little or no consumer demand and therefore no market value.

Long ago, lobster were considered trash and good for nothing but chicken feed. More recently, monkfish was a trash fish in the U.S., and now we can't get enough. Obscure species are often trash fish until someone somewhere tastes them and realizes that they offer some incredible flavors and textures.

Searobins, dogfish, skate, and whiting are still considered trash fish in America, though they are gradually becoming more popular and will someday be readily available at fish markets.

from THE GREAT AMERICAN SEAFOOD COOKBOOK
by SUSAN HERRMANN LOOMIS

TABLE 19.1 FLOUNDER (ALSO KNOWN AS SOLE)

Atlantic Ocean	Pacific Ocean
Blackback/Winter flounder/Lemon sole	Arrowtooth
Fluke/Summer flounder	Petrale sole
Starry flounder	Rex sole
Yellowtail flounder	English sole
Windowpane flounder	Rock sole
Gray sole/Witch flounder	Sand sole
	Yellowfin sole
	Domestic Dover sole/Pacific flounder
	Butter sole

Lemon Sole

Domestic Dover sole are also Pacific flounder. They are not as delicate or flavorful as other species of sole or flounder. Moreover, they are often afflicted with a parasite that causes their flesh to have a slimy, gelatinous texture. Domestic Dover sole are not recommended if other sole or flounder are available.

Lemon sole are the most abundant and popular East Coast flounder. They are also known as blackback or winter flounder (during the winter, they migrate close to shore from the deeper, colder waters). They average 2 pounds (900 grams) in weight.

Alaskan Halibut

Halibut are among the largest flatfish; they often weigh up to 300 pounds (135 kilograms). The FDA recognizes only two halibut species: Atlantic (eastern) and Pacific (northern, Alaskan, western) halibut. Both have lean, firm flesh that is snow-white with a sweet, mild flavor. California halibut, which are actually flounder, are similar in taste and texture but average only 12 pounds (5.4 kilograms) each. Halibut may be cut into boneless steaks or skewered on brochettes. The flesh, which dries out easily, can be poached, baked, grilled or broiled and is good with a variety of sauces.

True Dover Sole

Sole (Fr. *sole*) are probably the most flavorful and finely textured flatfish. Indeed, because of the connotations of quality associated with the name, "sole" is widely used for many species that are not members of the sole (*Soleidae*) family. Even though the FDA allows many species of flatfish to be called "sole" for marketing purposes, no true sole is commercially harvested in American waters. Any flatfish harvested in American waters and marketed as sole is actually flounder.

True **Dover sole**, a staple of classic cuisine, are a lean fish with pearly-white flesh and a delicate flavor that can stand up to a variety of sauces and seasonings. They are a member of the *Soleidae* family and come only from the waters off the coasts of England, Africa and Europe. They are imported into this country as fresh whole fish or fresh or frozen fillets.

Turbot

Turbot are a Pacific flatfish of no great culinary distinction. In Europe, however, the species known as turbot (Fr. *turbot*) are large diamond-shaped fish highly prized for their delicate flavor and firm, white flesh. They are also marketed as brill.

Mollusks

Univalves

Univalves are mollusks with a single shell in which the soft-bodied animal resides. They are actually marine snails with a single foot, used to attach the creature to fixed objects such as rocks.

Abalone have brownish-gray, ear-shaped shells. They are harvested in California, but California law does not permit canning abalone or shipping it out of state. Some frozen abalone is available from Mexico; canned abalone is imported from Japan. Abalone are lean with a sweet, delicate flavor similar to that of clams. They are too tough to eat unless tenderized with a mallet or rolling pin. They may then be eaten raw or prepared seviche-style. Great care must be taken when grilling or sautéing abalone as the meat becomes very tough when overcooked.

Conch are found in warm waters off the Florida Keys and in the Caribbean. The beautiful peachy-pink shell of the queen conch is prized by beachcombers. Conch meat is lean, smooth and very firm with a sweet-smoky flavor and chewy texture. It can be sliced and pounded to tenderize it, eaten raw with lime juice or slow-cooked whole.

SNAILS

Although snails (more politely known by their French name, *escargots*) are univalve land animals, they share many characteristics with their marine cousins. They can be poached in court bouillon or removed from their shells and boiled or baked briefly with a seasoned butter or sauce. They should be firm but tender; overcooking makes snails tough and chewy. The most popular varieties are the large white Burgundy snail and the small garden variety called *petit gris*. Fresh snails are available from snail ranches through speciality suppliers. The great majority of snails, however, are purchased canned; most canned snails are produced in France or Taiwan.

Bivalves

Bivalves are mollusks with two bilateral shells attached by a central hinge.

Clams (Fr. *clovisses*) are harvested along both the East and West Coasts, with Atlantic clams being more significant commercially. Atlantic Coast clams include hard-shell, soft-shell and surf clams. Clams are available all year, either live in the shell or fresh-shucked (meat removed from the shell). Canned clams, whether minced, chopped or whole, are also available.

Atlantic hard-shell clams or **quahogs** have hard, blue-gray shells. Their chewy meat is not as sweet as other clam meat. Quahogs have different names, depending upon their size. **Littlenecks** are generally under 2 inches (5 centimeters) across the shell and usually are served on the half shell or steamed. They are the most expensive clams. **Cherrystones** are generally under 3 inches (7.5 centimeters) across the shell and are sometimes eaten raw but are more often cooked. **Topnecks** are usually cooked and are often served as stuffed clams. **Chowders**, the largest quahogs, are always eaten cooked, especially minced for chowder or soup.

Littlenecks

Cherrystones

Topnecks

Soft-shell clams, also known as Ipswich, steamer and long-necked clams, have thin, brittle shells that do not completely close because of the clam's protruding black-tipped siphon. Their meat is tender and sweet. They are sometimes fried but are more often served steamed.

Soft-Shell Clams

Surf clams are deep-water clams that reach sizes of 8 inches (20 centimeters) across. They are most often cut into strips for frying or are minced, chopped, processed and canned.

Pacific clams are generally too tough to eat raw. The most common is the **Manila clam**, which was introduced along the Pacific coast during the 1930s. Resembling a quahog with a ridged shell, it can be served steamed or on the half shell. **Geoducks** are the largest Pacific clam, sometimes weighing up to 10 pounds (4.5 kilograms) each. They look like huge soft-shell clams with a large, protruding siphon. Their tender, rich bodies and briny flavor are popular in Asian cuisines.

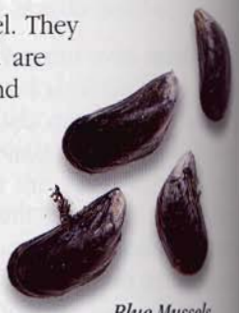
Manila Clams

Cockles

Cockles are small bivalves, about 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) long, with ridged shells. They are more popular in Europe than the United States and are sometimes used in dishes such as paella and fish soups or stews.

Mussels (Fr. *moule*) are found in waters worldwide. They are excellent steamed in wine or seasoned broth and can be fried or used in soups or pasta dishes.

Blue mussels are the most common edible mussel. They are found in the wild along the Atlantic Coast and are aquafarmed on both coasts. Their meat is plump and sweet with a firm, muscular texture. The orangish-yellow meat of cultivated mussels tends to be much larger than that of wild mussels and therefore worth the added cost. Blue mussels are sold live in the shell and average from 10 to 20 per pound. Although available all year, the best-quality blue mussels are harvested during the winter months.



Blue Mussels

Greenshell Mussels

Greenshell (or greenlip) **mussels** from New Zealand and Thailand are much larger than blue mussels, averaging 8 to 12 mussels per pound. Their shells are paler gray, with a distinctive bright-green edge.

Oysters (Fr. *huitre*) have a rough gray shell. Their soft, gray, briny flesh can be eaten raw directly from the shell. They can also be steamed or baked in the shell or shucked and fried, sautéed or added to stews or chowders. Most oysters available in this country are commercially grown and sold either live in the shell or shucked. There are four main domestic species.

Bluepoint Oysters

Gulf Oysters

Atlantic oysters, also called American or Eastern oysters, have darker, flatter shells than other oysters.

European Flat Oysters

European flat oysters are often incorrectly called Belon (true Belon oysters live only in the Belon river of France); they are very round and flat and look like giant brownish-green Olympias.

Olympias

Olympias are the only oysters native to the Pacific Coast; they are tiny (about the size of a 50-cent coin).

Pacific oysters, also called Japanese oysters, are aquafarmed along the Pacific Coast; they have curly, thick striated shells and silvery-gray to gold to almost-white meat.

Hamma-Hamma Oysters

Although it may seem as though there are hundreds of oyster species on the market, only two are commercially significant: the Atlantic oyster and the Pacific oyster. These two species yield dozens of different varieties, however, depending on their origin. For example, Atlantic oysters may be referred to as bluepoints, Chesapeake Bay, Florida Gulf, Long Island and so on, while Pacific oysters include Penn Cove Select, Westcott Bay, Hamma-hamma, Kumamoto and Portuguese, among others. An oyster's flavor reflects the minerals, nutrients and salts in its water and mud bed, so a Bristol from Maine and an Apalachicola from Florida will taste very different, even though they are the same Atlantic species.

Scallops contain an edible white adductor muscle that holds together the fan-shaped shells. Because they die quickly, they are almost always shucked and cleaned on-board ship. The sea scallop and the bay scallop, both cold-water varieties, and the calico scallop, a warm-water variety, are the most important commercially. Sea scallops are the largest, with an average count of 20–30 per pound. Larger sea scallops are also available. Bay scallops average 70–90 per pound; calico scallops average 70–110 per pound. Fresh or frozen shucked, cleaned scallops are the most common market form, but live scallops in the shell and shucked scallops with roe attached (very popular in Europe) are also available. Scallops are sweet, with a tender texture. Raw scallops should be a translucent ivory color, nonsymmetrically round and should feel springy. They can be steamed, broiled, grilled, fried, sautéed or baked. When overcooked, however, scallops quickly become chewy and dry. Only extremely fresh scallops should be eaten raw.

Sea Scallops

Cephalopods

Cephalopods are marine mollusks with distinct heads, well-developed eyes, a number of arms that attach to the head near the mouth and a saclike fin-bearing mantle. They do not have an outer shell; instead, there is a thin internal shell called a *pen* or *cuttlebone.*

Octopus is generally quite tough and requires mechanical tenderization or long, moist-heat cooking to make it palatable. Most octopuses are imported from Portugal, though fresh ones are available on the East Coast during the winter. Octopus is sold by the pound, fresh or frozen, usually whole. Octopus skin is gray when raw, turning purple when cooked. The interior flesh is white, lean, firm and flavorful.

Squid, known by their Italian name, *calamari*, are becoming increasingly popular in this country. Similar to octopuses but much smaller, they are harvested along both American coasts and elsewhere around the world (the finest are the East Coast loligo or winter squid). They range in size from an average of 8–10 per pound to the giant South American squid, which is sold as tenderized steaks. The squid's tentacles, mantle (body tube) and fins are edible. Squid meat is white to ivory in color, turning darker with age. It is moderately lean, slightly sweet, firm and tender, but it toughens quickly if overcooked. Squid are available either fresh or frozen and packed in blocks.

Squid

Crustaceans

Crustaceans are found in both fresh and salt water. They have a hard outer shell and jointed appendages, and they breathe through gills.

Crayfish (Fr. *écrevisse*), generally called *crayfish* in the North and *crawfish* or *crawdad* in the South, are freshwater creatures that look like miniature lobsters. They are harvested from the wild or aquafarmed in Louisiana and the Pacific Northwest. They are from 3 1/2 to 7 inches (8 to 17.5 centimeters) in length when marketed and may be purchased live or precooked and frozen. The lean meat, found mostly in the tail, is sweet and tender. Crayfish can be boiled whole and served hot or cold. The tail meat can be deep-fried or used in soups, bisque or sauces. Crayfish are a staple of Cajun cuisine, often used in

Crayfish

gumbo, étouffée and jambalaya. Whole crayfish become brilliant red when cooked and may be used as a garnish.

Crabs (Fr. *crabe*) are found along the North American coast in great numbers and are shipped throughout the world in fresh, frozen and canned forms. Crab meat varies in flavor and texture and can be used in a range of prepared dishes, from chowders to curries to casseroles. Crabs purchased live should last up to five days; dead crabs should not be used.

Dungeness Crab

King crabs are very large crabs (usually around 10 pounds or 4.4 kilograms) caught in the very cold waters of the northern Pacific. Their meat is very sweet and snow-white. King crabs are always sold frozen, usually in the shell. In-shell forms include sections or clusters, legs and claws or split legs. The meat is also available in "fancy" packs of whole leg and body meat, or shredded and minced pieces.

Dungeness crabs are found along the West Coast. They weigh 1 1/2 to 4 pounds (680 grams to 1.8 kilograms), and have delicate, sweet meat. They are sold live, precooked and frozen, or as picked meat, usually in 5-pound (2.2-kilogram) vacuum-packed cans.

Blue crabs are found along the entire eastern seaboard and account for approximately 50% of the total weight of all crab species harvested in the United States. Their meat is rich and sweet. Blue crabs are available as hard-shell or soft-shell. Hard-shell crabs are sold live, precooked and frozen, or as picked meat. Soft-shell crabs are those harvested within six hours after molting and are available live (generally only from May 15 to September 15) or frozen. They are often steamed and served whole. Soft-shells can be sautéed, fried, broiled or added to soups or stews. Blue crabs are sold by size, with an average diameter of 4–7 inches (10–18 centimeters).

Blue Crab

Soft-Shell Crabs

Stone Crab

Snow or **spider crabs** are an abundant species, most often used as a substitute for the scarcer and more expensive king crab. They are harvested from Alaskan waters and along the eastern coast of Canada. Snow crab is sold precooked, usually frozen. The meat can be used in soups, salads, omelets or other prepared dishes. Legs are often served cold as an appetizer.

Stone crabs are generally available only as cooked claws, either fresh or frozen (the claws cannot be frozen raw because the meat sticks to the shell). In stone-crab fishery, only the claw is harvested. After the claw is removed, the crab is returned to the water where, in approximately 18 months, it regenerates a new claw. Claws average 2 1/2 to 5 1/2 ounces (75 to 155 grams) each. The meat is firm, with a sweet flavor similar to lobster. Cracked claws are served hot or cold, usually with cocktail sauce, lemon butter or other accompaniments.

Lobsters have brown to blue-black outer shells and firm, white meat with a rich, sweet flavor. Lobster shells turn red when cooked. They are usually poached, steamed, simmered, baked or grilled, and can be served hot or cold. Picked meat can be used in prepared dishes, soups or sautés. Lobsters must be kept alive until just before cooking. Dead lobsters should not be eaten. The Maine, also known as American or clawed lobster, and the spiny lobster are the most commonly marketed species.

Maine Lobster

Maine lobsters have edible meat in both their tails and claws; they are considered superior in flavor to all other lobsters. They come from the cold

waters along the Northeast Coast and are most often sold live. Maine lobsters may be purchased by weight (for example, 1 1/4 pounds [525 grams], 1 1/2 pounds [650 grams] or 2 pounds [900 grams] each), or as chix (that is, a lobster weighing less than one pound [450 grams]). Maine lobsters may also be purchased as culls (lobsters with only one claw) or bullets (lobsters with no claws). They are available frozen or as cooked, picked meat.

Figure 19.3 shows a cross section of a Maine lobster and identifies the stomach, tomalley (the olive-green liver) and coral (the roe). The stomach is not eaten; the tomalley and coral are very flavorful and are often used in the preparation of sauces and other items.

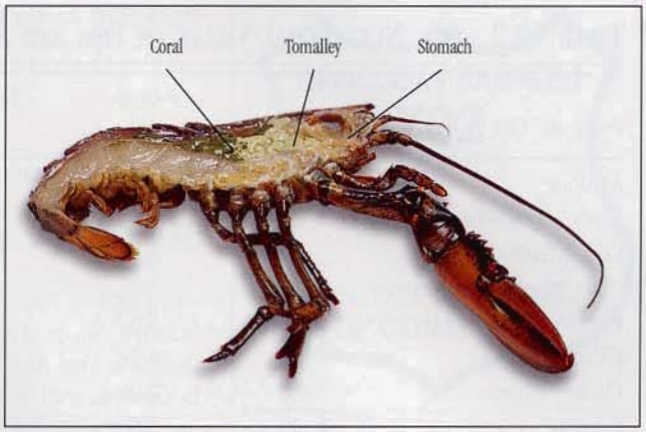


FIGURE 19.3

Spiny lobsters have very small claws and are valuable only for their meaty tails, which are notched with short spines. Nearly all spiny lobsters marketed in this country are sold as frozen tails, often identified as rock lobster. Harvested in many parts of the world, those found off Florida, Brazil and in the Caribbean are marketed as warm-water tails; those found off South Africa, Australia and New Zealand are called cold-water tails. Cold-water spiny tails are considered superior to their warm-water cousins.

Slipper lobster, lobsterette and **squat lobster** are all clawless species found in tropical, subtropical and temperate waters worldwide. Although popular in some countries, their flavor is inferior to both Maine and spiny lobsters. **Langoustine** are small North Atlantic lobsters.

Tiger Shrimp

Shrimp (Fr. *crevette*) are found worldwide and are widely popular. Gulf whites, pinks, browns and black tigers are just a few of the dozens of shrimp varieties used in food service operations. Although fresh, head-on shrimp are available, the most common form is raw, head-off (also called green headless) shrimp with the shell on. Most shrimp are deheaded and frozen at sea to preserve freshness. Shrimp are available in many forms: raw, peeled and deveined; cooked, peeled and deveined; individually quick frozen; as well as in a variety of processed, breaded or canned products. Shrimp are graded by size, which can range from 400 per pound (titi) to 8 per pound (extra-colossal), and are sold in counts per pound. For example, shrimp marketed as "21–26 count" means that there is an average of 21 to 26 shrimp per pound; shrimp marketed as "U-10" means that there are fewer than 10 shrimp per pound.

Shrimp

Green Headless Shrimp

Prawn is often used interchangeably with the word *shrimp* in English-speaking countries. Although it is perhaps more accurate to refer to freshwater species as prawns and saltwater species as shrimp, in commercial practice, prawn refers to any large shrimp. Equally confusing, *scampi* is the Italian name for the Dublin Bay prawn (which is actually a species of miniature lobster), but in this country *scampi* refers to shrimp sautéed in garlic butter.

Prawn

NUTRITION

Fish and shellfish are low in calories, fat and sodium, and are high in vitamins A, B and D and protein. Fish and shellfish are also high in minerals, especially calcium (particularly in canned fish with edible bones), phosphorus, potassium and iron (especially mollusks). Fish are high in a group of polyunsaturated fatty acids called omega-3, which may help combat high blood cholesterol levels and aid in preventing some heart disease. Shellfish are not as high in cho-

TABLE 19.2 NUTRITIONAL VALUES OF FISH AND SHELLFISH

Per 1 oz. (28 g) Raw	Kcal	Protein (g)	Total Fat (g)	Saturated Fat (g)	Cholesterol (mg)	Sodium (mg)
Abalone	30	4.8	0.2	<0.1	24	85
Clam, mixed species	21	3.6	0.3	<0.1	10	16
Cod, Atlantic	23	5.0	0.2	<0.1	12	15
Crab, Alaska king	24	5.2	0.2	mq	12	237
Flatfish	26	5.3	0.3	0.1	14	23
Lobster	26	5.3	0.3	mq	27	mq
Oyster, eastern	20	2.0	0.7	0.2	16	32
Salmon	40	5.6	1.8	0.3	16	113
Sea bass	27	5.2	0.6	0.1	12	19
Shrimp, mixed species	30	5.7	0.5	0.1	43	42
Surimi	28	4.3	0.3	mq	9	41
Tuna, Yellowfin	31	6.6	0.3	0.1	13	10
Whitefish	38	5.4	1.7	0.3	17	14

The Corinne T. Netzer Encyclopedia of Food Values 1992
mq = measurable quantity, but data is unavailable

lesterol as was once thought. Crustaceans are higher in cholesterol than mollusks, but both have considerably lower levels than red meat or eggs.

The cooking methods used for fish and shellfish also contribute to their healthfulness. The most commonly used cooking methods—broiling, grilling, poaching and steaming—add little or no fat.

INSPECTION AND GRADING OF FISH AND SHELLFISH

Inspection

Unlike mandatory meat and poultry inspections, fish and shellfish inspections are voluntary. They are performed in a fee-for-service program supervised by the United States Department of Commerce (USDC).

Type 1 inspection services cover plant, product and processing methods from the raw material to the final product. The "Packed Under Federal Inspection" (PUFI) mark or statement shown in Figure 19.4 can be used on product labels processed under Type 1 inspection services. It signifies that the product is safe and wholesome, properly labeled, has reasonably good flavor and odor, and was produced under inspection in an official establishment.

Type 2 inspection services are usually performed in a warehouse, processing plant or cold storage facility on specific product lots. See Figure 19.5. A lot inspection determines whether the product complies with purchase agreement criteria (usually defined in a spec sheet) such as condition, weight, labeling and packaging integrity.

Type 3 inspection services are for sanitation only. Fishing vessels or plants that meet the requirements are recognized as official establishments and are included in the *USDC Approved List of Fish Establishments and Products*. The list

FIGURE 19.4 *PUFI Mark and Statements*

is available to governmental and institutional purchasing agents as well as to retail and restaurant buyers.

Grading

Only fish processed under Type 1 inspection services are eligible for grading. Each type of fish has its own grading criteria, but because of the great variety of fish and shellfish, the USDC has been able to set grading criteria for only the most common types.

The grades assigned to fish are A, B or C. Grade A products are top quality and must have good flavor and odor and be practically free of physical blemishes or defects. The great majority of fresh and frozen fish and shellfish consumed in restaurants is Grade A. See Figure 19.6. Grade B indicates good quality; Grade C indicates fairly good quality. Grade B and C products are most often canned or processed.

FIGURE 19.5 *Product Inspection Stamps*

FIGURE 19.6 *Grade A Stamp*

PURCHASING AND STORING FISH AND SHELLFISH

Determining Freshness

Because fish and shellfish are highly perishable, an inspection stamp does not necessarily ensure top quality. A few hours at the wrong temperature or a couple of days in the refrigerator can turn high-quality fish or shellfish into garbage. It is important that you be able to determine for yourself the freshness and quality of the fish and shellfish you purchase or use. Freshness should be checked before purchasing and again just before cooking.

Freshness can be determined by:

1. *Smell*—This is by far the easiest way to determine freshness. Fresh fish should have a slight sea smell or no odor at all. Any off-odors or ammonia odors are a sure sign of aged or improperly handled fish.
2. *Eyes*—The eyes should be clear and full. Sunken eyes mean that the fish is drying out and is probably not fresh.
3. *Gills*—The gills should be intact and bright red. Brown gills are a sign of age.
4. *Texture*—Generally, the flesh of fresh fish should be firm. Mushy flesh or flesh that does not spring back when pressed with a finger is a sign of poor quality or age.
5. *Fins and scales*—Fins and scales should be moist and full without excessive drying on the outer edges. Dry fins or scales are a sign of age; damaged fins or scales may be a sign of mishandling.
6. *Appearance*—Fish cuts should be moist and glistening, without bruises or dark spots. Edges should not be brown or dry.
7. *Movement*—Shellfish should be purchased live and should show movement. Lobsters and other crustaceans should be active. Clams, mussels and oysters that are partially opened should snap shut when tapped with a finger. (Exceptions are geoduck, razor and steamer clams whose siphons protrude, preventing the shell from closing completely.) Ones that do not close are dead and should not be used. Avoid mollusks with broken shells or heavy shells that might be filled with mud or sand.

Purchasing Fish and Shellfish

Fish are available from wholesalers in a variety of market forms:

- **Whole** or **round**—as caught, intact.
- **Drawn**—viscera (internal organs) is removed; most whole fish are purchased this way.
- **Dressed**—viscera, gills, fins and scales are removed.
- **Pan-dressed**—viscera and gills are removed; fish is scaled and fins and tail are trimmed. The head is usually removed, although small fish, such as trout, may be pan-dressed with the head still attached. Pan-dressed fish are then pan-fried.
- **Butterflied**—a pan-dressed fish, boned and opened flat like a book. The two sides remain attached by the back or belly skin.

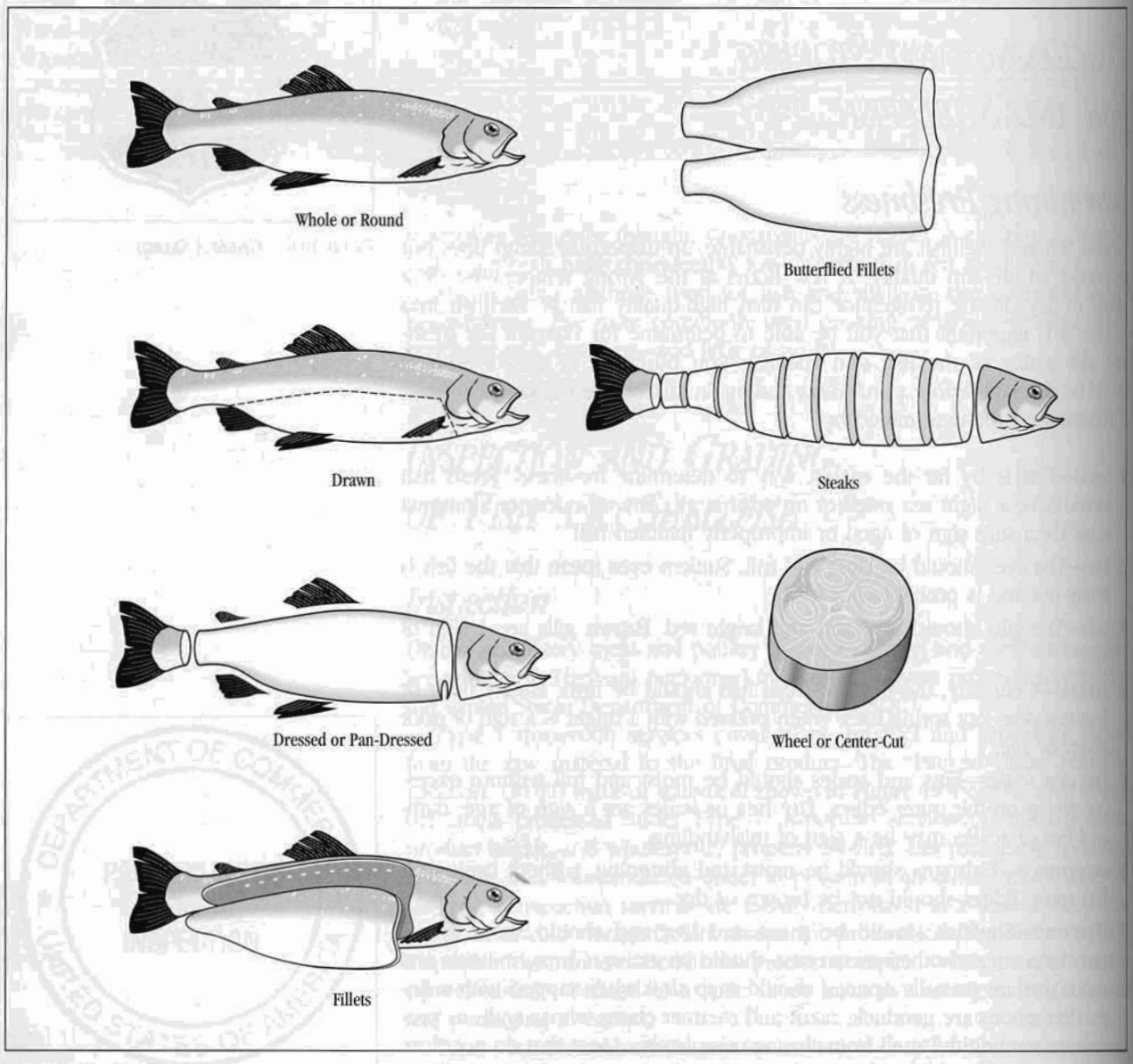


FIGURE 19.7 *Market Forms*

- **Fillet**—the side of a fish removed intact, boneless or semi-boneless, with or without skin.
- **Steak**—cross-section slice, with a small section of backbone attached; usually prepared from large round fish.
- **Wheel** or **center-cut**—used for swordfish and sharks, which are cut into large boneless pieces from which steaks are then cut.

You should purchase fish in the market forms most practical for your operation. Although fish fabrication is a relatively simple chore requiring little specialized equipment, before you decide to cut your own fish, you should consider:

1. The food service operation's ability to utilize the bones and trim that cutting whole fish produces
2. The employees' ability to fabricate fillets, steaks or portions as needed
3. The storage facilities
4. The product's intended use

Most shellfish can be purchased live in the shell, shucked (the meat removed from the shell) or processed. Both live and shucked shellfish are usually purchased by counts (that is, the number per volume). For example, standard live Eastern oysters are packed 200–250 (the count) per bushel (the unit of volume); standard Eastern oyster meats are packed 350 per gallon. Crustaceans are sometimes packed by size based on the number of pieces per pound; for example, crab legs or shrimp are often sold in counts per pound. Or they are sold either by grades based on size (whole crabs) or by weight (lobsters).

How Fresh is Frozen Fish?

Fresh—the item is not and has never been frozen.

Chilled—now used by some in the industry to replace the more ambiguous "fresh"; indicates that the item was refrigerated, that is, held at 30°F to 34°F (–1°C to 1°C).

Flash-frozen—the item was quickly frozen on-board ship or at a processing plant within hours of being caught.

Fresh-frozen—the item was quick-frozen while still fresh but not as quickly as flash-frozen.

Frozen—the item was subjected to temperatures of 0°F (–18°C) or lower to preserve its inherent quality.

Glazed—a frozen product dipped in water; the ice forms a glaze that protects the item from freezer burn.

Fancy—code word for "previously frozen."

Storing Fish and Shellfish

The most important concern when storing fish and shellfish is temperature. All fresh fish should be stored at temperatures between 30°F and 34°F (–1°C to 1°C). Fish stored in a refrigerator at 40°F (4°C) will have approximately half the shelf life of fish stored at 32°F (0°C).

Most fish are shipped on ice and should be stored on ice in the refrigerator as soon as possible after receipt. Whole fish should be layered directly in crushed or shaved ice in a perforated pan so that the melted ice water drains away. If crushed or shaved ice is not available, cubed ice may be used provided it is put in plastic bags and gently placed on top of the fish to prevent bruising and denting. Fabricated and portioned fish may be wrapped in moisture-proof packaging before icing to prevent the ice and water from damaging the exposed flesh. Fish stored on ice should be drained and re-iced daily.

Fresh scallops, fish fillets that are purchased in plastic trays, and oyster and clam meats should be set on or packed in ice. Do not let the scallops, fillets or meats come in direct contact with the ice.

Clams, mussels and oysters should be stored at 40°F (4°C), at high humidity and left in the boxes or net bags in which they were shipped. Under ideal conditions, shellfish can be kept alive for up to one week. Never store live shellfish in plastic bags and do not ice them.

If a saltwater tank is not available, live lobsters, crabs and other crustaceans should be kept in boxes with seaweed or damp newspaper to keep them moist. Most crustaceans circulate salt water over their gills; icing them or placing them in fresh water will kill them. Lobsters and crabs will live for several days under ideal conditions.

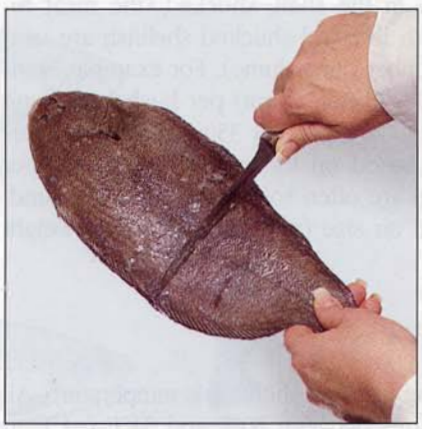
Like most frozen foods, frozen fish should be kept at temperatures of 0°F (−18°C) or colder. Colder temperatures greatly increase shelf life. Frozen fish should be thawed in the refrigerator; once thawed, they should be treated like fresh fish.

FABRICATING PROCEDURES

As discussed, fish and shellfish can be purchased in many forms. Here we demonstrate several procedures for cutting, cleaning and otherwise fabricating or preparing fish and shellfish for cooking and serving.

PROCEDURE FOR SCALING FISH

This procedure is used to remove the scales from fish that will be cooked with the skin on.



Place the fish on a work surface or in a large sink. Grip the fish by the tail and, working from the tail toward the head, scrape the scales off with a fish scaler or the back of a knife. Be careful not to damage the flesh by pushing too hard. Turn the fish over and remove the scales from the other side. Rinse the fish under cold water.

PROCEDURE FOR PAN-DRESSING FLATFISH

1. Place the scaled fish on a cutting board and remove the head by making a V-shaped cut around it with a chef's knife. Pull the head away and remove the viscera.

2. Rinse the fish under cold water, removing all traces of blood and viscera from the cavity.

3. Using a pair of kitchen shears, trim off the tail and all of the fins.

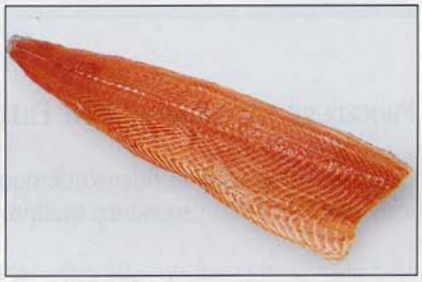
Procedure for Filleting Round Fish

Round fish produce two fillets, one from either side.

1. Using a chef's knife, cut down to the backbone just behind the gills. Do not remove the head.

2. Turn the knife toward the tail; using smooth strokes, cut from head to tail, parallel to the backbone. The knife should bump against the backbone so that no flesh is wasted; you will feel the knife cutting through the small pin bones. Cut the fillet completely free from the bones. Repeat on the other side.

3. Trim the rib bones from the fillet with a flexible boning knife.

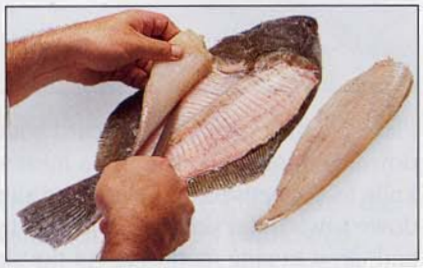


4. The finished fillet.

Procedure for Filleting Flatfish

Flatfish produce four fillets: two large bilateral fillets from the top and two smaller bilateral fillets from the bottom. If the fish fillets are going to be cooked with the skin on, the fish should be scaled before cooking (it is easier to scale the fish before it is filleted). If the skin is going to be removed before cooking, it is not necessary to scale the fish.

1. With the dark side of the fish facing up, cut along the backbone from head to tail with the tip of a flexible boning knife.



2. Turn the knife and, using smooth strokes, cut between the flesh and the rib bones, keeping the flexible blade against the bone. Cut the fillet completely free from the fish. Remove the second fillet, following the same procedure.

3. Turn the fish over and remove the fillets from the bottom half of the fish, following the same procedure.

Procedure for Skinning Dover Sole

Dover sole is unique in that its skin can be pulled from the whole fish with a simple procedure. The flesh of other small flatfish such as flounder, petrale sole and other types of domestic sole is more delicate; pulling the skin away from the whole fish could damage the flesh. These fish should be skinned after they are filleted.

Make a shallow cut in the flesh perpendicular to the length of the fish, just in front of the tail and with the knife angled toward the head of the fish. Using a clean towel, grip the skin and pull it toward the head of the fish. The skin should come off cleanly, in one piece, leaving the flesh intact.

Procedure for Skinning Fish Fillets

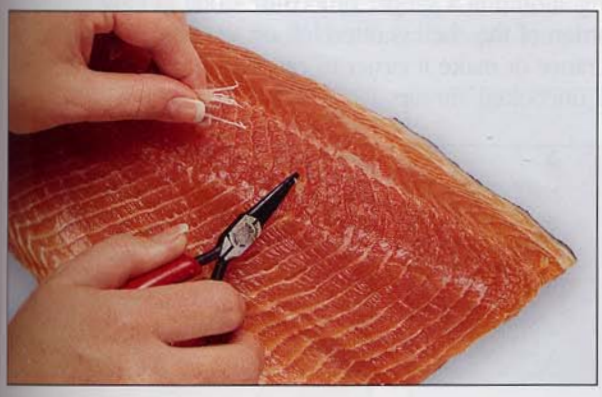
Here we use a salmon fillet to demonstrate the procedure for skinning fish fillets. Use the same procedure to skin all types of fish fillets.

Place the fillet on a cutting board with the skin side down. Starting at the tail, use a meat slicer or a chef's knife to cut between the flesh and skin. Angle the knife down toward the skin, grip the skin tightly with one hand and use a sawing motion to cut the skin cleanly away from the flesh.

Procedure for Pulling Pin Bones from Salmon Fillets

Round fish fillets contain a row of intramuscular bones running the length of the fillet. Known as pin bones, they are usually cut out with a knife to pro-

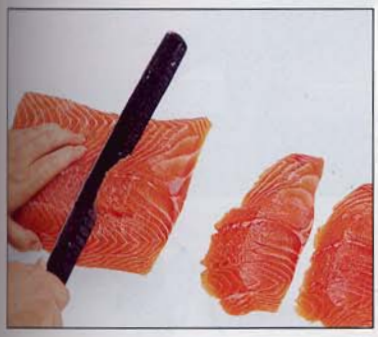
duce boneless fillets. In the case of salmon, they can be removed with salmon tweezers or small needle-nose pliers.



Place the fillet (either skinless or not) on the cutting board, *skin side down. Starting at the front or head end* of the fillet, use your fingertips to locate the bones and use the pliers to pull them out one by one.

Procedure for Cutting Tranches

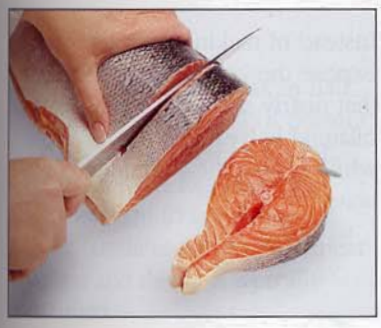
A **tranche** is a slice cut from fillets of large flat or round fish. Usually cut on an angle, tranches look large and increase plate coverage.



Place the fillet on the cutting board, skin side down. Using a slicer or chef's knife, cut slices of the desired weight. The tranche can be cut to the desired size by adjusting the angle of the knife. The greater the angle, the greater the surface area of the tranche.

Procedure for Cutting Steaks from Salmon and Similarly Sized Round Fish

Steaks are produced from salmon and similarly sized round fish by simply making crosscuts of the whole fish. First scale, gut and remove the fins from the fish. Then:



Using a chef's knife, cut through the fish, slicing steaks of the desired thickness. The steaks will contain some bones that are not necessarily removed.

Procedure for Peeling and Deveining Shrimp

Peeling and deveining shrimp is a simple procedure done in most commercial kitchens. The tail portion of the shell is often left on the peeled shrimp to give it an attractive appearance or make it easier to eat. This procedure can be used on both cooked and uncooked shrimp.

1. Grip the shrimp's tail between your thumb and forefinger. Use your other thumb and forefinger to grip the legs and the edge of the shell.

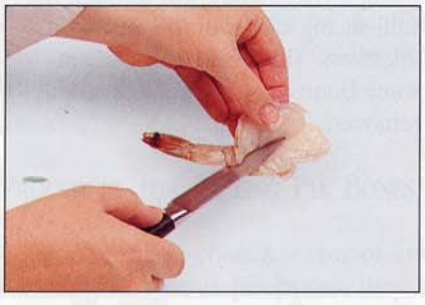
2. Pull the legs and shell away from the flesh, leaving the tail and first joint of the shell in place if desired.

3. Place the shrimp on a cutting board and use a paring knife to make a shallow cut down the back of the shrimp, exposing the digestive tract or "vein."

4. Pull out the vein while rinsing the shrimp under cold water.

Procedure for Butterflying Shrimp

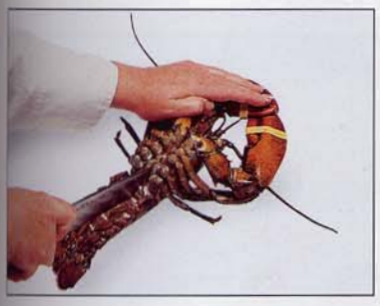
Butterflying raw shrimp improves their appearance and increases their surface area for even cooking. To butterfly shrimp, first peel them using the procedure outlined earlier. Then:



Instead of making a shallow cut to expose the vein, make a deeper cut that nearly slices the shrimp into two bilateral halves. Pull out the vein while rinsing the shrimp under cold water.

Procedure for Preparing Live Lobsters for Broiling

A whole lobster can be cooked by plunging it into boiling water or court bouillon. If the lobster is to be broiled, it must be split lengthwise before cooking.



1. Place the live lobster on its back on a cutting board and pierce its head with the point of a chef's knife. Then, in one smooth stroke, bring the knife down and cut through the body and tail without splitting it completely in half.

2. Use your hands to crack the lobster's back so that it lies flat. Crack the claws with the back of a chef's knife.

3. Cut through the tail and curl each half of the tail to the side. Remove and discard the stomach. The tomalley (the olive-green liver) and, if present, the coral (the roe) can be removed and saved for a sauce or other preparation.

Procedure for Preparing Live Lobsters for Sautéing

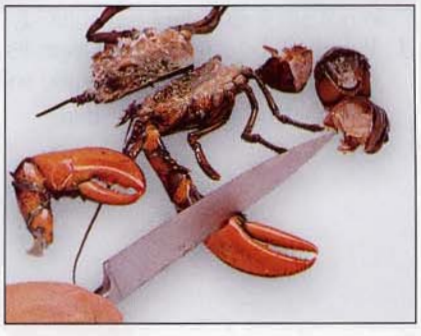
A whole lobster may also be cut into smaller pieces for sautéing or other preparations.

1. Using the point of a chef's knife, pierce the lobster's head.

2. Cut off the claws and arms.

3. Cut the tail into cross sections.

4. Split the head and thorax in half. The tomalley and coral (if present) can be removed and saved for further use. The head and legs may be added to the recipe for flavor, but there is very little meat in them and they are typically discarded.

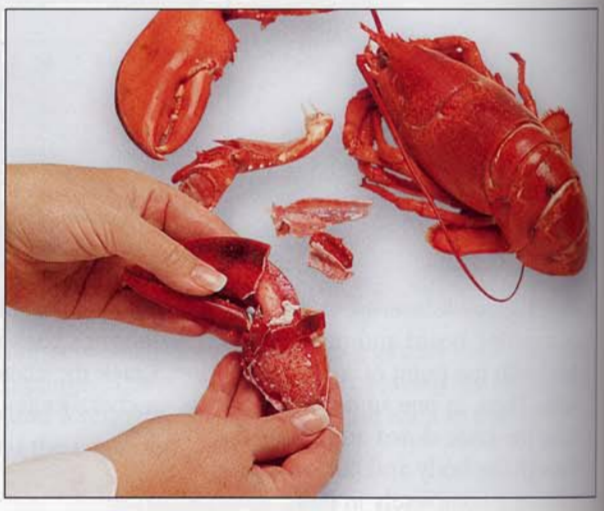


5. Crack the claws with a firm blow, using the back of a chef's knife.

Procedure for Removing Cooked Lobster Meat from the Shell

Many recipes call for cooked lobster meat. Cook the lobster by plunging it into a boiling court bouillon and simmering for 6–8 minutes per pound. Remove the lobster and allow it to cool until it can be easily handled. Then:

1. Pull the claws and large legs away from the body. Break the claw away from the leg. Split the legs with a chef's knife and remove the meat, using your fingers or a pick.



2. Carefully crack the claw with a mallet or the back of a chef's knife without damaging the meat. Pull out the claw meat in one piece.

3. Pull the lobster's tail away from its body and use kitchen shears to trim away the soft membrane on the underside of the tail.

4. Pull the meat out of the shell in one piece.

Procedure for Opening Clams

Opening raw clams efficiently requires practice. Like all mollusks, clams should be cleaned under cold running water with a brush to remove all mud, silt and sand that may be stuck to their shells. A knife may be more easily inserted into a clam if the clam is washed and allowed to relax in the refrigerator for at least one hour before it is opened.

1. Hold the clam firmly in a folded towel in the palm of your hand; the notch in the edge of the shell should be toward your thumb. With the fingers of the same hand, squeeze and pull the blade of the clam knife between the clamshells. Do not push on the knife handle with your other hand; you will not be able to control the knife if it slips and you can cut yourself.

2. Pull the knife between the shells until it cuts the muscle. Twist the knife to pry the shells apart. Slide the knife tip along the top shell and cut through the muscle. Twist the top shell, breaking it free at the hinge; discard it.

3. Use the knife tip to release the clam from the bottom shell.

Procedure for Opening Oysters

1. Clean the oyster by brushing it under running water.

2. Hold the cleaned oyster firmly in a folded towel in the palm of your hand. Insert the tip of an oyster knife in the hinge and use a twisting motion to pop the hinge apart. Do not use too much forward pressure on the knife; it can slip and you could stab yourself.

3. Slide the knife along the top of the shell to release the oyster from the shell. Discard the top shell.

4. Use the knife tip to release the oyster from the bottom shell.

Procedure for Cleaning and Debearding Mussels

Mussels are not normally eaten raw. Before cooking, a clump of dark threads called the beard must be removed. Because this could kill the mussel, cleaning and debearding must be done as close to cooking time as possible.

1. Clean the mussel with a brush under cold running water to remove sand and grit.

2. Pull the beard away from the mussel with your fingers or a small pair of pliers.

Applying Various Cooking Methods

Fish and shellfish can be prepared by the dry-heat cooking methods of broiling and grilling, roasting (baking), sautéing, pan-frying and deep-frying, as well as the moist-heat cooking methods of steaming, poaching and simmering. Other than deep-frying, which is discussed in Chapter 21, these cooking methods are discussed here.

Determining Doneness

Unlike most meats and poultry, nearly all fish and shellfish are inherently tender and should be cooked just until done. Indeed, overcooking is the most common mistake made when preparing fish and shellfish. The Canadian Department of Fisheries recommends that all fish be cooked 10 minutes for every inch (2.5 centimeters) of thickness, regardless of cooking method. Although this may be a good general policy, variables such as the type and the form of fish and the exact cooking method used suggest that one or more of the following methods of determining doneness are more appropriate for professional food service operations:

1. *Translucent flesh becomes opaque*—The raw flesh of most fish and shellfish appears somewhat translucent. As the proteins coagulate during cooking, the flesh becomes opaque.
2. *Flesh becomes firm*—The flesh of most fish and shellfish firms as it cooks. Doneness can be tested by judging the resistance of the flesh when pressed with a finger. Raw or undercooked fish or shellfish will be mushy and soft. As it cooks, the flesh offers more resistance and springs back quickly.
3. *Flesh separates from the bones easily*—The flesh of raw fish remains firmly attached to the bones. As the fish cooks, the flesh and bones separate easily.
4. *Flesh begins to flake*—Fish flesh consists of short muscle fibers separated by thin connective tissue. As the fish cooks, the connective tissue breaks down and the groups of muscle fibers begin to flake, that is, separate from one

another. Fish is done when the flesh *begins* to flake. If the flesh flakes easily, the fish will be overdone and dry.

Remember, fish and shellfish are subject to carryover cooking. Because they cook quickly and at low temperatures, it is better to undercook fish and shellfish and allow carryover cooking or residual heat to finish the cooking process.

Dry-Heat Cooking Methods

Dry-heat cooking methods are those that do not require additional moisture at any time during the cooking process. The dry-heat cooking methods used with fish and shellfish are broiling and grilling, roasting (usually referred to as baking when used with fish and shellfish), sautéing, pan-frying and deep-frying.

Broiling and Grilling

After brushing with oil or butter, fish can be grilled directly on the grate or placed on a heated platter under the broiler. Broiled or grilled fish should have a lightly charred surface and a slightly smoky flavor as a result of the intense radiant heat of the broiler or grill. The interior should be moist and juicy. Broiled or grilled shellfish meat should be moist and tender with only slight coloration from the grill or broiler.

Selecting Fish and Shellfish to Broil or Grill

Nearly all types of fish and shellfish can be successfully broiled or grilled. Salmon, trout, swordfish and other oily fish are especially well suited to grilling, as are lean fish such as bass and snapper. Fillets of lean flatfish with delicate textures, such as flounder and sole, are better broiled. They should be placed on a preheated broiling (sizzler) platter before being placed under the broiler.

Oysters and clams are often broiled on the half shell with flavored butters, bread crumbs or other garnishes and served sizzling hot. Squid can be stuffed, secured with a toothpick and broiled or grilled. Brushed with butter, split lobsters, king crabs and snow crabs are often broiled or grilled. Whole lobsters can be split and broiled or grilled, or their tails can be removed, split and cooked separately. Large crab legs can also be split and broiled or grilled. Shrimp and scallops are often broiled in flavored butters or grilled on skewers for easy handling.

Seasoning Fish and Shellfish to be Broiled or Grilled

All fish should be brushed lightly with butter or oil before being placed on the grill or under the broiler. The butter or oil prevents sticking and helps leaner fish retain moisture. For most fish, a simple seasoning of salt and pepper suffices. But most fish do respond well to marinades, especially those made with white wine and lemon juice. Because most fish are delicately flavored, they should be marinated for only a brief time. (Even marinated fish should be brushed with butter or oil before cooking.) Herbs should be avoided because they will burn from the intense heat of the broiler or grill.

Clams, oysters and other shellfish that are stuffed or cooked with butters, vegetables, bacon or other accompaniments or garnishes gain flavor from these ingredients. Be careful, however, not to overpower the delicate flavors of the shellfish by adding too many strong flavorings.

Accompaniments to Broiled and Grilled Fish and Shellfish

Lemon wedges are the traditional accompaniment to broiled or grilled fish and shellfish. But they can be served with sauces made separately. Butter sauces

such as a beurre blanc are popular, as their richness complements the lean fish. Vegetable coulis are a good choice for a healthier, lower-fat accompaniment. Additional sauce suggestions are found in Table 10.5. If the item is cooked on a broiler platter with a seasoned butter, it is often served with that butter.

Almost any side dish goes well with broiled or grilled fish or shellfish. Fried or boiled potatoes, pasta and rice are all good choices. Grilled vegetables are a natural choice.

Procedure for Broiling or Grilling Fish and Shellfish

All fish is delicate and must be carefully handled to achieve an attractive finished product. When broiling whole fish or fillets with their skin still on, score the skin by making several diagonal slashes approximately 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) deep at even intervals. This prevents the fish from curling during cooking, promotes even cooking and creates a more attractive finished product. Be especially careful not to overcook the item. It should be served as hot as possible as soon as it is removed from the broiler or grill.

1. Heat the broiler or grill.
2. Use a wire brush to remove any charred or burnt particles that may be stuck to the broiler or grill grate. The grate can be wiped with a lightly oiled towel to remove any remaining particles and help season it.
3. Prepare the item to be broiled or grilled. For example, cut the fish into steaks or tranches of even thickness; split the lobster; peel and/or skewer the shrimp. Season or marinate the item as desired. Brush the item with oil or butter.
4. Place the item presentation side down on a grill. If using a broiler, place the item directly on the grate or on a preheated broiler platter. Tender fish are usually broiled presentation side up on a broiler platter.
5. If practical, turn the item to produce the attractive crosshatch marks associated with grilling that are discussed in Chapter 9, Principles of Cooking. Items less than 1/2 inch (12 millimeters) thick cooked on a preheated broiler platter do not have to be turned over.
6. Cook the item to the desired doneness and serve immediately.

RECIPE 19.1

Broiled Black Sea Bass with Herb Butter and Sautéed Leeks

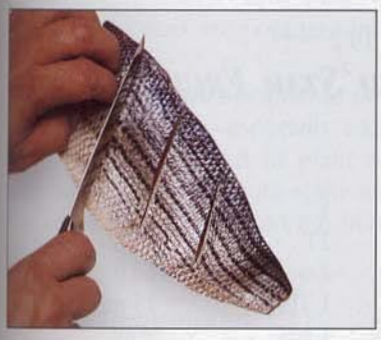
Yield: 1 serving

Black sea bass fillet, skin on, approx. 8 oz. (225 g)	1	1
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Whole butter, melted	as needed	as needed
Leek, julienne	1	1
Lemon juice	2 tsp.	10 ml
Herb butter (pg. 211)	2 slices	2 slices

1. Score the skin with three diagonal cuts approximately 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) deep.
2. Season the fillet with salt and pepper and brush with melted butter.

3. Place the fillet on a preheated broiler platter, skin side up, and place under the broiler.
4. Blanch the julienned leeks in boiling water until nearly tender.
5. Drain the leeks and sauté them in 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) of whole butter until tender. Add the lemon juice; season with salt and pepper.
6. Remove the fish from the broiler when done. Top with the herb butter and serve on a bed of sautéed leeks.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 260, **Total fat** 15 g, **Saturated fat** 8 g, **Cholesterol** 80 mg, **Sodium** 790 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 11 g, **Protein** 21 g, **Vitamin A** 15%, **Vitamin C** 15%



1. Scoring the fish skin.

2. Placing the fish on a broiler platter, under the broiler.

3. Serving the fish on a bed of sautéed leeks.

Baking

The terms *baking* and *roasting* are used interchangeably when applied to fish and shellfish. One disadvantage of baking fish is that the short baking time does not allow the surface of the fish to caramelize. To help correct this problem, fish can be browned in a sauté pan with a small amount of oil to achieve the added flavor and appearance of a browned surface, and then finished in an oven.

Selecting Fish and Shellfish to Bake

Fatty fish produce the best baked fish. Fish fillets and steaks are the best market forms to bake, as they cook quickly and evenly and are easily portioned. Although lean fish can be baked, it tends to become dry, and must be basted often.

Seasoning Fish and Shellfish to be Baked

The most popular seasonings for baked fish are lemon, butter, salt and pepper. Fish can also be marinated before baking for added flavor. But baked fish usually depend on the accompanying sauce for much of their flavor.

Shellfish are often stuffed or mixed with other ingredients before baking. For example, raw oysters on the half shell can be topped with spinach, watercress and Pernod (oysters Rockefeller) and baked. Shrimp are often butterflied, stuffed and baked; lobsters are split, stuffed and baked. Many food service operations remove clams from their shells; mix them with bread crumbs, seasonings or other ingredients; refill the shells and bake the mixture.

Accompaniments to Baked Fish and Shellfish

Baked fish is often served with a flavorful sauce such as a creole sauce (pg. 205) or a beurre blanc (pg. 210). Additional sauce suggestions are found in Table 10.5. Almost any type of rice, pasta or potato is a good accompaniment, as is any variety of sautéed vegetable.

Procedure for Baking Fish and Shellfish

1. Portion the fish or shellfish and arrange on a well-oiled or buttered pan, presentation side up.
2. Season as desired and brush the surface of the fish or shellfish generously with melted butter; add garnishes or flavorings as desired or directed in the recipe.
3. Place the pan in a preheated oven at approximately 400°F (200°C).
4. Baste periodically during the cooking process (more often if the fish is lean). Remove from the oven when the fish is slightly underdone.

RECIPE 19.2

Baked Red Snapper with Star Fruit Chutney

Yield: 4 servings

Red snapper fillets, 8 oz. (250 g) each	4	4
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
Whole butter, melted	2 oz.	60 g
Mint leaves, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Garlic, minced	1 tsp.	5 ml
Tomato concassée	4 oz.	120 g
White wine	2 oz.	60 ml
Lemon juice	2 oz.	60 ml
Star Fruit Chutney (Recipe 10.38)	12 oz.	350 g

1. Place the snapper on a buttered baking pan. Season the fillets with salt and white pepper; brush with butter.
2. Combine the mint, garlic and tomatoes, and spoon on top of each portion of the fish.
3. Add the white wine and lemon juice to the pan.
4. Bake at 400°F (200°C), basting once halfway through the cooking process, until done, approximately 15 minutes.
5. Serve each portion on a bed of 3 ounces (90 grams) of Star Fruit Chutney.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 600, **Total fat** 16 g, **Saturated fat** 8 g, **Cholesterol** 140 mg, **Sodium** 850 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 55 g, **Protein** 60 g, **Vitamin A** 25%, **Vitamin C** 35%

1. Brushing the fillets with butter.

2. Topping each portion with mint and tomato concassée.

3. The finished fish.

Sautéing

Sautéing is a very popular cooking method for fish and shellfish. It lightly caramelizes the food's surface, giving it additional flavor. Typically, other ingredients such as garlic, onions, vegetables, wine and lemon juice are added to the fond to make a sauce.

Selecting Fish and Shellfish to Sauté

Both fatty and lean fish may be sautéed. Flatfish are sometimes dressed and sautéed whole, as are small round fish such as trout. Larger fish such as salmon can be cut into steaks or filleted and cut into tranches. The portions should be relatively uniform in size and thickness and fairly thin to promote even cooking. Although clams, mussels and oysters are not often sautéed, scallops and crustaceans are popular sauté items.

Seasoning Fish and Shellfish to be Sautéed

Many types of fish—especially sole, flounder and other delicate, lean fish fillets—are often dredged in plain or seasoned flour before sautéing. Seasoned butter is used to sauté some items, such as scampi-style shrimp. These items derive their flavor from the butter; additional seasonings should not be necessary.

Cooking Temperatures

The sauté pan and cooking fat must be hot before the fish or shellfish are added. Do not add too much fish or shellfish to the pan at one time, or the pan and fat will cool, letting the foods simmer in their own juices. Thin slices and small pieces of fish and shellfish require a short cooking time, so use high temperatures in order to caramelize their surfaces without overcooking. Large, thick pieces of fish or shellfish being cooked in the shell may require slightly lower cooking temperatures to ensure that they are cooked without overbrowning their surfaces.

Accompaniments to Sautéed Fish and Shellfish

Sautéed fish and shellfish are nearly always served with a sauce made directly in the sauté pan. This sauce may be as simple as browned butter (beurre noisette) or a complicated sauce flavored with the fond. In some cases, seasoned butter is used to sauté the fish or shellfish and the butter is then served with the main item. See Table 10.5 for additional sauce suggestions.

Mildly flavored rice and pasta are good choices to serve with sautéed fish or shellfish.

Procedure for Sautéing Fish and Shellfish

1. Cut or portion the fish or shellfish.
2. Season the item and dredge in seasoned flour if desired.
3. Heat a suitable sauté pan over moderate heat; add enough oil or clarified butter to cover the bottom to a depth of about 1/8 inch (3 millimeters).
4. Add the fish or shellfish to the pan (fish should be placed presentation side down); cook until done, turning once halfway through the cooking process. Add other foods as called for in the recipe.
5. Remove the fish or shellfish. If a sauce is to be made in the sauté pan, follow the procedures discussed in Chapter 17, Poultry.

RECIPE 19.3

SAUTÉED HALIBUT WITH THREE-COLOR PEPPERS AND SPANISH OLIVES

Yield: 4 servings

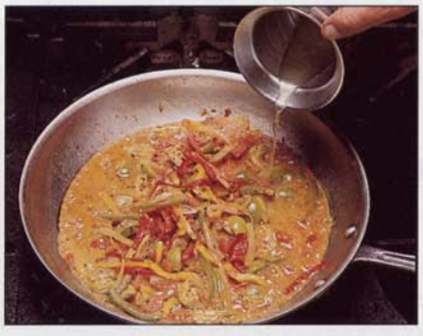
Halibut fillets, 6 oz. (170 g) each	4	4
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Olive oil	2 oz.	60 ml
Onion, sliced	3 oz.	90 g
Garlic, minced	2 tsp.	10 ml
Green bell pepper, julienne	3 oz.	90 g
Red bell pepper, julienne	3 oz.	90 g
Yellow bell pepper, julienne	3 oz.	90 g
Tomato concassée	8 oz.	250 g
Spanish olives, pitted and quartered	2 oz.	60 g
Fresh thyme, chopped	2 tsp.	10 ml
Lemon juice	2 oz.	60 ml
Fish stock	2 oz.	60 ml

1. Season the fillets with salt and pepper.
2. Heat a sauté pan and add the olive oil.
3. Sauté the halibut, turning once. Remove and reserve in a warm place.
4. Add the onions and garlic to the same pan and sauté for approximately 1 minute. Add the peppers and sauté for 1–2 minutes more.
5. Add the tomato concassée, olives and thyme; sauté briefly.
6. Add the lemon juice and deglaze the pan. Add the fish stock, simmer for 2 minutes to blend the flavors and adjust the seasonings.
7. Return the fish to the pan to reheat. Serve each fish fillet on a bed of vegetables with sauce and an appropriate garnish.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 420, **Total fat** 21 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 70 mg, **Sodium** 870 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 10 g, **Protein** 47 g, **Vitamin A** 15%, **Vitamin C** 110%

1. Sautéing the halibut fillets.

2. Sautéing the onions, garlic and peppers.



3. Adding the fish stock.

4. Returning the fish to the pan to reheat.

Pan-Frying

Pan-frying is very similar to sautéing, but it uses more fat to cook the main item. Pan-fried fish is always coated with flour, batter or breading to help seal the sur-

face and prevent the flesh from coming in direct contact with the cooking fat. Properly prepared pan-fried fish and shellfish should be moist and tender with a crisp surface. If battered or breaded, the coating should be intact with no breaks.

Selecting Fish and Shellfish to Pan-Fry

Both fatty and lean fish may be pan-fried. Trout and other small fish are ideal for pan-frying, as are portioned fillets of lean fish such as halibut. Pan-fried fish and shellfish should be uniform in size and relatively thin so that they cook quickly and evenly.

Seasoning Fish and Shellfish to be Pan-Fried

Although fish and shellfish can be marinated or seasoned directly, it is more common to season the flour, batter or breading that will coat them. Batters, for example, can contain cheese, and breadings can contain nuts and other ingredients to add different flavors to the fish or shellfish. Review the battering and breading procedures discussed in Chapter 21, Deep-Frying. Additional seasonings come from sauces and other accompaniments served with the pan-fried fish or shellfish.

Cooking Temperatures

The fat should always be hot before the fish or shellfish are added. Breaded or battered fish fillets cook very quickly, and the fat should be hot enough to brown the coating without overcooking the interior. Whole pan-fried fish take longer to cook and therefore require a slightly lower cooking temperature so that the surface does not become too dark before the interior is cooked.

Accompaniments to Pan-Fried Fish and Shellfish

Lemon wedges are the classic accompaniment to pan-fried fish and shellfish. Sauces that accompany pan-fried items are made separately. Mayonnaise-based sauces such as tartar sauce (Recipe 24.20) and rémoulade sauce are especially popular; rich wine-based sauces should be avoided. Vegetable coulis, such as tomato, also complement many pan-fried items. Additional sauce suggestions are found in Table 10.5.

Procedure for Pan-Frying Fish and Shellfish

1. Heat enough clarified butter or oil in a heavy sauté pan so that it will come one third to halfway up the side of the item. The fat should be at a temperature between 325°F and 350°F (160°C–180°C).
2. Add the floured, breaded or battered item to the pan, being careful not to splash the hot fat. Cook until done, turning once halfway through the cooking process.
3. Remove the food and drain on absorbent paper.
4. Serve it promptly with an appropriate sauce.

RECIPE 19.4

Blue Crab Cakes with Fresh Salsa

Yield: 15 2-oz. (60-g) cakes

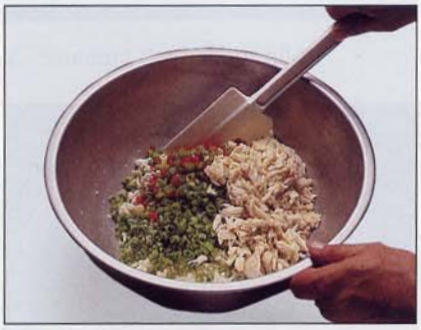
Blue crab meat	1 lb.	450 g
Heavy cream	6 oz.	180 ml
Red bell pepper, small dice	2 oz.	60 g
Green bell pepper, small dice	2 oz.	60 g

Continued

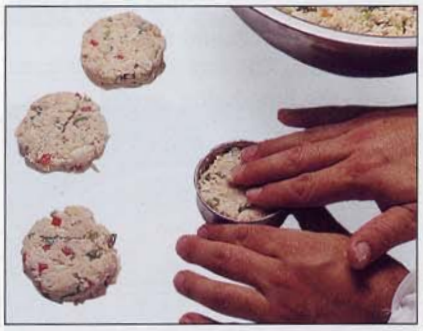
Clarified butter	as needed	as needed
Green onions, sliced	1 bunch	1 bunch
Fresh bread crumbs	6 oz.	180 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Dijon mustard	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Worcestershire sauce	TT	TT
Tabasco sauce	TT	TT
Egg, slightly beaten	1	1
Tomato Salsa (Recipe 10.18)	1 pt.	500 ml

1. Carefully pick through the crab meat, removing any pieces of shell. Keep the lumps of crab meat as large as possible.
2. Place the cream in a saucepan and bring to a boil. Reduce by approximately one half. Chill the cream well.
3. Sauté the red and green bell peppers in a small amount of clarified butter until tender.
4. Combine the crab meat, reduced cream, peppers, green onions and approximately 3 ounces (90 grams) of the bread crumbs along with the salt, pepper, Dijon mustard, Worcestershire sauce, Tabasco sauce and egg. Mix to combine all ingredients, trying to keep the lumps of crab meat intact.
5. Using a mold, form the crab mixture into cakes of the desired size.
6. Place the remaining bread crumbs in an appropriately sized hotel pan. Place the crab cakes, a few at a time, in the hotel pan and cover with the bread crumbs. To help them adhere, press the crumbs lightly into the cakes.
7. Heat a sauté pan over moderate heat and add enough clarified butter to cover the bottom approximately 1/4 inch (1/2 centimeter) deep.
8. Add the crab cakes to the pan and cook until done, turning once when the first side is nicely browned. Remove and drain on absorbent paper.
9. Serve the crab cakes with fresh tomato salsa.

Approximate values per 2-oz. (60-g) cake serving: **Calories** 130, **Total fat** 6 g, **Saturated fat** 3.5 g, **Cholesterol** 60 mg, **Sodium** 650 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 9 g, **Protein** 10 g, **Vitamin C** 15%



1. Mixing all ingredients for the crab cakes.



2. Forming the crab cakes.

3. Pan-frying the crab cakes.

Moist-Heat Cooking Methods

Fish and shellfish lend themselves well to moist-heat cooking methods, especially steaming, poaching and simmering. Steaming best preserves the food's natural flavors and cooks without adding fat. Poaching is also popular, especially for fish. Poached fish can be served hot or cold, whole or as steaks, fillets or portions. Boiling, which is actually simmering, is most often associated with crustaceans.

Steaming

Steaming is a very natural way to cook fish and shellfish without adding fats. Fish are steamed by suspending them over a small amount of boiling liquid in a covered pan. The steam trapped in the pan gently cooks the food while preserving its natural flavors and most nutrients. The liquid used to steam fish and shellfish can be water or a court bouillon with herbs, spices, aromatics or wine added to infuse the item with additional flavors. Mussels and clams can be steamed by placing them directly in a pan, adding a small amount of wine or other liquid and covering them. Their shells will hold them above the liquid as they cook. Fish and shellfish can also be steamed by wrapping them in parchment paper together with herbs, vegetables, butters or sauces as accompaniments and baking them in a hot oven. This method of steaming is called **en papillote**.

Steamed fish and shellfish should be moist and tender. They should have clean and delicate flavors. Any accompaniments or sauces should complement the main item without masking its flavor. Fish and shellfish cooked en papillote should be served piping hot so that the aromatic steam trapped by the paper escapes as the paper is cut open tableside.

Selecting Fish and Shellfish to Steam

Mollusks (for example, clams and mussels), fatty fish (for example, salmon and sea bass) and lean fish (for example, sole) all produce good results when steamed. The portions should be of uniform thickness and no more than 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) thick to promote even cooking.

Seasoning Fish and Shellfish to be Steamed

Steamed fish and shellfish rely heavily on their natural flavors and often require very little seasoning. Nevertheless, salt, pepper, herbs and spices can be applied directly to the raw food before steaming. Flavored liquids used to steam fish and shellfish will contribute additional flavors. If the liquid is served with the fish or shellfish as a broth or used to make a sauce to accompany the item, it is especially important that the liquid be well seasoned. Lemons, limes and other fruits or vegetables can also be cooked with the fish or shellfish to add flavors. Clams and mussels often do not require additional salt as the liquor released when they open during cooking is sufficiently salty.

Accompaniments to Steamed Fish and Shellfish

Steamed fish and shellfish are popular partly because they are low in fat. In keeping with this perception, a low or nonfat sauce or a simple squeeze of lemon and steamed fresh vegetables are good accompaniments. If fat is not a concern, then an emulsified butter sauce such as beurre blanc (Recipe 10.16) or hollandaise (Recipe 10.15) may be a good choice. Table 10.5 lists several sauce suggestions.

Classic New England steamed clams are served with a portion of the steaming liquid; steamed mussels are served with a sauce that is created from the wine and other ingredients used to steam them.

Procedure for Steaming Fish and Shellfish

1. Portion the fish to an appropriate size. Clean the shellfish.
2. Prepare the cooking liquid. Add seasoning and flavoring ingredients as desired and bring to a boil.
3. Place the fish or shellfish in the steamer on a rack or in a perforated pan and cover tightly.

4. Steam the fish or shellfish until done.
5. Serve the fish or shellfish immediately with the steaming liquid or an appropriate sauce.

1. Placing the fish in the steamer.

2. Spooning the dressing over the fish.

RECIPE 19.5

Steamed Salmon with Lemon and Olive Oil

Yield: 1 serving

Lemon zest, blanched	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Lemon juice	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Virgin olive oil	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
White wine	8 oz.	250 ml
Bay leaf	1	1
Leek, chopped	2 oz.	60 g
Fresh thyme	1 sprig	1 sprig
Peppercorns, cracked	1 tsp.	5 ml
Salmon tranche or steak, approx. 6 oz. (180 g)	1	1

1. To make the dressing, combine the lemon zest, lemon juice, salt and pepper. Whisk in the olive oil.
2. Combine the wine, bay leaf, leeks, thyme and peppercorns in the bottom of a steamer.
3. Season the salmon with salt and pepper and place it in the steamer basket.
4. Cover the steamer and bring the liquid to a boil. Cook the fish until done, approximately 4–6 minutes.
5. Plate the salmon and spoon the dressing over it.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 620, **Total fat** 40 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 95 mg, **Sodium** 700 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 16 g, **Protein** 48 g, **Vitamin C** 50%

RECIPE 19.6

Red Snapper En Papillote

Yield: 6 servings

Clarified butter	as needed	as needed
Leek, julienne	3 oz.	90 g
Fennel, julienne	4 oz.	120 g
Carrot, julienne	3 oz.	90 g
Celery, julienne	3 oz.	90 g
Red bell pepper, julienne	3 oz.	90 g
Red snapper fillets, skin on, 6 oz. (180 g) each	6	6
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Basil Butter (pg. 211)	9 oz.	270 g

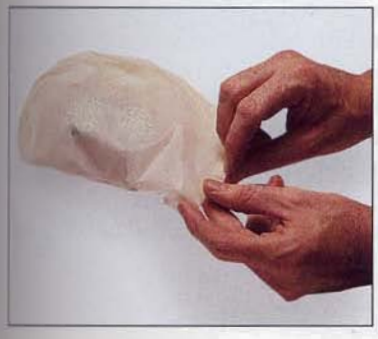
1. Cut six heart-shaped pieces of parchment paper large enough to contain one portion of the fish and vegetables when folded in half.
2. Brush each piece of parchment paper with clarified butter.

3. Toss the vegetables together. Place one sixth of the vegetables on half of each piece of the buttered parchment paper.
4. Place one portion of red snapper on each portion of vegetables, skin side up; season with salt and pepper.
5. Top each portion of fish with 1 1/2 ounces (45 grams) of basil butter.
6. Fold each piece of paper over and crimp the edges to seal it.
7. Place the envelopes (papillotes) on sheet pans and bake in a preheated oven at 450°F (230°C) for 8–10 minutes.
8. When baked, the parchment paper should puff up and brown. Remove from the oven and serve immediately. The envelope should be carefully cut open tableside to allow the aromatic steam to escape.

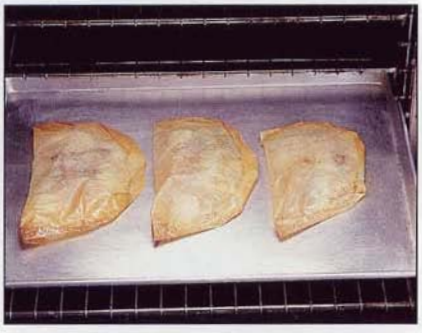
Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 380, **Total fat** 19 g, **Saturated fat** 11 g, **Cholesterol** 125 mg, **Sodium** 680 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 6 g, **Protein** 46 g, **Vitamin A** 50%, **Vitamin C** 30%

1. Cutting heart-shaped pieces of parchment paper.

2. Placing the vegetables, red snapper and compound butter on the buttered parchment paper.



3. Crimping the edge of the parchment paper to seal it.



4. The finished papillotes.

Poaching

Poaching is a versatile and popular method for cooking fish. Shellfish are rarely poached, however. The exception is squid, which can be quickly poached and chilled for use in salads and other preparations.

There are two distinct poaching methods.

The first is the **submersion method**, in which the fish is completely covered with a liquid, usually a court bouillon, fish stock or fish fumet. It is cooked until just done. The poached fish is then served (either hot or cold) with a sauce

sometimes made from a portion of the cooking liquid but more often made separately. Whole fish (wrapped in cheesecloth to preserve its shape during cooking), tranches and steaks can all be cooked by submersion poaching.

The second method, called **shallow poaching**, combines poaching and steaming to achieve the desired results. The main item, usually a fillet, tranche or steak, is placed on a bed of aromatic vegetables in enough liquid to come approximately halfway up its sides. The liquid, called a **cuisson**, is brought to a simmer on the stove top. The pan is then covered with a piece of buttered parchment paper or a lid, and cooking is completed either on the stove top or in the oven. Shallow-poached fish is usually served with a sauce made with the reduced cooking liquid. (Sometimes the main item is sautéed lightly before the cooking liquid is added. If so, the cooking method is more accurately braising, as both dry- and moist-heat cooking methods are used.)

Selecting Fish to Poach

Lean white fish such as turbot, bass and sole are excellent for poaching. Some fatty fish such as salmon and trout are also excellent choices.

Seasoning Fish to be Poached

Fish poached by either submersion or shallow poaching gain all of their seasonings from the liquid in which they are cooked and the sauce with which they are served. Therefore, it is very important to use a properly prepared court bouillon, fish fumet or a good-quality fish stock well seasoned with vegetables such as shallots, onions or carrots as well as ample herbs, spices and other seasonings. Many poached fish recipes call for wine. When using wine either in the cooking liquid or sauce, be sure to choose a wine of good quality. Most fish are very delicately flavored, and using poor-quality wine might ruin an otherwise excellent dish. Citrus, especially lemon, is always a popular seasoning; lemon juice or zest may be added to the poaching liquid, the sauce or the finished dish.

Accompaniments to Poached Fish

Poached fish cooked by submersion go well with rich sauces like hollandaise and beurre blanc. If fat is a concern, a better choice may be a vegetable coulis (for example, broccoli or red pepper). Cold poached fish are commonly served with mayonnaise-based sauces such as sauce vert or rémoulade. Shallow-poached fish are served with sauces such as a white wine sauce or beurre blanc made from a reduction of the liquids in which the fish were poached. See Table 10.5 for additional sauce suggestions.

Poached fish are often served with rice or pasta and steamed or boiled vegetables.

Procedure for Submersion Poaching

1. Prepare the cooking liquid. Whole fish should be started in a cold liquid; gradually increasing the liquid's temperature helps preserve the appearance of the fish. Portioned fish should be started in a simmering liquid to preserve their flavor and more accurately estimate cooking time.
2. Use a rack to lower the fish into the cooking liquid. Be sure the fish is completely submerged.
3. Poach the fish at 175°F–185°F (79°C–85°C) until done.
4. Remove the fish from the poaching liquid, moisten with a portion of the liquid and hold in a warm place for service. Or remove the fish from the poaching liquid, cover it to prevent drying and allow it to cool, then refrigerate.
5. Serve the poached fish with an appropriate sauce.

RECIPE 19.7

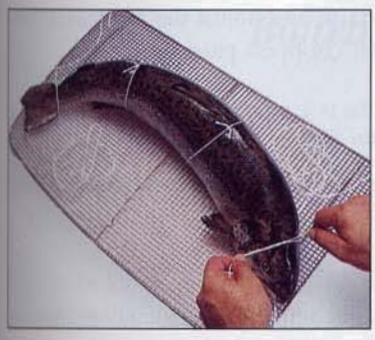
WHOLE POACHED SALMON

Yield: 18-20 servings

Salmon, drawn, 4–5 lb. (1.8–2.2 kg)	1	1
Court bouillon	as needed	as needed

1. Place the fish on a lightly oiled rack or screen and secure with butcher's twine.
2. Place the rack or screen in a pot and cover with cold court bouillon.
3. Bring the court bouillon to a simmer over moderate heat. Reduce the heat and poach the fish at 175°F–180°F (79°C–85°C) until done, approximately 30–45 minutes.
4. If the fish is to be served hot, remove it from the court bouillon, draining well, and serve immediately with an appropriate garnish. If it is to be served cold, remove it from the court bouillon, draining well, cool and refrigerate for several hours before decorating and garnishing as desired.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 114, **Total fat** 3 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 29 mg, **Sodium** 80 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 0 g, **Protein** 22 g, **Calcium** 6%



1. Arranging the whole fish on a rack.

2. Preparing the court bouillon.

3. Removing and draining the fish.

PROCEDURE FOR SHALLOW POACHING

1. Butter a sauteuse and add aromatic vegetables as directed in the recipe.
2. Add the fish to the pan.
3. Add the cooking liquid to the pan.
4. Cover the pan with buttered parchment paper or a lid.
5. Bring the liquid to a simmer and cook the fish on the stove top or in the oven until done.
6. Remove the fish from the pan, moisten with a portion of the liquid and hold in a warm place for service.
7. Reduce the cuisson and finish the sauce as directed in the recipe.
8. Serve the poached fish with the sauce.

1. Arranging the sole on the bed of shallots and mushrooms.

2. Covering the fish with buttered parchment paper after the liquid is added.

3. Adding the velouté to the cuisson.

RECIPE 19.8

Fillets of Sole Bonne Femme

Yield: 2 servings

Sole fillets, approx. 2 1/2 oz. (75 g) each	4	4
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Whole butter	2 tsp.	10 ml
Shallots, minced	1 tsp.	5 ml
Mushrooms, sliced	4 oz.	120 g
White wine	3 oz.	90 ml
Fish stock	4 oz.	120 ml
Fish velouté	4 oz.	120 ml
Lemon juice	TT	TT
Parsley, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml

1. Season the sole with salt and pepper.
2. Melt the butter in a sauté pan. Add the shallots and mushrooms and arrange the sole fillets over them. Add the wine and fish stock.
3. Bring the liquid to a simmer. Cover the fish with buttered parchment paper and cook on the stove top or in a 350°F (180°C) oven until done, approximately 5–8 minutes.
4. Remove the sole and reserve in a warm place.
5. Reduce the cuisson until approximately 1 ounce (30 milliliters) remains. Add the velouté. Add lemon juice to taste and adjust the seasonings. Serve the sauce with the fish, sprinkled with chopped parsley.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 440, **Total fat** 14 g, **Saturated fat** 5 g, **Cholesterol** 120 mg, **Sodium** 3750 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 27 g, **Protein** 42 g

Simmering

"Boiled" lobster, crab and shrimp are not actually boiled; rather, they are cooked whole in their shells by simmering. Although they are not as delicate as some fish, these crustaceans can become tough and are easily overcooked if the cooking liquid is allowed to boil.

Selecting Shellfish to Simmer

Lobsters, crabs and shrimp are commonly cooked by simmering. Their hard shells protect their delicate flesh during the cooking process.

Seasoning Shellfish to be Simmered

The shellfish being simmered are not seasoned. Rather, they gain flavor by being cooked in a seasoned or flavored liquid, typically salted water or court bouillon. A sachet of pickling spice or Old Bay Seasoning is sometimes used for additional flavor.

Determining Doneness

Timing is the best method for determining the doneness of simmered shellfish. This varies depending on the size of the shellfish and how quickly the liquid returns to a simmer after the shellfish is added. Shrimp cook in as little as

3–5 minutes, crabs cook in 5–10 minutes and it can take as little as 6–8 minutes for a 1-pound (450-gram) lobster to cook and 15–20 minutes for a 2 1/2-pound (1.1-kilogram) lobster.

Accompaniments to Simmered Shellfish

The standard accompaniments to simmered shellfish are lemon wedges and melted butter. If the shellfish is being eaten cold, the traditional sauce is a tomato-based cocktail sauce. Nearly any type of vegetable or starch goes well with simmered shellfish, the most common being fresh corn on the cob and boiled potatoes.

Procedure for Simmering Shellfish

1. Bring court bouillon or water to a boil.
2. Add the shellfish to the liquid. Bring the liquid back to a boil and reduce to a simmer. (Whenever an item is added to boiling water, it lowers the water's temperature. The greater the amount of water, however, the faster it will return to a boil. So, to accelerate the time within which the water returns to a boil after the shellfish is added, use as much water as possible.)
3. Cook until done.
4. Remove the shellfish from the liquid and serve immediately. Or cool by dropping them in ice water if they are to be eaten cold.

RECIPE 19.9

Boiled Lobster

Yield: 1 serving

Lobster, 1 lb. 8 oz. (650 g)	1	1
Boiling salted water	4 gal.	16 lt
Lemon wedges	4	4
Whole butter, melted	2 oz.	60 g

1. Drop the lobster into the boiling water. Bring the water back to a boil, reduce to a simmer and cook the lobster until done, approximately 12 minutes.
2. Remove the lobster from the pot, drain and serve immediately with lemon wedges and melted butter on the side.
3. If the lobster is to be eaten cold, drop it in a sink of ice water to stop the cooking process. When cool enough to handle, remove the meat from the shell following the procedures discussed earlier.

Approximate values per 1-lb. (450-g) serving: **Calories** 650, **Total fat** 26 g, **Saturated fat** 15 g, **Cholesterol** 390 mg, **Sodium** 1960 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 11 g, **Protein** 93 g, **Vitamin A** 35%, **Vitamin C** 45%

Combination Cooking Methods

Combination cooking methods are used with meats, game and poultry in part to tenderize them. Because fish and shellfish are inherently tender, they do not necessarily benefit from such procedures. As noted in the section on shallow poaching, fish can, on occasion, be lightly sautéed or browned and then

poached. Although this procedure is a combination cooking method, it is used to enhance flavors and not to tenderize the product.

You may encounter fish or shellfish recipes with the word *braised* or *stew* in the title. Note, however, that these recipes rarely follow the traditional combination cooking methods discussed in this book.

Conclusion

In part because of consumers' increased health awareness, more and more food service operations are expanding their selections of fish and shellfish. Their task is aided by the tremendous variety of high-quality fish and shellfish now available. A variety of dry-heat and moist-heat cooking methods can be used with these products, and a variety of sauces and accompaniments can be served with them. Regardless of how they are served, care and attention are required in order to select, store and avoid overcooking fish and shellfish.

Questions for Discussion

1. Discuss six techniques for determining the freshness of fish and shellfish.
2. What are the physical differences between a flatfish and a round fish? How do fabrication techniques vary for these fish?
3. List four market forms for fish, and discuss several factors that may determine the form most appropriate for an operation to purchase.
4. List the three categories of mollusks, and give an example of a commonly used food from each category.
5. Discuss four methods for determining the doneness of fish or shellfish. Why is it important not to overcook fish and shellfish?
6. Explain the differences between shallow poaching and submersion poaching. Why is poaching a commonly used method for preparing fish and shellfish?
7. Why are combination cooking methods rarely used with fish and shellfish? Why is boiling rarely used?

Additional Fish and Shellfish Recipes

RECIPE 19.10

Sea Bass with Thai Curry Sauce and Wok Vegetables

Note: *This dish appears in the Chapter Opening photograph.*

FLYING FISH, Seattle, WA
Chef-Owner Christine Keff

Yield: 6 Servings **Method:** Sautéing

Chilean sea bass fillets, 5 oz. (150 g) each	6	6
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

Peanut oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Wok Vegetables (recipe follows)		
Thai Curry Sauce (recipe follows)		
Fried beet frizzles	as needed for garnish	

1. Salt and pepper both sides of the sea bass and set aside. In a large sauté pan, heat the oil over medium high heat.
2. Gently place the sea bass fillets into the hot pan and cook to desired doneness, turning once.
3. Serve the fish over a bed of Wok Vegetables and drizzle with the Thai Curry Sauce. Top the fish with a mound of fried beet frizzles.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 290, **Total fat** 13 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 60 mg, **Sodium** 617 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 13 g, **Protein** 31 g

WOK VEGETABLES

Yield: 6 Servings

Green cabbage	1/2 head	1/2 head
Zucchini	1	1
Yellow squash	1	1
Peanut oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh ginger root, peeled, chopped fine	1-in. knob	2.5-cm knob
Garlic, chopped fine	2 cloves	2 cloves
Cilantro, destemed and chopped coarse	2 oz.	60 g
Peanuts, roasted, unsalted, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Sesame oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Sesame seeds	1 tsp.	5 ml
Soy sauce	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Fresh lime juice	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Mirin	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Rice wine vinegar	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Core the cabbage and cut into a rough julienne.
2. Grate the outside of the zucchini and the yellow squash, discarding the inner seeds.
3. Heat the peanut oil in a wok or large skillet over high heat. Add the ginger, garlic, cabbage, squashes, cilantro, peanuts, sesame oil and sesame seeds. Cook, tossing frequently, until the vegetables begin to wilt.
4. Deglaze the pan with soy sauce, lime juice, mirin and vinegar. Season to taste with salt and pepper.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (175-g) serving: **Calories** 114, **Total fat** 7 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 443 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 12 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Claims**—low saturated fat; no cholesterol; good source of fiber

THAI CURRY SAUCE

Yield: 6 Servings

Peanut oil	as needed	as needed
Curry paste (recipe follows)	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Chicken stock	6 oz.	180 ml
Coconut milk	4 oz.	120 ml

Continued

1. Heat a small sauté pan and lightly coat it with peanut oil. Add the curry paste and sauté briefly.
2. Add the chicken stock and reduce by half.
3. Add the coconut milk and simmer until the sauce is thick enough to coat a spoon.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (33-g) serving: **Calories** 35, **Total fat** 3 g, **Saturated fat** 2.5 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 75 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 1 g

CURRY PASTE

Yield: 8 oz. (250 g)

Fresh galangale, peeled	1 oz.	30 g
Fresh ginger root, peeled	1 oz.	30 g
Fresh tumeric, peeled	1 oz.	30 g
Shallots, peeled	2 oz.	60 g
Garlic, peeled	6 cloves	6 cloves
Cilantro	1/2 oz.	14 g
Juice of 1/2 lime		
Dried Thai chiles, soaked in water to soften	1	1
Peanut oil	as needed	as needed

1. Combine all ingredients except the oil in a food processor and grind.
2. Add just enough peanut oil to make a paste. Continue to process until the paste is smooth.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (29-g) serving: **Calories** 30, **Total fat** 1 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 15 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 5 g, **Protein** 0 g

RECIPE 19.11

Grilled Chilean Sea Bass with Anasazi Bean Stew and Nopal Cactus Salsa

THE BOULDERS RESORT, CAREFREE, AZ
Corporate Executive Chef Charles Wiley

Yield: 6 Servings Method: Grilling

Chilean sea bass fillets, 5–6 oz. (150–180 g) each	6	6
Kosher salt	TT	TT
Black pepper	TT	TT
Anasazi Bean Jus (recipe follows)	1 1/2 c.	360 ml
Anasazi Bean Stew (recipe follows)	3 c.	720 ml
Nopal Cactus Salsa (recipe follows)	1 1/2 c.	360 ml
Fresh cilantro, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml

1. Prepare a mesquite or charcoal grill. Season the sea bass with salt and pepper. Grill over medium heat until fish barely flakes when touched with a fork. Keep warm.
2. Place 2 ounces (60 milliliters) of Anasazi Bean Jus in each bowl. Spoon 1/2 cup (120 milliliters) of the Anasazi Bean Stew into the center of each bowl.

Place the grilled sea bass over the stew. Garnish with Nopale Cactus Salsa and chopped cilantro.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 490, **Total fat** 8 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 75 mg, **Sodium** 200 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 56 g, **Protein** 50 g, **Vitamin A** 50%, **Vitamin C** 50%, **Claims**—high fiber

ANASAZI BEAN JUS

Yield: 1 1/2 cups (360 ml)

Reserved liquid from beans	1 pt.	500 ml
Cooked Bean Stew (recipe follows)	1/2 c.	120 ml
Ancho chile, toasted and torn into pieces	1	1
Tomato paste	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Kosher salt	TT	TT
Black pepper	TT	TT

1. Combine all ingredients in a blender.
2. Purée on high speed until smooth. Pass the purée through a fine strainer and season with salt and pepper.

ANASAZI BEAN STEW

Yield: 3 cups (720 ml)

Anasazi beans	1 pt.	500 ml
Carrot, diced fine	1 medium	1 medium
Onion, diced fine	1 medium	1 medium
Celery, diced fine	1 stalk	1 stalk
Olive oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Garlic, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Shallots, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Corn kernels, cut from grilled ears	2 ears	2 ears
Roma tomatoes, seeded and chopped	3	3
Kosher salt	TT	TT
Black pepper	TT	TT

1. Rinse the beans well, then cook in 1 1/2 quarts (1.5 liters) of unsalted water until just tender, approximately 2 hours.
2. Add the carrot, onion and celery; cook an additional 15 minutes.
3. Drain the beans, reserving the cooking liquid for the jus.
4. Heat the olive oil in a medium sauté pan. Add the garlic and shallots and sauté briefly. Add the corn kernels and tomatoes; cook an additional 3 minutes.
5. Add the beans and simmer for 10 minutes. Season with salt and pepper.

NOPAL CACTUS SALSA

Yield: 1 1/2–2 cups (360–450 ml)

Nopal cactus pad, de-thorned with vegetable peeler	1	1
Roma tomato, seeded and julienned	1	1

Continued

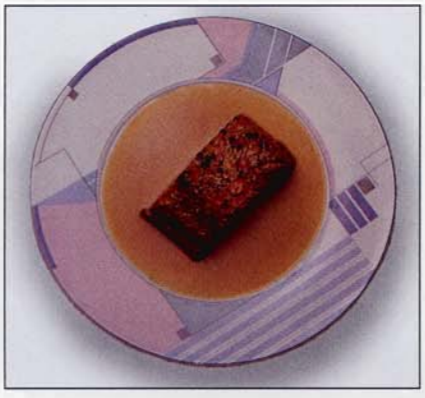
Golden tomato, seeded and julienned	1	1
Red onion, julienned	1/2	1/2
Cilantro, chopped fine	1 tsp.	5 ml
Lime, juice of	1	1
Kosher salt	TT	TT
Black pepper	TT	TT

1. Blanch the cactus pad in a pot of boiling salted water for 15 seconds. Cool immediately under cold running water.
2. Julienne the cactus pad. Toss all the ingredients together.

RECIPE 19.12

Ratatouille Crusted Salmon

CITRUS, Los Angeles, CA
Chef Michel Richard



Yield: 4 Servings **Method:** Baking

Red bell pepper, roasted and peeled, brunoise	2 oz.	60 g
Yellow bell pepper, roasted and peeled, brunoise	2 oz.	60 g
Garlic, chopped	1/2 tsp.	3 ml
Olive oil	as needed	as needed
Zucchini, brunoise	4 oz.	120 g
Black olives	1 oz.	30 g
Scallops, 12–16 count	2	2
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
Heavy cream	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Salmon fillets, 5 oz. (140 g) each	4	4

1. Sauté the peppers and garlic in a small amount of olive oil until tender. Remove and spread in a pan to cool.
2. Sauté the zucchini in a small amount of olive oil until tender. Remove and spread in a pan to cool.
3. Remove the pits from the black olives and cut brunoise.
4. To make the scallop mousseline, process the scallops in the bowl of a chilled food processor. Season with salt and white pepper. With the motor running, add the cream and mix until incorporated.
5. Remove the mousseline to a bowl and stir in the sautéed vegetables and olives.
6. Place one fourth of the mixture between two sheets of plastic wrap and roll out in a rectangle slightly larger than the surface of the salmon fillets.
7. Remove the top layer of plastic. Season the salmon fillets with salt and pepper. Turn the vegetable mixture over onto a salmon fillet and press so it adheres to the fish. Peel off the second layer of plastic. Repeat for each fillet.
8. Bake the salmon, ratatouille side up, at 350°F (180°C) until done, approximately 8–10 minutes. Serve with an appropriate sauce such as a Red Pepper Coulis (Recipe 10.17).

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 470, **Total fat** 18 g, **Saturated fat** 3.5 g, **Cholesterol** 145 mg, **Sodium** 1000 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 8 g, **Protein** 70 g, **Vitamin C** 70%

RECIPE 19.13

Sautéed Salmon with Asparagus and Morels

TAVERN ON THE GREEN, New York, NY
Chef Marc Poidevin

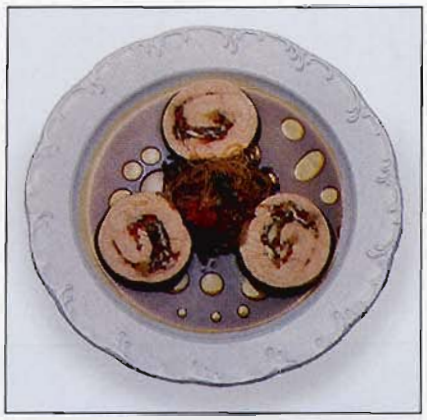
Yield: 6 Servings

Method: Sautéing

Sauce:		
Dry white wine	8 oz.	225 ml
Fresh tarragon	2 sprigs	2 sprigs
Fresh rosemary	1 sprig	1 sprig
Fresh thyme	1 sprig	1 sprig
Shallots, sliced	3	3
Heavy cream	8 oz.	225 ml
Unsalted butter	8 oz.	225 g
Lemon juice	2 oz.	60 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Salmon fillets, center cut, 8 oz. (250 g) each	6	6
Olive oil	3 oz.	90 ml
Fresh morels, cleaned and rinsed	1 lb.	450 g
Unsalted butter	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Asparagus, jumbo spears, 1 1/2-in. (4-cm) tips only, cooked	30	30

1. To make the sauce, combine the white wine, tarragon, rosemary, thyme and shallots in a small saucepan and reduce by two thirds.
2. Add the cream and reduce until thick, approximately 5–10 minutes. Stir in the butter, add the lemon juice and season with salt and pepper. Strain and reserve in a warm place for service.
3. Season the salmon with salt and pepper. Sauté the fish in olive oil until golden and cooked to the desired doneness.
4. In a separate pan, sauté the morels in 3 tablespoons (45 milliliters) of butter for 10 minutes. Season to taste with salt and pepper.
5. To assemble, place the salmon fillets on 6 individual plates, pour the sauce around them and arrange the morels and asparagus around the fillets.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 990, **Total fat** 77 g, **Saturated fat** 33 g, **Cholesterol** 265 mg, **Sodium** 530 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 9 g, **Protein** 67 g, **Vitamin A** 60%, **Vitamin C** 40%



RECIPE 19.14

Chilled Poached Salmon Roulade with Thai Noodle Salad and Soy Molasses Vinaigrette

Chef Leland Atkinson, WASHINGTON, DC

Yield: 5 Servings | Method: Poaching

Red bell pepper, julienne	6 oz.	180 g
Yellow bell pepper, julienne	6 oz.	180 g
Onion, julienne	5 oz.	150 g
Olive oil	1 oz.	30 ml
Salmon fillet, skin off, pin bones removed, approx. 2 lb. (1 kg)	1	1
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Fresh cilantro, chopped	2 bunches	2 bunches
Thai Noodle Salad (recipe follows)	as needed	as needed
Soy Molasses Vinaigrette (recipe follows)	as needed	as needed

1. Quickly sauté the peppers and onions in the olive oil; drain and cool.
2. Trim the fat and dark flesh from the skin side of the fillet. Carefully butterfly the fillet, cover it with plastic wrap and pound gently.
3. Place the salmon, skin side up, on a rectangular piece of plastic wrap that extends at least 3 inches (7.5 centimeters) beyond each end of the fillet.
4. Season the fish with salt and pepper; sprinkle the cilantro over it. Distribute the cooled onions and peppers over the cilantro, leaving at least a 2-inch (5-centimeter) edge of salmon uncovered on all sides.
5. Roll the salmon and peppers into a tight pinwheel and firmly knot the ends of the plastic wrap.
6. Tightly roll the fish in aluminum foil, twisting the ends to form a tight cylinder.
7. Poach or steam the fish until it reaches an internal temperature of 110°F (43°C). Remove from the poaching liquid and chill.
8. At service time, unwrap the chilled salmon and carefully slice it. Arrange the sliced salmon on plates with the Thai Noodle Salad. Pour 3 ounces (90 grams) of the Soy Molasses Vinaigrette around the salmon at the last moment.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 430, **Total fat** 20 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 165 mg, **Sodium** 850 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 11 g, **Protein** 51 g, **Vitamin C** 150%

THAI NOODLE SALAD

Yield: 5 Servings

Cellophane noodles	3.4 oz.	100 g
Fresh cilantro, chopped	2 bunches	2 bunches
Oyster sauce	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Sesame oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Garlic, minced	1/2 Tbsp.	8 ml

Soy sauce	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Red pepper, crushed	1 pinch	1 pinch

1. Pour boiling water over the noodles and allow them to steep until they are al dente, approximately 5 minutes. Refresh in cold water. Drain well.
2. Toss the noodles with the other ingredients. Adjust the seasonings to taste.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 100, **Total fat** 3 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 540 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 18 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—low fat

SOY MOLASSES VINAIGRETTE

Yield: 1 pt. (450 ml)

Molasses	4 oz.	120 ml
Rice vinegar	2 oz.	60 ml
Soy sauce	8 oz.	250 ml
Fresh ginger, chopped coarse	1 tsp.	5 ml
Olive oil	as needed	as needed

1. Combine the molasses, rice vinegar, soy sauce and fresh ginger in a saucepan. Bring to a boil and remove from the heat immediately. Allow the mixture to rest, undisturbed, for 1 hour.
2. Strain and chill the molasses mixture. Add the olive oil at service time.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (26-g) serving: **Calories** 35, **Total fat** 1 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 820 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 6 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Claims**—low fat; low calorie

RECIPE 19.15

TERIYAKI SALMON WITH PINEAPPLE-PAPAYA SALSA

Yield: 4 servings

Soy sauce	8 oz.	250 ml
Garlic, crushed	1 tsp.	5 ml
Ginger, minced	1 tsp.	5 ml
Brown sugar	2 oz.	60 g
Sake	4 oz.	120 ml
Salmon, tranches, 4 oz. (120 g) each	4	4
Vegetable oil	as needed	as needed
Pineapple-Papaya Salsa (Recipe 25.9)	16 oz.	450 g

1. To make the marinade, combine the soy sauce, garlic, ginger, brown sugar and sake.
2. Marinate the salmon tranches in the sauce for 15 minutes.
3. Remove the salmon from the marinade and pat dry. Brush them with vegetable oil and broil or grill until done.
4. Serve the salmon on a bed of warmed Pineapple-Papaya Salsa.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 330, **Total fat** 9 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 65 mg, **Sodium** 3770 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 28 g, **Protein** 35 g, **Vitamin C** 60%

RECIPE 19.16

Red Snapper Veracruz

Yield: 4 Servings Method: Sautéing

Red snapper fillets, skinless, 6 oz. (170 g) each	4	4
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Flour	as needed	as needed
Olive oil	2 oz.	60 ml
Onion, medium dice	6 oz.	180 g
Garlic cloves, minced	4	4
Lemon juice	1 oz.	30 ml
Fish or chicken stock	8 oz.	250 ml
Jalapeño, seeded, small dice	1	1
Tomato concassée	1 lb. 8 oz.	650 g
Pimiento-stuffed green olives, quartered	20	20
Sugar	1 tsp.	5 ml
Cinnamon stick	1	1
Dried thyme	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Dried marjoram	1/2 tsp	2 ml
Capers	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Fresh cilantro	as needed for garnish	

1. Season the fillets with salt and pepper and dredge in flour. Sauté the fillets in olive oil until done. Remove and reserve in a warm place.
2. Add the onions and garlic to the pan and sauté until tender. Deglaze the pan with the lemon juice and add the stock, jalapeño, tomatoes, olives, sugar, cinnamon stick, thyme and marjoram.
3. Simmer 10 minutes. Remove the cinnamon stick and add the capers. Season to taste.
4. Return the fish to the pan to reheat. Serve on warm plates garnished with fresh cilantro.

Variations: Substitute bass or halibut fillets for the red snapper.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 570, **Total fat** 22 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 80 mg, **Sodium** 1820 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 41 g, **Protein** 51 g, **Vitamin C** 70%

RECIPE 19.17

Pan-Fried Trout with Toasted Garlic

Yield: 1 Serving Method: Pan-Frying

Trout, pan-dressed	1	1
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Flour	as needed	as needed
Clarified butter	1 oz.	30 ml
Whole butter	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Garlic cloves, sliced thin	2	2
Lemon juice	1 oz.	30 ml
Fresh parsley, chopped	1/2 tsp.	3 ml

1. Season the trout with salt and pepper; dredge in flour.
2. Pan-fry the trout in the clarified butter until lightly browned and cooked through. Remove and reserve.
3. Degrease the pan, add the whole butter and cook until it begins to brown.
4. Add the sliced garlic and sauté a few seconds, until the garlic begins to brown.
5. Add the lemon juice and parsley and swirl to combine with the butter.
6. Top the fish with the sauce and serve.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 650, **Total fat** 47 g, **Saturated fat** 23 g, **Cholesterol** 165 mg, **Sodium** 1600 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 28 g, **Protein** 28 g, **Vitamin A** 45%, **Vitamin C** 30%

RECIPE 19.18

Blackened Swordfish with Risotto Cake

FLYING FISH, SEATTLE, WA
Chef-Owner Christine Keff

Yield: 6 Servings

Swordfish steaks	6	6
Black peppercorns, crushed	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh lime juice	2 oz.	60 ml
Soy sauce	2 oz.	60 ml
Risotto Cakes (recipe follows)	6	6

1. Coat the swordfish steaks evenly with the peppercorns.
2. Heat a wok or cast iron skillet over high heat until very hot. Place the steaks into the hot pan and cook for 1 minute per side.
3. Combine the lime juice and soy sauce. Deglaze the fish with the soy mixture and cook just until the liquid evaporates. Turn the fish frequently to coat it with the sauce.
4. Serve with Risotto Cakes and steamed bok choy.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 145, **Total fat** 4 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 42 mg, **Sodium** 784 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 3 g, **Protein** 22 g, **Claims**—low saturated fat

RISOTTO CAKES

Yield: 6 Servings

Soybean oil	8 oz.	250 ml
Garlic, minced	2 cloves	2 cloves
Onion, chopped	2 oz.	60 g
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Black pepper	1 tsp.	5 ml
Arborio rice	1 pt.	500 ml
Chicken stock, simmering	1 qt.	1 lt
Water, hot	as needed	as needed
Parmesan, grated	2 Tbsp.	60 ml
Egg, beaten	1	1

Continued

Flour, seasoned with salt and pepper	as needed for breading	
Panko (Japanese bread crumbs)	1/2 cup	120 ml

1. Heat 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) of the oil in a deep sauté pan. Add the garlic, onion and 1/2 teaspoon (3 milliliters) each of salt and pepper. Cook over medium heat until the onions are translucent.
2. Add the rice and sauté for 1 to 2 minutes, being careful not to burn the rice.
3. Reduce the heat to medium low and add 1/4 cup (120 milliliters) of the chicken stock. Cook for approximately 15 minutes, stirring frequently and adding the remaining stock slowly as needed. If additional liquid is needed for the rice to be fully cooked and tender, add hot water.
4. Add the Parmesan and season with salt and pepper.
5. Press the risotto into an even layer on a lightly greased baking sheet. Cool completely in the refrigerator.
6. Cut out 6 cakes, using a cookie cutter or knife. Bread the cakes with egg wash, seasoned flour and panko, using the standard breading procedure found in Chapter 21, Deep-Frying.
7. Heat the remaining soybean oil in a deep sauté pan to 340°F (170°C). Cook the cakes on both sides until golden brown.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 507, **Total fat** 39 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 37 mg, **Sodium** 639 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 30 g, **Protein** 9 g

RECIPE 19.19

SESAME SWORDFISH

Yield: 1 Serving — Method: Sautéing

Leek, julienne	4 oz.	120 g
Swordfish steak, 6 oz. (170 g)	1	1
Sesame oil	1 oz.	30 ml
Sesame seeds	1 oz.	30 g
Fish stock	2 oz.	60 ml
Tamari sauce	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Deep-fry the leeks at 280°F (140°C) until golden brown. Drain well.
2. Brush both sides of the fish with sesame oil. Coat both sides of the fish with the sesame seeds, pressing to make a solid, even coating.
3. In a very hot pan, sauté the fish in the remaining oil. Turn the fish and finish cooking it in a 375°F (190°C) oven.
4. Remove the fish from the pan and hold on a warm plate. Deglaze the pan with the fish stock. Add the tamari sauce and heat thoroughly.
5. Place the fish on a bed of fried leeks, then pour the sauce over the fish and serve immediately.

VARIATIONS: Substitute a tuna or shark steak for the swordfish steak.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 780, **Total fat** 52 g, **Saturated fat** 9 g, **Cholesterol** 85 mg, **Sodium** 1410 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 24 g, **Protein** 53 g, **Vitamin C** 25%, **Calcium** 35%

RECIPE 19.20

CORIANDER-CRUSTED YELLOWFIN TUNA WITH BRAISED WHITE BEANS AND ROASTED PEPPERS

THE BOULDERS RESORT, CAREFREE, AZ
Corporate Executive Chef Charles Wiley

Yield: 4 Servings

Olive oil	1 1/2 tsp.	8 ml
Yellowfin tuna, sashimi-quality loin	8 oz.	250 g
Coriander Chile Mix (recipe follows)	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Balsamic vinegar	4 oz.	120 ml
Braised White Beans (recipe follows)	1/2 c.	120 ml
Cilantro Purée (recipe follows)	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Lemon juice	1/4 tsp.	2 ml
Frisée and mizuma lettuces	1 1/2 c.	360 ml
Kosher salt	TT	TT

1. Heat the olive oil in an 8-inch sauté pan over medium heat.
2. Lightly dust all sides of the tuna with Coriander Chile Mix.
3. Place the tuna in the pan and cook for 8 seconds on each side (the tuna should be rare). Remove to a warm plate and cover.
4. Make a balsamic syrup by boiling the vinegar in a nonreactive saucepan until it is reduced to a syrupy consistency.
5. Place 3 tablespoons (45 milliliters) of Braised White Beans in the center of each plate. Drizzle 1 1/2 teaspoons (8 milliliters) of Cilantro Purée and 1 1/2 teaspoons (8 milliliters) of the balsamic syrup around the beans.
6. In a small bowl, whisk together the lemon juice and the remaining 1/2 teaspoon (3 milliliters) of olive oil. Toss the greens in a mixing bowl with a pinch of salt and just enough of the dressing to coat each leaf. Divide the greens between the four plates, arranging them on top of the beans.
7. Slice the tuna into 12 equal pieces and arrange on top of the greens.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 110, **Total fat** 2.5 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 35 mg, **Sodium** 105 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 5 g, **Protein** 17 g, **Vitamin A** 10%, **Vitamin C** 25%, **Claims**—low fat; low sodium

CORIANDER CHILE MIX

Yield: 3 Tbsp. (45 ml)

Whole coriander seeds	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
New Mexico chiles, ground	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Kosher salt	1/2 tsp.	3 ml

1. Toast the coriander seeds over medium heat in a small, dry sauté pan. The seeds will be slightly brown and fragrant.

Continued

2. Transfer the seeds to a spice grinder and grind to medium consistency.
3. Mix all the ingredients in a small bowl.

Approximate values per 1/2-Tbsp. (2-g) serving: **Calories** 5, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 280 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 0 g

BRAISED WHITE BEANS

Yield: 4 servings

White beans, soaked	1 c.	250 ml
Smoked ham hock (optional)	1	1
Chicken stock	24 oz.	720 ml
Red bell pepper	1	1
Yellow bell pepper	1	1
Olive oil	1 tsp.	5ml
Red onion, peeled and diced	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Kosher salt	TT	TT

1. Drain the beans and combine with the chicken stock and ham hock in a medium sauce pan. Bring to a boil, simmer and cook until done, approximately 45 minutes.
2. Char the red and yellow bell peppers over an open flame (grill or gas stove top). Remove the charred peppers to a small plate and cover with plastic wrap. Let the peppers sweat for 10 minutes.
3. Unwrap the peppers. Peel off the skin, remove the seeds and dice in 1/4-inch (6-millimeter) pieces.
4. Heat a small sauté pan over medium heat. Add the olive oil and sauté the red onion until translucent.
5. Drain the beans and add them to the onions along with the diced roasted peppers and adjust the seasoning.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 120, **Total fat** 2.5 g, **Saturated fat** .5 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 580 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 15 g, **Protein** 9 g, **Vitamin C** 110%, **Claims**—low fat; no cholesterol; high fiber

CILANTRO PURÉE

Fresh cilantro leaves	1/2 bunch	1/2 bunch
Garlic clove	1	1
Fresh lemon juice	1/2 tsp.	3 ml
Olive oil	2 oz.	60 ml
Kosher salt	TT	TT
Pepper	TT	TT

1. Place all the ingredients in an blender and purée until smooth.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (24-g) serving: **Calories** 10, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 35 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Claims**—fat free; low sodium; low calorie

RECIPE 19.21

Pan-Seared Sea Bass with Beet Vinaigrette

STOUFFER STANFORD COURT HOTEL, San Francisco, CA
former Chef Ercolino Crugnale

Yield: 10 Servings | Method: Sautéing

Chilean sea bass, diamond-cut fillets, 3 oz. (90 g) each	20	20
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Olive oil	as needed	as needed
Shiitake mushrooms, sliced	10 oz.	300 g
Zucchini, julienne	10 oz.	300 g
Yellow squash, julienne	10 oz.	300 g
Red bell pepper, julienne	5 oz.	150 g
Chicken stock	10 oz.	300 ml
Beet Vinaigrette (recipe follows)	3 oz.	90 ml
Potato, peeled, julienne and deep-fried crisp	20 oz.	600 g

1. Season the fish on both sides. Sauté in olive oil until fully cooked.
2. Meanwhile, sauté the shiitake mushrooms in olive oil for 30 seconds. Add the zucchini, squash and red peppers.
3. Deglaze the pan with chicken stock and adjust the seasonings.
4. To serve, pool the Beet Vinaigrette onto warm plates. For an interesting effect, drizzle the sauce drop by drop into the middle of the plate from a height of 3 feet (1 meter), then pool the remaining sauce on the plate. Place the vegetables in the center with the fried potatoes on top. Arrange the fish on the vegetables.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 430, **Total fat** 15 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 90 mg, **Sodium** 610 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 29 g, **Protein** 44 g, **Vitamin A** 10%, **Vitamin C** 30%

BEET VINAIGRETTE

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Beet juice	3 pt.	1.5 lt
Fresh horseradish, grated	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Shallots, minced	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Garlic, minced	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh thyme	1 bunch	1 bunch
Black peppercorns	10	10
Apple cider vinegar	8 oz.	250 ml
White wine	4 oz.	120 ml
Poultry demi-glace	4 oz.	120 ml
Cornstarch	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Water	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Salt	TT	TT

Continued

1. Combine the beet juice, horseradish, shallots, garlic, thyme and black peppercorns. Reduce to 1 1/2 pints (700 milliliters).
2. Add the vinegar, white wine and demi-glace; simmer 20 minutes.
3. Combine the cornstarch and water until smooth. Whisk the slurry into the sauce and bring to a boil. Strain through a fine-mesh china cap and season to taste.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (62-g) serving: **Calories** 20, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 100 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 4 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Claims**—fat free; low sodium; low calorie

RECIPE 19.22

Steamed Black Bass with Sansho Pepper

THE FOUR SEASONS, New York, NY
Chef Christian Albin

Yield: 6 Servings **Method:** Steaming

Black bass fillets, skin on, approx. 5 oz. (150 g) each	6	6
Leek, large, cut into strips	1	1
Sansho pepper and sea salt	TT	TT
Lime	1	1
Lemon	1	1
Olive oil	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Pommery mustard	1 tsp.	5 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Lightly score the fish skin, then place the fillets, skin side up, and the leeks in a steamer basket. Season with sansho pepper and sea salt. Steam for approximately 5 minutes.
2. To make the vinaigrette, zest and juice the lime and lemon. Blanch the zests in water. Drain and mix the zests and juices with the olive oil and Pommery mustard; season to taste with salt and pepper.
3. Plate the fish fillets and garnish with the leeks. Drizzle the vinaigrette over the fish and leeks.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 220, **Total fat** 7 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 125 mg, **Sodium** 530 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 5 g, **Protein** 35 g, **Vitamin C** 20%

RECIPE 19.23

Baked Monkfish with Bacon

Yield: 8 Servings **Method:** Baking

Bacon, thin slices	4	4
Monkfish fillets, 6 oz. (180 g) each	8	8
Whole butter, melted	as needed	as needed
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Lemon juice	2 Tbsp.	30 ml

1. Partially cook the bacon on a sheet pan in a 350°F (180°C) oven for 5 minutes.
2. Cut each slice of bacon in half. Wrap each portion of fish with bacon and secure with a toothpick.
3. Butter a baking pan and place the fish in it. Season with salt and pepper.
4. Brush the fish with butter and sprinkle with lemon juice.
5. Bake the fish at 450°F (230°C) until done, approximately 12–15 minutes.
6. Serve the fish with an appropriate sauce such as tomato coulis or a tomato-based sauce such as Spanish or creole (p. 205).

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 190, **Total fat** 6 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 60 mg, **Sodium** 380 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 0 g, **Protein** 32 g

RECIPE 19.24

Paupiettes of Sole with Mousseline of Shrimp

Paupiette—*a thin slice of meat or fish that is rolled around a filling of finely ground meat or vegetables, then fried, baked or braised in wine or stock.*

Yield: 6 Servings Method: Poaching

Shrimp meat	12 oz.	360 g
Egg white	1	1
Heavy cream	6 oz.	180 ml
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
Lemon sole fillets, skinless, 4 oz. (120 g) each	12	12
Whole butter	as needed	as needed
Shallots, chopped	2 oz.	60 g
Parsley stems, chopped	6	6
White vermouth	6 oz.	180 ml
Shrimp stock	12 oz.	360 ml
Beurre manié	approx. 1 1/2 oz.	approx. 45 g

1. To make the mousseline, purée the raw shrimp meat in a food processor.
2. Add the egg white and pulse to incorporate.
3. Slowly add 2 ounces (60 milliliters) of the cream to the shrimp while pulsing the processor. Season the mousseline with salt and white pepper.
4. Place the sole fillets, with the side that had the skin on top, on a cutting board and cover with plastic wrap. Then flatten the fillets slightly with a mallet.
5. Spread each fillet with a portion of the mousseline. Roll up the fillets, starting with the thickest part and finishing with the tail portion.
6. Butter a sauteuse and sprinkle with the chopped shallots and parsley stems.
7. Place the sole paupiettes in the sauteuse and add the vermouth and shrimp stock.
8. Bring the liquid to a boil, cover with a piece of buttered parchment paper and place in a 350°F (180°C) oven. Poach until nearly done.
9. Remove the sole from the sauteuse and reserve in a warm place.
10. Return the sauteuse to the heat and reduce the cuisson slightly.

Continued

11. Thicken the cuisson to the desired consistency with the beurre manié.
12. Add the remaining cream, bring the sauce to a boil and strain through a fine chinois. Adjust the seasonings.
13. Serve two **paupiettes** per portion on a pool of sauce.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 450, **Total fat** 18 g, **Saturated fat** 9 g, **Cholesterol** 310 mg, **Sodium** 970 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 4 g, **Protein** 69 g, **Vitamin A** 35%

1. Using a mallet to flatten a fillet slightly.

2. Spreading the fillet with the mousseline.

3. Rolling the paupiettes.

RECIPE 19.25

Chilled Shellfish Platter

THE FOUR SEASONS, New York, NY
Chef Christian Albin

Yield: 2 Appetizer Servings		Method: Simmering
Lobster, boiled	1	1
Oysters	4	4
Shrimp, U-10, boiled and peeled, tails intact	4	4
Crab meat, lump	3 oz.	90 g
Carrots	as needed	as needed
Celery	as needed	as needed
Scallions	2	2
Baby fennel, split and blanched	1	1
Red oak leaf lettuce	as needed	as needed

1. Remove the tail from the lobster. Remove the meat from the tail in one piece and cut it in half lengthwise.
2. Clean and open the oysters, leaving the oyster meat on the half-shell.
3. Mound crushed ice on a large serving platter. Position the lobster head and body in the center of the ice. Place the pieces of lobster tail around the lobster body. Arrange the remaining shellfish over the ice, using the carrots, celery, scallions, fennel and red oak leaf lettuce as garnish.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 490, **Total fat** 4.5 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 325 mg, **Sodium** 1780 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 26 g, **Protein** 85 g, **Vitamin A** 320%, **Vitamin C** 60%

RECIPE 19.26

PAELLA

Chef Leland Atkinson, WASHINGTON, DC

Yield: 4 Servings Method: Steaming

Chicken thighs	4	4
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Olive oil	2 oz.	60 ml
Onion, medium dice	2 oz.	60 g
Garlic, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Red bell pepper, medium dice	2 oz.	60 g
Green bell pepper, medium dice	2 oz.	60 g
Rice, long grain	12 oz.	350 g
Saffron	pinch	pinch
Chicken stock, well seasoned, hot	26 oz.	750 ml
Chorizo, cooked, sliced	4 oz.	120 g
Clams, scrubbed	12	12
Cockles, scrubbed	12	12
Shrimp, 16–20 count	12	12
Lobster, cut up	1	1
Mussels, debearded and scrubbed	12	12

1. Season the chicken with salt and pepper. Pan-fry it in the olive oil, browning it well. Cook until done, approximately 20 minutes. Remove the chicken and reserve.
2. Add the onions, garlic and peppers to the pan and sauté until tender.
3. Add the rice and sauté until it turns translucent.
4. Add the saffron to the chicken stock. Stir the chicken stock into the rice and bring to a boil.
5. Add the sliced chorizo, clams and cockles to the pan. Cover and place in a 375°F (190°C) oven for 20 minutes.
6. Add the shrimp, lobster and cooked chicken to the pan. Cover and cook for an additional 15 minutes.
7. Add the mussels to the pan and cook until the shrimp and lobster are done, the chicken is hot and all the shellfish are opened, approximately 5 minutes.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 930, **Total fat** 41 g, **Saturated fat** 10 g, **Cholesterol** 650 mg, **Sodium** 2050 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 31 g, **Protein** 110 g, **Vitamin A** 25%, **Vitamin C** 60%, **Iron** 70%

RECIPE 19.27

CLAMS CASINO

Yield: 36 Clams Method: Baking

Bacon, diced	4 slices	4 slices
Onion, minced	1 oz.	30 g
Red bell pepper, minced	1 oz.	30 g

Continued

Green bell pepper, minced	1 oz.	30 g
Whole butter	6 oz.	180 g
Lemon juice	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Worcestershire sauce	2 tsp.	10 ml
Tabasco sauce	TT	TT
Clams, scrubbed	36	36
Fresh bread crumbs	2 oz.	60 g

1. Fry the bacon until well done. Drain the fat, reserving 2 tablespoons (30 milliliters).
2. Sauté the onions and peppers in the bacon fat until tender; remove from the heat and cool.
3. Combine 4 ounces (120 grams) of the butter, lemon juice, Worcestershire sauce, Tabasco sauce, bacon pieces and sautéed vegetables and chill.
4. Open the clams, leaving the meat in the bottom shell. Top each clam with 1 teaspoon (5 milliliters) of the seasoned butter.
5. Melt 2 ounces (60 grams) of butter in a sauté pan and toss the bread crumbs in the butter. Top each clam with a portion of the bread crumbs.
6. Bake at 400°F (200°C) until light brown and bubbling, approximately 10 minutes. Serve immediately.

Approximate values per clam: **Calories** 45, **Total fat** 4 g, **Saturated fat** 2.5 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 65 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 0 g

RECIPE 19.28

Steamed Mussels with Leeks and Carrots

Chef Leland Atkinson, Washington, DC

Yield: 2 Servings — Method: Steaming

Mussels, debearded and scrubbed	2 lb.	900 g
Dry white wine	8 oz.	250 ml
Garlic, chopped	1 oz.	30 g
Black pepper	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Fresh thyme	4 sprigs	4 sprigs
Bay leaves	2	2
Leek, julienne	2 oz.	60 g
Carrot, julienne	2 oz.	60 g
Whole butter	4 oz.	120 g
Fresh parsley, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Combine the mussels, wine, garlic, pepper, thyme, bay leaves, leeks and carrots in a large sautoir.
2. Cover the pan and bring to a boil. Steam until the mussels open.
3. Remove the mussels and arrange them in 2 large soup plates.
4. Reduce the cooking liquid by half, monté au beurre and pour the sauce over the mussels. The carrots and leeks should remain on top of the mussels as garnish.
5. Sprinkle with chopped parsley and serve with French bread.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 1220, **Total fat** 67 g, **Saturated fat** 33 g, **Cholesterol** 575 mg, **Sodium** 2170 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 44 g, **Protein** 110 g, **Vitamin A** 140%, **Vitamin C** 120%, **Iron** 200%

RECIPE 19.29

Ale-Steamed Mussels with Tasso, Chiles and Leeks

PHOENIX BREWING CO., Atlanta, GA
Executive Chef Kevin Fonzo

Yield: 1 Serving

Garlic, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Shallots, chopped	1 Tbsp.	30 ml
Leek, white part only, julienned	1/2	1/2
Tasso ham, medium dice	1/4 cup	60 ml
Red chile flakes	1/4 cup	60 ml
Fresh black mussels, debearded and cleaned	12	12
Ale	5 oz.	150 ml
Butter, unsalted	1 oz.	30 g
Black pepper	1/2 tsp.	3 ml
Salt	1/2 tsp.	3 ml
Assorted fresh herbs, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml

1. Heat a medium-sized sauté pan. Add the garlic, shallots, leek, ham and chiles. Cook for 1 to 2 minutes, until the vegetables are soft, but not brown.
2. Add the mussels and cook for 1 minute. Add the ale and the butter.
3. Cover the pan tightly and steam the mussels until they open.
4. Remove the cooked mussels from the pan and place them in a warm serving bowl. Add the salt, pepper and herbs to the sauce and bring to a boil. Pour the sauce and the vegetables over the mussels and serve.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 860, **Total fat** 61 g, **Saturated fat** 24 g, **Cholesterol** 295 mg, **Sodium** 2610 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 51 g, **Protein** 27 g, **Vitamin A** 50%, **Vitamin C** 30%, Iron 120%

RECIPE 19.30

Oysters Rockefeller

Yield: 36 Oysters Method: Baking

Unsalted butter	8 oz.	250 g
Fresh parsley, chopped	1 oz.	30 g
Celery, chopped	2 oz.	60 g
Fennel, chopped	2 oz.	60 g
Shallots, chopped	2 oz.	60 g
Garlic, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Watercress, chopped	4 oz.	120 g
Pernod	2 oz.	60 ml
Fresh bread crumbs	2 oz.	60 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

Continued

Oysters, on the half shell	36	36
Rock salt	as needed	as needed

1. Heat the butter in a sauté pan. Add the parsley, celery, fennel, shallots and garlic and cook for 5 minutes.
2. Add the watercress and cook for 1 minute.
3. Add the Pernod and bread crumbs; season with salt and pepper.
4. Transfer the mixture to a food processor and purée.
5. Top each oyster with approximately 2 teaspoons (10 milliliters) of the vegetable mixture; it should coat the oyster's entire surface.
6. Bake the oysters on a bed of rock salt at 450°F (230°C) until the mixture bubbles, approximately 6–7 minutes.

Approximate values per oyster (102 g): **Calories** 170, **Total fat** 9 g, **Saturated fat** 4.5 g, **Cholesterol** 105 mg, **Sodium** 450 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 9 g, **Protein** 13 g, **Vitamin A** 15%, **Iron** 60%

RECIPE 19.31

Fried Oysters with Herbed Crème Fraîche

Yield: 4 Appetizer Servings — Method: Deep-Frying

Leeks, julienne	3	3
Oysters, scrubbed	24	24
Flour	4 oz.	120 g
Eggs	2	2
Egg yolks	2	2
Fresh bread crumbs	8 oz.	240 g
Sauce:		
Cornichons, chopped fine	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Capers, chopped fine	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Dijon mustard	1 tsp.	5 ml
Paprika	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Parsley, minced	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Crème fraîche	4 oz.	120 ml

1. Deep-fry the leeks at 280°F (140°C) until golden brown. Drain and set aside.
2. Open the oysters. Strain and reserve the liquor.
3. Poach the oysters in the liquor for 30 seconds. Drain, reserving the liquid. Cool the liquid and oysters separately.
4. Set up a standard breading station with the flour, eggs, egg yolks and bread crumbs. (See Chapter 21, Deep-Frying.)
5. Bread the oysters, then deep-fry them at 375°F (190°C) until browned, approximately 1 minute.
6. Prepare the sauce by combining all remaining ingredients except the crème fraîche. Whip the crème fraîche until stiff. Fold in the cornichon mixture. Chill until service.
7. Serve the oysters on a nest of leeks with the sauce.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 1220, **Total fat** 44 g, **Saturated fat** 17 g, **Cholesterol** 785 mg, **Sodium** 2870 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 118 g, **Protein** 89 g, **Vitamin A** 50%, **Vitamin C** 70%, **Iron** 380%

RECIPE 19.32

Steamed Scallops with Ginger, Basil and Orange

VINCENT ON CAMELBACK, PHOENIX, AZ
Chef Vincent Guerithault

Yield: 1 Serving | Method: Steaming

Oranges	2	2
Lime	1	1
Flour tortilla, 8 in. (20 cm)	1	1
Scallops, large	3	3
Ginger, grated	1 tsp.	5 ml
Carrot, julienne	2 oz.	60 g
Celery, julienne	1 oz.	30 g
Tomato, small dice	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Fresh basil, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Olive oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
White wine	8 oz.	250 ml
Shallot, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml

1. Zest the oranges and then cut them in 1/2-inch (1.2-centimeter) slices. Peel the lime and cut into 1/4-inch (6-millimeter) slices.
2. Line a small bamboo steamer with the flour tortilla.
3. Place the scallops on top of the tortilla. Add the orange zest, ginger, carrot, celery, tomato, basil, olive oil, two slices of lime and a dash of salt and pepper. Cover.
4. Place the white wine, chopped shallots, orange slices and remaining lime slices in the bottom of the steamer pan. Steam the scallops over the seasoned wine until done, approximately 5 minutes.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 540, **Total fat** 18 g, **Saturated fat** 2.5 g, **Cholesterol** 45 mg, **Sodium** 1660 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 67 g, **Protein** 27 g, **Vitamin A** 120%, **Vitamin C** 270%, **Iron** 40%

RECIPE 19.33

Napoleon of Shrimp and Scallops

RIVERIA RESTAURANT, ATLANTA, GA
Chef Jack Shoop, CMC

Yield: 4 Servings

Puff pastry	1/2 lb.	500 g
Egg yolk	1	1
Scallops, large	12	12
Shrimp, 16–20 count, peeled and deveined	12	12
Clarified butter	1 oz.	30 ml

Continued

Sea salt	TT	TT
White pepper	TT	TT
Parsley, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Lemon	1	1
Shallots, minced	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Spinach leaves, washed	2 oz.	60 g
Orange segments	12	12
Sun-Dried Tomato Sauce (recipe follows)	6 oz.	180 ml
Fresh chervil	as needed	as needed

1. Roll out the puff pastry into a sheet 6 inches wide by 12 inches long by 1/8 inch thick (15 centimeters by 180 centimeters by 3 millimeters). Freeze the puff pastry sheet for 10 minutes.
2. Whisk the egg yolk together with 1 teaspoon (3 milliliters) of water and brush the puff pastry with the egg wash. Using a pastry comb, score the dough in each direction.
3. Cut the puff pastry into 4 pieces, 1 1/2 inches by 3 inches (3.75 centimeters by 7.5 centimeters). Place on a parchment-lined sheet pan and bake at 350°F (180°C) until golden brown. Let the pastry rest 30 minutes and then slice each piece in half horizontally to form the bottom and top of the Napoleon.
4. Cut the scallops in half horizontally and sauté them with the shrimp in clarified butter for approximately 3 minutes. Season to taste and add the chopped parsley and a squeeze of lemon juice.
5. In a separate pan, sauté the shallots and spinach until tender. Season to taste with salt and pepper.
6. Place the bottom of a Napoleon shell on a plate. Place the spinach and the orange segments on top of the pastry. Arrange the sliced scallops on top of the spinach and oranges and place the shrimp on top of the scallops. Spoon 1 1/2 ounces (45 milliliters) of the Sun-Dried Tomato Sauce over the entire arrangement. Place the top piece of puff pastry on top of the shrimp and garnish with chervil.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 860, **Total fat** 32 g, **Saturated fat** 8 g, **Cholesterol** 595 mg, **Sodium** 980 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 63 g, **Protein** 79 g, **Vitamin A** 260%, **Vitamin C** 150%, **Calcium** 20%

SUN-DRIED TOMATO SAUCE

Yield: 2 quarts

Shallots, minced	3 oz.	90 g
Sun-dried tomatoes, minced	5 Tbsp.	75 ml
Garlic cloves	7	7
Olive oil	4 oz.	120 ml
Tomato concassée	8 oz.	250 g
Champagne	6 oz.	180 ml
White stock	8 oz.	250 ml
Opal basil bouquet garni	1	1
Heavy cream	3 qt.	3 lt
Fresh orange juice	4 oz.	120 ml
Sea salt	TT	TT
Pepper	TT	TT
Whole butter	4 oz.	120 g

1. Sauté the shallots, sun-dried tomatoes and garlic in the olive oil for 2 minutes.
2. Add the tomato concassée, champagne, white stock and bouquet garni and reduce by two thirds.
3. Add the cream and simmer for 40 minutes.
4. Add the orange juice, season to taste and monté au beurre.

Approximate values per 1 1/2-oz. (45-ml) serving: **Calories** 155, **Total fat** 16 g, **Saturated fat** 9 g, **Cholesterol** 48 mg, **Sodium** 43 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 15%

RECIPE 19.34

Scallops and Shrimp Sambuca

Yield: 1 9-oz. (270-g) Serving

Method: Sautéing

Fennel, julienne	1 oz.	30 g
Carrot, julienne	1 oz.	30 g
Celery, julienne	1 oz.	30 g
Shrimp, U-10, butterflied	3	3
Whole butter	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Bay scallops	3 oz.	90 g
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
Sambuca	1 oz.	30 ml
Heavy cream	3 oz.	90 ml
Puff pastry fleurons	2	2
Fresh dill	1 sprig	1 sprig

1. Blanch the fennel, carrots and celery. Refresh in cold water, drain and reserve.
2. Sauté the shrimp in the butter over high heat for 1 minute. Add the scallops and sauté for 30 more seconds. Season the shellfish with salt and pepper, remove and reserve in a warm place.
3. Deglaze the pan with Sambuca. Add the cream. Boil and reduce until the sauce thickens. Add the vegetables, scallops and shrimp to the pan and simmer until the shellfish is done, approximately 2 minutes. Adjust the seasonings.
4. Serve the vegetables and shellfish mounded on a warm plate, garnished with the fleurons and dill.

Approximate values per 9-oz. (270-g) serving: **Calories** 1350, **Total fat** 58 g, **Saturated fat** 31 g, **Cholesterol** 695 mg, **Sodium** 3370 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 117 g, **Protein** 90 g, **Vitamin A** 120%, **Calcium** 70%, **Iron** 140%

RECIPE 19.35

Shrimp with Olive Oil and Garlic

Yield: 4 Servings

Method: Sautéing

Garlic, chopped	4 Tbsp.	60 ml
Extra virgin olive oil	4 oz.	120 ml

Continued

Shrimp, 26–30 count, in shell	2 lb. 8 oz.	1 kg
Coarse sea salt	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Lemon juice	2 Tbsp.	30 ml

1. Sauté the garlic in the olive oil until translucent.
2. Add the shrimp and salt. Toss to coat the shrimp with the oil and cook just until the shrimp are pink, approximately 5 minutes. Add the lemon juice.
3. Arrange the shrimp on warm serving plates; top with the oil, garlic and lemon juice left in the pan. Serve immediately.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 530, **Total fat** 31 g, **Saturated fat** 4.5 g, **Cholesterol** 555 mg, **Sodium** 2380 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 60 g, **Vitamin A** 20%, **Vitamin C** 20%, **Iron** 50%

RECIPE 19.36

Shrimp Poached in Orange Juice, Ginger and Sauterne

From *Allen Susser's New World Cuisine and Cookery,*
by ALLEN SUSSER, North Miami Beach, FL

Yield: 4 Servings Method: Poaching

Jumbo shrimp, raw	16	16
Orange juice, fresh squeezed	1 pt.	500 ml
Fresh ginger, julienne	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Sauterne	4 oz.	120 ml
Shallots, julienne	1 pt.	500 ml
Carrots, julienne	1 pt.	500 ml
Kosher salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Black pepper	1 tsp.	5 ml

1. Peel, clean and butterfly the shrimp.
2. Place all the ingredients in a low-sided pan with a lid and slowly warm over low heat to just about a simmer. Cover the pan and poach the shrimp for 3 to 4 minutes. The shrimp should be rosy pink and firm to the touch.
3. Remove from the heat and serve the shrimp with the vegetables and broth.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 410, **Total fat** 4 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 665 mg, **Sodium** 1360 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 21 g, **Protein** 73 g, **Vitamin A** 190%, **Vitamin C** 130%, **Iron** 60%

RECIPE 19.37

Grilled Prawn Brochette with Butternut Squash Risotto

BISHOP'S RESTAURANT, Vancouver, BC
Chefs Michael Allemeier and Dennis Green

Yield: 4 Servings

Whole Pacific spot prawns	24 large	24 large
Vegetable oil	2 Tbsp.	30 ml

Garlic, minced	2 cloves	2 cloves
Fresh thyme leaves	4 sprigs	4 sprigs
Butternut Squash Risotto (recipe follows)	4 servings	4 servings
Prawn Sauce (recipe follows)	12 oz.	360 ml
Fresh thyme sprigs	as needed for garnish	

1. Peel and devein the prawns, reserving the heads and shells for the stock. Arrange 6 prawns on each pair of skewers and place in a shallow dish.
2. Combine the oil, garlic and thyme leaves and spread over the prawns. Cover and refrigerated for 1 hour, or until needed.
3. Cook the prawns on a very hot grill until slightly firm to the touch and barely opaque in the middle, approximately 2 minutes on each side. Serve on top of a mound of Butternut Squash Risotto with the Prawn Sauce drizzled around the edge. Garnish with fresh thyme.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 280, **Total fat** 9 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 440 mg, **Sodium** 510 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 48 g, **Vitamin A** 15%, **Iron** 40%

BUTTERNUT SQUASH RISOTTO

Yield: 4 Servings

Onion, fine dice	1 medium	1 medium
Vegetable oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Butter	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Arborio rice	1 pt.	500 ml
Butternut squash, diced	1 lb.	500 g
Prawn Stock (recipe follows)	1 qt.	1 lt
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Spinach, cleaned, stems removed	1 bunch	1 bunch
Heavy cream	4 oz.	120 ml

1. Sauté the onions in the oil and butter until translucent. Add the rice and sauté until the grains appear slightly clear.
2. Add the squash and approximately half of the stock. Season with salt and pepper and bring to a simmer. Reduce the heat to medium low and simmer, uncovered, for 20 minutes, stirring occasionally. Add stock as needed to ensure that the rice always remains just covered.
3. When the rice has absorbed most of the liquid and is just slightly al dente, stir in the spinach and cream. Cook only until the risotto is creamy but not too thick.

Approximate values per 12-oz. (350-g) serving: **Calories** 310, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 95 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 50 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin A** 190%, **Vitamin C** 50%, **Iron** 20%

PRAWN SAUCE

Yield: 4 Servings

Shallots, sliced	2	2
Vegetable oil	2 tsp.	10 ml
Roma tomatoes, chopped	2 large	2 large
Dry sherry	2 oz.	60 ml
Prawn Stock (recipe follows)	1 pt.	500 ml

Continued

Heavy cream	4 oz.	120 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Sauté the shallots in the oil until tender. Add the tomatoes and sherry and simmer for a few mintues to remove some of the moisture.
2. Add the prawn stock and simmer for 20 minutes or until reduced by half.
3. Add the cream, adjust the seasonings and strain, pushing as much of the tomatoes and shallots as possible through the strainer with the back of a ladle or large spoon. Keep the sauce warm for service.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (96-g) serving: **Calories** 140, **Total fat** 12 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 40 mg, **Sodium** 25 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 5 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 40%

PRAWN STOCK

Yield: 1 1/2 qt. (1.5 lt)

Pacific spot prawn shells and heads	24	24
Vegetable oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Onion, diced	1 medium	1 medium
Carrots, sliced	2	2
Celery, diced	2 stalks	2 stalks
Leek, sliced	1 small	1 small
Garlic, minced	2 cloves	2 cloves
Thyme stems	4	4
Dry sherry	2 oz.	60 ml
Water, cold	1 1/2 qt.	1.5 lt

1. Place the shells, heads and oil in a large ovenproof skillet or roasting pan and roast at 400°F (200°C) for 15 minutes, or until the color changes.
2. Add the vegetables, garlic and thyme stems and roast for 15 minutes.
3. Remove the pan from the oven and deglaze with the sherry. Transfer everything to a stock pot and cover with water.
4. Bring to a boil, reduce the heat and simmer for 45 minutes. Strain.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (121-g) serving: **Calories** 93, **Total fat** 3 g, **Saturated fat** .5 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 50 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 11 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 128%

RECIPE 19.38

FRESH WATER SHRIMP WRAPPED IN POTATO

MANGO RESTAURANT, CHICAGO, IL
Chef Steven Chiappetti

Yield: 2 servings

Fresh water shrimp, jumbo	2	2
Potato, large	1	1
Garlic clove, minced	1	1
Spinach, cleaned	1 bunch	1 bunch
Soy sauce	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Brown sugar	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Wasabi powder	4 Tbsp.	60 ml

Water, warm	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Corn oil	2 oz.	60 ml

1. Clean the shrimp, leaving the tail attached. Cut the potato into thin threads and wrap the threads tightly around the shrimp, covering them completely.
2. In a sauté pan, cook the garlic until golden brown. Add the spinach and cook until tender.
3. In a small pan, mix the soy sauce with the brown sugar, place on the stove and reduce by half.
4. Blend the wasabi powder with the warm water until smooth.
5. Place the corn oil in a shallow pan and heat. When the oil is hot, carefully place the shrimp in the oil and cook until golden brown.
6. Arrange the sautéed spinach in a tight circle on each plate and drizzle with the wasabi.
7. Drench the shrimp in the soy sauce reduction and place on top of the spinach.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 490, **Total fat** 28 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 165 mg, **Sodium** 1250 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 36 g, **Protein** 22 g, **Vitamin A** 25%, **Vitamin C** 45%, **Iron** 30%

RECIPE 19.39

Spicy Calamari Salad

THE BAMBOO CLUB, PHOENIX, AZ
Benny Chan, President

Yield: 4 6-oz (180-g) Servings — Method: Deep-Frying

Squid, cleaned and cut into rings	1 lb.	450 g
Marinade:		
Lemon juice	4 oz.	120 ml
Red wine vinegar	1 pt.	450 ml
Garlic powder	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Red bell pepper, sliced thin	3 oz.	90 g
Green bell pepper, sliced thin	3 oz.	90 g
Oyster mushrooms, sliced	12 oz.	350 g
Whole butter	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Garlic, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Oyster sauce	4 Tbsp.	60 ml
Chile pepper flakes	TT	TT
Flour	6 oz.	170 g
Baking powder	1 1/2 Tbsp.	22 ml
Cornstarch	1 1/2 Tbsp.	22 ml
Boston lettuce, torn into small pieces	8 oz.	250 g
Fresh cilantro or Italian parsley	as needed for garnish	

1. Marinate the squid in the lemon juice, vinegar and garlic powder for 3 days.
2. Sauté the peppers and mushrooms in the butter. Add the garlic, oyster sauce and chile peppers. Set aside.

Continued

3. Drain the squid, pressing out as much liquid as possible. Combine the flour, baking powder and cornstarch; toss with the squid until well coated.
4. Deep-fry the squid at 350°F (180°C) until crispy and golden brown. Drain and toss with the peppers and mushrooms. Serve on a bed of lettuce, garnished with cilantro or Italian parsley.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (370-g) serving: **Calories** 450, **Total fat** 13 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 305 mg, **Sodium** 720 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 55 g, **Protein** 29 g, **Vitamin A** 20%, **Vitamin C** 100%, **Calcium** 35%

RECIPE 19.40

Softshell Crab Po' Boy Sandwich

PHOENIX BREWING CO., Atlanta, GA
Executive Chef Kevin Fonzo

Yield: 6 Sandwiches

Soft shell crabs, cleaned	6	6
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Blue cornmeal	as needed for breading	
Flour	as needed for breading	
Egg wash	as needed for breading	
Creole Rémoulade Sauce (recipe follows)	1 1/2 pt.	720 ml
Mini-baguettes, sliced in half and toasted	6	6
Lettuce, shredded	3 pt.	480 ml
Tomato slices	18	18

1. Season the crabs with salt and pepper. Bread each crab using the standard breading procedure as described in Chapter 21, Deep Frying.
2. Using the basket method, deep-fry the crabs until done.
3. Spread the Creole Rémoulade Sauce evenly over the baguettes.
4. Divide the shredded lettuce over the bottoms of the baguettes, then top with the tomato slices, crab and the top of the baguettes. Serve with sautéed potatoes or potato salad.

Approximate values per sandwich: **Calories** 530, **Total fat** 21 g, **Saturated fat** 5 g, **Cholesterol** 45 mg, **Sodium** 1440 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 66 g, **Protein** 18 g, **Vitamin A** 20%, **Vitamin C** 50%

CREOLE RÉMOULADE SAUCE

Yield: 1 1/2 pt. (720 ml)

Fresh lemon juice	4 oz.	120 ml
Yellow onion, diced fine	1 c.	250 ml
Green onion, diced fine	1 c.	250 ml
Celery, diced fine	1/2 c.	125 ml
Garlic, chopped	1 Tbsp.	30 ml
Grain mustard	6 oz.	180 g
Ketchup	3 oz.	90 g
Olive oil	3 oz.	90 ml

Salt	2 tsp.	10 ml
Cayenne	1/2 tsp.	3 ml
Black pepper	1/2 tsp.	3 ml
Parsley, chopped fine	1/3 c.	85 ml

1. In a large mixing bowl, combine the lemon juice, yellow onion, green onion, celery, garlic, mustard and ketchup. Mix well.
2. Slowly incorporate the oil into the mixture while whipping. Season with salt, cayenne and black pepper. Stir in the parsley.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 45, **Total fat** 4 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 310 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 3 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Vitamin C** 10%

RECIPE 19.41

Crab Meat Flan with Red Pepper Coulis and Chives

THE WHITE HOUSE, WASHINGTON, DC
Executive Sous Chef John Moeller

Yield: 6 Servings Method: Baking

Lump crab meat	8 oz.	250 g
Fresh chives, chopped	1 bunch	1 bunch
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
Eggs	5	5
Heavy cream	1 pt.	500 ml
Sherry	1 oz.	30 ml
Whole butter, melted	as needed	as needed
Beurre Blanc (Recipe 10.16)	18 oz.	560 ml
Red Pepper Coulis (Recipe 10.17)	3 oz.	90 ml
Fresh chives	12 stems	12 stems
Caviar or lumpfish roe	as needed for garnish	

1. Clean the crab meat and toss with the chopped chives. Season with salt and white pepper.
2. Beat the eggs together lightly and add the cream. Add the sherry and the crab meat mixture. Adjust the seasonings.
3. Coat six ramekins with melted butter and fill with the flan mixture. Place the ramekins in a water bath and bake at 350°F (180°C) until set, approximately 45–50 minutes.
4. Pool the Beurre Blanc on six serving plates. Unmold the flans and place in the center of each plate. Decorate the plates with the Red Pepper Coulis and garnish with the chive stems and caviar.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 460, **Total fat** 43 g, **Saturated fat** 25 g, **Cholesterol** 350 mg, **Sodium** 750 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 4 g, **Protein** 14 g, **Vitamin A** 50%, **Vitamin C** 15%

RECIPE 19.42

Thai Crab Cake

FLYING FISH, SEATTLE, WA
Chef-Owner Christine Keff

Yield: 4 Servings

Crab meat	2 c.	500 ml
Panko (Japanese bread crumbs)	2 c.	500 ml
Lemon Grass Mayonnaise (recipe follows)	1 c.	250 ml
Green onions, chopped fine	4	4
Basil, chopped fine	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Cilantro, chopped fine	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Mint, chopped fine	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Fish sauce	TT	TT
Mixed baby greens	as needed for garnish	
Orange supremes	as needed for garnish	
Lemon Grass Mayonnaise	as needed for garnish	

1. Gently stir together the crab meat, panko, Lemon Grass Mayonnaise, green onions, herbs and fish sauce. Divide into 4 portions and form into cakes.
2. Sauté each cake for 3 minutes on each side over medium heat, until golden brown.
3. Serve on a plate garnished with baby greens, orange supremes and additional Lemon Grass Mayonnaise.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (175-g) serving: **Calories** 544, **Total fat** 31 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 124 mg, **Sodium** 1006 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 45 g, **Protein** 21 g

LEMON GRASS MAYONNAISE

Yield: 1 pt. (450 ml)

Egg yolks	2	2
Rice wine vinegar	1 1/2 Tbsp.	23 ml
Mirin	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Soy sauce	1 tsp.	5 ml
Fish sauce	1 tsp.	5 ml
Lemon Grass Oil (recipe follows)	1 1/4 c.	300 ml

1. Place all the ingredients except the Lemon Grass Oil into a food processor or blender and process for 30 seconds or until well blended.
2. With the processor running, drizzle in the oil to form an emulsion.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 146, **Total fat** 15 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 33 mg, **Sodium** 113 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 1 g

LEMON GRASS OIL

Yield: 10 oz. (300 ml)

Fresh ginger root, sliced thin	1/4 c.	60 ml
Lemon grass, chopped	1/4 c.	60 ml
Peanut oil	10 oz.	300 ml

1. Place all the ingredients in a small saucepan and bring to a simmer over low heat. Simmer for 5 minutes.
2. Remove from the heat and allow the flavored oil to stand overnight at room temperature. Strain before using.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (25-g) serving: **Calories** 186, **Total fat** 21 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 g, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 0 g

RECIPE 19.43

Grilled Lobster with Yellow Hot Chiles and Chipotle Pasta with Chipotle Beurre Blanc

VINCENT ON CAMBELBACK, PHOENIX, AZ
Chef Vincent Guerithault

Yield: 4 Servings — Method: Grilling

Lobsters, 1 lb. (450 g) each	4	4
Olive oil	as needed	as needed
Yellow hot chile peppers, roasted, peeled and seeded	8	8
Shallots, peeled and chopped	2	2
Dry white wine	8 oz.	250 ml
Heavy cream	4 oz.	120 ml
Unsalted butter	1 tsp.	5 ml
Fresh basil, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Fresh lemon	1/4	1/4
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Chipotle Pasta (recipe follows)	as needed	as needed
Chipotle Beurre Blanc (recipe follows)	as needed	as needed

1. Cut each lobster in half lengthwise and remove the stomach, tomalley and coral.
2. Brush the lobster meat with olive oil and grill over a very hot fire, meat side down, for approximately 7–8 minutes. Turn and grill for 5 minutes more. Crack the claws and set aside.
3. To make the sauce, combine 4 chopped yellow hot chiles, the shallots and the white wine. Bring to a boil and reduce au sec. Add the cream and simmer for approximately 8 minutes. Remove from the heat and monté au beurre. Strain, add the basil and the juice from 1/4 lemon and season to taste with salt and pepper.
4. Serve the sauce over the lobster and garnish with the remaining yellow chile peppers. Serve with Chipotle Pasta and Chipotle Beurre Blanc.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 1640, **Total fat** 106 g, **Saturated fat** 56 g, **Cholesterol** 670 mg, **Sodium** 3830 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 66 g, **Protein** 105 g, **Vitamin A** 100%, **Vitamin C** 50%, **Iron** 40%

CHIPOTLE PASTA

Yield: 4 6-oz. (180-g) (cooked weight) Servings

All-purpose flour	10 oz.	300 g
Chipotle chile purée	2 Tbsp.	30 ml

Continued

Eggs, extra large	2	2
Olive oil	2 tsp.	10 ml
Salt	TT	TT
Fresh cilantro, chopped	as needed	as needed

1. Combine the flour with the chipotle purée in a food processor; add the eggs and mix.
2. Add the olive oil and salt, then process until the mixture forms a small ball around the blade. It may be necessary to add a few drops of water.
3. Run the dough through a pasta machine until it reaches the desired thinness, then cut. Hang the cut pasta on a rack to dry.
4. When ready to serve, cook the dried pasta in boiling salted water for approximately 15 seconds; drain. Add salt to taste and toss with Chipotle Beurre Blanc.
5. Garnish with chopped cilantro and serve hot.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (107-g) serving: **Calories** 310, **Total fat** 5 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 105 mg, **Sodium** 640 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 55 g, **Protein** 11 g, **Vitamin A** 6%, **Iron** 20%

CHIPOTLE BEURRE BLANC

Yield: 4 4-oz. (120-g) servings

White wine	8 oz.	250 ml
White wine vinegar	8 oz.	250 ml
Shallots, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Heavy cream	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Unsalted butter, softened	1 lb.	450 g
Chipotle chile, pickled	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Combine the wine, vinegar and shallots in a skillet and reduce au sec.
2. Whisk in the cream and slowly add the softened butter, 2 ounces (60 grams) at a time, whisking constantly.
3. Purée the chile and add it to the sauce. Season to taste with salt and pepper.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (146-g) serving: **Calories** 850, **Total fat** 93 g, **Saturated fat** 58 g, **Cholesterol** 250 mg, **Sodium** 610 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 90%

RECIPE 19.44

LOBSTER À L'AMÉRICAINE

Yield: 4 4-5 oz. (120-130 g) Lobster and 4-oz. (120-g) Sauce Servings

Method: Sautéing

Lobsters, 1 lb. 12 oz. (750 g) each	2	2
Clarified butter	2 oz.	60 ml
Shallots, chopped	1 oz.	30 g
Garlic, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Brandy	4 oz.	120 ml
Dry white wine	8 oz.	250 ml
Fish stock	16 oz.	450 ml
Tomato concassée	8 oz.	250 g

Sachet:		
Bay leaf	1	1
Dry thyme	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Peppercorns, cracked	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Parsley stems	6	6
Cayenne	TT	TT
Heavy cream, hot	8 oz.	250 ml
Whole butter, softened	2 oz.	60 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Cut the lobster for sautéing. Reserve the tomalley and coral if present.
2. Heat the clarified butter and sauté the lobster pieces for 30 seconds.
3. Add the shallots and garlic to the pan and sauté for 30 seconds more.
4. Remove the pan from the stove and add the brandy. Return the pan to the flame, ignite the brandy and allow it to burn for a few seconds. Add the white wine, fish stock, tomato concassée, sachet and cayenne.
5. Simmer for 5 minutes. Remove the lobster from the sauce. Remove the meat from the shells and reserve. Return the shells to the sauce.
6. Add the cream to the sauce. Bring to a boil and reduce by half.
7. Strain the sauce. Return to a simmer and thicken with beurre manié if needed.
8. Combine the whole butter with the reserved tomalley and coral and blend well. Monter au beurre with the tomalley and coral butter. Adjust the seasonings and serve the sauce over the lobster meat.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 780, **Total fat** 47 g, **Saturated fat** 28 g, **Cholesterol** 410 mg, **Sodium** 2340 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 9 g, **Protein** 80 g, **Vitamin A** 70%, **Calcium** 30%

RECIPE 19.45

Skillet of Lobster and Mushrooms Provençale

RIVERIA RESTAURANT, ATLANTA, GA
Chef Jack Shoop, CMC

Yield: 4 Servings

Olive oil	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Shallots, minced	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Chanterelle mushrooms, sliced	4 oz.	120 g
Shiitake mushrooms, sliced	4 oz.	120 g
Oyster mushrooms, sliced	4 oz.	120 g
Garlic, minced	1 clove	1 clove
Tomato concassée	8 oz.	250 g
Maine lobster tail meat, large dice	12 oz.	360 g
Dry white wine	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Chervil, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Tarragon, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Sea salt	TT	TT
Pepper	TT	TT

Continued

1. Heat the olive oil in a large sauté pan; add the shallots and cook for 1 minute.
2. Add the mushrooms and sauté until tender, approximately 5 minutes.
3. Add the garlic and tomatoes and sauté for 2 minutes.
4. Add the lobster and white wine and cook for 2 to 3 minutes, or until the lobster is cooked.
5. Add the herbs and season to taste with salt and pepper.
6. Spoon the mushrooms and lobster into individual serving-sized copper skillets and serve immediately.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (183-g) serving: **Calories** 270, **Total fat** 16 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 130 mg, **Sodium** 200 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 13 g, **Protein** 18 g, **Vitamin A** 20%, **Iron** 15%

RECIPE 19.46

Crayfish Étouffée

Yield: 4 Servings

Corn oil	4 oz.	120 ml
Flour	4 oz.	120 g
Onion, chopped fine	1 large	1 large
Celery, chopped fine	1 stalk	1 stalk
Green bell pepper, chopped	1/2	1/2
Garlic, minced	3 cloves	3 cloves
Shrimp broth or clam juice	1 1/4 pt.	600 ml
Lemon juice	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Crayfish fat (optional)	2 oz.	60 g
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Cayenne	1/2 tsp.	3 ml
Black pepper	1/2 tsp.	3 ml
Dried thyme	1/2 tsp.	3 ml
Bay leaf	1	1
Louisiana hot sauce	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Crayfish tails, frozen	1 lb.	450 g
Green onions, sliced	2	2
White rice, cooked	1 qt.	1 lt.

1. Heat the oil in a large sauté pan. Whisk in the flour and cook, stirring constantly, to make a medium dark roux.
2. Add the onion, celery, green bell pepper and garlic and sauté over medium low heat until the vegetables are tender, approximately 10 minutes.
3. Slowly add the shrimp broth or clam juice and bring to a boil. Reduce the heat to a simmer and add the lemon juice, crayfish fat and the spices. Simmer for 15 minutes to thicken.
4. Add the hot sauce and the crayfish tails and simmer for approximately 10 minutes. Add the green onions and adjust the seasonings. Serve over cooked rice.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 880, **Total fat** 32 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 150 mg, **Sodium** 1190 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 107 g, **Protein** 40 g, **Vitamin A** 300%, **Vitamin C** 480%, **Calcium** 45%, **Iron** 90%

RECIPE 19.47

SEVICHE

In a seviche, the fish and shellfish are "cooked" by the acids in the citrus juice. Although a variety of fish or shellfish may be used, it is extremely important that the products be absolutely fresh. Use a nonreactive container such as stainless steel or plastic for mixing or storing the seviche. Aluminum and other metals may react with the acids in the lime juice, giving the food a metallic flavor.

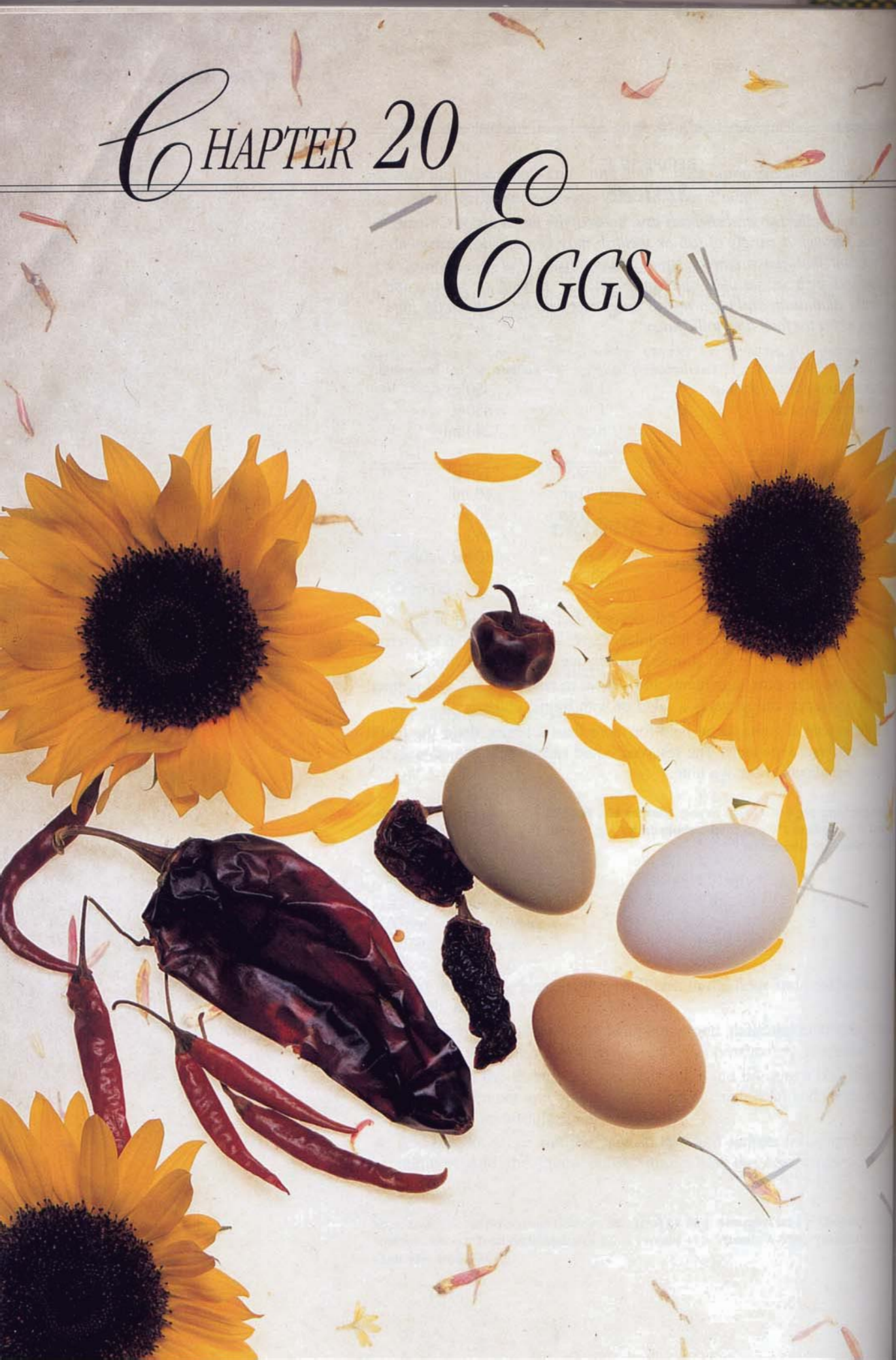
Yield: 3 lb. (1.4 kg)

Raw scallops and/or shrimp	1 lb.	450 g
Raw firm white fish	1 lb.	450 g
Fresh lime juice	8 oz.	240 ml
Serrano pepper, minced	4	4
Red onion, fine dice	6 oz.	170 g
Fresh cilantro, minced	4 Tbsp.	60 ml
Olive oil	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Tomato concassée	8 oz.	250 g
Garlic, chopped	2 tsp.	10 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Chop the scallops, shrimp and fish coarsely but evenly. Place in a nonreactive container and add the lime juice. Cover and marinate in the refrigerator for 4 hours. The fish should turn opaque and become firm.
2. Toss in the remaining ingredients and season to taste with salt and pepper. Chill thoroughly and serve as a salad or with tortilla chips.
3. If the seviche is going to be held for more than 2 hours, drain the liquid and refrigerate separately. The reserved liquid can then be tossed with the other ingredients at service time.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 120, **Total fat** 4.5 g, **Saturated fat** .5 g, **Cholesterol** 30 mg, **Sodium** 250 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 5 g, **Protein** 13 g, **Vitamin A** 10%, **Vitamin C** 20%, **Claims**—low saturated fat

CHAPTER 20
EGGS



Phoenix Brewing Co.,
Atlanta, GA
Executive Chef Kevin Fonzo

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- understand the composition of eggs
- purchase and store eggs properly
- apply various cooking methods to eggs

Nature designed eggs as the food source for developing chicks. Eggs, particularly chicken eggs, are also an excellent food for humans because of their high protein content, low cost and ready availability. They are extremely versatile and are used throughout the kitchen, either served alone or as ingredients in a prepared dish. Eggs are used to provide texture, flavor, structure, moisture and nutrition in everything from soups and sauces to breads and pastries.

High quality and freshness are critical for their proper use. Learn to select the finest products, and handle them with care.

Composition

The primary parts of an egg are the shell, yolk and albumen. See Figure 20.1.

The **shell**, composed of calcium carbonate, is the outermost covering of the egg. It prevents microbes from entering and moisture from escaping, and also protects the egg during handling and transport. Shell color is determined by the breed of the hen; for chickens, it can range from bright white to brown. Shell color has no effect on quality, flavor or nutrition.

The **yolk** is the yellow portion of the egg. It constitutes just over one third of the egg and contains three fourths of the calories, most of the minerals and vitamins and all the fat. The yolk also contains lecithin, the compound responsible for emulsification in products such as hollandaise sauce and mayonnaise. Egg yolk solidifies (coagulates) at temperatures between 149°F and 158°F (65°C–70°C). Although the color of a yolk may vary depending on the hen's feed, color does not affect quality or nutritional content.

The **albumen** is the clear portion of the egg and is often referred to as the **egg white**. It constitutes about two thirds of the egg and contains more than half of the protein and riboflavin. Egg white coagulates, becoming firm and opaque, at temperatures between 144°F and 149°F (62°C–65°C).

An often misunderstood portion of the egg is the **chalazae cords**. These thick, twisted strands of egg white anchor the yolk in place. They are neither

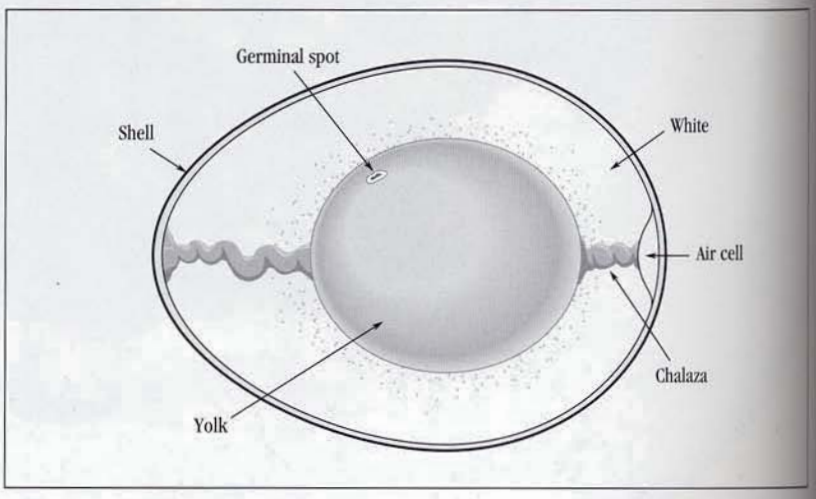


FIGURE 20.1 *An Egg*

Not Just Chickens

When most people refer to an "egg," they mean a chicken's egg. But other eggs are sometimes used in the kitchen:

Bantam egg: The egg from a breed of small chicken; it is about half the size of a regular chicken egg and has the same characteristics.

Duck egg: It has an off-white shell and a richer flavor and higher fat content than a chicken's egg; when boiled, the white turns bluish and the yolk turns red-orange.

Goose egg: White-shelled, it is four to five times larger than a chicken egg and has a somewhat richer flavor.

Guinea fowl egg: An egg with an ivory shell flecked with brown; it has a more delicate flavor than that of a chicken egg.

Gull egg: Its shell is covered with light to dark brown blotches and comes in various small sizes; the egg has a slightly fishy flavor.

Ostrich egg: Twenty times as large as a chicken egg, its shell is thick and ivory-colored.

Partridge egg: A small egg with a white, buff or olive shell and a mild flavor.

Quail egg: A richly flavored egg, it is small with a speckled brown shell.

Turkey egg: A large egg with a brown shell and a delicate flavor.

Turtle egg: A reptile's egg with a mild, rich flavor; its soft shell is buff or speckled.

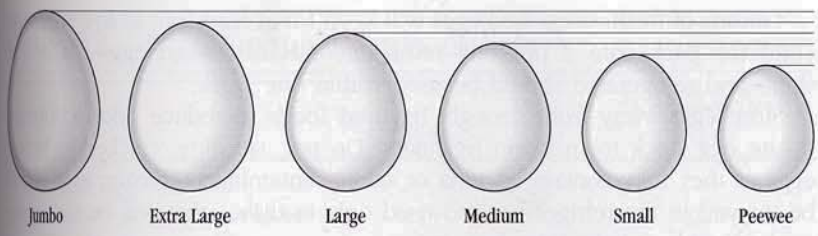


FIGURE 20.2 *Egg Sizes*

imperfections nor embryos. The more prominent the chalazae, the fresher the egg. Chalazae do not interfere with cooking or with whipping egg whites.

Eggs are sold in jumbo, extra large, large, medium, small and peewee sizes, as determined by weight per dozen. See Figure 20.2. Food service operations generally use large eggs.

Grading

Eggs are graded by the USDA or a state agency following USDA guidelines. The grade AA, A or B is given an egg based upon interior and exterior quality, not size. The qualities for each grade are described in Table 20.1. Grade has no effect on nutritional values.

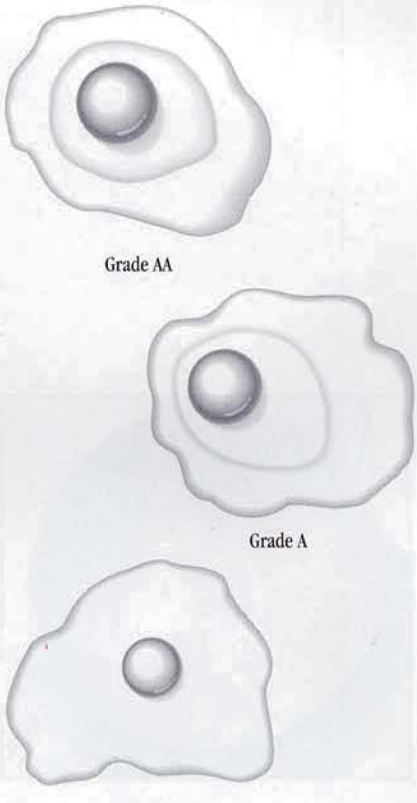
Storage

Egg quality is quickly diminished by improper handling. Eggs should be stored at temperatures below 40°F (4°C) and at a relative humidity of 70 to 80%. Eggs will age more during one day at room temperature than they will during one week under proper refrigeration. As eggs age, the white becomes thinner and the yolk becomes flatter. Although this will change the appearance of poached or fried eggs, age has little effect on nutrition or behavior during cooking procedures. Older eggs, however, should be used for hard-cooking, as the shells are easier to remove than those on fresh eggs.

TABLE 20.1 EGG GRADES

	Grade AA	Grade A	Grade B
Spread*	Remains compact	Spreads slightly	Spreads over wide area
Albumen	Clear, thick and firm; prominent chalazae	Clear and reasonably firm; prominent chalazae	Clear; weak or watery
Yolk	Firm; centered; stands round and high; free from defects	Firm; stands fairly high; practically free from defects	Enlarged and flattened; may show slight defects
Shell	Clean; of normal shape; unbroken		Slight stains permissible; abnormal shape; unbroken
Use	Any use, especially frying, poaching and cooking in shell		Baking, scrambling, used in bulk egg products

*Spread refers to the appearance of the egg when first broken onto a flat surface.



Grade AA

Grade A

Grade B

Cartons of fresh, uncooked eggs will keep for at least four to five weeks beyond the pack date if properly refrigerated. Hard-cooked eggs left in their shells and refrigerated should be used within one week.

Store eggs away from strongly flavored foods to reduce odor absorption. Rotate egg stock to maintain freshness. Do not use dirty, cracked or broken eggs as they may contain bacteria or other contaminants. Frozen eggs should be thawed in the refrigerator and used only in dishes that will be thoroughly cooked, such as baked products.

Sanitation

Eggs are a potentially hazardous food. Rich in protein, they are an excellent breeding ground for bacteria. Salmonella is of particular concern with eggs and egg products because this bacteria is commonly found in a chicken's intestinal tract. Although shells are cleaned at packing houses, some bacteria may remain. Therefore, to prevent contamination, it is best to avoid mixing a shell with the liquid egg.

Pasteurization—*the process of heating something to a certain temperature for a specific period in order to destroy pathogenic bacteria.*

Inadequately cooking or improperly storing eggs may lead to food-borne illnesses. USDA guidelines indicate that **pasteurization** is achieved when the whole egg stays at a temperature of 140°F (60°C) for 3.5 minutes. Hold egg dishes below 40°F (4°C) or above 145°F (63°C). Never leave an egg dish at room temperature for more than one hour, including preparation and service time. Never reuse a container after it has held raw eggs without thoroughly cleaning and sanitizing it.

Egg Products

Food service operations often want the convenience of buying eggs out of the shell in the exact form needed: whole eggs, yolks only or whites only. These processed items are called egg products and are subject to strict pasteurization standards and USDA inspections. Egg products can be frozen, refrigerated or dried. Precooked, preportioned and blended egg products are also available.

Egg Substitutes

Concerns about the cholesterol content of eggs have increased the popularity of egg substitutes. There are two general types of substitute. The first is a complete substitute made from soy or milk proteins. It should not be used in recipes where eggs are required for thickening. The second substitute contains real albumen, but the egg yolk has been replaced with vegetable or milk products. Egg substitutes have a different flavor than real eggs, but may be useful for persons on a restricted diet.

Nutrition

Eggs contain vitamins A, D, E, K and the B-complex vitamins. They are rich in minerals and do not contain as much cholesterol as was once feared. In fact, the American Heart Association now suggests that it is acceptable to consume up to four egg yolks per week as part of a balanced diet. The nutritional values of eggs as well as an egg substitute are listed in Table 20.2.

TABLE 20.2 NUTRITIONAL VALUES OF EGGS

	Calories	Protein (g)	Carbohydrates (g)	Total Fat (g)	Saturated Fat (g)	Cholesterol (mg)
Whole large egg, one approximately 1.75 ounces (53 g)	75	6.3	0.6	5	1.6	213
Yolk from one large egg	59	2.8	0.3	5	1.6	213
White from one large egg	16	3.5	0.3	0	0	0
Egg substitute (Egg Beaters), 1/4 cup (equivalent to one large egg)	25	5	1	0	0	0

The Corinne T. Netzer Encyclopedia of Food Values 1992

WHIPPED EGG WHITES

Egg whites are often whipped into a foam that is then incorporated into cakes, custards, soufflés, pancakes and other products. The air beaten into the egg foam gives products lightness and assists with leavening.

PROCEDURE FOR WHIPPING EGG WHITES

1. Use fresh egg whites that are completely free of egg yolk and other impurities. Warm the egg whites to room temperature before whipping; this helps a better foam to form.
2. Use a clean bowl and whisk. Even a tiny amount of fat can prevent the egg whites from foaming properly.
3. Whip the whites until very foamy, then add salt or cream of tartar as directed.
4. Continue whipping until soft peaks form, then gradually add granulated sugar as directed.
5. Whip until stiff peaks form. Properly whipped egg whites should be moist and shiny; overwhipping will make the egg whites appear dry and spongy or curdled.
6. Use the whipped egg whites immediately. If liquid begins to separate from the whipped egg whites, discard them; they cannot be rewhipped successfully.

Egg whites whipped to soft peaks.

Egg whites whipped to stiff peaks.

Spongy, overwhipped egg whites.

APPLYING VARIOUS COOKING METHODS

No other food is as popular for breakfast, or as versatile, as the egg. Eggs can be cooked by almost any method and served with a wide array of seasonings, accompaniments and garnishes. Whatever cooking method is selected, be sure to prepare the eggs carefully: Overcooked eggs and those cooked at too high a temperature will be tough and rubbery. Undercooked eggs may transmit pathogenic bacteria and pose a risk of food-borne illness.

The following cooking methods are those most often used for egg-based dishes. They include dry-heat cooking methods (baking, sautéing and pan-frying) and moist-heat cooking methods (in-shell cooking and poaching).

DRY-HEAT COOKING METHODS

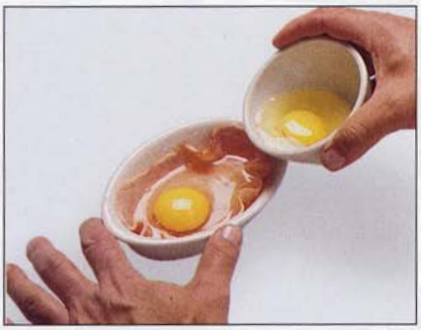
Baking

Shirred Eggs

Baked eggs, also referred to as shirred eggs, are normally prepared in individual ramekins or baking dishes. The ramekins can be lined or partially filled with ingredients such as bread, ham, creamed spinach or artichokes. The eggs are often topped with grated cheese, fresh herbs or a sauce. When properly cooked, the egg whites should be set while the yolks are soft and creamy.

PROCEDURE FOR PREPARING SHIRRED EGGS

1. Coat each ramekin with melted butter. Add flavoring ingredients as desired.
2. Break one or two eggs into each ramekin. Do not break the yolks. Season with salt and pepper.
3. Bake the eggs until the white is firm, approximately 12–15 minutes. Approximately 3–5 minutes before the eggs are done, add cream or top the eggs with grated cheese, diced ham, fresh herbs or other ingredients as desired.



1. Adding the eggs to the ramekin on top of the ham.

2. The finished shirred eggs with ham.

RECIPE 20.1

SHIRRED EGGS WITH HAM

Yield: 1 Serving

Whole butter, melted	as needed	as needed
Baked ham, sliced thin	1/2 oz.	15 g
Eggs	2	2
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Heavy cream, hot	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Swiss cheese, grated	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Brush the interior of a 6-ounce (180-milliliter) ramekin with melted butter. Line the ramekin with the ham.
2. Break the eggs into a cup and pour them carefully into the ramekin on top of the ham. Season with salt and pepper.

3. Bake at 325°F (160°C) until the eggs begin to set, approximately 8–10 minutes. Remove from the oven, add the cream and grated cheese. Return to the oven until the eggs are cooked and the cheese is melted. Serve immediately.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 280, **Total fat** 22 g, **Saturated fat** 10 g, **Cholesterol** 470 mg, **Sodium** 300 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 17 g, **Vitamin A** 30%

Quiche

Quiche is a classic breakfast and brunch entrée. It consists of an egg custard (eggs, cream or milk and seasonings) and fillings baked in a crust.

The filling usually includes at least one type of cheese and can also include any number of other ingredients such as cooked, diced meats (for example, sausage, crumbled bacon, ham, fish or shellfish) or blanched vegetables (for example, mushrooms, sautéed onions, asparagus or broccoli). The flavor and texture of these ingredients should complement one another without overpowering the delicate egg custard. Quiche is a good way of using leftovers, but the ingredients should still be fresh and of good quality.

The crust may be made with whole wheat flour, cornmeal or other grains for added flavor and texture. A recipe for quiche dough is given at Recipe 32.15.

Procedure for Preparing Quiche

1. Prepare and bake a pie shell.
2. Prepare the garnishes and flavoring ingredients and add them to the pie shell.
3. Prepare a custard and add it to the pie shell. Ratios of eggs to milk or heavy cream vary depending on the specific recipe, but 6–8 eggs to 1 quart (1 liter) of liquid is usually sufficient to bind the custard.
4. Bake the quiche until set; allow it to cool slightly before cutting.

RECIPE 20.2

Quiche Lorraine

Yield: 1 10-in. (25-cm) Quiche

Pie shell, 10-in. (25-cm) diameter, baked	1	1
Bacon, diced and cooked	4 oz.	120 g
Swiss or Gruyère cheese, shredded	2 oz.	60 g
Eggs	4	4
Milk	1 pt.	450 ml
Heavy cream	4 oz.	120 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Nutmeg	TT	TT

1. Place the bacon and shredded cheese in the baked pie shell.
2. To make the custard, combine the eggs, milk and cream, and season with salt, pepper and nutmeg.

Continued

3. Pour the custard over the bacon and cheese and bake at 350°F (180°C) until the custard is cooked, approximately 1 hour.

Approximate values per 1/8-pie (130-g) serving: **Calories** 330, **Total fat** 25 g, **Saturated fat** 11 g, **Cholesterol** 105 mg, **Sodium** 420 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 14 g, **Protein** 12 g, **Vitamin A** 10%, **Calcium** 15%

Sautéing

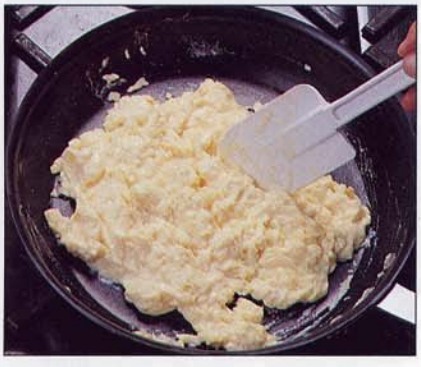
Scrambled Eggs

Scrambled eggs are eggs whisked with seasonings and then sautéed. They are stirred nearly constantly during cooking. The finished eggs should be light and fluffy with a tender, creamy texture. A small amount of milk or cream may be added to the eggs to provide a more delicate finished product. Overcooking or cooking at too high a temperature causes the eggs to become tough and rubbery.

Scrambled eggs are often flavored by sautéing other foods (for example, onions, mushrooms or diced ham) in the pan before adding the eggs or by adding other foods (for example, grated cheeses or herbs) to the eggs just before cooking is complete. Suggested additions include finely diced bell peppers, onions, mushrooms, zucchini or tomatoes; cottage cheese or any variety of shredded firm cheese; crumbled bacon; diced ham, turkey or beef; bits of smoked salmon, cooked shrimp or cooked sausage; and fresh herbs.

Scrambled eggs can also be prepared using egg whites only. Because all of an egg's fat is stored in the yolk, no-yolk scrambled egg dishes are lower in fat, cholesterol and calories. Water or nonfat milk can be used in place of whole milk or cream to further reduce the fat and calorie content of the finished dish. Remember that egg whites coagulate at a lower temperature than yolks, so adjust your cooking time and temperature accordingly.

1. Stirring the scrambled eggs.



2. The properly cooked eggs.

Procedure for Preparing Scrambled Eggs

1. Break the eggs into a mixing bowl. Season lightly with salt and pepper. Add 1 scant tablespoon (12 milliliters) of milk or cream per egg and whisk everything together.
2. Heat a sauté pan, add clarified butter or oil and heat until the fat begins to sizzle.
3. Sauté any additional ingredients in the hot fat.
4. Pour the eggs into the pan all at once. As the eggs begin to set, slowly stir the mixture with a spatula. Lift cooked portions to allow uncooked egg to flow underneath.
5. Sprinkle on additional ingredients such as cheese or herbs.
6. Cook just until the eggs are set, but still shiny and moist. Remove from the pan and serve immediately.

RECIPE 20.3

Scrambled Eggs

Yield: 6 4-oz. (120-g) Servings

Eggs	12	12
Heavy cream	2 oz.	60 ml

Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Clarified butter	2 oz.	60 ml

1. Combine the eggs, cream, salt and pepper in a mixing bowl. Whisk until well blended.
2. Heat the clarified butter in a sauté pan.
3. Pour the egg mixture into the hot pan and cook, stirring frequently, until set, approximately 2 minutes. The eggs should be set, but still shiny and moist.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 250, **Total fat** 21 g, **Saturated fat** 10 g, **Cholesterol** 460 mg, **Sodium** 210 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 13 g, **Vitamin A** 30%

Omelets

Omelets are needlessly intimidating egg creations that begin as scrambled eggs. They are usually prepared as individual servings using two or three eggs. The cooked eggs are either folded around or filled with a warm savory mixture.

The filling may contain vegetables, cheeses and/or meats. Any filling ingredient that needs cooking should be cooked before being added to the omelet. Because the eggs cook relatively quickly, raw fillings would not be cooked properly until the eggs were overcooked.

Procedure for Preparing Folded Omelets

1. Fully cook any meats and blanch or otherwise cook any vegetables that will be incorporated into the omelet.
2. Heat an omelet pan over moderately high heat and add clarified butter.
3. Whisk the eggs together in a small bowl. Season with salt and pepper if desired.
4. Pour the eggs into the pan and stir until they begin to set, approximately 10 seconds.
5. Pull cooked egg from the sides of the pan toward the center, allowing raw egg to run underneath. Continue doing so for 20–30 seconds.
6. Spoon any fillings on top of the eggs or add any other garnishes.
7. When cooked as desired, flip one side of the omelet toward the center with a spatula or a shake of the pan. Slide the omelet onto the serving plate so that it lands folded in thirds with the seam underneath.
8. Spoon any sauce or additional filling on top, garnish as desired, and serve immediately.

RECIPE 20.4

Shrimp and Avocado Omelet

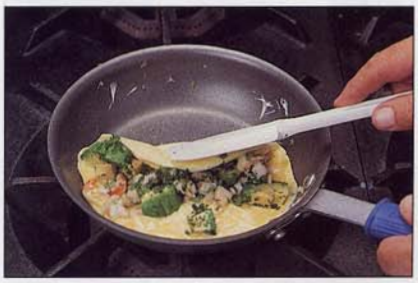
Yield: 1 Serving

Shrimp, peeled, deveined and cut into pieces	3 oz.	90 g
Green onion, sliced	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Clarified butter	1 oz.	30 ml
Eggs	3	3

Continued

1. Lifting the edge of the eggs to allow them to cook evenly.

2. Adding the filling to the eggs.



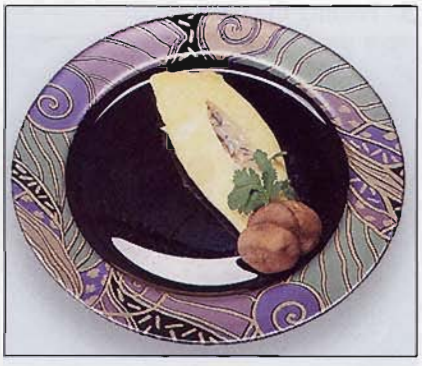
3. Folding the eggs.

4. Rolling the omelet onto the plate.

1. Rolling the omelet onto the serving plate.

2. Using a paring knife to cut into the center of the omelet.

3. Spooning in the filling.



4. The finished omelet.

Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Avocado, peeled and diced	1/4	1/4
Cilantro, chopped	2 tsp.	10 ml

1. Sauté the shrimp and onion in half of the butter for 1 minute. Remove from the heat and set aside.
2. Heat an omelet pan and add the remaining butter.
3. Whisk the eggs together in a small bowl, season with salt and pepper and pour into the omelet pan.
4. Stir the eggs as they cook. Stop when they begin to set. Lift the edges as the omelet cooks to allow the raw eggs to run underneath.
5. When the eggs are nearly set, add the shrimp filling, avocado and cilantro. Fold the front of the eggs over and roll the omelet onto a plate.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 590, **Total fat** 47 g, **Saturated fat** 19 g, **Cholesterol** 865 mg, **Sodium** 620 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 4 g, **Protein** 39 g, **Vitamin A** 60%, **Vitamin C** 20%, **Iron** 30%

French-style omelets are similar, but the eggs are cooked without a filling, then tightly rolled onto a plate for service. The finished omelet can then be cut and filled as desired.

Procedure for Preparing French-Style Omelets

1. Heat an omelet pan over moderately high heat and add clarified butter.
2. Whisk the eggs together in a small bowl. Season with salt and pepper if desired.
3. Pour the eggs into the pan and stir until they begin to set, approximately 10 seconds.
4. Pull cooked egg from the sides of the pan toward the center, allowing raw egg to run underneath. Continue doing so for 20-30 seconds.
5. When cooked as desired, flip one side of the omelet toward the center with a spatula or a shake of the pan. Roll the omelet onto the serving plate so that it lands with the seam underneath.

Frittatas

Frittatas are essentially open-faced omelets of Spanish-Italian heritage. They may be cooked in small pans as individual portions or in large pans, then cut into wedges for service. A relatively large amount of hearty ingredients are mixed directly into the eggs. The eggs are first cooked on the stove top, then the pan is transferred to an oven or placed under a salamander or broiler to finish cooking.

Procedure for Preparing Frittatas

1. Fully cook any meats and blanch or otherwise prepare any vegetables that will be incorporated into the frittata.
2. Heat a sauté pan and add clarified butter.
3. Whisk the eggs, flavorings and any other ingredients together; pour into the pan.

4. Stir gently until the eggs begin to set. Gently lift the cooked eggs at the edge of the frittata so that the raw eggs can run underneath. Continue cooking until the eggs are almost set.
5. Place the pan in a hot oven or underneath a salamander or broiler to finish cooking and lightly brown the top.
6. Slide the finished frittata out of the pan onto a serving platter.

RECIPE 20.5

GARDEN FRITTATA

Yield: 1 Serving

Chicken breast, 4 oz. (120 g), boneless, skinless	1	1
Garlic, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Cumin	TT	TT
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Mushrooms, sliced	2 oz.	60 g
Unsalted butter	3 Tbsp.	45 g
Jalapeño, seeded, minced	1 tsp.	5 ml
Red bell pepper, roasted, seeded, peeled, julienne	2 oz.	60 g
Green onions, sliced	1 oz.	30 g
Cilantro	2 tsp.	10 ml
Eggs, beaten	2	2
Monterey Jack or Cheddar cheese, shredded	2 oz.	60 g

1. Rub the chicken breast with the garlic, cumin, salt and pepper. Grill or broil the chicken until done. Allow it to rest briefly, then cut it into strips.
2. In a well-seasoned 9-inch (23-centimeter) sauté pan, sauté the mushrooms in the butter until tender. Add the jalapeño and sauté for 30 seconds. Add the chicken, roasted bell pepper, green onions and cilantro and sauté until hot.
3. Add the eggs and season with salt and pepper. Cook the mixture, stirring and lifting the eggs to help them cook evenly, until they begin to set.
4. Sprinkle the cheese over the eggs and place under a salamander or broiler to melt the cheese and finish cooking the eggs. Slide the frittata onto a plate or cut into wedges for smaller portions.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 1210, **Total fat** 72 g, **Saturated fat** 39 g, **Cholesterol** 720 mg, **Sodium** 1630 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 52 g, **Protein** 89 g, **Vitamin A** 440%, **Vitamin C** 790%, **Calcium** 70%, **Iron** 60%

Pan-Frying

Pan-fried eggs are commonly referred to as **sunny-side-up** or **over-easy**, **over-medium** or **over-hard**. These are visibly different products produced with proper timing and technique. Very fresh eggs are best for pan-frying as the yolk holds its shape better and the white spreads less.

Sunny-side-up eggs are not turned during cooking; their yellow yolks remain visible. They should be cooked over medium-low heat long enough to

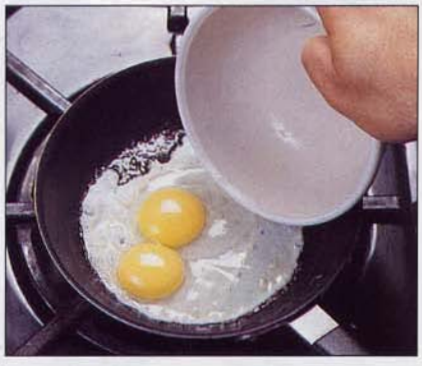
firm the whites and partially firm the yolks: approximately 4 minutes if cooked on a 250°F (120°C) cooking surface.

For "over" eggs, the egg is partially cooked on one side, then gently flipped and cooked on the other side until done. The egg white should be firm, and its edges should not be brown. The yolk should never be broken regardless of the degree of doneness. Not only is a broken yolk unattractive, the spilled yolk will coagulate on contact with the hot pan, making it difficult to serve.

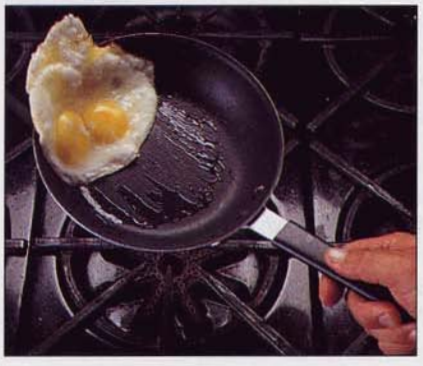
For over-easy eggs, the yolk should remain very runny; on a 250°F (120°C) cooking surface, the egg should cook for about 3 minutes on the first side and 2 minutes on the other. Eggs fried over-medium should be cooked slightly longer, until the yolk is partially set. For over-hard eggs, the yolk should be completely cooked.

Procedure for Pan-Frying Eggs

1. Select a sauté pan just large enough to accommodate the number of eggs being cooked. (An 8-inch-diameter [20-centimeter] pan is appropriate for up to three eggs.)
2. Add a small amount of clarified butter and heat until the fat just begins to sizzle.
3. Carefully break the eggs into the pan.
4. Continue cooking over medium-low heat until the eggs reach the appropriate degree of firmness. Sunny-side-up eggs are not flipped during cooking; "over" eggs are flipped once during cooking.
5. When done, gently flip the "over" eggs once again so that the first side is up, then gently slide the cooked eggs out of the pan onto the serving plate. Serve immediately.



1. Pouring the eggs into the sauté pan.



2. Flipping the eggs.

3. Sliding the eggs onto a plate for service.

Basted eggs are a variation of sunny-side-up eggs. Basted eggs are cooked over low heat with the hot butter from the pan spooned over them as they cook. Another version of basted eggs is made by adding 1–2 teaspoons (5–10 milliliters) of water to the sauté pan and then covering the pan. The steam cooks the top of the eggs.

Moist-Heat Cooking Methods

In-Shell Cooking (Simmering)

The difference between **soft-cooked eggs** (also called **soft-boiled**) and **hard-cooked eggs** (also called **hard-boiled**) is time. Both styles refer to eggs cooked in their shell in hot water. Despite the word *boiled* in their names, eggs cooked in the shell should never be boiled. Boiling toughens eggs and causes discoloration. Instead, eggs should be simmered. Soft-cooked eggs are usually simmered for 3–5 minutes; hard-cooked eggs may be simmered for as long as 12–15 minutes.

Sometimes it is difficult to remove the shell from very fresh eggs. Eggs that are a few days old are better for cooking in the shell.

Procedure for Preparing Soft-Cooked Eggs

1. Fill a saucepan or stockpot with sufficient water to cover the eggs. Bring the water to a simmer.
2. Carefully lower each egg into the simmering water. Simmer uncovered for 3–5 minutes, depending on the firmness desired.
3. Lift each egg out of the water with a slotted spoon or spider. Crack the large end of the shell carefully and serve immediately.

Procedure for Preparing Hard-Cooked Eggs

1. Repeat steps 1 and 2 for soft-cooked eggs, simmering the eggs for 12–15 minutes.
2. Lift each egg out of the water with a slotted spoon or spider and place in an ice bath. When the eggs are cool enough to handle, peel them and use as desired or cover and refrigerate for up to 5 days.

Poaching

Eggs that are to be poached should always be very fresh. They should also be kept very cold until used as cold egg whites stay together better when dropped into hot water. Poached eggs should be soft and moist; the whites should be firm enough to encase the yolk completely, but the yolk should still be runny.

Some chefs add salt to the poaching water for flavor; others believe that the salt causes the egg whites to separate. To help the egg whites cling together, add 2 tablespoons (30 milliliters) of white vinegar per quart (liter) of water.

Procedure for Poaching Eggs

1. Fill a saucepan or stockpot with at least 3 inches (7.5 centimeters) of water. Add salt and vinegar if desired. Bring the water to a simmer and hold at a temperature of approximately 200°F (90°C).
2. One at a time, crack the eggs into a small ramekin or cup. If a piece of shell falls into the egg, it should be removed; if the yolk breaks, the egg can be set aside for some other use.

3. Gently slide each egg into the simmering water and cook for 3–5 minutes.
4. Lift the poached egg out of the water with a slotted spoon. Trim any ragged edges with a paring knife. Serve immediately.

For quantity service, eggs can be poached in advance and held for up to one day. To do so, cook the eggs as described. As each egg is removed from the hot water, set it in a hotel pan filled with ice water. This stops the cooking process. The eggs can be stored in the ice water until needed. For banquet-style service, all the eggs can be reheated at once by placing the entire pan on the stove top. Or the eggs can be reheated one or two at a time by placing them in a pan of barely simmering water until they are hot.

RECIPE 20.6

Poached Eggs

Yield: 1 Serving

Water	as needed	as needed
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Vinegar	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Eggs	2	2

1. Bring the water to a simmer; add the salt and vinegar.
2. Crack one egg into a cup and carefully add it to the water. Repeat with the other egg.
3. Cook the eggs to the desired doneness, approximately 3–5 minutes. Remove them from the water with a slotted spoon and serve as desired or carefully lower them into ice water and refrigerate for later use.

Approximate values per 3 1/2-oz. (100-g) serving: **Calories** 140, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 425 mg, **Sodium** 280 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 12 g, **Vitamin A** 20%

1. Adding an egg to a pot of simmering water.

2. Lowering the eggs into ice water to cool them for future use.

Crêpes

Crêpes are thin, delicate, unleavened pancakes. They are made with a very liquid egg batter cooked in a small, very hot sauté pan. Crêpe batter can be flavored with buckwheat flour, cornmeal or other grains. Crêpes are not eaten as is, but are usually filled and garnished with sautéed fruits, scrambled eggs,

cheese or vegetables. Crêpes can be prepared in advance, then filled and reheated in the oven.

Blintzes are crêpes that are cooked on only one side, then filled with cheese, browned in butter and served with sour cream, fruit compote or preserves. A recipe for cheese blintzes is provided at the end of this chapter.

Procedure for Preparing Crêpes

1. Prepare the batter.
2. Heat a well-seasoned crêpe pan over moderately high heat. Add a small amount of clarified butter.
3. Ladle a small amount of batter into the pan. Tilt the pan so that the batter spreads to coat the bottom evenly.
4. Cook until the crêpe is set and the bottom begins to brown, approximately 1 minute. Flip the crêpe over with a quick flick of the wrist or by lifting it carefully with a spatula.
5. Cook for an additional 30 seconds. Slide the finished crêpe from the pan. Crêpes can be stacked between layers of parchment paper for storage.

RECIPE 20.7

Sweet Crêpes

Yield: 30 6-inch (15-cm) Crêpes

Whole eggs	6	6
Egg yolks	6	6
Water	12 oz.	350 ml
Milk	18 oz.	550 ml
Granulated sugar	6 oz.	180 g
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Flour	14 oz.	420 g
Unsalted butter, melted	5 oz.	150 g
Clarified butter	as needed	as needed

1. Whisk together the eggs, egg yolks, water and milk. Add the sugar, salt and flour; whisk together. Stir in the melted butter. Cover and set aside to rest for at least 1 hour before cooking.
2. Heat a small sauté or crêpe pan; brush lightly with clarified butter. Pour in 1 to 1 1/2 ounces (30–45 grams) of batter; swirl to coat the bottom of the pan evenly.
3. Cook the crêpe until set and light brown, approximately 30 seconds. Flip it over and cook a few seconds longer. Remove from the pan.
4. Cooked crêpes may be used immediately or covered and held briefly in a warm oven. Crêpes can also be wrapped well in plastic wrap and refrigerated for 2–3 days or frozen for several weeks.

Approximate values per 2-oz. (54-g) serving: **Calories** 140, **Total fat** 7 g, **Saturated fat** 3.5 g, **Cholesterol** 95 mg, **Sodium** 100 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 17 g, **Protein** 4 g

Conclusion

Eggs are found in practically every kitchen and served as the principal ingredient or incorporated into various dishes. How to select, handle and cook them well are basic skills all student chefs must master.

Questions for Discussion

1. Explain the difference between an omelet and a frittata.
2. Describe four different types of pan-fried eggs, and explain how each is prepared.
3. What is the difference between a soft-cooked egg and a hard-cooked egg? Why are these eggs simmered instead of boiled?
4. Why is it important not to overcook or undercook eggs?

Additional Egg Recipes

RECIPE 20.8

Southwestern Scrambled Eggs with Green Chile and Chorizo

Note: *This dish appears in the Chapter Opening photograph.*

PHOENIX BREWING CO., ATLANTA, GA
Executive Chef Kevin Fonzo

Yield: 4 Servings

Eggs	10	10
Milk	8 oz.	250 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Olive oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Chorizo, cooked	4 oz.	120 g
Green chiles, canned, chopped	1/4 c.	60 ml
Tomatoes, chopped	1/2 c.	120 ml
Pepperjack cheese, shredded	1/4 c.	60 ml
Green onion, chopped	1/4 c.	60 ml
Avocado, sliced	1	1
Flour tortilla, heated on a grill and cut into thin wedges	1	1

1. Whisk the eggs and milk together in a mixing bowl. Season with salt and pepper and set aside.
2. Heat a large sauté pan and add the olive oil. Add the chorizo and cook until heated thoroughly. Add the chiles and tomatoes and cook for 2 minutes.
3. Add the eggs to the sauté pan and cook over low heat, stirring vigorously and constantly with a rubber spatula.

4. When the eggs begin to set, add the cheese and green onions. Cook until the cheese melts.
5. Serve immediately, garnished with slices of avocado and tortilla.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 525, **Total fat** 39 g, **Saturated fat** 12 g, **Cholesterol** 570 mg, **Sodium** 648 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 15 g, **Protein** 28 g, **Vitamin A** 28%, **Vitamin C** 53%, **Calcium** 28%, **Iron** 19%

RECIPE 20.9

Greek-Style Scrambled Eggs

Yield: 6 5-oz. (150-g) Servings

Eggs	12	12
Heavy cream	2 oz.	60 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Onion, diced fine	2 oz.	60 g
Clarified butter	3 oz.	90 ml
Spinach, chiffonade	2 oz.	60 g
Feta, crumbled	4 oz.	120 g
Greek olives, pitted and chopped	3 Tbsp.	45 ml

1. Combine the eggs, cream, salt and pepper in a mixing bowl. Whisk until well blended.
2. Sauté the onion in the butter until translucent but not brown.
3. Pour the egg mixture into the pan and cook, stirring frequently, until half cooked, approximately 1 minute.
4. Add the spinach to the eggs and continue cooking. Just before the eggs are fully cooked, sprinkle on the cheese.
5. Spoon the cooked egg mixture onto serving plates and garnish with the olives. Serve immediately.

Approximate values per 5-oz. (160-g) serving: **Calories** 340, **Total fat** 29 g, **Saturated fat** 15 g, **Cholesterol** 485 mg, **Sodium** 490 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 4 g, **Protein** 16 g, **Vitamin A** 45%, **Calcium** 15%

RECIPE 20.10

Artichoke Frittata

THE INN OF THE WHITE SALMON, WHITE SALMON, WA

Yield: 1 9-inch-round (22-cm) Frittata

Artichoke hearts, cooked, fresh or canned	8 oz.	250 g
Unsalted butter	1 oz.	30 g
Parmesan, grated	2 oz.	60 g
Eggs	10	10
Half-and-half	6 oz.	180 ml
Monterey Jack cheese, grated	4 oz.	120 g

Continued

1. Quarter the artichoke hearts.
2. Melt the butter in a sauté pan. Add the artichokes and sauté until heated through but not browned.
3. Distribute the artichokes in an even layer on the bottom of a 9-inch-round (22-centimeter) nonstick pan. Sprinkle with 1 ounce (30 grams) of the Parmesan.
4. In a small mixing bowl, whisk the eggs together with the half-and-half. Pour over the artichokes.
5. Sprinkle the Monterey Jack cheese over the entire pan.
6. Bake for 30 minutes at 350°F (180°C). Remove from the oven and sprinkle the remaining 1 ounce (30 grams) of Parmesan over the frittata. Return to the oven until the cheese is melted and light brown, approximately 5 minutes.

Approximate values per 1/8-pie (137-g) serving: **Calories** 250, **Total fat** 18 g, **Saturated fat** 9 g, **Cholesterol** 300 mg, **Sodium** 320 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 5 g, **Protein** 16 g, **Vitamin A** 20%, **Calcium** 25%

RECIPE 20.11

Eggs Benedict

Yield: 1 Serving

English muffin, split	1	1
Canadian bacon slices, 1/4 in. (6 mm) thick	2	2
Eggs	2	2
Salt	TT	TT
Vinegar	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Hollandaise (Recipe 10.14)	4 oz.	120 ml
Truffle slices or black olive halves	2	2

1. Toast the English muffin.
2. Sauté or griddle the bacon slices until hot.
3. Bring 1 quart (1 liter) of water to a boil and add the salt and vinegar.
4. Add the eggs and poach until done.
5. Place the muffins on a plate and top with the bacon slices. Place an egg on each slice of bacon and cover with the hollandaise sauce.
6. Garnish each egg with a truffle slice or black olive half and serve.

Variations: Poached eggs Sardou—poached eggs and creamed spinach on an artichoke bottom with hollandaise sauce.

Poached eggs princess style—poached eggs on an English muffin with asparagus tips and hollandaise sauce.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 970, **Total fat** 69 g, **Saturated fat** 33 g, **Cholesterol** 610 mg, **Sodium** 2480 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 53 g, **Protein** 33 g, **Vitamin A** 80%, **Iron** 25%

RECIPE 20.12

CRABCAKES BENEDICT

PHOENIX BREWING CO., ATLANTA, GA
Executive Chef Kevin Fonzo

Yield: 6 Servings

English muffins, split and toasted	6	6
Crab Cakes (recipe follows)	12	12
Eggs, poached	12	12
Tomato Chile Hollandaise (recipe follows)	12 oz.	360 ml

1. Place an open English muffin on each plate. Top each muffin half with a Crab Cake, a poached egg and 2 ounces (60 milliliters) of Tomato Chile Hollandaise sauce.
2. Garnish with gaufrette potatoes and fresh fruit.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 715, **Total fat** 43 g, **Saturated fat** 20 g, **Cholesterol** 539 mg, **Sodium** 2620 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 53 g, **Protein** 32 g, **Vitamin A** 48%, **Vitamin C** 15%, **Calcium** 35%, **Iron** 27%

CRAB CAKES

Yield: 12 Cakes

Whole butter	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Onion, chopped	1 c.	250 ml
Green bell pepper, chopped	1/2 c.	120 ml
Green onion, chopped	1/2 c.	120 ml
Salt	1/2 tsp.	3 ml
Cayenne pepper	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Worcestershire sauce	1 tsp.	5 ml
Old Bay® Seasoning	1 tsp.	5 ml
Cilantro, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Egg	1	1
Lump crab meat	1 lb.	500 g
Bread crumbs	1 to 1 1/2 c.	250-360 ml
Olive oil	3 Tbsp.	45 ml

1. Heat the butter in a sauté pan over medium-high heat. Add the onion, bell pepper and green onion. Cook until tender, then remove from the pan and cool completely.
2. In a large bowl, combine the salt, cayenne, Worcestershire sauce, Old Bay, cilantro and egg. Mix well. Add the cooled vegetables and crab.
3. Add enough bread crumbs to bind the mixture. Divide into 12 portions and shape into patties.
4. Heat the olive oil in a large sauté pan. Sauté the crab cakes until golden brown on both sides.

Approximate values per cake: **Calories** 139, **Total fat** 8 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 55 mg, **Sodium** 381 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 8 g, **Protein** 9 g

Continued

TOMATO CHILE HOLLANDAISE

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Hollandaise Sauce (Recipe 10.14)	1 qt.	1 lt
Chilli powder	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Tomato paste	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Stir the chilli powder and tomato paste into the Hollandaise Sauce.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-ml) serving: **Calories** 129, **Total fat** 11 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 26 mg, **Sodium** 830 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 8 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Vitamin A** 15%

RECIPE 20.13

BUCKWHEAT CREPES WITH SAUSAGE AND APPLE STUFFING

THE CONYERS HOUSE, SPERRYVILLE, VA

Yield: 8 Servings

All-purpose flour	3 oz.	90 g
Buckwheat flour	1 oz.	30 g
Eggs	2	2
Salt	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Milk	4 oz.	120 ml
Water	6 oz.	180 ml
Unsalted butter, melted	1 oz.	30 g
Oil	as needed	as needed
Pork sausage, bulk	1 lb.	450 g
Unsalted butter	2 oz.	60 g
Apples, peeled, cored and diced	6 medium	6 medium
Cinnamon, ground	1 tsp.	5 ml
Apple cider	4 oz.	120 ml
Sour cream	8 oz.	250 g
Fresh sage	2 Tbsp.	30 ml

1. To make the crepes, mix the flours together in a medium bowl. Add the eggs and salt. Stir to make a thick batter.
2. Whisk in the milk, then add the water a little at a time. Whisk in the melted butter. Set the batter aside to rest for 20 minutes.
3. Heat a crepe pan and coat it lightly with oil. Pour 1 1/2 ounces (45 grams) of batter into the pan, lifting and tilting to coat the pan evenly.
4. Brown the crepe lightly on one side, cooking until the surface is firm. Remove from the pan and hold in a warm oven until ready to fill and serve. Repeat this process until all the crepes are made.
5. To make the filling, crumble the sausage into a sauté pan; cook over medium-high heat until fully cooked. Remove the sausage from the pan with a slotted spoon and place in a mesh strainer to drain excess fat.
6. Pour off all but 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) of fat. Add the butter to the pan and melt over medium heat. Add the diced apples and sauté until soft.

7. Sprinkle the cinnamon over the apples and pour in the apple cider. Cook until the cider is reduced by half.
8. Return the drained sausage to the pan. Add the sour cream and sage. Mix well and heat thoroughly.
9. To assemble, spoon a portion of the filling onto each crepe. Roll the crepe around the filling and serve immediately.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (184-g) serving: **Calories** 240, **Total fat** 11 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 75 mg, **Sodium** 140 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 29 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin A** 10%, **Claims**—good source of fiber

RECIPE 20.14

Cheese Blintzes

Yield: 16 Blintzes

Eggs	3	3
Milk	8 oz.	250 ml
Vegetable oil	1 oz.	30 ml
Salt	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Flour	4 oz.	120 g
Clarified butter	as needed	as needed
Ricotta	12 oz.	350 g
Egg yolk	1	1
Salt	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Lemon juice	1 tsp.	5 ml
Vanilla extract	1 tsp.	5 ml
Butter	2 oz.	60 g

1. To make the batter, whisk together the eggs, milk and oil. Add the salt. Stir in the flour and mix until smooth. Allow the batter to rest for 30 minutes.
2. Heat a crepe pan and add a small amount of clarified butter.
3. Add 1 ounce (30 grams) of the batter to the pan. Tip the pan so that the batter coats the entire surface in a thin layer.
4. Cook the pancake until browned on the bottom. Remove it from the pan.
5. To make the filling, drain the cheese in a china cap. Combine the remaining ingredients (except the butter) with the cheese and mix well.
6. To assemble, place a pancake on the work surface with the cooked side down. Place 1 ounce (30 grams) of the filling in the center of the pancake. Fold the opposite ends in and then roll up to form a small package.
7. Sauté each blintz in butter until hot. Serve with sour cream or fruit compote as desired.

Approximate values per 2-oz. (59-g) serving: **Calories** 110, **Total fat** 7 g, **Saturated fat** 3.5 g, **Cholesterol** 65 mg, **Sodium** 170 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 7 g, **Protein** 5 g

RECIPE 20.15

Cinnamon French Toast

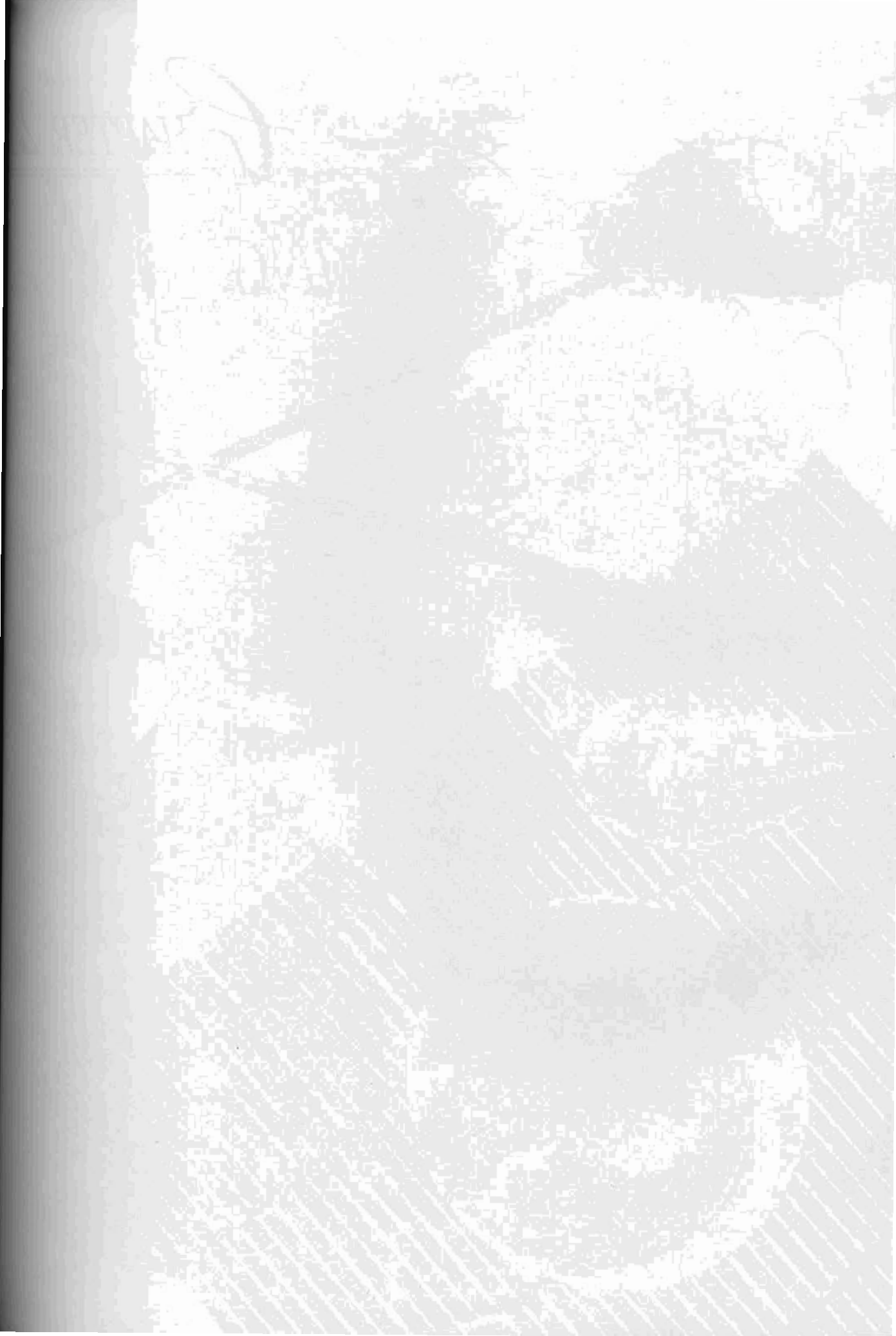
French toast begins with slices of day-old bread. (It is known in France as pain perdu, meaning "lost bread," probably because it provided a way to use bread that would otherwise have been discarded.) French bread, sourdough, raisin bread, challah, whole wheat, even stale croissants can be used. The bread is dipped into a batter of eggs, sugar, milk or cream and flavorings, then sautéed in butter and served very hot. It may be topped with powdered sugar, fresh fruit, fruit compote or maple syrup as desired.

Yield: 6 Servings

Eggs, beaten	10	10
Heavy cream	4 oz.	120 ml
Salt	TT	TT
Cinnamon, ground	TT	TT
Thick-sliced bread such as sourdough, cinnamon, banana or brioche	12 slices	12 slices
Unsalted butter	as needed	as needed
Powdered sugar	as needed	as needed

1. Whisk together the eggs, cream, salt and cinnamon.
2. Place the egg mixture in a shallow pan. Place the slices of bread in the egg mixture and let soak for 2–3 minutes, turning them over after the first minute or so.
3. Cook the slices of French toast in a lightly buttered, preheated sauté pan or griddle set at 350°F (180°C) until well browned. Turn the slices and cook on the second side until done.
4. Cut each slice of bread into two triangles.
5. Arrange four triangles on each plate and dust with powdered sugar.

Approximate values per 5-oz. (152-g) serving: **Calories** 320, **Total fat** 17 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 380 mg, **Sodium** 420 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 28 g, **Protein** 15 g, **Vitamin A** 25%, **Iron** 15%



CHAPTER 21

DEEP-FRYING

Chinois on Main,
Santa Monica, CA
Chef Wolfgang Puck

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- select and maintain the proper equipment and fats for deep-frying
- use breadings and batters
- prepare fritters and croquettes

Deep-frying has a bad reputation. Too many consumers think of deep-fried foods as greasy convenience items with thick breadings or batters masking the principal ingredient's inferior quality. But properly prepared deep-fried foods can be deliciously tender and juicy—and their contrasting crispy crusts and moist interiors add to eating enjoyment.

Perhaps no other cooking method can be applied to such a wide variety of foods. Meats, poultry, fish and shellfish, vegetables, potatoes and other starches, fruits, pastries and even ice cream can be deep-fried successfully. That is why we devote a separate chapter to the process.

This versatile procedure is relatively simple provided a few basic guidelines are followed. This chapter explains those guidelines and provides recipes for breading and batters. Also included are illustrative recipes using deep-frying techniques. Other recipes that use deep-frying are found in the various chapters on vegetables, fish, starches and quick breads.

Deep-frying is a dry-heat cooking method using fat as the cooking medium. Boiling and deep-frying are conceptually similar. For both cooking methods food is placed in a liquid and heat is transferred from the hot liquid (water or fat, respectively) to the food being cooked through conduction (the transfer of heat by direct contact) and convection (the transfer of heat through the currents in a liquid or gas).

The principal difference between boiling and deep frying is the temperature of the cooking medium. The boiling point, 212°F (100°C), is the hottest temperature at which food can be cooked in water. At this temperature, most foods require a long cooking period and surface sugars cannot caramelize. With deep-frying, temperatures up to 400°F (200°C) are used. These high temperatures cook food more quickly and allow the food's surface to brown. Even though the food is cooked in a liquid, deep-frying is not a moist-heat cooking method because the liquid fat contains no moisture.

Selecting Equipment for Deep-Frying

Unlike most kitchen equipment, a deep-fat fryer has only one purpose: to cook foods in a large amount of hot fat. Fryers are sized by the amount of fat they hold. Most commercial fryers range between 15 and 82 pounds. Fryers can be either gas or electric and are thermostatically controlled for temperatures between 200°F and 400°F (90°C–200°C).

When choosing a fryer, look for a fry tank with curved, easy-to-clean sloping sides. Some fryers have a cold zone (an area of reduced temperature) at

the bottom of the fry tank to trap particles. This prevents them from burning, creating off-flavors and shortening the life of the fryer fat.

Deep-fryers usually come with steel wire baskets to hold the food during cooking. Fryer baskets are usually lowered into the fat and raised manually, although some models have automatic basket mechanisms controlled by timers.

As with any piece of equipment, read the operator's manual or have an experienced colleague show you how to operate any deep-fryer before using or cleaning it.

The most important factor when choosing a deep-fryer is **recovery time**. Recovery time is the length of time it takes the fat to return to the desired cooking temperature after food is submerged in it. When food is submerged, heat is immediately transferred to the food from the fat. This heat transfer lowers the fat's temperature. The more food added at one time, the greater the drop in the fat's temperature. If the temperature drops too much or does not return quickly to the proper cooking temperature, the food may absorb excess fat and become greasy.

Deep-frying foods in a sauce pot on the stove top is discouraged because it is both difficult and dangerous. Recovery time is usually very slow, and temperatures are difficult to control. Also the fat can spill easily, leading to injuries or creating a fire hazard.

Selecting Fats for Deep-Frying

Many types of fats can be used for deep-frying. (In this chapter, the term *fat* applies to both solid fats and liquid oils.) Although animal fats, such as rendered beef fat, are sometimes used to impart their specific flavors to deep-fried foods, by far the most common fats used for deep-frying are vegetable oils such as soybean, safflower and canola oil.

Specially formulated deep-fat frying compounds are also available. These are usually composed of a vegetable oil or oils to which antifoaming agents, antioxidants and preservatives have been added. These additives increase usable life and raise smoke points.

A fat's **smoke point** is the temperature at which it visibly begins to smoke and chemically begins to break down. Animal fats generally have low smoke points of about 350°F (180°C), making them unsuitable for deep-frying. Vegetable oils generally have higher smoke points of about 475°F (250°C), thus providing the high temperatures desired for deep-frying. (See Chapter 7, Kitchen Staples, for a list of fat smoke points.)

Some frying fats are also hydrogenated. Hydrogenation is a chemical process that adds hydrogen to oils and turns a liquid oil into a solid (margarine is hydrogenated vegetable oil). Hydrogenated fats are more resistant to oxidation and chemical breakdown.

When fats break down, their chemical structure is altered; the triglyceride molecules that make up fat are converted into individual fatty acids. These acids add undesirable flavors to the fat and can ruin the flavor of the food being cooked. When a fat becomes very dark, foams excessively or adds off-flavors to foods, it has broken down and should be changed.

To choose the right fat, consider flavor, smoke point and resistance to chemical breakdown. High-quality frying fat should have a clean or natural flavor, a high smoke point and, when properly maintained, be resistant to chemical breakdown.

Maintaining Fryer Fat

Properly maintaining fryer fat greatly extends its useful life. To do so:

1. Store the fat in tightly sealed containers away from strong light; cover the fat in the fryer when not in use. Prolonged exposure to air and light turns fat rancid.
2. Skim and remove food particles from the fat's surface during frying. Food particles cause fat to break down; if they are not removed, they will accumulate in the fryer and burn.
3. Do not salt food over the fat. Salt causes fat to break down chemically.
4. Prevent excessive water from coming into contact with the fat; pat-dry moist foods as much as possible before cooking and dry the fryer, baskets and utensils well after cleaning. Water, like salt, causes fat to break down.
5. Do not overheat the fat (turn the fryer down or off if not in use). High temperatures break down the fat.
6. Filter the fat each day or after each shift if the fryer is heavily used. Best results are obtained by using a filtering machine designed specifically for this purpose. Many large commercial fryers even have built-in filter systems. Less well-equipped operations can simply pour the hot fat through a paper cone filter.

TABLE 21.1

Fryer fat can be damaged by:	Change fryer fat when it:
Salt	Becomes dark
Water	Smokes
Overheating	Foams
Food particles	Develops off-flavors
Oxygen	

PROCEDURES FOR DEEP-FRYING

The temperature of the fat is critical to successful deep-frying. The fat must be hot enough to quickly seal the surface of the food so that it does not become excessively greasy, yet it should not be so hot that the food's surface burns before the interior is cooked.

Nearly all deep-fried foods are cooked at temperatures between 325°F and 375°F (160°C–190°C). The fat's temperature can be adjusted within this range to allow the interior of thicker foods or frozen foods to cook before their surfaces become too dark.

Try not to fry delicately flavored foods in the same fat used for more strongly flavored ones. For example, do not deep-fry fruit fritters in the same fat used for catfish. If the fritters are fried in the catfish fat, they could develop an odd taste from the residual flavors left from the catfish.

Basket Method of Deep-Frying

Deep-Frying Methods

There are two distinct deep-frying methods for standard electric or gas fryers: the basket method and the swimming method. Which is used depends upon the food being fried.

The **basket method** of deep-frying uses a basket to hold foods that are breaded, individually quick frozen or otherwise do not tend to stick together during cooking. The basket is removed from the fryer and filled as much as two-thirds full of product. (Do not fill the basket while it is hanging over the fat as this allows unnecessary crumbs, salt and food particles to fall into the fat, shortening its life.) The filled basket is then submerged in the hot fat. When cooking is completed, the basket is used to remove the food from the fat.

A variation on this procedure is the **double-basket method**. This variation is necessary because many fried foods float as they cook. This may produce undesirable results because the section of the food not submerged may not cook. To prevent this and to promote even cooking, a second basket is used to keep the foods submerged in the fat.

Most battered foods initially sink to the bottom when placed in hot fat, then rise to the top as they cook. Because they would stick to a basket, the **swimming method** of deep-frying is used for these foods. With the swimming method, battered foods are carefully dropped directly into the hot fat. (Baskets are not used.) They will rise to the top as they cook. When the surface that is in contact with the fat is properly browned, the food is turned over with a spider or a pair of tongs so that it can cook evenly on both sides. When done, the product is removed and drained, again using a spider or tongs.

Double-Basket Method of Deep-Frying

Draining and Holding Deep-Fried Foods

All deep-fried foods must be drained of excess oil before they are served. When removing foods from the deep-fryer, allow excess fat to drain into the fryer. Then transfer the foods to a hotel pan that is either lined with absorbent paper or fitted with a rack.

Deep-fried foods should be kept under a heat lamp. Steam tables do not keep deep-fried foods hot because very little of the crisp foods' surface actually touches the hot surface of the steam table's pan.

Swimming Method of Deep-Frying

Selecting Foods for Deep-Frying

Only tender foods should be deep-fried. Deep-frying cooks foods at relatively high temperatures for short periods and does not have a tenderizing effect. Young tender poultry is ideal, as are most types of lean fish and shellfish. Fruits and vegetables can also be deep-fried. Probably the most popular deep-fried foods of all are potatoes, which are cooked in an endless variety of shapes and forms. (Several of the recipes found in Chapter 23, Potatoes, Grains and Pasta, require deep-frying.) Foods that are deep-fried together should be of the same size or thickness so that they cook evenly. Slow-cooking vegetables such as broccoli, cauliflower and okra can be blanched first so that they deep-fry more quickly.

Preparing Foods for Deep-Frying

With some exceptions (french fries, for example), most foods to be deep-fried are first breaded or battered. Breading and batter coat the food, keeping it moist and preventing it from becoming excessively greasy during cooking.

Seasoning Foods to be Deep-Fried

Breaded and battered foods can be seasoned before the breading or batter is applied. Seasonings may also be added to the flour, bread crumbs or batter before the main item is coated.

Many types of deep-fried food are salted after they are removed from the fat. This should be done immediately after the food is removed from the fryer so that the salt will cling more readily.

Breading Foods to be Deep-Fried

A breaded item is any food that is coated with bread crumbs, cracker meal, cornmeal or other dry meal to protect it during cooking. Breaded foods are generally cooked by deep-frying or pan-frying. The breading makes a solid coating that seals during cooking to prevent the fat from coming in direct contact with the food and making it greasy.

Standard Breading Procedure

Whether breading meats, poultry, fish, shellfish or vegetables, a three-step process is typically used. Called the **standard breading procedure**, it gives foods a relatively thick, crisp coating.

1. Pat the food dry and dredge it in seasoned flour. The flour adds seasoning to the food, helps seal it, and allows the egg wash to adhere.
2. Dip the floured food in an egg wash. The egg wash should contain whole eggs whisked together with approximately 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) milk or water per egg. The egg wash will cause the crumbs or meal to completely coat the item and form a tight seal when the food is cooked.
3. Coat the food with bread crumbs, cracker crumbs or other dry meal. Shake off the excess crumbs and place the breaded item in a pan. As additional breaded items are added to the pan, align them in a single layer; do not stack them or the breadings will get soggy and the foods will stick together.

Figure 21.1 shows the proper setup for breading foods using the standard breading procedure.

The following procedure helps to bread foods more efficiently:

1. Assemble the mise en place as depicted in Figure 21.1.
2. With your left hand, place the food to be breaded in the flour and coat it evenly. With the same hand, remove the floured item, shake off the excess flour and place it in the egg wash.
3. With your right hand, remove the item from the egg wash and place it in the bread crumbs or meal.
4. With your left hand, cover the item with crumbs or meal and press lightly to make sure the item is completely and evenly coated. Shake off the excess crumbs or meal and place the breaded food in the empty pan for finished product.

The key is to use one hand for the liquid ingredients and the other hand for the dry ingredients. This prevents your fingers from becoming coated with layer after layer of breading.

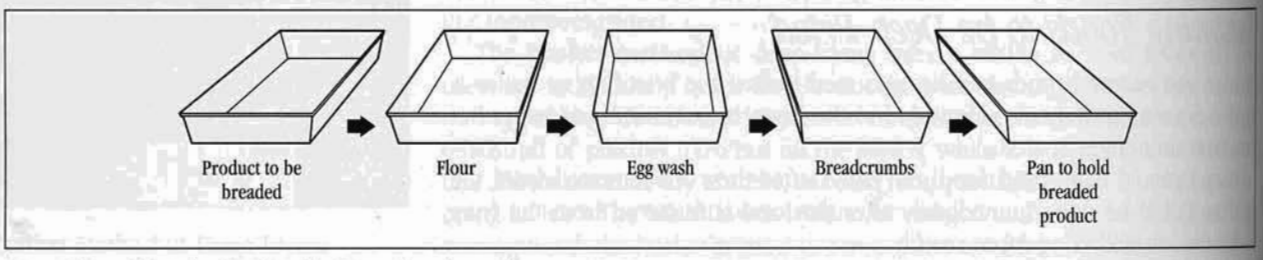


FIGURE 21.1 *Setup for the Standard Breading Procedure*

RECIPE 21.1

DEEP-FRIED CATFISH FILLETS WITH TARTAR SAUCE

Yield: 8 Servings

Catfish fillets, cut into uniform-sized pieces	3 lb.	1.5 kg
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Flour	as needed	as needed
Egg wash	as needed	as needed
White cornmeal	as needed	as needed
Tartar Sauce (Recipe 24.20)	12 oz.	360 ml

1. Season the fillets with salt and pepper.
2. Bread the fillets using the standard breading procedure (the white cornmeal is the final coating).
3. Using the basket method, deep-fry the fillets until done. Drain well and serve with the tartar sauce.

Approximate values per 8-oz. (213-g) serving: **Calories** 600, **Total fat** 46 g, **Saturated fat** 10 g, **Cholesterol** 160 mg, **Sodium** 910 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 16 g, **Protein** 31 g, **Iron** 15%

1. Flouring the seasoned fish fillets.

2. Passing the floured fillets through the egg wash.

3. Coating the fillets with white cornmeal.

4. Deep-frying the fillets using the basket method.

Croquettes

Croquettes are cooked meats, poultry, vegetables, fish or potatoes, usually bound with a heavy béchamel or velouté sauce and seasoned. They are then breaded and deep-fried.

RECIPE 21.2

SALMON CROQUETTES

Yield: 12 Croquettes

Onion, small dice	2 oz.	60 g
Whole butter	3 oz.	90 g
Flour	3 oz.	90 g
Milk	8 oz.	250 ml
Salmon, poached and flaked	1 lb.	450 g
Fresh dill, chopped	TT	TT
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Lemon juice	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Flour	as needed for breading	
Egg wash	as needed for breading	
Fine bread crumbs	as needed for breading	

1. Sauté the onion in the butter until translucent.
2. Add the flour and cook to make a white roux.
3. Add the milk to make a heavy béchamel sauce. Cook the sauce until very thick, approximately 5 minutes.
4. Remove the sauce from the heat and transfer it to a mixing bowl. Add the flaked salmon. Season the mixture with dill, salt, pepper and lemon juice and mix well.
5. Spread the mixture in a hotel pan, cover and refrigerate until cold.
6. Portion the mixture using a #20 portion scoop. Form each portion into a cone shape. Bread the croquettes using the standard breading procedure.
7. Using the basket method, deep-fry the breaded croquettes until done.

Approximate values per croquette: **Calories** 140, **Total fat** 9 g, **Saturated fat** 4.5 g, **Cholesterol** 40 mg, **Sodium** 470 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 7 g, **Protein** 9 g, **Vitamin A** 8%, **Calcium** 10%

1. Portioning the croquette mixture with a portion scoop.

2. Forming the mixture into cone shapes.

3. Deep-frying the breaded croquettes using the basket method.

Battering Foods to be Deep-Fried

Batters, like breading, coat the food being cooked, keeping it moist and preventing it from becoming excessively greasy.

Batters consist of a liquid such as water, milk or beer, combined with a starch such as flour or cornstarch. Many batters also contain a chemical leavening agent such as baking powder. Two common batters are beer batter, which uses the beer for leavening as well as for flavor, and tempura batter.

Procedure for Battering Foods

1. Pat the food dry and dredge in flour if desired.
2. Dip the item in the batter and place it directly in hot fat.

RECIPE 21.3

Beer-Battered Onion Rings

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt), enough for approx. 4 lb. (1.8 kg) rings

Flour	10 oz.	300 g
Baking powder	2 tsp.	10 ml
Salt	2 tsp.	10 ml
White pepper	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Egg	1	1
Beer	1 pt.	450 ml
Flour, for dredging	as needed	as needed
Onions, whole	4 lb.	1.8 kg

1. Sift the dry ingredients together.
2. Beat the egg in a separate bowl. Add the beer to the beaten egg.
3. Add the egg-and-beer mixture to the dry ingredients; mix until smooth.
4. Peel the onions and cut in 1/2-inch (2-centimeter) thick slices.
5. Break the slices into rings and dredge in flour.
6. Dip the rings in the batter a few at a time. Using the swimming method, deep-fry at 375°F (190°C) until done. Drain on absorbent paper, season with additional salt and white pepper and serve hot.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (79-g) serving: **Calories** 230, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 2.5 g, **Cholesterol** 5 mg, **Sodium** 460 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 31 g, **Protein** 4 g

1. Dredging the onion rings in flour.

2. Dipping the floured rings in batter.

3. Frying the onion rings using the swimming method.

RECIPE 21.4

Tempura Shrimp and Vegetables with Dipping Sauce

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt), enough for 4 lb. (1.8 kg) vegetables or shrimp

Dipping Sauce		
Mirin	2 oz.	60 ml
Soy sauce	4 oz.	120 ml
Rice wine vinegar	2 oz.	60 ml
Lemon juice	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Wasabi powder	1 tsp.	5 ml
Tempura Batter:		
Eggs	2	2
Sparkling water, cold	1 pt.	500 ml
Flour	10 oz.	300 g
Shrimp, 21–25 count, butterflied with tails on	2 lb.	1 kg
Sweet potato	8 oz.	250 g
Mushrooms, small, whole	1 lb.	450 g
Zucchini, batonnet	8 oz.	250 g

1. Combine all the ingredients for the dipping sauce. Set aside.
2. To prepare the batter, beat the eggs and add the cold water.
3. Add the flour to the egg-and-water mixture and mix until the flour is incorporated. There should still be small lumps in the batter. Overmixing develops gluten, which is undesirable.
4. Dry the shrimp well. Holding them by the tail, dip them into the batter and drop them into the deep-fryer using the swimming method. Cook until done.
5. Peel the sweet potato and cut in 1/4-inch (6-millimeter) thick slices. If the potato is large, cut each slice in half to make semicircles.
6. Drop the vegetables in the batter a few at a time. Remove them from the batter one at a time and drop into the deep-fryer using the swimming method. Cook until done.
7. Arrange the tempura shrimp and vegetables on a serving platter. Serve the dipping sauce on the side.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (64-g) serving: **Calories** 120, **Total fat** 5 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 55 mg, **Sodium** 370 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 10 g, **Protein** 7 g

Fritters

Fritters contain diced or chopped fish, shellfish, vegetables or fruits bound together with a thick batter and deep-fried. The main ingredient is usually precooked. Fritters are spooned or dropped directly into the hot fat; they form a crust as they cook. Popular examples are clam fritters, corn fritters, artichoke fritters and apple fritters.

RECIPE 21.5

Apple Fritters

Yield: 100 2-in. (5-cm) Fritters

Eggs, separated	6	6
Milk	1 pt.	500 ml
Flour	1 lb.	450 g
Baking powder	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Sugar	2 oz.	60 g
Cinnamon	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Apples, peeled, cored, medium dice	1 lb. 8 oz.	700 g
Powdered sugar	as needed	as needed

1. Combine the egg yolks and milk.
2. Sift together the flour, baking powder, salt, sugar and cinnamon. Add the dry ingredients to the milk-and-egg mixture; mix until smooth.
3. Allow the batter to rest 1 hour.
4. Stir the apples into the batter.
5. Just before the fritters are to be cooked, whip the egg whites to soft peaks and fold into the batter.
6. Scoop the fritters into 350°F (180°C) deep fat, using the swimming method. Cook until done.
7. Dust with powdered sugar and serve hot.

Approximate values per 1/2-oz. (17-g) fritter: **Calories** 60, **Total fat** 4 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 5 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 6 g, **Protein** 1 g

1. Adding the dry ingredients to the liquids.

2. Folding the egg whites into the batter.

3. Dropping the fritters into the deep fat.

4. Dusting the fritters with powdered sugar.

Determining Doneness

It is difficult to determine the doneness of deep-fried foods, especially breaded or battered ones. The keen sense of timing that develops with experience is a useful tool. Otherwise:

1. Color is the most commonly used method for determining doneness. Most fried foods should be deep golden brown when done. But color can be deceiving. If the temperature of the fat is too high, the food's surface will darken quickly and appear done while the center remains raw. Also, fat becomes dark with use; dark fat prematurely darkens food, again allowing foods to appear done before they are. Similarly, foods with high sugar content darken quickly in hot fat.
2. Large items such as fried chicken can be removed from the fat and checked with an instant-read thermometer. The internal temperature should be 165°F–170°F (74°C–77°C).
3. Fish and shellfish cook quickly and are easily overcooked. If practical, remove a piece and cut it open to determine its doneness. Then rely on timing and color for the remaining batches.
4. Vegetables should be tender when their surfaces are the proper color.
5. Potatoes should be attractively browned and cooked to the desired crispness.

Generally, deep-fried foods must be completely cooked in the deep-fryer. It is possible, however, to finish some deep-fried foods (for example, fried chicken) in the oven after being browned in the fat. But there is a problem in doing so. As the food cooks in the oven, moisture is released that may cause the breading to become soggy on the bottom.

Conclusion

Deep-frying is a useful and versatile dry-heat cooking method. To produce high-quality deep-fried foods, it is important to understand which foods respond well to deep-frying and how to prepare them for cooking. You must also understand how to prevent deep-fried food from becoming excessively greasy by properly coating them with batters or breadings and controlling cooking temperatures. Finally, you must understand how to determine doneness. By following the guidelines discussed in this chapter, you will be able to consistently produce the desired results.

Questions for Discussion

1. What qualities should be considered when choosing a fat for deep-frying?
2. Name and describe two styles of deep-frying.
3. List three signs that fryer fat has broken down and should be replaced. What causes fryer fat to break down? What can you do to extend the life of fryer fat?
4. Explain the differences between breading and battering foods for deep-frying.
5. Describe the correct mise en place for the standard breading procedure.
6. Explain several similarities and differences between fritters and croquettes.

ADDITIONAL DEEP-FRYING RECIPE

RECIPE 21.6

WHOLE SIZZLING CATFISH WITH GINGER AND PONZU SAUCE

NOTE: *This dish appears in the Chapter Opening photograph.*

CHINOIS ON MAIN, SANTA MONICA, CA
Chef Wolfgang Puck

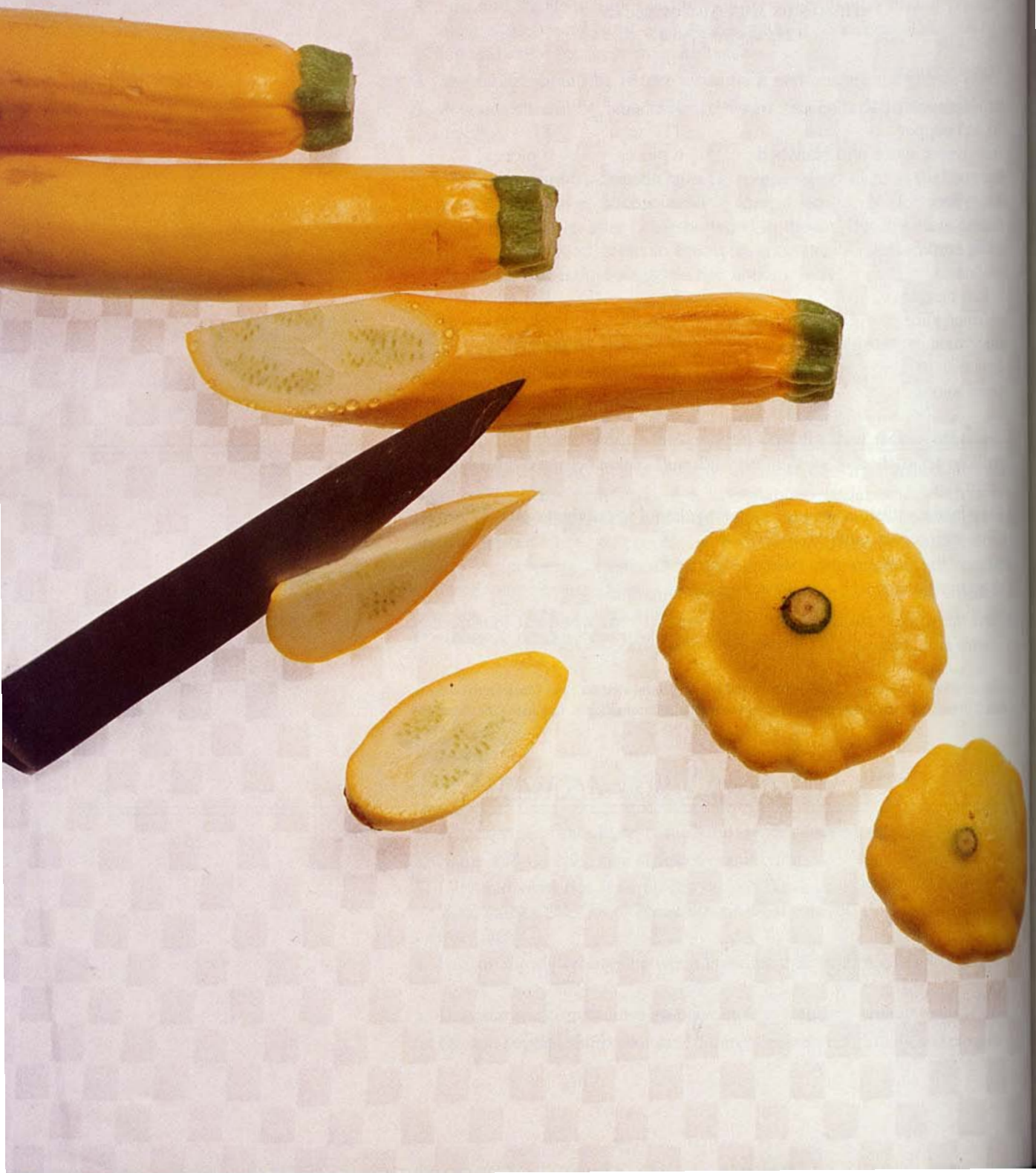
Yield: 4 Servings

Catfish, cleaned, 3 lb. (1.3 kg)	1	1
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Fresh ginger, sliced and blanched	6 pieces	6 pieces
Peanut oil	as needed	as needed
Lemon juice	as needed	as needed
Ponzu Sauce:		
Soy sauce	4 oz.	120 ml
Mirin	4 oz.	120 ml
Rice vinegar	4 oz.	120 ml
Lemon juice	4 oz.	120 ml
Fresh wood ear mushrooms	as needed for garnish	
Fresh cilantro	as needed for garnish	
Green onions	as needed for garnish	

1. Season the catfish with salt and pepper. Make three 2-inch (5-centimeter) incisions on each side of the fish and stuff each incision with blanched ginger.
2. Deep-fry the catfish in peanut oil, being careful to submerge the entire fish. Cook until golden-colored and crispy.
3. Squeeze fresh lemon juice over the top of the fish.
4. Make the sauce by combining the listed ingredients.
5. Serve the whole catfish on a platter garnished with wood ear mushrooms, cilantro and green onions. Serve the Ponzu Sauce on the side.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 970, **Total fat** 50 g, **Saturated fat** 12 g, **Cholesterol** 305 mg, **Sodium** 2710 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 60 g, **Protein** 70 g, **Vitamin C** 25%, **Calcium** 20%, **Iron** 40%

CHAPTER 22 VEGETABLES



Greens, San Francisco, CA
Executive Chef Annie Somerville

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- identify a variety of vegetables
- purchase vegetables appropriate for your needs
- store vegetables properly
- understand how vegetables are preserved
- prepare vegetables for cooking or service
- apply various cooking methods to vegetables

Long overcooked and underrated, vegetables are enjoying a welcomed surge in popularity. Gone are the days when a chef included vegetables as an afterthought to the "meat and potatoes" of the meal. Now, properly prepared fresh vegetables are used to add flavor, color and variety to almost any meal. Many restaurants are featuring vegetarian entrees, an extensive selection of vegetable side dishes or an entire vegetarian menu. This trend reflects the demands of more knowledgeable and health-conscious consumers as well as the increased availability of high-quality fresh produce.

In this chapter, we identify many of the vegetables typically used by food service operations. (Potatoes, although vegetables, are discussed in Chapter 23, Potatoes, Grains and Pasta, while salad greens are discussed in Chapter 24, Salads and Salad Dressings.) Here we also discuss how fresh and preserved vegetables are purchased, stored and prepared for service or cooking. Many of the cooking methods analyzed in Chapter 9, Principles of Cooking, are then applied to vegetables.

Vegetarian—*a person who primarily or exclusively eats plant foods.*

Ovo-lacto-vegetarian—*a vegetarian who does not eat meat, poultry or fish, but will eat eggs and dairy products.*

Vegan—*a vegetarian who does not eat any animal products.*

The term **vegetable** refers to any herbaceous plant that can be partially or wholly eaten. An herbaceous plant has little or no woody tissue. The portions we consume include the leaves, stems, roots, tubers, seeds and flowers. Vegetables contain more starch and less sugar than fruits. Therefore vegetables tend to be savory, not sweet. Also unlike fruits, vegetables are most often eaten cooked, not raw.

IDENTIFYING VEGETABLES

This book presents fruits and vegetables according to the ways most people view them and use them, rather than by rigid botanical classifications. Although produce such as tomatoes, peppers and eggplants are botanically fruits, they are prepared and served like vegetables and are included here under the category we call "fruit-vegetables." Potatoes, although botanically vegetables, are discussed with other starches in Chapter 23, Potatoes, Grains and Pasta.

We divide vegetables into nine categories based upon either botanical relationship or edible part. They are cabbages, fruit-vegetables, gourds and squashes, greens, mushrooms and truffles, onions, pods and seeds, roots and tubers, and stalks. A vegetable may have several names, varying from region to region or on a purveyor's whim. The names given here follow generally accepted custom and usage.

Cabbages

The *Brassica* or cabbage family includes a wide range of vegetables used for their heads, flowers or leaves. They are generally quick-growing, cool-weather crops. Many are ancient plants with unknown origins. They are inexpensive, readily available and easy to prepare.

Bok Choy

Bok choy, also known as pok choy, is a white-stemmed variety of southern Chinese cabbage. The relatively tightly packed leaves are dark green, with long white ribs attached at a bulbous stem. The stalks are crisp and mild with a flavor similar to romaine lettuce. Although bok choy may be eaten raw, it is most often stir-fried or used in soups.

Choose heads with bright white stalks and dark green leaves; avoid those with brown, moist spots. Fresh bok choy is available all year. Jars of pickled and fermented bok choy (known as Korean kim chee) are also available.

Bok Choy

Broccoli

Broccoli, a type of flower, has a thick central stalk with grayish-green leaves topped with one or more heads of green florets. Broccoli may be eaten raw or steamed, microwaved or sautéed and served warm or cold. Broccoli stalks are extremely firm and benefit from blanching. Stems are often slow-cooked for soups. Generally, broccoli leaves are not eaten.

Choose firm stalks with compact clusters of tightly closed dark green florets. Avoid stalks with yellow flowers. Broccoli is available all year.

Broccoli

Procedure for Cutting Broccoli Spears

Cut off the thick, woody portion of the stalk, then cut the florets and stems into spears.

Brussels Sprouts

Brussels sprouts (Fr. *choux de Bruxelles*) were first cultivated around 1700. The plant produces numerous small heads arranged in neat rows along a thick stalk. The tender young sprouts are similar to baby cabbages and are usually steamed or roasted. Brussels sprouts have a strong, nutty flavor that blends well with game, ham, duck or rich meats.

Choose small, firm sprouts that are compact and heavy. The best size is 3/4 to 1 1/2 inches (2 to 4 centimeters) in diameter. They should be bright green and free of blemishes. Their peak season is from September through February.

Brussels Sprouts

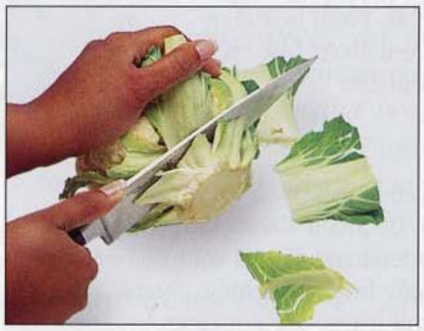
Cauliflower

Cauliflower (Fr. *chou-fleur*) is the king of the cabbage family. Each stalk produces one flower or head surrounded by large green leaves. The head, composed of creamy white florets, can be cooked whole or cut into separate florets for steaming, blanching or stir-frying.

Cauliflower

Choose firm, compact heads. Any attached leaves should be bright green and crisp. A yellow color or spreading florets indicate that the vegetable is overly mature. Cauliflower is available all year, especially from the late fall through the spring.

Procedure for Cutting Cauliflower Florets



1. Cut off the stem and leaves.

2. Cut the florets off of the core.

Green and Red Cabbages

Green and Red Cabbages

Cabbage (Fr. *chou*) has been a staple of northern European cuisine for centuries. The familiar green cabbage has a large, firm, round head with tightly packed pale green leaves. Flat and conical-shaped heads are also available. Red (or purple) cabbage is a different strain and may be tougher than green cabbage. Cabbage can be eaten raw (as in coleslaw) or used in soups or stews; it can be braised, steamed or stir-fried. The large, waxy leaves can also be steamed until soft, then wrapped around a filling of seasoned meat.

Choose firm heads without dried cores. Cabbages are available all year.

Kale

Kale has large ruffled, curly or bumpy leaves. Its rather bitter flavor goes well with rich meats such as game, pork or ham. Kale is typically boiled, stuffed or used in soups.

Choose leaves that are crisp, with a grayish-green color. Kale is available all year, with peak season during the winter months.

Ornamental or flowering kale, sometimes marketed as "savoy," is edible, but its pink, purple, yellow or white-and-green variegated leaves are best used for decoration and garnish.

Kale

Ornamental Kale

Kohlrabi

Kohlrabi

Although it looks rather like a round root, kohlrabi is actually a bulbous stem vegetable created by cross-breeding cabbages and turnips. When purchased, both the leaves (which are attached directly to the bulbous stem) and the roots are generally removed. Depending on the variety, the skin may be light green, purple or green with a hint of red. The interior flesh is white, with a sweet flavor similar to turnips. (Kohlrabi can be substituted for turnip in many recipes.) Younger plants are milder and more tender than large, mature ones. The outer skin must be removed from mature stems; young stems need only to be well scrubbed before cooking. Kohlrabi can be eaten raw, or it can be cooked (whole, sliced or diced) with moist-heat cooking methods such as boiling and steaming. The stems may also be hollowed out and stuffed with meat or vegetable mixtures.

Choose small, tender stems with fresh, green leaves. Peak season for kohlrabi is from June through September.

Napa Cabbage

Napa Cabbage

Napa cabbage, also known as Chinese cabbage, is widely used in Asian cuisines. It has a stout, elongated head with relatively tightly packed, firm, pale green leaves. It is moister and more tender than common green and red cabbages, with a milder, more delicate flavor. Napa cabbage may be eaten raw but is particularly well suited for stir-frying or steaming.

Choose heads with crisp leaves that are free of blemishes. Napa cabbage is available fresh all year.

Savoy

Savoy

Savoy cabbage has curly or ruffled leaves, often in variegated shades of green and purple. (The term *savoyed* is used to refer to any vegetable with bumpy, wavy or wrinkled leaves.) Savoy cabbage tends to be milder and more tender than regular cabbages and can be substituted for them, cooked or uncooked. Savoy leaves also make an attractive garnish.

Choose heads that are loose or tight, depending on the variety, with tender, unblemished leaves. Peak season is from August through the spring.

Fruit-Vegetables

Botanists classify avocados, eggplants, peppers and tomatoes as fruits because they develop from the ovary of flowering plants and contain one or more seeds. Chefs, however, prepare and serve them like vegetables; therefore they are discussed here.

Avocados

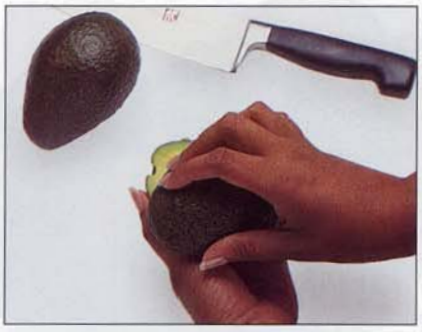
Avocados include several varieties of pear-shaped fruits with rich, high-fat flesh. This light golden-green flesh surrounds a large, inedible, oval-shaped seed (pit). Some varieties have smooth, green skin; others have pebbly, almost black skin. Avocados should be used at their peak of ripeness, a condition that

Avocados

lasts only briefly. Firm avocados lack the desired flavor and creamy texture. Ripe avocados should be soft to the touch but not mushy. Ripe Haas avocados have almost-black skins; the skins of the other varieties remain green when ripe. Firm avocados can be left at room temperature to ripen, then refrigerated for one or two days. Avocados are most often used raw to garnish salads, mashed or puréed for sauces, sliced for sandwiches or diced for omelets. Avocado halves are popular containers for chilled meat, fish, shellfish or poultry salads. Because avocado flesh turns brown very quickly once cut, dip avocado halves or slices in lemon juice and keep unused portions tightly covered with plastic wrap.

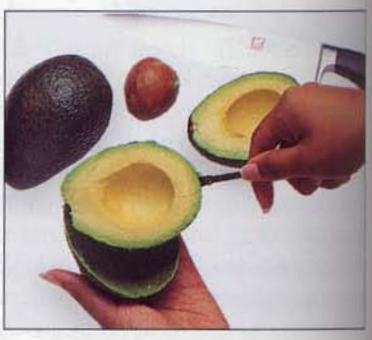
Choose avocados that are free of blemishes or moist spots. The flesh should be free of dark spots or streaks. Available all year, the peak season for Haas avocados is April through October; for Fuertes avocados, it is November through April.

Procedure for Cutting and Pitting Avocados



1. Cut the avocado in half lengthwise. Separate the two halves with a twisting motion.

2. Insert a chef's knife into the pit and twist to remove.



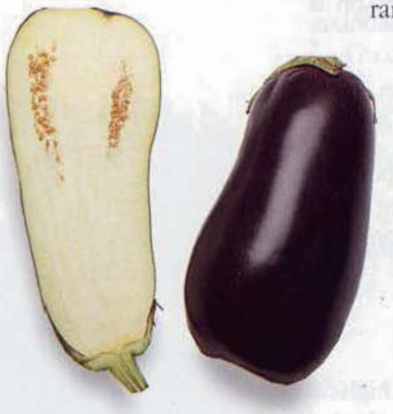
3. Scoop the flesh out of the skin with a large spoon.

Eggplants

Two types of eggplants (Fr. *aubergine*) are commonly available: Asian and western. Asian varieties are either round or long and thin, with skin colors ranging from creamy white to deep purple. Western eggplants, which are more common in the United States, tend to be shaped like a plump pear with a shiny lavender to purple-black skin. Both types have a dense, khaki-colored flesh with a rather bland flavor that absorbs other flavors well during cooking. Eggplants can be grilled, baked, steamed, fried or sautéed. They are commonly used in Mediterranean and East Indian cuisines (especially in vegetarian dishes), but also appear in European and North American dishes. The skin may be left intact or removed before or after cooking, as desired.

Sliced eggplants may be salted and left to drain for 30 minutes to remove moisture and bitterness before cooking.

Choose plump, heavy eggplants with a smooth, shiny skin that is not blemished or wrinkled. Asian varieties tend to be softer than western. Eggplants are available all year, with peak season during the late summer.



Western Eggplant

Asian Eggplants

Peppers

Members of the *Capsicum* family are native to the New World. When "discovered" by Christopher Columbus, he called them "peppers" because of their sometimes fiery flavor. These peppers, which include sweet peppers and hot peppers (chiles), are unrelated to peppercorns, the East Indian (Asian) spice for which Columbus was actually searching. Interestingly, New World peppers were readily accepted in Indian and Asian cuisines, in which they are now considered staples.

Fresh peppers are found in a wide range of colors—green, red, yellow, orange, purple or white—as well as shapes, from tiny teardrops to cones to spheres. They have dense flesh and a hollow central cavity. The flesh is lined with placental ribs (the white internal veins), to which tiny yellowish-white seeds are attached. A core of seeds is also attached to the stem end of each pepper.

Chile peppers get their heat from capsaicin, which is found not in the flesh or seeds, but in the placental ribs. Thus a pepper's heat can be greatly reduced by carefully removing the ribs and attached seeds. Generally, the smaller the chile, the hotter it is. The amount of heat varies from variety to variety, however, and even from one pepper to another depending on growing conditions. Hot, dry conditions result in hotter peppers than do cool, moist conditions. A pepper's heat can be measured by Scoville Heat Units, a subjective rating in which the sweet bell pepper usually rates 0 units, the jalapeño rates from 2500 to 5000 units, the tabasco rates from 30,000 to 50,000 units and the habanero rates a whopping 100,000 to 300,000 units.

When selecting peppers, choose those that are plump and brilliantly colored with smooth, unblemished skins. Avoid wrinkled, pitted or blistered peppers. A bright green stem indicates freshness.

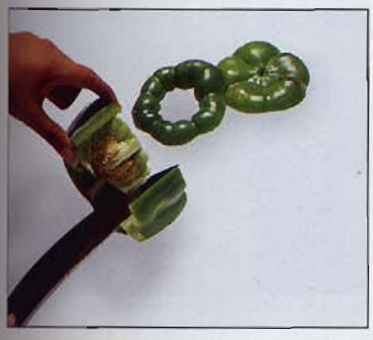
Green Bell Pepper

Sweet Peppers

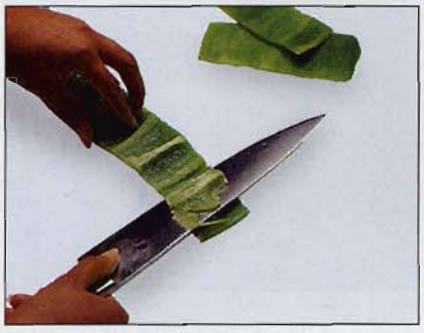
Common sweet peppers, known as bell peppers, are thick-walled fruits available in green, red, yellow, purple, orange and other colors. They are heart-shaped or boxy, with a short stem and crisp flesh. Their flavor is warm, sweet (red peppers tend to be the sweetest) and relatively mild. Raw bell peppers may be sliced or diced and used in salads or sandwiches. Bell peppers can also be stuffed and baked, grilled, fried, sautéed or puréed for soups, sauces or condiments. Green bell peppers are available all year; other colors are more readily available during the summer and fall.

Red and Yellow Bell Peppers

Procedure for Cutting Peppers Julienne



1. Trim off the ends of the pepper; cut away the seeds and core.



2. Cut away the pale ribs, trimming the flesh to the desired thickness.

3. Slice the flesh in julienne.

A Pepper by Any Other Name

The popularity of Southwestern cuisine, hot condiments and salsas has brought with it a new appreciation and respect for chiles. Diners, and chefs, may find the names given to the various chiles confusing, however. Most chiles can be used either fresh or dried; drying changes not only the pepper's flavor, but also its name. Regional variations in chile names also add to the confusion. Several of the more frequently encountered chiles are listed here according to the names most commonly used for both their fresh and dried forms:

Fresh (Fresca)	Dried (Seco)
Anaheim	Mild Red or California
Ancho	Ancho or Pastilla
Chilaca	Pastilla or Negro
Jalapeño	Chipotle (smoked)
Mirasol	Guajillo
New Mexico Green	New Mexico Red
New Mexico Red	Chile Colorado
Pimento	Paprika
Poblano	Mulato

Dried Chiles: (top to bottom) California, Ancho, De Árbol

Hot Peppers

Hot peppers, also known as chiles, are also members of the *Capsicum* family. Although a chile's most characteristic attribute is its pungency, each chile actually has a distinctive flavor, from mild and rich to spicy and sweet to fiery hot.

Chiles are commonly used in Asian, Indian, Mexican and Latin American cuisines. The larger (and milder) of the hot peppers, such as Anaheim and poblano, can be stuffed and baked or sautéed as a side dish. Most chiles, however, are used to add flavor and seasoning to sauces and other dishes. Fresh chiles are available all year and are also available canned in a variety of processed forms such as whole or diced roasted, pickled or marinated.

(clockwise from bottom left) Red and Green Serrano, Green and Red Jalapeño, Yellow Hot, Poblano and Anaheim Chiles.

Procedure for Coring Jalapeños

Cut the jalapeño in half lengthwise. Push the core and seeds out with your thumb. You can avoid burning your fingers by wearing rubber gloves when working with hot chiles.

Dried chiles are widely used in Mexican, Central American and southwestern cuisines. They can be ground to create a powdered spice called chilli or soaked in a liquid, and then puréed for sauces or condiments. Drying radically alters the flavor of chiles, making them stronger and more pungent. Just as one type of fresh chile cannot be substituted for another without altering a dish's flavor, so too dried chiles cannot be substituted without flavor changes.

Choose dried chiles that are clean and unbroken, with some flexibility. Avoid any with white spots or a stale aroma.

Procedure for Roasting Peppers

1. Roast the pepper over an open flame until completely charred.

2. Place the pepper in a plastic bag to sweat for a few minutes, then remove the burnt skin and rinse under running water.

Tomatillos

Tomatillos, also known as Mexican or husk tomatoes, grow on small, weedy bushes. They are bright green, about the size of a small tomato, and are covered with a thin, papery husk. They have a tart, lemony flavor and crisp, moist flesh. Although an important ingredient in southwestern and northern Mexican cuisines, tomatillos may not be readily available in other areas. Tomatillos can be used raw in salads, puréed for salsa or cooked in soups, stews or vegetable dishes.

Choose tomatillos whose husks are split but still look fresh. The skin should be plump, shiny and slightly sticky. They are available all year, with peak season during the summer and fall.

Tomatillos

Tomatoes

Tomatoes (Fr. *tomate* or *pomme d'amour*; It. *pomodoro*) are available in a wide variety of colors and shapes. They vary from green (unripe) to golden yellow to ruby red; from tiny spheres (currant tomatoes) to huge, squat ovals (beefsteak). Some, such as the plum tomato, have lots of meaty flesh with only a few seeds; others, such as the slicing tomato, have lots of seeds and juice, but only a few meaty membranes. All tomatoes have a similar flavor, but the levels of sweetness and acidity vary depending on the species, growing conditions and ripeness at harvest.

(clockwise from lower right) Pear, Cherry, Plum and Beefsteak Tomatoes

Three Treasures of the New World

In lieu of many spices, golden treasures and precious gems, early Spanish explorers returned to Spain with items of much greater significance: tomatoes, potatoes and corn. Unfortunately for those who financed the voyagers, the value of this produce was not immediately appreciated.

The Spanish and the Italians hailed the tomato (whose name comes from the Aztec name *tomatl*) as an aphrodisiac—perhaps because of its resemblance to the human heart—when it arrived from the New World during the 16th century. But even though tomatoes soon became part of Spanish and Italian cuisines, most other Europeans, New World colonists and, later, Americans considered tomatoes poisonous. (There is some truth to this notion: tomato vines and leaves contain tomatine, an alkaloid that can cause health problems.) Thus for many years and in many societies, only the adventurous ate tomatoes. Tomato historians consider September 26, 1820, a red-letter day marking the popular acceptance of the tomato. On that day, the then-well-known eccentric Colonel Robert Gibbon Johnson ate an entire bushel of tomatoes on the Salem, New Jersey, courthouse steps before a crowd of thousands —and lived. Tomatoes soon became one of the most popular of all vegetables.

Similarly, the potato, first delivered to Europe from its native Peru by Francisco Pizarro in the 16th century, did not win wide acceptance in haute cuisine until Antoine-Augustin Parmentier (1737–1813), a French army pharmacist, induced King Louis XVI of France (reign 1775–1793) to try one. He and his courtiers liked them so much they even began wearing potato blossom boutonnières. Parmentier was ultimately honored for his starchy contribution to French cuisine by having several potato dishes named for him, such as *potage Parmentier* (potato soup). Not only did Parmentier lobby for the acceptance of the potato as a food fit for a king, he also prophesied that the potato would make starvation impossible. Potatoes ultimately did become a staple of many diets. But, sadly, the converse of Parmentier's prophecy came true during the Irish Potato Famine of 1846–1848, when a terrible blight destroyed the potato crop. Nearly 1.5 million people died, and an equal number emigrated to the United States. They brought with them a cuisine that incorporated potatoes; thus an appreciation of the common potato was reintroduced to its native land.

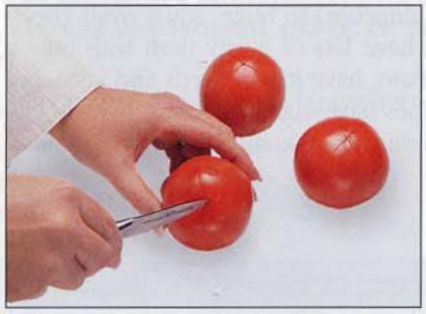
When returning from his second voyage to the New World, Columbus took corn with him. Called *mahiz* or *maize* by West Indian natives, corn had been a staple of Central American diets for at least 5000 years. Although Europeans did not actively shun corn as they did tomatoes and potatoes, corn never really caught on in most of Europe. (As with another famous New World import, corn's origin was mistakenly attributed by the British, Dutch, Germans and Russians to Turkey. They called corn "Turkish wheat"; the Turks simply called it "foreign grain.") Grown for human consumption mostly in Italy, Spain and southwestern France, corn was and still is usually eaten ground and boiled as polenta. But despite an unenthusiastic European reception, corn's popularity quickly spread well beyond Europe: Within 50 years of Columbus's journey, corn was being cultivated in lands as distant from the New World as China, India and sub-Saharan Africa.

Because tomatoes are highly perishable, they are usually harvested when mature but still green (unripe), then shipped to wholesalers who ripen them in temperature- and humidity-controlled rooms. The effect on flavor and texture is unfortunate.

Tomatoes are used widely in salads, soups, sauces and baked dishes. They are most often eaten raw, but can be grilled, pickled, pan-fried, roasted or sautéed as a side dish.

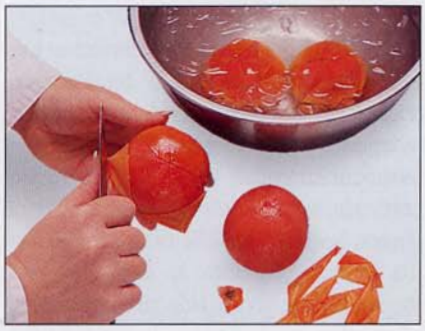
Choose fresh tomatoes that are plump with a smooth, shiny skin. The color should be uniform and true for the variety. Tomatoes are available all year, with a summer peak season for most varieties. Many canned tomato products are also available (for example, purée, paste, sauce or stewed whole), as are dried tomatoes.

Procedure for Preparing Tomato Concassée



1. With a paring knife, mark an X on the bottom of the tomato just deep enough to penetrate the skin.

2. Blanch the tomato in boiling water for 20 seconds; refresh in ice water.



3. Using a paring knife, cut out the core and peel the tomato.

4. Cut the tomato in half horizontally and squeeze out the seeds and juice.

5. Chop or dice the tomato as desired for the recipe.

Gourds and Squashes

The *Cucurbitaceae* or gourd family includes almost 750 species; its members are found in warm regions worldwide. Gourds are characterized by large, complex root systems with quick-growing, trailing vines and large leaves. Their flowers are often attractive and edible. Although some members of the gourd family originated in Africa, chayotes and most squashes are native to the Americas.

Chayotes

The chayote, also known as merliton or vegetable pear, is a food staple throughout Central America. The vine bears slightly lumpy, pear-shaped fruits with a smooth, light green skin and a paler green flesh. There is a single white, edible seed in the center. Chayotes are starchy and very bland and are usually combined with more flavorful ingredients. They may be eaten raw, but their flavor and texture benefit from roasting, steaming, sautéing or grilling.

Chayotes

Choose chayotes that have well-colored skin with few ridges. Avoid those with very soft spots or bruises. Their peak season is the late fall and winter.

Cucumbers

Cucumbers can be divided into two categories: pickling and slicing. The two types are not interchangeable. Pickling cucumbers include the cornichon, dill and gherkin. They are recognizable by their sharp black or white spines and are quite bitter when raw. Slicing cucumbers include the burpless, the seedless English (or hothouse), the lemon (which is round and yellow) and the common green market cucumber. Most have relatively thin skins and may be marketed with a wax coating to prevent moisture loss and improve appearance. Waxed skins should be peeled. All cucumbers are valued for their refreshing cool taste and astringency. Slicing cucumbers are usually served raw, in salads or mixed with yogurt and dill or mint as a side dish, especially for spicy dishes. Pickling cucumbers are generally served pickled, without any further processing.

(from left to right) Pickling, Green and Hothouse Cucumbers

Choose cucumbers that are firm but not hard. Avoid those that are limp, yellowed or have soft spots. The common varieties are available all year, although peak season is from April through October.

Squashes

Squashes are the fleshy fruits of a large number of plants in the gourd family. Many varieties are available in a range of colors, shapes and sizes. Squashes can be classified as winter or summer based on their peak season and skin type. All squashes have a center cavity filled with many seeds, although in winter varieties, the cavity is more pronounced. Squash blossoms are also edible: They may be added to salads raw, dipped in batter and deep-fried or filled with cheese or meat and baked.

Choose squashes with unbroken skins and good color for the variety. Avoid any squash with soft, moist spots.

Acorn

Spaghetti

Banana

Butternut

Pumpkin

Winter Squashes

Winter squashes include the acorn, banana, butternut, Hubbard, pumpkin and spaghetti varieties. They have hard skins (shells) and seeds, neither of which is generally eaten. The flesh, which may be removed from the shell before or after cooking, tends to be sweeter and more strongly flavored than that of summer squash. Winter squashes should not be served raw; they can be baked, steamed or sautéed. Most winter squashes can also be puréed for soups or pie fillings. Their peak season is October through March.

Summer Squashes

Summer squashes include the pattypan, yellow crookneck and zucchini varieties. They have soft edible skins and seeds that are generally not removed before cooking. Most summer squashes may be eaten raw, but are also suitable for grilling, sautéing, steaming or baking. Although summer squashes are now available all year, their peak season is April through September.

Yellow Crookneck

Zucchini

Greens

The term *greens* refers to a variety of leafy green vegetables that may be served raw, but are usually cooked. Greens have long been used in the cuisines of India, Asia and the Mediterranean and are an important part of regional cuisine in the southern United States. Most have strong, spicy flavors. Mustard, sorrel, spinach, Swiss chard, dandelion and turnip greens fall into this category. The milder varieties of greens that are almost always eaten raw include the lettuces discussed in Chapter 24, Salads and Salad Dressings.

Greens have an extremely high water content, which means that cooking causes drastic shrinkage. As a general rule, allow 8 ounces (250 grams) per portion before cooking.

Choose young, tender greens with good color and no limpness. Avoid greens with dry-looking stems or yellow leaves. Most greens are available fresh all year, especially from November through June. The more popular greens are also available canned or frozen.

Mustard

Mustard, a member of the cabbage family, was brought to America by early European immigrants. Mustard has large, dark green leaves with frilly edges. It is known for its assertive, bitter flavor. Mustard greens can be served raw in salads or used as garnish. Or they can be cooked, often with white wine, vinegar and herbs.

Choose crisp, bright green leaves without discoloration.

Mustard

Sorrel

Sorrel is an abundant and rather ordinary wild member of the buckwheat family. Its tartness and sour flavor are used in soups and sauces and to accent other vegetables. It is particularly good with fatty fish or rich meats. Sorrel leaves naturally become the texture of a purée after only a few minutes of moist-heat cooking.

Choose leaves that are fully formed, with no yellow blemishes.

Sorrel

Spinach

Spinach (Fr. *épinard*) is a versatile green that grows rapidly in cool climates. It has smooth, bright green leaves attached to thin stems. Spinach may be eaten raw in salads, cooked by almost any moist-heat method, microwaved or sautéed. It can be used in stuffings, baked or creamed dishes, soups or stews. Spinach grows in sandy soil and must be rinsed repeatedly in cold water to remove all traces of grit from the leaves. It bruises easily and should be handled gently during washing. Stems and large midribs should be removed.

Choose bunches with crisp, tender, deep green leaves; avoid yellow leaves or those with blemishes.

Spinach

Swiss Chard

Chard—the reference to "Swiss" is inexplicable—is a type of beet that does not produce a tuberous root. It is used for its wide, flat, dark green leaves. Chard can be steamed, sautéed or used in soups. Its tart, spinachlike flavor blends well with sweet ingredients such as fruit.

Choose leaves that are crisp, with some curliness or savoying. Ribs should be an unblemished white or red.

Swiss Chard

Turnip Greens

The leaves of the turnip root have a pleasantly bitter flavor, similar to peppery mustard greens. The dark green leaves are long, slender and deeply indented. Turnip greens are best eaten steamed, sautéed, baked or microwaved.

Turnip Greens

Mushrooms and Truffles

Portabella

Black Trumpet

Clam Shell

Pom Pom Blanc

Hen of the Woods

Porcini (cèpe or cep)

Morel

Shiitake

Mushrooms

Mushrooms (Fr. *champignon*; It. *funghi*) are members of a broad category of plants known as fungi. (Fungi have no seeds, stems or flowers; they reproduce through spores.) Mushrooms have a stalk with an umbrellalike top. Although not actually a vegetable, mushrooms are used and served in much the same manner as vegetables.

Several types of cultivated mushroom are available. They include the common (or white), shiitake, crimini (also known as the Italian brown), straw, enokidake (also called enoki) and cloud ear (also known as wood ear or Chinese black). Button mushrooms are the smallest, most immature form of the common mushroom. The largest cultivated mushroom is the portabella, which is actually an overgrown crimini; it can grow up to 6 inches (15 centimeters) in diameter.

Many wild mushrooms are gathered and sold by specialty purveyors. Because wild mushroom spores are spread around the world by air currents, the same item may be found in several areas, each with a different common name. Wild mushrooms have a stronger earthy or nutty flavor than cultivated mushrooms, and should generally be cooked before eating.

Mushrooms, whether cultivated or gathered from the wild, are available fresh, canned or dried. Because mushrooms are composed of up to 80% water, dried products are often the most economical, even though they may cost hundreds of dollars per pound. Dried mushrooms can be stored in a cool, dry place for months. When needed, they are rehydrated by soaking in warm water until soft, approximately 10–20 minutes.

Choose fresh mushrooms that are clean, without soft or moist spots or blemishes. Fresh cultivated mushrooms are generally available all year; fresh wild mushrooms are available seasonally, usually during the summer and fall. Cultivated mushrooms with exposed gills (the ridges on the underside of the umbrellalike top) are old and should be avoided. Fresh mushrooms can be refrigerated in an open container for up to five days. Normally, it is not necessary to peel mushrooms; if they are dirty, they should be quickly rinsed (not soaked) in cool water just before use.

White

Oyster

Enokidake

Truffles

Truffles are actually tubers that grow near the roots of oak or beech trees. They can be cultivated only to the extent that oak groves are planted to encourage truffle growth. The two principal varieties are the Périgord (black) and the Piedmontese (white). Fresh truffles are gathered in the fall and are rarely marketed outside their locale. Truffles, especially white ones, have a strong aroma and flavor, requiring only a small amount to add their special flavor to soups, sauces, pasta and

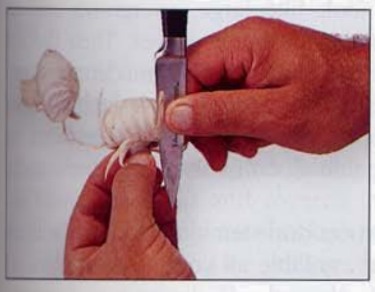
Black Truffles

Mushroom Safety

Some mushrooms are deadly; others can cause severe illness. Picking edible mushrooms in the wild is not simply a process of comparing specimens with photographs or illustrations in a guidebook. So, do not gather mushrooms from the wild unless you are accompanied by a well-trained, experienced mycologist or guide. Always purchase wild mushrooms from reputable purveyors.

other items. Black truffles are often used as a garnish or to flavor pâtés, terrines or egg dishes. Because fresh imported truffles can cost several hundred dollars per pound, most kitchens purchase truffles canned, dried or processed.

Procedure for Fluting Mushrooms



Use the sharp edge of a straight paring knife to cut thin curves into the mushroom cap. Fluted mushrooms may be baked or poached, then used as garnish.

Onions

Onions are strongly flavored, aromatic members of the lily family. Most have edible grasslike or tubular leaves. Almost every culture incorporates them into its cuisine as a vegetable and for flavoring.

Bulb Onions

Common or bulb onions (Fr. *oignons*) may be white, yellow (Bermuda or Spanish) or red (purple). Medium-sized yellow and white onions are the most strongly flavored. Larger onions tend to be sweeter and milder. Widely used as a flavoring ingredient, onions are indispensable in mirepoix. Onions are also prepared as a side dish by deep-frying, roasting, grilling, steaming or boiling.

Pearl onions are small, about 1/2 inch (1.25 centimeters) in diameter, with yellow or white skins. They have a mild flavor and can be grilled, boiled, roasted or sautéed whole as a side dish, or used in soups or stews.

Choose onions that are firm, dry and feel heavy. The outer skins should be dry and brittle. Avoid onions that have begun to sprout. They should be stored in a cool, dry, well-ventilated area. Do not refrigerate onions until they are cut. Onions are available all year.

Garlic

Garlic (Fr. *ail*; Sp. *ajo*) is also used in almost all the world's cuisines. A head of garlic is composed of many small cloves. Each clove is wrapped in a thin husk or peel; the entire head is encased in several thin layers of papery husk. Of the three hundred or so types of garlic known, only three are commercially significant. The most common is pure white, with a sharp flavor. A Mexican variety is pale pink and more strongly flavored. Elephant garlic is apple-sized and particularly mild. Although whole bulbs can be baked or roasted, garlic is most often separated into cloves, peeled, sliced, minced or crushed and used to flavor a wide variety of dishes. When using garlic, remember that the more finely the cloves are crushed, the stronger the flavor will be. And cooking reduces garlic's pungency; the longer it is cooked, the milder it becomes.

Leeks

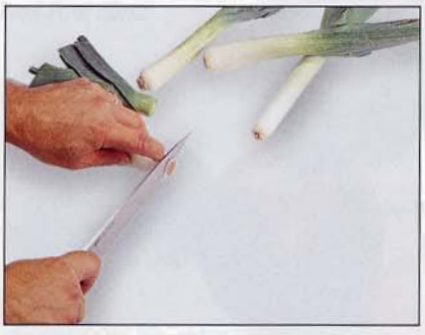
Choose firm, dry bulbs with tightly closed cloves and smooth skins. Avoid bulbs with green sprouts. Store fresh garlic in a cool, well-ventilated place; do not refrigerate. Fresh garlic is available all year. Jars of processed and pickled garlic products are also available.

Leeks

Leeks (Fr. *poireaux*) look like large, overgrown scallions with a fat white tip and wide green leaves. Their flavor is sweeter and stronger than scallions, but milder than common bulb onions. Leeks must be carefully washed to remove the sandy soil that gets between the leaves. Leeks can be baked, braised or grilled as a side dish, or used to season stocks, soups or sauces.

Choose leeks that are firm, with stiff roots and stems. Avoid those with dry leaves, soft spots or browning. Leeks are available all year.

Procedure for Cleaning Leeks



1. Trim the root end from the leek.

2. Cut away the dark green top and slice the white portion in half lengthwise.

3. Rinse the leek thoroughly under running water to remove soil.

Scallions

Scallions

Scallions, also known as green onions or bunch onions, are the immature green stalks of bulb onions. The leaves are bright green with either a long and slender or slightly bulbous white base. Green onions are used in stir-fries and as a flavoring in other dishes. The green tops can also be sliced in small rings and used as a garnish.

Choose scallions with bright green tops and clean white bulbs. Avoid those with limp or slimy leaves. Scallions are available all year, with a peak summer season.

Shallots

Shallots (Fr. *échalotes*) are shaped like small bulb onions with one flat side. When peeled, a shallot separates into multiple cloves, similar to garlic. They have a mild, yet rich and complex flavor. Shallots are the basis of many classic sauces and meat preparations; they can also be sautéed or baked as a side dish.

Choose shallots that are plump and well shaped. Avoid those that appear dry or have sprouted. They should be stored in a cool, dry, unrefrigerated place. Shallots are available all year.

Pods and Seeds

Pod and seed vegetables include corn, legumes and okra. They are grouped together here because the parts consumed are all the seeds of their respective plants. In some cases, only the seeds are eaten; in others, the pod containing the seeds is eaten as well. Seeds are generally higher in protein and carbohydrates (starch and fiber) than other vegetables.

Corn

Sweet corn (Fr. *maïs*; Sp. *maíz*) is actually a grain, a type of grass. Corn kernels, like peas, are plant seeds. (Dried corn products are discussed in Chapter 23, Potatoes, Grains and Pasta.) The kernels, which may be white or yellow, are attached to a woody, inedible cob. The cob is encased by strands of hair-like fibers called silks and covered in layers of thin leaves called husks. The silks and husks should be shucked prior to cooking, although the husks may be left on for roasting or grilling. Shucked ears can be grilled, boiled, microwaved or steamed. The kernels can be cut off of the cob before or after cooking. Corn on the cob is available fresh or frozen; corn kernels are available canned or frozen.

Choose freshly picked ears with firm, small kernels. Avoid those with mold or decay at the tip of the cob or brownish silks. Summer is the peak season for fresh corn.

Yellow and White Corn

Procedure for Cutting Kernels off Ears of Corn

Hold the cob upright and use a chef's knife to slice off the kernels.

Legumes

Beans (Fr. *haricots*; It. *fagiolio*) and peas (Fr. *pois*) are members of the legume family, a large group of vegetables with double-seamed pods containing a single row of seeds. Of the hundreds of known varieties of beans, some are used for their edible pods, others for shelling fresh and some only for their dried seeds. Dried beans are actually several varieties of seeds or peas left in the pod until mature, then shelled and dried.

Green Beans

Fresh Beans

Beans used for their edible pods, commonly referred to as green beans, string beans, runner beans or snap beans, are picked when immature. Except for the stem, the entire pod can be eaten. This category includes the American green bean, the yellow wax bean and the French haricot vert, a long, slender pod with an intense flavor and tender texture. If there are any strings along the pod's seams, they should be pulled off before cooking. Beans may be left whole, cut lengthwise into thin slivers (referred to as French cut) or cut crosswise on the diagonal.

Haricots Verts

Shelling beans are those grown primarily for the edible seeds inside the pod. Common examples are flageolets, lima beans and fava (broad) beans. Their tough pods are not usually eaten.

All beans can be prepared by steaming, microwaving or sautéing. They can be added to soups or stews, and they blend well with a variety of flavors, from coconut milk to garlic and olive oil. Cooked beans can be chilled and served as a salad or crudité.

Choose beans that have a bright color without brown or soft spots. Large pods may be tough or bitter. The peak season for fresh beans is from April through December. Most bean varieties are available frozen or canned, including pickled and seasoned products.

Dried Beans

Anthropologists report that for thousands of years cultures worldwide have preserved some members of the legume family by drying. Common dried beans include kidney beans, pinto beans, chickpeas, lentils, black beans, black-eyed peas and split green peas. Shape is the clearest distinction among these products: Beans are oval or kidney-shaped; lentils are small, flat disks; peas are round.

Dried Black-eyed Peas

Beans and peas destined for drying are left on the vine until they are fully matured and just beginning to dry. They are then harvested, shelled and quickly dried with warm air currents. Some dried legumes are sold split, which means the skin is removed, causing the seed's two halves to separate.

Most dried beans need to be soaked in water before cooking. Soaking softens and rehydrates the beans, thus reducing cooking time. Lentils and split peas generally do not require soaking, however, and will cook faster than beans. After soaking, beans are most often simmered or baked in a liquid until soft and tender. One type may be substituted for another in most recipes, although variations in color, starch content and flavor should be considered.

Lentils

Dried beans and peas are available in bulk or in poly-bags. They should be stored in a cool, dry place, but not refrigerated. Many of these beans are also available fully cooked, then canned or frozen. Some dried beans may be fermented or processed into flour, oil or bean curd.

Pinto Beans

Great Northern Beans

Red Kidney Beans

Procedure for Soaking Dried Beans

1. Pick through the dried beans and remove any grit, pebbles or debris.
2. Place the beans in a bowl and cover with cold water; remove any skins or other items that float to the surface.
3. Drain the beans in a colander, then rinse under cold running water.
4. Return the beans to a bowl and cover with fresh cold water. Allow approximately 3 cups (750 milliliters) of water for each cup of beans.
5. Soak the beans in the cold water for the time specified in the recipe, usually several hours or overnight. Drain through a colander, discarding the water.

Procedure for Quick-Soaking Dried Beans

The soaking procedure can be accelerated by the following technique:

1. Rinse and pick through the beans.
2. Place the beans in a saucepan and add enough cool water to cover them by 2 inches (5 centimeters).
3. Bring to a boil and simmer for 2 minutes.
4. Remove from the heat, cover and soak for 1 hour.
5. Drain and discard the soaking liquid. Proceed with the recipe.

Fresh Shelling Peas

Of the shelling peas that are prepared fresh, the most common are green garden peas (English peas) and the French petit pois. Because they lose flavor rapidly after harvest, most shelling peas are sold frozen or canned. Shelling peas have a delicate, sweet flavor best presented by simply steaming until tender but still al dente. Peas may also be braised with rich meats such as ham or used in soups. Cooked peas are attractive in salads or as garnish.

Choose small fresh pea pods that are plump and moist. Peak season is April and May.

Fresh Shelling Peas

Edible Pea Pods

Snow peas, also known as Chinese pea pods, are a common variety of edible pea pod. They are flat and have only a few very small green peas. Snow peas have a string along their seams that can be removed by holding the leafy stem and pulling from end to end. The pods can be eaten raw, lightly blanched or steamed, or stir-fried.

Another variety of edible pea pod is the sugar snap pea, a cross between the garden pea and snow pea, which was developed during the late 1970s. They are plump, juicy pods filled with small, tender peas. The entire pod is eaten; do not shell the peas before cooking.

Choose pea pods that are firm, bright green and crisp. Avoid those with brown spots or a shriveled appearance. Pea pods are available all year, with a peak season in March and April.

Snow Peas

Okra

Okra, a common ingredient in African and Arab cuisines, was brought to the United States by slaves and French settlers. It is now integral to Creole, Cajun, southern and southwestern cuisines. Its mild flavor is similar to asparagus. Okra is not eaten raw; it is best pickled, boiled, steamed, or deep-fried. Okra develops a gelatinous texture when cooked for long periods, so it is used to thicken gumbos and stews. To avoid the slimy texture some find objectionable, do not wash okra until ready to cook, then trim the stem end only. Cook okra in stainless steel because other metals cause discoloration.

Choose small to medium pods (1 1/2 to 2 inches; 3.75 to 5 centimeters) that are deep green, without soft spots. Pale spears with stiff tips tend to be tough. Okra's peak season is from June through September. Frozen okra is widely available.

Okra

Roots and Tubers

Taproots (more commonly referred to as roots) are single roots that extend deep into the soil to supply the above-ground plant with nutrients. Tubers are fat underground stems. Most roots and tubers can be used interchangeably. All

TOFU

Tofu or bean curd (Fr. *fromage de soja*) is a staple of Japanese and Chinese cuisines and is gaining acceptance in American kitchens because of its high nutritional value, low cost and flavor adaptability. Tofu is made by processing soybeans into "milk," which is then coagulated (nowadays with calcium sulfate). The curds are then placed in a perforated mold lined with cloth and pressed with a weight to remove the liquid. The result is a soft, creamy-white substance similar to cheese. Tofu is easy to digest, very high in protein, with very little fat and sodium and no cholesterol.

Silk Tofu

Tofu is an ancient foodstuff, probably created in China during the 2nd century A.D. It was introduced to Japan by Buddhist priests during the 8th century and was "discovered" by Western travelers during the 17th century. Today, Japanese tofu is said to be the finest, perhaps because of the superiority of the soybeans grown in the Yamato region, near the city of Kyoto. Japanese cuisine values the natural flavor and texture of tofu and uses it in a tremendous variety of ways. Chinese cuisine uses it as an additive, not as a principal ingredient.

Tofu may be eaten fresh, added to soup, broth or noodle dishes; tossed in cold salads; grilled, deep-fried or sautéed. Its flavor is bland, but it readily absorbs flavors from other ingredients.

Two types of tofu are widely available: cotton and silk. Cotton tofu is the most common. Its texture is firm, with an irregular surface caused by the weave of the cotton fabric in which it is wrapped for pressing. Silk tofu has a silky-smooth appearance and texture, and a somewhat more delicate flavor. Unlike cotton tofu, the water has not been pressed out of silk tofu. Consequently, silk tofu should not be cooked at high temperatures or for a long time, as it falls apart easily. The use of either type in most recipes is simply a matter of personal preference.

Fresh tofu is usually packaged in water. It should be refrigerated and kept in water until used. If the water is drained and changed daily, the tofu should last for one week.

store well at cool temperatures, without refrigeration. Potatoes, the most popular tuber, are discussed in Chapter 23, Potatoes, Grains and Pasta.

Beets

Beets

Although records suggest that they were first eaten in ancient Greece, beets are most often associated with the colder northern climates, where they grow for most of the year. Beets can be boiled, then peeled and used in salads, soups or baked dishes.

Choose small to medium-sized beets that are firm, with smooth skins. Avoid those with hairy root tips, as they may be tough. Beets are available all year, with a peak season from March to October.

Carrots

Carrots, (Fr. *carotte*) among the most versatile of vegetables, are large taproots. Although several kinds exist, the Imperator is the most common. It is long and pointed, with a medium to dark orange color. It has a mild, sweet

flavor. Carrots can be cut into a variety of shapes and eaten raw, used for a mirepoix or prepared by moist-heat cooking methods, grilling, microwaving or roasting. They are also grated and used in baked goods, particularly cakes and muffins.

Choose firm carrots that are smooth and well shaped, with a bright orange color. If the tops are still attached, they should be fresh-looking and bright green. Carrots are available all year.

Carrots

Celery Root

Celery root, also known as celeriac, is a large, round root, long popular in northern European cuisines. It is a different plant from stalk celery, and its stalks and leaves are not eaten. Celery root has a knobby brown exterior; a creamy white, crunchy flesh and a mild, celerylike flavor. Its thick outer skin must be peeled away; the flesh is then cut as desired. Often eaten raw, celery root can be baked, steamed or boiled. It is used in soups, stews or salads and goes well with game and rich meats. Raw celery root may be placed in acidulated water to prevent browning.

Celery Root

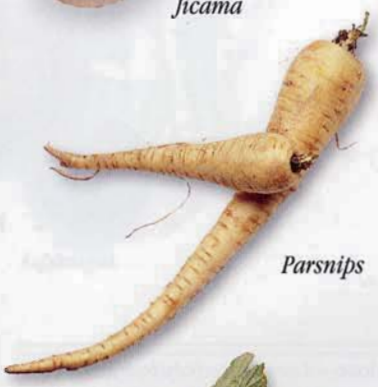
Choose small to medium-sized roots that are firm and relatively clean, with a pungent smell. Their peak season is October through April.

Jicama

Jicama

Jicama is actually a legume that grows underground as a tuber. It is becoming increasingly popular because of its sweet, moist flavor, crisp texture, low calorie content and long shelf life. After its thick brown skin is cut away, the crisp, moist white flesh can be cut as desired. Jicama is often eaten raw in salads, with salsa or as a crudité. It is also used in stir-fried dishes.

Choose firm, well-shaped jicamas that are free of blemishes. Size is not an indication of quality or maturity. They are available all year, with a peak season from January through May.



Parsnips

Parsnips

Parsnips (Fr. *panais*) are taproots that look and taste like white carrots and have the texture of sweet potatoes. Parsnips should be 5 to 10 inches (12.5 to 25 centimeters) in length, with smooth skins and tapering tips. Parsnips, peeled like carrots, can be eaten raw or cooked by almost any method. When steamed until very soft, they can be mashed like potatoes.

Choose small to medium-sized parsnips that are firm, smooth and well shaped; avoid large, woody ones. Parsnips are available all year, with peak supplies from December through April.

Red Radishes

Radishes

Radishes (Fr. *radis*) are used for their peppery flavor and crisp texture. Radishes are available in many colors, including white, black and all shades of red; most have a creamy to pure white interior. Asian radishes, known as

Daikon

daikons, produce roots 2 to 4 inches (5 to 10 centimeters) in diameter and 6 to 20 inches (15 to 20 centimeters) long. Radishes can be steamed or stir-fried, but most often are eaten raw, in salads or used as garnish. Radish leaves can be used in salads or cooked as greens.

Choose radishes that are firm, not limp. Their interior should be neither dry nor hollow. Radishes are available all year.

Rutabagas

Rutabagas are a root vegetable and a member of the cabbage family. Their skin is purple to yellow, and they have yellow flesh with a distinctive starchy, cabbagelike flavor. Rutabagas and turnips are similar in flavor and texture when cooked and may be used interchangeably. Rutabaga leaves are not eaten. Rutabagas should be peeled with a vegetable peeler or chef's knife, then cut into quarters, slices or cubes. They are often baked, boiled and then puréed, or sliced and sautéed. They are especially flavorful when seasoned with caraway seeds, dill or lemon juice.

Choose small to medium-sized rutabagas that are smooth, firm and feel heavy. Their peak season is January through March.

Rutabagas

Turnips

Also a root vegetable from the cabbage family, turnips have white skin with a rosy-red or purple blush and a white interior. Their flavor, similar to that of a radish, can be rather hot. Turnips should be peeled, then diced, sliced or julienned for cooking. They may be baked or cooked with moist-heat cooking methods, and are often puréed like potatoes.

Choose small to medium-sized turnips that have smooth skin and feel heavy. They should be firm, not rubbery or limp. Any attached leaves should be bright green and tender. Spring is their peak season.

Turnips

Stalks

Stalk vegetables are plant stems with a high percentage of **cellulose** fiber. These vegetables should be picked while still young and tender. Tough fibers should be trimmed before cooking.

Cellulose—*A complex carbohydrate found in the cell wall of plants; it is indigestible by humans.*

Artichokes

Artichokes (Fr. *artichaut*) are the immature flowers of a thistle plant introduced to America by Italian and Spanish settlers. Young, tender globe artichokes can be cooked whole, but more mature plants need to have the fuzzy center (known as the choke) removed first. Whole artichokes can be simmered, steamed or microwaved; they are often served with lemon juice, garlic butter or hollandaise sauce. The heart may be cooked separately, then served in salads, puréed as a filling or served as a side dish. Artichoke hearts and bottoms are both available canned.

Artichokes

Choose fresh artichokes with tight, compact heads that feel heavy. Their color should be solid green to gray-green. Brown spots on the surface caused by frost are harmless. Artichokes' peak season is March through May.

Procedure for Preparing Fresh Artichokes

1. Using kitchen shears or scissors, trim the barbs from the large outer leaves of the artichoke.

2. With a chef's knife, cut away the stem and the top of the artichoke. Steam or boil the artichoke as desired.

Asparagus

Asparagus (Fr. *asperges*), a member of the lily family, has bright green spears with a ruffle of tiny leaves at the tip. Larger spears tend to be tough and woody, but can be used in soups or for purée. Asparagus are eaten raw or steamed briefly, stir-fried, microwaved or grilled. Fresh spring asparagus is excellent with nothing more than lemon juice or clarified butter; asparagus with hollandaise sauce is a classic preparation.

Choose firm, plump spears with tightly closed tips and a bright green color running the full length of the spear. Asparagus should be stored, refrigerated at 40°F (4°C), upright in 1/2 inch (1.25 centimeter) of water or with the ends wrapped in moist paper toweling. They should not be washed until just before use. Canned and frozen asparagus are also available. Peak season is March through June.

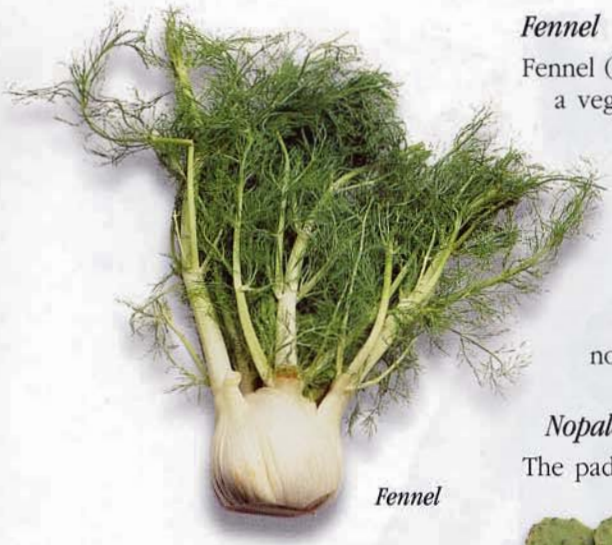
A European variety of white asparagus is sometimes available fresh, or readily available canned. It has a milder flavor and soft, tender texture. It is produced by covering the stalks with soil as they grow; this prevents sunlight from reaching the plant and retards the development of chlorophyll.

Asparagus

Celery

Celery

Once a medicinal herb, stalk celery (Fr. *céleri*) is now a common sight in kitchens worldwide. Stalk celery is pale green with stringy curved stalks. Often eaten raw in salads or as a snack, it can be braised or steamed as a side dish. Celery is also a mirepoix component. Choose stalks that are crisp, without any sign of dryness. Celery is available all year.



Fennel

Fennel

Fennel (Fr. *fenouil*) is a Mediterranean favorite used for thousands of years as a vegetable (the bulb), an herb (the leaves) and a spice (the seeds). The bulb (often incorrectly referred to as sweet anise) has short, tight, overlapping celerylike stalks with feathery leaves. The flavor is similar to anise or licorice, becoming milder when cooked. Fennel bulbs may be eaten raw or grilled, steamed, sautéed, baked or microwaved.

Choose a fairly large, bright white bulb on which the cut edges appear fresh, without dryness or browning. The bulb should be compact, not spreading. Fresh fennel's peak season is September through May.

Nopales

The pads of a prickly pear cactus can be prepared as a vegetable known as nopales. Cactus pads have a flavor similar to green bell peppers. Their texture tends to be rather gelatinous or mucilaginous, making them good for stews or sauces. To prepare fresh nopales, hold the pad with tongs and cut off the thorns and "eyes" with a sharp knife or vegetable peeler. Trim off the edge all the way around. Slice the pad into julienne strips or cubes. The pieces can be boiled or steamed and served hot, or chilled and added to salads. Nopales can also be sautéed with onions, peppers and seasonings for a side dish or added to southwestern-style casseroles.

Nopales

Some cultivated varieties have thin, thornless pads. Choose pads that are stiff and heavy without blemishes. They should not be dry or soggy. Fresh cactus pads are available all year, with peak season in the late spring. Canned and pickled nopales are also available.

Baby Vegetables

Many fine restaurants serve baby vegetables: tiny turnips, finger-length squash, miniature carrots and petite heads of cauliflower. First cultivated in Europe but now widely available throughout the United States, baby vegetables include both hybrids bred to be true miniatures as well as regular varieties that are picked before maturity. Baby vegetables are often marketed with blossoms or greens still attached. They tend to be easily bruised and are highly perishable. Many baby vegetables can be eaten raw, but they are usually left whole, then steamed or lightly sautéed and attractively presented as an accompaniment to meat, fish or poultry entrées.

Chiogghi Beets

Baby Yellow Squash with Blossoms

Baby Zucchini with Blossoms

Baby Globe Carrots

Ancient Plants and Ancient Ways Vanish

Since the days of Columbus, half of all native American crop varieties have become extinct. If this trend continues, several hundred more will become extinct in our lifetimes. Similarly, ancient farming practices have all but been abandoned. As late as the 1920s, the Tohono O'odham Indians of Arizona still used traditional methods to cultivate more than 10,000 acres without pumping groundwater. Today, only a few scattered floodwater fields remain.

When species disappear we lose an irreplaceable source of genetic diversity—a source of extraordinary genes that could someday improve modern hybrid crops. When native desert crops vanish, so does the ancient tradition of native agriculture, which has selected these crops over millennia to thrive in extreme temperatures, in alkaline soils without millions of gallons of precious water and without expensive, ecologically destructive chemicals.

Today, six highly bred species—wheat, rice, corn, sorghum, potatoes and cassava—supply most of the world's nutrition. As food crops become more and more homogeneous, they often lose their natural ability to tolerate pests, disease and drought. In the past, farmers grew thousands of food crop varieties. These traditional crop varieties contain a storehouse of genetic diversity that enables them to flourish in the most difficult environments. This broad spectrum of genetic variability is a cushion against natural predators and diseases. Wild chiles from the Sierra Madre, for example, are highly disease resistant. Their virus-tolerant genes have been bred into commercial varieties of bell pepper and jalapeños.

Native Seeds/SEARCH, one of the country's first regional seed banks, was founded to keep ancient desert plants and traditional farming methods from disappearing forever. Since 1983 we've ridden mules into remote areas and made more than 1200 collections of desert-adapted crops and wild relatives. We've gathered the seeds of chapalote (a brown popcorn), blue indigo (used for dyes), tepary (a heat- and drought-tolerant bean), teosinte (a wild relative of corn), wild chiles and other plants. These seeds are available to researchers, gardeners, farmers and seed banks. Seeds are offered free to Native Americans.

Each loss of biological and cultural diversity alters and damages the balance of life on earth, often in ways we do not understand. Each loss of leaf, stem and flower diminishes our earth's richness and beauty in ways we often don't appreciate until they're gone.

Dr. Gary Paul Nabhan
Native Seeds/SEARCH
Tucson, Arizona

Table 22.1 Nutritional Values of Selected Vegetables

Per 4-oz. (112-g) serving, fresh, trimmed and prepared as noted	Kcal	Protein (g)	Carbohydrates (g)	Fiber (g)	Total Fat (g)	Vitamin A (I.U.)	Vitamin C (mg)	Calcium (mg)	Iron (mg)
Asparagus, boiled and drained	28	2.9	5	0.9 c	0.4	896	28.8	39.6	1
Broccoli, boiled and drained	32	3.4	5.7	2.9 d	0.4	1586	85	52	0.9
Cabbage, green, boiled and drained	24	1.1	5.4	0.7 c	0.3	96	27	37.5	0.4
Carrots, raw	48	1.2	11.6	3.6 d	0.4	32,404	11.2	30.4	0.6
Corn, boiled and drained	122	3.8	28.5	4.2 d	1.5	247	6.9	2.8	0.7
Mushrooms, white, raw	28	2.4	5.2	1.6 d	0.4	0	5.8	5.8	1.3
Onions, raw	44	1.2	9.6	2 d	0.3	0	6.7	21.3	0.2
Peppers, bell, green or red, raw	32	1.2	7.2	2 d	0.4	585	56.3	8.7	0.4
Pinto beans, boiled and drained	155	9.3	29.1	4.5 d	0.6	2.6	2.6	53.3	2.9
Snow peas, raw	48	3.2	8.4	2.8 d	0.4	42	17.2	12.4	0.6
Spinach, boiled and drained	26	3.4	4.3	2.5 d	0.3	7371	9	122	3.2
Tomatoes, raw	24	0.8	5.2	1.6 d	0.4	645	20.2	5	0.5
Zucchini, raw	16	1.2	3.2	0.4 d	0.3	100	2.7	4.5	0.1

The Corinne T. Netzer Encyclopedia of Food Values 1992
c = crude fiber (a designation given to a less-accurate measurement of fiber content)
d = dietary fiber (a designation given to a newer and more accurate measurement of fiber content)

NUTRITION

Most vegetables are more than 80% water; the remaining portions consist of carbohydrates (primarily starches) as well as small amounts of protein and fat. The relative lack of protein and fat makes most vegetables especially low in calories.

Much of a vegetable's physical structure is provided by generally indigestible substances such as cellulose and lignin, also known as fiber. This fiber produces the characteristic stringy, crisp or fibrous textures associated with vegetables.

Vegetables are also a good source of vitamins and minerals. Care must be taken during preparation to preserve their nutritional content, however. Once peeled or cut, vegetables lose nutrients to the air, or to any liquid in which they are allowed to soak. Vitamins are concentrated just under the skin, so peel vegetables thinly, if at all.

PURCHASING AND STORING FRESH VEGETABLES

Fresh vegetables should be selected according to seasonal availability. Using a vegetable at the peak of its season has several advantages: Price is at its lowest, selection is at its greatest and the vegetable's color, flavor and texture are at their best.

Grading

The USDA has a voluntary grading system for fresh vegetables traded on wholesale markets. The system is based on appearance, condition and other factors affecting waste or eating quality. Grades for all vegetables include, in descending order of quality, U.S. Extra Fancy, U.S. Fancy, U.S. Extra No. 1 and U.S. No. 1. There are also grades that apply only to specific vegetables, for example, U.S. No. 1 Boilers for onions.

Consumer or retail grading is currently required only for potatoes, carrots and onions. It uses alphabetical listings, with Grade A being the finest.

Purchasing

Fresh vegetables are sold by weight or count. They are packed in cartons referred to as cases, lugs, bushels, flats or crates. The weight or count packed in each of these containers varies depending on the size and type of vegetable as well as the packer. For example, celery is packed in 55-pound cartons containing 18–48 heads depending on the size of each head.

Some of the more common fresh vegetables (for example, onions, carrots, celery and lettuces) can be purchased from wholesalers trimmed, cleaned and cut according to your specifications. Although the unit price will be higher for diced onions than for whole onions, for example, the savings in time, labor, yield loss and storage space can be substantial. Processed vegetables may suffer a loss of nutrients, moisture and flavor, however.

Ripening

Although vegetables do not ripen in the same manner as fruits, they do continue to breathe (respire) after harvesting. The faster the respiration rate, the faster the produce ages or decays. This decay results in wilted leaves and dry,

tough or woody stems and stalks. Respiration rates vary according to the vegetable variety, its maturity at harvest and its storage conditions after harvest.

Ripening proceeds more rapidly in the presence of ethylene gas. Ethylene gas is emitted naturally by fruits and vegetables and can be used to encourage further ripening in some produce, especially fruit-vegetables such as tomatoes. Items harvested and shipped when mature but green (unripe) can be exposed to ethylene gas to induce color development (ripening) just before sale.

Storing

Some fresh vegetables are best stored at cool temperatures, between 40°F and 60°F (4°C–16°C), ideally in a separate produce refrigerator. These include winter squash, potatoes, onions, shallots and garlic. If a produce refrigerator is not available, store these vegetables at room temperature in a dry area with good ventilation. Do not store them in a refrigerator set at conventional temperatures. Colder temperatures convert the starches in these vegetables to sugars, changing their texture and flavor.

Most other vegetables benefit from cold storage at temperatures between 34°F and 40°F (2°C–4°C) with relatively high levels of humidity. Greens and other delicate vegetables should be stored away from apples, tomatoes, bananas and melons, as the latter give off a great deal of ethylene gas.

Purchasing and Storing Preserved Vegetables

Preservation techniques are designed to extend the shelf life of vegetables. These methods include irradiation, canning, freezing and drying. Except for drying, these techniques do not substantially change the vegetable's texture or flavor. Canning and freezing can also be used to preserve cooked vegetables.

Irradiated Vegetables

The irradiation process uses ionizing radiation (usually gamma rays of cobalt 60 or cesium 137) to sterilize foods. When foods are subjected to radiation, parasites, insects and bacteria are destroyed, ripening is slowed and sprouting is prevented. Irradiation works without a noticeable increase in temperature; consequently, the flavor and texture of fresh foods are not affected. Some nutrients, however, may be destroyed. Irradiated vegetables do not need to be sprayed with post-harvest pesticides, and they have an extended shelf life.

The FDA classifies irradiation as a food additive. Although not yet approved for all foods, grains, fruits and vegetables may be treated with low-dose radiation. Irradiated foods must be labeled "Treated with radiation" or "Treated by irradiation." The symbol shown in Figure 22.1 may also be used.

Irradiated produce is purchased, stored and used like fresh produce.

FIGURE 22.1 *Irradiation Symbol*

Canned Vegetables

Canned vegetables are the backbone of menu planning for many food service operations. In commercial canning, raw vegetables are cleaned and placed in a sealed container, then subjected to high temperatures for a specific period. Heating destroys the microorganisms that cause spoilage, and the sealed envi-

ronment created by the can eliminates oxidation and retards decomposition. But the heat required by the canning process also softens the texture of most vegetables and alters their nutritional content; many vitamins and minerals may be lost through the canning process. Green vegetables may also suffer color loss, becoming a drab olive hue.

Canned vegetables are graded by the USDA as U.S. Grade A or Fancy, U.S. Grade B or Extra-Select, and U.S. Grade C or Standard. U.S. Grade A vegetables must be top quality, tender and free of blemishes. U.S. Grade C vegetables may lack uniformity or flavor, but can be used in casseroles or soups if cost is a concern.

Combinations of vegetables as well as vegetables with seasonings and sauces are available canned. For example, corn kernels are available canned in water, in seasonings and sauces, combined with other vegetables or creamed. Canned vegetables are easy to serve because they are essentially fully cooked during the canning process.

Canned vegetables are purchased in cases of standard-sized cans (see Appendix II). Canned vegetables can be stored almost indefinitely at room temperature. Once a can is opened, any unused contents should be transferred to an appropriate storage container and refrigerated. Cans with bulges should be discarded immediately, without opening.

Frozen Vegetables

Frozen vegetables are almost as convenient to use as canned. However, they often require some cooking, and expensive freezer space is necessary if an inventory is to be maintained. Regardless, freezing is a highly effective method for preserving vegetables. It severely inhibits the growth of microorganisms that cause spoilage without destroying many nutrients. Generally, green vegetables retain their color, although the appearance and texture of most vegetables may be somewhat altered because of their high water content. Ice crystals form from the water in the cells and burst the cells' walls.

Some vegetables are available individually quick frozen (IQF). This method employs blasts of cold air, refrigerated plates, liquid nitrogen, liquid air or other techniques to chill the vegetables quickly. By speeding the freezing process, the formation of ice crystals can be greatly reduced.

Combinations of vegetables as well as vegetables with seasonings and sauces are available frozen. Some frozen vegetables are raw when frozen; others are blanched before freezing so that final cooking time is reduced. Many others are fully cooked before freezing and need only to be thawed or heated for service. Frozen vegetables generally do not need to be thawed before being heated. Once thawed or cooked, they should be stored in the refrigerator and reheated in the same manner as fresh vegetables. Do not refreeze previously frozen vegetables.

Frozen vegetables are graded in the same manner as canned vegetables. They are usually packed in cases containing 1- to 2-pound (450-gram to 1.8-kilogram) boxes or bags. All frozen vegetables should be sealed in moisture-proof wrapping and kept at a constant temperature of 0°F (−18°C) or below. Temperature fluctuations can draw moisture from the vegetables, causing poor texture and flavor loss. Adequate packaging also prevents freezer burn, an irreversible change in the color, texture and flavor of frozen foods.

Dried Vegetables

Except for beans, peas, peppers and tomatoes, few vegetables are commonly preserved by drying. Unlike other preservation methods, drying dramatically

alters flavor, texture and appearance. The loss of moisture concentrates flavors and sugars and greatly extends shelf life.

Applying Various Cooking Methods

Vegetables are cooked in order to break down their cellulose and gelatinize their starches. Cooking gives vegetables a pleasant flavor; creates a softer, more tender texture; and makes them more digestible. Ideally, most vegetables should be cooked as briefly as possible in order to preserve their flavor, nutrients and texture. Unfortunately, sometimes you must choose between emphasizing appearance and maintaining nutrition because cooking methods that preserve color and texture often remove nutrients.

Acid/Alkali Reactions

The acid or alkali content of the cooking liquid affects the texture and color of many vegetables. This is of greater concern with moist-heat cooking methods, but it is also a consideration with dry-heat cooking methods, as they often call for blanched or parboiled vegetables.

Texture

The acidity or alkalinity of the vegetable's cooking liquid influences the finished product's texture. If an acid such as lemon juice, vinegar or wine is added to the liquid for flavoring, the vegetable will resist softening and will require a longer cooking time. On the other hand, an alkaline cooking medium will quickly soften the vegetable's texture and may cause it to become mushy. Alkalinity also causes nutrient loss (especially thiamin) and may impart a bitter flavor. Alkalinity can be caused by tap water, detergent residue on utensils or the addition of baking soda (a base) to the cooking liquid. (You could add, for example, 1/8 teaspoon [.6 milliliter] of baking soda per cup [225 milliliters] of beans to speed the softening of dried beans.)

Color

The acidity or alkalinity of the liquid also affects the plant's pigments, causing both desirable and undesirable color changes. There are three principal pigment categories: chlorophyll, carotenoid and flavonoid. A plant's unique color

Table 22.2 Acid/Alkali Reactions

		Effect of Acid on:		Effect of Alkali on:*		
Vegetable	Pigment Family	Color	Texture	Color	Texture	Cook Covered?
Spinach, Broccoli	chlorophyll	drab olive green	firm	bright green	mushy	no
Carrots, Rutabagas	carotenoid	no change	firm	no change	mushy	no difference
Cauliflower	flavonoid	white	firm	yellow	mushy	yes
Red Cabbage	flavonoid	red	firm	blue	mushy	yes

*Alkalinity always causes a loss of thiamin and other nutrients.

Vegetable Sauna

"Sweating vegetables" in a little oil over low heat in a covered pot is, in effect, a vegetable sauna. All of the flavors of the vegetables emerge slowly in a juicy tangle, in a much more intense manner than if you simply added them just-cut to a stock. Like roasting garlic, it is a way to enlarge the natural flavors very dramatically.

—from China Moon Cookbook
by Barbara Tropp

is the result of a combination of these pigments. Chlorophyll pigments predominate in green vegetables such as spinach, green beans and broccoli. Carotenoid pigments predominate in orange and yellow vegetables such as carrots, tomatoes, red peppers and winter squashes. Flavonoid pigments predominate in red, purple and white vegetables such as red cabbage, beets and cauliflower.

Initially, as vegetables are cooked, their original colors intensify. Exposure to heat makes pigments, especially chlorophyll, appear brighter. Exposure to acids and bases affects both chlorophyll and flavonoid pigments. Acids will gradually turn green vegetables an olive-drab color, while a slight alkalinity promotes chlorophyll retention. The opposite occurs with vegetables containing flavonoids: They retain desirable colors in a slightly acidic environment while losing colors in an alkaline one. (Carotenoid is not affected by either acidity or alkalinity.) Color changes alone do not affect flavor, but the altered appearance can make the product so visually unappealing as to become inedible.

Colors also change as the naturally occurring acids in vegetables are released during cooking. If the cooking pan is kept covered, the acids can concentrate, creating richer flavonoid pigments but destroying chlorophyll pigments.

Thus, if color is the *one and only* concern, vegetables with a high amount of chlorophyll should be cooked in an alkaline liquid, and vegetables with a high amount of flavonoids should be cooked in an acidic liquid. But remember, the improvement in color usually comes at the expense of texture and nutrients.

1. Spinach cooked with an acid (left) and an alkali.

2. Cauliflower cooked with an acid (left) and an alkali.

3. Red cabbage cooked with an acid (left) and an alkali.

Guidelines for Vegetable Cookery

The following general guidelines for vegetable cookery should be considered regardless of the cooking method used:

1. Vegetables should be carefully cut into uniform shapes and sizes to promote even cooking and provide an attractive finished product.
2. Cook vegetables for as short a time as possible to preserve texture, color and nutrients.

3. Cook vegetables as close to service time as possible. Holding vegetables in a steam table continues to cook them.
4. When necessary, vegetables may be blanched in advance, refreshed in ice water and refrigerated. They can then be reheated as needed.
5. White and red vegetables (those with flavonoid pigments) may be cooked with a small amount of acid such as lemon juice, vinegar or white wine to help retain their color.
6. When preparing an assortment of vegetables, cook each type separately, then combine them. Otherwise, some items would become overcooked in the time required to properly cook others.

Determining Doneness

There are so many types of vegetables, with such varied responses to cooking, that no one standard for doneness is appropriate. Each item should be evaluated on a recipe-by-recipe basis. Generally, however, most cooked vegetables are done when they are just tender when pierced with a fork or the tip of a paring knife. Leafy vegetables should be wilted but still have a bright color.

You can avoid overcooking vegetables by remembering that some carry-over cooking will occur through the residual heat contained in the foods. Always rely on subjective tests—sight, feel, taste and aroma—rather than the clock.

Dry-Heat Cooking Methods

Broiling and Grilling

Broiling and grilling use high heat to cook vegetables quickly. This preserves their nutritional content and natural flavors. The radiant heat of the broiler or grill caramelizes the vegetables, creating a pleasant flavor that is not generally achieved when vegetables are cooked by other methods.

Selecting and Preparing Vegetables to Broil or Grill

Broiling is often used to cook soft vegetables such as tomatoes or items that might not rest easily on a grill rack. Broiling is also used to warm and brown items just before service. If necessary, the vegetables can be basted to prevent them from drying out under the broiler's direct heat. Sometimes a cooked vegetable is napped with sauce or clarified butter and placed briefly under the broiler as a finishing touch at service time.

A large range of vegetables can be grilled. Carrots, peppers, squashes, eggplants and similar vegetables should be cut into broad, thin slices. They can then be placed on the grill in the same manner as a portion of meat or fish to create attractive crosshatchings. (See Chapter 9, Principles of Cooking.) Smaller vegetables such as mushrooms, cherry tomatoes and pearl onions can be threaded onto skewers for easy handling.

Seasoning Vegetables to be Broiled or Grilled

Vegetables contain little fat and therefore benefit greatly from added fat when being broiled or grilled. The added fat can be a brushing of clarified butter or a marinade such as one made from olive oil and herbs. Some vegetables may be brushed with butter and coated with bread crumbs or Parmesan before broiling.

Procedure for Broiling or Grilling Vegetables

1. Heat the grill or broiler.
2. Use a wire brush to remove any charred or burnt particles that may be stuck to the broiler or grill grate. The grate may be wiped with a lightly oiled towel to remove any remaining particles and help season it.
3. Prepare the vegetables to be broiled or grilled by cutting them into appropriate shapes and sizes, then seasoning, marinating or otherwise preparing them as desired or directed in the recipe.
4. Place the vegetables on the broiler grate, broiler platter or grill grate and cook to the desired doneness while developing the proper surface color.

RECIPE 22.1

Grilled Vegetable Skewers

Yield: 12 Skewers

Marinade:		
Rice wine vinegar	4 oz.	120 ml
Vegetable oil	8 oz.	250 ml
Garlic, chopped	1 oz.	30 g
Dried thyme	2 tsp.	10 ml
Salt	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Pepper	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Zucchini	6 oz.	180 g
Yellow squash	6 oz.	180 g
Broccoli florets, large	12	12
Cauliflower florets, large	12	12
Onion, large dice	24 pieces	24 pieces
Red bell pepper, large dice	12 pieces	12 pieces
Mushroom caps, medium	12	12

1. Combine all ingredients for the marinade and set aside.
2. Cut the zucchini and yellow squash into 1/2-inch (1.2-centimeter) thick semicircles.
3. Blanch and refresh the zucchini, yellow squash, broccoli florets, cauliflower florets, onions and red bell pepper as discussed later, under Moist-Heat Cooking Methods.
4. Drain the vegetables well and combine them with the marinade. Add the mushroom caps to the marinade. Marinate the vegetables for 30–45 minutes, remove and drain well.
5. Skewer the vegetables by alternating them on 6-inch (10-centimeter) bamboo skewers.
6. Place the vegetable skewers on a hot grill and cook until done, turning as needed. The vegetables should brown and char lightly during cooking. Serve hot.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 60, **Total fat** 2.5 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 610 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 8 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Vitamin C** 90%, **Claims**—low fat; no cholesterol; good source of fiber

Grilling skewers of marinated vegetables.

Roasting and Baking

The terms *roasting* and *baking* are used interchangeably when referring to vegetables. Roasting or baking is used to bring out the natural sweetness of many vegetables while preserving their nutritional values. The procedures are basically the same as those for roasting meats.

Selecting and Preparing Vegetables to Roast or Bake

Hearty vegetables such as winter squash and eggplant are especially well suited for roasting or baking. Vegetables such as onions, carrots and turnips are sometimes cooked alongside roasting meats or poultry. The vegetables add flavor to the finished roast and accompanying sauce, and the fats and juices released from the cooking roast add flavor to the vegetables.

Vegetables can be baked whole or cut into uniform-sized pieces. Squash, for example, is usually cut into large pieces. Vegetables may be peeled or left unpeeled, depending on the desired finished product.

Seasoning Vegetables to be Roasted or Baked

Vegetables may be seasoned with salt and pepper and rubbed with butter or oil before baking, or they may be seasoned afterward with a wide variety of herbs and spices. Some vegetables, such as winter squashes and sweet potatoes, may be seasoned with brown sugar or honey as well.

Procedure for Roasting or Baking Vegetables

1. Wash the vegetables. Peel, cut and prepare them as desired or directed in the recipe.
2. Season the vegetables and rub with oil or butter if desired.
3. Place the vegetables in a baking dish and bake in a preheated oven until done.

RECIPE 22.2

Baked Butternut Squash

Yield: 4 4-oz. (120-g) Servings

Butternut squash, medium dice	1 lb.	450 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Cinnamon	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Cardamom, ground	1/8 tsp.	1/2 ml
Brown sugar	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Lemon juice	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Whole butter, melted	2 oz.	60 g

1. Place the squash in a buttered pan. Season with salt, pepper, cinnamon, cardamom and brown sugar.
2. Drizzle the lemon juice and butter over the top of the squash.
3. Bake, uncovered, in a 350°F (180°C) oven until tender, approximately 50 minutes.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 190, **Total fat** 12 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 30 mg, **Sodium** 700 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 20 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 90%, **Vitamin C** 35%

Sautéing

Sautéed vegetables should be brightly colored and slightly crisp when done and show little moisture loss. When sautéing vegetables, all preparation must be complete before cooking begins because timing is important and cooking progresses rapidly. Have all vegetables, herbs, spices, seasonings and sauces ready before you begin.

Selecting and Preparing Vegetables to Sauté

A wide variety of vegetables can be sautéed. Whatever vegetables are used, they should be cut into uniform-sized pieces to ensure even cooking.

Quick-cooking vegetables such as summer squashes, onions, greens, stalks, fruit-vegetables and mushrooms can be sautéed without any preparation except washing and cutting. Other vegetables such as Brussels sprouts, green beans, winter squashes, broccoli, cauliflower and most root vegetables are usually first blanched or otherwise partially cooked by baking, steaming or simmering. They are then sautéed to reheat and finish. Carrots, squash and other vegetables are sometimes finished by sautéing in butter and then adding a small amount of honey or maple syrup to glaze them. Some cooked vegetables are reheated by simply sautéing them in a small amount of stock or sauce.

Seasoning Vegetables to be Sautéed

Sautéed vegetables can be seasoned with a great variety of herbs and spices. Seasonings should be added toward the end of the cooking process after all other ingredients have been incorporated in order to accurately evaluate the flavor of the finished dish.

Because sautéing vegetables uses slightly lower temperatures than sautéing meats and poultry, usually whole butter can be used instead of clarified butter. For additional flavors, fats such as bacon fat, olive oil, nut oils or sesame oil can be used in place of butter.

PROCEDURE FOR SAUTÉING VEGETABLES

1. Wash and cut the vegetables into uniform shapes and sizes.
2. Heat a sauté pan and add enough fat to just cover the bottom. The pan should be large enough to hold the vegetables without overcrowding.
3. When preparing an assortment of vegetables, add the ingredients according to their cooking times (first add the vegetables that take the longest to cook). Plan carefully so that all vegetables will be done at the same time. Do not overcrowd the pan; maintain high enough heat so that the vegetables do not cook in their own juices.
4. Toss the vegetables using the sloped sides of the sauté pan or wok to flip them back on top of themselves. Do not toss more than necessary. The pan should remain in contact with the heat source as much as possible to maintain proper temperatures.
5. Add any sauces or vegetables with high water content, such as tomatoes, last.
6. Season the vegetables as desired with herbs or spices, or add ingredients for a glaze.

RECIPE 22.3

Stir-Fried Asparagus with Shiitake Mushrooms

Yield: 1 lb. (450 g)

Asparagus	1 lb.	450 g
Shiitake mushrooms, fresh	6 oz.	180 g
Vegetable oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Sesame oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Garlic, chopped	2 tsp.	10 ml
Oyster sauce	4 oz.	120 ml
Crushed red chiles, optional	TT	TT

1. Wash the asparagus, trim the ends and slice on the bias into 1- to 2-inch (2.5- to 5-centimeter) pieces.
2. Wash the mushrooms, trim off the stems and slice the caps into 1/2-inch (1.2-centimeter) thick slices.
3. Heat the oils in a wok or sauté pan.
4. Add the garlic and stir-fry for a few seconds.
5. Add the mushrooms and asparagus and stir-fry for 1 minute.
6. Add the oyster sauce and crushed red chiles (if used) and continue to stir-fry until the asparagus is nearly tender, approximately 3 minutes.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 140, **Total fat** 8 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 1130 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 13 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin C** 50%

Stir-frying mushrooms and asparagus.

Pan-Frying and Deep-Frying

Pan-frying is not as popular as other techniques for cooking vegetables. Green tomatoes, however, are sometimes seasoned, floured and pan-fried; eggplant slices are seasoned, floured, pan-fried and used for eggplant parmesan. When pan-frying vegetables, follow the procedures outlined in Chapter 9, Principles of Cooking.

Deep-frying is a popular method of preparing vegetables such as potatoes, squashes and mushrooms. They can be served as hors d'oeuvre, appetizers or accompaniments to a main dish. Starchy vegetables may be deep-fried plain. Most other vegetables are first breaded or battered. Vegetables can also be grated or chopped and incorporated into fritters or croquettes. Any deep-fried item should have a crisp, golden exterior with a tender, nongreasy center. See Chapter 21, Deep-Frying, for additional information.

Moist-Heat Cooking Methods

Blanching and Parboiling

Blanching and parboiling are variations on boiling; the difference between them is the length of cooking time. Blanched and parboiled vegetables are often finished by other cooking methods such as sautéing.

Blanching is the partial cooking of foods in a large amount of boiling water for a very short time, usually only a few seconds. Besides preparing veg-

etables for further cooking, blanching is used to remove strong or bitter flavors, soften firm foods, set colors or loosen skins for peeling. Kale, chard, snow peas and tomatoes are examples of vegetables that are sometimes blanched for purposes other than preparation for further cooking.

Parboiling is the same as blanching, but the cooking time is longer, usually several minutes. Parboiling is used to soften vegetables and shorten final cooking times. Parboiling is commonly used for preparing root vegetables, cauliflower, broccoli and winter squashes.

Boiling

Vegetables are often boiled. Boiled vegetables can be served as is, or they can be further prepared by quickly sautéing with other ingredients, puréeing or mashing. Boiled vegetables are also chilled, then used in salads.

Starchy root vegetables are generally not boiled but rather simmered slowly so that the heat penetrates to their interiors and cooks them evenly. Green vegetables should be boiled quickly in a large amount of water in order to retain their color and flavor.

Refreshing

Unless the boiled, blanched or parboiled vegetables will be eaten immediately, they must be quickly chilled in ice water after they are removed from the cooking liquid. This prevents further cooking and preserves (sets) their colors. This process is known as **refreshing** or **shocking** the vegetables. The vegetables are removed from the ice water as soon as they are cold. Never soak or hold the vegetables in the water longer than necessary, or valuable nutrients and flavor will be leached away.

PROCEDURE FOR REFRESHING VEGETABLES

1. Blanch, parboil or boil the vegetables to the desired doneness.

2. Remove the vegetables from the cooking liquid and submerge them in ice water just until they are cold.

Selecting and Preparing Vegetables to Boil

Nearly any type of vegetable can be boiled. Carrots, cabbages, green beans, turnips and red beets are just a few of the most common ones. Vegetables can be large or small, but they should be uniform in size to ensure even cooking. Some vegetables are cooked whole and only require washing before boiling. Others must be washed, peeled and trimmed or cut into smaller or more manageable sizes.

Seasoning Vegetables to be Boiled

Often vegetables are boiled in nothing more than salted water. Lemon juice, citrus zest, wine and other acidic ingredients are sometimes added to white and red vegetables; if so, they should be added to the liquid before the vegetables. Herbs and spices in a sachet or a bouquet garni are often used to add flavor to boiled vegetables and should be added according to the recipe.

After boiling, vegetables are sometimes finished with herbs, spices, butter, cream or sauces.

Procedure for Boiling Vegetables

1. Wash, peel, trim and cut the vegetables into uniform shapes and sizes.
2. Bring an adequate amount of water, stock, court bouillon or other liquid to a boil. The liquid should cover the vegetables, and they should be able to move around freely without overcrowding.
3. Add seasonings if desired or directed in the recipe.
4. Add the vegetables to the boiling liquid. If more than one vegetable is to be cooked and they have different cooking times, they should be cooked separately to ensure that all are cooked to the proper doneness. The pot may be covered if cooking white, red or yellow vegetables. Do not cover the pot when boiling green vegetables.
5. Cook the vegetables to the desired doneness.
6. Remove the vegetables from the water with a slotted spoon or a spider or drain through a colander.
7. Refresh the vegetables in ice water, drain and refrigerate until needed, or finish the hot boiled vegetables as desired and serve immediately.

RECIPE 22.4

Brussels Sprouts in Pecan Butter

Yield: 6 3-oz. (90-g) Servings

Brussels sprouts	1 lb.	450 g
Whole butter	2 oz.	60 g
Pecans, chopped	4 oz.	120 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Trim the Brussels sprouts and mark an X in the bottom of each with a paring knife to promote even cooking.
2. Boil the sprouts in salted water until tender, approximately 10 minutes.
3. Drain and hold the sprouts in a warm place.
4. Heat the butter in a sauté pan until it turns nut brown; this is called **beurre noisette**. Add the pecans and toss to brown them.
5. Add the Brussels sprouts and toss to reheat and blend flavors. Adjust the seasonings and serve.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (90-g) serving: **Calories** 240, **Total fat** 21 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 20 mg, **Sodium** 480 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 10 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Vitamin A** 15%, **Vitamin C** 80%

1. Marking an X in the bottom of each Brussels sprout.

2. Boiling the Brussels sprouts in the appropriate amount of water.

3. Tossing the Brussels sprouts with the butter.

Beurre noisette—*(Fr.) whole butter heated until it turns light brown and gives off a nutty aroma.*

Procedure for Cooking Dried Beans

Dried beans are best rehydrated by soaking as discussed earlier and then cooking in a boiling (actually simmering) liquid. After rehydration and cooking, the beans can be served or further cooked in baked, sautéed or puréed dishes.

1. After soaking, place the drained beans in a heavy saucepan and cover with cold water or stock. Allow approximately three times as much liquid as there are beans. Add flavoring ingredients as directed in the recipe, but do not add acids or salt until the beans have reached the desired tenderness. Acids and salt cause the exterior of beans to toughen and resist any further efforts at tenderizing.
2. Slowly bring the liquid to a boil. Boil uncovered for 10 minutes or as directed in the recipe. Use a ladle to remove any scum that rises to the surface.
3. Cover and reduce the heat. Allow the mixture to simmer until the beans are tender. Whole beans generally require 1 to 2 1/2 hours, lentils 20 to 35 minutes and split peas 30 to 60 minutes. Add additional hot liquid if necessary. Do not stir the beans during cooking.
4. Drain the cooked beans through a colander.

RECIPE 22.5

Chickpeas with Olive Oil and Lemon

Yield: 3 lb. (1.4 kg)

Chickpeas, dried	1 lb.	450 g
Chicken stock	3 pt.	1.5 lt
Onion, medium dice	10 oz.	300 g
Bouquet garni:		
Carrot stick, 4 in. (10 cm)	1	1
Leek, split, 4-in. (10-cm) piece	1	1
Fresh thyme	1 sprig	1 sprig
Bay leaves	2	2
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Lemon juice	2 oz.	60 ml
Olive oil	4 oz.	120 ml
Garlic, minced	1 oz.	30 g
Fresh oregano, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Lemon zest, grated	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Pepper	TT	TT

1. Soak the chickpeas in water for 4 hours or overnight.
2. Drain the chickpeas and combine with the chicken stock, onion and bouquet garni. Simmer, uncovered, until the chickpeas are tender, approximately 2 1/2 hours. Add the salt to the chickpeas; cook for 5 minutes.
3. Combine the lemon juice, olive oil, garlic, oregano and lemon zest to make a dressing.

4. Remove the peas from the heat. Drain. Combine with the dressing and season to taste with pepper. Serve the peas hot or refrigerate and serve cold.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (90-g) serving: **Calories** 140, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 250 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 11 g, **Protein** 3 g

---

Steaming

Vegetables can be steamed in a convection steamer or by placing them in a basket or on a rack and suspending them over boiling liquid in a wok, saucepan or hotel pan. Vegetables can also be pan-steamed by cooking them in a covered pan with a small amount of liquid; most of the cooking is done by steam because only a small portion of the food is submerged in the liquid. Steamed vegetables can be eaten plain, partially cooked and sautéed lightly to finish, incorporated into casseroles or puréed. If they are not served immediately, they must be refreshed and refrigerated until used.

Properly steamed vegetables should be moist and tender. They generally retain their shape better than boiled vegetables. Vegetables cook very rapidly in steam and overcooking is a common mistake.

Selecting and Preparing Vegetables to Steam

Nearly any vegetable that can be boiled can also be steamed successfully. All vegetables should be washed, peeled and trimmed if appropriate and cut into uniform-sized pieces. Pan-steaming is appropriate for vegetables that are small or cut into fairly small pieces such as peas and beans or broccoli and cauliflower florets.

Seasoning Vegetables to be Steamed

Steaming produces vegetables with clean, natural flavors. Foods cooked in convection steamers can be seasoned with herbs and spices; but convection steamers use plain water to produce steam and the foods being cooked do not gain flavor from the cooking liquid. Vegetables steamed over liquids or pan-steamed in small amounts of liquids can be flavored by using stocks or court bouillon as the cooking liquid. Herbs, spices and aromatic vegetables can be added to any liquid for additional flavor.

Procedure for Steaming Vegetables

1. Wash, peel, trim and cut the vegetables into uniform shapes and sizes.
2. If a convection steamer is not being used, prepare a steaming liquid and bring it to a boil in a covered pan or double boiler.
3. Place the vegetables in a perforated pan in a single layer; do not crowd the pan. Place the pan over the boiling liquid or add the vegetables to the liquid.
4. Cover the pan and cook to the desired doneness.
5. Remove the vegetables from the steamer and serve, or refresh and refrigerate until needed.

RECIPE 22.6

Broccoli Almondine

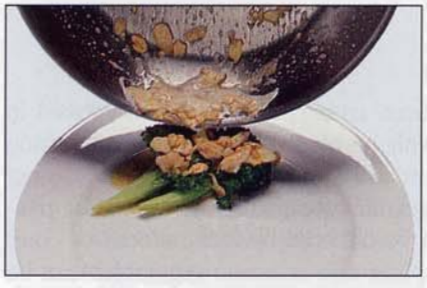
Yield: 6 Servings

Broccoli, fresh	2 lb.	1 kg
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Whole butter	2 oz.	60 g
Almonds, sliced	1 oz.	30 g
Garlic clove, minced	1	1
Lemon juice	2 oz.	60 ml

1. Cut the broccoli into uniform spears. Rinse and sprinkle lightly with salt and pepper.
2. Place the broccoli in a single layer in a perforated hotel pan and cook in a convection steamer until tender but slightly crisp, approximately 3 minutes.
3. Melt the butter in a sauté pan. Add the almonds and garlic and cook just until the nuts are lightly browned.
4. Arrange the broccoli on plates for service and sprinkle with the lemon juice. Drizzle the almonds and butter over the broccoli and serve immediately.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (180-g) serving: **Calories** 160, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 5 g, **Cholesterol** 20 mg, **Sodium** 500 g, **Total carbohydrates** 10 g, **Protein** 6 g, **Vitamin A** 35%, **Vitamin C** 110%

1. Placing the broccoli spears in a perforated pan.



2. Drizzling the browned almonds and butter over the broccoli.

Combination Cooking Methods

Braising and Stewing

Braised and stewed vegetables are cooked slowly in a small amount of liquid. The liquid, including any given off by the vegetables, is reduced to a light sauce, becoming part of the finished product. Generally, a braised dish is prepared with only one vegetable; a stew is a mixture of several vegetables. The main ingredients are sometimes browned in fat before the liquid is added in order to enhance flavor and color.

Both braises and stews can be exceptionally flavorful because they are served with all of their cooking liquid. (Boiled vegetables lose some of their

flavor to the cooking liquid.) Braised and stewed vegetables generally can be held hot for service longer than vegetables prepared by other cooking methods.

Selecting and Preparing Vegetables to Braise or Stew

Various lettuces, especially romaine and Boston, are often braised. Cabbages, Belgium endive, leeks and many other vegetables are also commonly braised. Stews may contain a wide variety of vegetables such as summer squashes, eggplant, onions, peppers, tomatoes, carrots, celery and garlic. Leafy green vegetables and winter squashes are less commonly braised or stewed.

The vegetables should be washed and peeled or trimmed if appropriate. Vegetables to be braised may be left whole, cut into uniform pieces or shredded, as desired. Lettuces are usually cut into halves or quarters; cabbage is usually shredded.

Seasoning Vegetables to be Braised or Stewed

Both braises and stews usually include flavoring ingredients such as garlic, herbs, bacon or mirepoix. The liquid may consist of water, wine, stock or tomato juice. Vegetables can even be braised in butter and sugar or honey to create a glazed dish.

Both braises and stews can be seasoned with a variety of herbs and spices. Add the seasonings before covering the pot to finish the cooking process. Strongly flavored vegetables such as celery root and turnips are usually parboiled first in order to reduce their strong presence.

Procedure for Braising and Stewing Vegetables

1. Wash, peel, trim and cut the vegetables.
2. Sauté or sweat the flavoring ingredients in fat to release their flavors. Or sauté or sweat the main ingredients in fat.
3. For a braise, add the main ingredient in a single layer. For a stew, add the ingredients according to their cooking times or as directed in the recipe.
4. Add the cooking liquid; it should partially cover the vegetables. Bring the liquid to a boil, reduce to a simmer, cover and cook in the oven or on the stove top until done.
5. If desired, remove the main ingredients from the pan and reduce the sauce or thicken it with beurre manié, cornstarch or arrowroot. Then return the main ingredients to the sauce.

RECIPE 22.7

Braised Celery with Basil

Yield: 12 servings

Celery	3 heads	3 heads
Onion, small dice	8 oz.	250 g
Garlic, minced	2 tsp.	10 ml
Whole butter	2 oz.	60 g
Olive oil	1 oz.	30 ml
Fresh thyme	1 tsp.	5 ml
Fresh basil, chiffonade	20 leaves	20 leaves

Continued

Dry white wine	8 oz.	250 ml
Chicken stock	1 pt.	500 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Trim the outer ribs from the celery heads, leaving only the tender hearts. Trim the heads to 6-inch (15-centimeter) lengths. Trim the root slightly, leaving each head together. Cut each head lengthwise into quarters.
2. Sauté the onions and garlic in the butter and olive oil, without coloring, until tender. Add the celery quarters to the pan and sauté, turning occasionally.
3. Add the thyme, basil, wine and chicken stock. Bring to a boil, reduce to a simmer, cover and braise in the oven at 350°F (180°C) until tender, approximately 1 hour.
4. Remove the celery and reserve. Reduce the cooking liquid on the stove top until it thickens. Adjust the liquid's seasonings and return the celery to the pan to reheat. Serve the celery with a portion of the sauce.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (90-g) serving: **Calories** 60, **Total fat** 4.5 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 5 mg, **Sodium** 170 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 1 g

1. Trimming and cutting the celery.

2. Adding the liquid to the celery.

3. Reducing the sauce.

Microwaving

Fresh vegetables are among the few foods that can be consistently well prepared in a microwave oven. Often microwave cooking can be accomplished without any additional liquid, thus preserving nutrients. With microwaving, colors and flavors stay true, and textures remain crisp.

Microwave cooking is actually a form of steaming. As explained in Chapter 9, Principles of Cooking, microwaves agitate water molecules, thus creating steam. The water may be the moisture found naturally in the food or may be added specifically to create the steam.

Cooking time depends on the type of microwave oven as well as on the freshness, moisture content, maturity and quantity of vegetables being prepared.

Selecting and Preparing Vegetables to Microwave

Any vegetable that can be steamed successfully can be microwaved with good results. Because typical microwave ovens are relatively small, they are impractical for producing large quantities of food. They are most useful for reheating small portions of vegetables that have been blanched or partially cooked using another cooking method.

Seasoning Vegetables to be Microwaved

Microwaving, like steaming, brings out the natural flavors of food. Herbs and spices can be added to the vegetables before they are microwaved. Or, after microwaving, the vegetables can be tossed with butter, herbs and spices or combined with a sauce.

Procedure for Microwaving Vegetables

1. Wash, peel, trim and cut the vegetables into uniform shapes and sizes.
2. Place the vegetables in a steamer designed for microwave use or arrange the vegetables on a microwavable dish. Cover the vegetables with the lid or plastic wrap. If using plastic wrap, it should be punctured to allow some steam to escape during cooking.
3. Cook the vegetables to the desired doneness, allowing for some carryover cooking. Or reheat the previously cooked vegetables until hot. Stir or turn the vegetables as necessary to promote even cooking.
4. Serve the vegetables or refresh and refrigerate until needed.

Puréeing

Puréeing is a technique often used with vegetables. Cooked vegetable purées can be served as is, or they can be used as an ingredient in other preparations such as pumpkin pie, mashed potatoes or vegetable soufflés. Purées can also be bound with eggs, seasoned and used to make vegetable timbales and terrines.

Puréed vegetables are generally first cooked by baking, boiling, steaming or microwaving. White, red and yellow vegetables should be cooked until quite soft. They are more easily puréed when hot or warm; this also helps ensure a smooth finished purée. For most preparations, green vegetables must be refreshed after cooking and puréed while cold, or they will overcook and become discolored.

Seasoning Vegetables to be Puréed

Vegetables for purées can be seasoned before they are puréed following the guidelines for the cooking procedure used. They can also be seasoned after they are puréed with a wide variety of ingredients such as herbs or spices, cheese, honey or brown sugar.

Finishing Puréed Vegetables

Purées can be finished with stocks, sauces, butter or cream to add richness and flavor. First purée the main ingredient, then add additional liquids to obtain the desired consistency.

Procedure for Puréeing Vegetables

1. Cook the vegetables. White, red and yellow vegetables should be cooked until very soft. Green vegetables should be cooked until tender but not overcooked to the point of being discolored.
2. Purée the vegetables in a VCM, food processor or blender or by passing them through a food mill.
3. Season or finish the puréed vegetables as desired or directed in the recipe, or use them in another recipe.

RECIPE 22.8

PARSNIP PURÉE

Yield: 2 qt. (2 lt)

Parsnips	4 lb.	1.8 kg
Russet potatoes	1 lb. 8 oz.	650 g
Heavy cream, hot	8 oz.	250 ml
Whole butter, melted	4 oz.	120 g
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT

1. Peel the parsnips and potatoes, and cut into large pieces of approximately the same size.
2. Boil the parsnips and potatoes separately in salted water until tender.
3. Drain the parsnips and potatoes well. Purée them together through a food mill.
4. Add the cream and butter and mix to combine. Adjust the consistency by adding cream as desired. Season the mixture with salt and white pepper and serve hot.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (170-g) serving: **Calories** 240, **Total fat** 12 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 35 mg, **Sodium** 220 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 31 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Vitamin A** 10%, **Vitamin C** 35%

CONCLUSION

Vegetables are an essential part of the human diet. They provide the body with vitamins, minerals and fiber and appeal to the appetite with flavor, color and texture. Increasing market availability of fresh, high-quality vegetables as well as new hybrids gives you an ever-increasing variety of vegetables from which to choose. Vegetables are a relatively inexpensive food that can be prepared in limitless ways. They can be served as an entire meal or as an accompaniment to or part of a wide variety of other dishes. And when cooking vegetables, remember what James Beard (1903–1985), the great American food consultant, culinary educator and writer once said: "No vegetable exists which is not better slightly undercooked."

QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

1. Explain how the season affects the price, quality and availability of vegetables.
2. List and describe three processing techniques commonly used to extend the shelf life of vegetables.
3. What special concerns exist regarding the storage of fresh vegetables? Explain why some vegetables should not be refrigerated.
4. Why is it important to cut vegetables into a uniform size before cooking?
5. Discuss several techniques used for determining the doneness of vegetables. Is carryover cooking a concern when preparing vegetables? Explain your answer.

6. Discuss the role of acid in a cooking liquid used for preparing vegetables. Which vegetables, if any, benefit from an acidic cooking environment?
7. Describe the necessary mise en place and procedure for refreshing vegetables.

Additional Vegetable Recipes

RECIPE 22.9

Summer Vegetables with Tarragon Aioli

Note: *This dish appears in the Chapter Opening photograph.*

GREENS, San Francisco, CA
Executive Chef Annie Somerville

Yield: 6 Servings Method: Boiling

Baby artichokes	6	6
Carrots	8 oz.	250 g
Yellow or green zucchini	1 lb.	500 g
Sunburst squash	1 lb.	500 g
Blue lake green beans	8 oz.	250 g
Yellow wax beans	8 oz.	250 g
Broccoli florets	1 lb.	500 g
Cauliflower florets	1 lb.	500 g
Red radishes	1 bunch	1 bunch
Cherry tomatoes	1/2 pt.	250 ml
Niçoise or Gaeta olives	8 oz.	250 g
Tarragon Aioli (recipe follows)	8 oz.	250 g

1. Trim the artichokes. Steam or boil them until tender; refresh.
2. Cut the carrots, zucchini and squash as desired. Snip the ends from the beans. Parboil the vegetables (except the radishes, tomatoes and olives), one variety at a time, in salted water until nearly tender but still crisp. Refresh each and drain well.
3. Wash the radishes. Trim the root end but leave the green tops attached.
4. Wash the cherry tomatoes and remove the stems.
5. Loosely arrange the vegetables on a platter, leaving room for the aioli unless it is to be served separately in a small bowl.

TARRAGON AIOLI

Yield: 1/2 pt. (250 ml)

Egg yolk, large	1	1
Fresh lemon juice	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Light olive oil	8 oz.	250 ml
Garlic clove, chopped	1	1
Champagne vinegar	1 tsp.	5 ml
Fresh tarragon, chopped	2 tsp.	10 ml
Salt	TT	TT

Continued

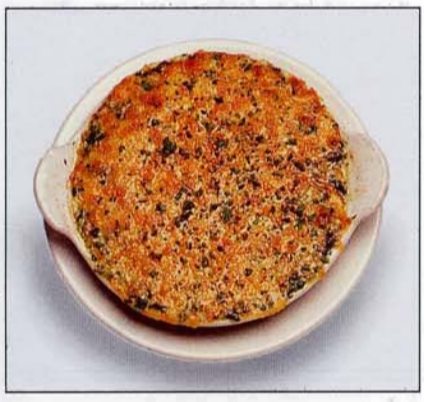
1. Whisk the yolk and 1/2 teaspoon (3 milliliters) of lemon juice together until smooth.
2. Whisk in the oil, very slowly at first, until the aioli begins to emulsify. Add a few drops of lemon juice as necessary to thin the sauce. Continue until all the oil and lemon juice have been incorporated.
3. Season with the garlic, vinegar, tarragon and salt. If the aioli is too thick, thin it with a little warm water.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 470, **Total fat** 35 g, **Saturated fat** 5 g, **Cholesterol** 30 mg, **Sodium** 770 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 29 g, **Protein** 8 g, **Vitamin A** 120%, **Vitamin C** 150%

RECIPE 22.10

Spinach Au Gratin

RUTH'S CHRIS STEAK HOUSE, PHOENIX, AZ



Yield: 8 8-oz. (240 g) Servings — **Method:** Boiling

Clarified butter	1 oz.	30 ml
Flour	1 oz.	30 g
Half-and-half	1 pt.	450 ml
Frozen chopped spinach, thawed	2 lb. 8 oz.	2.4 kg
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Cheddar cheese, shredded	1 lb. 8 oz.	700 g

1. Heat the butter in a saucepan. Add the flour and cook to make a blond roux.
2. Add the half-and-half, whisking to remove any lumps of roux. Bring to a simmer and cook for 15 minutes.
3. Drop the spinach into boiling salted water and cook for 2 minutes. Remove from the heat and drain well.
4. Combine the hot spinach with the cream sauce and adjust the seasonings.
5. Fill eight 10-ounce gratin dishes with the creamed spinach. Top each with 3 ounces (90 grams) shredded cheddar cheese and place under the broiler until the cheese is melted and browned and the spinach is very hot. Serve immediately.

Approximate values per 8-oz. (240-g) serving: **Calories** 510, **Total fat** 38 g, **Saturated fat** 24 g, **Cholesterol** 120 mg, **Sodium** 960 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 14 g, **Protein** 28 g, **Vitamin A** 140%, **Calcium** 90%

RECIPE 22.11

Broiled Tomato

Note: *This dish appears in the Beef Chapter Opening photograph.*

RUTH'S CHRIS STEAK HOUSE, PHOENIX, AZ

Yield: 1 Serving — **Method:** Broiling

Tomato, large	1	1
Granulated sugar	2 tsp.	10 ml
Whole butter, melted	1 oz.	30 g
Fresh parsley, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Core and halve the tomato.
2. Sprinkle sugar on top of each half. Place on a broiler platter and broil until tender.
3. Drizzle with butter and garnish with parsley.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 170, **Total fat** 12 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 30 mg, **Sodium** 130 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 14 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 20%, **Vitamin C** 40%

RECIPE 22.12

Grilled Portabella Mushrooms

Yield: 3 4-oz. (120-g) Servings — Method: Grilling

Portabella mushroom caps	1 lb.	500 g
Olive oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Garlic, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Fresh thyme	1 tsp.	5 ml

1. Wipe the mushroom caps clean with a damp towel.
2. Combine the olive oil and garlic and brush the mixture on the mushroom caps.
3. Season the mushrooms with salt, pepper and thyme.
4. Grill or broil the mushrooms until tender, approximately 8 minutes, depending on the size of the caps.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 140, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 790 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 8 g, **Protein** 6 g, **Claims**—no cholesterol; high fiber

RECIPE 22.13

Duxelles

Yield: 12 oz. (350 g) — Method: Sautéing

Mushrooms	1 lb.	500 g
Whole butter	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Shallots, minced	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Garlic, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Fresh parsley, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Chop the mushrooms very finely.
2. Sauté the shallots and garlic in butter until tender. Add the mushrooms and sauté until dry.
3. Season with salt and pepper and add the parsley. Cool and then use the duxelles as a stuffing for vegetables or as a flavoring ingredient in other recipes.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 20, **Total fat** 1 g, **Saturated fat** .5 g, **Cholesterol** 5 mg, **Sodium** 210 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Claims**—low fat; low cholesterol; low calorie

RECIPE 22.14

Roasted Portabella Mushroom with Summer Squash and Spicy Vegetable Broth

THE BOULDERS RESORT, CAREFREE, AZ
Chef Jarett Forsberg

Yield: 4 Servings **Method:** Roasting

Zucchini,	1	1
Golden Bar zucchini	1	1
Portabella mushrooms, stems and gills removed	2 medium	2 medium
Balsamic vinegar	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Garlic, minced	1 tsp.	5 ml
Kosher salt	TT	TT
Pepper	TT	TT
Vegetable cooking spray	as needed	as needed
Phyllo dough	6 oz.	180 g
Red bell pepper, roasted, peeled, seeded and cut in eighths	1	1
Spicy Vegetable Broth (recipe follows)	8 oz.	250 ml
Aged Monterey Jack cheese, shredded	1 oz.	30 g
Cilantro, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Place a heavy roasting pan in an oven and preheat to 450°F (230°C).
2. Cut the zucchini and the Golden Bar zucchini into 8 equal-sized pieces, reserving the scraps for the Spicy Vegetable Broth.
3. In a mixing bowl, combine the zucchinis and mushrooms, sprinkle with the vinegar, garlic, salt and pepper; toss to coat.
4. Spray the roasting pan lightly with the cooking spray and add the vegetables. Roast until cooked through, stirring occasionally, approximately 15 minutes.
5. Cut the phyllo dough into very thin strips using a pasta machine or a chef's knife. Gather the shredded phyllo into 4 small mounds and bake at 350°F (180°C) until crisp.
6. To assemble, cut the mushroom caps into quarters and lay one wedge in the bottom of each of 4 serving bowls. Top with a slice of zucchini followed by a slice of Golden Bar zucchini, the phyllo crisp and red pepper; repeat.
7. Ladle 2 ounces (60 milliliters) of the Spicy Vegetable Broth around the vegetables and garnish with the aged Monterey Jack cheese and cilantro.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 180, **Total fat** 4.5 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 240 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 27 g, **Protein** 7 g, **Vitamin C** 60%, **Claims**—low cholesterol; good source of fiber

SPICY VEGETABLE BROTH

Yield: 8 oz. (250 ml)

Olive oil	1 tsp.	5 ml
White onion, chopped	1/2	1/2

Celery, chopped	1 rib	1 rib
Carrot, chopped	1	1
Garlic cloves, chopped	2	2
Green bell pepper, seeded and chopped	1	1
Tomato, quartered	1	1
Thyme	1 sprig	1 sprig
Rosemary	1 sprig	1 sprig
Oregano	1 sprig	1 sprig
Bay leaves	3	3
Black peppercorns	8	8
White wine	1 c.	250 ml
Water	3 c.	720 ml
Chipotle chiles	2	2
Cider vinegar	1 oz.	30 ml
Tomato paste	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Kosher salt	TT	TT
Pepper	TT	TT

1. Heat the olive oil in a large sauce pan. Add the onion, celery, carrot, garlic and green bell pepper. Cook until the vegetables are tender. (You can also add any leftover scraps of squash from the previous recipe.)
2. Add the tomato, herbs, bay leaves, peppercorns, wine and water and bring to a boil. Reduce the heat and allow the broth to simmer for 1 hour.
3. Strain the broth and return it to the sauce pan and reduce by one-half.
4. Whisk in the chiles, vinegar and tomato paste. Cook for an additional 15 minutes. Season with salt and pepper.

Approximate values per 7-oz. (230-g) serving: **Calories** 60, **Total fat** 1.5 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 170 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 10 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 60%, **Vitamin C** 80%, **Claims**—low fat; no cholesterol; good source of fiber

RECIPE 22.15

Warm Mushroom Salad with Grilled Eggplant and White Truffles

BISHOP'S RESTAURANT, VANCOUVER, BC
Chefs Michael Allemeier and Dennis Green

Yield: 4 Servings

Japanese eggplant, large	1	1
Olive oil	4 Tbsp.	60 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Garlic cloves, minced	2	2
Shallots, sliced	1/2 c.	120 ml
Fresh thyme, chopped	2 sprigs	2 sprigs
Oyster mushrooms	8 oz.	250 g
Dry sherry	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Balsamic vinegar	2 Tbsp.	30 ml

Continued

Assorted baby greens, washed	4 c.	1 lt
Fresh white truffle	1	1

1. Using a meat slicer or sharp knife, slice the eggplant lengthwise into 1/8-inch (3-millimeter) thick slices. Brush them with a small amount of olive oil, season with salt and pepper and grill the eggplant over a medium-hot fire. Cook on both sides, just until tender, approximately 2 minutes. Transfer to a plate to cool.
2. In a large sauté pan, heat the remaining olive oil and sauté the garlic and shallots until tender. Add the thyme and oyster mushrooms, and cook over medium heat until the mushrooms are slightly softened, approximately 3–4 minutes.
3. Add the sherry and vinegar to the pan and reduce slightly. Remove from the heat.
4. Arrange the eggplant in a ring in the center of each serving plate. (An inverted glass may be used to help shape the eggplant.) Arrange the greens around the outside of the ring.
5. Spoon the mushroom mixture into the center of the eggplant ring and drizzle some of the remaining liquid over the greens. Grate fresh white truffle over the salad. (If fresh truffles are not available, lightly drizzle a good-quality truffle oil over the finished salad.)

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 240, **Total fat** 14 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 63 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 22 g, **Protein** 6 g, **Vitamin A** 28%, **Claims**—no cholesterol, high fiber

RECIPE 22.16

Stir-Fried Snow Peas with Dried Shrimp

Yield: 6 3-oz. (90-g) Servings **Method:** Sautéing

Dried shrimp	1 oz.	30 g
Snow peas	1 lb.	500 g
Garlic, chopped	2 tsp.	10 ml
Vegetable oil	2 oz.	60 ml
Sesame oil	1 tsp.	5 ml
Water chestnuts, sliced	4 oz.	120 g
Salt	TT	TT

1. Soak the dried shrimp in hot water for 15 minutes. Drain well.
2. Snap the snow peas and remove the strings.
3. Blanch the snow peas and refresh.
4. Stir-fry the garlic and shrimp in the vegetable and sesame oils for 10 seconds. Add the water chestnuts.
5. Add the snow peas and stir-fry until tender, approximately 1 minute. Season to taste with salt.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (90-g) serving: **Calories** 140, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 590 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 8 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Vitamin C** 60%

RECIPE 22.17

Glazed Pearl Onions

Yield: 1 lb. (450 g) Method: Boiling

Pearl onions, peeled	1 lb.	500 g
Whole butter	1 1/2 oz.	45 g
Sugar	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Place the onions, butter and sugar in a sauté pan and add enough water to barely cover.
2. Boil the onions, allowing the water to evaporate. As the water evaporates, the butter-and-sugar mixture will begin to coat the onions. When the water is nearly gone, test the doneness of the onions. If they are still firm, add a small amount of water and continue to boil until the onions are tender.
3. Sauté the onions in the butter-and-sugar mixture until they are glazed.

Variations: Vegetables such as carrots, turnips, zucchini and other squashes can also be glazed with this procedure. They should be cut into appropriate shapes such as a tourné and be large enough so that they glaze properly without overcooking. When preparing a mix of glazed vegetables, cook each type separately because each has a different cooking time.

Approximate values per 2-oz. (60-g) serving: **Calories** 70, **Total fat** 4.5 g, **Saturated fat** 2.5 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 340 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 8 g, **Protein** 1 g

RECIPE 22.18

Maple-Glazed Carrots

Yield: 16 4-oz. (120-g) Servings Method: Sautéing

Carrots	4 lb.	1.8 kg
Whole butter	4 oz.	120 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Maple syrup	4 oz.	120 ml
Fresh parsley, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml

1. Peel the carrots and cut into a shape such as oblique, tourné or rondelle.
2. Parboil the carrots in salt water and refresh. The carrots should be very firm.
3. Sauté the carrots in butter until nearly tender.
4. Season with salt and pepper, and add the maple syrup. Cook briefly, tossing the carrots so that they are coated with the maple syrup. Garnish with the parsley.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (128-g) serving: **Calories** 120, **Total fat** 6 g, **Saturated fat** 3.5 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 260 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 16 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 220%, **Vitamin C** 15%

RECIPE 22.19

Creamed Corn with Basil

Yield: 10 4-oz. (120-g) Servings **Method:** Sautéing

Corn	12 ears	12 ears
Whole butter	2 oz.	60 g
Onion, small dice	4 oz.	120 g
Heavy cream	8 oz.	250 ml
Basil leaves, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT

1. Cut the kernels from the ears.
2. Sauté the onions in the butter without browning.
3. Add the corn and sauté until hot.
4. Add the cream. Bring to a boil and reduce slightly. Add the basil and season with salt and white pepper.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 210, **Total fat** 14 g, **Saturated fat** 8 g, **Cholesterol** 45 mg, **Sodium** 290 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 19 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Vitamin A** 15%

RECIPE 22.20

Ratatouille

Yield: 16 4-oz. (120-g) Servings **Method:** Sautéing

Onion, medium dice	12 oz.	360 g
Garlic, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Olive oil	4 oz.	120 ml
Green bell pepper, medium dice	6 oz.	180 g
Red bell pepper, medium dice	6 oz.	180 g
Eggplant, medium dice	12 oz.	360 g
Zucchini, medium dice	8 oz.	250 g
Tomato concassée	24 oz.	620 g
Fresh basil, chiffonade	1 oz.	30 g
Salt	1 oz.	30 g
Pepper	TT	TT

1. Sauté the onion and garlic in the olive oil.
2. Add the peppers, eggplant and zucchini and sauté until tender, approximately 10 minutes.
3. Add the tomatoes, fresh basil and seasonings. Sauté for 5 minutes. Adjust the seasonings.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 90, **Total fat** 7 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 690 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 6 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin C** 35%, **Claims**—low saturated fat; no cholesterol

RECIPE 22.21

GARLIC TIMBALES

Yield: 8 2-oz. (60-ml) Timbales | Method: Baking

Garlic cloves, peeled	10	10
Milk	3 oz.	90 ml
Heavy cream	8 oz.	250 ml
Eggs	2	2
Dried thyme	1 tsp.	5 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Butter 8 small ramekins or timbales.
2. Place the garlic in a small saucepan, add enough water to cover and bring to a boil. Drain. Repeat this blanching procedure 2 more times.
3. Place the garlic in a blender with the milk and blend. Add the cream, eggs and thyme; blend until smooth. Season with salt and pepper.
4. Divide the custard among the timbales and place in a water bath. Bake for 30–45 minutes at 325°F (160°C).
5. Run a paring knife around the rim and unmold onto the serving plate.

VARIATIONS: Broccoli or cauliflower timbales. Place 1 ounce (30 grams) of blanched broccoli or cauliflower in each buttered timbale before adding the garlic custard mixture.

Approximate values per 2-oz. (60-g) serving: **Calories** 130, **Total fat** 12 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 95 mg, **Sodium** 320 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 3 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Vitamin A** 15%

RECIPE 22.22

ARTICHOKES STUFFED WITH ITALIAN SAUSAGE

Yield: 8 Servings | Method: Braising

Artichokes	8	8
Bulk sausage meat	1 lb.	500 g
Onion, chopped fine	1 lb.	500 g
Garlic, chopped fine	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Cumin, ground	1 tsp.	5 ml
Fresh cilantro, chopped	4 oz.	120 g
Fresh thyme	2 tsp.	10 ml
Fresh bread crumbs	4 oz.	120 g
Tabasco sauce	TT	TT
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Olive oil	2 oz.	60 ml
Chicken stock	1 qt.	1 lt

Continued

1. Trim the stem and barbs from the artichokes. Using a tablespoon, scoop out the choke from the center of each artichoke.
2. Cook the sausage meat, breaking it up into small pieces. Pour off the fat. Add the onions and garlic and sauté until tender.
3. Add the cumin, cilantro, thyme and bread crumbs. Season with Tabasco sauce, salt and pepper.
4. Stuff the artichokes with the sausage mixture.
5. Place the artichokes in a braising pan and drizzle with olive oil. Add the chicken stock.
6. Bring the stock to a boil. Cover and braise until the artichokes are tender, approximately 1 hour.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 420, **Total fat** 26 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 45 mg, **Sodium** 1270 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 29 g, **Protein** 18 g, **Vitamin C** 30%, **Calcium** 15%, **Iron** 20%

RECIPE 22.23

Mixed Bean Salad

Yield: 12 3-oz. (90-g) Servings — **Method**: Boiling

Green beans, cut in 1/2-in. (1.2-cm) pieces	4 oz.	120 g
White wine vinegar	2 oz.	60 ml
Olive oil	3 oz.	90 ml
Lemon juice	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Lemon peel, grated	1 tsp.	5 ml
Garlic cloves, crushed	2	2
White wine	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Dried red chile, chopped fine	1	1
Red kidney beans, soaked and cooked	8 oz.	250 g
Chickpeas, soaked and cooked	8 oz.	250 g
Lima or cannellini beans, soaked and cooked	8 oz.	250 g
Green onions, chopped	1 bunch	1 bunch
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Steam the green beans until done but still crisp, approximately 3–4 minutes.
2. To make the dressing, combine the white wine vinegar, olive oil, lemon juice, lemon peel, garlic, white wine and chile.
3. Mix together all the drained beans and peas, and pour the dressing over them. Add the green onions, season with salt and pepper and toss to combine. Marinate for several hours before serving.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (85-g) serving: **Calories** 150, **Total fat** 8 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 210 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 14 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Iron** 10%, **Claims**—low saturated fat; no cholesterol; good source of fiber

RECIPE 22.24

Baked Beans

Note: This dish appears in the Pork Chapter Opening photograph.

Yield: 1 1/2 qt. (1.5 lt) Method: Baking

Great Northern beans, soaked	1 lb.	450 g
Onion, small dice	4 oz.	120 g
Anaheim chile, small dice	1 oz.	30 g
Molasses	3 oz.	90 g
Brown sugar	3 oz.	90 g
Catsup	8 oz.	250 g
Prepared mustard	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Cider vinegar	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Worcestershire sauce	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Tabasco sauce	TT	TT
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Simmer the beans in water until almost tender, approximately 45 minutes. Drain well.
2. Combine the remaining ingredients, blending well.
3. Add the sauce to the beans, tossing to coat thoroughly. Adjust the seasonings.
4. Place the beans in a hotel pan or a 2-quart (2-liter) baking dish. Cover and bake in a 350°F (180°C) oven until the beans are completely tender, approximately 30–40 minutes.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (90-g) serving: **Calories** 120, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 490 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 26 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Vitamin C** 15%, **Claims**—fat free; good source of fiber

RECIPE 22.25

Fennel and Mushrooms À La Grecque

Yield: 18 3-oz. (90-g) Servings Method: Boiling

Mushrooms, small	1 lb.	500 g
Pearl onions, peeled	4 oz.	120 g
Olive oil	2 oz.	60 ml
White wine	4 oz.	120 ml
White stock	1 pt.	500 ml
Tomato concassée	12 oz.	360 g
Tomato paste	1 oz.	30 g
Lemon juice	1 oz.	30 ml
Coriander, ground	1 tsp.	5 ml
Bouquet garni:		
Carrot stick, 4 in. (10 cm)	1	1
Leek, split, 4-in. (10-cm) piece	1	1
Fresh thyme	1 sprig	1 sprig
Bay leaf	2	2

Continued

Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Fennel, batonnet	1 lb.	500 g

1. Wash the mushrooms and trim the stems.
2. Sauté the onions in the olive oil, browning lightly. Add the white wine, stock, tomato concassée, tomato paste, lemon juice, coriander and bouquet garni. Season to taste with salt and pepper and bring to a boil.
3. Add the fennel and mushrooms and simmer for 15 minutes.
4. Remove from the heat and allow to cool to room temperature. Remove the bouquet garni. Adjust the seasonings and refrigerate. Serve chilled.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (90-g) serving: **Calories** 60, **Total fat** 3.5 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 240 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 5 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Vitamin C** 15%, **Claims**—no saturated fat; no cholesterol

RECIPE 22.26

Turnip Purée

STANFORD COURT HOTEL, SAN FRANCISCO, CA

Yield: 8 oz. (250 g)

Russet potato, peeled, large dice	2 oz.	60 g
Turnip, peeled, large dice	6 oz.	180 g
Garlic, chopped	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Whole butter	1 oz.	30 g
Heavy cream	1 1/2 oz.	45 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Cook the potatoes and turnips separately in salted water until tender. Drain and purée in a food mill.
2. Combine the garlic, butter and cream and bring to a boil. Add to the potato and turnip mixture and season with salt and pepper.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 60, **Total fat** 5 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 330 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 3 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Vitamin A** 4%

RECIPE 22.27

Swiss Chard with Lemon and Pine Nuts

Yield: 8 3-oz. (90-g) Servings Method: Simmering

Swiss chard, trimmed, stems and leaves separated	2 lb.	1 kg
Water	1 pt.	500 ml
Lemon juice	2 oz.	60 ml
Extra virgin olive oil	2 oz.	60 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Pine nuts, toasted and chopped	2 oz.	60 g

1. Cut the chard into 1- to 2-inch (2.5- to 5-centimeter) strips on a diagonal.
2. Combine the chard, water and 1 ounce (30 grams) of lemon juice in a nonreactive pan. Simmer until tender, stirring frequently, approximately 10–15 minutes.
3. Drain. Toss with the remaining lemon juice and the olive oil. Season with salt and pepper and arrange on plates. Garnish with the pine nuts.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (90-g) serving: **Calories** 220, **Total fat** 12 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 1020 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 19 g, **Protein** 8 g, **Vitamin A** 130%, **Vitamin C** 130%, **Iron** 50%, **Claims**—no cholesterol; high fiber

RECIPE 22.28

Braised Red Cabbage with Apples and Wine

Yield: 16 4-oz. (120-g) Servings — Method: Braising

Red cabbage	3 lb.	1.4 kg
Bacon, medium dice	12 oz.	360 g
Onions, medium dice	8 oz.	250 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Red wine	8 oz.	250 ml
White stock	8 oz.	250 ml
Cinnamon sticks	2	2
Apples, tart, cored and diced	12 oz.	360 g
Brown sugar	1 oz.	30 g
Cider vinegar	2 oz.	60 ml

1. Shred the cabbage.
2. Render the bacon. Add the onions and sweat in the bacon fat until tender.
3. Add the cabbage and sauté for 5 minutes. Season with salt and pepper. Add the wine, stock and cinnamon sticks. Cover and braise until the cabbage is almost tender, approximately 20 minutes.
4. Add the apples, brown sugar and vinegar and mix well.
5. Cover and braise until the apples are tender, approximately 5 minutes.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 170, **Total fat** 11 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 20 mg, **Sodium** 540 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 11 g, **Protein** 8 g, **Vitamin C** 50%

RECIPE 22.29

Braised Romaine Lettuce

Yield: 12 Servings — Method: Braising

Romaine lettuce	3 heads	3 heads
Onion, small dice	8 oz.	250 g
Celery, small dice	8 oz.	250 g
Carrot, small dice	8 oz.	250 g
Bacon, small dice	8 oz.	250 g

Continued

Brown stock	24 oz.	700 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Trim the lettuce heads. Blanch them in salted boiling water and refresh.
2. Combine the onions, celery, carrots, bacon and brown stock in a sauce pot and simmer for 10 minutes.
3. Quarter the heads of romaine and trim off most of the core, leaving just enough to hold the leaves together.
4. Pour the brown stock mixture into a hotel pan and arrange the lettuce portions in the pan. Season with salt and pepper.
5. Cover the pan and braise in a 350°F (180°C) oven for approximately 1 hour. Serve each portion with vegetables, bacon and a portion of the cooking liquid.

Approximate values per 5-oz. (132-g) serving: **Calories** 140, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 3.5 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 340 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 6 g, **Protein** 7 g, **Vitamin A** 50%, **Vitamin C** 30%

RECIPE 22.30

Cucumber-Yogurt Salad

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

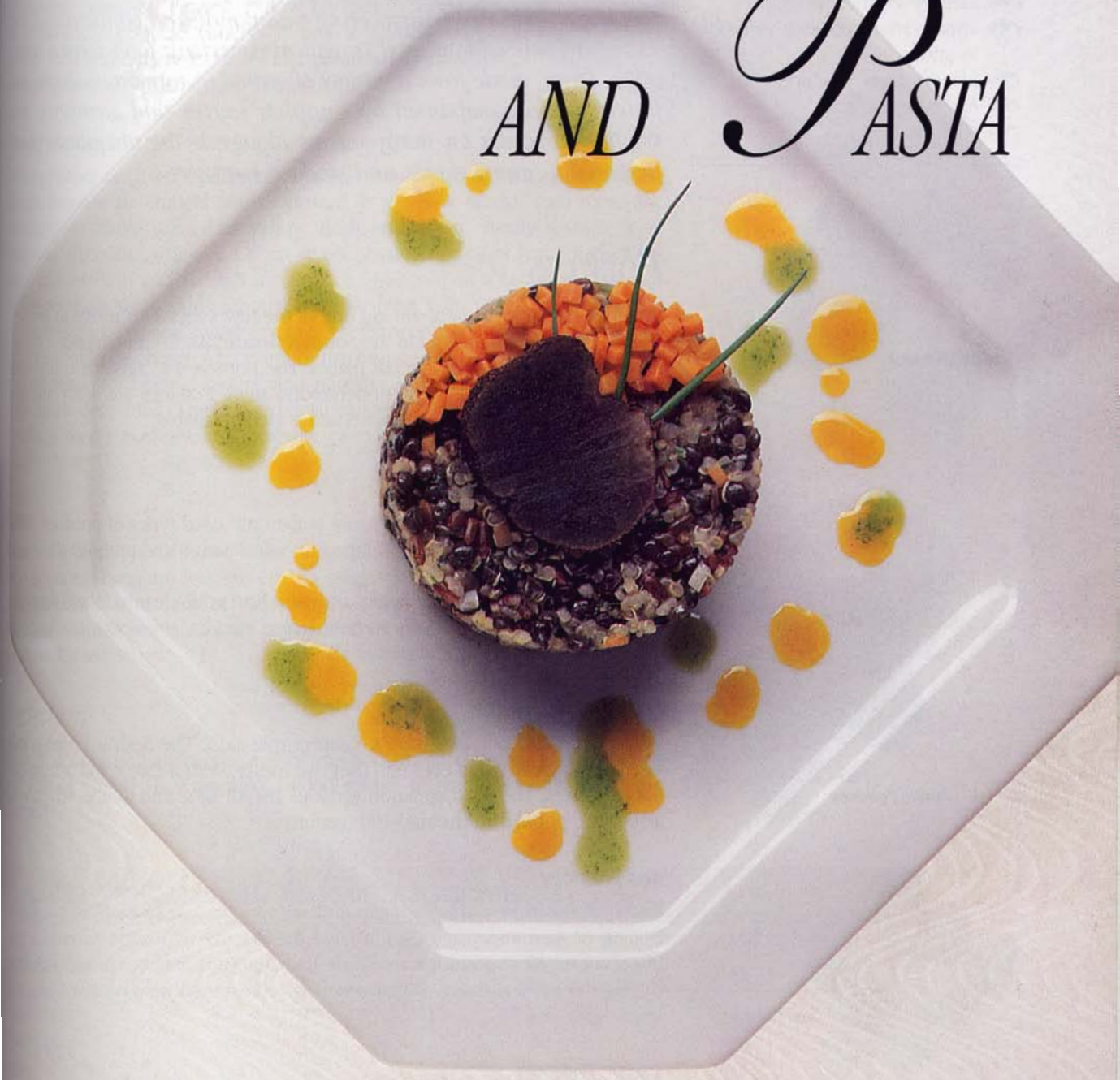
Plain yogurt	1 pt.	500 ml
Cucumber, peeled and grated	12 oz.	360 g
Cumin	1 tsp.	5 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Sugar	1/2 oz.	15 g
Lime juice	1/2 oz.	15 ml
Fresh cilantro, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Jalapeño, minced	1 tsp.	5 ml
Paprika	as needed	as needed

1. Stir together all the ingredients except the paprika. Chill for several hours before service.
2. Dust the top lightly with paprika at the time of service.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (85-g) serving: **Calories** 40, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 280 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 7 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Calcium** 10%, **Claims**—fat free, low calorie

CHAPTER 23

POTATOES, GRAINS AND PASTA



The Ritz Carlton, Chicago, IL
Executive Chef George Bumbaris

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- identify a variety of potatoes
- apply various cooking methods to potatoes
- identify a variety of grains
- apply various cooking methods to grains
- identify pasta products
- make fresh pasta
- cook pasta

Potatoes, grains (corn, rice, wheat and others) and pastas are collectively known as starches. Some of these foods are vegetables; others are grasses. Pastas, of course, are prepared products made from grains. Starches are, for the most part, staple foods: foods that define a cuisine and give it substance. All are high in starchy carbohydrates, low in fat and commonly used as part of a well-balanced meal.

Today's chefs are rediscovering traditional and ethnic dishes that rely on grains seldom used in typical American food service operations. Pasta, made from a variety of grains in numerous shapes and flavors and accompanied by countless sauces and garnishes, now regularly appears on many menus alongside the ubiquitous potato prepared in many classic and modern manners.

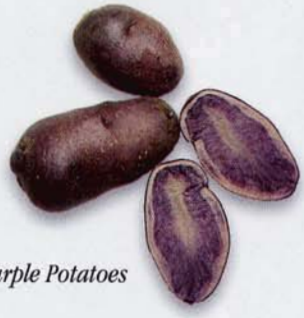
POTATOES

Potatoes (Fr. *pommes de terre*) are one of the few vegetables native to the New World, probably originating in the South American Andes. Botanically, potatoes are succulent, nonwoody annual plants. The portion we consume is the tuber, the swollen fleshy part of the underground stem. Potatoes are hardy and easy to grow, making them inexpensive and widely available.

Identifying Potatoes

Discussed here are some of the more commonly used types of potatoes. Other varieties are regularly being developed or rediscovered and tested in the marketplace.

Choose potatoes that are heavy and very firm with clean skin and few eyes. Avoid those with many eyes, sprouts, green streaks, soft spots, cracks or cut edges. Most varieties are available all year.



Purple Potatoes

Purple Potatoes

Purple (or blue) potatoes have a deep purple skin. The flesh is bright purple, becoming lighter when cooked. They are mealy, with a flavor and texture similar to russets. The most common varieties are All Blue and Caribe, which were also quite popular in the mid-19th century.

Red Potatoes

Red Potatoes

Red potatoes have a thin red skin and crisp, white, waxy flesh, best suited to boiling or steaming. They do not have the dry, mealy texture successful baking requires. **New potatoes** are small, immature red potatoes usually marketed during the early summer. When ordering red-skinned new potatoes, size A is larger than size B.

Russet Potatoes

Russet potatoes, commonly referred to as Idaho potatoes, are the standard baking potato. They are long with rough, reddish-brown skin and mealy flesh. Russets are excellent baked and are the best potatoes for frying. They tend to

fall apart when boiled. They are marketed in several size categories and should be purchased in the size most appropriate for their intended use.

Russet Potatoes

White Potatoes

White potatoes are available in round or long varieties. They have a thin, tender skin with a tender, waxy yellow or white flesh. The smaller ones are sometimes marketed as new potatoes (not to be confused with new red potatoes). Round white potatoes are also referred to as chef or all-purpose potatoes. Yukon Gold and White Rose are common varieties. Finnish Yellow (or Yellow Finn) is an increasingly popular variety; it has a golden skin, creamy flesh and buttery flavor. White potatoes are usually cooked with moist heat or used for sautéing.

White Potatoes

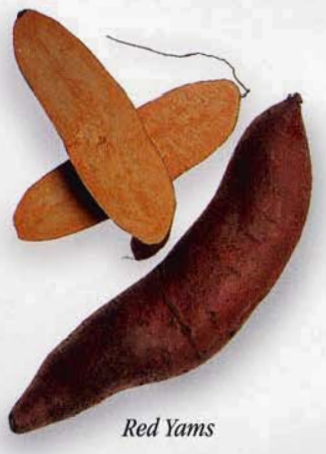
Sweet Potatoes

Sweet potatoes are from a different botanical family than ordinary potatoes, although they are also tubers that originated in the New World. Two types are commonly available. One has yellow flesh and a dry, mealy texture; it is known as a boniato, white or Cuban sweet potato. The other has a darker orange, moister flesh and is high in sugar; it is known as a red sweet potato. Both types have thick skins ranging in color from light tan to brownish red. (Sometimes dark-skinned sweet potatoes are erroneously labeled *yams*.) Sweet potatoes should be chosen according to the desired degree of sweetness. They are best suited for boiling, baking and puréeing, although the less sweet varieties can be deep-fried. The cooked flesh can also be used in breads, pies and puddings. Sweet potatoes are available canned, often in a spiced or sugary sauce.

Sweet Potatoes

Yams

Yams are a third type of tuber, botanically different from both sweet and common potatoes. Yams are less sweet than sweet potatoes, but they can be used interchangeably. The flesh of yams ranges from creamy white to deep red. Yams are Asian in origin and are now found in Africa, South America and the southern United States.



Red Yams

Nutrition

Potatoes contain a high percentage of easily digested complex carbohydrates and little or no fat. They are also a good source of many minerals and some vitamins.

TABLE 23.1 NUTRITIONAL VALUES OF SELECTED POTATOES

Per 4-oz. (112-g) serving, baked in skin	Kcal	Protein (g)	Carbohydrates (g)	Fiber (g)	Total Fat (g)	Niacin (g)	Phosphorous (mg)	Potassium (mg)
Russet potato	124	2.6	28.6	0.7	0.1	1.9	64.8	475.5
Sweet potato	93	1.6	21.7	2.4	<0.1	mq	mq	mq
Yam	132	1.7	31.2	mq	0.2	0.4	33	455

The Corinne T. Netzer Encyclopedia of Food Values 1992
mq = measurable quantity, but data is unavailable

Purchasing and Storing Potatoes

Mealy Versus Waxy

One of the most important considerations in selecting potatoes is choosing between the mealy and waxy varieties. You should understand the differences and purchase the type best suited to your needs.

Mealy potatoes (also known as starchy potatoes) have a high starch content and thick skin. They are best for baking and are often ordered from suppliers simply as "bakers." Their low sugar content also allows them to be deep-fried long enough to fully cook the interior without burning the exterior. Mealy potatoes tend to fall apart when boiled, making them a good choice for whipped or puréed potatoes.

Waxy potatoes have a low starch content and thin skin. They are best for boiling. They will not develop the desired fluffy texture when baked. They tend to become limp and soggy when deep-fried because of their high moisture content.

TABLE 23.2 COMPARISON OF MEALY AND WAXY POTATOES

	Content of:			Best to:			
	Starch	Moisture	Sugar	Bake	Boil	Sauté	Deep-fry
Mealy: russet, white rose, purple	high	low	low	✓			✓
Waxy: red, new (red), Finnish yellow	low	high	high		✓	✓	

Grading

Like other vegetables, potatoes are subject to the voluntary USDA grading system. Although U.S. Fancy is the highest grade, most potatoes sold on the wholesale market are U.S. No. 1. Potatoes sold on the retail market can also be graded as either U.S. Grade A or U.S. Grade B.

Purchasing

Potatoes are usually packed in 50-pound cartons. Counts vary depending on average potato size. For example, in a 100-count carton, each potato would weigh an average of 8 ounces. Eighty-, 90- and 100-count cartons are the most common. Generally, larger-sized potatoes (that is, smaller counts) are more expensive. Size does not affect quality, however, and selection should be based on intended use.

Storing

Temperatures between 50°F and 65°F (10°C–18°C) are best for storing potatoes. Do not store potatoes in the refrigerator. At temperatures below 40°F (4°C), potato starch turns to sugar, making the cooked product too sweet and increasing the risk that the potato will turn gray or streaky when cooked. Potatoes with a high sugar content also burn more easily when fried.

Potatoes should be stored in a dark room, as light promotes chlorophyll production, turning them green and bitter. Any green patches indicate the pos-

sible presence of solanine, a toxin harmful if eaten in large amounts, and should be peeled away. Solanine is also present in the eyes and sprouts, and they, too, should be removed and discarded before cooking.

Under proper conditions, fresh potatoes should last for two months. Do not wash potatoes until ready to use, as washing promotes spoilage.

Applying Various Cooking Methods

Potatoes have a relatively neutral flavor, making them a perfect accompaniment to many savory dishes. They can be prepared with almost any dry- or moist-heat cooking method: baking, sautéing, pan-frying, deep-frying, boiling or steaming. They can be combined with other ingredients in braises and stews. Potatoes are used in soups (vichyssoise), dumplings (gnocchi), breads, pancakes (latkes), puddings, salads and even vodka.

Many potato dishes, both classic and modern, employ more than one cooking method. For example, lorette potatoes require boiling and deep-frying; hash browns require parboiling, then sautéing. Even french fries are best when first blanched in hot oil.

Determining Doneness

Most potatoes are considered done when they are soft and tender or offer little resistance when pierced with a knife tip. Fried potatoes should have a crisp, golden-brown surface; the interior should be moist and tender.

Roasting and Baking

Potatoes are often roasted with meat or poultry, becoming coated with the fat and drippings released from the main item as it cooks. Either mealy or waxy potatoes, peeled or unpeeled, can be roasted successfully.

Mealy potatoes such as russets are ideal for baking. The skin is left intact, although it may be pierced with a fork to allow steam to escape. A true baked potato should not be wrapped in foil or cooked in a microwave; this changes the cooking method to steaming and prevents a crisp skin from forming. A properly baked potato should be white and fluffy, not yellowish or soggy. Once baked, potatoes can be eaten plain (or with butter, sour cream and other garnishes) or used in other recipes.

Procedure for Baking Potatoes

1. Scrub the potatoes well.
2. Using a fork, pierce the potato skins.
3. Rub the potatoes with oil and salt if desired. Do not wrap them in foil.
4. Bake the potatoes until done. A paring knife should penetrate them easily.

RECIPE 23.1

Baked Potatoes

Yield: 8 Servings

Russet potatoes	8	8
Vegetable oil	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Kosher salt	3 Tbsp.	45 ml

Continued

1. Scrub the potatoes well, but do not peel them. Pierce the skin of each potato to allow steam to escape.
2. Rub the potatoes with the oil, then sprinkle with kosher salt.
3. Place the potato on a rack over a sheet pan. Bake in a 400°F (200°C) oven until done, approximately 1 hour. The potatoes should yield to gentle pressure, and a paring knife inserted in the thickest part should meet little resistance.
4. Hold uncovered in a warm spot and serve within 1 hour.

Approximate values per 7.5-oz. (214-g) potato: **Calories** 270, **Total fat** 5 g, **Saturated fat** .5 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 2630 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 51 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin C** 45%, **Claims**–low saturated fat; no cholesterol; good source of fiber

Baking en Casserole

Many classic potato dishes require baking either raw or parboiled potatoes with sauce, cheese, meat or other seasonings in a baking dish or casserole. Well-known examples include scalloped potatoes, which are baked in béchamel sauce, and au gratin, which are topped with cheese and baked. These dishes usually develop a crisp, brown crust, which is part of their appeal.

The casserole should hold its shape when cut; the potatoes should be tender, and the sauce should be smooth, not grainy.

Potato casseroles can be fully baked, then held loosely covered in a steam table for service. Portions can be reheated or browned briefly under a broiler or salamander at service time.

Procedure for Baking Potatoes en Casserole

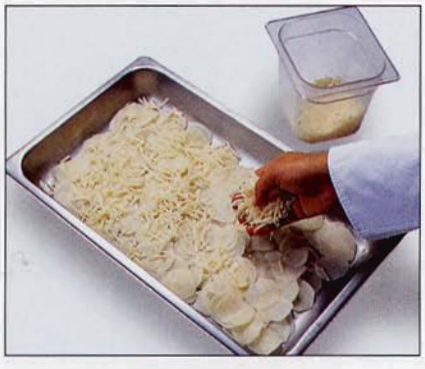
1. Prepare the potatoes by washing, peeling, slicing or partially cooking as desired or as directed in the recipe.
2. Add the potatoes to the baking pan in layers, alternating with the sauce, cream, cheese or other ingredients. Or combine the potatoes with the other ingredients and place in a buttered baking pan.
3. Bake the potatoes until done.

RECIPE 23.2

Gratin Dauphinoise

Yield: 4–5 lb. (1.8–2.2 kg)

Potatoes	3 lb.	1.3 kg
Whole butter	as needed	as needed
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
Nutmeg	1/4 tsp.	2 ml
Gruyère, grated	8 oz.	250 g
Half-and-half	24 oz.	700 ml
Egg yolks	3	3



1. Layering gratin potatoes.

1. Peel the potatoes and cut into very thin slices.
2. Place a single layer of potatoes in a well-buttered, full-sized hotel pan.
3. Season with salt, pepper and a small amount of nutmeg. Sprinkle on a thin layer of cheese.
4. Add another layer of potatoes, seasonings and cheese and repeat until all the potatoes and about three quarters of the cheese are used.

5. Heat the half-and-half to a simmer. Whisk the egg yolks together in a bowl, then gradually add the hot half-and-half.
6. Pour the cream-and-egg mixture over the potatoes. Top with the remaining cheese.
7. Bake uncovered at 350°F (180°C) until the potatoes are tender and golden brown, approximately 50–60 minutes.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (107-g) serving: **Calories** 160, **Total fat** 8 g, **Saturated fat** 5 g, **Cholesterol** 55 mg, **Sodium** 160 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 15 g, **Protein** 6 g, **Vitamin C** 15%, **Calcium** 15%

2. Finished gratin potatoes.

Sautéing and Pan-Frying

Waxy potatoes, such as red- and white-skinned varieties, are best for sautéing or pan-frying. Often they are first parboiled or even fully cooked—a convenient way to use leftover boiled potatoes. They are then cooked in fat following the general procedures for sautéing and pan-frying discussed in Chapter 9, Principles of Cooking.

The fat can be clarified butter, oil, bacon fat or lard, depending on the desired flavor of the finished dish. The fat must be hot before the potatoes are added so that they will develop a crust without absorbing too much fat. Sautéed potatoes should have a crisp, well-browned crust and tender interior. They should be neither soggy nor greasy.

Potatoes can be sautéed or pan-fried by two methods: tossing and still-frying. The **tossing method** is used to cook relatively small pieces of potatoes in a small amount of fat. The potatoes are tossed using the pan's sloped sides so that they brown evenly on all sides. The **still-frying method** is used to create a disc-shaped potato product. The shredded or sliced potatoes are added to the pan, usually covering its bottom, and allowed to cook without stirring or flipping until they are well browned on the first side. The entire mass is then turned and cooked on the second side. When the potatoes are done, they can be cut into wedges for service.

Procedure for Sautéing and Pan-Frying Potatoes

1. Wash, trim, peel, cut and/or cook the potatoes as desired or as directed in the recipe.
2. Heat the pan, add the fat and heat the fat. Add the potatoes to the hot fat. Do not overcrowd the pan. Use enough fat to prevent the potatoes from sticking to the pan. Depending on the recipe, use either the tossing method or still-frying method.
3. Add garnishes, seasonings and other ingredients as desired or as directed in the recipe.
4. Cook the potatoes until done.

RECIPE 23.3

Lyonnaise Potatoes

Yield: 8 4-oz. (120-g) Servings

Potatoes, waxy variety	2 lb.	1 kg
Onion, julienne	8 oz.	250 g

Continued

Clarified butter	4 oz.	120 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Partially cook the potatoes by baking, boiling or steaming. Allow to cool.
2. Peel and cut the potatoes into 1/4-inch (1/2-centimeter) thick slices.
3. Sauté the onions in half of the butter until tender. Remove the onions from the pan with a slotted spoon and set aside.
4. Add the remaining butter to the pan. Add the potatoes and sauté, tossing as needed, until well browned on all sides.
5. Return the onions to the pan and sauté to combine the flavors. Season to taste with salt and pepper.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 170, **Total fat** 12 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 30 mg, **Sodium** 650 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 16 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 10%

More Than a French Fry

Thanks to the genius of Carême, Escoffier and others, few vegetables have as extensive a classic repertoire as potatoes. Some of these dishes begin with the duchesse potatoes mixture; in this regard, duchesse potatoes can be considered the mother of many classic potato preparations. For example,

Duchesse + Tomato concassée = *Marquis*
Duchesse + Chopped truffles + Almond coating + Deep-frying = *Berny*
Duchesse + Pâte à choux = *Dauphine*
Dauphine + Grated Parmesan + Piped shape + Deep-frying = *Lorette*
Duchesse + Shaping + Breading + Deep-frying = *Croquettes*

Other classic potato preparations not based on duchesse potatoes include:

Anna—thin slices are arranged in several circular layers in a round pan coated with clarified butter; additional butter is brushed on, and the potatoes are baked until crisp, then cut into wedges for service.

Boulangère—onions and potatoes are sautéed in butter, then transferred to a baking pan or added to a partially cooked roast in a roasting pan; stock is added, and the potatoes are cooked uncovered until done.

Château—tournéed potatoes are sautéed in clarified butter until golden and soft.

Parisienne—small spheres are cut from raw, peeled potatoes with a parisienne scoop; they are seasoned and sautéed in clarified butter, then tossed with a meat glaze and garnished with chopped parsley.

Rösti—potatoes are shredded, seasoned and pan-fried in the shape of a pie, then cut into wedges for service.

Deep-Frying

Potato chips and french fries (Fr. *pomme frites*) are extremely popular in a variety of shapes, sizes and seasonings. Although a wide range of shapes, sizes and preseasoned frozen products are available, fresh fried potatoes can be a delicious, economical menu item.

Top-quality russet potatoes are recommended for deep-frying. The peel may be removed or left attached. If peeled, the potatoes should be soaked in clear, cold water until ready to cut and cook. This keeps them crisp and white by leaching some of the starch that might otherwise make the potatoes gummy or cause smaller cuts to stick together when cooked.

Deep-fried potatoes are usually blanched in oil ranging in temperature from 250°F to 300°F (120°C–150°C) until tender and translucent. They are then drained and held for service, at which time they are finished in hotter oil, usually at a temperature between 350°F and 375°F (180°C–190°C).

Deep-frying is also used to finish cooking several classic potato dishes such as croquettes and dauphine, in which fully cooked potatoes are puréed, seasoned, shaped and fried.

Deep-fried potatoes should be drained on absorbent paper briefly and served immediately.

In general, the procedures for deep-frying found in Chapter 21 also apply here. Specific recipes for several types of deep-fried potatoes are given at the end of this chapter.

Boiling

Waxy potatoes are best for all moist-heat cooking methods. Boiled potatoes (which are actually simmered) may be served as is or used in multistep preparations such as purées, salads, soups and baked casseroles. Potatoes are usually boiled in water, although stock may be used or milk added for flavor. Always begin cooking potatoes in cold liquid to ensure even cooking. Unlike other vegetables, potatoes should not be refreshed in cold water; it makes them soggy.

Procedure for Boiling Potatoes

1. Wash, peel or trim the potatoes as desired.
2. Cut the potatoes into uniform-sized pieces. The pieces should not be too small, or they will absorb a large amount of water as they cook, making the final product soggy.

3. Add the potatoes to enough cool liquid to cover them by several inches. Bring to a boil, reduce to a simmer and cook until done. If a slightly firm finished product is desired, remove and drain the potatoes when they are slightly underdone and allow carryover cooking to finish cooking them.
4. Drain the potatoes in a colander and serve or use for further preparation.

RECIPE 23.4

Duchesse Potatoes

Yield: 2 lb. (1 kg)

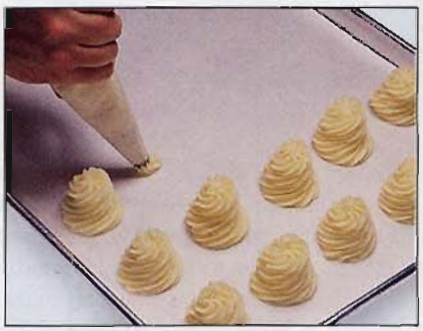
Potatoes, peeled and quartered	2 lb.	1 kg
Whole butter	1 oz.	30 g
Nutmeg	TT	TT
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Eggs	1	1
Egg yolks	2	2
Clarified butter	as needed	as needed

1. Boil the potatoes in salted water until tender. Drain and immediately turn out onto a sheet pan to allow the moisture to evaporate.
2. While still warm, press the potatoes through a ricer or food mill, or grind through a grinder's medium die. Blend in the butter and season to taste with nutmeg, salt and pepper.
3. Mix in the eggs and egg yolks, blending well.
4. Transfer the duchesse mixture to a piping bag fitted with a large star tip. Pipe single portion-sized spirals onto a parchment-lined sheet pan. Brush with clarified butter and bake at 375°F (190°C) until the edges are golden brown, approximately 8–10 minutes. Serve immediately.

Usage: Duchesse potatoes are often used to decorate platters used for buffets, tableside preparations or to present chateaubriand. To create borders and garnishes, the standard mixture for duchesse potatoes is forced through a piping bag while still very hot and relatively soft.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (94-g) serving: **Calories** 120, **Total fat** 3.5 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 65 mg, **Sodium** 250 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 18 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Vitamin C** 20%

1. Passing boiled potatoes through a food mill.



2. Piping duchesse potatoes.

3. The finished potatoes.

GRAINS

Botanically, grains are grasses that bear edible seeds. Corn, rice and wheat are the most significant. Both the fruit (that is, the seed or kernel) and the plant are called a grain.

Most grain kernels are protected by a **hull** or husk. All kernels are composed of three distinct parts: the **bran**, **endosperm** and **germ**. See Figure 23.1. The bran is the tough outer layer covering the endosperm. Bran is a good source of fiber and B vitamins. The endosperm is the largest part of the kernel and is a source of protein and carbohydrates (starch). It is the part used primarily in milled products such as flour. The germ is the smallest portion of the grain and is the only part that contains fat. It is also rich in thiamin. The bran, endosperm and germ can be separated by milling.

Identifying Grains

This section presents information on corn, rice and wheat as well as several minor grains that are nutritionally significant and gaining popularity.

Some products are available in a stone-ground form. This means that the grains were ground with a stone mill rather than by the steel blades typically used for **cracking**, **grinding**, **hulling** and **pearling**. Stone grinders are gentler and more precise, so they are less likely to overgrind the grain. Stone-ground products will always be labeled as such and are usually more expensive than steel-ground ones.

Cracking—*a milling process in which grains are broken open.*

Grinding—*a milling process in which grains are reduced to a powder; the powder can be of differing degrees of fineness or coarseness.*

Hulling—*a milling process in which the hull is removed from grains.*

Pearling—*a milling process in which all or part of the hull, bran and germ are removed from grains.*

Corn

Corn (Sp. *maíz*; It. *granturco*) is the only grain that is also eaten fresh as a vegetable. (Fresh corn is discussed in Chapter 22, Vegetables.) Its use as a dried grain dates back several thousand years in Central America and long preceded its use as a vegetable.

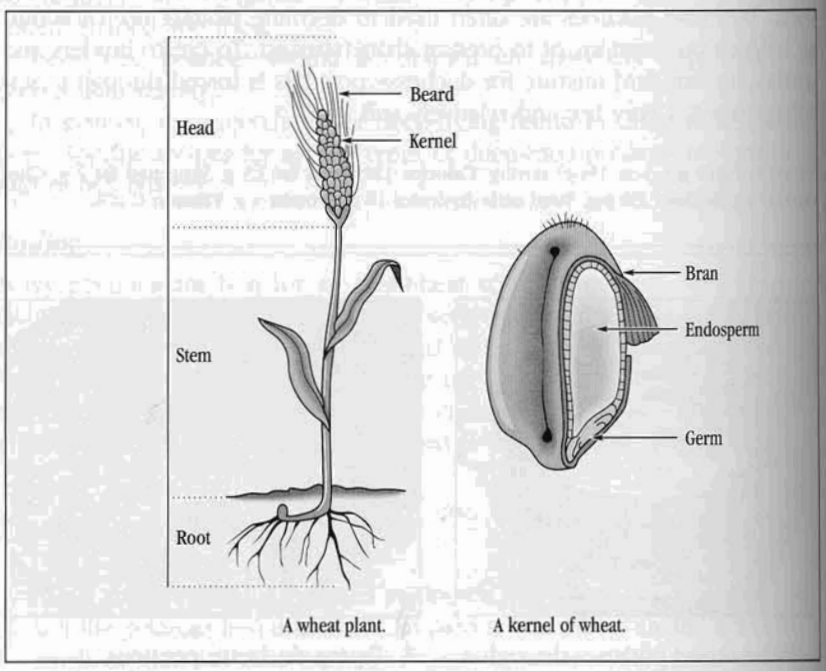


FIGURE 23.1 *Wheat*

Cornmeal

Cornmeal is made by drying and grinding a special type of corn known as dent, which may be yellow, white or blue. Cornmeal is most often used in breads, as a coating for fried foods or cooked as polenta or mush. Products made with cornmeal have a gritty texture and a sweet but starchy flavor.

Cornmeal

Hominy

Hominy, also known as posole or samp, is dried corn that has been soaked in hydrated lime or lye. This causes the kernels to swell, loosening the hulls. The hulls and germs are removed and the kernels dried. These white or yellow kernels resemble popcorn, but with a soft, chewy texture and smoky-sour flavor. Hominy is available dried or cooked and canned. It may be served as a side dish or used in stews or soups. **Masa harina**, a finely ground flour made from hominy, is used for making breads, tortillas, tamales and other Mexican and southwestern dishes.

Hominy

Grits

Grits are traditionally made by grinding dried hominy. These tiny white granules may be used in baked dishes but are most often served as a hot breakfast cereal, usually topped with butter or cheese. Quick-cooking and instant grits are available.

Rice

Rice (Fr. *riz*; It. *riso*; Sp. *arroz*) is the starchy seed of a semiaquatic grass. Probably originating on the Indian subcontinent or in Southeast Asia, rice is used as a staple by more than half the world's population.

Rice can be incorporated into almost any cuisine, from Asian to Spanish to classic French. Its flavor adapts to the foods and seasonings with which the rice is cooked or served. Its texture adds an appealing chewiness to meat and poultry dishes, salads, breads and puddings. Rice is not limited to a side dish, but may be used in stews or curries, for stuffing vegetables or game birds, in puddings, salads, beverages (such as *horchata*) and breads.

Rice is divided into three types based on seed size: **long-grain**, **medium-grain** and **short-grain**. Long-grain rice is the most versatile and popular worldwide. The grains remain firm, fluffy and separate when cooked. (Long-grain rice can, however, become sticky if overcooked or stirred frequently during cooking.) Short-grain rice has more starch and becomes quite tender and sticky when cooked. Italian risotto, Japanese zushi and Spanish paella are all traditionally made with short-grain rice. The appearance and starch content of medium-grain rice falls somewhere in between. Medium-grain rice becomes sticky when cool, so it is best eaten freshly made and piping hot.

Long-grain, medium-grain and short-grain rice are available in different processed forms. All rice is originally brown. The grains can be left whole, with the bran attached, for **brown rice**. Or they can be pearled for the more familiar polished **white rice**. Both brown rice and white rice can be processed into converted rice and instant rice.

Converted rice is parboiled to remove the surface starch. This procedure also forces nutrients from the bran into the grain's endosperm. Therefore, converted rice retains more nutrients than regular milled white rice, although the flavor is the same. Converted rice is neither precooked nor instant; in fact, it cooks more slowly than regular milled white rice.

Instant or **quick-cooking rice** is widely available and useful if time is a concern. Instant rice is created by fully cooking then flash-freezing milled rice. Unfortunately, this processing removes some of the nutrients and flavor.

Converted Rice

Arborio Rice

Basmati Rice

Wild Rice

Wild Pecan Rice

Arborio Rice

Arborio is a round, short-grain rice used primarily in Italian dishes such as risotto. It is very sticky, with a white color and mild flavor.

Basmati Rice

Basmati is one of the finest long-grain rices in the world. It grows in the Himalayan foothills and is preferred in Indian cuisine. It is highly aromatic, with a sweet, delicate flavor and a creamy yellow color. Basmati rice is usually aged to improve its aromatic qualities and should be washed well before cooking.

Brown Rice

Brown rice is the whole natural grain of rice. Only the husk has been removed. Brown rice has a nutty flavor; its chewy texture is caused by the high-fiber bran. Brown rice absorbs more water and takes longer to cook than white rice.

Brown Rice

Wild Rice

Wild rice is prepared in the same manner as traditional rice, although it is actually the seed of an unrelated reedlike aquatic plant. Wild rice has long, slender grains with a dark brown to black color. It has a nuttier flavor and chewier texture than traditional rice. Three grades are available: giant (the best quality, with very long grains); fancy (a medium-sized grain, suitable for most purposes); and select (a short grain, suitable for soups, pancakes or baked goods). Cultivated in California, Idaho and Washington, it is generally served with game, used as a stuffing for poultry or combined with regular rice for a side dish. Wild rice is expensive, but small quantities are usually sufficient.

Wild Pecan Rice

Wild pecan rice is neither wild nor made with pecans. It is a unique long-grain rice grown only in the bayou country of southern Louisiana. Wild pecan rice has a nutty flavor and exceptionally rich aroma.

Guidelines for Cooking Rice

Rice may be rinsed before cooking to remove dirt and debris, but doing so also removes some nutrients. It is not necessary to rinse most American-grown rice as it is generally clean and free of insects. Rice may also be soaked before cooking. Soaking softens the grains, removes some starch and speeds cooking.

TABLE 23.3 GUIDELINES FOR COOKING RICE

Type of Rice	Ratio Rice : Water (by Volume)	Preparation	Cooking Time (simmering)	Yield from 1 Cup Raw Rice
Arborio	1 : 2.5–3	Do not rinse or soak	15–20 min.	2.5–3 c.
Basmati	1 : 1.75	Rinse well; soak	15 min.	3 c.
Brown, long-grain	1 : 2.5	Do not rinse; can soak	45–50 min.	3–4 c.
Converted	1 : 2.5	Do not rinse	20–25 min.	3–4 c.
White, long-grain (regular milled)	1 : 2	Do not rinse	15 min.	3 c.
Wild	1 : 3	Rinse	35–60 min., depending on grade	3–4 c.

The standard ratio for cooking rice is 2 parts liquid to 1 part rice. The actual ratio varies, however, depending on the type of rice. Guidelines for cooking rice are found in Table 23.3.

Once cooked, rice is highly perishable. Because of its neutral pH and high protein content, cooked rice is a potentially hazardous food. To avoid the risk of food-borne illnesses, be sure to store cooked rice out of the temperature danger zone.

Wheat

Wheat (Fr. *blé*) is most often milled into the wide range of flours discussed in Chapter 29, Principles of the Bakeshop. But wheat and products derived from it are also used as starchy side dishes or ingredients in soups, salads, ground meat dishes and breads. These products include cracked wheat, bulgur and couscous. When cooked, they are slightly chewy with a mild flavor. All should be fluffy; none should be soggy or sticky.

Wheat germ and *wheat bran* are widely available and highly touted for their nutritional values. Bran and germ are not generally used plain, but may be added to bread or other cooked dishes.

Cracked Wheat

Cracked wheat is the whole wheat kernel (known as a **berry**) broken into varying degrees of coarseness. It is not precooked, and the kernel's white interior should be visible. The bran and germ are still intact, so cracked wheat has a great deal of fiber but a short shelf life. Whole wheat berries must be soaked for several hours before cooking. Cracked wheat can be fully cooked by long, gentle simmering.

Bulgur

Bulgur is a wheat berry that has had the bran removed; it is then steam-cooked, dried and ground into varying degrees of coarseness. Bulgur has a nutlike flavor and texture; it is a uniform golden-brown color (uncooked cracked wheat is not) and requires less cooking time than cracked wheat. Generally, cracked wheat and bulgur cannot be substituted for one another in recipes.

Bulgur needs only to be soaked in water, then drained, for use in salads, or briefly cooked when used in stews or pilafs. Bulgur is good with grilled meats and as an alternative to rice in stuffings and other dishes. The fine grind is most often used in packaged mixes such as tabouli; the medium grind is most often available in bulk.

Couscous

Couscous is made by removing the bran and germ from **durum wheat** berries. The endosperm is then steamed, pressed to form tiny pellets and dried. Couscous is available in varying degrees of coarseness; medium-fine is the most popular. Couscous is prepared by steaming over water or stock in a pot called a couscousier. Couscous, traditionally served with North African stews, can be used or served like rice.

Durum wheat—*a species of very hard wheat with a particularly high amount of protein; it is used to make couscous or milled into semolina, which is used for making pasta.*

Other Grains

Barley

Barley is one of the oldest culinary grains, used by humans since prehistoric times. Barley is extremely hardy, growing in climates from the tropics to the near-Arctic. Although much of the barley crop is used to make beer or feed

animals, some does find its way into soups, stews and stuffings. The most common type is pearled to produce a small, round white nugget of endosperm. It has a sweet, earthy flavor similar to oats, and goes well with onions, garlic and strong herbs. Barley's texture ranges from chewy to soft, depending on the amount of water in which it is cooked. Its starchiness can be used to thicken soups or stews.

Buckwheat/Kasha

Buckwheat/Kasha

Buckwheat is not a type of wheat; it is not even a grain. Rather, it is the fruit of a plant distantly related to rhubarb. Buckwheat is included here, however, because it is prepared and served in the same manner as grains.

The whole buckwheat kernel is known as a **groat**. The product most often sold as buckwheat is actually kasha, which is a hulled, roasted buckwheat groat. Kasha is reddish brown with a strong, nutty, almost scorched flavor. It is available whole or ground to varying degrees of coarseness. Whole kasha remains in separate grains after cooking; the finer grinds become rather sticky. Kasha can be served as a side dish, usually combined with pasta or vegetables, or it can be chilled and used in salads.

Raw buckwheat groats are ground into flour typically used in pasta, blini and other pancakes. Buckwheat flour contains no gluten-forming proteins, and it tends to remain grainy, with a sandy texture. Therefore, it should not be substituted for all the white or whole wheat flour in breads or baked goods.

Oats

Oats

After rice, oats are probably the most widely accepted whole-grain product in the American diet. Oats are consumed daily as a hot breakfast cereal (oatmeal) and are used in breads, muffins, cookies and other baked goods.

An oat groat is the whole oat kernel with only the husk removed. It contains both the bran and germ. *Steel-cut oats*, sometimes known as Irish oats, are groats that are toasted then cut into small pieces with steel blades. *Rolled oats*, marketed as "old-fashioned oats," are groats that have been steamed, then rolled into flat flakes. *Quick-cooking oats* are simply rolled oats cut into smaller pieces to reduce cooking time. *Instant oats* are partially cooked and dried before rolling so that they need only to be rehydrated in boiling water. Several flavored versions are also marketed as breakfast cereal. Rolled oats and quick-cooking oats can be used interchangeably, but instant oats should not be substituted in most recipes.

Oat bran is the outer covering of a hulled oat. It is available as a separate product, although rolled and cut oats do contain some oat bran.

The term *oatmeal* is commonly used to refer to both processed groats and the cooked porridge made from them. The processed groats known as oatmeal are a gray-white color with a starchy texture and sweet flavor. They cook into the soft, thick porridge with a robust flavor called oatmeal.

Nutrition

Grains are an excellent source of vitamins, minerals, proteins and fiber. The amount of milling or refining and the method of preparation affects their nutritional values, however. Unrefined and less-refined grains are excellent sources of dietary fiber. Rice is also quite nutritious: It is low in sodium and calories and contains all the essential amino acids. Some grains, especially white rice and oats, are usually enriched with calcium, iron and B vitamins.

TABLE 23.4 NUTRITIONAL VALUES OF SELECTED GRAINS

Per 4-oz. (112-g serving), cooked	Kcal	Protein (g)	Carbohydrates (g)	Fiber (g)	Total Fat (g)	Niacin (g)	Phosphorous (mg)	Potassium (mg)
Barley, pearled	139	2.6	32	0.3	0.5	1.6	42.5	72.5
Bulgur	94	3.5	21.1	0.4	0.3	0.9	36.5	62
Grits	68	1.6	14.7	0.1	0.2	0.8	15	27
Kasha	104	3.8	22.6	0.6	0.7	1.2	80	95
Oats	45	3.6	13	0.4	1	0.2	89	66
Rice, brown, long-grain	126	2.9	26	1.9	1	1.5	81	42
Rice, converted	90	1.5	21.1	mq	0.7	mq	mq	mq
Rice, white, long-grain	146	3.1	31.6	0.1	0.3	1.5	47	40
Wheat germ (toasted)	432	33.2	56.4	14.8	12	6.4	1280	1076

The Corinne T. Netzer Encyclopedia of Food Values 1992
mq = measurable quantity, but data is unavailable

Purchasing and Storing Grains

Purchasing

When buying grains, look for fresh, plump ones with a bright, even color. Fresh grains should not be shriveled or crumbly; there should be no sour or musty odors.

Grains are sold by weight. They come in bags or boxes ranging from 1 to 100 pounds. Ten-, 25- and 50-pound units are usually available.

Storing

All grains should be stored in air-tight containers placed in a dark, cool, dry place. Air-tight containers prevent dust and insects from entering. Air-tight containers and darkness also reduce nutrient loss caused by oxidation or light. Coolness inhibits insect infestation; dryness prevents mold.

Vacuum-sealed packages will last for extended periods. Whole grains, which contain the oily germ, should be refrigerated to prevent rancidity.

Applying Various Cooking Methods

Three basic cooking methods are used to prepare grains: simmering, risotto and pilaf. Unlike simmered grains, those cooked by either the risotto or pilaf method are first coated with hot fat. The primary distinction between the pilaf and risotto methods is the manner in which the liquid is then added to the grains. When grains are used in puddings, breads, stuffings and baked casseroles, they are almost always first fully cooked by one of these methods.

Determining Doneness

Most grains should be cooked until tender, although some recipes do require a chewier or more al dente product. Doneness can usually be determined by cooking time and the amount of liquid remaining in the pan. Some grains, such as wild rice, are fully cooked when they puff open.

In general, grains will be fully cooked when almost all the cooking liquid is absorbed. This is indicated by the appearance of tunnel-like holes between

the grains. Grains can be cooked until almost all the liquid is absorbed, then removed from the heat and left to stand, covered, for 5–10 minutes. This allows the cooked grains to absorb the remaining moisture without burning.

Simmering

The most commonly used method for preparing grains is simmering. To do so, simply stir the grains into a measured amount of boiling salted water in a saucepan on the stove top. When the liquid returns to a boil, lower the heat, cover, and simmer until the liquid is absorbed and the grains are tender. The grains are not stirred during cooking.

The grains can be flavored by using stock as the cooking liquid. Herbs and spices can also be added.

PROCEDURE FOR SIMMERING GRAINS

1. Bring the cooking liquid to a boil.
2. Stir in the grains. Add herbs or spices as desired or as directed in the recipe.
3. Return the mixture to a boil, cover and reduce to a simmer.
4. Simmer the grains until tender and most of the liquid is absorbed.
5. Remove the grains from the heat.
6. Drain if appropriate or keep covered and allow the excess moisture to evaporate, approximately 5 minutes. Fluff the grains with a fork before service.

RECIPE 23.5

BASIC SIMMERED RICE

Yield: 1 1/2 pt. (750 ml)

Water	1 pt.	500 ml
Salt	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
White rice	1 c.	250 ml

1. Bring the water and salt to a boil in a heavy saucepan. Slowly add the rice.
2. Cover the pan and reduce the heat so that the liquid simmers gently. Cook until the rice is tender and the water is absorbed, approximately 15–20 minutes.
3. Remove from the heat and transfer to a hotel pan. Do not cover. Allow any excess moisture to evaporate for approximately 5 minutes.
4. Fluff the rice and serve, or refrigerate for use in another recipe.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (119-g) serving: **Calories** 150, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 34 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Iron** 8%, **Claims**—fat free; no sodium; no sugar

Risotto Method

Risotto is a classic Northern Italian rice dish in which the grains remain firm but merge with the cooking liquid to become a creamy, almost puddinglike dish. True risotto is made with a short-grain starchy rice such as Arborio, but the risotto method can also be used to cook other grains such as barley and oats.

The grains are not rinsed before cooking, as this removes the starches needed to achieve the desired consistency. The grains are coated, but not cooked, in a hot fat such as butter or oil. A hot liquid is then gradually added

to the grains so that the mixture is kept at a constant simmer. The cooking liquid should be a rich, flavorful stock. Unlike simmering and the pilaf method, the risotto method requires frequent, sometimes constant, stirring.

When finished, the grains should be creamy and tender, but still al dente in the center. Grated cheese, heavy cream, cooked meat, poultry, fish, shellfish, herbs and vegetables can be added to create a flavorful side dish or a complete meal.

Procedure for Preparing Grains by the Risotto Method

1. Bring the cooking liquid to a simmer.
2. Heat the fat in a heavy saucepan over moderate heat. Add any onions, garlic or other flavoring ingredients and sauté for 1–2 minutes without browning.
3. Add the grains to the saucepan. Stir well to make sure the grains are well coated with fat. Do not allow the grains to brown.
4. Add any wine and cook until it is fully absorbed.
5. Begin to add the simmering stock 4 ounces (120 milliliters) at a time, stirring frequently. Wait until each portion of cooking liquid is almost fully absorbed before adding the next.
6. Test for doneness after the grains have cooked for approximately 18–20 minutes.
7. Remove the saucepan from the heat and stir in any butter, grated cheese, herbs or other flavoring ingredients as directed. Serve immediately.

RECIPE 23.6

Risotto Milanese

Yield: 24 4-oz. (120-g) Servings

Chicken stock	2 1/2 qt.	2.5 lt
Whole butter	4 oz.	120 g
Onions, minced	5 oz.	150 g
Arborio rice	1 lb. 8 oz.	700 g
Dry white wine	8 oz.	250 ml
Saffron threads, crushed	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Parmesan, grated	4 oz.	120 g

1. Bring the chicken stock to a simmer.
2. Heat 3 ounces (90 grams) of the butter in a large, heavy saucepan. Add the onion and sauté without browning until translucent.
3. Add the rice to the onion and butter. Stir well to coat the grains with butter but do not allow the rice to brown. Add the wine and stir until it is completely absorbed.
4. Add the saffron. Add the simmering stock, 4 ounces (120 milliliters) at a time, stirring frequently. Wait until the stock is absorbed before adding the next 4-ounce (120-milliliter) portion.
5. After approximately 18–20 minutes, all the stock should be incorporated and the rice should be tender. Remove from the heat and stir in the remaining 1 ounce (30 grams) of butter and the grated cheese. Serve immediately.

Continued

1. Sautéing the rice and onions in butter.

2. Adding the stock gradually while stirring frequently.

3. Stirring in the butter and grated cheese.

VARIATIONS: Risotto with Radicchio (*al Radicchio*)—Omit the saffron and Parmesan. Just before the risotto is fully cooked, stir in 4 ounces (120 milliliters) heavy cream and 3 ounces (90 grams) finely chopped radicchio leaves.

Risotto with Four Cheeses (*al Quattro Formaggi*)—Omit the saffron. When the risotto is fully cooked, remove from the heat and stir in 2 ounces (60 grams) each of grated Parmesan, gorgonzola, fontina and mozzarella. Garnish with toasted pine nuts and chopped parsley.

Risotto with Smoked Salmon (*al Salmone Affumicato*)—Omit the butter, saffron and Parmesan. Sauté the onion in 3 ounces (90 milliliters) of corn or safflower oil instead of butter. When the risotto is fully cooked, remove from the heat and stir in 8 ounces (240 milliliters) half-and-half, 3 ounces (90 milliliters) fresh lemon juice and 8–10 ounces (240–300 grams) good-quality smoked salmon. Garnish with chopped fresh parsley and dill. Serve with lemon wedges.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 110, **Total fat** 6 g, **Saturated fat** 3.5 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 470 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 9 g, **Protein** 5 g

Pilaf Method

With the pilaf method, the raw grains are lightly sautéed in oil or butter, usually with onions or seasonings for additional flavor. Hot liquid, often a stock, is then added. The pan is covered, and the mixture left to simmer until the liquid is absorbed.

PROCEDURE FOR PREPARING GRAINS BY THE PILAF METHOD

1. Bring the cooking liquid (either water or stock) to a boil.
2. Heat the fat in a heavy saucepan over moderate heat. Add any onions, garlic or other flavorings and sauté for 1–2 minutes without browning.
3. Add the grains to the saucepan. Stir well to make sure the grains are well coated with fat. Do not allow the grains to brown.
4. All at once, add the hot cooking liquid to the sautéed grains.
5. Return the liquid to a boil, reduce to a simmer and cover.
6. Allow the mixture to simmer, either in the oven or on the stove top, until the liquid is absorbed.

1. Sautéing the bulgur in butter.

2. Adding the hot stock to the bulgur.

RECIPE 23.7

BULGUR PILAF

Yield: 8 4-oz. (120-g) Servings

Whole butter	2 oz.	60 g
Onions, fine dice	4 oz.	120 g
Bulgur	10 oz.	300 g
Bay leaf	1	1
Chicken stock, hot	1 qt.	1 lt
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Melt the butter in a large, heavy saucepan over moderate heat. Add the onions and cook until translucent.
2. Add the bulgur and bay leaf. Sauté until the grains are well coated with butter.
3. Add the hot stock and season to taste with salt and pepper. Reduce the heat until the liquid barely simmers.

4. Cover and continue cooking until all the liquid is absorbed and the grains are tender, approximately 18–20 minutes.

5. Fluff with a fork and adjust the seasonings before service.

VARIATION: Barley pilaf—Substitute 2 cups of pearled barley for the bulgur. Cooking time may increase by 10–15 minutes.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 110, **Total fat** 7 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 470 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 9 g, **Protein** 4 g

3. Fluffing the finished bulgur.

PASTA

Pasta is made from an unleavened dough of wheat flour mixed with a liquid. The liquid is usually egg and/or water. The flour can be from almost any grain: wheat, buckwheat, rice or a combination of grains. The dough can be colored and flavored with puréed vegetables, herbs or other ingredients, and it can be cut or **extruded** into a wide variety of shapes and sizes.

Pasta can be cooked fresh while the dough is still moist and pliable, or the dough can be allowed to dry completely before cooking. Pasta can be filled or sauced in an endless variety of ways. It can stand alone or be used in salads, desserts, soups or casseroles.

Pasta is widely used in the cuisines of Asia, North America and Europe. In Italy, pasta dishes are usually served as a separate course, referred to as the *minestre*; in other European countries, Asia and the United States, pasta dishes may be served as an appetizer, entrée or side dish.

Extrusion—*the process of forcing pasta dough through perforated plates to create various shapes; pasta dough that is not extruded must be rolled and cut.*

Identifying Pastas

The better-known pastas are based on the Italian tradition of kneading wheat flour with water and eggs to form a smooth, resilient dough. This dough is rolled very thin and cut into various shapes before being boiled in water or dried for longer storage.

Macaroni—*any dried pasta made with wheat flour and water; only in America does the term refer to elbow-shaped tubes.*

THE MACARONI MYTH

The popular myth holds that noodles were first invented in China and discovered there by the Venetian explorer Marco Polo during the 13th century. He introduced the food to Italy and from there the rest of Europe. Although there is little doubt that the Chinese were making noodles by the 1st century A.D., it is now equally clear that they were not alone.

Middle Eastern and Italian cooks were preparing macaroni long before Marco Polo's adventures. A clear reference to boiled noodles appears in the *Jerusalem Talmud* of the 5th century A.D. There, rabbis debate whether noodles violate Jewish dietary laws (they do, but only during Passover). Tenth-century Arabic writings refer to dried noodles purchased from vendors. Literary references establish that dishes called lasagna, macaroni and ravioli were all well known (and costly) in Italy by the mid-13th century.

Pasta's current popularity dates from the 18th century, when mass production by machine began in Naples, Italy. English gentlemen on their Grand Tours of the Continent developed a fondness for pasta; the word *macaroni* became a synonym for a dandy or a vain young man. Macaroni arrived in America with English colonists, who preferred it with cream sauce and cheese or in a sweet custard. Domestic factories soon opened, and by the Civil War (1861–1865), macaroni was available to the working class. Pasta became a staple of the American middle-class diet following the wave of Italian immigrants in the late 19th century.

During the 1980s pasta became ubiquitous. Restaurants began serving it in ways previously unimagined. Corner grocery stores and local supermarkets began offering at least a dozen different shapes, often fresh and sometimes flavored. Dedicated cooks began to make pasta from scratch, though they sometimes tossed it with bottled sauce. Many also became interested in Asian noodles. Chinese, Japanese, Korean and Thai restaurants expanded their menu offerings to include traditional noodle dishes eagerly ordered by curious consumers. Pasta's popularity continues to grow as chefs discover the versatility of this inexpensive, nutritious food.

Commercially prepared dried pasta products are usually made with semolina flour. Semolina flour, ground from hard durum wheat and available from specialty purveyors, has a rich cream color and produces a very smooth, durable dough. Semolina dough requires a great deal of kneading, however, and bread flour is an acceptable substitute when preparing fresh pasta by hand.

Asian pasta, generally known as noodles, is made from wheat, rice, bean or buckwheat flour. It is available fresh or dried from commercial purveyors and at specialty markets.

Italian-Style Pasta

Although all Italian-style pasta is made from the same type of dough, the finest commercial pastas are those made with pure semolina flour, which gives the dough a rich, yellow color. Gray or streaked dough probably contains softer flours. Dried pasta should be very hard and break with a clean snap. The surface should be lightly pitted or dull. (A smooth or glossy surface will not hold or absorb sauces as well.)

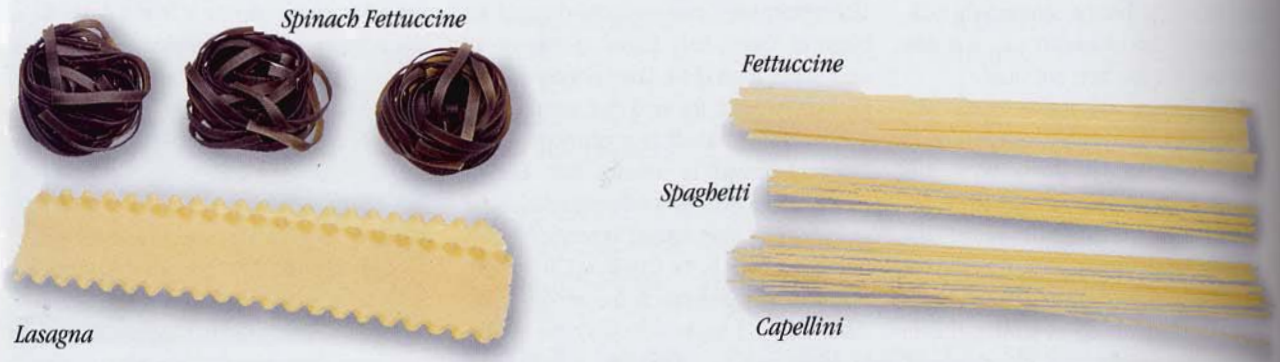
Dried pasta, both domestic and imported, is available in a wide range of flavors and shapes. In addition to the traditional white (plain), green (spinach) and red (tomato) pastas, manufacturers are now offering flavor combinations such as lemon–peppercorn, whole wheat–basil, jalapeo–black bean and carrot–ginger. Small pieces of herbs or other flavorings are often visible in these products.

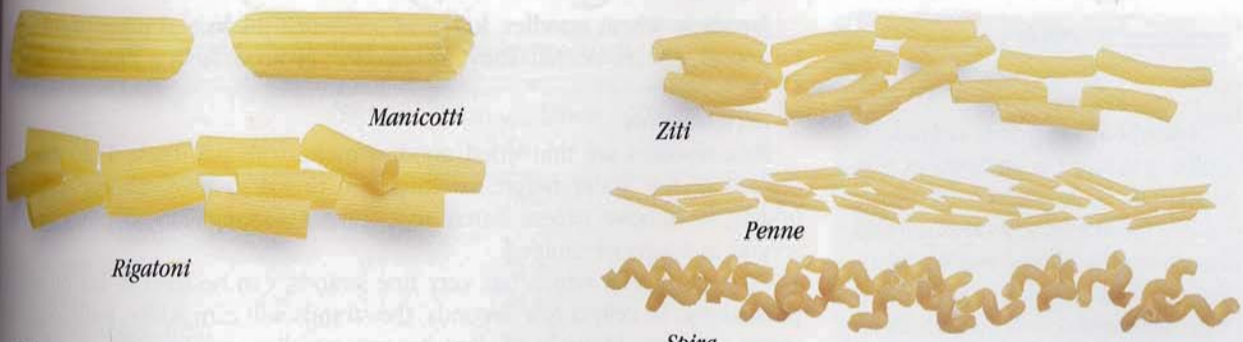
There are hundreds of recognized shapes of pasta, but only two or three dozen are generally available in the United States. When experimenting with unusual flavors and shapes, be sure to consider the taste and appearance of the final dish after the sauce and any garnishes are added.

Italian-style pasta can be divided into three groups based on the shape of the final product: ribbons, tubes and shapes. There is no consistent English nomenclature for these pastas; the Italian names are recognized and applied virtually worldwide. (A specific shape or size may be given different names in different regions of Italy, however. These distinctions are beyond the scope of this text.)

Ribbons

Pasta dough can be rolled very thin and cut into strips or ribbons of various widths. All ribbon shapes work well with tomato, fish and shellfish sauces. Thicker ribbons, such as spaghetti and fettuccine, are preferred with cream or cheese sauces. Sheets of fresh pasta dough can be filled and shaped to create ravioli, cappelletti and tortellini. Filled pasta is usually served with a light cream- or tomato-based sauce that complements the filling's flavors.



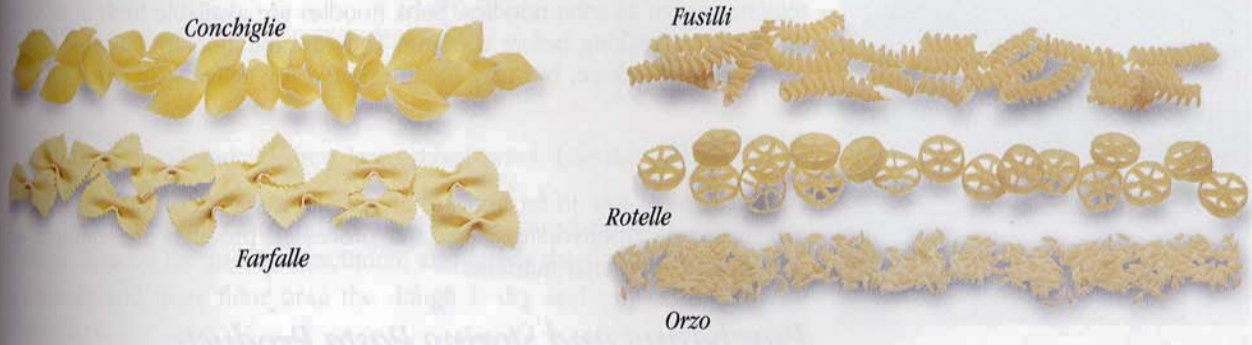


Tubes

Cylindrical forms or tubes are made by extrusion. The hollow tubes can be curved or straight, fluted or smooth. Tubes are preferred for meat and vegetable sauces and are often used in baked casseroles.

Shapes

The extrusion process can also be used to shape pasta dough into forms. The curves and textures produced provide nooks and crevices that hold sauces well. Shaped pastas, such as conchiglie, farfalle and fusilli, are preferred with meat sauces and oil-based sauces such as pesto. Larger shaped pastas can be cooked, then stuffed with meat or cheese fillings and baked or served as a casserole.



Asian Noodles

Asian noodles are not cut into the same wealth of shapes and sizes as Italian-style pasta, nor are they flavored or colored with vegetable purées, herbs or other ingredients.

Virtually all Asian noodles are ribbons—some thin, some thick—folded into bundles and packaged. Differences arise because of the flours used for the dough.

Most dried Asian noodles benefit by soaking in hot water for several minutes before further preparation. The water softens the noddle strands; the bundles separate, and the noodles cook more evenly.

Wheat Noodles

Wheat noodles, also known as egg noodles, are the most popular and widely available of the Asian noodles. They are thin, flat noodles with a springy texture; they are available fresh or dried. Dried egg noodles can be deep-fried after boiling to create crisp golden noodles (chow mein) used primarily as a garnish.

DUMPLINGS

A **dumpling** is a small mound of dough cooked by steaming or simmering in a flavorful liquid. Dumplings are found in many cuisines: Italian gnocchi, Jewish matzo balls, German spaetzle, Chinese wontons, Belorusian pahmayne and Polish pierogi. Dumplings can be sweet or savory, plain or filled.

Plain or **drop dumplings** are made with a breadlike dough, often leavened with yeast or chemical leavening agents. They should be light and tender, but firm enough to hold their shape when cooked. Drop dumplings may be served with stews or broths, or coated with butter or sauce as an appetizer or side dish. Recipes for gnocchi and spaetzle are included at the end of this chapter. A recipe for matzo balls is included in Chapter 11, Soups.

Filled dumplings are made by wrapping noodle dough around seasoned meat, vegetables, cheese or fruit. These parcels are then steamed, fried or baked and served as a snack food, appetizer or side dish. A recipe for deep-fried wontons is included in Chapter 28, Hors d'Oeuvre and Canapés.

Japanese wheat noodles, know as somen (if thick) and udon (if thin), may be round, square or flat. They are eaten in broth or with a dipping sauce.

Rice Noodles

Rice noodles are thin dried noodles made with rice flour. They should be soaked in hot water before cooking and rinsed in cool running water after boiling to remove excess starch and prevent sticking. Rice noodles are often served in soups or sautéed.

Rice vermicelli, which has very fine strands, can be fried in hot oil without presoaking. In only a few seconds, the strands will turn white, puff up and become crunchy. Mounds of crunchy rice noodles can be used as a base for sautéed dishes or for presenting hors d'oeuvres.

Bean Starch Noodles

Bean starch noodles are also known as spring rain noodles, bean threads, bean noodles or cellophane noodles. They are thin, transparent noodles made from mung beans. Dried bean noodles can be fried in the same manner as rice vermicelli. Otherwise, they must be soaked in hot water before using in soups, stir-fries or braised dishes.

Buckwheat Noodles

Buckwheat flour is used in the noodles of Northern Japan and the Tokyo region, known as soba noodles. Soba noodles are available fresh or dried and do not need soaking before cooking. They are traditionally served in broth or with a dipping sauce, but may be substituted for Italian-style pasta if desired.

Nutrition

Pastas are very low in fat and are an excellent source of vitamins, minerals, proteins and carbohydrates. Also, the processed products are sometimes enriched with additional nutrients.

Purchasing and Storing Pasta Products

Pasta products are purchased by weight, either fresh or dried. Tubes and shapes are not generally available fresh. Dried products, by far the most common, are available in boxes or bags, usually in 1-, 10- and 20-pound units. They can be stored in a cool, dry place for several months. Fresh pasta can be stored in an airtight wrapping in the refrigerator for a few days or in the freezer for a few weeks.

Preparing Fresh Pasta

Making Fresh Pasta

Fresh pasta is easy to make, requiring almost no special equipment and only a few staples. The basic form is the **sfoglia**, a thin, flat sheet of dough that is cut into ribbons, circles or squares.

Although pasta dough can be kneaded by hand, stretched and rolled with a rolling pin and cut with a chef's knife, pasta machines make these tasks easier. Pasta machines are either electric or manual. Some electric models mix and knead the dough, then extrude it through a cutting disk. An extrusion machine is most practical in a food service operation regularly serving large quantities of pasta. The pasta machine more often encountered is operated manually with a hand crank. It has two rollers that knead, press and push the dough into a thin, uniform sheet. Adjacent cutting rollers slice the thin dough into various widths for fettuccine, spaghetti, capellini and the like.

TABLE 23.5 NUTRITIONAL VALUES OF SELECTED PASTA

Per 4 oz. (112 g), cooked	Kcal	Protein (g)	Carbohydrates (g)	Fiber (g)	Total Fat (g)	Niacin (g)	Phosphorous (mg)	Potassium (mg)
Noodle, Japanese soba (buckwheat)	113	5.8	24.4	mq	0.1	0.6	29	40
Pasta, wheat, dried	186	9.2	35.9	0.3	0.2	1.2	38	22
Pasta, wheat, spinach and egg, fresh	147	5.7	28.4	mq	1.10	1.2	65	42

The Corinne T. Netzer Encyclopedia of Food Values 1992
mq = measurable quantity, but data is unavailable

RECIPE 23.8

BASIC PASTA DOUGH

Yield: 4 lb. (1.8 kg)

Eggs	15	15
Olive oil	1 oz.	30 ml
Salt	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Bread flour*	2 lb. 8 oz.	1.1 kg

1. Place the eggs, oil and salt in a large mixer bowl. Use the paddle attachment to combine.
2. Add one third of the flour and stir until the mixture begins to form a soft dough. Remove the paddle attachment and attach the dough hook.
3. Gradually add more flour until the dough is dry and cannot absorb any more flour.
4. Remove the dough from the mixer, wrap it well with plastic wrap and set it aside at room temperature for 20–30 minutes.
5. After the dough has rested, roll it into flat sheets by hand or with a pasta machine. Work with only a small portion at a time, keeping the remainder well covered to prevent it from drying out.
6. While the sheets of dough are pliable, cut them into the desired width with a chef's knife or pasta machine. Sheets can also be used for making ravioli, as illustrated next.

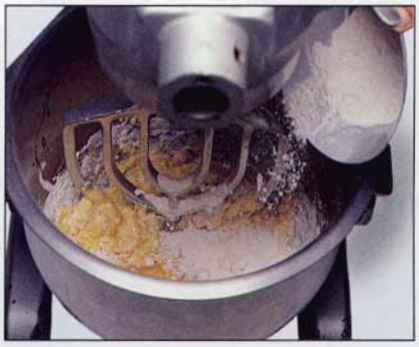
VARIATIONS: Garlic-Herb—Roast 1 head of garlic. Peel and purée the cloves and add to the eggs. Add up to 2 ounces (60 grams) of finely chopped assorted fresh herbs just before mixing is complete.

Spinach—Add 8 ounces (250 grams) of cooked, puréed and well-drained spinach to the eggs. Increase the amount of flour slightly if necessary.

Tomato—Add 4 ounces (120 grams) of tomato paste to the eggs; omit the salt. Increase the amount of flour slightly if necessary.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 80, **Total fat** 2 g, **Saturated fat** .5 g, **Cholesterol** 50 mg, **Sodium** 125 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 13 g, **Protein** 3 g

*Semolina flour can be substituted in this recipe, although it makes a stronger dough that is more difficult to work with by hand.



1. Adding flour to the mixing bowl and using the paddle until the mixture forms a soft dough.

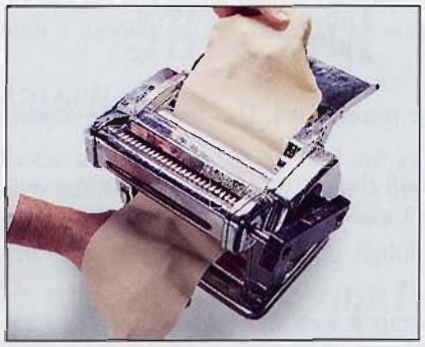
2. The finished dough.

Procedure for Rolling and Cutting Pasta Dough

1. Work with a small portion of the dough. Leave the rest covered with plastic wrap to prevent it from drying out.
2. Flatten the dough with the heel of your hand.
3. Set the pasta machine rollers to their widest setting. Insert the dough and turn the handle with one hand while supporting the dough with the other hand. Pass the entire piece of dough through the rollers.
4. Dust the dough with flour, fold it in thirds and pass it through the pasta machine again.
5. Repeat the folding and rolling procedure until the dough is smooth. This may require 4–6 passes.
6. Tighten the rollers one or two marks, then pass the dough through the machine. Without folding it in thirds, pass the dough through the machine repeatedly, tightening the rollers one or two marks each time.
7. When the dough is thin enough to see your hand through it, but not so thin that it begins to tear, it is ready to use or cut into ribbons. This sheet is the *sfoglia*.
8. To cut the sfoglia into ribbons, gently feed a manageable length of dough through the desired cutting blades.
9. Lay out the pasta in a single layer on a sheet pan dusted with flour to dry. Layers of pasta ribbons can be separated with parchment paper.

1. Passing the entire piece of dough through the pasta machine.

2. Folding the dough in thirds.



3. Passing the dough through the pasta machine to achieve the desired thickness.

4. Using the pasta machine to cut the pasta into the desired width.

Filling Pasta

Sheets of raw pasta dough can be filled or folded to create ravioli (squares), tortellini (round "hats" with a brim of dough), lunettes (circles of dough folded into half-moons), agnolotti (squares of dough folded into rectangles), cappelletti (squares of dough folded and shaped into rings) and other shapes. The filled pieces of dough are then cooked in boiling water using the procedure for cooking pasta ribbons discussed later. The filling can include almost anything—cheese, herbs, vegetables, fish, shellfish, meat or poultry. It can be uncooked or precooked. But any meat filling should be fully cooked before the pasta is assembled, as the time it takes for the dough to cook may not be sufficient to cook the filling.

Cannelloni is a different type of filled pasta: a large square of cooked dough is wrapped around a meat or cheese filling and baked. Popular lasagna dishes are similar. Lasagna pasta, which consists of wide, flat sheets, is cooked then layered with cheese, tomato sauce and meat or vegetables as desired. The finished casserole is baked and cut into portions.

Some of the larger, commercially prepared pasta shapes such as large shells (conchigloni or rigate) or large tubes (manicotti) can be partially cooked in boiling water, then filled, sauced and baked as a casserole.

Asian noodle dough is also made into filled items such as dumplings, wontons, egg rolls (made with egg noodle dough) and spring rolls (made with rice paper). These items are usually steamed, pan-fried or deep-fried.

When making filled pasta, consider the flavors and textures of the filling, dough and sauce. Each should complement the others. Combinations can range from traditional unflavored semolina pasta with herb and ricotta filling in a tomato sauce to an elegant escargot in garlic-and-herb pasta served with a beurre blanc to pork, ginger, soy and scallions in Asian egg noodle dough served with a soy-based dipping sauce.

Procedure for Preparing Ravioli

1. Prepare a basic pasta dough of the desired flavor.
2. Prepare and chill the desired filling.
3. Roll out two thin sheets of dough between the rollers of a pasta machine. Gently lay the dough flat on the work surface.
4. Using a piping bag or a small portion scoop, place small mounds of filling on one of the dough pieces. Space the fillings evenly, allowing approximately 2 inches (5 centimeters) between each mound.
5. Brush the exposed areas of dough with water.
6. Gently place the second sheet of dough over the mounds and press firmly around each mound to remove air pockets and seal the dough.
7. Cut between the mounds with a chef's knife, pastry wheel or circular cutter.

1. Piping the filling onto the dough.

2. Pressing around the mounds of filling to seal the dough and remove any air pockets.

3. Cutting around the mounds with a circular cutter.

Cooking Method

Determining Doneness

Italian-style pastas are properly cooked when they are al dente, firm but tender. Cooking times vary depending on the shape and quantity of pasta, the amount of water used, the hardness of the water and even the altitude. Fresh pasta cooks rapidly, sometimes in seconds. Noodles and dried pasta may require several minutes.

Although package or recipe directions offer some guidance, the only way to accurately test doneness is to bite into a piece. When the pasta is slightly firmer than desired, remove it from the stove and drain. It will continue to cook through residual heat.

Unlike Italian pasta, Asian noodles are not served al dente. Rather, they are either boiled until very soft or stir-fried until very crisp.

Boiling

All Italian-style pasta and most Asian noodles are cooked by just one method: boiling. The secret to boiling pasta successfully is to use ample water. Allow 1 gallon (4 liters) of water for each pound (450 grams) of pasta.

Use a saucepan or stockpot large enough to allow the pasta to move freely in the boiling water; otherwise, the starch released by the dough will make the pasta gummy and sticky. The water should be brought to a rapid boil, then all the pasta should be added at once.

Salt should be added to the water. Pasta absorbs water and salt during cooking. Adding salt to the pasta after it is cooked will not provide the same seasoning effect.

Chefs disagree on whether to add oil to the cooking water. Purists argue against adding oil, on the theory that it makes the dough absorb water unevenly. Others think oil should be added to reduce surface foam. Another theory is that oil keeps the pasta from sticking, although this works only when added to cooked, drained pasta.

Asian noodles may be prepared by boiling until fully cooked, or they may be parboiled then stir-fried with other ingredients to finish cooking.

Procedure for Cooking Pasta to Order

1. Bring the appropriate amount of water to a boil over high heat.
2. Add oil to the water if desired.
3. Add the pasta and salt to the rapidly boiling water.
4. Stir the pasta to prevent it from sticking together. Bring the water back to a boil and cook until the pasta is done.
5. When the pasta is properly cooked, immediately drain it through a colander. A small amount of oil may be gently tossed into the pasta if desired to prevent it from sticking together.
6. Serve hot pasta immediately, or refresh it in cold water for use in salads or other dishes. (Do not rinse pasta that is to be served hot.)

Procedure for Cooking Dried Pasta in Advance

Fresh pasta is so delicate and cooks so rapidly (sometimes in as little as 15 seconds) that it should be cooked to order. Dried pasta, however, can be cooked in advance for quantity service.

1. Follow the preceding directions for cooking pasta, but stop the cooking process when the pasta is about two-thirds done.
2. Drain the pasta, rinse it lightly and toss it in a small amount of oil.
3. Divide the pasta into appropriate-sized portions. Individual portions can be wrapped in plastic or laid on a sheet pan and covered. Refrigerate until needed.
4. When needed, place a portion in a china cap and immerse in boiling water to reheat. Drain, add sauce and serve immediately.

Accompaniments to Pasta

Pasta is widely accepted by consumers and easily incorporated in a variety of cuisines—from Italian and Chinese to Thai and spa. It is used in broths; as a bed for stews, fish, shellfish, poultry or meat; or tossed with sauce. Today's creative chefs are constantly developing nontraditional but delicious ways of serving pasta.

Pasta and Broths

Small shapes can be cooked in the broth with which they are served, or cooked separately, then added to the hot liquid at service time. Soups such as cappelletti in brodo and chicken noodle are examples of these techniques.

Pasta Sauces

Ragus are braised dishes used as a sauce. Usually, several flavoring ingredients and meat or poultry are browned, then a liquid and often a tomato product are added. The liquid can be a combination of stock, wine, water, milk or cream.

Seafood sauces can be white or red. White seafood sauces are most often made with white wine or stock and rarely use cream. They are often flavored with herbs. Red seafood sauces are tomato based. Traditionally, these sauces are not garnished with cheese.

Vegetable sauces often use tomatoes as the base and a stock as the liquid. Mirepoix, garlic and red pepper flakes are commonly used for flavorings. Vegetable sauces include the traditional tomato sauce as well as primavera.

Cream sauces are based on milk or cream and are sometimes thickened with roux. Cheese is often included for flavor and richness.

Garlic-oil sauces (It. *aglio-olio*) consist mainly of garlic and oil; often herbs are added. Garlic-oil sauces can be hot or cold, cooked or uncooked. Pesto is a well-known example of an uncooked, cold garlic-oil sauce.

Uncooked sauces include a variety of dressings such as fresh tomatoes, basil and olive oil; or olive oil, lemon juice, parsley, basil and hot red pepper flakes. Other flavoring ingredients include capers, anchovies, garlic and olives as well as fresh herbs, fresh vegetables, flavored oils and cubed cheeses.

Pasta Sauces

There are hundreds of Italian pasta sauces as well as sauces for Italian-style pasta, but most can be divided into six categories: ragus, seafood sauces, vegetable sauces, cream sauces, garlic-oil sauces and uncooked sauces. Recipes for a selection of pasta sauces are included in Chapter 10, Stocks and Sauces.

Although there are no firm rules governing the combinations of sauces and pasta, Table 23.6 offers some of the more common combinations.

TABLE 23.6 COMBINING SAUCES, PASTA AND GARNISHES

Sauce	Pasta Shape	Garnish
Ragu	Ribbons, tubes, shapes, filled	Grated cheese
Seafood	Ribbons (fettuccine and capellini)	Fish or shellfish
Vegetable	Ribbons, tubes, filled	Meatballs, sausage, grated cheese
Cream	Thick ribbons (spaghetti and fettuccine), filled	Ham, peas, sausage, mushrooms, smoked salmon, nuts, grated cheese
Garlic-oil	Ribbons, shapes, filled	Grated cheese (if uncooked or cold), herbs
Uncooked	Ribbons, shapes	Cubed or grated cheese, fresh vegetables, herbs

CONCLUSION

Most meals would seem incomplete without a starch. The most popular starches are potatoes, grains (especially rice) and pasta. All are low in fat and a good source of energy. Most can be prepared with several dry- and moist-heat cooking methods. Starches can be sauced, seasoned or flavored in limitless ways.

QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

1. Explain the differences between mealy and waxy potatoes. Give two examples of each.
2. Describe the two methods of sautéing or pan-frying potatoes.
3. Explain why duchesse potatoes are regarded as the "mother" of many classic potato dishes. Name and describe two such dishes.
4. All grains are composed of three parts. Name and describe each of these parts.
5. Describe and compare the three general cooking methods used to prepare grains.
6. Name the three categories of Italian-style pasta shapes, and give an example of each.
7. Why is it necessary to use ample water when cooking pasta? Should pasta be cooked in salted water? Should oil be added to the cooking water? Explain your answers.
8. Discuss the differences between cooking fresh pasta and cooking dried, factory-produced pasta.

ADDITIONAL STARCH RECIPES

RECIPE 23.9

QUINOA, RED RICE AND LENTIL SALAD WITH TRUFFLE VINAIGRETTE

NOTE: *This dish appears in the Chapter Opening photograph.*

THE RITZ CARLTON, CHICAGO, IL
Executive Chef George Bumbaris

Yield: 4 Servings

Quinoa (recipe follows)	1 c.	250 ml
Red Rice (recipe follows)	1 c.	250 ml
Beluga Lentils (recipe follows)	1 c.	250 ml
Carrots, brunoise, cooked	1/4 c.	60 ml
Leeks, brunoise, cooked	1/4 c.	60 ml
Black truffles	4 slices	4 slices
Truffle Vinaigrette (recipe follows)	1 oz.	30 ml
Kosher salt	TT	TT
Pepper	TT	TT
Herb-infused oil	as needed for garnish	
Truffle Vinaigrette (recipe follows)	as needed for garnish	

1. Mix the Quinoa, Red Rice, Beluga Lentils, carrots, leeks, Truffle Vinaigrette, salt and pepper together.
2. Shape into a ring on each serving plate. Garnish with a truffle slice. Drizzle the Herb Oil and additional Truffle Vinaigrette around each plate.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 500, **Total fat** 11 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 25 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 79 g, **Protein** 21 g, **Vitamin A** 25%, **Iron** 50%, **Claims**—no cholesterol; very low sodium; high fiber

QUINOA

Yield: 1 c. (250 ml)

Onion, diced	1/2 c.	120 ml
Olive oil	1 Tbsp.	30 ml
Quinoa	1/2 c.	120 ml
Water or vegetable stock	1 c.	250 ml
Kosher salt	TT	TT
Pepper	TT	TT

1. In a small sauce pot, sauté the onions in the olive oil over medium heat.
2. Add the quinoa and allow it to brown slightly.
3. Add the stock and season with salt and pepper. Bring the stock to a full simmer.
4. Remove from the stove and cover the pot. Allow the quinoa to steep until tender, approximately 8 minutes.

Approximate values per 1-cup (323-g) serving: **Calories** 540, **Total fat** 21 g, **Saturated fat** 2.5 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 2020 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 72 g, **Protein** 16 g, **Iron** 45%, **Claims**—no cholesterol; high fiber

Quinoa—*an ancient staple grain with a high protein content, beadlike shape and delicate, almost bland flavor.*

RED RICE

Yield: 1 c. (250 ml)

Onion, diced	1/4 c.	60 ml
Olive oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Red rice	1/2 c.	120 ml
Water	1 c.	250 ml
Kosher salt	TT	TT
Pepper	TT	TT

1. In a small sauce pot, sauté the onions in the olive oil over medium heat.
2. Add the red rice, water, salt and pepper.
3. Cover and simmer until the rice is tender and the liquid has been absorbed, approximately 15 minutes.

Approximate values per 1/4-cup (60-ml) serving: **Calories** 60, **Total fat** 3.5 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 8 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Claims**—no saturated fat; no cholesterol; no sugar

BELUGA LENTILS

Yield: 1 c. (250 ml)

Olive oil	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Onion, peeled	1 small	1 small
Clove	1	1

Continued

Carrot, peeled and cut in half lengthwise	1 large	1 large
Celery, cut in half	2 ribs	2 ribs
Garlic cloves	4	4
Shallots, minced	1/2 c.	120 ml
Bay leaves	2	2
Fresh thyme	2 sprigs	2 sprigs
Kosher salt	TT	TT
Pepper	TT	TT
Beluga lentils, soaked for 1 hour	1/2 c.	120 ml
Water or vegetable stock	1 pt.	500 ml

1. In a large sauce pot, heat the olive oil. Stud the onion with the clove and sweat the carrots, celery and onion in the oil.
2. Add the garlic and shallots. When the shallots are translucent, add the bay leaves, fresh thyme, salt, pepper, lentils and stock.
3. Simmer until tender, approximately 40 minutes. Make sure the lentils are covered with liquid at all times.
4. After the lentils cool, remove the carrot, celery, onion, garlic cloves, bay leaves and thyme.

Approximate values per 1-cup (250-ml) serving: **Calories** 120, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 20 g, **Protein** 9 g, **Iron** 20%, **Claims**—fat free; high fiber

TRUFFLE VINAIGRETTE

Yield: 1 1/2 pt. (750 ml)

Brandy	1 c.	250 ml
Madeira	1 c.	250 ml
Port	1 c.	250 ml
Truffles	7 oz.	210 g
Balsamic vinegar	1/4 c.	60 ml
Canola oil	1/4 c.	60 ml
Truffle oil	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Kosher salt	TT	TT
Pepper	TT	TT

1. Simmer the brandy, madiera and port to remove the alcohol. Remove from the heat and add the truffles. Allow them to steep until the liquids are cool.
2. Place all the ingredients in a blender and emulsify.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (58-g) serving: **Calories** 119, **Total fat** 11 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 6 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 5 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Claims**—no cholesterol; low sodium

RECIPE 23.10

GRILLED POTATO SALAD

GREENS RESTAURANT, SAN FRANCISCO, CA
Executive Chef Annie Somerville

Yield: 4 Servings **Method:** Baking/Grilling

New potatoes	2 lb.	1 kg
Light olive oil	as needed	as needed
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

Cherry tomatoes, sweet one hundreds or pear cherry tomatoes	4 oz.	120 g
Frisée or salad greens (optional)	4 oz.	120 g
Red and yellow bell peppers, roasted, seeded and cut into strips	1 lb.	500 g
Basil Vinaigrette (recipe follows)		
Champagne vinegar	as needed	as needed
Niçoise or Gaeta olives	12	12

1. Toss the potatoes with the olive oil in a baking dish; sprinkle with a few pinches of salt and pepper.
2. Cover the potatoes and place in a 400°F (200°C) oven. Cook until tender, approximately 35–40 minutes. Set aside to cool.
3. Cut the cooled potatoes in half or quarters if they are large. Thread onto skewers for grilling. (Skewers are not necessary if the grill grating is close together.) Grill the potatoes cut side down until they are golden and crisp with defined grill marks.
4. Cut the tomatoes in half or leave whole if small.
5. Prepare, wash and spin-dry the salad greens.
6. To assemble the salad, slide the grilled potatoes from the skewers and toss with the peppers, cherry tomatoes and vinaigrette. Adjust the seasoning, if necessary, with a splash of champagne vinegar and salt and pepper.
7. Loosely arrange the greens on plates or a platter, spoon the potatoes and other vegetables over the greens and garnish with the olives.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 350, **Total fat** 22 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 1420 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 33 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Vitamin C** 170%, **Calcium** 15%, **Iron** 10%

BASIL VINAIGRETTE

Yield: 4 oz. (120 g)

Champagne vinegar	1 oz.	30 ml
Extra virgin olive oil	3 oz.	90 ml
Fresh basil leaves	1/2 c.	250 ml
Salt	1/2 tsp.	3 ml
Garlic clove, chopped	1	1

1. Combine the ingredients in a blender or food processor until smooth.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (35-g) serving: **Calories** 200, **Total fat** 21 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 290 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 0 g

RECIPE 23.11

CANDIED SWEET POTATOES

Yield: 6 4-oz. (120-g) Servings Method: Baking

Sweet potatoes	2 lb.	1 kg
Brown sugar	5 oz.	150 g
Water	2 oz.	60 ml
Whole butter	2 oz.	60 g
Vanilla extract	1 tsp.	5 ml

Continued

1. Wash the sweet potatoes and cut as necessary to promote even cooking.
2. Bake the sweet potatoes on a sheet pan at 350°F (180°C) until cooked but still firm, approximately 30 minutes.
3. Combine the brown sugar, water and butter and bring to a boil. Add the vanilla and remove from the heat.
4. Peel the potatoes and slice or cut as desired. Arrange the potatoes in a baking dish and pour the sugar mixture over them.
5. Sprinkle the potatoes with additional brown sugar if desired and bake for 20 minutes, basting occasionally with the sugar mixture.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 320, **Total fat** 8 g, **Saturated fat** 5 g, **Cholesterol** 20 mg, **Sodium** 105 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 60 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Vitamin A** 340%, **Vitamin C** 60%

RECIPE 23.12

Spicy Sweet Potato and Chestnut Gratin

THE BOULDERS RESORT, CAREFREE, AZ
Corporate Executive Chef Charles Wiley

Yield: 6 Servings

Vegetable spray	as needed	as needed
Skim milk	1 c.	250 ml
Maple syrup	1/2 c.	60 ml
Garlic cloves, chopped	3	3
Ancho chiles	2	2
Sweet potatoes, peeled and sliced thin	2 large	2 large
Kosher salt	TT	TT
Pepper	TT	TT
Leeks, white part only, sliced thin	3	3
Roasted chestnuts, chopped coarse	1/2 c.	120 ml
Aged Monterey Jack cheese, grated	1/2 c.	120 ml
Chives, snipped	as needed	as needed

1. Lightly spray an oven-proof casserole dish with vegetable spray.
2. In a small saucepan, heat the milk and maple syrup. Remove from the heat, add the garlic and chiles and let steep for 30 minutes. Purée in a blender.
3. Lay one third of the potato slices in one layer in the casserole dish, overlapping slightly. Season with salt and pepper.
4. Ladle one third of the milk mixture over the potatoes.
5. Sprinkle with one third of the leeks and one third of the chestnuts. Then top with one third of the cheese.
6. Repeat two more times.
7. Cover with foil and bake at 350°F (180°C) for 40 minutes. Uncover and bake for another 20 minutes or until brown and bubbly.
8. Let sit for 20 minutes. Sprinkle with the snipped chives. Cut into squares or circles, or simply spoon out of the casserole dish for service.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (168-g) serving: **Calories** 170, **Total fat** 4 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 135 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 29 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin A** 15%, **Vitamin C** 30%, **Claims**—low cholesterol; low sodium

RECIPE 23.13

Potato Pancakes

Yield: 12 2 1/2-oz. (75-g) Pancakes | Method: Pan-frying

Potatoes, all-purpose	2 lb.	1 kg
Eggs, beaten	2	2
Onion, minced	6 oz.	180 g
Flour	2 oz.	60 g
Baking powder	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Nutmeg	1 tsp.	5 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Vegetable oil	4 oz.	120 ml

1. Peel and coarsely grate the potatoes.
2. Transfer the grated potatoes to a bowl and add the beaten eggs, onion, flour and baking powder. Season with nutmeg, salt and pepper. Blend well.
3. Heat the oil. Add the potato mixture to the oil in uniform-sized pancakes. Pan-fry the pancakes until tender, turning once when well browned on the first side. Remove from the pan and drain well.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (114-g) serving: **Calories** 200, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 35 mg, **Sodium** 210 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 22 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Vitamin C** 15%

RECIPE 23.14

Rösti Potatoes

THE FOUR SEASONS, NEW YORK, NY
Chef Christian Albin

Yield: 6 Servings | Method: Pan-frying

Boiling potatoes, large	4	4
Bacon fat	2 oz.	60 g
Lard	2 oz.	60 g
Kosher salt and pepper	TT	TT
Whole butter	1 oz.	30 g

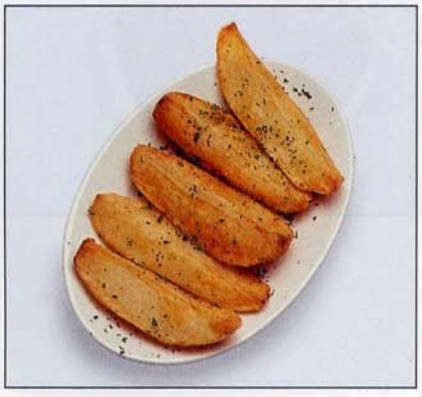
1. Partially cook the potatoes in salted water until almost done.
2. Drain and cool the potatoes, then peel and coarsely grate them.
3. Heat the bacon fat and lard in a heavy, shallow 10-inch (25-centimeter) skillet with sloping sides until quite hot. Spread half the potatoes over the bottom of the pan; sprinkle with salt and pepper. Cover with the remaining potatoes and cook over medium-high heat until the bottom turns brown and crusty, approximately 10 minutes.
4. Turn the potatoes in one piece. This is easiest to do by placing a large plate over the pan and turning both together so that the potatoes fall onto the plate. Slip the turned-over potatoes off the plate back into the pan, browned side up. Cook until the bottom is browned.

Continued

Cottage fries.

Shoestring potatoes.

French fries.



Steak fries.

5. Before serving, smooth the edges of the potatoes with a spatula. Sprinkle with salt and brush the edge of the pan with whole butter. It will melt and run into the potatoes.

VARIATION: Cheddar Cheese Rösti Potatoes—Make two thin cakes from the coarsely grated potatoes. Top one with a layer of 7 ounces (210 grams) sour cream, 2 ounces (60 grams) cubed sharp cheddar cheese and 2 tablespoons (30 milliliters) chopped chives. Top with the other cake. Dot with 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) whole butter and bake in a 400°F (200°C) oven for 15 minutes.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 290, **Total fat** 23 g, **Saturated fat** 10 g, **Cholesterol** 30 mg, **Sodium** 430 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 19 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Vitamin C** 20%

RECIPE 23.15

COTTAGE FRIES, SHOESTRING POTATOES, FRENCH FRIES, STEAK FRIES

RUTH'S CHRIS STEAK HOUSE, PHOENIX, AZ

Method: Deep-frying

Idaho potatoes, 70 count	as needed
Hot fat	as needed
Salt and pepper	TT
Parsley, chopped	as needed for garnish

1. Cut each potato into the desired shape:
   Cottage fries—circles 1/4 inch (60 millimeters) thick
   Shoestring potatoes—long juliennes (allumettes)
   French fries—sticks 3/8 inch × 3/8 inch × 3 inches (1 centimeter × 1 centimeter × 7 centimeters)
   Steak fries—four large wedges
2. Deep-fry in 250°F (120°C) fat until lightly browned, approximately 2–3 minutes. Remove and drain. Season to taste with salt and pepper.
3. For service, deep-fry the partially cooked potatoes in 350°F (180°C) fat until golden in color and done.
4. Garnish with parsley if desired.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 90, **Total fat** 4.5 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 60 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 11 g, **Protein** 1 g

RECIPE 23.16

POTATO-GINGER PURÉE

STANFORD COURT HOTEL, San Francisco, CA

Yield: 2 lb. (1 kilogram)

Potato, peeled, 1-in. (2.5-cm) pieces	1 lb. 8 oz.	650 g
Heavy cream	4 oz.	120 ml
Fresh ginger, grated	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Whole butter	8 oz.	250 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Boil the potatoes in salted water until tender. Drain and set aside.
2. While the potatoes cook, bring the cream to a boil, add the ginger and let steep for 15 minutes. Purée and strain through a fine chinois.
3. Purée the potatoes, add the butter and ginger cream. Season to taste with salt and pepper. Adjust the consistency with additional hot cream as needed.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 311, **Total fat** 29 g, **Saturated fat** 18 g, **Cholesterol** 81 mg, **Sodium** 426 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 12 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Vitamin A** 28%

RECIPE 23.17

POLENTA

Yield: 1 lb. 12 oz. (800 g) Method: Simmering

Shallots, chopped	2 tsp.	10 ml
Whole butter	as needed	as needed
Milk, white stock or water	2 lb.	950 ml
Cornmeal, yellow or white	6 oz.	180 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Sauté the shallots in 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) of butter for 30 seconds. Add the liquid and bring to a boil.
2. Slowly add the cornmeal while stirring constantly to prevent lumps, then simmer for 30 minutes.
3. Scrape the polenta into a buttered nonaluminum dish; spread to an even thickness with a spatula that has been dipped in water. Refrigerate the polenta until well chilled.
4. To serve, unmold the polenta and cut into shapes. Sauté or grill the polenta for service, or sprinkle with grated Parmesan cheese and heat under a broiler or salamander.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 160, **Total fat** 3.5 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 400 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 25 g, **Protein** 6 g, **Vitamin A** 10%, **Calcium** 15%

RECIPE 23.18

CREAMY POLENTA WITH WILD MUSHROOMS

FETZER VINYARDS, HOPLAND, CA
John Ash, Culinary Director

Yield: 8 Servings

Yellow onion, chopped coarse	12 oz.	340 g
White mushrooms, chopped coarse	4 oz.	120 g
Garlic, chopped fine	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Dried porcini or cèpes mushrooms, rinsed, soaked in water and chopped coarse	2 oz.	60 g
Olive oil	5 oz.	150 ml
Fresh basil, chopped fine	4 tsp.	20 ml
Fresh oregano, chopped fine	1 tsp.	5 ml

Continued

Chicken or vegetable stock	2 qt.	2 lt
Coarse polenta cornmeal	2 c.	450 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Heavy cream	1 pt.	450 ml
Aged Asiago or Fontina, grated fine	4 oz.	120 g
Fresh wild mushrooms	8–10	8–10
Fresh basil sprigs	as needed for garnish	

1. Sauté the onion, white mushrooms, garlic and porcini or cèpes in 4 ounces (120 milliliters) olive oil until lightly colored. Add the basil, oregano and stock; bring to a boil.
2. Slowly stir in the polenta. Simmer 10 minutes, stirring regularly. The polenta should be thick and creamy. Add more stock if necessary. Adjust the seasonings and keep warm.
3. Just before serving, add the cream and cheese and stir vigorously.
4. Sauté the fresh wild mushrooms in the remaining olive oil until tender. Spoon the polenta onto warm plates and garnish with the wild mushrooms and a sprig of fresh basil.

Approximate values per 8-oz. (480-g) serving: **Calories** 550, **Total fat** 46 g, **Saturated fat** 19 g, **Cholesterol** 95 mg, **Sodium** 1090 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 21 g, **Protein** 13 g, **Vitamin A** 35%, **Vitamin C** 15%, **Calcium** 20%, **Iron** 15%

RECIPE 23.19

Grits and Cheddar Soufflé

Yield: 8 Servings **Method:** Simmering/Baking

Grits	1 1/2 c.	350 ml
Water	1 1/2 pt.	700 ml
Milk	1 1/2 pt.	700 ml
Unsalted butter	4 oz.	120 g
Salt	TT	TT
Sharp cheddar cheese, grated	8 oz.	225 g
Tabasco sauce	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Eggs, separated	6	6
Sugar	2 tsp.	10 ml

1. Combine the grits, water, milk, butter and salt in a heavy saucepan. Bring to a simmer and cook, stirring constantly, until thick, approximately 5–10 minutes.
2. Remove from the heat and stir in 6 ounces (180 grams) of the cheese and the Tabasco sauce.
3. Whisk the egg yolks together, then stir them into the grits mixture.
4. Whip the egg whites to soft peaks, add the sugar and whip to stiff peaks. Fold the egg whites into the grits mixture.
5. Pour the soufflé into a well-buttered 2-quart casserole or soufflé dish. Top with the remaining 2 ounces (60 grams) of cheese. Bake at 350°F (180°C) until set and browned, approximately 30 minutes. Serve immediately.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 410, **Total fat** 25 g, **Saturated fat** 9 g, **Cholesterol** 215 mg, **Sodium** 640 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 32 g, **Protein** 16 g, **Vitamin A** 40%, **Calcium** 30%

RECIPE 23.20

Classic Rice Pilaf

Yield: 3 lb. (1.4 kg) Method: Pilaf

Butter	1 oz.	30 g
Olive oil	1 oz.	30 ml
Onion, fine dice	3 oz.	90 g
Bay leaf	1	1
Long-grain rice	1 pt.	450 ml
Chicken stock, boiling	1 qt.	1 lt
Salt	TT	TT

1. Heat the butter and olive oil in a heavy sautoir or sauce pot.
2. Add the onion and bay leaf and sauté until tender, but not brown.
3. Add the rice and stir to coat completely with the hot fat. Do not allow the rice to brown.
4. Pour in the boiling chicken stock and season with salt.
5. Cover the pot tightly and place it in a 350°F (175°C) oven. Bake for 18–20 minutes, until the liquid is absorbed and the rice is fluffy and tender.
6. Transfer the cooked rice to a hotel pan and fluff the rice with a fork. Remove the bay leaf and keep the rice hot for service.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (180-g) serving: **Calories** 130, **Total fat** 7 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 75 mg, **Sodium** 440 g, **Total carbohydrates** 12 g, **Protein** 4 g

RECIPE 23.21

Brown Rice Pilaf with Pine Nuts

Yield: 10 3-oz. (90-g) Servings Method: Pilaf

Saffron threads	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Chicken stock, hot	1 pt.	500 ml
Sesame oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Vegetable oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Pine nuts	2 oz.	60 g
Onion, medium dice	6 oz.	180 g
Red bell pepper, medium dice	6 oz.	180 g
Garlic, chopped	2 tsp.	10 ml
Brown rice	1 c.	250 ml
Salt	1 tsp.	10 ml
Pepper	TT	TT
Currants, dry	2 oz.	60 ml

1. Steep the saffron threads in the hot stock for 5 minutes.
2. Heat the oils and sauté the pine nuts until lightly browned.
3. Add the onion, red pepper and garlic and sauté without browning.
4. Add the rice and stir to coat the rice with the oil.
5. Add the salt and stock to the rice. Season with pepper, bring to a boil, reduce the heat and cover. Cook on the stove top or in the oven until done, approximately 30 minutes.

Continued

6. Stir in the currants, cover and allow them to soften for 5 minutes.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (90-g) serving: **Calories** 150, **Total fat** 7 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 170 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 18 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Vitamin C** 25%

RECIPE 23.22

Saffron Rice

Yield: 6 Servings

Basmati rice	1 pt.	450 ml
Saffron threads	1 tsp.	5 ml
Boiling water	1 qt.	1 lt
Ghee (or clarified butter)	3 oz.	90 g
Cinnamon sticks, 2 in. (5 cm) long	1	1
Cloves, whole	4	4
Onion, fine dice	5 oz.	150 g
Dark brown sugar	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Salt	2 tsp.	10 ml
Cardamom seeds	1/4 tsp.	2 ml

1. Wash the rice and drain thoroughly.
2. Steep the saffron in 2 ounces (60 milliliters) of the boiling water.
3. In a saucepan, heat the ghee, add the cinnamon and cloves. Add the onions and stir-fry until they are soft and slightly brown.
4. Add the rice and stir until it is well coated with the ghee and the grains are a light golden color.
5. Stirring constantly, add the remaining boiling water, brown sugar, salt and cardamom seeds. Bring to a boil and reduce to a simmer.
6. Gently stir in the saffron and its water, cover and simmer until the rice has absorbed all the liquid.
7. Fluff with a fork and serve at once.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (106-g) serving: **Calories** 370, **Total fat** 16 g, **Saturated fat** 9 g, **Cholesterol** 35 mg, **Sodium** 780 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 51 g, **Protein** 4 g

RECIPE 23.23

Wild Rice and Cranberry Stuffing

Yield: 5 pints (2.5 lt) **Method:** Simmering

Dried morels	1 oz.	30 g
Wild rice	12 oz.	340 g
Onion, minced	8 oz.	225 g
Butter or chicken fat	2 oz.	60 g
Chicken stock, hot	approx. 1 qt.	approx. 1 lt
Dried cranberries	6 oz.	180 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Fresh parsley, chopped fine	4 Tbsp.	60 ml

1. Soak the dried morels overnight in lightly salted water. Drain, reserving the liquid. Rinse well, drain again and chop coarsely.
2. Rinse the wild rice well in cold water.

3. Sauté the onion in the butter or chicken fat until tender. Add the mushrooms and wild rice.
4. Strain the reserved liquid from the mushrooms through several layers of cheesecloth to remove all sand and grit. Add enough chicken stock so that the liquid totals 3 pints (1.5 liters). Add the stock mixture and cranberries to the rice. Cover and simmer until the rice is dry and fluffy, approximately 45 minutes.
5. Season to taste with salt and pepper and stir in the parsley. This rice may be served as a side dish or used for stuffing duck or game hens.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 190, **Total fat** 6 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 380 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 28 g, **Protein** 7 g

RECIPE 23.24

Tabouli (Bulgur Wheat) Salad

Yield: 15 3-oz. (90-g) Servings

Bulgur	10 oz.	300 g
Onion, brunoise	8 oz.	250 g
Green onion, sliced	2 oz.	60 g
Fresh parsley, chopped	6 oz.	180 g
Fresh mint, chopped	2 oz.	60 g
Olive oil	8 oz.	250 ml
Lemon juice	8 oz.	250 ml
Tomato concassée	1 lb.	500 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Pine nuts, toasted	4 oz.	120 g

1. Place the bulgur in a bowl and cover with cold water. Soak the bulgur until tender, approximately 2 hours.
2. Drain the bulgur and squeeze out all the excess water.
3. Add the onions, green onions, parsley, mint, olive oil and lemon juice. Mix well.
4. Add the tomatoes; mix to combine. Season with salt and pepper.
5. Garnish with the toasted pine nuts.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 280, **Total fat** 21 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 280 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 17 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin A** 30%, **Vitamin C** 60%, **Iron** 70%, **Claims**—no cholesterol; good source of fiber

RECIPE 23.25

Kasha Varnishkes with Wild Mushrooms

Yield: 4 lb. (1.8 kg) Method: Pilaf

Onion, medium dice	8 oz.	250 g
Kasha	1 pt.	450 ml
Chicken fat or clarified butter	4 oz.	120 g
Mushrooms—shiitake, morels and/or white, sliced	4 oz.	120 g

Continued

Garlic, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Chicken stock	1 qt.	1 lt
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Bow tie pasta (farfalle)	10 oz.	300 g

1. Sauté the onions and kasha in 2 ounces (60 grams) of the fat or butter.
2. Add the mushrooms and garlic and stir in the stock. Season with salt and pepper. Bring to a boil, reduce to a simmer and cover. Cook until done, approximately 10–12 minutes.
3. Cook the bow tie pasta; refresh and drain.
4. Sauté the pasta in the remaining fat or butter.
5. Combine the kasha and pasta. Adjust the seasonings and serve.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (90-g) serving: **Calories** 160, **Total fat** 6 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 25 mg, **Sodium** 190 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 22 g, **Protein** 5 g

RECIPE 23.26

Fettuccine Con Pesto Alla Trapanese

Chef Odette Fada
of the former REX IL RISTORANTE, Los Angeles, CA

Yield: 4 8-oz (250-g) Servings

Fresh fettuccine	1 lb.	500 g
Salt	TT	TT
Fresh basil leaves	1/2 oz.	15 g
Garlic cloves, chopped fine	4	4
Bread crumbs	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Almonds, chopped	1 oz.	30 g
Extra virgin olive oil	approx. 3 oz.	approx. 90 ml
Roma tomatoes, peeled, seeded and julienned	8 oz.	250 g

1. Boil the pasta in salted water until almost done.
2. Lightly sauté the basil, garlic, bread crumbs and almonds in the oil.
3. Add the tomatoes and sauté to blend the flavors.
4. Drain the pasta, add it to the pan and sauté for 1 minute over a low flame.
5. Add more olive oil and salt as needed.

Approximate values per 8-oz. (210-g) serving: **Calories** 590, **Total fat** 29 g, **Saturated fat** 3.5 g, **Cholesterol** 20 mg, **Sodium** 640 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 68 g, **Protein** 15 g, **Vitamin C** 20%, **Iron** 15%

RECIPE 23.27

Goat-Cheese Ravioli in Herbed Cream Sauce

Yield: 72 2-in. (5-cm) Ravioli
and 1 1/2 pt. (.75 lt) Sauce

Fresh goat cheese	11 oz.	330 g
Cream cheese	8 oz.	250 g

Fresh basil, chopped fine	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Fresh thyme, chopped fine	2 tsp.	10 ml
Fresh parsley, chopped	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Pepper	TT	TT
Pasta, fresh	2 lb.	1 kg
Heavy cream	1 qt.	1 lt
Parmesan, grated	2 oz.	60 ml
Salt	TT	TT

1. To make the cheese filling, combine the goat and cream cheeses with 2 tablespoons (30 milliliters) basil, 1 teaspoon (5 milliliters) thyme and all the parsley; season to taste with pepper.
2. Make ravioli using the cheese mixture and pasta.
3. To make the sauce, combine the cream with the remaining herbs and bring to a boil. Reduce by one third and add the Parmesan. Season with salt and pepper.
4. Boil the ravioli until done. Drain, toss gently with the sauce and serve.

Approximate values per 8-oz. (212-g) serving: **Calories** 580, **Total fat** 48 g, **Saturated fat** 30 g, **Cholesterol** 185 mg, **Sodium** 510 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 23 g, **Protein** 15 g, **Vitamin A** 60%, **Calcium** 25%

RECIPE 23.28

Fettuccine Alfredo

Yield: 4 6-oz. (180-g) Servings

Fresh fettuccine	8 oz.	250 g
Whole butter	2 oz.	60 g
Heavy cream	12 oz.	350 ml
Parmesan, grated	2 oz.	60 g
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT

1. Boil the pasta, keeping it slightly undercooked. Refresh and drain.
2. To make the sauce, combine the butter, cream and cheese in a sauté pan. Bring to a boil and reduce slightly.
3. Add the pasta to the pan and boil the sauce and pasta until the sauce is thick and the pasta is cooked. Adjust the seasonings and serve.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (172-g) serving: **Calories** 630, **Total fat** 49 g, **Saturated fat** 29 g, **Cholesterol** 170 mg, **Sodium** 1000 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 33 g, **Protein** 14 g, **Vitamin A** 50%, **Calcium** 25%

RECIPE 23.29

Pepe Pasta with Shrimp, Tomato and Tarragon

THE RITZ CARLTON, CHICAGO, IL
Executive Chef George Bumbaris

Yield: 4 Servings

Olive oil	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Onion, peeled and sliced	1/2 c.	120 ml

Continued

Garlic, minced	1 tsp.	5 ml
Tomato concassée	8 oz.	250 g
Dry white wine	4 oz.	120 ml
Fresh shrimp, peeled and deveined	16	16
Chicken or shrimp stock	3 c.	750 ml
Pepe pasta	1 c.	250 ml
Fresh lime juice	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Whole butter	1 Tbsp.	15 g
Chives, chopped fine	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Tarragon, chopped	1/2 tsp.	3 ml
Italian parsley, chopped	1/2 tsp.	3 ml

1. In a medium-sized sauce pot over medium heat, sauté the onion in the olive oil. Add the garlic and cook for 1 additional minute.
2. Add the tomatoes, then add the white wine. Simmer until the liquid is reduced au sec.
3. Add the shrimp and cook for 3–4 minutes.
4. In a separate sauce pot, bring the chicken stock to a boil. Add the pepe pasta and simmer until the pasta is tender, approximately 15 minutes.
5. Drain the pasta and toss in the lime juice, butter and herbs.
6. Gently stir in the tomato and shrimp mixture and serve immediately.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 550, **Total fat** 15 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 670 mg, **Sodium** 1380 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 25 g, **Protein** 79 g, **Vitamin A** 30%, **Vitamin C** 35%, **Iron** 70%

RECIPE 23.30

Cappelletti in Brodo

Yield: 10 1-pt. (450-ml) Servings
with 12 cappelletti each

Filling:		
Pork loin, roasted	6 oz.	180 g
Mortadella	4 oz.	120 g
Ricotta	6 oz.	180 g
Parmesan, finely grated	6 oz.	180 g
Egg	1	1
Nutmeg	TT	TT
Basic Pasta Dough (Recipe 23.8)	1 lb. 8 oz.	750 g
Beef Broth (Recipe 11.1)	5 qt.	5 lt
Parmesan, shredded	8 oz.	250 g
Fresh parsley, chopped fine	3 Tbsp.	45 ml

1. To prepare the cappelletti filling, place the meats and cheeses in a food processor fitted with the metal blade. Process until finely ground. Add the egg and season lightly with nutmeg. Process until blended but not smoothly puréed.
2. Work with one quarter of the pasta dough at a time, keeping the rest covered to prevent it from drying out. Roll out a portion of the dough until it is very thin. Cut the dough into 2-inch (5-centimeter) squares using a fluted pasta wheel.
3. Place 1 teaspoon (5 milliliters) of filling in the center of each square. Fold the dough over the filling to form a rectangle, pinching the edges together to seal. Bring the ends of each rectangle together, overlapping them and pressing to seal.

4. Place the finished cappelletti on a paper-lined sheet pan. Leave them uncovered and turn them over once or twice so that they dry evenly. Continue working until all the filling is used. The cappelletti may be cooked immediately or refrigerated for later use.
5. Heat the beef broth to a gentle boil. Drop the cappelletti in and cook until tender, approximately 3–5 minutes.
6. Portion the broth and cappelletti into warmed soup bowls and garnish with the shredded Parmesan and parsley.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 270, **Total fat** 17 g, **Saturated fat** 10 g, **Cholesterol** 75 mg, **Sodium** 920 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 3 g, **Protein** 27 g, **Calcium** 60%

RECIPE 23.31

Macaroni and Cheese

Yield: 24 8-oz. (250-g) Servings

Cheese sauce (pg. 197)	2 qt.	2 lt
Worcestershire sauce	TT	TT
Tabasco sauce	TT	TT
Elbow macaroni, boiled and refreshed	2 lb.	1 kg
Cheddar cheese, grated	2 lb.	1 kg
Whole butter	8 oz.	250 g
Bread crumbs	1 oz.	30 g

1. Season the cheese sauce with the Worcestershire and Tabasco sauces.
2. Mix the macaroni with the cheese sauce and the cheese.
3. Pour into a buttered full-sized hotel pan. Sprinkle with bread crumbs.
4. Bake uncovered at 350°F (180°C) until hot, approximately 30 minutes.

Variations: Macaroni and cheese with ham and tomato—Stir 2 pounds (1 kilogram) each diced cooked ham and tomato concassée into the macaroni and cheese before pouring it into the hotel pan.

Approximate values per 8-oz. (225-g) serving: **Calories** 457, **Total fat** 27 g, **Saturated fat** 17 g, **Cholesterol** 80 mg, **Sodium** 290 g, **Total carbohydrates** 36 g, **Protein** 17 g, **Vitamin A** 18%, **Calcium** 36%

RECIPE 23.32

Baked Ziti with Fresh Tomato Sauce

Yield: 30 Servings

Eggs	6	6
Ricotta	4 lb.	1.8 kg
Fresh thyme	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Fresh oregano	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Fresh basil	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Italian sausage links	3 lb.	1.4 kg
Ziti, cooked, refreshed and drained	4 lb.	1.8 kg
Parmesan, grated	8 oz.	250 g

Continued

Fresh Tomato Sauce (Recipe 10.27)	3 qt.	3 lt
Mozzarella, shredded	2 lb.	1 kg

1. Combine the eggs, ricotta cheese, thyme, oregano, basil, salt and pepper. Mix well and refrigerate.
2. Place the sausage links in a 2-inch (5-centimeter) deep full-sized hotel pan; cook in a 350°F (180°C) oven for 20 minutes. Remove and drain the sausage. Slice the links into rounds and reserve.
3. Pour off the sausage fat, then place the ziti in the hotel pan. Top with an even coating of the cheese mixture, sausage slices and Parmesan.
4. Pour the tomato sauce over the top layer and stir slightly to distribute the sauce.
5. Bake at 375°F (190°C) for 1 hour. Sprinkle the mozzarella evenly over the pasta and return to the oven for 10 minutes. Serve.
6. Ziti may also be prepared in individual casseroles. Decrease baking time as necessary.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 450, **Total fat** 23 g, **Saturated fat** 10 g, **Cholesterol** 130 mg, **Sodium** 1290 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 27 g, **Protein** 35 g, **Vitamin A** 40%, **Calcium** 70%, **Iron** 15%

RECIPE 23.33

Spinach and Ricotta Lasagna with Bolognese Sauce

Yield: 28 8-oz. (250-g) Servings

Fresh spinach pasta dough, rolled into sheets	2 lb.	1 kg
Spinach, stemmed	2 lb.	1 kg
Whole butter	2 oz.	60 g
Ricotta	1 lb.	500 g
Parmesan, grated	6 oz.	180 g
Eggs	2	2
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Bolognese Sauce (Recipe 10.28)	3 qt.	3 lt
Béchamel Sauce (Recipe 10.7)	1 qt.	1 lt

1. Cut the pasta dough into 4-inch (10-centimeter) strips. Boil in salted water until done and drain well.
2. Sauté the spinach in the butter. Drain well and cool.
3. Combine the spinach with the ricotta, 4 ounces (120 grams) of the Parmesan and eggs. Season to taste with salt and pepper.
4. Ladle a small amount of the Bolognese Sauce into the bottom of a standard full-sized hotel pan. Cover the sauce with a layer of cooked pasta. Spread a thin layer of the spinach-and-cheese mixture on the pasta. Ladle a portion of the Béchamel Sauce over the spinach and spread in a thin even layer. Ladle a portion of the Bolognese Sauce over the Béchamel Sauce and spread in an even layer.
5. Add another layer of pasta and repeat the process until all the ingredients are used, finishing with a layer of Béchamel sauce. Sprinkle the remaining

Parmesan cheese on top and bake covered at 350°F (180°C) until heated through, approximately 40 minutes. Uncover the lasagna for the last 15 minutes so that it browns.

Approximate values per 7-oz. (203-g) serving: **Calories** 270, **Total fat** 8 g, **Saturated fat** 3.5 g, **Cholesterol** 200 mg, **Sodium** 1110 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 12 g, **Protein** 37 g, **Vitamin A** 30%, **Vitamin C** 20%, **Calcium** 20%, **Iron** 40%

RECIPE 23.34

Chilled Chinese Noodle Salad

Yield: 8 4-oz. (120-g) Servings

Dressing:		
Dark soy sauce	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
White vinegar	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Sugar	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Peanut oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Sesame oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Orange zest	1 tsp.	5 ml
Red chile flakes	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Chinese egg noodles, fresh	8 oz.	250 g
Bean sprouts, blanched	8 oz.	250 g
Carrot, finely shredded	6 oz.	180 g
Daikon, finely shredded	3 oz.	90 g
Green onion, sliced	2 oz.	60 g
Black sesame seeds	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh cilantro leaves	as needed	as needed

1. Combine the dressing ingredients and whisk thoroughly.
2. Cook the egg noodles in rapidly boiling salted water until tender, approximately 2 minutes. Drain and refresh; drain again.
3. Toss the noodles with the bean sprouts, carrots, daikon, green onion and sesame seeds. Add the dressing and toss gently until the noodles and vegetables are thoroughly coated.
4. Chill well. Serve mounds of this noodle salad as an appetizer or an accompaniment for grilled fish or chicken. Garnish with cilantro.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (112-g) serving: **Calories** 110, **Total fat** 4.5 g, **Saturated fat** .5 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 570 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 14 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Vitamin A** 40%, **Claims**—low cholesterol; low saturated fat

RECIPE 23.35

Potato Gnocchi

Yield: 8 Servings

Russet potatoes	3 lb.	1.4 kg
All-purpose flour	3–4 c.	720–960 ml
Egg yolks	3	3

Continued

Nutmeg	1/8 tsp.	1/2 ml
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
White pepper	TT	TT

1. Peel the potatoes, then steam or boil them until tender. Allow the potatoes to cool, then pass them through a potato ricer or food mill. Do not purée the potatoes with a mixer or food processor.
2. Place the potatoes in a mixing bowl and add 1 cup (250 milliliters) of the flour, the egg yolks, nutmeg, salt and pepper.
3. Knead the dough by hand, adding additional flour as necessary to form a soft dough that does not stick to your fingers.
4. Cut off a small piece of the dough and roll it into a long rope, about 3/4 inch (1.8 centimeters) thick. Cut the rope into 1-inch (2.5-centimeter) long pieces. Roll each piece quickly with the tines of a fork, then place on a sheet pan dusted with flour.
5. Bring a large pot of water to a full boil. Add the gnocchi all at once and stir gently. Cook until the gnocchi float to the surface, approximately 1 to 2 minutes. Gently lift the gnocchi out of the water with a slotted spoon.
6. Place the gnocchi in a warm bowl and toss with the desired sauce, or simply sprinkle with olive oil and grated Parmesan. Serve immediately.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 356, **Total fat** 3 g, **Saturated fat** .7 g, **Cholesterol** 80 mg, **Sodium** 280 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 73 g, **Protein** 10 g, **Vitamin C** 55%, **Iron** 22%

RECIPE 23.36

SPAETZLE

Yield: 30 3-oz. (90-g) Servings

Eggs	12	12
Water	1 qt.	1 lt
Flour	3 lb.	1.4 kg
Salt	2 tsp.	10 ml
Nutmeg	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Whole butter	8 oz.	250 g
Fresh parsley, chopped	as needed	as needed

1. Whisk the eggs to blend. Add the water, flour, salt and nutmeg. Mix until well blended; do not overmix.
2. Place the batter in a colander suspended over a large pot of boiling water. Work the batter through the colander's holes using a plastic bowl scraper or rubber spatula. The batter should drop into the boiling water.
3. Cook the dumplings in the boiling water for approximately 3–4 minutes. Remove them with a skimmer and refresh.
4. For service, sauté the dumplings lightly in butter, just until hot. Garnish with chopped parsley.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (90-g) serving: **Calories** 250, **Total fat** 9 g, **Saturated fat** 4.5 g, **Cholesterol** 100 mg, **Sodium** 250 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 35 g, **Protein** 7 g, **Vitamin A** 10%, **Iron** 15%

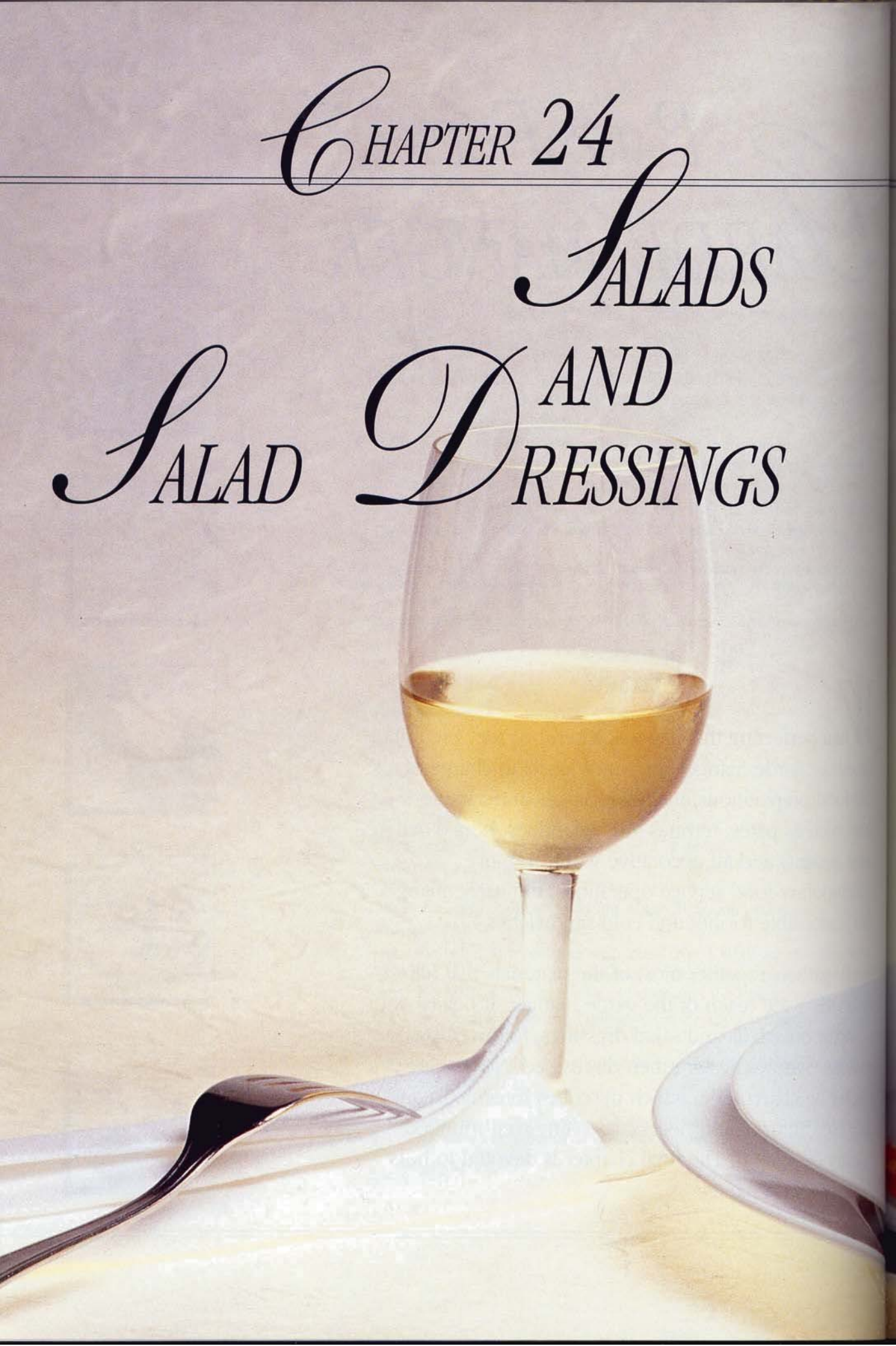
PART FOUR
GARDE MANGER

When perfecting the classic kitchen brigade, Escoffier placed the garde manger (or pantry chef) in charge of all cold food preparations, including salads and carcuterie items such as pâtés, terrines and galantines, hors d'oeuvre, some desserts and all decorative work. In more contemporary food service operations, the garde manger is also responsible for hot and cold sandwiches.

Part IV gathers together most of the materials that fall within the wide reach of the garde manger. It begins with a chapter on salads and salad dressings, followed by one on fruits. Sandwiches are then discusssed. Next, there is a chapter on charcuterie, which describes forcemeats and their uses, information necessary to any well-rounded culinary education. The final chapter is devoted to hors d'oeuvre and canapés.

CHAPTER 24

SALADS AND SALAD DRESSINGS



Gotham Bar & Grill,
New York, NY
Chef/Owner Alfred Portale

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- identify a variety of salad greens
- prepare a variety of salad dressings
- prepare a variety of salads
- present salads attractively

This chapter discusses all types of salads: the small plate of crisp iceberg lettuce with tomato wedges, cucumber slices and ranch dressing; the dinner plate of sautéed duck breast fanned across bright red grilled radicchio and toothy green arugula, sprayed with a vinaigrette dressing; the scoop of shredded chicken, mango chutney and seasonings, bound with mayonnaise; and the bowl of artichokes and mushrooms marinated in olive oil and lemon juice.

Each of these dishes fits the definition of a salad: a single food or a mix of different foods accompanied or bound by a dressing. A salad can contain meat, grains, fruits, nuts or cheese and absolutely no lettuce. It can be an appetizer, a second course served after the appetizer, an entrée (especially at lunch), a course following the entrée in the European manner or even dessert.

The color, texture and flavor of each salad ingredient should complement those of the others, and the dressing should complement all the ingredients. Harmony is critical to a salad's success—no matter what type of salad is being prepared.

This chapter opens with a section identifying greens commonly used in salads. A discussion of salad dressings follows. Finally, techniques for preparing green salads (both tossed and composed), bound salads, vegetable salads and fruit salads are discussed.

SALAD GREENS

Identifying Salad Greens

Salad greens are not necessarily green: Some are red, yellow, white or brown. They are all, however, leafy vegetables. Many are members of the lettuce or chicory families.

Lettuce

Lettuce (Fr. *laitue*; It. *lattuga*) has been consumed for nearly as long as people have kept records of what they and others ate. Archaeologists found that Persian royalty were served lettuce at their banquets more than 2500 years ago. Now grown and served worldwide, lettuces are members of the genus *Lactuca*. The most common types of lettuce are butterhead, crisp head, leaf and romaine.

Boston

Boston

Boston and bibb are two of the most popular butterhead lettuces. Their soft, pliable, pale green leaves have a buttery texture and flavor. Boston is larger and paler than bibb. Both Boston and bibb lettuce leaves form cups when separated from the heads; these cups make convenient bases for holding other foods on cold plates.

Iceberg

Iceberg

Iceberg lettuce is the most common of all lettuce varieties in the United States; it outsells all other varieties combined. Its tightly packed spherical head is composed of crisp, pale green leaves with a very mild flavor. Iceberg lettuce remains crisp for a relatively long time after being cut or prepared. Select heads that are firm but not hard and leaves that are free of burnt or rusty tips.

Leaf

Leaf lettuce grows in bunches. It has separate, ruffle-edged leaves branching from a stalk. Because it does not grow into a firm head, it is easily damaged during harvest and transport. Both red and green leaf lettuce have bright colors, mild flavors and tender leaves. Good-quality leaf lettuce should have nicely shaped leaves free of bruises, breaks or brown spots.

Red and Green Leaf Lettuces

Romaine

Romaine lettuce, also known as cos, is a loosely packed head lettuce with elongated leaves and thick midribs. Its outer leaves are dark green and although they look coarse, they are crisp, tender and tasty without being bitter. The core leaves are paler and more tender but still crisp. Romaine has enough flavor to stand up to strongly flavored dressings such as the garlic and Parmesan cheese used in a Caesar salad. A good-quality head of romaine has dark green outer leaves that are free of blemishes or yellowing.

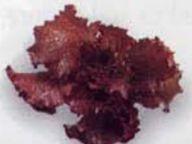
Romaine

Baby Lettuces

Innovative chefs are always looking for new and different foods to add a twist or flair to their dishes. This has led to the popularity of baby lettuces and other specialty greens. Baby greens have similar but more subtle flavors than their mature versions. They are often less bitter and are always more tender and delicate. Because of their size and variety, they are perfect for composed salads. **Mesclun** is a mixture of several kinds of baby lettuces.

Brune d'Hiver

Lola Rosa



Red Sails

Baby Green Bibb

Baby Red Bibb

Pirate

Baby Red Oak Leaf

Baby Red Romaine

Belgian Endive

Curly Endive

Escarole

Radicchio

Arugula

Dandelion

Chicory

Chicories come in a variety of colors, shapes and sizes; most are slightly bitter. Chicories are quite hearty and can also be cooked, usually grilled or braised.

Belgian Endive

Belgian endive grows in small, tight heads with pointed leaves. It is actually the shoot of a chicory root. The small sturdy leaves are white at the base with yellow fringes and tips. (A purple-tipped variety is sometimes available.) Whole leaves can be separated, trimmed and filled with soft butters, cheeses or spreads and served as an hors d'oeuvre. Or they can be used for composed salads. The leaves, cut or whole, can also be added to cold salads. Heads of Belgian endive are often braised or grilled and served with meat or poultry. As the name suggests, Belgian endive is imported from Belgium.

Curly Endive

In this country, curly endive is often called by its family name, chicory, or its French name, frisée. The dark green outer leaves are pointed, sturdy and slightly bitter. The yellow inner leaves are more tender and less bitter. Curly endive has a strong flavor that goes well with strong cheeses, game and citrus. It is often mixed with other greens to add texture and flavor.

Escarole

Escarole, sometimes called broadleaf endive, has thick leaves and a slightly bitter flavor. It has green outer leaves and pale green or yellow center leaves. Escarole is very sturdy and is often mixed with other greens for added texture. Its strong flavor stands up to full-flavored dressings and is a good accompaniment to grilled meats and poultry.

Radicchio

Radicchio resembles a small red cabbage. It retains its bright reddish color when cooked and is popular braised or grilled and served as a vegetable side dish. Because of its attractive color, radicchio is popular in cold salads, but it has a very bitter flavor and should be used sparingly and mixed with other greens in a tossed salad. The leaves form cups when separated and can be used to hold other ingredients when preparing composed salads. Radicchio is quite expensive and availability is sometimes limited.

Other Salad Greens and Ingredients

Leafy vegetables besides lettuce and chicory, as well as other ingredients, are used to add texture, flavor and color to salads. A partial listing follows.

Arugula

Arugula, also known as rocket, is a member of the cabbage family. Available as individual leaves, they are somewhat similar to broad dandelion leaves in size and shape. The best are 2 to 4 inches (5 to 10 centimeters) long. Arugula has a very strong, spicy, peppery flavor—so strong, in fact, that it is rarely served by itself. It is best when used to add zip to salads by combining it with other greens.

Dandelion

Dandelion grows as a weed throughout most of the United States. It has long, thin, toothed leaves with a prominent midrib. When purchasing dandelion for salads, look for small leaves. They are more tender and less bitter. Older, tougher leaves can be cooked and served as a vegetable.

Mâche

Mâche or lamb's lettuce is very tender and very delicately flavored. Its small, cuplike pale to dark green leaves have a slightly nutty flavor. Because its flavor is so delicate, mâche should be combined only with other delicately flavored greens such as Boston or bibb lettuce and dressed sparingly with a light vinaigrette dressing.

Mâche

Sorrel

Sorrel, sometimes called sourgrass, has leaves similar to spinach in color and shape. Sorrel has a very tart, lemony flavor that goes well with fish and shellfish. It should be used sparingly and combined with other greens in a salad. Sorrel can also be made into soups, sauces and purées.

Sorrel

Spinach

Like sorrel, spinach can be cooked or used as a salad green. As a salad green, it is popularly served wilted and tossed with a hot bacon dressing. Spinach is deep green with a rich flavor and tender texture. Good-quality spinach should be fairly crisp. Avoid wilted or yellowed bunches.

Spinach

Sprouts

Sprouts are not salad greens but are often used as such in salads and sandwiches. Sprouts are very young alfalfa, daikon or mustard plants. Alfalfa sprouts are very mild and sweet. Daikon and mustard sprouts are quite peppery.

Sprouts

Watercress

Watercress has tiny, dime-sized leaves and substantial stems. It has a peppery flavor and adds spice to a salad. Good-quality fresh watercress is dark green with no yellowing. To preserve its freshness, watercress must be kept very cold and moist. It is normally packed topped with ice. Individual leaves are plucked from the stems and rinsed just before service.

Watercress

Edible Flowers

Many specialty produce growers offer edible, pesticide-free blossoms. They are used for salads and as garnishes wherever a splash of color would be appreciated. Some flowers such as nasturtiums, calendulas and pansies are grown and picked specifically for eating. Others, such as yellow cucumber flowers and squash blossoms, are byproducts of the vegetable industry.

Nasturtiums

Squash blossoms and other very large flowers should be cut in julienne strips before being added to salads. Pick petals from large and medium-sized flowers. Smaller whole flowers can be tossed in a salad or used as a garnish when composing a salad. Very small flowers or petals should be sprinkled on top of a salad so that they are not hidden by the greens.

Calendulas

Pansies

Fresh Herbs

Basil, thyme, tarragon, oregano, dill, cilantro, marjoram, mint, sage, savory and even rosemary are used to add interesting flavors to otherwise ordinary salads. Because many herbs have strong flavors, use them sparingly so that the delicate flavors of the greens are not overpowered. Leafy herbs such as basil and sage can be cut chiffonade. Other herbs can be picked from their stems or chopped before being tossed with the salad greens. Flowering herbs such

Flower Safety

Many flowers and blossoms are toxic, especially those grown from bulbs. Even flowers that would otherwise be edible may contain pesticides that can be harmful if ingested. Use only flowers grown specifically for use as food; purchase edible flowers only from reputable purveyors.

TABLE 24.1 NUTRITIONAL VALUES OF SELECTED SALAD GREENS AND DRESSINGS

Salad greens per 4-oz. (112-g) serving, trimmed Salad dressings per 1-oz. (28-g) serving	Kcal	Protein (g)	Carbohydrates (g)	Fiber (g)	Total Fat (g)	Vitamin A (I.U.)	Vitamin C (mg)	Calcium (mg)	Iron (mg)
Belgian endive	20	1.6	3.6	1.2	0.4	2052	8	52	0.8
Boston lettuce	16	1.6	2.8	1.2	0.4	816	6.7	mq	0.2
Chicory greens	28	2	5.2	0.8	0.4	14,400	88	360	3.2
Dandelion greens	52	3.2	10.4	2	0.8	mq	mq	mq	mq
Iceberg lettuce	16	1.2	2.4	1.2	0.4	383	5.8	23	0.6
Romaine lettuce	20	2	2.8	2	0.4	2912	28	40	1.2
Blue cheese dressing	143	1.4	2.1	<0.1	14.8	32	<1	12	tr
Mayonnaise	110	0.3	6.8	0	9.5	32	0	2	tr
Vinaigrette	67	<0.1	2.3	mq	6.5	0	0	0	0

The Corinne T. Netzer Encyclopedia of Food Values 1992
mq = measurable quantity, but data is unavailable tr = trace amounts

as chive blossoms are used like other edible flowers to add color, flavor and aroma. Refer to Chapter 7, Kitchen Staples, for more information on herbs.

Nutrition

Salad greens are an especially healthful food. Greens contain virtually no fat and few calories and are high in vitamins A and C, iron and fiber. But when garnished with meat and cheese and tossed with a dressing (many of which are oil based), fat and calories are added. In an attempt to maintain the healthful nature of greens, low-fat or fat-free dressings should be available to customers.

Purchasing and Storing Salad Greens

Purchasing

Lettuces are grown in nearly every part of the United States; nearly all types are available year-round. Other important salad greens such as spinach are available all year; many of the specialty greens are seasonal.

Lettuce is generally packed in cases of 24 heads with varying weights. Other salad greens are packed in trays or boxes of various sizes and weights.

Because salad greens are simply washed and eaten, it is extremely important that they be as fresh and blemish-free as possible. Try to purchase salad greens daily. All greens should be fresh looking, with no yellowing. Heads should be heavy, with little or no damage to the outer leaves.

Many types of salad greens are available precut and prewashed. These greens are often vacuum-packed to increase shelf life, although delicate greens are sometimes loosely packaged in 5- to 10-pound (2- to 5-kilo) boxes. Precut and prewashed greens are relatively expensive, but can reduce labor costs dramatically.

Storing

Although some types of salad greens are hearty enough to keep for a week or more under proper conditions, all salad greens are highly perishable. Generally, softer-leaved varieties such as Boston and bibb tend to perish more quickly than the crisper-leaved varieties such as iceberg and romaine.

Greens should be stored in their original protective cartons in a specifically designated refrigerator. Ideally, greens should be stored at temperatures between 34°F and 38°F (1°C–3°C). (Most other vegetables should be stored at warmer temperatures of 40°F–50°F [4°C–10°C].) Greens should not be stored with tomatoes, apples or other fruits that emit ethylene gas, which causes greens to wilt and accelerates spoilage.

Do not wash greens until you need them, as excess water causes them to deteriorate quickly.

Preparing Salad Greens

Unless salad greens are purchased precut and prewashed, they will need to undergo some preparation before service, principally tearing, cutting, washing and drying.

Tearing and Cutting

Some chefs want all salad greens torn by hand. Delicate greens such as butterhead and baby lettuces look nicer, and it is less likely they will be bruised if hand-torn. But often it is not practical to hand-tear all greens. It is perfectly acceptable to cut hardy greens with a knife.

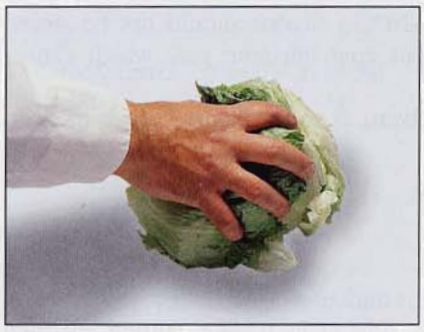
Procedure for Cutting Romaine Lettuce

1. To cut romaine lettuce, trim the outer leaves and damaged tips with a chef's knife and split the head lengthwise.

2. Make one or two cuts along the length of the head, leaving the root intact, then cut across the width of the head.

Alternative method: Trim the outer leaves and damaged tips with a chef's knife. Pull the leaves from the core and cut the rib out of each leaf. The leaf can then be cut to the desired size.

Procedure for Coring Iceberg Lettuce



1. Loosen the core by gripping the head and smacking the core on the cutting board. (Do not use too much force or you may bruise the lettuce.)

2. Remove the core and cut the lettuce as desired.

Procedure for Removing the Midrib from Spinach

Fold the leaf in half and pull off the stem and midrib. Only the tender leaf should remain.

Washing

All lettuces and other salad greens should be washed before use. Even though they may look clean, greens may harbor hidden insects, sand, soil and pesticides. All greens should be washed after they are torn or cut. Whole heads can be washed by repeatedly dipping them in cold water and allowing them to drain. But washing whole heads is not recommended: It will not remove anything trapped near the head's center, and water trapped in the leaves can accelerate spoilage.

Procedure for Washing Salad Greens

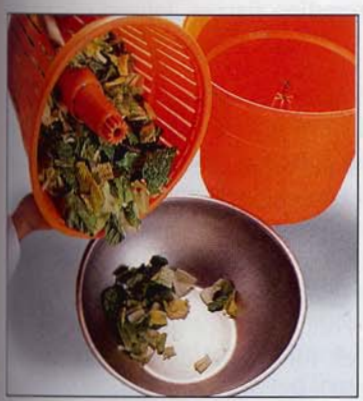
1. Fill a sink with very cold water. Place the cut or torn greens in the water.

2. Gently stir the water and greens with your hands and remove the greens. Do not allow the greens to soak. Using fresh water each time, repeat the procedure until no grit can be detected on the bottom of the sink after the greens are removed.

Drying

Salad greens should be dried after washing. Wet greens do not stay as crisp as thoroughly dried ones. Also, wet greens tend to repel oil-based dressings and dilute their flavors. Greens may be dried by draining them well in a colander and blotting them with absorbent cloth or paper towels, or, preferably, they can be dried in a salad spinner, which uses centrifugal force to remove the water.

Procedure for Drying Greens



After washing the greens, place them in the basket of a salad spinner and spin for approximately 30 seconds.

Salad Dressings

A dressing is a sauce for a salad. Just as sauces for hot foods should complement rather than mask the flavor of the principal food, the sauce (dressing) for a salad should complement rather than mask the flavors of the other ingredients. Although a great many ingredients can be used to make salad dressings, most are based on either a mixture of oil and vinegar, called a vinaigrette, or a mayonnaise or other emulsified product.

Vinaigrette-style dressings can be made without oil; creamy dressings similar to mayonnaise-based dressings can be made with sour cream, yogurt or buttermilk instead of mayonnaise. Nevertheless, for all practical purposes these dressings are still prepared like vinaigrettes and mayonnaise-based dressings and they are treated that way here.

Vinaigrette Dressings

The simple vinaigrette, also known as **basic French dressing**, is a temporary emulsion of oil and vinegar seasoned with salt and pepper. The standard ratio is three parts oil to one part vinegar. The ratio can vary, however. When using strongly flavored oils, less than three parts oil to one part vinegar generally suffices. In some recipes, all or part of the vinegar is replaced with citrus juice, in which case, it may take more than one part vinegar and citrus juice to three parts oil to achieve the proper acidity level. The best way to determine the correct ratio of oil to vinegar is to taste the dressing, preferably on the food it will dress.

Oils and vinegars have unique flavors that can be mixed and matched to achieve the correct balance for a particular salad. Olive oil goes well with red wine vinegar; nut oils go well with balsamic or sherry vinegars. Neutral-flavored oils such as canola, corn or safflower can be mixed with a flavored vinegar.

Oil and vinegar repel each other and will separate almost immediately when mixed. They should be whisked together immediately before use.

Oils

Many types of oil can be used to make salad dressings. Light, neutral-flavored oils such as canola, corn, cottonseed, soybean and safflower are relatively low priced and used extensively for this purpose. Other oils can be used to add flavor. Olive oil is very popular; both mild-flavored pure olive oil and full-flavored extra virgin olive oil are used. Nut oils such as hazelnut and walnut are expensive, but they add unique and interesting flavors. Infused oils are also popular.

Vinegars

Many different vinegars can be used to make salad dressings. Red wine vinegar is the most common because it is inexpensive and its flavor blends well with many foods. But other vinegars such as cider, balsamic and white wine are also used. Fruit-flavored vinegars (particularly raspberry) are extremely popular and widely available, as are herb- and garlic-flavored ones.

Flavored vinegars are easy to make. Fruit, herbs or garlic are added to a wine vinegar (either red or white) and left for several days for the flavors to blend. The vinegar is then strained off and used as desired.

Acidic juices such as lemon, orange and lime are sometimes substituted for all or part of the vinegar in a salad dressing.

Other Flavoring Ingredients

Herbs, spices, shallots, garlic, mustard and sugar are only a few of the many flavoring ingredients used to enhance a vinaigrette dressing. Items such as herbs, shallots and garlic should be minced or chopped before being added to the dressing. If dried herbs are used, the dressing should rest for at least 1 hour to allow the flavors to develop. Other ingredients may be added at any time.

Procedure for Preparing a Vinaigrette

1. Choose an oil and vinegar that complement each other as well as the foods they will dress.
2. Combine the vinegar, seasonings and any other flavorings in a bowl.
3. Whisk in the oil.
4. Allow the finished dressing to rest a few hours at room temperature before using so that the flavors can blend.
5. Rewhisk immediately before use.

RECIPE 24.1

Basic Vinaigrette Dressing

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Wine vinegar	8 oz.	250 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Salad oil	24 oz.	750 ml

1. Combine all ingredients and mix well. Store at room temperature.

Variations: Dijon vinaigrette—Add 4 ounces (120 grams) Dijon-style mustard to the vinegar and proceed with the recipe.

Herbed vinaigrette—Add 2 tablespoons (30 milliliters) of fresh herbs or 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) dried herbs such as basil, tarragon, thyme, marjoram and/or chives to the vinaigrette.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-ml) serving: **Calories** 190, **Total fat** 22 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 75 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 0 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—no cholesterol; low sodium; no sugar

Whisking together the vinaigrette dressing.

Mayonnaise

Although most food service operations buy commercially made mayonnaise, every chef should know how it is made to more fully understand how to use it and why it reacts the way it does when used. Knowing how to make mayonnaise also allows you to create a mayonnaise with the exact flavorings you want.

Mayonnaise is an **emulsified sauce**. An emulsified sauce is formed when two liquids that would not ordinarily form a stable mixture are forced together and held in suspension. To make mayonnaise, oil is whisked together with a very small amount of vinegar. (It is the water in the vinegar that does not normally mix with oil.) As the oil and vinegar are whisked together, the oil breaks into microscopic droplets that are separated from each other by a thin barrier of vinegar. If left alone, the droplets would quickly regroup, forming a large puddle of oil and a small puddle of vinegar. To prevent the oil droplets from regrouping, an emulsifier is added. For mayonnaise, the emulsifier is lecithin, a protein found in egg yolks. (The acid in the vinegar also helps form the emulsion.) Lecithin has the unique ability to combine with both oil and water. It surrounds the oil droplets, preventing them from coming in contact with each other and regrouping.

The balance of vinegar, oil, lecithin and agitation (whipping) is crucial to achieve a proper emulsion. The higher the proportion of oil to vinegar, the thicker the sauce will be. The higher the proportion of vinegar to oil, the thinner the sauce will be. (For example, the emulsified vinaigrette dressing discussed on page 694 is a thin emulsion.)

Mayonnaise vs. Salad Dressing

Commercially prepared salad dressing is often used as a substitute for "real" mayonnaise. Although it may look, smell and spread like the real thing, salad dressing tends to be sweeter than mayonnaise. Salad dressing costs less than real mayonnaise because it is made without egg yolks, relying instead on chemical thickening agents. The cost is reduced further because the FDA requires salad dressing to contain only 30% oil, while mayonnaise must contain at least 65% oil.

There is a limit to how much oil each egg yolk can emulsify, however. One yolk contains enough lecithin to emulsify approximately 7 ounces (200 milliliters) of oil. If more than that amount of oil per egg yolk is added, the sauce will break; that is, the oil and vinegar will separate, and the mayonnaise will become very thin.

Ingredients

A neutral-flavored vegetable oil is most often used for a standard mayonnaise. Other oils are used to contribute their special flavors. For example, olive oil is used to make a special mayonnaise called *aïoli*.

Wine vinegar is used for a standard mayonnaise. Flavored vinegars such as tarragon vinegar are often used to create unique flavors.

Seasonings vary according to the intended use but typically include dry mustard, salt, pepper and lemon juice.

Procedure for Preparing Mayonnaise

1. Gather all ingredients and hold at room temperature. Room-temperature ingredients emulsify more easily than cold ones.
2. By hand or in an electric mixer or food processor, whip the egg yolks on high speed until frothy.
3. Add the seasonings to the yolks and whip to combine. Salt and other seasonings will dissolve or blend more easily when added at this point rather than if added to the finished mayonnaise.
4. Add a small amount of the liquid (for example, vinegar) from the recipe and whip to combine.
5. With the mixer on high or whisking vigorously by hand, begin to add the oil very slowly until an emulsion forms.
6. After the emulsion forms, the oil can be added a little more quickly but still in a slow, steady stream. The mayonnaise can now be whipped at a slightly slower speed.
7. The mayonnaise will become very thick as more oil is added. A small amount of liquid can be added if it becomes too thick. Alternate between oil and liquid two or three times until all the oil is added and the correct consistency is reached. *Important:* A large egg yolk has the ability to emulsify up to 7 ounces (200 milliliters) of oil; adding more oil may cause the mayonnaise to break.
8. Adjust the seasonings and refrigerate immediately.

RECIPE 24.2

Mayonnaise

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Egg yolks	4	4
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
White pepper	TT	TT
Dry mustard	1 tsp.	5 ml
Wine vinegar	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Salad oil	28 oz.	840 ml
Lemon juice	TT	TT

1. Place the egg yolks in the bowl of a mixer and whip on high speed until frothy.
2. Add the dry ingredients and half the vinegar to the yolks; whisk to combine.
3. Begin to add the oil a drop at a time until the mixture begins to thicken and an emulsion beings to form.
4. Add the remaining oil in a slow steady stream, thinning the mayonnaise occasionally by adding a little vinegar. Continue until all the oil and vinegar have been incorporated.
5. Adjust the seasonings and add lemon juice to taste.
6. Refrigerate until needed.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 230, **Total fat** 26 g, **Saturated fat** 3.5 g, **Cholesterol** 25 mg, **Sodium** 75 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 0 g, **Protein** 0 g

1. Whipping the egg yolks until frothy.

2. Adding the oil very slowly, allowing the emulsion to form.

3. The finished mayonnaise.

Mayonnaise-Based Dressings

Mayonnaise-based salad dressings are salad dressings that use mayonnaise as a base, with other ingredients added for flavor, color and texture. These ingredients include dairy products (especially buttermilk and sour cream), vinegar, fruit juice, vegetables (either puréed or minced), tomato paste, garlic, onions, herbs, spices, condiments, capers, anchovies and boiled eggs. Recipes for several mayonnaise-based salad dressings are at the end of this chapter.

Emulsified Vinaigrette Dressings

An emulsified vinaigrette is a standard vinaigrette dressing emulsified with whole eggs. An emulsified vinaigrette dressing is thinner and lighter than a mayonnaise-based dressing and heavier than a basic vinaigrette. Its flavor is similar to a basic vinaigrette, but it will not separate and it clings to greens quite easily.

Procedure for Preparing an Emulsified Vinaigrette Dressing

1. Gather all ingredients and hold at room temperature. Room-temperature ingredients emulsify more easily than cold ones.
2. Whip the eggs until frothy.
3. Add the dry ingredients and any flavorings such as garlic, shallots and herbs.
4. Add a small amount of the liquid from the recipe and whip to incorporate the ingredients.

CONVENIENCE PRODUCTS

A great many prepared and dry-mix salad dressings are available. Although they vary greatly in quality, they can be very economical; they reduce labor costs and sometimes food costs. Some of these products use stabilizers, artificial flavorings and colors; nearly all contain preservatives. When considering the advantages of prepared or dry-mix salad dressings, always keep quality in mind.

5. With the mixer on high or whisking vigorously by hand, begin adding the oil very slowly until the emulsion forms.
6. After the emulsion is formed, the oil can be added a little more quickly, but still in a slow, steady stream.
7. Alternate between oil and liquid two or three times until all the oil is added. The dressing should be much thinner than mayonnaise. If it is too thick, it can be thinned with a little water, vinegar or lemon juice. Determine which to use by first tasting the dressing.

RECIPE 24.3

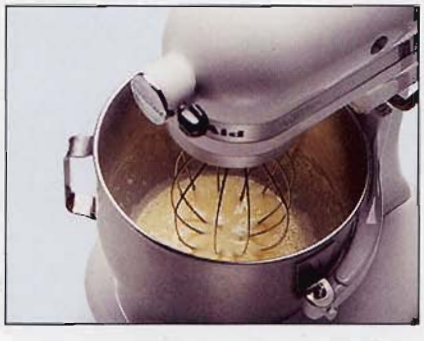
EMULSIFIED VINAIGRETTE DRESSING

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Eggs, whole	2	2
Salt	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
White pepper	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Paprika	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Dry mustard	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Granulated sugar	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Herbes de Provence	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Cayenne pepper	TT	TT
Wine vinegar or cider vinegar	4 oz.	120 ml
Salad oil	24 oz.	720 ml
Lemon juice	3 oz.	90 ml

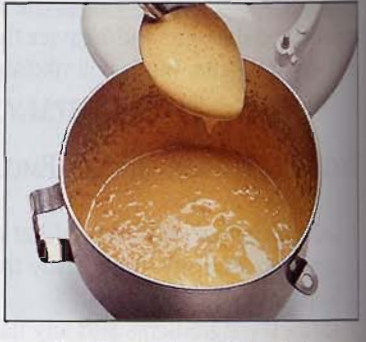
1. Place the eggs in the bowl of a mixer and whip at high speed until frothy.
2. Add the dry ingredients and approximately 1 ounce (30 grams) of vinegar to the eggs; whip to combine.
3. While whipping at high speed, begin adding the oil very slowly until a emulsion forms.
4. Add the remaining oil in a slow, steady stream. Occasionally thin the dressing by adding a little vinegar and lemon juice. Continue until all the oil, vinegar and lemon juice have been incorporated.
5. Adjust the flavor and consistency.
6. Refrigerate until needed.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-ml) serving: **Calories** 200, **Total fat** 22 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 220 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 1 g



1. Whipping the whole eggs.

2. Adding the oil drop by drop to establish the emulsion.



3. The finished emulsified vinaigrette dressing.

PREPARATION METHODS

There are two types of **green salads**: tossed and composed. The more informal **tossed salad** is prepared by placing the greens, garnishes and dressing in a large bowl and tossing to combine. A **composed salad** usually has a more elegant look. It is prepared by arranging each of the ingredients on plates in an artistic fashion.

Other types of salads include **bound salads**, which are cooked meats, poultry, fish, shellfish, pasta or potatoes bound with a dressing, **vegetable salads** and **fruit salads**.

Green Salads

Tossed Salads

Tossed salads are made from leafy vegetables such as lettuce, spinach, watercress, arugula or dandelion greens. They may consist only of greens and dressing, or they can be garnished with fruits, vegetables, nuts or cheese. They can be dressed with many different types of dressings, from a light oil and vinegar to a hearty hot bacon. It is important that salad dressings be added at the last possible moment before service. Acidic dressings cause most greens to wilt and become soggy.

Matching Dressings and Salad Greens

There is a simple rule to follow when choosing dressings for salads: The more delicate the texture and flavor of the greens or other ingredients, the lighter and more subtle the dressing should be. Vinaigrette-based dressings are much lighter than mayonnaise-based or similar dressings and should be used with butterhead lettuces, mâche or other delicate greens. Crisp head lettuce like iceberg and hardy lettuce like romaine can stand up to heavier, mayonnaise-based or similar dressings.

TABLE 24.2 MATCHING DRESSINGS AND SALAD GREENS

Dressing	Greens
Vinaigrette dressing made with vegetable oil and red wine vinegar	Any greens: iceberg, romaine, leaf lettuce, butterhead lettuce, escarole, curly endive, Belgian endive, radicchio, baby lettuces, sorrel, arugula, dandelion
Vinaigrette dressing made with a nut oil and balsamic vinegar	Delicate greens: butterhead lettuce, bibb lettuce, Belgian endive, radicchio, baby lettuces, arugula, mâche, watercress
Emulsified vinaigrette dressing	Any greens: romaine, leaf lettuce, butterhead lettuce, escarole, curly endive, Belgian endive, radicchio, baby lettuces, sorrel, arugula, watercress
Mayonnaise-based dressing such as blue cheese or green goddess	Hardy greens: iceberg, romaine, leaf lettuce, escarole, curly endive, sorrel, dandelion

Salad Garnishes

It is impossible to make a complete list of the garnishes that can be combined with salad greens for a tossed salad. A partial list includes:

- Vegetables—nearly any vegetable—raw, blanched or fully cooked—cut into appropriate sizes and uniform shapes.
- Fruits—citrus segments, apples or pears; dried fruits such as raisins, currants or apricots.
- Meats, poultry, fish and shellfish—cooked meats and poultry sliced or diced neatly and uniformly; poached, grilled or cured fish, diced or flaked; small, whole cooked shellfish such as shrimp and scallops; lobster or crab sliced, diced or chopped.
- Cheeses—grated hard cheeses such as Parmesan, Romano or Asiago; semi-hard cheese such as cheddar and Swiss, cut julienne or shredded.
- Nuts—nearly any are appropriate, roasted, candied or smoked.
- Croutons—assorted breads, seasoned in various ways and toasted.

Procedure for Making Tossed Salads

1. Select greens with various colors, textures and flavors.
2. Carefully cut or tear, wash and dry the greens.
3. Prepare the garnishes as directed or desired.
4. Prepare the dressing.
5. Combine the greens, garnishes and dressing by tossing them together. Or toss the greens and garnishes and, using a spray bottle, spray the greens with the dressing.

A simple mesclun salad.

RECIPE 24.4

Mesclun Salad with Raspberry Vinaigrette

Yield: 6 Servings

Baby lettuces, assorted	approx. 8 heads	approx. 8 heads
Mâche	4 oz.	120 g
Fresh herbs	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Edible flowers	approx. 12	approx. 12
Raspberry Vinaigrette (Recipe 24.9)	4 oz.	120 ml

1. Trim, wash and dry the baby lettuces and mâche.
2. Pick the fresh herbs from their stems. If using leafy herbs such as basil, they may be cut chiffonade or left as whole leaves.
3. If desired, pick the petals from the edible flowers. Small flowers may be left whole.
4. Place the lettuces and mâche in a bowl and add the herbs. Ladle the dressing over them and toss gently, using two spoons.
5. Transfer the salads to cold plates. Some of the larger leaves may be used as liners if desired.
6. Garnish each salad with flowers or flower petals.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 150, **Total fat** 9 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 180 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 14 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Vitamin A** 35%, **Vitamin C** 120%

Composed Salads

Composed green salads usually use a green as a base and are built by artistically arranging other ingredients on the plate. There are usually four components: the base, body, garnish and dressing.

The **base** is usually a layer of salad greens that line the plate on which the salad will be served. Depending upon the desired effect, the leaves can be cup-shaped or flat.

The **body** is the main ingredient. It can be lettuce or other greens, or another salad made from cooked or blended ingredients, such as chicken salad or fruit.

The **garnish** is added to the salad for color, texture and flavor. It can be as substantial as a grilled, sliced duck breast or as simple as a sprinkling of chopped herbs; it can be warm or cold. The choice is unlimited, but whatever is used should always complement and balance the flavor of the body.

The salad **dressing** should complement rather than mask the other flavors in the salad. If the body already contains a dressing, such as a bound salad, additional dressing may not be necessary.

Composed green salads are usually dressed by ladling the dressing over the salad after it is plated. Alternatively, the individual ingredients can be dressed before they are arranged on the plate. A third method that may be limited by the intricacy of the salad but will save precious time during a busy period is to prepare individual salads on a sheet pan. Then, just before service, mist them with dressing using a spray bottle designated for this purpose; then transfer them to chilled plates using a spatula.

Transferring composed salads to chilled plates for service.

Procedure for Making Composed Salads

1. Gather all ingredients for the salad and wash, trim, cut, cook, chill or otherwise prepare them as necessary or as called for in the recipe.
2. Arrange all ingredients artistically on the plates, dressing each ingredient as desired or as directed in the recipe.
3. At service time, heat or cook any items that are being served hot and add them to the salad.

1. Lining a cold salad plate with a base of lettuce leaves.

2. Arranging the remaining ingredients for the salad.

RECIPE 24.5

Salad Niçoise

Yield: 6 Servings

Red wine vinegar	4 oz.	120 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Virgin olive oil	12 oz.	360 ml
Basil leaves, chiffonade	12	12
Chicory	1 head	1 head
Tomatoes	6	6
Cucumbers	1 lb. 8 oz.	680 g
Green beans	12 oz.	340 g
Eggs, hard-boiled	6	6
Artichokes	6	6
Romaine lettuce, large leaves, washed	12	12
Green bell peppers, batonnet	2	2
Tuna, fresh, grilled and chilled	1 lb. 8 oz.	680 g
Niçoise olives	4 oz.	120 g

1. Make a vinaigrette dressing using the red wine vinegar, salt, pepper, olive oil and basil leaves.
2. Wash and dry the chicory.
3. Core and cut each tomato into 8 wedges.
4. Peel and slice the cucumbers.
5. Trim and cook the green beans al dente.
6. Peel the eggs and cut into wedges.
7. Cook the artichokes. Trim the outer leaves from each artichoke leaving only the heart. Remove the choke from the heart and cut each heart into quarters.
8. Line each cold plate with two romaine lettuce leaves, then arrange the remaining ingredients artistically. Use the contrasting shapes, colors and textures to create an attractive presentation.
9. At service, whisk the dressing to combine the ingredients and pour approximately 2 1/2 ounces (75 milliliters) over each salad.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 890, **Total fat** 70 g, **Saturated fat** 11 g, **Cholesterol** 200 mg, **Sodium** 760 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 21 g, **Protein** 44 g, **Vitamin A** 130%, **Vitamin C** 60%, **Iron** 30%

Bound Salads

The creative chef can prepare a wide variety of salads by combining cooked meats, poultry, fish, shellfish, potatoes, pasta, grains and/or legumes with a dressing and garnishes. Although the combinations vary greatly, these salads are grouped here because their ingredients are all bound. That is, each salad consists of one or more ingredients held together in a cohesive mass. The binding agent can be either a vinaigrette or mayonnaise-based or similar dressing. The ingredients should be evenly distributed throughout, and the degree of cohesiveness can range from tightly packed to flaky and easily separated.

The foods that can be used to produce bound salads are so varied that it is impossible to list them all. Generalizing preparation techniques is also very difficult. There are as many ways to prepare a bound salad as there are ingredients, dressings and garnishes.

Bound salads can be used as the body of a composed salad (for instance, a serving of egg salad on a bed of greens). Some are used in sandwiches but not ordinarily as side dishes—for example, tuna or chicken salad. Some are served as side dishes but not in sandwiches, for example, potato or pasta salad. Follow specific recipes and traditional uses for each salad until you are confident enough in your skills to let your imagination take over.

Guidelines for Making Bound Salads

1. Preparing a salad from cooked foods is a good opportunity to use leftovers, but be sure they are fresh and of good quality. The finished salad can only be as good as each of its ingredients.
2. When making a bound salad, choose ingredients whose flavors blend well and complement each other.
3. Choose ingredients for color; a few colorful ingredients will turn a plain salad into a spectacular one.
4. To improve appearance, cut all ingredients the same size and shape. If the main ingredient is diced, then dice the other ingredients. Avoid combining diced, sliced and julienned foods in the same salad.
5. All ingredients should be cut into pieces that are small enough to be eaten easily with a fork.
6. Be sure all meats, poultry, fish and shellfish are fully cooked before using them. Undercooked foods can cause food-borne illness and spoilage.
7. Always chill cooked ingredients well before using them. Warm ingredients promote bacterial growth, especially in mayonnaise-based salads.
8. Always use dressings sparingly. They should enhance the flavors of the other salad ingredients, not mask them.

RECIPE 24.6

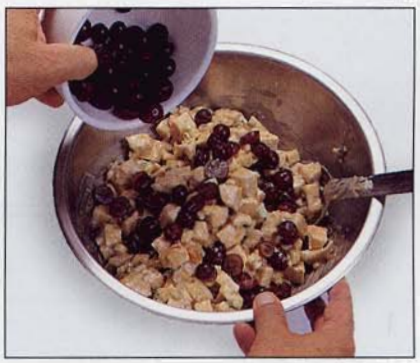
CHUTNEY CHICKEN SALAD

Yield: 8 lb. (3.6 kg)

Chicken meat, cooked	5 lb.	2.2 kg
Celery, small dice	8 oz.	250 g
Green onion, sliced	3 oz.	90 g
Mango chutney	12 oz.	340 g
Mayonnaise	1 lb.	500 g
Seedless grapes	12 oz.	340 g

1. Remove any bones, skin and fat from the chicken and cut the meat into large dice.
2. Combine the chicken meat, celery, green onions, mango chutney and mayonnaise in a bowl; mix well.
3. Cut the grapes in half. Add them to the chicken mixture and toss gently to combine.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (116-g) serving: **Calories** 230, **Total fat** 14 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 70 mg, **Sodium** 135 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 4 g, **Protein** 22 g



Adding grapes to chicken salad.

Vegetable Salads

Vegetable salads are made from cooked or raw vegetables or a combination of both. They can be served on buffets, as an appetizer or salad course. As with other salads, vegetable salads must successfully combine color, texture and flavor. Some vegetable salads such as coleslaw and carrot-raisin salad are made with mayonnaise. Most, however, are made by either marinating the vegetables or combining them in a vinaigrette dressing.

Almost any vegetable can be successfully marinated. The amount of time depends on the vegetables and the marinade, but several hours to overnight is usually sufficient for flavors to blend. Soft vegetables such as mushrooms, zucchini and cucumbers can be added directly to a cold marinade. Hard vegetables such as carrots and cauliflower should be blanched in salted water, refreshed, drained and then added to a cold marinade. Carrots, artichokes, mushrooms, cauliflower, zucchini, pearl onions and the like are sometimes simmered quickly in a marinade flavored with lemon juice and olive oil, and then served cold. This style is called *à la grecque.*

Many marinated salads will last several days under proper refrigeration. As the salads age in the marinade, they will change in appearance and texture. This may or may not be desirable. For example, mushrooms and artichokes become more flavorful, while green vegetables are discolored by the acids in the marinade. If marinated salads are prepared in advance, check their appearance as well as their seasonings carefully at service time.

Procedure for Preparing Vegetable Salads

1. Gather and wash all vegetables.
2. Trim, cut, shred or otherwise prepare the vegetables as desired or as directed in the recipe.
3. Blanch or cook the vegetables if necessary.
4. Combine the vegetables with the marinade or dressing. Adjust the seasonings.

RECIPE 24.7

Tomato and Asparagus Salad with Fresh Mozzarella

Yield: 6 Servings

Asparagus	2 lb.	1 kg
Vinaigrette Dressing (Recipe 24.1)	1 pt.	450 ml
Tomatoes	6	6
Leaf lettuce	1 head	1 head
Fresh mozzarella	12 oz.	340 g
Basil leaves	12	12

1. Trim and blanch the asparagus in salted water. Refresh, drain and marinate in 8 ounces (250 grams) of the vinaigrette dressing for approximately 15 minutes.
2. Remove the core and cut each tomato into 6 wedges.
3. Clean the lettuce and separate the leaves.
4. Slice the mozzarella into 18 slices.

5. Cut the basil leaves chiffonade.
6. Arrange the tomatoes, cheese and asparagus on plates using the lettuce as a base. Pour on the remaining dressing and garnish with the basil.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 410, **Total fat** 32 g, **Saturated fat** 9 g, **Cholesterol** 35 mg, **Sodium** 370 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 11 g, **Protein** 19 g, **Vitamin A** 20%, **Vitamin C** 110%, **Calcium** 40%

Fruit Salads

There are so many different fruits with beautiful bright colors and sweet delicious flavors that preparing fruit salads is easy work. Fruit salads are a refreshing addition to buffets and can be served as the first course of a lunch or dinner. A more elaborate fruit salad can be served as a light lunch.

Always prepare fruit salads as close to service time as possible. The flesh of many types of fruit becomes soft and translucent if cut long before service. Other fruits turn brown in a matter of minutes after cutting. Refer to Chapter 25, Fruits, for more information on this browning reaction and for information on specific fruits. Fruit salad recipes are found at the end of that chapter.

If a fruit salad is dressed at all, the dressing is usually sweet and made with honey or yogurt mixed with fruit juices or purées. Alternatively, Grand Marnier, crème de menthe or other liqueurs sprinkled over the salad can serve as a dressing. Fruit salads can be tossed or composed. Either should offer the consumer a pleasing blend of colors, shapes, sizes, flavors and textures.

Conclusion

A salad can be a small part of a meal or the entire meal. There are many styles of salads, and a seemingly endless variety of foods can be used to prepare them. Salads are extremely popular, especially with those interested in lighter dining alternatives. You can tempt these diners by determining the appropriate style of the salads and skillfully combining the main ingredients and dressing to achieve a delicious and appealing balance of colors, textures and flavors.

Questions for Discussion

1. Name several factors that will cause salad greens to wilt or deteriorate.
2. Describe the proper procedure for washing and drying lettuce.
3. Explain the difference between a vinaigrette and an emulsified vinaigrette dressing.
4. Describe the procedure for making mayonnaise. How can the flavor of a mayonnaise be altered?
5. Explain what happens to the ingredients when an emulsion "breaks." How can it sometimes be repaired?
6. Describe a typical bound salad. How does a bound salad differ from a dressed salad?
7. List five ways salads can be presented or offered on a menu.

ADDITIONAL SALAD RECIPES

RECIPE 24.8

SEAFOOD SALAD

NOTE: This dish appears in the Chapter Opening photograph.

GOTHAM BAR AND GRILL, NEW YORK, NY
Chef/Owner Alfred Portale

Yield: 4 Servings

Lobster, 1 lb. 8 oz. (680 g)	1	1
Court bouillon	4 qt.	4 lt
Sea scallops	4 oz.	120 g
Squid, cleaned	3 oz.	90 g
Mussels, debearded	12	12
Avocado	1	1
Frisée	1 head	1 head
Baby red oak	1 head	1 head
Shallot, finely minced	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Fresh basil, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh chives, finely minced	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh Italian parsley, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Lemon Vinaigrette (recipe follows)	as needed	as needed
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT

1. Boil the lobster in the court bouillon, then chill it. Remove the meat from the shell; dice it.
2. Poach the sea scallops and squid in the same court bouillon. Cool and thinly slice them.
3. Steam the mussels in a portion of the court bouillon. Chill and remove the meat from the shells.
4. Peel, pit, quarter and thinly slice the ripe avocado.
5. Wash and dry the greens.
6. Toss the shellfish with the shallots, herbs and a portion of the vinaigrette. Dress the lettuces and avocado.
7. Season all with salt and white pepper. Arrange the lettuces, shellfish and fanned avocado on four plates.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 600, **Total fat** 34 g, **Saturated fat** 3.5 g, **Cholesterol** 2[illegible] mg, **Sodium** 1790 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 11 g, **Protein** 63 g, **Vitamin A** 30%, **Vitamin C** 50%, **Iron** 45%

LEMON VINAIGRETTE

Yield: 14 oz. (400 ml)

Dijon-style mustard	1 tsp.	5 ml
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
Red wine vinegar	1 oz.	30 ml
Extra virgin olive oil	10 oz.	300 ml
Lemon juice	2 oz.	60 ml
Cayenne pepper	pinch	pinch

1. Whisk together the mustard, salt, white pepper and red wine vinegar. Slowly whisk in the olive oil.
2. Adjust the acidity with the lemon juice and add a pinch of cayenne.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-ml) serving: **Calories** 180, **Total fat** 20 g, **Saturated fat** 2.5 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 170 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—no cholesterol; no sugar

RECIPE 24.9

Raspberry Vinaigrette

Yield: 2 qt. (2 lt)

Red wine vinegar	8 oz.	250 ml
Rice wine vinegar	8 oz.	250 ml
Lemon juice	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Dried thyme	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Salt	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Pepper	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Garlic, minced	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Honey	4 oz.	120 g
Raspberry preserves, without seeds	8 oz.	250 g
Olive oil	12 oz.	350 ml
Salad oil	1 pt.	450 ml

1. Whisk together the vinegars, lemon juice, thyme, salt, pepper and garlic.
2. Whisk in the honey and raspberry preserves.
3. Slowly whisk in the oils, emulsifying the dressing.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-ml) serving: **Calories** 130, **Total fat** 12 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 140 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 5 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—no cholesterol

RECIPE 24.10

Fat-Free Raspberry Vinaigrette

Yield: 1 pt. (450 ml)

Raspberry vinegar	4 oz.	120 ml
Fructose*	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Garlic, minced	1 tsp.	5 ml
Worcestershire sauce	2 tsp.	10 ml
Dijon-style mustard	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Lemon juice	2 oz.	30 ml
Water	8 oz.	250 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Whisk all ingredients together.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-ml) serving: **Calories** 10, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 50 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—fat free; low sodium; low calorie

*Fructose is a naturally occurring simple sugar; it is readily available as a white granulated powder.

RECIPE 24.11

Balsamic and Roasted Garlic Vinaigrette

Yield: 1 1/2 pt. (750 ml)

Garlic cloves	12	12
Balsamic vinegar	8 oz.	250 ml
Dijon mustard	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Olive oil	14 oz.	420 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Roast the garlic in a 350°F (180°C) oven until soft, golden brown and fragrant. Peel the garlic cloves and mash them coarsely in a mixing bowl.
2. Add the vinegar and mustard, whisking to incorporate. Whisk in the olive oil and season with salt and pepper.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-ml) serving: **Calories** 150, **Total fat** 17 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 8 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—no cholesterol; low sodium

RECIPE 24.12

Red Onion Vinaigrette

Yield: 1 pt. (450 g)

Walnut oil	8 oz.	250 ml
Champagne vinegar	4 oz.	120 ml
Granulated sugar	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Red onions, sliced thin	8 oz.	250 g

1. Whisk together the oil, vinegar, sugar, salt and pepper.
2. Blanch the onions for a few seconds in boiling water. Drain thoroughly.
3. Add the onions to the oil mixture and allow the dressing to rest for several hours so that the flavors blend.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-ml) serving: **Calories** 140, **Total fat** 14 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 35 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—no cholesterol; low sodium

RECIPE 24.13

Caesar Dressing

A traditional Caesar salad is made with romaine lettuce, croutons, Parmesan and a rich dressing flavored with garlic and anchovies. The dressing is sometimes prepared and tossed with the other ingredients tableside, but this food processor method is useful when larger quantities are needed.

Yield: 2 qt. (2 lt)

Garlic, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Eggs	2	2
Parmesan, grated	4 oz.	120 g

Balsamic vinegar	2 oz.	60 ml
Red wine vinegar	2 oz.	60 ml
Whole-grain mustard	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Dijon-style mustard	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Anchovy fillets	1 oz.	30 g
Salt	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Pepper	1 tsp.	5 ml
Vegetable oil	12 oz.	340 ml
Olive oil	12 oz.	340 ml

1. Combine the garlic, eggs, cheese, vinegars, mustards, anchovies, salt and pepper in the bowl of a food processor and process until smooth, approximately 1 minute.
2. With the machine running slowly, begin adding the oils to form an emulsion.
3. Continue until all the oil is incorporated.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 110, **Total fat** 11 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 170 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 0 g, **Protein** 1 g

RECIPE 24.14

Sauce Gribiche

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Hard-cooked egg yolks	4	4
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Dijon-style mustard	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Olive oil	1 1/2 pt.	700 ml
White wine vinegar	3 oz.	90 ml
Cornichons, chopped	1 oz.	30 g
Capers, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh mixed herbs such as parsley, chervil, tarragon or chives, chopped	1 oz.	30 g

1. Blend the egg yolks with the salt, pepper and mustard.
2. Very slowly, as if for mayonnaise, whisk in the olive oil. Occasionally, add a few drops of vinegar to thin the sauce.
3. Add the cornichons, capers and herbs; mix well. Adjust the seasonings and acidity with the remaining vinegar.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 190, **Total fat** 21 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 25 mg, **Sodium** 95 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 0 g, **Protein** 1 g

RECIPE 24.15

Thousand Island Dressing

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Red wine vinegar	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Sugar	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Mayonnaise	1 pt.	450 ml

Continued

Ketchup	8 oz.	250 g
Sweet pickle relish	6 oz.	180 g
Hard-cooked eggs, chopped	4	4
Fresh parsley, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Green onions, chopped	1 bunch	1 bunch
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Worcestershire sauce	TT	TT

1. Combine the vinegar and sugar; stir to dissolve the sugar.
2. Add the remaining ingredients and mix well.
3. Adjust the seasonings with the salt, pepper and Worcestershire sauce.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 120, **Total fat** 11 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 35 mg, **Sodium** 270 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 4 g, **Protein** 1 g

RECIPE 24.16

Green Goddess Dressing

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Fresh parsley	1 oz.	30 g
Mayonnaise	1 pt.	450 ml
Sour cream	12 oz.	340 g
Garlic, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Anchovy fillets, minced	1 oz.	30 g
Fresh chives, chopped	1 oz.	30 g
Fresh tarragon, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Lemon juice	1 oz.	30 ml
Red wine vinegar	1 oz.	30 ml
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
Worcestershire sauce	TT	TT

1. Rinse and chop the parsley, but do not dry it or you will remove some of the chlorophyll.
2. Combine all the ingredients and mix well. Season to taste with salt, white pepper and Worcestershire sauce.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 80, **Total fat** 8 g, **Saturated fat** 2.5 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 125 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 1 g

RECIPE 24.17

Roquefort Dressing

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Mayonnaise	8 oz.	250 g
Red wine vinegar	1 oz.	30 ml
Sour cream	8 oz.	250 g
Buttermilk	4 oz.	120 ml
Garlic, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Worcestershire sauce	1 tsp.	5 ml
Tabasco sauce	TT	TT

Pepper	TT	TT
Roquefort, crumbled	12 oz.	340 g

1. Combine all the ingredients except the Roquefort and mix well.
2. Add the crumbled Roquefort and combine.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 110, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 20 mg, **Sodium** 240 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 3 g

RECIPE 24.18

Low-Fat Blue Cheese Dressing

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Nonfat yogurt	20 oz.	560 g
Low-fat buttermilk	6 oz.	170 ml
Blue cheese, crumbled	4 oz.	120 g
White pepper	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Worcestershire sauce	TT	TT
Dry mustard	1 tsp.	5 ml
Tabasco sauce	TT	TT

1. Combine all the ingredients in the bowl of a mixer or food processor and process until smooth.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 25, **Total fat** 1 g, **Saturated fat** .5 g, **Cholesterol** 5 mg, **Sodium** 65 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Claims**—low fat; low cholesterol; low sodium; low calorie

RECIPE 24.19

Sun-Dried Tomato and Basil Aïoli

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Garlic cloves, mashed to a paste	4	4
Egg yolks	4	4
Lemon juice	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Olive oil	1 1/2 pt.	700 ml
Sun-dried tomatoes, packed in olive oil	4 oz.	120 g
Fresh basil, chopped	4 Tbsp.	60 ml
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Pepper	1/2 tsp.	2 ml

1. Combine the garlic, egg yolks and a few drops of the lemon juice in a bowl and whip until frothy.
2. While whipping the egg yolk mixture, slowly add the olive oil until an emulsion begins to form. Continue adding the oil while whipping until all the oil is incorporated. A few drops of lemon juice may be added from time to time to thin the sauce.

Continued

3. Finely chop the sun-dried tomatoes. Add them, a portion of the olive oil in which they were packed, and the basil to the aïoli.
4. Season with salt, pepper and lemon juice.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (27-g) serving: **Calories** 200, **Total fat** 21 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 25 mg, **Sodium** 80 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 3 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 20%

RECIPE 24.20

Tartar Sauce

Yield: 1 pt. (500 ml)

Mayonnaise	1 pt.	500 ml
Capers, chopped	2 oz.	60 g
Sweet pickle relish	3 oz.	90 g
Onion, minced	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Fresh parsley, minced	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Lemon juice	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Salt	TT	TT
Worcestershire sauce	TT	TT
Tabasco sauce	TT	TT

1. Stir all the ingredients together until well blended. Chill thoroughly before serving.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 220, **Total fat** 23 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 20 mg, **Sodium** 420 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 0 g

RECIPE 24.21

Garlic Croutons for Salads

Yield: 1 lb. 4 oz. (550 g)

Whole butter	6 oz.	180 g
Garlic, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
French or sourdough bread cubes	1 lb. 8 oz.	700 g
Parmesan, grated	1 oz.	30 g
Dried basil	2 tsp.	10 ml
Dried oregano	2 tsp.	10 ml

1. Melt the butter in a small saucepan and add the garlic. Cook the garlic in the butter for 5 minutes.
2. Place the bread in a bowl, add the Parmesan and herbs.
3. Pour the garlic butter over the bread cubes and immediately toss to combine.
4. Spread the bread cubes on a sheet pan in a single layer and bake at 350°F (180°C). Stir the croutons occasionally and cook until dry and lightly browned, approximately 15 minutes.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 200, **Total fat** 9 g, **Saturated fat** 5 g, **Cholesterol** 20 mg, **Sodium** 390 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 25 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Iron** 10%, **Calcium** 10%

RECIPE 24.22

WILTED SPINACH SALAD WITH ROASTED PEPPERS

GREENS RESTAURANT, SAN FRANCISCO, CA
Executive Chef Annie Somerville

Yield: 2 large or 4 small Servings

Red or yellow bell pepper, medium	1	1
Extra virgin olive oil	3 oz.	90 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Red onion, sliced thin	2 oz.	60 g
Baguette, thin slices for croutons	12	12
Spinach	1 lb.	450 g
Frisée or escarole	1 head	1 head
Balsamic vinegar	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Garlic clove, chopped fine	1	1
Niçoise or Gaeta olives, pitted	10	10
Parmesan, grated	1 oz.	30 g

1. Roast, peel and cut the pepper into 1/4-inch (6-millimeter) strips. Toss the pepper strips with 1/2 tablespoon (8 milliliters) of olive oil and a few pinches of salt and pepper. Set aside to marinate.
2. Cover the onion slices with cold water to leach the strong onion flavor. Set aside.
3. Place the baguette slices on a baking sheet and brush them lightly with olive oil. Toast in a 375°F (190°C) oven until crisp and lightly browned, approximately 5 minutes.
4. Stem, wash and dry the spinach. Trim the stem end of the frisée or escarole and discard the tough outer leaves. Wash and dry.
5. Drain the onions. In a large bowl, combine the vinegar, garlic, 1/2 teaspoon (2 milliliters) salt and a few pinches of pepper. Add the greens, onions, peppers and olives.
6. Heat the remaining olive oil in a small pan until it is very hot and just below the smoking point. Immediately pour it over the salad and toss with a pair of metal tongs to coat and wilt the leaves. Sprinkle on the Parmesan.
7. Add the croutons and serve immediately.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 690, **Total fat** 51 g, **Saturated fat** 9 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 1160 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 39 g, **Protein** 17 g, **Vitamin A** 160%, **Vitamin C** 220%, **Calcium** 50%, **Iron** 50%

RECIPE 24.23

COUNTRY-STYLE TOMATO AND CUCUMBER SALAD

MANGO RESTAURANT, CHICAGO, IL
Chef Steven Chiappetti

Yield: 2 Servings

Bread	4 oz.	120 g
Fresh tomato, diced	4 oz.	120 g
Seedless cucumber, peeled and diced	4 oz.	120 g
Basil, chiffonade	1 oz.	30 g
Red wine vinegar	1/4 c.	60 ml
Olive oil	1/4 c.	60 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Remove and discard the bread crusts; cut the bread into the same size dice as the tomato.
2. Rinse the bread under water to remove some of the starch. Squeeze until all the water is removed.
3. In a medium-sized bowl, combine the tomato, cucumber, bread, basil and vinegar. Let set for 5 minutes to allow the bread to absorb some of the vinegar.
4. Add the olive oil and season with salt and pepper.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 480, **Total fat** 30 g, **Saturated fat** 4.5 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 310 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 42 g, **Protein** 9 g, **Vitamin A** 20%, **Vitamin C** 45%, **Calcium** 40%, **Claims**—no cholesterol; high fiber

RECIPE 24.24

GRILLED SECKEL PEAR SALAD WITH SHERRY BACON VINAIGRETTE

FLYING FISH, SEATTLE, WA
Chef-Owner Christine Keff

Yield: 6 Servings

Thick bacon	10 strips	10 strips
Sherry vinegar	1/4 c.	60 ml
Sugar	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Extra virgin olive oil	1/2 c.	120 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Frisée	6 heads	6 heads
Seckel pears	12	12
White wine	1 pt.	500 ml
Water	1 pt.	500 ml
Cinnamon sticks	2	2
Star anise, whole	4	4
Reduced balsamic vinegar	6 oz.	180 ml
Parsnip chips	as needed for garnish	

1. To prepare the dressing, dice the bacon and render it in a large skillet. Drain off the fat, reserving 1/4 cup (60 milliliters) for the dressing.
2. Mix the cooked bacon, sherry vinegar and sugar in a mixing bowl. Slowly whisk in the olive oil, then the bacon fat. Season with salt and pepper.
3. Remove the cores from the frisée, rinse under cold water and separate the leaves.
4. Cut the pears in half and remove the cores.
5. Bring the wine, water, cinnamon and anise to a slow rolling boil in a sauce pan. Add the pear halves and poach just until the pears are slightly soft, approximately 5 to 10 minutes. Remove the pears from the poaching liquid and set aside.
6. Just before service, grill the pears on a very hot grill. Toss the pears with the frisée and the dressing. Mound the salad on serving plates and drizzle with the reduced balsamic vinegar. Garnish with parsnip chips and serve.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 439, **Total fat** 25 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 9 mg, **Sodium** 202 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 56 g, **Protein** 5 g

RECIPE 24.25

Salad of Ahi Tuna Seared with Lavender and Pepper with Whole-Grain Mustard Sauce

FETZER VINEYARDS, HOPLAND, CA
Culinary Director John Ash

Yield: 8 Servings, 3 oz. (90 g) tuna and 1 oz. (30 g) greens each

Lavender-pepper coating:		
Coarse sea salt	1 1/2 tsp.	7 ml
Whole black peppercorns	2 tsp.	10 ml
Whole fennel seeds	2 tsp.	10 ml
White peppercorns	1 tsp.	5 ml
Dried lavender flowers	1 1/2 tsp.	7 ml
Ahi tuna, a solid 3-in. (7.5-cm) -square piece, well trimmed	1 lb. 8 oz.	700 g
Olive oil	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Mustard sauce:		
Whole-grain mustard	2 oz.	60 g
Olive oil	1 oz.	30 g
Mustard seeds, toasted	1 tsp.	5 ml
Rice wine vinegar	1 tsp.	5 ml
Sugar or honey	1 tsp.	5 ml
Baby greens	8 oz.	250 g
Edible flowers	as needed for garnish	

1. Using a mortar and pestle or a rolling pin, crush the ingredients for the lavender-pepper coating.
2. Lightly oil the tuna with 2 teaspoons (10 milliliters) of olive oil; coat lightly and evenly with the lavender-pepper mixture. Heat the remaining oil in a skillet to just smoking and quickly sear the tuna on all sides. This should not take more than 2 minutes. Immediately chill the seared tuna.

Continued

3. Mix the ingredients for the mustard sauce. Set aside.
4. To serve, thinly slice the tuna into 3 or 4 medallions per serving. Arrange on a chilled plate with baby greens and a small dollop of the mustard sauce. Garnish with edible flowers.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 180, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 35 mg, **Sodium** 570 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 3 g, **Protein** 20 g, **Vitamin C** 15%

RECIPE 24.26

Vine-Ripened Tomato Salad

GREENS RESTAURANT, San Francisco, CA
Executive Chef Annie Somerville

Yield: 4 Servings

Vine-ripened tomatoes	1 lb.	450 g
Cherry tomatoes	1/2 pt.	250 ml
Mixed baby greens	4 heads	4 heads
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Cucumber, sliced on bias	1	1
Extra virgin olive oil	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Red wine vinegar	2 Tbsp.	30 ml

1. Core the vine-ripened tomatoes and cut into wedges or thick slices. Pluck the stems from the cherry tomatoes; leave whole if small or cut in half if large.
2. Wash the mixed baby greens and dry. Spread the greens on plates or a serving platter and arrange the vine-ripened tomatoes over them. Sprinkle the tomatoes with salt and pepper.
3. Garnish the tomatoes with cucumber slices.
4. Drizzle on the olive oil; follow with a light drizzle of vinegar.
5. Sprinkle the cherry tomatoes over the salad.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 190, **Total fat** 11 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 650 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 17 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin A** 35%, **Vitamin C** 140%, **Claims**–no cholesterol; good source of fiber

RECIPE 24.27

Cobb Salad

Yield: 8 Entrée Servings

Romaine lettuce	8 oz.	250 g
Green leaf lettuce	4 oz.	120 g
Watercress	4 oz.	120 g
Avocados	4	4
Bacon slices	16	16
Roquefort, crumbled	1 lb.	450 g
Turkey breast, roasted, julienne	1 lb.	450 g
Tomato, concassée	1 lb.	450 g
Eggs, hard-cooked, chopped	4	4
Dijon mustard vinaigrette	24 oz.	700 ml

1. Tear, wash and dry the lettuces. Pick over and wash the watercress.
2. Pit, peel and cut the avocados into wedges.
3. Dice the bacon and cook in a sauté pan until crisp. Remove and drain well.
4. Toss the salad greens together and arrange each of the garnishes on top in an artistic fashion.
5. Prepare a simple vinaigrette dressing using Dijon mustard; serve on the side.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 1000, **Total fat** 84 g, **Saturated fat** 18 g, **Cholesterol** 215 mg, **Sodium** 1770 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 21 g, **Protein** 40 g, **Vitamin A** 45%, **Vitamin C** 60%, **Calcium** 45%, **Iron** 20%

RECIPE 24.28

GREEK SALAD

Yield: 3 lb. 8 oz. (1.6 kg)

Extra virgin olive oil	4 oz.	120 ml
Lemon juice	2 oz.	60 ml
Red wine vinegar	2 oz.	60 ml
Garlic, minced	1 tsp.	10 ml
Fresh oregano, chopped	1 Tbsp.	30 ml
Cucumber	2	2
Feta	12 oz.	350 g
Olives, kalamata or other Greek variety	1 lb.	450 g
Fresh parsley, chopped	1 oz.	30 g
Green onions, sliced	1 bunch	1 bunch
Pepper	TT	TT
Romaine lettuce	1 head	1 head
Anchovy fillets	8	8
Tomatoes, cut into 6 wedges	3	3

1. To make the dressing, whisk together the olive oil, lemon juice, vinegar, garlic and oregano.
2. Peel the cucumber and slice in half lengthwise. Remove the seeds and cut into batonnet.
3. Dice or crumble the feta into small pieces.
4. Combine the olives, cucumbers, chopped parsley and green onions in a bowl and add the dressing. Toss to combine and season to taste with pepper.
5. Line plates or a platter with the romaine lettuce leaves. Add the olive-cucumber mixture and sprinkle on the feta cheese. Garnish as desired with the anchovies and tomato wedges.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (180-g) serving: **Calories** 280, **Total fat** 24 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 35 mg, **Sodium** 900 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 9 g, **Protein** 7 g, **Vitamin A** 15%, **Vitamin C** 35%, **Calcium** 25%, **Iron** 15%

RECIPE 24.29

Warm Lamb Salad with Bourbon Vinaigrette

Yield: 4 Servings

Lamb loin, eye only	1	1
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Olive oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
New potatoes	8	8
Green onions	4	4
Radicchio	2 heads	2 heads
Garlic cloves, chopped	2	2
Fresh rosemary, chopped	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Whole butter	2 oz.	60 g
Bourbon	4 oz.	120 ml
Balsamic vinegar	2 oz.	60 ml
Mustard seeds	1 tsp.	5 ml
Orange supremes	24	24

1. Cut the lamb loin into 4 portions and tie each piece so that it retains its shape during cooking.
2. Season the lamb with salt and pepper. Sauté it in the olive oil. Transfer to a 350°F (180°C) oven and finish to medium rare.
3. Steam the new potatoes until tender but still firm.
4. Cut the green onions on the bias.
5. Separate the radicchio leaves from the heads.
6. To make the dressing, sauté the garlic and rosemary in the butter without browning. Whisk in the bourbon, vinegar and mustard seeds, season with salt and pepper and keep hot.
7. Remove the twine and slice each portion of lamb into 6 slices. Slice the potatoes to the same thickness as the lamb.
8. Using the radicchio as the base, arrange the sliced potatoes, lamb and orange supremes on the plate. Sprinkle with the green onions. Drizzle the dressing over all the ingredients.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 300, **Total fat** 17 g, **Saturated fat** 8 g, **Cholesterol** 50 mg, **Sodium** 680 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 27 g, **Protein** 8 g, **Vitamin A** 10%, **Calcium** 10%

RECIPE 24.30

Asian Chicken Salad

Yield: 3 lb. (1.4 kg)

Rice vinegar	6 oz.	180 ml
Soy sauce, reduced sodium	4 oz.	120 ml
Sugar	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Fresh ginger, minced	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
White pepper	1 tsp.	5 ml
Chicken breast, boneless, skinless	1 lb. 8 oz.	680 g
Sesame oil	1 oz.	30 ml
Snow peas	4 oz.	120 g
Carrot, julienne	4 oz.	120 g

Celery, julienne	4 oz.	120 g
Jicama, julienne	4 oz.	120 g
Fresh cilantro leaves	2 Tbsp.	30 ml

1. To make the dressing, combine the vinegar, soy sauce, sugar, ginger and white pepper. Set aside.
2. Cut the chicken breast into strips approximately 1/2 × 1/2 × 3 inches (1.2 × 1.2 × 8 centimeters). Stir-fry the chicken in the sesame oil until done. Remove from the pan, cool and refrigerate.
3. Blanch the vegetables in salted water. Refresh and drain well.
4. Combine the chicken with the vegetables and the dressing; add the cilantro. Toss and serve.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 160, **Total fat** 4.5 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 50 mg, **Sodium** 740 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 10 g, **Protein** 19 g, **Vitamin A** 25%, **Vitamin C** 15%

RECIPE 24.31

New Potato Salad with Mustard and Dill

Yield: 5 lb. (2.2 kg)

New potatoes	4 lb.	1.8 kg
Mayonnaise	4 oz.	120 g
Sour cream	4 oz.	120 g
Garlic, chopped	1 1/2 tsp.	7 ml
Salt	TT	TT
Black pepper	1 1/2 tsp.	7 ml
Fresh dill, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Dijon-style mustard	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Green bell pepper, julienne	1	1
Red bell pepper, julienne	1	1
Red onion, julienne	6 oz.	180 g
Celery, julienne	4 oz.	120 g

1. Boil the potatoes in salted water until done but still firm. Chill well and cut into quarters.
2. Combine the mayonnaise, sour cream, garlic, salt, pepper, dill and Dijon-style mustard; mix well.
3. Combine all the ingredients and adjust the seasonings with salt and pepper.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 110, **Total fat** 6 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 5 mg, **Sodium** 360 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 12 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin C** 25%

RECIPE 24.32

Potato Salad

Yield: 6 lb. 8 oz. (3 kg)

Potatoes, chef	4 lb.	1.8 kg
Eggs, hard-cooked	6	6
Celery, medium dice	8 oz.	250 g

Continued

Green onions, sliced	1 bunch	1 bunch
Radishes, chopped coarse	6 oz.	180 g
Mayonnaise	1 lb.	450 g
Dijon-style mustard	2 oz.	60 g
Fresh parsley, chopped	1 oz.	30 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Boil the potatoes in salted water until nearly cooked. Drain the potatoes, spread them on a sheet pan and refrigerate until cold.
2. Peel and cut the cold potatoes into large dice.
3. Peel and chop the eggs.
4. Combine all the ingredients and adjust the seasonings with salt and pepper.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (123-g) serving: **Calories** 200, **Total fat** 16 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 65 mg, **Sodium** 390 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 11 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Vitamin C** 15%

RECIPE 24.33

Creamy Coleslaw

Note: *This dish appears in the Pork Chapter Opening photograph.*

Yield: 2 lb. (1 kg)

Mayonnaise	8 oz.	250 g
Sour cream or crème fraîche	4 oz.	120 g
Sugar	1 oz.	30 g
Cider vinegar	1 oz.	30 ml
Garlic clove, minced	1	1
Green cabbage, shredded	1 lb.	450 g
Red cabbage, shredded	8 oz.	250 g
Carrot, shredded	4 oz.	120 g
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT

1. Combine the mayonnaise, sour cream or crème fraîche, sugar, vinegar and garlic in a bowl; whisk together.
2. Add the shredded cabbages and carrots to the dressing and mix well. Season to taste with salt and pepper.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 200, **Total fat** 19 g, **Saturated fat** 4.5 g, **Cholesterol** 20 mg, **Sodium** 340 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 8 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 20%, **Vitamin C** 50%

RECIPE 24.34

Couscous Salad

Yield: 3 lb. (1.4 kg)

Couscous	6 oz.	180 g
Red bell pepper, medium dice	1	1
Green bell pepper, medium dice	1	1
Green onions, sliced on the bias	1 bunch	1 bunch
Cucumbers, peeled, seeded, medium dice	6 oz.	180 g
Black olives, pitted	4 oz.	120 g
Red onion, julienne	6 oz.	180 g

Dressing:		
Orange juice concentrate	3 oz.	90 ml
Water	2 oz.	60 ml
Rice vinegar	2 oz.	60 ml
Garlic, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Pepper	1 tsp.	5 ml
Fresh oregano, chopped	2 tsp.	10 ml
Salad oil	3 oz.	90 ml
Honey	1 oz.	30 g
Fresh thyme, chopped	2 tsp.	10 ml

1. Steam the couscous until tender; set aside to cool.
2. Combine the couscous with the vegetables.
3. Whisk together all the dressing ingredients.
4. Combine the salad ingredients with the dressing. Chill thoroughly before serving.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (81-g) serving: **Calories** 90, **Total fat** 6 g, **Saturated fat** .5 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 200 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 7 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin C** 35%, **Claims**—low saturated fat; no cholesterol

RECIPE 24.35

Bread Salad

WILDFLOWER BREAD COMPANY, SCOTTSDALE, AZ

Yield: 20 8-oz. (240-g) Servings

Crusty bread, cut into 1-in. (2.5-cm) cubes	1 gal.	4 lt
Tomatoes, diced	21 oz.	630 g
Fresh basil, chopped	2 1/2 oz.	75 g
Fresh parsley, chopped	2 1/2 oz.	75 g
Red bell peppers, diced	5 oz.	150 g
Mushrooms, marinated	5 oz.	150 g
Garlic, chopped	2 tsp.	10 ml
Garlic salt	TT	TT
Lemon pepper	TT	TT
Olive oil	5 oz.	150 ml
Red wine vinegar	3 1/2 oz.	105 ml
Parsley, chopped	as needed for garnish	
Parmesan, grated	as needed for garnish	

1. Spread the bread cubes out on a sheet pan and allow them to dry at room temperature for 3 to 4 hours.
2. Mix the remaining ingredients together in a large bowl until everything is evenly distributed.
3. Toss the bread cubes into the salad and coat them well with the salad liquid.
4. Serve at room temperature, garnished with a light sprinkle of chopped parsley and grated Parmesan.

Approximate values per 8-oz. (225-g) serving: **Calories** 452, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 1 mg, **Sodium** 1566 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 78 g, **Protein** 12 g, **Vitamin A** 31%, **Vitamin C** 40%, **Iron** 41%

CHAPTER 25 FRUITS

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- identify a variety of fruits
- purchase fruits appropriate for your needs
- store fruits properly
- understand how fruits are preserved
- prepare fruits for cooking or service
- apply various cooking methods to fruits

Botanically, a fruit is an organ that develops from the ovary of a flowering plant and contains one or more seeds. Culinarily, a fruit is the perfect snack food; the basis of a dessert, colorful sauce or soup; or an accompaniment to meat, fish, shellfish or poultry. No food group offers a greater variety of colors, flavors and textures than fruit.

This chapter identifies many of the fruits typically used by food service operations. It then addresses general considerations in purchasing fresh and preserved fruits. A discussion follows about some of the cooking methods presented in Chapter 9, Principles of Cooking, as they apply to fruits. Recipes in which a fruit is the primary ingredient are presented at the chapter's end.

Hybrids and Varieties

Several fruits are extremely responsive to selective breeding and crossbreeding and have been toyed with by botanists and growers since at least the time of ancient Rome. Two distinct products are recognized: hybrids and varieties. **Hybrids** result from crossbreeding fruits from different species that are genetically unalike. The result is a unique product. Citrus is particularly responsive to hybridization. **Varieties** result from breeding fruits of the same species that have different qualities or characteristics. Breeding two varieties of apples, for example, produces a third variety with the best qualities of both parents.

Identifying Fruits

This book presents fruits according to the ways most people view them and use them, rather than by rigid botanical classifications. Fruits are divided here into eight categories: berries, citrus, exotics, grapes, melons, pomes, stone fruits and tropicals, according to either their shape, seed structure or natural habitat. Botanically, tomatoes, beans, eggplant, capsicum peppers and other produce are fruits. But in ordinary thinking, they are not; they are vegetables and are discussed in Chapter 22, Vegetables.

A fruit may have several names, varying from region to region or on a purveyor's whim. Botanists are also constantly reclassifying items to fit new findings. The names given here follow generally accepted custom and usage.

Berries

Berries are small, juicy fruits that grow on vines and bushes worldwide. Berries are characterized by thin skins and many tiny seeds that are often so small they go unnoticed. Some of the fruits classified here as berries do not fit the botanical definition (for example, raspberries and strawberries), while fruits that are berries botanically (for example, bananas and grapes) are classified elsewhere.

Berries may be eaten plain or used in everything from beer to bread, soup to sorbet. They make especially fine jams and compotes.

Berries must be fully **ripened** on the vine, as they will not ripen further after harvesting. Select berries that are plump and fully colored. Avoid juice-stained containers and berries with whitish-gray or black spots of mold. All berries should be refrigerated and used promptly. Do not wash berries until you are ready to use them, as washing removes some of their aroma and softens them.

Ripe—*fully grown and developed; the fruit's flavor, texture and appearance are at their peak, and the fruit is ready to use as food.*

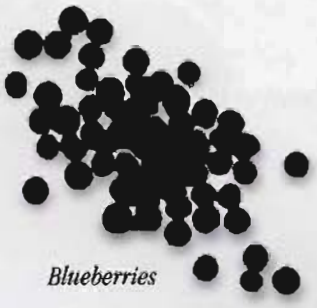
Blackberries

Blackberries

Blackberries are similar to raspberries, but are larger and shinier, with a deep purple to black color. Thorny blackberry vines are readily found in the wild; commercial production is limited. Peak season is mid-June through August. Loganberries, ollalie berries and boysenberries are blackberry hybrids.

Blueberries

Blueberries (Fr. *myrtilles*) are small and firm, with a true blue to almost black skin and a juicy, light gray-blue interior. Cultivated berries (high-bush varieties) tend to be larger than wild (low-bush) ones. Blueberries are native to North America and are grown commercially from Maine to Oregon and along the Atlantic seaboard. Peak season is short, from mid-June to mid-August.



Blueberries

Cranberries

Cranberries, another native North American food, are tart, firm fruit with a mottled red skin. They grow on low vines in cultivated bogs (swamps) throughout Massachusetts, Wisconsin and New Jersey. Rarely eaten raw, they are made into sauce or relish or are used in breads, pies or pastries. Cranberries are readily available frozen or made into a jelly-type sauce and canned. Although color does not indicate ripeness, cranberries should be picked over before cooking to remove those that are soft or bruised. Peak harvesting season is from Labor Day through October, leading to the association of cranberries with Thanksgiving dinner.

Cranberries

Currants

Currants are tiny, tart fruits that grow on shrubs in grapelike clusters. The most common are a beautiful, almost translucent red, but black and golden (or white) varieties also exist. All varieties are used for jams, jellies and sauces, and black currants are made into a liqueur, crème de cassis. Although rarely grown in the United States, currants are very popular and widely available in Europe, with a peak season during the late summer. (The dried fruits called currants are not produced from these berries; they are a special variety of dried grapes.)

White Currants

Red Currants

Raspberries

Raspberries (Fr. *framboises*) are perhaps the most delicate of all fruits. They have a tart flavor and velvety texture. Red raspberries are the most common, with black, purple and golden berries available in some markets. When ripe, the berry pulls away easily from its white core, leaving the characteristic hollow center. Because they can be easily crushed and are susceptible to mold, most of the raspberries grown are marketed frozen. They grow on thorny vines in cool climates from Washington State to western New York and are imported from New Zealand and South America. The peak domestic season is from late May through November.

Raspberries

Strawberries

Strawberries (Fr. *fraises*) are brilliant red, heart-shaped fruits that grow on vines. Actually a perennial herb, the berry's flesh is covered by tiny black seeds called achenes, which are the plant's true fruits. Select berries with a good red color and intact green leafy hull. (The hulls can be easily removed with a paring knife.) Avoid berries with soft or brown spots. Huge berries may be lovely to look at, but they often have hollow centers and little flavor or juice. Although available to some extent all year, fresh California strawberries are at their peak from April through June.

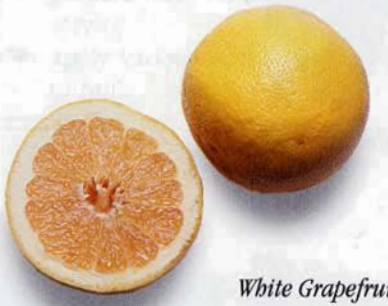
The tiny wild or Alpine berries, known by their French name *fraises des bois*, have a particularly intense flavor and aroma. They are not widely available in the United States.

Strawberries

Citrus (genus Citrus)

Citrus fruits include lemons, limes, grapefruits, tangerines, kumquats, oranges and several hybrids. They are characterized by a thick rind, most of which is a bitter white pith (albedo) with a thin exterior layer of colored skin known as the zest. Their flesh is segmented and juicy. Citrus fruits are acidic, with a strong aroma; their flavors vary from bitter to tart to sweet.

Citrus fruits grow on trees and shrubs in tropical and subtropical climates worldwide. All citrus fruits are fully ripened on the tree and will not ripen further after harvesting. They should be refrigerated for longest storage. Select fruits that feel heavy and have thin, smooth skins. Avoid those with large blemishes or moist spots.



White Grapefruits

Grapefruits

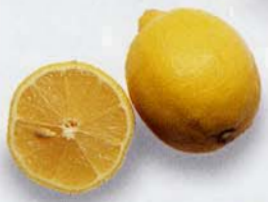
Grapefruits (Fr. *pamplemousse*) are large and round with a yellow skin, thick rind and tart flesh. They are an 18th-century hybrid of the orange and pummelo (a large, coarse fruit used mostly in Middle and Far Eastern cuisines). Two varieties of grapefruit are widely available all year: white-fleshed and pink- or ruby-fleshed. White grapefruits produce the finest juice, although pink grapefruits are sweeter. Fresh grapefruits are best eaten raw or topped with brown sugar and lightly broiled. Grapefruit segments are available canned in syrup.

Ruby Grapefruits

Kumquats

Kumquats

Kumquats are very small, oval-shaped, orange-colored fruits with a soft, sweet skin and slightly bitter flesh. They can be eaten whole, either raw or preserved in syrup, and may be used in jams and preserves.



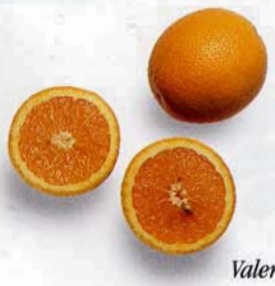
Lemons

The most commonly used citrus fruits, lemons (Fr. *citrons*), are oval-shaped, bright yellow fruits available all year. Their strongly acidic flavor makes them unpleasant to eat raw but perfect for flavoring desserts and confections. Lemon juice is also widely used in sauces, especially for fish, shellfish and poultry. Lemon zest is candied or used as garnish.

Limes

Limes

Limes (Fr. *limons*) are small fruits with thin skins ranging from yellow-green to dark green. Limes are too tart to eat raw and are often substituted for lemons in prepared dishes. They are also juiced or used in cocktails, curries or desserts. Lime zest can be grated and used to give color and flavor to a variety of dishes. Limes are available all year, with a peak season during the summer.



Valencia Oranges

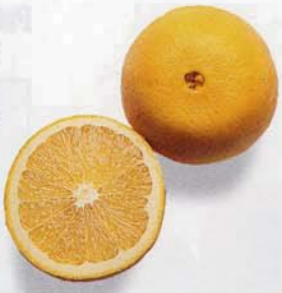
Oranges

Oranges are round fruits with a juicy, orange-colored flesh and a thin, orange skin. They can be either sweet or bitter.

Valencia oranges and navel oranges (a seedless variety) are the most popular sweet oranges. They can be juiced for beverages or sauces, and the flesh may be eaten raw, added to salads, cooked in desserts or used as a garnish. The zest may be grated or julienned for sauces or garnish. Sweet oranges are

available all year, with peak season from December to April. Blood orar are also sweet but are small, with a rough, reddish skin. Their flesh is strea with a blood-red color. Blood oranges are available primarily during the wi months and are eaten raw, juiced or used in salads or sauces. When selecting sweet oranges, look for fruits that feel plump and heavy, with unblemished skin. The color of the skin depends on weather conditions; a green rind does not affect the flavor of the flesh.

Bitter oranges include the Seville and bergamot. They are used primarily for the essential oils found in their zest. Oil of bergamot gives Earl Gray tea its distinctive flavor; oil of Seville is essential to curaçao, Grand Marnier and orange flower water. Seville oranges are also used in marmalades and sauces for meats and poultry.



Navel Oranges

Blood Oranges

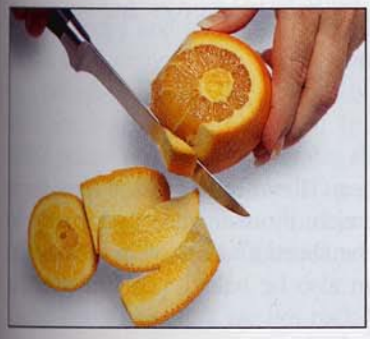
Tangerines

Tangerines, sometimes referred to as mandarins, are small and dark orange. Their rind is loose and easily removed to reveal sweet, juicy, aromatic segments. Tangerines are most often eaten fresh and uncooked, but are available canned as mandarin oranges.

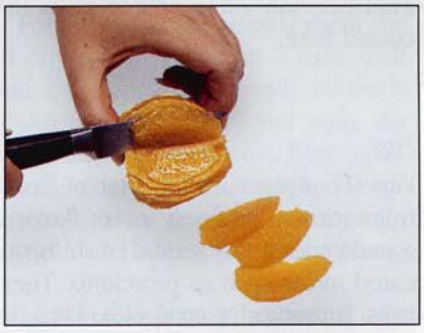
Tangelos are a hybrid of tangerines and grapefruits. They are the size of a medium orange; they have a bulbous stem end and few to no seeds.

Tangerines

Procedure for Segmenting Citrus Fruits



1. Citrus segments, known as *supremes*, are made by first carefully cutting off the entire peel (including the bitter white pith) in even slices.

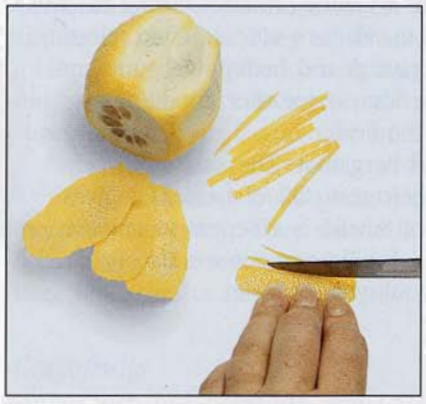


2. Individual segments are then removed by gently cutting alongside each membrane.

Procedure for Zesting Citrus Fruits

A five-hole zester is used to remove paper-thin strips of the colored rind.

Procedure for Cutting Citrus Peels



Large strips of citrus zest may be used as a garnish or to flavor soups or sauces.

Exotics

Improved transportation has led to the increasing availability (although sporadic in some areas) of exotic or unusual fresh fruits such as figs, persimmons, pomegranates, prickly pears, rhubarb and star fruits. Other exotic fruits, such as breadfruit, cherimoya (custard apples), lychee, feijoa and loquat, are still available only on a limited basis from specialty purveyors and are not discussed here.

Calimyrna Figs

Figs

Figs (Fr. *figues*) are the fruit of ficus trees. They are small, soft, pear-shaped fruits with an intensely sweet flavor and rich, moist texture made crunchy by a multitude of tiny seeds. Fresh figs can be sliced and served in salads or with cured meats such as prosciutto. They can also be baked, poached or used in jams, preserves or compotes.

Dark-skinned figs, known as Mission figs, are a variety planted at Pacific Coast missions during the 18th century. They have a thin skin and small seeds and are available fresh, canned or dried. The white-skinned figs grown commercially include the White Adriatic, used principally for drying and baking, and the all-purpose Kadota. The most important domestic variety, however, is the Calimyrna. These large figs have a rich yellow color and large nutty seeds. Fresh Calimyrna figs are the finest for eating out of hand; they are also available dried.

For the best flavor, figs should be fully ripened on the tree. Unfortunately, fully ripened figs are very delicate and difficult to transport. Most figs are in season from June through October; fresh Calimyrna figs are available only during June.

Guava

Guava

Guavas are a small, oval or pear-shaped fruit with a strong fragrance and a mild, slightly grainy flesh. They are excellent in jams and preserves, and guava juice is available plain or blended with other tropical fruit juices. Guava paste, a thick, sliceable gel, is a popular treat throughout Central America and the

Caribbean. Guava will ripen if stored at room temperature and should be slightly soft and fully ripened for the best flavor.

Persimmons

Persimmons, sometimes referred to as kaki or Sharon fruits, are a bright orange, acorn-shaped fruit with a glossy skin and a large papery blossom. The flesh is bright orange and jellylike, with a mild but rich flavor similar to honey and plums. Persimmons should be peeled before use; any seeds should be discarded. Select bright orange fruits and refrigerate only after they are completely ripe. When ripe, persimmons will be very soft and the skin will have an almost translucent appearance.

Ripe persimmons are delicious eaten raw; halved and topped with cream or soft cheese; or peeled, sliced and added to fruit salads. Persimmon bread, muffins, cakes and pies are also popular. Underripe persimmons are almost inedible, however. They are strongly tannic with a chalky or cottony texture.

Persimmons are tree fruits grown in subtropical areas worldwide, although the Asian varieties—now grown in California—are the most common. Fresh persimmons are available from October through January.

Persimmons

Pomegranates

An ancient fruit native to Persia (now Iran), pomegranates have long been a subject of poetry and a symbol of fertility. Pomegranates are round, about the size of a large orange, with a pronounced calyx. The skin forms a hard shell with a pinkish-red color. The interior is filled with hundreds of small, red seeds (which are, botanically, the actual fruits) surrounded by juicy red pulp. An inedible yellow membrane separates the seeds into compartments. Pomegranates are sweet-sour, and the seeds are pleasantly crunchy. The bright red seeds make an attractive garnish. Pomegranate juice is a popular beverage in Mediterranean cuisines, and grenadine syrup is made from concentrated pomegranate juice.

Select heavy fruits that are not rock-hard, cracked or heavily bruised. Whole pomegranates can be refrigerated for several weeks. Pomegranates are available from September through December, with peak season in October.

Pomegranates

Prickly Pears

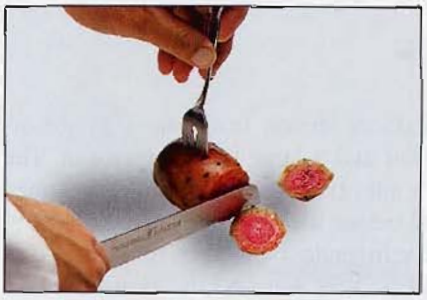
Prickly pear fruits, also known as cactus pears and barbary figs, are actually the berries of several varieties of cactus. They are barrel- or pear-shaped, about the size of a large egg. Their thick, firm skin is green or purple with small sharp pins and nearly invisible stinging fibers. Their flesh is spongy, sweet and a brilliant pink-red, dotted with small black seeds. Prickly pears have the aroma of watermelon and the flavor of sugar-water.

Once peeled, prickly pears can be diced and eaten raw, or they can be puréed for making jams, sauces, custards or sorbets, to which they give a vivid pink color. Prickly pears are especially common in Mexican and southwestern cuisines.

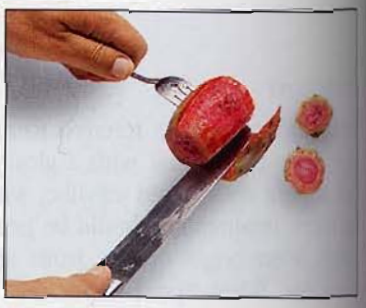
Select fruits that are full-colored, heavy and tender, but not too soft. Avoid those with mushy or bruised spots. Ripe prickly pears can be refrigerated for a week or more. Prickly pears are grown in Mexico and several southwestern states and are available from September through December.

Prickly Pears

PROCEDURE FOR PEELING PRICKLY PEARS



1. To avoid being stung by a prickly pear, hold it steady with a fork, then use a knife to cut off both ends.



2. Cut a lengthwise slit through the skin. Slip the tip of the knife into the cut and peel away the skin by holding it down while rolling the fruit away.

Rhubarb

Rhubarb

Although botanically a vegetable, rhubarb is most often prepared as a fruit. It is a perennial plant that grows well in temperate and cold climates. Only the pinkish-red stems are edible; the leaves contain high amounts of oxalic acid, which is toxic.

Rhubarb stems are extremely acidic, requiring large amounts of sugar to create the desired sweet-sour taste. Cinnamon, ginger, orange and strawberry are particularly compatible with rhubarb. It is excellent for pies, cobblers, preserves or stewing. Young, tender stalks of rhubarb do not need to be peeled. When cooked, rhubarb becomes very soft and turns a beautiful light pink color.

Fresh rhubarb is sold as whole stalks, with the leaves removed. Select crisp, unblemished stalks. Peak season is during the early spring, from February through May. Frozen rhubarb pieces are readily available and are excellent for pies, tarts or jams.

Star Fruits

Star fruits, also known as carambola, are oval, up to 5 inches (12.5 centimeters) long, with five prominent ribs or wings running their length. A cross-section cut is shaped like a star. The edible skin is a waxy orange-yellow; it covers a dry, paler yellow flesh. Its flavor is similar to plums, sweet but bland. Star fruits do not need to be peeled or seeded. They are most often sliced and added to fruit salad or used as a garnish. Unripe fruits can be cooked in stews or chutneys.

Star Fruit

Color and aroma are the best indicators of ripeness. The fruits should be a deep golden-yellow and there should be brown along the edge of the ribs. The aroma should be full and floral. Green fruits can be kept at room temperature to ripen, then refrigerated for up to two weeks. Star fruits are cultivated in Hawaii, Florida and California, though some are still imported from the Caribbean. Fresh fruits are available from August to February.

*Grapes (*Vitis vinifera*)*

Grapes are the single largest fruit crop in the world, due, of course, to their use in wine making. This section, however, discusses only table grapes, those grown for eating. Grapes are berries that grow on vines in large clusters. California is the world's largest producer, with more than a dozen varieties grown

GRAPES INTO WINE

Virtually all the fine wine made in the world comes from varieties of a single grape species, *Vitis vinifera*. It is grown in the United States, Europe, South Africa, South America, the Middle East, Australia and wherever fine wine is made. The variety of grapes used in any given wine determines the wine's character, and most wine-producing countries carefully regulate the growing areas and production of grapes.

American wines are known by their varietal names, whereas European (especially French) wines are generally known by the vineyard's location. The major varietals of wine grapes and the wines in which they are used are listed here.

Grape Varietal	Wine
Pinot Noir	red Burgundy and champagne
Chardonnay	white Burgundy, Chablis and champagne
Syrah	Côte Rotie and Hermitage
Cabernet Sauvignon	Bordeaux and red Graves
Sauvignon Blanc	Sauterne, white Graves, fumé blanc and Sancerre
Merlot	Saint-Emilion and for blending with Cabernet Sauvignon
Zinfandel	red and white zinfandel (California claims a virtually monopoly)
Chenin Blanc	Vouvray

for table use. Grapes are classified by color as white (which are actually green) or black (which are actually red). White grapes are generally blander than black ones, with a thinner skin and firmer flesh.

The grape's color and most of its flavor are found in the skin. Grapes are usually eaten raw, either alone or in fruit salads. They are also used as a garnish or accompaniment to desserts and cheeses. Dried grapes are known as raisins (usually made from Thompson Seedless or muscat grapes), currants (made from Black Corinth grapes and labeled Zante currants) or sultanas (made from sultana grapes).

Grapes are available all year because the many varieties have different harvesting schedules. Look for firm, unblemished fruits that are firmly attached to the stem. A surface bloom or dusty appearance is caused by yeasts and indicates recent harvesting. Wrinkled grapes or those with brown spots around the stem are past their prime. All grapes should be rinsed and drained prior to use.

Red Flame Grapes

Red Flame grapes are a seedless California hybrid, second only in importance to the Thompson Seedless. Red Flame grapes are large and round with a slightly tart flavor and variegated red color.

Thompson Seedless Grapes

The most commercially important table grapes are a variety known as Thompson Seedless, which are pale green with a crisp texture and sweet flavor. Peak season is from June to November. Many are dried in the hot desert sun of California's San Joaquin Valley to produce dark raisins. For golden raisins, Thompson Seedless grapes are treated with sulfur dioxide to prevent browning, then dried mechanically.

Of the table grapes containing seeds, the most important varieties are the Concord, Ribier and Emperor. They range from light red to deep black, and all three are in season during the autumn. Concord grapes, one of the few grape varieties native to the New World, are especially important for making juices and jellies.

Red Flame Grapes

Thompson Seedless Grapes

Concord Grapes

Melons

Like pumpkins and cucumbers, melons are members of the gourd family (*Cucurbitaceae*). The dozens of melon varieties can be divided into two general types: sweet (or dessert) melons and watermelons. Sweet melons have a tan, green or yellow netted or farrowed rind and dense, fragrant flesh. Watermelon has a thick, dark green rind surrounding crisp, watery flesh.

Melons are almost 90% water, so cooking destroys their texture, quickly turning the flesh to mush. Most are served simply sliced, perhaps with a bit of lemon or lime juice. Melons also blend well in fruit salads or with rich, cured meats such as prosciutto. Melons may be puréed and made into sorbet or chilled, uncooked soup.

Melons should be vine-ripened. A ripe melon should yield slightly and spring back when pressed at the blossom end (opposite the stem). It should also give off a strong aroma. Avoid melons that are very soft or feel damp at the stem end. Ripe melons may be stored in the refrigerator, although the flavor will be better at room temperature. Slightly underripe melons can be stored at room temperature to allow flavor and aroma to develop.

Cantaloupes

Cantaloupes

American cantaloupes, which are actually muskmelons, are sweet melons with a thick, yellow-green netted rind, a sweet, moist, orange flesh and a strong aroma. (European cantaloupes, which are not generally available in this country, are more craggy and furrowed in appearance.) As with all sweet melons, the many small seeds are found in a central cavity. Cantaloupes are excellent for eating alone and are especially good with ham or rich meats.

Avoid cantaloupes with the pronounced yellow color or moldy aroma that indicates overripeness. Mexican imports ensure a year-round supply, although their peak season is summer.

Casaba Melons

Casaba Melons

Casaba melons are a teardrop-shaped sweet melon. They have a coarse, yellow skin and a thick, ridged rind; their flesh is creamy white to yellow. Casaba melons are used like cantaloupes. Casaba melons do not have an aroma, so selection must be based on a deep skin color and the absence of dark or moist patches. Peak season is during September and October.

Crenshaw Melons

Crenshaw Melons

Crenshaw (or cranshaw) melons have a mottled, green-yellow ridged rind and orange-pink flesh. They are large pear-shaped sweet melons with a strong aroma. The flesh has a rich, spicy flavor and may be used like cantaloupe. Crenshaws are available from July through October, with peak season during August and September.

Honeydew Melons

Honeydew melons are large oval sweet melons with a smooth rind that ranges from white to pale green. Although the flesh is generally pale

Green Honeydews

Gold Honeydews

green, with a mild, sweet flavor, pink- or gold-fleshed honeydews are also available. Like casaba melons, honeydew melons have little to no aroma. They are available almost all year, with peak season from June through October.

Santa Claus Melons

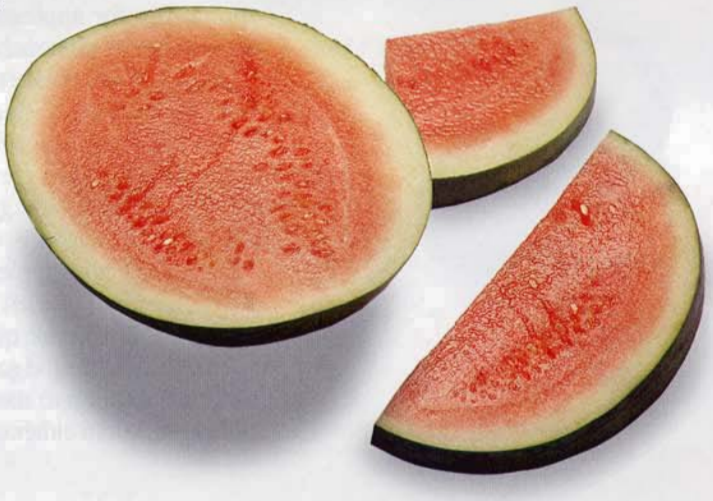
Santa Claus or Christmas melons are large, elongated sweet melons with a green-and-yellow-striped, smooth rind. The flesh is creamy white or yellow and tastes like casaba. They are a winter variety, with peak availability during December, which explains the name.

Santa Claus Melons

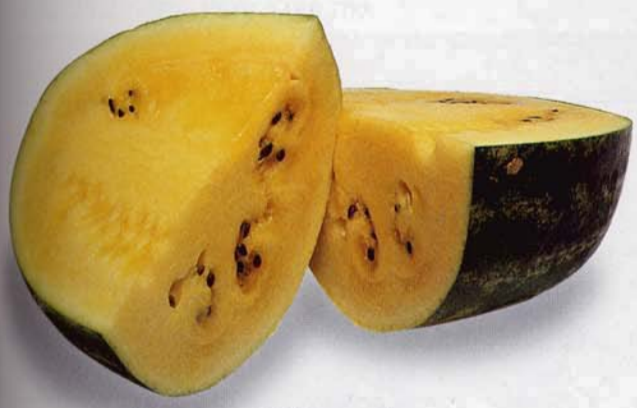
Watermelons

Watermelons are large (up to 30 pounds or 13.5 kilograms) round or oval-shaped melons with a thick rind. The skin may be solid green, green-striped or mottled with white. The flesh is crisp and extremely juicy with small, hard, black seeds throughout. Seedless hybrids are available, although they are relatively expensive. Most watermelons have pink to red flesh, although golden-fleshed varieties are becoming more common.

Watermelons are of a different genus from the sweet melons described earlier. They are native to tropical Africa and are now grown commercially in Texas and several southern states.



Red Seedless Watermelon



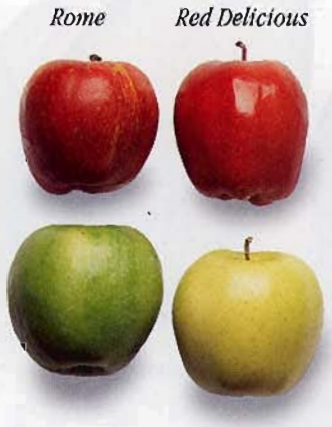
Gold Watermelon

Pomes (family Rosaceae)

Pomes are tree fruits with thin skin and firm flesh surrounding a central core containing many small seeds called pips or carpels. Pomes include apples, pears and quince.

Apples

Apples (Fr. *pommes*), perhaps the most common and commonly appreciated of all fruits, grow on trees in temperate zones worldwide. They are popular because of their convenience, flavor, variety and availability.



Apples can be eaten raw out of hand, or they can be used in a wide variety of cooked or baked dishes. They are equally useful in breads, desserts or vegetable dishes and go well with game, pork and poultry. Classic dishes prepared with apples are often referred to as *à la Normande.* Apple juice (cider) produces alcoholic and nonalcoholic beverages and cider vinegar.

Of the hundreds of known apple varieties, only 20 or so are commercially significant in the United States. Several varieties and their characteristics are noted in Table 25.1. Most have a moist, creamy white flesh with a thin skin of yellow, green or red. They range in flavor from very sweet to very tart, with an equally broad range of textures, from firm and crisp to soft and mealy.

In Europe, apples are divided into distinct cooking and eating varieties. Cooking varieties are those that disintegrate to a purée when cooked. American varieties are less rigidly classified. Nevertheless, not all apples are appropriate for all types of cooking. Those that retain their shape better during cooking are the best choices where slices or appearance are important. Varieties with a higher malic acid content break down easily, making them more appropriate for applesauce or juicing. Either type may be eaten out of hand, depending on personal preference.

Although not native to North America, apples are now grown commercially in 35 states, with Washington and New York leading in production. Apples are harvested when still sightly underripe, then stored in a controlled atmosphere (temperature and oxygen are greatly reduced) for extended periods until ready for sale. Modern storage techniques make fresh apples available all year, although peak season is during the autumn.

When selecting apples, look for smooth, unbroken skins and firm fruits, without soft spots or bruises. Badly bruised or rotting apples should be discarded immediately. They emit quantities of ethylene gas that speed spoilage of nearby fruits. (Remember the saying about "one bad apple spoils the barrel.") Store apples chilled for up to six weeks. Apple peels (the skin) may be eaten or removed as desired, but in either case, apples should be washed just prior to use to remove

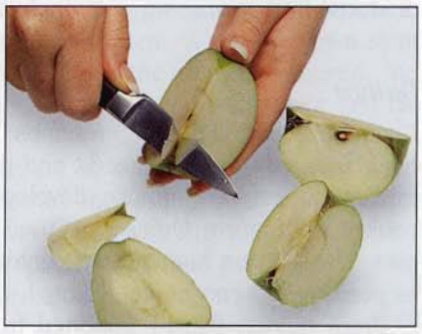
TABLE 25.1 APPLE VARIETIES

Variety	Skin Color	Flavor	Texture	Peak Season	Use
Golden Delicious	Glossy, greenish-gold	Sweet	Semifirm	Sept.– Oct.	In tarts, with cheese, in salads
Granny Smith	Bright green	Tart	Firm and crisp	Oct.– Nov.	Eating, in tarts
Jonathan	Brilliant red	Tart to acidic	Tender	Sept.– Oct.	Eating, all-purpose
McIntosh	Red with green background	Tart to acidic	Soft	Fall	Applesauce, in closed pies
Pippin (Newton)	Greenish-yellow	Tart	Semifirm	Fall	In pies, eating, baking
Red Delicious	Deep red	Sweet but bland	Soft to mealy	Sept.– Oct.	Eating
Rome	Red	Sweet-tart	Firm	Oct.– Nov.	Baking, pies, sauces
Winesap	Dark red with yellow streaks	Tangy	Crisp	Oct.– Nov.	Cider, all-purpose

pesticides and any wax that was applied to improve appearance. Apple slices can be frozen (often with sugar or citric acid added to slow spoilage) or dried.

Procedure for Coring Apples

1. Remove the core from a whole apple with an apple corer by inserting the corer from the stem end and pushing out the cylinder containing the core and seeds.



2. Alternatively, first cut an apple into quarters, then use a paring knife to cut away the core and seeds.

Pears

Pears (Fr. *poires*) are an ancient tree fruit grown in temperate areas throughout the world. Most of the pears marketed in this country are grown in California, Washington and Oregon.

Although literally thousands of pear varieties have been identified, only a dozen or so are commercially significant. Several varieties and their characteristics are noted in Table 25.2. Pear varieties vary widely in size, color and flavor. They are most often eaten out of hand, but can be baked or poached. Pears are delicious with cheese, especially blue cheeses, and can be used in fruit salads, compotes or preserves.

Asian pears, also known as Chinese pears or apple-pears, are of a different species than common pears. They have the moist, sweet flavor of a pear and the round shape and crisp texture of an apple. They are becoming increasingly popular in this country, particularly those known as Twentieth Century or Nijisseiki.

Table 25.2 Pear Varieties

Variety	Appearance	Flavor	Texture	Peak Season	Use
Anjou (Beurre d'Anjou)	Greenish-yellow skin; egg-shaped with short neck; red variety also available	Sweet and juicy	Firm, keeps well	Oct.–May	Eating, poaching, baking
Bartlett (Williams)	Thin yellow skin; bell-shaped; red variety also available	Very sweet, buttery, juicy	Tender	Aug.–Dec.	Eating, canning, in salads
Bosc	Golden-brown skin; long, tapered neck	Buttery	Dry, holds its shape well	Sept.–May	Poaching, baking
Comice	Yellow-green skin; large and chubby	Sweet, juicy	Smooth	Oct.–Feb.	Eating
Seckel	Tiny; brown to yellow skin	Spicy	Very firm, grainy	Aug.–Dec.	Poaching, pickling

When selecting pears, look for fruits with smooth, unbroken skin and an intact stem. Pears will not ripen properly on the tree, so they are picked while still firm and should be allowed to soften before use. Underripe pears may be left at room temperature to ripen. A properly ripened pear should have a good fragrance and yield to gentle pressure at the stem end. Pears can be prepared or stored in the same ways as apples.

Quince

Quince

Common quince (Fr. *coing*) resemble large, lumpy yellow pears. Their flesh is hard, with many pips or seeds, and they have a wonderful fragrance. Too astringent to eat raw, quince develop a sweet flavor and pink color when cooked with sugar. Quince are used in meat stews, jellies, marmalades and pies. They have a high **pectin** content and may be added to other fruit jams or preserves to encourage gelling.

Pectin—*a carbohydrate obtained from certain fruits; used to thicken jams and jellies.*

Fresh quince, usually imported from South America or southeast Europe, are available from October through January. Select firm fruits with a good yellow color. Small blemishes may be cut away before cooking. Quince will keep for up to a month under refrigeration.

Stone Fruits (genus Prunus)

Stone fruits, also known as drupes, include apricots, cherries, nectarines, peaches and plums. They are characterized by a thin skin, soft flesh and one woody stone or pit. Although most originated in China, the shrubs and trees producing stone fruits are now grown in temperate climates worldwide.

The domestic varieties of stone fruits are in season from late spring through summer. They tend to be fragile fruits, easily bruised, difficult to transport and with a short shelf life. Do not wash them until ready to use, as moisture can cause deterioration. Avoid ingesting the pits—most contain toxic acids. Stone fruits are excellent dried and are often used to make liqueurs and brandies.

Apricots

Apricots

Apricots (Fr. *abricots*) are small, round stone fruits with a velvety skin that varies from deep yellow to vivid orange. Their juicy orange flesh surrounds a dark, almond-shaped pit. Apricots can be eaten out of hand, poached, stewed, baked or candied. They are often used in fruit compotes or savory sauces for meat or poultry, and are also popular in quick breads, fruit tarts or puréed for dessert sauces, jams, custards or mousses.

Apricots enjoy a short season, peaking during June and July, and do not travel well. Select apricots that are well shaped, plump and fairly firm. Avoid ones that are greenish-yellow or mushy. Fresh apricots will last for several days under refrigeration, but the flavor is best at room temperature. If fresh fruits are unavailable, canned apricots are usually an acceptable substitute. Dried apricots and apricot juice (known as nectar) are readily available.

Rainier Cherries

Cherries

From the northern states, particularly Washington, Oregon, Michigan and New York, come the two most important types of cherry: the sweet cherry and the sour (or tart) cherry.

Sweet cherries (Fr. *cerises*) are round to heart-shaped, about 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) in diameter, with skin that ranges from yellow to deep red to nearly black. The flesh, which is sweet and juicy, may vary from yellow to dark red.

The most common and popular sweet cherries are the dark red Bings. Yellow-red Royal Ann and Rainier cherries are also available in some areas.

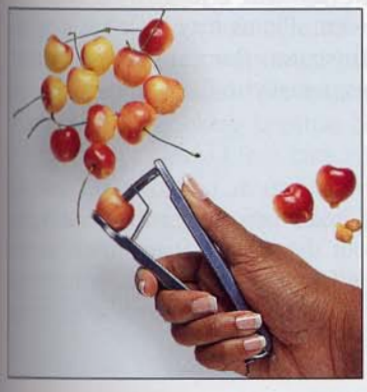
Sweet cherries are often marketed fresh, made into maraschino cherries or candied for use in baked goods. Fresh sweet cherries have a very short season, peaking during June and July. Cherries will not ripen further after harvesting. Select fruits that are firm and plump with a green stem still attached. There should not be any brown spots around the stem. A dry or brown stem indicates that the cherry is less than fresh. Once the stem is removed, the cherry will deteriorate rapidly. Store fresh cherries in the refrigerator and do not wash them until ready to use.

Sour cherries are light to dark red and are so acidic they are rarely eaten uncooked. The most common sour cherries are the Montmorency and Morello. Most sour cherries are canned or frozen, or cooked with sugar and starch (usually cornstarch or tapioca) and sold as prepared pastry and pie fillings.

Both sweet and sour varieties are available dried.

Bing Cherries

Procedure for Pitting Cherries



Remove the stem and place the cherry in the pitter with the indentation facing up. Squeeze the handles together to force out the pit.

Peaches and Nectarines

Peaches (Fr. *pêches*) are moderate-sized, round fruits with a juicy, sweet flesh. Nectarines are a variety of peach, the main difference between the two being their skin. Peaches have a thin skin covered with fuzz, while nectarines have a thin, smooth skin. The flesh of either fruit ranges from white to pale orange. Although their flavors are somewhat different, they may be substituted for each other in most recipes.

Peaches and nectarines are excellent for eating out of hand or in dessert tarts or pastries. They are also used in jams, chutneys, preserves and savory relishes, having a particular affinity for Asian and Indian dishes. Although the skin is edible, peaches are generally peeled before being used. (Peaches are easily peeled if blanched first.)

Peaches and nectarines are either freestones or clingstones. With freestones, the flesh separates easily from the stone; freestone fruits are commonly eaten out of hand. The flesh of clingstones adheres firmly to the stone; they hold their shape better when cooked and are the type most often canned.

Select fruits with a good aroma, an overall creamy, yellow or yellow-orange color and an unwrinkled skin free of blemishes. Red patches are not an indication of ripeness; a green skin indicates that the fruit was picked too early and it will not ripen further. Peaches and nectarines will soften but do not become sweeter after harvesting.

Peaches

Nectarines

The United States, especially California, is the world's largest producer of peaches and nectarines. Peak season is through the summer months, with July and August producing the best crop. South American peaches are sometimes available from January to May. Canned and frozen peaches are readily available.

Plums

Santa Rosa Plums

Plums (Fr. *prunes*) are round to oval-shaped fruits that grow on trees or bushes. Dozens of plum varieties are known, although only a few are commercially significant. Plums vary in size from very small to 3 inches (7.5 centimeters) in diameter. Their thin skin can be green, red, yellow or various shades of blue-purple.

Plums are excellent for eating out of hand. Plums can also be baked, poached or used in pies, cobblers or tarts; they are often used in jams or preserves, and fresh slices can be used in salads or compotes.

Damson Plums

Fresh plums are widely available from June through October, with a peak season in August and September. When selecting plums, look for plump, smooth fruits with unblemished skin. Generally, they should yield to gentle pressure, although the green and yellow varieties remain quite firm. Avoid plums with moist, brown spots near the stem. Plums may be left at room temperature to ripen, then stored in the refrigerator. Prunes, discussed later, are produced by drying special plum varieties, usually the French Agen.

Tropicals

Tropical fruits are native to the world's hot, tropical or subtropical regions. Most are now readily available throughout the United States thanks to rapid transportation and distribution methods. All can be eaten fresh, without cooking. Their flavors complement each other and go well with rich or spicy meat, fish and poultry dishes.

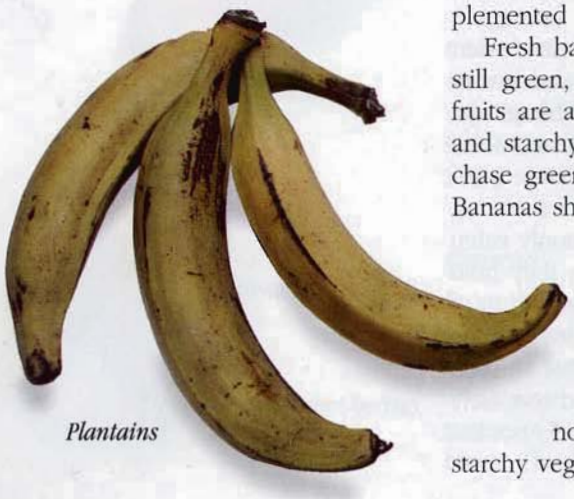
Bananas

Common Yellow Bananas

Common yellow bananas (Fr. *bananes*) are actually the berries of a large tropical herb. Grown in bunches called hands, they are about 7–9 inches (17.5–22.5 centimeters) long, with a sticky, soft, sweet flesh. Their inedible yellow skin is easily removed.

Properly ripened bananas are excellent eaten out of hand or used in salads. Lightly bruised or overripe fruits are best used for breads or muffins. Bananas blend well with other tropical fruits and citrus. Their unique flavor is also complemented by curry, cinnamon, ginger, honey and chocolate.

Fresh bananas are available all year. Bananas are always harvested when still green, because the texture and flavor will be adversely affected if the fruits are allowed to turn yellow on the tree. Unripe bananas are hard, dry and starchy. Because bananas ripen after harvesting, it is acceptable to purchase green bananas if there is sufficient time for final ripening before use. Bananas should be left at room temperature to ripen. A properly ripened banana has a yellow peel with brown flecks. The tip should not have any remaining green coloring. As bananas continue to age, the peel darkens and the starches turn to sugar, giving the fruits a sweeter flavor. Avoid bananas that have large brown bruises or a gray cast (a sign of cold damage).



Plantains

Plantains, also referred to as cooking bananas, are larger but not as sweet as common bananas. They are frequently cooked as a starchy vegetable in tropical cuisines.

Dates

Dates are the fruit of the date palm tree, which has been cultivated since ancient times. Dates are about 1–2 inches (2.5–5 centimeters) long, with a paper-thin skin and a single grooved seed in the center. Most are golden to dark brown when ripe.

Although dates appear to be dried, they are actually fresh fruits. They have a sticky-sweet, almost candied texture and rich flavor. Dates provide flavor and moisture for breads, muffins, cookies and tarts. They can also be served with fresh or dried fruits, or stuffed with meat or cheese as an appetizer.

Pitted dates are readily available in several packaged forms: whole, chopped or extruded (for use in baking). Whole unpitted dates are available in bulk. Date juice is also available for use as a natural sweetener, especially in baked goods. Although packaged or processed dates are available all year, peak season for fresh domestic dates is from October through December. When selecting dates, look for those that are plump, glossy and moist.

Medjool

Kiwis

Kiwis, sometimes known as kiwifruits or Chinese gooseberries, are small oval fruits, about the size of a large egg, with a thin, fuzzy brown skin. The flesh is bright green with a white core surrounded by hundreds of tiny black seeds.

Kiwis are sweet, but somewhat bland. They are best used raw, peeled and eaten out of hand or sliced for fruit salads or garnish. Although kiwis are not recommended for cooking because heat causes them to fall apart, they are a perfect addition to glazed fruit tarts and can be puréed for sorbets, mousses or Bavarians. Kiwis contain an enzyme similar to that in fresh pineapple and papaya, which has a tenderizing effect on meat and prevents gelling.

Kiwis

FRIEDA AND THE KIWIFRUIT

How did a fuzzy brown unknown become a media darling and a hugely viable crop? The answer is thanks to Frieda Caplan. In 1962 Frieda, founder of Frieda's, Inc., launched her historical worldwide promotion of kiwifruit. Acting on a suggestion that Chinese gooseberries, then grown only in New Zealand, might sell better under the name kiwifruit (the kiwi is the national bird of New Zealand), Frieda unleashed a produce giant. This story of the kiwifruit is studied throughout the world as one of the great successes in food marketing.

In 1980, after 18 years of Frieda's continual, creative, aggressive and expensive marketing, the kiwifruit became a North American star when nouvelle cuisine chefs prominently featured it in their mixes of strawberry, banana, melon and pineapples. Since that time, the question asked most commonly of Frieda's, Inc. is "What will be the next kiwifruit?"

The answer is that there will never be another kiwifruit. When the kiwifruit was accepted into the world's fruit vernacular, there was an unconditional paradigm shift. Today, new specialty produce does not have to go through the rigorous acceptance process inflicted on the kiwifruit. There can never be another kiwifruit because the marketing climate and consumer palate have shifted in a wonderful, irreversible way. Now when a new fruit like red bananas or yellow seedless watermelon comes onto the market, the consuming public does not react with fear and say "Bananas are supposed to be yellow" or "It really isn't watermelon if there aren't any seeds and it's not red." They respond with positive open minds (much the same as Frieda did when she purchased her first flat of kiwifruit in 1962) and a new-found knowledge that new foods will bring quality and variety, not discord, to their diets.

—KAREN CAPLAN
Frieda's eldest daughter and president of FRIEDA'S, INC.

Mangoes

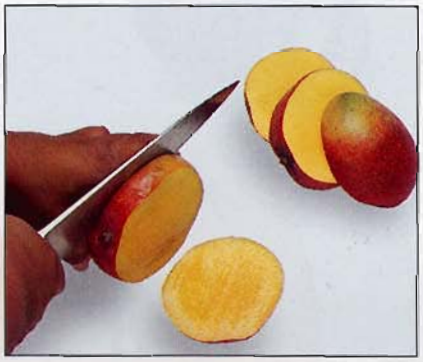
Mangoes

Mangoes are oval or kidney-shaped fruits that normally weigh between 6 ounces and 1 pound (180–500 grams). Their skin is smooth and thin but tough, varying from yellow to orange-red, with patches of green, red or purple. As mangoes ripen, the green disappears. The juicy, bright orange flesh clings to a large, flat pit.

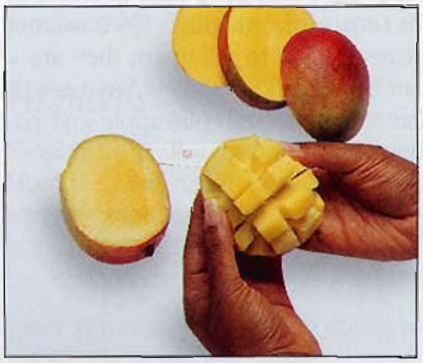
A mango's unique flavor is spicy-sweet, with an acidic tang. Mangoes can be puréed for use in drinks or sauces, or the flesh can be sliced or cubed for use in salads, pickles, chutneys or desserts. Mangoes go well with spicy foods such as curry and with barbecued meats.

Although Florida produces some mangoes, most of those available in this country are from Mexico. Peak season is from May through August. Select fruits with good color that are firm and free of blemishes. Ripe mangoes should have a good aroma, and should not be too soft or shriveled. Allow mangoes to ripen completely at room temperature, then refrigerate for up to one week.

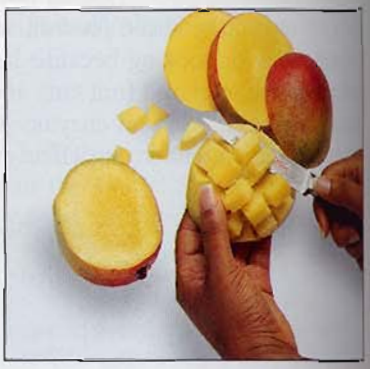
Procedure for Pitting and Cutting Mangoes



1. Cut along each side of the pit to remove two sections.



2. Each section can then be cubed using the "hedgehog" technique: Make crosswise cuts through the flesh, just to the skin; press up on the skin side of the section, exposing the cubes.



3. The mango may be served like this, or the cubes can be cut off to use in salads or other dishes.

Regular Papayas

Papain—*an enzyme found in papayas that breaks down proteins; used as the primary ingredient in many commercial meat tenderizers.*

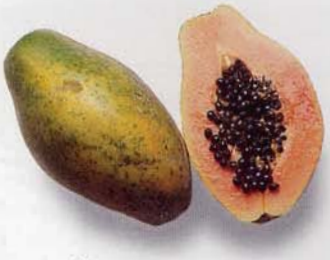
Papayas

Papayas, also known as pawpaws, are greenish-yellow fruits shaped rather like large pears and weighing 1–2 pounds (500–1000 grams). When halved, they resemble a melon. The flesh is golden to reddish-pink; its center cavity is filled with round, silver-black seeds resembling caviar. Ripe papayas can be eaten raw, with only a squirt of lemon or lime juice. They can also be puréed for sweet or spicy sauces, chilled soups or sorbets.

Papayas contain **papain**, which breaks down proteins, and therefore papayas are an excellent meat tenderizer. Meats can be marinated with papaya juice or slices before cooking. Papain, however, makes fresh papayas unsuitable for use in gelatins because it inhibits gelling. Unripe (green) papayas are often used in pickles or chutneys, and can be baked or stewed with meat or poultry.

Papaya seeds are edible, with a peppery flavor and slight crunch. They are occasionally used to garnish fruit salads or add flavor to fruit salsas and compotes.

Papayas are grown in tropical and subtropical areas worldwide. Although available year-round, peak season is from April through June. Select papayas that are plump, with a smooth, unblemished skin. Color is a better determinant of ripeness than is softness: The greater the proportion of yellow to green skin color, the riper the fruit. Papayas may be held at room temperature until completely ripe, then refrigerated for up to one week.



Red Papayas

Passion Fruits

Passion fruits (*granadillas*) have a firm, almost shell-like purple skin with orange-yellow pulp surrounding large, black, edible seeds. They are about the size and shape of large hen eggs, with a sweet, rich and unmistakable citrusy flavor. The pulp is used in custards, sauces and ice creams.

Passion Fruits

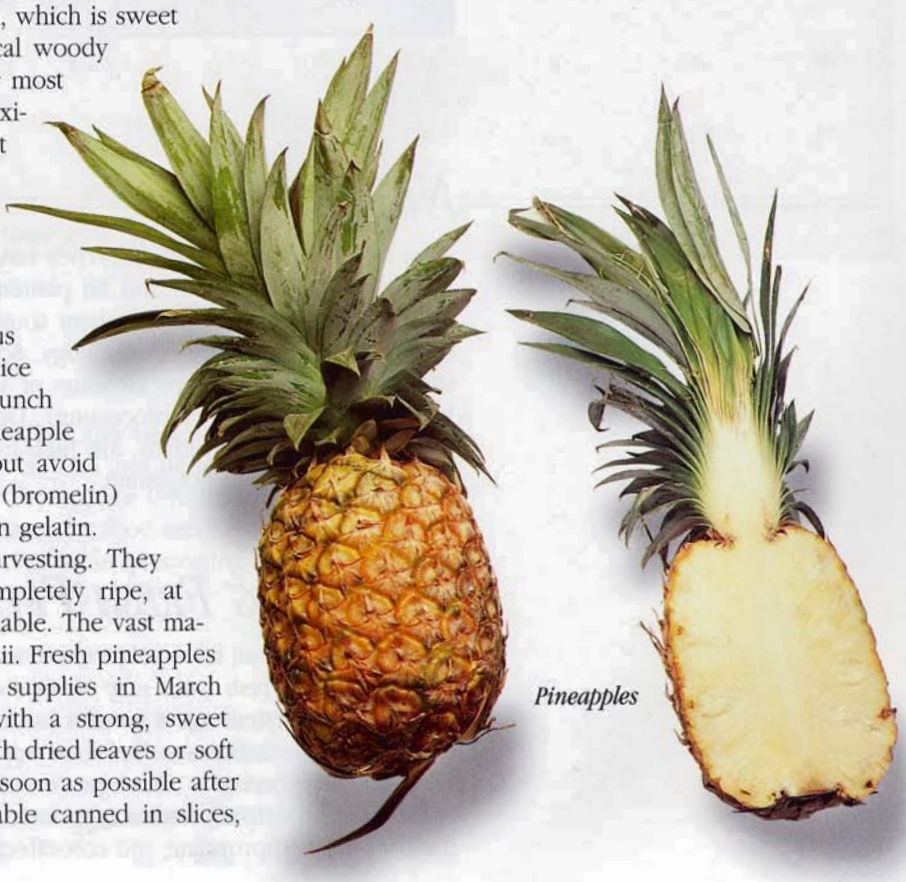
Select heavy fruits with dark, shriveled skin and a strong aroma. Allow them to ripen at room temperature, if necessary, then refrigerate. Passion fruits are now grown in New Zealand, Hawaii and California and should be available all year, although peak season is February and March. Bottles or frozen packs of purée are readily available and provide a strong, true flavor.

Pineapples

Pineapples (Fr. *ananas*) are the fruit of a shrub with sharp spear-shaped leaves. Each fruit is covered with rough, brown eyes, giving it the appearance of a pine cone. The pale yellow flesh, which is sweet and very juicy, surrounds a cylindrical woody core that is edible but too tough for most uses. Most pineapples weigh approximately 2 pounds (1 kilogram), but dwarf varieties are also available.

Pineapples are excellent eaten raw, alone or in salads. Slices can be baked or grilled to accompany pork or ham. The cuisines of Southeast Asia incorporate pineapple into various curries, soups and stews. Pineapple juice is a popular beverage, often used in punch or cocktails. Canned or cooked pineapple can be added to gelatin mixtures, but avoid using fresh pineapple, as an enzyme (bromelin) found in fresh pineapple breaks down gelatin.

Pineapples do not ripen after harvesting. They must be left on the stem until completely ripe, at which time they are extremely perishable. The vast majority of pineapples come from Hawaii. Fresh pineapples are available all year, with peak supplies in March through June. Select heavy fruits with a strong, sweet aroma and rich color. Avoid those with dried leaves or soft spots. Pineapples should be used as soon as possible after purchase. Pineapples are also available canned in slices, cubes or crushed, dried or candied.

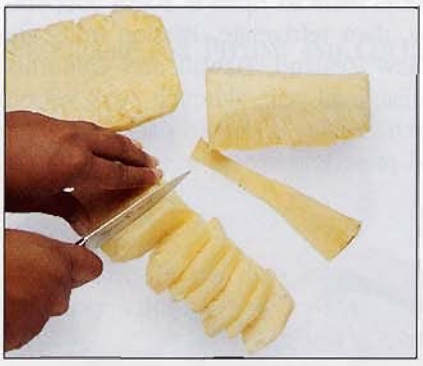


Pineapples

PROCEDURE FOR TRIMMING AND SLICING PINEAPPLES

1. Slice off the leaves and stem end. Stand the fruit upright and cut the peel off in vertical strips.

2. Cut the peeled fruit in quarters, then cut away the woody core.



3. The flesh can then be cut as desired.

NUTRITION

Most fruits are quite nutritious. They have a high water content (usually 75% to 95%) and low protein and fat contents, all of which makes them low in calories. They are also an excellent source of fiber, and the sugar content of ripe fruits is a good source of energy. Some fruits, such as citrus, melons and strawberries, contain large amounts of vitamin C (which may be destroyed, however, by cooking or processing). Deep yellow and green fruits, such as apricots, mangoes and kiwis, are high in vitamin A; bananas, raisins and figs are a good source of potassium.

PURCHASING FRESH FRUITS

Fresh fruits have not been subjected to any processing (such as canning, freezing or drying). Fresh fruits may be ripe or unripe, depending on their condition when harvested or the conditions under which they have been stored. In order to use fresh fruits to their best advantage, it is important to make careful purchasing decisions. The size of each piece of fruit, its grade or quality, its ripeness on delivery and its nutritional content may affect your ability to use the fruit in an appropriate and cost-effective manner.

TABLE 25.3 NUTRITIONAL VALUES OF SELECTED FRUITS

Per serving, fresh, raw and/or as noted	Kcal	Protein (g)	Carbohydrates (g)	Fiber (g)	Total Fat (g)	Vitamin A (I.U.)	Vitamin C (mg)	Phosphorous (mg)	Potassium (mg)
Apple, 1 medium 2 3/4" diameter, unpeeled	81	0.3	21.1	3	0.5	74	8	10	159
Banana, peeled 4 oz. (112 g)	104	1.2	26.4	2	0.4	59.4	6.4	14.2	290
Cantaloupe, 1/2 of 5" diameter melon, approx. 7 oz. (210 g) of flesh	94	2.3	22.3	2.1	0.7	8608	113	45	825
Cherries, Bing, 10 medium, approx. 2.6 oz. (73 g)	49	0.8	11.3	1	0.7	146	5	13	152
Figs, 10 dried, approx. 6.6 oz. (185 g)	477	5.7	122.2	17.4	2.2	248	2	128	1332
Grapes, Thompson Seedless, 20, approx. 3.5 oz. (98 g)	72	0.6	17.8	0.8	0.6	72	10	12	186
Orange, navel, 1/2 medium, approx. 3.6 oz. (101 g)	35.6	0.8	8.9	0.3	<0.1	128	40	13.5	125
Pineapple, trimmed, 4 oz. (112 g)	56	0.4	14	1.2	0.4	25	17	8.5	125
Raisins, seedless, 4 oz. (112 g)	340	3.6	89.6	6	0.4	8	4	108	852
Strawberries, trimmed, 4 oz. (112 g)	36	0.8	8	2.5	0.4	28.7	60	19.8	175

The Corinne T. Netzer Encyclopedia of Food Values 1992

Grading

Fresh fruits traded on the wholesale market may be graded under the USDA's voluntary program. The grades, based on size and uniformity of shape, color and texture as well as the absence of defects, are U.S. Fancy, U.S. No. 1, U.S. No. 2 and U.S. No. 3. Most fruits purchased for food service operations are U.S. Fancy. Fruits with lower grades are suitable for processing into sauces, jams, jellies or preserves.

Ripening

Several important changes take place in a fruit as it ripens. The fruit reaches its full size; its pulp or flesh becomes soft and tender; its color changes. In addition, the fruit's acid content declines, making it less tart, and its starch content converts into the sugars fructose and glucose, which provide the fruit's sweetness, flavor and aroma.

Unfortunately, these changes do not stop when the fruit reaches its peak of ripeness. Rather, they continue, deteriorating the fruit's texture and flavor and eventually causing spoilage.

Depending upon the species, fresh fruits can be purchased either fully ripened or unripened. Figs and pineapples, for example, ripen only on the plant and are harvested at or just before their peak of ripeness then rushed to market. They should not be purchased unripened as they will never attain full flavor or texture after harvesting. On the other hand, some fruits, including bananas and pears, continue to ripen after harvesting and can be purchased unripened.

With most harvested fruits, the ripening time as well as the time during which the fruits remain at their peak of ripeness can be manipulated. For instance, ripening can be delayed by chilling. Chilling slows down the fruit's respiration rate (fruits, like animals, consume oxygen and expel carbon dioxide). The slower the respiration rate, the slower the conversion of starch to sugar. For quicker ripening, fruit can be stored at room temperature.

Ripening is also affected by ethylene gas, a colorless, odorless hydrocarbon gas. Ethylene gas is naturally emitted by ripening fruits and can be used to encourage further ripening in most fruits. Apples, tomatoes, melons and bananas give off the most ethylene and should be stored away from delicate fruits and vegetables, especially greens. Fruits that are picked and shipped unripened can be exposed to ethylene gas to induce ripening just before sale. Conversely, if you want to extend the life of ripe fruits a day or two, isolate them from other fruits and keep them well chilled.

Fresh fruits will not ripen further once they are cooked or processed. The cooking or processing method applied, however, may soften the fruits or add flavor.

Purchasing

Fresh fruits are sold by weight or by count. They are packed in containers referred to as crates, bushels, cartons, cases, lugs or flats. The weight or count packed in each of these containers varies depending on the type of fruit, the purveyor and the state in which the fruits were packed. For example, Texas citrus is packed in cartons equal to 7/10 of a bushel; Florida citrus is packed in cartons equal to 4/5 of a bushel. Sometimes fruit size must be specified when ordering. A 30-pound case of lemons, for example, may contain 96, 112 or 144 individual lemons, depending on their size.

Some fresh fruits, especially melons, pineapples, peaches and berries, are available trimmed, cleaned, peeled or cut. Sugar and preservatives are sometimes added. They are sold in bulk containers, sometimes packed in water. These items offer a consistent product with a significant reduction in labor costs. The purchase price may be greater than that for fresh fruits, and flavor, freshness and nutritional qualities may suffer somewhat from the processing.

Purchasing and Storing Preserved Fruits

Preserving techniques are designed to extend the shelf life of fruits in essentially fresh form. These methods include irradiation, acidulation, canning, freezing and drying. Except for drying, these techniques do not substantially change the fruits' texture or flavor. Canning and freezing can also be used to preserve cooked fruits.

Preserves such as jellies and jams are cooked products and are discussed later in this chapter.

Irradiated Fruits

As described in Chapter 22, Vegetables, some fruits can be subjected to ionizing radiation to destroy parasites, insects and bacteria. The treatment also slows ripening without a noticeable effect on the fruits' flavor and texture. Irradiated fruits must be labeled "treated with radiation," "treated by irradiation" or with the symbol shown in Figure 22.1.

Acidulation

Apples, pears, bananas, peaches and other fruits turn brown when cut. Although this browning is commonly attributed to exposure to oxygen, it is actually caused by the reaction of enzymes.

Enzymatic browning can be retarded by immersing cut fruits in an acidic solution such as lemon or orange juice. This simple technique is sometimes referred to as **acidulation**. Soaking fruits in water or lemon juice and water (called acidulated water) is not recommended. Unless a sufficient amount of salt or sugar is added to the water, the fruits will just become mushy. But if enough salt or sugar is added to retain texture, the flavor will be affected.

Canned Fruits

Almost any type of fruit can be canned successfully; pineapple and peaches are the largest sellers. In commercial canning, raw fruits are cleaned and placed in a sealed container, then subjected to high temperatures for a specific amount of time. Heating destroys the microorganisms that cause spoilage, and the sealed environment created by the can eliminates oxidation and retards decomposition. But the heat required by the canning process also softens the texture of most fruits. Canning has little or no effect on vitamins A, B, C and D because oxygen is not present during the heating process. Canning also has no practical effect on proteins, fats or carbohydrates.

In *solid pack* cans, little or no water is added. The only liquid is from the fruits' natural moisture. Water pack cans have water or fruit juice added, which must be taken into account when determining costs. *Syrup pack* fruits have a sugar syrup—light, medium or heavy—added. The syrup should also be taken into account when determining food costs, and the additional sweetness should be considered when using syrup-packed fruits. Cooked fruit products such as pie fillings are also available canned.

Canned fruits are purchased in cases of standard-sized cans (see Appendix II). Once a can is opened, any unused contents should be transferred to an appropriate storage container and refrigerated. Cans with bulges should be discarded immediately, without opening.

Frozen Fruits

Freezing is a highly effective method for preserving fruits. It severely inhibits the growth of microorganisms that cause fruits to spoil. Freezing does not destroy nutrients, although the appearance or texture of most fruits can be affected because of their high water content. This occurs when ice crystals formed from the water in the cells burst the cells' walls.

Many fruits, especially berries and apple and pear slices, are now individually quick frozen (IQF). This method employs blasts of cold air, refrigerated plates, liquid nitrogen, liquid air or other techniques to chill the produce quickly. By speeding the freezing process, the formation of ice crystals can be greatly reduced.

Fruits can be trimmed and sliced before freezing and are also available frozen in sugar syrup, which adds flavor and prevents browning. Berries are frozen whole, while stone fruits are usually peeled, pitted and sliced. Fruit purées are also available frozen.

Frozen fruits are graded as U.S. Grade A (Fancy), U.S. Grade B (Choice or Extra Standard), or U.S. Grade C (Standard). The "U.S." indicates that a government inspector has graded the product, but packers may use grade names without an actual inspection if the contents meet the standards of the grade indicated.

IQF fruits can be purchased in bulk by the case. All frozen fruits should be sealed in moisture-proof wrapping and kept at a constant temperature of 0°F (–18°C) or below. Temperature fluctuations can cause freezer burn.

Dried Fruits

Golden Raisins

Currants

Apricots

Persimmons

Kiwis

Apples

Pears

Drying is the oldest-known technique for preserving fruits, having been used for more than 5000 years. When ripe fruits are dried, they lose most of their moisture. This concentrates their flavors and sugars and dramatically extends shelf life. Although most fruits can be dried, plums (prunes), grapes (raisins, sultanas and currants), apricots and figs are the fruits most commonly dried. The drying method can be as simple as leaving ripe fruits in the sun to dry naturally or the more cost-efficient technique of passing fruits through a compartment of hot, dry air to quickly extract moisture.

Dried fruits actually retain from 16% to 25% residual moisture, which leaves them moist and soft. They are often treated with sulfur dioxide to prevent browning (oxidation) and to extend shelf life.

Dried fruits may be eaten out of hand; added to cereals or salads; baked in muffins, breads, pies or tarts; stewed for chutneys or compotes; or used as a stuffing for roasted meats or poultry. Before use, dried fruits may be softened by soaking them for a short time in a hot liquid such as water, wine, rum, brandy or other liquor. Some dried fruits should be simmered in a small amount of water before use.

Store dried fruits in air-tight containers to prevent further moisture loss; keep in a dry, cool area away from sunlight. Dried fruits may mold if exposed to both air and high humidity.

JUICING

Fruit juice is used as a beverage, alone or mixed with other ingredients, and as the liquid ingredient in other preparations. Juice can be extracted from fruits (and some vegetables) in two ways: pressure and blending.

Pressure is used to extract juice from fruits such as citrus that have a high water content. Pressure is applied by hand-squeezing or with a manual or electric reamer. All reamers work on the same principle: A ribbed cone is pressed against the fruit to break down its flesh and release the juice. Always strain juices to remove seeds, pulp or fibrous pieces.

A blender or an electric juice extractor can be used to liquify less juicy fruits and vegetables such as apples, carrots, tomatoes, beets and cabbage. The extractor pulverizes the fruit or vegetable, then separates and strains the liquid from the pulp with centrifugal force.

Interesting and delicious beverages can be made by combining the juice of one or more fruits or vegetables: Pineapple with orange, apple with cranberry, strawberry with tangerine and papaya with orange. Color should be considered when creating mixed-juice beverages, however. Some combinations can cause rather odd color changes. Although yellow and orange juices are not a problem, those containing red and blue flavonoid pigments (such as Concord grapes, cherries, strawberries, raspberries and blueberries) can create some unappetizing colors. Adding an acid such as lemon juice helps retain the correct red and blue hues.

Juice—*the liquid extracted from any fruit or vegetable.*

Nectar—*the diluted, sweetened juice of peaches, apricots, guavas, black currants or other fruits, the juice of which would be too thick or too tart to drink straight.*

Cider—*mildly fermented apple juice, although nonalcoholic apple juice may also be labeled cider.*

Applying Various Cooking Methods

Although most fruits are edible raw and typically served that way, some fruits can also be cooked. Commonly used cooking methods are broiling and grilling, baking, sautéing, deep-frying, poaching, simmering and preserving.

When cooking fruits, proper care and attention are critical. Even minimal cooking can render fruits overly soft or mushy. To combat this irreversible process, sugar can be added. When fruits are cooked with sugar, the sugar will be absorbed slowly into the cells, firming the fruits. Acids (notably lemon juice) also help fruits retain their structure. (Alkalis, such as baking soda, cause the cells to break down more quickly, reducing the fruits to mush.)

Determining Doneness

There are so many different fruits with such varied responses to cooking that no one standard for doneness is appropriate. Each item should be evaluated on a recipe-by-recipe basis. Generally, however, most cooked fruits are done when they are just tender when pierced with a fork or the tip of a paring knife. Simmered fruits, such as compotes, should be softer, cooked just to the point of disintegration.

You can avoid overcooking fruits by remembering that some carryover cooking will occur through the residual heat contained in the foods. Always rely on subjective tests—sight, feel, taste and aroma—rather than the clock.

Dry-Heat Cooking Methods

Broiling and Grilling

Fruits are usually broiled or grilled just long enough to caramelize sugars. But cooking must be done quickly in order to avoid breaking down the fruits' structure. Good fruits to broil or grill are pineapples, apples, grapefruits, bananas, persimmons and peaches. The fruits may be cut into slices, chunks or halves as appropriate. A coating of sugar, honey or liqueur adds flavor, as do lemon juice, cinnamon and ginger.

When broiling fruits, use an oiled sheet pan or broiling platter. When grilling fruits, use a clean grill grate or thread the pieces onto skewers. Only thick fruit slices will need to be turned or rotated to heat fully. Broiled or grilled fruits can be served alone, as an accompaniment to meat, fish or poultry or as topping for ice creams or custards.

Procedure for Broiling or Grilling Fruits

1. Select ripe fruits and peel, core or slice as necessary.
2. Top with sugar or honey to add flavor and aid caramelization.
3. Place the fruits on the broiler platter, sheet pan or grill grate.
4. Broil or grill at high temperatures, turning as necessary to heat the fruits thoroughly but quickly.

RECIPE 25.1

Broiled Grapefruit

Yield: 8 Servings

Ruby grapefruits	4	4
Sweet sherry	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Brown sugar	4 Tbsp.	60 ml

1. Cut each grapefruit in half (perpendicular to the segments), then section with a sharp knife, carefully removing any visible seeds.
2. Sprinkle the grapefruit halves with the sherry and sugar.
3. Arrange on a baking sheet and place under a preheated broiler. Cook briefly, only until well heated and the sugar caramelizes. Serve immediately.

Approximate values per 1/2-grapefruit (132-g) serving: **Calories** 70, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 16 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin C** 80%, **Claims**–fat free; no sodium

Baking

After washing, peeling, coring or pitting, most pomes, stone fruits and tropicals can be baked to create hot, flavorful desserts. Fruits with sturdy skins, particularly apples and pears, are excellent for baking alone as their skin (peel) holds in moisture and flavor. They can also be used as edible containers by filling the cavity left by coring with a variety of sweet or savory mixtures.

Combinations of fruits can also be baked successfully: Try mixing fruits for a balance of sweetness and tartness (for example, strawberries with rhubarb, apples with plums).

Several baked desserts are simply fruits (fresh, frozen or canned) topped with a crust (and called a *cobbler*), strudel (and called a *crumple* or *crisp*) or batter (and called a *buckle*). (See Recipe 32.18 Blackberry Cobbler.) Fruits, sometimes poached first, can also be baked in a wrapper of puff pastry, flaky dough or phyllo dough to produce an elegant dessert.

Procedure for Baking Fruits

1. Select ripe but firm fruits and peel, core, pit or slice as necessary.
2. Add sugar or any flavorings.

3. Wrap the fruits in pastry dough if desired or directed in the recipe.
4. Place the fruits in a baking dish and bake uncovered in a moderate oven until tender or properly browned.

RECIPE 25.2

Baked Apples

Yield: 8 Servings

Apples, Red or Golden Delicious	8	8
Raisins	6 oz.	170 g
Orange zest	1 1/2 Tbsp.	20 g
Brown sugar	4 oz.	120 g

1. Rinse and core each apple. The peels should be scored or partially removed to allow the pulp to expand without bursting the skin during baking.
2. Plump the raisins by soaking them in boiling water for 10 minutes. Drain the raisins thoroughly.
3. Combine the raisins, orange zest and brown sugar. Fill the cavity of each apple with this mixture.
4. Stand the apples in a shallow baking dish. Add enough water to measure about 1/2 inch (1.25 centimeters) deep.
5. Bake the apples at 375°F (190°C) for 15 minutes. Reduce the temperature to 300°F (150°C) and continue baking until the apples are tender but still hold their shape, approximately 1 hour. Occasionally, baste the apples with liquid from the baking dish.

Approximate values per apple: **Calories** 220, **Total fat** .5 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 10 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 52 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin C** 15%, **Claims**—low fat, no cholesterol, very low sodium, good source of fiber

Sautéing

Fruits develop a rich, syrupy flavor when sautéd briefly in butter, sugar and, if desired, spices or liqueur. Cherries, bananas, apples, pears and pineapples are good choices. They should be peeled, cored and seeded as necessary and cut into uniform-size pieces before sautéing.

For dessert, fruits are sautéed with sugar to create a caramelized glaze or syrup. The fruits and syrup can be used to fill crêpes or to top spongecakes or ice creams. Liquor may be added and the mixture flamed (flambéed) in front of diners, as with Bananas Foster (Recipe 25.14).

For savory mixtures, onions, shallots or garlic are often added.

In both sweet and savory fruit sautés, the fat used should be the most appropriate for the finished product. Butter and bacon fat are typical choices.

Procedure for Sautéing Fruits

1. Peel, pit and core the fruits as necessary and cut into uniform-size pieces.
2. Melt the fat in a hot sauté pan.
3. Add the fruit pieces and any flavoring ingredients. Do not crowd the pan, as this will cause the fruit to stew in its own juices.
4. Cook quickly over high heat.

RECIPE 25.3

Savory Fruit for Roast Pork

Yield: 1 pt. (500 ml)

Onion, fine dice	6 oz.	170 g
Whole butter or bacon fat	1 oz.	30 g
Apricots	3	3
Apples (tart) or peaches, peeled	3	3
Granulated sugar	4 oz.	120 g
Hot paprika	TT	TT
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT

1. Sweat the onions in the butter or bacon fat without browning.
2. Slice the apricots and apples into thin, even pieces. Add the apples to the onions and cook for 1–2 minutes. Add the apricots.
3. Sprinkle the sugar over the fruits and cook, uncovered, over medium heat until tender. Season with paprika, salt and white pepper.
4. Serve warm as an accompaniment to roast pork.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 60, **Total fat** 1.5 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 5 mg, **Sodium** 50 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 12 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Vitamin A** 4%, **Claims**—low fat; low cholesterol; low sodium

Deep-Frying

Few fruits are suitable for deep-frying. Apples, bananas, pears, pineapples and firm peaches mixed in or coated with batter, however, produce fine results. These fruits should be peeled, cored, seeded and cut into evenly sized slices or chunks. They may also need to be dried with paper towels so that the batter or coating can adhere. The procedures for deep-frying are found in Chapter 21, Deep-Frying.

Moist-Heat Cooking Methods

Poaching

One of the more popular cooking methods for fruits is poaching. Poaching softens and tenderizes fruits and infuses them with additional flavors such as spices or wine. Poached fruits can be served hot or cold and used in tarts, pastries or as an accompaniment to meat or poultry dishes.

The poaching liquid can be water, wine, liquor or sugar syrup. (As noted earlier, sugar helps fruits keep their shape, although it takes longer to tenderize fruits poached in sugar syrup.) The low poaching temperature (185°F/85°C) allows fruits to soften gradually. The agitation created at higher temperatures would damage them.

Cooked fruits should be allowed to cool in the flavored poaching liquid or syrup. Most poaching liquids can be used repeatedly. If they contain sufficient sugar, they can be reduced to a sauce or glaze to accompany the poached fruits.

Procedure for Poaching Fruits

1. Peel, core and slice the fruits as necessary.
2. In a sufficiently deep, nonreactive saucepan, combine the poaching liquid (usually water or wine) with sugar, spices, citrus zest and other ingredients as desired or as directed in the recipe.
3. Submerge the fruits in the liquid. Place a circle of parchment paper over the fruits to help them stay submerged.
4. Place the saucepan on the stove top over a medium-high flame; bring to a boil.
5. As soon as the liquid boils, reduce the temperature. Simmer gently.
6. Poach until the fruits are tender enough for the tip of a small knife to be easily inserted. Cooking time depends on the type of fruit used, its ripeness and the cooking liquid.
7. Remove the saucepan from the stove top and allow the liquid and fruits to cool.
8. Remove the fruits from the liquid and then refrigerate. The liquid can be returned to the stove top and reduced until thick enough to use as a sauce or glaze or refrigerated for further use.

RECIPE 25.4

Pears Poached in Red Wine

Note: *This dish appears in the Chapter Opening photograph.*

Yield: 8 Servings

Ripe pears, Anjou or Bartlett	8	8
Zinfandel wine	52 oz.	1500 ml
Whole peppercorns	8–10	8–10
Vanilla bean	1	1
Granulated sugar	12 oz.	340 g
Fresh basil, chopped	1 oz.	30 g
Zest of one orange		

1. Peel and core the pears, leaving the stems intact.
2. Combine the remaining ingredients in a large nonreactive saucepan. Arrange the pears in the liquid in a single layer.
3. Place the pears on the stove top over a medium-high flame. Bring to just below a boil, then immediately reduce the heat and allow the liquid to simmer gently. Cover with a round of parchment paper if necessary to keep the pears submerged.
4. Continue poaching the pears until tender, approximately 1 to 1 1/2 hours. Remove the saucepan from the stove and allow the pears to cool in the liquid.
5. Remove the pears from the poaching liquid and return the liquid to the stove top. Reduce until the liquid is thick enough to coat the back of a spoon, then strain.
6. Serve the pears chilled or at room temperature in a pool of the reduced wine syrup.

Approximate values per 7-oz. (230-g) serving: **Calories** 410, **Total fat** 1.5 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 35 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 91 g, **Protein** 6 g, **Vitamin A** 40%, **Calcium** 90%, **Iron** 110%, **Claims**—low fat; no cholesterol; low sodium; high fiber

Simmering

Simmering techniques are used to make stewed fruits and compotes. Fresh, frozen, canned and dried fruits can be simmered or stewed. As with any moist-heat cooking method, simmering softens and tenderizes fruits. The liquid used can be water, wine or the juices naturally found in the fruits. Sugar, honey and spices may be added as desired. Stewed or simmered fruits can be served hot or cold, as a first course, a dessert or an accompaniment to meat or poultry dishes.

Procedure for Simmering Fruits

1. Peel, core, pit and slice the fruits as necessary.
2. Bring the fruits and cooking liquid, if used, to a simmer. Cook until the fruit is tender.
3. Add sugar or other sweeteners as desired or as directed in the recipe.

RECIPE 25.5

Dried Fruit Compote

Yield: 2 lb. (1 kg)

Dried apricots	5 oz.	150 g
Prunes, pitted	5 oz.	150 g
Dried pears or apples	5 oz.	150 g
Dried peaches	5 oz.	150 g
Hot water	24 oz.	720 ml
Cinnamon stick	1	1
Light corn syrup	12 oz.	340 g
Cointreau	2 oz.	60 ml

1. Coarsely chop the fruits. Place the pieces in a nonreactive saucepan and add the water and cinnamon stick.
2. Bring the mixture to a simmer, cover and cook until tender, approximately 12–15 minutes.
3. Add the corn syrup and Cointreau. Simmer uncovered until thoroughly heated. Serve warm or refrigerate for longer storage.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 60, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 15 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 15 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—fat free; very low sodium

Concentrate—*also known as a fruit paste or compound, is a reduced fruit purée, without a gel structure, used as a flavoring.*

Jam—*a fruit gel made from fruit pulp and sugar.*

Jelly—*a fruit gel made from fruit juice and sugar.*

Marmalade—*a citrus jelly that also contains unpeeled slices of citrus fruit.*

Preserve—*a fruit gel that contains large pieces or whole fruits.*

Preserving

Fresh fruits can be preserved with sugar if the fruit and sugar mixture is concentrated by evaporation to the point that microbial spoilage cannot occur. The added sugar also retards the growth of, but does not destroy, microorganisms.

Pectin, a substance present in varying amounts in all fruits, can cause cooked fruits to form a semisolid mass known as a **gel**. Fruits that are visually unattractive but otherwise of high quality can be made into gels, which are more commonly known as **jams**, **jellies**, **marmalades** and **preserves**.

The essential ingredients of a fruit gel are fruit, pectin, acid (usually lemon juice) and sugar. They must be carefully combined in the correct ratio for the gel to form. For fruits with a low pectin content (such as strawberries) to form

a gel, pectin must be added, either by adding a fruit with a high pectin content (for example, apples or quinces) or by adding packaged pectin.

Apple Jelly

Apricot Jam

Orange Marmalade

Procedure for Making Fruit Preserves

1. Clean, peel, core, pit and cut the fruits as necessary.
2. Firm fruits should be simmered in water or juice until tender.
3. Add sugar and other flavorings to the fruits as desired or as directed in the recipe.
4. Simmer until the mixture thickens.

RECIPE 25.6

Quince Jam

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Water	1 qt.	1 lt
Lemon juice	1 oz.	30 ml
Fresh quince	3 lb.	1.3 kg
Granulated sugar	12 oz.	340 g
Vanilla bean	1/2	1/2

1. Combine the water and 1/2 ounce (15 milliliters) of lemon juice in a large, nonreactive saucepan.
2. Peel, quarter and core the quince. Cut each quarter into small cubes and add to the water.
3. Bring the water to a boil, reduce the heat, cover and simmer until the quince is tender, approximately 30 minutes.
4. Remove about half the quince with a slotted spoon and set aside. Purée the remaining quince with the cooking liquid.
5. Return the purée and the quince pieces to the saucepan and bring to a simmer. Add the remaining 1/2 ounce (15 milliliters) of lemon juice, the sugar and vanilla bean.
6. Simmer uncovered, stirring frequently, until the jam holds its shape, approximately 15 minutes. Remove from the heat and cool over an ice bath.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (54-g) serving: **Calories** 70, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 17 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Vitamin C** 10%, **Claims**—no fat

Conclusion

Fruits, whether fresh, frozen, canned or dried, are one of the most versatile and popular of foods. Fruits can be used uncooked or incorporated into a soup, salad, bread, meat dish or dessert. When selecting fresh fruits, it is important to consider seasonal availability, storage conditions and ripeness. When using them, it is important that they be at their peak of ripeness for the best flavor, texture, aroma and appearance.

QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

1. Define ripeness and explain why ripe fruits are most desirable. How does the ripening process affect the availability of some fruits?
2. Describe the proper storage conditions for most fruits. Which fruits emit ethylene gas, and why is this a consideration when storing fruits?
3. Explain why some apple varieties are preferred for cooking, while other varieties are preferred for eating. Which variety is generally preferred for making applesauce?
4. Which types of fruits are best for dry-heat cooking methods? Explain your answer. Why is sugar usually added when cooking any type of fruit?
5. List and describe three ways to prepare fruits for extended storage.

ADDITIONAL FRUIT RECIPES

RECIPE 25.7

TROPICAL FRUIT WITH PASSION FRUIT PURÉE

CAMPTON PLACE RESTAURANT, KEMPINSKI HOTELS, SAN FRANCISCO, CA
Former Executive Chef Jan Birnbaum

Yield: 6 Servings

Mangoes	2	2
Papayas	2	2
Brazilian red bananas	2	2
Fresh coconut	1	1
Lime	1	1
Cherimoya (optional)	1	1
Guavas	2	2
Pineapple, medium, trimmed	1/3	1/3
Passion fruit	12	12
Sugar	4 oz.	120 g
Honey	6 oz.	180 g
Raspberries	as needed	as needed
Blackberries	as needed	as needed

1. Trim, peel and slice or cut all the fruit, except the passion fruit, into interesting shapes. Hold in the refrigerator for service.
2. Cut the passion fruit in half and scoop out the seeds and membrane into a nonreactive saucepan. Add any fleshy trimmings from the mango, papaya, guava and pineapple. Add the sugar and honey and cook to a sauce consistency. Strain and cool.
3. Ladle 1 1/2 ounces (45 milliliters) of the sauce onto a cold plate or bowl. Arrange the sliced fruit attractively on the sauce. Garnish with raspberries and blackberries.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 560, **Total fat** 5 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 25 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 123 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Vitamin A** 35%, **Vitamin C** 340%, **Iron** 10%, **Claims**—no cholesterol; high fiber

RECIPE 25.8

Figs with Berries and Honey Mousse

GREENS RESTAURANT, San Francisco, CA
Executive Chef Annie Somerville

Yield: 4 Servings

Raspberries or blackberries	1 pt.	450 ml
Fresh figs such as Black Mission, Kadota or Calmyrna	1 pt.	450 ml
Honey	6 oz.	170 g
Egg yolks	4	4
Salt	TT	TT
Heavy cream	1 pt.	450 ml
Fresh mint	as needed for garnish	

1. Pick through the berries, but do not rinse them because water will dilute their flavor.
2. Rinse the figs and cut them in half, leaving the stem attached.
3. To make the mousse, whisk the honey, yolks and salt together in a bowl over a pan of barely simmering water. Whisk the mixture continuously for 8 minutes. After 5 minutes, the mousse will begin to thicken and the texture will become creamy. Whisk vigorously until the mousse leaves thick ribbons on its surface when poured over itself. Set aside to cool. The texture of the cooled mousse will be stiff and sticky.
4. Whisk 2 tablespoons (30 milliliters) of cream into the mousse, working it until it loosens.
5. Whip the remaining cream until it is firm, fold it into the mousse until it is just incorporated, then whisk the two together. The texture will be light and creamy.
6. Loosely arrange the figs on a platter, sprinkle with the berries, garnish with mint and serve with the mousse.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 680, **Total fat** 47 g, **Saturated fat** 28 g, **Cholesterol** 370 mg, **Sodium** 200 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 57 g, **Protein** 6 g, **Vitamin A** 60%, **Vitamin C** 25%

RECIPE 25.9

Pineapple Papaya Salsa

Yield: 2 qt. (2 lt)

Tomatoes	3	3
Pineapple, fresh	1	1
Papaya, fresh	1	1
Green onions, sliced	1 bunch	1 bunch
Fresh cilantro, chopped	1 bunch	1 bunch
Jalapeños, seeded, minced	2	2
Lemon juice	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Garlic, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Salt	2 tsp.	10 ml

Continued

1. Core and dice the tomatoes.
2. Peel and dice the pineapple.
3. Peel, seed and dice the papaya.
4. Combine all the ingredients and chill well.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (60-g) serving: **Calories** 25, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 330 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 5 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Vitamin C** 45%, **Claims**—fat free; low calorie

RECIPE 25.10

Tropical Fruit Salad with Yogurt Dressing

Yield: 4 Small Salads

Mango, cut into 1/2-in. (12-mm) cubes	6 oz.	170 g
Pineapple, cut into 1/2-in. (12-mm) cubes	6 oz.	170 g
Papaya, cut into 1/2-in. (12-mm) cubes	4 oz.	120 g
Grapefruit segments	16	16
Pineapple or grapefruit juice	2 oz.	60 ml
Plain, nonfat yogurt	4 oz.	120 g
Honey	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Fresh lime juice	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Butterhead lettuce, large leaves, separated and cleaned	4	4
Kiwi, peeled and sliced	1	1
Poppy seeds	1 tsp.	5 ml

1. Mix the mango, pineapple, papaya and grapefruit together with the pineapple or grapefruit juice.
2. To make the dressing, whisk the yogurt, honey and lime juice together.
3. Line the plates with the butterhead lettuce. Arrange the kiwi slices and the fruit salad over the lettuce.
4. Drizzle the dressing over the fruits and top with poppy seeds.

Approximate values per 8-oz. (260-g) serving: **Calories** 170, **Total fat** 1 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 30 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 38 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Vitamin A** 20%, **Vitamin C** 150%, **Claims**—low fat; no cholesterol; very low sodium; good source of fiber

RECIPE 25.11

Gratin of Fresh Berries with Crème Fraîche

Yield: 1 Serving

Assorted fresh berries, such as raspberries, blueberries and blackberries	4 oz.	120 g
Crème fraîche	2 oz.	60 ml

Orange liqueur	1 tsp.	5 ml
Brown sugar	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Arrange the berries in an even layer in a shallow, heat-proof serving dish.
2. Stir the crème fraîche and orange liqueur together. Spoon this mixture over the berries.
3. Sprinkle the brown sugar over the crème. Place under a broiler or salamander just until the sugar melts. Serve immediately.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 210, **Total fat** 7 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 20 mg, **Sodium** 30 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 33 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Vitamin C** 40%, **Claims**—very low sodium; high fiber

RECIPE 25.12

Grilled Fruit Kebabs

Yield: 8 Skewers

Cantaloupe	6 oz.	170 g
Honeydew melon	6 oz.	170 g
Pineapple	6 oz.	170 g
Strawberries	8	8
Brown sugar	2 oz.	60 g
Lime juice	4 oz.	120 ml
Cinnamon, ground	1/4 tsp.	1 ml

1. Remove the rind and cut the melons and pineapple into 1-inch (2.5-centimeter) cubes. Hull the strawberries and leave whole.
2. To make the sugar glaze, combine the sugar, lime juice and cinnamon, stirring until the sugar dissolves.
3. Heat the grill and clean the grate thoroughly.
4. Thread the fruits onto kebab skewers, alternating colors for an attractive appearance.
5. Brush the fruits with the sugar glaze. Grill, rotating the skewers frequently to develop an evenly light brown surface.
6. Serve immediately as an appetizer, a garnish for ice cream or an accompaniment to rich meats such as pork or lamb.

Approximate values per skewer: **Calories** 70, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 10 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 16 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin C** 50%, **Claims**—fat free; very low sodium

RECIPE 25.13

Cherry Confit

Yield: 4 oz. (120 g)

Red onion, small dice	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Whole butter	2 tsp.	10 ml
Dried cherries	3 oz.	90 g
Brandy	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

Continued

Port	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Sherry vinegar	1/2 tsp.	3 ml

1. Sauté the onions in butter without coloring.
2. Add the cherries. Add the brandy and flambé.
3. Add the port and sherry vinegar; cook until almost dry. Serve warm or at room temperature with charcuterie items, or grilled or roasted meats.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (33-g) serving: **Calories** 35, **Total fat** 2 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 5 mg, **Sodium** 20 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 3 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—low fat; very low sodium; low calorie

RECIPE 25.14

BANANAS FOSTER

Bananas Foster is an American classic, created in New Orleans during the 1950s and named for a local celebrity. It is usually prepared for customers tableside, using a portable burner known as a réchaud.

Yield: 1 Serving

Banana, medium	1	1
Unsalted butter	1/2 oz.	15 g
Brown sugar	1/2 oz.	15 g
Fresh orange juice	1 oz.	30 ml
Dark rum	1/2 oz.	15 ml
Brandy or crème de banana	1/2 oz.	15 ml
Cinnamon	TT	TT
Vanilla ice cream	1 portion	1 portion

1. Peel the banana and cut in half lengthwise. Cut each half into three chunks and set aside.
2. Melt the butter in a sauté pan. Add the brown sugar and stir until the sugar melts.
3. Add the bananas and stir to coat them completely with the sauce. Cook until tender, approximately 1–2 minutes.
4. Stir in the orange juice. Add the rum and brandy, then flame the mixture. Sprinkle the cinnamon onto the bananas.
5. When the flames die, spoon the bananas and sauce over the ice cream and serve immediately.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 570, **Total fat** 28 g, **Saturated fat** 17 g, **Cholesterol** 100 mg, **Sodium** 90 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 72 g, **Protein** 8 g, **Vitamin A** 25%, **Vitamin C** 40%, **Claims**—low sodium; good source of fiber

RECIPE 25.15

BANANA FRITTERS

Yield: 40 Fritters

Egg, beaten	1	1
Milk	8 oz.	250 ml
Unsalted butter, melted	2 oz.	60 g
Vanilla extract	1 tsp.	5 ml

Orange zest, finely grated	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Orange juice	2 oz.	60 ml
Ripe banana, large	1	1
Pastry flour, sifted	12 oz.	340 g
Granulated sugar	4 oz.	120 g
Baking powder	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Salt	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Confectioner's sugar	as needed for garnish	

1. Whisk together the egg, milk, butter and vanilla. Add the orange zest and juice.
2. Peel and dice the banana and add to the egg mixture.
3. Sift together the flour, granulated sugar, baking powder and salt. Gently stir in the banana-egg mixture to form a thick batter.
4. Heat deep-fryer oil to 350°F (180°C). Fry 1-tablespoon (15-milliliter) portions of the batter until the fritters are brown and crisp, approximately 5 minutes.
5. Drain on paper towels, dust with confectioner's sugar and serve hot.

Approximate values per fritter: **Calories** 60, **Total fat** 1.5 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 35 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 11 g, **Protein** 1 g

RECIPE 25.16

Lemon Curd

Yield: 1 1/2 qt. (1.5 lt)

Whole eggs	12	12
Egg yolks	4	4
Granulated sugar	2 lb.	900 g
Unsalted butter, cubed	1 lb.	450 g
Lemon zest	from 8 lemons	from 8 lemons
Fresh lemon juice	12 oz.	340 ml

1. Whisk everything together in a large bowl.
2. Place the bowl over a pan of simmering water and cook, stirring frequently, until very thick, approximately 20–25 minutes.
3. Strain, cover and chill completely. Serve with scones or use as a filling for tartlets or layer cakes.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 170, **Total fat** 9 g, **Saturated fat** 5 g, **Cholesterol** 90 mg, **Sodium** 20 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 20 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Vitamin A** 10%

RECIPE 25.17

Braised Rhubarb

Yield: 10 lb. (4.5 kg)

Tart green apples, peeled and cubed	2 lb. 8 oz.	1.1 kg
Rhubarb, IQF pieces	7 lb.	3.2 kg
Unsalted butter	4 oz.	120 g

Continued

Sweet white wine	8 oz.	250 ml
Brown sugar	14 oz.	400 g
Vanilla extract	2 tsp.	10 ml
Cinnamon	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Nutmeg	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Orange juice	2 oz.	60 ml
Salt	1/2 tsp.	2 ml

1. Sauté the apples and rhubarb in the butter until they begin to soften.
2. Add the wine and reduce by half. Add the remaining ingredients. Simmer until the rhubarb is very tender.
3. Serve at room temperature in prebaked pastry cups, topped with crème chantilly or serve warm over ice cream.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (29-g) serving: **Calories** 60, **Total fat** 2 g, **Saturated fat** .5 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 25 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 11 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—low fat; no cholesterol; very low sodium

RECIPE 25.18

Berry Compote

Yield: 1 pt. (450 ml)

Berries, fresh or frozen	1 pt.	500 ml
Granulated sugar	4 oz.	120 g
Oranges, juice and zest	2	2
Honey	3 oz.	90 g
Cinnamon stick	1	1
Brandy	3 Tbsp.	45 ml

1. Select an assortment of fresh or frozen berries—strawberries, blueberries, raspberries, blackberries and cherries can be used, depending on availability.
2. Place the fruits and sugar in a nonreactive saucepan. Add the juice from the two oranges. Bring to a simmer over low heat; cook until the fruits are soft but still intact.
3. Strain the mixture, saving both the fruits and the liquid. Return the liquid to the saucepan. Add the finely grated zest from one orange, the honey, cinnamon and brandy.
4. Bring to a boil and reduce until the mixture thickens enough to coat the back of a spoon. Remove from the heat and cool to room temperature.
5. Gently stir the reserved fruits into the sauce, cover and chill.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 70, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 16 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Vitamin C** 15%, **Claims**—fat free; no sodium

RECIPE 25.19

Applesauce

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

McIntosh apples	4 lb.	1.8 g
Cinnamon sticks	2	2

Granulated sugar	5 oz.	150 g
Lemon juice	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Peel, core and quarter the apples. Place in a saucepan with just enough cold water to cover the bottom of the pan. Add the cinnamon sticks.
2. Bring to a simmer, cover and cook until the apples are tender, approximately 15 minutes.
3. Add the sugar and lemon juice. Simmer for 10 minutes.
4. Remove the cinnamon sticks and press the apples through a food mill.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 50, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 13 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—fat free; no sodium

RECIPE 25.20

Fresh Cranberry-Orange Sauce

Yield: 3 qt. (3 lt)

Granulated sugar	1 lb.	450 g
Orange juice	4 oz.	120 ml
Water	8 oz.	225 ml
Fresh or frozen cranberries	1 lb. 8 oz.	700 g
Cinnamon stick	1	1
Orange liqueur	2 oz.	60 ml
Orange zest, finely grated	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Orange segments	20	20

1. Combine the sugar, juice and water in a nonreactive saucepan; bring to a boil.
2. Add the cranberries and cinnamon stick and simmer uncovered until the berries begin to burst, approximately 15 minutes. Skim off any foam that rises to the surface.
3. Add the orange liqueur and zest and simmer for another 5 minutes.
4. Remove from the heat and remove the cinnamon stick. Add the orange segments. Cool and refrigerate.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (20-g) serving: **Calories** 25, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 6 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—fat free; no sodium; low calorie

RECIPE 25.21

Mango Chutney

Yield: 1 1/2 qt. (1 1/2 lt)

Mango, peeled and diced	2 lb.	900 g
Onion, fine dice	4 oz.	120 g
Garlic cloves, minced	2	2
Cider vinegar	8 oz.	250 ml
Dark brown sugar	8 oz.	250 g
Golden raisins	2 1/2 oz.	75 g
Crystallized ginger	4 oz.	120 g

Continued

Salt	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Cinnamon sticks	2	2
Red pepper flakes	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Mustard seeds	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Fresh ginger	1 tsp.	5 ml
Lime juice	1 oz.	30 ml

1. Combine the mango, onion, garlic, vinegar and sugar in a large, heavy saucepan. Cook until the sugar dissolves.
2. Stir in the raisins, crystallized ginger, salt and spices. Simmer until the onions and raisins are very soft, approximately 45 minutes. Skim foam from the surface as necessary.
3. Stir in the lime juice and adjust the seasonings.
4. Remove from the heat and cool uncovered. The chutney will thicken somewhat as it cools but should be thinner than fruit preserves.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (36-g) serving: **Calories** 50, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 30 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 12 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Vitamin C** 10%, **Claims**—fat free; very low sodium

RECIPE 25.22

Sweet Orange Marmalade

Yield: 1 1/4 qt. (1 1/4 lt)

Lemon	1	1
Valencia oranges	4	4
Water	as needed	as needed
Granulated sugar	as needed	as needed

1. Cut the lemon and oranges in half lengthwise, then slice very thinly. Remove all seeds. Measure the volume of the fruits and then place them in a nonreactive pan. Add 12 ounces (360 milliliters) of cold water for each cup of fruit and allow to soak for several hours or overnight.
2. Place the fruits and water in a heavy saucepan and bring to a boil over medium-high heat. Allow to boil gently for 2 hours. Skim foam from the surface as necessary.
3. Remeasure the volume of fruit and liquid. Add 6 ounces (180 grams) of sugar for each cup of the boiled fruit and liquid. Return to the stove and boil until the temperature reaches 218°F (103°C), approximately 30 minutes. Remove from heat and cool uncovered.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (24-g) serving: **Calories** 25, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 6 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Vitamin C** 10%, **Claims**—fat free; no sodium; low calorie

CHAPTER 26

SANDWICHES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- select high-quality sandwich ingredients
- identify different types and styles of sandwiches
- prepare sandwiches to order

A sandwich is often the first meal a person learns to prepare. Even those who claim to be unable to cook often make delicious hot and cold sandwiches without considering it cooking. Mastering a grilled cheese sandwich or assembling the quintessential BLT may not require a degree in the culinary arts, but it does require the ability to select and use ingredients wisely.

Sandwiches, which are usually quick and easy to assemble, lend themselves well to a chef's creativity. Fancy sandwiches can become sensational menu additions in even the most formal restaurants and amazing sandwiches can keep lunch customers visiting regularly. Sandwiches offer food service operations economical opportunities for using leftovers and offer customers, especially those with smaller budgets or appetites, meals to eat out of hand. Thus, the ability to correctly prepare hot and cold sandwiches to order is a fundamental skill in many food service operations.

INGREDIENTS FOR SANDWICHES

Sandwiches are constructed from bread, a spread and one or more fillings. These components should be selected and combined carefully so that the finished sandwich is flavorful and visually appealing.

Bread

Bread provides more than a convenient means for handling a sandwich. It holds or contains the spread and fillings and gives the sandwich its shape. Bread also adds flavor, texture, nutrition and color, and often determines the overall look of the finished product.

Health consciousness and consumer willingness to try new and unusual foods gives today's chefs the freedom to create sandwiches without relying on two slices of white bread. Virtually any bread can be used in sandwich making: rolls, biscuits, bagels, croissants, fruit and nut breads, whole grain breads and savory breads as well as flatbreads such as naan, lavosh and tortillas, pocket breads such as pitas and flavorful breads such as focaccia and Swedish limpa.

Whatever bread is used and whether its flavor is mild or intense, the bread should complement the fillings and not overpower them. The bread should be fresh (although day-old bread is easier to slice and is excellent toasted) and its texture should be able to withstand moisture from the spread and fillings without becoming soggy or pasty. An overly hard or crusty bread, however, may make the sandwich difficult to eat.

Spread

A spread is used to add flavor, moisture and richness to the sandwich and, sometimes, it helps hold or bind it together. Some spreads, especially plain or flavored butters, also act as a barrier to prevent the moisture in the filling from soaking into the bread.

Hero Worship

Americans *love* sandwiches—not only the everyday classics, but larger-than-life regional masterpieces that go by colorful, often interchangeable names: hoagies, submarines, heroes and so on. I've even heard them called "Dagwoods," after the Bumstead of comics fame who makes his monumental sandwiches in the middle of the night, invariably with a piece of Swiss cheese hanging over the side and an olive on a toothpick spear. They're "hoagies" in my native Philadelphia, supposedly after the Hog Island shipyard, where Italian workers ate big stuffed sandwiches during World War I. "Submarine" was coined in the next war, it is said, at a Connecticut submarine base. A sandwich is a "hero" when it's so huge it takes a hero to eat it—this from food journalist Clementine Paddleford, writing in the 1930s about New York's Manganaro's deli.

Call it what you like, and make what you like of it. Dagwood puts everything but the kitchen sink in his sandwich. Manganaro's still fills its version to the brim with Italian antipasti—meats, cheeses, peppers, lettuce and tomatoes. In my hometown, everything's optional but the Italian bread, lettuce, tomato, onion and salad oil. New Englanders eat something called a "grinder," a hero stuffed with hot meatballs, sausage and peppers, veal parmigiana or the like. These are aptly named and a real workout for the jaw! New Orleans has two big sandwiches: the round muffuletta, dressed in garlicky green-olive salad and the warming po' boy, which is often soaked in gravy. Cuban immigrants press ham, roast pork, cheese and sweet pickles between slabs of French bread in a *plancha*, a kind of sandwich iron. But perhaps you have a better idea. Try it! Give it a jaunty title and who knows—perhaps both the recipe and its name will live on.

From Sheila Lukins USA Cookbook, *by* Sheila Lukins
Workman Publishing, 1997

There are three principal spreads:

Butter—One of the most common spreads, plain butter adds flavor and richness; it is also an excellent moisture barrier. Flavored or compound butters, discussed in Chapter 10, Stocks and Sauces, make excellent sandwich spreads, adding flavor dimensions to the finished product. For example, try caper butter on a Cajun-style blackened beef sandwich or a red chile honey butter on a smoked turkey sandwich. Any butter spread should be softened or whipped so that it will spread easily without tearing the bread.

Mayonnaise—Perhaps the most popular sandwich spread, mayonnaise adds moisture, richness and flavor and complements most meat, poultry, fish, shellfish, vegetable, egg and cheese fillings. Like butter, mayonnaise can be made more exciting by adding flavoring ingredients. Condiments (for example, coarse-grained mustard or grated horseradish), herbs, spices and spice blends (for example, curry or chilli powder) and other ingredients such as sun-dried tomatoes and pesto sauce can be stirred into fresh or commercially prepared mayonnaise. Fresh mayonnaise can also be prepared with flavored oils, such as olive oil, walnut oil or chile oil. See Chapter 24, Salads and Salad Dressings, for recipes and additional information on mayonnaise.

Vegetable purées—Puréed vegetables are often used as sandwich spreads; after all, lunch boxes everywhere would be incomplete without a purée of roasted peanuts (more commonly known as peanut butter) and fruit jelly. More sophisticated examples include finely chopped black olives flavored with fresh thyme, oregano and a few drops of olive oil for a sandwich of Italian meats and cheeses, or a well-seasoned chickpea purée with lemon and tahini paste for a vegetarian sandwich. Unlike butter, vegetable purées usually will not provide a moisture barrier between the bread and the fillings.

Filling

The filling is the body of the sandwich, providing most of its flavor. A sandwich often contains more than one filling. For example, the filling in a Rueben sandwich is corned beef, cheese and sauerkraut, while in a BLT it is bacon, lettuce and tomato. Fillings for cold sandwiches must be precooked and properly chilled although some hot sandwich fillings may be cooked to order.

When choosing fillings, be sure that the flavors complement each other. Their textures may be similar or contrasting. If an ingredient, such as lettuce, is supposed to be crisp, it should be very crisp, not limp. If an ingredient is supposed to be tender and moist, make sure it is so. Improperly prepared, poor-quality or mishandled filling ingredients can ruin an otherwise wonderful sandwich.

Popular fillings include:

Beef—Although the classic hot beef sandwich is the hamburger, other hot or cold beef products are commonly used. For example, hot or cold small steaks, slices of larger cuts such as the tenderloin, thin slices of roast beef, and so on, make excellent fillings. Also popular are hot or cold slices of cured beef products, including corned beef, pastrami and tongue as well as beef sausages such as salami, bologna and hot dogs.

Pork—Various ham and bacon products, served either hot or cold, are extremely popular. In addition, pork loin and tenderloin are light, white meats that adapt well to various flavor combinations and cooking methods. Barbecued pork, pork sausages and pork hot dogs are also popular.

Poultry—Sliced turkey breast, either roasted or smoked, and processed turkey are often used in hot and cold sandwiches. Moreover, food substitutes such as turkey bologna, turkey pastrami, turkey hot dogs and turkey ham, are becoming increasingly popular because they generally have a lower fat content than the beef or pork original. Boneless chicken breast, either sliced or whole, is also quite popular because it can be prepared by a variety of methods, complements a broad range of flavors and has a relatively low fat content.

Fish and shellfish—Although fried fish fillets are an old standard, grilled fish sandwiches are gaining in popularity. Canned fish products, particularly tuna and salmon, are also widely used. Often fish and shellfish, especially tuna, shrimp and crab, are used for mayonnaise-based bound salads. Sardines and anchovies are less popular than other fish, but are sometimes mixed into bound salads or arranged artistically on open-faced sandwiches.

Vegetables—Vegetables add texture, moisture, flavor and nutrition to most any sandwich. Fresh vegetables such as lettuce, onions and tomatoes are commonly used in combination with meat, cheese and other fillings. Vegetables, however, can stand on their own as sandwich fillings. Marinated, grilled vegetables can be used in hot or cold sandwiches, and a combination of sliced, fresh vegetables and a flavorful dressing wrapped in soft lavosh or a tortilla becomes a portable salad.

Eggs—Hard-cooked eggs are most often used as an ingredient in a mayonnaise-based salad, where they are chopped and combined with pickle relish and seasonings. Hard-cooked eggs can also be sliced thin and used as an attractive garnish on open-faced sandwiches. Fried or scrambled eggs can be layered between pieces of bread or rolled in a tortilla for a breakfast sandwich.

Cheese—Cheese is available in such a variety of textures, flavors, colors and styles that it is a welcome addition to nearly any sandwich. Sliced cheese can be used as a filling in hot or cold sandwiches, and melted cheese or a cheese sauce makes an excellent topping for hot open-faced sandwiches. Flavored cream cheese is also used as a spread or filling, particularly with bagels and fruit or nut breads.

Sandwich Sanitation

Sandwiches, whether hot or cold, present a particularly dangerous environment for the spread of food-borne illnesses. The use of precooked, high-protein foods, the combination of hot and cold ingredients and the presence of uncooked eggs in spreads such as mayonnaise offer bacteria attractive homes. Cross-contamination can be an especially common problem because of the repeated use of spatulas, spreaders, scales, knives, cutting boards and, deadliest of all, human hands. Take extra care to wash hands frequently and to clean work surfaces and tools with a sanitizer often during service. The cardinal rule for proper food handling applies as well: *Keep hot foods hot, keep cold foods cold.* Review Chapter 2, Food Safety and Sanitation, for further information.

Bound salads—Protein salads bound with mayonnaise or salad dressing are popular sandwich fillings. Examples include chicken, tuna, egg and ham salads. Bound salads are discussed in Chapter 24, Salads and Salad Dressings.

Types of Sandwiches

Sandwiches can be hot or cold, closed or open-faced, depending on the way in which the ingredients are assembled and presented.

Hot Sandwiches

Hot closed sandwiches include those in which the filling ingredients are served hot, such as a hamburger or hot dog, and those where the entire sandwich is heated for service, such as a grilled cheese or Monte Cristo. Hot closed sandwiches can be categorized as basic, grilled or deep-fried.

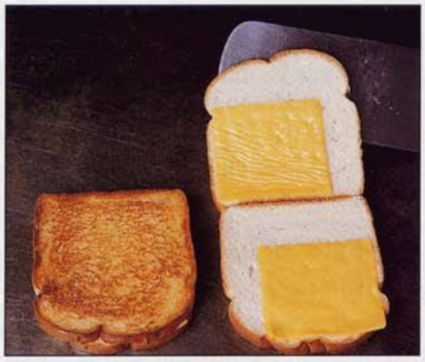
Basic hot closed sandwiches are generally those in which the principal filling is served hot between two pieces of bread. These sandwiches may also include fillings that are not hot, such as tomato slices and lettuce leaves. Variations of the basic hot closed sandwich include tacos, quesadillas, burros (or burritos) and wraps, in which the hot and/or cold fillings are folded or wrapped in a tortilla or other supple flatbread.

Procedure for Preparing Wrap Sandwiches

1. The tortilla is topped with a spread or dressing.

2. Vegetables and meat, fish or poultry items are mounded across the tortilla.

3. The tortilla is rolled tightly around the filling.

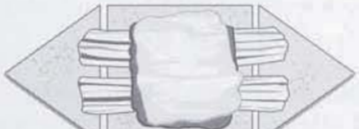


Cooking grilled cheese sandwiches.

Trim crusts from two pieces of toasted bread.

Cut one piece diagonally.

Arrange trimmed, cut toast on plate.



Lay main ingredient over toast.
EX: bacon, roast beef, sliced turkey.

Cover with cheese or sauce and beat.

FIGURE 26.1 *Arranging Hot Open-Faced Sandwiches.*

Grilled sandwiches are those in which the filling is placed between two pieces of bread, which are buttered on the outside and then browned on a griddle or in a sauté pan. The filling will be warmed during this procedure but will not cook. Therefore, fillings such as bacon or sliced meat should be fully cooked before the sandwich is assembled and grilled.

Deep-fried sandwiches are made by dipping a closed sandwich in egg batter or bread crumbs and then deep-frying it. The most common example is the Monte Cristo: white bread filled with sliced ham, Swiss cheese and Dijon mustard.

The hot open-faced turkey or steak sandwich proved long ago that sandwiches do not need to be eaten by hand. In the typical **hot open-faced sandwich**, bread (grilled, toasted or fresh) is placed on a serving plate, covered with hot meat or other filling and topped with an appropriate gravy, sauce or cheese. The completed dish is often browned under a broiler before service. Condiments and garnishes are usually served on the side.

Perhaps the ultimate hot open-faced sandwich is the pizza. Bread dough is topped with sauce, cheese, meat and vegetables, then baked. Small personal-sized pizzas are a popular menu item in even upscale restaurants.

Cold Sandwiches

Cold sandwiches are simply sandwiches that are eaten cold. They are made with raw ingredients that are not intended to be cooked, such as vegetables and cheese, or with meat, poultry, fish or shellfish that is precooked then chilled before use as a filling. As with hot sandwiches, cold sandwiches may be closed or open-faced.

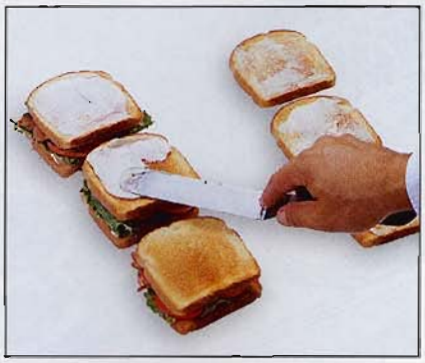
Cold closed sandwiches are those that contain two or more pieces of bread with one or more fillings and one or more spreads. Cold closed sandwiches are usually eaten with the hands and come in three basic styles: basic, multidecker and tea.

Basic cold sandwiches are made with two pieces of bread or one split roll, one spread and one or more fillings. A tuna salad sandwich or an Italian-style submarine are both examples of basic cold closed sandwiches. A variation of the basic cold sandwich is a wrap with cold fillings, for example, an herb-flavored tortilla spread with peanut sauce and wrapped around spinach leaves, diced grilled chicken and cold cooked rice.

Multidecker cold sandwiches are made with three or more pieces of bread, one or more spreads and two or more fillings. The club sandwich, in which sliced turkey, bacon, lettuce and tomato are layered with three slices of toasted bread, is a classic example of a multidecker sandwich.

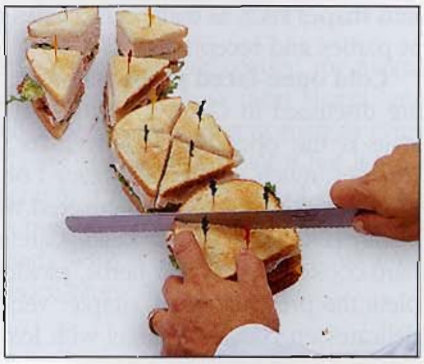
PROCEDURE FOR PREPARING COLD MULTIDECKER SANDWICHES

1. The first slice of toasted bread is spread with butter or mayonnaise, then topped with meat and vegetables.



2. The second slice of bread is added, then spread with mayonnaise.

3. A second layer of vegetables and meat is added.



4. The finished sandwich is cut into quarters for service.

HISTORY OF SANDWICHES

One of the earliest recorded references to foods eaten between two pieces of bread tells of Rabbi Hillel, a great Jewish teacher who lived sometime between 70 B.C. and 70 A.D. He created the Passover custom of eating haroseth (chopped nuts and apples) and mohror (bitter herbs) between two pieces of matzo (unleavened bread). This "sandwich" was intended to represent the mortar used by the Jews to build the Egyptians' pyramids and the bitter sadness of their internment away from the land of Israel.

The term *sandwich* came into use approximately 200 years ago. The Fourth Earl of Sandwich, Sir John Montague (1718–1792), is credited with popularizing the concept of eating meats and cheeses between two slices of bread. Apparently the Earl, not wanting to leave the gaming tables that he loved so much, would demand that his servants bring him meat and bread. He combined the two and ate them with one hand, allowing him a free hand to continue playing at the tables. Some historians argue that a more likely scenario is that, as the head of defense, the Earl was kept busy planning British strategy for the Revolutionary War underway in the American colonies. Whichever the case, the name stuck.

Sandwiches became more popular in the United States when soft white bread became common in the early 20th century. Today, sandwiches are found on breakfast, lunch and dinner menus and are served by every type of food service operation, from the most casual diner to the fanciest four-star dining room.

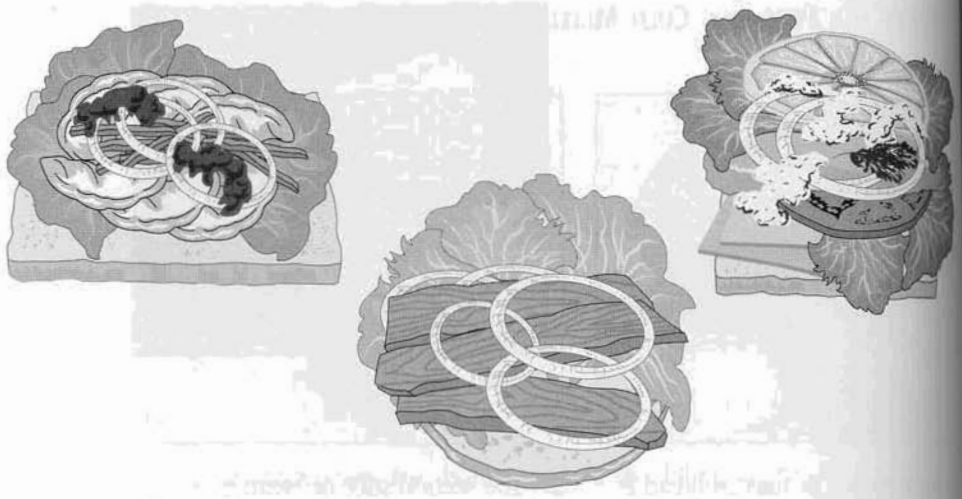


FIGURE 26.2 *Cold Open-faced Sandwiches.*

Tea sandwiches are small, fancy constructions made with light, soft, trimmed breads and delicate fillings and spreads. They are usually cut or rolled into shapes such as diamonds, circles or pinwheels and served as a finger food at parties and receptions.

Cold open-faced sandwiches are simply larger versions of canapés, which are discussed in Chapter 28, Hors d'Oeuvre and Canapés. The most popular style is the open-faced Norwegian sandwich known as smørbrød. As with canapés, much emphasis is placed on visual appeal. A single slice of bread is coated with a spread, then covered with thin slices of meat, poultry or fish, or a thin layer of a bound salad. Carefully cut and arranged garnishes such as hard-cooked eggs, fresh herbs, pickles, onions and radishes are used to complete the presentation. A simpler version of an open-faced cold sandwich is a delicatessen classic—a bagel with lox and cream cheese.

PREPARING SANDWICHES

Sandwiches are generally prepared to order, and their preparation usually requires a great deal of handwork. Therefore, the goal is to assemble all ingredients and equipment so that your motions will be as quick and efficient as possible at the time of final assembly. Because each menu and food service operation has its own requirements, there is no one correct station setup, but there are a few basic guidelines.

1. *Prepare ingredients.* All sandwich ingredients should be cooked, mixed, sliced and prepared ahead of service to facilitate quick, efficient assembly at service time. So, before service, slice the meats, cheeses and vegetables, blend the flavored spreads, mix the bound salads, and so on.
2. *Arrange and store ingredients.* Arrange all sandwich ingredients within easy reach of the work area. Cold items must be properly refrigerated at all times. A sandwich bar, similar to a steam table but with refrigerated compartments, is frequently used for this purpose. Under-counter refrigeration can be used for backup supplies and less frequently used ingredients. Sliced meats, cheeses and vegetables must be well covered to prevent dehydration or contamination. Many ingredients can be preportioned, either by weight or count, then wrapped in individual portions for storage.

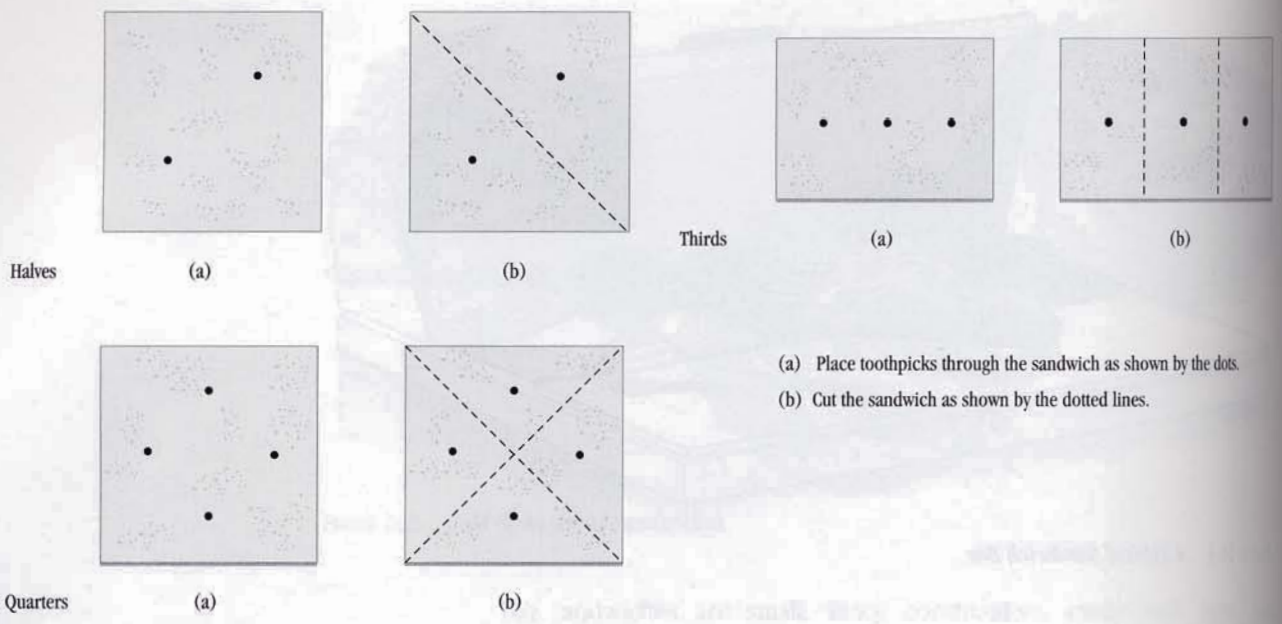
FIGURE 26.3 *A Typical Sandwich Bar.*

3. *Select and arrange equipment.* The heavy equipment needed for making sandwiches can include preparation equipment such as meat slicers, griddles, grills, fryers and broilers as well as storage equipment such as refrigerated sandwich bars for cold ingredients and steam tables for hot ingredients. Even the simplest sandwich menu will require the use of basic hand tools such as spatulas, spreaders, portion scoops, knives and cutting boards. Be sure that the supply of such items is adequate to permit quick handwork and to avoid delays at service time.

PRESENTING AND GARNISHING SANDWICHES

Sandwiches, especially cold closed sandwiches, are usually cut into halves, thirds or quarters for service. See Figure 26.4 for examples. Cutting makes a sandwich easier for the customer to handle and allows for a more attractive presentation: The sandwich wedges can be arranged to add height to the plate and to expose the fillings' colors and textures. Hot closed sandwiches such as hamburgers are often presented open-faced. Condiments, such as mustard and mayonnaise, and garnishes, such as sliced tomatoes, onions, relish and lettuce leaves, are served on the side or on one of the open bun halves. This tends to be a more attractive presentation, and it allows the customer to assemble and add ingredients to the sandwich as desired.

Although a sandwich can be a meal unto itself, it may be served with a salad or starch accompaniment. Potato chips or french-fried potatoes are, of course, standard fare, perhaps because they are also finger foods and they provide a crunchy texture. Bound salads, such as potato and macaroni, are also common starch accompaniments. Plated sandwiches have long been served with cole slaw, fruit salad or a small mixed green salad as side dishes. Even the standard soup-and-sandwich combo—half of a sandwich with a cup of soup—remains a popular lunch selection.



(a) Place toothpicks through the sandwich as shown by the dots.
(b) Cut the sandwich as shown by the dotted lines.

FIGURE 26.4 *Cutting Sandwiches.*

TABLE 26.1 NUTRITIONAL VALUES FOR SELECTED FAST-FOOD SANDWICHES

	Kcal	Protein (g)	Carbohydrates (g)	Total Fat (g)	Cholesterol (mg)	Sodium (mg)
McDonald's *Big Mac*	560	25.2	42.5	32.4	103	950
McDonald's *Egg McMuffin*	290	18.2	28.1	11.2	226	740
McDonald's *Filet-O-Fish*	440	13.8	37.9	26.1	50	1030
Jack-in-the-Box *Jumbo Jack*	584	26.0	42.0	34.0	73	733
Hardee's *Big Roast Beef*	300	18.0	32.0	1.0	45	880
Burger King *Whopper*	614	27.0	45.0	36.0	90	865
Wendy's Grilled Chicken	340	24.0	37.0	13.0	60	815

The Corrine T. Netzer Encyclopedia of Food Values 1992

CONCLUSION

High-quality sandwiches are made from fresh, carefully prepared ingredients, presented in an appetizing and appealing manner. Flavors, colors and textures of the bread, spread and filling should be appropriate and complementary. Breads should be fresh, never stale, and appropriate for the finished sandwich. Spreads should be carefully chosen to add additional flavors and moisture to the sandwich but should not be used to cover or mask dry or poor-quality fillings or breads. Fillings provide the dominant flavor and are usually the source

of the sandwich's name; they should be flavorful and properly prepared. The appearance of even the most basic sandwich can be improved by careful assembly and precise trimming and cutting.

Questions for Discussion

1. List examples for each of the three primary sandwich components.
2. Explain the differences between a hot open-faced and a hot closed sandwich.
3. List several hand tools used in sandwich production, and explain the need for an ample supply of these tools.
4. Why is cross-contamination a concern when preparing sandwiches? What simple steps can be taken to avoid the spread of pathogenic microorganisms?

Sandwich Recipes

RECIPE 26.1

Chicken Pesto and Feta Cheese Sandwich

WILDFLOWER BREAD CO., SCOTTSDALE, AZ

NOTE: This dish appears in the Chapter Opening photograph.

Yield: 8 Sandwiches

Mushrooms, sliced thin	8 oz.	240 g
Balsamic vinaigrette	1 oz.	30 g
Red bell peppers, roasted	8 oz.	240 g
Tomatoes, medium	4	4
Chicken breasts, boneless, skinless 4 oz. (120 g), each	8	8
Italian roll	8	8
Pesto (Recipe 10.30)	8 oz.	240 g
Feta	8 oz.	240 g

1. Marinate the mushrooms in the balsamic vinaigrette for at least 24 hours under refrigeration, stirring occasionally.
2. Slice the peppers into 1/4-inch (6-millimeter) wide strips.
3. Slice the tomatoes into 1/4-inch (6-millimeter) thick slices.
4. Trim any fat or rib meat from the chicken breasts and then grill until done.
5. To assemble each sandwich, slice one roll in half lengthwise. Spread 1 ounce (30 grams) of the pesto on the bottom of the roll, then crumble 1 ounce (30 grams) of the feta on top of the pesto, covering the entire surface. Place a chicken breast on top of the feta, then 1/2 ounce (15 grams) of the mushrooms on the chicken, 1 ounce (30 grams) of the roasted red pepper strips on top of the mushrooms and finish with 3 tomato slices and the top of the roll. Insert two toothpicks, slice and serve.

Approximate values per sandwich: **Calories** 540, **Total fat** 20 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 135 mg, **Sodium** 830 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 39 g, **Protein** 51 g, **Vitamin A** 20%, **Vitamin C** 60%, **Calcium** 30%, **Iron** 25%

RECIPE 26.2

GROUPER SANDWICH WITH LEMON RÉMOULADE

PHOENIX BREWING CO., ATLANTA, GA
Executive Chef Kevin Fonzo

Yield: 6 Sandwiches

Olive oil	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Grouper fillets, 5 oz. (150 g), each	6	6
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Lemon Rémoulade (recipe follows)	6 Tbsp.	90 ml
Kaiser rolls, sliced, toasted	6	6
Mixed greens	3 c.	720 ml
Tomato slices	6	6

1. Heat the olive oil in a large sauté pan. Season the grouper fillets with salt and pepper and then sauté the fish until golden brown and cooked through.
2. To assemble each sandwich, spread 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) of the lemon rémoulade on the bottom half of the roll, then top with 1/2 cup (120 milliliters) of mixed greens, a tomato slice and the cooked fish. Cover with the remaining half of the roll and serve.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 330, **Total fat** 8 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 40 mg, **Sodium** 380 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 36 g, **Protein** 28 g, **Vitamin A** 15%, **Vitamin C** 60%

LEMON RÉMOULADE SAUCE

Yield: 20 oz. (600 ml)

Mayonnaise	1 pt.	1 lt
Sweet pickle relish	3 oz.	90 g
Onion, chopped fine	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Parsley, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Fresh lemon juice	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Salt and black pepper	TT	TT
Worcestershire sauce	TT	TT
Tabasco	TT	TT

1. Mix all the ingredients together until thoroughly blended.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (29-g) serving: **Calories** 170, **Total fat** 18 g, **Saturated fat** 2.5 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 160 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 0 g

RECIPE 26.3

HAMBURGER

Yield: 1 Sandwich

Ground round	4-6 oz.	120–180 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Hamburger bun or other appropriate bread	1	1
garnishes	as desired	as desired

1. Form the ground round into a patty, handling the beef as little as possible.
2. Season the patty with salt and pepper and broil or grill to the desired doneness, turning once. While the patty is cooking, toast the bun or bread if desired.
3. Remove the patty from the broiler or grill, place on one half of the bun or one slice of bread and garnish the other with a lettuce leaf, a slice of onion, a slice of tomato and/or pickles. Serve with condiments such as ketchup and mustard.

Approximate values per sandwich: **Calories** 580, **Total fat** 32 g, **Saturated fat** 9 g, **Cholesterol** 99 mg, **Sodium** 355 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 40 g, **Protein** 29 g

VARIATIONS: *Cheeseburger*—Place one or two slices of American, cheddar, Swiss or other cheese on the cooking patty approximately 1 minute before it is done.

Approximate values per sandwich: **Calories** 680, **Total fat** 42 g, **Saturated fat** 15 g, **Cholesterol** 130 mg, **Sodium** 520 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 42 g, **Protein** 36 g, **Calcium** 20%

Bacon cheeseburger—Prepare a cheeseburger and place two slices of crisp bacon on top of the cheese when the patty is done.

Approximate values per sandwich: **Calories** 650, **Total fat** 39 g, **Saturated fat** 12 g, **Cholesterol** 110 mg, **Sodium** 560 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 41 g, **Protein** 33 g

Mushroom burger—Sauté 2 ounces (60 grams) of sliced mushrooms in 1 to 2 teaspoons (5 to 10 milliliters) of butter or olive oil. Top the cooked hamburger or cheeseburger with the cooked mushrooms.

Approximate values per sandwich, without cheese: **Calories** 660, **Total fat** 37 g, **Saturated fat** 12 g, **Cholesterol** 110 mg, **Sodium** 400 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 48 g, **Protein** 33 g

California burger—Prepare a hamburger or cheeseburger and serve on a whole wheat bun accompanied by 2 ounces (60 grams) of guacamole, 1 ounce (30 grams) of alfalfa sprouts, 2 slices of ripe tomato and 1 thin slice of red onion.

Approximate values per sandwich, without cheese: **Calories** 690, **Total fat** 40 g, **Saturated fat** 9 g, **Cholesterol** 100 mg, **Sodium** 770 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 50 g, **Protein** 33 g, **Vitamin C** 20%

RECIPE 26.4

GRILLED RED SNAPPER BURGER WITH MANGO KETCHUP

from *Allen Susser's New World Cuisine and Cookery*
by ALLEN SUSSER, NORTH MIAMI BEACH, FL

Yield: 4 Sandwiches

Red snapper fillets, fresh	1 lb.	450 g
Egg whites	3	3
Kosher salt	1 1/2 tsp.	7 ml
Cayenne pepper	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Thai fish sauce	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Scallions, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Fresh dill, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Fresh bread crumbs	1/4 c.	60 ml
Olive oil	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
French bread, quartered	1 loaf	1 loaf
Spinach, cleaned and dried	1 c.	225 ml
Mango Ketchup (recipe follows)	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Chop the red snapper by hand or with a steel blade in a food processor. Place the chopped snapper into a large stainless steel bowl.
2. Add the egg whites, salt, cayenne, fish sauce, scallions and dill. Mix well.
3. Add enough bread crumbs to bind all the ingredients together.
4. Form into 4 burgers 1/2 inch (1.25 centimeters) thick and chill for approximately 30 minutes in the refrigerator.
5. Heat a grill or broiler until very hot. Drizzle a little olive oil over the burgers just before cooking. Grill or broil over high heat for about 1 1/2 minutes on each side, being careful not to overcook the fish.
6. Serve the burgers immediately on the French bread with 1/4 of the spinach leaves and 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) of Mango Ketchup on each.

Approximate values per sandwich: **Calories** 445, **Total fat** 11 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 55 mg, **Sodium** 1620 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 47 g, **Protein** 40 g, **Vitamin A** 50%, **Calcium** 20%

MANGO KETCHUP

Yield: 2 qt. (2 lt)

Mangos, medium	5	5
Vinegar	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Fresh ginger, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Cinnamon, ground	dash	dash
Kosher salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Granuated sugar	1/2 c.	120 g
White wine	1/2 c.	120 ml
Allspice, ground	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Cayenne pepper	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Clove, whole	1	1

1. Peel and pit the mangos. Purée the pulp in a food processor fitted with a stainless-steel blade.
2. Add all the remaining ingredients and pulse together.

3. In a heavy-sided saucepan cook the mixture over low heat for 1 hour, until well reduced and thickened.
4. Remove from the heat and cool.
5. Strain through a fine sieve. Let set refrigerated for 24 hours.

RECIPE 26.5

BLACKENED STEAK SANDWICH

Yield: 2 Sandwiches

New York strip steak, 10 oz. (280 g)	1	1
Blackened Steak Seasoning (recipe follows)	as needed	as needed
Clarified butter	1 oz.	30 ml
Capers	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Whole butter, softened	1 oz.	30 g
French bread, cut on the bias	2 slices	2 slices
Baby lettuce, cleaned	4 oz.	120 g
Roma tomatoes, sliced	2	2
Red onions, sliced	1 oz.	30 g

1. Heat a cast iron skillet over high heat for 10 minutes. Pat the steak dry with a clean towel. Coat the steak in the blackened steak seasoning.
2. Carefully place the steak into the hot pan and ladle 1/2 ounce (15 milliliters) of clarified butter over the steak. Be very careful, the butter may flare up. There will be intense smoke and the steak will form a black crust. Cook the steak for approximately 2 minutes.
3. Turn the steak, ladle the remaining clarified butter over it and allow it to cook to the desired degree of doneness. Remove the steak from the pan and hold in a warm place.
4. Chop the capers and combine them with the softened butter. Spread each slice of bread with half of the caper butter.
5. Slice the steak on the bias.
6. To assemble each sandwich, place one half of the warm steak on a slice of buttered bread and arrange half of the greens, tomatoes and onions attractively on the plate and serve.

VARIATION: To serve this sandwich cold, allow the steak to cool after cooking, then refrigerate it until completely cold. Proceed with the recipe.

Approximate values per sandwich: **Calories** 610, **Total fat** 38 g, **Saturated fat** 20 g, **Cholesterol** 180 mg, **Sodium** 650 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 21 g, **Protein** 44 g, **Vitamin A** 30%, **Vitamin C** 40%

BLACKENED STEAK SEASONING

Yield: 1 1/2 oz. (45 g)

Paprika	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Salt	2 tsp.	10 ml
Onion powder	1 tsp.	5 ml
Garlic powder	1 tsp.	5 ml
Cayenne pepper	1 tsp.	5 ml
White pepper	1/2 tsp.	3 ml

Continued

Black pepper	1/2 tsp.	3 ml
Dried thyme	1/2 tsp.	3 ml

1. Combine all ingredients and mix well.

RECIPE 26.6

Grilled BBQ Portabella Mushroom Sandwich on Focaccia

PHOENIX BREWING CO., ATLANTA, GA
Executive Chef Kevin Fonzo

Yield: 6 Sandwiches

Focaccia, cut into 6 in. (15 cm) squares	6	6
Portabella mushrooms	6	6
Barbecue Sauce (Recipe 10.25)	1/4 c.	60 ml
Red bell peppers, roasted, peeled and julienne	2	2
Goat cheese, crumbled	6 Tbsp.	90 ml
Basil leaves	30	30

1. Slice the focaccia squares horizontally and toast.
2. Brush the portabella mushrooms with the BBQ sauce and grill until hot and tender.
3. To assemble each sandwich, place one mushroom on the bottom of a focaccia square and top with 1/6 of the roasted pepper strips, 5 basil leaves and 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) of goat cheese. Top with the remaining focaccia, cut in half and serve.

Approximate values per sandwich: **Calories** 330, **Total fat** 12 g, **Saturated fat** 3.5 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 660 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 45 g, **Protein** 11 g, **Vitamin C** 80%, **Iron** 15%, Claims–good source of fiber

RECIPE 26.7

Reuben Sandwich

Yield: 1 Sandwich

Dark rye bread	2 slices	2 slices
Thousand Island dressing	1 oz.	30 ml
Cooked corned beef, hot, sliced very thin	4 oz.	120 g
Sauerkraut, hot, drained well	2 oz.	60 g
Swiss cheese	2 slices	2 slices
Whole butter, softened	as needed	as needed

1. Spread each slice of bread with approximately 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) of Thousand Island dressing.

2. Place the hot corned beef, hot sauerkraut and Swiss cheese on one slice of bread. Top with the second slice of bread, keeping the dressing side inside the sandwich.
3. Butter the top slice of bread and place the sandwich on a hot griddle, butter side down. Carefully butter the second slice of bread.
4. Griddle the sandwich, turning once when the first side is well browned. The sandwich is done when both sides are well browned, the fillings are very hot and the cheese is melted.
5. Cut the sandwich in half diagonally and arrange as desired for service.

Approximate values per sandwich: **Calories** 560, **Total fat** 27 g, **Saturated fat** 10 g, **Cholesterol** 85 mg, **Sodium** 2150 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 39 g, **Protein** 40 g, **Vitamin A** 10%, **Vitamin C** 30%

RECIPE 26.8

Southwestern Grilled Cheese Sandwich with Chipotle Purée and Avocado

Yield: 1 Sandwich

Whole grain bread	2 slices	2 slices
Monterey Jack cheese with peppers	2 slices	2 slices
Chipotle Purée (recipe follows)	1 tsp.	5 ml
Crème fraîche	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Avocado, sliced thin	2 oz.	60 g
Red onion, sliced thin	1/2 oz.	15 g
Cilantro leaves	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Whole butter, soft	1 oz.	30 g

1. Top each slice of bread with a slice of cheese. Spread each slice with half of the chipotle purée and half of the crème fraîche.
2. Arrange the avocado slices, sliced red onion and cilantro leaves on one slice of the bread. Close the sandwich and press together lightly.
3. Butter the top slice of bread and place the sandwich, butter side down, on a hot griddle. Carefully butter the second slice of bread.
4. Griddle the sandwich, turning once when the first side is well browned. The sandwich is done when both sides are well browned and the cheese is melted.
5. Cut the sandwich in half diagonally and arrange as desired for service.

Approximate values per sandwich: **Calories** 730, **Total fat** 55 g, **Saturated fat** 28 g, **Cholesterol** 140 mg, **Sodium** 800 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 35 g, **Protein** 24 g, **Vitamin A** 45%, **Calcium** 60%

CHIPOTLE PURÉE

Yield: 8 1/2 oz. (250 g)

Chipotle peppers in adobo sauce	7 oz.	200 g
Vegetable oil	1 oz.	30 g
Lime	1	1

1. Place the chipotle peppers and the oil in the bowl of a food processor; squeeze the lime and add the juice.
2. Process the mixture until smooth.

RECIPE 26.9

Monte Cristo Sandwich

Yield: 1 Sandwich

White bread	2 slices	2 slices
Whole butter, softened	as needed	as needed
Cooked turkey breast, sliced thin	1 oz.	30 g
Ham, sliced thin	1 oz.	30 g
Swiss cheese	2 slices	2 slices
Egg	1	1
Milk	1 oz.	30 ml

1. Spread one side of each slice of bread with butter.
2. Arrange the turkey breast, ham and cheese on top of the butter on one slice of bread.
3. Place the other slice of bread on top of the cheese, butter side against the cheese.
4. Beat the egg and milk together. Dip the sandwich in the egg batter and allow the batter to soak into the bread.
5. Deep-fry the sandwich in 375°F (190°C) oil until it is evenly browned. Remove from the oil and drain well. Cut the sandwich into 4 pieces and arrange as desired.

Approximate values per sandwich: **Calories** 630, **Total fat** 42 g, **Saturated fat** 24 g, **Cholesterol** 365 mg, **Sodium** 1050 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 27 g, **Protein** 35 g, **Vitamin A** 40%

RECIPE 26.10

Falafel

Yield: 12 Sandwiches

Chickpeas, dry	1 lb.	450 g
Garlic, minced	6 cloves	6 cloves
Parsley, chopped	1/2 oz.	15 g
Chives, minced	1/2 oz.	15 g
Cumin, ground	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Coriander, ground	2 tsp.	10 ml
Cayenne pepper	TT	TT
Eggs	3	3
Salt	TT	TT
Flour	5 oz.	150 g
Plain yogurt	6 oz.	180 g
Lemon juice	2 oz.	60 ml
Pita bread	12	12
Iceberg lettuce, shredded	6 oz.	180 g
Tomatoes, diced	6 oz.	180 g

1. To make the falafel, soak the chickpeas following the procedures for dried beans outlined in Chapter 22, Vegetables. Drain the chickpeas, place them

in a pot and cover with cool water. Simmer until tender, approximately 2 to 3 hours, remove from the heat and drain well.

2. Process the chickpeas in a food processor or a food chopper until coarsely chopped. Add the garlic, parsley, chives, cumin, coriander and cayenne pepper and process for a few seconds.
3. Add the eggs, salt and flour and process briefly. Remove the falafel from the machine and chill in the refrigerator for 1 hour.
4. Combine the yogurt and lemon juice and mix well. Set aside.
5. Portion the falafel using a #50 scoop (there should be approximately 60 balls) and deep-fry the balls at 375°F (190°C) until crisp and hot. Drain well and hold in a warm place.
6. To assemble each sandwich, cut a pita in half or open it to form a pocket and stuff with several balls of falafel and 1 ounce (30 grams) of the shredded lettuce and diced tomatoes and then dress with the yogurt sauce. Arrange the sandwiches as desired and serve hot.

Approximate values per sandwich: **Calories** 290, **Total fat** 3 g, **Saturated fat** .5 g, **Cholesterol** 55 mg, **Sodium** 470 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 55 g, **Protein** 12 g, **Claims**—low fat; low saturated fat; good source of fiber

RECIPE 26.11

Kentucky Hot Brown Sandwich

Yield: 6 Sandwiches

Heavy cream, hot	6 oz.	180 ml
Romano, grated	6 oz.	180 g
Velouté sauce, hot	1 qt.	1 lt
Dry sherry	1 oz.	30 ml
White toast, crust removed	12 slices	12 slices
Turkey breast, sliced	1 lb. 8 oz.	720 g
Parmesan, grated	2 oz.	60 g
Tomato wedges	12	12
Bacon, lean, cooked crisp	12 slices	12 slices

1. To make the sauce, add the cream and the Romano to the velouté sauce and bring to a simmer. Simmer for 1 minute, then strain the sauce through a china cap. Stir in the sherry. Hold in a warm place for service.
2. Cut the toast diagonally into triangles.
3. To assemble each sandwich, arrange 4 toast triangles in a gratin dish and top with 4 ounces (120 grams) of turkey and 4 ounces (120 milliliters) of sauce. Bake at 350°F (225°C) until brown, approximately 15 minutes.
4. Top each sandwich with Parmesan, 2 tomato wedges and 2 strips of bacon and serve very hot.

Approximate values per sandwich: **Calories** 720, **Total fat** 34 g, **Saturated fat** 17 g, **Cholesterol** 185 mg, **Sodium** 2180 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 45 g, **Protein** 59 g, **Vitamin A** 20%, **Calcium** 50%

RECIPE 26.12

Roast Beef and Blue Cheese Sandwich

WILDFLOWER BREAD CO, SCOTTSDALE, AZ

Yield: 4 Sandwiches

Red bell peppers, roasted	8 oz.	240 g
Herb Mayonnaise (recipe follows)	8 Tbsp.	120 ml
White sourdough bread	8 slices	8 slices
Blue cheese, crumbled	6 oz.	180 g
Roast beef, rare, cold, sliced thin	1 lb.	440 g
Red onion, sliced thin	2 oz.	60 g
Tomato slices	12	12
Romaine lettuce	4 leaves	4 leaves

1. Slice the peppers into strips 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) wide.
2. To assemble one sandwich, spread 2 tablespoons (30 milliliters) of herb mayonnaise on a slice of bread and top with 1 1/2 ounces (45 grams) of blue cheese. Then place 4 ounces (120 grams) of the roast beef on top of the cheese and cover with 1/2 ounce (15 grams) of red onions, 2 ounces (60 grams) of red bell peppers strips, 3 tomato slices, 1 leaf of romaine lettuce and a slice of bread.

Approximate values per sandwich: **Calories** 679, **Total fat** 42 g, **Saturated fat** 17 g, **Cholesterol** 105 mg, **Sodium** 1061 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 41 g, **Protein** 34 g, **Vitamin A** 73%, **Vitamin C** 170%, **Calcium** 30%, **Iron** 25%

HERB MAYONNAISE

Yield: 1 c. (240 ml)

Mayonnaise	1 c.	240 ml
Fresh basil, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh cilantro, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Fresh parsley, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml

1. Stir all the ingredients together until the herbs are evenly distributed throughout the mayonnaise. Chill until ready to use.

RECIPE 26.13

New Orleans-Style Muffaletta Sandwich

Yield: 1 Sandwich, 4-6 Servings

Red bell pepper, roasted, chopped	1	1
Niçoise or Gaeta olives, pitted, chopped	4 oz.	120 g
Olives, green, pitted, chopped	4 oz.	120 g
Virgin olive oil	4 oz.	120 g
Italian parsley, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Anchovy fillets, mashed	2	2

Dried oregano	1 tsp.	5 ml
Lemon juice	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Round Italian bread, 8 in. (18 cm) diameter	1	1
Arugula or curly endive, chiffonade	1 1/2 oz.	45 g
Tomato, concassée	6 oz.	180 g
Mortadella, sliced thin	6 oz.	180 g
Soppressata, sliced thin	4 oz.	120 g
Provolone or Fontina, sliced thin	4 oz.	120 g
Pepper	TT	TT

1. To make the olive salad, combine the red pepper, olives, olive oil, parsley, anchovies, oregano and lemon juice and marinate for several hours.
2. Cut the loaf of bread in half horizontally. Remove some of the soft interior of the bread to create a slight hollow area.
3. Drain the olive salad, reserving the oil. Brush the interior of the bread with the reserved oil, using it all.
4. Arrange the olive salad, greens, tomato, mortadella, soppressata and cheese in layers on the bottom portion of the loaf of bread, finishing with a thick layer of olive salad. Season the layers with pepper as desired.
5. Place the top on the sandwich and wrap tightly with plastic wrap. Refrigerate the sandwich for several hours so that the layers will remain in place when the sandwich is cut.
6. Cut the sandwich into 4 to 6 wedges and arrange as desired for service.

Approximate values per sandwich: **Calories** 670, **Total fat** 57 g, **Saturated fat** 14 g, **Cholesterol** 60 mg, **Sodium** 2200 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 16 g, **Protein** 24 g, **Vitamin C** 80%, **Calcium** 30%

RECIPE 26.14

Southwestern Grilled Chicken Wrap

Yield: 12 Sandwiches

Chicken breast, boneless, skinless	3 lb.	1350 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Avocados	3	3
Red bell peppers	2	2
Red onion	1	1
Tomatoes	2	2
Tortillas, 10 in. (24 cm)	12	12
Black Bean Spread (recipe follows)	3 lb.	1350 g
Black olives, sliced	1 c.	250 ml
Cilantro, chopped	2 bunches	2 bunches
Cheddar cheese, grated	1 lb. 8 oz.	750 g
Jalapeños, minced	2	2

1. Season the chicken breast with salt and pepper and grill or broil until done. Chill and cut into strips.
2. Peel the avocados and cut each into 12 slices. Clean the bell peppers and cut into strips. Slice the onions thinly. Dice the tomatoes.

Continued

3. To make each sandwich, place one tortilla on a cutting board and spread with approximately 4 ounces (120 grams) of Black Bean Spread.
4. Sprinkle 1/12 of the peppers, onions, tomatoes, olives, cilantro, cheese and jalapeños over the bean spread.
5. Top with 1/12 of the chicken.
6. Roll the tortilla around the ingredients tightly enough so that the sandwich will hold its shape. Cut the sandwich as desired for service.

Approximate values per sandwich: **Calories** 642, **Total fat** 37 g, **Saturated fat** 16 g, **Cholesterol** 118 mg, **Sodium** 695 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 37 g, **Protein** 41 g, **Vitamin A** 37%, **Vitamin C** 76%, **Calcium** 50%, **Iron** 22%

BLACK BEAN SPREAD

Yield: 3 lb. (1.3 kg)

Black beans, soaked and drained	1 lb. 8 oz.	680 g
Water	4 qt.	4 lt.
Onion, diced	4 oz.	120 g
Tomatoes, diced	6 oz.	180 g
Cilantro, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Cumin	1 tsp.	5 ml
Chilli powder	1 tsp.	5 ml

1. Combine the beans and the water, bring to a boil, reduce to a simmer and cook until tender, approximately 1 to 1 1/2 hours.
2. Add the remaining ingredients and simmer for 10 minutes.
3. Drain the beans, reserving the cooking liquid. Chill the beans and the liquid.
4. Purée the beans in a food processor, adding enough of the cooking liquid to make a soft, spreadable purée.

Approximate values per 2-oz. (60-g) serving: **Calories** 100, **Total fat** .5 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 51 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 37 g, **Protein** 12 g, **Claims**—low fat; no cholesterol; low sodium

RECIPE 26.15

VEGGIE WRAP

Yield: 1 Sandwich

Spinach-flavored tortilla	1	1
Garlic Yogurt Dressing (recipe follows)	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Jasmine rice, cooked	3 oz.	90 g
Roma tomato, diced	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Cucumber, julienne	1 oz.	30 g
Alfalfa sprouts	as needed	as needed
Broccoli florets	1 oz.	30 g
Red onion, sliced thin	1 oz.	30 g
Capers	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Spread the tortilla with 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) of the Garlic Yogurt Dressing.
2. Arrange the rice in a mound across the center of the tortilla. Top the rice with the vegetables and capers.

3. Drizzle the remaining Garlic Yogurt Dressing over the vegetables.
4. Using a piece of parchment paper as a wrapper, roll the tortilla tightly around the filling, then chill and serve.

Approximate values per sandwich: **Calories** 464, **Total fat** 3 g, **Saturated fat** .5 g, **Cholesterol** 0 g, **Sodium** 296 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 95 g, **Protein** 12 g, **Vitamin A** 12%, **Vitamin C** 45%, **Calcium** 14%, **Iron** 15%

GARLIC YOGURT DRESSING

Yield: 1 pt. (500 ml)

Nonfat yogurt, plain	1 pt	450 ml
Parsley, minced	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Garlic, minced	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Dijon mustard	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Black pepper	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Tabasco sauce	TT	TT

1. Combine all the ingredients and chill until ready to use.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 19, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 1 mg, **Sodium** 46 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 3 g, **Protein** 2 g

RECIPE 26.16

CLUB SANDWICH

Yield: 1 Sandwich

Sliced bread, toasted	3 slices	3 slices
Mayonnaise	as needed	as needed
Lettuce leaves	2	2
Tomato	3 slices	3 slices
Bacon, cooked crisp	3 slices	3 slices
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Cooked turkey breast, sliced thin	3 oz.	90 g

1. Spread one side of each slice of toasted bread with mayonnaise.
2. Arrange the lettuce, tomato and bacon on one slice of toast. Season with salt and pepper.
3. Place another slice of toast on top of the bacon.
4. Arrange the turkey breast on top of the second slice of toast.
5. Place the third slice of toast on top of the turkey breast, mayonnaise side down.
6. Place 4 frilled toothpicks in the sandwich, one on each side, approximately 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) in from the edge. Cut the sandwich diagonally into quarters and arrange as desired for service.

Approximate values per sandwich: **Calories** 530, **Total fat** 24 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 95 mg, **Sodium** 830 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 38 g, **Protein** 39 g, **Vitamin A** 4%, **Vitamin C** 10%

RECIPE 26.17

Grilled Salmon Club with Cilantro Aïoli

PHOENIX BREWING CO., ATLANTA, GA
Executive Chef Kevin Fonzo

Yield: 4 Sandwiches

Salmon fillets, 5 oz. (150 g), each	4	4
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Olive oil	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Wheat bread, toasted	12 slices	12 slices
Watercress	2 c.	500 ml
Red onions, cut in rings, 1/8 in. (3 mm) thick	8 rings	8 rings
Tomato, thick slices	8	8
Cilantro Aïoli (recipe follows)	4 Tbsp.	60 ml

1. Season the salmon with salt and pepper and rub with the olive oil, then grill the salmon until medium rare.
2. To assemble each sandwich, top one slice of toasted bread with 1/2 cup (120 ml) of watercress, then 2 red onion rings and 2 slices of tomato. Top with a second slice of bread.
3. Place 1 salmon fillet on the bread.
4. Spread the third slice of bread with 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) of the Cilantro Aïoli and place on top of the salmon. Cut the sandwich and serve.

Approximate values per sandwich: **Calories** 471, **Total fat** 24 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 87 mg, **Sodium** 410 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 30 g, **Protein** 34 g, **Vitamin A** 27%, **Vitamin C** 36%, **Iron** 16%

CILANTRO AÏOLI

Yield: 1 qt. (2 lt)

Egg yolks	4	4
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
White pepper	TT	TT
Dijon mustard	1 tsp.	5 ml
White vinegar	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Cilantro, chopped	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Lime juice	TT	TT
Salad oil	28 oz.	840 ml

1. Combine all the ingredients except the oil in a blender. Process until thoroughly combined.
2. With the blender running, slowly pour the oil into the egg yolk mixture to form an emulsion.

Approximate values per 2-oz. (60-ml) serving: **Calories** 455, **Total fat** 51 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 53 mg, **Sodium** 140 mg, **Total carbohydrates** .5 g, **Protein** .8 g

RECIPE 26.18

Eggplant and Sun-Dried Tomato Pizza

GREENS RESTAURANT, San Francisco, CA
Executive Chef Annie Somerville

Yield: 1 15-in. (37-cm)
or 2 9-in. (22-cm) Pizzas

Japanese eggplants	2	2
Extra virgin olive oil	2 oz.	60 g
Garlic, chopped	2 tsp.	10 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Pizza Dough (Recipe 31.14)	1 lb.	450 g
Sun-dried tomatoes, packed in oil	5	5
Provolone, grated	4 oz.	120 g
Mozzarella, grated	2 oz.	60 g
Parmesan, grated	1/2 oz.	15 g
Fresh basil, chiffonade	12 leaves	12 leaves

1. Slice the eggplant diagonally into 1/2-inch (1.2-centimeter) slices.
2. Toss the eggplant with 1 ounce (30 grams) of olive oil and the garlic; season with salt and pepper.
3. Place the eggplant slices on a baking sheet and roast at 375°F (190°C) until soft in the center, approximately 15–20 minutes. Cool and slice into strips.
4. Preheat the oven to 500°F (260°C). Roll out the dough and place it on a lightly oiled pizza pan or well-floured wooden peel; brush it lightly with the remaining olive oil. Lay the eggplant and sun-dried tomatoes on top. Toss the Provolone and Mozzarella together and sprinkle on the pizza.
5. Bake the pizza until the crust is golden and crisp, approximately 8–12 minutes. Remove from the oven and sprinkle with the Parmesan and basil.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (126-g) serving: **Calories** 420, **Total fat** 17 g, **Saturated fat** 5 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 500 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 54 g, **Protein** 14 g, **Vitamin A** 100%, **Vitamin C** 30%

CHAPTER 27

CHARCUTERIE

Chef Leland Atkinson,
Washington, D.C.

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- prepare a variety of forcemeats
- assemble and cook a variety of pâtés, terrines and sausages
- understand the proper methods for brining, curing and smoking meats and fish
- identify several cured pork products

Traditionally, charcuterie was limited to the production of pork-based pâtés, terrines and galantines. Over the years, however, it has come to include similar products made with game, poultry, fish, shellfish and even vegetables. Many of these are discussed here.

Charcuterie is an art and science in itself. This chapter is not intended to be a complete guide to the charcutier's art. Instead, we focus on procedures for making common charcuterie items that can be prepared easily in most kitchens. We also discuss the preparation of sausages as well as curing methods, including salt curing, brining, and both cold and hot smoking. The chapter ends with information about several cured pork products.

Forcemeats and Their Uses

A **forcemeat** is a preparation made from uncooked ground meats, poultry, fish or shellfish, seasoned, then emulsified with fat. Forcemeats are the primary ingredient used to make pâtés, terrines, galantines and sausages.

The word *forcemeat* is derived from the French word *farce*, meaning stuffing. Depending on the preparation method, a forcemeat can be very smooth and velvety, well-textured and coarse, or anything in between. Regardless of its intended use, it has a glossy appearance when raw and will slice cleanly when cooked. A properly emulsified forcemeat provides a rich flavor and a comforting texture on the palate.

Forcemeats are emulsified products. Emulsification is the process of binding two ingredients that ordinarily would not combine. (Emulsified sauces are discussed in Chapter 10, Stocks and Sauces; emulsified salad dressings are discussed in Chapter 24, Salads and Salad Dressings.) The proteins present in the meat, poultry, fish and shellfish combine easily with both fat and liquids. In forcemeats, these proteins act as a stabilizer that allows the fat and liquids, which ordinarily would not combine, to bind. When improperly emulsified forcemeats are cooked, they lose their fat, shrink and become dry and grainy. To ensure proper emulsification of a forcemeat:

1. The ratio of fat to other ingredients must be precise.
2. Temperatures must be maintained below 40°F (4°C).
3. The ingredients must be mixed properly.

Forcemeat Ingredients

Forcemeats are usually meat, poultry, fish or shellfish combined with binders, seasonings and sometimes garnishes. Selections from each of these basic categories are used to make an array of forcemeats. All ingredients must be of the finest quality and added in just the right proportions.

Meats

The **dominant meat** is the meat that gives the forcemeat its name and essential flavor. The dominant meat does not have to be beef, veal, lamb, pork or

game. It can be poultry, fish or shellfish. When preparing meats, poultry or fish for forcemeat, it is important to trim all silverskin, gristle and small bones so that the meat will be more easily ground and will produce a smoother finished product.

Many forcemeats contain some pork. Pork adds moisture and smoothness to the forcemeat. Without it, poultry-based forcemeats tend to be rubbery, while venison and other game-based forcemeats tend to be dry. The traditional ratio is one part pork to two parts dominant meat.

Many forcemeats also contain some liver. Pork liver is commonly used, as is chicken liver. Liver contributes flavor as well as binding to the forcemeat. For a finer texture, grind the livers and then force them through a drum sieve before incorporating them into the forcemeat.

Fats

Here, **fat** refers to a separate ingredient, not the fat in the dominant meat or pork, both of which should be quite lean in order to ensure the correct ratio of fat to meat. Usually pork fatback or heavy cream is used to add moisture and richness to the forcemeat. Because fat carries flavor, it also promotes the proper infusion of flavors and smoke.

Binders

There are two principal types of binders: panadas and eggs.

A **panada** is something other than fat that is added to a forcemeat to enhance smoothness (especially in fish mousselines, which tend to be slightly grainy in texture), to aid emulsification (especially in vegetable terrines, where the protein levels are insufficient to bind on their own) or both (for example, in liver mousses). It should not make up more than 20% of the forcemeat's total weight. Usually a panada is nothing more than crustless white bread soaked in milk or, more traditionally, a heavy béchamel or rice.

Eggs or egg whites are used as a primary binding agent in some styles of forcemeat. If used in forcemeats that have a large ratio of liver or liquids, they also add texture.

Seasonings

Forcemeats are seasoned with salt, curing salt, marinades and various herbs and spices.

Salt not only adds flavor to a forcemeat but also aids in the emulsification of the meat and fat. As with other foods, a forcemeat that lacks salt will taste flat.

Curing salt is a mixture of salt and sodium nitrite. Sodium nitrite controls spoilage by inhibiting bacterial growth. Equally important, curing salt preserves the rosy pink colors of some forcemeats that might otherwise oxidize to an unappetizing gray. Although currently regarded as substantially safer than the previously used potassium nitrate (saltpeter), some studies suggest that sodium nitrite is a carcinogen. For a typical consumer, however, the amount of sodium nitrite consumed from cured meats should not pose a substantial health threat.

Traditionally, ingredients for forcemeats were marinated for long periods, sometimes days, before grinding. The trend today is for a shorter marinating times so that the true flavors of the main ingredients shine through. Both classic and contemporary marinades include herbs, citrus zest, spices and liquors, all of which lend flavor, character and nuance to the forcemeat.

Pâté spice is a mixture of several spices and herbs that can be premixed and used as needed.

RECIPE 27.1

PÂTÉ SPICE

Yield: 7 2/3 oz. (220 g)

Cloves	1 oz.	30 g
Dried ginger	1 oz.	30 g
Nutmeg	1 oz.	30 g
Paprika	1 oz.	30 g
Dried basil	2/3 oz.	20 g
Black pepper	2/3 oz.	20 g
White pepper	2/3 oz.	20 g
Bay leaf	1/3 oz.	10 g
Dried thyme	1 oz.	30 g
Dried marjoram	1/3 oz.	10 g

1. Grind all the ingredients in a spice grinder. Pass through a sieve to remove any large pieces.

VARIATION: This mixture can be used as is, or mix 1 ounce (30 grams) (or any amount desired) with 1 pound (450 grams) of salt. The salt and spice mixture can then be used to season forcemeats; 1/3 ounce (10 grams) per pound of forcemeat usually suffices for most pâtés.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (7-g) serving: **Calories** 20, **Total fat** 1 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 3 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 6%

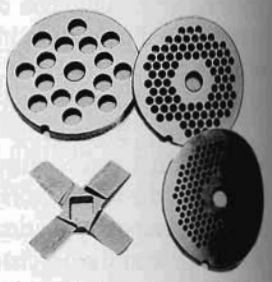
A forcemeat's seasoning and texture can be tested by cooking a small portion before the entire forcemeat is cooked. (Unlike sauces, stews and other dishes, you cannot taste and adjust a forcemeat's flavoring during the cooking process.) A small portion of a hearty forcemeat can be sautéed; a small portion of a more delicate forcemeat should be poached for 3–5 minutes. When cooked, the forcemeat should hold its shape and be slightly firm but not rubbery. If it is too firm, add a little cream.

Garnishes

Forcemeat garnishes are meats, fat, vegetables or other foods added in limited quantities to provide contrasting flavors and textures and to improve appearance. The garnishes are usually diced, chopped or more coarsely ground than the dominant meat. Common garnishes include pistachio nuts, diced fatback, truffles or truffle peelings and diced ham or tongue.

Equipment for Preparing Forcemeats

To properly prepare forcemeats, you should have a food chopper or food processor and a heavy-duty drum sieve with a metal band. You will also need a standard meat grinder or meat-grinding attachment with various-sized grinding dies.



An X-Blade and Assorted Dies for a Standard Grinder

Preparing Forcemeats

The three common forcemeat preparations are **country-style**, **basic** and **mousseline**. Each can be produced easily in a typical food service operation. Other types of forcemeat preparations such as the emulsified mixture used to make hot dogs and bratwurst are not commonly encountered in food service operations and are not discussed here.

When preparing any forcemeat, certain guidelines must be followed:

1. Forcemeat preparations include raw meats, liver, eggs and dairy products. If improperly handled, these potentially hazardous foods create a good environment for the growth of microorganisms. To avoid the risk of food-borne illness, temperatures must be carefully controlled, and all cutting boards and food contact surfaces must be as sanitary as possible at all times.
2. To ensure a proper emulsification, the forcemeat must be kept cold—below 40°F (4°C)—at all times. Refrigerate all moist ingredients, and keep forcemeats in progress in an ice bath. Chilling or freezing metal grinder and food processor parts helps keep the ingredients as cold as possible.
3. Cut all foods into convenient sizes that fit easily into grinder openings. Do not overstuff grinders or overfill food processors. When grinding items twice, always begin with a larger die, followed by a medium or small die. For exceptional smoothness, press the forcemeat through a sieve after grinding to remove any lumps or pieces of membrane.

Country-Style Forcemeats

A traditional country-style forcemeat is heavily seasoned with onions, garlic, pepper, juniper berries and bay leaves. It is the simplest of the forcemeats to prepare and yields the heartiest and most distinctive pâtés and sausages.

The dominant meat for a country-style forcemeat is usually ground once through the grinder's large die, then ground again through the medium die. This produces the characteristic coarse, country-style texture. As with most forcemeats, the dominant meat for a country-style forcemeat is usually marinated and seasoned prior to grinding and then mixed with some liver.

Procedure for Preparing a Country-Style Forcemeat

1. Chill all ingredients and equipment thoroughly. Throughout preparation, they should remain at temperatures below 40°F (4°C).
2. Cut all meats into an appropriate size for grinding.
3. Marinate, under refrigeration, the dominant meat and pork with the desired herbs, spices and liquors.
4. If using liver, grind it and force it through a sieve.
5. Cut the fatback into an appropriate size and freeze.
6. Prepare an ice bath for the forcemeat. Then grind the dominant meat, pork and fat as directed in the recipe, usually once through the grinder's largest die and a second time through the medium die.
7. If using liver, eggs, panada or garnishes, fold them in by hand, remembering to keep the forcemeat over an ice bath at all times.
8. Cook a small portion of the forcemeat; adjust the seasonings and texture as appropriate.
9. Refrigerate the forcemeat until needed.

RECIPE 27.2

Country-Style Forcemeat

Yield: 5 lb. (2.2 kg)

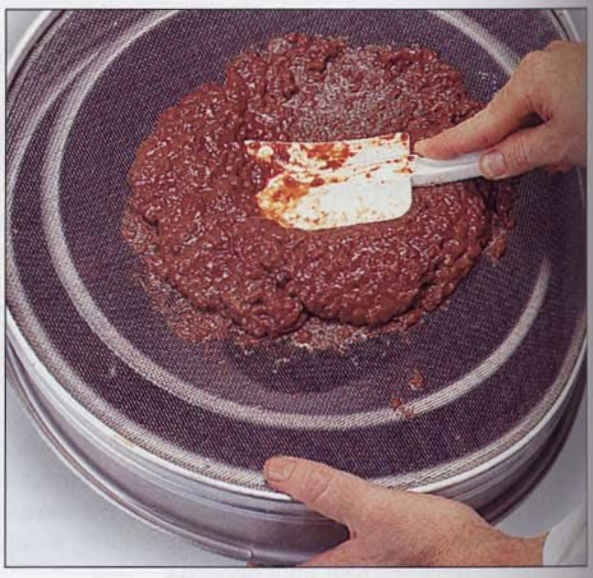
Lean pork, diced	2 lb.	900 g
Pâté spice	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Salt	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Pepper	TT	TT
Brandy	2 oz.	60 ml
Pork liver, cleaned and diced	1 lb.	450 g
Fatback, diced	1 lb.	450 g
Onion, small dice	3 oz.	90 g
Garlic, minced	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh parsley, chopped	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Eggs	6	6

1. Combine the diced pork with the pâté spice, salt, pepper and brandy; marinate under refrigeration for several hours.
2. Grind the liver and force it through a drum sieve. Reserve.
3. Grind the marinated pork and fatback through the grinder's large die.
4. Grind half of the pork and fatback a second time through the medium die along with the onions, garlic and parsley.
5. Working over an ice bath, combine the coarse and medium ground pork with the liver and eggs.
6. Cook and taste a small portion of the forcemeat and adjust the seasonings as necessary.

The forcemeat is now ready to use as desired in the preparation of pâtés, terrines, galantines and sausages.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (29-g) serving: **Calories** 90, **Total fat** 8 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 50 mg, **Sodium** 105 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin A** 30%

1. Marinating the meat and fatback with herbs and spices.



2. Forcing the ground liver through a sieve.

3. Grinding half of the meat a second time.

4. Incorporating the liver and eggs into the ground meat mixture over an ice bath to keep the forcemeat cold.

Basic Forcemeats

Smoother and more refined than a country-style forcemeat, a basic forcemeat is probably the most versatile of all. It should be well seasoned, but the seasonings should not mask the dominant meat's flavor. Examples of basic forcemeats are those used in most game pâtés and terrines as well as traditional pâtés en croûte.

A basic forcemeat is made by grinding the meat and fat separately—the meat twice and the fat once. The fat is then worked into the meat, either by hand or in a food processor or chopper. A quicker method involves grinding the fat and meat together and then blending them in a food processor. Whichever method is used, some recipes call for the incorporation of crushed ice to minimize friction, reduce temperature and add moisture.

Procedure for Preparing a Basic Forcemeat

1. Chill all ingredients and equipment thoroughly. Throughout preparation, they should remain at temperatures below 40°F (4°C).
2. Cut all meats into an appropriate size for grinding.
3. Marinate, under refrigeration, the dominant meat and pork with the desired herbs, spices and liquors.
4. If using liver, grind it and force it through a sieve.
5. Cut the fatback into an appropriate size and freeze.
6. Grind the meats twice, once through the grinder's large die and then through the medium die; hold on an ice bath.
7. Grind the chilled or frozen fat once through the medium die and add it to the meat mixture.
8. Work the fat into the meat over an ice bath or in a well-chilled food processor or chopping machine.
9. Over an ice bath, add any required eggs, panada and/or garnishes and work them into the mixture.
10. Cook a small portion of the forcemeat in stock or water; adjust the seasonings and texture as appropriate.
11. Refrigerate the forcemeat until needed.

An alternative method for preparing a basic forcemeat replaces steps 6 to 9 with the following procedures:

6a. Grind the meats and fats together twice.

7a. Place them in a food processor or chopper and blend until smooth.
8a. Add any required eggs or panada while the machine is running and blend them in with the meat and fat.
9a. Remove the forcemeat from the machine and, working over an ice bath, fold in any garnishes by hand.

Whichever method is used, a particularly warm kitchen or a lengthy running time in the food processor or chopping machine may necessitate the addition of small quantities of crushed ice to properly emulsify the forcemeat. Add the ice bit by bit while the machine is running.

RECIPE 27.3

Basic Forcemeat

Yield: 4 lb. 8 oz. (2 kg)

Veal, diced	1 lb. 8 oz.	650 g
Lean pork, diced	1 lb. 8 oz.	650 g
Brandy	2 oz.	60 ml
Pâté spice	2 tsp.	10 ml
Salt	1 1/2 tsp.	7 ml
White pepper	TT	TT
Fatback, diced	1 lb. 8 oz.	650 g
Eggs	4	4
Ham, medium dice	4 oz.	120 g
Pistachio nuts	2 oz.	60 g
Black olives, chopped coarse	2 oz.	60 g

1. Combine the veal and pork with the brandy, pâté spice, salt and white pepper; marinate under refrigeration for several hours.
2. Grind the meats through the grinder's large die and again through the small die.
3. Grind the fatback through the grinder's small die.
4. Combine the meat and fat in the bowl of a food processor and blend until they are emulsified.
5. Work in the eggs until the forcemeat is smooth and well emulsified. Do not overprocess the forcemeat.

1. Grinding the meat through the chilled grinder.

2. Combining the fat with the meat in the food processor.

3. Adding the eggs to the meat.

4. Folding the garnishes into the forcemeat.

6. Fold in the ham, pistachio nuts and olives.
7. Cook a small portion of the forcemeat by poaching or sautéing it. Taste and adjust the seasonings as necessary.

The forcemeat is now ready to use as desired in the preparation of pâtés, terrines, galantines and sausages.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (36-g) serving: **Calories** 140, **Total fat** 12 g, **Saturated fat** 4.5 g, **Cholesterol** 45 mg, **Sodium** 80 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 7 g

---

Mousseline Forcemeats

A properly made mousseline forcemeat is light, airy and delicately flavored. It is most often made with fish or shellfish but sometimes with veal, pork, feathered game or poultry. (A mousseline forcemeat is not the same as a mousse, which usually contains gelatin and is discussed later.)

A mousseline forcemeat is prepared by processing ground meats and cream in a food processor; often egg whites are added to lighten and enrich the mixture. The proportion of fish or dominant meat to eggs to cream is very important. Too many egg whites, and the mousseline will be rubbery; too few, and it may not bind together. If too much cream is added, the mousseline will be too soft or will fall apart during cooking.

A mousseline forcemeat can be served hot or cold. It can be used to make fish sausages and a variety of timbales and terrines. Or it can be used to make quenelles, which are discussed later. A shrimp mousseline is used with the Paupiettes of Sole, Recipe 19.24.

Procedure for Preparing a Mousseline Forcemeat

1. Chill all ingredients and equipment thoroughly. Throughout preparation, they should remain at temperatures below 40°F (4°C).
2. Cut all meats into an appropriate size for processing.
3. Grind the meat in a cold food processor until smooth. Do not overprocess.
4. Add eggs and pulse until just blended.
5. Add cream and seasonings in a steady stream while the machine is running. Stop the machine and scrape down the sides of the bowl once or twice during the processing. Do not run the machine any longer than necessary to achieve a smooth forcemeat.
6. If desired, pass the forcemeat through a drum sieve to remove any sinew or bits of bone.

7. Over an ice bath, fold in any garnishes by hand.
8. Poach a small amount of the mousseline in stock or water. Taste and adjust the seasonings and texture as necessary.
9. Refrigerate until ready for use.

RECIPE 27.4

Mousseline Forcemeat

Yield: 4 lb. (1.8 kg)

Fish, scallops, skinless chicken breast or lean veal	2 lb.	900 g
Egg whites	4	4
Salt	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
White pepper	TT	TT
Nutmeg	TT	TT
Cayenne pepper	TT	TT
Heavy cream	1 qt.	1 lt

1. Grind the dominant meat through a large die.
2. Process the meat in a food processor until smooth.
3. Add the egg whites one at a time and pulse the processor until they are incorporated.
4. Scrape down the sides of the processor's bowl and add the spices.
5. With the machine running, add the cream in a steady stream.
6. Scrape down the bowl again and process the mousseline until it is smooth and well mixed. Do not overprocess.
7. Remove the mousseline from the machine and hold in an ice bath. If additional smoothness is desired, force the mousseline through a drum sieve in small batches using a plastic scraper or rubber spatula.
8. Cook a small portion of the forcemeat by poaching it. Taste and adjust the seasonings and texture as necessary.

The forcemeat is now ready to use as desired in the preparation of pâtés, terrines, galantines and sausages.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (32-g) serving: **Calories** 80, **Total fat** 7 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 30 mg, **Sodium** 25 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Vitamin A** 8%

1. Processing the ground meat in a cold food processor just until smooth.

2. Adding the eggs and pulsing until blended.

3. Adding the cream in a steady stream while the machine runs.

4. Passing the forcemeat through a drum sieve to ensure a smooth finished product.

Quenelles

Quenelles are small dumpling-shaped portions of a mousseline forcemeat poached in an appropriately flavored stock. Quenelles are a traditional garnish for many soups and a popular appetizer usually accompanied by a tomato coulis or a sauce based on a fish velouté. The technique used for making and poaching quenelles is also used for testing the seasoning and consistency of a mousseline forcemeat.

Procedure for Preparing Quenelles

1. Prepare a mousseline forcemeat.
2. Bring an appropriately flavored poaching liquid to a simmer.
3. Use two spoons to form the forcemeat into oblong-shaped dumplings. For small quenelles, use small spoons; for larger quenelles, use larger spoons.
4. Poach the quenelles until done. Test by breaking one in half to check the center's doneness.
5. Small soup-garnish-sized quenelles can be chilled in ice water, drained and held for service. Reheat them in a small amount of stock before garnishing the soup.

Forming the quenelles using two spoons and poaching until done.

Using Forcemeats

Forcemeats are used as basic components in the preparation of other foods, including terrines, pâtés, galantines and sausages. Aspic jelly is also an important component of these products.

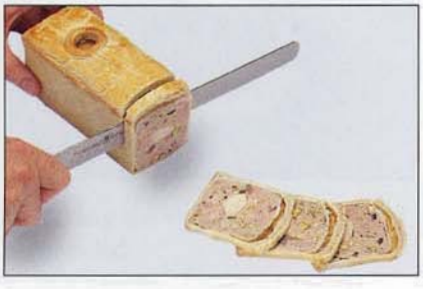
Terrines, Pâtés and Galantines

Traditionally, a **pâté** was a fine savory meat filling wrapped in pastry, baked and served hot or cold. A **terrine** was considered more basic, consisting of coarsely ground and highly seasoned meats baked in an earthenware mold and always served cold. (The mold is also called a terrine, derived from the French word *terre*, meaning earth.) Today, many types of pâtés are baked in loaf-type pans without a crust, which according to tradition would make them terrines, while pâtés baked in pastry are called **pâtés en croûte**. Thus, the terms *pâté* and *terrine* are now used almost interchangeably. **Galantines** are made from forcemeats of poultry, game or suckling pig wrapped in the skin of the bird or animal and poached in an appropriate stock.

1. Lining a mold with thin slices of fatback.

2. Filling the terrine with the forcemeat and garnish.

3. Placing the herb-decorated terrine in a water bath.



4. Slicing the finished terrine.

Terrines, pâtés and galantines are often made with forcemeats layered with garnishes to produce a decorative or mosaic effect when sliced. A wide variety of foods can be used as garnishes, including strips of ham, fatback or tongue; mushrooms or other vegetables; truffles and pistachio nuts. Garnishes should always be cooked before they are added to the pâté, terrine or galantine, or they will shrink during cooking, creating air pockets.

Pâté Pans, Molds and Terrines

Pâté pans, molds and terrines come in a variety of shapes and sizes. Pâtés that are not baked in a crust can be prepared in standard metal loaf pans of any shape, although rectangular ones make portioning the cooked pâté much easier. For pâtés en croûte, the best pans are collapsible or hinged, thin-metaled ones. They make it easier to remove the pâté after baking. Collapsible and hinged pans come in various shapes and sizes from small plain rectangles to large intricately fluted ovals. Traditional earthenware molds and terrines as well as ones made from enamel, metal, glass or even plastic are available. Most terrines are rectangular or oval in shape. Several of these pans are illustrated in Chapter 5, Tools and Equipment.

Terrines

Terrines are forcemeats baked in a mold without a crust. The mold can be the traditional earthenware dish or some other appropriate metal, enamel or glass mold. Any type of forcemeat can be used to make a terrine. The terrine can be as simple as a baking dish filled with a forcemeat and baked until done. A more attractive terrine can be constructed by layering the forcemeat with garnishes to create a mosaic effect when sliced. A terrine can even be layered with different forcemeats, for example, a pink salmon mousseline layered with a white pike mousseline.

Procedure for Preparing Terrines

1. Prepare the desired forcemeat and garnishes and keep refrigerated until needed.
2. Line a mold with thin slices of fatback, blanched leafy vegetables or other appropriate liner. (Some chefs claim that the fatback keeps the terrine moist during cooking; most modern chefs do not agree but nevertheless use it for aesthetic purposes.) The lining should overlap slightly, completely covering the inside of the mold and extending over the edge of the mold by approximately 1 inch (2.5 centimeters). Alternatively, line the mold with plastic wrap.
3. Fill the terrine with the forcemeat and garnishes, being careful not to create air pockets. Tap the mold several times on a solid work surface to remove any air pockets.
4. Fold the liner or plastic wrap over the forcemeat and, if necessary, use additional pieces to completely cover its surface.
5. If desired, garnish the top of the terrine with herbs that were used in the preparation of the forcemeat.
6. Cover the terrine with its lid or aluminum foil and bake in a water bath in a 350°F (180°C) oven. Regulate the oven temperature so that the water stays between 170°F and 180°F (77°C82°C).
7. Cook the terrine to an internal temperature of 150°F (66°C) for meat-based forcemeats or 140°F (60°C) for fish- or vegetable-based forcemeats.
8. Remove the terrine from the oven and allow it to cool slightly. If desired, pour off any fat and liquid from around the terrine and cover it with cool liquid aspic jelly.

Several types of terrines are not made from traditional forcemeats; many others are not made from forcemeats at all. But all are nonetheless called terrines because they are molded or cooked in the earthenware mold called a terrine. These include liver (and foie gras) terrines, vegetable terrines, brawns or aspic terrines, mousses, rillettes and confits.

Liver terrines are popular and easy to make. Puréed poultry, pork or veal livers are mixed with eggs and a panada of cream and flour, then baked in a fatback-lined terrine. Although most livers purée easily in a food processor, a smoother finished product is achieved if the livers are forced through a drum sieve after or in lieu of puréeing them in the processor.

Foie gras terrines are made with the fattened geese or duck livers called foie gras. Foie gras is unique, even among other poultry livers, in that it consists almost entirely of fat. (See Chapter 17.) It requires special attention during cooking; if it is cooked improperly or too long, it turns into a puddle of very expensive fat.

Vegetable terrines, which have a relatively low fat content, are becoming increasingly popular. Beautiful vegetable terrines are made by lining a terrine with a blanched leafy vegetable such as spinach, then alternating layers of two or three separately prepared vegetable fillings to create contrasting colors and flavors. A different style of vegetable terrine is made by suspending brightly colored vegetables in a mousseline forcemeat to create a mosaic pattern when sliced.

Brawns or **aspic terrines** are made by simmering gelatinous cuts of meat (most notably, pigs' feet and head, including the tongue) in a rich stock with wine and flavorings. The stock is enriched with the gelatin and flavor from the meat, creating an unclarified aspic jelly. The meat is then pulled from the bone, diced and packed into the terrine mold. The stock is reduced to concentrate its gelatin content, strained through cheesecloth and poured over the meat in the terrine. After the terrine has set, it is removed from the mold and sliced for service. The finished product is a rustic and flavorful dish.

A more elegant-appearing brawn is made by lining a terrine mold with aspic jelly, arranging a layer of garnish (for example, sliced meats, vegetables

Aspic Jelly

Aspic jelly is a savory jelly produced by increasing the gelatin content of a strong stock and then clarifying the stock following the process for preparing consommé discussed in Chapter 11, Soups. Brown stock produces an amber aspic jelly; white stock produces a more lightly colored one.

Although gelatin is a natural ingredient present in all good meat or poultry stocks, its concentration level is not normally high enough to produce a firm aspic jelly. Additional gelatin is usually added to the stock in order to assist gelling (setting). This can be done in two ways. The first is to produce a stock with an extremely high gelatin content by using gelatinous meats and bones such as calves' feet, pigs' ears and pork skin; the second is to add plain gelatin to a finished stock. An easier method of preparing aspic jelly is to add gelatin directly to a flavorful finished consommé.

Aspic jelly has many applications throughout the kitchen. In addition to adding flavor and shine, a coating of aspic jelly prevents displayed foods from drying out and inhibits the oxidation of sliced red meats. Aspic jelly is often lightly flavored with liquors such as madeira and cut into decorative garnishes for both plated presentations and buffet displays. It is also used to bind savory mousses, glaze slices of pâté and coat molded mousses. Aspic jelly is funneled into cooked pâtés en croûte to fill the gaps created when the forcemeat shrinks during the cooking process. Aspic jelly is also the basis of aspic molds or terrines (often simply called *aspics*), in which layers of cooked meats or vegetables are bound together and held in place by the aspic jelly. Many of these uses are discussed later.

The gelatin content of aspic jelly varies depending upon its intended use. Aspic jelly to be used only on a display can have a very high gelatin content for easier handling. Aspic jelly to be eaten should be fairly firm when cold, gelled at room temperature but tender enough to melt quickly in the mouth when eaten. To test the gelatin content of a liquid, pour a teaspoon (5 milliliters) onto a plate and refrigerate the plate for a few minutes. If the liquid does not gel firmly, additional gelatin can be softened in a small amount of cool liquid then added to the hot liquid.

TABLE 27.1 GELATIN CONCENTRATIONS

Type of Gel	Amount of Gelatin per Gallon (4 lt) of Water	Typical Use
Soft	2 oz. (60 g)	Cubed aspic jelly for edible garnishes
Firm	4 oz. (120 g)	Brushing slices of pâté or galantine; glazing edible centerpieces; molding terrines, aspics and brawns that will be sliced.
Very Firm	8 oz. + (225 g +)	Nonedible purposes such as coating nonedible centerpieces or trays for presentations.

or low-acid fruits) along the mold's bottom, adding aspic jelly to cover the garnish and repeating the procedure until the mold is full.

A **mousse** can be sweet or savory. Sweet mousses are described in Chapter 34, Custards, Creams, Frozen Desserts and Dessert Sauces. A savory mousse—which is not a mousseline forcemeat—is made from fully cooked meats, poultry, game, fish, shellfish or vegetables that are puréed and combined with a béchamel or other appropriate sauce, bound with gelatin and lightened with whipped cream. A mousse can be molded in a decorated, aspic-jelly-coated mold such as that described next, or it can be formed in molds lined with plastic wrap, which is peeled off after the mousse is unmolded. A small mousse can be served as an individual portion; a larger molded mousse can be displayed on a buffet.

PROCEDURE FOR PREPARING ASPIC-JELLY-COATED CHILLED MOUSSES

A mold can be lined with aspic jelly, then decorated and filled with cold mousse. The aspic-jelly-coated mousse is then unmolded for an attractive presentation.

1. Set a metal mold in ice water and add 8 ounces (250 grams) of cool liquid aspic jelly. Swirl the mold so the aspic jelly adheres to all sides. Pour out the excess aspic jelly. Repeat as needed to achieve the desired thickness; 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) or less is usually sufficient.

2. Garnish the mold by dipping pieces of vegetable or other foods in the liquid aspic jelly and placing them carefully inside the aspic-jelly-coated mold. The mold can now be filled with a cold filling such as a mousse.

3. Refrigerate the mold until it is well chilled. Unmold the aspic by dipping the mold in warm water, then inverting and tapping the mold on a plate.

Rillettes and **confits** are actually preserved meats. Rillettes are prepared by seasoning and slow-cooking pork or fatty poultry such as duck or goose in generous amounts of their own fat until the meat falls off the bone. The warm meat is mashed and combined with a portion of the cooking fat. The mixture is then packed into a crock or terrine, and rendered fat is strained over the top to seal it. Rillettes are eaten cold as a spread accompanied by bread or toast.

Confit is prepared in a similar manner except that before cooking the meat or poultry is often lightly salt-cured to draw out some moisture. The confit is then cooked until very tender but not falling apart. Confits are generally served hot. Like rillettes, confits can be preserved by sealing them with a layer of strained rendered fat. Properly prepared and sealed rillettes and confits will keep for several weeks under refrigeration.

Although it is sometimes incorrectly called chicken liver pâté, **chopped chicken liver** is prepared in a similar fashion to a rillette. Chopped chicken liver, however, will not have the keeping qualities of traditional rillettes or confits because it is not normally sealed in a crock or terrine with rendered fat. It should be eaten within a day or two of its preparation.

Pâtés en Croûte

Considered by some to be the pinnacle of the charcutier's art, pâtés en croûte are forcemeats baked in a crust. The forcemeat can be country-style, basic or mousseline, but a basic forcemeat is most commonly used. Although pâtés en croûte can be baked without using a mold, a mold helps produce a more attractive finished product.

Pâté Dough (Pâte au Pâté)

The crust surrounding a baking forcemeat must be durable enough to withstand the long baking process and hold in the juices produced as the pâté bakes. Unfortunately, some of the more durable crusts are tough and unpleasant to eat.

The goal is to achieve a balance so that the crust will hold the juices of the baking pâté and still be relatively pleasant to the palate. Some pâtés, especially more delicate ones such as fish mousselines, can be wrapped in brioche dough (Recipe 31.18).

RECIPE 27.5

PÂTÉ DOUGH

Yield: 1 lb. 8 oz. (680 g)

All-purpose flour	1 lb.	450 g
Shortening	7 oz.	200 g
Salt	1 1/2 tsp.	7 ml
Water	5 oz.	150 ml
Egg	1	1

1. Place the flour in the bowl of a mixer. Add the shortening and mix on low speed until smooth.
2. Combine the salt, water and egg; add them to the flour and shortening mixture.

Continued

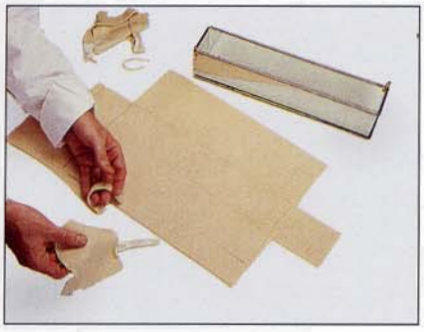
3. Knead until smooth and refrigerate. The dough will be easier to work with if allowed to rest for at least 1 hour.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (36-g) serving: **Calories** 150, **Total fat** 9 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 100 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 15 g, **Protein** 2 g

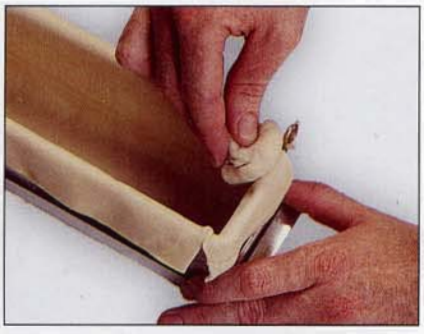
Procedure for Assembling and Baking Pâtés en Croûte

After preparing a forcemeat and pastry dough, all that remains is to assemble and bake the pâté en croûte. The amount of pastry dough and forcemeat needed is determined by the size of the mold or pan chosen.

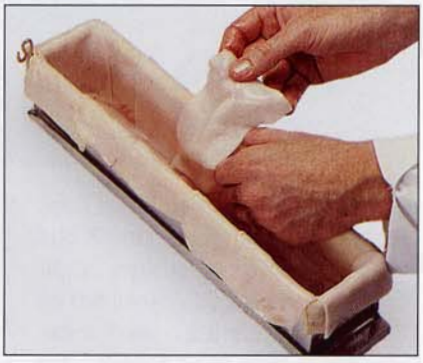
1. Prepare the pâté dough and the forcemeat, keeping the forcemeat refrigerated until needed.
2. Roll out the dough into a rectangular shape 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) thick.
3. Using the pâté mold as a pattern, determine how much dough is needed to line its inside; allow enough dough along each side of the mold's length to cover the top when folded over. Mark the dough. Cut the dough slightly larger than the marked lines. Cut a second rectangular piece of dough that is slightly larger than the top of the mold; it will be used as a lid.
4. Lightly butter the inside of the mold.
5. Lightly dust the large rectangle of dough with flour, fold it over and transfer it to the mold.
6. Use your thumbs and a dough ball made from dough trimmings to form the dough neatly into the corners of the mold. Continue until the dough is of even thickness on all sides and in the corners.
7. Trim the dough, leaving 3/4 inch (2 centimeters) on the ends and enough dough to cover the top along the sides.
8. Line the dough-covered mold with thin slices of fatback or ham, allowing 3/4 inch (2 centimeters) extra around the top of the mold, or as directed in the recipe. This layer helps protect the pastry crust from coming in contact with the moist forcemeat, which would make it soggy.
9. Fill the lined mold with the forcemeat to 1/2 inch (1.2 centimeters) below the top of the mold, pressing it well into the corners to avoid air pockets. Layer and garnish as appropriate.
10. Fold the fatback or ham over the top of the forcemeat, using additional pieces if necessary to cover its entire surface. Fold the pastry over the forcemeat.



1. Cutting the dough into a large rectangle.



2. Pressing the dough into the mold with a floured dough ball.

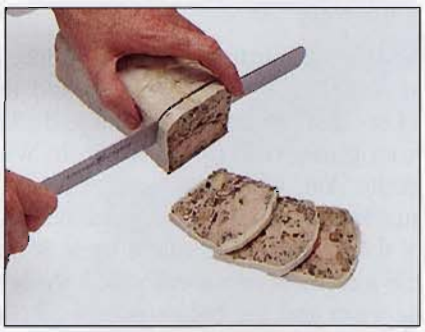


3. Lining the dough-covered mold with thin slices of fatback.

4. Filling the lined mold with the forcemeat and garnish.

5. Placing the top on the pâté.

6. Pouring aspic jelly into the steam hole of the baked pâté through an aluminum foil chimney.



7. Slicing the pâté with a thin-bladed knife.

11. Brush the exposed surface of the pastry with egg wash; carefully cap with the top piece of dough. Press any overlapping dough down inside the sides of the mold with a small spatula.
12. Using round cutters, cut one or two holes in the top to allow steam to escape during cooking. Egg-wash the surface. Place a doughnut-shaped piece of dough around each of the holes. Egg-wash any decorations.
13. Bake the pâté in a preheated 450°F (230°C) oven for 15 minutes. Then cover the surface of the pâté with aluminum foil. Reduce the heat to 350°F (180°C) and continue baking until the internal temperature reaches 150°F (66°C) for meat pâtés or 140°F (60°C) for fish and vegetable pâtés.
14. Allow the pâté to cool for at least 1 hour or overnight. Using a funnel, pour cool liquid aspic jelly through the holes to fill the space created when the pâté shrank during cooking. Allow the pâté en croûte to cool overnight before slicing.

Procedure for Glazing Pâté Slices with Aspic Jelly

Slices of chilled terrines, pâtés en croûte or gallantines (discussed next) may be garnished and coated with aspic to preserve their color, prevent drying and create a more attractive presentation.

1. Cool the clarified aspic jelly by slowly stirring it over an ice bath.

2. Brush or spoon the aspic jelly over slices of chilled pâté arranged on a cooling rack. Repeat the process until the coating reaches the desired thickness.

Galantines

A classic **galantine** is a boned chicken stuffed with a chicken-based forcemeat to resemble its original shape and then poached. Today, galantines are still most often prepared from whole ducks or chickens, but they can also be made from game, veal, fish or shellfish. When appropriate, the forcemeat is stuffed in the skin, which has been removed in one piece, sometimes with flesh still attached. When the skin is not available, its use is inappropriate or in the case of fish and shellfish where there is no skin, the galantine is made by forming the forcemeat into a cylindrical shape and wrapping it in cheesecloth, or plastic wrap and foil before poaching. Galantines are always served cold and are often displayed on buffets, sliced and glazed with aspic jelly.

A **ballottine** is similar to a galantine. It is made by removing the bones from a poultry leg, filling the cavity with an appropriate forcemeat and poaching or braising the leg with vegetables. Ballottines are often served hot with a sauce made from the cooking liquid.

Procedure for Preparing a Poultry Galantine

1. Bone the chicken by cutting through the skin along the length of the backbone and then following the natural curvature of the carcass. Keep all the meat attached to the skin. Remove the legs and wings by cutting through the joints when you reach them; leave the legs and wings attached to the skin. Then cut off the wings. Bone the thighs and legs, leaving the skin and meat attached to the rest of the bird. Trim the skin to form a large rectangle.
2. Prepare a forcemeat using the meat from the skinned bird or any other appropriate meat. Reserve a portion of the meat as garnish if desired. Prepare any other garnishes. Refrigerate the forcemeat and garnishes until needed.
3. Spread out the skin and meat on plastic wrap or several layers of cheesecloth with the skin side down and the flesh up.
4. Remove the chicken tenderloins and pull the tendon out of each. Butterfly the breasts and tenderloins and cover the entire skin with a thin layer of meat.

1. Butterflying the breasts and tenderloins and placing a thin layer of meat over the skin.

2. Arranging the forcemeat and garnishes in a cylindrical shape across the center of the skin.

3. Using the plastic wrap to roll the galantine into a tight cylinder.

4. Securing the galantine with heavy-duty aluminum foil.

5. Slicing the finished product.

5. Arrange the forcemeat and garnishes in a cylindrical shape across the center of the skin.
6. Using the plastic or cheesecloth to assist the process, tightly roll the skin around the forcemeat and garnishes to form a tight cylinder.
7. Tie the ends of the cheesecloth with butcher's twine and secure the galantine at even intervals using strips of cheesecloth. If plastic wrap was used, wrap the galantine with heavy-duty aluminum foil.
8. Poach the galantine in a full-flavored stock to an internal temperature of 150°F (66°C) for meat-based forcemeats or 140°F (60°C) for fish- or vegetable-based forcemeats.
9. Cool the galantine in its cooking liquid until it can be handled. Remove the cheesecloth or plastic wrap and aluminum foil and rewrap the galantine in clean cheesecloth or plastic wrap. Refrigerate overnight before decorating or slicing.

Sausages

Sausages are forcemeats stuffed into casings. For centuries, sausages consisted of ground meat, usually pork, and seasonings. Today, not only are sausages made from pork, but also from game, beef, veal, poultry, fish, shellfish and even vegetables.

There are three main types of sausages:

1. **Fresh sausages** include breakfast sausage links and Italian sausages. They are made with fresh ingredients that have not been cured or smoked.
2. **Smoked** and **cooked sausages** are made with raw meat products treated with chemicals, usually the preservative sodium nitrite. Examples are kielbasa, bologna and hot dogs.
3. **Dried** or **hard sausages** are made with cured meats, then air-dried under controlled conditions. Dry sausages may or may not be smoked or cooked. Dried or hard sausages include salami, pepperoni, Lebanon bologna and landjäger.

Smoked and cooked sausages and dry or hard sausages are rarely prepared in typical food service operations. Rather, they are produced by specialty shops and will not be discussed here. We do, however, discuss the ingredients and procedures for a variety of fresh sausages that can be prepared in almost any kitchen.

Sausage Components

Sausage Meats

Sausage meats are forcemeats with particular characteristics and flavorings. Coarse Italian and lamb sausages, for example, are simply a country-style forcemeat without liver and with different seasonings, stuffed into casings and formed into links. Hot dogs, bratwurst and other fine-textured sausages are variations of basic forcemeats stuffed into casings and formed into links.

Sausage Casings

Although sausage mixtures can be cooked without casings, most sausages are stuffed into casings before cooking. Two types of sausage casings are commonly used in food service operations:

1. **Natural casings** are portions of hog, sheep or cattle intestines. Their diameters are measured in millimeters, and they come in several sizes depending upon the animal or portion of the intestine used. Hog casings are the most popular; sheep casings are considered the finest-quality small casings. Both hog and sheep casings are used to make hot dogs and many types of pork sausage. Beef casings are quite large and are used to make sausages such as ring bologna and Polish sausage. Most natural casings are purchased in salt packs. In order to rid them of salt and impurities, the casings must be carefully rinsed in warm water and allowed to soak in cool water for at least 1 hour or overnight before use.
2. **Collagen casings** are manufactured from collagen extracted from cattle hides. They are generally inferior to natural casings in taste and texture, but they do have advantages: Collagen casings do not require any washing or soaking prior to use, and they are uniform in size.

Sausage Nozzles

Preparing Sausages

Equipment for Making Sausages

Sausage-stuffing machines are best if you engage in large-scale sausage production. Otherwise, all you need is a grinder with a sausage nozzle. Nozzles are available in several sizes to accommodate the various casing sizes.

Procedure for Preparing Sausages

1. Prepare a forcemeat.
2. Thoroughly chill all parts of the sausage stuffer that will come in contact with the forcemeat.
3. Rinse and soak the casings if using natural ones. Cut the casings into 4- to 6-foot (1.2–1.8-meter) lengths.
4. Put the sausage in the sausage stuffer.
5. Slide the entire casing over the nozzle of the sausage stuffer. Tie the end in a knot and pierce with a skewer to prevent an air pocket.
6. Support and guide the casing off the end of the nozzle as the sausage is extruded from the nozzle into the casing.
7. After all the sausage has been stuffed into the casing, twist or tie the sausage into uniform links of the desired size.

1. Sliding the casing over the nozzle of the sausage stuffer.

2. Knotting and piercing the casing with a skewer.

3. Supporting and guiding the casing off the end of the nozzle as the sausage is extruded from the machine into the casing.

4. Twisting the sausage into uniform links.

Salt-Curing, Brining and Smoking

Curing, brining and smoking are ancient techniques for preserving food. Today, foods such as hams, corned beef and smoked salmon are salt-cured, brined or smoked primarily for flavor. Cured meats have a characteristic pink color caused by the reaction of sodium nitrite, which is added during processing, with the naturally occurring myoglobin protein in the meat.

Salt-Curing

Salt-curing is the process of surrounding a food with salt or a mixture of salt, sugar, nitrite-based curing salt, herbs and spices. Salt-curing dehydrates the food, inhibits bacterial growth and adds flavor. It is most often used with pork products and fish. Salt-curing is not a quick procedure—and the time involved adds money to production costs. For example, country-style hams are salt-cured. Proper curing requires approximately one and a half days per pound of ham, which means three weeks for the average ham.

Some salt-cured hams such as Smithfield and prosciutto are not actually cooked. The curing process preserves the meat and makes it safe to consume raw. Gravlax is a well-known salmon dish prepared by salt-curing salmon fillets with a mixture of salt, sugar, pepper and dill. A recipe for gravlax (Recipe 27.22) is included at the end of this chapter.

Andouille—*A very spicy smoked pork sausage, popular in Cajun cuisine.*

Chorizo—*A coarse, spicy pork sausage flavored with ground chiles and removed from its casing before cooking; used in Mexican and Spanish cuisines.*

Mortadella—*An Italian smoked sausage made with ground beef, pork and pork fat, flavored with coriander and white wine; it is air dried and has a delicate flavor; also a large American bologna-type pork sausage studded with pork fat and garlic.*

Pepperoni—*A hard, thin, air-dried Italian sausage seasoned with red and black pepper.*

Soppressata—*A hard, aged Italian salami, sometimes coated with cracked peppercorns or herbs.*

Brining

A brine is actually a very salty marinade. Most brines have approximately 20% salinity, which is equivalent to 1 pound (450 grams) of salt per gallon (4 liters) of water. As with dry-salt cures, brines can also contain sugar, nitrites, herbs and spices. Brining is sometimes called pickling.

Today, most cured meats are prepared in large production facilities where the brine is injected into the meat for rapid and uniform distribution. Commercially brined corned beef is cured by this process, as are most common hams. After brining, hams are further processed by smoking.

Smoking

There are two basic methods of smoking foods: cold smoking and hot smoking. The principal difference is that hot smoking actually cooks the food, while cold smoking does not.

Both are done in a **smoker** specifically designed for this purpose. Smokers can be gas or electric; they vary greatly in size and operation. But they have several things in common. All consist of a chamber that holds the food being smoked, a means of burning wood to produce smoke and a heating element.

Different types of wood can be used to smoke food. Specific woods are selected to impart specific flavors. Hickory is often used for pork products; alder is excellent for smoked salmon. Maple, chestnut, juniper, mesquite and many other woods are also used. Resinous woods such as pine give food a bitter flavor and should be avoided.

Cold smoking is the process of exposing foods to smoke at temperatures of 50°F to 85°F (10°C–29°C). Meat, poultry, game, fish, shellfish, cheese, nuts and even vegetables can be cold-smoked successfully. Most cold-smoked meats are generally salt-cured or brined first. Salt-curing or brining adds flavor, allows the nitrites (which give the ham, bacon and other smoked meats their distinctive pink color) to penetrate the flesh and, most important, extracts moisture from the food, allowing the smoke to penetrate more easily. Cold-smoked foods are actually still raw. Some, like smoked salmon (lox), are eaten without further cooking. Most, such as bacon and hams, must be cooked before eating.

Hot smoking is the process of exposing foods to smoke at temperatures of 200°F to 250°F (93°C–121°C). As with cold smoking, a great variety of foods can be prepared by hot smoking. Meats, poultry, game, fish and shellfish that are hot-smoked also benefit from salt-curing or brining. Although most hot-smoked foods are fully cooked when removed from the smoker, many are used in other recipes that call for further cooking.

Pork Products

Preparing hams and curing and smoking pork products are a traditional part of charcuterie. Although most bacon and ham are now produced in large commercial facilities, the chef still works with these products and must be able to identify them properly.

Most bacon comes from a hog's fatty belly.

Common bacon is produced by brining and cold smoking trimmed pork belly. It is available in slab or sliced form. Sliced bacon is purchased by count (number of slices) per pound; thick-sliced bacon runs 10–14 slices per pound, while thin-sliced bacon may contain as many as 28–32 slices per pound.

Canadian bacon is produced from a boneless pork loin, trimmed so that only a thin layer of fat remains on its surface. It is then brined and smoked.

Sliced Bacon

Canadian Bacon

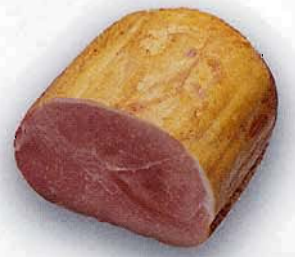
Pancetta is an Italian pork-belly bacon that is not smoked. It is salt-cured, peppered and often rolled into a cylinder shape. It can be sliced into rounds and fried; it is diced, rendered and combined with sauce to make fettuccine carbonara.

Pancetta

A **fresh ham** is a hog's hind leg; it is a primal cut. Many processed products produced from the primal fresh ham are also called ham.

Ham, in the United States, describes a variety of processed pork products, most of which come from the primal fresh ham. **Boneless** or **formed hams** are produced by separating a primal ham into its basic muscles, defatting the meat, curing it, stuffing the meat into various-sized and -shaped casings and cooking it. Boneless or formed hams are either smoked or chemical smoke flavoring is added during the curing process. The quality of boneless or formed hams varies greatly. The best hams are formed from only one or two large muscles, have low fat content and no added water other than that used during the curing process. Hams of lesser quality are formed from many small pieces of muscle and have a higher fat and water content. Many boneless or formed hams are listed in *The Meat Buyers Guide* and are indexed by the NAMP/IMPS system.

IMPS No. 501, Ham short shank, cured and smoked



IMPS No. 510, Ham, boneless, skinless, cured and smoked, fully cooked

Country ham is a specialty of the southeastern United States. Country hams are dry-cured, smoked and hung to air-dry for a period ranging from several weeks to more than a year. During drying, a mold develops on the ham rind that must be scrubbed off before the ham is cooked. It is best cooked by first soaking, then slow simmering. The most famous country hams are Virginia hams; those from Smithfield, Virginia, are considered the finest. Only hams produced in rural areas can be called country hams; others must be labeled country-style ham.

Prosciutto is Italian for ham. What we call prosciutto in this country is called **Parma** in Italy. Parma ham, produced near that Italian city, is made from hogs fed on the whey of cheese processed nearby. It is salt-cured and air-dried but not smoked. The curing process makes it safe and wholesome to consume raw. Several domestic varieties of prosciutto are produced, varying widely in quality. Imported prosciuttos are much larger than the domestic varieties because Italian hogs are larger when butchered.

Prosciutto

Westphalian ham is dry-cured, brined and then smoked with beechwood. Authentic Westphalian hams are produced in the Westphalia region of Germany and are quite similar to prosciutto. They are sold bone-in or boneless. Their characteristic flavor is derived from the juniper berries used in the curing process and the beechwood used for smoking.

Sauce Chaud-Froid

Sauce chaud-froid (French for hot-cold) is prepared hot but served cold. Traditionally used to coat meats, poultry or fish that were eaten cold, sauce chaud-froid is now more typically used to coat a whole poached salmon or whole roasted poultry item, which is then further decorated and used as a centerpiece. As with aspic jelly, chaud-froid that is to be eaten should be fairly firm when cold, jelled at room temperature but tender enough to melt quickly in the

mouth when eaten. Chaud-froid used for decorative purposes only should have a heavier gelatin content and be quite firm, which makes it easier to work with.

A classic sauce chaud-froid is a mixture of one part cream and two parts stock (veal, chicken and/or fish) strengthened with gelatin. Depending on the stock used, this coating ranges in color from cream to beige. A more modern sauce chaud-froid (also known as a mayonnaise chaud-froid or mayonnaise collée) is based on mayonnaise; it is easier to make than the classic sauce and provides a whiter product, which is more desirable when used for centerpieces.

RECIPE 27.6

Mayonnaise Chaud-Froid

Yield: 2 qt. (2 lt)

Aspic jelly (firm to very firm)	1 qt.	1 lt
Mayonnaise (commercially made)	1 lb.	450 g
Sour cream	1 lb.	450 g

1. Melt the aspic jelly.
2. In a stainless steel bowl, combine the mayonnaise with the sour cream and mix until smooth.
3. Stir the aspic jelly into the mayonnaise and sour cream mixture until smooth.
4. Warm the sauce over a double boiler, stirring gently with a spoon until smooth and all the air bubbles disappear.

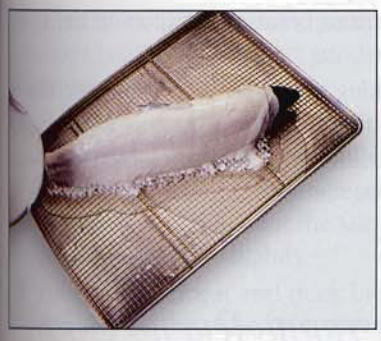
Procedure for Coating Foods with Sauce Chaud-Froid

1. Cook (usually by poaching or roasting), trim and otherwise prepare the item to be decorated.
2. Place the item on a cooling rack over a clean sheet pan and refrigerate until ready to decorate. (Sauce that drips into the clean pan can be reused.)
3. Warm an ample amount of sauce chaud-froid in a stainless steel bowl over a double boiler until it is completely melted. Stir the sauce gently with a spoon rather than a whisk in order to prevent air bubbles from forming.
4. When the sauce is warm and smooth, remove the bowl from the double boiler and place it in an ice bath.

1. Scoring the skin of the fish.

2. Removing the skin.

3. Removing the dark flesh and preparing the fish for the first coating of sauce chaud-froid.



4. Glazing the fish with the sauce chaud-froid.

5. Decorating the fish with vegetable flowers.

6. The decorated fish ready for service.

5. Using the back of a large ladle, stir the sauce by spinning the bowl and holding the ladle stationary. This should be done almost continuously while the sauce cools. Do not scrape the solidified chaud-froid from the sides of the bowl as lumps will form.
6. When the sauce has cooled to room temperature, remove the item to be decorated from the refrigerator and place it on the work table.
7. Coat the item with the sauce in a single, smooth motion. Use a ladle if the item is small; if it is large, pour the sauce directly from the bowl. The sauce should adhere to the cold food, and the coating should be free of bubbles or runs.
8. Repeat as necessary, reusing the sauce that drips onto the sheet pan, until the desired thickness is achieved.
9. Using a paring knife, carefully cut away any sauce from areas that are to be left uncoated.
10. Decorate the item as desired with vegetable flowers or other garnishes. If desired, finish the item by coating the vegetable garnishes with a layer of clear aspic jelly, using the same procedure.

Conclusion

The classic art of charcuterie is as popular today as ever. Consumers regularly enjoy high-quality pâtés, sausages, hams and other charcuterie products.

Although production procedures have changed as new technologies and equipment have developed, the basic principles remain the same: Terrines, pâtés and sausages can be produced only from high-quality forcemeats, and temperature control is fundamental to the proper production of forcemeats and other charcuterie products.

Armed with a basic knowledge of the procedures used for charcuterie, you can use your imagination and creativity to produce a variety of charcuterie products.

Questions for Discussion

1. Explain why the art of charcuterie is relevant to the training of modern chefs.
2. Compare the three styles of forcemeat.
3. In what way is a terrine different from a pâté? How does a pâté differ from a pâté en croûte?

4. Describe the differences and the similarities between a ballottine and a galantine.
5. Describe the typical procedure for making sausages. Why is the selection of casings important?
6. Explain the difference between hot smoking and cold smoking. Describe a food typically prepared by each of these methods.

Additional Charcuterie Recipes

RECIPE 27.7

Smoked Duck and Foie Gras Galantine on a Pear Galette

Note: *This dish appears in the Chapter Opening photograph.*

CHEF LELAND ATKINSON, WASHINGTON, DC

Yield: 1 Galantine

Duck breast, 10 oz. (300 g), boneless, skinless	1	1
Duck meat, lean	1 lb.	450 g
Pork butt, boneless, cubed	8 oz.	240 g
Pâté spice	2 tsp.	10 ml
Salt	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Orange zest	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh thyme	1 tsp.	5 ml
Fresh ginger	1 tsp.	5 ml
Juniper berries, crushed	10	10
Port	4 oz.	120 ml
Olive oil	1 oz.	30 ml
Fatback, cubed	8 oz.	240 g
Foie gras pâté, diced	3 oz.	90 g
Ham, medium dice	2 oz.	60 g
Pistachios, chopped	2 oz.	60 g
Fatback, slab	as needed	as needed
Smoker marinade:		
Brown sugar	2 oz.	60 g
Garlic, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Lemon juice	3 oz.	90 ml
Walnut oil	6 oz.	180 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Galette (per order):		
Pears	1	1
Clarified butter	1 tsp.	5 ml
Sugar	1/2 tsp.	3 ml
Italian parsley	as needed	as needed

1. Cut the duck breast into several long strips.
2. Marinate the duck breast, duck meat and pork in the pâté spice, salt, orange zest, thyme, ginger, juniper berries and port for 2 days.
3. Remove the strips of duck breast from the marinade and sauté in the olive oil to brown. Remove, drain and reserve.

4. Grind the remaining duck meat, pork butt, marinade ingredients and the cubed fatback in a chilled grinder, first through the large die then through the small die.
5. Place the ground meat in a stainless steel bowl over an ice bath. Fold in the foie gras, ham and pistachios.
6. Slice the fatback into thin sheets. Spread a piece of plastic wrap on the work surface and lay out the slices of fatback in a large rectangle with the edges overlapping slightly.
7. Place the forcemeat and duck breast strips along the length of the fatback rectangle so that when the galantine is rolled up the strips of duck will be arranged in the center. Use the plastic wrap to roll the galantine into a large cylinder.
8. Roll the cylinder in heavy-duty aluminum foil and poach until it reaches an internal temperature of 140°F (60°C). Remove and chill the galantine for at least 6 hours.
9. Combine the ingredients for the smoker marinade in a blender. Unwrap the galantine, brush it with the smoker marinade and chill for 1 hour. Place the galantine in a smoker and cold smoke for 2 hours. Remove and chill before slicing.
10. For each galette, core the pear and slice 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) thick. Add the clarified butter to a warm sauté pan and arrange the pears in the pan by overlapping the slices to form a circle. Sprinkle the pears with the sugar. Sauté the galette, using a spatula to carefully turn it over when browned on the first side.
11. Place a pear galette on a plate and place a slice of galantine directly in the center of the galette. Garnish with Italian parsley or as desired. May be accompanied by Cherry Confit (Recipe 25.13).

Approximate values per 4-oz. (114-g) serving: **Calories** 280, **Total fat** 22 g, **Saturated fat** 8 g, **Cholesterol** 100 mg, **Sodium** 290 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 5 g, **Protein** 17 g, **Vitamin C** 10%, **Iron** 20%

RECIPE 27.8

Lamb Sausage with Tricolor Bean Salad

NOTE: This dish appears in the Chapter Opening photograph.

CHEF LELAND ATKINSON, WASHINGTON, DC

LAMB SAUSAGE

Yield: 12 4-oz. (120-g) Links

Lamb shoulder	3 lb.	1.5 kg
Salt	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Garlic, chopped	2 tsp.	10 g
Paprika	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Cayenne pepper	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Black pepper	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Cumin	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fresh cilantro, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Tricolor Bean Salad (recipe follows)	as needed	as needed
Baby lettuces, assorted	12 heads	12 heads

Continued

Belgian endive	2 heads	2 heads
Olive oil	as needed	as needed
Red wine vinegar	as needed	as needed

1. Cut the meat in small cubes.
2. Combine the meat with the seasonings and herbs and refrigerate for 1 hour.
3. Grind the meat through a medium die directly into casings.
4. Grill or sauté the sausage links.
5. Present the cooked links with a portion of the Tricolor Bean Salad garnished with baby greens and Belgian endive. Accent with drizzled olive oil and red wine vinegar.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (140-g) serving: **Calories** 330, **Total fat** 19 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 135 mg, **Sodium** 680 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 37 g, **Iron** 20%

TRICOLOR BEAN SALAD

Yield: 24 oz. (700 g)

Dijon mustard	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Garlic, minced	1 tsp.	5 ml
Red onion, small dice	1 oz.	30 g
Jalapeños, seeded and minced	2	2
Red wine vinegar	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Olive oil	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Black beans, cooked	4 oz.	120 g
Black-eyed peas, cooked	4 oz.	120 g
Plum tomatoes, concassée	3	3
Fresh cilantro, chopped	1 bunch	1 bunch
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Combine the mustard, garlic, onions, jalapeños and red wine vinegar in a mixing bowl.
2. Slowly whisk in the olive oil in a steady stream.
3. Add the beans, black-eyed peas, tomatoes and cilantro and season with salt and pepper. Refrigerate 1 hour to allow the flavors to blend.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (27-g) serving: **Calories** 30, **Total fat** 2 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 125 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Claims**—low fat; low sodium; low calorie

RECIPE 27.9

VEGETABLE TERRINE IN BRIOCHE

NOTE: This dish appears in the Chapter Opening photograph.

CHEF LELAND ATKINSON, WASHINGTON, DC

Yield: 12 in. × 4 in. × 3 in. (30 cm × 10 cm × 7.5 cm) Terrine

Chicken breast meat, lean	2 lb.	900 g
Egg whites	3	3

Heavy cream	4 oz.	120 ml
Brandy	2 oz.	60 ml
Nutmeg	TT	TT
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Carrot, medium dice	3 oz.	90 g
Broccoli florets	8 oz.	250 g
Shiitake mushrooms, trimmed	12–18	12–18
Olive oil	1 oz.	30 ml
Red bell pepper, medium dice	2 oz.	60 g
Leek, white part only, medium dice	2 oz.	60 g
Fresh chives, basil and parsley, chopped	4 Tbsp.	60 ml
Brioche dough	1 lb.	450 g
Egg yolks, beaten	2	2
Eggs	2	2
Water	1 oz.	30 ml
Madeira aspic	as needed	as needed

1. Dice or grind the chicken and place it in the bowl of a cold food processor and process.
2. Add the egg whites and then the cream and brandy in a steady stream while the motor is running.
3. Season the mousseline with nutmeg, salt and pepper and poach a small amount to test for texture and seasonings.
4. Adjust the seasonings and transfer to a metal mixing bowl in an ice bath.
5. Separately blanch the carrots and broccoli; drain and blot dry on a paper towel.
6. Sauté the shiitakes in olive oil. Drain and chill. In the same pan, sauté the red peppers and leeks. Remove from the stove and add the herbs. Fold the carrots, peppers, leeks and herbs into the mousseline.
7. Roll the brioch-dough out to approximately 1/8 inch (3 millimeters) thick and refrigerate until well chilled.
8. Line a buttered pâté mold with the chilled brioche, reserving the excess for the top and garnish.
9. Fill the mold 1/4 full with the mousseline. Layer the shiitakes over the mousseline, cover them with another layer of mousseline, followed by the dry broccoli. Repeat this process until the mold is filled, finishing with a layer of mousseline.
10. Fold the ends of the brioche over the filling and brush with the beaten egg yolks.
11. Make a top from the remaining brioche and place it over the mold; cut a vent and insert a foil funnel into the vent.
12. Beat the eggs with the water to make an egg wash. Brush the exposed brioche with the egg wash and bake at 425°F (220°C) until the internal temperature reaches 125°F (52°C), approximately 35–40 minutes.
13. When cold, fill the pâté with madeira aspic, if needed.

Approximate values per slice (224 g): **Calories** 450, **Total fat** 20 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 185 mg, **Sodium** 520 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 35 g, **Protein** 34 g, **Vitamin A** 45%, **Vitamin C** 150%, **Claims**—high fiber

RECIPE 27.10

Basic Game Forcemeat

Yield: 4 lb. 8 oz. (2 kg)

Venison, cubed	1 lb. 8 oz.	675 g
Veal, cubed	1 lb. 8 oz.	675 g
Brandy	4 oz.	120 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Dried thyme	1 tsp.	5 ml
Pork fatback, cubed	1 lb.	450 g
Eggs	3	3
Game stock, cold	1 pt.	450 ml
Fresh parsley, chopped	1 oz.	30 g
Green peppercorns	1/2 oz.	15 g

1. Combine the venison and veal with the brandy, salt, pepper and thyme; marinate for several hours or overnight.
2. Grind the marinated meat and marinade ingredients in a chilled meat grinder once through a large die and then once through a small die; refrigerate.
3. Grind the fatback once through the small die.
4. Emulsify the fat with the ground meats in the bowl of a cold food processor. This can be done in several batches. Place the forcemeat in a stainless steel bowl over an ice bath.
5. Add the eggs, stock, parsley and green peppercorns to the forcemeat in several batches; work them in by hand.
6. Additional garnishes may be added as desired. The forcemeat can be used to make a variety of pâtés or terrines.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (36-g) serving: **Calories** 100, **Total fat** 7 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 40 mg, **Sodium** 110 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 7 g

RECIPE 27.11

Salmon and Sea Bass Terrine with Spinach and Basil

Yield: 1 12 in. × 4 in. × 3 in.
(30 cm × 10 cm × 7.5 cm) Terrine

Salmon fillet, boneless, skinless	1 lb. 8 oz.	700 g
Egg whites	3	3
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
Cayenne pepper	TT	TT
Heavy cream	24 oz.	700 ml
Basil leaves	12	12
Truffle, brunoise (optional)	3/4 oz.	22 g
Spinach leaves, cleaned	6 oz.	180 g
Sea bass fillet	12 oz.	350 g

1. Grind the salmon through the large die of a well-chilled meat grinder.
2. Place the salmon in the bowl of a food processor and process until smooth.

3. Add the egg whites, one at a time, pulsing the processor to incorporate. Scrape down the bowl and season with salt, white pepper and cayenne pepper.
4. With the machine running, add the cream in a steady stream. Scrape down the bowl again and process the mousseline until it is smooth and well mixed.
5. Blanch the basil leaves and refresh. Chop them finely.
6. Remove the mousseline from the bowl of the processor. Fold in the basil leaves and truffles and refrigerate.
7. Blanch and refresh the spinach leaves.
8. Spread the spinach leaves on a piece of plastic wrap, completely covering a rectangle approximately the length and width of the terrine mold.
9. Cut the sea bass fillet into strips approximately 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) wide and place end to end on the spinach leaves. Season with salt and white pepper.
10. Use the plastic wrap to wrap the spinach leaves tightly around the fish fillets.
11. Butter a terrine and line it with plastic wrap.
12. Half-fill the lined terrine with the salmon mousseline.
13. Carefully unwrap the spinach and sea bass fillets and place them down the center of the terrine. Fill the terrine with the remaining mousseline.
14. Tap the terrine mold firmly to remove any air pockets, then fold the plastic wrap over the top.
15. Cover and bake the terrine in a water bath at 300°F (150°C) to an internal temperature of 140°F (60°C), approximately 1 1/2 hours.
16. Cool the terrine well, unmold, slice or decorate and serve as desired.

Approximate values per 3.5-oz. (99-g) slice: **Calories** 210, **Total fat** 16 g, **Saturated fat** 8 g, **Cholesterol** 75 mg, **Sodium** 180 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 15 g, **Vitamin A** 25%

RECIPE 27.12

Liver Terrine

Yield: 1 12 in. × 4 in. × 3 in. (30 cm × 10 cm × 7.5 cm) Terrine

Pork liver	1 lb. 4 oz.	600 g
Fatback, diced	12 oz.	350 g
Onion, diced	6 oz.	180 g
Eggs	2	2
Salt	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Green peppercorns	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Allspice, ground	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Cloves, ground	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Ginger, ground	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Cream sauce	8 oz.	250 ml
Brown veal stock	6 oz.	180 ml
Fatback, sliced	as needed	as needed

Continued

1. Trim and dice the liver.
2. Grind the liver and diced fatback through a grinder with a fine die.
3. Add the onion and pass the liver and fatback through the grinder again.
4. Beat together by hand the eggs, salt, green peppercorns, allspice, cloves and ginger.
5. Combine the cream sauce and brown veal stock, add the egg mixture and mix well.
6. Add the ground liver mixture and beat until smooth.
7. Line a terrine with slices of fatback. Fill the mold with the forcemeat and cover with the overhanging slices of fatback.
8. Cover the terrine with its lid or aluminum foil and bake in a water bath at 350°F (180°C) to an internal temperature of 150°F (66°C), approximately 1 1/2 hours.
9. Cool, unmold, slice and serve as desired.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (160-g) serving: **Calories** 490, **Total fat** 46 g, **Saturated fat** 20 g, **Cholesterol** 265 mg, **Sodium** 800 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 5 g, **Protein** 14 g, **Vitamin A** 250%, **Iron** 45%

RECIPE 27.13

VEGETABLE TERRINE

Yield: 1 8 in. × 4 in. × 3 in. (20 cm × 10 cm × 7.5 cm) Terrine

Carrots, diced	1 pt.	500 ml
Cauliflower florets	1 qt.	1 lt
Broccoli florets	1 pt.	500 ml
Cream cheese	3 oz.	90 g
Eggs, separated	3	3
Almonds, ground	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Nutmeg, grated	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Lemon juice	1 tsp.	5 ml
Fresh mint, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Cook each vegetable separately in a steamer until tender, but not mushy.
2. Purée each vegetable separately in a food processor with 1 ounce (30 grams) of cream cheese and 1 egg yolk.
3. Add the ground almonds to the carrot purée and season with salt and pepper.
4. Add the nutmeg and lemon juice to the cauliflower purée and season with salt and pepper.
5. Add the mint to the broccoli purée and season with salt and pepper.
6. Whip the egg whites to stiff peaks. Fold 1/3 of the whipped whites into each of the vegetable purées.
7. Layer the 3 purées in a terrine mold. Place the terrine in a water bath and bake at 325°F (160°C) until firm, approximately 45 minutes. Chill for service.

Approximate values per 1-in. (2.5-cm) slice: **Calories** 114, **Total fat** 7 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 91 mg, **Sodium** 87 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 8.5 g, **Protein** 6 g, **Vitamin A** 175%, **Vitamin C** 87%

RECIPE 27.14

Roasted Red Pepper Mousse

Yield: 1 1/2 pt. (700 ml)

Onion, small dice	3 oz.	90 g
Garlic, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Olive oil	1 oz.	30 ml
Red bell pepper, roasted and peeled, small dice	10 oz.	300 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Chicken stock	8 oz.	225 ml
Granulated gelatin	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Dry white wine	2 oz.	60 ml
Heavy cream, whipped	6 oz.	180 ml

1. Sauté the onions and garlic in the olive oil until tender, approximately 2 minutes.
2. Add the bell pepper, salt, pepper and chicken stock. Bring to a boil, reduce to a simmer and cook for 5 minutes.
3. Soften the gelatin in the white wine, then add it to the pepper mixture. Purée the pepper mixture in a blender or food processor and strain through a china cap.
4. Place the pepper purée over an ice bath. Stir until cool but do not allow the gelatin to set. Fold in the whipped cream. Pour the mousse into aspic-lined or well-oiled timbales or molds and refrigerate several hours or overnight.
5. Unmold the mousse and serve as desired.

Variations: Substitute yellow bell peppers for part or all of the red bell peppers.

Broccoli Mousse: Substitute 8 ounces (225 grams) of blanched, chopped broccoli for the red bell peppers.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (55-g) serving: **Calories** 60, **Total fat** 6 g, **Saturated fat** 2.5 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 200 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin C** 25%

RECIPE 27.15

Salmon Mousse

Yield: 1 lb. 8 oz. (650 g)

Salmon, boneless, skinless	12 oz.	350 g
Fish velouté, warm	8 oz.	250 ml
Heavy cream	8 oz.	250 ml
Granulated gelatin	1 1/2 Tbsp.	23 ml
White wine	4 oz.	120 ml
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
Cayenne pepper	TT	TT

1. Steam the salmon and transfer it to the food processor while still warm. Add the warm velouté in a steady stream while the machine is running.

Continued

2. Whip the cream to soft peaks and reserve.
3. Add the gelatin to the wine and allow it to rest for 5 minutes. Heat the gelatin mixture to a simmer.
4. Transfer the salmon and velouté to a mixing bowl and stir in the gelatin mixture. Season with salt, pepper and cayenne.
5. When the mixture has cooled to near room temperature, use a rubber spatula to fold in the whipped cream until just mixed.
6. The mousse is now ready to be formed into timbales, or molded into various shapes as desired.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (39-g) serving: **Calories** 100, **Total fat** 6 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 25 mg, **Sodium** 480 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 6 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin A** 4%

RECIPE 27.16

Galantine of Turbot and Lobster

RIVIERA, ATLANTA, GA
Chef Jack Schoop, CMC

Yield: 1 Galantine, 8-10 4-oz. (120-g) Servings

Onion, diced	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Whole butter	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Lobster meat	4 oz.	120 g
White bread, crust removed	2 slices	2 slices
Egg white	1	1
Heavy cream	9 oz.	270 ml
Sea salt	TT	TT
White pepper	TT	TT
Nutmeg	TT	TT
Fresh dill, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Turbot fillets, skinned, 6 oz. (180 g) each	4	4
Spiny lobster tails, blanched, meat removed and cut into long strips	2	2

1. Sauté the onion in the butter without browning, then allow it to cool.
2. Dice the lobster meat and place in a stainless bowl over ice. Add the cooled onion, slices of white bread, egg white and 1 ounce (30 milliliters) of the cream. Season with salt, white pepper and nutmeg and combine the ingredients well.
3. Grind the mixture very fine in a food processor, then sieve through a strainer if necessary.
4. In a stainless bowl over an ice bath, beat in the remaining heavy cream and stir in the dill.
5. Flatten the turbot fillets with a meat mallet. Season the fillets with salt and pepper.
6. Place the fillets touching side by side, skin side up, on a large piece of heavy plastic wrap.
7. Spread the forcemeat on the fillets and lay the lobster strips down the center of the assembly.

8. Use the plastic wrap to help roll the galantine, then tie the ends of the wrap with twine.
9. Poach the galantine in fish broth or salted water for about 30 minutes. Cool overnight in the poaching liquid.
10. To serve, slice and plate with salad greens, diced tomatoes and a balsamic vinaigrette.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (115-g) serving: **Calories** 163, **Total fat** 9 g, **Saturated fat** 5 g, **Cholesterol** 74 mg, **Sodium** 215 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 4 g, **Protein** 17 g

RECIPE 27.17

Chopped Chicken Liver

Yield: 20 oz. (600 g)

Chicken livers, trimmed	1 lb.	450 g
Chicken fat or butter	2 oz.	60 g
Kosher salt	TT	TT
Eggs, hard-cooked	2	2
Onion, small dice	6 oz.	170 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. Sauté the livers in the chicken fat or butter until lightly browned with a slightly pink interior. Season with kosher salt.
2. Chop the livers with a chef's knife, blending in the eggs and onions. Season to taste with salt and pepper.
3. The final product should be slightly coarse and peppery. Blend in additional chicken fat or butter if necessary to make the mixture hold together.
4. Pack into a serving bowl, cover well and chill for 24 hours. Serve with crackers, toast or matzos and sliced radishes.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (38-g) serving: **Calories** 60, **Total fat** 4 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 105 mg, **Sodium** 240 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Vitamin A** 70%

RECIPE 27.18

Rabbit Pâté en Croûte

Yield: 1 3 in. × 3.5 in. × 16 in.
(7.5 cm × 8.7 cm × 40cm) Pâté

Rabbit meat, boneless, large dice	2 lb.	1 kg
Pork butt, large dice	1 lb.	450 g
Marinade:		
Pâté spice	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Orange zest	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Lime zest	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Brandy	4 oz.	120 ml
Fresh thyme	1 bunch	1 bunch
Juniper berries	6	6
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Fatback, large dice	1 lb.	450 g

Continued

Eggs	4	4
Pistachios, chopped coarse	8 oz.	250 g
Ham, diced	6 oz.	180 g
Black olives, chopped coarse	2 oz.	60 g
Rabbit loins, browned lightly in oil	4	4
Rabbit livers, browned lightly in oil	6	6
Pâté dough	1 lb. 8 oz.	700 g

1. Combine the rabbit meat and pork butt with the marinade ingredients and marinate several hours or overnight.
2. Freeze the fatback.
3. Remove the thyme and juniper berries from the marinated meat mixture and grind the meat and the remaining marinade ingredients in a well-chilled grinder once through the large die, then through the medium die. Hold the mixture in an ice bath.
4. Grind the fatback through the medium die and add to the meat mixture.
5. Place the meat mixture and fat in a chilled food processor and process until emulsified.
6. Over an ice bath, incorporate the eggs into the forcemeat.
7. Fold the pistachios, ham and olives into the forcemeat.
8. Follow the procedure for preparing a pâté en croûte using the rabbit loins and livers as garnishes running the length of the pâté.

Approximate values per 5-oz. (150-g) slice: **Calories** 520, **Total fat** 39 g, **Saturated fat** 12 g, **Cholesterol** 155 mg, **Sodium** 230 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 14 g, **Protein** 29 g, **Vitamin A** 80%, **Iron** 20%

RECIPE 27.19

Tex-Mex Turkey Sausage

Yield: 4 lb. (1.8 kg)

Canola oil	4 Tbsp.	60 ml
Onion, chopped fine	12 oz.	340 g
Garlic, minced	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Jalapeño, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Turkey breast meat, trimmed of fat	2 lb.	1 kg
Veal, lean	8 oz.	250 g
White wine vinegar	2 oz.	60 ml
Water	8 oz.	250 ml
Fresh cilantro, chopped	4 oz.	120 g
White pepper	1 tsp.	5 ml
Chilli powder	1 tsp.	5 ml
Cumin, ground	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml

1. Heat the oil and sauté the onion, garlic and jalapeño until the onions are translucent; remove and chill well.
2. Grind the turkey and veal in a cold meat grinder, once through the large die and then through the medium die. Working over an ice bath, combine the meats, vinegar, water and seasonings. Add the sautéed vegetables.
3. Blend well, then cook a small portion to test the flavor and texture. Adjust the seasonings.

4. Stuff into casings or portion into 2-ounce (60-gram) patties and broil. Serve with papaya salsa.

Approximate values per 2-oz. (61-g) serving: **Calories** 80, **Total fat** 2.5 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 30 mg, **Sodium** 115 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 3 g, **Protein** 12 g, **Vitamin A** 8%, **Vitamin C** 8%, Iron 15%, **Claims**—low fat; low sodium

RECIPE 27.20

Spicy Italian Sausage

Yield: 5 lb. (2.2 kg)

Pork butt	5 lb.	2.2 kg
Salt	1 1/2 Tbsp.	23 ml
Black pepper	1 1/2 tsp	7 ml
Fennel seeds	1 1/2 tsp.	7 ml
Paprika	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Red pepper, crushed	1 1/2 tsp.	7 ml
Coriander, ground	3/4 tsp.	4 ml
Cold water	5 oz.	150 ml

1. Cut the meat into 2-inch (5-centimeter) cubes.
2. Combine the pork with the remaining ingredients except the water.
3. Grind the meat once through the coarse die of a well-chilled grinder.
4. Add the cold water and mix well.
5. Stuff the sausage into casings.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (122-g) serving: **Calories** 220, **Total fat** 9 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 80 mg, **Sodium** 260 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 0 g, **Protein** 36 g

RECIPE 27.21

Chorizo

Yield: 7 lb. 8 oz. (3.4 kg)

Pork, lean	5 lb.	2.2 kg
Fatback	2 lb. 8 oz.	1.1 kg
Red pepper flakes	1 tsp.	5 ml
Garlic, chopped	1 oz.	30 g
Cumin	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Cayenne pepper	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Salt	4 tsp.	20 ml
Paprika	5 Tbsp.	75 ml
Red wine vinegar	3 oz.	90 ml

1. Cut the pork and fatback in 1-inch (2.5-centimeter) pieces. Grind the pork once using a medium die. Grind half of the pork a second time together with the fatback through a fine die.
2. Combine all the ingredients in the bowl of a mixer using the paddle attachment. The sausage may be used in bulk or formed into links as desired.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 120, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 25 mg, **Sodium** 90 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 0 g, **Protein** 5 g

RECIPE 27.22

GRAVLAX

Yield: Approximately 5 lb. (2.2 kg)

Salmon, drawn, 10–12 lb.	1	1
Kosher salt	8 oz.	240 g
White peppercorns, cracked	1 oz.	30 g
Fresh dill, chopped	2 bunches	2 bunches
Sugar	8 oz.	250 g

1. Fillet the salmon, removing the pin bones but leaving the skin attached.
2. To make the salt cure, combine the salt, white peppercorns, dill and sugar.
3. Coat the salmon fillets with the salt cure and wrap each fillet separately in plastic wrap.
4. Place the fillets in a hotel pan and place another hotel pan on top. Place two #10 cans in the top hotel pan to weigh it down and press the fish.
5. Refrigerate the salmon for 2–3 days.
6. Unwrap the gravlax, scrape off the salt cure and slice the gravlax very thin.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (63-g) serving: **Calories** 110, **Total fat** 4.5 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 30 mg, **Sodium** 1130 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 3 g, **Protein** 16 g, **Claims**—low saturated fat

RECIPE 27.23

SMOKED SALMON WITH SEARED TUNA

CHEF CHRISTOPHER GROSS, PHOENIX, AZ

Yield: 4 Servings

Smoked salmon	8 oz.	225 g
Fresh tuna, cut into 4-oz. (120-g) squares	2	2
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
Whole butter, melted	as needed	as needed
Fresh parsley, chopped fine	1 bunch	1 bunch
Fresh thyme, chopped fine	1 bunch	1 bunch
Fresh chervil, chopped fine	1 bunch	1 bunch
Fresh tarragon, chopped fine	1 bunch	1 bunch
Fresh basil leaves, chopped fine	5	5
Saffron	pinch	pinch
Crème fraîche	1 pt.	450 ml
Fresh dill	1 sprig	1 sprig
Fresh spinach	8 oz.	225 g
Caviar (Osetra)	1 oz.	30 g
Baby lettuces, assorted	4 heads	4 heads
Olive oil	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Brioche	4 slices	4 slices

1. Thinly slice the salmon and arrange it in a single-layer circle on four plates. Leave a 1-inch (2.5-centimeter) border around the edge of each plate.

2. Season the tuna with salt and pepper and coat with a small amount of butter. Roll the tuna in the chopped herbs.
3. Sear the tuna in a hot sauté pan, keeping it rare. Refrigerate until ready to serve.
4. To make the yellow sauce, add a pinch of saffron to 6 ounces (180 grams) of the crème fraîche and simmer until the crème turns yellow, approximately 10 minutes. Strain the sauce, season with salt and white pepper and refrigerate.
5. To make the green sauce, add the dill to another 6 ounces (180 grams) of crème fraîche and simmer for 10 minutes. Place the spinach in a blender. Add the dilled crème fraîche and blend for several seconds. Strain, season with salt and white pepper and cool quickly to preserve the color.
6. Whip the remaining crème fraîche until stiff.
7. Cut the two squares of tuna in half diagonally, creating four triangles. Place a triangle of tuna in the center of each plate of salmon.
8. Form a small quenelle of whipped crème fraîche and place it at the edge of the salmon. Spoon some caviar onto the crème fraîche.
9. Toss the baby greens with the olive oil and place a small mound next to the tuna.
10. Garnish the border of each plate with small dots of the yellow and green sauces.
11. Cut the slices of brioche into mushroom shapes and toast. Place one slice against each piece of tuna.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 1060, **Total fat** 72 g, **Saturated fat** 34 g, **Cholesterol** 325 mg, **Sodium** 1810 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 55 g, **Protein** 47 g, **Vitamin A** 370%, **Vitamin C** 330%, **Calcium** 60%

RECIPE 27.24

Duck Proscuttio with Fresh Mango

MANGO RESTAURANT, Chicago, IL
Chef Steven Chiappetti

Yield: 2 Servings

Muscovy duck breasts	2	2
Kosher salt	1 c.	250 ml
Sugar	1/2 c.	120 ml
Molasses	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Red wine vinegar	1/4 c.	60 ml
Olive oil	1/4 c.	60 ml
Fresh mango	1	1
Mâche lettuce	2 bunches	2 bunches

1. Rinse the duck breasts under cold water and trim off the excess fat. Place the duck breasts on a sheet pan and refrigerate until ready to use.
2. In a medium-sized bowl, combine the salt, 1/4 cup (60 milliliters) of sugar and the molasses. Rub this mixture on the duck breasts. Cover and refrigerate the duck for 48 hours.

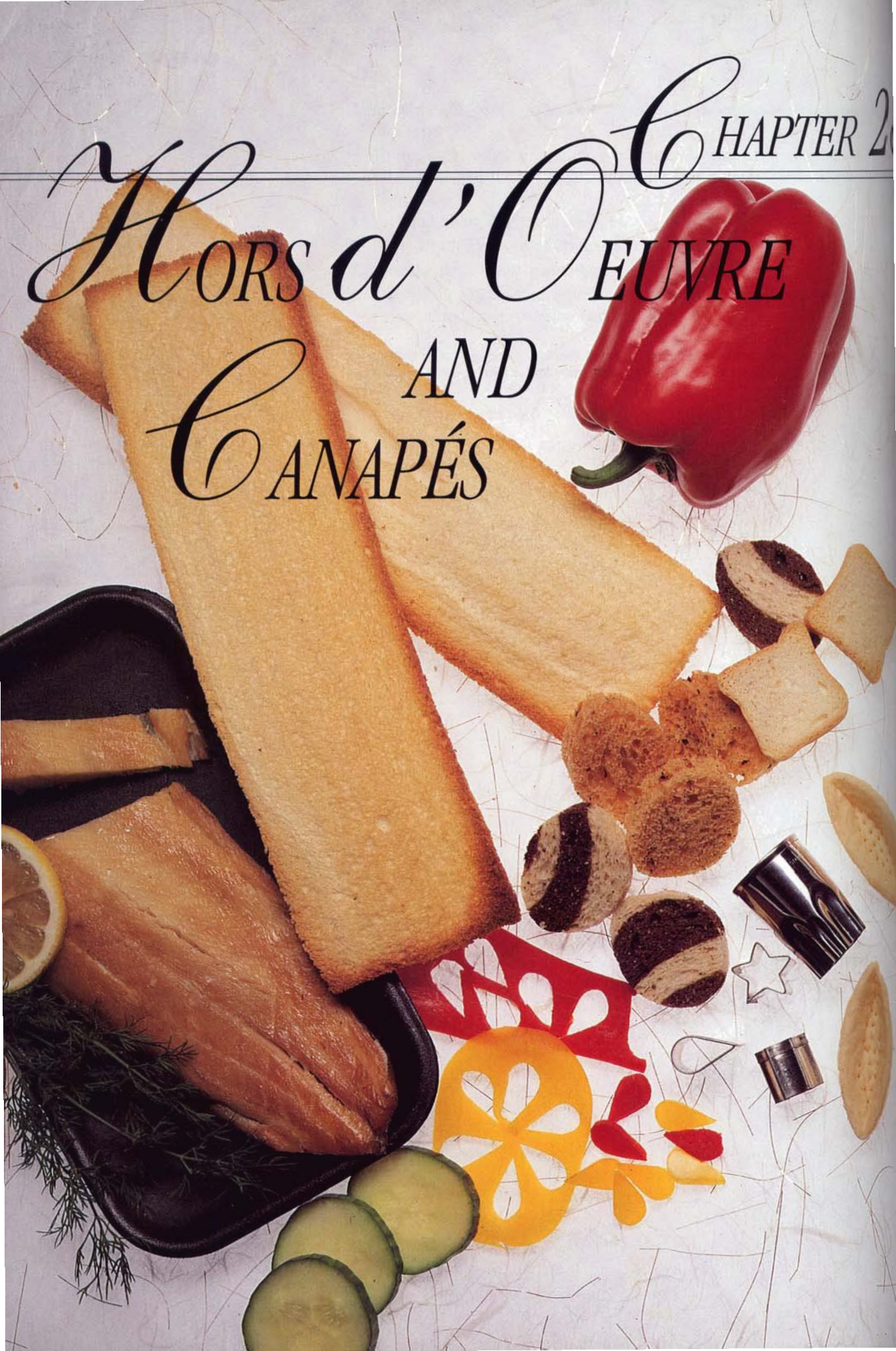
Continued

3. Rinse the duck well under cold water and refrigerate another 48 hours before serving.
4. To make the dressing, boil the remaining sugar and red wine vinegar in a small pan until thick. Remove from the heat and let cool. Whisk in the olive oil.
5. Peel and finely dice the mango.
6. Place a tablespoon of diced mango on a each plate.
7. Slice the duck breast paper-thin and fan over the mango.
8. Arrange the mâche lettuce next to the mango and drizzle the olive oil and red wine reduction dressing over the plate.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 550, **Total fat** 30 g, **Saturated fat** 4.5 g, **Cholesterol** 155 mg, **Sodium** 3610 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 41 g, **Protein** 30 g, **Vitamin A** 70%, **Vitamin C** 100%, **Iron** 40%

CHAPTER 2

HORS D'OEUVRE AND CANAPÉS



Chef Sidney Brodsky
Prep Chef, Inc., Phoenix, AZ

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- prepare and serve a variety of cold and hot hors d'oeuvre, including canapés
- choose hors d'oeuvre, including canapés, that are appropriate for the meal or event

Hors d'oeuvre, whether hot or cold, are very small portions of foods served before the meal to whet the appetite. Hors d'oeuvre can be passed elegantly by waiters or displayed on buffets. Appetizers, or starters, whether hot or cold, are generally the first course or introduction to a meal; they are more typically served with dinner than with lunch. Sometimes there is very little difference between an hors d'oeuvre and an appetizer.

Preparing hors d'oeuvre, including canapés, uses skills from almost every work station. Because they can consist of meat, poultry, fish, shellfish, vegetables, potatoes, grains, pasta, fruits, baked goods and sauces, they require a detailed knowledge of these foods and how they are prepared.

The French term *hors d'oeuvre* translates as "outside the work." Its usage was correct under the classic kitchen brigade system, for it was the service staff's responsibility to prepare small tidbits for guests to enjoy while the kitchen prepared the meal. Today, however, the kitchen staff prepares the hors d'oeuvre as well as the meals. Cold hors d'oeuvre (the final *s* is used as an Americanized pural) are usually prepared by the garde-manger; hot ones are prepared in the main kitchen.

There are really only two limitations on the type of food and manner of preparation that can be used for hors d'oeuvre: the chef's imagination and the foods at his or her disposal. There are, however, a few guidelines.

Guidelines for Preparing Hors d'Oeuvre

1. They should be small, one to two bites.
2. They should be flavorful and well seasoned without being overpowering.
3. They should be visually attractive.
4. They should complement whatever foods may follow without duplicating their flavors.

Un Artiste de l'Hors d'Oeuvre

Well may it be said that a good hors d'oeuvre artist is a man to be prized in any kitchen, for, although his duties do not by any means rank first in importance, they nevertheless demand of the chef the possession of such qualities as are rarely found united in one person, reliable and experienced taste, originality, keen artistic sense, and professional knowledge.

Auguste Escoffier,
Le Guide culinaire

Cold Hors d'Oeuvre

Cold hors d'oeuvre are divided here into five broad categories based upon preparation method, principal ingredient or presentation style. They are canapés, caviars, crudités, dips and sushi. These categories may vary somewhat from classical teachings, but they are completely appropriate for modern menus and food service operations.

Canapés

Canapés are tiny, open-faced sandwiches. They are constructed from a base, a spread and one or more garnishes.

The most common **canapé base** is a thin slice of bread cut into an interesting shape and toasted. Although most any variety of bread can be used, spiced, herbed or otherwise flavored breads may be inappropriate for some

TABLE 28.1 A SELECTION OF CANAPÉ SPREADS AND SUGGESTED GARNISHES

Spread	Suggested Garnishes
Anchovy butter	Hard-cooked eggs, capers, green or black olive slices
Blue cheese	Grape half, walnuts, roast beef roulade, pear slice, currants, watercress
Caviar butter	Caviar, lemon, egg slice, chives
Deviled ham	Cornichons, mustard butter, sliced radish
Horseradish butter	Smoked salmon, roast beef, smoked trout, marinated herring, capers, parsley
Lemon butter	Shrimp, crab, caviar, salmon, chives, parsley, black olive slices
Liver pâté	Truffle slice, cornichon
Mustard butter	Smoked meats, pâté, dry salami coronet, cornichon
Pimento cream cheese	Smoked oyster, sardine, pimento, parsley
Shrimp butter	Poached bay scallops, shrimp, caviar, parsley
Tuna salad	Capers, cornichons, sliced radish

spreads or garnishes. Melba toasts, crackers and slices of firm vegetables such as cucumbers or zucchini are also popular canapé bases. Whatever item is used, the base must be strong enough to support the weight of the spread and garnish without falling apart when handled.

The **canapé spread** provides much of the canapé's flavor. Spreads are usually flavored butters, cream cheese or a combination of the two. Several examples of spreads are listed in Table 28.1. Each of the spreads is made by adding the desired amount of the main ingredient (chopped or puréed as appropriate) and seasonings to softened butter or cream cheese and mixing until combined. Quantities and proportions vary according to individual tastes. Other canapé spreads include bound salads (for example, tuna or egg), finely chopped shrimp or liver mousse. Any of a number of ingredients can be combined for spreads, provided the following guidelines are followed.

GUIDELINES FOR PREPARING CANAPÉ SPREADS

1. The spread's texture should be smooth enough to produce attractive designs if piped through a pastry bag fitted with a decorative tip.
2. The spread's consistency should be firm enough to hold its shape when piped onto the base, yet soft enough to stick to the base and hold the garnishes in place.
3. The spread's flavor should complement the garnishes and be flavorful enough to stimulate the appetite without being overpowering.

A spread may be a substantial portion of the canapé as well as its distinguishing characteristic. Or it can be applied sparingly and used more as a means of gluing the garnish to the base than as a principal ingredient.

Canapés with bread bases tend to become soggy quickly from both the moisture in the spread and the moisture in the refrigerator where they are stored. Using a spread made with butter will help keep the bread bases crispier, as will buttering the base with a thin coat of softened plain butter before piping on the spread. The best way to ensure a crisp base is to make the canapés as close to service time as possible.

Salmon Rosette Canapés

Salami Cornet Canapés

Shrimp and Caviar Canapés

The variety of **canapé garnishes** is vast. The garnish can dominate or complement the spread, or it can be a simple sprig of parsley intended to provide visual appeal but little flavor. Although several ingredients can be used to garnish the same canapé, remember the limitations imposed by the canapé's size and purpose. Traditional garnishes can be made by shaping thinly sliced smoked salmon into rosettes, or thin slices of salami into cornets, into which additional spread can be piped. The natural shape of a boiled, peeled shrimp also makes an attractive canapé garnish.

Procedure for Preparing Canapés

This procedure can be adapted and used with a variety of ingredients to produce a variety of canapés. If the canapé base is a bread crouton, begin with step 1. If some other product is used as the base, prepare that base and begin with step 4.

1. Trim the crust from an unsliced loaf of bread. Slice the bread lengthwise approximately 1/3 inch (8 millimeters) thick.
2. Cut the bread slices into the desired shapes using a serrated bread knife or canapé cutter. See Figure 28.1.
3. Brush the bread shapes with melted butter and bake in a 350°F (180°C) oven until they are toasted and dry. Remove and cool. Or the entire bread slice can be buttered and toasted, then cut into shapes.
4. If desired, spread each base with a thin layer of softened plain butter.
5. Apply the spread to the base. If a thin layer is desired, use a palette knife. If a thicker or more decorative layer is desired, pipe the spread onto the base using a pastry bag and decorative tip. Or the entire bread slice can be buttered, toasted, cooled, covered with a spread and then cut into the desired shapes.
6. Garnish the canapé as desired.
7. If desired, glaze each canapé with a thin coating of aspic jelly. The aspic jelly can be applied with a small spoon or a spray bottle designated for that purpose.

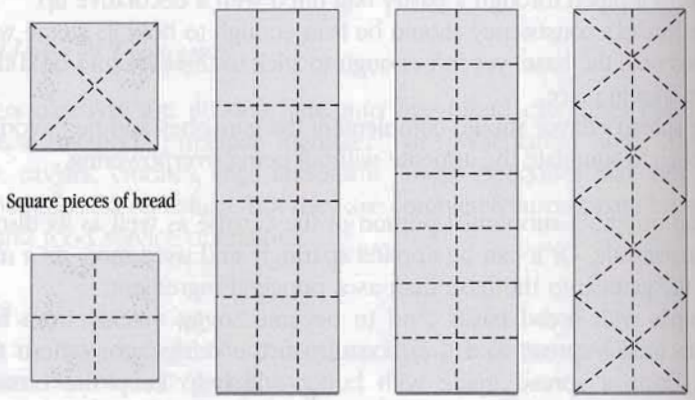


FIGURE 28.1 *Bread can be sliced into several basic shapes to avoid waste.*

1. Slicing bread into the desired shapes.

2. Applying the spread to the base with a palette knife.

3. Piping the spread onto the base.

4. Coating the entire slice of toasted bread with a spread before cutting it into canapés.

5. Garnishing the canapés.

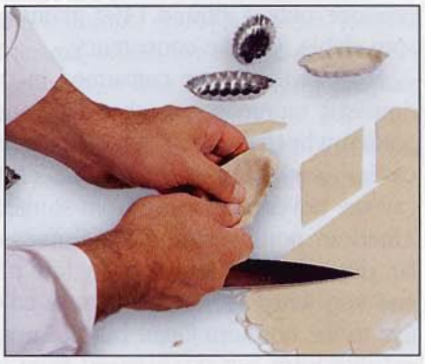
6. Spraying the finished canapés with aspic.

Barquettes, Tartlets and Profiteroles

Barquettes, tartlets and profiteroles are all adaptations of the basic canapé. A **barquette** is a tiny boat-shaped shell made from a savory dough such as pâte brisée. A **tartlet** is simply a round version of a barquette. A **profiterole** is a small puff made from pâte à choux. These three items can be prepared like canapés by filling them with flavored spreads and garnishing as desired.

Procedure for Preparing Barquettes

1. Rolling out the pastry dough.



2. Pressing the dough into the barquette shells.

3. Pricking the dough with a fork to allow steam to escape during baking.

4. Placing a second barquette shell on top of the dough to prevent it from rising as it bakes.

Other Types of Canapés

Vegetables such as cherry tomatoes, blanched snow peas, mushroom caps and Belgian endive leaves are sometimes used as canapé bases. They are filled and garnished in the same manner as barquettes, tartlets and profiteroles.

Caviar

Caviar, considered by many to be the ultimate hors d'oeuvre, is the salted roe (eggs) of the sturgeon fish. In the United States, only sturgeon roe can be labeled simply "caviar." Roe from other fish must be qualified as such on the label (for example, salmon caviar or lumpfish caviar).

Beluga Caviar

Sevruga Caviar

Osetra Caviar

Most of the world's caviar comes from sturgeon harvested in the Caspian Sea and imported from Russia and Iran. Imported sturgeon caviar, classified according to the sturgeon species and the roe's size and color, includes beluga, osetra and sevruga as well as pressed caviar. **Beluga** is the most expensive caviar, and comes from the largest species (the sturgeon can weigh up to 1750 pounds/800 kilograms); the dark gray and well-separated eggs are the largest and most fragile kind. **Osetra** is considered by some connoisseurs to be the best caviar; the eggs are medium-sized, golden yellow to brown and quite oily. **Sevruga** is harvested from small sturgeon; the eggs are quite small and light to dark gray. **Pressed caviar** is a processed caviar made from osetra and sevruga roes. The eggs are cleaned, packed in linen bags and hung to drain; as salt and moisture drain away, the natural shape of the eggs is destroyed and the eggs are pressed together. Approximately 3 pounds (1.3 kilograms) of roe produce only 1 pound (450 grams) of pressed caviar; pressed caviar has a spreadable, jamlike consistency.

Most of the caviar consumed in this country, however, comes from either domestic sturgeon or other fish and is labeled American sturgeon caviar, golden whitefish caviar, lumpfish caviar or salmon caviar. **American sturgeon caviar** is not considered to be of the same quality as Russian or Iranian caviars; nevertheless, roe from sturgeon harvested in the coastal waters of the American northwest and the Tennessee River is becoming increasingly popular, due in part to its relatively low price. **Golden whitefish caviar** is a small and very crisp roe; it is a natural golden color and comes from whitefish native to the northern Great Lakes. **Lumpfish caviar** is readily available and reasonably priced; it is produced from lumpfish harvested in the North Atlantic. The small and very crisp eggs are dyed black, red or gold; the food coloring is not stable, however, and when used to garnish foods, colored lumpfish

caviar tends to bleed. **Salmon caviar**, the eggs of the chum and silver salmon, is a very popular garnish. The eggs are large with a good flavor and natural orange color.

American Salmon Roe

Purchasing and Storing Caviars

Although all caviar is processed with salt, some caviar is labeled **malassol**, which means "little salt." Caviar should smell fresh, with no off odors. The eggs should be whole, not broken, and they should be crisp and pop when pressed with the tongue. Excessive oiliness may be caused by a large number of broken eggs. The best way to test caviar's quality is to taste it. Remember, price alone does not necessarily indicate quality.

Most caviar can be purchased fresh or pasteurized in tins or jars ranging from 1 ounce (28 grams) to more than 4 pounds (2 kilograms). Some caviars are also available frozen. (Frozen caviar should be used only as a garnish and should not be served by itself.) In order to ensure the freshest possible product, always purchase caviar in small quantities as often as possible based on your needs.

Fresh caviar should be stored at 32°F (0°C). Because most refrigerators are considerably warmer than that, store the caviar on ice in the coldest part of the refrigerator and change the ice often. If properly handled, fresh caviar will last one to two weeks before opening and several days after opening. Pasteurized caviar does not require refrigeration until it is opened and will last several days in the refrigerator after opening.

Serving Caviars

Fine caviar should be served in its original container or a nonmetal bowl on a bed of crushed ice, accompanied only by lightly buttered toasts or blinis and sour cream. Connoisseurs prefer china, bone or other nonmetal utensils for serving caviar because metal reacts with the caviar, producing off flavors.

Lesser-quality caviars are often served on ice, accompanied by minced onion, chopped hard-cooked egg whites and yolks (separately), lemon, sour cream and buttered toasts.

Lumpfish and other nonsturgeon caviars are usually not served by themselves. Rather, they are used as ingredients in or garnishes for other dishes.

Crudités

Crudité, a French word meaning "raw thing," generally refers to raw or slightly blanched vegetables served as an hors d'oeuvre. Although almost any vegetable will do, the most commonly used are broccoli, cauliflower, carrots, celery, asparagus and green beans, all of which are often blanched, and cucumbers, zucchini, yellow squash, radishes, green onions, cherry tomatoes, Belgian endive leaves, mushrooms, peppers and jicama, which are served raw.

When preparing crudités, use only the freshest and best-looking produce available. Because they are displayed and eaten raw, blemishes and imperfections cannot be disguised. Vegetables, both blanched and raw, should be cut into attractive shapes. Crudités are usually served with one or more dips.

Artful Array of Crudités and Dip.

Dips

Dips can be served hot or cold and as an accompaniment to crudités, crackers, chips, toasts, breads or other foods.

Cold dips often use mayonnaise, sour cream or cream cheese as a base. The methods for preparing mayonnaise-based and sour cream-based dips are identical to those for making mayonnaise-based salad dressings discussed in Chap-

ter 24, Salads and Salad Dressings. The principal difference is that dips are normally thicker than dressings.

To use cream cheese as a base, first soften it by mixing it in an electric mixer with a paddle attachment. Then add the flavoring ingredients such as chopped cooked vegetables, chopped cooked fish or shellfish, herbs, spices, garlic or onions. Adjust the consistency of the dip by adding milk, buttermilk, cream, sour cream or other appropriate liquid.

Some cold dips such as guacamole and hummus use purées of fruits, vegetables or beans as the base.

Hot dips often use a béchamel, cream sauce or cheese sauce as a base and usually contain a dominant flavoring ingredient such as chopped spinach or shellfish.

Dips can be served in small bowls or hollowed-out cabbages, squash, pumpkins or other vegetables. Hot dips are often served in chafing dishes.

The combinations of ingredients and seasonings that can be used to make dips as well as the foods that are dipped in them are limited only by the chef's imagination.

RECIPE 28.1

Clam Dip

Yield: 3 pt. (1.5 lt)

Cream cheese	1 lb.	450 g
Worcestershire sauce	1 oz.	30 ml
Dijon mustard	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Sour cream	1 lb.	450 g
Canned clams, drained	1 lb.	450 g
Lemon juice	1 oz.	30 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Tabasco sauce	TT	TT
Green onions, sliced	2 oz.	60 g

1. Soften the cream cheese in the bowl of an electric mixer, using the paddle attachment.
2. Add the Worcestershire sauce, Dijon mustard and sour cream; mix until smooth.
3. Add the clams and lemon juice and season with salt, pepper and Tabasco.
4. Add the green onions and mix well.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (31-g) serving: **Calories** 70, **Total fat** 5 g, **Saturated fat** 3.5 g, **Cholesterol** 20 mg, **Sodium** 55 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Iron** 15%, **Claims**—low sodium; low sugar

Sushi

Generally, **sushi** refers to cooked or raw fish and shellfish rolled in or served on seasoned rice. **Sashimi** is raw fish eaten without rice. In Japan, the word *sushi* (or **zushi**) refers only to the flavored rice. Each combination of rice and another ingredient or ingredients has a specific name. These include *nigiri zushi* (rice with raw fish), *norimaki zushi* (rice rolled in seaweed), *fukusa zushi* (rice wrapped in omelet), *inari zushi* (rice in fried bean curd) and *chirashi zushi* (rice with fish, shellfish and vegetables). Although a Japanese sushi

master spends years perfecting style and technique, many types of sushi can be produced in any professional kitchen with very little specialized equipment.

Ingredients

Fish—The key to good sushi and sashimi is the freshness of the fish. All fish must be of the highest quality and absolutely fresh, preferably no more than one day out of the water. Ahi and yellowfin tuna, salmon, flounder and sea bass are typically used for sushi. Cooked shrimp and eel are also popular.

Rice—Sushi rice is prepared by adding seasonings such as vinegar, sugar, salt and rice wine (sake or mirin) to steamed short-grain rice. The consistency of the rice is very important. It must be sticky enough to stay together when formed into finger-shaped oblongs, but not too soft.

Seasonings—These include:

- Shoyu—Japanese soy sauce, which is lighter and more delicate than the Chinese variety.
- Wasabi—A strong aromatic root, purchased as a green powder. It is sometimes called green horseradish although it is not actually related to the common horseradish.
- Pickled ginger—fresh ginger pickled in vinegar, which gives it a pink color.
- Nori—A dried seaweed purchased in sheets; it adds flavor and is sometimes used to contain the rolled rice and other ingredients.

RECIPE 28.2

ZUSHI (SUSHI RICE)

Yield: 2 lb. (1 kg)

Short-grain rice	1 lb.	450 g
Water	20 oz.	600 ml
Rice vinegar	2 oz.	60 ml
Granulated sugar	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Salt	2 1/2 tsp.	12 ml
Mirin	1 oz.	30 ml

1. Wash the rice and allow it to drain for 30 minutes.
2. Combine the rice and water in a saucepan. Bring to a boil, reduce to a simmer, cover and steam for 20 minutes.
3. Combine the rice vinegar, sugar, salt and mirin and add to the rice. Mix well and cool to room temperature.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 60, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 140 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 13 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Claims**—fat free

RECIPE 28.3

NIGIRI ZUSHI

Yield: 24 Pieces

Sushi-quality fish fillets such as ahi, salmon, flounder or sea bass	1 lb.	450 g
Wasabi powder	1 oz.	30 g

Continued

Water	1 oz.	30 ml
Sushi rice	2 lb.	900 g
Pickled ginger, sliced	2 oz.	60 g
Shoyu	3 oz.	90 ml

1. Trim the fish fillets of any skin, bone, imperfections or blemishes. Cut the fillets into 24 thin slices, approximately 2 inches long by 1 inch wide (5 centimeters by 2.5 centimeters).
2. Mix the wasabi powder and water to form a paste.
3. With your hands, form a 1 1/2-ounce (50-gram) portion of rice into a finger-shaped mound.
4. Rub a small amount of wasabi on one side of a slice of fish.
5. Holding the rice mound in one hand, press the fish, wasabi side down, onto the rice with the fingers of the other hand.
6. Serve with additional wasabi, pickled ginger and shoyu.

Approximate values per piece: **Calories** 80, **Total fat** 2 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 310 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 11 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Claims**—low fat; low cholesterol; no sugar

1. Forming a finger-shaped rice mound.

2. Pressing the fish onto the rice.

RECIPE 28.4

Norimaki Zushi

Yield: 36 Pieces

Dried shiitake mushrooms	4	4
Water, warm	8 oz.	250 ml
Shoyu	4 oz.	120 ml
Brown sugar	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Cucumber	1/2	1/2
Sushi-quality fish fillets such as ahi, salmon, flounder or sea bass	5 oz.	150 g
Nori	3 sheets	3 sheets
Sushi rice	18 oz.	500 g
Pickled ginger	2 oz.	60 g
Wasabi paste	2 oz.	60 g

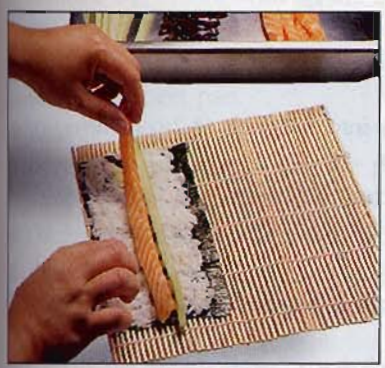
1. Soak the mushrooms in hot water for 20 minutes. Remove the mushrooms and reserve 4 ounces (120 grams) of the liquid. Trim off the mushroom stems.

2. Julienne the mushroom caps. Combine the reserved soaking liquid with 2 tablespoons (30 milliliters) of the shoyu and the brown sugar. Simmer the caps in this liquid and reduce au sec. Remove from the heat and refrigerate.
3. Peel and seed the cucumber; cut it into strips the size of pencils, approximately 6 inches (15 centimeters) long.
4. Trim the fish fillets of any skin, bone, imperfections or blemishes. Cut the fillets into strips the same size as the cucumbers.
5. Cut the sheets of nori in half and place one-half sheet on a napkin or bamboo rolling mat. Divide the rice into 6 equal portions; spread 1 portion over each half sheet of nori, leaving a 1/2-inch (12-millimeter) border of nori exposed.
6. Spread 1 teaspoon (5 milliliters) of wasabi evenly on the rice.
7. Lay 1/6 of the mushrooms, cucumber and fish strips in a row down the middle of the rice.
8. Use the napkin or bamboo mat to roll the nori tightly around the rice and garnishes.
9. Slice each roll into 6 pieces and serve with the remaining shoyu, pickled ginger and wasabi.

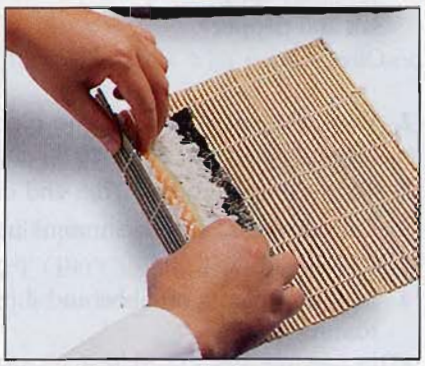
Approximate values per piece: **Calories** 40, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 5 mg, **Sodium** 220 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 6 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Vitamin C** 15%, **Claims**—fat free; low cholesterol; low calorie

1. Preparing the garnishes for the sushi roll.

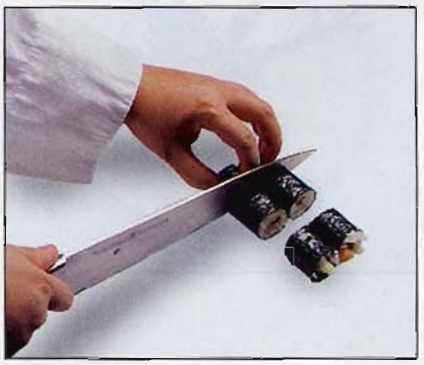
2. Spreading the rice over the nori.



3. Adding the garnishes in a row down the middle of the rice.



4. Rolling the nori around the rice and garnishes.



5. Slicing the roll into six pieces.

Hot Hors d'Oeuvre

To provide a comprehensive list of hot hors d'oeuvre would be virtually impossible; therefore, we discuss just a few of the more commonly encountered ones that can be easily made in most any kitchen.

Filled Pastry Shells

Because savory (unsweetened) barquettes and tartlets, choux puffs and bouchées can hold a small amount of liquid, they are often baked then filled with warm meat, poultry or fish purées or ragouts, garnished and served hot. They become soggy quickly, however, and must be prepared at the last possible minute before service.

Brochettes

Hors d'oeuvre brochettes are small skewers holding a combination of meat, poultry, game, fish, shellfish or vegetables. The foods are typically marinated, then baked, grilled or broiled and are usually served with a dipping sauce. Brochettes can be small pieces of boneless chicken breast marinated in white wine and grilled; beef cubes glazed with teriyaki sauce; lamb or chicken satay (saté) with peanut sauce or rabbit and shiitake mushrooms skewered on a sprig of fresh rosemary. (See recipes at the end of this chapter.)

In order to increase visual appeal, the main ingredients should be carefully cut and consistent in size and shape. The ingredients are normally diced, but strips of meat and poultry can also be threaded onto the skewers.

As hors d'oeuvre, the skewers should be very small, slightly larger than a toothpick. When assembling brochettes, leave enough exposed skewer so that diners can pick them up easily. Wooden skewers have a tendency to burn during cooking. Soaking them in water before assembling helps reduce the risk of burning.

RECIPE 28.5

Rabbit and Shiitake Skewers

Yield: 12 Skewers

Rabbit	1	1
Shiitake mushrooms	2 lb.	1 kg
Rosemary sprigs	12	12
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Olive oil	2 oz.	60 g

1. Bone the rabbit and cut the pieces into 1/2-inch (1.2-centimeter) cubes. One rabbit should produce 36 cubes.
2. Wash the mushrooms. Trim and discard the stems.
3. Cut enough of the mushrooms into 1/2-inch (1.2-centimeter) dice to produce 24 pieces.
4. Skewer 3 pieces of rabbit and 2 pieces of mushroom alternately onto each rosemary sprig.
5. Season the skewers and the remaining mushrooms with salt and pepper and brush with olive oil. Grill the skewers and the mushroom caps over medium heat, being careful not to burn the rosemary sprigs.

6. Slice the mushroom caps and arrange a portion of sliced mushrooms and 2 rabbit skewers on each plate.

Approximate values per skewer: **Calories** 160, **Total fat** 8 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 30 mg, **Sodium** 20 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 11 g, **Protein** 12 g

Meatballs

Meatballs made from ground beef, veal, pork or poultry and served in a sauce buffet style are a popular hot hors d'oeuvre. One of the best known is the Swedish meatball. It is made from ground beef, veal and pork bound with eggs and bread crumbs and served in a velouté or cream sauce seasoned with dill. Other sauces that can be used in the same manner are mushroom sauce, red wine sauce or any style of tomato sauce.

RECIPE 28.6

Swedish Meatballs

Yield: 4 lb. 8 oz. (2 kg)

Onions, small dice	8 oz.	250 g
Whole butter	2 oz.	60 g
Ground beef	2 lb.	1 kg
Ground pork	2 lb.	1 kg
Bread crumbs, fresh	4 oz.	120 g
Eggs	3	3
Salt	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Pepper	TT	TT
Nutmeg	TT	TT
Allspice	TT	TT
Lemon zest, grated	1 tsp.	5 ml
Demi-glace, hot	1 qt.	1 lt
Heavy cream, hot	8 oz.	250 ml
Fresh dill, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml

1. Sauté the onions in butter without coloring. Remove and cool.
2. Combine the onions with all the ingredients except the demi-glace, cream and dill. Mix well.
3. Portion the meat with a #20 scoop; form into balls with your hands and place on a sheet pan.
4. Bake the meatballs at 400°F (200°C) until firm, approximately 15 minutes. Remove the meatballs from the pan with a slotted spoon, draining well, and place in a hotel pan.
5. Combine the demi-glace, cream and dill; pour over the meatballs.
6. Cover the meatballs and bake at 350°F (180°C) until done, approximately 20 minutes. Skim off the grease from the surface and serve.

Approximate values per 5-oz. (149-g) serving: **Calories** 250, **Total fat** 16 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 105 mg, **Sodium** 420 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 7 g, **Protein** 20 g, **Calcium** 30%

Rumaki

Traditionally, rumaki were made by wrapping chicken livers in bacon and broiling or baking them. Today, however, many other foods prepared in the same fashion are called rumaki. For example, blanched bacon can be wrapped around olives, pickled watermelon rind, water chestnuts, pineapple, dates or scallops. These morsels are then broiled, baked or fried and served piping hot.

RECIPE 28.7

Date and Chorizo Rumaki

Yield: 32 Pieces

Bacon, thin-cut slices	16	16
Chorizo (Recipe 27.21)	8 oz.	250 g
Cream cheese	4 oz.	120 g
Whole dates, pitted	32	32

1. Partially cook the bacon on a sheet pan in a 350°F (180°C) oven, approximately 5 minutes.
2. Cook the chorizo to render the excess fat. If the chorizo is in links, remove the meat from the casings before cooking.
3. Remove the cooked chorizo from the pan and drain in a mesh strainer or china cap to remove excess fat. Then blend the cream cheese into the meat.
4. Cut the dates open, butterfly style. Stuff each date with a portion of the chorizo mixture.
5. Wrap each date with a half slice of bacon, securing with a toothpick.
6. Arrange the rumaki on a rack placed over a sheet pan. Bake at 350°F (180°C) until the bacon is crisp and the dates are hot, approximately 15–20 minutes.

Approximate values per piece: **Calories** 90, **Total fat** 5 g, **Saturated fat** 2.5 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 150 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 7 g, **Protein** 3 g

Stuffed Wonton Skins

Wonton skins are an Asian noodle dough used to produce a wide variety of hors d'oeuvre such as a miniature version of the traditional egg roll or a puff filled with a mixture of seasoned cream cheese and crab. Or they can be stuffed with a wide variety of pork, chicken, shellfish and vegetables before cooking. As hors d'oeuvre, stuffed wonton skins can be steamed, but they are more often pan-fried or deep-fried.

RECIPE 28.8

Stuffed Wontons with Apricot Sauce

Yield: 24 pieces

Cream cheese	8 oz.	250 g
Crab meat	8 oz.	250 g
Garlic, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Green onion, sliced	1 oz.	30 g

Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Worcestershire sauce	TT	TT
Sesame oil	TT	TT
Wonton skins	24	24
Apricot Sauce (recipe follows)	as needed	as needed

1. Place the cream cheese in the bowl of a mixer and mix until soft.
2. Add the crab, garlic and green onion. Season with salt and pepper, Worcestershire sauce and a drop or two of sesame oil.
3. Place several wonton skins on a work surface. Brush the edges with water. Place 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) of the cream cheese mixture in the center of each skin. Fold the wonton skin in half to form a triangle; seal the edges.
4. Deep-fry the wontons using the swimming method, at 350°F (180°C) for 10 seconds. Remove the wontons, drain well and refrigerate.
5. At service, deep-fry the wontons at 350°F (180°C) until crisp, approximately 1 minute. Serve with Apricot Sauce.

APRICOT SAUCE

Yield: 8 oz. (250 g)

Apricot preserves	8 oz.	250 g
Fresh ginger, grated	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Dry mustard	1 tsp.	5 ml
Red wine vinegar	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Combine all ingredients and heat until the preserves melt and the flavors blend.

Approximate values per piece: **Calories** 70, **Total fat** 3.5 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 20 mg, **Sodium** 120 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 5 g, **Protein** 3 g

Other Hot Hors d'Oeuvre

Other types of hot hors d'oeuvre include layers of phyllo dough wrapped around various fillings; vegetables such as mushrooms that are stuffed and baked; tiny red potatoes filled with sour cream and caviar or Roquefort cheese and walnuts; tiny artichoke or clam fritters or any of the hundreds of varieties of chicken wings that are seasoned or marinated, baked, fried, broiled or grilled and served with a cool and soothing or outrageously spicy sauce.

The secret is to let your imagination be your guide, to keep the ingredients harmonious and, if the hors d'oeuvre are to precede dinner, not to allow them to duplicate the foods to be served or overpower them with excessively spicy flavors.

Serving Hors d'Oeuvre

Hors d'oeuvre are not only served as a precursor to dinner. At many events, the only foods served may be butlered hors d'oeuvre, an hors d'oeuvre buffet or a combination of the two. Whether the hors d'oeuvre are being served before dinner or as dinner, butler style or buffet style, they must always be attractively prepared and displayed.

All events have themes and varying degrees of formality. Long buffets with overflowing baskets of crudités and sweet potato chips with dips presented in hollowed squashes and cabbages may be appropriate for one event, while el-

egant silver trays of carefully prepared canapés passed among guests by white-gloved, tuxedoed service staff may be appropriate for another. When preparing and serving hors d'oeuvre, always keep the event's theme in mind and plan accordingly.

When choosing hors d'oeuvre, select an assortment that contrasts flavors, textures and styles. There are no limits to the variety of hors d'oeuvre that can be served, but three to four cold and three to four hot selections are sufficient for most occasions. The following is a sample selection of hot and cold hors d'oeuvre that contrast flavors, textures and styles as well as types of food.

Cold

- Canapés of smoked salmon on brioche
- Barquettes filled with Roquefort cheese and garnished with grapes
- Tiny tortilla cups filled with grilled chicken and spicy tomato salsa

Hot

- Tiny pouches of shrimp wrapped in phyllo dough (Recipe 28.24)
- Date and chorizo rumaki (Recipe 28.7)
- Rabbit and shiitake skewers (Recipe 28.5)
- Small chevre tarts (Recipe 28.16)

Generally, three hors d'oeuvre per person, per hour is an appropriate formula for determining the number of hors d'oeuvre needed. If hors d'oeuvre are the only food being served, however, four to five pieces per person, per hour may be more appropriate.

Butler Service

Butler service hors d'oeuvre, or "passed" hors d'oeuvre, are presented to guests on trays by the service staff. The hors d'oeuvre can be hot or cold and should be very small to make it easier for the guests to eat them without the aid of a knife or fork. Hot and cold hors d'oeuvre should be passed separately so that they can be kept at the correct temperatures. For a one-hour cocktail reception before a dinner, three to five hors d'oeuvre per person is usually sufficient.

Buffet Service

An hors d'oeuvre buffet should be beautiful and appetizing. It may consist of a single table to serve a small group of people or several huge multilevel displays designed to feed thousands. Colors, flavors and textures must all be taken into account when planning the menu.

Both hot and cold hors d'oeuvre may be served on buffets. Hot hors d'oeuvre are often kept hot by holding them in chafing dishes. Alternatively, hot hors d'oeuvre can be displayed on trays or platters; the trays and platters, however, must be replaced frequently to ensure that the food stays hot. Cold hors d'oeuvre can be displayed on trays, mirrors, platters, baskets, leaves, papers or other serving pieces to create the desired look.

Arranging Buffet Platters

When displaying hors d'oeuvre and other foods on mirrors, trays or platters, the foods should be displayed in a pattern that is pleasing to the eye and flows toward the guest or from one side to the other. An easy and attractive method for accomplishing this is to arrange the items on a mirror or tray with an at-

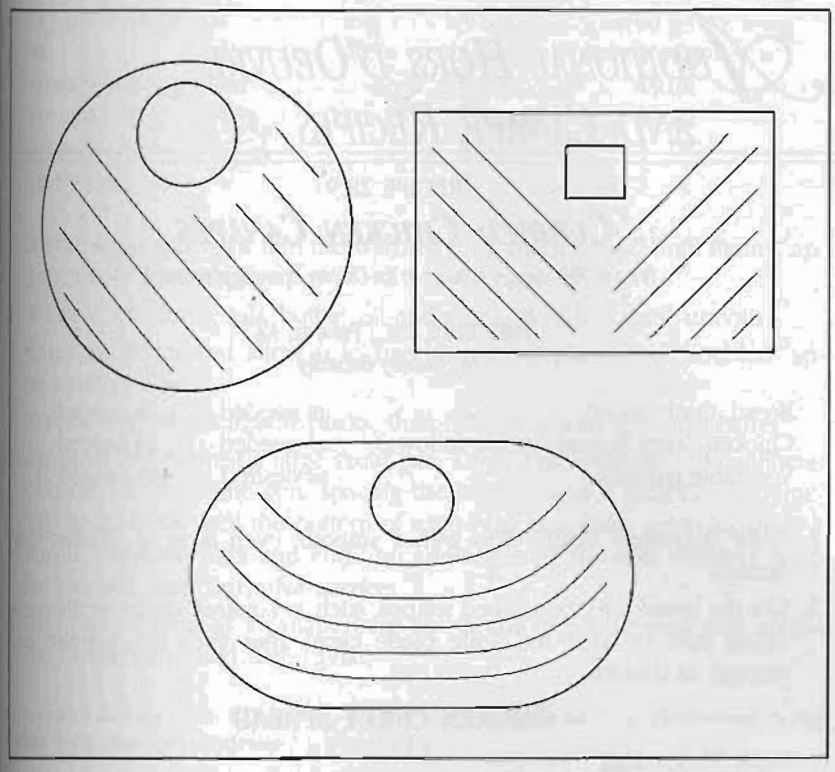


FIGURE 28.2 *Simple patterns that can be used to effectively display canapés and other foods on trays or mirrors.*

tractive centerpiece. The food can be placed in parallel diagonal lines, alternating the various styles and shapes. Be careful not to make the tray or mirror too fussy or cluttered, however; often the best approach is to keep it simple. The diagrams in Figure 28.2 may be used as guides for arranging canapés and other foods on trays.

CONCLUSION

The preparation of hors d'oeuvre provides an opportunity for the chef to demonstrate his or her creativity, knowledge of food and skills in presentation and garnishing. Because hors d'oeuvre often serve as the guests' introduction to the foods you serve, it is especially important that these foods be properly prepared and of the highest quality.

QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

1. Discuss four guidelines that should be followed when preparing hors d'oeuvre.
2. Identify and describe the three parts of a canapé.
3. Describe the differences between beluga, osetra and sevruga caviars, and explain how these differ from domestic caviars.
4. Create an hors d'oeuvre menu for a small cocktail party. Include three hot and three cold items, and explain the reasons for your selections.

Additional Hors d'Oeuvre and Canapé Recipes

RECIPE 28.9

Curried Chicken Canapés

Note: This canapé appears in the Chapter Opening photograph.

PREP CHEF, INC., PHOENIX, AZ
Chef Sidney Brodsky

Bread, thinly sliced	as needed	as needed
Chicken Curry Spread (recipe follows)	as needed	as needed
Vegetable garnishes	as desired	as desired

1. Toast the bread lightly. Top with a smooth, even layer of Chicken Curry Spread.
2. Cut the bread into the desired shapes, such as squares, circles or diamonds, being sure to wipe the knife blade clean after each cut. Garnish each canapé as desired.

CHICKEN CURRY SPREAD

Yield: 25 Servings

Chicken breast, boneless, skinless, cooked	1 lb.	450 g
Cream of coconut	1/2 cup	120 ml
Mayonnaise	1/2 cup	120 ml
Curry powder	1 1/2 Tbsp.	45 ml
Lemon juice	1 Tbsp.	30 ml
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT

1. Cut the chicken into small pieces and place in a food processor. Pulse until a fine texture is obtained.
2. Add the remaining ingredients and mix until blended. Refrigerate until needed, but use within two days.

VARIATION: For a mixure that can be piped into barquettes or used as a garnish, process the chicken until very smooth and add 2 to 3 ounces (60-90 grams) of plain cream cheese.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (28-g) serving: **Calories** 80, **Total fat** 6 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 20 mg, **Sodium** 40 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 6 g

RECIPE 28.10

Buckwheat Blini

Yield: 24 Blini

Granulated sugar	2 tsp.	10 ml
Dry yeast	1/4 oz.	7 g
Milk, lukewarm	14 oz.	420 ml
Buckwheat flour	4 oz.	120 g

All-purpose flour	3 oz.	90 g
Salt	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Unsalted butter, melted	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Vegetable oil	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Egg yolks	3	3
Egg whites	2	2

1. Stir the sugar and yeast into the warmed milk and let stand until foamy, approximately 5 minutes.
2. Whisk in the flours, salt, butter, oil and egg yolks. Beat until smooth.
3. Cover the batter and allow it to rise in a warm place until doubled, approximately 1 hour.
4. Beat the egg whites to stiff peaks, then fold them into the risen batter.
5. Lightly oil and preheat a large sauté pan. Drop 2 tablespoons (30 milliliters) of batter into the sauté pan, spacing the blini at least 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) apart. Cook until the bottom of each blini is golden, approximately 1 minute. Turn the blini and cook an additional 30 seconds. Remove from the pan and keep warm for service.
6. Blini may be used as a canapé base and is commonly topped with crème fraîche and garnished with caviar.

Approximate values per piece: **Calories** 70, **Total fat** 4 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 35 mg, **Sodium** 60 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 7 g, **Protein** 2 g

RECIPE 28.11

Fry Bread Canapés

THE BOULDERS RESORT, CAREFREE, AZ
Corporate Executive Chef Charles Wiley

Yield: 24 Canapés

All-purpose flour	2 1/2 cups	750 ml
Yellow cornmeal	1/2 cup	125 ml
Baking powder	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Sugar	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Butter, cold	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Buttermilk	1 pt.	500 ml
Flour for kneading	as needed	as needed
Pumpkinseed Cream (Recipe 15.9)	as needed	as needed
Avocado Salsa (recipe follows)	as needed	as needed

1. Mix all dry ingredients in a mixing bowl. Cut in the butter with a pastry cutter or your fingertips. Mix thoroughly to the consistency of gravel.
2. Add buttermilk and stir to make a thick dough. Place the dough on a floured board and knead well, adding up to 1/2 cup (120 milliliters) flour as needed. Place the dough in an oiled bowl and allow it to rest for 30 minutes.
3. Oil your fingertips before working with dough; then fashion the dough into 2-inch (5-centimeter) balls and flatten slightly.

Continued

4. Heat oil in a skillet at 350°F (180°C) and fry until golden brown, turning once. Drain and slice in half horizontally while still hot.
5. Spread a generous amount of Pumpkinseed Cream on the cut side and top with salsa. Serve immediately.

Approximate values per piece: **Calories** 230, **Total fat** 18 g, **Saturated fat** 2.5 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 120 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 13 g, **Protein** 2 g

AVOCADO SALSA

Yield: 1 1/2 pt. (750 ml)

Red bell pepper, diced fine	1/4	1/4
Green bell pepper, diced fine	1/4	1/4
Small red onion, diced fine	1/4	1/4
Green onion, sliced fine	1	1
Garlic, roasted and puréed	1 1/2 tsp.	8 ml
Fresh lemon juice	1 oz.	30 ml
Serrano chile, minced	1	1
Cilantro, chopped	TT	TT
Plum tomatoes, seeded and diced	4	4
Avocado, diced	1	1
Salt and pepper	TT	TT

1. In a mixing bowl, combine the peppers, onions, garlic, lemon juice, chile and cilantro. Mix well.
2. Fold in the tomatoes, then the avocado carefully. Season to taste.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (27-g) serving: **Calories** 15, **Total fat** 1.5 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Vitamin C** 15%, **Claims**—low fat; no cholesterol; low calorie

RECIPE 28.12

KALAMATA OLIVE AND ASIAGO CROSTINI

LES GOURMETTES COOKING SCHOOL, PHOENIX, AZ
Barbara Fenzl, CCP

Yield: 12 Pieces

French bread	1/2 loaf	1/2 loaf
Basil leaves, chopped	50	50
Tomato concassé	4 oz.	120 g
Garlic, chopped	2 tsp.	10 ml
Kalamata olives, pitted, chopped	15	15
Asiago, grated	2 oz.	60 g

1. Slice the bread 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) thick.
2. Combine the remaining ingredients and mix well.
3. Spread 1/2 tablespoon (8 milliliters) of the mixture on each slice of bread. Place under the broiler or salamander until hot and the cheese is melted, approximately 2 minutes.

Approximate values per piece: **Calories** 60, **Total fat** 2 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 5 mg, **Sodium** 180 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 8 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Claims**—low fat; low cholesterol; no sugar

RECIPE 28.13

Sautéed Duck Liver Canapé with Candied Rhubarb

RITZ-CARLTON HOTEL, CHICAGO, IL
Executive Chef George Bumbaris

Yield: 4 Pieces

Rhubarb, sliced thin	12 slices	12 slices
Simple syrup	1 oz.	30 ml
Brioche, 1-in. (2.5-cm) triangles	4	4
Duck liver (Grade A), 1/2-in. (1.25-cm) thick by 1-in. (2.5-cm) long slices	4	4
Black pepper	TT	TT
Kosher salt	TT	TT

1. Combine the rhubarb and simple syrup in a small sauté pan. Simmer until almost dry, but do not allow the rhubarb to fall apart. Remove the candied rhubarb from the pan and set aside to cool.
2. Toast one side of the brioche triangles.
3. Season the duck liver with pepper.
4. Put the salt into a very hot sauté pan over high heat. Add the duck liver and sear on both sides. Remove the pan from the heat and allow the liver to finish cooking.
5. Place a slice of duck liver on each brioche triangle and garnish with a small fan of the rhubarb slices.

Approximate values per piece: **Calories** 210, **Total fat** 8 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 265 mg, **Sodium** 220 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 23 g, **Protein** 12 g, **Vitamin A** 530%, **Iron** 80%

RECIPE 28.14

Hummus

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Chickpeas, cooked	1 lb.	450 g
Tahini paste	8 oz.	225 g
Garlic, chopped	2 tsp.	10 ml
Cumin	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Lemon juice	4 oz.	120 ml
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Cayenne pepper	TT	TT
Olive oil	2 oz.	60 g
Fresh parsley, chopped	2 tsp.	10 ml

Tahini paste—*a paste made from crushed sesame seeds.*

1. Combine the chickpeas, tahini, garlic, cumin and lemon juice in a food processor; process until smooth. Season with salt and cayenne.

Continued

2. Spoon the hummus onto a serving platter and smooth the surface. Drizzle the olive oil over the hummus and garnish with the chopped parsley. Serve with warm pita bread that has been cut into quarters.

Approximate values per 2-oz. (54-g) serving: **Calories** 210, **Total fat** 16 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 250 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 10 g, **Protein** 7 g, **Iron** 8%

RECIPE 28.15

GUACAMOLE

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Avocados	6	6
Lemon juice	2 1/2 oz.	75 ml
Green onion, sliced	4 Tbsp.	60 ml
Cilantro, chopped	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Tomatoes, seeded, diced	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Garlic, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Dried oregano	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Jalapeños, seeded, chopped	1	1
Salt	TT	TT

1. Cut each avocado in half. Remove the seed and scoop out the pulp.
2. Add the lemon juice to the avocado pulp and mix well, mashing the avocado pulp.
3. Add the remaining ingredients. Season with salt and mix well.

Approximate values per 2-oz. (60-g) serving: **Calories** 120, **Total fat** 12 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 25 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Vitamin C** 15%, **Claims**—no saturated fat; no cholesterol; no sugar; high fiber

RECIPE 28.16

SPINACH AND ARTICHOKE DIP

Yield: 4 lb. 6 oz. (2 kg)

Onion, medium dice	3 oz.	90 g
Garlic, chopped	2 tsp.	10 ml
Clarified butter	1 oz.	30 ml
Frozen chopped spinach, thawed	1 lb. 8 oz.	700 g
Artichoke hearts, canned, chopped coarse	1 lb.	450 g
Cream sauce	1 qt.	1 lt
Worcestershire sauce	2 tsp.	10 ml
Parmesan, grated	6 oz.	180 g
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Tabasco sauce	TT	TT

1. Sauté the onion and garlic in the butter until tender without coloring.
2. Add the spinach and sauté until hot.
3. Add the artichoke hearts, cream sauce, Worcestershire sauce and 4 ounces (120 grams) of the Parmesan. Mix well.
4. Season with salt, pepper and Tabasco sauce.

5. Transfer the dip to a half hotel pan. Top with the remaining 2 ounces (60 grams) of Parmesan and bake at 350°F (180°C) until hot and browned on top, approximately 20 minutes.

Approximate values per 2-oz. (60-g) serving: **Calories** 110, **Total fat** 6 g, **Saturated fat** 3.5 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 250 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 8 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin A** 20%

RECIPE 28.17

Pickled Vegetable Rolls

THE BOULDERS RESORT, CAREFREE, AZ
Corporate Executive Chef Charles Wiley

Yield: 16 Pieces

Red chard	6 leaves	6 leaves
Vegetable shortening spray	as needed	as needed
Eggplant	1	1
Kosher salt	TT	TT
Black pepper	TT	TT
Pickled Vegetables (recipe follows)		
Cilantro Purée (recipe follows)	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Aged Monterey jack cheese, grated	2 Tbsp.	30 ml

1. Blanch the red chard in boiling water. Refresh in ice water and set aside.
2. Spray a baking sheet lightly with vegetable spray. Thinly slice the eggplant lengthwise and spread the slices out in a single layer. Season with salt and pepper. Bake in a 475°F (250°C) oven until slightly browned around the edges, approximately 8-10 minutes. Cool slightly.
3. Lay 5 to 6 slices of eggplant along the bottom edge of a bamboo roller covered with plastic wrap. Blot the chard well with a paper towel and cut out any tough ribs. Cover the eggplant with one layer of chard.
4. Place 6 ounces (180 grams) of Pickled Vegetables in a long pile on top of the chard. Spoon approximately 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) of Cilantro Purée along the front of the vegetables, followed by 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) of the cheese. Roll up sushi style, making sure the first roll is nice and tight. Cover with saran wrap and refrigerate until ready to use.
5. Prepare a second roll with the remaining vegetables. Cut each roll into eighths.

Approximate values per slice: **Calories** 21, **Total fat** .4 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 1 mg, **Sodium** 210 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 4 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 25%, **Vitamin C** 37%, **Claims**—low calorie; low fat; low cholesterol

PICKLED VEGETABLES

Yield: 12 oz. (260 g)

Carrot, peeled	1/2	1/2
Jicama, peeled	1/2	1/2
Red bell pepper, seeded	1/2	1/2
Yellow bell pepper, seeded	1/2	1/2
Water	2 oz.	60 ml
White wine vinegar	2 oz.	60 ml

Continued

Garlic clove, peeled and crushed	1	1
Serrano chile, sliced	1	1
Fresh thyme	2 sprigs	2 sprigs
Mustard seed	1/2 tsp.	3 ml
Fennel seed	1/2 tsp.	3 ml
Bay leaf	1	1
Brown sugar, packed	1 Tbsp.	30 ml
Kosher salt	1/2 tsp.	3 ml

1. Cut the carrot, jicama, red and yellow bell peppers into long thin strips.
2. Combine the remaining ingredients in a nonreactive saucepan and bring to a boil.
3. Place the vegetables in a glass or stainless steel pan and pour the hot liquid over them.
4. Cool to room temperature and refrigerate.

Approximate values per 2-oz. (69-g) serving: **Calories** 40, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 300 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 9 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 20%, **Vitamin C** 70%, **Claims**—fat free; low calorie

CILANTRO PURÉE

Yield: 2 oz. (60 ml)

Cilantro, leaves only	1/4 cup	60 ml
Jalapeño pepper	1/2	1/2
Garlic cloves	2	2
White wine, reduced by half	4 oz.	120 ml
Dry bread crumbs	as needed	as needed
Freshly ground black pepper	TT	TT

1. Remove the stem and seeds from the jalapeño.
2. Combine all ingredients except the bread crumbs in the work bowl of a food processor. Begin processing, adding the bread crumbs little by little until the mixture resembles a smooth paste.

Approximate values per 1/2-oz. (16-g) serving: **Calories** 4, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 1 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Vitamin C** 17%, **Claims**—low calorie; no fat; no cholesterol; very low sodium

RECIPE 28.18

LAMB SATAY

Yield: 16 Skewers

Lamb leg meat, boned, trimmed	2 lb.	1 kg
Vegetable oil	2 oz.	60 g
Lemon grass, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Garlic, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Red pepper flakes, crushed	1 tsp.	5 ml
Curry powder	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Honey	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Fish sauce	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Peanut Sauce (Recipe 10.34)	as needed	as needed

1. Cut the lamb into 2-ounce (60-gram) strips approximately 4 inches (10 centimeters) long. Lightly pound the strips with a mallet. Thread the strips onto 6-inch (15-centimeter) bamboo skewers that have been soaked in water.
2. To make the marinade, combine the remaining ingredients in the bowl of a food processor and purée until smooth.
3. Brush the meat with the marinade and allow to marinate for 1 hour.
4. Grill the skewers until done, approximately 2 minutes. Serve with Peanut Sauce (Recipe 10.34).

VARIATIONS: Beef or chicken satay can be made by substituting well-trimmed beef or boneless, skinless chicken meat for the lamb.

Approximate values per skewer: **Calories** 118, **Total fat** 7 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 37 mg, **Sodium** 40 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 12 g

RECIPE 28.19

RED POTATOES WITH WALNUTS AND GORGONZOLA

Yield: 80 Pieces

New red potatoes	40	40
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Fresh thyme	2 tsp.	10 ml
Olive oil	2 oz.	60 ml
Cream cheese	8 oz.	250 g
Gorgonzola	3 oz.	90 g
Bacon, medium dice, cooked	1 oz.	30 g
Sour cream	4 oz.	120 g
Walnuts, chopped coarse	1 1/2 oz.	45 g
Worcestershire sauce	TT	TT
Tabasco sauce	TT	TT
Chives, minced	3 Tbsp.	45 ml

1. Cut the potatoes in half and scoop out a portion of the inside with a parisienne scoop.
2. Toss the potatoes with the salt, pepper, thyme and olive oil. Arrange the potatoes on a sheet pan with their flat surfaces down and bake at 400°F (200°C) until brown and cooked through, approximately 15 minutes.
3. Soften the cream cheese in the bowl of an electric mixer. Add the Gorgonzola, bacon bits, sour cream and walnuts. Mix until smooth. Season with the Worcestershire and Tabasco sauces.
4. Using a pastry bag and plain tip, fill each hot potato half with the cold cheese mixture and sprinkle with chopped chives.

VARIATION: Fill the cooked potatoes with crème fraîche, top with caviar and sprinkle with sliced chives instead of using the bacon-and-cheese mixture.

Approximate values per piece: **Calories** 50, **Total fat** 3 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 5 mg, **Sodium** 35 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 6 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Claims**—low fat; low cholesterol; low sodium; no sugar

RECIPE 28.20

Stuffed Mushroom Caps

Yield: 48 pieces

White mushrooms, medium	60	60
Clarified butter	2 oz.	60 ml
Onion, minced	4 oz.	120 g
Flour	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Heavy cream	4 oz.	120 ml
Ham, cooked, chopped	4 oz.	120 g
Fresh parsley, chopped	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Swiss cheese, shredded	2 oz.	60 g

1. Wash the mushrooms. Remove and chop the stems and 12 of the caps.
2. Sauté the whole mushroom caps in 1 ounce (30 grams) of clarified butter until partially cooked but still firm. Remove from the pan and reserve.
3. Add the remaining butter to the pan. Sauté the onion and chopped mushrooms until dry.
4. Add the flour and cook 1 minute. Add the cream; bring to a simmer and cook for 2 minutes.
5. Add the ham and parsley, season to taste with salt and pepper; stir to combine. Remove from the pan and cool slightly.
6. Stuff the mushroom caps with the ham mixture and sprinkle with shredded Swiss cheese.
7. Bake the mushrooms at 350°F (180°C) until hot, approximately 10-15 minutes.

Approximate values per piece: **Calories** 30, **Total fat** 2.5 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 35 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 1 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Claims**—low fat; low cholesterol; low sodium; low calorie; no sugar

RECIPE 28.21

Escargot in Garlic Butter

Yield: 48 Pieces

Snails, canned	48	48
Butter, softened	1 lb.	450 g
Shallots, minced	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Garlic, chopped	2 tsp.	10 ml
Parsley, chopped	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Mushroom caps, medium	48	48

1. Drain and rinse the snails.

2. Combine the butter, shallots, garlic, parsley, salt and pepper in a mixer or food processor and mix or process until well blended.
3. Sauté the mushroom caps in a small amount of the garlic butter until cooked but still firm. Remove from the heat.
4. Place a snail in each cap and top with a generous amount of the garlic butter.
5. Bake the mushrooms and snails at 450°F (230°C) for 5 to 7 minutes and serve hot.

VARIATION: Prepare 48 small bouchées from puff pastry. Sauté the snails in a generous amount of the garlic butter and place one snail in each bouchée. Drizzle the snail with the garlic butter and serve.

Approximate values per piece: **Calories** 63, **Total fat** 6 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 19 mg, **Sodium** 64 mg, **Total carbohydrates** .5 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 6%

RECIPE 28.22

CHEVRE TARTS

Yield: 12 Tarts

Tomato concassé	4 oz.	120 g
Pepper	TT	TT
Parmesan, grated	3 oz.	90 g
Puff pastry	8 oz.	250 g
Olive oil	as needed	as needed
Pesto Sauce (Recipe 10.30)	2 oz.	60 g
Goat cheese (chevre), Montrachet style	4 oz.	120 g
Zucchini, shredded	1 lb.	450 g

1. Season the tomato concassé with fresh-ground pepper; sprinkle with 1 ounce (30 grams) of the Parmesan.
2. Roll out the puff pastry until it is approximately 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) thick, then cut it into 12 circles, approximately 2 1/2 inches (6.25 centimeters) in diameter.
3. Brush mini-muffin tins with olive oil and line them with the puff pastry circles.
4. Add 1 teaspoon (5 milliliters) of Pesto Sauce to each tart.
5. Add 1/3 ounce (10 grams) of goat cheese to each tart.
6. Add enough shredded zucchini to each tart to nearly fill it.
7. Top each tart with the tomato concassé and sprinkle with the remaining Parmesan.
8. Bake at 375°F (190°C) until the tarts are brown on top and the dough is cooked, approximately 15–20 minutes.

Approximate values per piece: **Calories** 210, **Total fat** 15 g, **Saturated fat** 4.5 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 270 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 11 g, **Protein** 7 g, **Vitamin A** 20%

1. Stacking the layers of buttered phyllo pastry.

2. Placing the filling on the pastry.

3. Folding the pastry and filling into triangles.

RECIPE 28.23

SPANAKOPITTA

Yield: 90 Pieces

Onion, small dice	4 oz.	120 g
Unsalted butter, melted	6 oz.	180 g
Fresh spinach, cooked and cooled, or frozen spinach, thawed	24 oz.	700 g
Fresh mint, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Feta, crumbled	1 lb.	450 g
Eggs, beaten	3	3
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Phyllo dough	1 lb.	450 g

1. Sauté the onions in 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) of butter until tender. Remove and cool.
2. Combine the cooled onions, spinach, mint, feta and beaten eggs. Season with salt and pepper and mix well.
3. Spread one sheet of phyllo dough on the work surface; brush with melted butter. Place another sheet of phyllo on top of the first; brush it with butter. Place a third sheet of phyllo on top of the second and brush it with butter as well.
4. Cut the dough into 2-inch (5-centimeter) wide strips.
5. Place 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) of the spinach on the end of each strip of phyllo.
6. Starting with the end of the dough strip with the spinach, fold one corner of the dough over the spinach mixture to the opposite side of the strip to form a triangle. Continue folding the dough, keeping it in a triangular shape, like point-folding a flag.
7. Place the phyllo triangles on a sheet pan and brush with melted butter. Bake at 375°F (190°C) until brown and crispy, approximately 20 minutes.

Approximate values per piece: **Calories** 45, **Total fat** 3 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 105 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 3 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Vitamin A** 8%, **Claims**—low fat; low cholesterol; no sugar

RECIPE 28.24

SHRIMP CRUMPLE

Yield: 24 Pieces

Rice vinegar	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Cayenne pepper	TT	TT
Garlic, minced	1 tsp.	5 ml
Ginger, minced	1 tsp.	5 ml
Orange juice	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Fresh thyme	TT	TT
Papaya	1/2	1/2

Shrimp, 16–20 count, peeled and deveined	12	12
Phyllo dough	6 sheets	6 sheets
Whole butter, melted	as needed	as needed

1. To make the marinade, combine the vinegar, cayenne, garlic, ginger and orange juice in a bowl. Stir to combine; season with salt, pepper and thyme.
2. Peel, seed and cut the papaya into medium dice. Place the papaya in a bowl and pour a small amount of marinade over it.
3. Split the shrimp and add them to the marinade.
4. Spread one sheet of phyllo dough on a work surface and brush it with butter. Lay another sheet on top of the first and brush it with butter. Place a third sheet of phyllo on top of the second and brush it with butter as well.
5. Prepare a second stack of phyllo with the three remaining sheets. Cut each stack of phyllo dough into 12 squares.
6. Place one-half shrimp in the center of each square of phyllo dough and place several pieces of papaya on each shrimp. Gather the dough around the shrimp and papaya to form a small pouch.
7. Repeat with the remaining shrimp.
8. Bake the phyllo pouches at 350°F (180°C) until the phyllo is browned and the shrimp is cooked, approximately 15–20 minutes.

Approximate values per piece: **Calories** 60, **Total fat** 1 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 85 mg, **Sodium** 125 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 4 g, **Protein** 9 g, **Vitamin C** 15%

RECIPE 28.25

Spring Rolls

Yield: 36 Rolls

Peanut oil	2 oz.	60 ml
Sesame oil	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Onion, julienne	12 oz.	350 g
Red bell pepper, julienne	12 oz.	350 g
Snow peas, julienne	12 oz.	350 g
Fresh ginger, grated	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Garlic, chopped	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Napa cabbage, julienne	8 oz.	250 g
Bean sprouts	1 lb.	450 g
Cashews, unsalted, crushed	1 lb.	450 g
Cayenne pepper	1 tsp.	5 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Rice paper wrappers	36	36

1. Heat the oils and sauté the onions and peppers for 30 seconds.
2. Add the snow peas, ginger and garlic; sauté for 15 seconds.
3. Add the cabbage, bean sprouts, cashews, cayenne, salt and pepper. Cook for 15 seconds more.
4. Remove from the heat, cool and refrigerate.

Continued

1. Soaking the spring roll wrappers.

2. Filling the spring roll wrappers.

5. Soak the rice paper wrappers in water for a few seconds to soften them. Place 2 ounces (60 grams) of filling in each wrapper, fold the sides over toward the middle and roll up into a cigar shape. Brush the edge with water and press to seal.

6. Deep-fry the spring rolls at 350°F (180°C) until hot and crispy, approximately 45 seconds.

Approximate values per piece: **Calories** 160, **Total fat** 9 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 60 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 15 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Vitamin A** 60%, **Vitamin C** 140%, **Claims**–no cholesterol; low sodium; good source of fiber

3. Folding the wrapper around the filling.

4. Sealing the spring roll with water.

RECIPE 28.26

Blue Corn and Shrimp Tamales

Yield: 16 Pieces

Fresh blue corn masa	1 lb.	450 g
Baking powder	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Shortening	4 oz.	120 g
Salt	TT	TT
Onion, small dice	5 oz.	150 g
Red bell pepper, small dice	2 oz.	60 g
Green bell pepper, small dice	2 oz.	60 g
Garlic, chopped	1 tsp.	5 ml
Vegetable oil	1 oz.	30 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Shrimp, 16–20 count, peeled and deveined	16	16
Dried corn husks	as needed	as needed

1. Combine the masa, baking powder and shortening in a bowl of an electric mixer, season with salt and mix until the masa pulls away from the sides of the bowl.

2. Sauté the onion, peppers and garlic in the vegetable oil until tender, season with salt. Remove from the heat and cool.

3. Cut the shrimp in half lengthwise.
4. To assemble the tamales, use a rubber spatula to spread 5 ounces (150 grams) of the masa mixture lengthwise on a 16 in. × 12 in. (40 cm × 30 cm) piece of parchment paper to form a 4 in. × 12 in. (10 cm × 30 cm) band of masa. Spread 1 1/2 ounces (45 grams) of the vegetable mixture in a line lengthwise down the center of the masa.
5. Place eight shrimp halves, end to end, on top of each row of the vegetable mixture. Roll the parchment paper so that the masa completely encircles the shrimp and vegetable mixture. Twist the ends of the paper to seal. Repeat three more times to make four rolls. Freeze the rolls.
6. Unwrap each frozen roll and cut into four pieces. Wrap each piece tightly in dry corn husks that have been soaked in water, tying each end with thin strands of husk. Steam the tamales for 30–45 minutes. Allow the steamed tamales to rest for 10 minutes after cooking so that the masa becomes firm. Serve warm.

Approximate values per piece: **Calories** 280, **Total fat** 11 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 185 mg, **Sodium** 200 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 22 g, **Protein** 21 g, **Vitamin A** 25%, **Iron** 35%

RECIPE 28.27

Grilled Shrimp with Prosciutto and Basil

Yield: 12 Pieces

Shrimp, 16–20 count, peeled and deveined, tails removed	12	12
Dry white wine	4 oz.	120 ml
Rice wine vinegar	2 oz.	60 ml
Thyme	2 tsp.	10 ml
Onion, minced	2 oz.	60 g
Cumin, ground	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Salt and pepper	TT	TT
Vegetable oil	6 oz.	180 ml
Dried basil	2 tsp.	10 ml
Garlic cloves, chopped	2	2
Prosciutto slices	3	3
Fresh basil leaves	6	6

1. Combine all the ingredients except the prosciutto and fresh basil in a stainless steel bowl. Marinate for 30 minutes.
2. Remove the shrimp from the marinade and drain them well.
3. Cut each slice of prosciutto into quarters.
4. Wrap each shrimp first with 1/2 leaf of basil, then a piece of prosciutto; secure with a toothpick.
5. Grill until done, remove the toothpick and serve hot or cold.

Approximate values per piece: **Calories** 220, **Total fat** 15 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 170 mg, **Sodium** 250 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 18 g, **Iron** 15%

PART FIVE
BAKING

Like cooking, baking fresh breads and preparing classic and contemporary pastries and desserts is not simply a matter of following written directions. You must understand the baking process as well as fundamental techniques and procedures.

In order to provide you with a thorough introduction to the skills needed in a bakeshop, we focus on preparing the types of breads and desserts usually found in a small retail shop or restaurant. Because this book is not designed for large wholesale or commercial bakeries, mixes, stabilizers and mechanical preparation and shaping skills are not included.

Part V begins with a chapter on preparation and ingredients, then presents chapters on quick breads and yeast breads. We then shift to desserts with chapters on pies, pastries and cookies (including classical doughs such as puff pastry and eclair paste), cakes and frostings (including brownies), and creams, custards, frozen desserts and dessert sauces. Many of the recipes found at the end of these chapters are assembled using components from one or more of the other chapters.

Throughout this portion of the book, you will see the word *formula* used in place of *recipe*. This is standard terminology in the industry.

CHAPTER 29

PRINCIPLES OF THE BAKESHOP

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- recognize and select ingredients used in a bakeshop
- control the development of gluten
- cook sugar correctly
- understand the baking process
- recognize many of the specialized tools and equipment used in the bakeshop

Flour, sugar, eggs, milk, butter, flavorings—with this simple list of ingredients you can produce a seemingly endless variety of goods, from breads to sauces to pastries. But to produce consistently good brioche, Bavarians, biscuits or the like, you must pay careful attention to the character and quantity of each ingredient, the way the ingredients are combined and how heat is applied to them. Unlike a cut of meat that can be grilled, roasted, sautéed or braised and still be the same cut of meat, bakeshop products depend on careful, precise preparation for their very identity.

Accurate measurements are critical in the bakeshop. It is equally important to follow bakeshop formulas carefully and completely. Unlike the rest of the kitchen, mistakes in the bakeshop often cannot be discovered until the product is finished, by which time it is too late to correct them. For example, if you omit the salt when preparing a stew, the mistake can be corrected by adding salt at service time. If you omit the salt from a loaf of bread, however, the mistake cannot be corrected after the bread has baked, and its texture and flavor may be ruined. It is more important to follow a written formula, measure ingredients precisely and combine them accurately in the bakeshop than anywhere else in the kitchen.

INGREDIENTS

Although substituting ingredients may have little or no effect on some dishes (you can use carrots instead of turnips in a stew, for instance), this is not the case with baked goods. Different flours, fats, liquids and sweeteners function differently. Bread flour and cake flour are not the same, nor are shortening and butter. If you substitute one ingredient for another, the results will be different.

Understanding ingredients, why they function the way they do and how to adjust for their differences will make your baking experiences more successful and consistent. This chapter discusses flours, sugar and other sweeteners, fats, thickeners and flavorings such as chocolate, extracts and liquors. Dairy products, also common in baked goods, are discussed in Chapter 8, Dairy Products, and eggs are discussed in Chapter 20, Eggs.

Flours

Wheat Flour

The most frequently used—and therefore the most important—ingredient in the bakeshop is wheat flour (Fr. *farine*). Flour provides bulk and structure to baked goods.

Flour is produced by milling wheat kernels (berries). As discussed in Chapter 23, Potatoes, Grains and Pasta, a wheat kernel has an outer covering called bran. It is composed of several layers that protect the endosperm, which contains starches and proteins. The innermost part is the germ, which contains fat

and serves as the wheat seed (see Figure 23.1). During milling, the kernels first pass through metal rollers to crack them, then the bran and germ are removed through repeated stages of sifting and separation. The remaining endosperm is then ground into flour. Flour derived from the portion of the endosperm closer to the germ is finer; flour derived from the portion of the endosperm nearer the bran is coarser and darker.

The character of the wheat determines the character of the flour. Wheats are classified as *soft* or *hard* depending on the kernel's hardness. The harder the wheat kernel, the higher its protein content. Soft wheat yields a soft flour with a low protein content. Soft flour, also called weak flour, is best for tender products such as cakes. Hard wheat yields a hard flour with a high protein content. Hard flour, also known as strong flour, is used for yeast breads.

Various types of flour are created by mixing or blending flours from different sources. **All-purpose flour**, a blend of hard and soft flours, is designed for use in a wide range of foods. It is also referred to throughout this book because it is readily available in quantities appropriate for small food service operations. Large bakeshops rarely use all-purpose flour; instead, they choose flours specifically milled and blended for industrial uses.

Aging and Bleaching

Any flour develops better baking qualities if allowed to rest for several weeks after milling. Freshly milled flour produces sticky doughs and products with less volume than those made with aged flour. While aging, flour turns white through a natural oxidation process referred to as bleaching.

Natural aging and bleaching are somewhat unpredictable, time-consuming processes, however, so chemicals are now used to do both. Potassium bromate and chlorine dioxide gas rapidly age flour. Chlorine dioxide and other chemicals bleach flour by removing yellow pigments in order to obtain a uniform white color. Bleaching destroys small amounts of the flour's naturally occurring vitamin E, which is replaced in fortified or enriched products.

Composition of Flour

Flour primarily consists of five nutrients: fat, minerals, moisture, starches and proteins. Fat and minerals each generally account for less than 1% of flour's content. The moisture content of flour is also relatively low—when packaged, it cannot exceed 15% under government standards. But its actual moisture content varies depending on climatic conditions and storage. In damp areas, flour absorbs moisture from the atmosphere.

Starches comprise 63% to 77% of flour, and are necessary for the absorption of moisture during baking. This process, known as **gelatinization**, occurs primarily at temperatures above 140°F (60°C). Starches also provide food for yeast during **fermentation**.

Flour proteins are important because of their gluten-forming potential. **Gluten** is the tough, rubbery substance created when wheat flour is mixed with water. Gluten strands are both plastic (that is, they change shape under pressure) and elastic (they resume their original shape when that pressure is removed). Gluten is responsible for the volume, texture and appearance of baked goods. It provides structure and enables dough to retain the gases given off by leavening agents. Without gluten, there could be no raised breads: The gases created by yeast fermentation or chemical leaveners would simply escape if there were no network of gluten strands to trap them in the dough.

The higher a flour's protein content, the greater that flour's gluten-forming potential. The proteins responsible for gluten formation are *glutenin* and *gliadin*. Flour does not contain gluten; only a dough or batter can contain gluten. Gluten is produced when glutenin and gliadin are moistened and ma-

TABLE 29.1 PROTEIN CONTENT OF FLOURS

Type of Flour	Percent Protein	Uses
Cake	7–9.5	Tender cakes
Pastry	7.5–12	Biscuits, pie crusts
All-Purpose	10–13	General baking
Bread	12–15	Yeast breads
Whole Wheat	13–14	Breads
High Gluten	41–42	To increase protein content of weaker flours for bread making

nipulated, as when they are stirred or kneaded. Generally, the longer a substance is mixed, the more gluten will develop. Products requiring a dough that can be kneaded and shaped, such as French rolls, require a flour with a higher protein content than products meant to be tender, such as cakes or muffins.

Table 29.1 lists the protein content and uses for several common flours. Remember that substitutions will result in a changed and probably less desirable product.

Specialty Flours

Whole Wheat

Whole wheat flour, also referred to as graham flour, is made by milling the entire wheat kernel, including the bran and germ. Whole wheat flour has a nutty, sweet flavor and brown, flecked color. Products made with whole wheat flour will be denser, with less volume than those made with white flour. Whole wheat flour has a reduced shelf life because fats in the germ can become rancid during storage.

Self-Rising

Self-rising flour is an all-purpose flour to which salt and a chemical leavener, usually baking powder, have been added. It is not recommended for professional use. Chemicals lose their leavening ability over time and may cause inconsistent results. Furthermore, different formulas call for different ratios of salt and leaveners; no commercial blend is appropriate for all purposes.

Nonwheat Flours

Nonwheat flours, also referred to as composite flours, are made from grains, seeds or beans. Corn, soybeans, rice, oats, buckwheat, potatoes and other items provide flours, but none of them contain the gluten-forming proteins of wheat flour. Composite flours are generally blended with a high-protein wheat flour for baking. Substituting a composite flour for wheat flour changes the flavor and texture of the product.

Rye flour is commonly used in bread baking. It is milled from the rye berry much like wheat flour is milled from the wheat berry. Rye flour comes in four grades or colors: white, medium, dark and pumpernickel. White rye flour is made from only the center of the rye berry. Medium and dark rye flours are made from the whole rye berry after the bran is removed. Pumpernickel is made by grinding the entire rye berry, including the bran. All rye flours have a warm, pungent flavor similar to caraway and a gray-brown color. Although

TABLE 29.2 NUTRITIONAL VALUES OF SELECTED FLOURS

Per 1-oz. (28-g) unit	Kcal	Protein (g)	Carbohydrates (g)	Fiber (g)	Total fat (g)
All-purpose flour	103	2.9	21.6	0.8	0.3
Bread flour	102	3.4	20.6	mq	0.5
Rye flour, dark	92	4	19.5	mq	0.8
Whole wheat flour	96	3.9	20.6	3.6	0.5

The Corinne T. Netzer Encyclopedia of Food Values 1992
mq = measurable quantity but data is unavailable

rye flour contains proteins, they will not form gluten, so a bread made with 100% rye flour will be dense and flat. Therefore, rye flour is usually blended with a high-protein wheat flour to produce a more acceptable product.

Nutrition

Flours are generally high in carbohydrates and low in fat. The grains from which they are milled are often rich in vitamins and minerals. Some of these nutrients, however, are lost during milling. In enriched flours, thiamin, riboflavin, niacin and iron are added at levels set by the government.

Purchasing and Storing

Most flours are purchased in 50- and 100-pound bags. They should be stored in a lit, ventilated room at temperatures no higher than 80°F (27°C). Flour can be stored in a refrigerator or freezer if necessary to prevent the onset of rancidity. Refrigeration may cause the flour to absorb moisture, however, which will limit the flour's ability to absorb additional moisture during actual use.

An open bag of flour should be transferred to a closed container to prevent contamination. Even unopened bags of flour should not be stored near items with strong odors, as flour readily absorbs odors.

Sugar and Sweeteners

Sugar (Fr. *sucre*) and other sweeteners serve several purposes in the bakeshop: They provide flavor and color, tenderize products by weakening gluten strands, provide food for yeasts, serve as a preservative and act as a creaming or foaming agent to assist with leavening.

Sugar

Sugars are carbohydrates. They are classified as either (1) single or simple sugars (monosaccharides), such as glucose and fructose, which occur naturally in honey and fruits, or (2) double or complex sugars (disaccharides), which may occur naturally, such as lactose in milk, or in refined sugars.

The sugar most often used in the kitchen is **sucrose**, a refined sugar obtained from both the large tropical grass called sugar cane (*saccharum officinarum*) and the root of the sugar beet (*beta vulgaris*). Sucrose is a disaccharide, composed of one molecule each of glucose and fructose. The chemical composition of beet and cane sugars is identical. The two products taste, look, smell and react the same. Sucrose is available in many forms: white granulated, light or dark brown granulated, molasses and powdered.

SUGAR: A SWEET AND SORDID PAST

Few foods have so murky an early history as sugar, now one of the most commonplace of foods. Neither botanists nor anthropologists know precisely where sugar cane first grew or when sugar was first extracted from it.

Nevertheless, there are records of a crude sugar being used as a sweetener in India more than 2500 years ago. Sugar cane was being cultivated in the Middle East by the 6th century A.D. and spread from there to North Africa and Spain. Egyptians were manufacturing sugar commercially by the 10th century A.D.

Western Europeans first encountered sugar in the Middle East during the 12th-century Crusades. During the succeeding centuries, sugar remained a rare luxury in Europe. The small amounts available were traded by spice merchants and dispensed by apothecaries. At first, sugar was used only as a medicine, a condiment or, occasionally, as a preservative. English cookbooks dating from the late 1300s illustrate an indiscriminate use of sugar as a condiment for meats, fish and vegetables. Like spices, sugar was used to show a person's wealth and position.

When Columbus landed in the West Indies, he found an environment perfectly suited for growing sugar cane, so he brought sugar cane cuttings to the New World on his second voyage in 1493. Huge sugar cane plantations soon flourished in the New World, built and worked by enslaved Africans and their descendants.

By the 18th century, European and American middle classes were able to afford sugar by the pound. Sugar was now being used principally as a sweetener, particularly in connection with three other imports: coffee, tea and chocolate. Sugar, in fact, had become one of the principal components of a vast and complex trade network involving molasses from the West Indies, distilled rum from New England, finished goods from Europe and slaves from Africa.

Early sugars bore little resemblance to the white granulated substance we use today. Until vacuum pans and centrifuges were invented in the late 19th century, pure sugars were unobtainable. All contained varying amounts of molasses and other impurities. Most of the world's sugar was sold only in large, brown cones. The price of sugar depended on its whiteness and fineness, with the whitest sugar being the most costly.

After two centuries of prosperity, the sugar cane industry began to decline in the 19th century. Several factors contributed to this: abolition of slavery, discovery of alternative sweeteners and falling sugar prices.

If cane sugar was an ancient plant exploited in the New World, then beet sugar is a modern plant fully realized in the Old World. Although the ability to refine a crude sweetener from root vegetables had been known for centuries, scientists and chefs mistakenly believed that sugar could be obtained only from plants grown in tropical heat. It was not until 1747 that a German chemist, Andreas Marggraf, proved otherwise. He isolated sucrose—the same substance produced from sugar cane—from white beets. His research, however, did not have a commercial application until cane sugar supplies were threatened. During the Napoleonic Wars, the British blockade of European ports cut off supplies of cane sugar. At Napoleon's urging, research into manufacturing beet sugar progressed. The first beet sugar factory was built in France in 1812. Soon France, Germany and Belgium were virtually self-sufficient in sugar production.

Consumers accepted this new sugar with few complaints; most were totally unaware of any difference. Today, about 40% of the world's sugar is manufactured from beets, primarily in Russia, Germany and the United States.

Sugar Manufacturing

Common **refined** or **table sugar** is produced from sugar cane or sugar beets. The first step in sugar production is to crush the cane or beet to extract the juice. This juice contains tannins, pigments, proteins and other undesirable components that must be removed through refinement. Refinement begins by dissolving the juice in water, then boiling it in large steam evaporators. The solution is then crystallized in heated vacuum pans. The uncrystallized liquid byproduct, known as **molasses**, is separated out in a centrifuge. The remaining crystallized product, known as **raw sugar**, contains many impurities; the USDA considers it unfit for direct use in food.

Raw sugar is washed with steam to remove some of the impurities. This yields a product known as **turbinado sugar**. Refining continues as the turbinado is heated, liquefied, centrifuged and filtered. Chemicals may be used to bleach and purify the liquid sugar. Finally, the clear liquid sugar is recrystallized in vacuum pans as **granulated white sugar**.

Pure sucrose is sold in granulated and powdered forms and is available in several grades. Because there are no government standards regulating grade labels, various manufacturers' products may differ slightly.

Turbinado Sugar

Turbinado sugar, sometimes called Demerara sugar, is the closest consumable product to raw sugar. It is partially refined, light brown in color, with coarse crystals and a caramel flavor. It is sometimes used in beverages and certain baked goods. Because of its high and variable moisture content, turbinado sugar is not recommended as a substitute for granulated or brown sugar.

Sanding Sugar

Sanding sugar has a large, coarse crystal structure that prevents it from dissolving easily. It is used almost exclusively for decorating cookies and pastries.

Regular Granulated Sugar

This is the all-purpose sugar used throughout the kitchen. The crystals are a fine, uniform size suitable for a variety of purposes.

Cube Sugar

Sugar cubes are formed by pressing moistened granulated sugar into molds and allowing it to dry. Cube sugar is most often used for beverage service.

Brown Sugar

Brown sugar is simply regular refined sugar with some of the molasses returned to it. Light brown sugar contains approximately 3.5% molasses; dark brown sugar contains about 6.5%. Molasses adds moisture and a distinctive flavor. Brown sugar can be substituted for refined sugar, measure for measure, in any formula where its flavor is desired. Because of the added moisture, brown sugar tends to lump, trapping air into pockets. It should be measured by weight or, if measured by volume, it should be packed firmly into the measuring cup in order to remove any air pockets. Always store brown sugar in an airtight container to prevent it from drying and hardening.

Clockwise from top left, Demerara sugar cubes, light brown sugar, powdered sugar, sugar cubes, brown sugar crystals, granulated sugar

Superfine or Castor Sugar

Superfine sugar is granulated sugar with a smaller-sized crystal. Also known as castor sugar, it can be produced by processing regular granulated sugar in a food processor for a few moments. Superfine sugar dissolves quickly in liquids and produces light and tender cakes.

Powdered or Confectioner's Sugar

Powdered sugar (Fr. *sucre en poudre*) is made by grinding granulated sugar crystals through varying degrees of fine screens. Powdered sugar cannot be made in a food processor. It is widely available in three degrees of fineness: 10X is the finest and most common; 6X and 4X are progressively coarser. Because of powdered sugar's tendency to lump, 3% cornstarch is added to absorb moisture. Powdered sugar is most often used in icings and glazes and for decorating baked products.

Liquid Sweeteners

Except for leavening, liquid sweeteners can be used to achieve the same benefits as sugar in baked goods. Most of these liquids have a distinctive flavor as well as sweetness. Some liquid sweeteners are made from sugar cane; others are derived from other plants, grains or bees.

Corn Syrup

Corn syrup is produced by extracting starch from corn kernels and treating it with acid or an enzyme to develop a sweet syrup. This syrup is extremely thick or viscous and less sweet-tasting than honey or refined sugar. Its viscosity gives foods a thick, chewy texture. Corn syrup is available in light and dark forms; the dark syrup has caramel color and flavor added. Corn syrup is a **hygroscopic** (water-attracting) sweetener, which means it will attract water from the air on humid days and lose water through evaporation more slowly than granulated sugar. Thus, it keeps products moister and fresher longer.

Honey

Honey (Fr. *miel*) is a powerful sweetener consisting of fructose and glucose. It is created by honey bees from nectar collected from flowers. Its flavor and color vary depending on the season, the type of flower the nectar came from and its age. Commercial honey is often a blend, prepared to be relatively neutral and consistent. Like corn syrup, honey is highly hygroscopic. Its distinctive flavor is found in several ethnic foods such as baklava and halvah, and beverages such as Drambuie and Benedictine.

Maple Syrup

Maple syrup is made from the sap of sugar maple trees. Sap is collected during the spring, then boiled to evaporate its water content, yielding a sweet brown syrup. One sugar maple tree produces about 12 gallons of sap each season; 30–40 gallons of sap will produce 1 gallon of syrup. Pure maple syrup must weigh not less than 11 pounds per gallon; it is graded according to color, flavor and sugar content. The more desirable products, Grades AA and A, have a light amber color and delicate flavor. Pure maple syrup is expensive, but it does add a distinct flavor to baked goods, frostings and, of course, pancakes and waffles.

Maple-flavored syrups, often served with pancakes, are usually corn syrups with artificial colorings and flavorings added.

Molasses

As mentioned earlier, molasses (Fr. *mélasse*) is the liquid byproduct of sugar refining. Edible molasses is derived only from cane sugar, as beet molasses has an unpleasant odor and bitter flavor. *Unsulfured molasses* is not a true byproduct of sugar making. It is intentionally produced from pure cane syrup and is preferred because of its lighter color and milder flavor. *Sulfured molasses* is a byproduct and contains some of the sulfur dioxide used in secondary sugar processing. It is darker and has a strong, bitter flavor.

The final stage of sucrose refinement yields *blackstrap molasses*, which is somewhat popular in the American South. Blackstrap molasses is very dark and thick, with a strong, unique flavor that is unsuitable for most purposes.

Sorghum molasses is produced by cooking down the sweet sap of a brown corn plant, known as sorghum, which is grown for animal feed. The flavor and appearance of sorghum molasses are almost identical to unsulfured sugar cane molasses.

Nutrition

Sweeteners are carbohydrates. They are high in calories and contain no fiber, protein, fat, vitamin A or vitamin C. They contain only trace amounts of thiamin, riboflavin and niacin.

TABLE 29.3 NUTRITIONAL VALUES OF SELECTED SWEETENERS

Units as Noted	Kcal	Carbohydrates (g)	Sodium (mg)
Corn syrup, light, 2 Tbsp. (30 ml)	120	30	60
Honey, 2 Tbsp. (30 ml)	120	32	na
Molasses, unsulfured, 2 Tbsp. (30 ml)	140	34	56
Sugar, brown, light, 1 oz. (28 g)	106	27	1
Sugar, granulated, 1 oz. (28 g)	109	28	<1
Sugar, powdered, 1 oz. (28 g)	109	28	<1

The Corinne T. Netzer Encyclopedia of Food Values 1992

Cooking Sugar

Sugar can be incorporated into a prepared item in its dry form or first liquefied into a syrup. **Sugar syrups** (not to be confused with liquid sweeteners such as molasses) take two forms: **simple syrups**, which are mixtures of sugar and water, and **cooked syrups**, which are made of melted sugar cooked until it reaches a specific temperature. Be extremely careful when working with a hot sugar syrup. Because sugar reaches very high temperatures, it can cause severe burns.

Simple Sugar Syrups

Simple or stock syrups are solutions of sugar and water. They are used in the bakeshop to moisten cakes and to make sauces, fruit sorbets, buttercreams and candied fruits.

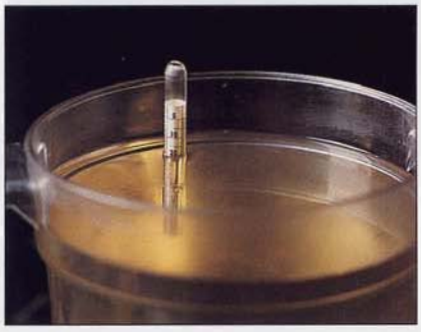
The syrup's density or concentration is dictated by its intended purpose. Cold water will dissolve up to double its weight in sugar; heating the solution forms denser, more concentrated syrups. A hydrometer, which measures specific gravity and shows degrees of concentration on the Baume scale, is the most accurate guide to density.

Simple syrups can be prepared without the aid of a hydrometer, however. To make a simple sugar syrup, specific amounts of water and sugar are combined in a saucepan and brought to a boil. Once the solution boils, it is important not to stir, as this may cause recrystallization or lumping. For successful simple sugar syrups, the following formulas must be followed precisely.

- Light syrup—Boil 2 parts water with 1 part sugar for 1 minute. This concentration would measure 17°–20° on the Baume scale. A light syrup can be used for making sorbet or moistening spongecake.
- Medium syrup—Boil 1 part sugar with 1 1/2 parts water for 1 minute. This concentration would measure 21°–24° on the Baume scale. A medium syrup can be used for candying citrus peel.
- Heavy syrup—Boil equal parts of water and sugar for 1 minute. This concentration would measure 28°–30° on the Baume scale, and the solution should be at 220°F (104°C). Heavy syrup is a basic, all-purpose syrup kept on hand in many bakeshops.

Cooked Sugars

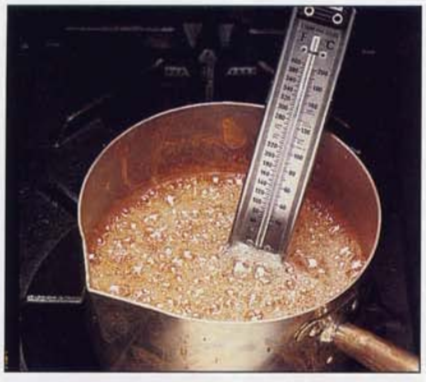
Caramel sauce, candy and other confections often need liquid sugar that will have a cooked caramel flavor or be firm when cool. For these purposes, sugar needs to be cooked to temperatures far higher than simple syrups. A



Using a Baume hydrometer.

small amount of water is generally added at the beginning to help the sugar dissolve evenly. As the mixture boils, the water evaporates, the solution's temperature rises and its density increases. The syrup's concentration depends on the amount of water remaining in the final solution: The less water, the harder the syrup will become when cool.

The sugar's temperature indicates its concentration. If there is a great deal of water present, the temperature will not rise much above 212°F (100°C). As water evaporates, however, the temperature will rise until it reaches 320°F (160°C), the point at which all water is evaporated. At temperatures above 320°F (160°C), the pure sugar begins to brown or caramelize. As sugar caramelizes, its sweetening power decreases dramatically. At approximately 375°F (190°C), sugar will burn, developing a bitter flavor. If allowed to continue cooking, sugar will ignite.



Caramelizing sugar.

Sugar solutions are unstable because of their molecular structure. They can recrystallize because of agitation or uneven heat distribution. Several steps should be taken to prevent recrystallization:

1. Always use a heavy, clean saucepan, preferably copper.
2. Stir the solution to make sure all sugar crystals dissolve before it reaches a boil. Do not stir the solution after it begins boiling, however.
3. An interferent may be added when the solution begins to boil. Cream of tartar, vinegar, glucose (a monosaccharide) and lemon juice are known as **interferents** because they interfere with the formation of sugar crystals. Some formulas specify which interferent to use, although most are used in such small quantities that their flavor cannot be detected.
4. Brush down the sides of the pan with cold water to wash off crystals that may be deposited there. These sugar crystals may seed the solution, causing more crystals (lumps) to form if not removed. Instead of using a brush to wash away crystals, you can cover the pan for a few moments as soon as the solution comes to a boil. Steam will condense on the cover and run down the sides of the pan, washing away the crystals.

Brushing sugar crystals from the side of the pan.

The concentration of sugar syrup should be determined with a candy thermometer that measures very high temperatures. If a thermometer is not available, use the traditional but less accurate ice-water test: Spoon a few drops of the hot sugar into a bowl of very cold water. Check the hardness of the cooled sugar with your fingertips. Each stage of cooked sugar is named according to its firmness when cool—for example, soft ball or hard crack.

Table 29.4 lists the various stages of cooked sugar and the temperature for each. Each stage is also identified by the ice-water test result. Note that even a few degrees makes a difference in the syrup's concentration.

TABLE 29.4 STAGES OF COOKED SUGAR

Stage	Temperature	Ice-Water Test—One Drop:
Thread	236°F (110°C)	Spins a 2-in. (5-cm) thread when dropped
Soft Ball	240°F (116°C)	Forms a soft ball
Firm Ball	246°F (119°C)	Forms a firm ball
Hard Ball	260°F (125°C)	Forms a hard, compact ball
Soft Crack	270°F (132°C)	Separates into a hard, but not brittle, thread
Hard Crack	300°F (149°C)	Separates into a hard, brittle sheet
Caramel	338°F (170°C)	Liquid turns brown

Soft ball stage.

Hard ball stage.

Hard crack stage.

Fats

Fat is the general term for butter, lard, shortening, oil and margarine. Fats provide flavor and color, add moisture and richness, assist with leavening, help extend a product's shelf life and shorten gluten strands.

The flavor and texture of a baked good depends on the type of fat used and the manner in which it is incorporated with other ingredients. In pastry doughs, solid fat shortens or tenderizes the gluten strands; in bread doughs, fat increases loaf volume and lightness; in cake batters, fat incorporates air bubbles and helps leaven the mixture. Fats should be selected based on their flavor, melting point and ability to form emulsions.

Most bakeshop ingredients combine completely with liquids; fats do not. Fats will not dissolve but will break down into smaller and smaller particles through mixing. With proper mixing, these fat particles are distributed, more or less evenly, throughout the other ingredients.

All-Purpose Shortening

Any fat is a shortening in baking because it shortens gluten strands and tenderizes the product. What is generally referred to as shortening, however, is a type of solid, white, generally flavorless fat, specially formulated for baking. Shortenings are made from animal fats and/or vegetable oils that are solidified through hydrogenation. These products are 100% fat with a relatively high melting point. Solid shortenings are ideal for greasing baking pans because they are flavorless and odorless.

Emulsified Shortening

Emulsifiers may be added to regular shortening to assist with moisture absorption and retention as well as leavening. Emulsified shortenings, also known as high-ratio shortenings, are used in the commercial production of cakes and frostings where the formula contains a large amount of sugar. If a formula calls for an emulsified shortening, use it. If you substitute any other fat, the product's texture suffers.

Lard

Lard

Lard (Fr. *saindoux*) is rendered pork fat. It is a solid white product of almost 100% pure fat; it contains only a small amount of water. Lard yields flaky, flavorful pastries, such as pie crusts, but is rarely used commercially because it turns rancid quickly.

Butter and Margarine

Butter is prized in the bakeshop for its flavor; however, it melts at a relatively low temperature of 93°F (33°C) and burns easily. Unsalted butter is preferred for baking because it tends to be fresher, and additional salt might interfere with product formulas. Margarine melts at a slightly higher temperature than butter, making it useful for some rolled-in doughs such as puff pastry or danish. For detailed information on butter and margarine see Chapter 8, Dairy Products.

Oil

Unlike butter and other fats, oil blends thoroughly throughout a mixture. It therefore coats more of the proteins, and the gluten strands produced are much shorter, a desirable result in fine-textured products such as muffins or chiffon cakes. For baking, select a neutral-flavored oil unless the distinctive taste of olive oil is desired, as in some breads. Never substitute oil in a formula requiring a solid shortening. For detailed information on oil, see Chapter 7, Kitchen Staples.

Nutrition

Fats are high in calories and contain varying levels of saturated fats. Although they have no carbohydrates, a few fats such as butter have trace amounts of protein and minerals. Butter is also high in vitamin A.

Thickeners

Starches are often used as thickening agents in bakeshop products. Cornstarch, arrowroot and flour can be used as thickeners for pastry creams, sauces, custards and fruit fillings. These thickeners are discussed in Chapter 10, Stocks and Sauces.

TABLE 29.5 NUTRITIONAL VALUES OF SELECTED FATS

Per 2 Tbsp. (30 ml)	Kcal	Total fat (g)	Saturated fat (g)	Cholesterol (mg)	Sodium (mg)
Butter, unsalted	200	22.8	14.2	62	2
Corn oil	240	27.2	3.4	0	0
Lard	230	25.6	10	24	0
Margarine	200	22	4	0	200
Margarine, diet	100	12	2	0	260
Shortening, all-purpose	226	25.6	6.4	0	0

The Corinne T. Netzer Encyclopedia of Food Values 1992

One of the most commonly used thickeners in the bakeshop is **gelatin**, a natural product derived from the animal protein collagen. It is available in two forms: granulated gelatin and sheet (also called leaf) gelatin. A two-step process is necessary to use either form: The gelatin must first be softened in a cold liquid, then dissolved in a hot liquid.

Granulated gelatin is available in bulk or in 1/4-ounce (7 grams or slightly less than 1 tablespoon) envelopes. One envelope is enough to set 1 pint (500 milliliters) of liquid. Granulated gelatin should be softened in a cool liquid for at least five minutes, then heated gently to dissolve. The initial softening in a cold liquid is necessary to separate the gelatin molecules so that they will not lump together when the hot liquid is added.

Sheet or leaf gelatin is available in 1-kilogram boxes, sometimes further packaged in five- or six-sheet envelopes. The sheets are produced in varying thicknesses and weights. They must be separated and soaked in ice water until very soft, at least 15 minutes. They are then removed from the water and stirred into a hot liquid until completely dissolved.

Procedure for Using Sheet Gelatin

1. Gelatin sheets are submerged in ice water for several minutes to soften.

2. Softened gelatin sheets are then removed from the ice water and incorporated into a hot liquid.

Granulated and sheet gelatin can be substituted weight for weight in any formula. Sheet gelatin, though more expensive, is preferred for its lack of flavor and color. It also tends to dissolve more readily and evenly and has a longer shelf life than the granulated product.

Once incorporated into a product such as a Bavarian, gelatin can be frozen, or melted and reset once or twice, without a loss of thickening ability. Because it scorches easily, gelatin and mixtures containing gelatin should not be allowed to boil.

Although less commonly encountered in professional bakeshops, **tapioca** can be used to thicken a variety of pastry products. Tapioca is a starch produced from the root of the tropical cassava (manioc) plant. It is available as a flour or as balls, referred to as pearls. Tapioca flour can be used in the same manner as cornstarch, to thicken soups, sauces and fruit mixtures. Pearl tapioca is used to thicken milk for tapioca pudding, or to thicken fruit pie fillings. Most pearl tapioca must be soaked in a cold liquid for several hours before cooking. Instant tapioca, which is smaller, needs to soak for only 20 to 30 minutes before cooking.

Pearl Tapioca

Flavorings

Many spices and flavorings are used in the bakeshop. The most popular spices such as cinnamon, cloves, nutmeg and allspice are discussed in Chapter 7, Kitchen Staples. Here we discuss emulsions and extracts, vanilla, chocolate and alcoholic beverages.

Emulsions and Extracts

Emulsions and extracts are liquid flavoring agents derived from various oils.

Emulsions are flavoring oils mixed into water with the aid of emulsifiers. Lemon and orange are the most common emulsions. Emulsions are much stronger than extracts and should be used carefully and sparingly.

Extracts are mixtures of flavoring oils and ethyl alcohol. Vanilla, almond and lemon are frequently used extracts. An extract may be made with pure flavoring oils or with artificial flavors and colors. Contents are regulated by the FDA, and package labels must indicate any artificial ingredients.

Emulsions and extracts are highly volatile. They should be stored in sealed containers in a cool area away from direct light.

Vanilla

Vanilla (Fr. *vanille*) is the most frequently used flavoring in the bakeshop. It comes from the pod fruit, called a bean, of a vine in the orchid family. Vanilla beans are purchased whole, individually or by the pound. They should be soft and pliable, with a rich brown color and good aroma. The finest vanilla comes from Tahiti and Madagascar.

Scraping seeds from the interior of a vanilla bean.

To use a vanilla bean, cut it open lengthwise with a paring knife. Scrape out the moist seeds with the knife's tip and stir them into the mixture being flavored. The seeds do not dissolve and will remain visible as small black or brown flecks. After all the seeds have been removed, the bean can be stored in a covered container with sugar to create vanilla sugar.

Vanilla beans should be stored in an air-tight container in a cool, dark place. During storage, the beans may develop a white coating. This is not mold, but rather crystals of vanilla flavor known as **vanillin**. It should not be removed.

Pure vanilla extract is an easy and less expensive way to give bakeshop products a true vanilla flavor. It is dark brown and aromatic, and comes in several strengths referred to as folds. Each fold requires the extract from 13.35 ounces of vanilla beans per gallon of liquid. A two-fold contains 26.7 ounces per gallon, and a four-fold contains 40.5 ounces. Single-fold or two-fold are the most commonly available; the stronger products are used only in manufacturing. By law, any product labeled "vanilla extract" must not contain artificial flavorings and must be at least 35% alcohol by volume.

Vanilla extract should be stored at room temperature in a closed, opaque container. It should not be frozen.

Artificial or imitation vanilla flavoring is made with synthetic vanillin. Artificial flavoring is available in a clear form, which is useful for white buttercreams where the dark brown color of pure vanilla extract would be undesirable. Although inexpensive, artificial vanilla is, at best, weaker and less aromatic than pure extract. It can also impart a chemical or bitter taste to foods.

Chocolate

Chocolate is one of the most—perhaps *the* most—popular flavoring for candies, cookies, cakes and pastries. Chocolate is also served as a beverage and is an ingredient in the traditional spicy Mexican molé sauce. Chocolate is available in a variety of forms and degrees of sweetness.

Chocolate Production

Chocolate (Fr. *chocolat*) begins as yellow fruit pods dangling from the trunk and main branches of the tropical cacao tree. Each pod contains about 40 almond-sized cocoa beans. After the pods ripen, the beans are placed in the

sun for several days to dry and ferment. They are then cleaned, dried, cured and roasted to develop flavor and reduce bitterness. Next, the beans are crushed to remove their shells, yielding the prized chocolate **nib**.

Nibs are shipped to manufacturers worldwide where they can be further roasted. They are crushed into a thick (nonalcoholic) paste known as **chocolate liquor** or **chocolate mass**. Chocolate mass contains about 53% fat, known as **cocoa butter**. The chocolate mass is further refined depending on the desired product. If **cocoa powder** is to be produced, virtually all the cocoa butter is removed. A variety of other products are created by adding

From Cacao to Chocolate Chips

To understand the history of chocolate, a chef or chocoholic must first understand the fundamental difference between its original use as a beverage and its later transformation into a candy.

The cacao tree (called *theobroma cacao*, meaning "food of the gods") originated in the river valleys of South America and was carried into what is now Mexico by the Mayans before the 7th century A.D. It was cultivated by Mayans, Aztecs and Toltecs not only as a source of food but also as currency. Chocolate was consumed only as a treasured drink. Cacao beans were roasted, crushed to a paste and steeped in water, then thickened with corn flour to create a cold, bitter beverage. Sometimes honey, vanilla or spices, including chiles, were added. The Aztec emperor Montezuma was so enamored with the beverage that he reportedly consumed 50 cups at each meal.

Columbus brought cacao beans to Spain from his fourth voyage to the New World in 1504. (The common term *cocoa* is actually a western European mispronunciation of the proper term *cacao*, caused by confusion with another New World delicacy, the coconut.) But almost 20 years passed before Spanish conquistadors, led by Cortez, understood the beans' value. With Montezuma's encouragement, Cortez and his soldiers slowly acquired a taste for the bitter beverage, spurred on by the intoxicating effects of caffeine.

Cortez's most important contribution to the history of chocolate was to take beans with him when he left Mexico. He planted them on the islands he passed on his return to Spain: Trinidad, Haiti and Fernando Po, from which the giant African cocoa industry grew. Through Cortez's far-sighted efforts, Spain controlled all aspects of the cocoa trade until well into the 18th century.

The Spanish began drinking chocolate at home during the 16th century. It was usually mixed with two other expensive imports, sugar and vanilla, and frothed with a carved wooden swizzle stick known as a *molinet*. This thick, cold drink was made from tablets of crushed cocoa beans produced and sold by monks. The Spanish believed that cocoa cured all ills and supplied limitless stamina. In the early 17th century, cocoa beverages, now served hot, crept into France via royal marriages.

Cocoa spread through the rest of Europe by different routes. The Dutch, who had poached on Spanish trade routes for many years, eventually realized the value of the unusual beans they found on Spanish ships. Holland soon became the most important cocoa port outside of Spain. From there, a love of cocoa spread to Germany, Scandinavia and Italy. In 1655, England acquired Jamaica and its own cocoa plantations.

Chocolate Chef, sculpted by Pastry Chef Rubin Foster.

Until the Industrial Revolution, cocoa was made by hand using mortar and pestle or stone-grinding disks to crush the cocoa nibs. By the 1700s, cocoa factories had opened throughout Europe. James Baker opened the first cocoa factory in the United States in 1765.

Conrad van Houten, a Dutch chemist, patented "chocolate powder" in 1825. His work marked the beginning of a shift from drinking to eating chocolate. It also paved the way for everything we know as chocolate today. Van Houten developed a screw press that removed most of the cocoa butter from the bean, leaving a brown, flaky powder, essentially the same substance as modern cocoa powder.

Eventually, it was discovered that the extra cocoa butter resulting from the production of cocoa powder could be added to ground beans to make the paste more malleable, smoother and more tolerant of added sugar. The English firm of Fry and Sons introduced the first eating chocolate in 1847. Their recipe was the same then as today: crushed cocoa beans, cocoa butter and sugar.

In 1876, Swiss chocolatier Daniel Peter invented solid milk chocolate using the new condensed milk created by baby food manufacturer Henri Nestlé. Pennsylvania cocoa manufacturer Milton Hershey introduced his milk chocolate bars in 1894, followed by Hershey's Kisses in 1907. Nestlé Foods introduced the chocolate chip, perfect for cookies, in 1939.

Melting Chocolate

Two important rules for melting chocolate:

1. Chocolate must never exceed 120°F or there will be a loss of flavor.
2. Water—even a drop in the form of steam—must never touch the chocolate.

When a droplet of water enters melted chocolate, the chocolate becomes lumpy (a process called *seizing*). There must be a minimum of 1 tablespoon water per ounce of chocolate to keep this from happening.

If seizing does occur, the addition of fat such as vegetable shortening, clarified butter, or cocoa butter will somewhat restore the chocolate to a workable condition.

For melting chocolate, unlined copper is the traditional "chocolate pot" because it is so responsive to changes in temperature. Aluminum or heatproof glass also works well. Ideally, chocolate should be heated to 120°F, the point at which all the different fat fractions in the cocoa butter are melted.

When melting chocolate or cocoa butter, temperatures exceeding 120°F adversely affect the flavor. There are many acceptable methods for melting dark chocolate. If the heat source does not exceed 120°F it is fine to add the dark chocolate in large pieces and leave it to melt unmonitored. When the heat source is capable of bringing the chocolate over 120°F, however, the chocolate should be finely chopped or grated to ensure uniformity of melting. The chocolate must be carefully watched and stirred to avoid overheating. If using a double boiler, water in the lower container should not exceed 140°F and the upper container should not touch the water. The chocolate should be stirred constantly.

Milk and white chocolate must always be stirred frequently while melting because they contain milk solids which seed (lump) if left undisturbed.

Remove chocolate from the heat source when it reaches 115°F as the temperature may continue to rise, and stir vigorously to prevent overheating and to distribute the cocoa butter evenly.

Always melt chocolate uncovered as moisture could condense on the lid, drop back in the chocolate, and cause seizing.

—*from* The Cake Bible *by* Rose Levy Beranbaum

more cocoa butter, sugar, milk solids and flavorings to the chocolate mass. Most manufacturers of fine chocolates use the Swiss technique of **conching** to increase smoothness. Conching involves stirring large vats of blended chocolate with a heavy roller or paddle to smooth out sugar crystals and mellow the flavor, a process that may last from a few hours to three days.

Tasting Chocolates

There are two types of chocolate beans: a very hardy, abundant African variety used as a base bean, and a very flavorful, aromatic variety from Costa Rica used for flavor. Unlike wine or coffee, you cannot taste processed chocolate and tell which beans were used. All chocolates are blends, created by their manufacturer to be unique yet consistent.

Roasting greatly affects the final flavor of chocolate. Generally, German and Spanish manufacturers use a high (or strong) roast; Swiss and American makers use a low (or mild) roast.

Refining is also a matter of national taste. Swiss and German chocolate is the smoothest, followed by English chocolates. American chocolate is noticeably more grainy.

Chocolate quality is actually the product of several factors besides flavor. All these factors should be evaluated when selecting chocolates:

1. Appearance—color should be even and glossy, without any discoloration.
2. Smell—should be chocolatey with no off-odors or staleness.
3. Break—should snap cleanly without crumbling.
4. Texture—should melt quickly and evenly on the tongue.

Unsweetened Chocolate

Unsweetened chocolate is pure hardened chocolate liquor without any added sugar or milk solids. It is frequently used in baking and is sometimes referred to as "baking chocolate." Unsweetened chocolate is approximately 53% cocoa butter and 47% cocoa solids. Its flavor is pure and chocolatey, but the absence of sugar makes it virtually inedible as is.

Bittersweet and Semisweet Chocolates

Both bittersweet and semisweet chocolates contain at least 35% chocolate liquor plus additional cocoa butter, sugar, flavorings and sometimes emulsifiers. Generally, semisweet chocolate will be sweeter than bittersweet chocolate, but there are no precise definitions, so flavor and sweetness will vary from brand to brand. Both are excellent eating chocolates and can usually be substituted measure for measure in any formula.

Sweet Chocolate

Government standards require that sweet chocolate contain not less than 15% chocolate liquor and varying amounts of sugar, milk solids, flavorings and emulsifiers. As the name implies, sweet chocolate is sweeter, and thus less chocolatey, than semisweet chocolate.

Milk Chocolate

The favorite eating chocolate in the United States is milk chocolate. It contains sugar, vanilla, perhaps other flavorings and, of course, milk solids. The milk solids that make the chocolate milder and sweeter than other chocolates also make it less suitable for baking purposes. Do not substitute milk chocolate for dark chocolate in any product that must be baked, as the milk solids tend to burn. If melted slowly and carefully, milk chocolate can be used in glazes, mousses or candies.

Cocoa Powder

The brown powder left after the fat (cocoa butter) is removed from cocoa beans is known as cocoa powder. It does not contain any sweeteners or flavorings and is primarily used in baked goods. Alkalized or Dutch-processed cocoa powder has been treated with an alkaline solution, such as potassium carbonate, to raise the powder's pH from 5.5 to 7 or 8. Alkalized powder is darker and milder than nonalkalized powder and has a reduced tendency to lump. Either can be used in baked goods, however.

Cocoa Butter

Chocolate liquor is approximately 53% cocoa butter. Cocoa butter has long been prized for its resistance to rancidity and its use as a cosmetic. Cocoa butter has a very precise melting point, just below body temperature. Fine chocolatiers use high percentages of cocoa butter to give their chocolates melt-in-the-mouth quality.

Clockwise from lower left, semisweet chips, disks of chocolate liquor, block of bittersweet chocolate, block of milk chocolate, disks of white chocolate, alkalized cocoa powder.

White Chocolate

This ivory-colored substance is not the product of an albino cocoa bean. It is actually a confectionary product that does not contain any chocolate solids or liquor. (Thus it cannot be labeled "chocolate" in the United States.) The finest white chocolates contain cocoa butter, sugar, milk solids, vanilla or other flavors. Other products replace all or part of the cocoa butter with vegetable oils. These confectionary products will be less expensive than those containing pure cocoa butter, but their flavor and texture will be noticeably inferior. White chocolate melts at a lower temperature than dark chocolate and burns easily. It is excellent for eating and candy making but is less often used in baked goods.

Imitation Chocolate

A less-expensive product substituted in many prepared foods, imitation chocolate is made with vegetable oils instead of cocoa butter. The resulting product melts at a higher temperature. Products containing imitation chocolate should be labeled "chocolate flavored."

Nutrition

Chocolates are high in calories and fat. They contain minimal amounts of vitamin A and trace amounts of other vitamins as well as some sodium, phosphorous, potassium and other minerals.

TABLE 29.6 NUTRITIONAL VALUES OF SELECTED CHOCOLATES

Per 1-oz. (28-g) unit	Kcal	Protein (g)	Carbohydrates (g)	Total fat (g)	Sodium (mg)
Chocolate, semisweet chips (Nestlé's)	150	2	18	8	0
Chocolate, unsweetened (Baker's)	140	3	9	15	0
Cocoa powder (Hershey's)	120	7	13	4	10
Milk chocolate (Hershey's)	150	2	27	12	55
White chocolate (Nestlé's)	160	2	15	10	25

The Corinne T. Netzer Encyclopedia of Food Values 1992

To Temper or Not to Temper

The number-one mystique that surrounds chocolate has to do with tempering. From the dessert maker and pastry chef's point of view, I take a radical position: I do not think it is necessary or practical to temper. But what are we talking about anyway?

Briefly, tempering is a process of slowly raising and lowering the temperature of melted chocolate, stirring constantly, until the complex fat crystals in the cocoa butter stabilize and "behave" in concert with each other. At a cool room temperature, chocolate that has been tempered will dry rapidly to a hard and shiny piece that breaks with a snap. It shrinks slightly as it dries, enabling it to release easily from a mold. A tempered chocolate piece keeps at room temperature for months without losing its luster or snap. Any bar of chocolate that you purchase to eat or to melt has been tempered. Once melted or exposed to heat, however, it loses its temper, though it can be retempered.

Chocolate that is melted but not tempered will dry slowly, at room temperature, to a soft, almost cakey texture. It will stick inside a mold. Untempered chocolate "blooms"—that is, it becomes dull and streaky, or it takes on a mottled appearance—unless it is refrigerated immediately.

Candy makers almost always temper the chocolate they use. But dessert chefs have little need to temper. There is no reason to temper the chocolate used in cake and torte batters, buttercreams, and most ganaches. The same is true for mousses, custards, and creams. Chocolate that will be stored in the refrigerator or consumed quickly need not be tempered. Chocolate glazes, properly handled, do not require tempering to remain shiny for the short life of the dessert.

—*from* Cocolat: Extraordinary Chocolate Desserts
by Alice Medrich

Storing Chocolate

All chocolates should be stored at a cool, consistent temperature, away from strong odors and moisture. Dark chocolate, white chocolate and cocoa powder can be kept for up to one year without loss of flavor. Milk chocolate will not keep as well because it contains milk solids.

Chocolate may develop grayish-white spots during storage. This is called **bloom**; it results from the migration of cocoa butter crystals to the surface when temperatures change. Bloom will not affect the flavor or function of chocolate and will disappear when the chocolate is melted.

Alcoholic Beverages

Liquors, **liqueurs**, **wines** and **brandies** are frequently used flavorings in the bakeshop. Rum is a popular flavoring liquor because it blends well with other flavors such as chocolate and coffee. Liqueurs are selected for their specific flavors: for example, kirsch for cherry, amaretto for almond, Kahlúa for coffee, crème de cassis for black current and crème de cacao for chocolate. They are used to either add or enhance flavors. Wine, both still and sparkling, is used as a flavoring (for example, in sabayon sauce) or as a cooking medium (for example, pears poached in red wine). Brandy, especially the classic orange-flavored Grand Marnier, is another common bakeshop flavoring. Brandy complements fruits and rounds off the flavor of custards and creams.

When selecting an alcoholic beverage for baking, make quality your first concern. Only high-quality products will enhance the flavor and aroma of your baked goods.

Liquor—*an alcoholic beverage made by distilling grains, vegetables or other foods; includes rum, whiskey and vodka.*

Liqueur—*a strong, sweet, syrupy alcoholic beverage made by mixing or redistilling neutral spirits with fruits, flowers, herbs, spices or other flavorings; also known as a cordial.*

Wine—*an alcoholic beverage made from the fermented juice of grapes; may be sparkling (effervescent) or still (noneffervescent) or fortified with additional alcohol.*

Brandy—*an alcoholic beverage made by distilling wine or the fermented mash of grapes or other fruits.*

MIXING METHODS

An important step in the production of all baked goods is the mixing of ingredients. The techniques used to mix or combine ingredients affect the baked good's final volume, appearance and texture. There are several mixing methods: **beating**, **blending**, **creaming**, **cutting**, **folding**, **kneading**, **sifting**, **stirring** and **whipping**. These terms are used throughout this part of the text, especially in procedure discussions and formulas. Use the designated mixing method as well as the appropriate equipment or tool to ensure a good-quality finished product.

Beating—*vigorously agitating foods to incorporate air or develop gluten; use a spoon or electric mixer with its paddle attachment.*

Blending—*mixing two or more ingredients until evenly distributed; use a spoon, rubber spatula, whisk or electric mixer with its paddle attachment.*

Creaming—*vigorously combining fat and sugar while incorporating air; use an electric mixer with its paddle attachment on medium speed.*

Cutting—*incorporating solid fat into dry ingredients only until lumps of the desired size remain; use pastry cutters, fingers or an electric mixer with its paddle attachment.*

Folding—*very gently incorporating ingredients, such as dry ingredients with whipped eggs; use a rubber spatula.*

Kneading—*working a dough to develop gluten; use hands or an electric mixer with its dough hook. If done by hand, the dough must be vigorously and repeatedly folded and turned in a rhythmic pattern.*

Sifting—*passing one or more dry ingredients through a wire mesh to remove lumps, combine and aerate ingredients; use a rotary or drum sifter or mesh strainer.*

Stirring—*gently mixing ingredients until blended; use a spoon, whisk or rubber spatula.*

Whipping—*beating vigorously to incorporate air; use a whisk or an electric mixer with its whip attachment.*

THE BAKING PROCESS

Baked goods are made from doughs and batters. A **dough** has a low water content. The water-protein complex known as gluten forms the continuous medium into which other ingredients are embedded. A dough is usually prepared by beating, blending, cutting or kneading and is often stiff enough to cut into various shapes.

A **batter** generally contains more fat, sugar and liquids than a dough. Gluten development is minimized and liquid forms the continuous medium in which other ingredients are disbursed. A batter bakes into softer, moister and more crumbly products. A batter is usually prepared by blending, creaming, stirring or whipping and is generally thin enough to pour.

The changes that occur in a dough or batter as it bakes seem mysterious and complex. A pourable liquid becomes a tender, light cake; a sticky mass becomes soft, chewy cookies; a soft, elastic dough becomes firm, crusty French bread. Yet the same physical changes that occur during baking cause all these results. Namely, gases form and are trapped within the dough or batter; starches, proteins and sugars cook; fats melt; moisture evaporates and staling begins.

By learning to control these changes, you are also learning to control the final product. Control can be exerted in the selection of ingredients and the methods by which those ingredients are combined, as well as the baking temperature and duration.

Gases Form

A baked good's final texture is determined by the amount of leavening or rise that occurs both before and during baking. This rise is caused by the gases present in the dough or batter. These gases are carbon dioxide, air and steam. Air and carbon dioxide are present in doughs and batters before they are heated. Other gases are formed when heat is applied. For example, steam is created as the moisture in a dough is heated; yeast and baking powder rapidly release additional carbon dioxide when placed in a hot oven. These gases then expand and leaven the product. Additional information on baking powder and baking soda is found in Chapter 30, Quick Breads; additional information on yeast is found in Chapter 31, Yeast Breads.

Gases Are Trapped

The stretchable network of proteins created in a batter or dough either by egg proteins or gluten traps gases in the product. Without an appropriate network of proteins, the gases would just escape without causing the mixture to rise.

Starches Gelatinize

When starch granules reach a temperature of approximately 140°F (60°C), they absorb additional moisture—up to 10 times their own weight—and expand. This contributes to the baked good's structure.

Proteins Coagulate

Gluten and dairy and egg proteins begin to coagulate (solidify) when the dough or batter reaches a temperature of 160°F (71°C). This process provides most of the baked good's structure.

Proper baking temperatures are important for controlling the point at which proteins coagulate. If the temperature is too high, proteins will solidify before the gases in the product have expanded fully, resulting in a product with poor texture and volume. If the temperature is too low, gases will escape before the proteins coagulate, resulting in a product that may collapse.

Fats Melt

As fats melt, steam is released and fat droplets are dispersed throughout the product. These fat droplets coat the starch (flour) granules, thus moistening and tenderizing the product by keeping the gluten strands short. Shortenings melt at different temperatures. It is important to select a fat with the proper melting point for the product being prepared.

Water Evaporates

Throughout the baking process, the water contained in the liquid ingredients will turn to steam and evaporate. This steam is a useful leavener. As steam is released, the dough or batter dries out, starting from the outside, resulting in the formation of a crust.

TABLE 29.7 LEAVENING AGENTS IN BAKED GOODS

Leavening Agent	Present in
Air	All products, especially those containing whipped eggs or creamed fat
Steam	All products when liquids evaporate or fats melt
Carbon Dioxide	Products containing baking soda, baking powder, baking ammonia or yeast

Sugars Caramelize

As sugars are heated above the boiling point, they caramelize, adding flavor and causing the product to darken. Sugars are found in eggs, dairy products and other ingredients, not just in refined sugar and liquid sweeteners.

Carryover Baking

The physical changes in a baked good do not stop when it is removed from the oven. The residual heat contained in a product continues the baking process as the product cools. That is why a cookie or biscuit may seem a bit underbaked when removed from the oven; it will finish baking as it cools.

Staling

Staling is a change in a baked good's texture and aroma caused by both moisture loss and changes in the structure of the starch granules. Stale products have lost their fresh aroma and are firmer, drier and more crumbly than fresh goods.

Staling is not just a general loss of moisture into the atmosphere, it is also a change in the location and distribution of water molecules within the product. This process, known as **starch retrogradation**, occurs as starch molecules cool, becoming more dense and expelling moisture.

In breads, this moisture migrates from the interior to the drier crust, causing the crust to become tough and leathery. If the product is not well wrapped, moisture will escape completely into the surrounding air. In humid conditions, unwrapped bread crusts absorb moisture from the atmosphere, resulting in the same loss of crispness. The flavor and texture of breads can be revived by reheating them to approximately 140°F (60°C), the temperature at which starch gelatinization occurs. Usually, products can be reheated only once without causing additional quality loss.

The retrogradation process is temperature-dependent. It occurs most rapidly at temperatures of approximately 40°F (4°C). Therefore, baked products should not be refrigerated unless they contain perishable components such as cream fillings. It is better to store products frozen or at room temperature.

Products containing fats and sugars, which retain moisture, tend to stay fresh longer. Commercial bakeries usually add chemical emulsifiers or gums to retard staling, but these additives are not practical for small-scale production.

Bakeshop Tools and Equipment

As a beginning cook, you may find the tools of the bakeshop a bit complex. Indeed, the tools required for a professional patisserie are quite specialized. A well-rounded chef need not be concerned with possessing every gadget available, but should recognize and be familiar with most of the items shown in Figure 29.1. Although many of these hand tools will make a task easier, most can be improvised by a creative chef. Several of the items shown, such as the springform pans, tartlet pans and petit four molds, are used for shaping or holding batters and doughs. The various spatulas are used for spreading icings or fillings. The piping tools and cake comb are used for decorating and finishing baked goods.

FIGURE 29.1 *Clockwise from center back, cake turntable, cake pans, flan ring, tartlet pans, cannoli forms, cake comb, offset spatulas, flat cake spatula, blade for slashing breads, flower nail, rectangular tartlet pans, piping bag and tips, metal spatula, dough cutter, rolling pin, springform pan, copper sugar pot (on cooling rack), nest of round cutters*

When purchasing tools and equipment, look for quality and durability. As your baking skills grow, so will your equipment selection.

Bakeshop ovens may be conventional, convection or steam injection models. Convection ovens can reduce cooking time, but the air currents may damage delicate products such as spongecake or puff pastry. Steam injection ovens use conventional heat flow but allow the baker to automatically add steam to the cooking chamber as needed to produce crisp-crusted breads. Although expensive, steam injection ovens are a necessity for commercial bakeries and most larger restaurant and hotel bakeshops. Baking instructions in the following chapters are based on the use of a conventional oven. If a convection oven is used instead, remember that the temperature and baking time may need to be reduced.

CONCLUSION

Of the many stations of the kitchen, the bakeshop often requires the most conscientious attention to detail. The correct use of flour, thickeners, sugar, fat, chocolate and other flavorings is essential. During preparation and baking, doughs and batters go through many physical changes. One of the most important is the development of gluten, the elastic network of wheat proteins

created when doughs and batters are prepared, which gives baked goods body and structure. You should understand the changes baked goods undergo and learn to control or adjust them as needed.

QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

1. What is gluten? How is it produced, and why is it important in the preparation of baked goods?
2. Discuss four functions of sugar and other sweeteners in baked goods.
3. Describe several steps that can be taken to prevent crystals from forming in sugar solutions.
4. Describe the effect of fat on gluten strands. Why is fat an important ingredient in baked goods?
5. Explain the difference between chocolate liquor and semisweet chocolate. Can these two types of chocolate be used interchangeably in most recipes? Explain your answer.
6. List and describe the nine steps in the baking process.
7. Name several specialized hand tools or pans often used in the bakeshop.
8. What are the differences between a steam injection oven, a convection oven and a conventional oven? Why might you select one type of oven over another?

Chapter 30

Quick Breads

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- use chemical leavening agents properly
- prepare a variety of quick breads using the biscuit method, muffin method and creaming method

Buttermilk biscuits, blueberry muffins, banana-nut bread and currant scones are all quick breads. Why they are called quick breads is obvious: They are quick to make and quick to bake. With only a few basic ingredients and no yeast, almost any food service operation can provide its customers with fresh muffins, biscuits, scones, loaf breads and griddlecakes.

The variety of ingredients is virtually limitless: cornmeal, whole wheat, fruits, nuts, spices and vegetables all yield popular products. And the use of these products is not limited to breakfast service; they are equally appropriate for lunch, snacks and buffets.

Chemical Leavening Agents

Quick breads are made with chemical leavening agents, principally baking soda and baking powder. This sets them apart from breads that are made with yeast and require additional time for fermentation and proofing. Understanding how chemical leavening agents operate is essential to successfully producing quick breads.

Chemical leavening agents release gases through chemical reactions between acids and bases contained in the formula. These gases form bubbles or air pockets throughout the dough or batter. As the product bakes, the dough or batter sets around these air pockets, thus giving the quick bread its rise and texture.

Baking Soda

Sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$) is more commonly known as household baking soda. Baking soda is an alkaline compound (a base), which releases carbon dioxide gas (CO_2) if both an acid and moisture are present. Heat is not necessary for this reaction to occur. Therefore, products made with baking soda must be baked at once, before the carbon dioxide has a chance to escape from the batter or dough.

Acids commonly used with baking soda are buttermilk, sour cream, lemon juice, honey, molasses and fresh fruit. Generally, the amount of baking soda used in a formula is only the amount necessary to neutralize the acids present. If more leavening action is needed, baking powder, not more baking soda, should be used. Too much baking soda causes the product to taste soapy or bitter; it may also cause a yellow color and brown spots to develop.

Baking Powder

Baking powder is a mixture of sodium bicarbonate and one or more acids, generally cream of tartar ($KHC_4H_4O_6$) and/or sodium aluminum sulfate ($Na_2SO_4 \cdot Al_2[SO_4]_3$). Baking powder also contains a starch to prevent lumping and balance the chemical reactions. Because baking powder contains both the acid and the base necessary for the desired chemical reaction, the quick bread

Modern Science

The practice of mixing an acid and an alkali to leaven bread began, appropriately enough, during the Industrial Revolution, a period of rapid development in scientific thought and technological ability. The first commercial leaveners were marketed in 1850.

formula does not need to contain any acid. Only moisture is necessary to induce the release of gases.

There are two types of baking powder: single-acting and double-acting. An excess of either type produces undesirable flavors, textures and colors in baked products.

Single-acting baking powder requires only the presence of moisture to start releasing gas. This moisture is supplied by the eggs, milk, water or other liquids in the formula. As with baking soda, products using single-acting baking powder must be baked immediately.

Double-acting baking powder is more popular. With double-acting baking powder, there is a small release of gas upon contact with moisture and a second, stronger release of gas when heat is applied. Products made with double-acting baking powder need not be baked immediately, but can sit for a short time without loss of leavening ability. All formulas in this book rely on double-acting baking powder.

Both baking soda and baking powder are sometimes used in one formula. This is because baking soda can release CO_2 only to the extent that there is also an acid present in the formula. If the soda/acid reaction alone is insufficient to leaven the product, baking powder is needed for additional leavening.

Baking Ammonia

Baking ammonia (ammonia bicarbonate or ammonia carbonate) is also used as a leavening agent in some baked goods, primarily cookies and crackers. Baking ammonia releases ammonia and carbon dioxide very rapidly when heated. It is suitable for low-moisture products with large surface areas that are baked at high temperatures, such as crackers. Consequently, it is rarely used in quick breads.

Purchasing and Storing

Purchase chemical leaveners in the smallest unit appropriate for your operation. Although a large can of baking powder may cost less than several small ones, if not used promptly the contents of a larger container can deteriorate, causing waste or unusable baked goods.

Chemical leavening agents should always be kept tightly covered. Not only is there a risk of contamination if left open, but they can also absorb moisture from the air and lose their effectiveness. They should be stored in a cool place, as heat deteriorates them. A properly stored and unopened container of baking powder or baking soda has a shelf life of approximately one year.

Mixing Methods

Quick breads are generally mixed by either the **biscuit method**, the **muffin method** or the **creaming method**.

Biscuit Method

The biscuit method is used for biscuits, shortcakes and scones and is very similar to the technique used to make flaky pie doughs. The goal is to create a baked good that is light, flaky and tender.

Procedure for Preparing Products with the Biscuit Method

1. Measure all ingredients.
2. Sift the dry ingredients together.
3. Cut in the fat, which should be in a solid form.
4. Combine the liquid ingredients, including any eggs.
5. Add the liquid ingredients to the dry ingredients. Mix just until the ingredients are combined. Do not overmix, as this causes toughness and inhibits the product's rise.
6. Place the dough on the bench and knead it lightly 10 or 15 times (about 20–30 seconds). The dough should be soft and slightly elastic, but not sticky. Too much kneading toughens the biscuits.
7. The dough is now ready for makeup and baking.

Makeup of Biscuit Method Products

1. Roll out the dough on a floured surface to a thickness of 1/2 to 3/4 inch (1.25 to 1.8 centimeters). Be careful to roll it evenly. Biscuits should double in height during baking.
2. Cut into the desired shapes. Cut straight down; do not twist the cutters, as this inhibits rise. Space cuts as close together as possible to minimize scraps.

Biscuits and Scones: A Genealogy

Biscuit is a French word used to describe any dry, flat cake, whether sweet or savory. It was, perhaps, originally coined to describe twice-baked cakes (*bis* = twice + *cuit* = cooked). Crusader chronicles, for example, mention soldiers eating a "bread called 'bequis' because it is cooked twice" and still, today, the Reims biscuit is returned to the oven for further baking after it is removed from its tin.

Over the centuries, the French began to use the term *biscuit* generically and appended modifiers to identify the particular type of dry, flat cake. For example, a *biscuit de guerre* was the very hard, barely risen product of flour and water used from the time of the Crusades to the era of Louis XIV as an army ration (*guerre* is French for war); *biscuit de Savoie* is a savory spongecake; *biscuit de pâtisserie* is a sweet biscuit.

To the British, a biscuit is what Americans call a cracker or cookie. Yet there appears to be no British quick bread quite comparable to the American biscuit—the closest relative would be the scone. But because a scone contains eggs and butter, it is much richer than a biscuit.

Elizabeth Alston, in *Biscuits and Scones*, proposes that the biscuit is an American variant of the scone. She theorizes that early British colonists in America brought with them traditional scone recipes. Unable to find or afford the necessary fresh butter and eggs, these practical bakers substituted lard and omitted the eggs. What they created, however, were not mock scones, but rather a new product, different from scones but still delicious. Alston further speculates that French cooks initially called the new American product "biscuit de something" and eventually dropped the "de something."

3. Position the biscuits on a lightly greased or paper-lined sheet pan. If placed with sides nearly touching, the biscuits will rise higher and have softer sides. Place farther apart for crusty sides.
4. Scraps may be rerolled one time without overtoughening the product. To do so, press the dough together gently; do not knead.
5. Tops may be brushed with egg wash before baking or with melted butter after baking. Bake immediately in a hot oven.
6. Cool the finished products on a wire rack.

RECIPE 30.1

Country Biscuits

Yield: 36 Biscuits — Method: Biscuit

All-purpose flour	2 lb. 8 oz.	1.2 kg
Salt	3/4 oz.	21 g
Granulated sugar	2 oz.	60 g
Baking powder	2 oz.	60 g
Unsalted butter, cold	14 oz.	400 g
Milk	1 lb. 8 oz.	720 ml

1. Sift the dry ingredients together, making sure they are blended thoroughly.
2. Cut in the butter. The mixture should look mealy; do not overmix.
3. Add the milk and stir, combining only until the mixture holds together.
4. Transfer the dough to a lightly floured work surface; knead until it forms one mass, approximately 5 or 6 kneadings.
5. Roll out the dough to a thickness of 1/2 inch (1.25 centimeters). Cut with a floured cutter and place the biscuits on a paper-lined sheet pan.
6. Bake at 425°F (220°C) for approximately 10–15 minutes. Tops should be light brown, sides almost white and interiors still moist. Internal heat will continue to cook the biscuits after they are removed from the oven.
7. Remove the biscuits to a wire rack to cool.

Approximate values per biscuit: **Calories** 210, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 25 mg, **Sodium** 240 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 27 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Vitamin A** 10%

1. Sifting the dry ingredients together.

2. Cutting in the fat.

3. Kneading the dough.

4. Cutting the biscuits.

Muffin Method

Muffins are any small, cakelike baked good made in a muffin tin (pan). Batters for muffins and loaf quick breads are generally interchangeable. For example, banana muffin batter may be baked in a loaf pan by altering the baking time.

When preparing baked goods by the muffin method, the goal is to produce a tender product with an even shape and an even distribution of fruits, nuts or other ingredients. The most frequent problem encountered with muffin method products is overmixing. This causes toughness and may cause holes to form inside the baked product, a condition known as **tunneling**.

Procedure for Preparing Products with the Muffin Method

1. Measure all ingredients.
2. Sift the dry ingredients together.
3. Combine the liquid ingredients, including melted fat or oil. Melted butter or shortening may resolidify when combined with the other liquids; this is not a cause for concern.
4. Add the liquid ingredients to the dry ingredients and stir just until combined. Do not overmix. The batter will be lumpy.
5. The batter is now ready for makeup and baking.

Makeup of Muffin Method Products

1. Muffin pans and loaf pans should be greased with butter, shortening or a commercial pan grease. Paper liners may be used and will prevent sticking if the batter contains fruits or vegetables. Paper liners, however, inhibit rise.
2. A portion scoop is convenient for ensuring uniform-sized muffins. Be careful not to drip or spill batter onto the edge of the muffin cups; it will burn and cause sticking.
3. Allow muffins and loaf breads to cool for several minutes before attempting to remove them from the pan.
4. Cool the finished products on a wire rack.

RECIPE 30.2

Blueberry Muffins

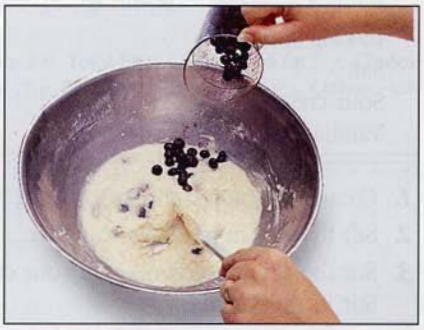
Yield: 12 Muffins — **Method:** Muffin

All-purpose flour	8 oz.	250 g
Granulated sugar	5 oz.	150 g
Baking powder	2 tsp.	10 ml
Salt	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Egg	1	1
Milk	8 oz.	250 ml
Unsalted butter, melted	2 oz.	60 g
Vanilla extract	1 tsp.	5 ml
Blueberries	6 oz.	180 g
Lemon zest	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Sift the dry ingredients together.
2. Stir together the liquid ingredients, including the melted butter.
3. Stir the liquid mixture into the dry ingredients. Do not overmix. The batter should be lumpy.
4. Gently fold in the blueberries and lemon zest.
5. Portion into greased or paper-lined muffin cups and bake at 350°F (180°C) until light brown and set in the center, approximately 18 minutes.
6. Cool the muffins in the pan for several minutes before removing.

Approximate values per muffin: **Calories** 180, **Total fat** 5 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 30 mg, **Sodium** 65 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 30 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Vitamin A** 6%, **Claims**—low sodium

1. Combining the liquid ingredients.



2. Folding in the blueberries.

3. Portioning the batter.

Creaming Method

The creaming method is comparable to the mixing method used for many butter cakes. The final product will be cakelike, with a fine texture. There is less danger of overmixing with this method because the higher fat content shortens gluten strands and tenderizes the batter.

Procedure for Preparing Products with the Creaming Method

1. Measure all ingredients.
2. Sift the dry ingredients together.
3. Combine softened fat and sugar in a mixer bowl. Cream until the color lightens and the mixture fluffs.
4. Add eggs gradually, mixing well.
5. Add the dry and liquid ingredients to the creamed fat alternately. In other words, a portion of the flour is added to the fat and incorporated, then a portion of the liquid is added and incorporated. These steps are repeated until all the liquid and dry ingredients are incorporated. By adding the liquid and dry ingredients alternately, you avoid overmixing the batter and prevent the butter and sugar mixture from curdling.
6. The batter is now ready for makeup and baking.

Makeup of Creaming Method Products

Panning and baking procedures are the same as those for quick breads prepared with the muffin method.

RECIPE 30.3

Sour Cream Muffins

Yield: 15 Muffins **Method:** Creaming

Unsalted butter, room temperature	8 oz.	225 g
Granulated sugar	8 oz.	225 g
Eggs	2	2
All-purpose flour	10 oz.	300 g
Baking powder	1 tsp.	5 ml
Baking soda	1 tsp.	5 ml
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Sour cream	10 oz.	300 g
Vanilla extract	1 tsp.	5 ml

1. Cream the butter and sugar until light and fluffy. Add the eggs.
2. Sift the dry ingredients together.
3. Stir the dry ingredients and sour cream, alternately, into the butter mixture. Stir in the vanilla.
4. Portion and bake at 350°F (180°C) until light brown and set, approximately 20 minutes.
5. Allow the muffins to cool briefly in the pan before removing.

Streusel—*a crumbly mixture of fat, flour, sugar and, sometimes, nuts and spices used to top baked goods.*

Variations: Sour cream muffins can be topped with **streusel** or flavored with a wide variety of fruits or nuts by adding approximately 4–6 ounces (1 cup or 120–180 grams) fresh or frozen drained fruit to the batter. Blueberries, dried cherries, candied fruits, pecans and diced pears yield popular products. By adding 1/2 teaspoon (2 milliliters) each of cinnamon and nutmeg, basic spice muffins are produced.

Approximate values per muffin: **Calories** 290, **Total fat** 17 g, **Saturated fat** 10 g, **Cholesterol** 70 mg, **Sodium** 260 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 31 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Vitamin A** 15%

1. Creaming the butter and sugar.

2. Adding the sour cream.

3. Topping the muffins with streusel.

RECIPE 30.4

STREUSEL TOPPING

Yield: 3 lb. 8 oz. (1.5 kg)

All-purpose flour	8 oz.	225g
Cinnamon, ground	1/4 oz.	7 g
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Brown sugar	8 oz.	225 g
Granulated sugar	1 lb. 8 oz.	680 g
Whole butter, cold	1 lb. 4 oz.	560 g

1. Combine all dry ingredients. Cut in the butter until the mixture is coarse and crumbly.
2. Sprinkle on top of muffins or quick breads prior to baking. Streusel topping will keep for several weeks under refrigeration.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving. **Calories** 200, **Total fat** 8 g, **Saturated fat** 5 g, **Cholesterol** 20 mg, **Sodium** 130 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 29 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Vitamin A** 8%. **Claims**—low sodium

Griddlecakes

Griddlecakes or griddle breads, such as pancakes and waffles, are actually a type of quick bread. They are usually leavened with baking soda or baking powder and are quickly cooked on a very hot griddle or waffle iron with very little fat. Griddlecakes should be more than just an excuse for eating butter and maple syrup, however. They should have a rich flavor and a light, tender, moist interior.

Pancake and waffle batters may be flavored with tangy buckwheat flour, fruits, whole grains or nuts. Both pancakes and waffles are usually served with plain or flavored butter and fruit compote or syrup.

Waffles must be cooked in a special waffle iron. This gives the cakes a distinctive gridlike pattern and crisp texture. Electric waffle irons are available with square, round and even heart-shaped molds. The grids should be seasoned well, then never washed. (Follow the manufacturer's directions for seasoning.) Crispy Belgian waffles are made in a waffle iron with extra deep grids. They are served for breakfast or as a dessert, topped with fresh fruit, whipped cream or ice cream.

PROCEDURE FOR MAKING PANCAKES

1. Prepare the batter.
2. Heat a flat griddle or large sauté pan over moderately high heat. Add clarified butter.
3. Portion the pancake batter onto the hot griddle using a portion scoop, ladle or adjustable batter dispenser. Pour the portioned batter in one spot; it should spread into an even circle. Drop the batter so that no two pancakes will touch after the batter spreads.

4. Cook until bubbles appear on the surface and the bottom of the cake is set and golden brown. Flip the pancake using an offset spatula.
5. Cook the pancake until the second side is golden brown. Avoid flipping the pancake more than once as this causes it to deflate.

RECIPE 30.5

Buttermilk Pancakes

Yield: 24 Pancakes

Flour	1 lb.	450 g
Granulated sugar	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Baking powder	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Salt	1 1/2 tsp.	7 ml
Buttermilk	1 1/2 pt.	750 ml
Unsalted butter, melted	2 oz.	60 g
Eggs, beaten	3	3

1. Sift the flour, sugar, baking powder and salt together.
2. Combine the liquid ingredients and add them to the dry ingredients. Mix just until the ingredients are combined.
3. If the griddle is not well seasoned, coat it lightly with clarified butter. Once its temperature reaches 375°F (190°C), drop the batter onto it in 2-ounce (60-gram) portions using a ladle, portion scoop or batter portioner.
4. When bubbles appear on the pancake's surface and the bottom is browned, flip the pancake to finish cooking.

Approximate values per pancake: **Calories** 110, **Total fat** 3 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 35 mg, **Sodium** 140 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 17 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Claims**—low fat

Table 30.1 Troubleshooting Chart

Problem	Cause	Solution
Soapy or bitter flavor	Chemical leaveners not properly mixed into batter	Sift chemicals with dry ingredients
	Too much baking soda	Adjust formula
Elongated holes (tunneling)	Overmixing	Do not mix until smooth; mix only until moistened
Crust too thick	Too much sugar	Adjust formula
	Oven temperature too low	Adjust oven
Flat top with only a small peak in center	Oven temperature too low	Adjust oven
Cracked, uneven top	Oven temperature too high	Adjust oven
No rise; dense product	Old batter	Bake promptly
	Damaged leavening agents	Store new chemicals properly
	Overmixing	Do not overmix

Conclusion

First you must master the three mixing methods used in producing quick breads (biscuit, muffin and creaming) and understand the interaction between chemical leaveners and other ingredients. Then, with an imaginative use of flavoring ingredients, you can successfully produce a wide array of fresh-baked breads for almost any food service operation.

Questions for Discussion

1. Name two chemical leavening agents, and explain how they cause batters and doughs to rise.
2. List three common methods used for mixing quick breads. What is the significance of the type of fat used for each of these mixing methods?
3. What is the most likely explanation for discolored and bitter-tasting biscuits? What is the solution?
4. Describe the resulting product when muffin batter has been overmixed.

Additional Quick Bread Formulas

RECIPE 30.6

Cream Scones

Yield: 24 Scones — Method: Biscuit

All-purpose flour	1 lb.	450 g
Granulated sugar	1 1/2 oz.	45 g
Baking powder	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Baking soda	1 tsp.	5 ml
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Unsalted butter, cold	4 oz.	120 g
Egg yolks	2	2
Half-and-half	11 oz.	330 ml

1. Combine all ingredients using the biscuit method.
2. Roll out the dough to a thickness of approximately 1/2 inch (1.25 centimeters). Cut as desired.
3. Bake at 400°F (200°C) for approximately 10 minutes.
4. Brush the tops with butter while hot.

Variations: One-half cup (125 milliliters) raisins, sultanas or currants may be added to the dry ingredients.

Approximate values per scone: **Calories** 130, **Total fat** 6 g, **Saturated fat** 3.5 g, **Cholesterol** 35 mg, **Sodium** 160 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 17 g, **Protein** 3 g

RECIPE 30.7

SHORTCAKES

Yield: 48 Large Pieces — Method: Biscuit

All-purpose flour	4 lb.	1.8 kg
Baking powder	3 3/4 oz.	110 g
Salt	2 tsp.	10 ml
Granulated sugar	13 oz.	390 g
Unsalted butter, cold	1 lb. 12 oz.	840 g
Eggs	7	7
Milk	18 oz.	540 ml
Whole butter, melted	as needed	as needed
Granulated sugar	as needed	as needed

1. Combine all ingredients using the biscuit method.
2. Cut into 3-inch (7.5–centimeter) circles and space 2 inches (5 centimeters) apart on a paper-lined sheet pan.
3. Bake at 400°F (200°C) until lightly browned, approximately 15–18 minutes.
4. Remove from the oven and brush the tops with melted butter, then sprinkle with granulated sugar.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (82-g) serving: **Calories** 310, **Total fat** 15 g, **Saturated fat** 9 g, **Cholesterol** 65 mg, **Sodium** 250 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 38 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin A** 15%

RECIPE 30.8

FRESH STRAWBERRY SHORTCAKE

THE FOUR SEASONS, NEW YORK, NY

Yield: 6 Servings — Method: Biscuit

Flour	10 oz.	300 g
Salt	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Sugar	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Baking powder	1/2 Tbsp.	7 ml
Unsalted butter, cold	2 1/2 oz.	75 g
Shortening	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Zest of one orange		
Milk	2 oz.	60 g
Egg	1	1
Vanilla extract	1 tsp.	5 ml
Heavy cream	1 pt.	450 ml
Confectioner's sugar	3 oz.	90 g
Fresh strawberries, sliced	3 pt.	1350 ml

1. Combine the dry ingredients. Add the butter and shortening and cut in until the mixture looks like cornmeal. Add the orange zest.
2. Combine the milk, egg and vanilla and add to the dry ingredients. Turn out the dough on a board and knead a few times.

3. Divide the dough into six portions. Shape each portion into a circle with your hands. Bake at 450°F (230°C) until lightly browned, about 12–15 minutes. Cool on a rack.
4. Whip the cream with 2 ounces (60 grams) of confectioner's sugar. Split the shortcakes in the middle and fill with the whipped cream and strawberries. Sprinkle confectioner's sugar on top and serve with strawberry sauce.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 710, **Total fat** 44 g, **Saturated fat** 25 g, **Cholesterol** 165 mg, **Sodium** 240 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 71 g, **Protein** 9 g, **Vitamin A** 45%, **Vitamin C** 140%

RECIPE 30.9

Basic Berry Muffins

STOUFFER STANFORD COURT HOTEL, SAN FRANCISCO, CA
former Chef Ercolino Crugnale

Yield: 60 Muffins		Method: Muffin
Eggs	8	8
Heavy cream	1 qt.	1 lt
Lemon zest, finely grated	from 2 lemons	from 2 lemons
Nutmeg, ground	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Granulated sugar	1 lb. 4 oz.	600 g
Baking powder	6 Tbsp.	90 ml
Cake flour	3 lb.	1.3 kg
Kosher salt	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Berries or nuts*	1 to 1 1/2 qt.	1 to 1.5 lt
Unsalted butter, melted	1 lb.	450 g

1. Whip the eggs, cream and zest together by hand.
2. Sift the dry ingredients together. Add the berries or nuts, tossing to coat them evenly with the flour mixture.
3. Add the dry ingredients to the egg mixture and stir until about two-thirds mixed. Add the melted butter and finish mixing.
4. Portion into greased muffin tins and bake at 375°F (190°C) for approximately 15–18 minutes.

Approximate values per muffin: **Calories** 260, **Total fat** 13 g, **Saturated fat** 8 g, **Cholesterol** 70 mg, **Sodium** 135 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 31 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Vitamin A** 15%, **Claims**—low sodium

*Blueberries, blackberries, raspberries, chopped pecans or walnuts may be used, as desired.

RECIPE 30.10

Morning Glory Muffins

Yield: 18 Muffins		Method: Muffin
All-purpose flour	1 lb.	450 g
Granulated sugar	18 oz.	530 g
Baking soda	4 tsp.	20 ml

Continued

Cinnamon, ground	4 tsp.	20 ml
Carrots, grated	14 oz.	420 g
Raisins	6 oz.	180 g
Pecan pieces	4 oz.	120 g
Coconut, shredded	4 oz.	120 g
Apple, unpeeled, grated	6 oz.	180 g
Eggs	6	6
Corn oil	12 oz.	360 ml
Vanilla extract	4 tsp.	20 ml

1. Sift the dry ingredients together and set aside.
2. Combine the carrots, raisins, pecans, coconut and apple.
3. Whisk together the eggs, oil and vanilla.
4. Toss the carrot mixture into the dry ingredients. Then add the liquid ingredients, stirring just until combined.
5. Bake in well-greased muffin tins at 350°F (170°C) until done, approximately 25 minutes.

Approximate values per muffin: **Calories** 520, **Total fat** 27 g, **Saturated fat** 5 g, **Cholesterol** 70 mg, **Sodium** 310 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 63 g, **Protein** 6 g, **Vitamin A**, 45% **Claims**—good source of fiber

RECIPE 30.11

Basic Bran Muffins

Yield: 24 Muffins — Method: Muffin

Toasted wheat bran	6 oz.	180 g
All-purpose flour	12 oz.	360 g
Granulated sugar	4 oz.	120 g
Baking powder	4 tsp.	20 ml
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Milk	12 oz.	360 ml
Honey	3 oz.	90 g
Molasses	3 oz.	90 g
Eggs	2	2
Vanilla extract	1 tsp.	5 ml
Unsalted butter, melted	4 oz.	120 g

1. Combine all ingredients using the muffin method.
2. Scoop into greased or paper-lined muffin tins. Bake at 350°F (170°C) until lightly brown and firm, approximately 20 minutes.

Variations: Up to 6 ounces (180 grams) of raisins or chopped nuts may be added to the batter if desired.

Approximate values per muffin: **Calories** 170, **Total fat** 5 g, **Saturated fat** 2.5 g, **Cholesterol** 30 mg, **Sodium** 110 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 26 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Claims**—low sodium; good source of fiber

RECIPE 30.12

ZUCCHINI BREAD

Yield: 2 9 in. × 5 in. (24 cm × 12 cm) Loaves — Method: Muffin

Whole eggs	3	3
Corn oil	8 oz.	225 ml
Granulated sugar	1 lb. 2 oz.	510 g
Vanilla extract	1 tsp.	5 ml
Cinnamon, ground	2 tsp.	10 ml
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Baking soda	1 tsp.	5 ml
Baking powder	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
All-purpose flour	14 oz.	420 g
Zucchini, coarsely grated	11 oz.	330 g
Pecans, chopped	4 oz.	120 g

1. Combine all ingredients using the muffin method.
2. Bake in two greased loaf pans at 350°F (170°C), approximately 1 hour.

Approximate values per 2-oz. (67-g) serving: **Calories** 260, **Total fat** 16 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 30 mg, **Sodium** 190 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 27 g, **Protein** 2 g

RECIPE 30.13

IRISH SODA BREAD

Yield: 1 8-in. (20-cm) Round Loaf — Method: Muffin

Currants	2 oz.	60 g
Irish whiskey	1 1/2 oz.	45 ml
All-purpose flour, sifted	12 oz.	360 g
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Baking powder	1 1/2 tsp.	7 ml
Baking soda	1 tsp.	5 ml
Brown sugar	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Lowfat buttermilk	1 pt.	500 ml

1. Soak the currants in the whiskey until plump, at least 1 hour.
2. Sift the dry ingredients together. Stir in the currants and whiskey.
3. Stir in the buttermilk, making a stiff batter.
4. Spread the batter in a greased 8-inch round cake pan. Bake at 350°F (170°C) until well browned and firm, approximately 45 minutes.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (90-g) serving: **Calories** 150, **Total fat** 1 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 480 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 31 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Calcium** 10%, **Claims**—low fat; no cholesterol; no saturated fat

RECIPE 30.14

Basic Corn Muffins

Yield: 30 Muffins — Method: Muffin

Yellow cornmeal	12 oz.	350 g
All-purpose flour	12 oz.	350 g
Granulated sugar	10 oz.	300 g
Baking powder	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Baking soda	1 tsp.	5 ml
Salt	3/4 tsp.	3 ml
Buttermilk	24 oz.	720 ml
Eggs	6	6
Unsalted butter, melted	6 oz.	170 g

1. Combine all ingredients using the muffin method.
2. Portion into greased muffin tins, filling two-thirds full.
3. Bake at 375°F (190°C) until done, approximately 20–25 minutes.

Approximate values per muffin: **Calories** 180, **Total fat** 6 g, **Saturated fat** 3.5 g, **Cholesterol** 55 mg, **Sodium** 140 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 28 g, **Protein** 4 g

RECIPE 30.15

Hush Puppies (Deep-Fried Cornbread)

Yield: 60 2-in. (5-cm) Pieces — Method: Muffin

Yellow cornmeal	1 lb.	450 g
All-purpose flour	8 oz.	225 g
Baking powder	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Salt	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Black pepper	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Granulated sugar	2 oz.	60 g
Onion, minced	8 oz.	225 g
Eggs	4	4
Milk	1 pt.	450 ml

1. Combine all ingredients using the muffin method.
2. Drop small scoops (using a #60 or #70 portion scoop) into 375°F (190°C) deep fat. Using the swimming method, deep-fry until golden brown.
3. Remove from the fat and drain. Serve immediately.

Approximate values per piece: **Calories** 70, **Total fat** 3 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 5 mg, **Sodium** 120 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 10 g, **Protein** 1 g

RECIPE 30.16

Blue Corn Muffins

Yield: 60 Muffins — Method: Creaming

All-purpose shortening	1 lb.	450 g
Granulated sugar	1 lb. 8 oz.	680 g

Blue cornmeal	1 lb.	450 g
Whole eggs	1 pt.	450 ml
All-purpose flour	2 lb.	900 g
Baking powder	1 1/4 oz.	35 g
Salt	1 1/2 oz.	45 g
Vanilla extract	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Honey	12 oz.	340 g
Buttermilk	1 qt.	1 lt

1. Using a mixer fitted with the paddle attachment, cream the shortening, sugar and cornmeal until light and fluffy. Add the eggs. Mix on low speed for 1 minute.
2. Sift the remaining dry ingredients together. Stir the vanilla and honey into the buttermilk.
3. Add the dry ingredients and buttermilk mixture, alternately, to the creamed mixture. Mix on low speed for 2 minutes, scraping down the bowl as necessary.
4. Portion into well-greased muffin pans. Bake at 325°F (160°C) until done, approximately 15 minutes.

Approximate values per muffin: **Calories** 230, **Total fat** 9 g, **Saturated fat** 2.5 g, **Cholesterol** 25 mg, **Sodium** 310 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 35 g, **Protein** 4 g

NOTE: Blue cornmeal is derived from variegated Indian corn. Its natural blue-gray color is a result of a high lysine content. Blue corn has a stronger flavor than white or yellow corn and is popular in southwestern cuisine.

RECIPE 30.17

LEMON TEA BREAD

Yield: 12 Muffins or 1 Loaf

Method: Creaming

Unsalted butter, softened	3 oz.	90 g
Granulated sugar	10 oz.	300 g
Eggs	2	2
Milk	4 oz.	120 ml
All-purpose flour	6 oz.	180 g
Baking powder	1 tsp.	5 ml
Salt	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Lemon zest	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Lemon juice	4 oz.	120 ml

1. Cream the butter with 7 ounces (210 grams) of the sugar. Add the eggs and milk. Mix well.
2. Sift the flour, baking powder and salt together and add to the butter mixture. Fold in the lemon zest. Portion into lightly greased pans.
3. Bake at 350° (170°C) until tester comes out clean, approximately 35–40 minutes for a large loaf or 12–15 minutes for muffins. Remove the bread from the pan(s) and place on a cooling rack.

Continued

4. Combine the remaining 3 ounces (85 grams) of sugar with the lemon juice. Heat until the sugar dissolves and the mixture is hot. Slowly pour or brush the glaze over the hot bread.

Approximate values per muffin: **Calories** 220, **Total fat** 7 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 50 mg, **Sodium** 115 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 36 g, **Protein** 3 g

RECIPE 30.18

Sour Cream Coffeecake

Yield: 1 10-in. (25-cm) Tube Cake Method: Creaming

Filling:		
All-purpose flour	1 1/2 Tbsp.	20 ml
Cinnamon, ground	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Brown sugar	6 oz.	180 g
Pecans, chopped	4 oz.	120 g
Unsalted butter, melted	1 oz.	30 g
Unsalted butter	4 oz.	120 g
Granulated sugar	8 oz.	225 g
Eggs	2	2
Sour cream	8 oz.	225 g
Cake flour, sifted	7 oz.	210 g
Salt	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Baking powder	1 tsp.	5 ml
Baking soda	1 tsp.	5 ml
Vanilla extract	1 tsp.	5 ml

1. To make the filling, blend all the filling ingredients together in a small bowl. Set aside.
2. To make the cake batter, cream the butter and sugar. Add the eggs, one at a time, beating well after each addition. Add the sour cream. Stir until smooth.
3. Sift the presifted flour, salt, baking powder and baking soda together twice. Stir into the batter. Stir in the vanilla extract.
4. Spoon half of the batter into a greased tube pan. Top with half of the filling. Cover the filling with the remaining batter and top with the remaining filling. Bake at 350°F (180°C) for 35 minutes.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 490, **Total fat** 26 g, **Saturated fat** 11 g, **Cholesterol** 85 mg, **Sodium** 220 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 59 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin A** 15%

CHAPTER 31

YEAST BREADS

ZWILLING
J.A.HENCKELS
SOLINGEN GERMANY
VIER STERNE MESSER
FRIODUR

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- select and use yeast
- perform the 10 steps involved in yeast bread production
- mix yeast doughs using the straight dough method and sponge method
- prepare rolled-in doughs

Although few baked goods intimidate novice bakers as much as yeast breads, few baked goods are actually as forgiving or as comforting to prepare as yeast breads. By mastering a few basic procedures and techniques, you can offer your customers delicious, fresh yeast products.

Yeast breads can be divided into two categories: lean doughs and rich doughs. Lean doughs, such as those used for French and Italian breads, contain little or no sugar or fat. Rich doughs, such as brioche and some multigrain breads, contain significantly more sugar and fat. Rolled-in doughs, so-called because the fat is rolled into the dough in layers, are a type of rich dough used for baked goods such as croissants and sweetened danish.

The study of yeast breads could well occupy this entire text and an entire course. The focus here is narrowed to an understanding of fundamental techniques and procedures for making the most common styles of yeast breads for a small retail shop or restaurant. Most of the formulas in this chapter yield only one or two loaves or a few dozen rolls. Although most of these formulas can be increased successfully if necessary, you can best develop proper judgment skills by first preparing small quantities. We discuss hands-on mixing and makeup techniques, leaving the science of commercial (that is, mechanical) bread production to others.

YEAST

Yeast is a living organism: a one-celled fungus. Various strains of yeast are present virtually everywhere. Yeast feeds on carbohydrates, converting them to carbon dioxide and alcohol in an organic process known as **fermentation**.

Fermentation—*the process by which yeast converts sugar into alcohol and carbon dioxide; it also refers to the time that yeast dough is left to rise—that is, the time it takes for carbon dioxide gas cells to form and become trapped in the gluten network.*

Yeast + Carbohydrates = Alcohol + Carbon Dioxide

When yeast releases carbon dioxide gas during bread making, the gas becomes trapped in the dough's gluten network. The trapped gas leavens the bread, providing the desired rise and texture. The small amount of alcohol produced by fermentation evaporates during baking.

As with most living things, yeast is very sensitive to temperature. It prefers temperatures between 90°F and 110°F (32°C–43°C). At temperatures below 34°F (2°C), it becomes dormant; above 138°F (59°C), it dies.

Salt is used in bread making because it conditions gluten, making it stronger and more elastic. Salt also affects yeast fermentation. Because salt inhibits the growth of yeast, it helps control the dough's rise. Too little salt and not only will the bread taste bland, it will rise too rapidly. Too much salt, however, and the yeast will be destroyed. By learning to control the amount of food for the yeast and the temperatures of fermentation, you can learn to control the texture of your yeast-leavened products.

TABLE 31.1 TEMPERATURES FOR YEAST DEVELOPMENT

Temperature		Yeast Development
34°F	2°C	Inactive
60–70°F	16–21°C	Slow action
70–90°F	21–32°C	Best temperature for growth of fresh yeast
105–115°F	41–46°C	Best temperature for growth of dry yeast
125–130°F	52–54°C	Best temperature for activating instant yeast
138°F	59°C	Yeast dies

Types of Yeast

Baker's yeast is available in two forms: compressed and active dry. (You may also encounter a product called brewer's yeast; it is a nutritional supplement with no leavening ability.)

Compressed Yeast

Compressed yeast is a mixture of yeast and starch with a moisture content of approximately 70%. Also referred to as **fresh yeast**, compressed yeast must be kept refrigerated. It should be creamy white and crumbly with a fresh, yeasty smell. Do not use compressed yeast that has developed a sour odor, brown color or slimy film.

Compressed yeast is available in 0.6-ounce (17-gram) cubes and 1-pound (450-gram) blocks. Under proper storage conditions, compressed yeast has a shelf life of 2–3 weeks.

Compressed Yeast

Active Dry Yeast

Active dry yeast differs from compressed yeast in that virtually all the moisture has been removed by hot air. The absence of moisture renders the organism dormant and allows the yeast to be stored without refrigeration for several months. When preparing doughs, dry yeast is generally rehydrated in a lukewarm (approximately 110°F [43°C]) liquid before being added to the other ingredients.

Dry yeast is available in 1/4-ounce (7-gram) packages and 1- or 2-pound (450-gram or 1-kilogram) vacuum-sealed bags. It should be stored in a cool, dry place and refrigerated after opening.

Dry Yeast

Instant Yeast

Instant or **quick-rise dry yeast** is also available. It must be blended with the dry ingredients in a bread formula, then activated with hot (approximately 125°F–130°F [52°C–54°C]) water. It dramatically speeds the rising process. Instant yeast can be substituted measure for measure for regular dry yeast. Instant yeast is still a living organism and will be destroyed at temperatures above 138°F (59°C).

The flavors of dry and compressed yeasts are virtually indistinguishable, but dry yeast is approximately twice as strong. Because too much yeast can ruin bread, always remember to halve the specified weight of compressed yeast when substituting dry yeast in a formula. Likewise, if a formula specifies dry yeast, double the amount when substituting compressed yeast. All the formulas in this text requiring yeast use regular active dry yeast.

Sourdough Starter

Prior to commercial yeast production, bakers relied on starters to leaven their breads. Early starters were simple but magical mixtures of flour and liquid (water, potato broth, milk) left to capture wild yeasts from the air and then ferment. Only a portion of the starter was used at a time. The rest was kept for later use, replenished periodically with additional flour and liquid so that the magic could continue.

Today, starters are generally fortified with yeast to provide consistency and reliability; they are prized for the unique, sour flavors they impart. Prepared dry cultures are often used commercially to give bread a "sourdough" flavor without requiring the time and space necessary to develop and maintain an active starter.

Sourdough Starter

RECIPE 31.1

SOURDOUGH STARTER

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Active dry yeast	1 tsp.	5 ml
Water, warm	4 oz.	120 ml
Water, room temperature	14 oz.	400 ml
All-purpose flour	2 lb.	1 kg

1. Combine the yeast and warm water. Let stand until foamy, approximately 10 minutes.
2. Stir in the 14 ounces (400 grams) of room-temperature water, then add the flour, 2 ounces (60 grams) at a time.
3. Blend by hand or with the paddle attachment of an electric mixer on low speed for 2 minutes.
4. Place the starter in a warmed bowl and cover with plastic wrap. Let stand at room temperature overnight. The starter should triple in volume but still be wet and sticky. Refrigerate until ready to use.
5. Each time a portion of the starter is used, it must be replenished. To replenish the starter, stir in equal amounts by volume of flour and warm water. Then allow the mixture to ferment at room temperature for several hours or overnight before refrigerating.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g): **Calories** 100, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 22 g, **Protein** 3 g

NOTE: If liquid rises to the top of the starter, it should be stirred back into the mixture. If the starter develops a pink or yellow film, it has been contaminated and must be discarded.

PRODUCTION STAGES FOR YEAST BREADS

The production of yeast breads can be divided into 10 stages:

1. Scaling the ingredients
2. Mixing and kneading the dough
3. Fermenting the dough

4. Punching down the dough
5. Portioning the dough
6. Rounding the portions
7. Shaping the portions
8. Proofing the products
9. Baking the products
10. Cooling and storing the finished products

Stage 1: Scaling the Ingredients

As with any other bakeshop product, it is important to scale or measure ingredients accurately when making a yeast bread. Be sure that all necessary ingredients are available and at the proper temperature before starting.

The amount of flour required in a yeast bread may vary depending upon the humidity level, storage conditions of the flour and the accuracy with which other ingredients are measured. The amount of flour stated in most formulas is to be used as a guide; experience teaches when more or less flour is actually needed.

Stage 2: Mixing and Kneading the Dough

The way ingredients are combined affects the outcome of the bread. A dough must be mixed properly in order to combine the ingredients uniformly, distribute the yeast and develop the gluten. If the dough is not mixed properly, the bread's texture and shape suffer.

Yeast breads are usually mixed by either the **straight dough method** or the **sponge method**. A third method used for rich, flaky doughs is discussed later in the section on **rolled-in doughs**.

Once ingredients are combined, the dough must be kneaded to develop gluten, the network of proteins that gives a bread its shape and texture. Kneading can be done by hand or by an electric mixer with its dough hook

The Rise of Yeast Breads

How and when the first yeast-leavened breads came into being no one knows. Perhaps some wild yeasts—the world is full of them—drifted into a dough as it awaited baking. Perhaps some ancient baker substituted fermented ale or beer for water one day. In any case, the resulting bread was different, lighter and more appetizing.

Based on models, images and writings found in excavated tombs, we can be fairly certain that the ancient Egyptians saved a bit of fermented dough from one day's baking to add to the next day's. This use of sourdough starter continues today, enjoying widespread popularity.

Other cultures developed their own leavening methods. The Greeks and Romans prepared a wheat porridge with wine, which caused their doughs to ferment. The Gauls and Iberians added the foamy head from ale to their doughs. Both methods resulted in lighter breads that retained their fresh textures longer.

Since ancient times, bread baking has been one of the first household tasks readily turned over to professionals. The first cooks to work outside homes during the Greek and Roman empires were bakers. The bakery trade flourished during the Middle Ages, with a wide variety of breads being produced. Yeast-leavened breads remained the exception, not the norm, until well into the 17th century, however.

The first real collection of bread recipes is found in Nicolas Bonnefon's *Les Délices de la campagne*, published in 1654. Bonnefon's instructions, meant for those dissatisfied with commercial products of the time, included the use of beer yeast. By the end of the 17th century, published works included recipes for breads leavened with sourdough starter and the yeasts used in breweries.

Louis Pasteur finally identified yeast as a living organism in 1857. Soon after, a process for distilling or manufacturing baker's yeast was developed. By 1868, commercial baking yeast was available in stores.

attachment. Dough should be kneaded until it is smooth and moderately elastic. The presence of a few blisterlike air bubbles on the dough's surface also signals that kneading is complete. Because fat and sugar slow gluten development, rich, sweet doughs are generally kneaded longer than lean doughs. Overkneading results in dough that is, at best, difficult to shape and, in extreme cases, sticky and inelastic. Overkneading is rarely a problem, however, except when using a high-speed mixer or food processor.

Procedure for Kneading Dough by Hand

1. First, bring a portion of the dough toward you.

2. Then push the dough away from you with your fist.

3. Repeat until the dough is properly kneaded.

Straight Dough Method

The simplest and most common method for mixing yeast doughs is known as the straight dough method. With this method, all ingredients are simply combined and mixed. The yeast may or may not be combined first with a warm liquid. Be careful that the temperature of the liquid ingredients does not exceed 138°F (59°C) or the yeast will die.

Once the ingredients are combined, the dough is kneaded until it is smooth and elastic. Kneading time varies according to the kneading method used and the type of dough being produced. The straight dough method is illustrated with Recipe 31.2, Soft Yeast Dinner Rolls.

Sponge Method

The sponge method of mixing yeast doughs has two stages. During the first stage the yeast, liquid and approximately half the flour are combined to make a thick batter known as a **sponge**. The sponge is allowed to rise until bubbly and doubled in size. During the second stage, the fat, salt, sugar and remaining flour are added. The dough is kneaded and allowed to rise again. These

two fermentations give sponge method breads a somewhat different flavor and a lighter texture than breads made with the straight dough method.

Do not confuse sponge method breads with sourdough starters. The sponge method is most often used to improve the texture of heavy doughs such as rye. Unlike a sourdough starter, the first-stage sponge is prepared only for the specific formula and is not reserved for later use. The sponge method is illustrated with Recipe 31.3, Light Rye Bread.

Stage 3: Fermenting the Dough

As mentioned earlier, fermentation is the process by which yeast converts sugar into alcohol and carbon dioxide. Fermentation also refers to the time that yeast dough is left to rise—that is, the time it takes for carbon dioxide gas to form and become trapped in the gluten network. Note that **fermentation** refers to the rise given to the entire mass of yeast dough, while **proofing** refers to the rise given to shaped yeast products just prior to baking.

For fermentation, place the kneaded dough into a lightly oiled container large enough to allow the dough to expand. The surface of the dough may be oiled to prevent drying. Cover the dough and place it in a warm place—that is, at temperatures between 75°F and 85°F (24°C–29°C). It is better to allow the dough to rise slowly in a cool place than to rush fermentation.

Fermentation is complete when the dough has approximately doubled in size and no longer springs back when pressed gently with two fingers. The time necessary varies depending on the type of dough, the temperature of the room and the temperature of the dough.

Stage 4: Punching Down the Dough

After fermentation, the dough is gently folded down to expel and redistribute the gas pockets with a technique known as **punching down**. Punching down dough also helps even out the dough's temperature and relaxes the gluten.

Stage 5: Portioning the Dough

The dough is now ready to be divided into portions. For loaves, the dough is scaled to the desired weight. For individual rolls, you can first shape the dough into an even log, then cut off portions with a chef's knife or dough cutter. Weighing the cut dough pieces on a portion scale ensures even-sized portions. When portioning, work quickly and keep the dough covered to prevent it from drying out.

Stage 6: Rounding the Portions

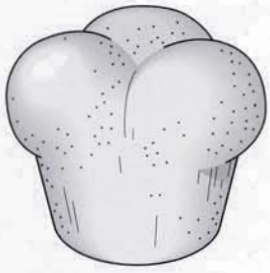
The portions of dough must be shaped into smooth, round balls in a technique known as **rounding**. Rounding stretches the outside layer of gluten into a smooth coating. This helps hold in gases and makes it easier to shape the dough. Unrounded rolls rise unevenly and have a rough, lumpy surface.

Stage 7: Shaping the Portions

Lean doughs and some rich doughs can be shaped into a variety of forms: large loaves, small loaves, free-form or country-style rounds or individual din-

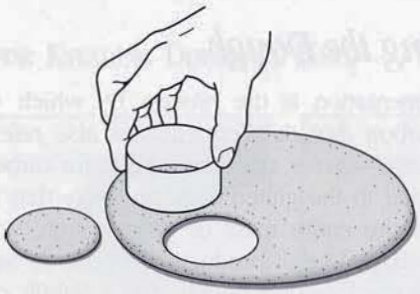
ner rolls. Table 31.2 identifies common pan sizes and the approximate weight of the dough used to fill them. Some shaping techniques are diagramed here. Other doughs, particularly brioche, croissant and danish, are usually shaped in very specific ways. Those techniques are discussed and illustrated with their specific formulas.

1. Divide each portion of dough into three equal parts and shape into balls. Place three balls in each greased muffin tin. Proof.

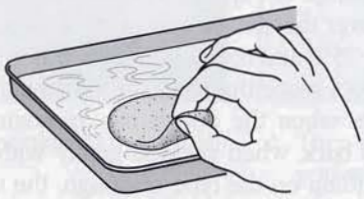


2. The baked cloverleaf roll.

FIGURE 31.1 *Cloverleaf Rolls*



1. Roll dough 1/2 inch (1.25 centimeters) thick and cut into circles. Knead and reroll trimmings.



2. Dip one side of each circle in melted butter.

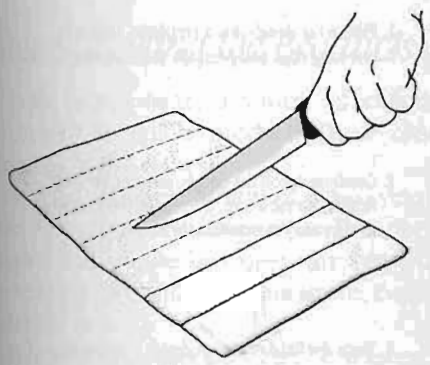
3. Fold in half, with buttered side in. Place close together in baking sheet. Proof.

FIGURE 31.2 *Parker House Rolls*

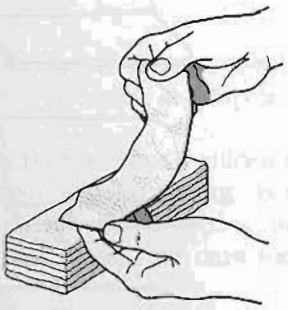
TABLE 31.2 PAN SIZES

Pan	Approximate Size	Weight of Dough*
Sandwich Loaf	16 in. × 4 in. × 4 1/2 in.	4 lb.
Pullman	13 in. × 4 in. × 3 in.	3 lb.
Large	9 in. × 5 in. × 3 in.	2 lb.
Medium	8 in. × 4 in. × 2 in.	1 lb. 8 oz.
Small	7 in. × 3 in. × 2 in.	1 lb.
Miniature	5 in. × 3 in. × 2 in.	8 oz.

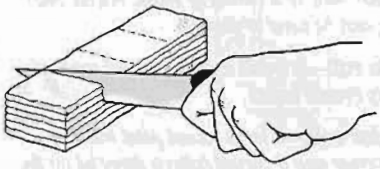
*Weights given are approximate; variations may occur based on the type of dough used as well as the temperature and time of proofing.

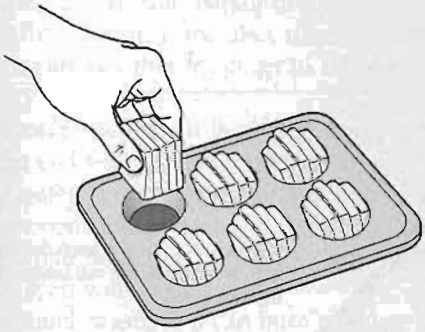


1. Roll dough into a thin rectangle. Brush with melted butter and cut into 1½-inch (3.75-centimeter) wide strips.

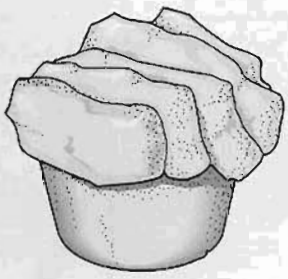


2. Stack six or seven strips together, then cut into slices.





3. Place each slice into a greased muffin tin, cut side up. Proof.



4. The baked butterflake roll.

FIGURE 31.3 *Butterflake Rolls*

Shape the dough into a rope then twist to form a single knot. Place on a baking sheet. Proof.

FIGURE 31.4 *Bow Knot Rolls*

Bagel—*a dense, donut-shaped yeast roll; it is cooked in boiling water, then baked, which gives it a shiny glaze and chewy texture.*

Bunŏ—*any of a variety of small, round yeast rolls; can be sweet or savory.*

Club roll—*a small oval-shaped roll made of crusty French bread.*

Kaiser roll—*a large round yeast roll with a crisp crust and a curved pattern stamped on the top; used primarily for sandwiches.*

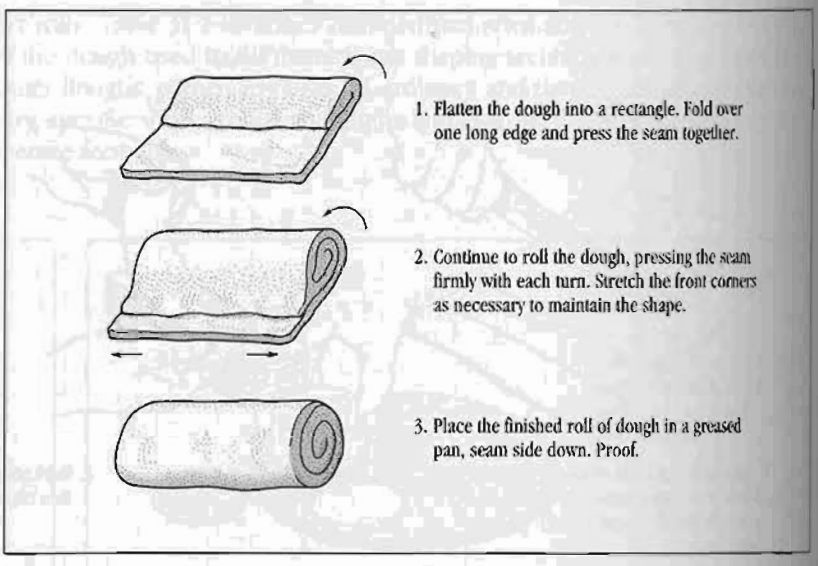


FIGURE 31.5 *Pan Loaves*

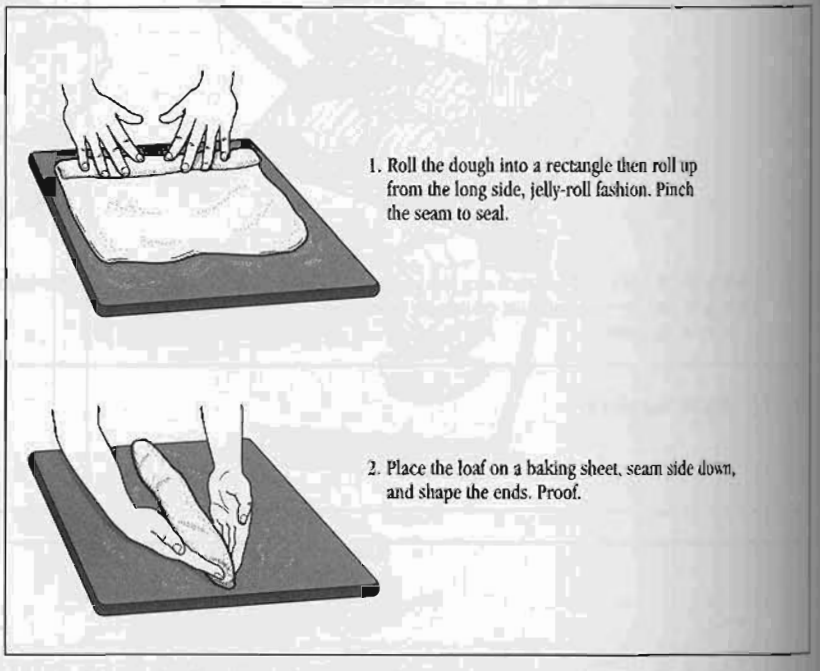


FIGURE 31.6 *Free-Form Loaves*

Stage 8: Proofing the Products

Proofing is the final rise of shaped or panned yeast products before baking. The temperature should be between 95°F and 115°F (35°C–46°C), slightly higher than the temperature for fermentation. Some humidity is also desirable to prevent the dough from drying or forming a crust. Temperature and humidity can be controlled with a special cabinet known as a **proof box**.

Proofing should continue until the product doubles in size and springs back slowly when lightly touched. Underproofing results in poor volume and tex-

ture. Overproofing results in a sour flavor, poor volume and a paler color after baking.

Stage 9: Baking the Products

As yeast breads bake, a variety of chemical and physical changes turn the dough into an edible product. These changes are discussed in Chapter 29, Principles of the Bakeshop.

Because of the expansion of gases, yeast products experience a sudden rise when first placed in a hot oven. This rise is known as **oven spring**. As the dough's temperature increases, the yeast dies, the gluten fibers become firm, the starches gelatinize, the moisture evaporates and, finally, the crust forms and turns brown.

Before baking, products can be washed and then, if desired, slashed.

Washes

The appearance of yeast breads can be altered by applying a glaze or **wash** to the dough before baking. The crust is made shiny or matte, hard or soft, darker or lighter by the proper use of washes. Washes are also used to attach seeds, wheat germ, oats or other toppings to the dough's surface.

The most commonly used wash is an egg wash, composed of whole egg and water. Yeast products can also be topped with plain water, a mixture of egg and milk, plain milk or richer glazes containing sugar and flavorings. Even a light dusting of white flour can be used to top dough. (This is commonly seen with potato rolls.)

Avoid using too much wash, as it can burn or cause the product to stick to the pan. Puddles or streaks of egg wash on the dough will cause uneven browning.

Washes may be applied before or after proofing. If applied after proofing, be extremely careful not to deflate the product.

Occasionally, a formula will specify that melted butter or oil be brushed on the product after baking. Do not, however, apply egg washes to already baked products, as the egg will remain raw and the desired effect will not be achieved.

TABLE 31.3 WASHES FOR YEAST PRODUCTS

Wash	Use
Whole egg and water	Shine and color
Whole egg and milk	Shine and color with a soft crust
Egg white and water	Shine with a firm crust
Water	Crisp crust
Flour	Texture and contrast
Milk or cream	Color with a soft crust

Slashing

The shape and appearance of some breads can be improved by cutting their tops with a sharp knife or razor just before baking. This is referred to as **slashing** or **docking**. Hard-crusted breads are usually slashed to allow for continued rising and the escape of gases after the crust has formed. Breads that are not properly slashed will burst or break along the sides. Slashing can also be used to make an attractive design on the product's surface.

Steam Injection

The crisp crust desired for certain breads and rolls is achieved by introducing moisture into the oven during baking. Professional bakers' ovens have built-in steam injection jets to provide moisture as needed. To create steam in any oven, you can spray or mist the bread with water several times during baking, place ice cubes on the oven floor to melt or keep a pan of hot water on the oven's lowest rack. Rich doughs, which do not form crisp crusts, are baked without steam.

CROUTONS

A crouton is simply a piece of bread that is toasted, sautéed or dried. Two types are often used.

The more familiar ones are small seasoned cubes of bread that are baked or toasted and sprinkled over soups or salads.

A more classic variety is made by sautéing slices of bread in clarified butter or olive oil until brown and crisp. The bread may be rough slices from a baguette or cut into shapes (such as hearts, diamonds or circles) from larger slices. Sautéed croutons have two advantages over the toasted variety: They stay crisp longer after coming in contact with moist foods, and they gain flavor from the butter or olive oil in which they are cooked. Sautéed croutons can be used to decorate the border of a serving dish, as a base for canapés, a garnish for soups, an accompaniment to spreads or caviar or as a base under some meat and game dishes.

Determining Doneness

Baking time is determined by a variety of factors: the product's size, the oven thermostat's accuracy and the desired crust color. Larger items require a longer baking time than smaller ones. Lean dough products bake faster and at higher temperatures than rich dough products.

Bread loaves can be tested for doneness by tapping them on the bottom and listening for a hollow sound. This indicates that air, not moisture, is present inside the loaf. If the bottom is damp or heavy, the loaf probably needs more baking time. The texture and color of the crust are also a good indication of doneness, particularly with individual rolls. As you bake a variety of yeast products, you will develop the experience necessary to determine doneness without strict adherence to elapsed time.

Stage 10: Cooling and Storing the Finished Products

The quality of even the finest yeast products suffers if they are cooled or stored improperly. Yeast products should be cooled at room temperature and away from drafts. Yeast breads and rolls should be removed from their pans for cooling. Allow loaves to cool completely before slicing.

Once cool, yeast products should be stored at room temperature or frozen for longer storage. Do not refrigerate baked goods, as refrigeration promotes staling. Do not wrap Italian or French loaves, as this causes crusts to lose the desired crispness.

RECIPE 31.2

SOFT YEAST DINNER ROLLS

Yield: 75 Rolls **Method:** Straight Dough

Water, warm	1 lb. 4 oz.	560 ml
Active dry yeast	2 oz.	60 g
Bread flour	2 lb. 12 oz.	1.2 kg
Salt	1 oz.	30 g
Granulated sugar	4 oz.	120 g
Nonfat dry milk	2 oz.	60 g
Shortening	2 oz.	60 g
Unsalted butter, softened	2 oz.	60 g
Eggs, whole	4 oz.	120 g
Egg wash	as needed	as needed

1. Combine the water and yeast in a small bowl. Combine the remaining ingredients (except the egg wash) in the bowl of an electric mixer.
2. Add the water-and-yeast mixture to the remaining ingredients; stir to combine.
3. Knead with a dough hook on second speed for 10 minutes.
4. Transfer the dough to a lightly greased bowl, cover and place in a warm spot. Let rise until doubled, approximately 1 hour.
5. Punch down the dough. Let it rest a few minutes to allow the gluten to relax.
6. Divide the dough into 1 1/4-ounce (35-gram) portions and round. Shape as desired and arrange on paper-lined sheet pans. Proof until doubled in size.

7. Carefully brush the proofed rolls with egg wash. Bake at 400°F (200°C) until medium brown, approximately 12–15 minutes.

Approximate values per roll: **Calories** 90, **Total fat** 1.5 g, **Saturated fat** 0.5 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 160 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 15 g, **Protein** 3 g **Claims**—low fat; low saturated fat; low cholesterol

1. Mixing the soft yeast dough:
a) Combining the ingredients in a mixer bowl with the dough hook attached.

b) Adding the yeast-and-water mixture.

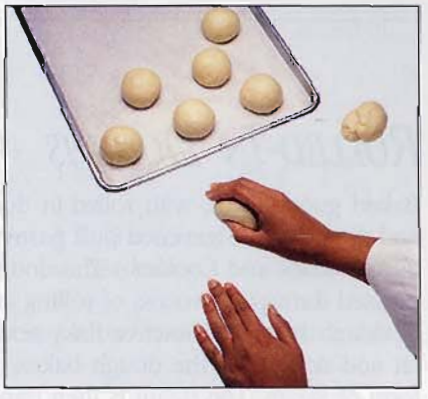
2. Kneading the dough.

3. The dough before rising.

4. Punching down the risen dough:
a) Pressing down on the center of the dough with your fist.

b) Folding the edges of the dough in toward the center.

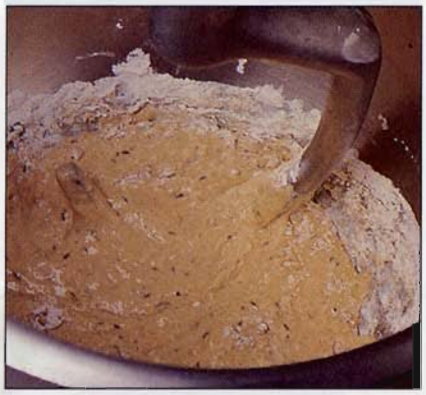
5. Scaling the dough.



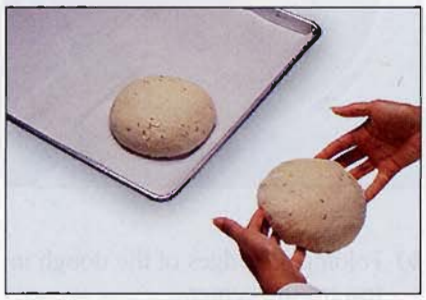
6. Rounding the rolls.

7. Egg-washing the rolls.

1. Rye bread starter.



2. Mixing the rye dough.



3. Shaping the rye loaves.

RECIPE 31.3

Light Rye Bread

Yield: 2 Large Loaves | Method: Sponge

Unbleached wheat flour	1 lb.	450 g
Medium rye flour	8 oz.	225 g
Dark molasses	3 oz.	90 g
Water, warm	1 lb. 4 oz.	560 ml
Active dry yeast	1/2 oz.	15 g
Nonfat dry milk	1 1/2 oz.	45 g
Caraway seeds, crushed	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Kosher salt	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Unsalted butter, melted	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Egg wash	as needed	as needed

1. Stir the flours together and set aside.
2. To make the sponge, combine the molasses, water and yeast. Add 8 ounces (225 grams) of the flour mixture. Stir vigorously for 3 minutes. Cover the bowl and set aside to rise until doubled and very bubbly, approximately 1 hour.
3. Stir the milk powder, caraway seeds, salt and butter into the sponge.
4. Gradually add the remaining flour to the sponge. When the dough is too stiff to mix by hand, transfer the dough to a mixer fitted with a dough hook.
5. Continue adding flour until the dough is stiff but slightly tacky. Knead for 5 minutes on low speed.
6. Transfer the dough to a lightly greased bowl, cover and place in a warm place until doubled, approximately 45–60 minutes.
7. Punch down the dough and divide into two pieces. Shape each piece into a round loaf and place on a sheet pan that has been dusted with cornmeal or lightly oiled. Brush the loaves with egg wash and let rise until doubled, approximately 45 minutes.
8. Slash the tops with a razor or knife. Bake at 375°F (190°C) until golden brown and crusty, approximately 25 minutes.

Approximate values per 1/10-loaf slice: **Calories** 160, **Total fat** 1.5 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 370 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 31 g, **Protein** 6 g, **Claims**—low fat; no saturated fat; low cholesterol

Rolled-In Doughs

Baked goods made with rolled-in doughs include croissants, Danish pastries and the nonyeast-leavened puff pastry. (Puff pastry is discussed in Chapter 32, Pies, Pastries and Cookies.) The dough is so named because the fat is incorporated through a process of rolling and folding. Products made with a rolled-in dough have a distinctive flaky texture created by the repeated layering of fat and dough. As the dough bakes, moisture is released from the fat in the form of steam. The steam is then trapped between the layers of dough, causing them to rise and separate.

Making Rolled-In Doughs

Rolled-in doughs are made following most of the 10 production stages discussed earlier. The principal differences are (1) the butter is incorporated through a turning process after the dough base is fermented and punched down; (2) rolled-in doughs are portioned somewhat differently from other yeast doughs; and (3) the portions are then shaped without rounding.

Butter is often used for rolled-in products because of its flavor. Unfortunately, butter is hard to work with because it cracks and breaks when cold and becomes too soft to roll at room temperature. Margarine, shortening or specially formulated high-moisture fats can be used, sometimes in combination with butter, in order to reduce costs or to make it easier to work with the dough.

The dough base should not be kneaded too much, as gluten will continue to develop during the rolling and folding process. Commercial bakeries, hotels and larger restaurants generally use an electric dough sheeter to roll the dough. This saves time and ensures a more consistent product.

Procedure for Preparing Rolled-In Doughs

1. Mix the dough and allow it to rise.
2. Shape the butter or shortening, then chill it.
3. Roll out the dough evenly, then top with the chilled butter.
4. Fold the dough around the butter, enclosing it completely.
5. Roll out the dough into a rectangle, about 1/4 to 1/2 inch (.6 to 1.25 centimeters) thick. Always be sure to roll at right angles; do not roll haphazardly or in a circle as you would pastry doughs.
6. Fold the dough in thirds. Be sure to brush off any excess flour from between the folds. This completes the first turn. Chill the dough for 20 to 30 minutes.
7. Roll out the dough and fold it in the same manner a second and third time, allowing the dough to rest between each turn. After completing the third turn, wrap the dough carefully and allow it to rest for several hours or overnight before shaping and baking.

RECIPE 31.4

Croissants

Yield: 60 Rolls — Method: Rolled-in

Bread flour	2 lb. 4 oz.	1 kg
Salt	1 oz.	30 g
Granulated sugar	6 oz.	170 g
Milk	1 lb. 6 oz.	625 g
Active dry yeast	1 oz.	30 g
Unsalted butter, softened	1 lb. 8 oz.	680 g
Egg wash	as needed	as needed

1. Stir the flour, salt and sugar together in a mixer bowl fitted with a dough hook.

Continued

The Cultured Croissant

A croissant brings to mind a Parisian sidewalk café and a steaming cup of café crème. It is, however, a truly international delicacy. Created by bakers in Budapest (Hungary) to celebrate the city's liberation from Turkey in 1686, its shape was derived from the crescent moon of the Turkish flag. The delicacy was soon adopted as a breakfast pastry by both the French and the Italians. The first machine for mass-producing croissants was designed by a Japanese firm and manufactured in Italy. Although croissants became popular in this country only during the last decade or so, Americans now consume millions of croissants each year.

2. Warm the milk to approximately 90°F (32°C). Stir in the yeast.
3. Add the milk-and-yeast mixture to the dry ingredients. Stir until combined, then knead on second speed for 10 minutes.
4. Place the dough in a large floured bowl, cover and let rise until doubled in size, approximately 1 hour.
5. Prepare the butter while the dough is rising. Place the butter in an even layer between two large pieces of plastic wrap and roll into a flat rectangle, approximately 8 × 11 inches (20 × 27.5 centimeters) and chill.
6. After the dough has risen, punch it down. Roll out the dough into a large rectangle, about 1/2 inch (1.25 centimeters) thick and large enough to enclose the rectangle of butter. Place the unwrapped butter in the center of the dough and fold the dough around the butter, enclosing it completely.
7. Roll out the block of dough into a long rectangle, about 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) thick. Fold the dough in thirds, as if you were folding a letter. This completes the first turn. Wrap the dough in plastic and chill for approximately 20–30 minutes.
8. Repeat the rolling and folding process two more times, chilling the dough between each turn. When finished, wrap the dough well and chill it overnight before shaping and baking.
9. To shape the dough into croissant rolls, cut off one quarter of the block at a time, wrapping and returning the rest to the refrigerator. Roll each quarter of dough into a large rectangle, about 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) thick.
10. Cut the dough into uniform triangles. Starting with the large end, roll each triangle into a crescent and place on a paper-lined sheet pan.
11. Brush lightly with egg wash. Proof until doubled, but do not allow the dough to become so warm that the butter melts.
12. Bake at 375°F (190°C) until golden brown, approximately 12–15 minutes.

Approximate values per roll: **Calories** 200, **Total fat** 12 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 40 mg, **Sodium** 230 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 19 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Vitamin A** 10%

1. Rolling out the butter between two sheets of plastic wrap.

2. After positioning the butter on the rolled-out dough, folding the dough around the butter.

3. Brushing the excess flour from the rolled-out dough.

4. Folding the dough in thirds.

5. The finished croissant dough.

6. Cutting the dough into triangles.

7. Baked croissants.

TABLE 31.4 TROUBLESHOOTING CHART

Problem	Cause	Solution
Cannonball of dough	Too much flour forced into the dough	Gradually add water; adjust formula
Crust too pale	Oven temperature too low	Adjust oven
	Dough overproofed	Proof only until almost doubled, then bake immediately
Crust too dark	Oven too hot	Adjust oven
	Too much sugar in the dough	Adjust formula or measure sugar carefully
Top crust separates from rest of loaf	Dough improperly shaped	Shape dough carefully
	Crust not slashed properly	Slash dough to a depth of 1/2 in. (1.25 cm)
	Dough dried out during proofing	Cover dough during proofing
Sides of loaf are cracked	Bread expanded after crust had formed	Slash top of loaf before baking
Dense texture	Not enough yeast	Adjust formula or measure yeast carefully
	Not enough fermentation time	Let dough rise until doubled or as directed
	Too much salt	Adjust formula or measure salt carefully
Ropes of undercooked dough running through the product	Insufficient kneading	Knead dough until it is smooth and elastic or as directed
	Insufficient rising time	Allow adequate time for rising
	Oven too hot	Adjust oven
Free-form loaf spreads and flattens	Dough too soft	Add flour
Large holes in bread	Too much yeast	Adjust formula or measure yeast carefully
	Overkneaded	Knead only as directed
	Inadequate punch-down	Punch down properly to knead out excess air before shaping
Blisters on crust	Too much liquid	Measure ingredients carefully
	Improper shaping	Knead out excess air before shaping
	Too much steam in oven	Reduce amount of steam or moisture in oven

CONCLUSION

Fresh yeast breads are a popular and inexpensive addition to any menu and are surprisingly easy to prepare. By understanding and appreciating the importance of each of the ten production stages described in this chapter, you

will be able to create and adapt formulas to suit your specific operation and needs.

Questions for Discussion

1. Describe the characteristics of lean and rich doughs, and give an example of each.
2. Explain the differences between active dry yeast and compressed yeast. Describe the correct procedures for working with these yeasts.
3. Explain the differences between a sponge and a sourdough starter. How is each of these items used?
4. Describe the straight dough mixing method, and give two examples of products made with this procedure.
5. Briefly describe the procedure for making a rolled-in dough, and give two examples of products made from rolled-in doughs.
6. List the ten production stages for yeast breads. Which of these production stages would also apply to quick bread production? Explain your answer.

Additional Yeast Bread Formulas

RECIPE 31.5

Basic French Bread

Yield: 5 lb. (2.2 kg) **Method:** Straight Dough

Water, warm	1 qt.	1 lt
Active dry yeast	1 oz.	30 g
Bread flour	3 lb. 12 oz.	1.8 kg
Salt	1 oz.	30 g

1. Combine the water and yeast in a mixer bowl. Add the remaining ingredients and mix on low speed with a dough hook until all the flour is incorporated.
2. Increase to second speed and knead the dough until it is smooth and elastic.
3. Let the dough rise until doubled. Punch down, divide, shape and slash as desired. Let rise again until doubled.
4. Place a pan of water in the oven to generate steam while the dough rises.
5. Bake at 400°F (200°C) until the crust is well developed and golden brown and the bread is baked through, approximately 12 minutes for rolls and 30 minutes for small loaves.

Approximate values per 1 1/2-oz. (40-g) serving: **Calories** 80, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 135 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 16 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Claims**—fat free; low sodium; no sugar

RECIPE 31.6

White Sandwich Bread

Yield: 2 Large Loaves Method: Straight Dough

Water, warm	12 oz.	340 ml
Nonfat dry milk	1 1/4 oz.	35 g
Granulated sugar	1 oz.	30 g
Salt	2 tsp.	10 ml
Active dry yeast	1/2 oz.	15 g
Bread flour	1 lb. 8 oz.	680 g
Unsalted butter, softened	1 oz.	30 g
Eggs	2	2

1. Combine the water, milk, sugar, salt, yeast and 12 ounces (340 grams) of flour. Blend well. Add the butter and eggs and beat for 2 minutes.
2. Stir in the remaining flour, 2 ounces (60 grams) at a time. Knead for 8 minutes.
3. Place the dough in a lightly greased bowl, cover and let rise at room temperature until doubled, approximately 1 to 1 1/2 hours.
4. Shape into loaves and let rise until doubled.
5. Bake at 400°F (200°C) if free-form or small loaves; bake at 375°F (190°C) if larger loaves. Bake until brown and hollow sounding, approximately 35 minutes for small loaves and 50 minutes for large loaves.

Variation: Whole wheat—Substitute up to 12 ounces (340 grams) of whole wheat flour for an equal amount of the bread flour.

Approximate values per 2-oz. (62-g) serving: **Calories** 150, **Total fat** 2 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 25 mg, **Sodium** 250 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 28 g, **Protein** 6 g, **Vitamin A** 4%, **Claims**—low fat

RECIPE 31.7

English Muffin Loaves

Yield: 2 Large Loaves Method: Straight Dough

Active dry yeast	1/2 oz.	15 g
Granulated sugar	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Baking soda	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Salt	2 tsp.	10 ml
All-purpose flour	1 lb. 8 oz.	720 g
Milk	1 pt.	500 ml
Water	4 oz.	120 ml
Cornmeal	as needed	as needed

1. Stir together the yeast, sugar, baking soda, salt and 12 oz. (360 grams) of the flour.
2. Combine the milk and water and heat to 120°F (50°C).

Continued

3. Stir the warm liquids into the dry ingredients, beating well. Add enough of the remaining flour to make a stiff batter.
4. Spoon the batter into loaf pans that have been greased and dusted with cornmeal. Proof until it doubles.
5. Bake at 400°F (200°C) until golden brown and done, approximately 25 minutes.
6. Remove the bread from the pans immediately and cool.

Approximate values per 1/12 loaf: **Calories** 119, **Total fat** 1 g, **Saturated fat** .5 g, **Cholesterol** 3 mg, **Sodium** 202 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 23 g, **Protein** 4 g

RECIPE 31.8

Potato Cheddar Cheese Bread

STOUFFER STANFORD COURT, SAN FRANCISCO, CA
Former Executive Chef Ercolino Crugnale

Yield: 7 1-lb. 4-oz. (600-g) Loaves **Method:** Straight Dough

Water, warm (100°F/38°C)	8 oz.	225 ml
Active dry yeast	2 oz.	60 g
Bread flour	4 lb. 8 oz.	2.2 kg
Potatoes, boiled, peeled and puréed	2 lb.	1 kg
Kosher salt	1 1/2 oz.	45 g
Cracked pepper	1 oz.	30 g
Unsalted butter, melted	3 oz.	90 g
Cheddar cheese, grated	1 lb.	500 g
Water, room temperature	1 pt.	500 ml

1. Dissolve the yeast in the warm water and set aside.
2. Combine the flour, potatoes, salt, pepper, butter and cheese. Blend on low speed for 2–3 minutes.
3. Slowly add the room-temperature water and the yeast mixture. Mix on medium speed for 8–10 minutes.
4. Allow the dough to rise in a warm spot until doubled, approximately 2 hours. Punch down the dough and divide into loaves.
5. Proof in a flour-dusted banneton until doubled in size, approximately 45 minutes. Remove the proofed dough from the banneton and bake at 350°F (180°C) until brown, approximately 20–30 minutes.

Approximate values per 1 1/2-oz. (50-g) serving: **Calories** 150, **Total fat** 3.5 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 280 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 25 g, **Protein** 6 g, **Calcium** 10%, **Claims**—low cholesterol

RECIPE 31.9

Sundried Tomato Rolls

Yield: 20 Rolls **Method:** Straight Dough

Bread flour	12 oz.	360 g
Semolina flour	1/2 c.	120 ml
Sundried tomatoes, diced fine	3 Tbsp.	45 ml

Granulated sugar	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Active dry yeast	1 1/2 tsp.	8 ml
Salt	1 1/2 tsp.	8 ml
Garlic, minced	1 tsp.	5 ml
Whole butter, softened	1 oz.	30 g
Water, warm	10 oz.	300 ml

1. Combine all the ingredients using the straight dough method. Knead until smooth and elastic, approximately 10 minutes.
2. Place the dough in a lightly greased bowl, cover and proof until it doubles.
3. Punch down the dough and proof a second time.
4. Punch down the dough again and divide into 1 1/2-ounce (45-gram) portions. Round the dough and shape as desired. Proof until the rolls double in size, approximately 20 minutes.
5. Bake at 400°F (200°C) until golden brown and done, approximately 18 minutes.

Approximate values per roll: **Calories** 94, **Total fat** 1.5 g, **Saturated fat** .8 g, **Cholesterol** 3 mg, **Sodium** 172 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 17 g, **Protein** 3 g

RECIPE 31.10

Whole Wheat Bread

Yield: 2 Large Loaves or 35 Dinner Rolls Method: Straight Dough

Salt	2 tsp.	10 ml
Nonfat dry milk	1 1/4 oz.	35 g
Whole wheat flour	1 lb. 10 oz.	780 g
Water, hot	1 lb. 2 oz.	540 ml
Active dry yeast	1/2 oz.	15 g
Honey	3 oz.	90 g
Unsalted butter, softened	1 oz.	30 g
Whole butter, melted	as needed	as needed

1. In a large mixer bowl, combine the salt and dry milk with 12 ounces (340 grams) of flour.
2. Stir in the hot water, yeast, honey and softened butter. Beat until combined into a thick batterlike dough.
3. Add the remaining flour 2 ounces (60 grams) at a time. Knead about 8 minutes.
4. Place the dough in a lightly greased bowl and cover. Let rise in a warm place until doubled.
5. Punch down, portion and shape as desired.
6. Let the shaped dough rise until doubled. Bake at 375°F (190°C) until firm and dark brown, approximately 1 hour for loaves and 20 minutes for rolls. Brush the top of the loaves or rolls with melted butter after baking if desired.

Approximate values per 1 1/2-oz. (46-g) serving: **Calories** 170, **Total fat** 2 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 5 mg, **Sodium** 250 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 32 g, **Protein** 6 g, **Claims**—low fat; low saturated fat; low cholesterol; good source of fiber

RECIPE 31.11

Multigrain Date Bread

Yield: 2 Small Loaves **Method:** Straight Dough

Dates, chopped	8 oz.	225 g
Bread flour	1 lb. 8 oz.	680 g
Active dry yeast	1/2 oz.	15 g
Water, warm	1 pt.	450 ml
Honey	4 oz.	120 g
Unsalted butter, melted	2 oz.	60 g
Nonfat dry milk	1 1/4 oz.	35 g
Salt	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Whole wheat flour	6 oz.	180 g
Rye flour	2 oz.	60 g
Wheat germ	2 oz.	60 g
Bran flakes, toasted	2 oz.	60 g
Sesame seeds	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Egg wash	as needed	as needed
Poppy or sesame seeds	2 Tbsp.	30 ml

1. In a small bowl, combine the dates with 2 ounces (60 grams) of the bread flour; toss to coat and set aside.
2. In a large mixer bowl, dissolve the yeast in the warm water. Add the honey, butter, milk powder, salt and whole wheat flour. Beat at medium speed for 2 minutes.
3. Stir in the rye flour, wheat germ, bran flakes, sesame seeds and date mixture.
4. Slowly add enough of the remaining bread flour to make a soft dough. Knead until smooth and elastic, approximately 5 minutes.
5. Place the dough in a lightly greased bowl and cover. Allow to rise until doubled, approximately 1 1/2 hours.
6. Punch down the dough and knead for a few seconds.
7. Divide the dough in half. Shape each piece and place in a lightly greased loaf pan. Cover and allow to rise until almost doubled, approximately 45 minutes.
8. Slash the top of the loaves as desired and top with egg wash and poppy or sesame seeds. Bake at 375°F (190°C) until golden brown and firm, approximately 40 minutes. Loaves should be dry and sound hollow when tapped on the bottom. Remove the loaves from the pans to cool.

Approximate values per 2 1/2-oz. (80-g) serving: **Calories** 270, **Total fat** 4.5 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 30 mg, **Sodium** 400 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 49 g, **Protein** 8 g, **Calcium** 10%

RECIPE 31.12

Breadsticks

Yield: 24 Breadsticks **Method:** Straight Dough

Active dry yeast	1/2 oz.	15 g
Water, warm	10 oz.	300 ml

Granulated sugar	1 oz.	30 g
Olive oil	4 oz.	120 ml
Salt	2 tsp.	10 ml
Bread flour	1 lb. 2 oz.	540 g
Egg wash	as needed	as needed
Sesame seeds	3 Tbsp.	45 ml

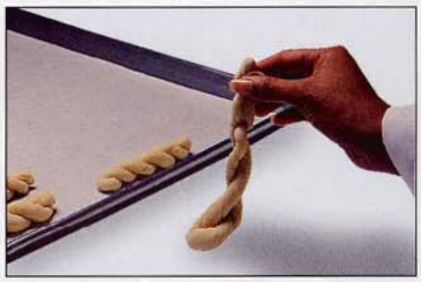
1. Stir the yeast, water and sugar together in a mixer bowl.
2. Blend in the oil, salt and 8 ounces (225 grams) of the flour.
3. Gradually add the remaining flour. Knead the dough until it is smooth and cleans the sides of the bowl, approximately 5 minutes.
4. Remove the dough from the bowl and allow it to rest for a few minutes. Roll the dough into a rectangle, about 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) thick.
5. Cut the dough into 24 even pieces. Roll each piece into a rope and twist; bring the ends together, allowing the sides to curl together. Place on a paper-lined sheet pan.
6. Brush with egg wash and top with sesame seeds. Let the sticks rise until doubled, approximately 20 minutes.
7. Bake at 375°F (190°C) until golden brown, approximately 12–15 minutes.

VARIATIONS: Garlic breadsticks—Knead 1 ounce (30 grams) grated Parmesan and 2 tablespoons (30 milliliters) minced garlic into the dough.

Herbed breadsticks—Knead 3 tablespoons (45 milliliters) chopped fresh herbs such as basil, parsley, dill and oregano into the dough.

Approximate values per breadstick: **Calories** 60, **Total fat** 5 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 190 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Claims**—low saturated fat; low cholesterol

1. Rolling breadstick dough.



2. Twisting breadstick dough.

RECIPE 31.13

FOCACCIA (ROMAN FLATBREAD)

Yield: 1 Sheet Pan (12 in. × 18 in.) (30 cm × 45 cm) **Method:** Straight Dough

Granulated sugar	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Active dry yeast	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Water, lukewarm	12 oz.	340 ml
All-purpose flour	1 lb. 2 oz.	540 g
Kosher salt	2 tsp.	10 ml
Onion, chopped fine	3 oz.	90 g
Olive oil	2 tsp.	10 ml
Fresh rosemary, crushed	2 Tbsp.	30 ml

1. Combine the sugar, yeast and water. Stir to dissolve the yeast. Stir in the flour 4 ounces (120 grams) at a time.
2. Stir in 1 1/2 teaspoons (7 milliliters) of salt and the onion. Mix well, then knead on a lightly floured board until smooth.
3. Place the dough in an oiled bowl, cover and let rise until doubled.
4. Punch down the dough, then flatten it onto an oiled sheet pan. It should be no more than 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) thick. Brush the top of the dough with the olive oil. Let the dough proof until doubled, about 15 minutes.

Continued

Topping the flatbread dough with crushed rosemary.

5. Sprinkle the crushed rosemary and remaining 1/2 teaspoon (2 milliliters) of salt on top of the dough. Bake at 400°F (200°C) until lightly browned, approximately 20 minutes.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (32-g) serving: **Calories** 100, **Total fat** 0.5 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 230 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 21 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Claims**—low fat; no saturated fat; no cholesterol

RECIPE 31.14

Pizza Dough

Yield: 1 Large or 8 Individual Pizzas | Method: Straight Dough

Water, warm	2 oz.	60 ml
Active dry yeast	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Bread flour	14 oz.	420 g
Water, cool	6 oz.	180 ml
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Olive oil	1 oz.	30 ml
Honey	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Stir the yeast into the warm water to dissolve. Add the flour.
2. Stir the cool water, salt, olive oil and honey into the flour mixture. Knead with a dough hook or by hand until smooth and elastic, approximately 5 minutes.
3. Place the dough in a lightly greased bowl and cover. Allow the dough to rise in a warm place for 30 minutes. Punch down the dough and divide into portions. The dough may be wrapped and refrigerated for up to two days.
4. On a lightly floured surface, roll the dough into very thin rounds and top as desired. Bake at 400°F (200°C) until crisp and golden brown, approximately 8–12 minutes.

Approximate values per 2-oz. (58-g) serving: **Calories** 220, **Total fat** 4 g, **Saturated fat** 0.5 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 290 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 41 g, **Protein** 6 g, **Claims**—low saturated fat; no cholesterol

RECIPE 31.15

Basic Sourdough Bread

Yield: 2 Large Loaves | Method: Sponge

Active dry yeast	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Water, warm	12 oz.	340 ml
Sourdough Starter (Recipe 31.1)	1 c.	225 ml
Honey	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Bread flour	1 lb. 6 oz.	660 g
Kosher salt	1 1/2 tsp.	7 ml
Distilled vinegar	1 oz.	30 ml
Baking soda	1/2 tsp.	2 ml

1. Prepare a sponge by mixing the yeast, water, sourdough starter and honey. Stir in 4 ounces (120 grams) of flour. Beat vigorously by hand or in a mixer on second speed for 3 minutes.

2. Place the sponge in a clean bowl and cover. Set aside until doubled, approximately 1–2 hours.
3. Place the risen sponge into the bowl of a mixer fitted with a dough hook. Add the salt, vinegar and baking soda. Gradually add enough bread flour to make a stiff dough. Knead for 3 minutes on second speed. The dough should clean the bowl, forming a ball around the dough hook.
4. Allow the dough to rest for 5 minutes. Then shape into 2 round or oval loaves and place on a baking sheet that has been dusted with cornmeal.
5. Cover the dough and set aside to proof until doubled, approximately 45 minutes. Slash the top of the loaves.
6. Bake the bread for 10 minutes in a 450°F (230°C) oven with steam added. Then reduce the oven temperature to 375°F (190°C) and continue baking until the bread is golden brown and firm, approximately 30–40 minutes.

Approximate values per 1 1/2-oz. (39-g) serving: **Calories** 130, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 210 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 27 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Claims**—fat free; no saturated fat; no cholesterol

RECIPE 31.16

SAN FRANCISCO SOURDOUGH BREAD

STOUFFER STANFORD COURT, SAN FRANCISCO, CA
Former Executive Chef Ercolino Crugnale

Yield: 1 Loaf — Method: Straight Dough

Water, warm (120°F/49°C)	8 oz.	225 ml
Active dry yeast	1/2 oz.	15 g
Sourdough Starter (recipe follows)	1 c.	225 ml
Bread flour	1 lb.	450 g
Kosher salt	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Egg white, beaten	1	1

1. Sprinkle the dry yeast over 2 ounces (60 grams) of the warm water and set aside until dissolved and foamy.
2. In the bowl of a mixer fitted with the dough hook, combine the sourdough starter and the remaining warm water. Add 6 ounces (180 grams) of bread flour.
3. Stir until a dough forms, then add the yeast mixture. Knead for 5 minutes on medium speed.
4. Add the remaining flour and salt. Knead until the dough is smooth and elastic, approximately 10 minutes.
5. Place the dough in a lightly greased bowl and cover with a damp cloth. Let rise in a warm place, about 80°F–90°F (27°C–32°C), until doubled.
6. Punch down the dough and shape it into a round loaf. Place the loaf on a greased and cornmeal-dusted sheet pan.
7. Let the loaf rise in a warm place, covered with a damp cloth, until it has risen to 2 1/2 times its original size.
8. Brush the risen loaf with the beaten egg white and score the top of the loaf with a sharp knife.

Continued

9. Bake at 450°F (230°C), with a pan of boiling water underneath the oven rack, for 10 minutes.
10. Reduce the oven temperature to 375°F (190°C), remove the water and continue baking until the loaf is well browned, approximately 35–45 minutes.

Approximate values per 2-oz. (60-g) serving: **Calories** 135, **Total fat** .5 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 355 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 27 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Claims**—low fat; no saturated fat; no cholesterol

SOURDOUGH STARTER

Grapes, off the stem	1 lb.	450 g
Water, warm (100°F/30°C)	as needed	as needed
Bread flour	12 oz.	340 g

1. Mash the grapes thoroughly and place in a covered container. Set aside at room temperature for 48 hours. (Red grapes will give some coloring to the juice; this will be eliminated gradually with continued feeding.)
2. Strain off the fermented juice and discard the pulp. Add enough warm water to the juice to make 1 pint (450 milliliters).
3. Stir in the flour, cover and leave at room temperature overnight.
4. Replenish with 1 pint (450 milliliters) of warm water and 12 ounces (340 grams) of flour daily if the starter is kept at room temperature. If kept refrigerated, replenish twice weekly.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 60, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 12 g, **Protein** 2 g

RECIPE 31.17

CHALLAH

Challah is the traditional bread for Jewish Sabbaths and celebrations. Rich with eggs and flavored with honey, it is braided into oval loaves and topped with poppy or sesame seeds. Challah is excellent for toast or sandwiches.

Yield: 2 Large Loaves **Method**: Straight Dough

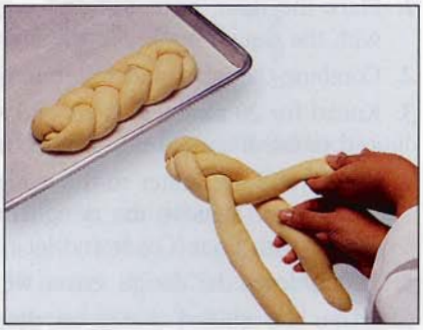
Honey	6 oz.	180 g
Salt	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Bread flour	1 lb. 12 oz.	800 g
Active dry yeast	1/2 oz.	15 g
Water, warm	14 oz.	400 ml
Eggs	4	4
Unsalted butter, melted	4 oz.	120 g
Egg wash	as needed	as needed
Sesame or poppy seeds	as needed	as needed

1. Stir together the honey, salt and 8 ounces (225 grams) of flour in a mixer bowl. Add the yeast, water, eggs and butter. Stir until smooth.
2. Using the dough hook, knead the dough on second speed, adding the remaining flour 2 ounces (60 grams) at a time until smooth and elastic, approximately 5 minutes.

3. Place the dough in a lightly greased bowl, cover and let rise until doubled, approximately 1 to 1 1/2 hours.
4. Punch down the dough and divide into 6 equal portions. Roll each portion into a long strip, about 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) in diameter and 12 inches (30 centimeters) long. Lay 3 strips side by side and braid. Pinch the ends together and tuck them under the loaf. Place the loaf on a paper-lined sheet pan. Braid the 3 remaining pieces of dough in the same manner.
5. Brush the loaves with egg wash and sprinkle with sesame or poppy seeds. Proof until doubled, approximately 45 minutes.
6. Bake at 350°F (170°C) until the loaves are golden brown and sound hollow when thumped, approximately 40 minutes.

Approximate values per 2-oz. (46-g) serving: **Calories** 156, **Total fat** 4 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 44 mg, **Sodium** 145 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 25 g, **Protein** 6 g

1. Rolling challah dough into ropes.



2. Braiding challah dough.

RECIPE 31.18

BRIOCHE

Brioche is a rich, tender bread made with an abundance of eggs and butter. The high ratio of fat makes this dough difficult to work with, but the flavor is well worth the extra effort. Brioche is traditionally made in fluted pans and has a cap or topknot of dough; this shape is known as brioche à tête. The dough may also be baked in a loaf pan, making it perfect for toast or canapés.

Yield: 3 Large Loaves or 60 3-in. (7.5-cm) Rolls

Method: Straight Dough

All-purpose flour	4 lb. 7 oz.	2 kg
Eggs	24	24
Salt	1 3/4 oz.	50 g
Granulated sugar	7 oz.	210 g
Active dry yeast	1 3/4 oz.	50 g
Water, warm	7 oz.	210 ml
Unsalted butter, room temperature	3 lb.	1.3 kg

Continued

1. Combining the ingredients for brioche.

2. Adding the yeast-and-water mixture to the dough.

3. Brioche dough after kneading for 20 minutes.

4. Adding the butter to the brioche dough.

5. The finished brioche dough ready for fermentation.

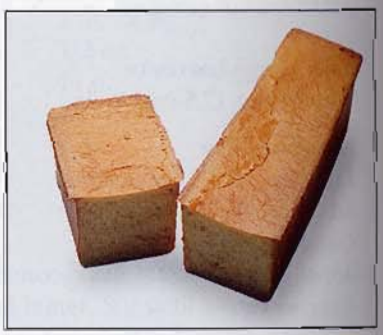
1. Place the flour, eggs, salt and sugar into the bowl of a large mixer fitted with the dough hook. Stir the ingredients together.
2. Combine the yeast and water and add to the other ingredients.
3. Knead for 20 minutes on second speed. The dough will be smooth, shiny and moist. It should not form a ball.
4. Slowly add the butter to the dough. Knead only until all the butter is incorporated. Remove the dough from the mixer and place it into a bowl dusted with flour. Cover and let rise at room temperature until doubled.
5. Punch down the dough, cover well and refrigerate overnight.
6. Shape the chilled dough as desired. Place the shaped dough in well-greased pans and proof at room temperature until doubled. Do not proof brioche in a very warm place; the butter may melt out of the dough before proofing is complete.
7. Bake at 375°F (190°C) until the brioche are a dark golden brown and sound hollow. Baking time will vary depending on the temperature of the dough and the size of the rolls or loaves being baked.

VARIATION: Raisin brioche—Gently warm 3 ounces (90 milliliters) rum with 6 ounces (180 grams) raisins. Set aside until the raisins are plumped. Drain off the remaining rum and add the raisins to the dough after the butter is incorporated.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (115-g) serving: **Calories** 475, **Total fat** 30 g, **Saturated fat** 17 g, **Cholesterol** 192 mg, **Sodium** 138 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 43 g, **Protein** 9 g, **Vitamin A** 30%, **Iron** 10%

6. Shaping the brioche à tête.

7. Panning the rolls.



8. A finished loaf of brioche baked in a pullman pan.

RECIPE 31.19

JUMBO CINNAMON BUNS

Yield: 24 Large Rolls Method: Straight Dough

Water, warm	1 qt.	1 lt
All-purpose flour	5 lb.	2250 g
Granulated sugar	12 oz.	360 g
Yeast 1 oz.	30 g	
Dry milk powder	1 1/4 oz.	37 g
Salt	1/4 oz.	7 g
Whole butter, softened	10 oz.	300 g
Filling:		
Whole butter, softened	6 oz.	180 g
Cinnamon, ground	1/4 oz.	7 g
Brown sugar	6 oz.	180 g
Raisins	4 oz.	120 g
Powdered Sugar Glaze (recipe follows)	1 pt.	450 ml

1. In a large mixer bowl, combine all the dough ingredients. Knead the dough until it is smooth.
2. Place the dough in a lightly oiled bowl, cover and let rise until doubled.
3. Punch down the dough and roll it out on a lightly floured surface. Shape into a rectangle, approximately 18 × 30 inches (45 × 75 centimeters).
4. Spread the 6 ounces (180 grams) of softened butter over the surface of the dough. Combine the cinnamon, brown sugar and raisins and sprinkle this mixture over the butter, covering the dough evenly.
5. Starting with the longer side, roll the dough into a spiral. Cut into 24 pieces, each approximately 1 1/2 inches (3.75 centimeters) thick. Place the rolls, cut side up, on a paper-lined sheet pan and allow them to rise until doubled.
6. Bake at 300°F (150°C) oven until golden brown and done, approximately 30 minutes.
7. Cool slightly, then top with Powdered Sugar Glaze.

Approximate values per roll: **Calories** 656, **Total fat** 16 g, **Saturated fat** 10 g, **Cholesterol** 42 mg, **Sodium** 132 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 117 g, **Protein** 11 g, **Vitamin A** 11%, **Iron** 27%

POWDERED SUGAR GLAZE

Yield: 1 pt. (450 ml)

Powdered sugar, sifted	1 lb.	450 g
Vanilla extract	2 tsp.	10 ml
Lemon juice	2 tsp.	10 ml
Water, warm	1 oz.	30 ml

1. Combine all the ingredients in a small bowl. Stir to blend thoroughly and dissolve any lumps. Cover and store at room temperature.

1. Brushing melted butter over the sticky bun dough.

2. Rolling up the filling in the sticky bun dough.

3. Cutting and panning the sticky buns.

RECIPE 31.20

Pecan Sticky Buns

Yield: 12–15 Buns | Method: Straight Dough

Active dry yeast	1 oz.	30 g
Sugar	2 oz.	60 g
Salt	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Milk	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Buttermilk	5 1/2 oz.	165 g
Vanilla	1 tsp.	5 ml
Lemon zest, grated	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Lemon juice	1 tsp.	5 ml
Egg yolks	2	2
All-purpose flour	14 oz.	420 g
Unsalted butter, very soft	8 oz.	225 g
Topping:		
Honey	6 oz.	180 g
Brown sugar	6 oz.	180 g
Pecans, chopped	3 oz.	90 g
Filling:		
Cinnamon	1 tsp.	5 ml
Pecans, chopped	3 oz.	90 g
Brown sugar	4 oz.	120 g
Unsalted butter, melted	3 oz.	90 g

1. Stir the yeast, sugar, salt and milk together in a small bowl. Set aside.
2. Stir the buttermilk, vanilla, lemon zest and lemon juice together and add to the yeast mixture.
3. Add the eggs, flour and softened butter to the liquid mixture. Turn out onto a lightly floured board and knead until the butter is evenly distributed and the dough is smooth. Cover and let rise until doubled.
4. Prepare the topping and filling mixtures while the dough is rising. To make the topping, cream the honey and sugar together. Stir in the nuts. This mixture will be very stiff. To make the filling, stir the cinnamon, pecans and sugar together.
5. Lightly grease muffin cups, then distribute the topping mixture evenly, about 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) per muffin cup. Set the pans aside at room temperature until the dough is ready.
6. Punch down the dough and let it rest 10 minutes. Roll out the dough into a rectangle about 1/2 inch (1.25 centimeters) thick. Brush with the melted butter and top evenly with the filling mixture.
7. Starting with either long edge, roll up the dough. Cut into slices about 3/4–1 inch (1.8–2.5 centimeters) thick. Place a slice in each muffin cup over the topping.
8. Let the buns proof until doubled, approximately 20 minutes. Bake at 350°F (170°C) until very brown, approximately 25 minutes. Immediately invert the muffin pans onto paper-lined sheet pans to let the buns and their topping slide out.

Approximate values per roll: **Calories** 480, **Total fat** 26 g, **Saturated fat** 11 g, **Cholesterol** 75 mg, **Sodium** 100 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 55 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin A** 15%, **Iron** 15%

RECIPE 31.21

DANISH PASTRIES

Danish pastry was actually created by a French baker more than 350 years ago. He forgot to knead butter into his bread dough and attempted to cover the mistake by folding in softened butter. This rich, flaky pastry is now popular worldwide for breakfasts, desserts and snacks. The dough may be shaped in a variety of ways and is usually filled with jam, fruit, cream or marzipan.

DOUGH FOR DANISH PASTRIES

Yield: 36 Pastries Method: Rolled-in

Active dry yeast	1/2 oz.	15 g
All-purpose flour	1 lb. 4 oz.	600 g
Granulated sugar	4 oz.	120 g
Water, warm	4 oz.	120 ml
Milk, warm	4 oz.	120 ml
Eggs, room temperature	2	2
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Vanilla extract	1 tsp.	5 ml
Cinnamon, ground	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Unsalted butter, melted	1 1/2 oz.	45 g
Unsalted butter, cold	1 lb.	450 g
Egg wash	as needed	as needed

1. In a large bowl, stir together the yeast and 12 ounces (340 grams) of flour. Add the sugar, water, milk, eggs, salt, vanilla, cinnamon and melted butter. Stir until well combined.
2. Add in the remaining flour gradually, kneading the dough by hand or with a mixer fitted with a dough hook. Knead until the dough is smooth and only slightly tacky to the touch, approximately 2–3 minutes.
3. Place the dough in a bowl that has been lightly dusted with flour. Cover and refrigerate for 1 to 1 1/2 hours.
4. Prepare the remaining butter while the dough is chilling. Start by sprinkling flour over the work surface and placing the cold butter on the flour. Then pound the butter with a rolling pin until the butter softens. Using a pastry scraper or the heel of your hand, knead the butter and flour until the mixture is spreadable. The butter should still be cold. If it begins to melt, refrigerate it until firm. Keep the butter chilled until the dough is ready.
5. On a lightly floured surface, roll out the dough into a large rectangle about 1/2 inch (1.25 centimeters) thick. Brush away any excess flour.
6. Spread the chilled butter evenly over two thirds of the dough. Fold the unbuttered third over the center, then fold the buttered third over the top. Press the edges together to seal in the butter.
7. Roll the dough into a rectangle about 12 inches x 18 inches (30 centimeters x 45 centimeters). Fold the dough in thirds as before. This rolling and folding (called a turn) must be done a total of six times. Chill the dough between turns as necessary. After the final turn, wrap the dough well and refrigerate for at least 4 hours or overnight.

Continued

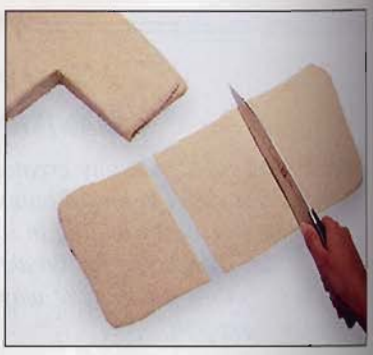
1. Kneading the cold butter with the flour.

2. Spreading the butter over two thirds of the rolled-out dough.

3. Folding the dough in thirds to cover the butter.

4. Rolling out the dough.

5. Folding the dough in thirds to complete a turn.



6. Cutting rectangles of danish dough.

7. Piping the cream cheese filling onto the danish dough.

8. Shaping snails from danish dough.

8. Shape and fill the danish dough as desired. Place the shaped pastries on a paper-lined baking sheet and allow to proof for approximately 15–20 minutes.

9. Brush the pastries with egg wash and sprinkle lightly with sugar if desired. Bake at 400°F (200°C) for 5 minutes. Decrease the oven temperature to 350°F (170°C) and bake until light brown, approximately 12–15 minutes.

Approximate values per roll, without filling: **Calories** 85, **Total fat** 1.5 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 65 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 15.5 g, **Protein** 2 g

Fillings for Danish Pastries

CREAM CHEESE

Yield: 26 oz. (780 g)

Cream cheese	1 lb.	450 g
Granulated sugar	8 oz.	225 g
Salt	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Vanilla extract	1 tsp.	5 ml
Flour	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Egg yolk	1	1
Lemon extract	1 tsp.	5 ml
Lemon zest	2 tsp.	10 ml

1. Beat the cream cheese until light and fluffy. Stir in the remaining ingredients.

ALMOND CREAM

Yield: 16 oz. (450 g)

Almond paste	10 oz.	300 g
Unsalted butter, soft	4 oz.	120 g
Salt	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Vanilla	1 tsp.	5 ml
Egg whites	2	2

1. Blend the almond paste and butter until smooth. Add the salt and vanilla, then the egg whites. Blend well.

APRICOT

Yield: 2 lb. (900 g)

Dried apricots	8 oz.	225 g
Orange juice	1 pt.	450 ml
Granulated sugar	6 oz.	180 g
Salt	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Unsalted butter	2 oz.	60 g

1. Place the apricots and orange juice in a small saucepan. Cover and simmer until the apricots are very tender, approximately 25 minutes. Stir in the sugar and salt. When the sugar is dissolved, add the butter and remove from the heat.
2. Purée the mixture in a blender until smooth. Cool completely before using.

CHAPTER 32

PIES, PASTRIES AND COOKIES

Chefs Susan Feniger and Mary Sue Milliken, Los Angeles, CA

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- prepare a variety of pie crusts and fillings
- prepare a variety of classic pastries
- prepare a variety of meringues
- prepare a variety of cookies
- prepare a variety of dessert and pastry items, incorporating components from other chapters

Mention pastry to diners and most conjure up images of buttery dough baked to crisp flaky perfection and filled or layered with rich cream, ripe fruit or smooth custard. Mention pastry to novice chefs and most conjure up images of sophisticated, complex and intimidating work. Although the diners are correct, the novice chefs are not. Pastry making is the art of creating containers for a variety of fillings. Taken one step at a time, most pastries are nothing more than selected building blocks or components assembled in a variety of ways to create traditional or unique desserts.

Perhaps the most important (and versatile) building block is the dough. Pastries can be made with flaky dough, mealy dough, sweet dough, puff pastry, éclair dough or meringue. See Table 32.1. Because pies, tarts and cookies are constructed from some of these same doughs (principally pie dough and sweet dough), they, as well as pie fillings, are discussed in the section on pies and tarts; puff pastry, éclair paste and baked meringue are discussed in the section on classic pastries. The cream, custard and mousse fillings used in some of the recipes at the end of this chapter are discussed in Chapter 34, Custards, Creams, Frozen Desserts and Dessert Sauces. Cakes and frostings are covered in Chapter 33.

Pies and Tarts

A **pie** is composed of a sweet or savory filling in a baked crust. It can be open-faced (without a top crust) or, more typically, topped with a full or lattice crust. A pie is generally made in a round, slope-sided pan and cut into wedges for service. A tart is similar to a pie except it is made in a shallow, straight-sided pan, often with fluted edges. A **tart** can be almost any shape; round, square, rectangular and petal shapes are the most common. It is usually open-faced and derives much of its beauty from an attractive arrangement of glazed fruit.

Table 32.1 Classification of Pastry Doughs

Dough	French Name	Characteristics After Baking	Use
Flaky dough	Pâte brisée	Very flaky; not sweet	Prebaked pie shells; pie top crusts
Mealy dough	Pâte brisée	Moderately flaky; not sweet	Custard, cream or fruit pie crusts; quiche crusts
Sweet dough	Pâte sucrée	Very rich; crisp; not flaky	Tart and tartlet shells
Éclair paste	Pâte à choux	Hollow with crisp exterior	Cream puffs; éclairs; savory products
Puff pastry	Pâte feuilletée	Rich but not sweet; hundreds of light, flaky layers	Tart and pastry cases; cookies; layered pastries; savory products
Meringue	Meringue	Sweet; light; crisp or soft depending on preparation	Topping or icing; baked as a shell or component for layered desserts; cookies

Crusts

Pie crusts and tart shells can be made from several types of doughs or crumbs. **Flaky dough**, **mealy dough** and **crumbs** are best for pie crusts; **sweet dough** is usually used for tart shells. A pie crust or tart shell can be shaped and completely baked before filling (known as **baked blind**) or filled and baked simultaneously with the filling.

Bake blind—*to bake a pie shell before it is filled. The dough is often lined with parchment paper and filled with dried beans or pie weights to prevent the crust from rising.*

Flaky and Mealy Doughs

Flaky and mealy pie doughs are quick, easy and versatile. Flaky dough, sometimes known as pâte brisée, takes its name from its final baked texture. It is best for pie top crusts and lattice coverings and may be used for prebaked shells that will be filled with a cooled filling shortly before service. Mealy dough takes its name from its raw texture. It is used whenever a soggy crust would be a problem (for example, as the bottom crust of a custard or fruit pie) because it resists soaking better than flaky dough. Both flaky and mealy doughs are too delicate for tarts that will be removed from the pan for service. Sweet dough, described later, is better for these types of tarts.

Flaky and mealy doughs contain little or no sugar and can be prepared from the same formula with only a slight variation in mixing method. For both types of dough, a cold fat, such as butter or shortening, is cut into the flour. The amount of flakiness in the baked crust depends on the size of the fat particles in the dough. The larger the pieces of fat, the flakier the crust will be. This is because the flakes are actually the sides of fat pockets created during baking by the melting fat and steam. When preparing flaky dough, the fat is left in larger pieces, about the size of peas or peanuts. When preparing mealy dough, the fat is blended in more thoroughly, until the mixture resembles coarse cornmeal. Because the resulting fat pockets are smaller, the crust is less flaky.

The type of fat used affects both the dough's flavor and flakiness. Butter contributes a delicious flavor, but does not produce as flaky a crust as other fats. Butter is also more difficult to work with than other fats because of its lower melting point and its tendency to become brittle when chilled. All-purpose vegetable shortening produces a flaky crust but contributes nothing to its flavor. The flakiest pastry is made with lard. Because some people dislike its flavor for sweet pies, lard is more often used for pâté en croûte or other savory preparations. Some chefs prefer to use a combination of butter with either shortening or lard. Oil is not an appropriate substitute as it disperses too thoroughly through the dough; when baked, the crust will be stiff and crisp.

After the fat is cut into the flour, water or milk is added to form a soft dough. Less water is needed for mealy dough because more flour is already in contact with the fat, reducing its ability to absorb liquid. Cold water is normally used for both flaky and mealy doughs. The water should be well chilled to prevent softening the fat. Milk may be used to increase richness and nutritional value. It will produce a darker, less crisp crust, however. If dry milk powder is used, it should be dissolved in the water first.

Hand mixing is best for small to moderate quantities of dough. You retain better control over the procedure when you can feel the fat being incorporated. It is very difficult to make flaky dough with an electric mixer or food processor, as they tend to cut the fat in too thoroughly. Overmixing develops too much gluten, making the dough elastic and difficult to use. If an electric mixer must be used for large quantities, use the paddle attachment at the lowest speed and be sure the fat is well chilled, even frozen.

Of Tarts and Tortes

The names given to desserts can be rather confusing. One country or region calls an item a *torte* while another region calls the same item a *gâteau*. The following definitions are based on classic terms. You will, no doubt, encounter variations depending on your location and the training of those with whom you work.

Cake—In American and British usages, *cake* refers to a broad range of pastries, including layer cakes, coffee cakes and gâteaux. *Cake* may refer to almost everything that is baked, tender, sweet and sometimes frosted. But to the French, *le cake* is a loaf-shaped fruitcake, similar to an American pound cake with the addition of fruit, nuts and rum.

Gâteau—(pl. *gâteaux*) To the French, *gâteau* refers to various pastry items made with puff pastry, éclair paste, short dough or sweet dough. In America, *gâteau* often refers to any cake-type dessert.

Pastry—*Pastry* may refer to a group of doughs made primarily with flour, water and fat. *Pastry* can also refer to foods made with these doughs or to a large variety of fancy baked goods.

Tart—A tart is a pastry shell filled with sweet or savory ingredients. Tarts have straight, shallow sides and are usually prepared open-face. In France and Britain, the term **flan** is sometimes used to refer to the same items. A **tartlet** is a small, individual-sized tart.

Torte—In Central and Eastern European countries, a *torte* (pl. *torten*) is a rich cake in which all or part of the flour is replaced with finely chopped nuts or bread crumbs. Other cultures refer to any round sweet cake as a torte.

Procedure for Preparing Flaky and Mealy Doughs

1. Sift flour, salt and sugar (if used) together in a large bowl.
2. Cut the fat into the flour.
3. Gradually add a cold liquid, mixing gently until the dough holds together. Do not overmix.
4. Cover the dough with plastic wrap and chill thoroughly before using.

RECIPE 32.1

Basic Pie Dough

Yield: 5 lb. (2.2 kg)

Pastry flour	3 lb.	1300 g
Salt	4 tsp.	20 ml
Granulated sugar (optional)	2 oz.	60 g
All-purpose shortening	1 lb. 8 oz.	680 g
Water, cold*	8 oz.	250 ml

1. Sift the flour, salt and sugar together in a large bowl.
2. Cut the shortening into the flour mixture until the desired consistency is reached.
3. Gradually add the cold water, mixing gently until the dough holds together. Do not overmix or add too much water.
4. Cover the dough with plastic wrap and chill thoroughly before using.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 140, **Total fat** 9 g, **Saturated fat** 2.5 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 120 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 14 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Claims**—no cholesterol; low sodium

*The amount of water needed varies depending upon the manner in which the fat is incorporated. Mealy dough will probably not require the entire 8 ounces (250 milliliters).

1. Cutting the fat into the flour coarsely for flaky dough.

2. Cutting the fat into the flour finely for mealy dough.

3. The finished dough.

Sweet Dough

Sweet dough or **pâte sucrée** is a rich, nonflaky dough used for sweet tart shells. It is sturdier than flaky or mealy dough because it contains egg yolks and the fat is thoroughly blended in. It is also more cookielike than classic pie dough and has the rich flavor of butter. It creates a crisp but tender crust and

is excellent for tartlets as well as for straight-sided tarts that will be removed from their pans before service. Sweet dough crusts may be prebaked then filled, or filled and baked simultaneously with the filling. The raw dough may be kept refrigerated up to two weeks or frozen up to three months.

Procedure for Preparing Sweet Dough

1. Cream softened butter. Add sugar and beat until the mixture is light and fluffy.
2. Slowly add eggs, blending well.
3. Slowly add flour, mixing only until incorporated. Overmixing toughens the dough.
4. Cover the dough with plastic wrap and chill thoroughly before using.

RECIPE 32.2

Sweet Dough

Yield: 7 lb. (3.1 kg)

Unsalted butter, softened	1 lb. 8 oz.	675 g
Powdered sugar	1 lb. 5 oz.	580 g
Egg yolks	1 lb.	450 g
Whole eggs	2	2
All-purpose flour	3 lb. 8 oz.	1600 g

1. Cream the butter and powdered sugar in a large mixer bowl using the paddle attachment.
2. Combine the egg yolks and whole eggs. Slowly add the eggs to the creamed butter. Mix until smooth and free of lumps, scraping down the sides of the bowl as needed.
3. With the mixer on low speed, slowly add the flour to the butter-and-egg mixture. Mix only until incorporated; do not overmix. The dough should be firm, smooth and not sticky.
4. Dust a half-sheet pan with flour. Pack the dough into the pan evenly. Wrap well in plastic wrap and chill until firm.
5. Work with a small portion of the chilled dough when shaping tart shells or other products.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 120, **Total fat** 5 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 16 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Vitamin A** 4%

1. Mixing sweet dough.

2. The finished sweet dough.

Shaping Crusts

Crusts are shaped by rolling out the dough to fit into a pie pan or tart shell (mold) or to sit on top of fillings. Mealy, flaky and sweet doughs are all easier to roll out and work with if well chilled, as chilling keeps the fat firm and prevents stickiness. When rolling and shaping the dough, work on a clean, flat surface (wood or marble is best). Lightly dust the work surface, rolling pin and dough with pastry flour before starting to roll the dough. Also, work only with a manageable amount at a time: usually one crust's worth for a pie or standard-sized tart or enough for 10–12 tartlet shells.

Roll out the dough from the center, working toward the edges. Periodically, lift the dough gently and rotate it. This keeps the dough from sticking and helps produce an even thickness. If the dough sticks to the rolling pin or work surface, sprinkle on a bit more flour. Too much flour, however, makes the crust dry and crumbly and causes gray streaks.

Procedure for Rolling and Shaping Dough for Pie Crusts and Tart Shells

1. A typical pie crust or tart shell should be rolled to a thickness of approximately 1/8 inch (3 millimeters); it should also be at least 2 inches (5 centimeters) larger in diameter than the baking pan.

2. Carefully roll the dough up onto a rolling pin. Position the pin over the pie pan or tart shell and unroll the dough, easing it into the pan or shell. Trim the edges as necessary and flute as desired. Bake or fill as desired.

Procedure for Rolling and Shaping Dough for Tartlet Shells

1. A typical crust for tartlets should be approximately 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) thick.

2. Roll the dough out as described earlier. Then roll the dough up onto the rolling pin.

1. Lay out a single layer of tartlet shells. Unroll the dough over the shells, pressing the dough gently into each one.

2. Roll the rolling pin over the top of the shells. The edge of the shells will cut the dough. Be sure the dough is pressed against the sides of each shell. Bake or fill as desired.

Procedure for Rolling and Shaping Dough for Top Crusts

1. Roll the dough out as before, making the circle large enough to hang over the pan's edge. The dough may be lifted into place by rolling it onto the rolling pin, as with the bottom crust. Slits or designs can be cut from the top crust to allow steam to escape.

2. Seal the top crust to the bottom crust with egg wash or water. Crimp as desired.

Procedure for Rolling and Shaping Dough for Lattice Crusts

1. Roll the dough out as before. Using a ruler as a guide, cut even strips of the desired width, typically 1/2 inch (1.25 centimeters).

2. Using an over-under-over pattern, weave the strips together on top of the filling. Be sure the strips are evenly spaced for an attractive result. Crimp the lattice strips to the bottom crust to seal.

Streusel topping is also used for some pies, particularly fruit pies. A standard recipe is given in Chapter 30, Quick Breads.

Baking Crusts

Pie crusts can be filled and then baked, or baked and then filled. Unfilled baked crusts can be stored at room temperature for two to three days or wrapped in plastic wrap and frozen for as long as three months.

Procedure for Baking Unfilled (Baked Blind) Pie Crusts

1. Roll the dough out to the desired thickness and line the pie pan or tart shell. A crimped edge or border can be added.
2. **Dock** the dough with a fork.

Dock—*pricking small holes in an unbaked dough or crust to allow steam to escape and to prevent the dough from rising when baked.*

3. Cover the dough with baking parchment or greased aluminum foil (greased side down). Press the paper or foil against the edge or walls of the shell. Allow a portion of the paper or foil to extend above the pan.
4. Fill the pan with baking weights, dry rice or beans. These will prevent the crust from rising.
5. Bake the weighted crust at 350°F (180°C) for 10–15 minutes.

6. Remove the weights and paper and return the crust to the oven. Bake until golden brown and fully cooked, approximately 10–15 minutes.
7. Allow to cool, then fill as desired or store.

Crumb Crusts

A quick and tasty bottom crust can be made from finely ground crumbs moistened with melted butter. Crumb crusts can be used for unbaked pies such as those with cream or chiffon fillings, or they can be baked with their fillings, as with cheesecakes.

Chocolate cookies, graham crackers, gingersnaps, vanilla wafers and macaroons are popular choices for crumb crusts. Some breakfast cereals such as corn flakes or bran flakes are also used. Ground nuts and spices can be added for flavor. Whatever cookies or other ingredients are used, be sure they are ground to a fine, even crumb. If packaged crumbs are unavailable, a food processor, blender or rolling pin can be used.

The typical ratio for a crumb crust is one part melted butter, two parts sugar and four parts crumbs. For example, 8 ounces (250 grams) graham crackers mixed with 4 ounces (120 grams) sugar and 2 ounces (60 grams) melted butter produce enough crust to line one 9- or 10-inch (22–25 centimeter) pan. The amount of sugar may need to be adjusted depending on the type of crumbs used, however; for example, chocolate sandwich cookies need less sugar than graham crackers. If the mixture is too dry to stick together, gradually add more melted butter. Press the mixture into the bottom of the pan and chill or bake it before filling.

Making a crumb crust.

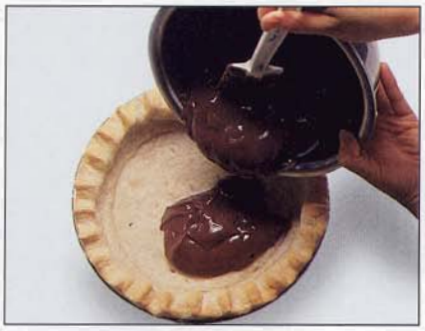
Fillings

Fillings make pies and tarts distinctive and flavorful. Four types of fillings are discussed here: **cream**, **fruit**, **custard** and **chiffon**. There is no one correct presentation or filling-and-crust combination. The apples in an apple pie, for example, may be sliced, seasoned and topped with streusel; caramelized, puréed and blended with cream; chopped and covered with a flaky dough lattice; or poached, arranged over pastry cream and brushed with a shiny glaze. Only an understanding of the fundamental techniques for making fillings—and some imagination—ensures success.

Cream Fillings

A cream filling is really nothing more than a flavored pastry cream. Pastry cream is a type of starch-thickened egg custard discussed in Chapter 34, Custards, Creams, Frozen Desserts and Dessert Sauces. When used as a pie filling, pastry cream should be thickened with cornstarch so that it is firm enough to hold its shape when sliced. Popular flavors are chocolate, banana, coconut and lemon.

A cream filling is fully cooked on the stove top, so a prebaked or crumb crust is needed. The crust can be filled while the filling is still warm, or the filling can be chilled and later placed in the crust. A cream pie is often topped with meringue, which is then browned quickly in an oven or under a broiler.



1. Filling a baked pie shell with chocolate custard.

2. Topping with meringue.

RECIPE 32.3

Basic Cream Pie

Yield: 2 9-in. (22-cm) Pies

Granulated sugar	1 lb.	500 g
Milk	2 qt.	2 lt
Egg yolks	8	8
Eggs	4	4
Cornstarch	5 oz.	150 g
Unsalted butter	4 oz.	120 g
Vanilla extract	1 oz.	30 g
Flaky pie dough shells, baked	2	2

1. In a heavy saucepan, dissolve 8 ounces (250 grams) of sugar in the milk. Bring just to a boil.
2. Meanwhile, whisk the egg yolks and whole eggs together in a large bowl.
3. Sift the cornstarch and remaining sugar (8 ounces/250 grams) onto the eggs. Whisk until smooth.
4. Temper the egg mixture with approximately one half of the hot milk. Stir the warmed egg mixture back into the remaining milk and return it to a boil, stirring constantly.
5. Stirring constantly and vigorously, allow the cream to boil until thick, approximately 30 seconds. Remove from the heat and stir in the butter and vanilla. Stir until the butter is melted and incorporated.
6. Pour the cream into the pie crusts.
7. The pies can be topped with meringue while the filling is still warm. The meringue is then lightly browned in a 425°F (210°C) oven. Chill the pies for service.

Variations: *Chocolate*—Melt 12 ounces (340 grams) bittersweet chocolate. Fold the melted chocolate into the hot cream after adding the butter and vanilla.

Banana—Layer 12 ounces (340 grams) sliced bananas (about 3 medium bananas) into the baked shell with the warm cream.

Coconut I—Substitute 12 ounces (340 grams) cream of coconut for 12 ounces (340 grams) of milk and 4 ounces (120 grams) of sugar. Top the pie with meringue and shredded coconut.

Coconut II—Stir 8 ounces (250 grams) toasted coconut into the warm cream.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 220, **Total fat** 9 g, **Saturated fat** 5 g, **Cholesterol** 130 mg, **Sodium** 55 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 29 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin A** 10%

Fruit Fillings

A fruit filling is a mixture of fruit, fruit juice, spices and sugar thickened with a starch. Apple, cherry, blueberry and peach are traditional favorites. The fruit can be fresh, frozen or canned. (See Chapter 25, Fruits, for comments on selecting the best fruits for fillings.) The starch can be flour, cornstarch, tapioca or a packaged commercial instant or pregelatinized starch. The ingredients for

a fruit filling are most often combined using one of three methods: **cooked fruit, cooked juice** or **baked**.

Cooked Fruit Fillings

The cooked fruit filling method is often used when the fruits need to be softened by cooking (for example, apples or rhubarb) or are naturally rather dry. (Poaching fruit, discussed in Chapter 25, Fruits, is a variation of this procedure.) A cooked fruit filling should be combined with a prebaked or crumb crust.

Procedure for Preparing Cooked Fruit Fillings

1. Combine the fruit, sugar and some juice or liquid in a heavy, nonreactive saucepan and bring to a boil.
2. Dissolve the starch (usually cornstarch) in a cold liquid, then add to the boiling fruit.
3. Stirring constantly, cook the fruit-and-starch mixture until the starch is clear and the mixture is thickened.
4. Add any other flavorings and any acidic ingredients such as lemon juice. Stir to blend.
5. Remove from the heat and cool before filling a prebaked pie or crumb crust.

RECIPE 32.4

Apple-Cranberry Pie

Yield: 1 9-in. (22-cm) Pie Method: Cooked Fruit Filling

Fresh tart apples such as Granny Smiths, peeled, cored and cut in 1-inch (2.5-centimeter) cubes	1 lb.	450 g
Brown sugar	4 oz.	120 g
Granulated sugar	4 oz.	120 g
Orange zest	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Cinnamon, ground	1 tsp.	5 ml
Salt	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Cornstarch	2 tsp.	10 ml
Orange juice	3 oz.	90 ml
Fresh cranberries, rinsed	1 pt.	500 ml
Mealy dough pie shell, partially baked	1	1
Streusel Topping (Recipe 30.4)	4 oz.	120 g

1. Combine the apples, brown sugar, granulated sugar, orange zest, cinnamon and salt in a large, nonreactive saucepan.
2. Dissolve the cornstarch in the orange juice and add it to the apples.
3. Cover and simmer until the apples begin to soften, stirring occasionally. Add the cranberries, cover and continue simmering until the cranberries begin to soften, approximately 2 minutes.

Continued

4. Place the apple-cranberry mixture in the pie shell and cover with the prepared streusel topping. Bake at 400°F (200°C) until the filling is bubbling hot and the topping is lightly browned, approximately 20 minutes.

VARIATION: *Apple-rhubarb pie*—Substitute cleaned rhubarb, cut into 1-inch (2.5-centimeter) chunks, for the cranberries. Add 1/8 teaspoon (0.5 milliliter) nutmeg.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 290, **Total fat** 8 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 200 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 53 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Claims**—no cholesterol; good source of fiber

Cooked Juice Fillings

The cooked juice filling method is used for juicy fruits such as berries, especially when they are canned or frozen. This method is also recommended for delicate fruits that cannot withstand cooking such as strawberries, pineapple and blueberries. Because only the juice is cooked, the fruit retains its shape, color and flavor better. A cooked juice filling should be combined with a prebaked or crumb crust.

PROCEDURE FOR PREPARING COOKED JUICE FILLINGS

1. Drain the juice from the fruit. Measure the juice and add water if necessary to create the desired volume.
2. Combine the liquid with sugar in a nonreactive saucepan and bring to a boil.
3. Dissolve the starch in cold water, then add it to the boiling liquid. Cook until the starch is clear and the juice is thickened.
4. Add any other flavoring ingredients.
5. Pour the thickened juice over the fruit and stir gently.
6. Cool the filling before placing it in a precooked pie shell.

RECIPE 32.5

BLUEBERRY PIE FILLING

Yield: 8-lb. (3.6-kg) Filling — Method: Cooked Juice Filling

Canned blueberries, unsweetened	1 #10 can	1 #10 can
Sugar	1 lb. 12 oz.	840 g
Cornstarch	4 1/2 oz.	135 g
Water	8 oz.	225 ml
Cinnamon, ground	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Lemon juice	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Lemon zest, grated fine	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Drain the juice from the canned blueberries, reserving both the fruit and the juice.
2. Measure the juice and, if necessary, add enough water to provide 1 quart (1 liter) of liquid. Bring to a boil, add the sugar and stir until dissolved.
3. Dissolve the cornstarch in 8 ounces (225 grams) of water.

4. Add the cornstarch to the boiling juice and return to a boil. Cook until the mixture thickens and clears. Remove from the heat.
5. Add the cinnamon, lemon juice, lemon zest and reserved blueberries. Stir gently to coat the fruit with the glaze.
6. Allow the filling to cool, then use it to fill prebaked pie shells or other pastry items.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (29-g) serving: **Calories** 40, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 10 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—fat free; no cholesterol; no sodium; low calorie

Baked Fruit Fillings

The baked fruit filling method is a traditional technique in which the fruit, sugar, flavorings and starch are combined in an unbaked shell. The dough and filling are then baked simultaneously. Almost any type of fruit and starch can be used. The results are not always consistent, however, because thickening is difficult to control.

Procedure for Preparing Baked Fruit Fillings

1. Combine the starch, spices and sugar.
2. Peel, core, cut or drain the fruit as desired or as directed in the recipe.
3. Toss the fruit with the starch mixture, coating well.
4. Add a portion of juice to moisten the fruit. Small lumps of butter are also often added.
5. Fill an unbaked shell with the fruit mixture. Cover with a top crust, lattice or streusel and bake.

RECIPE 32.6

Cherry Pie

Yield: 2 9-in. (22-cm) Pies | Method: Baked Fruit Filling

Tapioca	1 1/2 oz.	45 g
Salt	pinch	pinch
Granulated sugar	1 lb.	450 g
Almond extract	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Canned pitted cherries, drained (reserve the liquid)	3 lb.	1.3 kg
Mealy dough pie shells, unbaked	2	2
Unsalted butter	1 oz.	30 g
Egg wash	as needed	as needed
Sanding sugar	as needed	as needed

1. Stir the tapioca, salt and granulated sugar together. Add the almond extract and cherries.
2. Stir in up to 8 ounces (250 grams) of the liquid drained from the cherries, adding enough liquid to moisten the mixture thoroughly.

Continued

3. Allow the filling to stand for 30 minutes. Then stir gently and place the filling in an unbaked pie shell.
4. Cut the butter into small pieces. Dot the filling with the butter.
5. Place a top crust or a lattice crust over the filling; seal and flute the edges. If using a full top crust, cut several slits in the dough to allow steam to escape. Brush the top crust or lattice with an egg wash and sprinkle with sanding sugar.
6. Place on a preheated sheet pan and bake at 400°F (200°C) for 50–60 minutes.

Approximate values per 1/8-pie serving: **Calories** 340, **Total fat** 9 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 5 mg, **Sodium** 170 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 63 g, **Protein** 2 g

Dotting the cherry filling with butter.

Custard Fillings

A custard pie has a soft filling that bakes along with the crust. Popular examples include pumpkin, egg custard and pecan pies. As explained in Chapter 34, Custards, Creams, Frozen Desserts and Dessert Sauces, custards are liquids thickened by coagulated egg proteins. To make a custard pie, an uncooked liquid containing eggs is poured into a pie shell. When baked, the egg proteins coagulate, firming and setting the filling.

The procedure for making custard pies is simple: Combine the ingredients and bake. But there is often a problem: baking the bottom crust completely without overcooking the filling. For the best results, start baking the pie near the bottom of a hot oven at 400°F (200°C). After 10 minutes, reduce the heat to 325°F–350°F (160°C–180°C) to finish cooking the filling slowly.

To determine the doneness of a custard pie:

1. Shake the pie gently. It is done if it is no longer liquid. The center should show only a slight movement.
2. Insert a thin knife about 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) from the center. The filling is done if the knife comes out clean.

Convenience Products

Prepared or canned pie fillings are available in a variety of fruit and custard flavors. These products offer convenience and the ability to serve fruit pies out of season. The ratio of fruit to pregelled liquid varies greatly from brand to brand, however. Most commercial fillings are stabilized to permit any additional cooking needed to assemble the final product. Shelf life tends to be extremely long, often without the need for refrigeration. Dry custard mixes are also available, needing only the addition of water or milk. Despite the convenience, most prepared pie fillings are a disappointing substitute for a well-made fresh fruit or custard filling.

RECIPE 32.7

Pumpkin Pie

Yield: 4 9-in. (22-cm) Pies **Method:** Baked Custard Filling

Eggs, beaten slightly	4	4
Pumpkin purée	2 lb.	900 g
Granulated sugar	12 oz.	340 g
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Nutmeg, ground	1/2 tsp.	2 ml

Cloves, ground	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Cinnamon, ground	2 tsp.	10 ml
Ginger, ground	1 tsp.	5 ml
Evaporated milk	24 oz.	700 ml
Flaky dough pie shells, unbaked	4	4

1. Combine the eggs and pumpkin. Blend in the sugar.
2. Add the salt and spices, then the evaporated milk. Whisk until completely blended and smooth.
3. Allow the filling to rest for 15–20 minutes before filling the pie shells. This allows the starch in the pumpkin to begin absorbing liquid, making it less likely to separate after baking.
4. Pour the filling into unbaked pie shells. Place in the oven on a preheated sheet pan at 400°F (200°C). Bake for 15 minutes. Lower the oven temperature to 350°F (180°C) and bake until a knife inserted near the center comes out clean, approximately 40–50 minutes.

Approximate values per 1/8-pie serving: **Calories** 210, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 2.5 g, **Cholesterol** 30 mg, **Sodium** 230 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 25 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Vitamin A** 6%

Chiffon Fillings

A chiffon filling is created by adding gelatin to a stirred custard or a fruit purée. Whipped egg whites are then folded into the mixture. The filling is placed in a prebaked crust and chilled until firm. These preparations are the same as those for chiffons, mousses and Bavarians discussed in Chapter 34, Custards, Creams, Frozen Desserts and Dessert Sauces.

Assembling Pies and Tarts

The various types of pie fillings can be used to fill almost any crust or shell, provided the crust is prebaked as necessary. The filling can then be topped with meringue or whipped cream as desired. Garnishes such as toasted co-

TABLE 32.2 SUGGESTIONS FOR ASSEMBLING PIES

Filling	Crust	Topping	Garnish
Vanilla or lemon cream	Prebaked flaky dough or crumb	None, meringue or whipped cream	Crumbs from the crust
Chocolate cream	Prebaked flaky dough or crumb	None, meringue or whipped cream	Crumbs from the crust or shaved chocolate
Banana cream	Prebaked flaky dough	Meringue or whipped cream	Dried banana chips
Coconut cream	Prebaked flaky dough	Meringue or whipped cream	Shredded coconut
Fresh fruit	Unbaked mealy dough or sweet dough if shallow tart	Lattice, full crust or streusel	Sanding sugar or cut-out designs if lattice or top crust is used
Canned or frozen fruit	Unbaked mealy dough	Lattice, full crust or streusel	Sanding sugar or cut-out designs if lattice or top crust is used
Chiffon or mousse	Crumb or prebaked, sweetened flaky dough	None or whipped cream	Crumbs, fruit or shaved chocolate
Custard (e.g., pecan or pumpkin)	Unbaked mealy dough	None	Whipped cream
Vanilla pastry cream	Prebaked sweet dough	Fresh fruit	Glaze

TABLE 32.3 TROUBLESHOOTING CHART FOR PIES

Problem	Cause	Solution
Crust shrinks	Overmixing	Adjust mixing technique
	Overworking dough	Adjust rolling technique
	Not enough fat	Adjust formula
Soggy crust	Wrong dough used	Use mealier dough
	Oven temperature too low	Adjust oven
	Not baked long enough	Adjust baking time
Crumbly crust	Not enough liquid	Adjust formula
	Too much fat	Adjust formula
Tough crust	Not enough fat	Adjust formula
	Overmixing	Adjust mixing technique
Runny filling	Insufficient starch	Adjust formula
	Starch insufficiently cooked	Allow starch to gelatinize completely
Lumpy cream filling	Starch not incorporated properly	Stir filling while cooking
	Filling overcooked	Adjust cooking time
Custard filling weeps or separates	Too many eggs	Reduce egg content or add starch to the filling
	Eggs overcooked	Reduce oven temperature or baking time

conut, cookie crumbs and chocolate curls are often added for appearance and flavor.

Storing Pies and Tarts

Pies and tarts filled with cream or custard must be kept refrigerated to retard bacterial growth. Baked fruit pies may be held at room temperature for service.

Unbaked fruit pies or unbaked pie shells may be frozen for up to two months. Freezing baked fruit pies is not recommended. Custard, cream and meringue-topped pies should not be frozen, as the eggs will separate, making the product runny.

CLASSIC PASTRIES

Puff pastry, éclair paste and **meringue** are classic components of French pastries; they are used to create a wide variety of dessert and pastry items. Many combinations are traditional. Once you master the skills necessary to produce these products, however, you will be free to experiment with other flavors and assembly techniques.

Puff Pastry

Puff pastry is one of the bakeshop's most elegant and sophisticated products. Also known as **pâte feuilletée**, it is a rich, buttery dough that bakes into hundreds of light, crisp layers.

Puff pastry is used for both sweet and savory preparations. It can be baked and then filled or filled first and then baked. Puff pastry may be used to wrap beef (for beef Wellington), pâté (for pâté en croûte) or almond cream (for an apple tart). It can be shaped into shells or cases known as vol-au-vents or

bouchées and filled with shellfish in a cream sauce or berries in a pastry cream. Puff pastry is essential for napoleons, pithiviers and tartes tatin.

Like croissant and danish dough (discussed in Chapter 31, Yeast Breads), puff pastry is a rolled-in dough. But unlike those doughs, puff pastry does not contain any yeast or chemical leavening agents. Fat is rolled into the dough in horizontal layers; when baked, the fat melts, separating the dough into layers. The fat's moisture turns into steam, which causes the dough to rise and the layers to further separate.

Butter is the preferred fat because of its flavor and melt-in-the-mouth quality. But butter is rather difficult to work with as it becomes brittle when cold and melts at a relatively low temperature. Therefore, specially formulated puff pastry shortenings are used to compensate for butter's shortcomings. They do not, however, provide the true flavor of butter.

Raw, frozen, commercially prepared puff pastry is readily available in sheets or precut in a variety of shapes. Some convenience products, especially those made with butter, provide excellent, consistent results. Their expense may be offset by the savings in time and labor. Keep these frozen doughs well wrapped to prevent drying and freezer burn, and prepare according to package directions.

Making Puff Pastry

The procedure described here for making puff pastry is just one of many. Each chef will have his or her own formula and folding method. All methods, however, depend upon the proper layering of fat and dough through a series of turns to give the pastry its characteristic flakiness and rise.

Some chefs prefer to prepare a dough called *blitz* or *quick puff pastry*. It does not require the extensive rolling and folding procedure used for true puff pastry. Blitz puff pastry is less delicate and flaky but may be perfectly acceptable for some uses. A formula for it is given at the end of this chapter.

Procedure for Preparing Puff Pastry

1. Prepare the dough base (**detrempe**) by combining the flour, water, salt and a small amount of fat. Do not overmix. Overmixing results in greater gluten formation; too much gluten can make the pastry undesirably tough.
2. Wrap the detrempe and chill for several hours or overnight. This allows the gluten to relax and the flour to absorb the liquid.
3. Shape the butter into a rectangle of even thickness; wrap and chill until ready to use.
4. Allow the detrempe and butter to sit at room temperature until slightly softened and of the same consistency.
5. Roll out the detrempe into a rectangle of even thickness.
6. Place the butter in the center of the dough. Fold the dough around the butter, enclosing it completely.
7. Roll out the block of dough and butter into a long, even rectangle. Roll only at right angles so that the layered structure is not destroyed.
8. Fold the dough like a business letter: Fold the bottom third up toward the center so that it covers the center third, then fold the top third down over the bottom and middle thirds. This completes the first turn.
9. Rotate the block of dough one-quarter turn (90 degrees) on the work surface. Roll out again into a long, even rectangle.
10. Fold the dough in thirds again, like a business letter. This completes the second turn. Wrap the dough and chill for approximately 30 minutes. The

Detrempe—*a paste made with flour and water during the first stage of preparing a pastry dough, especially rolled-in doughs.*

resting period allows the gluten to relax; the chilling prevents the butter from becoming too soft.

11. Repeat the rolling and folding process, chilling between every one or two turns, until the dough has been turned a total of five times.
12. Wrap well and chill overnight. Raw dough may be refrigerated for a few days or frozen for two to three months.
13. Shape and bake as needed. Baked, unfilled puff pastry can be stored at room temperature for two to three days.

RECIPE 32.8

Puff Pastry

Yield: 2 lb. (1 kg) Method: Rolled-In Dough

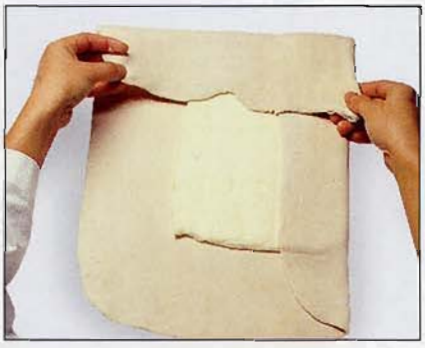
All-purpose flour	13 oz.	390 g
Salt	1 1/2 tsp.	7 ml
Unsalted butter, cold	3 oz.	90 g
Water, cold	7 oz.	210 ml
Unsalted butter, softened	10 oz.	300 g

1. To form the detrempe, sift the flour and salt together in a large bowl. Cut the 3 ounces (90 grams) of cold butter into small pieces and then cut the pieces into the flour until the mixture resembles coarse cornmeal.
2. Make a well in the center of the mixture and add all the water at once. Using a rubber spatula or your fingers, gradually draw the flour into the water. Mix until all the flour is incorporated. Do not knead. The detrempe should be sticky and shaggy-looking.

1. Mise en place for puff pastry. The detrempe is shown on the left.

Note: The detrempe can be made in a food processor. To do so, combine the flour, salt and pieces of butter in a food processor bowl fitted with the metal blade. Process until a coarse meal is formed. With the processor running, slowly add the water. Turn the machine off as soon as the dough comes together to form a ball. Proceed with the remainder of the recipe.

3. Turn the detrempe out onto a lightly floured surface. Knead the dough a few times by hand, rounding it into a ball. Wrap the dough tightly in plastic and chill overnight.
4. To roll in the butter, first prepare the 10-ounce (300-gram) piece of butter by placing it between two sheets of plastic wrap. Use a rolling pin to roll the softened butter into a rectangle approximately 5 inches × 8 inches (12.5 centimeters × 20 centimeters). It is important that the detrempe and butter be of almost equal consistency. If necessary, allow the detrempe to sit at room temperature to soften or chill the butter briefly to harden.
5. On a lightly floured board, roll the detrempe into a rectangle approximately 12 inches × 15 inches (30 centimeters × 37.5 centimeters). Lift and rotate the dough as necessary to prevent sticking.
6. Use a dry pastry brush to brush away any flour from the dough's surface. Loose flour can cause gray streaks and can prevent the puff pastry from rising properly when baked.
7. Peel one piece of plastic wrap from the butter. Position the butter in the center of the rectangle and remove the remaining plastic. Fold the four edges of the detrempe over the butter enclosing it completely. Stretch



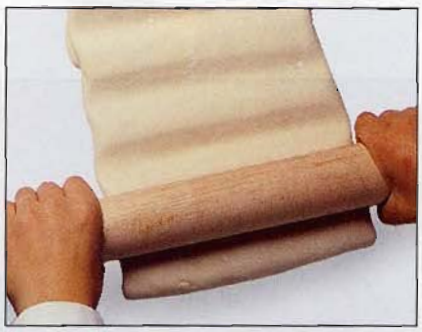
2. Folding the dough around the butter.

the dough if necessary; it is important that none of the butter be exposed.

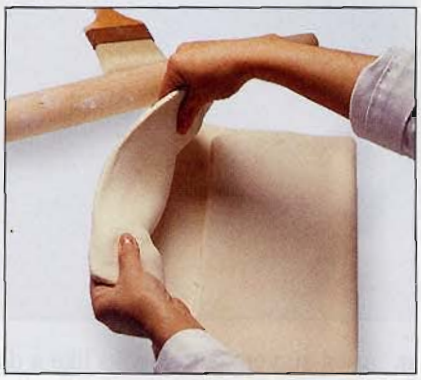
8. With the folded side facing up, press the dough several times with a rolling pin. Use a rocking motion to create ridges in the dough. Place the rolling pin in each ridge and slowly roll back and forth to widen the ridge. Repeat until all the ridges are doubled in size.
9. Using the ridges as a starting point, roll the dough out into a smooth, even rectangle approximately 8 inches × 24 inches (20 centimeters × 60 centimeters). Be careful to keep the corners of the dough as right angles.
10. Use a dry pastry brush to remove any loose flour from the dough's surface. Fold the dough in thirds, like a business letter. If one end is damaged or in worse condition, fold it in first; otherwise, start at the bottom. This completes the first turn.
11. Rotate the block of dough 90 degrees so that the folded edge is on your left and the dough faces you like a book. Roll out the dough again, repeating the ridging technique. Once again, the dough should be in a smooth, even rectangle of approximately 8 inches × 24 inches (20 centimeters × 60 centimeters).
12. Fold the dough in thirds again, completing the second turn. Cover the dough with plastic wrap and chill for at least 30 minutes.
13. Repeat the rolling and folding technique until the dough has had a total of five turns. Do not perform more than two turns without a resting and chilling period. Cover the dough completely and chill overnight before shaping and baking.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (23-g) serving: **Calories** 120, **Total fat** 9 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 25 mg, **Sodium** 110 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 9 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 8%

Note: It is not necessary to work with the entire block of dough when making bouchées, cookies or the like. Cut the block into thirds or quarters and work with one of these portions at a time, keeping the rest chilled until needed.



3. Rolling out the dough.



4. Folding the dough in thirds.

Shaping Puff Pastry

Once puff pastry dough is prepared, it can be shaped into containers of various sizes and shapes. Classic shapes are bouchées, vol-au-vents and feuilletées. **Bouchées** are small puff pastry shells often used for hors d'oeuvre or appetizers. **Vol-au-vents** are larger, deeper shells, often filled with savory mixtures for a main course. Although they are most often round or square, special vol-au-vent cutters are available in the shape of fish, hearts or petals. **Feuilletées** are square, rectangular or diamond-shaped puff pastry boxes. They can be filled with a sweet or savory mixture.

When making straight cuts in puff pastry, press the tip of your knife into the dough and cut by pressing down on the handle. Do not drag the knife through the dough or you will crush the layers and deform the pastry.

Procedure for Shaping Vol-au-Vents and Bouchées

1. Roll out the puff pastry dough to a thickness of approximately 1/4 inch (6 millimeters).

2. Cut the desired shape and size using a vol-au-vent cutter or rings.

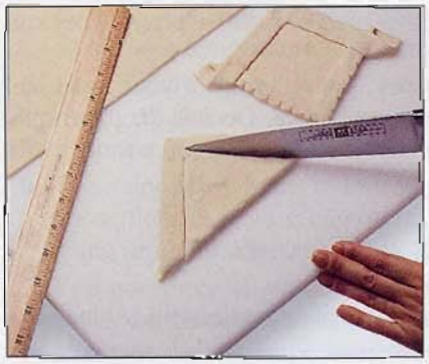
a. A vol-au-vent cutter looks like a double cookie cutter with one cutter about 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) smaller than the other. To cut the pastry, simply position the cutter and press down.

b. To shape with rings, use two rings, one approximately 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) smaller in diameter than the other. The larger ring is used to cut two rounds. One will be the base and is set aside. The smaller ring is then used to cut out an interior circle from the second round, leaving a border ring of dough. (The scrap of dough from the dough ring's center has no further use in making vol-au-vents.)

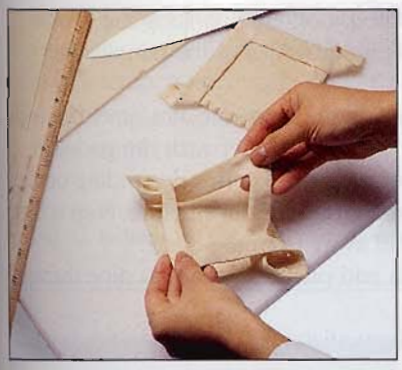
3. Place the vol-au-vent or bouchée on a paper-lined sheet pan. If you used rings, place the base on the paper-lined sheet pan, brush lightly with water, then top it with the dough ring; score the edge with the back of a paring knife. Chill for 20–30 minutes to allow the dough to relax before baking.
4. Egg-wash if desired and dock the center with a fork.

Procedure for Shaping Feuilletées

1. Roll out the puff pastry dough into an even rectangle approximately 1/8 to 1/4 inch (3 to 6 millimeters) thick.
2. Using a sharp paring knife or chef's knife, cut squares that are about 2 inches (5 centimeters) larger than the desired interior of the finished feuilletée.



3. Fold each square in half diagonally. Cut through two sides of the dough, about 1/2 inch (1.25 centimeters) from the edge. Cut a "V," being careful not to cut through the corners at the center fold.



4. Open the square and lay it flat. Lift opposite sides of the cut border at the cut corners and cross them.

5. Brush water on the edges to seal the dough. Place the feuilletées on a paper-lined sheet pan.
6. Score the edges with the back of a paring knife. Chill for 20–30 minutes to allow the dough to relax before baking.
7. Egg-wash if desired and dock the center with a fork.

Puff pastry scraps cannot be rerolled and used for products needing a high rise. The additional rolling destroys the layers. Scraps (known as rognures), however, can be used for cookies such as palmiers (Recipe 32.28), turnovers, decorative crescents (fleurons), tart shells, napoleons (Recipe 32.27) or any item for which rise is less important than flavor and flakiness.

Most puff pastry products bake best in a hot oven, about 400°F–425°F (200°C–220°C).

Éclair Paste

Éclair paste, also known as **pâte à choux**, bakes up into golden brown, crisp pastries. Inside these light pastries are mostly air pockets with a bit of moist dough. They can be filled with sweet cream, custard, fruit or even savory mixtures. The dough is most often piped into rounds for **cream puffs**, fingers for **éclairs** or rings for **Paris-Brest**. Éclair paste may also be piped or spooned into specific shapes and deep-fried for doughnut-type products known as **beignets**, **churros** and **crullers**.

Making Éclair Paste

Éclair paste is unique among doughs because it is cooked before baking. The cooking occurs when the flour is added to a boiling mixture of water, milk and butter. This process breaks down the starches in the flour, allowing them to absorb the liquid, speeding gelatinization. Eggs are added to the flour mixture for leavening. The dough produced is batterlike with a smooth, firm texture; it does not have the dry, crumbly texture of other doughs. Without this technique, the dough would not puff up and develop the desired large interior air pockets when baked.

Procedure for Preparing Éclair Paste

1. Combine the liquid ingredients and butter and bring to a boil.
2. Add all the flour to the saucepan as soon as the water-and-butter mixture comes to a boil. If the liquid is allowed to boil, evaporation occurs; this can create an imbalance in the liquid-to-flour ratio.

Cream puffs—*baked rounds of éclair paste cut in half and filled with pastry cream, whipped cream, fruit or other filling.*

Profiteroles—*small baked rounds of éclair paste filled with ice cream and topped with chocolate sauce.*

Croquembouche—*a pyramid of small puffs, each filled with pastry cream; a French tradition for Christmas and weddings, it is held together with caramelized sugar and decorated with spun sugar or marzipan flowers.*

Éclairs—*baked fingers of éclair paste filled with pastry cream; the top is then coated with chocolate glaze or fondant.*

Paris-Brest—*rings of baked éclair paste cut in half horizontally and filled with light pastry cream and/or whipped cream; the top is dusted with powdered sugar or drizzled with chocolate glaze.*

Beignets—*squares or strips of éclair paste deep-fried and dusted with powdered sugar.*

Churros—*a Spanish and Mexican pastry in which sticks of éclair paste flavored with cinnamon are deep-fried and rolled in sugar while still hot.*

Crullers—*a Dutch pastry in which a loop or strip of twisted éclair paste is deep-fried.*

3. Stir vigorously until the liquid is absorbed. Continue cooking the dough until it forms a ball that comes away from the sides of the pan, leaving only a thin film of dough in the pan.
4. Transfer the dough to a mixing bowl. Add the eggs one at a time, beating well after each addition. This may be done in a mixer with the paddle attachment or by hand. The number of eggs used varies depending on the size of each egg and the moisture content of the flour mixture. Stop adding eggs when the dough just begins to fall away from the beaters.
5. The finished dough should be smooth and pliable enough to pipe through a pastry bag; it should not be runny.
6. Pipe the dough as desired and bake immediately. A high oven temperature is necessary at the start of baking; it is then reduced gradually to finish baking and dry the product. Do not open the oven door during the first half of the baking period.
7. Allow the dough to bake until completely dry. If the products are removed from the oven too soon, they will collapse.
8. Baked éclair paste can be stored, unfilled, for several days at room temperature or frozen for several weeks. Once filled, the pastry should be served within two or three hours, as it quickly becomes soggy.

RECIPE 32.9

Basic Éclair Paste

Yield: 2 lb. (1 kg) Dough

Milk*	8 oz.	225 ml
Water	8 oz.	225 ml
Salt	1 1/2 tsp.	7 ml
Granulated sugar	2 tsp.	10 ml
Unsalted butter	7 1/2 oz.	210 g
All-purpose flour	8 oz.	450 g
Eggs	7–9	7–9

1. Preheat the oven to 425°F (220°C). Line a sheet pan with parchment. Have a pastry bag with a large plain tip ready.
2. Place the milk, water, salt, sugar and butter in a saucepan. Bring to a boil. Make sure the butter is fully melted.
3. Remove from the heat and immediately add all the flour. Vigorously beat the dough by hand. Put the pan back on the heat and continue beating the dough until it comes away from the sides of the pan. The dough should look relatively dry.
4. Transfer the dough to a mixing bowl and allow it to cool briefly to a temperature of approximately 130°F (54°C) or lower. Using the mixer's paddle attachment, begin beating in the eggs one at a time.
5. Continue to add the eggs until the mixture is shiny but firm. It may not be necessary to use all nine eggs. The dough should pull away from the sides of the bowl in thick threads; it will not clear the bowl.
6. Put a workable amount of dough into the pastry bag and pipe onto the sheet pan in the desired shapes at once.
7. Bake immediately, beginning at 425°F (220°C) for 10 minutes, then lowering the heat to 375°F (190°C) for another 10 minutes. Continue gradually

* For a crisper product, replace the milk with water.

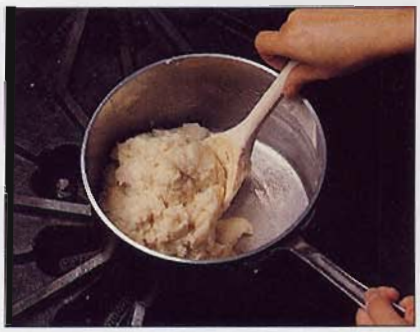
lowering the oven temperature until the shapes are brown and dry inside. Open the oven door as little as possible to prevent rapid changes in the oven's temperature.

8. Cool completely, then fill as desired. Leftovers can be frozen or stored at room temperature.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (32-g) serving: **Calories** 90, **Total fat** 7 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 60 mg, **Sodium** 180 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 6 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Vitamin A** 8%

1. Heating the butter and milk.

2. Adding the flour to the hot liquid.



3. Stirring the dough to dry it.

4. The finished batter after the eggs are incorporated.

5. Piping éclairs.

Meringues

Meringues are egg whites whipped with sugar. The texture—hard or soft—depends on the ratio of sugar to egg whites.

A low sugar content in comparison with the egg whites creates a **soft meringue**. Soft meringues can be folded into a mousse or Bavarian to lighten it or used in a spongecake or soufflé. Meringues with only a small amount of sugar will always be soft; they will not become crisp no matter how they are used.

Hard meringues are made with egg whites and an equal part or more, by weight, of sugar. They can be incorporated into a butter cream or pastry cream or used to top a pie or baked Alaska. These toppings are usually placed briefly under a broiler to caramelize the sugar, creating an attractive brown surface.

Hard meringues with twice as much sugar, by weight, as egg whites can be piped into disks or other shapes and dried in an oven. A low oven tempera-

TABLE 32.4 MERINGUES

Type	Ratio of Sugar to Egg Whites	Preparation	Use
Common—hard	Twice as much or more	Whip or fold sugar into whipped egg whites	Baked
Common—soft	Equal parts or less	Whip or fold sugar into whipped egg whites	Pie topping; soufflé; cake ingredient
Swiss	Varies	Warm egg whites with sugar, then whip	Buttercream; pie topping; baked
Italian	Varies	Hot sugar syrup poured into whipped egg whites	Buttercream; frosting; crème Chiboust; baked

ture evaporates the eggs' moisture, leaving a crisp, sugary, honeycomblike structure. Disks of baked meringue can be used as layers in a torte or cake. Cups or shells of baked meringue can be filled with cream, mousse, ice cream or fruit. Often baked meringues also contain ground nuts (and are then known as dacquoise), cocoa powder or other flavorings.

Making Meringues

There are three methods for making meringues: **common**, **Swiss** and **Italian**. Regardless of which preparation method is used, the final product should be smooth, glossy and moist. A meringue should never be dry or spongelike. You should review the procedure for whipping egg whites given in Chapter 20, Eggs.

Common Meringues

Common meringues are made by first beating egg whites to a soft foam (soft peaks). Granulated sugar is then slowly beaten or folded into the egg whites. The final product may be hard or soft depending on the ratio of sugar to egg whites.

Swiss Meringues

Swiss meringues are made by combining unwhipped egg whites with sugar and warming the mixture over a bain marie to a temperature of approximately 100°F (38°C). The syrupy solution is then whipped until cool and stiff. The final product may be hard or soft depending on the ratio of sugar to egg whites. Swiss meringues are extremely stable but rather difficult to prepare. If the mixture gets too hot, it will not whip properly; the result will be syrupy and runny. Swiss meringue is often used as a topping or in buttercream.

Italian Meringues

Italian meringues are made by slowly pouring a hot sugar syrup into whipped egg whites. The heat from the syrup cooks the egg whites, adding stability. Be sure that the sugar syrup reaches the correct temperature and that it is added to the egg whites in a slow, steady stream. Italian meringues are used in buttercream (see Chapter 33, Cakes and Frostings) or folded into pastry cream to produce crème Chiboust. They may be flavored and used as a cake filling and frosting called boiled icing.

TABLE 32.5 TROUBLESHOOTING CHART FOR MERINGUES

Problem	Cause	Solution
Weeps or beads of sugar syrup are released	Old eggs	Use fresher eggs or add starch or stabilizer
	Egg whites overwhipped	Whip only until stiff peaks form
	Not enough sugar	Increase sugar
	Not baked long enough	Increase baking time
	Browning too rapidly	Do not dust with sugar before baking; reduce oven temperature
	Moisture in the air	Do not refrigerate baked meringue
Fails to attain any volume or stiffness	Fat present	Start over with clean bowls and utensils
	Sugar added too soon	Allow egg whites to reach soft peaks before adding sugar
Lumps	Not enough sugar	Add additional sugar gradually or start over
	Overwhipping	Whip only until stiff peaks form
Not shiny	Not enough sugar	Add additional sugar gradually or start over
	Overwhipping	Whip only until stiff peaks form

RECIPE 32.10

ITALIAN MERINGUE

Yield: Approx. 2 gal. (8 lt)

Egg whites, room temperature	14 oz.	420 g
Granulated sugar	28 oz.	840 g

1. Place 18 ounces (540 grams) of the sugar in a heavy saucepan and add enough water to moisten the sugar thoroughly. Attach a candy thermometer to the pan and bring the sugar to a boil over high heat.
2. Place the egg whites in the bowl of an electric mixer fitted with the whip attachment. As the temperature of the boiling sugar approaches 220°F (104°C), begin whipping the egg whites. When the whites form soft peaks, gradually add the remaining 10 ounces (300 grams) of sugar. Lower the mixer speed and continue whipping.
3. When the sugar reaches 238°F (115°C), pour it into the whites, with the mixer running. Pour in a steady stream between the side of the bowl and the beater. Continue whipping the whites at medium speed until they are cool.

Approximate values per cup (225 ml): **Calories** 102, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 16 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 25 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Claims**—no fat; no cholesterol; low sodium

COOKIES

Cookies are small, flat pastries usually eaten alone (although not singularly) and rarely used as a component in other desserts. The proliferation of cookie shops in malls and office buildings attests to the popularity of freshly baked cookies. They are indeed among the world's best-loved foods.

Part of the pleasure of cookies comes from their versatility. They may be eaten as a midmorning snack or as the elegant end to a formal dinner. Cookies also provide the finishing touch to a serving of ice cream, custard or fruit. Flavors are limited only by the baker's imagination; chocolate, oatmeal, cornmeal, fresh and dried fruit and nuts all find their way into several types of cookies. Several cookie formulas are given at the end of this chapter.

Mixing Methods

Most cookie doughs are mixed by the creaming method used for quick breads and cake batters. (See Chapter 30, Quick Breads, and Chapter 33, Cakes and Frostings.) Because cookie dough contains less liquid than these batters, the liquid and flour need not be added alternately, however. Cookies can be leavened with baking soda, baking powder or just air and steam. Most cookies are high in fat, which contributes taste and tenderness and extends shelf life. Overdevelopment of gluten is usually not a problem with cookies because of their high fat and low moisture contents. But careless mixing can cause the dough to become tough and dense instead of tender and flaky.

Procedure for Mixing Cookie Doughs

1. Cream the fat and sugar together to incorporate air and to blend the ingredients completely.
2. Add the eggs gradually, scraping down the bowl as needed.
3. Stir in the liquid ingredients.
4. Stir in the flour, salt, spices and leaveners.
5. Fold in any nuts, chocolate chips or chunky ingredients by hand.

Makeup Methods

Cookie varieties are usually classified by the way in which the individual cookies are prepared. This section describes six preparation or makeup techniques: **drop**, **icebox**, **bar**, **cut-out** or **rolled**, **pressed** and **wafer**. Some doughs can be made up by more than one method. For example, chocolate chip cookie dough can be (1) baked in sheets and cut into bars, (2) dropped in mounds or (3) rolled into logs, chilled and sliced like icebox cookies. Regardless of the makeup method used, uniformity of size and shape is important for appearance and baking time. Cookies should also be evenly spaced on sheet pans for proper air circulation and crust formation.

Drop Cookies

Icebox Cookies

Drop Cookies

Drop cookies are made from a soft dough that is spooned or scooped into mounds for baking. Chunky cookies such as chocolate chip, oatmeal raisin and nut jumbles are common examples. Although a uniform appearance is not as important for drop cookies as for other types, uniform size and placement results in uniform baking time. A portion scoop is recommended for portioning the dough. Drop cookies tend to be thick with a soft or chewy texture.

Icebox Cookies

Icebox cookies are made from dough that is shaped into logs or rectangles, chilled thoroughly, then sliced into individual pieces and baked as needed. Icebox cookies can be as simple as a log of chocolate chip dough or as sophisticated as elegant pinwheel and checkerboard cookies assembled with two

colors of short dough. This method usually produces uniform, waferlike cookies with a crisp texture.

Bar Cookies

Bar cookie dough is pressed or layered in shallow pans and cut into portions after baking, usually squares or rectangles to avoid waste or scraps. This category, also known as sheet cookies, contains a wide variety of layered or fruit-filled products. Brownies, often considered a bar cookie, are discussed in Chapter 33, Cakes and Frostings.

Bar Cookies

Cut-Out or Rolled Cookies

Cut-out or rolled cookies are made from a firm dough that is rolled out into a sheet and then cut into various shapes before baking. A seemingly infinite selection of cookie cutters is available, or you can use a paring knife or pastry wheel to cut the dough into the desired shapes. Always start cutting cookies from the edge of the dough, working inward. Cut the cookies as close to each other as possible to avoid scraps. Cut-out cookies are usually baked on an ungreased pan to keep the dough from spreading.

Cut-out cookies are often garnished or decorated with nuts, glaze, fruit or candies. Raw cookies should be decorated as soon as they are placed on the pan. If the dough is allowed to stand, the surface will dry out and the garnish will not adhere properly.

Cut-Out or Rolled Cookies

Pressed Cookies

Also referred to as bagged or spritz cookies, these products are made with a soft dough that is forced through a pastry tip or cookie gun. Pressed cookies are usually small, with a distinct, decorative shape. The task of piping out dozens of identical cookies may seem daunting, but the skill can be mastered with practice and an understanding of doughs. Doughs for pressed cookies often include eggs as their only liquid. Eggs, which are a toughener, contribute body and help the cookies retain their shape. Using too much fat or too soft a flour (that is, one low in protein) can cause the cookies to spread and lose their shape.

Pressed Cookies

Wafer Cookies

Wafer cookies are extremely thin and delicate. They are made with a thin batter that is poured or spread onto a baking sheet and baked. Then, while still hot, the wafer is molded into a variety of shapes. The most popular shapes are the tightly rolled cigarette, the curved tuile and the cup-shaped tulipe. Wafer batter is sweet and buttery and is often flavored with citrus zest or ground nuts. The recipe for the tulipe shown in the photograph that introduces Chapter 34, Custards, Creams, Frozen Desserts and Dessert Sauces, is an example of a wafer cookie used as a pastry container.

Wafer Cookies

Cookie Textures

The textures associated with cookies—crispness, softness, chewiness or spread—are affected by various factors, including the ratio of ingredients in the dough, the oven's temperature and the pan's coating. Understanding these factors allows you to adjust formulas or techniques to achieve the desired results. See Table 32.6.

TABLE 32.6 COOKIE TEXTURES

Desired Texture	Content of: Fat	Sugar	Liquid	Flour	Size or Shape	Baking
Crispness	High	High; use granulated sugar	Low	Strong	Thin dough	Well done; cool on baking sheet
Softness	Low	Low; use hydroscopic sugars	High	Weak	Thick dough	Use parchment-lined pan; underbake
Chewiness	High	High; use hydroscopic sugars	High	Strong	Not relevant; chilled dough	Underbake; cool on rack
Spread	High	High; use coarse granulated sugar	High; especially from eggs	Weak	Not relevant; room-temperature dough	Use greased pan; low temperature

Storing Cookies

Most cookies can be stored for up to one week in an airtight container. Do not store crisp cookies and soft cookies in the same container, however. The crisp cookies will absorb moisture from the soft cookies, ruining the texture of both. Do not store strongly flavored cookies, such as spice, with those that are milder, such as shortbread.

Most cookies freeze well if wrapped air-tight to prevent moisture loss or freezer burn. Raw dough can also be frozen, either shaped or unshaped.

CONCLUSION

Pastry making is the backbone of dessert preparation. A wide variety of pastry doughs can be prepared from flour, fat and a liquid. Proper mixing, rolling and shaping techniques are crucial to the success of the finished product. With a selection of properly prepared doughs and fillings, you can prepare an endless variety of tempting desserts.

QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

1. How does the type of pie filling influence the selection of a pie crust? What type of crust would be best for a pie made with fresh, uncooked fruit? Explain your answer.
2. How does rolling fat into a dough in layers (as with puff pastry) produce a flaky product? Why isn't sweet dough (which contains a high ratio of butter) flaky?
3. Explain the difference between a cream pie filling and a custard pie filling. Give two examples of each type of filling.
4. List and describe three ways of preparing fruit fillings for pies.

5. Why is it said that éclair paste is the only dough that is cooked before it is baked? Why is this step necessary? List three ways for using éclair paste in making classic desserts.
6. Explain the differences and similarities between common, Swiss and Italian meringues.
7. List and describe four makeup methods for cookie doughs.

The Story Behind the Chip

History was made in 1930 when Ruth Wakefield, innkeeper of the Toll House Inn in Whitman, Massachusetts, cut up a semi-sweet chocolate bar and added the pieces to cookie dough. She was disappointed, however, that the pieces kept their shape when baked—until her first bite, that is.

Mrs. Wakefield contacted Nestlé Foods Corporation, which published her cookie recipe on the wrapper of their semi-sweet chocolate bars. The recipe's popularity led Nestlé's to market chocolate chips in 1939.

Under terms of its agreement with the Toll House Inn, Nestlé could not alter the recipe for Original Toll House® Cookies for 40 years. When the agreement expired in 1979, Nestle simplified the recipe. The original Original Toll House® Cookie recipe is no longer published by Nestlé Foods, but is reprinted here for the sake of tradition.

RECIPE 32.11

Original Toll House® Cookies

Yield: 50 2-in. Cookies

1 c. + 2 Tbsp.	Sifted cake flour
1/2 tsp.	Baking soda
1/2 tsp.	Salt
1/2 c.	Butter, softened
6 Tbsp.	Granulated sugar
6 Tbsp.	Packed brown sugar
1/2 tsp.	Vanilla extract
1/4 tsp.	Water
1	Egg
1 package (6 oz. or 1 c.)	Nestlé Toll House® Semi-Sweet Chocolate Morsels
1/2 c.	Nuts, chopped coarse

1. Sift the flour, baking soda and salt together and set aside.
2. Combine the butter, sugars, vanilla and water; beat until creamy. Beat in egg. Add the flour mixture; mix well. Stir in Nestlé Toll House® Semi-Sweet Chocolate Morsels and nuts.
3. Drop well-rounded half teaspoons of cookie dough onto greased cookie sheets. Bake at 375°F for 10–12 minutes.

Approximate values per cookie: **Calories** 60, **Total fat** 3.5 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 9 mg, **Sodium** 36 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 7 g, **Protein** .5 g

Additional Pie, Pastry and Cookie Formulas

Several of the formulas given in the following pages are combinations of the pastry items presented in this chapter and the creams, custards and other dessert products covered in other chapters. For example, the Strawberry Napoleon is made with the puff pastry discussed in this chapter, the pastry cream and crème Chantilly discussed in Chapter 34, Custards, Creams, Frozen Desserts and Dessert Sauces, and the fondant glaze discussed in Chapter 33, Cakes and Frostings.

RECIPE 32.12

Gâteau St. Honoré

Note: *This dish appears in the Chapter Opening photograph.*

Chefs Susan Feniger and Mary Sue Milliken
of the former CITY RESTAURANT, Los Angeles, CA

Yield: 10 Servings

Puff pastry	1 lb.	450 g
Milk	4 oz.	120 ml
Unsalted butter	1 3/4 oz.	50 g
Salt	1/8 tsp.	1/2 ml
All-purpose flour	2 1/2 oz.	75 g
Eggs	2	2
Pastry Cream (recipe follows)	as needed	as needed
Granulated sugar	10 oz.	300 g
Water	4 oz.	120 ml
City Chocolate (recipe follows)	as needed	as needed
Heavy cream, cold	1 pt.	450 ml
Semi-sweet chocolate, melted	3 oz.	90 g

1. Roll out the puff pastry to form a 10-inch (25-centimeter) square; reserve in the refrigerator.
2. Make the cream puff dough by combining the milk, butter and salt in a medium-heavy saucepan. Bring to a boil. Add the flour all at once. Mix quickly with a wooden spoon until a ball forms on the spoon and the flour is evenly moistened. Transfer to a bowl and add the eggs one at a time, beating well after each addition.
3. Fit a piping bag with a large plain tip; fill it with the cream puff dough. Line a baking sheet with parchment paper. Pipe the dough onto the baking sheet to form small circles about the size of quarters. With a finger dipped in cold water, flatten the point on top of each puff. Drop the pan on the counter to set the puffs.
4. Bake at 450°F (230°C) until uniformly puffed and golden, approximately 10 minutes. Reduce the heat to 375°F (190°C) and bake an additional 15–20 minutes. Test for doneness by opening a puff. The inside should be totally dry. Set aside to cool on a rack.
5. Place the puff pastry on a parchment-paper-lined baking sheet and, with a 10-inch (25-centimeter) round cake pan inverted over the dough, trace

a circle using a sharp knife. This will be the base for the cake. Remove the excess dough and prick the circle of puff pastry all over with a fork; set in the refrigerator to rest for 15 minutes.

6. Bake the puff pastry at 425°F (220°C) until puffed and golden, approximately 20 minutes. Reserve at room temperature.
7. Fit a piping bag with a #2 tip; fill it with pastry cream. Make a hole in the bottom of each puff using a small paring knife. Fill each puff with pastry cream and reserve.
8. To make the caramel, combine the sugar and water in a saucepan and cook until golden brown. Immediately remove from heat. Using a fork, dip half of each cream puff into the warm caramel and place on a tray lined with parchment paper. When the caramel has set, turn each puff and dip the uncoated half in the caramel. Immediately arrange the puffs, flat side up, along the edge of the cooled puff pastry to form the wall.
9. Fill the center of the pastry with a even layer of City Chocolate.
10. Whip the cold cream until soft peaks form. Fold half of this cream into the 3 ounces (90 grams) of melted chocolate and set aside.
11. Spoon the remaining whipped cream into a pastry bag fitted with a #8 plain tip. Pipe about five rows of Hershey's Kiss-shaped domes over the chocolate filling, leaving even spaces between the rows. Fill the bag with the chocolate-flavored cream and repeat, filling the spaces between rows. Chill until serving time.

Approximate values per 1/10-cake serving: **Calories** 400, **Total fat** 25 g, **Saturated fat** 15 g, **Cholesterol** 115 mg, **Sodium** 65 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 41 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Vitamin A** 25%

PASTRY CREAM

Yield: 1 1/4 pt. (600 ml)

Granulated sugar	4 oz.	120 g
Cornstarch	4 Tbsp.	60 ml
Egg yolks	4	4
Milk	1 pt.	450 ml
Vanilla extract	1/2 tsp.	2 ml

1. Mix 2 ounces (60 grams) of sugar and all the cornstarch in a bowl. Add the egg yolks and mix until a paste is formed. Stir in 4 ounces (120 grams) of milk.
2. Combine the remaining milk and sugar in a saucepan and bring to a boil. Pour the hot milk into the egg yolk mixture, whisking constantly. Then pour the mixture back into the pan.
3. Cook over moderate heat, stirring constantly, until smooth and thick. Remove from the heat and stir for an additional minute. Stir in the vanilla and transfer to a bowl.
4. Cover with buttered parchment paper touching the top and chill for a minimum of 2 hours or as long as 2 days.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 30, **Total fat** 1 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 25 mg, **Sodium** 10 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 5 g, **Protein** 1 g

Continued

CITY CHOCOLATE

Yield: 1 lb. 8 oz. (750 g)

Brandy	1 1/2 Tbsp.	20 ml
Golden raisins	1 1/2 oz.	45 g
Semi-sweet chocolate	9 oz.	270 g
Unsalted butter	7 oz.	210 g
Eggs, separated	5	5

1. Combine the brandy and raisins in a small saucepan and warm over low heat. Reserve.
2. Chop the chocolate into small pieces and melt with the butter over a bain marie. Remove from the heat and stir in the raisins and brandy. Whisk in the yolks until combined.
3. Whisk the egg whites until soft peaks form. Gently fold the whites into chocolate mixture in two stages.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 120, **Total fat** 9 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 55 mg, **Sodium** 15 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 7 g, **Protein** 2 g

RECIPE 32.13

CANNOLI ALLA SICILIANA

Chef Odette Fada
of the former REX IL RISTORANTE, LOS ANGELES, CA

Yield: 12 Pieces

Dough:		
All-purpose flour	2 oz.	60 g
Granulated sugar	1/2 oz.	15 g
Cocoa powder	1/2 oz.	15 g
Red wine	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Filling:		
Orange zest, candied, chopped	1 oz.	30 g
Chocolate chips	1 oz.	30 g
Pistachio nuts, chopped	1 oz.	30 g
Confectioner's sugar, sifted	1 1/2 oz.	45 g
Fresh ricotta cheese	12 oz.	360 g

1. To make the cannoli, sift the dry ingredients together, then stir in the wine. Add more wine if necessary to produce a stiff dough. Chill the dough for at least 1 hour.
2. Roll the dough very thin and cut it into 2-inch (5-centimeter) squares.
3. Roll each square of dough around a dowel and deep-fry until crisp, approximately 1 minute. Drain on absorbent paper.
4. To make the filling, stir all the filling ingredients together and chill until ready to use.
5. To assemble, fit a piping bag with a large plain tip; fill with the filling mixture and pipe it into each of the fried cannoli shells.

6. Serve with a pool of dark chocolate sauce, garnished with candied fruits.

Approximate values per piece: **Calories** 100, **Total fat** 3.5 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 35 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 14 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Claims**—low saturated fat; low cholesterol; low sodium

RECIPE 32.14

LINZER TART

Chefs Susan Feniger and Mary Sue Milliken
of the former CITY RESTAURANT, LOS ANGELES, CA

Yield: 8–10 Servings

Unsalted butter, softened	8 oz.	225 g
Granulated sugar	8 oz.	225 g
Egg yolks	2	2
Orange zest	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Lemon zest	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
All-purpose flour	11 oz.	330 g
Hazelnuts, ground fine	6 oz.	180 g
Baking powder	1 tsp.	5 ml
Cinnamon, ground	2 tsp.	10 ml
Cloves, ground	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Salt	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Raspberry preserves	6 oz.	180 g

1. To make the dough, cream together the butter and sugar until light and fluffy. Add the egg yolks, orange and lemon zests. Beat until well combined.
2. In another bowl, mix together all the remaining ingredients except the preserves. Add the dry mixture all at once to the creamed mixture and mix briefly, until just combined. (This dough looks more like cookie dough than pastry.) Wrap in plastic and chill until firm, about 4 hours or overnight.
3. Divide the dough in half. On a generously floured board, briefly knead one piece of dough and flatten it with the palm of your hand. Gently roll the dough out 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) thick and use it to line a 9- or 10-inch (22- or 25- centimeter) tart pan with a removable bottom. This rich dough patches easily. Chill for about 10 minutes.
4. Roll out the second piece of dough to form a 12 inch × 4 inch (30 centimeter × 10 centimeter) rectangle. Using a sharp knife or pastry wheel, cut lengthwise strips, about 1/3 inch (.8 centimeter) wide.
5. Remove the lined tart shell from the refrigerator and spread the raspberry preserves evenly over it. To create the lattice pattern with the pastry strips, first lay some strips in parallel lines, 1/2 inch (12 millimeters) apart. Then lay a second row of strips at a 45-degree angle to the first. Press the strips to the edge of the crust to seal.
6. Bake at 350°F (180°C) until the crust is golden brown and the filling is bubbly in center, approximately 45 minutes. Set aside to cool.

Approximate values per 1/10-tart serving: **Calories** 300, **Total fat** 29 g, **Saturated fat** 12 g, **Cholesterol** 90 mg, **Sodium** 65 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 7 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Vitamin A** 20%, **Claims**—low sodium; good source of fiber

RECIPE 32.15

Quiche Dough

Yield: 8 lb. (3.6 kg)

All-purpose flour	4 lb. 7 oz.	2 kg
Salt	1 1/2 oz.	45 g
Unsalted butter, cold	2 lb. 3 oz.	1 kg
Eggs	12	12

1. Combine the flour and salt in a mixer bowl fitted with the paddle attachment. Cut in the butter until the mixture looks like coarse cornmeal.
2. Whisk the eggs together to blend, then add them slowly to the dry ingredients. Blend only until the dough comes together in a ball.
3. Remove from the mixer, cover and chill until ready to use.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 120, **Total fat** 7 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 35 mg, **Sodium** 140 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 12 g, **Protein** 2 g

RECIPE 32.16

Lemon Meringue Pie

Yield: 2 9-in. (22-cm) Pies

Granulated sugar	1 lb. 4 oz.	600 g
Cornstarch	3 oz.	90 g
Salt	pinch	pinch
Water, cold	24 oz.	750 ml
Egg yolks	10	10
Lemon juice, fresh	8 oz.	250 ml
Lemon zest, grated	2 Tbsp.	60 ml
Butter	1 oz.	60 g
Flaky dough pie shells, baked	2	2
Egg whites	8 oz.	250 g
Granulated sugar	8 oz.	250 g

1. To make the filling, combine the 1 pound 4 ounces (600 grams) of sugar, cornstarch, salt and water in a heavy saucepan. Cook over medium-high heat, stirring constantly, until the mixture becomes thick and almost clear.
2. Remove from the heat and slowly whisk in the egg yolks. Stir until completely blended. Return to the heat and cook, stirring constantly, until thick and smooth.
3. Stir in the lemon juice and zest. When the liquid is completely incorporated, remove the filling from the heat. Add the butter and stir until melted.
4. Set the filling aside to cool briefly. Fill two prebaked pie shells with the lemon filling.
5. To prepare the meringue, whip the egg whites until soft peaks form. Slowly add the 8 ounces (250 grams) of sugar while whisking constantly. The meringue should be stiff and glossy, not dry or spongy looking.
6. Mound the meringue over the filling, creating decorative patterns with a spatula. Be sure to spread the meringue to the edge of the crust so that all the filling is covered.

7. Place the pie in a 400°F (200°C) oven until the meringue is golden brown, approximately 5–8 minutes. Let cool at room temperature, then refrigerate. Serve the same day.

Approximate values per 1/8-pie serving: **Calories** 400, **Total fat** 12 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 135 mg, **Sodium** 310 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 67 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin C** 10%

RECIPE 32.17

Fresh Strawberry Pie

Yield: 2 9-in. (22-cm) Pies

Granulated sugar	1 lb. 7 oz.	700 g
Water	8 oz.	450 ml
Cornstarch	2 1/2 oz.	75 g
Water, cold	12 oz.	360 ml
Salt	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Lemon juice	4 Tbsp.	60 ml
Red food coloring	as needed	as needed
Fresh strawberries, rinsed and sliced in half	2 qt.	2 lt
Flaky dough pie shells, baked	2	2
Whipped cream	as needed	as needed

1. Bring the sugar and 8 ounces (225 milliliters) of water to a boil.
2. Dissolve the cornstarch in the cold water and add to the boiling liquid. Cook over low heat until clear, approximately 5 minutes.
3. Stir in the salt, lemon juice and enough red food coloring to produce a bright red color.
4. Pour this glaze over the strawberries and toss gently to coat them. Spoon the filling into the prepared pie shells. Chill thoroughly and top with whipped cream for service.

Approximate values per 1/8-pie serving: **Calories** 330, **Total fat** 8 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 200 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 63 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Vitamin C** 80%

RECIPE 32.18

Blackberry Cobbler

A cobbler is a home-style baked fruit dessert, usually made with a top crust of flaky pie dough, biscuit dough or streusel topping. The finished product will be slightly runny and is often served warm in a bowl or rimmed dish, accompanied by whipped cream or ice cream.

Yield: 10 Servings

IQF blackberries	2 qt.	2 lt
Granulated sugar	8 oz.	450 g
Tapioca, instant	2 oz.	60 g
Water	10 oz.	300 ml
Unsalted butter	2 oz.	60 g
Lemon zest	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

Continued

1. Combine all the ingredients, tossing the berries gently until well coated with the other ingredients.
2. Transfer to a lightly buttered half-sized hotel pan, then set aside for at least 30 minutes before baking.
3. The cobbler can be topped with Flaky Pie Dough (Recipe 32.1), Biscuit Dough (Recipe 30.1) or Streusel Topping (Recipe 30.4) before baking.
4. Bake at 350°F (180°C) until the berry mixture bubbles and the crust is appropriately browned, approximately 40–50 minutes.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (156-g) serving: **Calories** 210, **Total fat** 5 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 20 mg, **Sodium** 10 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 39 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin C** 45%

RECIPE 32.19

Pecan Pie with Oatmeal Stout Ice Cream and Ginger Caramel Sauce

PHOENIX BREWING CO., ATLANTA, GA
Executive Chef Kevin Fonzo

Yield: 1 10-in. (24-cm) Pie

Eggs	5	5
Dark corn syrup	1 1/3 c.	320 ml
Granulated sugar	1 1/3 c.	320 ml
Vanilla extract	1 tsp.	5 ml
Whole butter, melted	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Stout	1/2 c.	120 ml
Pecan pieces	3 c.	720 ml
10-inch pie crust, unbaked	1	1

1. Beat the eggs thoroughly. Add the corn syrup, sugar, vanilla, butter and stout. Mix until well blended.
2. Fold in the pecans and pour the mixture into the pie crust.
3. Bake at 350°F (180°C) until set, approximately 45–55 minutes.
4. Allow the pie to cool completely before service.

Approximate values per 1/8 pie: **Calories** 800, **Total fat** 45 g, **Saturated fat** 8 g, **Cholesterol** 145 mg, **Sodium** 210 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 91 g, **Protein** 8 g

OATMEAL STOUT ICE CREAM

Yield: 3 qt.

Milk	1 qt.	1 lt
Heavy cream	1 qt.	1 lt
Oatmeal stout	1 c.	225 ml
Dark corn syrup	1/2 c.	120 ml
Granulated sugar	1 c.	225 ml
Egg yolks	2	2
Vanilla beans, seeded	2	2

1. In a medium-sized saucepot, heat the milk and cream.
2. In a separate saucepot, bring the oatmeal stout to a boil and reduce to 1/2 cup. Add corn syrup and remove from heat.

3. In a small mixing bowl, combine sugar, egg yolks and vanilla beans. Mix well.
4. When the cream mixture comes to a boil, temper it into the egg mixture. When all the cream mixture is incorporated into eggs, strain.
5. Allow mixture to cool completely. Gently stir the stout reduction into the cooled cream and eggs.
6. Freeze mixture in ice cream freezer.

Approximate values per 1/2-cup (120-ml) serving: **Calories** 215, **Total fat** 15 g, **Saturated fat** 9 g, **Cholesterol** 121 mg, **Sodium** 37 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 17 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Vitamin A** 18%

GINGER CARAMEL SAUCE

Yield: 3 c. (720 ml)

Granulated sugar	1 lb.	500 g
Water	1/3 c.	75 ml
Lemon juice	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Ginger, fresh, peeled, and chopped	6 oz.	180 g
Heavy cream	1 1/2 c.	350 ml
Unsalted butter	2 oz.	60 g

1. Bring the sugar, water and lemon juice to a boil in a small saucepan.
2. Cook over medium heat until the syrup turns a golden amber color. Add the ginger.
3. Remove the saucepan from the heat and slowly add the cream.
4. Return the pan to the heat and cook for 2–3 more minutes.
5. Add the butter and stir to melt. Serve the sauce warm.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (28-g) serving: **Calories** 90, **Total fat** 4.5 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 15 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 12 g, **Protein** 0 g

RECIPE 32.20

CHOCOLATE MACADAMIA NUT PRALINE TORTE

THE BOULDERS RESORT, CAREFREE, AZ
Corporate Executive Chef Charles Wiley

Yield: 2 9 1/2-in. (23-cm) Tortes

All-purpose flour	4 c.	900 ml
Granulated sugar	2/3 c.	150 ml
Unsalted butter, cold	10 oz.	300 g
Egg yolks	2	2
Heavy cream	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Semi-sweet chocolate, melted	3 oz.	90 g
Macadamia Filling (recipe follows)	1	1
Chocolate Cream Filling (recipe follows)	1	1
Crème Chantilly (Recipe 34.6)	1 qt.	1 lt
Dark chocolate shavings	as needed for garnish	
White chocolate shavings	as needed for garnish	

Continued

1. Combine flour and sugar in a mixing bowl.
2. Cut the cold butter into the flour until the mixture looks like cornmeal.
3. Stir together the egg yolks and cream; add to the flour mixture. Mix until the dough comes together and forms a ball. Wrap the dough in plastic wrap and chill thoroughly.
4. When the dough is chilled and firm, roll it out to a thickness of 1/8 to 1/4 inch (300–600 millimeters) and line two false-bottom tart pans. Cover the dough with parchment paper topped with pie weights or dry beans.
5. Bake the tart shells at 375°F (180°C) until golden brown, approximately 20 minutes. Remove the baking weights and parchment paper.
6. Brush the bottom of the shells with melted chocolate. Allow the chocolate to set at room temperature.
7. Pour the Macadamia Filling into the two cooled pastry shells. Chill for at least 1 hour.
8. Pour the Chocolate Cream Filling over the chilled Macadamia Filling and spread evenly. Chill for at least 2 hours or until the filling is firm.
9. Remove each torte from its pan and place on a serving platter. Top with Crème Chantilly, using a spatula or piping bag to create an attractive design. Garnish with dark and white chocolate shavings.

Approximate values per 1/8-tart serving: **Calories** 930, **Total fat** 69 g, **Saturated fat** 35 g, **Cholesterol** 200 mg, **Sodium** 280 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 69 g, **Protein** 8 g, **Vitamin A** 50%, **Iron** 15%

MACADAMIA FILLING

Light corn syrup	1/4 c.	60 ml
Granulated sugar	1 1/2 c.	360 g
Unsalted butter, melted	6 oz.	180 g
Heavy cream	6 oz.	180 ml
Macadamia nuts, unsalted, toasted and coarsely chopped	2 1/2 c.	600 g

1. In a heavy-bottomed saucepan, combine corn syrup and sugar. Cook over medium heat until sugar is completely dissolved.
2. Increase the heat to medium high. Stir mixture constantly until it reaches a deep golden color.
3. Reduce the heat to low; carefully add the butter and stir slowly with a whisk until the butter is melted.
4. Slowly add the cream, stirring with a whisk until butter and cream are both completely incorporated. Remove from the heat. Stir in the macadamia nuts.

CHOCOLATE CREAM FILLING

Sour cream	1 c.	225 ml
Heavy cream	1 c.	225 ml
Whole eggs	2	2
Egg yolks	4	4
Corn starch	3/4 Tbsp.	11 ml
Semi-sweet chocolate, finely chopped	6 oz.	180 g

1. Combine all the ingredients except the chocolate in a large bowl over a bain marie or double boiler. Whisking constantly, cook the mixture over

simmering water until it is the consistency of mayonnaise, approximately 5–10 minutes.

2. Remove from the heat. Add the chocolate and stir until it is completely melted and the mixture is smooth.

RECIPE 32.21

French Apple Tart

Note: *The amount of each ingredient needed, the yield and the baking time will depend on the capacity and number of tart molds used. This procedure can be used for individual tartlets or large round, rectangular or daisy-shaped tart pans.*

Sweet Dough (Recipe 32.2)	as needed
Almond Cream (Recipe 32.26)	as needed
Tart apples, peeled, cored and sliced thin	as needed
Unsalted butter, melted	as needed
Granulated sugar	as needed
Apricot glaze	as needed

1. Line the tart forms with pâte sucrée. Do not prick the dough.
2. Pipe in an even layer of almond cream.
3. Arrange the apples in overlapping rows covering the almond cream completely.
4. Brush the top of the apples with melted butter and sprinkle lightly with granulated sugar.
5. Bake at 375°F (190°C) until the crust is done and the apples are light brown.
6. Allow the tart to cool to room temperature. Brush the top with apricot glaze.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 395, **Total fat** 17 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 234 mg, **Sodium** 98 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 56 g, **Protein** 7 g, **Vitamin A** 12%

RECIPE 32.22

Pear Financier

RITZ-CARLTON HOTEL, CHICAGO, IL
Executive Chef George Bumbaris and Chef Sarah Stegner

Yield: 6 Servings

Butter, melted	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Almond Financier (recipe follows)	1	1
Poached Pears (recipe follows)	1	1
Powdered sugar	as needed for garnish	
Fresh herbs	as needed for garnish	
Vanilla Crème Glace (recipe follows)	6 scoops	6 scoops

Continued

1. To prepare each serving, lightly butter an individual serving-sized skillet or baking dish. Fill with the financier mixture, spreading evenly.
2. Stand a poached pear on top of the almond mixture.
3. Bake at 375°F (180°C) until golden brown, approximately 25–30 minutes.
4. Dust with powdered sugar and garnish with fresh herbs.
5. Serve warm with a scoop of Vanilla Créme Glace.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 572, **Total fat** 32 g, **Saturated fat** 17 g, **Cholesterol** 125 mg, **Sodium** 317 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 66 g, **Protein** 7 g, **Vitamin A** 20%

POACHED PEARS

Granulated sugar	1 pt.	500 ml
Water	3 c.	720 ml
Dry white wine	3 c.	720 ml
Lemon, cut in half	1	1
Vanilla bean, scraped	1/2	1/2
Bay leaf	1	1
Thyme	1 sprig	1 sprig
Peppercorns	3	3
Bosc pears, peeled and cored, leaving the stem attached	6	6

1. Combine all ingredients in a large nonreactive saucepan.
2. Cut a piece of parchment paper to fit the inside of the pan and place it directly over the pears and liquid.
3. Bring the mixture to a boil, then immediately reduce the heat to a simmer.
4. Poach the pears until very tender, approximately 30–40 minutes. Test by piercing each pear with a paring knife. The knife should slide in easily.
5. Remove the pears from the poaching liquid to cool. Leftover pears may be kept up to 4 days if refrigerated in their poaching liquid.

ALMOND FINANCIER

Almond meal	2 oz.	60 g
Powdered sugar	5 oz.	150 g
All-purpose flour	2 oz.	60 g
Egg whites	4 oz.	120 g
Whole butter	5 oz.	150 g

1. Combine the almond flour, powdered sugar and all-purpose flour in a small bowl.
2. In a separate bowl, whisk the egg whites until foamy.
3. In a saucepan, melt the butter over moderate heat and cook until it begins to turn golden brown. Strain the butter through cheesecloth and set aside, but do not allow it to cool.
4. Slowly whisk the dry ingredients into the egg whites. Mix until smooth.
5. Slowly pour the butter into the batter, whisking constantly.

VANILLA CRÈME GLACE

Gel glace stabilizer	1/2 oz.	12 g
Granulated sugar	12 oz.	350 g
Milk	1 1/2 qt.	1 1/2 lt
Nonfat milk powder	3 1/2 oz.	100 g
Glucose atomisee	4 oz.	125 g
European butter	8 oz.	240 g
Vanilla beans, split and scraped	5	5
Egg yolks	6 oz.	175 g

1. Combine the gel glace stabilizer with about 1 ounce (30 grams) of the sugar and set aside.
2. Combine the milk and milk powder in a saucepan over medium heat.
3. When the temperature of the milk reaches 77°F (25°C), add the remaining sugar and the glucose atomisee and continue cooking.
4. At 95°F (35°C), add the butter and vanilla.
5. At 104°F (40°C), add the egg yolks.
6. At 113°F (45°C), add the gel glace stabilizer.
7. Stirring frequently, continue cooking the mixture to 185°F (85°C). Strain, then blend with a hand blender for 1 minute.
8. Cool over an ice bath and refrigerate overnight before churning in an ice-cream machine.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (28-g) serving: **Calories** 60, **Total fat** 3.5 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 35 mg, **Sodium** 35 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 7 g, **Protein** 1 g

RECIPE 32.23

FRESH BERRY TART

Yield: 1 9-in. (22-cm) Tart

Sweet Dough tart shell, fully baked (Recipe 32.2)	1	1
Pastry Cream (Recipe 34.2)	1 pt.	500 ml
Fresh berries such as strawberries, blackberries, blueberries or raspberries	3 pt.	1.5 lt
Apricot glaze	as needed	as needed

1. Fill a cool tart shell with pastry cream.
2. Arrange the berries over the pastry cream in an even layer. Be sure to place the berries so that the pastry cream is covered.
3. Heat the apricot glaze and brush over the fruit to form a smooth coating.

Approximate values per 1/6 tart: **Calories** 135, **Total fat** 3 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 2 mg, **Sodium** 62 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 26 g, **Protein** 2 g

1. Arranging the fruit over the pastry cream.

2. Brushing the apricot glaze over the fruit.

RECIPE 32.24

PERSIMMON SHORTCAKE TART

THE BOULDERS RESORT, CAREFREE, AZ
Corporate Executive Chef Charles Wiley

Yield: 1 9-in. (23-cm) Tart

Persimmon Filling (recipe follows)	as needed	as needed
Shortcake Tart Crust, baked (recipe follows)	1	1
Granulated sugar	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Heavy cream	9 oz.	270 ml
Nutmeg, ground	pinch	pinch

1. Spoon the Persimmon Filling into the prebaked tart shell. Sprinkle the sugar evenly over the persimmons.
2. Pour the cream over the persimmons and sprinkle lightly with nutmeg.
3. Bake at 400°F (200°C) for 15 minutes. Reduce the oven temperature to 350°F (180°C) and bake until the filling is set, approximately 15 minutes.
4. Serve the tart warm, accompanied with fresh berries, vanilla ice cream and a sprig of mint.

Approximate values per 1/8 tart: **Calories** 370, **Total fat** 25 g, **Saturated fat** 15 g, **Cholesterol** 130 mg, **Sodium** 330 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 31 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Vitamin A** 35%

PERSIMMON FILLING

Japanese persimmons (Fuyu)	3	3
Unsalted butter	1 Tbsp.	15 g
Granulated sugar	2 tsp.	10 ml
Cinnamon, ground	pinch	pinch
Vanilla extract	1/4 tsp.	1 ml

1. Peel and slice the persimmons.
2. Heat the butter in a large sauté pan. Add the persimmons, sugar and cinnamon and cook until tender, approximately 2 minutes. Remove from the heat and add the vanilla.

Approximate values per cup (240 ml): **Calories** 180, **Total fat** 4.5 g, **Saturated fat** 2.5 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 45 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 34 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 40%, **Vitamin C** 20%

SHORTCAKE TART CRUST

All-purpose flour	1 1/2 c.	340 ml
Granulated sugar	2 1/2 Tbsp.	37 ml
Baking soda	1 tsp.	5 ml
Cream of tartar	1 1/2 tsp.	7 ml
Kosher salt	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Unsalted butter	4 Tbsp. + 1 tsp.	65 ml
Egg yolks, hard boiled and passed through a sieve	2	2
Heavy cream	1/2 c.	120 ml

1. Stir all the dry ingredients together in a mixing bowl. Cut the butter in with your fingertips until the mixture resembles cornmeal.
2. Add the egg yolks and mix well. Add the cream and stir until incorporated.
3. Turn the dough out onto a lightly floured surface and knead.
4. Roll the dough into a 10-inch (24-centimeter) circle about 3/8 inch (9 millimeters) thick. Carefully transfer to a 9-inch fluted tart pan. Press the dough into the sides of the pan, then trim off the excess. Chill.
5. Line the tart shell with parchment paper and fill with pie weights or dried beans. Bake at 375°F (190°C) until lightly browned, approximately 12 minutes. Remove the pie weights and cool to room temperature.

Approximate values per 2-oz. (54-g) serving: **Calories** 220, **Total fat** 13 g, **Saturated fat** 8 g, **Cholesterol** 90 mg, **Sodium** 310 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 21 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Vitamin A** 15%

RECIPE 32.25

Quick Puff Pastry

ADAPTED FROM *NICK MALGIERI'S PERFECT PASTRY*

Yield: 1 lb. 4 oz. (560 g)

Unbleached all-purpose flour	6 1/4 oz.	180 g
Cake flour	1 1/4 oz.	37 g
Unsalted butter	8 oz.	225 g
Salt	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Water, very cold	4 oz.	120 ml

1. To mix the dough, place the all-purpose flour in a 2-quart mixer bowl and sift the cake flour over it. Thoroughly stir the two flours together.
2. Slice 1 ounce (30 grams) of the butter into thin pieces and add to the bowl. Rub in the butter by hand, tossing and squeezing in the butter until no visible pieces remain.
3. Cut the remaining butter into 1/2-inch (12-millimeter) cubes. Add the butter cubes to the flour mixture. Toss with a rubber spatula just to separate and distribute the butter. Do not rub the butter into the flour.
4. Dissolve the salt in the water. Make a well in the flour–butter mixture and add the water. Toss gently with the spatula until the dough is evenly moistened. Add drops of water, if necessary, to complete the moistening. Press and squeeze the dough in a bowl to form a rough cylinder.
5. To turn the dough, first lightly flour the work surface and the dough. Using the palm of your hand, press down on the dough three or four times to shape the dough into a rough rectangle.
6. Press and pound the dough with a rolling pin to form an even rectangle about 1/2 inch (12 millimeters) thick. Roll the dough back and forth along its length once or twice until it is an even rectangle about 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) thick. At this stage, pieces of butter are likely to stick to the work surface. If the dough does stick, loosen it with a long spatula or scraper. Clean the surface to minimize further sticking.
7. Fold both ends of the dough in toward the center, then fold them in toward the center again to make four layers. The folded package of dough

Continued

will resemble a book. Position the package of dough so that the spine is on the left.

8. Lightly flour the work surface and the dough and repeat the pressing as before. Roll the dough along its length as before, then roll several times along its width to form a rectangle approximately 6 inches x 18 inches (15 centimeters x 45 centimeters). Fold the dough, both ends in toward the center, then over again as before. Repeat the process once more so that the dough will have three double turns.
9. Wrap the dough well in plastic and chill for at least 1 hour before using.
10. The dough can be refrigerated for about three days or frozen for up to one month. Defrost frozen dough in the refrigerator overnight before using it.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (88-g) serving: **Calories** 480, **Total fat** 37 g, **Saturated fat** 23 g, **Cholesterol** 100 mg, **Sodium** 240 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 31 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin A** 35%

RECIPE 32.26

Fresh Peach Tart with Almond Cream

VINCENT ON CAMELBACK, PHOENIX, AZ
Chef Vincent Guerithault

Yield: 8 Servings

Puff pastry	6 oz.	180 g
Almond Cream (recipe follows)	1 lb. 8 oz.	750 g
Fresh peaches, peeled, pitted and sliced	6–8	6–8
Unsalted butter, melted	3 oz.	90 g
Granulated sugar	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Powdered sugar	as needed	as needed

1. Roll out the puff pastry into a thin strip, approximately 6 inches x 22 inches (the length of a sheet pan) (15 centimeters x 55 centimeters). Lay the dough on a sheet pan lined with parchment paper.
2. Using a large plain tip, pipe four rows of almond cream down the length of the puff pastry. Leave a 3/4-inch (18-millimeter) margin along both long edges of the dough.
3. Arrange the peach slices over the almond cream, overlapping slightly.
4. Brush the peaches with melted butter and evenly sprinkle the granulated sugar over them.
5. Bake at 400°F (200°C) until the dough is done and the peaches are lightly browned, approximately 20–30 minutes.
6. Serve warm, dusted with powdered sugar and accompanied by vanilla ice cream.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 140, **Total fat** 9 g, **Saturated fat** 5 g, **Cholesterol** 25 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 15 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 10%

ALMOND CREAM (FRANGIPANE)

Yield: 3 lb. (1.3 kg)

Unsalted butter, softened	8 oz.	225 g
Granulated sugar	1 lb.	450 g
Eggs	8 oz.	225 g
All-purpose flour	5 oz.	150 g
Almonds, ground	12 oz.	360 g

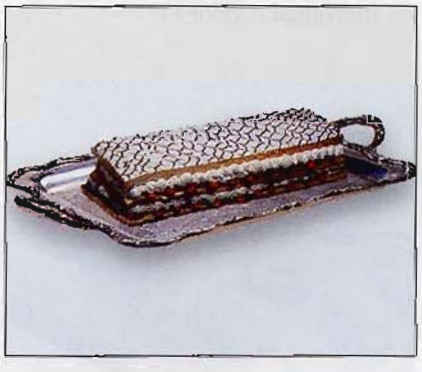
1. Cream the butter and sugar. Slowly add the eggs, scraping down the sides of the bowl as necessary.
2. Stir the flour and ground almonds together, then add to the butter mixture. Blend until no lumps remain.
3. Almond cream may be stored under refrigeration for up to three weeks.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (29-g) serving: **Calories** 140, **Total fat** 8 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 30 mg, **Sodium** 5 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 13 g, **Protein** 2 g

RECIPE 32.27

STRAWBERRY NAPOLEON

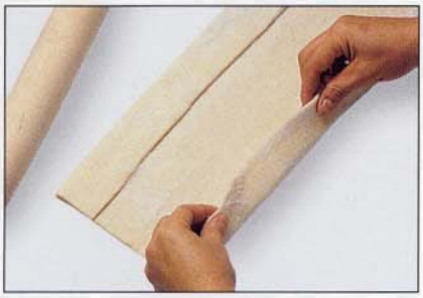
Yield: 10 Servings



Puff pastry, 4 in. × 15 in. (10 cm x 37 cm) strips, docked and baked	3	3
Pastry Cream (Recipe 34.2)	1 pt.	500 ml
Fresh strawberries, sliced	1 qt.	1 lt
Crème Chantilly (Recipe 34.6)	1 pt.	500 ml
Sugar Glaze (Recipe 33.12)	as needed	as needed
Dark chocolate, melted	1 oz.	30 g

1. Allow the puff pastry to cool completely before assembling.
2. Place a strip of puff pastry on a cake cardboard for support. Pipe on a layer of pastry cream, leaving a clean margin of almost 1/2 inch (12 millimeters) on all four sides.
3. Top the cream with a layer of berries.
4. Spread on a thin layer of Crème Chantilly and top with a second layer of puff pastry. Repeat the procedure for the second layer of puff pastry and chill.
5. Prepare the sugar glaze and place the melted chocolate in a piping cone. When ready to glaze, place the third strip of puff pastry on an icing rack, flat side up. Pour the sugar glaze down the length of the pastry and spread evenly with a metal cake spatula. Allow the excess to drip over the sides.
6. Immediately pipe thin lines of chocolate across the glaze. Use a toothpick to pull a spiderweb pattern in the glaze. Chill to set the glaze, then place the top in position on the napoleon.

Approximate values per 5-oz. (157-g) serving: **Calories** 320, **Total fat** 20 g, **Saturated fat** 9 g, **Cholesterol** 115 mg, **Sodium** 65 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 29 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Vitamin A** 15%, **Vitamin C** 60%



1. Folding the dough toward the center from both edges.

2. Slicing the log of dough into individual cooikies.

RECIPE 32.28

Palmiers

Puff pastry	as needed	as needed
Granulated sugar	as needed	as needed

1. Roll out the puff pastry into a very thin rectangle. The length is not important but the width should be at least 7 inches (17.5 centimeters).
2. Using a rolling pin, gently press the granulated sugar into the dough on both sides.
3. Make a 1-inch (2.5-centimeter) fold along the long edges of the dough toward the center. Sprinkle on additional sugar.
4. Make another 1-inch (2.5-centimeter) fold along the long edges of the dough toward the center. The two folds should almost meet in the center. Sprinkle on additional sugar.
5. Fold one side on top of the other. Press down gently with a rolling pin or your fingers so that the dough adheres. Chill for 1 hour.
6. Cut the log of dough in thin slices. Place the cookies on a paper-lined sheet pan and bake at 400°F (200°C) until the edges are brown, approximately 8–12 minutes.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (27-g) serving: **Calories** 130, **Total fat** 5 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 35 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 19 g, **Protein** 1 g

1. Using a piping bag to fill the éclairs with pastry cream.

2. Dipping the éclairs in chocolate glaze.

RECIPE 32.29

Chocolate Éclairs

Yield: 20 Éclairs

Baked Éclair shells, 4 inches (10 cm) long, made from Éclair Paste (Recipe 32.9)	20	20
Vanilla Pastry Cream (Recipe 34.2)	1 qt.	1 lt
Chocolate glaze:		
Unsweetened chocolate	4 oz.	120 g
Semi-sweet chocolate	4 oz.	120 g
Unsalted butter	4 oz.	120 g
White corn syrup	4 tsp.	20 ml
White chocolate, melted (optional)	as needed	as needed

1. Use a paring knife or skewer to cut a small hole into the end of each baked, cooled, éclair shell.
2. Pipe the pastry cream into each shell using a piping bag fitted with a small plain tip. Be sure that the cream fills the full length of each shell. Refrigerate the filled éclairs.
3. Prepare the glaze by melting all the ingredients together over a bain marie. Remove from the heat and allow to cool until slightly thickened, stirring occasionally.
4. In a single, smooth stroke, drag the top of each filled éclair through the glaze. Only the very top of each pastry should be coated with chocolate.

5. Melted white chocolate may be piped onto the wet glaze, then pulled into patterns using a toothpick. Keep the finished éclairs refrigerated and serve within 8–12 hours.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (93-g) serving: **Calories** 410, **Total fat** 31 g, **Saturated fat** 17 g, **Cholesterol** 110 mg, **Sodium** 230 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 27 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin A** 20%

RECIPE 32.30

Baked Meringue

Yield: 6 lb. 8 oz. (3 kg)

Egg whites	2 lb. 3 oz.	1 kg
Granulated sugar	4 lb. 6 oz.	2 kg
Coffee extract (optional)	2 1/2 oz.	75 g

1. Whip the egg whites to soft peaks. With the mixer running at medium speed, slowly add the sugar and continue whipping until very stiff and glossy.
2. Whip in the coffee extract if desired.
3. Spread or pipe the meringue into the desired shapes on parchment-lined sheet pans.
4. Bake at 200°F (120°C) for 5 hours or overnight in a nonconvection oven. The baked meringues should be firm and crisp but not browned.
5. Use in assembling dessert or pastry items.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 80, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 15 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 20 g, **Protein** 1 g

RECIPE 32.31

Chocolate Délice

Yield: 1 8-in. (20-cm) Cake

Ganache (recipe follows)	1	1
Classic Dacquoise (recipe follows)	1	1
Crème Chantilly (recipe follows)	1	1
Candied Almonds (recipe follows)	1	1

1. Spread an even layer of ganache over two of the dacquoise disks.
2. Top one disk with approximately 3/4 cup (170 milliliters) of Crème Chantilly. Place the second disk on top, chocolate side up. Top with another 3/4 cup (170-milliliters) of Crème Chantilly. Position the third disk on top, flat side up.
3. Spread the remaining crème Chantilly over the top and sides.
4. Sprinkle candied almonds over the top and sides of the cake.
5. Freeze to firm the cream, approximately 1 hour. Remove from freezer and refrigerate for service.

Approximate values per 1/8-cake serving: **Calories** 490, **Total fat** 32.5 g, **Saturated fat** 13 g, **Cholesterol** 50 mg, **Sodium** 35 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 39 g, **Protein** 10 g, **Vitamin A** 16%

Continued

1. Piping out the meringue disks.

CLASSIC DACQUOISE

Blanched almonds	2 oz.	60 g
Granulated sugar	6 oz.	180 g
Egg whites	3 oz.	90 g

1. Preheat oven to 225°F (110°C). Line a baking sheet with parchment. Draw three 8-inch (20-centimeter) circles on the parchment.
2. Grind the nuts in a food processor. They should be the consistency of cornmeal and as dry as possible. Combine with 2 ounces (60 grams) of the sugar and set aside.
3. Whip the egg whites on medium speed until foamy. Increase the speed and gradually add 1 ounce (30 grams) of the sugar.
4. Continue whipping until the egg whites form soft peaks. Gradually add the remaining sugar.
5. Continue whipping until smooth and glossy, about 2 minutes.
6. Sprinkle the almond-sugar mixture over the meringue and fold together by hand.
7. Using a pastry bag with a plain tip, pipe the meringue onto the parchment paper to form three 8-inch (20-centimeter) disks.
8. Bake until firm and crisp but not brown, approximately 60–75 minutes. Cool completely.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 100, **Total fat** 2.5 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 15 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 16 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Claims**—low fat; low saturated fat; no cholesterol; very low sodium

2. Layering the Ganache-covered Dacquoise.

GANACHE

Semi-sweet chocolate	4 oz.	120 g
Heavy cream	3 oz.	90 ml

1. Chop the chocolate into small pieces and place in a bowl.
2. Heat the cream just to boiling. Pour the cream over the chocolate and stir until the mixture is glossy and smooth. Allow to cool slightly before using.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 130, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 10 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 6%

3. Frosting the Délice.

CRÈME CHANTILLY

Heavy cream	1 qt.	1 lt
Granulated sugar	3 oz.	90 g
Vanilla extract	1 tsp.	5 ml

1. Whip all the ingredients together until soft peaks form.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 100, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 35 mg, **Sodium** 10 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 3 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 10%

CANDIED ALMONDS

Egg whites	2	2
Granulated sugar	2 oz.	60 g
Sliced almonds	8 oz.	250 g

1. Preheat oven to 325°F (160°C).
2. Whisk the egg whites and sugar together. Add the almonds. Toss with a rubber spatula to coat the nuts completely.
3. Spread the nuts in a thin layer on a lightly greased baking sheet. Bake until lightly toasted and dry, approximately 15–20 minutes. Watch closely to prevent burning.
4. Stir the nuts with a metal spatula every 5–7 minutes during baking.
5. Cool completely. Store in an air-tight container for up to 10 days.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 160, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 10 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 10 g, **Protein** 6 g, **Claims**—low saturated fat; no cholesterol; very low sodium

RECIPE 32.32

Chewy Date Bars

Chefs Susan Feniger and Mary Sue Milliken
of the former CITY RESTAURANT, Los Angeles, CA

Yield: 12 Large Squares | Method: Bar Cookies

Dates, pitted and chopped	1 lb.	450 g
Water	8 oz.	225 ml
Granulated sugar	8 oz.	225 g
Lemon juice, fresh	4 oz.	120 ml
Rolled oats	1 1/2 pt.	700 ml
All-purpose flour	10 oz.	300 g
Brown sugar	9 oz.	270 g
Baking soda	3/4 tsp.	4 ml
Salt	3/4 tsp.	4 ml
Unsalted butter, melted	14 oz.	400 g

1. Combine the dates and water in a saucepan. Cook at a low boil until the mixture is as thick as mashed potatoes, approximately 5 minutes. Stir in the granulated sugar and remove from the heat. Add the lemon juice and set aside to cool.
2. In a large bowl, mix together the oats, flour, brown sugar, baking soda and salt. Add the melted butter. Stir to moisten evenly.
3. Spread half of the oat mixture in a well-buttered 9 inch × 12 inch (22 centimeter × 30 centimeter) pan to form an even layer. Cover evenly with all the date mixture. Spread the remaining oat mixture over the top.
4. Bake at 350°F (180°C) until the top is golden brown and pebbly, approximately 40 minutes. The edges should start caramelizing. Set aside to cool, in the pan on a rack, for about 1 hour. Run a sharp knife along the inside edges to loosen. Invert, trim the edges, and cut into squares. Serve with Caramel Ice Cream (Recipe 34.30).

Approximate values per 7-oz. (207-g) serving: **Calories** 640, **Total fat** 28 g, **Saturated fat** 17 g, **Cholesterol** 70 mg, **Sodium** 240 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 91 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin A** 25%, **Claims**—good source of fiber

RECIPE 32.33

MADELEINES

Yield: 15 Large Cookies

Unsalted butter	4 oz.	120 g
Eggs	2	2
Granulated sugar	3 oz.	90 g
Lemon zest, grated fine	1 tsp.	5 ml
Lemon juice	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Vanilla extract	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Baking powder	1/8 tsp.	.5 ml
Cake flour, sifted	3 oz.	90 g

1. Melt the butter over medium heat; continue cooking until the milk solids turn a golden-brown color. Set aside to cool.
2. Whisk the eggs and sugar over a bain marie until warm (98°F/38°C). Remove from the heat and whisk in the lemon zest, lemon juice and vanilla.
3. Sift the baking powder and flour together; stir into the egg mixture. Stir in the melted and cooled butter. Cover the bowl and allow to rest for 1 hour at room temperature.
4. Butter and flour the madeleine shells. Spoon the batter into the shells, filling each three-fourths full.
5. Bake at 450°F (230°C) until the cookies rise in the center and are very light brown on the bottom and edges, approximately 3–4 minutes for 1 1/2-inch (3.7-centimeter) madeleines and 10–12 minutes for 3-inch (7.5-centimeter) madeleines. They should spring back when touched lightly in the center. Remove the madeleines from the oven, invert the pan over a wire cooling rack, and tap lightly to release the cookies from the pan.

Approximate values per cookie: **Calories** 110, **Total fat** 7 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 45 mg, **Sodium** 10 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 10 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 6%

RECIPE 32.34

SUGAR COOKIES

Yield: 3 Dozen Method: Cut-out Cookies

All-purpose flour	12 oz.	360 g
Baking powder	2 tsp.	10 ml
Mace, ground	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Unsalted butter, softened	4 oz.	120 g
Granulated sugar	8 oz.	250 g
Vanilla extract	1 tsp.	5 ml
Egg	1	1

1. Stir together the flour, baking powder and mace. Set aside.
2. Cream the butter and sugar until light and fluffy. Blend in the vanilla. Add the egg and beat again until fluffy. Gradually add the flour mixture, beating just until well combined.
3. Wrap the dough in plastic wrap and refrigerate until firm, about 1–2 hours.

4. Work with about half of the dough at a time, keeping the remainder refrigerated. On a lightly floured board, roll out the dough to a thickness of approximately 1/8 inch (3 millimeters). Cut as desired with cookie cutters. Carefully transfer the cookies to lightly greased baking sheets.
5. Bake at 325°F (160°C) until golden brown, approximately 10–12 minutes. Let stand for 1 minute, then transfer to wire racks to cool.

Approximate values per cookie: **Calories** 90, **Total fat** 3 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 14 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Claims**—low fat; low cholesterol; no sodium

RECIPE 32.35

GINGERBREAD COOKIES

Yield: 1 Dozen — Method: Cut-out Cookies

Unsalted butter, softened	4 oz.	120 g
Brown sugar	4 oz.	120 g
Molasses	6 oz.	180 g
Egg	1	1
All-purpose flour	12 oz.	360 g
Baking soda	1 tsp.	5 ml
Salt	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Ginger, ground	2 tsp.	10 ml
Cinnamon, ground	1 tsp.	5 ml
Nutmeg, ground	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Cloves, ground	1/2 tsp.	2 ml

1. Cream the butter and sugar until light and fluffy. Add the molasses and egg and beat to blend well; set aside.
2. Stir together the flour, baking soda, salt, ginger, cinnamon, nutmeg and cloves. Gradually add the flour mixture to the butter mixture, beating until just blended. Gather the dough into a ball and wrap in plastic wrap; refrigerate for at least 1 hour.
3. On a lightly floured board, roll out the gingerbread to a thickness of 1/4 inch (6 millimeters). Cut out the cookies with a floured cutter and transfer to greased baking sheets.
4. Bake at 325°F (160°C) until the cookies are lightly browned around the edges and feel barely firm when touched, approximately 10 minutes. Transfer to wire racks to cool. Decorate as desired with Royal Icing (Recipe 33.13).

Approximate values per cookie: **Calories** 260, **Total fat** 8 g, **Saturated fat** 5 g, **Cholesterol** 40 mg, **Sodium** 220 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 41 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Vitamin A** 8%

RECIPE 32.36

SPRITZ COOKIES

Yield: 7 Dozen — Method: Pressed Cookies

Unsalted butter, softened	8 oz.	250 g
Granulated sugar	4 oz.	120 g

Continued

Salt	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Vanilla extract	1 tsp.	5 ml
Egg	1	1
Cake flour, sifted	10 oz.	300 g

1. Cream the butter and sugar until light and fluffy. Add the salt, vanilla and egg; beat well.
2. Gradually add the flour, beating until just blended. The dough should be firm but neither sticky nor stiff.
3. Press or pipe the dough onto an ungreased sheet pan using a cookie press or a piping bag fitted with a large star tip.
4. Bake at 350°F (177°C) until lightly browned around edges, approximately 10 minutes. Transfer to wire racks to cool.

Approximate values per cookie: **Calories** 40, **Total fat** 2.5 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 10 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 4 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—low fat; low cholesterol; very low sodium; low calorie

RECIPE 32.37

Spiced Oatmeal Cookies

Yield: 3 Dozen **Method:** Drop Cookies

All-purpose shortening	6 oz.	180 g
Brown sugar	6 oz.	180 g
Granulated sugar	6 oz.	180 g
Eggs	2	2
Orange juice concentrate	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
All-purpose flour	7 oz.	210 g
Baking soda	1 tsp.	5 ml
Baking powder	1 tsp.	5 ml
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Cinnamon, ground	1 tsp.	5 ml
Allspice, ground	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Nutmeg, ground	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Regular oats	1 pt.	500 ml
Dark raisins	6 oz.	180 g
Golden raisins	6 oz.	180 g

1. Cream the shortening and sugars until light and fluffy. Add the eggs and orange juice concentrate.
2. Sift the dry ingredients together and add them to the creamed mixture.
3. Blend in the oats and raisins.
4. Portion the dough onto lightly greased sheet pans and bake at 325°F (160°C) until almost firm, approximately 12 minutes.

Approximate values per cookie: **Calories** 150, **Total fat** 5 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 105 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 24 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Claims**—low cholesterol; low sodium

RECIPE 32.38

Lacy Pecan Cookies

Yield: 100 3-in. (7.5-cm) Cookies Method: Wafer Cookies

Brown sugar	3 lb.	1.3 kg
Unsalted butter	2 lb. 8 oz.	1.1. kg
Dark corn syrup	3 lb. 12 oz.	1.7 kg
All-purpose flour	3 lb.	1.3 kg
Pecans, chopped	2 lb. 8 oz.	1.1 kg

1. Combine the sugar, butter and corn syrup in a large, heavy saucepan. Bring to a full boil.
2. Mix the flour and nuts together.
3. As soon as the sugar mixture comes to a boil, start timing it. Let it boil for a full 3 minutes. Remove from the heat and stir in the flour-nut mixture. Pour into a hotel pan to cool completely.
4. Use a small portion scoop to make equal-sized balls of dough. Flatten out the balls of dough and place on a silicon baking mat or paper-lined sheet pans.
5. Bake at 325°F (160°C) until very dark brown and no longer moist in center, approximately 15–18 minutes. Remove from oven and shape as desired.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 320, **Total fat** 17 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 25 mg, **Sodium** 20 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 38 g, **Protein** 2 g

RECIPE 32.39

Tulipe Cookies

Yield: 4 lb. 8 oz. (2 kg) Batter, enough for 30 3-in. (7.5-cm) Cups

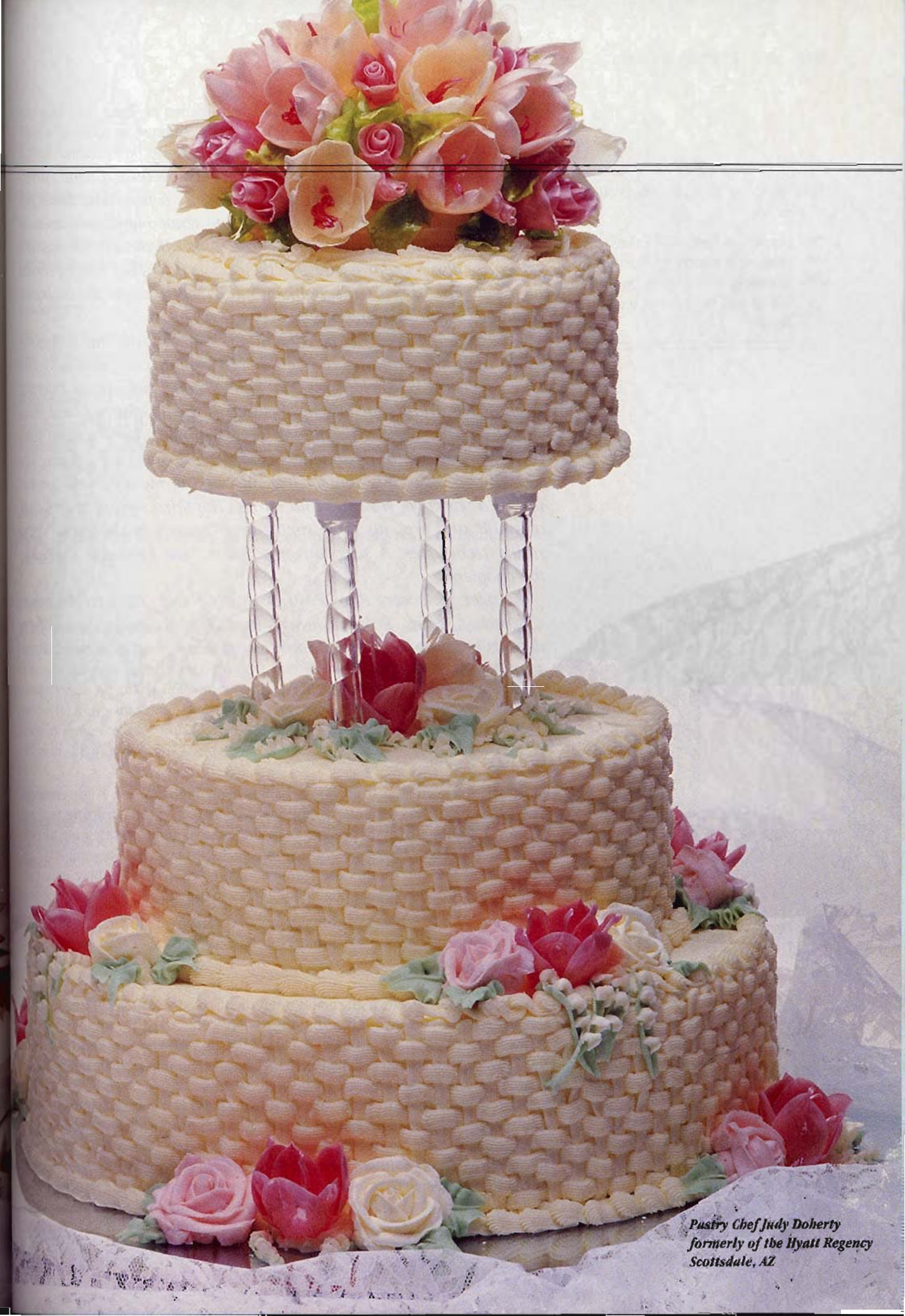
Unsalted butter	1 lb.	500 g
Powdered sugar	1 lb.	500 g
All-purpose flour	1 lb.	500 g
Egg whites	1 lb. 8 oz.	750 ml

1. Melt the butter and place in a mixer bowl fitted with the paddle attachment. Add the sugar and blend until almost smooth.
2. Add the flour and blend until smooth. With the mixer running, add the egg whites very slowly. Beat until blended, but do not incorporate air into the batter.
3. Strain the dough through a china cap and set aside to cool completely.
4. Coat several sheet pans with melted butter. Spread the dough into 6-inch (15-centimeter) circles on the pans. Bake at 400°F (200°C) until the edges are brown and the dough is dry, approximately 12–18 minutes.
5. To shape into cups, lift the hot cookies off the sheet pan one at a time with an offset spatula. Immediately place over an inverted glass and top with a ramekin or small bowl. The cookies cool very quickly, becoming firm and crisp. The cookie bowls can be used for serving ice cream, crème brûlée, fruit or other items.

Approximate values per 2 1/2-oz. (68-g) serving: **Calories** 240, **Total fat** 12 g, **Saturated fat** 8 g, **Cholesterol** 35 mg, **Sodium** 40 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 37 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Vitamin A** 10%

CHAPTER 33

CAKES AND FROSTINGS



Pastry Chef Judy Doherty
formerly of the Hyatt Regency
Scottsdale, AZ

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- prepare a variety of cakes
- prepare a variety of frostings
- assemble cakes using basic finishing and decorating techniques

Cakes are popular in most bakeshops because a wide variety of finished products can be created from only a few basic cake, filling and frosting formulas. Many of these components can even be made in advance and assembled into finished desserts as needed. Cakes are also popular because of their versatility: They can be served as unadorned sheets in a high-volume cafeteria or as the elaborate centerpiece of a wedding buffet.

Cake making need not be difficult or intimidating, but it does require an understanding of ingredients and mixing methods. This chapter begins by explaining how typical cake ingredients interact. Each of the traditional mixing methods is then explained and illustrated with a recipe. Information on panning batters, baking temperatures, determining doneness and cooling methods follows. The second portion of this chapter presents mixing methods and formulas for a variety of frostings and icings. The third section covers cake assembly and presents some simple and commonly used cake decorating techniques. A selection of popular cake formulas concludes the chapter.

Chapter 32 covers Pies, Pastries and Cookies; Chapter 34 covers Custards, Creams, Frozen Desserts and Dessert Sauces. Some of the desserts presented in those chapters use cake or frosting formulas presented here.

CAKES

Most cakes are created from liquid batters with high fat and sugar contents. The baker's job is to combine all the ingredients to create a structure that will support these rich ingredients, yet keep the cake as light and delicate as possible. As with other baked goods, it is impossible to taste a cake until it is fully cooked and too late to alter the formula. Therefore, it is extremely important to study any formula before beginning and to follow it with particular care and attention to detail.

Ingredients

Good cakes begin with high-quality ingredients (see Chapter 29, Principles of the Bakeshop). However, even the finest ingredients must be combined in the proper balance. Too much flour and the cake may be dry; too much egg and the cake will be tough and hard. Changing one ingredient may necessitate a change in one or more of the other ingredients.

Each ingredient performs a specific function and has a specific effect on the final product. Cake ingredients can be classified by function as toughenerers, tenderizers, moisteners, driers, leaveners and flavorings. Some ingredients fulfill more than one of these functions. For example, eggs contain water, so they are moisteners, and they contain protein, so they are toughenerers. By understanding the function of various ingredients, you should be able to understand

why cakes are made in particular ways and why a preparation sometimes fails. With additional experience, you should be able to recognize and correct flawed formulas and develop your own cake formulas.

Toughbeners

Flour, milk and eggs contain protein. Protein provides structure and toughens the cake. Too little protein and the cake may collapse; too much protein and the cake may be tough and coarse-textured.

Tenderizers

Sugar, fats and egg yolks shorten gluten strands, making the cake tender and soft. These ingredients also improve the cake's keeping qualities.

Moisteners

Liquids such as water, milk, juice and eggs bring moisture to the mixture. Moisture is necessary for gluten formation and starch gelatinization, as well as for improving a cake's keeping qualities.

Driers

Flour, starches and milk solids absorb moisture, giving body and structure to the cake.

Leaveners

Cakes rise because gases in the batter expand when heated. Cakes are leavened by the air trapped when fat and sugar are creamed together, by carbon dioxide released from baking powder and baking soda and by air trapped in beaten eggs. All cakes rely on natural leaveners—steam and air—to create the proper texture and rise. Because baking soda and baking powder are also used in some cake formulas, you should review the material on chemical leaveners in Chapter 30, Quick Breads.

Flavorings

Flavorings such as extracts, cocoa, chocolate, spices, salt, sugar and butter provide cakes with the desired flavors. Acidic flavoring ingredients such as sour cream, chocolate and fruit also provide the acid necessary to activate baking soda.

Cake ingredients should be at room temperature, approximately 70°F (21°C), before mixing begins. If one ingredient is too cold or too warm, it may affect the batter's ability to trap and hold the gases necessary for the cake to rise.

Mixing Methods

Even the finest ingredients will be wasted if the cake batter is not mixed correctly. When mixing any cake batter, your goals are to combine the ingredients uniformly, incorporate air cells and develop the proper texture.

All mixing methods can be divided into two categories: *high fat*—those that create a structure that relies primarily on **creamed fat**—and *egg foam*—those that create a structure that relies primarily on **whipped eggs**. Within these broad categories are several mixing methods or types of cakes. Creamed-fat cakes include **butter cakes** (also known as **creaming method cakes**) and **high-ratio cakes**. Whipped-egg cakes include **genoise**, **spongecakes**, **angel**

TABLE 33.1 CAKES

Category	Mixing Method/Type of Cake	Key Formula Characteristics	Texture
Creamed Fat (High Fat)	Butter (creaming method)	High-fat formula; chemical leavener used	Fine grain; air cells of uniform size; moist crumb; thin and tender crust
	High-ratio (two-stage)	Emulsified shortening; two-part mixing method	Very fine grain; moist crumb; relatively high rise
Whipped Egg (Egg Foam)	Genoise	Whole eggs are whipped with sugar; no chemical leaveners	Dry and spongy
	Sponge	Egg yolks are mixed with other ingredients, then whipped egg whites are folded in	Moister and more tender than genoise
	Angel food	No fat; large quantity of whipped egg whites; high percentage of sugar	Tall, light and fluffy
	Chiffon	Vegetable oil used; egg yolks mixed with other ingredients, then whipped egg whites folded in; baking powder may be added	Tall, light and fluffy; moister and richer than angel food

food cakes and **chiffon cakes**. See Table 33.1. Although certain general procedures are used to prepare each cake type, there are, of course, variations. Follow specific formula instructions precisely.

Creamed Fat

Creamed-fat cakes include most of the popular American-style cakes: poundcakes, layer cakes, coffeecakes and even brownies. All are based on high-fat formulas containing chemical leaveners. A good high-fat cake has a fine grain, cells of uniform size and a crumb that is moist rather than crumbly. Crusts should be thin and tender.

Creamed-fat cakes can be divided into two classes: butter cakes and high-ratio cakes.

Butter Cakes

Butter cakes, also known as creaming method cakes, begin with softened butter or shortening creamed to incorporate air cells. Because of their high fat content, these cakes usually need the assistance of a chemical leavener to achieve the proper rise.

Modern-day butter cakes—the classic American layer cakes, popular for birthdays and special occasions—are made with the creaming method. These cakes are tender yet sturdy enough to handle rich buttercreams or fillings. High-fat cakes are too soft and delicate, however, to use for roll cakes or to slice into extremely thin layers.

When making butter cakes, the fat should be creamed at low to moderate speeds to prevent raising its temperature. An increased temperature could cause a loss of air cells.

POUNDCAKES

Poundcakes are the original high-fat, creaming method cake. They are called poundcakes because early formulas specified one pound each of butter, eggs, flour and sugar. Poundcakes should have a close grain and compact texture but still be very tender. They should be neither heavy nor soggy.

As bakers experimented with poundcake formulas, they reduced the amount of eggs and fat, substituting milk instead. These changes led to the development of the modern butter cake.

PROCEDURE FOR PREPARING BUTTER (CREAMING METHOD) CAKES

1. Preheat the oven and prepare the pans.
2. Sift the dry ingredients together and set aside.

3. Cream the butter or shortening until it is light and fluffy. Add the sugar and cream until the mixture is fluffy and smooth.
4. Add the eggs slowly, beating well after each addition.
5. Add the dry and liquid ingredients alternately.
6. Divide the batter into prepared pans and bake immediately.

RECIPE 33.1

CLASSIC POUNDCAKE

Yield: 2 8 in. × 4 in. (20 cm × 10 cm) Loaves Method: Creaming

Cake flour	1 lb.	500 g
Baking powder	2 tsp.	10 ml
Salt	1/2 tsp.	2 ml
Unsalted butter, softened	1 lb.	500 g
Granulated sugar	12 oz.	340 g
Eggs	9	9
Vanilla extract	1 tsp.	5 ml
Lemon extract	1 tsp.	5 ml

1. Sift the cake flour, baking powder and salt together; set aside.
2. Cream the butter and sugar until light and fluffy. Add the eggs one at a time, beating well after each addition. Stir in the extracts.
3. Fold in the dry ingredients by hand. Divide the batter into greased loaf pans.
4. Bake at 325°F (160°C) until golden brown and springy to the touch, approximately 1 hour and 10 minutes.

VARIATION: *French-style fruitcake:* Add 6 ounces (180 grams) finely diced nuts, raisins and candied fruit to the batter. Substitute vanilla extract for the lemon extract and add 3 tablespoons (45 milliliters) rum to the batter. After baking, brush the warm cake with additional rum.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (86-g) serving: **Calories** 350, **Total fat** 21 g, **Saturated fat** 12 g, **Cholesterol** 145 mg, **Sodium** 90 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 35 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin A** 20%

1. Creaming the butter.

2. Folding in the flour.

3. Panning the batter.

High-Ratio Cakes

Commercial bakers often use a special two-stage mixing method to prepare large quantities of a very liquid cake batter. These formulas require emulsified shortenings and are known as two-stage cakes because the liquids are added

in two stages or portions. If emulsified shortenings are not available, do not substitute all-purpose shortening or butter as they cannot absorb the large amounts of sugar and liquid in the formula.

Because they contain a high ratio of sugar and liquid to flour, these cakes are often known as high-ratio cakes. They have a very fine, moist crumb and relatively high rise. High-ratio cakes are almost indistinguishable from modern butter cakes and may be used interchangeably.

Procedure for Preparing High-Ratio Cakes

1. Preheat the oven and prepare the pans.
2. Place all the dry ingredients and emulsified shortening into a mixer bowl. Blend on low speed for several minutes.
3. Add approximately one half of the liquid and blend.
4. Scrape down the mixer bowl and add the remaining liquid ingredients. Blend into a smooth batter, scraping down the bowl as necessary.
5. Pour the batter into prepared pans using liquid measurements to ensure uniform division.

RECIPE 33.2

High-Ratio Yellow Cake

Yield: 3–4 Sheet Pans **Method:** High-Ratio

Cake flour	5 lb.	2.2 kg
Granulated sugar	5 lb. 4 oz.	2.3 kg
Emulsified shortening	2 lb. 8 oz.	1.1 kg
Salt	2 oz.	60 g
Baking powder	4 oz.	120 g
Powdered milk	8 oz.	225 g
Light corn syrup	12 oz.	340 g
Water, cold	1 qt.	1 lt
Eggs	2 lb. 8 oz.	1.1 kg
Water, cold	2 1/4 qt.	2.25 lt
Lemon extract	1 oz.	30 ml

1. Combine the flour, sugar, shortening, salt, baking powder, powdered milk, corn syrup and 1 quart (1 liter) cold water in a large bowl of a mixer fitted with the paddle attachment. Beat for 5 minutes on low speed.
2. Combine the remaining ingredients in a separate bowl. Add these liquid ingredients to the creamed-fat mixture in three additions. Scrape down the sides of the bowl after each addition.
3. Beat for 2 minutes on low speed.
4. Divide the batter into greased and floured pans. Pans should be filled only halfway. One gallon of batter is sufficient for an 18 inch × 24 inch × 2 inch (45 centimeter × 60 centimeter × 5 centimeter) sheet pan. Bake at 340°F (170°C) until a cake tester comes out clean and the cake springs back when lightly touched, approximately 12–18 minutes.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (90-g) serving: **Calories** 390, **Total fat** 16 g, **Saturated fat** 5 g, **Cholesterol** 60 mg, **Sodium** 320 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 57 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Calcium** 10%

Whipped Egg

Cakes based on whipped egg foams include European-style genoise as well as spongecakes, angel food cakes and chiffon cakes. Some formulas contain chemical leaveners, but the air whipped into the eggs (whether whole or separated) is the primary leavening agent. Egg-foam cakes contain little or no fat.

Genoise

Genoise is the classic European-style cake. It is based on whole eggs whipped with sugar until very light and fluffy. Chemical leaveners are not used. A small amount of oil or melted butter is sometimes added for flavor and moisture. Genoise is often baked in a thin sheet and layered with buttercream, puréed fruit, jam or chocolate filling to create multilayered specialty desserts. Because genoise is rather dry, it is usually soaked with a flavored sugar syrup (see Chapter 29, Principles of the Bakeshop) or liquor for additional flavor and moisture.

Procedure for Preparing Genoise

1. Preheat the oven and prepare the pans.
2. Sift the flour with any additional dry ingredients.
3. Combine the whole eggs and sugar in a large bowl and warm over a double boiler to a temperature of 100°F (38°C).
4. Whip the egg-and-sugar mixture until very light and tripled in volume.
5. Fold the sifted flour into the whipped eggs carefully but quickly.
6. Fold in oil or melted butter if desired.
7. Divide into pans and bake immediately.

1. Whipped eggs.

2. Folding in the flour.

3. Adding the melted butter.

RECIPE 33.3

Classic Genoise

Yield: 3 Full Sheet Pans — Method: Whipped Egg

Cake flour	1 lb. 8 oz.	680 g
Eggs	30	30
Granulated sugar	1 lb. 8 oz.	680 g
Unsalted butter, melted (optional)	4 oz.	120 g

1. Sift the flour and set aside.
2. Whisk the eggs and sugar together in a large mixer bowl. Place the bowl over a bain marie and warm the eggs to about 100°F (38°C). Stir frequently to avoid cooking the eggs.
3. When the eggs are warm, remove the bowl from the bain marie and attach to a mixer fitted with a whip attachment. Whip the egg-and-sugar mixture at medium speed until tripled in volume.
4. Quickly fold the flour into the egg mixture by hand. Be careful not to deflate the batter.
5. Pour the melted, cooled butter around the edges of the batter and fold in quickly.

Continued

4. Panning the batter.

6. Divide the batter immediately into parchment-lined pans. Bake at 350°F (180°C) until light brown and springy to the touch, approximately 8 minutes.

VARIATION: *Chocolate genoise*—Sift 3 1/2 ounces (100 grams) of cocoa powder with the flour.

Approximate values per 2-oz. (60-g) serving: **Calories** 140, **Total fat** 4 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 110 mg, **Sodium** 30 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 21 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Vitamin A** 6%

Spongecakes

Spongecakes (Fr. *biscuits*) are made with whole separated eggs. A batter is prepared with the egg yolks and other ingredients, then the egg whites are whipped to firm peaks with a portion of the sugar and folded into the batter. Spongecakes are primarily leavened with air, but baking powder may be included in the formula. As with genoise, oil or melted butter may be added if desired.

Spongecakes are extremely versatile. They can be soaked with sugar syrup or a liquor and assembled with buttercream as a traditional layer cake. Or they can be sliced thinly and layered, like genoise, with jam, custard, chocolate or cream filling.

PROCEDURE FOR PREPARING SPONGECAKES

1. Preheat the oven and prepare the pans.
2. Separate the eggs. Whip the egg whites with a portion of the sugar.
3. Sift the dry ingredients together and combine with the liquid ingredients, including the egg yolks, as directed.
4. Carefully fold the whipped egg whites into the batter.
5. Pour the batter into the pans and bake immediately.

1. The eggs whipped to ribbon stage.

RECIPE 33.4

CLASSIC SPONGECAKE

Yield: 2 9-in. (22-cm) Rounds **Method:** Whipped Egg

Cake flour, sifted	6 oz.	180 g
Granulated sugar	11 oz.	300 g
Eggs	10	10
Vanilla extract	1 1/2 tsp.	7 ml
Cream of tartar	1 1/2 tsp.	7 ml

1. Line the bottom of two springform pans with parchment. Do not grease the sides of the pans.
2. Sift the flour and 6 ounces (150 grams) of the sugar together and set aside.
3. Separate the eggs, placing the yolks and the whites in separate mixing bowls. Whip the yolks on high speed for 3–5 minutes, until thick, pale and at least doubled in volume. Whip in the vanilla extract. The yolks should be whipped "to ribbon," that is, until they fall from the beater in thick ribbons that slowly disappear into the surface.

4. Place the bowl of egg whites on the mixer and, using a clean whip attachment, beat until foamy. Add the cream of tartar and 2 tablespoons (30 grams) of sugar. Whip at medium speed until the whites are glossy and stiff but not dry.
5. Remove the bowl from the mixer. Pour the egg yolks onto the whipped whites. Quickly fold the two mixtures together by hand. Sprinkle the remaining sugar over the mixture and fold in lightly.
6. Sprinkle one third of the sifted flour over the batter and fold in. Repeat the procedure until all the flour is incorporated. Do not overmix; fold just until incorporated.
7. Pour the batter into the prepared pans, smoothing the surface as needed. Bake immediately at 375°F (190°C) until the cake is golden brown and spongy, approximately 30 minutes. A toothpick inserted in the center will be completely clean.
8. Allow the cakes to rest in their pans until completely cool, approximately 2 hours.
9. To remove the cakes from their pans, run a thin metal spatula around the edge of each pan. When the cake is completely cool, it can be frosted or wrapped in plastic wrap and frozen for 2–3 months.

Approximate values per 2-oz. (60-g) serving: **Calories** 130, **Total fat** 2.5 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 105 mg, **Sodium** 30 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 23 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Claims**—low fat; low saturated fat; very low sodium

2. Folding the flour into the batter.

3. Panning the batter.

Angel Food Cakes

Angel food cakes are tall, light cakes made without fat and leavened with a large quantity of whipped egg whites. Angel food cakes are traditionally baked in ungreased tube pans, but large loaf pans can also be used. The pans are left ungreased so that the batter can cling to the sides as it rises. The cakes should be inverted as soon as they are removed from the oven and left in the pan to cool. This technique allows gravity to keep the cakes from collapsing or sinking as they cool.

Although they contain no fat, angel food cakes are not low in calories as they contain a high percentage of sugar. The classic angel food cake is pure white, but flavorings, ground nuts or cocoa powder may be added for variety. Although angel food cakes are rarely frosted, they may be topped with a fruit-flavored or chocolate glaze. They are often served with fresh fruit, a fruit compote or whipped cream.

Procedure for Preparing Angel Food Cakes

1. Preheat the oven.
2. Sift the dry ingredients together.
3. Whip the egg whites with a portion of the sugar until stiff and glossy.
4. Gently fold the dry ingredients into the egg whites.
5. Spoon the batter into an ungreased pan and bake immediately.
6. Allow the cake to cool inverted in its pan.

RECIPE 33.5

CHOCOLATE ANGEL FOOD CAKE

Yield: 1 10-in. (25-cm) Tube Cake **Method:** Whipped Egg

Cocoa powder, alkalized	1 oz.	30 g
Water, warm	2 oz.	60 ml
Vanilla extract	2 tsp.	10 ml
Granulated sugar	12 oz.	340 g
Cake flour, sifted	3 1/2 oz.	100 g
Salt	1/4 tsp.	1 g
Egg whites	16	16
Cream of tartar	2 tsp.	10 ml

1. Combine the cocoa powder and water in a bowl. Add the vanilla and set aside.
2. In another bowl, combine 5 ounces (150 grams) of the sugar with the flour and salt.
3. Whip the egg whites until foamy, add the cream of tartar and beat to soft peaks. Gradually beat in the remaining sugar. Continue beating until the egg whites are stiff but not dry.
4. Whisk approximately 1 cup (225 milliliters) of the whipped egg whites into the cocoa mixture. Fold this into the remaining egg whites.
5. Sift the dry ingredients over the whites and fold in quickly but gently.
6. Pour the batter into an ungreased tube pan and smooth the top with a spatula. Bake immediately at 350°F (180°C) until the cake springs back when lightly touched and a cake tester comes out clean, approximately 40–50 minutes. The cake's surface will have deep cracks.
7. Remove the cake from the oven and immediately invert the pan onto the neck of a bottle. Allow the cake to rest upside down until completely cool.
8. To remove the cake from the pan, run a thin knife or spatula around the edge of the pan and the edge of the interior tube. If a two-piece tube pan was used, the cake and tube portion are lifted out of the pan. Use a knife or spatula to loosen the bottom of the cake, then invert it onto a cake cardboard or serving platter.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 210, **Total fat** 0.5 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 150 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 44 g, **Protein** 7 g, **Claims**—low fat; no saturated fat; no cholesterol

1. Folding the egg white and cocoa mixture into the whipped egg whites.

2. Folding in the flour.

3. Cooling the cake upside down in its pan.

4. Removing the cake from the pan.

Chiffon Cakes

Although chiffon cakes are similar to angel food cakes in appearance and texture, the addition of egg yolks and vegetable oil makes them moister and richer. Chiffon cakes are usually leavened with whipped egg whites but may contain baking powder as well. Like angel food cakes, chiffon cakes are baked in an ungreased pan to allow the batter to cling to the pan as it rises. Chiffon cakes can be frosted with a light buttercream or whipped cream or topped with a glaze. Lemon and orange chiffon cakes are the most popular, but formulas containing chocolate, nuts or other flavorings are also common.

Procedure for Preparing Chiffon Cakes

1. Preheat the oven.
2. Whip the egg whites with a portion of the sugar until almost stiff. Set aside.
3. Sift the dry ingredients together. Add the liquid ingredients, including oil.
4. Fold the whipped egg whites into the batter.
5. Spoon the batter into an ungreased pan and bake immediately.
6. Allow the cake to cool inverted in its pan.

RECIPE 33.6

Orange Chiffon Cake

Yield: 1 10-in. (25-cm) Tube Cake | Method: Whipped Egg

Cake flour, sifted	8 oz.	225 g
Granulated sugar	12 oz.	340 g
Baking powder	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Vegetable oil	4 oz.	120 ml
Egg yolks	6	6
Water, cool	2 oz.	60 ml
Orange juice	4 oz.	120 ml
Orange zest	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Vanilla extract	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Egg whites	8 oz.	250 g

1. Sift together the flour, 6 ounces (170 grams) of sugar, the baking powder and salt.
2. In a separate bowl mix the oil, yolks, water, juice, zest and vanilla. Add the liquid mixture to the dry ingredients.
3. In a clean bowl, beat the egg whites until foamy. Slowly beat in the remaining 6 ounces (170 grams) of sugar. Continue beating until the egg whites are stiff but not dry.
4. Stir one third of the egg whites into the batter to lighten it. Fold in the remaining egg whites.
5. Pour the batter into an ungreased 10-inch (25-centimeter) tube pan. Bake at 325°F (160°C) until a toothpick comes out clean, approximately 1 hour.
6. Immediately invert the pan over the neck of a wine bottle. Allow the cake to hang upside down until completely cool, then remove from the pan.

Approximate values per 1/10-cake serving: **Calories** 370, **Total fat** 15 g, **Saturated fat** 2.5 g, **Cholesterol** 130 mg, **Sodium** 280 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 54 g, **Protein** 6 g, **Vitamin C** 10%

Continued

Chiffon Cake— A Hollywood Classic

Chiffon cake is one of the few desserts whose history can be traced with absolute certainty. According to Gerry Schremp in her book *Kitchen Culture: Fifty Years of Food Fads*, a new type of cake was invented by Henry Baker, a California insurance salesman, in 1927. Dubbed chiffon, it was as light as angel food and as rich as poundcake. For years he kept the formula a secret, earning fame and fortune by selling his cakes to Hollywood restaurants. The cake's secret ingredient—vegetable oil—became public knowledge in 1947 when Baker sold the formula to General Mills, which promoted it on packages of cake flour. Chiffon cakes, in a variety of flavors, became extremely popular nationwide.

Convenience Products

Packaged cake mixes are a tremendous time saver for commercial food service operations. Almost any operation can serve a variety of cakes made by relatively unskilled employees using prepared mixes. The results are consistent and the texture and flavor are acceptable to most consumers. Indeed, a well-prepared packaged mix cake is preferable to a poorly prepared cake made from scratch. Most packaged cake mixes can be adapted to include flavorings, nuts, spices or fruits, which can improve the product's overall quality. Frostings, fillings and attractive decorations complete these items.

The convenience of mixes is not without cost, however. Packaged cake mixes are often more expensive than the ingredients needed for an equal number of cakes made from scratch. Cakes made from mixes are also softer and more cottony than scratch cakes, and their flavor tends to be more artificial.

ORANGE GLAZE

Powdered sugar	3 oz.	90 g
Orange juice	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Orange zest	2 tsp.	10 ml

1. Sift the sugar, then stir in the juice and zest.
2. Drizzle the glaze over the top of the cooled cake.

VARIATION: *Lemon chiffon cake*—Substitute 2 ounces (60 milliliters) fresh lemon juice and 2 ounces (60 milliliters) water for the orange juice. Substitute lemon zest for the orange zest. Top with Basic Sugar Glaze, Recipe 33.12.

Panning, Baking and Cooling

Preparing Pans

In order to prevent cakes from sticking, most baking pans are coated with fat, a nonstick baking parchment or both. Pans should be prepared before the batter is mixed so that they may be filled and the cakes baked as soon as the batter is finished. If the batter stands while the pans are prepared, air cells within the batter will deflate and volume may be lost.

Solid shortening is better than butter for coating pans because it does not contain any water; butter and margarine contain water and this may cause the cake to stick in places. Solid shortening is also less expensive, tasteless and odorless. Finally, solid shortening does not burn as easily as butter, and it holds a dusting of flour better.

Pan release sprays are useful but must be applied carefully and completely. Although relatively expensive, sprays save time and are particularly effective when used with parchment pan liners.

In kitchens where a great deal of baking is done, it may be more convenient to prepare quantities of pan coating to be kept available for use as needed. Pan coating is a mixture of equal parts oil, shortening and flour that can be applied to cake pans with a pastry brush. It is used whenever pans need to be greased and floured. Pan coating will not leave a white residue on the cake's crust as a dusting of flour often does.

RECIPE 33.7

PAN COATING

Yield: 1 1/2 qt. (1.5 lt)

Vegetable oil	1 lb.	500 g
All-purpose shortening	1 lb.	500 g
Bread flour	1 lb.	500 g

1. Combine all the ingredients in a mixer fitted with the paddle attachment. Blend on low speed for 5 minutes or until smooth.
2. Store in an airtight container at room temperature for up to two months.
3. Apply to baking pans in a thin, even layer using a pastry brush.

TABLE 33.2 PAN PREPARATIONS

Pan Preparation	Used For
Ungreased	Angel food and chiffon cakes
Ungreased sides; paper on bottom	Genoise layers
Greased and papered	High-fat cakes, sponge sheets
Greased and coated with flour	High-fat cakes, chocolate cakes, anything in a bundt or shaped pan
Greased, floured and lined with paper	Cakes containing melted chocolate, fruit chunks or fruit or vegetable purées

Pan coating is not appropriate for all cakes, however. Those containing chocolate, raisins or fruit should still be baked in pans lined with parchment paper in order to prevent sticking.

Angel food and chiffon cakes are baked in ungreased, unlined pans because these fragile cakes need to cling to the sides of the pan as they rise. Sponge-cakes and genoise are often baked in pans with a paper liner on the bottom and ungreased sides. Although the ungreased sides give the batter a surface to cling to, the paper liner makes removing the cake from the pan easier.

Filling Pans

Pans should be filled no more than one-half to two-thirds full. This allows the batter to rise during baking without spilling over the edges.

Pans should be filled to uniform depths. High-fat and egg-foam cake batters can be ladled into each pan according to weight. High-ratio cake batter is so liquid that it can be measured by volume and poured into each pan. Filling the pans uniformly prevents both uneven layers and over- or underfilled pans. If you are baking three 8-inch layers to be stacked for one presentation and the amount of batter is different in each pan, the baking times will vary and the final product will suffer.

The cake batter should always be spread evenly in the pan. Use an offset spatula. Do not work the batter too much, however, as this destroys air cells and prevents the cake from rising properly.

TABLE 33.3 CAKE PAN SIZES

Pan Shape and Size		Quantity of Batter*
Round, 2″ deep	6″	1 pt.
	8″	3 c.
	10″	1 1/2 qt.
	12″	1 qt. + 3 1/2 c.
	14″	2 1/2 qt.
Square, 2″ deep	8″	1 qt.
	10″	1 1/2 qt.
	12″	2 1/2 qt.
	14″	3 qt. + 1 1/2 c.
Rectangular	6″ × 8″	2 1/2 c.
	9″ × 13″	2 qt.
	16″ × 12″	2 qt. + 3 c.

*Quantities given are approximate and are based on filling the pans two-thirds full of batter.

BROWNIES

Where do you draw the line between cakes and brownies? The decision must be a matter of texture and personal preference, for the preparation methods are nearly identical. Brownies are generally chewy and fudgy, sweeter and denser than even the richest of butter cakes.

Brownies are a relatively inexpensive and easy way for a food service operation to offer its customers a fresh-baked dessert. Although not as sophisticated as an elaborate gâteau, a well-made brownie can always be served with pride (and a scoop of ice cream).

Brownies are prepared using the same procedures as those for high-fat cakes. Good brownies are achieved with a proper balance of ingredients: A high percentage of butter to flour produces a dense, fudgy brownie; less butter produces a more cakelike brownie. Likewise, the higher the ratio of sugar, the gooier the finished brownie. In some formulas, the fat is creamed to incorporate air, as with butter cakes. In others, the fat is first melted and combined with other liquid ingredients. Brownies are rarely made with whipped egg whites, however, as this makes their texture too light and cakelike.

Each customer and cook has his or her own idea of the quintessential brownie. Some are cloyingly sweet, with a creamy texture and an abundance of chocolate; others are bitter and crisp. Baked brownies can be frozen for two to three months if well wrapped.

Baking

Temperatures

Always preheat the oven before preparing your batter. If the finished batter must wait while the oven reaches the correct temperature, valuable leavening will be lost and the cake will not rise properly.

Most cakes are baked at temperatures between 325°F and 375°F (160°C–190°C). The temperature must be high enough to create steam within the batter and cause that steam and other gases in the batter to expand and rise quickly. If the temperature is too high, however, the cake may rise unevenly and the crust may burn before the interior is completely baked. The temperature must also be low enough that the batter can set completely and evenly without drying out. If the temperature is too low, however, the cake will not rise sufficiently and may dry out before baking completely.

If no temperature is given in a formula or you are altering the dimensions of the baking pan from those specified, use common sense in setting the oven temperature. The larger the surface area, the higher the temperature can usually be. Tall cakes, such as bundt or tube cakes, should be baked at a lower temperature than thin layer or sheet cakes. Tube or loaf cakes take longer to bake than thin sheet cakes; butter cakes, because they contain more liquid, take longer to bake than genoise or spongecake.

Altitude Adjustments

As you learned in Chapter 9, Principles of Cooking, altitude affects the temperatures at which foods cook. The decreased atmospheric pressure at altitudes above 3000 feet affects the creation of steam and the expansion of hot air in cake batters. These factors must be considered when making cakes. Because gases expand more easily at higher altitudes, your cake may rise so much that its structure cannot support it and the cake collapses.

Therefore, the amount of leavening should be decreased at higher altitudes. Chemical leaveners should usually be reduced by one third at 3500 feet and by two thirds at altitudes over 5000 feet. Eggs should be underwhipped to avoid incorporating too much air, which would also create too much rise. In general, oven temperatures should also be increased by 25°F (4°C) at altitudes over 3500 feet to help set the cake's structure rapidly.

Because the boiling point decreases at higher altitudes, more moisture will evaporate from your cake during baking. This may cause dryness and an excessive proportion of sugar, which shows up as white spots on the cake's surface. Correct this by reducing every 8 ounces (225 grams) of sugar by 1/2 ounce (15 grams) at 3000 feet and by 1 1/2 ounces (45 grams) at 7000 feet.

Attempting to adjust typical (that is, sea-level) formulas for high altitudes is somewhat risky, especially in a commercial operation. Try to find and use formulas developed especially for your area or contact the local offices of your state's Department of Agriculture or the Agricultural Extension Service for detailed assistance.

Determining Doneness

In addition to following the baking time suggested in a formula, several simple tests can be used to determine doneness. Whichever test or tests are used, avoid opening the oven door to check the cake's progress. Cold air or a drop in oven temperature can cause the cake to fall. Use a timer to note the minimum suggested baking time. Then, and only then, should you use the following tests to evaluate the cake's doneness:

- Appearance—The cake's surface should be a light to golden brown. Unless noted otherwise in the formula, the edges should just begin to pull away from the pan. The cake should not jiggle or move beneath its surface.
- Touch—Touch the cake *lightly* with your finger. It should spring back quickly without feeling soggy or leaving an indentation.
- Cake tester—If appearance and touch indicate that the cake is done, test the interior by inserting a toothpick, bamboo skewer or metal cake tester into the cake's center. With most cakes, the tester should come out clean. If wet crumbs cling to the tester, the cake probably needs to bake a bit longer.

If a formula provides particular doneness guidelines, they should be followed. For example, some flourless cakes are fully baked even though a cake tester will not come out clean.

Cooling

Generally, a cake is allowed to cool for 10–15 minutes in its pan after taking it out of the oven. This helps prevent the cake from cracking or breaking after it is removed from its pan.

TABLE 33.4 TROUBLESHOOTING CHART FOR CAKES

Problem	Cause	Solution
Batter curdles during mixing	Ingredients too warm or too cold	Eggs must be at room temperature and added slowly
	Incorrect fat used	Use correct ingredients
	Fat inadequately creamed before liquid was added	Add a portion of the flour, then continue adding the liquid
Cake lacks volume	Flour too strong	Use a weaker flour
	Old chemical leavener	Replace with fresh leavener
	Egg foam underwhipped	Use correct mixing method, do not deflate eggs during folding
	Oven too hot	Adjust oven temperature
Crust burst or cracked	Too much flour or too little liquid	Adjust formula
	Oven too hot	Adjust oven temperature
Cake shrinks after baking	Weak internal structure	Adjust formula
	Too much sugar or fat for the batter to support	Adjust formula
	Cake not fully cooked	Test cake for doneness before removing from oven
	Cake cooled too rapidly	Cool away from drafts
Texture is dense or heavy	Too little leavening	Adjust formula
	Too much fat or liquid	Cream fat or whip eggs properly
	Oven too cool	Adjust oven temperature
Texture is coarse with an open grain	Overmixing	Alter mixing method
	Oven too cool	Adjust oven temperature
Poor flavor	Poor ingredients	Check flavor and aroma of all ingredients
	Unclean pans	Do not grease pans with rancid fats
Uneven shape	Butter not incorporated evenly	Incorporate fats completely
	Batter spread unevenly	Spread batter evenly
	Oven rack not level	Adjust oven racks
	Uneven oven temperature	Adjust oven temperature

TABLE 33.5 NUTRITIONAL VALUES OF SELECTED CAKES

Per 1/12 Portion of a 9-inch Cake, Unfrosted	Kcal	Protein (g)	Carbohydrates (g)	Total Fat (g)	Saturated Fat (g)	Sodium (mg)
Angel food	130	3	30	0	0	170
Butter cake	260	3	37	11	6	350
Chiffon, lemon	200	4	36	5	mq	200
Devil's food	260	4	35	12	3	450
Sponge (2-in. square)	80	1	11	3	1	125

The Corinne T. Netzer Encyclopedia of Food Values 1992
All cakes are prepared from a typical mix according to package directions.
mq = measurable quantity but data is unavailable

To remove the partially cooled cake from its pan, run a thin knife or spatula blade between the pan and the cake to loosen it. Place a wire rack, cake cardboard or sheet pan over the cake and invert. Then remove the pan. The cake can be left upside down to cool completely or inverted again to cool top side up. Wire racks are preferred for cooling cakes because they allow air to circulate, speeding the cooling process and preventing steam from making the cake soggy.

Angel food and chiffon cakes should be turned upside down immediately after they are removed from the oven. They are left to cool completely in their pans to prevent the cake from collapsing or shrinking. The top of the pan should not touch the countertop so that air can circulate under the inverted pan.

All cakes should be left to cool away from drafts or air currents that might cause them to collapse. Cakes should not be refrigerated to speed the cooling process, as rapid cooling can cause cracking. Prolonged refrigeration also causes cakes to dry out.

FROSTINGS

Frosting, also known as **icing**, is a sweet decorative coating used as a filling between the layers or as a coating over the top and sides of a cake. It is used to add flavor and to improve the cake's appearance. Frosting can also extend a cake's shelf life by forming a protective coating.

TABLE 33.6 FROSTINGS

Frosting	Preparation	Texture/Taste
Buttercream	Mixture of sugar and fat (usually butter); can contain egg yolks or egg whites	Rich but light; smooth, fluffy
Foam	Meringue made with hot sugar syrup	Light, fluffy; very sweet
Fudge	Cooked mixture of sugar, butter and water or milk; applied warm	Heavy, rich and candylike
Fondant	Cooked mixture of sugar and water; applied warm	Thick, opaque; sweet
Glaze	Confectioner's sugar with liquid	Thin; sweet
Royal icing	Uncooked mixture of confectioner's sugar and egg whites	Hard and brittle when dry; chalky
Ganache	Blend of melted chocolate and cream	Rich, smooth; intense chocolate flavor

There are seven general types of frosting: **buttercream**, **foam**, **fudge**, **fondant**, **glaze**, **royal icing** and **ganache**. See Table 33.6. Each type can be produced with a number of formulas and in a range of flavorings.

Because frosting is integral to the flavor and appearance of many cakes, it should be made carefully using high-quality ingredients and natural flavors and colors. A good frosting is smooth; it is never grainy or lumpy. It should complement the flavor and texture of the cake without overpowering it.

Buttercream

A buttercream is a light, smooth, fluffy mixture of sugar and fat (butter, margarine or shortening). It may also contain egg yolks for richness or whipped egg whites for lightness. A good buttercream will be sweet, but not cloying; buttery, but not greasy.

Buttercreams are popular and useful for most types of cakes and may be flavored or colored as desired. They may be stored, covered, in the refrigerator for several days but must be softened before use.

Although there are many types of buttercream and many formula variations, we discuss the three most popular styles: **simple**, **Italian** and **French**.

Simple Buttercream

Simple buttercream, sometimes known as **American-style buttercream**, is made by creaming butter and powdered sugar together until the mixture is light and smooth. Cream, eggs (whole, yolks or whites) and flavorings may be added as desired. Simple buttercream requires no cooking and is quick and easy to prepare.

If cost is a consideration, hydrogenated all-purpose shortening can be substituted for a portion of the butter, but the flavor and mouth-feel will be different. Buttercream made with shortening tends to feel greasier and heavier because shortening does not melt on the tongue like butter. It will be more stable than pure butter buttercream, however, and is useful for products that will be on display.

Procedure for Preparing Simple Buttercreams

1. Cream softened butter or shortening until the mixture is light and fluffy.
2. Beat in egg, if desired.
3. Beat in sifted powdered sugar, scraping down the sides of the bowl as needed.
4. Beat in the flavoring ingredients.

RECIPE 33.8

Simple Buttercream

Yield: 2 lb. (1 kg)

Lightly salted butter, softened	1 lb.	450 g
Egg (optional)	1	1
Powdered sugar, sifted	2 lb.	900 g
Vanilla extract	2 tsp.	10 ml

Continued

1. Using a mixer fitted with the paddle attachment, cream the butter until light and fluffy.
2. Beat in the egg if desired. Gradually add the sugar, frequently scraping down the sides of the bowl.
3. Add the vanilla and continue beating until the frosting is smooth and light.

VARIATIONS: *Light chocolate*—Dissolve 1 ounce (30 grams) sifted cocoa powder in 2 ounces (60 grams) cool water. Add to the buttercream along with the vanilla.

Lemon—Decrease the vanilla extract to 1 teaspoon (5 milliliters). Add 1 teaspoon (5 milliliters) lemon extract and the finely grated zest of one lemon.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 170, **Total fat** 6 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 25 mg, **Sodium** 70 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 28 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Vitamin A** 10%

Italian Buttercream

Italian buttercream, also known as **meringue buttercream**, is based on an Italian meringue, that is, whipped egg whites cooked with hot sugar syrup. (See Chapter 32, Pies, Pastries and Cookies.) Softened butter is then whipped into the cooled meringue, and the mixture is flavored as desired. This type of buttercream is extremely soft and light. It can be used on most types of cakes and is particularly popular for multilayered genoise and spongecakes.

PROCEDURE FOR PREPARING ITALIAN BUTTERCREAMS

1. Whip the egg whites until soft peaks form.
2. Beat granulated sugar into the egg whites and whip until firm and glossy.
3. Meanwhile, combine additional sugar with water and cook to soft ball stage (238°F/115°C).
4. With the mixer on medium speed, pour the sugar syrup into the whipped egg whites. Pour slowly and carefully to avoid splatters.
5. Continue whipping the egg-white-and-sugar mixture until completely cool.
6. Whip softened, but not melted, butter into the cooled egg-white-and-sugar mixture.
7. Add flavoring ingredients as desired.

RECIPE 33.9

ITALIAN BUTTERCREAM

Yield: 5 lb. (2.2 kg)

Egg whites	14 oz.	400 g
Granulated sugar	1 lb. 11 oz.	750 g
Lightly salted butter, softened but not melted	2 lb. 12 oz.	1250 g

1. All ingredients should be at room temperature before beginning.
2. Place the egg whites in a mixer bowl. Have 9 ounces (250 grams) of sugar nearby.

3. Place 1 pound 2 ounces (500 grams) of sugar in a heavy saucepan with enough water to moisten. Bring to a boil over high heat.
4. As the sugar syrup's temperature approaches a soft ball stage (238°F/115°C), begin whipping the egg whites. Watch the sugar closely so that the temperature does not exceed 238°F (115°C).
5. When soft peaks form in the egg whites, gradually add the 9 ounces (250 grams) of sugar to them. Reduce mixer speed to medium and continue whipping the egg whites to stiff peaks.
6. When the sugar syrup reaches soft ball stage, immediately pour it into the whites while the mixer is running. Pour the syrup in a steady stream between the side of the bowl and the beater. If the syrup hits the beater, it will splatter and cause lumps. Continue beating at medium speed until the egg whites are completely cool. At this point, the product is known as Italian meringue.
7. Gradually add the softened butter to the Italian meringue. When all the butter is incorporated, add flavoring ingredients as desired.

VARIATION: *Chocolate:* Add 1 tablespoon (15 milliliters) vanilla extract and 10 ounces (300 grams) melted and cooled bittersweet chocolate.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (36-g) serving: **Calories** 175, **Total fat** 13 g, **Saturated fat** 8 g, **Cholesterol** 34 mg, **Sodium** 140 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 16 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 10%

1. Adding the sugar syrup to the whipped egg whites.

2. Adding the softened butter to the cooled Italian meringue.

3. Finished Italian buttercream.

French Buttercream

French buttercream, also known as **mousseline buttercream**, is similar to Italian buttercream except that the hot sugar syrup is whipped into beaten egg yolks (not egg whites). Softened butter and flavorings are added when the sweetened egg yolks are fluffy and cool. An Italian meringue such as the one created in the preceding formula is sometimes folded in for additional body and lightness. French buttercream is perhaps the most difficult type of buttercream to master, but it has the richest flavor and smoothest texture. Like a meringue buttercream, mousseline buttercream may be used on almost any type of cake.

PROCEDURE FOR PREPARING FRENCH BUTTERCREAMS

1. Prepare a sugar syrup and cook to soft ball stage (238°F/115°C).
2. Beat egg yolks to a thin ribbon.

3. Slowly beat the sugar syrup into the egg yolks.
4. Continue beating until the yolks are pale, stiff and completely cool.
5. Gradually add softened butter to the cooled yolks.
6. Fold in Italian meringue.
7. Stir in flavoring ingredients.

RECIPE 33.10

FRENCH BUTTERCREAM

Yield: 2 qt. (2 lt)

Granulated sugar	1 lb. 10 oz.	800 g
Water	8 oz.	250 ml
Egg yolks	16	16
Lightly salted butter, softened but not melted	3 lb.	1500 g
Italian Meringue (Recipe 32.10)	1 qt.	1 lt

1. Combine the sugar and water in a small saucepan and bring to a boil. Continue boiling until the syrup reaches 238°F (115°C).
2. Meanwhile, beat the egg yolks in a mixer fitted with a wire whisk on low speed. When the sugar syrup reaches 238°F (115°C), pour it slowly into the egg yolks, gradually increasing the speed at which they are whipped. Continue beating at medium-high speed until the mixture is very pale, stiff and cool.
3. Gradually add the softened butter to the egg mixture, frequently scraping down the sides of the bowl.
4. Fold in the Italian meringue with a spatula. Stir in flavoring extracts as desired.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (39-g) serving: **Calories** 230, **Total fat** 20 g, **Saturated fat** 12 g, **Cholesterol** 105 mg, **Sodium** 190 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 12 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 20%

Foam Frosting

Foam frosting, sometimes known as **boiled icing**, is simply a meringue made with hot sugar syrup. Foam frosting is light and fluffy but very sweet. It may be flavored with extract, liqueur or melted chocolate.

Foam frosting is rather unstable. It should be used immediately and served the day it is prepared. Refrigeration often makes the foam weep beads of sugar. Freezing causes it to separate or melt.

An easy foam frosting can be made by following the formula for Italian Meringue (Recipe 32.10). As soon as the meringue has cooled to room temperature, it can be flavored with extracts as desired.

Fudge Frosting

A fudge frosting is a warmed mixture of sugar, butter and water or milk. It is heavy, rich and candylike. It is also stable and holds up well. A fudge frosting should be applied warm and allowed to dry on the cake or pastry. When dry, it will have a thin crust and a moist interior. A fudge frosting can be vanilla- or chocolate-based and is used on cupcakes, layer cakes and sheet cakes.

Procedure for Preparing Fudge Frostings

1. Blend sifted powdered sugar with corn syrup, beating until the sugar is dissolved and the mixture is smooth.
2. Blend in warm melted shortening and/or butter.
3. Blend in hot liquids. Add extracts or flavorings.
4. Use fudge frosting while still warm.

RECIPE 33.11

Basic Fudge Frosting

Yield: 3 lb. (1500 g)

Powdered sugar, sifted	3 lb.	1500 g
Salt	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Light corn syrup	2 oz.	60 g
Shortening, melted	4 oz.	120 g
Water, hot (140°F/60°C)	10 oz.	300 ml
Vanilla extract	2 Tbsp.	30 ml

1. Blend the sugar, salt and corn syrup. Beat until smooth.
2. Add the melted shortening and blend well.
3. Add the hot water and vanilla and blend well. If the fudge is too stiff, it may be thinned with a simple sugar syrup. Use before the icing cools.

Variation: *Cocoa fudge frosting:* Sift 4 ounces (120 grams) cocoa powder with the powdered sugar. Add 2 ounces (60 grams) melted unsalted butter with the shortening.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (33-g) serving: **Calories** 140, **Total fat** 2.5 g, **Saturated fat** 0.5 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 15 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 30 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—low fat; low saturated fat; no cholesterol; very low sodium

Cocoa fudge frosting.

Fondant

Fondant is a thick, opaque sugar paste commonly used for glazing napoleons, petit fours and other pastries as well as some cakes. It is a cooked mixture of sugar and water, with **glucose** or corn syrup added to encourage the correct type of sugar crystallization. Poured over the surface being coated, fondant quickly dries to a shiny, nonsticky coating. It is naturally pure white and can be tinted with food coloring. Fondant can also be flavored with melted chocolate.

Fondant is rather difficult to make, so it is almost always purchased prepared. To use, thin it with water or simple syrup and carefully warm to 100°F (38°C). Commercially prepared fondant will keep for several months at room temperature in an airtight container. The surface of the fondant should be coated with simple syrup, however, to prevent a crust from forming.

Glucose—*a thick, sweet syrup made from cornstarch, composed primarily of dextrose. Light corn syrup can usually be substituted for it in baked goods or candy making.*

Glaze

A glaze is a thin coating meant to be poured or dripped onto a cake or pastry. A glaze is usually too thin to apply with a knife or spatula. It is used to add moisture and flavor to cakes on which a heavy frosting would be undesirable—for example, a chiffon or angel food cake.

Flat icing is a specific type of glaze used on danish pastries and coffeecakes. It is pure white and dries to a firm gloss.

Procedure for Preparing Glazes

1. Blend sifted powdered sugar with a small amount of liquid and flavorings.
2. Use immediately.

RECIPE 33.12

Basic Sugar Glaze

Yield: 12 oz. (340 g)

Powdered sugar, sifted	9 1/2 oz.	270 g
Light cream or milk	2 oz.	60 ml
Unsalted butter, melted	1 oz.	30 g
Vanilla extract	2 tsp.	10 ml

1. Stir the ingredients together in a small bowl until smooth.
2. Adjust the consistency by adding more cream or milk to thin the glaze if necessary.
3. Adjust the flavor as necessary. (Another extract, such as lemon or almond, may be used if desired.)
4. Use immediately, before the glaze begins to dry.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 110, **Total fat** 2 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 5 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 23 g, **Protein** 0 g. **Claims**—low fat; low cholesterol; no sodium

Royal Icing

Royal icing, also known as **decorator's icing**, is similar to flat icing except it is much stiffer and becomes hard and brittle when dry. It is an uncooked mixture of powdered sugar and egg whites. It may be dyed with food coloring pastes.

Royal icing is used for making decorations, particularly intricate flowers or lace patterns. Prepare royal icing in small quantities, and always keep any unused portion covered with a damp towel to prevent hardening.

Procedure for Preparing Royal Icing

1. Combine egg white and lemon juice, if used.
2. Beat in sifted powdered sugar until the correct consistency is reached.
3. Beat until very smooth and firm enough to hold a stiff peak.
4. Color as desired with paste food colorings.
5. Store covered with a damp cloth and plastic wrap.

Convenience Products

A wide selection of prepared icings, glazes and toppings are available. Often, chocolate and vanilla fudge icing bases are purchased, then flavored or colored as needed. Foam frostings can be purchased in powder form, to which you add water and then whip. Even prepared "buttercreams" are available, although they contain little or no real butter.

Prepared icings are often exceedingly sweet and overpowered by artificial flavors and chemical preservatives. These products save time but often cost more than their counterparts made from scratch. They should be used only after balancing the disadvantages against the benefits for your particular operation.

RECIPE 33.13

Royal Icing

Yield: 6 oz. (180 g)

Powdered sugar	6 oz.	180 g
Egg white, room temperature	1	1
Lemon juice	1/4 tsp.	1 ml

1. Sift the sugar and set aside.
2. Place the egg white and lemon juice in a stainless steel bowl.
3. Add 4 ounces (120 grams) of sugar and beat with an electric mixer or metal spoon until blended. The mixture should fall from a spoon in heavy globs. If it pours, it is too thin and will need the remaining 2 ounces (60 grams) of sugar.
4. Once the consistency is correct, continue beating for 3–4 minutes. The icing should be white, smooth and thick enough to hold a stiff peak. Food coloring paste can be added at this time if desired.
5. Cover the icing with a damp towel and plastic wrap to prevent it from hardening.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (34-g) serving: **Calories** 120, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 10 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 28 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Claims**—fat free; no saturated fat; no cholesterol; very low sodium

Ganache

Ganache is a blend of chocolate and cream. It can also include butter, liquor or other flavorings. Any bittersweet, semi-sweet or dark chocolate may be used; the choice depends on personal preference and cost considerations.

Depending on its consistency, ganache may be used as a filling, frosting or glaze-type coating on cakes or pastries. The ratio of chocolate to cream determines how thick the cooled ganache will be. Equal parts chocolate and cream generally are best for frostings and fillings. Increasing the percentage of chocolate produces a thicker ganache. Warm ganache can be poured over a cake or pastry and allowed to harden as a thin glaze, or the ganache can be cooled

and whipped to create a rich, smooth frosting. If it becomes too firm, ganache can be remelted over a bain marie.

Procedure for Preparing Ganache

1. Melt finely chopped chocolate with cream in a double broiler. Or bring cream just to a boil; then pour it over finely chopped chocolate and allow the cream's heat to gently melt the chocolate.
2. Whichever method is used, cool the cream and chocolate mixture over an ice bath.

Do not attempt to melt chocolate and then add cool cream. This will cause the chocolate to resolidify and lump.

1. Pouring the hot cream over the chopped chocolate.

2. Cool, firm ganache.

RECIPE 33.14

Chocolate Ganache

Yield: 2.2 lb. (1 kg)

Bittersweet chocolate	1 lb. 1 oz.	500 g
Heavy cream	1 lb. 1 oz.	500 ml
Almond or coffee liqueur	1 oz.	30 ml

1. Chop the chocolate into small pieces and place in a large metal bowl.
2. Bring the cream just to a boil, then immediately pour it over the chocolate, whisking to blend. Stir gently until all the chocolate has melted.
3. Stir in the liqueur.
4. Allow to cool, stirring frequently until the desired consistency is achieved. An ice bath may be used to speed the cooling process.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (28-g) serving: **Calories** 130, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 20 mg, **Sodium** 5 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 8 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 6%

Table 33.7 Troubleshooting Chart for Frostings

Problem	Cause	Solution
Frosting breaks or curdles	Fat added too slowly or eggs too hot when fat was added	Add shortening or sifted confectioner's sugar
Frosting is lumpy	Confectioner's sugar not sifted	Sift dry ingredients
	Ingredients not blended	Use softened fat
	Sugar syrup lumps in frosting	Add sugar syrups carefully
Frosting is gritty	Granulated sugar not dissolved	Cook sugar syrups properly; cook fudge frostings as directed
Frosting is too stiff	Not enough liquid	Adjust formula; add small amount of water or milk to thin frosting
	Too cold	Bring frosting to room temperature
Frosting will not adhere to cake	Cake too hot	Cool cake completely
	Frosting too thin	Adjust frosting formula

Chocolate Truffles

Ganache, a sublime mixture of pure chocolate and cream, is the foundation of one of the world's most sophisticated candies: the chocolate truffle. Truffles take their name from the rough, black, highly prized food they resemble, but there the similarity ends. Chocolate truffles should have a rich, creamy ganache center with a well-balanced, refined flavor.

Chocolate truffles are surprisingly simple to make. Fine chocolate is melted with cream and perhaps butter. The mixture is flavored as desired with liqueur, extracts, fruit or coffee and allowed to harden. Once firm, the ganache is scooped into balls and rolled in cocoa powder, confectioner's sugar or melted chocolate. The classic French truffle is a small, irregularly shaped ball of bittersweet chocolate dusted with cocoa powder. Americans, however, seem to prefer larger candies, coated with melted chocolate and decorated with nuts or additional chocolate. The following recipe can be prepared in either style.

Shaping chocolate truffles.

RECIPE 33.15

Dark Chocolate Truffles

Yield: 150 medium-sized Truffles

Dark chocolate	2 lb.	1 kg
Unsalted butter	1 lb.	500 g
Heavy cream	1 pt.	500 ml
Brandy	4 oz.	120 ml

1. Chop the chocolate and butter into small pieces and place in a large metal bowl.
2. Bring the cream to a boil. Immediately pour the hot cream over the chocolate and butter. Stir until the chocolate and butter are completely melted.
3. Stir in the brandy. Pour the ganache into a flat, shallow, ungreased pan and chill until firm.
4. Shape the ganache into rough balls using a melon ball cutter. Immediately drop each ball into a pan of sifted cocoa powder or confectioner's sugar, rolling it around to coat completely.
5. Truffles can be stored in the refrigerator for 7–10 days. Allow them to soften slightly at room temperature before serving.

Approximate values per truffle: **Calories** 70, **Total fat** 6 g, **Saturated fat** 3.5 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 4 g, **Protein** 0 g

ADVANCED PÂTISSERIE

Sugar can be used to create a number of doughs, pastes and syrups used for artistic and decorative work. Mastering even some of these products takes years of experience and practice. Although formulas and preparation methods are beyond the scope of this book, it is important that all pastry cooks be able to recognize and identify certain decorative sugar products.

Blown sugar—a boiled mixture of sucrose, glucose and tartaric acid that is colored and shaped (in a manner very similar to glass blowing) using an air pump. It is used for making pieces of fruit and containers such as bowls and vases.

Gum paste—a smooth dough made of sugar and gelatin; it dries relatively slowly, becoming very firm and hard. The paste can be colored and rolled out, cut and shaped, or molded. It is used for making flowers, leaves and small figures.

Marzipan—a mixture of almond paste and sugar that may be colored and used like modeling clay for sculpting small fruits, flowers or other objects. Marzipan may also be rolled out and cut into various shapes or used to cover cakes or pastries.

Nougat—a candy made of caramelized sugar and almonds that can be molded into shapes or containers. Unlike other sugar decorations, nougat remains deliciously edible.

Pastillage—a paste made with sugar, cornstarch and gelatin. It can be rolled into sheets, then cut into shapes. It dries in a very firm and sturdy form, like plaster. Naturally pure white, it can be painted with cocoa or food colorings. Pastillage is used for showpieces and large decorative items.

Pulled sugar—a doughlike mixture of sucrose, glucose and tartaric acid that is colored, then shaped by hand. Pulled sugar is used for making birds, flowers, leaves, bows and other items.

Spun sugar—made by flicking dark caramelized sugar rapidly over a dowel to create long, fine, hairlike threads. Mounds or wreaths of these threads are used to decorate ice cream desserts, croquembouche and gâteaux.

ASSEMBLING AND DECORATING CAKES

Much of a cake's initial appeal lies in its appearance. This is true whether the finished cake is a simple sheet cake topped with swirls of buttercream or an elaborate wedding cake with intricate garlands and bouquets of royal icing roses. Any cake assembled and decorated with care and attention to detail is preferable to a carelessly assembled or garishly overdecorated one.

Thousands of decorating styles or designs are possible, of course. This section describes a few simple options that can be prepared by beginning pastry cooks using a minimum of specialized tools. In planning your cake's design, consider the flavor, texture and color of the components used as well as the number of guests or portions that must be served. Consider who will be cutting and eating the cake and how long the dessert must stand before service.

Assembling Cakes

Before a cake can be decorated, it must be assembled and coated with frosting. Most cakes can be assembled in a variety of shapes and sizes: sheet cakes, round layer cakes and rectangular layer cakes are the most common. When assembling any cake, the goal is to fill and stack the cake layers evenly and to apply an even coating of frosting that is smooth and free of crumbs.

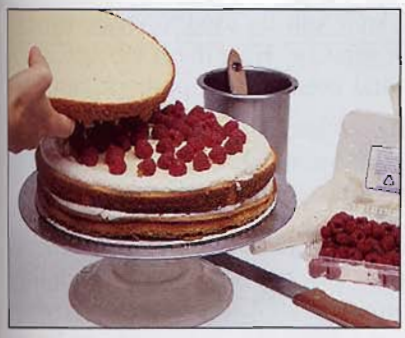
Most of the photographs used in this section show the assembly and decoration of a wedding cake. The finished cake is shown in the photograph that introduces this chapter. The complete formula is found in Recipe 33.16.

PROCEDURE FOR ASSEMBLING CAKES

1. Begin by leveling the cake and trimming the edges as needed with a serrated knife.

2. Split the cake horizontally into thin layers if desired. Use cake boards to support each layer as it is removed. Brush away any loose crumbs with a dry pastry brush or your hand.

3. Position the bottom layer on a cake board. Place the layer on a revolving cake stand, if available. Pipe a border of buttercream around the cake, then top the layer with a mound of filling. Use a cake spatula to spread it evenly.



4. Position the next cake layer over the filling and continue layering and filling the cake as desired.

5. Place a mound of frosting in the center of the cake top. Push it to the edge of the cake with a cake spatula. Do not drag the frosting back and forth or lift the spatula off the frosting, as these actions tend to pick up crumbs.

6. Cover the sides with excess frosting from the top, adding more as necessary. Hold the spatula upright against the side of the cake and, pressing gently, turn the cake stand slowly. This smooths and evens the sides. When the sides and top are smooth, the cake is ready to be decorated as desired.

Simple Decorating Techniques

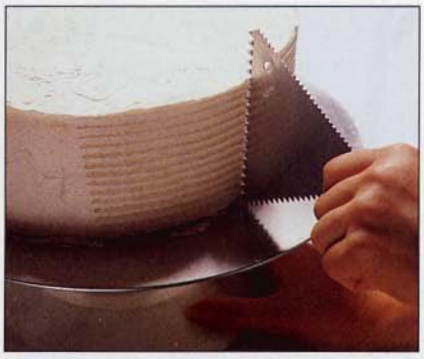
An extremely simple yet effective way to decorate a frosted cake is with a garnish of chopped nuts, fruit, toasted coconut, shaved chocolate or other foods arranged in patterns or sprinkled over the cake. Be sure to use a garnish that complements the cake and frosting flavors or reflects one of the cake's ingredients. For example, finely chopped pecans would be an appropriate garnish for a carrot cake that contains pecans; shaved chocolate would not.

Side masking is the technique of coating only the sides of a cake with garnish. The top may be left plain or decorated with icing designs or a message. Be sure to apply the garnish while the frosting is still damp enough for it to adhere.

Stencils can be used to apply patterns of finely chopped garnishes, confectioner's sugar or cocoa powder to the top of a cake. A design can be cut from cardboard, or thin plastic forms can be purchased. Even simple strips of parchment paper can be used to create an attractive pattern. If using a stencil on a frosted cake, allow the frosting to set somewhat before laying the stencil on top of it. After the garnishes have been sprinkled over the stencil, carefully lift the stencil to avoid spilling the excess garnish and messing the pattern.

Side masking—coating the sides of a carrot cake with chopped pecans

Stencils—creating a design with confectioner's sugar and strips of parchment paper.



Cake comb—creating a pattern on a frosted cake.

A **cake** or **baker's comb** or serrated knife can be used to create patterns on a cake iced with buttercream, fudge or ganache. Hold the comb against the frosted cake and rotate the cake slowly and evenly to create horizontal lines in the icing.

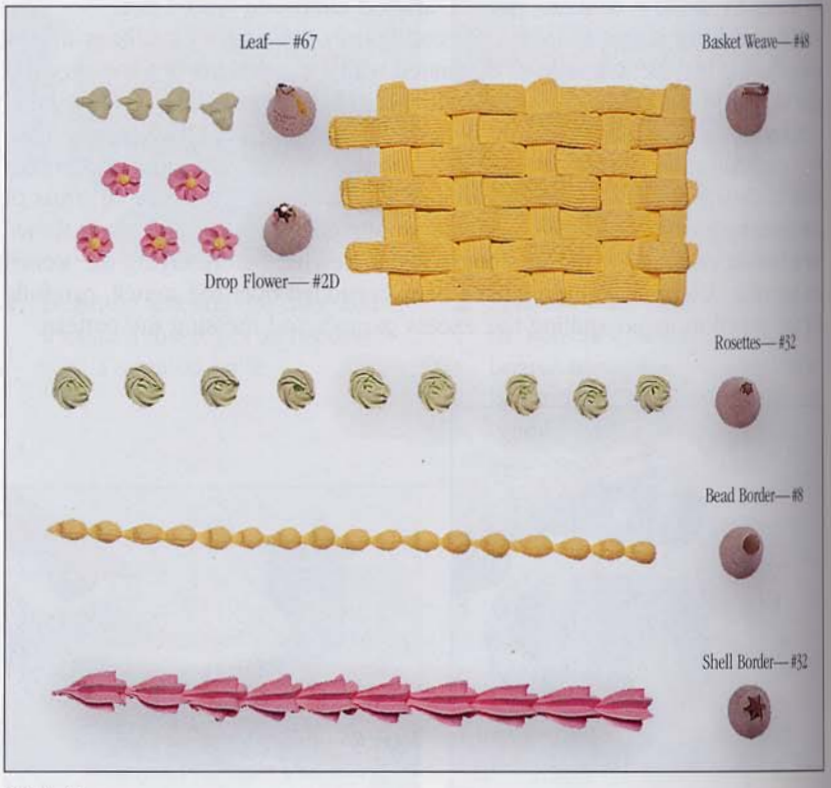
Piping Techniques

More elaborate and difficult decorations can be produced with the aid of a piping bag and an assortment of pastry tips. With these tools, frosting or royal icing can be used to create borders, flowers and messages. Before applying any decoration, however, plan a design or pattern that is appropriate for the size and shape of the item being decorated.

When used properly, colored frostings can bring cake decorations to life. Buttercream, royal icing and fondant are easily tinted using paste food coloring. Liquid food colorings are not recommended as they may thin the frosting too much. Always add coloring gradually with a toothpick. Frosting colors tend to darken as they sit. It is easy to add more later to darken the color if necessary, but it is difficult to lighten the color if too much is added.

Piping bags made from plastic, nylon or plastic-coated canvas are available in a range of sizes. A disposable piping cone can also be made from parchment paper.

Most decorations and designs are made by using a piping bag fitted with a pastry tip. Pastry tips are available with dozens of different openings and are referred to by standardized numbers. Some commonly used tips are shown here. You can produce a variety of borders and designs by changing the pressure, the angle of the bag and the distance between the tip and the cake surface.

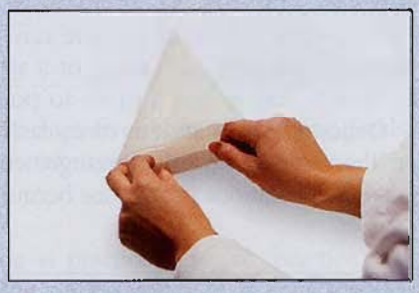


Tip Patterns

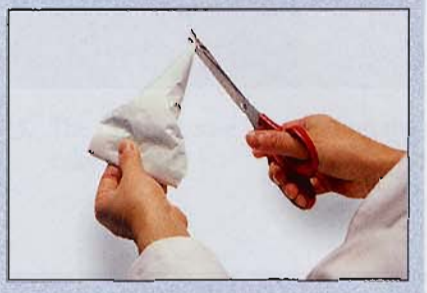
MAKING A PARCHMENT-PAPER CONE

A disposable piping bag or cone is easily made from parchment paper. Begin with an equilateral triangle of uncreased paper. Shape it into a cone as shown, folding the top edges together to hold the shape. The point of the cone can be cut as desired. Paper cones are especially useful for writing messages or piping melted chocolate.

1. Wrapping opposite ends of the parchment triangle.



2. Folding the ends together to seal.



3. Cutting the tip of the filled parchment cone.

PROCEDURE FOR FILLING A PIPING BAG

1. Select the proper size piping bag for your task. Insert the desired tip.

2. Fold down the top of the bag, then fill approximately half full with frosting. Do not overfill the bag.

3. Be sure to close the open end tightly before you start piping. Hold the bag firmly in your palm and squeeze from the top. Do not squeeze from the bottom or you may force the contents out the wrong end. Use the fingers of your other hand to guide the bag as you work.

Piped-On Decorating Techniques

Instead of leaving the sides of a frosted cake smooth or coating them with chopped nuts or crumbs, you can pipe on frosting designs and patterns. A simple but elegant design is the basket weave, shown here.

Normally, a border pattern will be piped around the base of the cake and along the top edge. Borders should be piped on after nuts or any other garnishes are applied.

Each slice or serving of cake can be marked with its own decoration. For example, a rosette of frosting or a whole nut or piece of fruit could be used as shown. This makes it easier to portion the cake evenly.

Delicate flowers such as roses can be piped, allowed to harden, then placed on the cake in attractive arrangements. Royal icing is particularly useful for making decorations in advance because it dries very hard and lasts indefinitely.

Applying a basket weave pattern to the sides of the wedding cake.

Applying a shell border to the wedding cake.

Placing royal icing flowers onto cake portions.

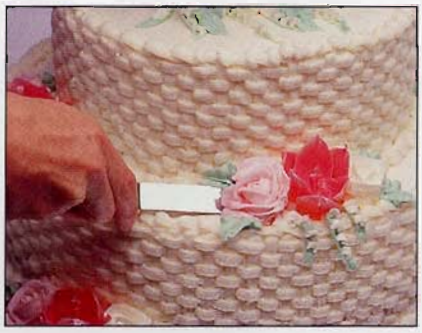
Procedure for Piping Buttercream Roses

1. Using a #104 tip, pipe a mound of icing onto a rose nail.

2. Pipe a curve of icing around the mound to create the center of the rose.

3. Pipe three overlapping petals around the center.

4. Pipe five more overlapping petals around the first three petals.



5. The finished rose is placed on the cake.

The key to success with a piping bag is practice, practice, practice. Use plain all-purpose shortening piped onto parchment paper to practice and experiment with piping techniques. Once you are comfortable using a piping bag, you can apply these newfound skills directly to cakes and pastries.

Storing Cakes

Unfrosted cake layers or sheets can be stored at room temperature for two or three days if well covered. Frosted or filled cakes are usually refrigerated to prevent spoilage. Simple buttercreams or sugar glazes, however, can be left at room temperature for one or two days. Any cake containing custard filling or whipped cream must be refrigerated. Cakes made with foam-type frosting should be eaten the day they are prepared.

Cakes can usually be frozen with great success; this makes them ideal for baking in advance. Unfrosted layers or sheets should be well covered with plastic wrap and frozen at 0°F (-18°C) or lower. High-fat cakes will keep for up to six months; egg foam cakes begin to deteriorate after two or three months.

Frostings and fillings do not freeze particularly well, often losing flavor or changing texture when frozen. Buttercreams made with egg whites or sugar syrups tend to develop crystals and graininess. Foam frostings weep, expelling beads of sugar and becoming sticky. Fondant will absorb moisture and separate from the cake. If you must freeze a filled or frosted cake, it is best to freeze it unwrapped first, until the frosting is firm. The cake can then be covered with plastic wrap without damaging the frosting design. Leave the cake wrapped until completely thawed. It is best to thaw cakes in the refrigerator if time permits. Do not refreeze thawed cakes.

Conclusion

The ability to produce good cakes and frostings depends on using the right balance of high-quality ingredients and combining them with the proper techniques. When preparing cakes and frostings, always combine flavors and textures with care; apply frostings, garnishes and decorations with care as well. Avoid overly rich, cloyingly sweet or garishly decorated products. With study and practice, you can learn the mixing techniques and assembly skills necessary for producing good cakes. With additional practice, you will develop the decorating and garnishing skills of a fine pastry chef.

QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

1. Cake ingredients can be classified by function into six categories. List them and give an example of each.
2. What is the primary leavening agent in cakes made with the foaming method? How is this similar to or different from cakes made with the creaming method?
3. What is the difference between a spongecake and a classic genoise?
4. Describe the procedures for making three types of frosting or icing as discussed in this chapter.
5. List the steps employed in assembling and frosting a three-layer cake.

ADDITIONAL CAKE AND FROSTING FORMULAS

RECIPE 33.16

VANILLA RASPBERRY LAYER CAKE WITH WHITE CHOCOLATE BUTTERCREAM

NOTE: This dish appears in the Chapter Opening photograph.

HYATT REGENCY SCOTTSDALE AT GAINEY RANCH, SCOTTSDALE, AZ
Former Executive Pastry Chef Judy Doherty

VANILLA CAKES

Yield: 1 8-in. (20-cm), 1 10-in. (25-cm) and 1 14-in. (35-cm) tier for Wedding Cake

Method: Two-Stage

Cake flour	1 lb. 14 oz.	850 g
Granulated sugar	2 lb. 8 oz.	1130 g
Baking powder	2 1/2 oz.	70 g
Eggs	28	28
Salt	1 oz.	28 g
Fluid Flex	1 lb. 4 oz.	570 g
Milk	1 pt.	450 ml

1. Prepare the pans by spraying with pan release and lining with parchment paper.
2. Combine the flour, sugar, baking powder, eggs and salt in a large mixer bowl. Whip on high speed for 8 minutes.
3. Add Fluid Flex (an emulsifier for spongecakes) and milk. Mix for 8 more minutes at medium speed.
4. Divide the batter between one 8-inch (20-centimeter), one 10-inch (25-centimeter) and one 14-inch (35-centimeter) cake pan. Fill each pan halfway.
5. Bake at 350°F (180°C) for 35–60 minutes, depending upon tier size. The cake is done when it springs back when lightly touched in the center. Allow to cool, then remove from the pans and freeze.

Approximate values per 6-oz. (181-g) serving: **Calories** 600, **Total fat** 28 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 240 mg, **Sodium** 520 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 75 g, **Protein** 10 g, **Vitamin A** 15%, **Calcium** 20%

RASPBERRY SYRUP

Water	1 pt.	450 ml
Granulated sugar	1 lb.	450 g
Raspberry liqueur	2 oz.	60 ml

1. Bring the sugar and water to a boil, then cool to room temperature. Add the raspberry liqueur.

DIPLOMAT CREAM FILLING

Pastry cream, chilled	1 gal.	4 lt
Raspberry liqueur	4 oz.	120 g
Gelatin	1 1/2 oz.	42 g
Water	6 oz.	170 ml
Whipped cream	1 qt.	1 lt

1. Place the pastry cream in a large mixer bowl and whip on high speed until smooth. Add the raspberry liqueur.
2. Soften the gelatin in the water, then place over a low flame and heat to dissolve.
3. Add 1 pint (450 milliliters) of the raspberry-flavored pastry cream to the gelatin. Place over a low flame and whip by hand until smooth and the gelatin is incorporated. Add this mixture to the rest of the pastry cream.
4. Fold in the whipped cream.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 40, **Total fat** 2 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 30 mg, **Sodium** 10 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 5 g, **Protein** 1 g

WHITE CHOCOLATE BUTTERCREAM

Granulated sugar	5 lb. 8 oz.	2500 g
Water	1 lb. 6 oz.	625 ml
Egg whites	1 lb. 12 oz.	800 g
Unsalted butter, softened	7 lb.	3150 g
White crème de cacao	9 oz.	260 ml
White chocolate, melted	1 lb. 8 oz.	680 g

1. Cook the sugar and water to 242°F (117°C), then pour into a measuring container with a handle for easier pouring.
2. Start whipping the egg whites when the sugar reaches 235°F (113°C).
3. When the whites are whipped to firm peaks, add the hot sugar syrup slowly while continuing to whip at low speed. Whip until completely cool.
4. Add the butter and whip until smooth.
5. Add the crème de cacao to the white chocolate. Whip until smooth, then add the chocolate to the buttercream.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 140, **Total fat** 11 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 25 mg, **Sodium** 10 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 10 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 8%

ASSEMBLY: Each cake tier is sliced horizontally into three layers. The layers are brushed with the raspberry syrup, then filled with diplomat cream and fresh raspberries. The top and sides of each tier are coated with the white chocolate buttercream; the sides are coated with a basketweave design; and the tiers are decorated with pulled sugar and royal icing roses. The assembly is illustrated with the photographs appearing throughout this chapter.

RECIPE 33.17

CARROT CAKE WITH CREAM CHEESE FROSTING

Yield: 4 Sheet Cakes or 12 10-in. (25-cm) Rounds Method: Creaming

Vegetable oil	3 lb. 8 oz.	1750 g
Granulated sugar	3 lb. 11 oz.	1850 g
Eggs	1 lb. 12 oz.	875 g
Carrots, shredded	5 lb.	2500 g
Crushed pineapple, with juice	3 lb. 4 oz.	1625 g
Baking soda	1 1/2 oz.	45 g
Cinnamon, ground	2 oz.	60 g
Pumpkin pie spice	1 1/2 oz.	45 g
Salt	1 1/2 oz.	45 g
Baking powder	1 1/4 oz.	40 g
Cake flour	4 lb. 10 oz.	2300 g
Coconut, shredded	1 lb.	500 g
Walnut pieces	1 lb.	500 g

1. Blend the oil and sugar in a large mixer bowl fitted with the paddle attachment. Add the eggs, beating to incorporate.
2. Blend in the carrots and pineapple.
3. Sift the dry ingredients together, then add them to the batter. Stir in the coconut and walnuts.
4. Divide the batter into greased and floured pans.
5. Bake at 340°F (170°C) until springy to the touch and a cake tester comes out almost clean.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 390, **Total fat** 22 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 40 mg, **Sodium** 490 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 44 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin A** 100%

CREAM CHEESE FROSTING

Unsalted butter, softened	12 oz.	350 g
Cream cheese, softened	3 lb.	1500 g
Margarine	12 oz.	350 g
Vanilla extract	1 oz.	30 ml
Powdered sugar, sifted	6 lb.	3000 g

1. Cream the butter and cream cheese until smooth. Add the margarine and beat well.
2. Beat in the vanilla extract. Slowly add the sugar, scraping down the bowl frequently. Beat until smooth.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 130, **Total fat** 6 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 45 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 17 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 6%

RECIPE 33.18

MARBLE SHEET CAKE WITH FUDGE FROSTING

Yield: 1 18 in. × 24 in. (45 cm × 60 cm) Sheet Cake Method: Creaming

Cake flour, sifted	1 lb. 11 oz.	1300 g
Baking powder	2 1/2 Tbsp.	35 ml

Salt	1 1/2 tsp.	7 ml
Unsalted butter	12 oz.	360 g
Granulated sugar	1 lb. 11 oz.	1300 g
Milk	24 oz.	720 ml
Vanilla extract	1 tsp.	5 ml
Dark chocolate, melted	4 1/2 oz.	135 g
Baking soda	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Coffee extract	2 tsp.	10 ml
Egg whites	12	12
Cocoa Fudge Frosting (Recipe 33.11)	as needed	as needed

1. Sift the flour, baking powder and salt together; set aside.
2. Cream the butter and sugar until light and fluffy.
3. Combine the milk and vanilla.
4. Add the dry ingredients to the creamed butter alternately with the milk. Stir the batter only until smooth.
5. Separate the batter into two equal portions. Add the melted chocolate, baking soda and coffee extract to one portion.
6. Whip the egg whites until stiff but not dry. Fold half of the whites into the vanilla batter and half into the chocolate batter.
7. Spoon the batter onto a greased sheet pan, alternating the two colors. Pull a paring knife through the batter to swirl the colors together.
8. Bake at 350°F (180°C) until a tester comes out clean, approximately 25 minutes.
9. Allow the cake to cool, then cover the top with Cocoa Fudge Frosting.

Approximate values per 5-oz. (157-g) serving: **Calories** 480, **Total fat** 17 g, **Saturated fat** 11 g, **Cholesterol** 40 mg, **Sodium** 250 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 75 g, **Protein** 7 g, **Vitamin A** 15%, **Calcium** 15%

RECIPE 33.19

Fresh Coconut Cake

Yield: 1 9-in. (22-cm) Cake Method: Creaming

All-purpose shortening	8 oz.	225 g
Granulated sugar	1 lb.	450 g
Egg yolks	4	4
All-purpose flour	14 oz.	420 g
Salt	1 tsp.	5 ml
Baking powder	4 tsp.	20 ml
Milk	10 oz.	300 ml
Vanilla extract	1 tsp.	5 ml
Egg whites	7 oz.	210 g
Coconut milk	4 oz.	120 ml
Frosting (recipe follows)		
Fresh coconut, grated	8 oz.	225 g

1. Cream the shortening and sugar together until light and fluffy. Add the egg yolks one at a time, blending well.
2. Sift the dry ingredients together, then add to the creamed mixture alternately with the milk.

Continued

3. Stir in the vanilla.
4. Whip the egg whites until firm peaks form. Fold the whites into the batter. Portion into two 9-inch (22-centimeter) cake pans that have been greased and lined with parchment paper.
5. Bake at 350°F (180°C) until a cake tester comes out clean, approximately 25–30 minutes.
6. Remove the cakes from the oven and prick the top with a toothpick. Brush the coconut milk over the cakes, allowing it to be absorbed completely. Cool on a rack, then remove from the pans.
7. Top one cake layer with frosting, then sprinkle on 2 ounces (60 grams) of the grated coconut. Top with the second cake layer. Coat the top and sides with the remaining frosting, then sprinkle on the remaining coconut.

Approximate values per 1/10-cake serving: **Calories** 620, **Total fat** 29 g, **Saturated fat** 11 g, **Cholesterol** 90 mg, **Sodium** 290 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 79 g, **Protein** 9 g, **Calcium** 15%, **Iron** 15%

FROSTING

Granulated sugar	1 lb.	450 g
Light corn syrup	11 oz.	330 g
Egg whites	5	5
Salt	pinch	pinch

1. Bring the sugar and corn syrup to a boil. Cook to 238°F (115°C).
2. Meanwhile, beat the egg whites with the salt until stiff. With the mixer on second speed, add the hot sugar syrup to the whites in a slow, steady stream. Continue whipping until the frosting is cool.

RECIPE 33.20

SACHER TORTE

Yield: 2 9-in. (22-cm) Cakes

All-purpose flour	10 oz.	280 g
Cocoa powder, alkalized	3 oz.	80 g
Unsalted butter	12 1/2 oz.	360 g
Granulated sugar	18 oz.	520 g
Eggs, separated	14	14
Hazelnuts, toasted and ground	3 oz.	80 g
Apricot jam	18 oz.	520 g
Apricot glaze	as needed	as needed
Chocolate Glaze (Recipe 32.29)	as needed	as needed

1. Grease two 9-inch (22-centimeter) springform pans lightly with butter and line with parchment paper.
2. Sift the flour and cocoa powder together twice; set aside.
3. Cream the butter and 7 ounces (200 grams) of the sugar together until light and fluffy. Gradually add the egg yolks and beat well.
4. Fold in the sifted flour and cocoa and the hazelnuts by hand.
5. Whip the egg whites to soft peaks, then gradually add the remaining sugar and continue whipping until stiff, glossy peaks form.
6. Lighten the batter with about one fourth of the egg whites, then fold in the remaining whites.

7. Pour the batter into the prepared pans and bake at 350°F (180°C) until the cakes are set, approximately 35–45 minutes.
8. Cool the cakes for 5 minutes before removing from the pans.
9. Cool completely, then cut each cake horizontally into three layers. Spread apricot jam on each layer and restack them, creating two three-layer cakes.
10. Heat the apricot glaze until spreadable. Pour it over the top and sides of each cake.
11. Allow the apricot glaze to cool completely, then pour the chocolate glaze over the top and sides of each cake to create a smooth, glossy coating.

Approximate values per 1/10-cake serving: **Calories** 450, **Total fat** 21 g, **Saturated fat** 10 g, **Cholesterol** 185 mg, **Sodium** 60 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 56 g, **Protein** 7 g, **Vitamin A** 20%

RECIPE 33.21

Devil's Food Cake

Yield: 5 Sheet Pans or 30 8-in. (20-cm) Rounds — Method: High-Ratio

Cake flour	5 lb.	2500 g
Granulated sugar	6 lb.	3000 g
Emulsified shortening	3 lb.	1500 g
Cocoa powder	1 lb.	500 g
Salt	2 1/2 oz.	75 g
Baking powder	3 oz.	90 g
Baking soda	1 1/2 oz.	45 g
Nonfat dry milk powder	9 1/2 oz.	270 g
Vanilla extract	1 1/2 oz.	45 ml
Corn syrup	1 lb.	500 g
Water, cold	2 qt. 8 oz.	2.25 lt
Eggs	4 lb.	2000 g

1. Mix the cake flour, sugar and emulsified shortening in a large mixer bowl on low speed for 5 minutes.
2. Add the cocoa powder, salt, baking powder, baking soda, milk powder, vanilla, corn syrup and 1 quart (1 liter) cold water. Blend well, then scrape down the bowl.
3. Combine the eggs with the remaining 1 quart 8 ounces (1250 milliliters) of cold water and add to the batter in three equal parts, blending well and scraping down the bowl after each addition.
4. After all the ingredients are incorporated, blend on low speed for 2 minutes.
5. Divide into greased and floured pans, scaling 1 gallon (4 liters) of batter for each sheet pan or 1 pound (450 grams) for each 8-inch (20-centimeter) round layer.
6. Bake at 340°F (170°C) until springy and a toothpick inserted in the center comes out clean.

Approximate values per 3.5-oz. (100-g) serving: **Calories** 400, **Total fat** 17 g, **Saturated fat** 5 g, **Cholesterol** 80 mg, **Sodium** 460 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 55 g, **Protein** 6 g, **Calcium** 10%, **Iron** 15%

RECIPE 33.22

Bûche De Noël

Yield: 10–12 Servings

Genoise, Recipe 33.3, freshly baked	one-half sheet	one-half sheet
Simple syrup	as needed	as needed
Buttercream—coffee, chocolate or vanilla	1 qt.	1 lt

1. Roll up the genoise in a spiral, starting with the long side. Wrap in parchment paper and cool.
2. Carefully unroll the cake. Brush the interior with simple syrup and coat with buttercream, leaving a 1-inch (2.5-centimeter) unfrosted rim around each edge.
3. Reroll the cake tightly and position it with the seam down on a cake cardboard.
4. Cut one end from the cake on a diagonal. Place the cut piece on top of the log, securing with toothpicks.
5. Pipe additional buttercream onto the cake log using a large star tip. Pipe the buttercream on the ends in a spiral pattern. Decorate as desired with buttercream flowers, baked meringue mushrooms or marzipan figures.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 650, **Total fat** 21 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 330 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 115 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Vitamin C** 70%, **Claims**—no cholesterol

1. Rolling the cake filled with buttercream.

2. Attaching the cut end to the log.

3. Piping on the buttercream.

RECIPE 33.23

Ladyfingers

Yield: 80 4-in. (10-cm) Cookies

Cornstarch	3 oz.	90 g
Bread flour	4 oz.	120 g
Eggs, separated	6	6
Granulated sugar	6 oz.	180 g
Lemon juice	1/2 tsp.	2 ml

1. Sift the cornstarch and bread flour together.
2. Whip the egg yolks with 2 ounces (60 grams) of sugar until thick and creamy.
3. Whip the egg whites until foamy. Gradually add 2 ounces (60 grams) of the sugar and the lemon juice. Continue whipping to soft peaks, then add the remaining sugar gradually and whip to stiff peaks.
4. Fold approximately one quarter of the egg whites into the whipped yolks to lighten them, then gently fold in the remaining whites. Fold in the flour mixture.
5. Place the batter into a pastry bag fitted with a large plain tip. Pipe 4-inch (10-centimeter) long cookies onto paper-lined sheet pans.
6. Bake immediately at 425°F (220°C) until lightly browned, approximately 8 minutes.

Approximate values per cookie: **Calories** 20, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 4 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Claims**—fat free; no saturated fat; low cholesterol; no sodium; low calorie

RECIPE 33.24

Chocolate Flourless Cake

VINCENT ON CAMELBACK, PHOENIX, AZ
Chef Vincent Guerithault

Yield: 21 Servings

Unsalted butter	1 lb.	450 g
Chocolate	27 oz.	800 g
Eggs, separated	20	20
Granulated sugar	7 oz.	200 g
Powdered sugar	as needed	as needed

1. Melt the butter and chocolate over a bain marie.
2. Whisk the yolks into the melted chocolate.
3. Whip the egg whites until shiny. Add the granulated sugar and whip until very stiff. Fold into the chocolate. Pour the batter into a full-sized hotel pan that is lined with buttered parchment.
4. Bake at 400°F (200°C) for 10 minutes. Reduce the oven temperature to 350°F (180°C) and continue baking until done, approximately 40 minutes. A cake tester will not come out clean, even though the cake will be done.
5. Invert the cake onto the back of a sheet pan. Cool completely; then dust with powdered sugar.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (115-g) serving: **Calories** 470, **Total fat** 35 g, **Saturated fat** 20 g, **Cholesterol** 250 mg, **Sodium** 65 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 32 g, **Protein** 8 g, **Vitamin A** 25%

RECIPE 33.25

CHOCOLATE TRUFFLE CAKE

FLYING FISH, SEATTLE, WA
Pastry Chef Robin Reiels

Yield: 12 Servings

Semi-sweet chocolate	8 oz.	250 g
Unsalted butter, softened	8 oz.	250 g
Granulated sugar	5 oz.	150 g
Eggs, separated	6	6
Cream of tartar	1/2 tsp.	3 ml
Ganache Filling (recipe follows)		
Ganache Coating (recipe follows)		
Whipped cream	as needed for garnish	
Fresh berries	as needed for garnish	

1. Melt the chocolate over a bain marie and set aside.
2. Cream the butter and 2 tablespoons (30 milliliters) of the sugar until light and fluffy. Slowly add the egg yolks, one at a time.
3. Scrape down the sides of the mixing bowl and add the melted chocolate.
4. In a clean, dry mixing bowl, whip the egg whites and cream of tartar to soft peaks. Gradually sprinkle in the remaining sugar and continue beating until stiff but not dry.
5. Fold one quarter of the egg whites into the chocolate mixture to lighten. Gently fold the remaining egg whites into the chocolate, then pour the batter into an ungreased 9-inch (23-centimeter) springform pan. Bake at 325°F (160°C) until a toothpick inserted in the center comes out clean, approximately 45 minutes.
6. Allow the cake to cool, then remove from the pan. When the cake is completely cool and firm to the touch, top it with the Ganache Filling, using a spatula to form the ganache into a dome shape.
7. Refrigerate until the filling is firm. Place the cake on an icing rack over a baking pan and pour the Ganache Coating over the entire cake. Refrigerate briefly to set the coating before serving.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 681, **Total fat** 61 g, **Saturated fat** 36 g, **Cholesterol** 247 mg, **Sodium** 60 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 39 g, **Protein** 8 g

GANACHE FILLING

Yield: 34 oz. (1020 g)

Cream	2 1/2 c.	600 ml
Semi-sweet chocolate, chopped	14 oz.	420 g

1. Bring the cream to a boil, remove from the heat and whisk in the chocolate. Stir until the chocolate is completely melted. Refrigerate until firm.
2. Just before use, gently whip the ganache to lighten.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 107, **Total fat** 11 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 34 mg, **Sodium** 10 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 3.5 g, **Protein** 1 g

GANACHE COATING

Yield: 17 oz.

Cream	8 oz.	225 ml
Semi-sweet chocolate, chopped	8 oz.	225 g
Unsalted butter	1 oz.	30 g

1. Bring the cream to a boil, remove from the heat and add the chocolate and butter. Stir gently to melt the chocolate and butter, but do not whisk the ganache.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (30-g) serving: **Calories** 122, **Total fat** 11 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 23 mg, **Sodium** 5 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 8 g, **Protein** 1 g

RECIPE 33.26

CONTINENTAL BROWNIES

Yield: 1 Sheet Pan Method: Egg Foam

Unsweetened chocolate	2 lb.	1000 g
Unsalted butter	2 lb.	1000 g
Eggs	20	20
Granulated sugar	5 lb. 12 oz.	2.6 kg
Vanilla extract	2 oz.	60 g
All-purpose flour	1 lb. 10 oz.	800 g
Pecan pieces	1 lb.	500 g

1. Melt the chocolate with the butter over a double boiler.
2. While the chocolate is melting, whip the eggs and sugar in a large mixer bowl fitted with the paddle attachment for 10 minutes.
3. Add the melted chocolate and vanilla to the eggs. Stir to blend completely. Stir in the flour and nuts.
4. Spread the batter evenly onto a parchment-lined and buttered sheet pan. The pan will be very full. Bake at 325°F (160°C) for 40 minutes, rotating the pan after the first 20 minutes.
5. Allow to cool completely before cutting. Dust the brownies with confectioner's sugar if desired.

Approximate values per 2-inch (5-cm) square : **Calories** 343, **Total fat** 18 g, **Saturated fat** 9 g, **Cholesterol** 70 mg, **Sodium** 16 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 41 g, **Protein** 4 g

RECIPE 33.27

APPLESAUCE BROWNIES

Yield: 1 Sheet Pan

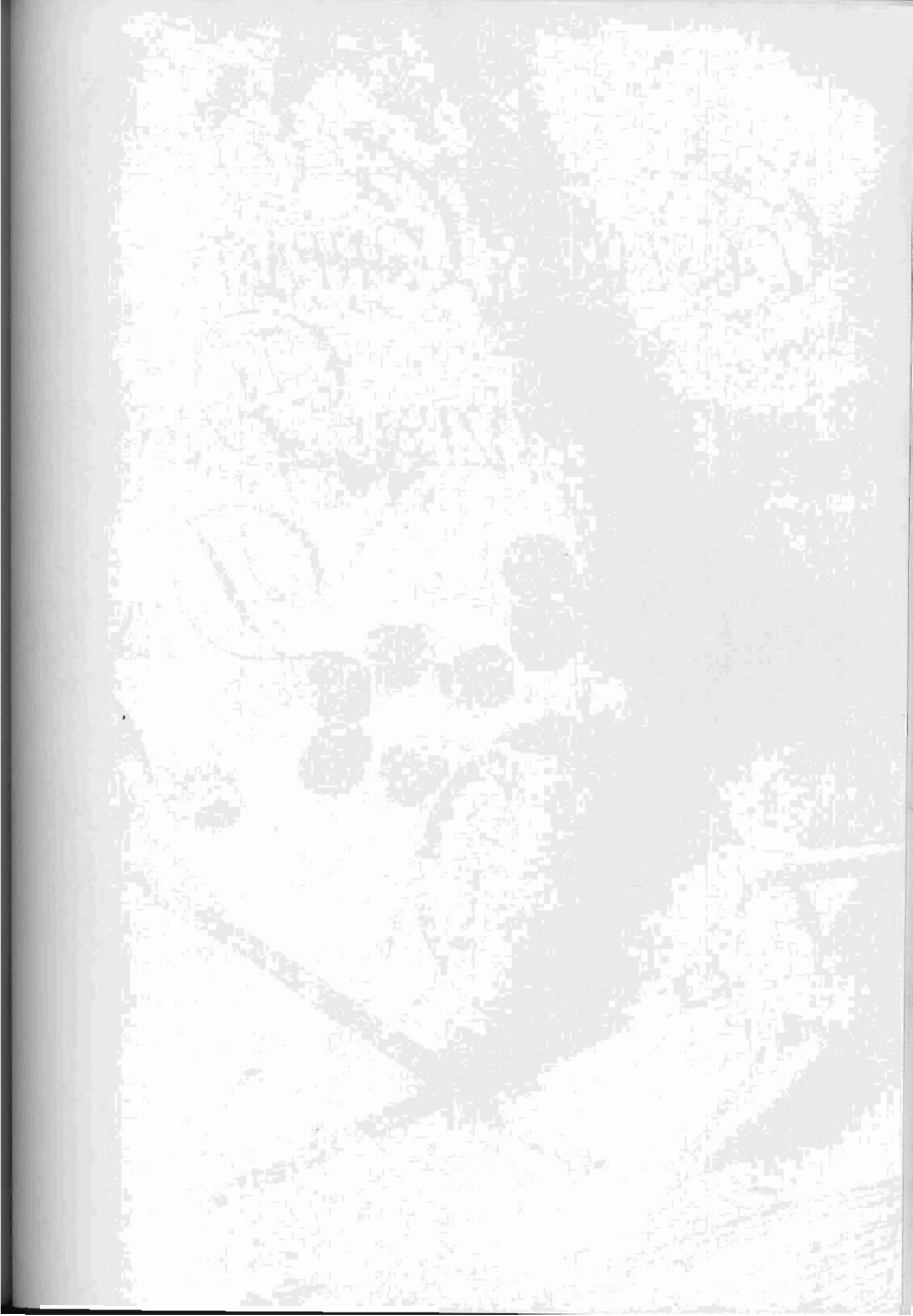
Unsweetened chocolate	4 oz.	120 g
Cake flour, sifted	1 lb.	450 g
Cocoa powder	9 oz.	270 g
Salt	2 tsp.	10 ml
Egg whites	12	12

Continued

Whole eggs	8	8
Granulated sugar	2 lb. 2 oz.	1 kg
Light corn syrup	2 lb.	900 g
Unsweetened applesauce	1 1/2 pt.	670 ml
Canola oil	7 oz.	210 ml
Vanilla extract	2 Tbsp.	30 ml

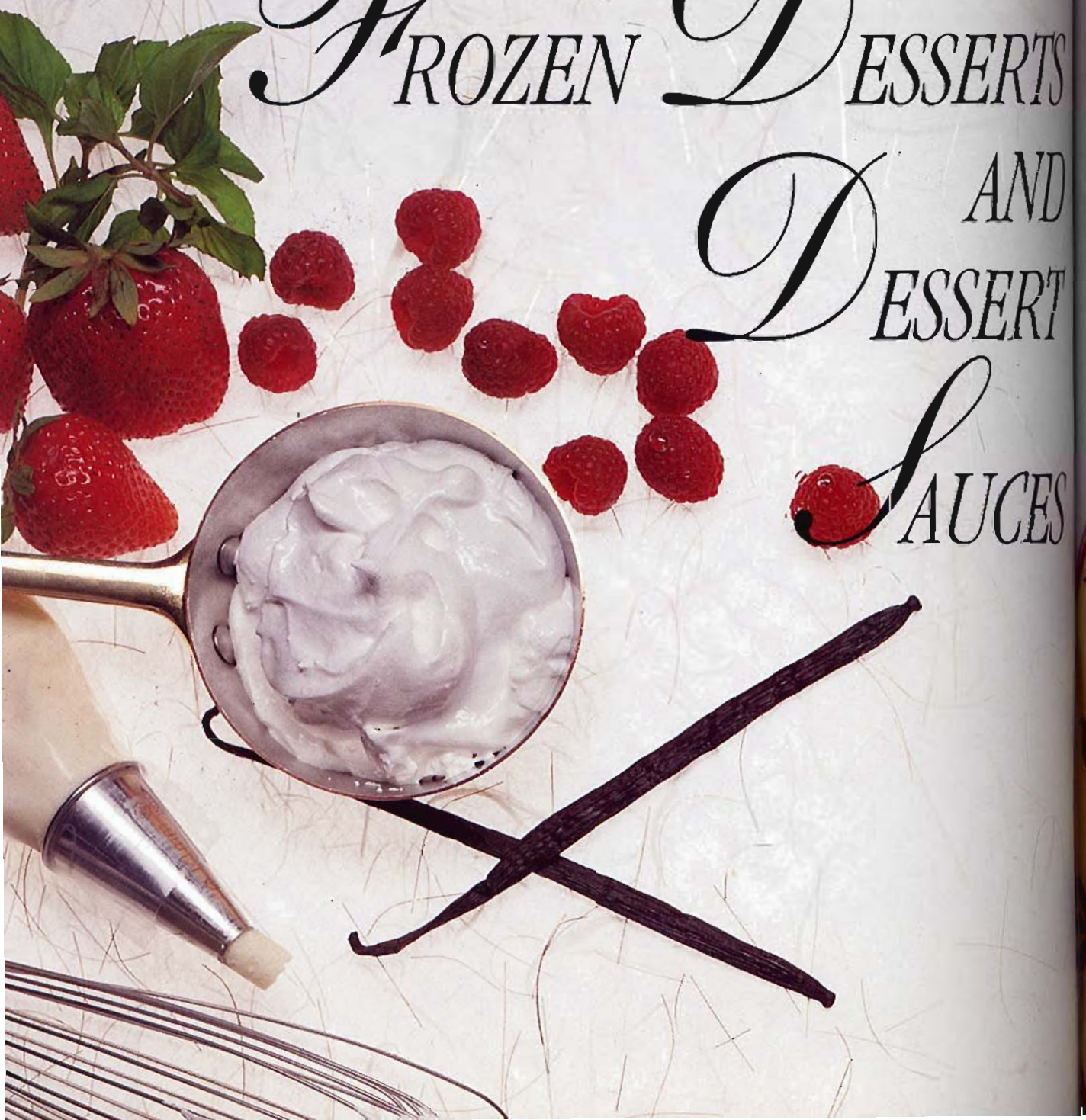
1. Coat a sheet pan with spray pan release.
2. Melt the chocolate over a bain marie and set aside.
3. Sift the flour, cocoa powder and salt together and set aside.
4. Whisk the egg whites and eggs together. Add the sugar, corn syrup, applesauce, oil and vanilla. Whisk in the chocolate.
5. Fold the flour mixture into the egg mixture. Pour into the prepared pan and bake at 350°F (180°C) until a cake tester comes out clean, approximately 25 minutes.

Approximate values per 2-inch (5-cm) square: **Calories** 150, **Total fat** 5 g, **Saturated fat** .8 g, **Cholesterol** 19 mg, **Sodium** 82 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 26 g, **Protein** 2 g



CHAPTER 34

CUSTARDS, CREAMS, FROZEN DESSERTS AND DESSERT SAUCES



Chef Jack Schoop CMC
Riveria Restaurant
Atlanta, GA

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- prepare a variety of custards and creams
- prepare a variety of ice creams, sorbets and frozen dessert items
- prepare a variety of dessert sauces
- use these products in preparing and serving other pastry and dessert items

The bakeshop is responsible for more than just quick breads, yeast breads, pies, pastries, cookies and cakes. It also produces many delightfully sweet concoctions that are not baked and often not even cooked. These include sweet custards, creams, frozen desserts and dessert sauces. Sweet custards are cooked mixtures of eggs, sugar and milk; flour or cornstarch may be added. Sweet custards can be flavored in a variety of ways and eaten hot or cold. Some are served alone as a dessert or used as a filling, topping or accompaniment for pies, pastries or cakes. Creams include whipped cream and mixtures lightened with whipped cream such as Bavarians, chiffons and mousses. Frozen desserts include ice cream and sorbet as well as the still-frozen mousses called semifreddi.

Sauces for these desserts, including fruit purées, caramel sauces and chocolate syrup, are also made in the bakeshop and are discussed in this chapter. Indeed, many of the items presented in this chapter are components, meant to be combined with pastries (Chapter 32) or cakes (Chapter 33) to form complete desserts. Guidelines for assembling desserts are given at this chapter's end.

EGGS AND SANITATION

Eggs are high-protein foods that are easily contaminated by bacteria such as salmonella that cause food-borne illnesses. Because custards cannot be heated to temperatures high enough to destroy these bacteria without first curdling the eggs, it is especially important that sanitary guidelines be followed in preparing the egg products discussed in this chapter.

1. Cleanliness is important: Wash your hands thoroughly before beginning; be sure to use clean, sanitized bowls, utensils and storage containers.
2. When breaking or separating eggs, do not allow the exterior of the eggshell to come into contact with the raw egg.
3. Heat the milk to just below a boil before combining it with the eggs. This reduces the final cooking time.
4. Chill the finished product quickly in an ice bath and refrigerate immediately.
5. Do not use your fingers to taste the custard.
6. Do not store any custard mixture, cooked or uncooked, at room temperature.

CUSTARDS

A **custard** is any liquid thickened by the coagulation of egg proteins. A custard's consistency depends on the ratio of eggs to liquid and the type of liquid used. The more eggs used, the thicker and richer the final product will be. The richer the liquid (cream versus milk, for example), the thicker the final product. Most custards, with the notable exception of pastry creams, are not thickened by starch.

A custard can be stirred or baked. A **stirred custard** tends to be soft, rich and creamy. A **baked custard**, typically prepared in a bain marie, is usually firm enough to unmold and slice.

Stirred Custards

A stirred custard is cooked on the stove top either directly in a saucepan or over a double boiler. It must be stirred throughout the cooking process to prevent curdling (overcooking).

A stirred custard can be used as a dessert sauce, incorporated into a complex dessert or eaten alone. The stirred custards most commonly used in food service operations are **vanilla custard sauce** and **pastry cream**. Other popular stirred custards are lemon curd (Recipe 25.16) and **sabayon** (Recipe 34.3).

Vanilla Custard Sauce

A custard sauce is made with egg yolks, sugar and milk or half-and-half. Usually flavored with vanilla bean or pure vanilla extract, a custard sauce can also be flavored with liquor, chocolate, ground nuts or extracts.

It is prepared on the stove top over direct heat. When making custard sauce, be extremely careful to stir the mixture continually and not allow it to

boil, or it will curdle. A properly made custard sauce should be smooth and thick enough to coat the back of a spoon. It should not contain any noticeable bits of cooked egg.

Vanilla custard sauce (Fr. *crème anglaise*) is served with cakes, pastries, fruits and soufflés and is often used for decorating dessert plates. It may be served hot or cold. It is also used as the base for many ice creams.

A very thick version of custard sauce can be made using heavy cream and additional egg yolks. Its consistency is more like a pudding than a sauce. This custard is often served over fruit in a small ramekin or other container and then topped with caramelized sugar for a dessert known as **crème brûlée** (burnt cream). See Recipe 34.16.

Pastry Cream

Pastry cream (Fr. *crème pâtissière*) is a stirred custard made with egg yolks, sugar and milk and thickened with starch (flour, cornstarch or a combination of the two). Because the starch protects the egg yolks from curdling, pastry cream can be boiled. In fact, it must be boiled to fully gelatinize the starch and eliminate the taste of raw starch.

Pastry cream can be flavored with chocolate, liquors, extracts or fruits. (Pudding is nothing more than flavored pastry cream.) It is used for filling éclairs, cream puffs, napoleons, fruit tarts and other pastries. Pastry cream thickened with cornstarch is also the filling for cream pies (see Chapter 32, Pies, Pastries and Cookies). Pastry cream is thick enough to hold its shape without making pastry doughs soggy.

Pastry cream can be rather heavy. It can be lightened by folding in whipped cream to produce a **mousseline**, or Italian meringue can be folded in to produce a **crème Chibouts**.

Procedure for Preparing Vanilla Custard Sauce and Pastry Cream

1. Place milk and/or cream in a heavy, nonreactive saucepan; add vanilla bean if desired.
2. In a mixing bowl, whisk together the egg yolks, sugar and starch (if used). Do not use an electric mixer as it incorporates too much air.
3. Bring the liquid just to a boil. **Temper** the egg mixture with approximately one third of the hot liquid.
4. Pour the tempered eggs into the remaining hot liquid and return the mixture to the heat. The stove's temperature can be as hot as you dare: The lower the temperature, the longer the custard will take to thicken; the higher the temperature, the greater the risk of curdling.
5. Cook, stirring constantly, until thickened. Custard sauce should reach a temperature of 185°F (85°C). Pastry cream should be allowed to boil for a few moments.
6. Immediately remove the cooked custard from the hot saucepan to avoid overcooking. Butter or other flavorings can be added at this time.
7. Cool over an ice bath. Store in a clean, shallow container, cover and refrigerate.

Temper—*to heat gently and gradually; refers to the process of slowly adding a hot liquid to eggs to raise their temperature without causing them to curdle.*

Procedure for Salvaging Curdled Vanilla Custard Sauce

1. Strain the sauce into a bowl. Place the bowl over an ice bath and whisk vigorously.
2. If this does not smooth out the overcooked sauce, place the sauce in a blender and process for a few moments.

RECIPE 34.1

VANILLA SAUCE

Yield: 40 oz. (1200 ml)

Half-and-half	1 qt.	1 lt
Vanilla bean, split	1	1
Egg yolks	12	12
Granulated sugar	10 oz.	300 g

1. Using a heavy nonreactive saucepan, bring the half-and-half and vanilla bean just to a boil.
2. Whisk the egg yolks and sugar together in a mixing bowl. Temper the egg mixture with approximately one third of the hot half-and-half, then return the entire mixture to the saucepan with the remaining half-and-half.
3. Cook the sauce over medium heat, stirring constantly, until it is thick enough to coat the back of a spoon. Do not allow the sauce to boil.
4. As soon as the sauce thickens, remove it from the heat and pour it through a fine mesh strainer into a clean bowl. Chill the sauce over an ice bath, then cover and keep refrigerated. The sauce should last 3–4 days.

Approximate values per 1-fl.-oz. (38-g) serving: **Calories** 80, **Total fat** 4.5 g, **Saturated fat** 2.5 g, **Cholesterol** 75 mg, **Sodium** 15 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 8 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Vitamin A** 6%

1. Mise en place for vanilla sauce.

2. Tempering the eggs.

3. The properly cooked sauce.

4. Straining the sauce into a bowl.

RECIPE 34.2

PASTRY CREAM

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Cake flour	4 oz.	120 g
Granulated sugar	12 oz.	340 g
Milk	1 qt.	1 lt
Egg yolks	12	12
Vanilla bean	1	1
Unsalted butter	2 oz.	60 g

1. Sift the flour and sugar together.
2. Whisk 8 ounces (225 milliliters) of the milk into the egg yolks. Then add the flour and sugar and whisk until completely smooth.

3. Heat the remaining milk with the vanilla bean in a heavy nonreactive saucepan. As soon as the milk comes to a boil, whisk approximately one third of it into the egg-and-flour mixture and blend completely. Pour the egg mixture into the saucepan with the rest of the milk.
4. Stir constantly until the custard thickens. As it thickens, the custard will go through a lumpy stage. Although you should not be alarmed, you should increase the speed of your stirring. Continue to stir vigorously, and it will smooth out and thicken just before coming to a boil.
5. Allow the pastry cream to boil for approximately 1 minute, stirring constantly.
6. Remove the pastry cream from the heat and immediately pour it into a clean mixing bowl.
7. Fold in the butter until melted. Do not overmix, as this will thin the custard.
8. Cover by placing plastic wrap on the surface of the custard. Chill over an ice bath. Remove the vanilla bean just before using the pastry cream.

Approximate values per 1-fl.-oz. (54-g) serving: **Calories** 110, **Total fat** 4.5 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 90 mg, **Sodium** 20 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 15 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Vitamin A** 6%

1. Stirring the pastry cream as it comes to a boil.

2. Folding butter into the cooked pastry cream.

Sabayon

Sabayon (It. *zabaglione*) is a foamy, stirred custard sauce made by whisking eggs, sugar and wine over low heat. The egg proteins coagulate, thickening the mixture, while the whisking incorporates air to make it light and fluffy. Usually a sweet wine is used; marsala and champagne are the most popular choices.

The mixture can be served warm, or it can be chilled and lightened with whipped cream or whipped egg whites. Sabayon may be served alone or as a sauce or topping with fruit or pastries such as spongecake or ladyfingers.

Procedure for Preparing Sabayon

1. Combine egg yolks, sugar and wine in the top of a double boiler.
2. Place the double boiler over low heat and whisk constantly until the sauce is foamy and thick enough to form a ribbon when the whisk is lifted.

3. Remove from the heat and serve immediately, or whisk over an ice bath until cool. If allowed to sit, the hot mixture may separate.
4. Whipped egg whites or whipped cream may be folded into the cooled sabayon.

RECIPE 34.3

CHAMPAGNE SABAYON

The thickened sabayon.

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Egg yolks	8	8
Granulated sugar	4 oz.	120 g
Salt	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Marsala wine	2 oz.	60 ml
Dry champagne	6 oz.	180 ml
Heavy cream (optional)	8 oz.	225 ml

1. Combine the egg yolks, sugar and salt in a stainless steel bowl.
2. Add the marsala and champagne to the egg mixture.
3. Place the bowl over a pan of barely simmering water. Whisk vigorously until the sauce is thick and pale yellow, approximately 10 minutes. Serve immediately.
4. To prepare a sabayon mousseline, place the bowl of sabayon over an ice bath and continue whisking until completely cold. Whip the cream to soft peaks and fold it into the cold sabayon.

Approximate values per 1-fl.-oz. (22-g) serving: **Calories** 50, **Total fat** 4 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 60 mg, **Sodium** 25 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 4 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 6%

Baked Custards

A baked custard is based on the same principle as a stirred custard: A liquid thickens by the coagulation of egg proteins. However, with a baked custard, the thickening occurs in an oven. The container of custard is usually placed in a water bath (bain marie) to protect the eggs from curdling. Even though the water bath's temperature will not exceed 212°F (100°C), care must be taken not to bake the custards for too long or at too high a temperature. An overbaked custard will be watery or curdled; a properly baked custard should be smooth-textured and firm enough to slice.

Baked custards include simple mixtures of egg yolks, sugar and milk such as **crème caramel** as well as custard mixtures in which other ingredients are suspended, for example, **cheesecake**, rice pudding, **bread pudding** and quiche.

Crème Caramel

Crème caramel, crème renversée and flan all refer to an egg custard baked over a layer of caramelized sugar and inverted for service. The caramelized sugar produces a golden-brown surface on the inverted custard and a thin caramel sauce.

RECIPE 34.4

Toffee Caramel Flan

Yield: 10 6-oz. (180-ml) Ramekins

Granulated sugar	1 lb. 4 oz.	600 g
Water	8 oz.	250 ml
Milk	24 oz.	750 ml
Heavy cream	24 oz.	750 ml
Cinnamon sticks	2	2
Vanilla bean, split	1	1
Whole eggs	8	8
Egg yolks	4	4
Brown sugar	6 oz.	180 g
Molasses	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Amaretto liqueur	2 Tbsp.	30 ml

1. Combine the granulated sugar with the water in a small heavy saucepan; bring to a boil. Cook until the sugar reaches a deep golden brown. Immediately pour about 2 tablespoons (30 milliliters) of the sugar into each of the lightly greased ramekins. Tilt each ramekin to spread the caramel evenly along the bottom. Arrange the ramekins in a 2-inch-deep hotel pan and set aside.
2. Combine the milk, cream, cinnamon sticks and vanilla bean in a large saucepan. Bring just to a boil, cover and remove from the heat. Allow this mixture to **steep** for about 30 minutes.
3. Whisk the eggs, egg yolks, brown sugar, molasses and amaretto together in a large bowl.
4. Uncover the milk mixture and return it to the stove top. Bring just to a boil. Temper the egg-and-sugar mixture with approximately one third of the hot milk. Whisk in the remaining hot milk.
5. Strain the custard through a fine mesh strainer. Pour into the caramel-lined ramekins, filling to just below the rim.
6. Pour enough warm water into the hotel pan to reach halfway up the sides of the ramekins. Bake at 325°F (160°C) for approximately 30–40 minutes. The custards should be almost set, but still slightly soft in the center.
7. Completely chill the baked custards before serving. To unmold, run a small knife around the edge of the custard, invert onto the serving plate and give the ramekin a firm sideways shake. Garnish with fresh fruit or caramelized almonds.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 670, **Total fat** 33 g, **Saturated fat** 19 g, **Cholesterol** 355 mg, **Sodium** 120 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 82 g, **Protein** 10 g, **Vitamin A** 40%, **Calcium** 20%

Steep—*to soak food in a hot liquid in order to either extract its flavor or soften its texture.*

Filling the ramekins for flans.

Cheesecake

Cheesecakes, which are almost as old as western civilization, have undergone many changes and variations since the ancient Greeks devised the first known recipe. Americans revolutionized the dessert with the development of cream cheese in 1872.

Cheesecake is a baked custard that contains a smooth cheese, usually a soft, fresh cheese such as cream, ricotta, cottage or farmer cheese. A cheesecake

may be prepared without a crust, or it may have a base or sides of short dough, cookie crumbs, ground nuts or spongecake. The filling can be dense and rich (New York style) or light and fluffy (Italian style). Fruit, nuts and flavorings may also be included in the filling. Cheesecakes are often topped with fruit or sour cream glaze. Recipes for both dense and light cheesecakes are at the end of this chapter.

Some cheesecakes are unbaked and rely on gelatin for thickening; others are frozen. These are not really custards, however, but are more similar to the chiffons or mousses discussed later.

Bread Pudding

Bread pudding is a home-style dessert in which chunks of bread, flavorings and raisins or other fruit are mixed with an egg custard and baked. The result is somewhat of a cross between a cake and a pudding. It is often served with custard sauce, ice cream, whipped cream or a whiskey-flavored butter sauce. Bread pudding is a delicious way to use stale or leftover bread or overripe fruit. A recipe for bread pudding with bourbon sauce appears at the end of this chapter.

Soufflés

A soufflé is made with a custard base that is lightened with whipped egg whites and then baked. The air in the egg whites expands to create a light, fluffy texture and tall rise. A soufflé is not as stable as a cake or other pastry item, however, and will collapse very quickly when removed from the oven.

Soufflés can be prepared in a wide variety of sweet and savory flavors. The flavorings can be incorporated into the custard, as in the following recipe. Alternatively, an unflavored pastry cream can be used as the base; the liqueur, fruit or chocolate are then added to each portion separately.

When making a soufflé, the custard base and egg whites should be at room temperature. First, the egg whites will whip to a better volume, and second, if the base is approximately the same temperature as the egg whites, the two mixtures can be more easily incorporated. The egg whites are whipped to stiff peaks with a portion of the sugar for stability. The whipped egg whites are then gently folded into the base immediately before baking.

A soufflé is baked in a straight-sided mold or individual ramekin. The finished soufflé should be puffy with a lightly browned top. It should rise well above the rim of the baking dish. A soufflé must be served immediately, before it collapses. A warm custard sauce (crème anglaise) is often served as an accompaniment to a sweet soufflé.

A frozen soufflé is not a true soufflé. Rather, it is a creamy custard mixture thickened with gelatin, lightened with whipped egg whites or whipped cream and placed in a soufflé dish wrapped with a tall paper collar. When the paper is removed, the mixture looks as if it has risen above the mold like a hot soufflé.

Procedure for Preparing Baked Soufflés

1. Butter the mold or ramekins and dust with granulated sugar. Preheat the oven to approximately 425°F (220°C).
2. Prepare the custard base. Add flavorings as desired.

3. Whip the egg whites and sugar to stiff peaks. Fold the whipped egg whites into the base.
4. Pour the mixture into the prepared mold or ramekins and bake immediately.

RECIPE 34.5

CHOCOLATE SOUFFLÉS

Yield: 8 Servings

Orange juice	1 pt.	500 ml
Eggs, separated	8	8
Granulated sugar	4 oz.	120 g
All-purpose flour	3 oz.	90 g
Bittersweet chocolate, chopped fine	8 oz.	225 g
Orange liqueur	2 oz.	60 ml
Butter, melted	as needed	as needed
Granulated sugar	as needed	as needed

1. To prepare the base, heat the orange juice to lukewarm in a heavy saucepan.
2. Whisk the egg yolks with 3 ounces (90 grams) of the sugar in a large mixing bowl. Whisk in the flour and warm orange juice, then return the mixture to the saucepan.
3. Cook over medium-low heat, stirring constantly, until the custard is thick. Do not allow it to boil. Remove from the heat.
4. Stir in the chocolate until completely melted. Stir in the liqueur. Cover this base mixture with plastic wrap to prevent a skin from forming. Hold for use at room temperature. (Unused base can be kept overnight in the refrigerator; it should be brought to room temperature before mixing with the egg whites.)
5. To prepare the soufflés, brush individual-serving-sized ramekins with melted butter and dust with granulated sugar.
6. Preheat the oven to 425°F (220°C). Place a sheet pan in the oven, onto which you will place the soufflés for baking. (This makes it easier to remove the hot soufflé cups from the oven.)
7. Whip the egg whites to stiff peaks with the remaining 1 ounce (30 grams) of sugar. Fold the whites into the chocolate base and spoon the mixture into the prepared ramekins. The ramekins should be filled to within 1/4 inch (6 millimeters) of the rim. Smooth the top of each soufflé with a spatula and bake immediately.
8. The soufflés are done when well risen, golden brown on top and the edges appear dry, approximately 12 minutes. Do not touch a soufflé to test doneness.
9. Sprinkle the soufflés with powdered sugar if desired and serve immediately.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 350, **Total fat** 15 g, **Saturated fat** 8 g, **Cholesterol** 210 mg, **Sodium** 65 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 48 g, **Protein** 10 g, **Vitamin A** 10%, **Vitamin C** 50%

1. Folding the whipped egg whites into the chocolate base.

2. Filling the ramekins.

3. The finished soufflé, ready for service.

CREAMS

Creams (Fr. *crèmes*) include light, fluffy or creamy-textured dessert items made with whipped egg whites or cream. Some, such as **Bavarian creams** and **chiffons**, are thickened with gelatin. Others, such as **mousses** and **crèmes Chantilly**, are softer and lighter. The success of all, however, depends on properly whipping and incorporating egg whites or heavy cream.

You should review the material on whipping cream found in Chapter 8, Dairy Products. Note that whipping cream has a butterfat content of 30–40%. When preparing any whipped cream, be sure that the cream, the mixing bowl and all utensils are well chilled and clean. A warm bowl can melt the butterfat, destroying the texture of the cream. Properly whipped cream should increase two to three times in volume.

Crème Chantilly

Crème Chantilly is simply heavy cream whipped to soft peaks and flavored with sugar and vanilla. It can be used for garnishing pastry or dessert items, or it can be folded into cooled custard or pastry cream and used as a component in a pastry.

When making crème Chantilly, the vanilla extract and sugar should be added after the cream begins to thicken. Either granulated or powdered sugar may be used; there are advantages and disadvantages to both. Granulated sugar assists in forming a better foam than powdered sugar, but it may cause the cream to feel gritty. Powdered sugar dissolves more quickly and completely than granulated sugar, but does nothing to assist with foaming. Whichever sugar is used, it should be added just before the whipping is complete to avoid interfering with the cream's volume and stability.

RECIPE 34.6

CRÈME CHANTILLY (CHANTILLY CREAM)

Yield: 2 to 2 1/2 qt. (2 to 2 1/2 lt)

Heavy cream, chilled	1 qt.	1 lt
Powdered sugar	3 oz.	90 g
Vanilla extract	2 tsp.	10 ml

1. Place the cream in a chilled mixing bowl. Using a balloon whisk, whisk the cream until slightly thickened.
2. Add the sugar and vanilla and continue whisking to the desired consistency. The cream should be smooth and light, not grainy. Do not overwhip.
3. Crème Chantilly may be stored in the refrigerator for several hours. If the cream begins to soften, gently rewhip as necessary.

Approximate values per 1-fl.-oz. (17-g) serving: **Calories** 60, **Total fat** 6 g, **Saturated fat** 3.5 g, **Cholesterol** 20 mg, **Sodium** 5 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 2 g, **Protein** 0 g

Properly whipped Crème Chantilly

Bavarian Cream

A Bavarian cream (Fr. *bavarois*) is prepared by first thickening custard sauce with gelatin, then folding in whipped cream. The final product is poured into a mold and chilled until firm enough to unmold and slice. Although a Bavar-

ian cream can be molded into individual servings, it is most often poured into a round mold lined with spongecake or ladyfingers to create the classic dessert known as a **charlotte**.

Bavarians can be flavored by adding chocolate, puréed fruit, chopped nuts, extracts or liquors to the custard sauce base. Layers of fruit or liquor-soaked spongecake can also be added for flavor and texture.

When thickening a dessert cream with gelatin, it is important to use the correct amount of gelatin. If not enough gelatin is used or it is not incorporated completely, the cream will not become firm enough to unmold. If too much gelatin is used, the cream will be tough and rubbery. The recipes given here use sheet gelatin, although an equal amount by weight of granulated gelatin can be substituted. Refer to Chapter 29, Principles of the Bakeshop, for information on using gelatin.

Procedure for Preparing Bavarian Creams

1. Prepare a custard sauce of the desired flavor.
2. While the custard sauce is still quite warm, stir in softened gelatin. Make sure the gelatin is completely incorporated.
3. Chill the custard until almost thickened, then fold in the whipped cream.
4. Pour the Bavarian into a mold or charlotte form. Chill until set.

RECIPE 34.7

Fresh Fruit Bavarian

Yield: 1 1-qt. (1-lt) Mold

Fresh fruit such as 2 kiwis, 1 banana
or 1/2 pint (225 ml) raspberries, blueberries or wild strawberries

Honey	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Kirsch or brandy	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Egg yolks	4	4
Granulated sugar	4 oz.	120 g
Milk	8 oz.	250 ml
Vanilla bean	1/2	1/2
Gelatin, softened	1/2 oz.	14 g
Heavy cream	12 oz.	340 ml

1. Lightly spray the bottom of a 1-quart (1-liter) mold with pan release spray. If a smooth mold is being used, line it with a sheet of plastic wrap, allowing the wrap to extend beyond the mold's edges.
2. Peel and thinly slice the fruit if necessary. Mix the honey and kirsch and pour over the fruit. Chill while preparing the Bavarian cream.
3. Prepare a vanilla custard sauce using the yolks, sugar, milk and vanilla. Remove from the saucepan.
4. Add softened gelatin to the hot custard. Chill until thick, but do not allow the custard to set.
5. Whip the cream until stiff and fold it into the chilled and thickened custard. Pour about one third of this mixture (the Bavarian cream) into the mold. Arrange one half of the fruit on top. Pour half of the remaining Bavarian cream on top of the fruit and top with the remaining fruit. Fill

Continued

Charlotte, Sweet Charlotte

The original charlotte was created during the 18th century and named for the wife of King George III of England. It consisted of an apple compote baked in a round mold lined with toast slices. A few decades later, the great French chef Carême adopted the name but altered the concept in response to a kitchen disaster. When preparing a grand banquet for King Louis XVIII, he found that his gelatin supply was insufficient for the Bavarian creams he was making, so Carême steadied the sides of his sagging desserts with ladyfingers. The result became known as charlotte russe, probably due to the reigning fad for anything Russian. A fancier version, known as charlotte royale, is made with pinwheels or layers of spongecake and jam instead of ladyfingers. The filling for either should be a classic Bavarian cream.

1. Adding gelatin to the custard base.

2. Folding in the whipped egg whites.

with the rest of the Bavarian cream. Chill until completely set, approximately 2 hours.

6. Unmold onto a serving dish. Garnish the top with additional fruit and whipped cream as desired.

NOTE: Gelatin may separate in the freezer, so quick chilling is not recommended. Products made with gelatin keep well for 1–2 days but stiffen with age.

VARIATION: *Charlotte*—Line a 1- to 1 1/2-quart (1- to 1.5-liter) charlotte mold with ladyfingers (Recipe 33.23) before filling with layers of fruit and Bavarian cream. Invert onto a serving platter when firm and garnish with whipped cream.

Approximate values per 3.5-oz. (105-g) serving: **Calories** 230, **Total fat** 15 g, **Saturated fat** 9 g, **Cholesterol** 135 mg, **Sodium** 30 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 19 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Vitamin A** 20%, **Vitamin C** 25%

Chiffon

A chiffon is similar to a Bavarian except that whipped egg whites instead of whipped cream are folded into the thickened base. The base may be a custard or a fruit mixture thickened with cornstarch. Although a chiffon may be molded like a Bavarian, it is most often used as a pie or tart filling.

PROCEDURE FOR PREPARING CHIFFONS

1. Prepare the base, which is usually a custard or a fruit mixture thickened with cornstarch.
2. Add gelatin to the warm base.
3. Fold in whipped egg whites.
4. Pour into a mold or pie shell and chill.

RECIPE 34.8

LIME CHIFFON

Yield: 1 10-in. (25-cm) Pie or 8 Servings

Granulated gelatin	1/4 oz.	7 g
Water	5 oz.	150 ml
Granulated sugar	7 oz.	210 g
Fresh lime juice	3 oz.	90 ml
Lime zest	1 Tbsp.	15 ml
Eggs, separated	4	4

1. Soften the gelatin in 1 ounce (30 grams) of the water.
2. Combine 4 ounces (120 grams) of the sugar, the remaining water, lime juice, zest and egg yolks in a bowl over a pan of simmering water.

3. Whisk the egg-and-lime mixture together vigorously until it begins to thicken. Add the softened gelatin and continue whipping until very thick and foamy.
4. Remove from the heat, cover and refrigerate until cool and as thick as whipping cream.
5. Meanwhile, whip the egg whites to soft peaks. Whip in the remaining sugar (3 ounces/90 grams) and continue whipping until stiff but not dry.
6. Fold the whipped egg whites into the egg-and-lime mixture. Pour into a prepared pie crust or serving dishes and chill for several hours, until firm.

VARIATIONS: *Lemon Chiffon*—Substitute lemon juice and lemon zest for the lime juice and zest.

Orange Chiffon—Substitute orange juice for the lime juice and for 4 ounces (120 grams) of the water. Substitute orange zest for the lime zest. Reduce the amount of sugar in the egg yolk mixture to 1 ounce (30 grams).

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 140, **Total fat** 2.5 g, **Saturated fat** 1 g, **Cholesterol** 105 mg, **Sodium** 35 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 26 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Claims**—low fat; low saturated fat; low sodium

Mousse

The term *mousse* applies to an assortment of dessert creams not easily classified elsewhere. A mousse is similar to a Bavarian or chiffon in that it is lightened with whipped cream, whipped egg whites or both. A mousse is generally softer than these other products, however, and only occasionally contains a small amount of gelatin. A mousse is generally too soft to mold.

A mousse may be served alone as a dessert or used as a filling in cakes or pastry items. Sweet mousses can be based on a custard sauce, melted chocolate or puréed fruit.

PROCEDURE FOR PREPARING MOUSSES

1. Prepare the base, which is usually a custard sauce, melted chocolate or puréed fruit.
2. If gelatin is used, it is softened first, then dissolved in the warm base.
3. Fold in whipped egg whites, if used. If the base is slightly warm when the egg whites are added, their proteins will coagulate making the mousse firmer and more stable.

TABLE 34.1 CREAM (CRÈME) COMPONENTS

For a:	Begin with a base of:	Thicken with:	Then fold in:
Bavarian	Custard	Gelatin	Whipped cream
Chiffon	Custard or starch-thickened fruit	Gelatin	Whipped egg whites
Mousse	Melted chocolate, puréed fruit or custard	Nothing or gelatin	Whipped cream, whipped egg whites or both

CONVENIENCE PRODUCTS

Commercially prepared powders and mixes can be used to make a wide assortment of puddings, custards, mousses, gelatin desserts and creams. Although these mixes are not recommended for fine dining facilities, pastry cooks in mass feeding institutions such as schools and hospitals base much of their dessert preparation on them. The advantages are speed, cost, quality control and the ability to use semi-skilled assistants. Packaged mixes are simply prepared according to the directions provided by the manufacturer, then portioned for service. The pastry cook can often improve on the final product by adding whipped cream, fruit or an appropriate garnish. As with other convenience products, quality varies from merely adequate to very good. Sample and experiment with several brands to select the best for your operation.

4. Allow the mixture to cool completely, then fold in whipped cream, if used. Note that the egg whites are folded in before any whipped cream. Although the egg whites may deflate somewhat during folding, if the cream is added first it may become overwhipped when the egg whites are added, creating a grainy or coarse product.

RECIPE 34.9

CLASSIC CHOCOLATE MOUSSE

Yield: 1 1/2 to 2 qt. (1.5 to 2 lt)

Bittersweet chocolate	15 oz.	440 g
Unsalted butter	9 oz.	280 g
Egg yolks	7	7
Egg whites	11	11
Granulated sugar	2 1/2 oz.	70 g
Heavy cream	8 oz.	250 ml

1. Melt the chocolate and butter in a double boiler over low heat. Stir until no lumps remain.
2. Allow the mixture to cool slightly, then whisk in the egg yolks one at a time.
3. Beat the egg whites until soft peaks form. Slowly beat in the sugar and continue beating until stiff peaks form. Fold the whipped egg whites into the chocolate mixture.
4. Whip the cream to soft peaks. Allow the mousse to cool, then fold in the whipped cream. Make sure no streaks of egg white or cream remain.
5. Spoon the mousse into serving bowls or chill completely and pipe into bowls or baked tartlet shells. The mousse may be used as a cake or pastry filling.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (92-g) serving: **Calories** 370, **Total fat** 31 g, **Saturated fat** 18 g, **Cholesterol** 215 mg, **Sodium** 50 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 16 g, **Protein** 7 g, **Vitamin A** 25%

FROZEN DESSERTS

Frozen desserts include **ice cream** and **gelato** and desserts assembled with ice cream such as baked Alaska, bombes and parfaits. Frozen fruit purées, known as **sorbets** and **sherbets**, are also included in this category. Still-frozen desserts, known as **semifreddi**, are made from custards or mousses that are frozen without churning.

When making any frozen mixture, remember that cold dulls flavors. Although perfect at room temperature, flavors seem weaker when the mixture is cold. Thus, it may be necessary to oversweeten or overflavor creams or custards that will be frozen for service. Although liquors and liqueurs are common flavoring ingredients, alcohol drastically lowers a liquid mixture's freezing point. Too much alcohol will prevent the mixture from freezing; thus any liqueurs or liquors must be used in moderation.

Ice Cream:
From Ancient China to Double Fudge Brownie Chocolate Chip with Cookie Dough and Toasted Almond Slivers

Despite claims to the contrary, it is impossible to identify any one country as having invented ice cream. More likely, it was invented in several places around the world at various times.

Early ancestors of today's ice creams were flavored water ices, which have been popular in China since prehistoric times. They have also been popular in the Mediterranean and Middle East since the Golden Age of Greece. In fact, Alexander the Great had a penchant for wine-flavored ices, made with ice brought down from the mountains by runners. The Roman Emperor Nero served his guests mixtures of fruit crushed with snow and honey. The Saracens brought their knowledge of making flavored ices with them when they migrated to Sicily in the 9th century. And 12th-century Crusaders returned to western Europe with memories of Middle Eastern sherbets.

The Italians are said to have developed gelato from a recipe brought back from China by Marco Polo in the 13th century. Somehow the dish spread to England by the 15th century, where it was recorded that King Henry V served it at his coronation banquet. Catherine de Medici brought the recipe with her when she married the future king of France in 1533. A different flavor was served during each of the 34 days of their marriage festivities.

Ice cream was first served to the public in Paris during the late 17th century. It was available at fashionable cafés serving another new treat: coffee. French chefs quickly developed many elaborate desserts using ice creams, including bombes, coupes and parfaits.

Many of this country's founders—Thomas Jefferson, Alexander Hamilton, James and Dolly Madison—were confirmed ice cream addicts. George Washington spent more than $200, a very princely sum, for ice cream during the summer of 1790.

The mechanized ice cream freezer was invented in 1846, setting the stage for mass production and wide availability. By the late 19th century, ice cream parlors were popular gathering places. (Many of today's ice cream parlors take their décor from "Gay Nineties" motifs.)

Despite the disappearance of most ice cream wagons, soda fountains and lunch counters, all of which were popular ice cream purveyors for much of the 20th century, ice cream sales have never waned. Today, more than 80% of all ice cream is sold in supermarkets or convenience stores. The public's demand for high-fat, homemade-style "super-premium" ice creams with rich and often-elaborate flavor combinations shows no sign of declining.

Ice Cream and Gelato

Ice cream and gelato are custards that are churned during freezing. They can be flavored with a seemingly endless variety of fruits, nuts, extracts, liqueurs and the like. Gelato is an Italian-style ice cream. It is denser than American-style products because less air is incorporated during churning.

The USDA requires that products labeled "ice cream" contain not less than 10% milk fat and 20% milk solids, and have no more than 50% **overrun**. "Ice milk" refers to products that do not meet the standards for ice cream. Low-fat products made without cream or egg yolks are also available for the calorie conscious. Frozen yogurt uses yogurt as its base. Although touted as a nutritious substitute for ice cream, frozen yogurt may have whole milk or cream added for richness and smoothness.

Overrun—*the amount of air churned into an ice cream.*

One hallmark of good ice cream and gelato is smoothness. The ice crystals that would normally form during freezing can be avoided by constant stirring or churning. Churning, usually accomplished mechanically, also incorporates air into the product. The air causes the mixture to expand. Gelato has little incorporated air. Good-quality ice creams and sorbets have enough air to make them light; inferior products often contain overrun. The difference becomes obvious when equal volumes are weighed.

Many food service operations use ice cream makers that have internal freezing units to chill the mixture while churning it. Most commercial machines are suitable for churning either ice cream or sorbet. Follow the manufacturer's directions for using and cleaning any ice cream maker.

Procedure for Preparing Ice Creams

1. Place the milk and/or cream in a heavy saucepan. If vanilla bean is being used, it may be added at this time.
2. Whisk the egg yolks and sugar together in a mixing bowl.
3. Bring the liquid just to a boil. Temper the egg mixture with approximately one third of the hot liquid.
4. Pour the tempered eggs into the remaining hot liquid and return the mixture to the heat.
5. Cook, stirring constantly, until warm.
6. Remove the cooked custard sauce from the hot saucepan immediately. If left in the hot saucepan, it will overcook. Flavorings may be added at this time.
7. Cool the cooked custard sauce over an ice bath. Store covered and refrigerated until ready to process.
8. Process according to the machine manufacturer's directions.

RECIPE 34.10

Ice Cream Base

Yield: 2 qt. (2 lt)

Whole milk	1 1/2 qt.	1500 ml
Heavy cream	1 pt.	500 ml
Vanilla bean, optional	1	1
Egg yolks	16	16
Granulated sugar	20 oz.	600 g

1. Combine the milk and cream in a heavy saucepan and bring to a boil. Add the vanilla bean if desired.
2. Whisk the egg yolks and sugar together in a mixing bowl.
3. Temper the eggs with one third of the hot milk. Return the egg mixture to the saucepan.
4. Cook over medium heat until slightly thickened. Pour through a fine mesh strainer into a clean bowl.
5. Chill the cooked custard sauce completely before processing.

Variations: *Chocolate*—Add approximately 9 ounces (250 grams) of finely chopped bittersweet chocolate per quart (liter) of ice cream base. Add the chocolate to the hot mixture after it has been strained. Stir until completely melted.

Cappuccino—Steep the hot milk and cream with the vanilla bean and 2-3 cinnamon sticks. After the ice cream base is made, stir in 2 tablespoons (30 milliliters) coffee extract.

Brandied Cherry—Drain the liquid from one 16-ounce (500-gram) can of tart, pitted cherries. Soak the cherries in 3 tablespoons (45 milliliters) brandy. Prepare the ice cream base as directed, omitting the vanilla bean. Add the brandy-soaked cherries to the cooled custard before processing.

Approximate values per 6-fl.-oz. (180-ml) serving: **Calories** 370, **Total fat** 20 g, **Saturated fat** 11 g, **Cholesterol** 270 mg, **Sodium** 65 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 41 g, **Protein** 7 g, **Vitamin A** 25%

Sherbets and Sorbets

Sherbet and sorbet are frozen mixtures of fruit juice or fruit purée. Sherbet contains milk and/or egg yolks for creaminess; sorbet contains neither.

Sorbet can be prepared in a wide variety of fruit (and even some vegetable) flavors; it is often flavored with an alcoholic beverage. It is served as a first course, a palate refresher between courses or a dessert. Because of its milk content, sherbet tends to be richer than a sorbet, so it is generally reserved for dessert.

Sorbet and sherbet may be made with fresh, frozen or canned fruit. Granulated sugar or sugar syrup is added for flavor and body. The ratio of sugar to fruit purée or juice depends to some extent on the natural sweetness of the specific fruit as well as personal preference. If too much sugar is used, however, the mixture will be soft and syrupy. If too little sugar is used, the sorbet will be very hard and grainy. Egg whites may also be added during churning for body.

RECIPE 34.11

GRAPEFRUIT SORBET

Yield: 1 1/2 qt. (1.5 lt)

Fresh grapefruit juice	1 qt.	1 lt
Granulated sugar	8 oz.	250 g

1. Combine the juice and sugar.
2. Process in an ice cream maker according to the manufacturer's directions.
3. Pack into a clean container and freeze until firm.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (90-g) serving: **Calories** 94, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 1 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 23 g, **Protein** .5 g, **Vitamin C** 36%. **Claims**—no fat; no cholesterol; very low sodium; low calorie

Serving Suggestions for Ice Creams and Sorbets

Ice creams and sorbets are usually served by the scoop, often in cookie cones. Or they can be served as **sundaes**. More formal presentations include **baked Alaska**, **bombes**, **coupes** and **parfaits**.

Still-Frozen Desserts

Still-frozen desserts (It. *semifreddi*) are made with frozen mousse, custard or cream. Layers of spongecake and/or fruit may be added for flavor and texture. Because these mixtures are frozen without churning, air must be incorporated by folding in relatively large amounts of whipped cream or meringue. The air helps keep the mixture smooth and prevents it from becoming too hard. Still-frozen desserts develop ice crystals quicker than churned products, so they tend to have a shorter shelf life than ice creams or sorbets.

Still-frozen products include frozen soufflés, **marquis**, mousses and **neapolitans**. The Chocolate Hazelnut Marquis recipe at the end of this chapter (Recipe 34.34) is an example of a still-frozen dessert.

Sundae—*a great and gooey concoction of ice cream, sauces (hot fudge, marshmallow and caramel, for example), toppings (nuts, candies, and fresh fruit to name a few) and whipped cream.*

Baked Alaska—*ice cream set on a layer of spongecake and encased in meringue, then baked until the meringue is warm and golden.*

Bombe—*two or more flavors of ice cream, or ice cream and sherbet shaped in a spherical mold; each flavor is a separate layer that forms the shell for the next flavor.*

Coupe—*ice cream served with a fruit topping.*

Parfait—*ice cream served in a long, slender glass with alternating layers of topping or sauce.*

Marquis—*a frozen mousse-like dessert, usually chocolate.*

Neapolitan—*a three-layered loaf or cake of ice cream; each layer is a different flavor and a different color, a typical combination being chocolate, vanilla and strawberry.*

DESSERT SAUCES

Pastries and desserts are often accompanied by sweet sauces. Dessert sauces provide flavor and texture and enhance plate presentation. Vanilla custard sauce (Recipe 34.1) is the principal dessert sauce. It can be flavored and colored with chocolate, coffee extract, liquor or fruit compound as desired. Other dessert sauces include fruit purées, caramel sauce and chocolate syrup.

Fruit Purées

Many types of fruit can be puréed for dessert sauces: Strawberries, raspberries, blackberries, apricots, mangoes and papayas are popular choices. They produce thick sauces with strong flavors and colors. Fresh or individually quick frozen (IQF) fruits are recommended.

Puréed fruit sauces, also known as **coulis**, can be cooked or uncooked. Cooking thickens the sauces by reduction and allows any starch thickener to gelatinize. They can also be sweetened with granulated sugar or a sugar syrup. The amount of sweetener will vary depending upon the fruit's natural sweetness and personal preference.

Raspberry sauce

RECIPE 34.12

RASPBERRY SAUCE

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Raspberries, fresh or IQF	2 lb.	1 kg
Granulated sugar	1 lb.	500 g
Lemon juice	1 oz.	30 ml

1. Purée the berries and strain through a fine chinois.
2. Stir in the sugar and lemon juice. Adjust the flavor with additional sugar if necessary.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (43-g) serving: **Calories** 70, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 17 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—fat free; no saturated fat; no cholesterol; no sodium

Caramel Sauce

Caramel sauce is a mixture of caramelized sugar and heavy cream. A liqueur or citrus juice may be used for added flavor. Review the material on caramelizing sugar in Chapter 29, Principles of the Bakeshop, before making caramel sauce.

RECIPE 34.13

CARAMEL SAUCE

Yield: 4 qt. (4 lt)

Granulated sugar	4 lb. 8 oz.	2 kg
Water	1 pt.	500 ml
Lemon juice	2 oz.	60 ml

Heavy cream, room temperature	2 qt.	2 lt
Unsalted butter, cut into pieces	5 oz.	150 g

1. Combine the sugar and water in a large heavy saucepan. Stir to moisten the sugar completely. Place the saucepan on the stove top over high heat and bring to a boil. Brush down the sides of the pan with water to remove any sugar granules.
2. When the sugar comes to a boil, add the lemon juice. Do not stir the sugar, as this may cause lumping. Continue boiling until the sugar caramelizes, turning a dark golden brown and producing a rich aroma.
3. Remove the saucepan from the heat. Gradually add the cream. Be extremely careful, as the hot caramel may splatter. Whisk in the cream to blend.
4. Add the pieces of butter. Stir until the butter melts completely. If necessary, return the sauce to the stove to reheat enough to melt the butter.
5. Strain the sauce and cool completely at room temperature. The sauce may be stored for several weeks under refrigeration. Stir before using.

Approximate values per 1-fl.-oz. (33-g) serving: **Calories** 130, **Total fat** 7 g, **Saturated fat** 4 g, **Cholesterol** 25 mg, **Sodium** 5 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 16 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Vitamin A** 8%

Caramel sauce

Chocolate Syrup

Chocolate syrup or sauce can be prepared by adding finely chopped chocolate to warm vanilla custard sauce. A darker syrup can also be made with unsweetened chocolate or cocoa powder. Fudge-type sauces, like the one at the end of this chapter (Recipe 34.37), are really just variations on ganache, discussed in Chapter 33, Cakes and Frostings.

RECIPE 34.14

Dark Chocolate Syrup

Yield: 1 pt. (500 ml)

Cocoa powder	2 oz.	60 g
Water	12 oz.	340 ml
Granulated sugar	8 oz.	250 g
Unsalted butter	3 oz.	90 g
Heavy cream	1 oz.	30 ml

1. Mix the cocoa powder with just enough water to make a smooth paste.
2. Bring the sugar and remaining water to a boil in a small, heavy saucepan. Immediately add the cocoa paste, whisking until smooth.
3. Simmer for 15 minutes, stirring constantly, then remove from the heat.
4. Stir the butter and cream into the warm cocoa mixture. Serve warm or at room temperature.

Approximate values per 1-fl.-oz. (25-g) serving: **Calories** 120, **Total fat** 6 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 15 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 16 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 6%

Dark chocolate syrup

ASSEMBLING DESSERTS

As noted previously, many pastries and other desserts are assembled from the baked doughs discussed in Chapter 32, Pies, Pastries and Cookies; the cakes, icings and glazes discussed in Chapter 33, Cakes and Frostings; and the creams, custards and other products discussed in this chapter. Many of these desserts are classic presentations requiring the precise arrangement of specific components. Formulas for some of these desserts are found at the end of the chapters in this part. But once you begin to master the basic skills presented in these chapters, you can use your creativity, taste and judgment to combine these components into a wide selection of new, unique and tempting desserts.

Assembled pastries and other desserts generally consist of three principal components: the base, the filling and the garnish. The **base** is the dough, crust or cake product that provides structure and forms the foundation for the final product. The **filling** refers to whatever is used to add flavor, texture and body to the final product. The **garnish** is any glaze, fruit, sauce or accompaniment used to complete the dish.

GUIDELINES FOR ASSEMBLING DESSERTS

1. There should be a proper blend of complementary and contrasting flavors. For example, pears, red wine and blue cheese go well together, as do chocolate and raspberries. Do not combine flavors simply for the sake of originality, however.
2. There should be a proper blend of complementary and contrasting textures. For example, crisp puff pastry, soft pastry cream and tender strawberries are combined for a strawberry napoleon.
3. There should be a proper blend of complementary and contrasting colors. For example, a garnish of red raspberries and green mint looks great.
4. Garnishes should not be overly fussy or garish.
5. The base should be strong enough to hold the filling and garnish without collapsing, yet thin or tender enough to cut easily with a fork.
6. The filling or garnish may cause the base to become soft or even soggy. This may or may not be desirable. If you want a crisp base, assemble the product very close to service. If you want this softening to occur, assemble the product in advance of service.
7. Consider the various storage and keeping qualities of the individual components. It may be best to assemble or finish some products at service time.
8. The final construction should not be so elaborate or fragile that it cannot be portioned or served easily or attractively.
9. Consider whether the product would be better prepared as individual portions or as one large item. This may depend on the desired plate presentation and the ease and speed with which a large product can be cut and portioned for service.

CONCLUSION

If pastry doughs are the backbone of dessert preparations, then custards, creams, mousses and the like are the heart. The skills and techniques presented in this chapter are essential to successful pastry production. Many of

these skills, such as whipping cream or preparing custards, will be useful in other areas of the kitchen as well. Once you have mastered these skills as well as those discussed in Chapter 32, Pies, Pastries and Cookies, and Chapter 33, Cakes and Frostings, you will be able to prepare a wide variety of tempting desserts.

Questions for Discussion

1. Eggs and dairy products are susceptible to bacterial contamination. What precautions should be taken to avoid food-borne illnesses when preparing custards?
2. Explain why pastry cream should be boiled and why custard sauce should not be boiled.
3. Identify three desserts that are based on a baked custard.
4. Compare a classically prepared Bavarian, chiffon, mousse and souffle. How are they similar? How are they different?
5. Describe the procedure for making a typical still-frozen dessert. What is the purpose of including whipped cream or whipped egg whites?
6. Explain three ways in which sweet sauces can be used in preparing or presenting a dessert.

Additional Custard, Cream, Frozen Dessert and Dessert Sauce Formulas

RECIPE 34.15

LONGCHAMP

NOTE: This dish appears in the Chapter Opening photograph.

RIVERIA, ATLANTA, GA
Chef Jack Schoop, CMC

Yield: 1 10-in. (24-cm) Cake

Ladyfingers (Recipe 33.23)	as needed	as needed
Genoise, cut into a 10-in. (24-cm) circle	1 layer	1 layer
Kirsch (cherry brandy)	3 1/2 oz.	100 ml
Simple syrup, cool	1 qt.	1 lt
Kirsch Mousse (recipe follows)	as needed	as needed
Fresh raspberries	1 pt.	480 ml
Italian Meringue (Recipe 32.10)	as needed	as needed

1. Place a 10-inch (24-centimeter) metal ring that is 1 3/4 inches (4.5 centimeters) high over a cardboard circle. Line the ring completely with ladyfingers. Cut the ladyfingers level with the top of the ring. Place the genoise inside the ring to form the bottom of the cake.

Continued

2. Prepare a Kirsch-flavored syrup by combining the Kirsch and the simple syrup. Brush the genoise and the ladyfingers with this syrup. Reserve the remaining Kirsch-flavored syrup for another use.
3. Fill the cake with Kirsch Mousse, sprinkling in raspberries as the cake is filled so that the fruit is evenly distributed throughout. The cake should be filled to the top of the ring. Smooth the top of the mousse with a offset spatula.
4. Freeze the cake until set.
5. Spread a thin layer of Italian meringue over the mousse. Decorate the top of the cake with Italian meringue piped through a pastry bag fitted with a Saint-Honore tip. Pipe the meringue from the center, curving outward to the edge of the cake. Brown the top of the meringue with a propane torch.
6. Remove the metal ring and garnish the cake with fresh raspberries.

Approximate values per 1/12-cake serving: **Calories** 690, **Total fat** 30 g, **Saturated fat** 17 g, **Cholesterol** 267 mg, **Sodium** 171 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 89 g, **Protein** 10 g, **Vitamin A** 25%, **Vitamin C** 35%, **Calcium** 10%

KIRSCH MOUSSE

Yield: 2 qt. (2 kg)

Gelatin	9 sheets	9 sheets
Kirsch	3 1/2 oz.	100 ml
Heavy cream	1 qt.	1 lt
Pastry cream	35 oz.	1 kg

1. Soften the gelatin in ice water.
2. Bring the Kirsch to a simmer over low heat. Remove from the heat, add the gelatin and stir until it is completely dissolved.
3. Stir the gelatin mixture into the heavy cream, then whip the cream to soft peaks.
4. Fold the whipped cream into the pastry cream and chill until ready to use.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 480, **Total fat** 36 g, **Saturated fat** 22 g, **Cholesterol** 245 mg, **Sodium** 96 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 27 g, **Protein** 8 g, **Vitamin A** 29%, **Vitamin C** 41%, **Calcium** 12%

RECIPE 34.16

CRÈME BRÛLÉE

VINCENT ON CAMELBACK, PHOENIX, AZ
Chef Vincent Guerithault

Yield: 3 1/2 qt. (3.5 lt)

Heavy cream	2 qt.	2 lt
Vanilla beans, split	2	2
Egg yolks	50	50
Granulated sugar	20 oz.	600 g
Fresh berries	as needed	as needed
Tulipe Cookie cups (Recipe 32.39)		
Granulated sugar	as needed for caramelized topping	

1. Place the cream and the vanilla beans in a large, heavy saucepan. Heat just to a boil.
2. Whisk the egg yolks and sugar together until smooth and well blended.
3. Temper the eggs with one third of the hot cream. Return the egg mixture to the saucepan and cook, stirring constantly, until very thick. Do not allow the custard to boil.
4. Remove from the heat and strain into a clean bowl. Cool over an ice bath, stirring occasionally.
5. To serve, place fresh berries in the bottom of each Tulipe Cookie cup. Top with several spoonsful of custard.
6. Sprinkle granulated sugar over the top of the custard and caramelize with a propane torch. Serve immediately.

Approximate values per 5-oz. (151-g) serving: **Calories** 460, **Total fat** 36 g, **Saturated fat** 20 g, **Cholesterol** 480 mg, **Sodium** 135 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 26 g, **Protein** 7 g, **Vitamin A** 50%

RECIPE 34.17

CRÈME CHIBOUST

Yield: 1 pt. (500 ml)

Gelatin	3 sheets	3 sheets
Milk	6 oz.	180 ml
Vanilla bean	1/2	1/2
Egg yolks	3	3
Granulated sugar	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Cornstarch	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Granulated sugar	6 oz.	180 g
Water	3 Tbsp.	45 ml
Egg whites	3	3
Cream of tartar	1/8 tsp.	0.5 ml

1. Soak the gelatin in ice water.
2. Prepare a pastry cream by heating the milk and vanilla bean just to a boil. Whisk the egg yolks, 3 tablespoons (45 milliliters) of sugar and the cornstarch together. Temper with one third of the hot milk, then return the mixture to the saucepan and cook over moderate heat until thick. The pastry cream should be allowed to boil briefly to properly gelatinize the starch. Remove the cream from the heat and transfer to a clean bowl.
3. Stir the softened gelatin into the hot cream. Cover and set aside but do not chill or allow the cream to set while preparing the Italian meringue.
4. Prepare an Italian meringue using the remaining ingredients.
5. Quickly and thoroughly incorporate one third of the meringue into the warm pastry cream with a spatula. Gently fold in the remaining meringue.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (32-g) serving: **Calories** 80, **Total fat** 1.5 g, **Saturated fat** 0.5 g, **Cholesterol** 40 mg, **Sodium** 20 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 14 g, **Protein** 3 g, **Claims**—low fat; low saturated fat; very low sodium

RECIPE 34.18

Chocolate Pot Au Crème

Yield: 8 4-oz. (120-ml) Servings

Milk	1 pt.	500 ml
Bittersweet chocolate	8 oz.	225 g
Granulated sugar	7 oz.	210 g
Vanilla extract	1 tsp.	5 ml
Coffee liqueur	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Egg yolks	7	7

1. Heat the milk just to a simmer. Add the chocolate and sugar. Stir constantly until the chocolate melts; do not allow the mixture to boil. Remove from the heat and add the vanilla and liqueur.
2. Whisk the egg yolks together, then slowly whisk them into the chocolate mixture.
3. Pour the custard into ramekins. Place the ramekins in a hotel pan and add enough hot water to reach halfway up the sides of the ramekins.
4. Bake at 325°F (160°C) until the custards are almost set in the center, approximately 30 minutes. Remove from the water bath and refrigerate until thoroughly chilled. Serve garnished with whipped cream and chocolate shavings.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 360, **Total fat** 16 g, **Saturated fat** 9 g, **Cholesterol** 195 mg, **Sodium** 40 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 46 g, **Protein** 6 g, **Vitamin A** 10%, **Calcium** 10%

RECIPE 34.19

Mint-Milk Flan with Orange Water

RITZ-CARLTON HOTEL, CHICAGO, IL
Executive Chef George Bumbaris and Chef Sarah Stegner

Yield: 6 Servings

Gelatin	1 1/2 sheets	1 1/2 sheets
Milk, reduced fat	7 oz.	210 ml
Heavy cream	1 1/2 oz.	45 ml
Granulated sugar	1/2 oz.	14 g
Fruit Garnish (recipe follows)	as needed	as needed
Orange juice, freshly squeezed	20 oz.	600 ml
Fresh mint	6 sprigs	6 sprigs
Honey Wheat Tuile (recipe follows)	as needed for garnish	

1. Soak the gelatin sheets in cold water.
2. Heat the milk, cream and sugar. When warm, remove from the heat and add the fresh mint, cover and let steep for 20 minutes. Return the cream to a simmer, then strain through a fine chinoise.
3. Dissolve the gelatin in the warm cream and pour the mixture into 6 small bavarian molds. Chill overnight in the refrigerator.
4. To serve, remove the mint flan from the mold and place it in the center of a large soup plate. Arrange the fruit garnish around the flan.

5. To make the orange water, strain the orange juice through a coffee filter.
6. Sprinkle the orange water over the fruit and garnish with fresh mint sprigs and Honey Wheat Tuile.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 187, **Total fat** 3.5 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 12.5 mg, **Sodium** 22 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 14 g, **Protein** 25 g, **Vitamin C** 80%

FRUIT GARNISH

Yield: 6 Servings

Strawberries	6	6
Blueberries	12	12
Baby kiwi	6	6
Blackberries	12	12
Plum	1	1
Orange	1	1
Raspberries	12	12
Gooseberries	6	6
Wild strawberries	2 oz.	60 g

1. Cut the strawberries, blueberries, baby kiwi and blackberries in half.
2. Cut the plum and orange into segments.
3. Gently toss all the fruits together.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 87, **Total fat** .5 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 4 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 19 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin C** 170%, **Claims**—low fat; no cholesterol; very low sodium; high fiber

HONEY WHEAT TUILE

Yield: 1 pt. (500 ml)

Whole butter	2 1/2 oz.	75 g
Powdered sugar	3 1/2 oz.	100 ml
Honey	2 1/2 oz.	75 g
Whole wheat flour	3 1/2 oz.	100 ml
Ginger, ground	1 tsp.	5 ml
Egg whites	3 oz.	90 ml

1. Cream the butter and sugar until light. Add the honey.
2. Sift the flour and ginger together, and add to the butter mixture. Slowly incorporate the egg whites.
3. Spread into the desired shape on a silicone baking sheet and bake at 350°F (180°C) until golden brown, approximately 6 to 8 minutes.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (28-g) serving: **Calories** 98, **Total fat** 4 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 10 mg, **Sodium** 46 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 14 g, **Protein** 23 g

RECIPE 34.20

PISTACHIO CITRUS CHEESECAKE

Yield: 4 10-in. (25-cm) Cakes

Unsalted butter, melted	as needed	as needed
Pistachios, chopped fine	12 oz.	360 g

Continued

Cream cheese, softened	6 lb. 10 oz.	3.7 kg
All-purpose flour	3 1/2 oz.	100 g
Granulated sugar	2 lb. 5 oz.	1 kg
Eggs	18	18
Heavy cream	10 oz.	300 ml
Lemon zest, grated fine	4 Tbsp.	60 ml
Orange zest, grated fine	4 Tbsp.	60 ml

1. Brush the sides and bottoms of four cake pans (do not use springform pans) with melted butter. Coat with an even layer of pistachio nuts.
2. Beat the cream cheese until smooth. Add the flour and sugar and beat to incorporate completely.
3. Add the eggs slowly, then stir in the cream. Stir in the zests and pour the batter into prepared pans.
4. Place the cake pans in a water bath and bake at 325°F (160°C) until set, approximately 45 minutes.
5. Cool to room temperature before inverting onto a serving tray or cake cardboard. The nut crust becomes the top of the cakes.

Approximate values per 1/10-cake serving: **Calories** 470, **Total fat** 34 g, **Saturated fat** 19 g, **Cholesterol** 190 mg, **Sodium** 250 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 32 g, **Protein** 10 g, **Vitamin A** 40%

RECIPE 34.21

New York-Style Cheesecake

Yield: 2 10-in. (25-cm) Cakes

Cream cheese, softened	3 lb. 6 oz.	1.6 kg
Cake flour	2 oz.	60 g
Granulated sugar	18 oz.	540 g
Eggs	8	8
Heavy cream	5 oz.	150 ml
Vanilla extract	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Beat the cheese until smooth. Beat in the flour and sugar.
2. Blend in the eggs slowly, then add the cream and vanilla.
3. Pour the batter into well-buttered springform pans. Bake at 300°F (150°C) until set, approximately 1 to 1 1/2 hours.
4. Cool completely before removing the sides of each pan.

Approximate values per 1/10-cake serving: **Calories** 450, **Total fat** 32 g, **Saturated fat** 20 g, **Cholesterol** 180 mg, **Sodium** 260 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 31 g, **Protein** 9 g, **Vitamin A** 40%

RECIPE 34.22

Blackberry Chiffon Cheesecake

CANOE, ATLANTA, GA
Pastry Chef Michael O'Connor

Yield: 6 Servings

Vegetable oil	as needed	as needed
Powdered sugar	as needed	as needed

Blackberries, fresh or frozen	4 oz.	90 ml
Granulated gelatin	2 tsp.	10 ml
Cream cheese, softened	12 oz.	360 g
Granulated sugar	6 oz.	180 g
Heavy cream, whipped to soft peaks	1 pt.	500 ml
Phyllo dough	12 oz.	360 g
Whole butter, melted	as needed	as needed
Powdered sugar	as needed	as needed
Caramelized Peaches (recipe follows)		

1. Prepare 6 metal 3- to 4-inch (7.5- to 10-centimeter) diameter flan rings, by brushing the insides lightly with vegetable oil and dusting with powdered sugar. Shake off any excess sugar and place the rings on a sheet pan lined with parchment paper.
2. Purée the blackberries in a food processor or blender. Strain through a fine chinois and pour into a stainless steel bowl.
3. Sprinkle the gelatin over the blackberry purée. Allow it to soften for 5 minutes, then place the bowl over simmering water and stir until the gelatin dissolves. Remove from the heat and set aside.
4. Combine the cream cheese and sugar in a mixer fitted with the paddle attachment. Cream gently, just until the mixture becomes fluffy.
5. Fold the whipped cream into the cream cheese mixture.
6. Whisk approximately one quarter of the cream cheese mixture into the blackberry purée. Fold this blackberry mixture into the remaining cream cheese mixture. Quickly pour the cheesecake into the prepared flan rings. Fill the rings completely and smooth the tops with a cake spatula.
7. Freeze until completely set, approximately 6 to 8 hours.
8. Shred the phyllo dough by passing it through the spaghetti cutter of a pasta machine.
9. Lightly spray the phyllo with a small amount of melted butter and dust with a bit of powdered sugar. Arrange into six nests and place on a baking sheet lined with parchment paper.
10. Bake the nests in a 350°F (170°C) oven for a few minutes, just until lightly browned. Cool completely and store in an airtight container.
11. To assemble the desserts, remove the cheesecakes from the freezer and allow them to rest at room temperature for 5 to 10 minutes. Carefully slide the rings off the cheesecakes. Using an offset spatula, set each cheesecake onto a phyllo base and arrange on serving plates. Garnish with the Caramelized Peaches.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 873, **Total fat** 59 g, **Saturated fat** 35 g, **Cholesterol** 187 mg, **Sodium** 481 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 80 g, **Protein** 10 g, **Vitamin A** 49%, **Vitamin C** 12%, **Iron** 16%

CARAMELIZED PEACHES

Yield: 6 servings

Fresh peaches	3	3
Whole butter	1 oz.	30 g
Brown sugar	2 oz.	60 g
Ginger, ground	TT	TT
Cinnamon, ground	TT	TT

Continued

1. Peel the peaches and cut them into thick slices. Heat the butter in a large sauté pan and add the peaches.
2. Add the sugar and cook until it dissolves. Season to taste with the spices. Continue to cook the peaches, gently tossing them in the butter and sugar, until softened.
3. Remove the peaches from the heat and spread them on a paper-lined sheet pan to cool.

RECIPE 34.23

Bread Pudding with Bourbon Sauce

Yield: 20 Servings

Raisins	8 oz.	250 g
Brandy	4 oz.	120 ml
Unsalted butter, melted	2 oz.	60 g
White bread, day-old	24 oz.	720 g
Heavy cream	2 qt.	2 lt
Eggs	6	6
Granulated sugar	1 lb. 10 oz.	800 g
Vanilla extract	2 oz.	60 g
Bourbon Sauce (recipe follows)	as needed	as needed

1. Combine the raisins and brandy in a small saucepan. Heat just to a simmer, cover and set aside.
2. Use a portion of the butter to thoroughly coat a 2-inch (5-centimeter) deep hotel pan. Reserve the remaining butter.
3. Tear the bread into chunks and place in a large bowl. Pour the cream over the bread and set aside until soft.
4. Beat the eggs and sugar until smooth and thick. Add the vanilla, remaining melted butter, raisins and brandy.
5. Toss the egg mixture with the bread gently to blend. Pour into the hotel pan and bake at 350°F (180°C) until browned and almost set, approximately 45 minutes.
6. Serve warm with 2–3 tablespoons (30–45 milliliters) of the Bourbon Sauce.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 700, **Total fat** 44 g, **Saturated fat** 26 g, **Cholesterol** 270 mg, **Sodium** 260 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 67 g, **Protein** 9 g, **Vitamin A** 50%, **Calcium** 10%, **Iron** 10%

BOURBON SAUCE

Unsalted butter	8 oz.	250 g
Granulated sugar	1 lb.	500 g
Eggs	2	2
Bourbon	8 oz.	250 ml

1. Melt the butter; stir in the sugar and eggs and simmer to thicken.
2. Add the bourbon and hold in a warm place for service.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (42-g) serving: **Calories** 150, **Total fat** 8 g, **Saturated fat** 5 g, **Cholesterol** 40 mg, **Sodium** 50 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 19 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 8%

RECIPE 34.24

CHERRY CLAFOUTI

Clafouti—*a country-style French dessert similar to a quiche, in which dark cherries are baked in an egg custard.*

Yield: 1 10-in. (25-cm) Cake

Dark cherries, fresh or canned, pitted	1 lb.	500 g
Eggs	4	4
Milk	12 oz.	340 ml
Granulated sugar	2 oz.	60 g
Vanilla extract	1 tsp.	5 ml
All-purpose flour	2 oz.	60 g
Powdered sugar	as needed	as needed

1. Drain the cherries and pat them completely dry with paper towels. Arrange them evenly on the bottom of a buttered 10-inch (25-centimeter) pan. Do not use a springform pan or removable-bottom tartlet pan.
2. Make the custard by whisking the eggs and milk together. Add the sugar, vanilla and flour and continue whisking until all the lumps are removed.
3. Pour the custard over the cherries and bake at 325°F (160°C) for 1 to 1 1/2 hours. The custard should be lightly browned and firm to the touch when done.
4. Dust with powdered sugar and serve the clafouti while still warm.

Approximate values per 1/10-cake serving: **Calories** 170, **Total fat** 3.5 g, **Saturated fat** 1.5 g, **Cholesterol** 90 mg, **Sodium** 4.5 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 30 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin A** 6%

RECIPE 34.25

WARM CHOCOLATE SOUFFLÉ

MANGO, CHICAGO, IL
Chef Steve Chiappetti

Yield: 6 Servings

Bittersweet chocolate	12 oz.	340 g
Unsalted butter	20 oz.	600 g
Egg yolks	12	12
Granulated sugar	8 oz.	225 g
All-purpose flour	8 oz.	225 g
Egg whites	12	12

1. Melt the chocolate and butter in a bowl over a bain marie.
2. Combine the egg yolks and 4 ounces (120 grams) of the sugar and beat at high speed until the yolks are pale and form a thick ribbon.
3. When the yolks are fully whipped, add the flour and beat at low speed. Slowly pour the melted chocolate into the yolk mixture.
4. In a separate bowl, beat the egg whites at medium speed until soft peaks form. Slowly add the remaining 4 ounces (120 grams) of sugar and beat on high speed until stiff peaks form.

Continued

5. Gently fold the egg whites into the yolk mixture.
6. Pour into 6 buttered and sugared ramekins or soufflé molds and bake at 400°F-425°F (200°C-220°C) until done, approximately 12–15 minutes.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 1563, **Total fat** 118 g, **Saturated fat** 61 g, **Cholesterol** 1055 mg, **Sodium** 157 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 99 g, **Protein** 28 g, **Vitamin A** 110%, **Iron** 33%

RECIPE 34.26

White Chocolate Frangelico Bavarian

Yield: 4 qt. (4 lt)

Heavy cream	2 qt.	2 lt
White chocolate, chopped	2 lb.	1 kg
Gelatin	8 sheets	8 sheets
Frangelico (hazelnut liqueur)	10 oz.	300 ml
Vanilla extract	2 tsp.	10 ml

1. Bring 1 quart (1 liter) of cream just to a boil. Immediately pour over the chopped chocolate. Stir until the chocolate melts.
2. Place the gelatin in ice water to soften.
3. Gently heat the liqueur just to a simmer. Remove from the heat and stir in the gelatin, one softened sheet at a time.
4. Add the gelatin mixture to the chocolate. Stir to blend well. Cool over an ice bath, stirring frequently.
5. Whip the remaining 1 quart (1 liter) of cream with the vanilla to stiff peaks.
6. Fold the whipped cream into the chocolate mixture. Chill until ready to use.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (102-g) serving: **Calories** 400, **Total fat** 32 g, **Saturated fat** 21 g, **Cholesterol** 90 mg, **Sodium** 50 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 22 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin A** 25%

RECIPE 34.27

Chocolate Chiffon Pie

Yield: 2 9-in. (22-cm) Pies

Gelatin	1/2 oz.	15 g
Milk	20 oz.	600 ml
Unsweetened chocolate	4 oz.	120 g
Granulated sugar	6 oz.	180 g
Salt	1/4 tsp.	1 ml
Eggs, separated	6	6
Vanilla extract	2 tsp.	10 ml
Crumb-crust pie shells	2	2
Whipped cream	as needed for garnish	
Chocolate shavings	as needed for garnish	

1. Soften the gelatin and set aside.
2. Combine the milk and chocolate in a heavy saucepan and warm over low heat until the chocolate melts.

3. Add 4 ounces (120 grams) of the sugar, the salt and the egg yolks. Continue cooking, stirring constantly, until the mixture thickens.
4. Remove from the heat and add the gelatin, stirring until completely dissolved. Pour the mixture into a bowl and chill until very thick.
5. Whip the egg whites to soft peaks. Add the vanilla and the remaining sugar and whip to stiff peaks. Fold the whites into the chocolate.
6. Mound the chiffon into the pie shells and chill for several hours before serving. Garnish with unsweetened whipped cream and chocolate shavings.

Approximate values per 1/10-pie serving: **Calories** 210, **Total fat** 12 g, **Saturated fat** 4.5 g, **Cholesterol** 70 mg, **Sodium** 160 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 21 g, **Protein** 5 g

RECIPE 34.28

Raspberry Mousse

Yield: 1 qt. (1 lt)

Gelatin	6 sheets	6 sheets
Raspberries, puréed	12 oz.	360 g
Granulated sugar	3 oz.	90 g
Raspberry brandy	2 Tbsp.	30 ml
Heavy cream	8 oz.	250 ml

1. Soften the gelatin in ice water and set aside.
2. Place the raspberry purée, sugar and brandy in a nonreactive saucepan and warm just to dissolve the sugar. Remove from the heat and strain through a fine chinois.
3. Add the gelatin, stirring until it is dissolved. Chill the mixture until thick but not set.
4. Whip the cream to soft peaks and fold it into the raspberry mixture.

Approximate values per 3-oz. (90-g) serving: **Calories** 180, **Total fat** 11 g, **Saturated fat** 7 g, **Cholesterol** 40 mg, **Sodium** 15 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 16 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin A** 10%

RECIPE 34.29

Mille-Feuille with Honey Mousseline

RIVERIA, ATLANTA, GA
Chef Jack Schoop, CMC

Yield: 1 Tart

Puff pastry, 10 in. (24 cm) rounds	2	2
Powdered sugar	as needed	as needed
Puff pastry, for garnishes	as needed	as needed
Fresh strawberries	as needed	as needed
Honey Mousseline (recipe follows)	one recipe	one recipe
Fresh raspberries	1 c.	225 ml
Chocolate garnishes	10	10

Continued

1. Bake the two rounds of puff pastry at 500°F (250°C) until well browned and done, approximately 12 minutes. Toward the end of baking, generously sprinkle them with powdered sugar to create a glaze.
2. Cut out ten, 1-inch (2.5-centimeter) circles of puff pastry to be used as decorations on the finished tart. Bake them at 400°F (200°C) until done, approximately 10 minutes. Set aside to cool.
3. Place a 2-inch (5-centimeter) high metal cake ring over a cardboard circle.
4. Line the inside of the ring with a strip of plastic wrap or acetate cut to the same size as the ring.
5. Place one of the large puff pastry circles inside the ring to form the bottom of the tart.
6. Cut the strawberries in half lengthwise. Line the inside of the ring with the strawberries so that the cut side is placed flat against the plastic strip.
7. Fill the ring half full with the Honey Mousseline.
8. Cover the mousseline with a layer of raspberries and strawberries.
9. Fill the ring almost to the top with Honey Mousseline.
10. Cover the cake with the second circle of puff pastry, glazed side up.
11. Decorate each of the small puff pastry circles with a rosette of Honey Mousseline and a piped chocolate garnish.
12. Arrange the decorated circles on top of the cake. Remove the metal cake ring and the plastic for service.

Approximate values per 1/12-tart serving: **Calories** 426, **Total fat** 25 g, **Saturated fat** 11 g, **Cholesterol** 177 mg, **Sodium** 244 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 44 g, **Protein** 9 g, **Vitamin A** 14%, **Vitamin C** 89%

HONEY MOUSSELINE

Yield: 2 qt. (2 lt)

Egg whites	2	2
Honey, cooked to 248°F (120°C)	4 oz.	120 g
Gelatin	15 sheets	15 sheets
Milk	17 oz.	500 ml
Vanilla bean	1	1
Granulated sugar	3 1/2 oz.	100 g
Egg yolks	12	12
All-purpose flour	1 oz.	30 g
Cornstarch	1 oz.	30 g
Whole butter	2 1/2 oz.	75 g
Heavy cream	17 oz.	500 ml
Powdered sugar	3 oz.	90 g

1. Prepare a honey Italian meringue with the egg whites and the hot honey. Set aside at room temperature until ready to use.
2. Soak the gelatin in cold water until ready to use.
3. Prepare a pastry cream by bringing the milk, vanilla bean and granulated sugar to a boil in a large saucepan.
4. Whisk together the egg yolks, flour and cornstarch.
5. Temper the egg yolks with some of the hot milk, then pour the egg mixture into the saucepan and continue cooking until the custard is thick. Remove from the heat and stir in the butter and the softened gelatin.
6. Fold the Italian meringue into the warm pastry cream.

7. Whip the cream and powdered sugar to stiff peaks. Fold the whipped cream into the pastry cream.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-ml) serving: **Calories** 320, **Total fat** 20 g, **Saturated fat** 11 g, **Cholesterol** 215 mg, **Sodium** 60 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 29 g, **Protein** 8 g, **Vitamin A** 17%, **Vitamin C** 50%

RECIPE 34.30

CARAMEL ICE CREAM

Chefs Susan Feniger and Mary Sue Millikin
of the former CITY RESTAURANT, LOS ANGELES, CA

Yield: 1 1/2 qt. (1 1/2 lt)

Ice Cream		
Half-and-half	20 oz.	600 ml
Heavy cream	12 oz.	360 ml
Egg yolks	9	9
Granulated sugar	6 oz.	180 g
Vanilla extract	2 tsp.	10 ml
Sour cream	8 oz.	225 g
Caramel Chunks (recipe follows)	as needed	as needed

1. Combine the half-and-half and heavy cream in a medium-heavy saucepan. Bring to a boil.
2. Whisk together the egg yolks and sugar until thick and pale yellow. Pour into the boiling cream and stir to combine. Remove from the heat.
3. Add the vanilla and stir. Strain into a large container and chill over an ice bath, stirring occasionally.
4. Stir in the sour cream and pour into an ice cream maker. Process according to the manufacturer's directions.
5. When the ice cream is done, fold in the reserved Caramel Chunks. Store in the freezer for 1–2 days.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 310, **Total fat** 24 g, **Saturated fat** 14 g, **Cholesterol** 225 mg, **Sodium** 45 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 18 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin A** 30%, **Claims**—low sodium

CARAMEL CHUNKS

Granulated sugar	8 oz.	225 g
Water	4 oz.	120 ml

1. Combine the sugar and water in a heavy saucepan. Cook over moderate heat until the color turns deep brown and the aroma is strong, approximately 10–15 minutes.
2. Immediately, and with great care, pour the hot caramel onto a greased sheet pan. Set aside until cool, then crack into 1/2-inch (12-millimeter) pieces.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 110, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 28 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Vitamin A** 0, **Claims**—fat free; no saturated fat; no cholesterol; no sodium

RECIPE 34.31

Sundried Fruit Compote with Honey Ice Cream

BISHOP'S RESTAURANT, VANCOUVER, BC
Chefs Michael Allemeier and Dennis Green

Yield: 6 Servings

Zinfandel wine	12 oz.	375 ml
Water	2 c.	500 ml
Granulated sugar	12 oz.	375 g
Sundried fruits, such as apples, cherries and apricots, whole	2 c.	500 ml
Cinnamon stick	1	1
Cloves, whole	2	2
Nutmeg	1/2 tsp.	3 ml
Vanilla bean	1/2	1/2
Black peppercorns	6	6
Fresh ginger, sliced	1-in. piece	2.5-cm piece
Honey Ice Cream (recipe follows)		

1. In a nonreactive saucepan, combine the wine, water, and sugar. Bring to a boil, skim off any scum that forms, and add the fruit and spices.
2. Bring to a boil again, and remove from the heat.
3. Allow the compote to sit for several hours to allow the fruit to absorb some of the syrup.
4. To serve, warm the compote, and top with a scoop of Honey Ice Cream.

Approximate values per 5-oz. (140-g) serving of compote: **Calories** 290, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 30 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 71 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Claims**—no fat; no cholesterol; very low sodium; good source of fiber

HONEY ICE CREAM

Heavy cream	1 pt.	500 ml
Light cream	1 pt.	500 ml
Egg yolks	8	8
Honey	1/2 c.	125 ml

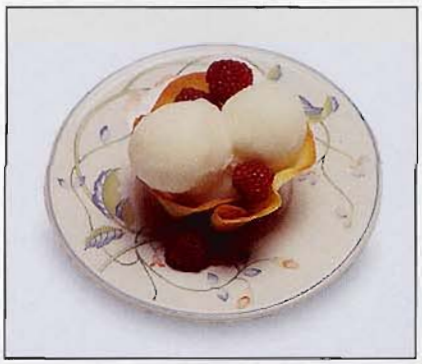
1. In a nonreactive saucepan, combine the two types of cream and heat just to a simmer.
2. In a large mixing bowl, beat the egg yolks and honey together until pale, slightly thickened and at the ribbon stage. Slowly add the heated cream, whisking continuously, so as not to cook the yolks.
3. Return the mixture to the saucepan and cook over low heat, stirring constantly, until the mixture coats the back of a spoon.
4. Remove from the heat and cool over an ice bath. Freeze in an ice cream maker.

Approximate values per 3 1/2-oz. (106-g) serving: **Calories** 275, **Total fat** 22 g, **Saturated fat** 13 g, **Cholesterol** 210 mg, **Sodium** 48 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 15 g, **Protein** 6 g, **Vitamin A** 30%, **Calcium** 10%

RECIPE 34.32

LEMON SORBET

VINCENT ON CAMBELBACK, PHOENIX, AZ
Chef Vincent Guerithault



Yield: 1 1/2 qt. (1.5 lt)

Lemon juice	1 pt.	500 ml
Water	1 pt.	500 ml
Granulated sugar	1 lb.	500 g

1. Combine the juice, water and sugar in a large bowl. Stir until the sugar dissolves completely.
2. Pour the lemon mixture into the ice cream/sorbet machine and process according to the manufacturer's directions.
3. The finished sorbet will be rather soft. Pack it into a storage container and freeze at a temperature of 0°F (-18°C) or lower until firm.

Approximate values per 1.5-oz. (45-g) serving: **Calories** 25, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 6 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Claims**—fat free; no sodium; low calorie

RECIPE 34.33

TRIO OF SORBETS WITH RASPBERRY SALAD

RITZ-CARLTON, CHICAGO, IL
Executive Chef George Bumbaris and Chef Sarah Stegner

Yield: 4 Servings

Raspberry Salad (recipe follows)	
Strawberry Sorbet (recipe follows)	
Apricot Sorbet (recipe follows)	
White Peach Sorbet (recipe follows)	
Spun sugar	as needed for garnish
Fresh berries	as needed for garnish
Fresh mint	as needed for garnish
Pâte à Cigarette Batter (recipe follows)	as needed for garnish

1. For each serving, arrange a mound of Raspberry Salad in the center of a large plate.
2. Arrange 1 quenelle of each flavor of sorbet on top of the berries.
3. Surround the sorbet with spun sugar and garnish with fresh berries, mint and a design made from Pâte à Cigarette Batter.

RASPBERRY SALAD

Yield: 4 Servings

Fresh raspberries	1 pt.	450 ml
Raspberry purée, strained	2 oz.	60 g

Continued

Lemon juice	TT	TT
Sugar	TT	TT

1. Toss the berries and the purée together gently.
2. Add sugar and lemon juice to taste. Keep refrigerated until needed.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 43, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 9 g, **Protein** .5 g, **Vitamin C** 33%, **Claims**—no fat; no cholesterol; no sodium; high fiber

STRAWBERRY SORBET

Yield: 8 4-oz. (120-g) Servings

Sugar	4 oz.	120 g
Pectin	1 tsp.	5 ml
Sorbet Syrup (recipe follows)	8 oz.	225 ml
Strawberries, pureed	1 lb.	450 g
Fresh lemon juice	1 Tbsp.	15 ml

1. Mix sugar and pectin together, add syrup and bring to a boil. Remove from the heat and cool completely.
2. Add the puréed berries and lemon juice; strain. Adjust the flavor with additional sugar or lemon juice as needed. Freeze in an ice cream machine.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 196, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 1.5 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 48 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Vitamin C** 54%, **Claims**—no fat; no cholesterol; very low sodium; high fiber

APRICOT SORBET

Yield: 4 4-oz. (120-g) Servings

Sorbet syrup	4 oz.	120 ml
Apricot purée	1 pt.	450 ml

1. Combine syrup and purée; strain. Freeze in an ice cream machine.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 148, **Total fat** .5 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 1 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 34 g, **Protein** 1.5 g, **Vitamin A** 30%, **Vitamin C** 20%, **Claims**—low fat; no cholesterol; very low sodium; high fiber

WHITE PEACH SORBET

Yield: 4 4-oz. (120-g) Servings

Sorbet syrup	4 oz.	120 ml
White peach purée	1 pt.	450 ml

1. Combine syrup and purée; strain. Freeze in an ice cream machine.

Approximate values per 4-oz. (120-g) serving: **Calories** 120, **Total fat** 0 g, **Saturated fat** 0 g, **Cholesterol** 0 mg, **Sodium** 0 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 29 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin C** 13%, **Claims**—no fat; no cholesterol; no sodium; high fiber

SORBET SYRUP

Yield: 19 oz. (580 ml)

Sugar	11 oz.	330 g
Water	8 oz.	250 ml

1. Bring the sugar and water to a boil. Remove from the heat and refrigerate until needed.

PÂTE À CIGARETTE BATTER

Yield: 26 oz. (750 g)

Butter	6 oz.	180 g
Confectioners' sugar	7 oz.	210 g
Vanilla extract	1 tsp.	5 ml
Egg whites	6 oz.	180 g
Bread flour, sifted	7 oz.	210 g

1. Cream the butter and sugar. Slowly add the vanilla and egg whites.
2. Add the flour and mix until smooth. Refrigerate before using.
3. The batter may be colored with food color. Use a stencil to form the desired shape on a silicone baking mat.
4. Bake at 325°F (160°C) until lightly colored. Cool completely, then store at room temperature in an airtight container.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (28-g) serving: **Calories** 109, **Total fat** 5 g, **Saturated fat** 3 g, **Cholesterol** 14 mg, **Sodium** 65 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 14 g, **Protein** 1.5 g

RECIPE 34.34

CHOCOLATE HAZELNUT MARQUIS WITH FRANGELICO SAUCE

Yield: 12 Servings

Dark chocolate	1 lb.	500 g
Unsalted butter	4 oz.	120 g
Hazelnuts, roasted, skinned and chopped coarse	4 oz.	120 g
Eggs, separated	6	6
Frangelico (hazelnut liqueur)	2 oz.	60 ml
Salt	pinch	pinch
Frangelico Sauce (recipe follows)	as needed	as needed
Hazelnuts, roasted and chopped coarse	as needed	as needed
Raspberries	as needed	as needed
Mint	as needed	as needed

1. Line a terrine mold with melted butter and parchment paper.
2. Melt the chocolate and butter over a bain marie. Remove from the heat and stir in the nuts, egg yolks and hazelnut liqueur. Set aside to cool to room temperature, but do not use an ice bath as the chocolate will solidify.
3. Whip the egg whites with the salt until stiff but not dry. Fold the whipped whites into the chocolate mixture.
4. Pour the mixture into the terrine mold and freeze overnight.
5. Remove the marquis from the mold and peel off the paper. (Work quickly because this melts quickly.) While still frozen, use a hot knife to slice the loaf into 1/3-inch (8-millimeter) thick slices. Return the marquis to freeze until just before service.
6. Serve two slices on a pool of frangelico sauce. Garnish with coarsely chopped hazelnuts, fresh raspberries and mint.

Continued

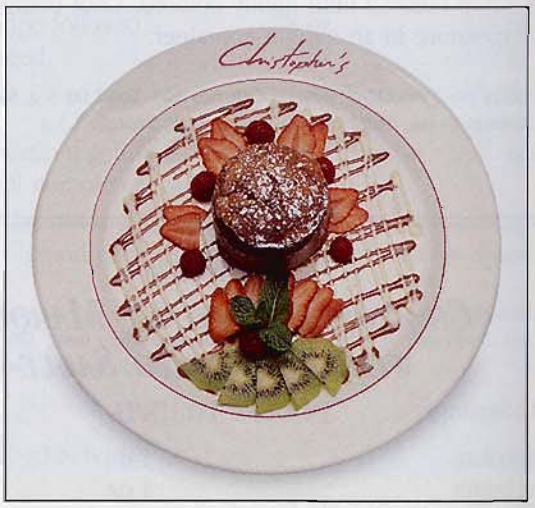
FOR THE FRANGELICO SAUCE: Prepare a crème anglaise (Recipe 34.1), omitting the vanilla bean. Stir in 1/2 teaspoon (2 milliliters) vanilla and 2–3 tablespoons (30–45 milliliters) of Frangelico, to taste.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 380, **Total fat** 28 g, **Saturated fat** 14 g, **Cholesterol** 125 mg, **Sodium** 35 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 25 g, **Protein** 6 g, **Vitamin A** 10%

RECIPE 34.35

HOT AND COLD CHOCOLATE

Chef Christopher Gross, PHOENIX, AZ



Yield: 1 Serving

Chocolate Ice Cream (recipe follows)	1 portion
Chocolate Tart Batter (recipe follows)	1 portion
Espresso Sauce (recipe follows)	as needed
Dark Chocolate Sauce (recipe follows)	as needed

1. Mold the chocolate ice cream in a 3-inch (7.5-centimeter) diameter ring mold and refreeze.
2. Coat another ring mold with melted butter or pan release spray and place on a sheet pan lined with parchment paper. Fill this ring with the Chocolate Tart batter to a depth of 1 inch (2.5 centimeters).
3. Bake the tart batter at 375°F (190°C) for 3 minutes. The center should still be liquid.
4. Unmold the circle of ice cream in the center of a chilled plate. Carefully unmold the hot chocolate tart and place it on top of the ice cream. Decorate the plate with Espresso and Dark Chocolate Sauces and serve immediately.

CHOCOLATE ICE CREAM

Yield: 10 Servings

Egg yolks	5	5
Granulated sugar	5 oz.	150 g
Cocoa powder	1 1/2 oz.	45 g

Milk	1 pt.	500 ml
Heavy cream	3 oz.	90 g
Semi-sweet chocolate, chopped	4 oz.	120 g

1. Whisk the egg yolks, sugar and cocoa together.
2. Combine the milk and cream and bring to a boil. Temper the egg mixture with a portion of the hot milk; return the mixture to the saucepan and continue cooking, stirring constantly, until the custard thickens.
3. Remove from the heat and add the chocolate. Stir until the chocolate melts, then strain and chill.
4. Process the custard in an ice cream maker according to the manufacturer's directions.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 230, **Total fat** 12 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 125 mg, **Sodium** 35 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 26 g, **Protein** 5 g, **Vitamin A** 10%

CHOCOLATE TART BATTER

Yield: 10 Servings

Eggs	5	5
Granulated sugar	6 1/2 oz.	195 g
Unsalted butter, melted	5 oz.	150 g
Dark chocolate, melted	5 oz.	150 g
Pastry flour	1 1/4 oz.	38 g

1. Whisk the eggs and sugar together until thick. Stir in the melted butter and chocolate then fold in the flour.
2. Allow the batter to rest at room temperature for approximately 1 hour before baking.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 310, **Total fat** 19 g, **Saturated fat** 11 g, **Cholesterol** 135 mg, **Sodium** 35 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 30 g, **Protein** 4 g, **Vitamin A** 15%

ESPRESSO AND DARK CHOCOLATE SAUCES

Yield: 6 oz. (180 g) of Each Sauce

Heavy cream	8 oz.	250 g
Vanilla bean	1/2	1/2
Espresso beans	2 oz.	60 g
Egg yolks	4	4
Dark chocolate, chopped	2 oz.	60 g

1. Combine the cream, vanilla bean and espresso beans in a saucepan and bring to a boil.
2. Whisk the egg yolks together in a mixing bowl and temper with one third of the hot cream.
3. Return the egg-and-cream mixture to the remaining cream and continue cooking, stirring constantly, until thick. Strain.
4. Divide the espresso sauce in half while still warm. Add the chocolate to one half of the warm sauce and stir until melted.

Approximate values per serving: **Calories** 110, **Total fat** 10 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 95 mg, **Sodium** 10 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 3 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Vitamin A** 10%

RECIPE 34.36

Butterscotch Sauce

Yield: 2 qt. (2 lt)

Granulated sugar	1 lb. 8 oz.	720 g
Light corn syrup	2 lb. 4 oz.	1 kg
Unsalted butter	4 oz.	120 g
Heavy cream	10 oz.	300 g
Scotch	4 oz.	120 g

1. Cook the sugar to a dark brown caramel. Add the corn syrup.
2. Remove the sugar from the heat and slowly add the butter and the cream, stirring until the butter is completely melted.
3. Stir in the Scotch and cool.

Approximate values per 1-fl.-oz. (35-g) serving: **Calories** 120, **Total fat** 3 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 23 mg, **Sodium** 20 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 23 g, **Protein** 0 g, **Vitamin A** 4%, **Claims**—low fat; low cholesterol; very low sodium

RECIPE 34.37

Chocolate Fudge Sauce

Yield: 1 gl. (4 lt)

Heavy cream	2 qt.	2 lt
Light corn syrup	6 oz.	180 g
Granulated sugar	8 oz.	225 g
Bittersweet chocolate	4 lb.	2 kg

1. Combine the cream, corn syrup and sugar in a saucepan and bring just to a boil, stirring frequently.
2. Chop the chocolate and place in a large bowl.
3. Pour the hot cream over the chocolate and stir until completely melted.
4. Store well covered and refrigerated. Gently rewarm over a bain marie if desired.

Approximate values per 1-oz. (29-g) serving: **Calories** 130, **Total fat** 9 g, **Saturated fat** 6 g, **Cholesterol** 20 mg, **Sodium** 10 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 10 g, **Protein** 1 g, **Vitamin A** 6%

RECIPE 34.38

Espresso Sauce

Chef Christopher Gross, Phoenix, AZ

Yield: 1 1/2 pt. (700 ml)

Egg yolks	8	8
Granulated sugar	3 1/2 oz.	100 g
Half-and-half	1 pt.	450 ml
Espresso beans	3 oz.	90 g
Vanilla bean	1/2	1/2

1. Whisk the egg yolks and sugar together in a medium bowl.
2. Bring the half-and-half, espresso beans and vanilla bean to a simmer in a heavy saucepan.
3. Temper the egg yolks with a portion of the hot half-and-half, then return the mixture to the saucepan. Cook over low heat, stirring constantly, until the sauce is thick enough to coat the back of a spoon. Strain and cool over an ice bath.

Approximate values per 1-fl.-oz. (32-g) serving: **Calories** 60, **Total fat** 4 g, **Saturated fat** 2 g, **Cholesterol** 75 mg, **Sodium** 10 mg, **Total carbohydrates** 5 g, **Protein** 2 g, **Vitamin A** 6%

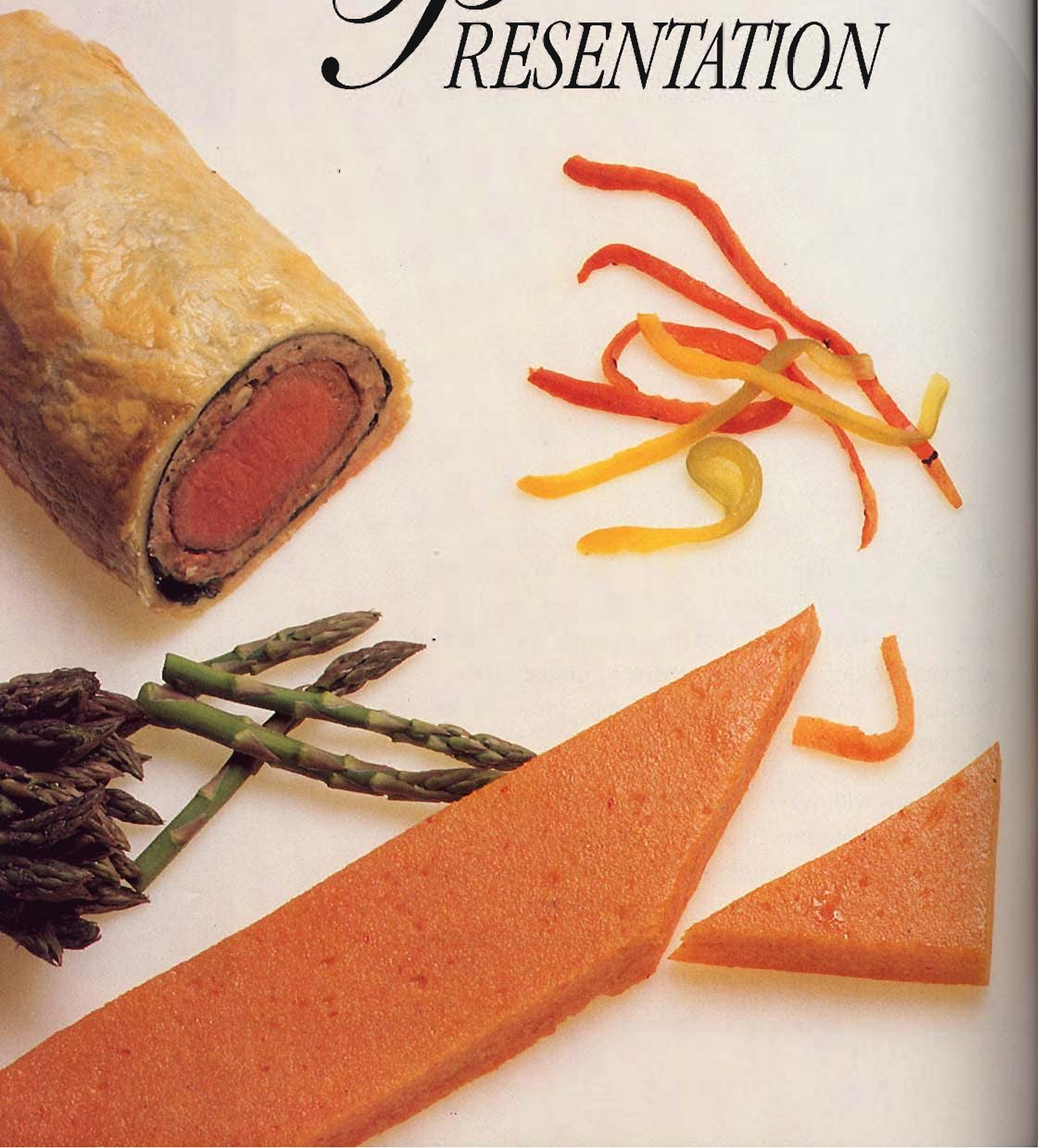
Part Six
Presentation

Finally, the real test has come. It is time to put down the spatula and set the whisk aside. The food must be served. But it is important that the creativity and skill that went into cooking, baking or otherwise preparing the foods are not wasted because of a sloppy presentation or an unattractive setting.

Part VI deals with ways of presenting food. It begins with a chapter on plate presentation, in which we demonstrate simple, yet effective techniques for making foods visually appealing. It concludes with a chapter on buffet presentation, in which we discuss guidelines for creatively arranging and properly maintaining buffets.

CHAPTER 35

PLATE PRESENTATION



After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- understand the basic principles of plate presentation
- use a variety of techniques to add visual appeal to plated foods

While food preparation is very much a science, food presentation is an art. Good plate presentation results from careful attention to the colors, shapes, textures and arrangements of the foods. Great plate presentation requires experience and style.

In this chapter, we describe several methods of presenting foods. We realize that for every guideline we suggest, there are exceptions. Nor are our examples meant to take the place of more traditional techniques. They are intended only to spark your imagination. As you gain experience, you will undoubtedly develop your own style.

The final step in food preparation is to justify the hours of hard work spent cooking the food by serving and presenting it properly.

Service is the process of delivering the selected foods to diners in the proper fashion. Hot foods should be served very hot and on heated plates; cold foods should be served very cold and on chilled plates. Foods should be cooked to the proper degree of doneness: A roast rack of lamb ordered medium rare should be medium rare—not medium, not rare. Pasta should be served al dente—slightly chewy, not mushy. Bread should be fresh, not stale. Portion sizes should be appropriate. First courses and appetizers should be small enough so that the diner can still appreciate the courses that follow. Rich foods should be served in smaller portions than other foods.

Presentation is the process of offering the selected foods to diners in a fashion that is visually pleasing. When presenting foods, always bear in mind that diners eat first with their eyes and then with their mouths. The foods must be pleasantly and appropriately colored, cut or molded. And the colors, textures, shapes and arrangements of all foods must work together to form a pleasing composition on the plate. Any decorative touches such as the manipulation of sauces or the addition of garnishes should be done thoughtfully and well. Most important, plates should be neat and clean. Inspect all plates before they leave the kitchen; wipe drops of sauce or specks of food from their rims with a clean towel.

Presentation techniques are divided here into two broad categories: those applied to specific foods and those applied to the plate as a whole. Most of the techniques and concepts described here are illustrated with foods or recipes that appear elsewhere in the text.

The Food

The most attractive foods will always be the ones that are properly prepared, but they can be made even more attractive by cutting or molding them into various shapes. Both of these techniques preserve the integrity of the food; that is, neither changes the food itself, they only change the way the food is presented.

GARNISHES
(AN ADMITTEDLY CRANKY ADMONITION)

I am a strong believer in the simple, edible garnish that has a close flavor kinship to the dish. In my world, dyed daikon flamingos, writhing carrot dragons, and blinking Christmas lights in the empty eye sockets of a stir-fried lobster—all garnishes of the Hong Kong sort—are out. So, too, are radish flowers, tomato rosettes, and vegetable pellets sculpted to look like suppositories. I find all of this loathsome.

In my own rather minimalist style, the fanciest I get is an occasional scallion brush. Otherwise, a leggy piece of coriander or a flourish of scallion rings are all that our already colorful dishes require. Or, if the dish is green, a confetti of finely diced red bell pepper will do the job.

The issue is a visible one, but it needs to make sense on your tongue. A garnish is primarily designed to tickle the eye, but it also should meld seamlessly with the other flavors on the plate or contrast with them in a meaningful way.

Garnishing the rims of plates—a current feature of trendy restaurants in the 90s—is something I find very peculiar. I spill and splatter my own food quite nicely, thank you, and don't want the kitchen to do it for me.

Ditto the rage for a whole chive aloft each appetizer or a cage of spun sugar looming above a dessert. It is admittedly wonderful to give a little height to a dish: One can arrange cold shrimp, for example, in a lively tumble with just a touch or two. But the unrelated vertical garnish is often absurd, a bit of Dr. Seuss on the plate.

I sound cranky, and perhaps I am! Restaurant cooks frequently spend too much time decorating their food, and too little time paying attention to its taste. This, I think, is sad.

—from CHINA MOON COOKBOOK
by BARBARA TROPP

Preparing Foods Properly

Foods look best when prepared properly. A sirloin steak grilled medium rare should be pink inside; its surface should glisten and be branded with well-defined and neatly executed hatch marks. When serving asparagus with hollandaise, the stalks should be bright green and crisp looking; the hollandaise sauce should be smooth and shiny, not grainy and dingy. A lemon meringue pie should be attractively browned on top; the filling should be a true lemony yellow and the crust golden brown and without cracks.

Whether a recipe calls for browning foods under a salamander before service, poaching a galantine of chicken wrapped in cheesecloth to maintain its shape or adding vinegar when braising red cabbage, proper cooking procedures can enhance the texture, shape and color of many cooked foods. Throughout this text, we have discussed the proper cooking procedures for many, many foods. Use them.

Cutting Foods

The careful cutting of foods often increases their visual appeal and reflects the chef's attention to detail. Here we distinguish between cutting foods to decorate the plate and cutting the foods to be consumed. Decorative garnishes such as tomato and radish roses, frizzed scallions, watermelon boats and the like fall within the former category. Cutting foods into beautiful garnishes is an art unto itself, requiring skill and practice. Although beyond the scope of this text, books on creating food garnishes are listed in the Bibliography.

The latter category includes the meats, poultry, fish, shellfish, vegetables and starches that are the meal. Each should be carefully cut. Vegetables can be cut into uniform shapes and sizes such as julienne, batonnet or tourné. If serving sliced meats or poultry, the slices should be of even thickness; fish can be cut into tranches. Individual stew ingredients and soup or salad garnishes should be of uniform sizes. All these techniques are simple, fundamental and effective.

Some foods take the shape of the pan in which they are cooked. Polenta and gratin or escalloped potatoes, for example, can be presented attractively

when baked in and removed from individual casseroles, or they can be baked in a hotel pan and then cut into various shapes.

Procedure for Cutting Polenta

1. Cook the polenta according to the recipe. When it is done, pour it onto a well-oiled or buttered half sheet pan. Then chill it in the refrigerator until firm.
2. Once the polenta is firm, flip the pan over onto a work table. Lift off the pan; the polenta will come out easily. Using a chef's knife or circular cutters, cut the polenta into the desired shape. The polenta can be sautéed or grilled for service.

Cutting polenta into various shapes.

Procedure for Cutting Gratin or Escalloped Potatoes

1. Select a recipe that produces a firm finished product so that the finished dish will hold its shape after cutting.
2. Bake the potatoes in a well-greased hotel pan and refrigerate until cold and firm. Then cut the potatoes into various shapes with a chef's knife or circular cutters and remove them to a clean pan with a spatula.
3. For service, reheat the potatoes in a 325°F (160°C) oven until hot.

Cutting potatoes with a circular cutter.

Molding Foods

Some foods, particularly grains or vegetables bound by sauces, can be molded into attractive, hard-edged shapes by using metal rings, circular cutters or other forms. These molded forms create height and keep the plate neat and clean.

Procedure for Molding Grains

1. Fill a timbale, soup cup or other mold of the appropriate size and shape with the hot grains, firmly pressing them together.

2. For à la carte service, immediately unmold the grains onto the serving plate by placing the mold upside down on the plate and tapping its rim.
3. For banquet service, place the filled molds in a hotel pan and refrigerate until needed. Shortly before service, fill the hotel pan with hot water to a point about two thirds up the side of the molds. Be careful not to splash any water onto the grains. Cover the pan with foil and place in the oven. Heat until the grains are hot, then plate as desired.

Unmolding a timbale of rice.

Procedure for Molding Vegetables

1. Position a ring mold on the plate and fill it with the vegetables. Press the foods into the ring to help them hold the shape. Level the top.

2. Carefully lift off the ring.

The Plate

Properly cooked, carefully cut and appropriately molded foods should not be haphazardly slapped onto a plate. Rather, you should choose and position the foods carefully to achieve a plate presentation with a balanced, harmonious **composition**.

The composition can be further enhanced by decorating the plate with garnishes, crumbs or sauces. Some of these techniques (for example, decorating the plate with powdered sugar) do not substantially affect the flavors of the foods, they only make the completed presentation more attractive. Other techniques (for example, garnishing a dessert with finely chopped nuts or painting a plate with two sauces) add flavor and texture to the finished dish.

Composition—*a completed plate's structure of colors, textures, shapes and arrangements.*

Choosing Plates

Restaurant china is available in many different shapes, sizes, colors and patterns. It is often the chef's responsibility to choose the appropriate piece of china for a particular dish.

Sizes and Shapes

Most plates are round, but oval plates, often referred to as platters, are becoming more common. Plates are available in a variety of sizes from a small 4-inch (10-centimeter) bread plate to a huge 14-inch (35-centimeter) charger or base plate. Plates are typically concave; their depths vary within a limited range of about 1 inch (2.5 centimeters). Most plates have rims; rim diameters also vary. Soup bowls can be rimmed or rimless. Soup plates are usually larger and shallower than soup bowls and have wide rims. Soup cups are also available. There are also dozens of plate designs intended for a specific purpose, such as plates with small indentations for holding escargots, or long, rectangular plates with grooves for holding asparagus.

Chewy Date Bars with Caramel Ice Cream

Choose plates large enough to hold the food comfortably without overcrowding or spilling. Oversized, rimmed soup plates are becoming quite popular for serving any food with a sauce. Be careful when using oversized plates, however, as the food may look sparse, creating poor value perception.

Whether you choose a round, oval or less conventionally shaped plate, be sure to choose one with a size and shape that best highlights the food and supports the composition. For example, in the photograph to the left, the rectangular dish with round corners and raised rim accentuates the geometrically simple yet effective composition of the square date bar and spherical scoop of ice cream.

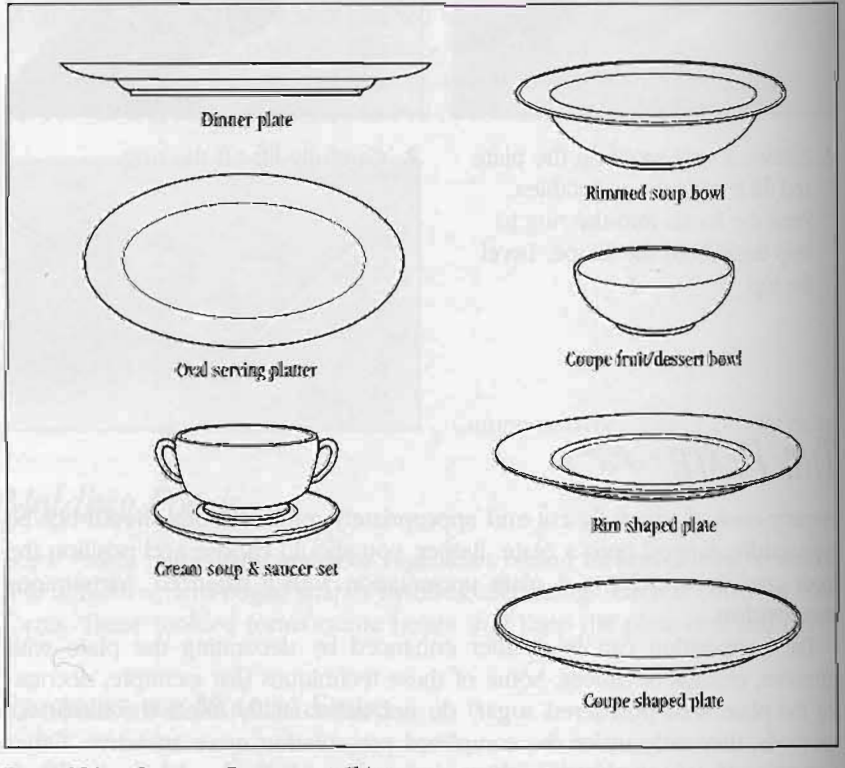


FIGURE 35.1 *Common Restaurant China*

Colors and Patterns

White and cream are by far the most common colors for restaurant china. Almost any food looks good on these neutral colors.

Colored and patterned plates can be used quite effectively to accent food, however. The obvious choice is to contrast dark plates with bright- or light-colored foods and light plates with dark-colored foods.

The food should always be the focal point of any plate. Be careful in selecting restaurant china with intricate designs and brightly colored patterns that can conflict or compete with the colors, shapes and arrangements of the foods. The colors and shapes in the pattern should blend well and harmonize with the foods served. The swirling patterns of blues, grays, pinks and yellows along the plate rim shown to the right, for example, harmonize well with the colors of the salmon blini, stuffed squash blossoms and their accompaniments.

Salmon Blini with Stuffed Squash Blossoms

Arranging Foods on Plates

You should strive for a well-balanced plate composition. This can be achieved by carefully considering colors, textures, shapes and arrangements.

Colors

Foods come in a rainbow of colors and to the extent appropriate, foods of different colors should be presented together. Generally, the colors should provide balance and contrast. But no matter how well prepared or planned, some dishes simply have dull, boring or similar colors. If so, try adding another ingredient or garnish for a splash of color. The vivid red lobster claws and the shiny black mussel shells shown here add striking color notes to a paella dish that would otherwise be dominated by yellow rice, tan chicken, brown sausages and gray clam shells.

Paella

Textures

Visual texture refers to how smooth or rough, coarse or fine a food looks. Mashed potatoes and carrot purée both look smooth and soft. Salmon mousseline and spinach soufflé both have slightly grainy surfaces. Rösti potatoes and meatloaf both appear coarse. The flavors of each food in these pairs differ; their visual textures do not.

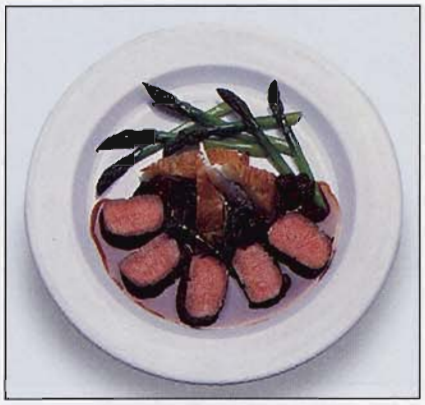
Typically, foods with similar textures look boring together; foods with different textures look more exciting. Serve carrots cut julienne with the mashed potatoes to achieve a balance of hard and soft textures; steamed leaf spinach with the salmon mousseline for a combination of smooth and grainy textures; and a baked potato with the meatloaf for pairing fluffy and coarse textures. These pairs generally maintain the same range of flavors as the first set of pairs while providing different visual textures.

The cassoulet shown to the right harmoniously combines several textures in one dish: the pebbly beans, the slices of smooth slab bacon and coarse sausage and the bumpy skin of the duck leg. Indeed, the variation in textures is so dramatic and appealing that many diners may not even notice that all the principal ingredients are essentially the same color.

Cassoulet

Shapes

For a more dramatic presentation, combine foods with different shapes on one plate. The plate shown on the next page is an excellent example of simple shapes artfully combined: ovals of evenly sliced lamb loin with cleanly cut tri-



Lamb Loin with Rösti Potatoes

angles of crisp potatoes and long, thin spears of asparagus. The three very different shapes lend contrast and character to the dish.

Arrangements

Having decided on the colors, textures and shapes of the foods that will go on the plate, you must next decide where to place each individual item to achieve a balanced and unified composition. Mostly this takes judgment and style, but there are a few general guidelines.

Guidelines for Arranging Foods on a Plate

1. Strike a balance between overcrowding the plate and leaving large gaps of space. Foods should not touch the plate rim nor necessarily be confined to the very center.
2. Choose a focal point for the plate—that is, the point to which the eye is drawn. This is usually the highest point on the plate. Design the plate with the highest point to the rear or center. Avoid placing foods of equal heights around the edge of the plate leaving a hole in the center—the eye will naturally be drawn to that gap.
3. The plate's composition should flow naturally. For example, make the highest point the back of the plate and have the rest of the food become gradually shorter toward the front of the plate. Slicing and fanning foods can attract the eye and help establish flow.

The grilled duck with roasted vegetables shown here elegantly illustrates these principles. Height is established by a structure composed of the duck leg and thigh, sliced turnips and baby carrots. The structure sits toward the back of the plate. Its height, placement and striking appearance make it the focal point. The neatly sliced duck breast is then fanned across the plate in front of this focal point, drawing the viewer into the plate.

Grilled Duck with Roasted Vegetables

Decorating Plates

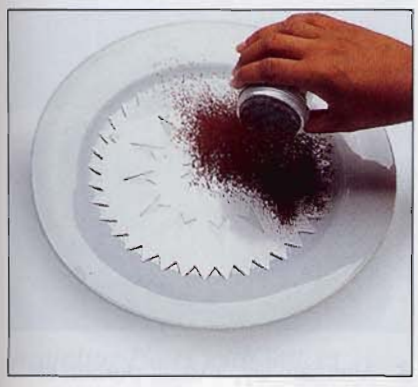
The colors, textures, shapes and arrangements of foods on a plate can be improved or highlighted by decorating a plate with herbs, spices and other garnishes, baked hippen masse dough and sauces. If any of these are to be applied after the principal food is placed on the plate, be prepared to do so quickly so that the food is served at its proper temperature.

Plate Dusting

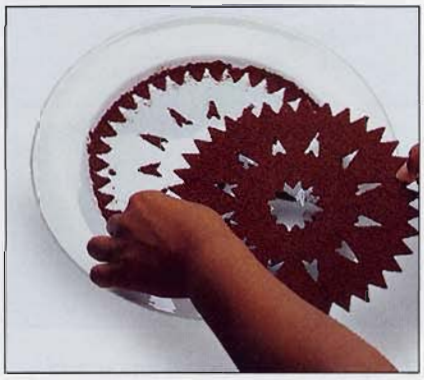
An attractive method for decorating dessert plates is to cover the entire plate with a dusting of powdered sugar, cocoa powder or both before placing the dessert on the plate. Use sugar on dark-colored plates and cocoa on light-

colored plates. These items can be dusted onto the plate with a shaker can or sifter in a free-form fashion or into any desired pattern by using a template. The template can be a doily or a stencil placed over the plate before it is dusted.

Procedure for Dusting Dessert Plates



1. Place a template over the plate. Dust the sugar or cocoa over the template.



2. Carefully remove the template.

Provided they complement the food, very finely chopped nuts can also be used to decorate plates for sweet or savory foods. See, for example, the plate of French toast garnished with chopped macadamia nuts shown here. Plates for savory foods can be decorated in a similar fashion by sprinkling them with finely chopped herbs such as thyme or minced vegetables such as a combination of brightly colored peppers.

French toast garnished with powdered sugar and chopped nuts.

Garnishing Plates with Herbs

Using fresh herbs is one of the easiest ways to add color, texture and flow to a plate. Whether the herb is an ingredient in the dish or merely a decoration, it should always complement the foods and be consistent with their seasonings. A sprig of fresh rosemary garnishing a beautifully roasted rack of lamb, or tiny leaves of chervil garnishing delicately poached fillets of sole are natural combinations. Sprigs of fresh green mint (often with a fresh berry or two or a strawberry cut in a fan) are often the perfect decoration for a dessert plate.

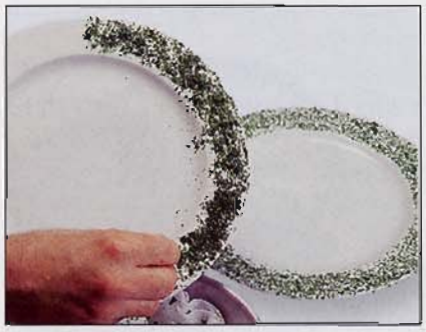
Using herbs to garnish a plate.

Garnishing Plate Rims with Herbs or Spices

Finely chopped herbs or nuts or whole or ground spices can be used to decorate plate rims. Whatever garnishing items are used, they should complement the main foods and be consistent with their seasonings.

PROCEDURE FOR GARNISHING PLATE RIMS

1. Apply a light coating of oil or softened butter to the plate rim with a pastry brush. Be careful to apply the oil or butter only where you want the herbs, spices or other garnishes to stick.



2. Sprinkle the desired amount of garnish over the oiled or buttered area. Then tip the plate to let the excess garnish fall away.

3. Alternatively, a small portion of the plate can be brushed and decorated.

Garnishing Plates with Hippen Masse

An increasingly popular presentation technique is to pipe batters into intricate designs and then bake them to form crisp, rigid, cookielike garnishes. These garnishes are then used to create height and add texture.

RECIPE 35.1

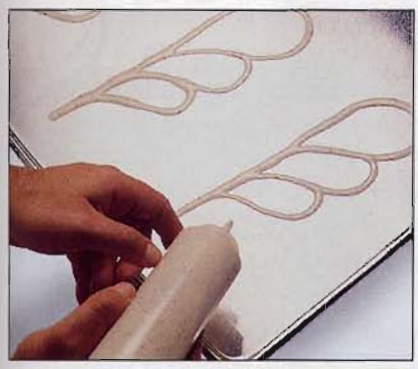
SAVORY HIPPEN MASSE

ARIZONA BILTMORE, PHOENIX, AZ

Yield: 1 lb. (450 g)

Egg whites, room temperature	8 oz.	250 g
Wondra flour	4 oz.	120 g
Heavy cream	3 oz.	90 ml
Granulated sugar	1 oz.	30 g
Salt and white pepper	TT	TT
Dried thyme, crushed	1 tsp.	5 ml

1. Stir the egg whites together to blend. Stir in all the flour at once.
2. Blend in the heavy cream, then add the remaining ingredients.
3. Strain the batter through a china cap and allow to rest for 30 minutes.
4. Lightly oil the back of a very flat sheet pan. Pipe the hippen masse onto the pan using a plastic squeeze bottle. Pipe the batter into decorative patterns appropriate for the desired plate presentation.
5. Bake at 375°F (190°C) until set and lightly browned. Remove from the oven, then remove the decorations from the sheet pan while still slightly warm.



1. Piping the batter onto an oiled sheet pan.

2. Using the baked batter as a component when composing a plate.

Decorating Plates with Sauces

The sauce is an integral part of most any dish: It adds flavor and moisture; it also adds color, texture and flow to the plate. A rich, glossy bordelaise or Madeira sauce pooled beneath sautéed tournedos of beef is a classic example. A chunky salsa of tomatoes, papaya and pineapple beneath a juicy piece of grilled salmon is a more contemporary approach.

Sauces are also used in other, less traditional ways to add visual appeal. For example, if using a vinaigrette dressing for grilled foods, let the oil and vinegar separate and pool on the plate, creating the interesting effect shown opposite.

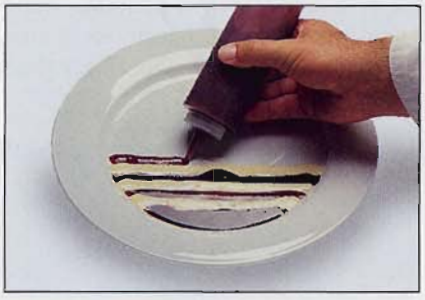
One or more colored sauces can also be used to paint plates. One technique is simply to drizzle or splatter the sauce onto the plate. In the photograph shown below, the sauce boldly splattered across the plate is the same rich magenta beet vinaigrette as that pooled beneath the sea bass; the plate's drama is heightened by the contrasting tomato ovals and potato spikes.

Grilled Quail with Balsamic Raspberries

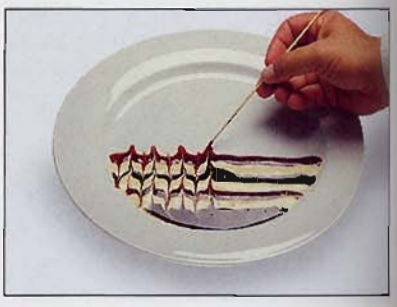
Pan-seared Sea Bass with Beet Vinaigrette

Alternatively, one or more colored sauces can be applied to a plate using squirt bottles to create abstract patterns or representational designs. Painting plates with different-colored sauces also facilitates flow and adds color. Although this technique can be used with hot sauces, it is more often used with cold sauces (such as vanilla, caramel, chocolate and fruit-flavored ones) for dessert presentations. The sauces must be thick enough to hold the pattern once it is created, and they should all be the same viscosity.

Procedure for Painting a Design with Sauces



1. Apply the sauces to the plate in parallel lines of alternating colors.

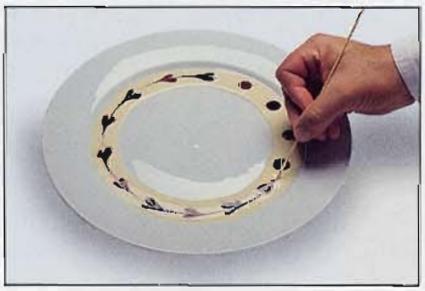


2. Carefully pull a toothpick through the sauces, perpendicular to the parallel lines in the sauces.

Procedure for Painting a Spider Web Design

1. Pool one sauce evenly across the entire base of the plate, then apply a contrasting sauce onto the base sauce in a spiral.

2. Draw a thin-bladed knife or a toothpick through the sauces from the center point toward the edge. Then, leaving a half inch (1.2 centimeter) space along the edge, draw a knife blade or toothpick from the edge to the center.



Other patterns can be produced by squirting the sauces onto the plate in different patterns or by pulling the knife or toothpick through the sauces in different directions. As shown to the left, a circle of chocolate-sauce dots in a pool of vanilla sauce is pulled to create a leaf wreath.

Conclusion

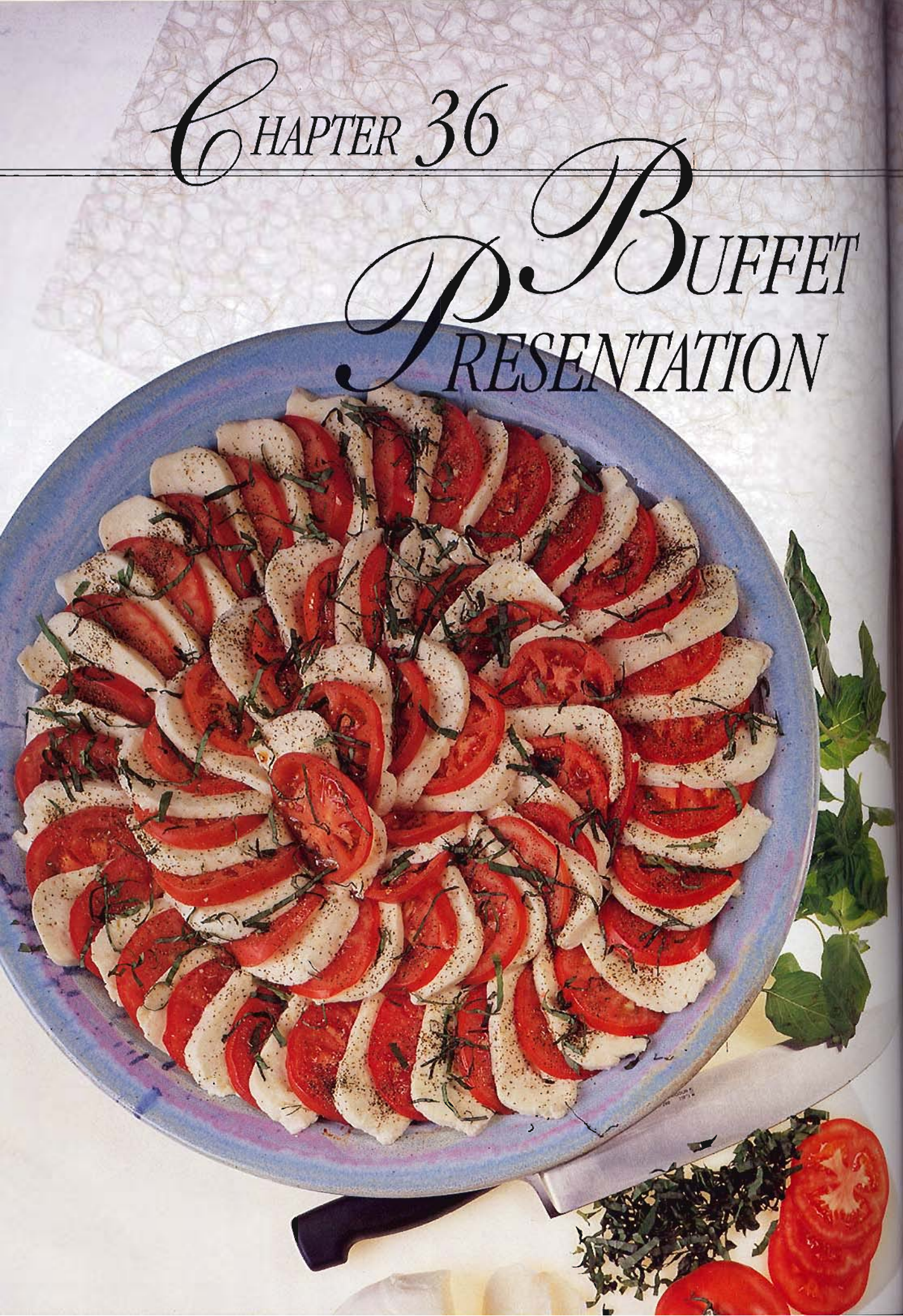
Although the techniques described in this chapter—as well as many other ones—can be used to create a variety of effects, often the most elegant plates are those with the simplest designs. Thoughtful presentation improves the appeal and appearance of any food as well as the completed plate, but it cannot mask poor-quality, poorly prepared or bland-tasting foods.

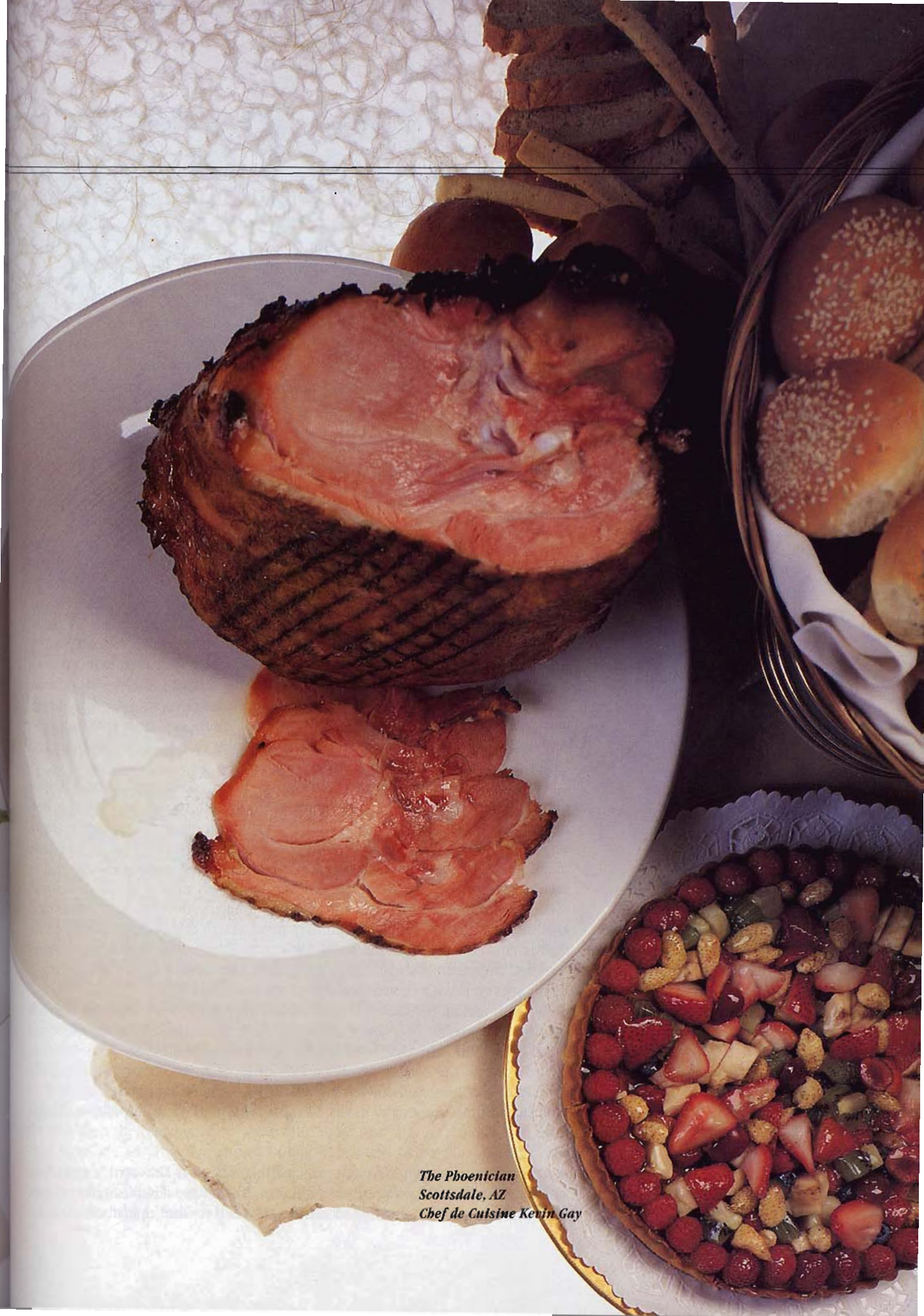
QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

1. Explain why proper service and presentation are important in food service operations.
2. Distinguish between cutting and molding foods for visual appeal and creating garnishes out of foods.
3. How can the selection of service ware such as bowls and platters affect the visual appeal of the foods served?
4. List and describe four techniques for garnishing plates.
5. Describe how color, texture, shape and arrangement can be used to create a well-balanced plate composition.

Chapter 36

Buffet Presentation





The Phoenician
Scottsdale, AZ
Chef de Cuisine Kevin Gay

After studying this chapter, you will be able to:

- understand the basic principles of buffet presentation
- use a variety of techniques to create and maintain appealing buffets

A buffet offers diners all the dishes from a selected menu, usually at one time, in a single, attractive setting. A buffet offers food service professionals the opportunity to exercise their creativity by identifying themes and then creating menus, displays and decorations with these themes in mind.

In this chapter, we use the word buffet *to describe both the event where all the dishes from a menu are served at once as well as the table on which these foods are displayed and from which diners serve themselves or are served by wait staff. Buffet foods can be, virtually, any of those found in this book.*

PLANNING THE BUFFET

Buffets must be carefully designed to provide foods from a planned menu in an attractive fashion to a given number of people within a specified time. Doing this well requires a collaborative effort among the chef, the catering sales staff and the dining room manager, banquet manager or other senior front-of-the-house staff. Together, they identify the theme for the event and choose the menu. If the event is designed for a specific client, then the client should be invited to join in the planning.

The **theme** sets the tone of the event; it defines a motif: an elegant Sunday brunch, a black-and-white formal, a Mexican fiesta, a Hawaiian luau. Regardless of the purpose for the event—a wedding, bar mitzvah, business luncheon, charity ball or the like—the theme defines the menu, decorations, props, linens and dinnerware; it can even define the music, lighting and wait staff uniforms. In Figures 36.1 through 36.4, we present examples of menus, decorations and buffet plans for various themed events.

Once the theme is identified, a **menu** is designed. Essentially, a lunch or dinner buffet offers an à la carte menu; the only differences are that at a buffet, the foods are presented all at once and the diners generally serve themselves or are served by wait staff stationed at the buffet table. Like an à la carte menu, the buffet menu should contain selections of first courses (soups and/or salads), entrées (hot and/or cold meat, poultry, fish and/or shellfish dishes), accompaniments (vegetables, starches and breads), desserts and beverages. Depending on the event, the menu may need to reflect particular dietary or religious concerns, such as the need for vegetarian entrées or kosher-style selections. Although costs are a consideration, the principal factors limiting a menu are the client's desires and the chef's imagination.

When planning the menu, it is important to offer dishes consistent with the theme. If the theme is a Greek wedding feast, do not offer tortilla chips and salsa. It may be necessary, however, to occasionally bend this rule in order to include one of the client's favorite foods or to offer an item not traditionally associated with the theme, such as beef at a Hawaiian luau.

It is also important to consider visual appeal and avoid repetition. Therefore:

- Offer dishes featuring different principal ingredients—This avoids repetition and offers diners a wider array of choices. Even fussy diners should be able to find something they want to eat. Therefore, if the buffet features two

KEEPING KOSHER

To one degree or another, many observant Jews keep kosher; that is, they adhere to dietary laws rooted in the Torah (the first five books of the Old Testament) and developed over the centuries by Jewish scholars. These laws (1) categorize foods, and (2) define basic dietary principles.

Kosher Foods: Only meat from animals that chew their cud and have split hooves can be eaten. These include cattle, goats, deer and other game; swine are not a kosher species. Poultry can be kosher, provided it is not from a bird of prey; thus, chicken, duck, goose and turkey are allowed, hawk and eagle are not. Even if the species is kosher, the animal must still be slaughtered and butchered according to religious rules. For fish to be kosher, it must have both scales and gills; this eliminates catfish and eel, and no shellfish can be kosher. Dairy products are kosher if the species from which they come is kosher; for cheese to be kosher, it must be made without rennet. Fresh fruits and vegetables are always kosher, as are baked goods, provided they are not made with animal fats. Commercially prepared foods marked with Ⓤ, Ⓚ or a similar symbol indicates that the food product is kosher, the producer having used appropriate ingredients and met certain standards and its facilities having been inspected and approved by a rabbi.

Kosher Dietary Principles: All foods are either: (1) meat, (2) dairy, or (3) pareve (parve). The principal dietary rule for keeping kosher is that meat and dairy foods cannot be cooked or eaten together. Over the centuries, this rule has been refined to the point that people keeping kosher will have two sets of cooking utensils, dishes and even dishcloths, one devoted to meat, the other to dairy, so that there is no accidental mixing. Particularly observant Jews will even wait for one to six hours after eating a meat dish before consuming a dairy dish. Pareve refers to neutral (neuter) foods such as fruits, vegetables, breads, fish, eggs and certain commercially prepared foods that can be eaten with either meat or dairy items.

Not all Jews keep strictly kosher. For those who do, they will dine out only in a restaurant that regularly observes the same religious laws that they do at home or in one that has been specially inspected and approved by a rabbi for the particular occasion (an option often used by catering facilities to accommodate kosher wedding, bar mitzvah, bat mitzvah and other Jewish celebrations). Other Jews will keep kosher by not eating any shellfish, any meat, poultry or fish from nonkosher species or mixing dairy and meat, but they will not insist that separate meat and dairy cooking and eating utensils be used. They will generally dine in nonkosher restaurants, provided that the menu (sometimes referred to as "kosher-style") offers appropriate selections from kosher species.

entrées, make one beef and the other poultry; if there is a third, use fish or shellfish. If there are two starch dishes, make one a pasta and the other a potato dish. Also, avoid repeating ingredients in different dishes; for example, if the entrée is a stir fry of beef and broccoli, do not offer steamed broccoli as a vegetable side dish.

- Offer foods cooked by different methods—For example, serve beef bourguignon (a hot braised meat dish), roast turkey (a hot or cold roasted poultry dish) and salmon with dill sauce (a cold poached fish dish). Again, this avoids repetition.
- Offer foods with different colors—Fettuccine Alfredo and poached fish in a béarnaise sauce may both taste good, but they look boring next to each other. Instead, offer a tomato and bell pepper salsa instead of the béarnaise sauce, or a pasta primavera in place of the Alfredo. This will increase the buffet's visual appeal.
- Offer foods with different textures—If two or more soups are served, make one a clear soup and the other a cream or purée soup; use a variety of tossed and bound salads, each with different principal ingredients.

When defining the theme and creating the menu, costs must be considered. Often a client will place a limit on what he or she wants to spend for the buffet. It is then the responsibility of the chef, sales staff and/or dining room manager to create an attractive and satisfying buffet that meets this budget, while providing a reasonable profit to the food service operation. One typical method of meeting these sometimes conflicting needs is to plan a menu that balances both high end and less expensive items.

DESIGNING THE BUFFET

After the theme is set, members of the planning group should study the room, garden, patio or other space where the event will be held. They need to allocate space for the buffet table(s), the dining tables and, depending on the function, one or more bars, a dance floor, a stage for musicians, a podium for speakers, audiovisual equipment for presentations and so on. When doing so, common sense should be used: The buffet should be in an area with easy access to both the kitchen and the dining tables—neither the wait staff nor the diners should have to cross a dance floor or walk in front of a podium to get to the food. Similarly, a stage or podium should be within good sightlines of the dining tables.

Once the room's layout is determined, the chef and/or banquet or dining room manager decides on the shape of the buffet table. A buffet table is usually composed of one or more standard-sized tables grouped together in a functional and attractive shape. Standard table shapes and sizes are found in Table 36.1; arrangements of the various sizes and shapes are shown in Figures 36.1 though 36.4. The buffet table can then be draped with a floor-length linen tablecloth, or a tablecloth with a detachable skirt can be used. An alternative to standard-sized tables shrouded in linen is to use unique pieces of furniture

TABLE 36.1 STANDARD BUFFET TABLES

Shape	Sizes	Sizes for Tablecloths or Skirting
Rectangle	6 feet × 30 inches 8 feet × 30 inches	90 × 128 inches (floor length) 60 × 125 inches (lap length) or 90 × 153 inches (floor length)
Round	24-inch diameter 36-inch diameter 48-inch diameter 60-inch diameter 72-inch diameter	80-inch diameter (floor length) 96-inch diameter (floor length) 80 inch (lap) or 108 inch (floor) 96 inch (lap) or 120 inch (floor) 108 inch (lap) or 132 inch (floor)
Half-round	30-inch radius at 180° angle (i.e., half of a 60-inch diameter round)	160 inches of skirting
Quarter-round (wedge)	30-inch radius at 90° angle (i.e., one quarter of a 60-inch diameter round)	110 inches of skirting
Serpentine	Outside curve measures 8 feet, inside curve measures 4 feet, ends measure 30 inches (i.e., one quarter of a circle's circumference)	Specialty cloths needed

such as cabinets, sideboards, consoles, armoires, desks or other furniture, draped with linens or not.

The number of diners is a critical consideration when determining the size, arrangement and placement of the buffet table. As a general rule, no more than 100 diners should be served from a traditional single-sided hot and cold buffet (excluding stations). See Figure 36.1. But even with this limit, many guests will still have to wait on line, although their wait should not be excessive.

Several techniques can be used to serve large groups efficiently. One option is to use a double-sided buffet line. On a double-sided buffet, the same foods are served on both sides of the table. See Figure 36.2. All diners approach the table from the same direction and at the start of the buffet, the line is split, with half of the diners diverted to either side. Or a single-sided buffet can be divided into two, three or more zones, each of which offers the identical foods. See Figure 36.3. Either option requires that the buffet provide the diners with appropriate visual cues to recognize that the two sides of the table or two ends of the table are offering identical fare.

Another option for serving larger crowds is to divide the menu among various stations that are scattered throughout the room or series of rooms. See Figure 36.4. One station can be devoted to cold salads or to an elaborate display of cold fish and shellfish surrounding an ice sculpture. Another can be devoted to pasta prepared to order by a line cook assigned to the station; equipped with a portable gas or electric burner, the chef can finish precooked pasta in the diner's choice of sauce. Other stations can offer roasted meats and poultry kept warm by an infra-red heat lamp and carved to order by the station chef. See Figure 36.4.

The excitement and beauty of a well-designed buffet table depends principally on two factors: (1) the arrangement of the foods on their individual serving pieces, and (2) the arrangement of the foods and decorations on the buffet table.

Arranging Foods on Serving Pieces

The chef is responsible for determining how the foods will be arranged on their serving pieces. Most hot foods will be presented in chafing dishes while cold or room-temperature foods are usually served on trays, platters, bowls or mirrors.

Chafing dishes are metal dishes, usually rectangular or round, with a heat source (flame or electric) located beneath, which is used to keep the foods warm; the foods are usually placed in a hotel pan or other receptacle that sits inside the chafing dish above a shallow pool of hot water. Chafing dishes are usually covered in copper, silver or stainless steel.

Chafing Dish

Trays, platters and mirrors for presenting foods are available in four basic shapes: square, rectangle, round and oval. They come in a wide variety of materials, including metal (silver, copper, tin and steel), ceramics (china and earthenware), glass, mirrors (glass and acrylic), plastic, wood and stone (especially marble). The choice depends on the theme. Silver and mirror trays create a more formal feel at an event; ceramic and wood lend a more casual look.

Once the tray, platter, bowl or mirror is chosen, the chef must artfully arrange the food on it. When designing the presentation, the chef should consider:

1. Height—The eye is naturally drawn toward the highest point on a tray; typically, this will be the centerpiece. It can be a garnish or a **grosse piece**. Although it is sometimes in the center of the tray, it is more often located toward the rear, either in the middle or off to one side. Foods placed at a

Grosse piece—*a centerpiece consisting of a large piece of the principal food offered; for example, a large wheel of cheese with slices of the cheese cascading around it.*

level higher than the centerpiece usually distract from the overall appearance.

2. Pattern—Whenever possible, foods should be arranged in an interesting pattern. Three different types of canapés, each chosen for contrasting shapes, colors and textures, can march across a mirrored surface in alternating lines. Crudités can flow from baskets, hollowed squashes or bell peppers. Spirals of different pâtés can swirl around one another. Foods should generally flow toward the diner. So, stack foods higher in the center or rear of the tray so that they cascade toward the front or edges. (Trays that are higher around all the edges than in the center tend to draw the eye into the hole in the center.)
3. Color—The color of the principal foods should complement or contrast with each other. If they cannot (for example, a tray of pâtés or cheeses), they should be garnished with attractively contrasting colored foods such as fruits, vegetables and herbs.
4. Texture and shape—Try to use a variety of shapes and textures. Avoid building trays with circular slices of galantine garnished with circular liver mousse molds and round tartlets of a vegetable purée; all have the same shape and very similar textures. Instead, try molding the mousse or tartlets into different shapes or preparing a vegetable salad rather than a purée for the tartlets.
5. Negative space—This refers to the areas left unused. It is important because the space enhances the appeal of the object it surrounds and prevents overcrowding. Try leaving a border of space around the tray and some space within clusters of food on the platter.

Arranging Foods and Other Items on the Buffet Table

When designing the shape of the buffet table, the chef and/or banquet or dining room manager must also consider how the various foods, centerpieces and props will be laid out on the table. Besides color, height, shape and texture, they should consider:

1. Flow—Regardless of whether a single buffet table, a main buffet table with one or more stations or only stations are used, the foods should be placed in a logical order that affords the diner the chance to construct a meal in the same order as one that would be served to him or her. The start of the buffet line should be obvious and accessible; usually, it is near the entrance to the room.

   Typically, on a single- or double-sided buffet table, the first items offered the diner are plates. (Flatware and napkins can be located at the start or the end of the buffet or on the dining tables.) The first foods to be offered should be soups and salads. These should be followed by appetizers such as cold sliced meats, pâtés, shellfish and the like. Entrées should be next, along with their vegetable and starch accompaniments. Desserts should be the last items on the buffet. (Beverages can be available on the buffet table, at a bar, on the dining tables or offered by circulating wait staff.)

   Stations offer the designer greater flexibility. They also help minimize the line that usually forms at a single buffet table, allowing diners to go in various directions, although this can sometimes cause traffic problems. Like a single buffet table, each station can be designed so that it offers diners sufficient selections to create a complete meal. Or the stations can be arranged around a room in a sequence mirroring a meal: soups and salads

Pasta Station
The Phoenician, Scottsdale, AZ

DÉCOR

Linens: buffet and dining tables draped with floor-length colored linens, buffet table with a contrasting overlay; linen napkins in the same colors as the tablecloths and overlay.

Centerpieces: fresh flowers (tulips, mums, lilies and greenery).

Service ware: polished stainless steel or brass trays and chafing dishes; ceramic bowls.

Dinnerware: white or ivory china, stainless flatware and plain stemware.

Music: none

Wait staff uniforms: bistro attire (white button-down shirts, long tie, black pants and long aprons).

Menu

Sunset Salad of Mixed Greens,
Citrus Wedges and Crispy Tortilla Frizzles
with a Raspberry Vinaigrette

Caesar Salad with Herbed Croutons and Shredded Parmesan

Oven-Roasted Breast of Chicken with Wild Mushroom Sauce

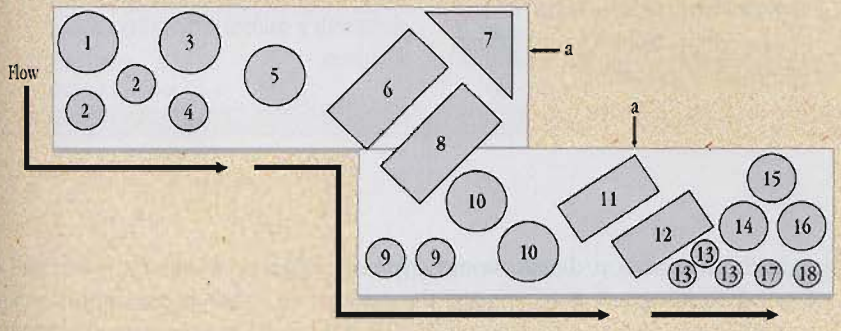
Petit Salmon Fillet on a Bed of Pineapple Papaya Salsa

Dauphine Potatoes
Medley of Zucchini, Yellow Squash and Carrots
Assorted Rolls with Sweet and Flavored Butters

White Chocolate Cheesecake
with White Chocolate Curls and Caramel Sauce
Fresh Fruit Platter
Chocolate Cabernet Torte with Raspberry Sauce

Iced Tea, Lemonade and Sparkling Water
French Roast Coffee

A SINGLE-SIDED BUFFET TO FEED 50 PEOPLE.



The key for the buffet table

a. Rectangular table, 8 feet x 30 inches
1. Basket of flatware rolled in linen napkins
2. Dinner plates
3. Sunset Salad
4. Raspberry Vinaigrette
5. Caesar Salad
6. Chafing dish of Vegetable Medley
7. Centerpiece
8. Chafing dish of Dauphine Potatoes
9. Sweet and Flavored Butters
10. Baskets of Rolls
11. Chafing dish of Chicken with Wild Mushroom Sauce
12. Chafing dish of Salmon Fillets
13. Dessert plates
14. Cheesecake
15. Fruit Platter
16. Chocolate Torte
17. Caramel Sauce for the Cheesecake
18. Raspberry Sauce for the Chocolate Torte

Note: Beverages will be in pitchers on the table and replenished by the wait staff; coffee will be offered by circulating wait staff.

FIGURE 36.1 *Business Luncheon Buffet*

Crudités of Red and Green Bell Peppers, Carrots, Cauliflower, Broccoli, Jicama and Snap Peas with Sun-Dried Tomato Dip

Tri-colored Tortilla Chips with Fresh Tomato-Cilantro Salsa, Zesty Guacamole and Sour Cream

Warm Chorizo Chili Con Queso

Petit Blue Corn and Shrimp Tamales with Cilantro Cream

Soft Tacos of Grilled Pork Loin and Marinated Boneless Chicken Breast, Served with Ancho-Chile Honey Sauce, Tomato Cilantro Salsa,

Avocado, Grated Queso Blanco and Diced Tomatoes

Goat Cheese and Green Chile Chimichangas with Roasted Habeñero Sauce

Fresh Fruit Salad of Watermelon, Honeydew, Cantaloupe, Pineapple, Papaya, Berries and Grapes with Tequila Lime Splash

Mexican Celebration Cookies

Piñon Nut Tarts

Lemon Curd Tarts

Mocha Mousse Cups with Cinnamon

Fresh Roasted Mexican Coffee

Fresh Mint Lemonade, Peach Iced Tea with Lemon and Sparkling Water

Assorted Wines and Mexican Beers

DÉCOR

Linens: buffet and dining tables draped in bright colors (yellow, orange, red, fuschia and/or turquoise) with overlays of brightly colored Mexican serapes; brightly-colored linen napkins tied with raffia.

Centerpieces: Large cacti in pots with raffia ties, surrounded with river rocks and sand.

Buffet, table and room decorations: piñatas, sombreros, fresh chiles, brightly-colored paper flowers, brightly-colored paper maché vegetables, raffia, small potted cacti in turquoise-painted terra cotta pots.

Service ware: copper or beaten tin trays, copper chafing dishes, wooden or earthenware bowls and platters.

Dinnerware: brightly-colored china (red, yellow and/or turquoise), hammered stainless steel flatware and Mexican green or blue glass stemware.

Music: strolling mariachi band.

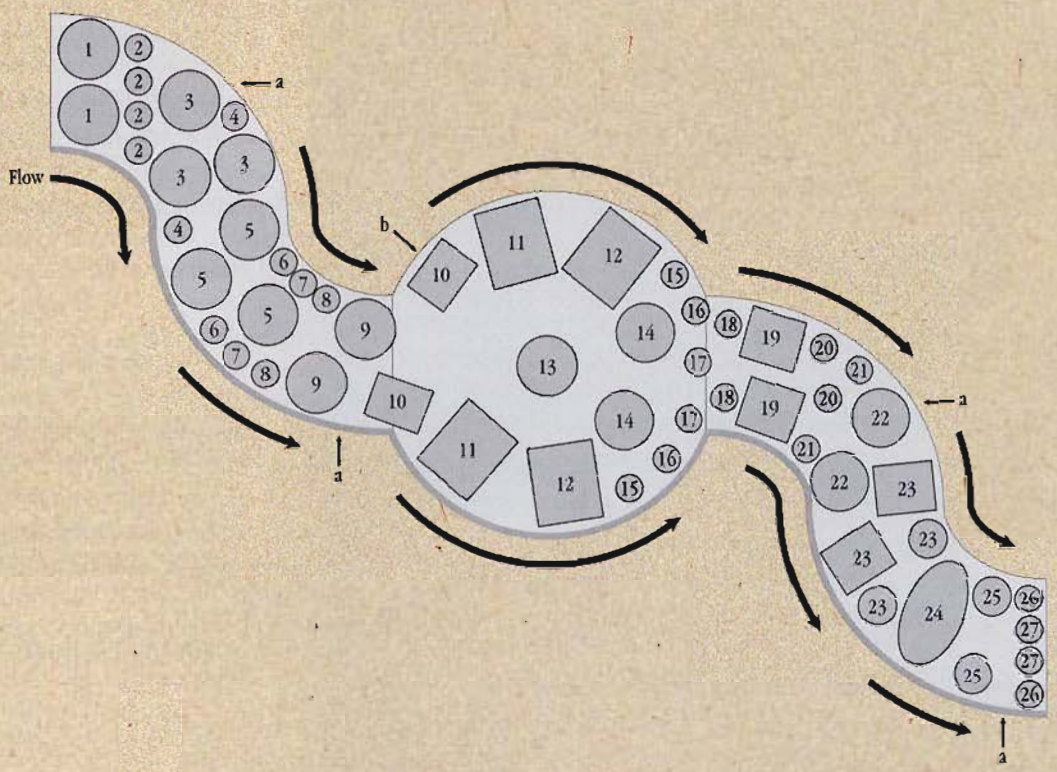
Wait staff uniforms: jeans and white shirts with a colored serape over the shoulders.

FIGURE 36.2 *Mexican Fiesta*

on the first station diners would approach, appetizers on the next, and so on. A third option is to arrange the stations so that the one with the most spectacular display of centerpiece, foods and decorations or the one featuring a chef making foods to order will be the center of attention, with the other stations scattered around the room. Regardless of how they are arranged, each should be self-contained with plates and accompaniments for the main items.

2. Spacing—Allow approximately 1 linear foot for each item on the buffet. Thus, if 16 items are to be placed on the table, including plates, a centerpiece and large props, then the buffet table must be approximately 16

A DOUBLE-SIDED BUFFET TABLE TO FEED 125 PEOPLE.



The key for the buffet table

a. Serpentine table, standard size
b. Round table, 72 inch diameter
1. Flatware rolled in linen napkins
2. Plates
3. Crudités
4. Sun-Dried Tomato Dip
5. Tri-colored Tortilla Chips
6. Fresh Tomato-Cilantro Salsa
7. Zesty Guacamole
8. Sour Cream
9. Chorizo Chili Con Queso
10. Chafing dish of Blue Corn and Shrimp Tamales with Cilantro Cream
11. Chafing dish of Soft Pork Tacos
12. Chafing dish of Soft Chicken Tacos
13. Centerpiece
14. Queso Blanco
15. Ancho-Chile Honey Sauce
16. Tomato Cilantro Salsa
17. Avocado
18. Tomatoes
19. Chafing dish of Goat Cheese and Green Chile Chimichangas
20. Habeñero Sauce
21. Dessert plates
22. Fruit Salad
23. Platters of Cookies and Tarts
24. Coffee cups and spoons
25. Coffee
26. Cream
27. Sweeteners

Note: Beers and wines will be available at a separate bar; soft drinks will be in pitchers on the tables and replenished by wait staff.

feet long. If extremely large centerpieces are used or if food is presented on oversized platters, this will, of course, affect the total table space needed.

3. Reach—Try to place all foods within easy reach of the diners. Try to avoid stacking one item behind another. But if items must be placed farther back on the table, try setting them on **risers** or on pedestals in order to add height to the platter. This extra height not only adds visual interest, it allows the diner to reach over the dish in front without disturbing its arrangement. Also, if possible, place foods that will not drip or splatter behind ones that will; that way, sauce from the back dish will not drip into the

Riser—*boxes (including the plastic crates used to store glassware) covered with linens, paper or other decorative items and used on a buffet table as a base for platters, trays or displays.*

front dish on its way to the diner's plate. Trays with foods that will not shift can be propped at a slight angle to make the contents more accessible and attractive.

4. Accompaniments—Place the appropriate garnishes, sauces or other accompaniments near their principal foods. Also, place a small plate or napkin near a platter for any serving utensils.
5. Centerpieces—A centerpiece brings focus to the buffet and its height or dominance increases the visual appeal of the overall table design. A centerpiece can be a floral arrangement or a sculpture made of ice, tallow, pastillage, chocolate, blown or pulled sugar or other material. Or the centerpiece can be a grosse piece such as a whole roast turkey or whole poached salmon decorated with chaud froid sauce. See Chapter 27, Charcuterie.
6. Decorations—In addition to the centerpiece, other nonedible objects or props may grace the buffet table. Sometimes, these are nothing more than smaller or modified versions of the centerpiece, such as flowers or leaves from a floral centerpiece. Of course, anything from a saddle to a silver candelabra can be used, depending on the buffet's theme. Whatever items are chosen, they should be well cleaned and arranged artfully but not in a manner that interferes with a diner's ability to see and reach the food. Props can also be used to mark divisions in the meal; for example, grouping all salads between one set of props divides them from the entrées. Sometimes, unusable or dead space will result because of constrictions of room or food. If it cannot be avoided, try filling the space with props or other decorations.
7. Labels—Unlike a restaurant with a printed menu and an attentive wait staff, an unmanned buffet may not give the diner an opportunity to inquire about particular dishes. This can be remedied by placing attractively printed cards bearing the name of the dish in front of any items that the chef feels need identification.

Display of Fresh Fruit and Bread for Sunday Brunch Buffet
The Phoenician, Scottsdale, AZ

Décor

Linens: buffet and dining tables draped with blue denim tablecloths and red bandanna overlays; cobalt and red linen napkins with silver cow head napkin rings.

Centerpieces: fresh flowers (daisies, red mums and yellow lilies), decorated with barbed wire (dulled) and raffia.

Buffet, table and room decorations: lanterns, horseshoes, cowbells, miniature hay bales, leather saddles, saddle blankets and western rope.

Service ware: tin and copper trays and copper chafing dishes, earthenware bowls.

Dinnerware: cobalt china on tin chargers, hammered stainless steel flatware and cobalt-rimmed stemware.

Music: Country and Western band.

Wait staff uniforms: cowboy and cowgirl outfits.

Menu

Fresh Fruit Salad of Watermelon, Honeydew, Cantaloupe, Pineapple, Papaya, Mango, Berries and Grapes

Platter of Chilled Carrots, Cauliflower, Broccoli, Asparagus, Snap Peas, Bell Peppers, Eggplant, Bermuda Onions, Summer Squash and Zucchini Marinated in Flavored Oils, Seasoned with Fresh Herbs and Grilled

Chilled Corn, Tomato and Confetti Pepper Salad with Creamy Basil Dressing

Corn on the Cob Grilled in the Husk

Grilled Yukon Gold Potatoes with Red Chile Sour Cream and Butter

Mesquite-Grilled Breast of Chicken Marinated in a Tangy Barbecue Sauce

Chile-Rubbed Black Angus New York Strip Steak Grilled and Served with Chipotle Lime Sauce, Southwestern Béarnaise and Flour Tortillas

Warm Blackberry Cobbler with Vanilla Bean Ice Cream

Strawberry Rhubarb Tarts with Fresh Whipped Cream

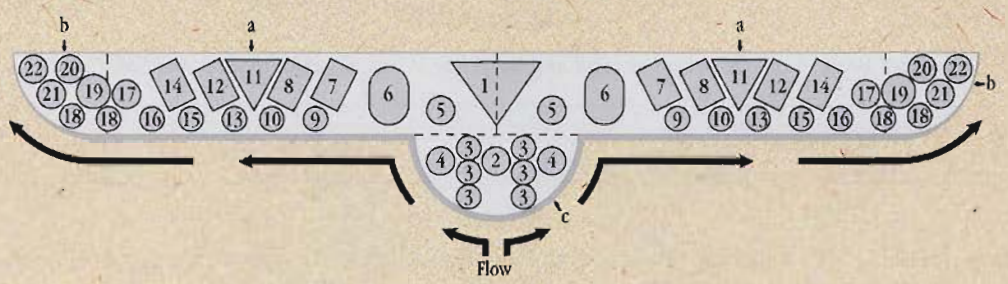
Fudgy Homemade Brownies

Fresh Mint Lemonade and Sparkling Water

Kettle Coffee with Cream and Sweeteners

Assorted Wines and Beers

A SINGLE-SIDED BUFFET TABLE DIVIDED INTO TWO ZONES TO FEED 150 PEOPLE.



The key for the buffet table

a. Rectangular table, 8 feet x 30 inches
b. Quarter-round table, 30 inch radius
c. Half-round table, 30 inch radius
1. Centerpiece
2. Prop or decoration
3. Plates
4. Fruit Salad
5. Corn, Tomato and Confetti Pepper Salad
6. Grilled Vegetable Platter
7. Chafing dish of Corn on the Cob
8. Chafing dish of Grilled Potatoes
9. Red Chile Sour Cream
10. Butter
11. Prop or decoration
12. Chafing dish of Barbecued Chicken
13. Flour Tortillas
14. Chafing dish of New York Strip Steak
15. Chipotle Lime Sauce
16. Southwestern Béarnaise
17. Prop or decoration
18. Dessert plates
19. Strawberry Rhubarb Tarts
20. Brownies
21. Blackberry Cobbler
22. Vanilla Bean Ice Cream

Note: Beers and wines will be available at a separate bar; soft drinks will be in pitchers on the table and replenished by the wait staff; coffee will be offered by circulating wait staff.

FIGURE 36.3 *Western Barbecue Buffet*

Menu

Butlered Hors d'Oeuvre

Red Potatoes with Gorgonzola, Bacon and Walnuts
Mushroom Phyllo Triangles
Popovers with Shrimp and Chive Filling
Asparagus Spears tied with Red Pepper

Buffet

STATION ONE:

Tropical Fruit Display
Caesar Salad with Herbed Croutons and Shredded Parmesan
Salad of Bibb Lettuce and Blue Cheese with Citrus Vinaigrette
Platter of Assorted Pâtés, Galantines and Ballotines
Assorted Rolls with Sweet and Flavored Butters
Tiered Display of Imported Cheeses including: Stilton, Saint Andre, Port Salut, Gouda, Black Diamond Cheddar and Brie Baked in Phyllo with Apricots and Fresh Basil, Garnished with Apple Slices and Grape Clusters
Lavosh and Cracker Bread

STATION THREE:

Herb-Rubbed, Grilled Tenderloin of Beef Carved by the Chef with Béarnaise Sauce and Sage-Merlot Sauce
Assorted Rolls with Sweet and Flavored Butters
Chicken Satay with Chile Peanut Sauce
Grilled Shark with Tomatillo Sauce

STATION TWO:

Antipasto of Assorted Salami, Prosciutto, Sliced Cheeses, Marinated Mushrooms and Artichokes, Olives, Roasted Peppers and Wedges of Papaya, Melon and Mango Wrapped with Prosciutto
Penne with Fresh Tomatoes and Basil Tossed with Extra Virgin Olive Oil
Cheese-filled Tortellini with Wild Mushroom Alfredo Sauce
Pastas Prepared to Order by the Chef
Wheel of Parmesan
Focaccia, Garlic Twists, Breadsticks and Assorted Rolls
Sweet and Flavored Butters

STATION FOUR:

Three-Tiered Wedding Cake
bottom layer – Black Forest
middle layer – White Cake with White Chocolate Mousse, Strawberries and Chocolate Ganache
top layer – Carrot Cake
Petit Fours
Fruit Tartlets
Chocolate-Dipped Strawberries
French Roast Coffee and Hot Tea with Deluxe Condiments

Assorted Beers, Alcoholic Beverages, Still and Sparkling Wines, Sparkling Water and Soft Drinks

DÉCOR

Linens: buffet and dining tables draped with floor-length ivory linens with overlays of tulle and lace, accented with gold ribbons and tassels; linen napkins tied with ribbons and tassels, and decorated with flowers.

Centerpieces and decorations for the buffet stations and dining tables: fresh flowers (calla lilies, white orchids, roses, tulips, ivy and greenery) and candles (votives, pillars or hurricanes) wrapped in ivy.

Service ware: fancy silver and mirror trays, silver chafing dishes, china or glass bowls.

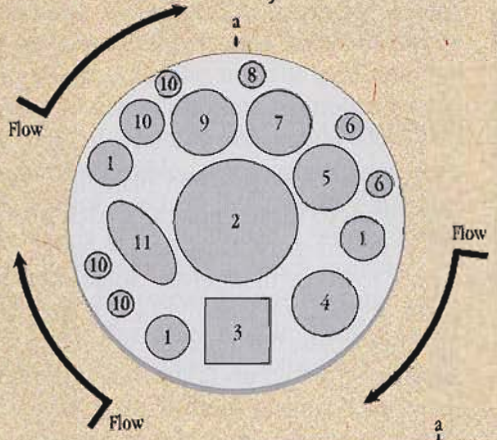
Dinnerware: ivory gold-rimmed china on gold chargers, silver flatware and gold- rimmed stemware.

Music: harpist, violinist or quartet.

Wait staff uniforms: tuxedos.

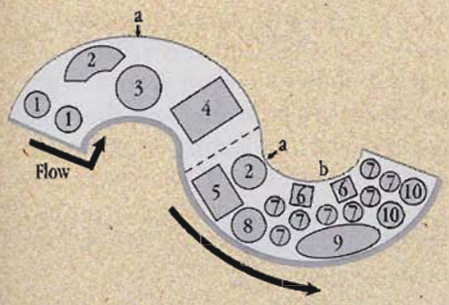
FIGURE 36.4 ***Formal Wedding Buffet***

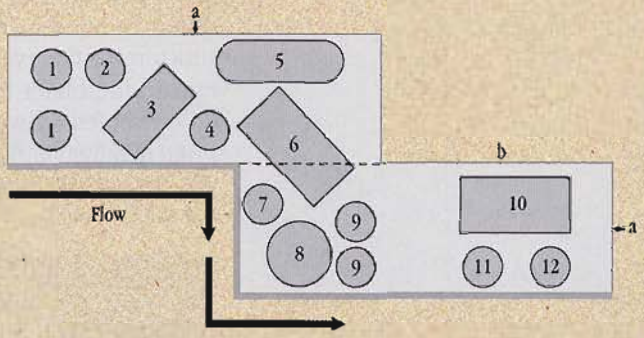
A FOUR-STATION BUFFET (INCLUDING TWO STAFFED BY CHEFS) TO FEED 200 PEOPLE.



The key for station one:

a. Round table, 72 inch diameter
1. Salad plates
2. Centerpiece
3. Tropical Fruit Display
4. Caesar Salad
5. Basket of Rolls overflowing onto the table
6. Sweet and Flavored Butters
7. Bibb Lettuce Salad
8. Citrus Vinaigrette
9. Platter of Pâtés, Galantines and Ballotines
10. Baskets of Lavosh and Cracker Breads
11. Tiered Cheese Display



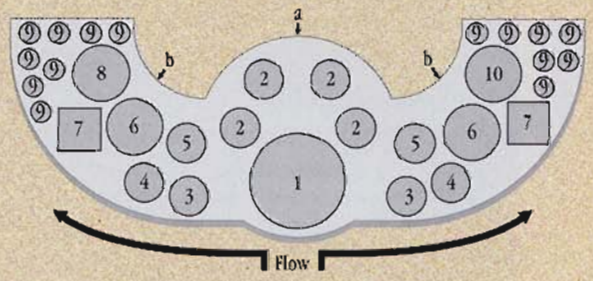


The key for station two:

a. Serpentine table, standard size
b. Chef's station
1. Plates
2. Centerpiece
3. Antipasto
4. Chafing dish of Penne Pasta
5. Chafing dish of Cheese Tortellini
6. Butane burners for chef
7. Garnishes for the pastas made to order including mushrooms, grilled chicken, walnuts, peas, roasted bell peppers and shrimp and sauces for the pasta including Alfredo and tomato basil
8. Large hollowed wheel of Parmesan
9. Basket of Garlic Twists, Focaccia, Breadsticks and Assorted Rolls
10. Sweet and Flavored Butters

The key for station three:

a. Rectangular table, 6 feet x 30 inches
b. Chef's station
1. Plates
2. Decoration or prop
3. Chafing dish of Shark
4. Tomatillo Sauce
5. Centerpiece
6. Chafing dish of Chicken Satay
7. Chile Peanut Sauce
8. Basket of Assorted Rolls
9. Sweet and Flavored Butters
10. Carving station with heat lamp for the Tenderloin of Beef
11. Sage-Merlot Sauce
12. Béarnaise Sauce



The key for station four:

a. Round table, 48 inch diameter
b. Serpentine table, standard size
1. Three-tiered Wedding Cake
2. Cake and dessert plates
3. Petit Fours
4. Fruit Tartlets
5. Chocolate-Dipped Strawberries
6. Tray of coffee mugs
7. Carafe of Hot Water with Assorted Tea Bags
8. Urn of Regular Coffee
9. Garnishes for Coffee including raw sugar cubes, artificial sweeteners, cream, whipped cream, candied citrus peel, mint swizzle sticks, cinnamon sticks, rock-sugar sticks and chocolate shavings
10. Urn of Decaffeinated Coffee

Note: Soft drinks as well as assorted wines, beers and other alcoholic beverages will be available at a separate bar; sparkling water, assorted wines and champagne will be served by the wait staff.

PRESENTING AND MAINTAINING THE BUFFET

Portioning Foods

A common problem when planning a buffet is overproduction. Many novice chefs want to make enough of each menu item to serve the entire group. But this is unnecessary. Most people tend to sample a little from many dishes and try not to gorge themselves. Some chefs use a simple, although far from foolproof, formula of 1 pound (450 grams) of food per person as a starting point and then adjust this number depending upon factors such as the general composition of the group (a luncheon for female executives may require less food than one for male football players), the number of items offered (the more dishes to choose from, the smaller the portions most people will take), the structure of the event (that is, whether it will be convenient for people to return to the buffet for second helpings), and whether diners serve themselves or are served by wait staff or chefs at the buffet.

Generally, portions should be small, especially if more than one item is served in each food category. For example, if a grilled salmon fillet with Ly-

A BLOCK OF ICE, A CHAIN SAW, A CHISEL AND A LITTLE CAUTION AND CREATIVITY

Ice carvings have long been popular buffet centerpieces; they add elegance and sophistication to the setting and occasion. As with other arts, it may take years to master ice carving. Nevertheless, with some practice and care, you can usually create acceptable ice sculptures after only a few tries.

Blocks of carving ice are specially prepared to remove air bubbles. These large blocks [20 in. × 10 in. × 46 in. (50 cm × 25 cm × 115 cm)] weigh approximately 300 pounds (135 kilograms), and special ice tongs and caution are required when handling them.

At 0°F (–8°C), ice is very brittle and difficult to carve without breaking. Therefore, carving ice must be tempered before carving. To temper the ice, remove it from the freezer and allow it to rest at room temperature for approximately one hour. When the surface is clear of frost, carving can begin.

A single carving can take from one to several hours to complete. Although chisels and specially designed saws for ice carving work quite well, chain saws are commonly used to speed up the process. Because most carving is done indoors, electric saws are used and, unlike gas saws, they do not leave a greasy residue on the ice's surface. Be very careful when using any chain saw, particularly an electric one around melting ice and pools of water.

To begin, trace the outline of the figure you want to carve on the surface of all four sides of the block of ice. There are several excellent ice carving books, some of which provide stencils for this purpose. Then start removing the ice using a large saw or a chainsaw. As the figure begins to take shape, use smaller chisels and specialized tools to create the desired effect. Some carvers use chain saws for the entire process, however. After some practice, you will develop you own style and preferences.

When the carving is complete, carefully return the ice to the freezer until needed. When setting it on a buffet, use a pan designed to hold an ice carving and provide drainage. Avoid placing ice sculptures under hot air vents. At room temperature and average humidity, ice melts at the rate of approximately 1/2 inch (1.25 centimeters) per hour from all sides. Keep this in mind when carving thin pieces or small details into the surface.

onnaise potatoes and a medley of sautéed vegetables were served as an entrée off of an à la carte menu, a typical serving would be 6 ounces (180 grams) of fish, 4 ounces (120 grams) of potato and 4 ounces (120 grams) of vegetables. If the same salmon fillet with its accompaniments were served as one of three entrées on a dinner buffet for 100 people, the total of available fish should be 2 to 3 ounces (60 to 90 grams) of fish per portion multiplied by 100 portions, 1 to 1.5 ounces (30 to 45 grams) of potatoes per portion multiplied by 100 portions and 1 ounce (30 grams) of vegetables per portion (diners tend to take smaller portions of vegetables than of starches) multiplied by 100 portions. Similarly, if a dessert tart from an à la carte menu had a 4-inch diameter, the version offered on a dessert buffet should have a 2-inch diameter.

Experience suggests that most diners tend to serve themselves larger portions of foods found at the start of the buffet than at its middle. Thus, if caviar is being served, it may make economic sense to place it somewhere farther down the line than at the start of the buffet.

Display of Fish and Shellfish for Sunday Brunch Buffet
The Phoenician, Scottsdale, AZ

Presenting Hot Foods

Keeping hot foods hot on a buffet is a particular challenge, and an important one, for both food safety and presentation concerns. If possible, hot foods should be served in relatively small quantities on warm platters that are exchanged frequently. This is not always possible, however. More often, hot foods are maintained in chafing dishes or under heat lamps.

To maintain the quality of foods kept in a chafing dish, you should:

- Choose foods that hold well. Rare meats and delicate pastas do not hold well in a chafing dish; they become overcooked and unattractive quickly. Instead, try braised meats (which may actually benefit from the extended cooking) or hearty pastas such as tortellini or penne. This guideline also applies to garnishes: bunches of delicate herbs such as basil do not do well in a chafing dish; instead, try sprigs of rosemary or thyme.
- Cook small amounts of delicate foods at a time and change the insert pan in a chafing dish often. This prevents foods from sitting too long.
- Ladle a small amount of sauce in the bottom of the pan before placing sliced meats in the pan, or, serve slice meats, poultry or fish on a bed of vegetables. The sauce or the vegetable bed helps to absorb the heat from the chafing dish, insulating the more delicate items and providing a bit of steam to help keep the foods moist.
- Keep the chafing dish closed whenever possible. This holds in the steam, which helps keep the food moist. But a closed chafing dish distracts from a buffet's appeal and slows down the flow of diners through the buffet line.

Heat lamps are generally used for keeping large cuts of meats or poultry warm during carving. These foods, however, become dry rapidly and should be replaced periodically. Of course, time and temperature principles of food safety must also be followed.

Presenting Cold Foods

Keeping cold foods cold on a buffet table is a little less of a challenge. As with hot foods, it is best if cold foods are served in relatively small quantities on cold platters that are exchanged frequently. Alternatively, the items can be set on a bed of ice—usually a large bowl filled with ice into which a smaller bowl containing the food is placed.

Replenishing Foods

Dishes from the buffet table should be removed when they are approximately two-thirds empty or have deteriorated in some fashion (for example, the aspic on pâtés has softened, cut fruits have browned or a hot food has crusted over). Once the old dish has been removed, its fresh replacement should be placed on the buffet immediately, and it should be as carefully arranged and garnished as the original. If items from the old dish are to be combined with the replacement dish, this should be done in the kitchen and not at the buffet table.

Serving Foods

Once the banquet or restaurant manager has completed the planning for a buffet, it usually falls to a captain to supervise the actual event. The captain directs the crew setting up the room as well as the stewards who bring the food, flatware, china and glassware from the kitchen to the buffet.

The captain also supervises the wait staff. One of the front waiters' principal responsibilities is to maintain the appearance of the buffet and to replenish items as needed. Depending on the function, front waiters can be stationed behind the buffet table to serve diners; circulate in the crowd with trays of hors d'oeuvre or drinks (passing foods in this fashion is called **butler service**), or serve beverages to diners seated at the dining tables. Back waiters generally police the room and clear tables. They should be particularly vigilant in removing used plates from a dining table after a diner has gone to the buffet for more food and before he or she returns to the dining table with a new plate.

Typically, servers or chefs are only placed at stations where foods are prepared or carved to order. This helps to control portioning. It also provides a greater opportunity for staff to police the buffet and therefore ensure that the table and the individual items remain neat, attractive and fresh. Finally, placing wait staff or kitchen staff at the buffet allows diners to ask questions about the foods presented.

CONCLUSION

A buffet is more than a salad bar at a restaurant—that is, merely food laid out for the diner to grab. A buffet is an opportunity for a chef to use his or her creativity to plan and present an entire menu in an attractive fashion. But for a buffet to succeed, it requires careful planning, attention to detail and the help of many professionals in the food services facility.

QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

1. What is a grosse piece? How is it different from a centerpiece?
2. What food safety and sanitation factors must be considered when planning a buffet? Explain your answer.
3. Describe three things that can be done to keep hot foods attractive and fresh when using a chafing dish.
4. Describe two things that can be done to keep cold foods cold on a buffet.
5. List five different stations serving hot foods at a buffet and the equipment necessary for each.
6. Redesign the Western-themed buffet in Figure 36.3 to include three stations.

APPENDIX I

PROFESSIONAL ORGANIZATIONS

The American Cheese Society
W7702 County Road
Darien, WI 53114
(414) 728-4458
http://www.cheesesociety.org

American Culinary Federation, Inc. (ACF)
10 San Bartola Drive
St. Augustine, FL 32086
(904) 824-4468
http://www.acfchefs.org

The American Dietetic Association (ADA)
216 West Jackson Blvd.
Chicago, IL 60606-6995
(312) 899-0040

American Institute of Baking (AIB)
P.O. Box 3999
Manhattan, KS 66505-3999
(785) 537-4750
http://www.aibonline.org

The American Institute of Wine & Food (AIWF)
1550 Bryant Street, Suite 700
San Francisco, CA 94103
(415) 255-3000

Chefs Collaborative 2000
25 First Street
Cambridge, MA 02141
(617) 621-1136

Club Managers Association of America (CMAA)
1733 King Street
Alexandria, VA 22314
(703) 739-9500

International Association of Culinary Professionals (IACP)
304 West Liberty Street, Suite 201
Louisville, KY 40202
(502) 581-9786
http://www.iacp-online.org

International Foodservice Executives Association
1100 South State Road #7, Suite 103
Margate, FL 33068
(954) 977-0767

The James Beard Foundation
167 West 12th Street
New York, NY 10011
(212) 675-4984
http://www.jamesbeard.org

Les Dames d'Escoffier International
P.O. Box 2103
Reston, VA 20195-0103
(703) 716-5913
http://ldei.org

Les Toques Blanches Int.
P.O. Box 954
Forest Park, GA 30298
(770) 960-1050

National Ice Carving Association
P.O. Box 3593
Oak Brook, IL 60522-3593
(630) 871-8431

National Restaurant Association
1200 17th Street, NW
Washington, DC 20036
(202) 331-5900
http://www.restaurant.org

Oldways Preservation & Exchange Trust
25 First Street
Cambridge, MA 02141
(617) 621-3000

Roundtable for Women in Foodservice (RWF)
3022 W. Eastwood Ave.
Chicago, IL 60625
(312) 463-3396
http://www.rwf.org

Share Our Strength (SOS)
1511 K Street, N.W., Suite 940
Washington, DC 20005-1414
(800) 969-4767

U. S. Pastry Alliance
3349 Somerset Trace
Marietta, GA 30067
(770) 980-0071
http://www.uspastry.org

U.S. Personal Chef Association
3615 Highway 528, Suite 107
Albuquerque, NM 87114-8919
(800) 995-2138
http://www.uspca.com

Women Chefs and Restaurateurs (WCR)
110 Sutter Street, Suite 210
San Francisco, CA 94104
(415) 362-7336

APPENDIX II

MEASUREMENT AND CONVERSION CHARTS

MEASUREMENT CONVERSION CHART

Formulas for Exact Measures

	When you know:	Multiply by:	To find:
Mass (Weight)	ounces	28.35	grams
	pounds	0.45	kilograms
	grams	0.035	ounces
	kilograms	2.2	pounds
Volume (Capacity)	teaspoons	5.0	milliliters
	tablespoons	15.0	milliliters
	fluid ounces	29.57	milliliters
	cups	0.24	liters
	pints	0.47	liters
	quarts	0.95	liters
	gallons	3.785	liters
	milliliters	0.034	fluid ounces
Temperature	Fahrenheit	5/9 (after subtracting 32)	Celsius
	Celsius	9/5 (then add 32)	Fahrenheit

CONVERSION GUIDELINES

1 gallon	=	4 quarts 8 pints 16 cups (8 ounces) 128 ounces
1 fifth bottle	=	approximate 1 1/2 pints or exactly 26.5 ounces
1 measuring cup	=	holds 8 ounces (a coffee cup generally holds 6 ounces)
1 large egg white	=	1 ounce (average)
1 lemon	=	1 to 1 1/4 ounces of juice
1 orange	=	3 to 3 1/2 ounces of juice

ROUNDED MEASURES FOR QUICK REFERENCE

1 oz.		= 30 g
4 oz.		= 120 g
8 oz.		= 225 g
16 oz.	= 1 lb.	= 450 g
32 oz.	= 2 lb.	= 900 g
36 oz.	= 2 1/4 lb.	= 1000 g (1 kg)
1/4 tsp.	= 1/24 oz.	= 1 ml
1/2 tsp.	= 1/12 oz.	= 2 ml
1 tsp.	= 1/6 oz.	= 5 ml
1 Tbsp.	= 1/2 oz.	= 15 ml
1 c.	= 8 oz.	= 250 ml
2 c. (1 pt.)	= 16 oz.	= 500 ml
4 c. (1 qt.)	= 32 oz.	= 1 lt
4 qt. (1 gal.)	= 128 oz.	= 3 3/4 lt
32°F	= 0°C	
122°F	= 50°C	
212°F	= 100°C	

Scoop Sizes

Scoop Measure	Level Measure
6	2/3 cup
8	1/2 cup
10	2/5 cup
12	1/3 cup
16	1.4 cup
20	3 1/5 tablespoons
24	2 2/3 tablespoons
30	2 1/5 tablespoons
40	1 3/5 tablespoons

The number of the scoop determines the number of servings in each quart of a mixture, for example, with a No. 16 scoop, one quart of mixture will yield 16 servings.

Ladle Sizes

Size	Portion of a Cup	Number per Quart	Number per Liter
1 oz.	1/8	32	34
2 oz.	1/4	16	17
2 2/3 oz.	1/3	12	13
4 oz.	1/2	8	8.6
6 oz.	3/4	5 1/3	5.7

Canned Good Sizes

Size	No. of Cans per Case	Average Weight	Average No. Cups per Can
No. 1/2	8	8 oz.	1
No. 1 tall (also known as 303)	2 & 4 doz.	16 oz.	2
No. 2	2 doz.	20 oz.	2 1/2
No. 2 1/2	2 doz.	28 oz.	3 1/2
No. 3	2 doz.	33 oz.	4
No. 3 cylinder	1 doz.	46 oz.	5 2/3
No. 5	1 doz.	3 lb. 8 oz.	5 1/2
No. 10	6	6 lb. 10 oz.	13

Various standard cans—(left to right, front row) No. 1/4, No. 1/2 flat, (middle row) No. 1/2, No. 1 tall, No. 300, (back row) No. 5, No. 3 cylinder, No. 10.

Bibliography and Recommended Reading

General Interest

Bickel, Walter, ed. and trans. *Hering's Dictionary of Classical and Modern Cookery.* 12th Eng. ed. London: Virtue & Company Limited, 1991.

Culinary Institute of America. *The New Professional Chef.* 6th ed. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1996.

Dawson, Hannelore. *Great Food for Great Numbers.* New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1991.

Escoffier, Auguste. *Le Guide culinaire.* (Translation entitled *The Escoffier Cookbook and Guide to the Fine Art of Cookery for Connoisseurs, Chefs, Epicures.*) New York: Crown Publishers, 1969.

Gisslen, Wayne. *Professional Baking.* 2nd ed. New York: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1993.

———. *Professional Cooking.* 3rd ed. New York: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1995.

Haines, Robert G. *Food Preparation.* Homewood, Ill.: American Technical Publishers, Inc., 1988.

Kamman, Madeleine. *The New Making of a Cook.* New York: William Morrow and Co., Inc., 1997.

Labensky, Steven, Gaye G. Ingram and Sarah R. Labensky. *Webster's New World Dictionary of Culinary Arts.* Upper Saddle River N.J.: Prentice Hall, 1997.

Lang, Jennifer Harvey, ed. *Larousse Gastronomique.* American ed. New York: Crown Publishers, Inc., 1988.

Leith, Prue. *The Cook's Handbook.* New York: A & W Publishers, Inc., 1981.

Molt, Mary and Grace Shugart. *Food for Fifty.* 10th ed. New York: Prentice Hall, 1996.

Pepin, Jacques. *The Art of Cooking.* New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 1987.

———. *La Technique.* New York: Pocket Books, 1987.

Rombauer, Irma von Starkloff and Marion Rombauer Becker. *Joy of Cooking.* New York: The Bobbs-Merrill Co., Inc., Macmillan, 1975.

Saulnier, Louis. *Le Répertoire de La Cuisine.* Rev. ed. New York: Barron's Educational Series, Inc., 1976.

Willan, Anne. *La Varenne Pratique.* New York: Crown Publishers, 1989.

Food History

Coe, Sophie D. and Michael D. *The True History of Chocolate.* New York: Thames and Hudson Inc., 1996.

Fussell, Betty. *The Story of Corn.* New York: Borzoi Books, Alfred A. Knopf, Inc., 1992.

Hale, William Harlan and The Editors of Horizon Magazine. *The Horizon Cookbook and Illustrated History of Eating and Drinking Through the Ages.* New York: American Heritage Publishing Co., Inc., 1968.

Mintz, Sidney W. *Sweetness and Power: The Place of Sugar in Modern History.* New York: Viking Press, 1995.

Norman, Barbara. *Tales of the Table: A History of Western Cuisine.* Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall, 1972.

Revel, Jean-François. *Culture and Cuisine.* (Trans. of *Un Festin en paroles.*) New York: Da Capo Press, Inc., 1982.

Rupp, Rececca. *Blue Corn and Square Tomatoes.* Pownal, Vt.: Garden Way Publishing, 1987.

Schlossberg, Eli W. *The World of Orthodox Judaism.* Northvale, N.J.: Jason Aronson, Inc., 1996.

Schremp, Gerry. *Kitchen Culture: Fifty Years of Food Fads.* New York: Pharos Books, A Scripps Howard Co., 1991.

Shapiro, Laura. *Perfection Salad: Women and Cooking at the Turn of the Century.* New York: Farrar, Straus and Giroux, 1986.

Tannahill, Reay. *Food in History.* Rev. ed. New York: Crown Publishers, Inc., 1995.

Toussaint-Samat, Maguelonne. *A History of Food.* Translated by Anthea Bell. Cambridge, Mass.: Blackwell Publishers, 1992.

Wheaton, Barbara Ketcham. *Savoring the Past: The French Kitchen and Table from 1300 to 1789.* Reprint ed. New York: Touchstone Books, 1996.

Willan, Anne. *Great Cooks and Their Recipes: From Taillevent to Escoffier.* Boston: Little, Brown and Co., A Bulfinch Press Book, 1992.

Sanitation and Safety

The Educational Foundation of the National Restaurant Association. *Applied Foodservice Sanitation: A Foundation Textbook.* 4th ed. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1992.

International Life Sciences Institute. *A Simple Guide to Understanding and Applying the Hazard Analysis Critical Control Point Concept.* Washington D.C.: ILSI Press, 1993.

National Assessment Institute. *Handbook for Safe Food Service Management.* 2nd ed. Upper Saddle River, N.J.: Prentice Hall, 1997.

Nutrition

Drummond, Karen E. *Nutrition for the Foodservice Professional.* 3rd ed. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1996.

Freyberg, Nicholas and Willis A. Gortner. *The Food Additives Book.* New York: Bantam Books, Inc., 1982.

Netzer, Corinne T. *The Corinne T. Netzer Encyclopedia of Food Values.* New York: Dell Publishing, 1992.

Food Costing and Menu Pricing

Labensky, Sarah R. *Applied Math for Food Service.* Upper Saddle River, N.J.: Prentice Hall, 1998.

Miller, Jack E. *Menu Pricing and Strategy.* 4th ed. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1996.

Schmidt, Arno. *Chef's Book of Formulas, Yields, and Sizes.* 2nd ed. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1996.

Tools

Bridge, Fred and Jean F. Tibbetts. *The Well-Tooled Kitchen.* New York: William Morrow and Co., Inc., 1991.

General Ingredients

DeMers, John. *The Community Kitchens Complete Guide to Gourmet Coffee.* New York: Simon & Schuster, 1986.

Dowell, Philip and Adrian Bailey. *Cook's Ingredients.* New York: William Morrow and Co., Inc., 1980.

Jordan, Michele Anna. *The Good Cook's Book of Oil & Vinegar.* Reading, Mass.: Addison-Wesley, 1992.

Norman, Jill. *The Complete Book of Spices.* American ed. New York: Viking Studio Books, 1991.

Ortiz, Elisabeth Lambert. *The Encyclopedia of Herbs, Spices and Flavorings.* 1st American ed. New York: Dorling Kindersley, Inc., 1992.

Schapira, Joel and Karl Schapira. *The Book of Coffee and Tea.* New York: St. Martin's Press, 1975.

Schuler, Stanley, ed. *Simon & Schuster's Guide to Herbs and Spices.* New York: Fireside and Simon & Schuster, 1990.

Stobart, Tom. *Herbs, Spices and Flavorings.* Woodstock, N.Y.: The Overland Press, 1982.

Eggs, Dairy and Cheese

Bristow, Linda Kay. *Bread and Breakfast.* San Ramon, Calif.: 101 Productions, 1985.

Eggcyclopedia. 2nd ed. Park Ridge, Ill.: American Egg Board, revised 1989.

Jenkins, Steven. *Steven Jenkins' Cheese Primer.* New York: Workman Publishing Co., 1996.

Jones, Evan. *The World of Cheese.* New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 1984.

Kolpas, Norman. *Breakfast and Brunch Book.* Los Angeles: HP Books, 1988.

Kotschevar, Lendal H. *Short Order Cooking.* New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1990.

Marquis, Vivienne and Patricia Haskell. *The Cheese Book.* New York: Simon & Schuster, 1985.

Masui, Kazuko and Tomoko Yamada. *French Cheeses.* New York: Dorling Kindersley, Inc., 1996.

Food Science

Corriher, Shirley O. *Cookwise.* New York: William Morrow and Co., Inc., 1997.

Freeland-Graves, H. and Gladys C. Peckham. *Foundations of Food Preparation.* 5th ed. New York: Macmillan, 1987.

McGee, Harold. *On Food and Cooking.* New York: Charles Scribner's Sons, 1984.

McWilliams, Margaret. *Food Fundamentals.* 7th ed. Fullerton, Calif.: Plycon Press, 1998.

Potter, Norman N. *Food Science.* 5th ed. New York: Chapman & Hall Publishing Co., Inc., 1995.

Stocks, Sauces and Soups

Clayton, Bernard. *The Complete Book of Soups and Stews.* New York: Simon & Schuster, 1987.

Davis, Deidre. *A Fresh Look at Saucing Foods.* Reading, Mass.: Addison-Wesley, 1993.

Larousse, David Paul. *The Sauce Bible: Guide to the Saucier's Craft.* New York: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1993.

Peterson, James. *Sauces: Classical and Contemporary Sauce Making.* New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1991.

Sokolov, Raymond A. *The Saucier's Apprentice.* New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 1976.

Meat

The Editors of Time-Life Books. *The Good Cook: Lamb.* London: Time Life International (Nederland) B.V., 1981.

The Editors of Time-Life Books. *The Good Cook: Beef and Veal.* London: Time Life International (Nederland) B.V., 1978.

Ellis, Merle. *The Great American Meat Cookbook.* New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 1996.

The Meat Buyers Guide. Reston, Va.: National Association of Meat Purveyors, 1990.

Thomas, John R. and P. Thomas Ziegler. *The Meat We Eat.* Danville, Ill.: Interstate Printers & Publishers, Inc., 1985.

Poultry

The Editors of Time-Life Books. *The Good Cook: Poultry.* London: Time Life International (Nederland) B.V., 1978.

GAME

Cameron, Angus and Judith Jones. *The L.L. Bean Game and Fish Cookbook.* New York: Random House, 1983.

Little, Carolyn. *The Game Cookbook.* Wiltshire, England: The Crowood Press, 1988.

Marrone, Teresa. *Dressing and Cooking Wild Game.* New York: Prentice Hall Press, 1987.

FISH AND SHELLFISH

Cronin, Isaac, Jay Harlow and Paul Johnson. *The California Seafood Cookbook.* Berkeley, Calif.: Harris Publishing Co., Inc. (Aris Books), 1983.

The Fish List: FDA Guide to Acceptable Market Names for Food Fish Sold in Interstate Commerce. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1988.

Howarth, A. Jan. *The Complete Fish Cookbook.* New York: St. Martin's Press, 1983.

King, Shirley. *Fish, The Basics.* Rev. and Updated ed. New York: Chapters Publishing Ltd., 1996.

———. *Saucing the Fish.* New York: Simon & Schuster, 1986.

Loomis, Susan Herrmann. *The Great American Seafood Cookbook.* New York: Workman Publishing Co., 1988.

McClane, A. J. *The Encyclopedia of Fish Cookery.* New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1989.

The Seafood Handbook: Seafood Standards. Rockland, Maine: Seafood Business Magazine, 1991.

CHARCUTERIE

The Editors of Time-Life Books. *The Good Cook: Terrines, Pâtés and Galantines.* London: Time Life International (Nederland) B.V., 1981.

Ehlert, Friedrich W., et al. *Pâtés and Terrines.* Reprint. London: Hearst Books, 1990.

Grigson, Jane. *The Art of Charcuterie.* Reprint. New York: The Echo Press, 1991.

VEGETABLES AND FRUITS

Andrews, Jean. *Peppers: The Domesticated Capsicums.* Austin, Tex.: University of Texas Press, 1984.

Bauer, Cathy and Juel Andersen. *The Tofu Cookbook.* Emmaus, Pa.: Rodale Press, 1979.

Brown, Marlene. *International Produce Cookbook and Guide.* Los Angeles: HP Books, 1989.

Davidson, Alan. *Fruit: A Connoisseur's Guide and Cookbook.* New York: Simon & Schuster, 1991.

DeWitt, Dave and Nancy Gerlach. *The Whole Chile Pepper Book.* Boston: Little, Brown and Co., 1990.

Holthaus, Fusako. *Tofu Cookery.* Tokyo: Kodansha International, 1992.

Miller, Mark, with John Harrisson. *The Great Chile Book.* Berkeley, Calif.: Ten Speed Press, 1991.

Murdich, Jack. *Buying Produce.* New York: William Morrow and Co., Inc., 1986.

Payne, Rolce Redard and Dorrit Speyer Senior. *Cooking With Fruit.* New York: Crescent Books, 1995.

Routhier, Nicole. *Nicole Routhier's Fruit Cookbook.* New York: Workman Publishing Co., 1996.

Schmidt, Jimmy. *Cooking For All Seasons.* New York: Macmillan, 1991.

Schneider, Elizabeth. *Uncommon Fruits and Vegetables: A Commonsense Guide.* New York: William Morrow and Co., Inc., 1998.

GRAINS AND PASTA

Bugialli, Giuliano. *On Pasta.* New York: Simon & Schuster, 1988.

Della Croce, Julia. *Pasta Classica.* Reprint. San Francisco: Chronicle Books, 1996.

Gelles, Carol. *The Complete Whole Grain Cookbook.* New York: Donald I. Fine, Inc., 1991.

Greene, Bert. *The Grains Cookbook.* New York: Workman Publishing Co., 1988.

Kummer, Corby. "Pasta." *The Atlantic,* 258, no. 1 (July 1986): 35-47.

Leblang, Bonnie Tandy and Joanne Lamb Hayes. *Rice.* New York: Harmony Books, 1991.

Spier, Carol. *Food Essentials: Grains and Pasta.* New York: Crescent Books, 1993.

SALADS AND SALAD DRESSINGS

Blair, Eulalia C. *Salads for Foodservice Menu Planning.* New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1988.

Muller, Veronika. *Salads.* New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1989.

Nathan, Amy. *Salad.* San Francisco: Chronicle Books, 1985.

BREADS

Albright, Barbara and Leslie Weiner. *Mostly Muffins.* New York: St. Martin's Press, 1984.

Alston, Elizabeth. *Biscuits and Scones.* New York: Clarkson N. Potter, Inc., 1988.

Amendola, Joseph. *The Bakers' Manual.* 4th ed. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1993.

Clayton, Bernard. *Bernard Clayton's New Complete Book of Breads.* Rev. ed. New York: Fireside Books, 1995.

Cunningham, Marion. *The Fannie Farmer Baking Book.* New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 1984.

David, Elizabeth. *English Bread and Yeast Cookery.* Notes by Karen Hess. American ed. New York: The Viking Press, 1980.

Jones, Judith and Evan Jones. *The Book of Bread.* Reprint ed. New York: Harper & Row, 1986.

Ortiz, Joe. *The Village Baker: Classic Regional Breads from Europe and America.* Berkeley, Calif.: Ten Speed Press, 1993.

Weiner, Leslie and Barbara Albright. *Simply Scones.* New York: St. Martin's Press, 1988.

PASTRIES AND DESSERTS

Bloom, Carole. *The International Dictionary of Desserts, Pastries, and Confections.* New York: Hearst Books, 1995.

Braker, Flo. *The Simple Art of Perfect Baking.* Shelburne, Vt.: Chapters Publishing, Ltd., 1992.

Fletcher, Helen S. *The New Pastry Cook.* New York: William Morrow and Co., Inc., 1986.

Friberg, Bo. *The Professional Pastry Chef.* 3rd ed. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1995.

Healy, Bruce and Paul Bugat. *Mastering the Art of French Pastry.* Woodbury, N.Y.: Barron's, 1984.

Hyman, Philip and Mary Hyman, trans. *The Best of Gaston Lenotre's Desserts.* Woodbury, N.Y.: Barron's, 1983.

London, Sheryl and Mel London. *Fresh Fruit Desserts: Classic and Contemporary.* New York: Prentice Hall Press, 1990.

Purdy, Susan G. *A Piece of Cake.* Reprint. New York: Macmillan, 1993.

Roux, Michel and Albert Roux. *The Roux Brothers on Pâtisserie.* New York: Prentice Hall Press, 1986.

Silverton, Nancy. *Desserts by Nancy Silverton.* New York: Harper & Row, 1986.

Thuriès, Yves. *The Classic and Contemporary Recipes of Yves Thuriès: French Pastry.* New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1996.

Hors d'Oeuvre and Buffets

Grotz, Peter. *Successful Cold Buffets.* New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1990.

Janericco, Terence. *The Book of Great Hors d'Oeuvre.* New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1990.

Larousse, David Paul. *The Professional Garde Manger.* New York: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1996.

Schmidt, Arno and Inja Nam. *The Book of Hors d'Oeuvres and Canapes.* New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1996.

Sonnenschmidt, Frederic H. and John F. Nicholas. *The Professional Chef's Art of Garde Manger.* 5th ed. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1993.

International Cuisines

Bayless, Rick, with Deann Groen Bayless. *Authentic Mexican: Regional Cooking from the Heart of Mexico.* New York: William Morrow and Co., Inc., 1987.

Bugialli, Giuliano. *The Fine Art of Italian Cooking.* New York: Random House, 1990.

Casas, Penelope. *The Foods and Wines of Spain.* New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 1991.

Downer, Lesley. *At the Japanese Table.* San Francisco: Chronicle Books, 1993.

Efrain, Martinez. *Classic Spanish Cooking with Chef Ef.* Los Angeles: Lowell House, 1993.

Field, Carol. *Celebrating Italy.* New York: William Morrow and Co., Inc., 1990.

Gin, Maggie. *Regional Cooking of China.* San Francisco: 101 Productions, 1984.

Hazan, Marcella. *Essentials of Classic Italian Cooking.* New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 1993.

Jaffrey, Madhur. *An Invitation to Indian Cooking.* New York: Vintage Books, 1973.

Kasper, Lynn Rossetto. *The Splendid Table: Recipes from Emilia-Romagna the Heartland of Northern Italian Food.* New York: William Morrow and Co., Inc., 1992.

Kennedy, Diana. *The Cuisines of Mexico.* Rev. ed. New York: Harper & Row, 1986.

Lo, Kenneth. *The Encyclopedia of Chinese Cooking.* New York: Bristol Books, 1997.

McDermott, Nancie. *Real Thai: The Best of Thailand's Regional Cooking.* San Francisco: Chronicle Books, 1992.

Roden, Claudia. *A Book of Middle Eastern Food.* New York: Vintage Books, 1972.

Rojas-Lombardi, Felipe. *The Art of South American Cooking.* New York: HarperCollins, 1991.

Rose, Evelyn. *The New Complete International Jewish Cookbook.* New York: Carroll & Graf Publishers, Inc., 1992.

Rozin, Elisabeth. *Ethnic Cuisine: The Flavor-Principle Cookbook.* Lexington, Mass.: S. Green Press, 1983. Reprint. New York: Penguin Books USA Inc., Viking Penguin, 1992.

Sandler, Bea. *The African Cookbook.* New York: World Publishing, 1970.

Scharfenberg, Horst. *The Cuisines of Germany: Regional Specialties and Traditional Home Cooking.* New York: Poseidon Press, 1980.

Solomon, Charmaine. *The Complete Asian Cookbook.* New York: McGraw-Hill, 1976.

Toomre, Joyce. *Classic Russian Cooking: Elena Molokhovets' A Gift to Young Housewives.* Translated, introduced and annotated by Joyce Toomre. Bloomington, Ind.: Indiana University Press, 1992.

Von Bremzen, Anya and John Welchman. *Please To The Table: The Russian Cookbook.* New York: Workman Publishing Co., 1990.

Wolfert, Paula. *Couscous and Other Good Food from Morocco.* New York: Harper & Row, 1973.

Garnishing

Budgen, June. *The Book of Garnishes.* Los Angeles: HP Books, 1986.

Haydock, Robert and Yukiko Haydock. *Japanese Garnishes.* New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1980.

Larousse, David Paul. *Edible Art: Forty-Eight Garnishes for the Professional.* New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1987.

Lynch, Francis Talyn. *Garnishing: A Feast for Your Eyes.* Los Angeles: HP Books, 1987.

Books by Contributing Chefs

Ash, John and Sid Goldstein. *American Game Cooking.* Reading, Mass.: Addison-Wesley (Aris Books), 1991.

Beranbaum, Rose Levy. *The Cake Bible.* New York: William Morrow and Co., Inc., 1988.

Bishop, John. *Bishop's: The Cookbook.* Vancouver: Douglas & McIntyre Ltd., 1997.

Carpenter, Hugh and Teri Sandison. *Chopstix: Quick Cooking with Pacific Flavors.* New York: Stewart, Tabori & Chang, 1990.

Golden, Harris. *Golden's Kitchen: The Artistry of Cooking and Dining on the Light Side.* Rev. 2nd ed. Phoenix, Ariz.: Quail Run Books, 1989.

Kerr, Graham. *Graham Kerr's Minimax Cookbook.* New York: Doubleday, 1992.

Lukins, Sheila. *Sheila Lukins USA Cookbook.* New York: Workman Publishing Co., 1997.

Malgieri, Nick. *Nick Malgieri's Perfect Pastry.* New York: Macmillan, 1989.

Medrich, Alice. *Cocolat.* New York: Warner Books, 1990.

Miller, Mark. *Coyote Cafe.* Berkeley, Calif.: Ten Speed Press, 1989.

Milliken, Mary Sue and Susan Feniger. *City Cuisine.* New York: William Morris and Co., Inc., 1989.

Portale, Alfred. *Alfred Portale's Gotham Bar and Grill Cookbook.* New York: Doubleday, 1997.

Puck, Wolfgang. *Adventures in the Kitchen: 175 New Recipes from Spago, Chinois on Main, Postrio and Eureka.* New York: Random House, 1991.

Richard, Michel. *Michel Richard's Home Cooking with a French Accent.* New York: William Morrow and Co., Inc., 1993.

Roberts, Michael. *Secret Ingredients.* New York: Bantam Books, 1988.

Somerville, Annie. *Fields of Greens: New Vegetarian Recipes from the Celebrated Greens Restaurant.* New York: Bantam Books, 1993.

Susser, Allen. *Allen Susser's New World Cuisine and Cookery.* New York: Doubleday, 1995.

Tropp, Barbara. *China Moon Cookbook.* New York: Workman Publishing Co., 1992.

GLOSSARY

Acid—foods such as citrus juice, vinegar and wine that have a sour or sharp flavor (most foods are slightly acidic); acids have a pH of less than 7.

Acidulation—the browning of cut fruit caused by the reaction of an enzyme (polyphenoloxidase) with the phenolic compounds present in these fruits; this browning is often mistakenly attributed to exposure to oxygen.

Additives—substances added to foods to prevent spoilage or to improve appearance, texture, flavor or nutritional value.

Aerobic bacteria—those that thrive on oxygen.

Aging—(1) the period during which freshly killed meat is allowed to rest so that the effects of rigor mortis dissipate; (2) the period during which freshly milled flour is allowed to rest so that it will whiten and produce less sticky doughs; the aging of flour can be chemically accelerated.

Airline breast—a boneless chicken breast with the first wing bone attached.

À la carte—(1) a menu on which each food and beverage is listed and priced separately; (2) foods cooked to order as opposed to foods cooked in advance and held for later service.

Albumen—the principal protein found in egg whites.

Al dente—(ahl den-tay) cooked foods (usually vegetables and pasta) that are prepared firm to the bite, not soft or mushy.

Alkali—also known as a base, any substance with a pH higher than 7; baking soda is one of the few alkaline foods.

Alkaloid—a number of bitter organic substances with alkaline properties; found most often in plants and sometimes used in drugs.

Allemande—(ah-luh-mahnd) a sauce made by adding lemon juice and a liaison to a velouté made from veal or chicken stock; used to make several small sauces of the velouté family.

Allumette—(al-u-met) (1) a matchstick cut of 1/8 inch × 1/8 inch × 1-2 inches (3 mm × 3 mm × 2.5–5 cm) usually used for potatoes; (2) a strip of puff pastry with a sweet or savory filling.

American service—restaurant service where the waiter takes the orders and brings the food to the table; the food is placed on dishes (plated) in the kitchen, making it a relatively fast method for seated service.

Amino acid—the basic molecular component of proteins; each of the approximately two dozen amino acids contains oxygen, hydrogen, carbon and nitrogen atoms.

Anaerobic bacteria—those that are able to live and grow without the presence of oxygen.

Animal husbandry—the business, science and practice of raising domesticated animals.

Anterior—at or toward the front of an object or place; opposite of posterior.

Appetizers—also known as first courses, usually small portions of hot or cold foods intended to whet the appetite in anticipation of the more substantial courses to follow.

Aquafarming—also known as aquaculture, the business, science and practice of raising large quantities of fish and shellfish in tanks, ponds or ocean pens.

Aromatic—a food added to a preparation to enhance the flavor and aroma; includes herbs and spices as well as some vegetables.

Aspic or aspic jelly—a clear jelly usually made from a clarified stock thickened with gelatin; used to coat foods, especially charcuterie items, and for garnish.

Au gratin—(oh graw-ton) foods with a browned or crusted top; often made by browning a food with a bread crumb, cheese and/or sauce topping under a broiler or salamander.

Au jus—(oh zhew) roasted meats, poultry or game served with their natural, unthickened juices.

Au sec—(oh sec) cooked until nearly dry.

Bacteria—single-celled microorganisms, some of which can cause diseases, including food-borne diseases.

Bain marie—(bane mah-ree) (1) a hot water bath used to gently cook food or keep cooked food hot; (2) a container for holding food in a hot water bath.

Baking—a dry-heat cooking method in which foods are surrounded by hot, dry air in a closed environment; similar to roasting, the term *baking* is usually applied to breads, pastries, vegetables and fish.

Baking powder—a mixture of sodium bicarbonate and one or more acids, generally cream of tartar and/or sodium aluminum sulfate, used to leaven baked goods; it releases carbon dioxide gas if moisture is present in a formula. Single-acting baking powder releases carbon dioxide gas in the presence of moisture only; double-acting baking powder releases some carbon dioxide gas upon

contact with moisture, and more gas is released when heat is applied.

Baking soda—sodium bicarbonate, an alkaline compound that releases carbon dioxide gas when combined with an acid and moisture; used to leaven baked goods.

Ballotine—(bahl-lo-teen) similar to a galantine, it is usually made by stuffing a deboned poultry leg with forcemeat; it is then poached or braised and normally served hot.

Barbecue—(1) to cook foods over dry heat created by the burning of hardwood or hardwood charcoals; (2) a tangy tomato- or vinegar-based sauce used for grilled foods; (3) foods cooked by this method and/or with this sauce.

Barding—tying thin slices of fat, such as bacon or pork fatback, over meats or poultry that have little to no natural fat covering in order to protect and moisten them during roasting.

Basting—moistening foods during cooking (usually roasting, broiling or grilling) with melted fat, pan drippings, sauce or other liquids to prevent drying and to add flavor.

Batonnet—(bah-toh-nah) foods cut into matchstick shapes of 1/4 inch × 1/4 inch × 2–2 1/2 inches (6 mm × 6 mm × 5–6 cm).

Batter—(1) a semiliquid mixture containing flour or other starch used to make cakes and breads. The gluten development is minimized and the liquid forms the continuous medium in which other ingredients are disbursed; generally contains more fat, sugar and liquids than a dough; (2) a semiliquid mixture of liquid and starch used to coat foods for deep-frying.

Baumé scale—(boh-may) see **Hydrometer.**

Bavarian cream—a sweet dessert mixture made by thickening custard sauce with gelatin and then folding in whipped cream; the final product is poured into a mold and chilled until firm.

Beard—a clump of dark threads found on a mussel.

Béarnaise—(bare-naze) a sauce made of butter and egg yolks and flavored with a reduction of vinegar, shallots, tarragon and peppercorns.

Beating—a mixing method in which foods are vigorously agitated to incorporate air or develop gluten; a spoon or electric mixer with its paddle attachment is used.

Béchamel—(bay-shah-mell) a leading sauce made by thickening milk with a white roux and adding seasonings.

Beefalo—the product of crossbreeding a bison (American buffalo) and a domestic beef animal.

Berry—(1) the kernel of certain grains such as wheat; (2) small, juicy fruits that grow on vines and bushes.

Beurre blanc—(burr blanhk) (Fr. for white butter) an emulsified butter sauce made from shallots, white wine and butter.

Beurre composé—(burr kom-poz-a) see **Compound butter.**

Beurre manié—(burr man-yay) a combination of equal amounts by weight of flour and soft, whole butter; it is whisked into a simmering sauce at the end of the cooking process for quick thickening and added sheen and flavor.

Beurre noir—(burr nwar) (Fr. for black butter) whole butter heated until dark brown; sometimes flavored with vinegar.

Beurre noisette—(burr nwah-zett) whole butter heated until it turns light brown, giving off a nutty aroma.

Beurre rouge—(burr rooge) (Fr. for red butter) an emulsified butter sauce made from shallots, red wine and butter.

Bilateral—symmetrical halves arranged along a central axis.

Biscuit method—a mixing method used to make biscuits, scones and flaky doughs; it involves cutting cold fat into the flour and other dry ingredients before any liquid is added.

Bisque—(bisk) a soup made from shellfish; classic versions are thickened with rice.

Bivalves—mollusks such as clams, oysters and mussels that have two bilateral shells attached at a central hinge.

Blanching—very briefly and partially cooking a food in boiling water or hot fat; usually used to assist preparation (for example, to loosen peels from vegetables), as part of a combination cooking method, to remove undesirable flavors or to prepare a food for freezing.

Blanquette—(blang-kett) a white stew made of a white sauce and meat or poultry that is simmered without first browning.

Blending—a mixing method in which two or more ingredients are combined just until they are evenly distributed.

Bloom—(1) a white, powdery layer that sometimes appears on chocolate if the cocoa butter separates; (2) a measure of gelatin's strength.

Boiling—a moist-heat cooking method that uses convection to transfer heat from a hot (approximately 212°F [100°C]) liquid to the food submerged in it; the turbulent waters and higher temperatures cook foods more quickly than do poaching or simmering.

Bordelaise—(bor-da-lays) a brown sauce flavored with a reduction of red wine, shallots, pepper and herbs and garnished with marrow.

Bouchées—(boo-shays) small puff pastry shells often filled with a savory mixture and used for hors d'oeuvre.

Bound salad—a salad composed of cooked meats, poultry, fish, shellfish, pasta or potatoes combined with a dressing.

Bouquet garni—(boo-kay gar-nee) fresh herbs and vegetables tied into a bundle with twine and used to flavor stocks, sauces, soups and stews.

Bouquetière—(boo-kuh-tyehr) a garnish (bouquet) of carefully cut and arranged fresh vegetables.

Braising—a combination cooking method in which foods are first browned in hot fat, then covered and slowly cooked in a small amount of liquid over low heat; braising uses a combination of simmering and steaming to transfer heat from the liquid (conduction) and the air (convection) to the foods.

Bran—the tough outer layer of a cereal grain and the part highest in fiber.

Brandy—an alcoholic beverage made by distilling the fermented mash of grapes or other fruits.

Brawn—also called an aspic terrine, made from simmered meats packed into a terrine and covered with aspic.

Brazier or **brasier**—a pan designed for braising; usually round with two handles and a tight-fitting lid.

Breading—(1) a coating of bread or cracker crumbs, cornmeal or other dry

meal applied to foods that will typically be deep-fried or pan-fried; (2) the process of applying this coating.

Brigade—also known as the kitchen brigade, a system of staffing a kitchen so that each worker is assigned a set of specific tasks; these tasks are often related by cooking method, equipment or the type of foods being produced.

Brine—a mixture of salt, water and seasonings used to preserve foods.

Brioche—(bree-yohsh) a rich yeast bread containing large amounts of eggs and butter.

Brochettes—(bro-shets) skewers, either small hors d'oeuvre or large entrée size, threaded with meat, poultry, fish, shellfish and/or vegetables and grilled, broiled or baked; sometimes served with a dipping sauce.

Broiling—a dry-heat cooking method in which foods are cooked by heat radiating from an overhead source.

Broth—a flavorful liquid obtained from the long simmering of meats and/or vegetables.

Browning—see **Caramelization.**

Brown sauce—see **Espagnole.**

Brown stew—a stew in which the meat is first browned in hot fat.

Brown stock—a richly colored stock made of chicken, veal, beef or game bones and vegetables, all of which are caramelized before they are simmered in water with seasonings.

Brunch—a late morning to early afternoon meal that takes the place of both breakfast and lunch; a brunch menu often offers breakfast foods as well as almost anything else.

Brunoise—(broo-nwah) (1) foods cut into cubes of 1/8 inch × 1/8 inch × 1/8 inch (3 mm × 3 mm × 3 mm); (2) foods garnished with vegetables cut in this manner.

Buffet service—diners generally serve themselves foods arranged on a counter or table or are served by workers assigned to specific areas of the buffet. Usually buffet-service-style restaurants charge by the meal; restaurants offering buffet service that charge by the dish are known as cafeterias.

Butcher—(1) to slaughter and dress or fabricate animals for consumption; (2) the person who slaughters and fabricates animals.

Butler service—the use of servers to pass foods (typically hors d'oeuvre) or drinks arranged on trays.

Buttercream—a light, smooth, fluffy frosting of sugar, fat and flavorings; egg yolks or whipped egg whites are sometimes added. There are three principal kinds: simple, Italian and French.

Butterflying—slicing boneless meat, fish or shrimp nearly in half lengthwise so that they spread open like a book; used to increase surface area and speed cooking.

Cafeteria—see **Buffet service.**

Caffeine—an alkaloid found in coffee beans, tea leaves and cocoa beans that acts as a stimulant.

Cake—in American usage, refers to a broad range of pastries, including layer cakes, coffeecakes and gâteaux; can refer to almost anything that is baked, tender, sweet and sometimes frosted.

Calf—(1) a young cow or bull; (2) the meat of calves slaughtered when they are older than five months.

Calorie—the unit of energy measured by the amount of heat required to raise 1000 grams of water one degree Celsius; it is also written as *kilocalorie* or *kcal* and is used as a measure of food energy.

Canapé—(kahn-ah-pay) tiny open-faced sandwich served as an hors d'oeuvre; usually composed of a small piece of bread or toast topped with a savory spread and garnish.

Canning—a preservation method in which the food is sealed in a glass or metal container and subjected to high temperatures for a specific period in order to destroy microorganisms that cause spoilage; the sealed environment eliminates oxidation and retards decomposition.

Capon—(kay-pahn) the class of surgically castrated male chickens; they have well-flavored meat and soft, smooth skin.

Capsaicin—(kap-say-ih-sin) an alkaloid found in a chile pepper's placental ribs that provides the pepper's heat.

Caramelization—the process of cooking sugars; the browning of sugar enhances the flavor and appearance of foods.

Carbohydrates—a group of compounds composed of oxygen, hydrogen and carbon that supply the body with energy (4 calories per gram); carbohydrates are classified as simple (including certain sugars) and complex (including starches and fiber).

Carotenoid—a naturally occurring pigment that predominates in red and yellow vegetables such as carrots and red peppers.

Carryover cooking—the cooking that occurs after a food is removed from a heat source; it is accomplished by the residual heat remaining in the food.

Cartilage—also known as gristle, a tough, whitish elastic connective tissue that helps give structure to an animal's body.

Carve—to cut cooked meat or poultry into portions.

Casings—membranes used to hold forcemeat for sausages; they can be natural animal intestines or manufactured from collagen extracted from cattle hides.

Casserole—(1) a heavy dish, usually ceramic, for baking foods; (2) foods baked in a casserole dish.

Caul fat—a fatty membrane from pig or sheep intestines; it resembles fine netting and is used to bard roasts and pâtés and to encase forcemeat for sausages.

Cellulose—a complex carbohydrate found in the cell wall of plants; it is edible but indigestible by humans.

Cephalopods—mollusks with a single, thin internal shell called a pen or cuttlebone, well-developed eyes, a number of arms that attach to the head and a saclike fin-bearing mantle; include squid and octopus.

Chafing dish—a metal dish with a heating unit (flame or electric) used to keep foods warm at tableside or during buffet service.

Chalazae cords—thick, twisted strands of egg white that anchor the yolk in place.

Charcuterie—the production of pâtés, terrines, galantines, sausages and similar foods.

Cheesecloth—a light, fine mesh gauze used to strain liquids and make sachets.

Chef de partie—also known as station chef, produces the menu items under the direct supervision of the chef or sous-chef.

Chef du cuisine—also known simply as chef, the person responsible for all kitchen operations, developing menu items and setting the kitchen's tone and tempo.

Chef's knife—an all-purpose knife used for chopping, slicing and mincing; its tapering blade is 8–14 inches long.

Chemical hazards—a danger to the safety of food caused by chemical substances, especially cleaning agents, pesticides and toxic metals.

Chemical leavening agents—see **Baking powder** and **Baking soda**; through chemical reactions between acids and bases, these products release gases used to leaven baked goods.

Chevre—(shev-ruh) (Fr. for goat) generally refers to a cheese made from goat's milk.

Chiffonade—(cheh-fon-nahd) (1) to finely slice or shred leafy vegetables or herbs; (2) the finely cut leafy vegetables or herbs often used as a garnish or bedding.

Chile—a member of the capsicum plant family.

Chili—the stewlike dish containing chiles.

Chilli—a commercial spice powder containing a blend of seasonings.

China cap—a cone-shaped strainer made of perforated metal.

Chinoise—(shen-wasz) a conical strainer made of fine mesh, used for straining and puréeing foods.

Chlorophyll—a naturally occurring pigment that predominates in green vegetables such as cabbage.

Cholesterol—a fatty substance found in foods derived from animal products and in the human body; it has been linked to heart disease.

Chop—(1) a cut of meat including part of the rib; (2) to cut an item into small pieces where uniformity of size and shape is neither feasible nor necessary.

Chowder—a hearty soup made from fish, shellfish and/or vegetables, usually containing milk and potatoes and often thickened with roux.

Choux pastry—see **Éclair paste.**

Chutney—a sweet-and-sour condiment made of fruits and/or vegetables cooked in vinegar with sugar and spices; some chutneys are reduced to a purée, while others retain recognizable pieces of their ingredients.

Cider—mildly fermented apple juice; nonalcoholic apple juice may also be labeled cider.

Citrus—fruits characterized by a thick rind, most of which is a bitter white pith (albedo) with a thin exterior layer of colored skin (zest); their flesh is segmented, juicy and varies from bitter to tart to sweet.

Clarification—(1) the process of transforming a broth into a clear consommé by trapping impurities with a clearmeat consisting of the egg white protein albumen, ground meat, an acidic product, mirepoix and other ingredients; (2) the clearmeat used to clarify a broth.

Clarified butter—purified butterfat; the butter is melted and the water and milk solids are removed.

Classes—the subdivisions of poultry kinds based on the bird's age and tenderness.

Classic cuisine—a late 19th- and early 20th-century refinement and simplification of French grande cuisine. Classic (or classical) cuisine relies upon the thorough exploration of culinary principles and techniques and emphasizes the refined preparation and presentation of superb ingredients.

Clean—to remove visible dirt and soil.

Clearmeat—see **Clarification.**

Clear soups—unthickened soups, including broths, consommés and broth-based soups.

Coagulation—the irreversible transformation of proteins from a liquid or semi-liquid state to a drier, solid state; usually accomplished through the application of heat.

Cocoa butter—the fat found in cocoa beans and used in fine chocolates.

Colander—a perforated bowl, with or without a base or legs, used to strain foods.

Collagen—a protein found in nearly all connective tissues; it dissolves when cooked with moisture.

Combination cooking methods—cooking methods, principally braising and stewing, that employ both dry-heat and moist-heat procedures.

Composed salad—a salad prepared by arranging each of the ingredients (the base, body, garnish and dressing) on individual plates in an artistic fashion.

Compound butter—also known as a beurre composé, a mixture of softened whole butter and flavorings used as a sauce or to flavor and color other sauces.

Compound sauces—see **Small sauces.**

Concassée—(kon-kaas-say) peeled, seeded and diced tomatoes.

Concasser—(kon-kaas) to pound or chop coarsely; usually used for tomatoes or parsley.

Condiment—traditionally, any item added to a dish for flavor, including herbs, spices and vinegars; now also refers to cooked or prepared flavorings such as prepared mustards, relishes, bottled sauces or pickles.

Conduction—the transfer of heat from one item to another through direct contact.

Confit—meat or poultry (often lightly salt-cured) slowly cooked and preserved in its own fat and served hot.

Connective tissues—tissues found throughout an animal's body that hold together and support other tissues such as muscles.

Consommé—a rich stock or broth that has been clarified with clearmeat to remove impurities.

Contaminants—biological, chemical or physical substances that can be harmful when consumed in sufficient quantities.

Contamination—the presence, generally unintentional, of harmful organisms or substances.

Convection—the transfer of heat caused by the natural movement of molecules in a fluid (whether air, water or fat) from a warmer area to a cooler one. Mechanical convection is the movement of molecules caused by stirring.

Cookery—the art, practice or work of cooking.

Cookies—small, sweet, flat pastries; usually classified by preparation or makeup techniques as drop, icebox, bar, cutout, pressed and wafer.

Cooking—the transfer of energy from a heat source to a food; this energy alters the food's molecular structure, changing its texture, flavor, aroma and appearance.

Cooking medium—the air, fat, water or steam in which a food is cooked.

Coring—the process of removing the seeds or pit from a fruit or fruit-vegetable.

Cost of goods sold—the total cost of food items sold during a given period; calculated as beginning inventory plus purchases minus ending inventory.

Cost per portion—the cost of one serving; calculated as the total recipe cost divided by the number of portions produced from that recipe.

Coulis—(koo-lees) a sauce made from a purée of vegetables or fruit; may be hot or cold.

Count—the number of individual items in a given measure of weight or volume.

Court bouillon—(coor boo-yon) water simmered with vegetables, seasonings and an acidic product such as vinegar or wine; used for simmering or poaching fish, shellfish or vegetables.

Couscoussier—two bulbous pots, the top one has a perforated bottom and sits snugly on the bottom pot; used to cook couscous.

Cows—female cattle after their first calving, principally raised for milk and calf production.

Cream filling—a pie filling made of flavored pastry cream thickened with cornstarch.

Creaming—a mixing method in which softened fat and sugar are vigorously combined to incorporate air; used for making some quick breads, cookies and high-fat cakes.

Creams—also known as crèmes, include light, fluffy or creamy-textured dessert foods made with whipped cream or whipped egg whites, such as Bavarian creams, chiffons, mousses and crème Chantilly.

Cream soup—a soup made from vegetables cooked in a liquid that is thickened with a starch and puréed; cream is then incorporated to add richness and flavor.

Crème Anglaise—(crem ahn-glas) or crème a l'anglaise; see **Vanilla custard sauce.**

Crème caramel—(crem cah-rah-mel) like crème renversée and flan, a custard baked over a layer of caramelized sugar and inverted for service.

Crème Chantilly—(crem shan-tee) heavy cream whipped to soft peaks and flavored with sugar and vanilla; used to garnish pastries or desserts or folded into cooled custard or pastry cream for fillings.

Crème Chiboust—(crem chee-boos) a pastry cream lightened by folding in Italian meringue.

Crème patissière—(crem pah-tees-syehr) see **Pastry cream.**

Crepe—(krayp) a thin, delicate unleavened griddlecake made with a very thin egg batter cooked in a very hot sauté pan; used in sweet and savory preparations.

Critical control point—under the HACCP system, it is any step during the processing of a food when a mistake can result in the transmission, growth or survival of pathogenic bacteria.

Croissant—(krwah-san) a crescent-shaped roll made from a rich, rolled-in yeast dough.

Croquette—(crow-kett) a food that has been puréed or bound with a thick sauce (usually béchamel or velouté), made into small shapes, then breaded and deep-fried.

Cross-contamination—the transfer of bacteria or other contaminants from one food, work surface or equipment to another.

Croute, en—(awn croot) a food encased in a bread or pastry crust.

Crouton—a bread or pastry garnish, usually toasted or sautéed until crisp.

Crudités—(croo-dee-tays) generally refers to raw or blanched vegetables served as an hors d'oeuvre and often accompanied by a dip.

Crustaceans—shellfish characterized by a hard outer skeleton or shell and jointed appendages; include lobsters, crabs and shrimp.

Cuisine—the ingredients, seasonings, cooking procedures and styles attributable to a particular group of people; the group can be defined by geography, history, ethnicity, politics, culture or religion.

Cuisson—(kwee-zon) the liquid used for shallow poaching.

Curdle—the separation of milk or egg mixtures into solid and liquid components; caused by overcooking, high heat or the presence of acids.

Curing salt—a mixture of salt and sodium nitrite that inhibits bacterial growth; used as a preservative, often for charcuterie items.

Custard—any liquid thickened by the coagulation of egg proteins; its consistency depends on the ratio of eggs to liquid and the type of liquid used. Custards can be baked in the oven or cooked in a bain marie or on the stove top.

Cutlet—a relatively thick boneless slice of meat.

Cutting—(1) reducing a food to smaller pieces; (2) a mixing method in which solid fat is incorporated into dry ingredients until only lumps of the desired size remain.

Cutting loss—the unavoidable and unrecoverable loss of food during fabrication; the loss is usually the result of food particles sticking to the cutting board or the evaporation of liquids.

Cuttlebone—also known as the pen, the single, thin internal shell of cephalopods.

Cycle menu—a menu that changes every day for a certain period and then repeats the same daily items in the same order (for example, on a seven-day cycle, the same menu is used every Monday).

Dairy products—include cow's milk and foods produced from cow's milk such as butter, yogurt, sour cream and cheese.

Decline phase—a period during which bacteria die at an accelerated rate, also known as the negative growth phase.

Decoction—(1) boiling a food until its flavor is removed; (2) a procedure used for brewing coffee.

Decorator's icing—see **Royal icing.**

Deep-frying—a dry-heat cooking method using convection to transfer heat to a food submerged in hot fat; foods to be deep-fried are usually first coated in batter or breading.

Deglaze—to swirl or stir a liquid (usually wine or stock) in a sauté pan or other pan to dissolve cooked food particles remaining on the bottom; the resulting mixture often becomes the base for a sauce.

Degrease—to skim the fat from the top of a liquid such as a sauce or stock.

Demi-glace—(deh-me glass) (Fr. for half-glaze) a mixture of half brown stock and half brown sauce reduced by half.

Detrempe—(day-tromp) a paste made with flour and water during the first stage of preparing a pastry dough, especially rolled-in doughs.

Deveining—the process of removing a shrimp's digestive tract.

Deviled—meat, poultry or other food seasoned with mustard, vinegar and other spicy seasonings.

Diagonals—elongated or oval-shaped slices of cylindrical vegetables or fruits.

Dice—(1) to cut foods into cubes: 1/4 inch (6 mm) for small, 3/8 inch (9 mm) for medium and 5/8 (1.5 cm) for large; (2) the cubes of cut food.

Dietary fiber—see **Fiber.**

Dip—a thick, creamy sauce, served hot or cold, to accompany crudités, crackers, chips or other foods, especially as an hors d'oeuvre; dips are often based on sour cream, mayonnaise or cream cheese.

Direct contamination—the contamination of raw foods in their natural setting or habitat.

Docking—pricking small holes in an unbaked dough or crust to allow steam to escape and prevent the dough from rising when baked.

Dough—a mixture of flour and other ingredients used in baking; has a low moisture content and gluten forms the continuous medium into which other ingredients are embedded; it is often stiff enough to cut into shapes.

Drawn—a market form for fish in which the viscera is removed.

Dredging—coating a food with flour or finely ground crumbs; usually done prior to sautéing or frying or as the first step of the standardized breading procedure.

Dressed—(1) an animal carcass trimmed or otherwise prepared for consumption; (2) a market form for fish in which the viscera, gills, fins and scales are removed.

Drupes—see **Stone fruits.**

Dry-heat cooking methods—cooking methods, principally broiling, grilling, roasting and baking, sautéing, pan-frying and deep-frying, that use air or fat to transfer heat through conduction and convection; dry-heat cooking methods allow surface sugars to caramelize.

Drying—a preservation method in which the food's moisture content is dramatically reduced; drying changes the food's texture, flavor and appearance.

Duchesse potatoes—(duh-shees) a purée of cooked potatoes, butter and egg yolks, seasoned with salt, pepper and nutmeg; can be eaten as is or used to prepare several classic potato dishes.

Dumpling—any of a variety of small starchy products made from doughs or batters that are simmered or steamed; can be plain or filled.

Durum—a type of hard wheat milled into semolina flour, which is used for making pasta.

Duxelles—(duke-sell) a coarse paste made of finely chopped mushrooms sautéed with shallots in butter.

Éclair paste—(ay-clahr) also known as pâte à choux, a soft dough that produces hollow baked products with crisp exteriors; used for making éclairs, cream puffs and savory products.

Egg wash—a mixture of beaten eggs (whole eggs, yolks or whites) and a liquid, usually milk or water, used to coat doughs before baking to add sheen.

Elastin—a protein found in connective tissues, particularly ligaments and tendons, it often appears as the white or silver covering on meats known as silverskin; elastin does not dissolve when cooked.

Emince—(eh-manss) a small, thin boneless piece of meat.

Emulsification—the process by which generally unmixable liquids, such as oil and water, are forced into a uniform distribution.

Emulsion—(1) a uniform mixture of two unmixable liquids; (2) flavoring oils such as orange and lemon, mixed into water with the aid of emulsifiers.

Endosperm—the largest part of a cereal grain and a source of protein and carbohydrates (starch); it is the part used primarily in milled products.

Entrée—(ahn-tray) the main dish of an American meal, usually meat, poultry, fish or shellfish accompanied by a vegetable and starch; in France, the first course, served before the fish and meat courses.

Enzymatic browning—see **Acidulation.**

Enzymes—proteins that aid specific chemical reactions in plants and animals.

Escalope—(ess-cal-lop) see **Scallop.**

Espagnole—(ess-spah-nyol) also known as brown sauce, a leading sauce made of brown stock, mirepoix and tomatoes thickened with brown roux; often used to produce demi-glace.

Essential nutrients—nutrients that must be provided by food because the body cannot or does not produce them in sufficient quantities.

Ethnic cuisine—generally, the cuisine of a group of people having a common cultural heritage, as opposed to the cuisine of a group of people bound together by geography or political factors.

Ethylene gas—a colorless, odorless hydrocarbon gas naturally emitted from fruits and fruit-vegetables that encourages ripening.

Evaporation—the process by which heated water molecules move faster and faster until the water turns to a gas (steam) and vaporizes; evaporation is responsible for the drying of foods during cooking.

Extracts—concentrated mixtures of ethyl alcohol and flavoring oils such as vanilla, almond and lemon.

Extrusion—the process of forcing pasta dough through perforated plates to create various shapes; pasta dough that is not extruded must be rolled and cut.

Fabricate—to cut a large item into smaller portions; often refers to the butchering of fish or shellfish.

Fabricated cuts—individual portions of meat cut from a subprimal.

Facultative bacteria—those that can adapt and will survive with or without oxygen.

Fancy—(1) fish that has been previously frozen; (2) a quality grade for fruits, especially canned or frozen.

Fatback—fresh pork fat from the back of the pig, used primarily for barding.

Fats—(1) a group of compounds composed of oxygen, hydrogen and carbon atoms that supply the body with energy (9 calories per gram); fats are classified as saturated, monounsaturated or polyunsaturated; (2) the general term for butter, lard, shortening, oil and margarine used as cooking media or ingredients.

Fermentation—(1) the process by which yeast converts sugar into alcohol and carbon dioxide; (2) the time that yeast bread dough is left to rise.

Feuillettes—(fuh-yet) square, rectangular or diamond-shaped puff pastry boxes that can be filled with a sweet or savory mixture.

Fiber—also known as dietary fiber, indigestible carbohydrates found in grains, fruits, and vegetables; fiber aids digestion.

FIFO (First In, First Out)—an inventory storage and utilization process in which the oldest product is always used first.

Filé—(fee-lay) a seasoning and thickening agent made from dried, ground sassafras leaves.

Filet, Fillet—(fee-lay) (1) filet: the boneless tenderloin of meat; (2) fillet: the side of a fish removed intact, boneless or semiboneless, with or without skin; (3) to cut such a piece.

Fish velouté—a velouté sauce made from fish stock.

Flambé—(flahm-bay) food served flaming; produced by igniting brandy, rum or other liquor.

Flash-frozen—food that has been frozen very rapidly using metal plates, extremely low temperatures or chemical solutions.

Flatfish—fish with asymmetrical, compressed bodies that swim in a horizontal position and have both eyes on the top of the head; include sole, flounder and halibut.

Flat icing—a white, glossy glaze used on Danish pastries.

Flavonoid—a naturally occurring pigment that predominates in red, purple and white vegetables such as cauliflower, red cabbage and beets.

Flavoring—an item that adds a new taste to a food and alters its natural flavors; flavorings include herbs, spices, vinegars and condiments.

Fleuron—(floor-ahn) a crescent-shaped piece of puff pastry used as a garnish.

Flour—a powdery substance of varying degrees of fineness made by milling grains such as wheat, corn or rye.

Foie gras—(fwah grah) liver of specially fattened geese.

Fold—a measurement of the strength of vanilla extract.

Folding—a mixing method used to gently incorporate light, airy products into heavier ingredients (for example, mixing dry ingredients with whipped eggs).

Fond—(fahn) (1) Fr. for stock; (2) Fr. for bottom; the concentrated juices, drippings and bits of food left in pans after foods are roasted or sautéed; used to flavor sauces made directly in the pans in which the foods were cooked.

Fondant—(fahn-dant) a sweet, thick opaque sugar paste commonly used for glazing pastries such as napoleons or making candies.

Fond lié—(fahn lee-ay) See **Jus lié.**

Food cost—the cost of the materials that go directly into the production of menu items.

Food cost percentage—the ratio of the cost of foods served to the food sales dollars during a given period.

Food Pyramid—a dietary guide that prioritizes and proportions food choices among six general food groups.

Forcemeat—a preparation made from uncooked ground meats, poultry, fish or shellfish, seasoned, and emulsified with fat; commonly prepared as country-style, basic and mousseline and used for charcuterie items.

Formula—a recipe; the term is most often used in the bakeshop.

Frangipane—(fran-juh-pahn) a sweet almond and egg filling cooked inside pastry.

Free-range chickens—chickens allowed to move freely and forage for food; as opposed to chickens raised in coops.

Free-range veal—the meat of calves that are allowed to roam freely and eat grasses and other natural foods; this meat is pinker and more strongly flavored than that of milk-fed calves.

Freezer burn—the surface dehydration and discoloration of food that results from moisture loss at below-freezing temperatures.

French service—restaurant service where one waiter (a captain) takes the order, does the tableside cooking and brings the drinks and food, the secondary or back waiter serves bread and water, clears each course, crumbs the table and serves the coffee.

Fresh—a food that is not and has never been frozen.

Fresh-frozen—a food that has been frozen while still fresh.

Fricassée—(frick-a-see) a white stew in which the meat is cooked in fat without browning before the liquid is added.

Frittata—(free-tah-ta) an open-faced omelet of Spanish-Italian heritage.

Frosting—also known as icing, a sweet decorative coating used as a filling between the layers or as a coating over the top and sides of a cake.

Fruit—the edible organ that develops from the ovary of a flowering plant and contains one or more seeds (pips or pits).

Fruit-vegetables—foods such as avocados, eggplants, chile peppers and tomatoes that are botanically fruits but are most often prepared and served like vegetables.

Frying—a dry-heat cooking method in which foods are cooked in hot fat; includes sautéing and stir-frying, pan-frying and deep-frying.

Fumet—(foo-may) a stock made from fish bones or shellfish shells and vegetables simmered in a liquid with flavorings.

Fungi—a large group of plants ranging from single-celled organisms to giant mushrooms; the most common are molds and yeasts.

Galanga—a rhizome used fresh or dry as a spice in Southeast Asian cuisine; has a gingerlike flavor.

Galantine—similar to a ballottine, it is a charcuterie item made from a forcemeat of poultry, game or suckling pig usually wrapped in the skin of the bird or animal and poached in an appropriate stock; often served cold, usually in aspic.

Game—birds and animals hunted for sport or food; many game birds and animals are now ranch-raised and commercially available.

Game hen—the class of young or immature progeny of Cornish chickens or of a Cornish chicken and White Rock chicken; they are small and very flavorful.

Ganache—(ga-nosh) a rich blend of chocolate and heavy cream and, optionally, flavorings, used as a pastry or candy filling or frosting.

Garam masala—a blend of roasted and ground spices used in East Indian cuisines.

Garde manger—(gar mawn-zhay) (1) also known as the pantry chef, the cook in charge of cold food production, including salads and salad dressings, charcuterie items, cold appetizers and buffet items; (2) the work area where these foods are prepared.

Garnish—(1) food used as an attractive decoration; (2) a subsidiary food used to add flavor or character to the main ingredient in a dish (for example, noodles in chicken noodle soup).

Gastronomy—the art and science of eating well.

Gâteau—(ga-toe) (1) in American usage, refers to any cake-type dessert; (2) in French usage, refers to various pastry items made with puff pastry, éclair paste, short dough or sweet dough.

Gaufrette potatoes—thin, fried, lattice-cut slices of potato.

Gelatin—a tasteless and odorless mixture of proteins (especially collagen) extracted from bones, connective tissues and other animal parts; when dissolved in a hot liquid and then cooled, it forms a jellylike substance; used as a thickener and stabilizer.

Gelatinization—the process by which starch granules are cooked. They absorb moisture when placed in a liquid and heated; as the moisture is absorbed, the product swells, softens and clarifies slightly.

Gelato—(jah-laht-to) an Italian-style ice cream that is denser than American-style ice cream.

Genoise—(zhen-waahz) (1) a form of whipped-egg cake that uses whole eggs whipped with sugar; (2) a French sponge cake.

Germ—the smallest portion of a cereal grain and the only part that contains fat.

Giblets—the collective term for edible poultry viscera, including gizzards, hearts, livers and necks.

Gizzard—a bird's second stomach.

Glace de poisson—(glahss duh pwah-sawng) a syrupy glaze made by reducing a fish stock.

Glace de viande—(glahss duh vee-awnd) a dark, syrupy meat glaze made by reducing a brown stock.

Glace de volaille—(glahss duh vo-lahy) a light brown, syrupy glaze made by reducing a chicken stock.

Glaze—(1) any shiny coating applied to food or created by browning; (2) the dramatic reduction and concentration of a stock; (3) a thin, flavored coating poured or dripped onto a cake or pastry.

Gliaden—see **Gluten.**

Glucose—an important energy source for the body; also known as blood sugar.

Gluten—a tough elastic substance created when flour is moistened and mixed; it gives structure and strength to baked goods and is responsible for their volume, texture and appearance. The proteins necessary for gluten formation are glutenin and gliaden.

Glutenin—see **Gluten.**

Grading—a series of voluntary programs offered by the U.S. Department of Agriculture to designate a food's overall quality.

Grains—(1) grasses that bear edible seeds, including corn, rice and wheat; (2) the fruit (that is, seed or kernel) of such grasses.

Gram—the basic unit of weight in the metric system; equal to approximately 1/30 of an ounce.

Grande Cuisine—the rich, intricate and elaborate cuisine of the 18th- and 19th-century French aristocracy and upper classes. It is based upon the rational identification, development and adoption of strict culinary principles.

Grate—to cut a food into small, thin shreds by rubbing it against a serrated metal plate known as a grater.

Green meats—freshly slaughtered meats that have not had sufficient time to age and develop tenderness and flavor.

Gremolada—(greh-moa-lah-dah) an aromatic garnish of chopped parsley, garlic and lemon zest used for osso buco.

Grilling—a dry-heat cooking method in which foods are cooked by heat radiating from a source located below the cooking surface; the heat can be generated by electricity or by burning gas, hardwood or hardwood charcoals.

Grind—to pulverize or reduce food to small particles using a mechanical grinder or food processor.

Grinding—a milling process in which grains are reduced to a powder; the powder can be of differing degrees of fineness or coarseness.

Gristle—see **Cartilage.**

Gum paste—a smooth dough of sugar and gelatin that can be colored and used to make decorations, especially for pastries.

HACCP—see **Hazard Analysis Critical Control Points.**

Hanging—the practice of allowing eviscerated (drawn or gutted) game to age in a dry, well-ventilated place; hanging helps tenderize the flesh and strengthen its flavor.

Hazard Analysis Critical Control Points (HACCP)—a rigorous system of self-inspection used to manage and maintain sanitary conditions in all types of food service operations; it focuses on the flow of food through the food service facility to identify any point or step in preparation (known as a critical control point) where some action must be taken to prevent or minimize a risk or hazard.

Heimlich maneuver—the first aid procedure for choking victims in which sudden upward pressure is applied to the upper abdomen in order to force any foreign object from the windpipe.

Herbs—any of a large group of aromatic plants whose leaves, stems or flowers are used to add flavors to other foods.

High-ratio cakes—a form of creamed-fat cake that uses emulsified shortening and has a two-stage mixing method.

Hollandaise—(holl-uhn-daze) an emulsified sauce made of butter, egg yolks and flavorings (especially lemon juice).

Homogenization—the process by which milk fat is prevented from separating out of milk products.

Hors d'oeuvre—(ohr durv) very small portions of hot or cold foods served before the meal to stimulate the appetite.

Hotel pan—a rectangular, stainless steel pan with a lip allowing it to rest in a storage shelf or steam table; available in several standard sizes.

Hull—also known as the husk, the outer covering of a fruit, seed or grain.

Hybrid—the result of crossbreeding different species that are genetically unalike; it is often a unique product.

Hybrid menu—a menu combining features of a static menu with a cycle menu or a market menu of specials.

Hydrogenation—the process used to harden oils: Hydrogen atoms are added to unsaturated fat molecules, making them partially or completely saturated and thus solid at room temperature.

Hydrometer—a device used to measure specific gravity; it shows degrees of concentration on the Baumé scale.

Hygroscopic—the characteristic of a food to readily absorb moisture from the air.

Icing—see **Frosting.**

IMPS/NAMP—see **NAMP/IMPS.**

Induction cooking—a cooking method that uses a special coil placed below the stove top's surface in combination with specially designed cookware to generate heat rapidly with an alternating magnetic field.

Infection—in the food safety context, a disease caused by the ingestion of live pathogenic bacteria that continue their life processes in the consumer's intestinal tract.

Infrared cooking—a heating method that uses an electric or ceramic element heated to such a high temperature that it gives off waves of radiant heat that cook the food.

Infusion—(1) the extraction of flavors from a food at a temperature below boiling; (2) a group of coffee brewing techniques, including steeping, filtering and dripping; (3) the liquid resulting from this process.

Instant-read thermometer—a thermometer used to measure the internal temperature of foods; the stem is inserted in the food, producing an instant temperature readout.

Intoxication—in the food safety context, a disease caused by the toxins that bacteria produce during their life processes.

Inventory—the listing and counting of all foods in the kitchen, storerooms and refrigerators.

IQF (Individually Quick Frozen)—the technique of rapidly freezing each individual item of food such as slices of fruit, berries or pieces of fish before packaging; IQF foods are not packaged with syrup or sauce.

Irradiation—a preservation method used for certain fruits, vegetables, grains, spices, meat and poultry in which ionizing radiation sterilizes the food, slows ripening and prevents sprouting.

Jam—a fruit gel made from fruit pulp and sugar.

Jelly—a fruit gel made from fruit juice and sugar.

Juice—the liquid extracted from any fruit or vegetable.

Julienne—(ju-lee-en) (1) to cut foods into stick-shaped pieces, approximately 1/8 inch × 1/8 inch × 1–2 inches (3 mm × 3 mm × 2.5–5 cm); (2) the stick-shaped pieces of cut food.

Jus lié—(zhew lee-ay) also known as fond lié, a sauce made by thickening brown stock with cornstarch or similar starch; often used like a demi-glace, especially to produce small sauces.

Kinds—the categories of poultry recognized by the U.S. Department of Agriculture: chickens, ducks, geese, guineas, pigeons and turkeys.

Kneading—working a dough to develop gluten.

Kosher—food prepared in accordance with Jewish dietary laws.

Lag phase—a period, usually following transfer from one place to another, during which bacteria do not experience much growth.

Lamb—the meat of sheep slaughtered under the age of one year.

Lard—the rendered fat of hogs.

Larding—inserting thin slices of fat, such as pork fatback, into low-fat meats in order to add moisture.

Leading sauces—also known as mother sauces, the foundation for the entire classic repertoire of hot sauces; the five leading sauces (béchamel, velouté, espagnole [also known as brown], tomato and hollandaise) are distinguished by the liquids and thickeners used to make them. They can be seasoned and garnished to create a wide variety of small or compound sauces.

Lean doughs—yeast doughs that contain little or no sugar or fat; used for French or Italian breads.

Leavener—an ingredient or process that produces or incorporates gases in a baked product in order to increase volume, provide structure and give texture.

Lecithin—a natural emulsifier found in egg yolks.

Legumes—(lay-gyooms) (1) Fr. for vegetables; (2) a large group of vegetables with double-seamed seed pods; depending upon the variety, the seeds, pod and seeds together, or the dried seeds are eaten.

Liaison—(lee-yeh-zon) a mixture of egg yolks and heavy cream used to thicken and enrich sauces.

Liqueur—a strong, sweet, syrupy alcoholic beverage made by mixing or redistilling neutral spirits with fruits, flowers, herbs, spices or other flavorings; also known as a cordial.

Liquor—an alcoholic beverage made by distilling grains, vegetables or other foods; includes rum, whiskey and vodka.

Liter—the basic unit of volume in the metric system, equal to slightly more than a quart.

Log phase—a period of accelerated growth for bacteria.

Macaroni—(1) any dried pasta made with wheat flour and water; (2) in American usage, an elbow-shaped pasta tube.

Macerate—to soak foods in a liquid, usually alcoholic, to soften them.

Macronutrients—the nutrients needed in large quantities: carbohydrates, proteins, fats and water.

Madeira—a Portuguese fortified wine heated during aging to give it a distinctive flavor and brown color.

Maître d'hotel (maître d')—(may-tr doh-tel) (1) the leader of the dining room brigade, also known as the dining room manager, he or she oversees the dining room or "front of the house" staff; (2) a compound butter flavored with chopped parsley and lemon juice.

Mandoline—a stainless steel, hand-operated slicing device with adjustable blades.

Marbling—Whitish streaks of inter- and intramuscular fat.

Marinade—the liquid used to marinate foods; it generally contains herbs, spices and other flavoring ingredients as well as an acidic product such as wine, vinegar or lemon juice.

Marinate—to soak a food in a seasoned liquid in order to tenderize the food and add flavor to it.

Market menu—a menu based upon product availability during a specific period; it is written to use foods when they are in peak season or readily available.

Marmalade—a citrus jelly that also contains unpeeled slices of citrus fruit.

Marsala—a flavorful fortified sweet-to-semidry Sicilian wine.

Marzipan—a paste of ground almonds, sugar and egg whites used to fill and decorate pastries.

Masala—see **Garam masala.**

Matzo—thin, crisp unleavened bread made only with flour and water; can be ground into meal that is used for matzo balls and pancakes.

Mayonnaise—a thick, creamy sauce consisting of oil and vinegar emulsified with egg yolks, usually used as a salad dressing.

Mealy potatoes—also known as starchy potatoes, those with a high starch content and thick skin; they are best for baking.

Medallion—a small, round piece of meat or fish.

Melt—the process by which certain foods, especially those high in fat, gradually soften then liquefy when heated.

Menu—a list of foods and beverages available for purchase.

Meringue—(muh-reng) a foam made of beaten egg whites and sugar.

Metabolism—all the chemical reactions and physical processes that occur continuously in living cells and organisms.

Meter—the basic unit of length in the metric system, equal to slightly more than 1 yard.

Mezzaluna—a two-handled knife with one or more thick, crescent-shaped blades used to chopped and mince herbs and vegetables.

Micronutrients—the nutrients needed only in small amounts: vitamins and minerals.

Microorganisms—single-celled organisms as well as tiny plants and animals that can be seen only through a microscope.

Microwave cooking—a heating method that uses radiation generated by a special oven to penetrate the food. It agitates water molecules, creating friction and heat; this energy then spreads throughout the food by conduction (and by convection in liquids).

Mignonette—a small cut or medallion of meat.

Milk-fed veal—also known as formula-fed veal, it is the meat of calves fed only a nutrient-rich liquid and kept tethered in pens; this meat is whiter and more mildly flavored than that of free-range calves.

Milling—the process by which grain is ground into flour or meal.

Mince—to cut a food item into very small pieces.

Mineral—inorganic micronutrients necessary for regulating body functions and proper bone and teeth structures.

Mirepoix—(meer-pwa) a mixture of coarsely chopped onions, carrots and celery used to flavor stocks, stews and other foods; generally, a mixture of 50% onions, 25% carrots and 25% celery, by weight, is used.

Mise en place—(meez on plahs) (Fr. for putting in place) refers to the preparation and assembly of all necessary ingredients and equipment.

Mix—to combine ingredients in such a way that they are evenly dispersed throughout the mixture.

Moist-heat cooking methods—cooking methods, principally simmering, poaching, boiling and steaming, that use water or steam to transfer heat through convection; moist-heat cooking methods are used to emphasize the natural flavors of foods.

Molding—the process of shaping foods, particularly grains and vegetables bound by sauces, into attractive, hard-edged shapes by using metal rings, circular cutters or other forms.

Molds—(1) algaelike fungi that form long filaments or strands; for the most part, molds affect only food appearance and flavor; (2) containers used for shaping foods.

Mollusks—shellfish characterized by a soft, unsegmented body, no internal skeleton and a hard outer shell.

Monounsaturated fats—see **Unsaturated fats.**

Monter au beurre—(mohn-tay ah burr) to finish a sauce by swirling or whisking in butter (raw or compound) until it is melted; used to give sauces shine, flavor and richness.

Mortar and pestle—a hard bowl (the mortar) in which foods such as spices are ground or pounded into a powder with a club-shaped tool (the pestle).

Mother sauces—(Fr. *sauce mère*), see **Leading sauces.**

Mousse—(moose) a soft, creamy food, either sweet or savory, lightened by adding whipped cream, beaten egg whites or both.

Mousseline—(moose-uh-leen) (1) a delicately flavored forcemeat based on white meat, fish or shellfish lightened with cream and egg whites; (2) a sauce or cream lightened by folding in whipped cream.

Muffin method—a mixing method used to make quick bread batters; it involves combining liquid fat with other liquid ingredients before adding them to the dry ingredients.

Muscles—animal tissues consisting of bundles of cells or fibers that can contract and expand; they are the portions of a carcass usually consumed.

Mushrooms—members of a broad category of plants known as fungi; they are often used and served like vegetables.

Mutton—the meat of sheep slaughtered after they reach the age of one year.

NAMP/IMPS—the Institutional Meat Purchasing Specifications (IMPS) published by the U.S. Department of Agriculture; the IMPS are illustrated and described in *The Meat Buyer's Guide* published by the National Association of Meat Purveyors (NAMP).

Nappe—(nap) (1) the consistency of a liquid, usually a sauce, that will coat the back of a spoon; (2) to coat a food with sauce.

Nectar—the diluted, sweetened juice of peaches, apricots, guavas, black currants or other fruits, the juice of which would be too thick or too tart to drink straight.

Noisette—(nwah-zet) (1) a small, usually round, portion of meat cut from the rib or loin; (2) Fr. for hazelnut.

Noodles—flat strips of pasta-type dough that contains eggs; may be fresh or dried.

Nouvelle cuisine—(Fr. for new cooking) a mid-20th-century movement away from many classic cuisine principles and toward a lighter cuisine based on natural flavors, shortened cooking times and innovative combinations.

Nut—(1) the edible single-seed kernel of a fruit surrounded by a hard shell; (2) generally refers to any seed or fruit with an edible kernel in a hard shell.

Nutrients—the chemical substances found in food that nourish the body by promoting growth, facilitating body functions and providing energy; there are six categories of nutrients: proteins, carbohydrates, fats, water, minerals and vitamins.

Nutrition—the science that studies nutrients.

Oblique cuts—also known as roll cuts, small pieces of food, usually vegetables, with two angle-cut sides.

Offal—also called variety meats, edible entrails (for example, the heart, kidneys, liver, sweetbreads and tongue) and extremities (for example, oxtail and pig's feet) of an animal.

Oignon brûlée—(ohn-nawng brew-lay) (Fr. for burnt onion) charred onion halves; used to flavor and color stocks and sauces.

Oignon piqué—(ohn-nawng pee-kay) (Fr. for pricked onion) a bay leaf tacked with a clove to a peeled onion; used to flavor sauces and soups.

Oil—a type of fat that remains liquid at room temperature.

Organic farming—a method of farming that does not rely on synthetic pesticides, fungicides, herbicides or fertilizers.

Oven spring—the rapid rise of yeast goods in a hot oven, resulting from the production and expansion of trapped gases.

Paillarde—(pahy-lahrd) a scallop of meat pounded until thin; it is usually grilled.

Panada or **panade**—(1) something other than fat added to a forcemeat to enhance smoothness, aid emulsification or both; it is often béchamel, rice or crustless white bread soaked in milk; (2) a mixture for binding stuffings and dumplings, notably quenelles, often choux pastry, bread crumbs, frangipane, puréed potatoes or rice.

Pan-broiling—a dry-heat cooking method that uses conduction to transfer heat to a food resting directly on a cooking surface; no fat is used and the food remains uncovered.

Pan-dressed—a market form for fish in which the viscera, gills and scales are removed and the fins and tail are trimmed.

Pan-frying—a dry-heat cooking method in which food is placed in a moderate amount of hot fat.

Pan gravy—a sauce made by deglazing pan drippings from roast meat or poultry and combining them with a roux or other starch and stock.

Papillote, en—(awn poppy-yote) a cooking method in which food is wrapped in paper or foil and then heated so that the food steams in its own moisture.

Parboiling—partially cooking a food in a boiling or simmering liquid; similar to blanching but the cooking time is longer.

Parchment (paper)—heat-resistant paper used throughout the kitchen for tasks such as lining baking pans, wrapping foods to be cooked en papillote and covering foods during shallow poaching.

Parcooking—partially cooking a food by any cooking method.

Paring knife—a short knife used for detail work, especially cutting fruits and vegetables; it has a rigid blade approximately 2–4 inches long.

Parstock or **par**—the amount of stock necessary to cover operating needs between deliveries.

Pasta—(1) an unleavened paste or dough made from wheat flour (often semolina), water and eggs; the dough can be colored and flavored with a wide variety of herbs, spices or other ingredients and cut or extruded into a wide variety of shapes and sizes; it can be fresh or dried and is boiled for service; (2) general term for any macaroni product or egg noodle.

Pasteurization—the process of heating a liquid to a prescribed temperature for a specific period in order to destroy pathogenic bacteria.

Pastillage—a paste made of sugar, cornstarch and gelatin; it may be cut or molded into decorative shapes.

Pastry cream—also known as crème patissière, a stirred custard made with egg yolks, sugar and milk and thickened with starch; used for pastry and pie fillings.

Pâte—(paht) Fr. for dough.

Pâté—(pah-tay) traditionally, a fine savory meat filling wrapped in pastry, baked and served hot or cold as opposed to a terrine, which was a coarsely ground and highly seasoned meat mixture baked in an earthenware mold and served cold; today, the words *pâté* and *terrine* are generally used interchangeably.

Pâte à choux—(paht ah shoe) see **Éclair paste.**

Pâte au pâté—(paht ah pah-tay) a specially formulated pastry dough used for wrapping pâté when making pâté en croûte.

Pâte brisée—(paht bree-zay) a dough that produces a very flaky baked product containing little or no sugar; flaky dough is used for prebaked pie shells or crusts; mealy dough is a less flaky product used for custard, cream or fruit pie crusts.

Pâté en croute—(pah-tay awn croot) a pâté baked in pastry dough such as pâte au pâté.

Pâte feuilletée—(paht fuh-yuh-tay) also known as puff pastry, it is a rolled-in dough used for pastries, cookies and savory products, it produces a rich and buttery but not sweet baked product with hundreds of light, flaky layers.

Pâte sucrée—(paht sew-kra) a dough containing sugar that produces a very rich, crisp (not flaky) baked product; also known as sweet dough, it is used for tart shells.

Pathogen—any organism that causes disease; usually refers to bacteria.

Patissière—(pah-tees-sir-yair) a pastry chef, the person responsible for all baked items, including breads, pastries and desserts.

Paupiette—(po-pee-et) thin slices of meat, poultry or fish spread with a savory stuffing and rolled, then braised or poached.

Paysanne—(pahy-sahn) foods cut into flat squares of 1/2 inch × 1/2 inch × 1/4 inch (1.2 cm × 1.2 cm × 6 mm).

Pearling—a milling process in which all or part of the hull, bran and germ are removed from the grain.

Pectin—a gelatinlike carbohydrate obtained from certain fruits, used to thicken jams and jellies.

Persillade—(payr-se-yad) (1) a food served with or containing parsley; (2) a mixture of bread crumbs, parsley and garlic used to coat meats, usually lamb.

pH—a symbol for the level of acidity or alkalinity of a solution; expressed on a scale of 0 to 14.0; 7.0 is considered neutral or balanced acid/alkaline. The lower

the pH value, the more acidic the substance.

Phyllo—(fee-low) pastry dough made with very thin sheets of a flour and water mixture; several sheets are often layered with melted butter and used in sweet or savory preparations.

Physical hazards—a danger to the safety of food caused by particles such as chips, metal shavings, bits of wood or other foreign matter.

Pigment—any substance that gives color to an item.

Pilaf—a cooking method for grains in which the grains are lightly sautéed in hot fat and then a hot liquid is added; the mixture is simmered without stirring until the liquid is absorbed.

Poaching—a moist-heat cooking method that uses convection to transfer heat from a hot (approximately 160°F–180°F [71°C–82°C]) liquid to the food submerged in it.

Polyunsaturated fats—see **Unsaturated fats.**

Pomes—members of the *Rosaceae* family, they are tree fruits with a thin skin and firm flesh surrounding a central core containing many small seeds (called pips or carpels); include apples, pears and quince.

Pork—the meat of hogs usually slaughtered under the age of one year.

Posterior—at or toward the rear of an object or place; opposite of anterior.

Potentially hazardous foods—foods on which bacteria thrive.

Poultry—the collective term for domesticated birds bred for eating; they include chickens, ducks, geese, guineas, pigeons and turkeys.

Preserve—(1) a fruit gel that contains large pieces or whole fruits; (2) to extend the shelf life of a food by subjecting it to a process such as irradiation, canning, vacuum-packing, drying or freezing and/or by adding preservatives.

Primal cuts—the primary divisions of muscle, bone and connective tissue produced by the initial butchering of the carcass; primals are further broken down into smaller, more manageable cuts.

Prix fixe—(pree feks) (Fr. for fixed price) refers to a menu offering a complete meal for a set price, also known as table d'hôte.

Professional cooking—a system of cooking based upon a knowledge of and appreciation for ingredients and procedures.

Profiterole—(pro-feet-uh-roll) small round pastry made from éclair paste filled with a savory filling and served as an hors d'oeuvre or filled with ice cream and served as a dessert.

Proofing—the rise given shaped yeast products just prior to baking.

Proteins—a group of compounds composed of oxygen, hydrogen, carbon and nitrogen atoms necessary for manufacturing, maintaining and repairing body tissues and as an alternative source of energy (4 calories per gram); protein chains are constructed of various combinations of amino acids.

Puff pastry—see **Pâte feuilletée.**

Pulled sugar—a doughlike mixture of sucrose, glucose and tartaric acid that can be colored and shaped by hand.

Pulses—dried seeds from a variety of legumes.

Pumpernickel—(1) coarsely ground rye flour; (2) bread made with this flour.

Purée—(pur-ray) (1) to process food to achieve a smooth pulp; (2) food that is processed by mashing, straining or fine chopping to achieve a smooth pulp.

Purée soup—a soup usually made from starchy vegetables or legumes; after the main ingredient is simmered in a liquid, the mixture, or a portion of it, is puréed.

Putrefactives—bacteria that spoil food without rendering it unfit for human consumption.

Quenelle—(cuh-nell) a small, dumpling-shaped portion of a mousseline forcemeat poached in an appropriately flavored stock; it is shaped by using two spoons.

Quiche—a savory tart or pie consisting of a custard baked in a pastry shell with a variety of flavorings and garnishes.

Quick bread—a bread, including loaves and muffins, leavened by chemical leaveners or steam rather than yeast.

Radiation cooking—a heating process that does not require physical contact between the heat source and the food being cooked; instead, energy is transferred by waves of heat or light striking the food. Two kinds of radiant heat used in the kitchen are infrared and microwave.

Raft—formed during the clarification process from the clearmeat and impurities from the stock; it rises to the top of the simmering stock and releases additional flavors.

Ragout—(rah-goo) (1) traditionally, a well-seasoned, rich stew containing meat, vegetables and wine; (2) any stewed mixture.

Ramekin—a small, ovenproof dish, usually ceramic.

Rancidity—a chemical change in fats caused by exposure to air, light or heat that results in objectionable flavors and odors.

Recipe—a set of written instructions for producing a specific food or beverage; also known as a formula.

Recovery time—the length of time it takes hot fat to return to the desired cooking temperature after food is submerged in it.

Reduce—to cook a liquid mixture, often a sauce, until its quantity decreases because of evaporation; typically done to concentrate flavors and thicken liquids.

Refreshing—submerging a food in cold water to quickly cool it and prevent further cooking, also known as shocking; usually used for vegetables.

Regional cuisine—a set of recipes based on local ingredients, traditions and practices, within a larger geographical, political, cultural or social unit. regional cuisines are often variations of each other that blend together to create a national cuisine.

Relishes—cooked or pickled sauces usually made with vegetables or fruits and often used as a condiment.

Remouillage—(Fr. for rewetting) a stock produced by reusing the bones from another stock.

Render—(1) to melt and clarify fat; (2) to cook meats in order to remove the fat.

Ricer—a sievelike utensil with small holes through which soft food is forced; it produces particles about the size of a grain of rice.

Rich doughs—yeast doughs such as those used for brioche and some multigrain breads that contain a significant amount of sugar and fat.

Rillette—(ree-yet) meat or poultry slowly cooked, mashed and preserved in

its own fat and served cold and usually spread on toast.

Ripe—(1) fully grown and developed fruit; the fruit's flavor, texture and appearance are at their peak and the fruit is ready to eat; (2) an unpleasant odor indicating that a food, especially meat, poultry, fish or shellfish, may be past its prime.

Risotto—(re-zot-toe) (1) a cooking method for grains in which the grains are lightly sautéed in butter and then a liquid is gradually added; the mixture is simmered with near-constant stirring until the still-firm grains merge with the cooking liquid; (2) a Northern Italian rice dish prepared this way.

Roasting—a dry-heat cooking method that heats food by surrounding it with hot, dry air in a closed environment or on a spit over an open fire; similar to baking, the term *roasting* is usually applied to meats, poultry, game and vegetables.

Roe—(roh) fish eggs.

Roll cuts—see **Oblique cuts.**

Rolled-in dough—a dough in which a fat is incorporated in many layers by using a rolling and folding procedure; it is used for flaky baked goods such as croissants, puff pastry and danish.

Rondeau—(ron-doe) a shallow, wide, straight-sided pot with two loop handles.

Rondelles—(ron-dells) or rounds, disk-shaped slices of cylindrical vegetables or fruits.

Rotisserie—cooking equipment that slowly rotates meat or other foods in front of a heating element.

Roulade—(roo-lahd) (1) a slice of meat, poultry or fish rolled around a stuffing; (2) a filled and rolled spongecake.

Round fish—fish with round, oval or compressed bodies that swim in a vertical position and have eyes on both sides of their heads; include salmon, swordfish and cod.

Rounding—the process of shaping dough into smooth, round balls; used to stretch the outside layer of gluten into a smooth coating.

Roux—(roo) a cooked mixture of equal parts flour and fat, by weight, used as a thickener for sauces and other dishes; cooking the flour in fat coats the starch granules with the fat and prevents them from lumping together or forming lumps when introduced into a liquid.

Royal icing—also known as decorator's icing, an uncooked mixture of confectioner's sugar and egg whites that becomes hard and brittle when dry; used for making intricate cake decorations.

Russian service—restaurant service in which the entrée, vegetables and starches are served from a platter onto the diner's plate by a waiter.

Sabayon—(sa-by-on) also known as zabaglione, a foamy, stirred custard sauce made by whisking eggs, sugar and wine over low heat.

Sachet d'épices or **sachet**—(sah-shay day-pea-say) (Fr. for bag of spices) aromatic ingredients tied in a cheesecloth bag and used to flavor stocks and other foods; a standard sachet contains parsley stems, cracked peppercorns, dried thyme, bay leaf, cloves and, optionally, garlic.

Salad—a single food or a mix of different foods accompanied or bound by a dressing.

Salad dressing—a sauce for a salad; most are based on a vinaigrette, mayonnaise or other emulsified product.

Salad greens—a variety of leafy vegetables that are usually eaten raw.

Salamander—a small broiler used primarily for browning or glazing the tops of foods.

Salsa—(sahl-sah) (Sp. for sauce) (1) generally, a cold chunky mixture of fresh herbs, spices, fruits and/or vegetables used as a sauce for meat, poultry, fish or shellfish; (2) in Italian usage, a general term for pasta sauces.

Salt curing—the process of surrounding a food with salt or a mixture of salt, sugar, nitrite-based curing salt, herbs and spices; salt curing dehydrates the food, inhibits bacterial growth and adds flavor.

Sanitation—the creation and maintenance of conditions that will prevent food contamination or food-borne illness.

Sanitize—to reduce pathogenic organisms to safe levels, usually with heat or chemical disinfectants.

Sashimi—(sah-shee-mee) raw fish eaten without rice; usually served as the first course of a Japanese meal.

Saturated fats—fats found mainly in animal products and tropical oils; they are usually solid at room temperature. The body has more difficulty breaking down saturated fats than either monounsaturated or polyunsaturated fats.

Sauce—generally, a thickened liquid used to flavor and enhance other foods.

Sausage—a seasoned forcemeat usually stuffed into a casing; a sausage can be fresh, smoked and cooked, dried or hard.

Sautéing—(saw-tay-ing) a dry-heat cooking method that uses conduction to transfer heat from a hot pan to food with the aid of a small amount of hot fat; cooking is usually done quickly over high temperatures.

Sauteuse—(saw-toose) the basic sauté pan with sloping sides and a single long handle.

Sautoir—(saw-twahr) a sauté pan with straight sides and a single long handle.

Savory—(1) spiced or seasoned, as opposed to sweet, foods; (2) (savoury) a highly seasoned last course of a traditional English dinner.

Scald—to heat a liquid, usually milk, to just below the boiling point.

Scallop—(Fr. *escalope*) a thin, boneless slice of meat.

Score—to cut shallow gashes across the surface of a food before cooking.

Scoville Heat Units—a subjective rating for measuring a chile's heat; the sweet bell pepper usually rates 0, the tabasco rates from 30,000 to 50,000 and the habañera rates from 100,000 to 300,000 units.

Seafood—an inconsistently used term encompassing some or all of the following: saltwater fish, freshwater fish, saltwater shellfish, freshwater shellfish, other edible marine life.

Sear—to brown food quickly over high heat; usually done as a preparatory step for combination cooking methods.

Season—(1) traditionally, to enhance flavor by adding salt; (2) more commonly, to enhance flavor by adding salt and/or pepper as well as herbs and spices; (3) to mature and bring a food (usually beef or game) to a proper condition by aging or special preparation; (4) to prepare a pot, pan or other cooking surface to prevent sticking.

Seasoning—traditionally, an item added to enhance the natural flavors of a food

without dramatically changing its taste; salt is the most common seasoning although all herbs and spices are often referred to as seasonings.

Semi à la carte—a menu on which some foods (usually appetizers and desserts) and beverages are priced and ordered separately, while the entrée is accompanied by and priced to include other dishes such as a salad, starch or vegetable.

Semifreddi—(seh-mee-frayd-dee) also known as still-frozen desserts, made with frozen mousse, custard or cream into which large amounts of whipped cream or meringue are folded in order to incorporate air; layers of spongecake and/or fruits may be added for flavor and texture; they include frozen soufflés, marquis, mousses and neapolitans.

Semolina—see **Durum.**

Sfoglia—(sfo-glee-ah) a thin, flat sheet of pasta dough that can be cut into ribbons, circles, squares or other shapes.

Shallow poaching—a moist-heat cooking method that combines poaching and steaming; the food (usually fish) is placed on a vegetable bed and partially covered with a liquid (cuisson) and simmered.

Shellfish—aquatic invertebrates with shells or carapaces.

Sherbet—a frozen mixture of fruit juice or fruit purée that contains milk and/or egg yolks for creaminess.

Shocking—see **Refreshing.**

Shortening—(1) a white, flavorless, solid fat formulated for baking or deep-frying; (2) any fat used in baking to tenderize the product by shortening gluten strands.

Shred—to cut into thin but irregular strips.

Shuck—(1) a shell, pod or husk; (2) to remove the edible portion of a food (for example, clam meat, pea and ear of corn) from its shell, pod or husk.

Side masking—the technique of coating only the sides of a cake with garnish.

Sift—(1) to shake a dry, powdered substance through a sieve or sifter to remove lumps and incorporate air; (2) to mix together powdery substances by sifting.

Silverskin—the tough connective tissue that surrounds certain muscles; see **Elastin.**

Simmering—(1) a moist-heat cooking method that uses convection to transfer heat from a hot (approx. 185°F–205°F [85°C–96°C]) liquid to the food submerged in it; (2) maintaining the temperature of a liquid just below the boiling point.

Skim—to remove fat and impurities from the surface of a liquid during cooking.

Slice—to cut an item into relatively broad, thin pieces.

Slurry—a mixture of raw starch and cold liquid used for thickening.

Small sauces—also known as compound sauces, made by adding one or more ingredients to a leading sauce; they are grouped together into families based on their leading sauce. Some small sauces have a variety of uses, others are traditional accompaniments for specific foods.

Smoke point—the temperature at which a fat begins to break down and emit smoke.

Smoking—any of several methods for preserving and flavoring foods by exposing them to smoke, includes cold smoking (in which the foods are not fully cooked) and hot smoking (in which the foods are cooked).

Solid pack—canned fruits or vegetables with little or no water added.

Sorbet—(sore-bay) a frozen mixture of fruit juice or fruit purée; similar to sherbet but without milk products.

Soufflé—(soo-flay) either a sweet or savory fluffy dish made with a custard base lightened with whipped egg whites and then baked; the whipped egg whites cause the dish to puff when baked.

Sous-chef—(soo-shef) a cook who supervises food production and who reports to the executive chef; he or she is second in command of a kitchen.

Specifications or **specs**—standard requirements to be followed in procuring items from suppliers.

Spices—any of a group of strongly flavored or aromatic portions of plants (other than leaves) used as flavorings, condiments or aromatics.

Springform pan—a circular baking pan with a separate bottom and a side wall held together with a clamp that is released to free the baked product.

Spring lamb—the meat of sheep slaughtered before they have fed on grass or grains.

Spun sugar—a decoration made by flicking dark caramelized sugar rapidly over a dowel to create long, fine, hair-like threads.

Squab—the class of young pigeon used in food service operations.

Staling—also known as starch retrogradation, a change in the distribution and location of water molecules within baked products; stale products are firmer, drier and more crumbly than fresh baked goods.

Standard breading procedure—the procedure for coating foods with crumbs or meal by passing the food through flour, then an egg wash and then the crumbs; it gives foods a relatively thick, crisp coating when deep-fried or pan-fried.

Standardized recipe—a recipe producing a known quality and quantity of food for a specific operation.

Staples—(1) certain foods regularly used throughout the kitchen; (2) certain foods, usually starches, that help form the basis for a regional or national cuisine and are principal components in the diet.

Starch—(1) complex carbohydrates from plants that are edible and either digestible or indigestible (fiber); (2) a rice, grain, pasta or potato accompaniment to a meal.

Starch retrogradation—see **Staling.**

Starchy potatoes—see **Mealy potatoes.**

Static menu—a menu offering patrons the same foods every day.

Station chef—the cook in charge of a particular department in a kitchen.

Steak—(1) a cross-section slice of a round fish with a small section of the bone attached; (2) a cut of meat, either with or without the bone.

Steamer—(1) a set of stacked pots with perforations in the bottom of each pot, they fit over a larger pot filled with boiling or simmering water and are used to steam foods; (2) a perforated insert made of metal or bamboo placed in a pot and used to steam foods; (3) a type of soft-shell clam from the East Coast; (4) a piece of gas or electric equipment in which foods are steamed in a sealed chamber.

Steaming—a moist-heat cooking method in which heat is transferred from steam to the food being cooked by direct contact; the food to be steamed is placed in a basket or rack above a boiling liquid in a covered pan.

Steel—a tool, usually made of steel, used to hone or straighten knife blades.

Steep—to soak a food in a hot liquid in order to extract its flavor or impurities or to soften its texture.

Steers—male cattle castrated prior to maturity and principally raised for beef.

Sterilize—to destroy all living microorganisms.

Stewing—a combination cooking method similar to braising but generally involving smaller pieces of meat that are first blanched or browned, then cooked in a small amount of liquid that is served as a sauce.

Stir-frying—a dry-heat cooking method similar to sautéing in which foods are cooked over very high heat using little fat while stirring constantly and briskly; often done in a wok.

Stirring—a mixing method in which ingredients are gently mixed by hand until blended, usually with a spoon, whisk or rubber spatula.

Stock—(Fr. *fond*) a clear, unthickened liquid flavored by soluble substances extracted from meat, poultry or fish and their bones as well as from a mirepoix, other vegetables and seasonings.

Stone fruits—members of the genus *Prunus* and also known as drupes, they are tree or shrub fruits with a thin skin, soft flesh and one woody stone or pit; include apricots, cherries, nectarines, peaches and plums.

Straight dough method—a mixing method for yeast breads in which all ingredients are simply combined and mixed.

Strain—to pour foods through a sieve, mesh strainer or cheesecloth to separate or remove the liquid component.

Streusel—(stroo-zel) a crumbly mixture of fat, flour, sugar and sometimes nuts and spices; used to top baked goods.

Subcutaneous fat—also known as exterior fat; the fat layer between the hide and muscles.

Submersion poaching—a poaching method in which the food is completely covered with the poaching liquid.

Subprimal cuts—the basic cuts produced from each primal.

Sucrose—the chemical name for refined or table sugar, it is refined from the raw sugars found in the large tropical grass called sugar cane and the root of the sugar beet; it is available as white or brown granules, molasses or powdered sugar.

Sugar—a carbohydrate that provides the body with energy and gives a sweet taste to foods.

Sugar syrups—either simple syrups (thin mixtures of sugar and water) or cooked syrups (melted sugar cooked until it reaches a specific temperature).

Suprême—(su-prem) (1) a sauce made by adding cream to a velouté made from chicken stock; it is used to make several compound sauces of the velouté family; (2) a boneless, skinless chicken breast with the first wing segment attached.

Sushi—(szu-she) cooked or raw fish or shellfish rolled in or served on seasoned rice.

Sweating—cooking a food (typically vegetables) in a small amount of fat, usually covered, over low heat without browning until the food softens and releases moisture; sweating allows the food to release its flavor more quickly when cooked with other foods.

Sweetbreads—the thymus glands of a calf or lamb.

Sweet dough—see **Pâte sucrée.**

Syrup—sugar that is dissolved in liquid, usually water, and often flavored with spices or citrus zest.

Syrup pack—cans of fruit with a light, medium or heavy syrup added.

Table d'hôte—(tab-bluh dote) see **Prix fixe.**

Tang—the portion of a knife's blade that extends inside the handle.

Tart—a sweet or savory filling in a baked crust made in a shallow, straight-sided pan without a top crust.

Tartlet—a small, single-serving tart.

Temperature danger zone—the broad range of temperatures between 40°F and 140°F (4°C–60°C) at which bacteria multiply rapidly.

Tempering—(1) heating gently and gradually; (2) refers to the process of slowly adding a hot liquid to eggs or other foods to raise their temperature without causing them to curdle; (3) refers to a process for melting chocolate.

Terrine—(1) traditionally, a loaf of coarse forcemeat cooked in a covered earthenware mold and without a crust; today, the word is used interchangeably with *pâté*; (2) the mold used to cook such items, usually a rectangle or oval shape and made of ceramic.

Thickening agents—ingredients used to thicken sauces, include starches (flour, cornstarch and arrowroot), gelatin and liaisons.

Timbale—(tim-bull) (1) a small pail-shaped mold used to shape foods; (2) a preparation made in such a mold.

Tisanes—(teh-zahns) beverages made from herbal infusions that do not contain any tea.

Tomato sauce—a leading sauce made from tomatoes, vegetables, seasonings and white stock; it may or may not be thickened with roux.

Toque—(toke) the tall white hat worn by chefs.

Torte—in Central and Eastern European usage, refers to a rich cake in which all or part of the flour is replaced with finely chopped nuts or bread crumbs.

Tossed salad—a salad prepared by placing the greens, garnishes and salad dressing in a large bowl and tossing to combine.

Tourner—(toor-nay) (Fr. for to turn), to cut foods, usually vegetables, into football-shaped pieces with seven equal sides and blunt ends.

Toxins—byproducts of living bacteria that can cause illness if consumed in sufficient quantities.

Tranche—(tranch) an angled slice cut from fish fillets.

Tripe—the edible lining of a cow's stomach.

Truffles—(1) flavorful tubers that grow near the roots of oak or beech trees; (2) rich chocolate candies made with ganache.

Truss—to tie poultry with butcher's twine into a compact shape for cooking.

Tube pan—a deep round baking pan with a hollow tube in the center.

Tuber—the fleshy root, stem or rhizome of a plant from which a new plant will

grow; some, such as potatoes, are eaten as vegetables.

Tunneling—the holes that may form in baked goods as the result of overmixing.

Univalves—single-shelled mollusks with a single muscular foot, such as abalone.

Unsaturated fat—fats that are normally liquid (oils) at room temperature; they may be monounsaturated (from plants such as olives and avocados) or polyunsaturated (from grains and seeds such as corn, soybeans and safflower as well as from fish).

Vanilla custard sauce—also known as crème anglaise, a stirred custard made with egg yolks, sugar and milk or half-and-half and flavored with vanilla; served with or used in dessert preparations.

Vanillin—(1) whitish crystals of vanilla flavor that often develop on vanilla beans during storage; (2) synthetic vanilla flavoring.

Variety—the result of breeding plants of the same species that have different qualities or characteristics; the new plant often combines features from both parents.

Variety meats—see **Offal.**

Veal—the meat of calves under the age of nine months.

Vegetable—refers to any herbaceous plant (one with little or no woody tissue) that can be partially or wholly eaten; vegetables can be classified as cabbages, fruit-vegetables, gourds and squashes, greens, mushrooms and truffles, onions, pods and seeds, roots and tubers, and stalks.

Velouté—(veh-loo-tay) a leading sauce made by thickening a white stock (either fish, veal or chicken) with roux.

Venison—meat from any member of the deer family, including elk, moose, reindeer, red-tailed deer, white-tailed deer and mule deer; it is typically a lean, dark red meat with a mild aroma.

Vent—(1) to allow the circulation or escape of a liquid or gas; (2) to cool a pot of hot liquid by setting the pot on blocks in a cold water bath and allowing cold water to circulate around it.

Vinaigrette—(vin-nay-greht) a temporary emulsion of oil and vinegar (usually three parts oil to one part vinegar) seasoned with herbs, salt and pepper; used as a salad dressing or sauce.

Vinegar—a thin, sour liquid used as a preservative, cooking ingredient and cleaning solution.

Viruses—the smallest known form of life; they invade the living cells of a host and take over those cells' genetic material, causing the cells to produce more viruses; some viruses can enter a host through the ingestion of food contaminated with those viruses.

Viscera—internal organs.

Vitamins—compounds present in foods in very small quantities; they do not provide energy but are essential for regulating body functions.

Vol-au-vent—(vul-oh-van) a large, deep puff pastry shell often filled with a savory mixture for a main course.

Volume—the space occupied by a substance; volume measurements are commonly expressed as liters, teaspoons, tablespoons, cups, pints and gallons.

Wash—a glaze applied to dough before baking; a commonly used wash is made with whole egg and water.

Water bath—see **Bain marie.**

Water pack—canned fruits with water or fruit juice added.

Waxy potatoes—those with a low starch content and thin skin; they are best for boiling.

Weight—the mass or heaviness of a substance; weight measurements are commonly expressed as grams, ounces and pounds.

Whetstone—a dense, grained stone used to sharpen or hone a knife blade.

Whipping—a mixing method in which foods are vigorously beaten in order to incorporate air; a whisk or an electric mixer with its whip attachment is used.

White stew—see **Fricassee** and **Blanquette.**

White stock—a light-colored stock made from chicken, veal, beef or fish bones simmered in water with vegetables and seasonings.

Whitewash—a thin mixture or slurry of flour and cold water used like cornstarch for thickening.

Wine—an alcoholic beverage made from the fermented juice of grapes; may be sparkling (effervescent) or still (noneffervescent) or fortified with additional alcohol.

Work section—see **Work station.**

Work station—a work area in the kitchen dedicated to a particular task, such as broiling or salad making; work stations using the same or similar equipment for related tasks are grouped together into work sections.

Yeasts—microscopic fungi whose metabolic processes are responsible for fermentation; they are used for leavening bread and in cheese, beer and wine making.

Yield—(1) the total amount of a food item created or remaining after trimming or fabrication; (2) the total amount of a product made from a specific recipe.

Yield grades—a grading program for meat that measures the amount of usable meat on a carcass.

Zest—the thin, colored part of a citrus peel.

Zushi—(zhoo-she) the seasoned rice used for sushi.

INDEX

A

Abalone, 465
Aboyeur, 11
Acesulfane K (Sunnette), 48
Achiote-Basted Rack of Venison with Smoked Corn Pudding, 440–42
Achiote Paste, 440–41
Acid/alkali balance, 24
Acidity of coffee, 141
Acidulated water, 41
Acidulation, 741
Acorn, 584
Acorn squash, 584
Active dry yeast, 909
Additives, 49
Aerobic bacteria, 24
Aga, Suleiman, 143
Agriculture
  advancements in, 9
  back-to-the-basics approach to, 50
AIDS, 29
À la carte, 61
Alaskan halibut, 464
Albufera sauces, 201
Albumen, 536
Alcohol, boiling point of water and, 176
Alcoholic beverages, in baking, 880
Ale-Steamed Mussels with Tasso, Chiles and Leeks, 517
Alexander the Great, 1053
Allemande Sauce, 198, **199–200**
All-purpose flour, 865
Allspice (Jamaican pepper), 124, 129
Allumette, 112
Almond Cream, 985
  as Danish pastry filling, 938
  fresh peach tart with, 984–85
Almond Financier, 980
Almonds, 132–33, 134
  candied, 988–89
Alston, Elizabeth, 890
Alternatives, ingredient, 47–48
Aluminum cookware, 84
American (Atlantic) oysters, 466
American buffalo. *See* Bison (American buffalo)
American Cancer Society, 44
American Cheddar, 158–59, 161
American Heart Association, 43–44
American Red Cross, 34
American service, 12
American sturgeon caviar, 834
American-style (simple) buttercream, 1011–12
Amino acids, 40–41
Ammonia, baking, 889
Anadromous fish, 458
Anaerobic bacteria, 24
Anasazi Bean Jus, 501
Anasazi Bean Stew, 501
Andouille, 807
Angel food cakes, 997–98, 1003–4
  chocolate, 1004
Angler fish (monkfish), 460
Animal husbandry, advancements in, 9
Animals, domestication of, 266
Anisakiasis, 26
Anisakis, 26
Anise, 124, 129
Anjou pears, 731
Ann, Queen of England, 145
Anna, Duchess of Bedford, 145
Anna potatoes, 640
Anodized aluminum cookware, 84
Antelope, 432, 435, 437
  braised, in sour cream, 443–44
à point, 392
Appert, François, 9
Appetizers. *See* Canapés; Hors d'oeuvre; Pâté; Soufflés; Terrine(s)
Apple(s), 730–31
  baked, 745
  braised red cabbage with wine and, 629
  dried, 742
  jelly, 749
  roast goose with cabbage and, 424–25
  roast pheasant with cognac and, 449–50
  stuffing, buckwheat crepes with sausage and, 554–55
Apple cider, braised chicken with cashew butter and, 420–21
Apple-Cranberry Pie, 951–52
Apple Fritters, 569
Apple Horseradish Sauce, 226
Applesauce, 756–57
Applesauce Brownies, 1035–36
Apple tart, French, 979
Apprentices (*commis*), 11, 13
Apricot(s), 732
  as Danish pastry filling, 939
  dried, 742
  jam, 749
Apricot Sauce, 843
Apricot Sorbet, 1074
Aquaculture, advancements in, 9
Aquafarming, 458
Arabica coffee beans, 139
Arborio rice, 644
Area chefs, 13
Aroma of coffee, 141
Aromatic plants, 120
Arrowroot, 195
Artesian-well water, 41
Artichoke(s), 594–95
  and spinach dip, 850–51
Artichoke Frittata, 551–52
Artichokes Stuffed with Italian Sausage, 625–26
Artichoke Wedges, 452
Artificial sweeteners, 48
Arugula, 684
Ascorbic acid (vitamin C), 42
Asiago, 160
  crostini, kalamata olive and, 848
Asian Chicken Salad, 714–15
Asian noodles, 652, 653
  chilled Chinese noodle salad, 677
Asian pears, 731
Asian radishes (daikons), 593–94
Asian spices, warm duck breast salad with, and hazelnut vinaigrette, 421–22
Asparagus, 595
  sautéed salmon with morels and, 503
  stir-fried, with shiitake mushrooms, 607
  and tomato salad with fresh mozzarella, 700–701
Aspartame (Nutrasweet®), 48
Aspic jelly, 799, 800
  glazing pâté slices with, 803
Aspic terrines, 799–800
As-purchased (A.P.) costs, 69
Assam tea, 144
Assistants (*demi-chefs*), 11, 13
Atlantic (American or Eastern) oysters, 466
Atlantic cod, 459
Atlantic halibut, 464
Atlantic hard-shell clams (quahogs), 465
Atlantic salmon, 461
Atmosphere, bacterial growth and, 24
Au jus, 215, 275
Aunt Ruthie's Pot Roast, 287
Aurora sauce, 200
Avocado, 577–78
  and shrimp omelet, 543–44
  southwestern grilled cheese sandwich with chipotle purée and, 777
Avocado Salsa, 848

B

Baby lettuces, 683
Baby vegetables, 596
Back, lamb, 339
Back waiters (demi chefs de rang), 12
Bacon, 808
  baked monkfish with, 512–13
  pancetta, 809
  vinaigrette, grilled seckel pear salad with sherry, 710–11
Bacteria, 21–24
Bagel, 916
Baked Alaska, 1055
Baked Apples, 745
Baked Beans, 627
Baked Butternut Squash, 605
Baked Meringue, 987
Baked Monkfish with Bacon, 512–13
Baked Potatoes, 637–38
Baked Red Snapper with Star Fruit Chutney, 486
Baked Ziti with Fresh Tomato Sauce, 675–76
Baker, Henry, 1005
Baker's comb, 1022
Baker's scale, 82
Bakeshop, 862–85
  fats, 873–74
    all-purpose shortening, 873
    butter and margarine, 874
    emulsified shortening, 874
    lard, 874
    nutritional values of, 874
    oil, 874
  flavorings, 875–80
    alcoholic beverages, 880
    chocolate, 876–80
    emulsions and extracts, 876
    vanilla, 876
  flours, 864–67
    aging and bleaching, 865
    all-purpose, 865
    composition of, 865–66
    nutritional values of, 867
    purchasing and storing, 867
    specialty, 866–67
    wheat, 864–65
  mixing methods, 881
  sugar, 867–69
    brown, 869, 1020
    cooking, 871–73
    cube, 869
    history of, 868
    manufacturing of, 868
    powdered or confectioner's, 869
    raw, 868
    refined (table), 868
    regular granulated, 868, 869
    sanding, 869

*Note: Recipes and the page(s) in which they are located are in bold.

Bakeshop, (*cont.*)
superfine or castor, 869
turbinado (Demerara sugar), 868, 869
sweeteners, liquid, 869–71
corn syrup, 870
honey, 870
hygroscopic, 870
maple syrup, 870
molasses, 870
nutritional values of, 870–71
thickeners, 874–75
tools and equipment, **883–84**
Baking, 174, 861
cakes, 1008–9
eggs, 540–42
fish, 485–86
potatoes, 637–39
process of, 881–83
shellfish, 485–86
vegetables, 605
of yeast breads, 917–18
Baking ammonia, 889
Baking powder, 888–89
Baking soda, 888
Balance scale, 82
Balloon whisks, 79
Ballottine, 804
Balsamic and Roasted Garlic Vinaigrette, 704
Balsamic Raspberries, 452
Balsamic vinegar(s), 137, 138
green lentils in, 429
jerk foie gras with, 428–29
Banana Fritters, 754–55
Bananas, 734
Bananas Foster, 754
Banana squash, 584
Bantam eggs, 536
Barbary figs, 725–26
Barbecue Sauce, 139, 221
Bar cookies, 967
Barding, 395
meats, 270
Barley, 645–46
Barley Risotto, 441–42
Barquettes, 833–34
Bartlett pears, 731
Base(s)
of canapés, 830–31
commercial, 189
of composed salads, 697
of dessert, 1058
Basic Berry Muffins, 899
Basic Bran Muffins, 900
Basic Corn Muffins, 902
Basic Cream Pie, 950
Basic Duck Sauce, 412–13
Basic Éclair Paste, 962–63
Basic Forcemeat, 791, 793–95, 794–95
Basic French Bread, 924
Basic Fudge Frosting, 1015
Basic Game Forcemeat, 816
Basic Pasta Dough, 655
Basic Pie Dough, 944
Basic Simmered Rice, 648
Basic Sourdough Bread, 930–31
Basic Sugar Glaze, 1016
Basic Vinaigrette Dressing, 691
Basil, 120, 129
braised celery with, 613–14
chicken sauté with onions, garlic and, 402–4
creamed corn with, 624
grilled shrimp with prosciutto and, 859
salmon and sea bass terrine with spinach and, 816–17
steamed scallops with ginger, orange and, 519
Basil butter, 211
grilled squab with, 393–94
Basil Vinaigrette, 663
Basket method of deep-frying, 562
Basmati rice, 644
Bass, 458
black sea, 458
broiled, with herb butter and sautéed leeks, 484–85
steamed, with sansho pepper, 512
sea
Chilean, grilled, with anasazi bean stew and nopal cactus salsa, 500–502
pan-seared, with beet vinaigrette, 511–12
and salmon terrine with spinach and basil, 816–17
with Thai curry sauce and wok vegetables, 498–500
striped, 458
Basted eggs, 546
Batonnet, 113, 114
Batter, 744, 881
Battering, for deep-frying, 567–68
Baume hydrometer, 871
Bavarian cream, 1048–50
fresh fruit, 1049–50
white chocolate frangelico, 1068
Bay, 121
Bean(s)
baked, 627
black, soup, southwestern, 256
coffee, 139–40
dried, 590–91
fresh, 589–90
green, 589–91
in purée soups, 240
salad
lamb sausage with tricolor, 813–14
mixed, 626
white, 447
braised, coriander-crusted yellowfin tuna with, and roasted peppers, 509–10
Bean curd (tofu), 592
Bean starch noodles, 654
Béarnaise sauce, 208
Beating, 881
Béchameil, Louis de, 197
Béchamel, 197, 197–98, 217
Beef, 292–310
aunt Ruthie's pot roast, 287
butchering of, 299–300
beef tenderloin, 300
butterflying, 300
New York steak, 299
Carpaccio, 310
Châteaubriand, 300, 303
chili con carne, 288, 309–10
cuts of, 294–99
forequarter, 295–96
hindquarter, 297–98
organ meats, 299
using, 301
entrecôtes bordelaise, 305–6
Hungarian goulash, 308
marinated London broil, 302
marinating, 270
meatloaf, home-style, 303–4
New England boiled dinner, 284
New World history of, 298
roast prime rib of, au jus, 275–76
as sandwich filling, 764
short ribs of, braised, 307–8
soup, hearty vegetable, 235–36
steak
minute, Dijonaise, 304–5
pepper, 306
Swiss, 306–7
T-bone, 302
steamship round of, 278
stew, brown, 289
tournedos Rossini, 304
Beefalo, 433
Beef bones, for stock, 181
Beef Bourguignon, 308–9
Beef Broth, 234
Beef Consommé, 237
Beef Stroganoff, 305
Beer-Battered Onion Rings, 567
Beer-Marinated Pork Tenderloin, 371
Beet(s), 592
and buttermilk soup, chilled, 258–59
chiogghi, 596
sugar, 867
Beet Vinaigrette, 511–12
Beignets, 961
Belgian endive, 684
Bell pepper, 125
spicy jelly, grilled rack of lamb with rosemary and, 348
Belly, pork, 362
Bel paese, 156
Beluga caviar, 834
Beluga Lentils, 661–62
Beranbaum, Rose Levy, 878
Bercy sauce, 199
Berry(ies), 720–21
figs with, and honey mousse, 751
gratin of fresh, with crème fraîche, 752–53
muffins, basic, 899
tart, fresh, 981
Berry Compote, 756
Beurre Blanc, 191, 209–10, 210, 217
chipotle, 536
citrus, 224
lobster, 225
preparing, 209
Beurre d'Anjou pears, 731
Beurre manié, 195
Beurre noir, 209–10
Beurre noisette, 209–10, 609
Beurre rouge, 191, 209–10, 217
Binders, 789
Bing cherries, 733
Bins, rolling, 90
Biological contaminants, 20, 21–27
bacteria, 21–24
fungi, 27
parasites, 24–26
viruses, 26–27
Biotin, 42
Bird's beak knife, 81
Biscuit de guerre, 890
Biscuit method of mixing, 889–91
Biscuits, 890
country, 891
Bise, Francois, 7
Bison (American buffalo), 432–34, 435
grilled steak, 449
Bisque(s), 232, 233, 242–43
shrimp, 242–43
Bittersweet chocolate, 878
Bivalves, 456, 465–67
Black bass, 458
broiled, with herb butter and sautéed leeks, 484–85
steamed, with sansho pepper, 512
Black bean chili, venison and, 446
Black bean sauce, chicken and snow peas in, 417
Black bean soup, southwestern, 256
Black Bean Spread, 782
Blackberry Chiffon Cheesecake, 1064–66
Blackberry Cobbler, 975–76
Blackberries, 720
Blackened Steak Sandwich, 775–76
Blackened Swordfish with Risotto Cake, 507–8
Black-eyed peas, dried, 590
Black olives, 136
Black peppercorns, 127
Black sea bass, 458
broiled, with herb butter and sautéed leeks, 484–85
steamed, with sansho pepper, 512
Blackstrap molasses, 870
Black tea, 143
Blacktip shark, 462
Black trumpet mushroom, 586
Blanching, 177
of bones, 184
of vegetables, 607–8
Blanquette of Lamb, 354–55
Blanquettes, 287, 288, 290
Blenders, 89
Blending, 881
Blintzes, cheese, 555
Blitz (quick puff pastry), 957, 983–84
Blond roux, 192
Blood oranges, 723
Blood sugar (glucose), 39
Bloom, 880
Bloomy rind, 155
Blueberries, 721
Blueberry Muffins, 892–93
Blueberry Pie Filling, 952–53
Blue cheese
dressing, low-fat, 707
and roast beef sandwich, 780
Blue Corn and Shrimp Tamales, 858–59
Blue Corn Muffins, 902–3
Blue Crab Cakes with Fresh Salsa, 489–90
Blue crabs, 468
Blue mussels, 466
Boar, wild, 434, 435
Bocuse, Paul, 7
Body
of coffee, 141
of composed salads, 697
Boiled icing (foam frosting), 1014
Boiled Lobster, 497
Boiling, 175–76
pasta, 658
potatoes, 640–41
vegetables, 608–11
Boiling point, 176
Bok choy, 575
Bolognese Sauce, 223
Bombe, 1055
Boneless (formed) ham, 809
Bones
blanching of, 184
caramelizing of, 185
for stock, 180–81

Boning knife, 81
Bonnefon, Nicolas, 911
Bordelaise sauce, 203
Bosc pears, 731
Boston butt, 360–62
Boston Cooking Schoolbook, The (Farmer), 65
Boston lettuce, 683
Bottled water, 41
Botulism, 25
Bouchées, 959–60
Boucher (butcher), 11, 265
Bouillon, court, 180, 189–90
Boulanger, Monsieur, 4–5
Boulanger (bread baker), 11
Boulangère potatoes, 640
Bound salads, 695, 698–99
  as sandwich filling, 764
Bouquet garni, 130–31
Bourbon
  Kentucky, sautéed chicken with, 420
  vinaigrette, warm lamb salad with, 714
Bourbon Baked Ham, 370
Bourbon Sauce, 1066
Boursin, 156
Bow knot rolls, 915
Bracelet, lamb, 339
Braised Antelope in Sour Cream, 443–44
Braised Celery with Basil, 613–14
Braised Chicken with Apple Cider and Cashew Butter, 420–21
Braised Rabbit with Cavatelli Pasta, 448–49
Braised Red Cabbage with Apples and Wine, 629
Braised Rhubarb, 755–56
Braised Romaine Lettuce, 629–30
Braised Short Ribs of Beef, 307–8
Braised White Beans, 510
Braising, 177
  meat, 284–87
  poultry, 408–10
  vegetables, 612–14
Bran, 642
Brandies, 880
Bran muffins, basic, 900
Brawns, 799–800
Brazier, 86
Brazilian roast coffee, 140
Bread(s). *See also* Quick breads; Yeast breads
  canapés, fry, 847–48
  Irish soda, 901
  lemon tea, 903–4
  rye, light, 920
  for sandwiches, 762, 925
  zucchini, 901
Bread baker (*boulanger*), 11
Breaded Veal Cutlets, 282
Breading, for deep-frying, 564–66
Bread pudding, 1044, 1046
Bread Pudding with Bourbon Sauce, 1066
Bread Salad, 717
Breadsticks, 928–29
Breast
  lamb, 337
  poultry
    boneless, 388
    supreme or airline, 388–90
  veal, 314–16
Brick dough, duck confit rolled in, 422–23
Brie, 156
Brigade, 10–13
  classic, 10–11
  defined, 10
  dining room, 12
  modern, 12–13
Brillat-Savarin, 436
Brining, 808
Brioche, 933–34
  toasted, sautéed foie gras on wild mushroom duxelles with, 427–28
  vegetable terrine in, 814–15
Brisket, 294–96
Broccoli, 575
  cream of, soup, 239–40
Broccoli Almondine, 612
Brochettes, 840–41
  rabbit and shiitake skewers, 840–41
Broiled Black Sea Bass with Herb Butter and Sautéed Leeks, 484–85
Broiled Grapefruit, 744
Broiled Lamb Kidneys, 346
Broiled Tomato, 618–19
Broilers, 92
Broiling, 173
  fish, 483–85
  fruits, 743–44
  meat, 271–73
  poultry, 392–94
  shellfish, 483–85
  vegetables, 603–4
Broth(s), 215
  beef, 234
  cappelletti in, 674–75
  chicken, rich, 252
  hearty vegetable beef soup, 235–36
  nage, 190
  pasta and, 659
Broth-based soups, 232, 233–36
Brown Beef Stew, 289
Brownies, 1007. *See also* Cake(s)
  applesauce, 1035–36
  continental, 1035
  with ingredient substitutes, 50
  traditional fudge, 50
Brown rice, 643, 644
Brown Rice Pilaf with Pine Nuts, 669–70
Brown roux, 192
Brown sauce (espagnole), 201–4, 217
Brown stews, 287
Brown stock, 180, **185–86**, 185–87
Brown sugar, 869, 1020
Brun d'hiver, 683
Brunoise, 113, 114
Brussels sprouts, 575
Brussels Sprouts in Pecan Butter, 609
Bûche de Noël, 1032
Buckle (batter), 744
Buckwheat, 646
Buckwheat Blini, 846–47
Buckwheat Crêpes with Sausage and Apple Stuffing, 554–55
Buckwheat noodles, 654
Buffalo, American. *See* Bison (American buffalo)
Buffalo chopper, 89
Buffet equipment, 94
Buffet presentation, 1095–1112
  cold foods, 1111
  designing, 1100–1109
    arranging foods on buffet table, 1102–6
    arranging foods on serving pieces, 1101–2
    business luncheons, 1103
    double-sided buffet line, 1101, 1105
    formal wedding, 1108–9
    Mexican fiesta, 1104
    Western barbecue, 1107
  hot foods, 1111
  ice carvings, 1110
  planning, 1098–99
  portioning foods, 1110–11
  replenishing foods, 1112
  serving, 1112
Buffet service, 12
  hors d'oeuvre, 844–45
Bulb onions, 587
Bulgur, 645
  salad (tabouli salad), 671
Bulgur Pilaf, 650–51
Bunó, 916
Buns
  jumbo cinnamon, 935
  pecan sticky, 936
Business luncheons, presentation for, 1103
Butcher (*boucher*), 11, 265
Butcher knife, 81
Butler service hors d'oeuvre, 844
Butter(s), 152, 874
  basil, 211
    grilled squab with, 393–94
  beurre blanc, 191, 209–10, 217
    chipotle, 530
    citrus, 224
    lobster, 225
    preparing, 209
  beurre manié, 195
  beurre noir, 209–10
  beurre noisette, 209–10, 609
  beurre rouge, 191, 209–10, 217
  cashew, braised chicken with apple cider and, 420–21
  clarified, 152–53
  cocoa, 877, 879
  compound, 211–12, 217
  crayfish, 211
  flavored, 191
  garlic, escargot in, 854–55
  herb, 211
    broiled black sea bass with sautéed leeks and, 484–85
  herb, grilled lamb chops with, 273
  lobster, 211
  maître d'Hôtel, 211
  Montpelier, 211
  pecan, brussels sprouts in, 609
  red pepper, 212
  salted, 152
  as sandwich spread, 763
  shallot, 212
  whipped, 152
Butter cakes, 997, 998–1000
Buttercream, 1011–14
  French, 1013–14
  Italian, 1012–13
  simple (American-style), 1011–12
  white chocolate, vanilla raspberry layer cake with, 1026–27
Butterflake rolls, 915
Butterfly slice, 110, 300
  of fish, 472
  of meats, 300
Buttermilk, 151
  and beet soup, chilled, 258–59
Buttermilk Pancakes, 896
Butternut squash, 584
  baked, 605
Butternut Squash Risotto, 523
Butterscotch Sauce, 1078

C

Cabbage(s), 574–77
  bok choy, 575
  broccoli, 575
  brussels sprouts, 575
  cauliflower, 575–76
  creamy coleslaw, 716
  green, 576
  kale, 576
  kohlrabi, 577
  napa, 577
  red, 576
    braised, with apples and wine, 629
  roast goose with apples and, 424–25
Cacao tree, 877
Cactus pears, 725–26
Caesar Dressing, 704–5
Café au lait, 142
Café brulot, 142
Caffè latte, 142
Caffè mocha, 142
Cake(s), 943, 994–1010. *See also* Brownies; Frosting(s)
  angel food, 997–98, 1003–4
    chocolate, 1004
  assembling, 1020–21
  baking, 1008–9
  bûche de Noël, 1032
  butter (creaming method cakes), 997, 998–1000
  carrot, with cream cheese frosting, 1028
  chiffon, 998, 1005–6
    orange, 1005–6
  chocolate flourless, 1033
  chocolate truffle, 1034–35
  coconut, fresh, 1029–30
  cooling, 1009–10
  decorating, 1021–25
    cake or baker's comb for, 1022
    piping techniques for, 1022–25
    side masking, 1021
    stencils, 1021
  devil's food, 1031
  genoise, 997, 1001–2
    classic, 1001–2
  high-ratio, 997, 1000
    yellow, 1000
  ingredients, 996–97
  ladyfingers, 1032–33
  marble sheet, with fudge frosting, 1028–29
  mixing methods, 997–1000
    creamed fat, 997, 998–1000
    whipped eggs, 997, 1001–6
  nutritional values of, 1010
  packaged mixes, 1006
  panning, 1006–7
  poundcake, classic, 999
  risotto, 507–8
  sacher torte, 1030–31
  spongecakes, 997, 1002–3
    classic, 1002–3
  storing, 1025
  troubleshooting chart for, 1009

Cake(s), (*cont.*)
vanilla raspberry layer, with white chocolate buttercream, 1026–27
Cake (straight) spatula, 79
Calamari (squid), 467
salad, spicy, 525–26
Calcium, 38
osteoporosis and, 52
Calendulas, 685
Calorie (kcal), 39
Calvados, sautéed veal scallops with, 328
Calves' liver, 317, 323
cleaning, 323
sautéed, with onions, 329
Cameline sauce, 193
Camellia sinensis, 143
Camembert cheese, 156
Canadian bacon, 808
Canadian Black Diamond cheddar, 159
Canapés, 830–34
barquettes, tartlets and profiteroles, 833–34, 961
base, 830–31
curried chicken, 846
fry bread, 847–48
garnishes, 831, 832
preparing, 832–33
sautéed duck liver, with candied rhubarb, 849
spread, 831
Cancer, 52
Candied Almonds, 988–89
Candied Sweet Potatoes, 663–64
Candy thermometers, 83
Cannoli Alla Siciliana, 972–73
Canola oil, 135
Can opener, table-mounted, 79
Cantaloupes, 728
Capellini, 652
Capers, 124
turkey scallopine with lemon and, 426–27
Caplan, Frieda, 735
Caplan, Karen, 735
Capon, 379
carving, 399
Cappelletti in Brodo, 674–75
Caprenin, 48
Capsicum peppers, 125
Captains (chef d'étage), 12
Capuccino, 142
Caramel, crème, 1044–45
Caramel Ice Cream, 1071
Caramelization, 171
Caramelized Berry Sauce, 445
Caramelizing
of bones, 185
of mirepoix, 185–86
Caramelizing sugar, 872
Caramel Sauce, 1056–57
Carbohydrates, 39–40
Carbon steel construction, 80
Cardinal sauce, 199
Cardomom, 125
Carême, Marie-Antoin (Antonin), 6, 193, 1049
Carolina Barbecued Ribs, 368
Carpaccio, 310
Carriers, insulated, 94
Carrot Cake with Cream Cheese Frosting, 1028
Carrots, 592–93
maple-glazed, 623
steamed mussels with leeks and, 516
Carroway, 125, 129
Carryover cooking, 274–75
Cartilage, 181
Carving, 265
leg of lamb, 278
of roasted poultry, 399–400
of roasts, 277–78
Casaba melons, 728
Cashew butter, braised chicken with apple cider and, 420–21
Cashews, 133, 134
Casings, sausage, 806
Casserole, potatoes baked en, 638
Cassia, 125
Cassoulet, 373–74
Cast-iron cookware, 84
skillet (Griswold), 86
Castor sugar, 869
Catfish, 458
deep-fried fillets, with tartar sauce, 565
whole sizzling, with ginger and ponzu sauce, 571
Catherine de Medici, 1053
Cauliflower, 575–76
Cavatelli pasta, braised rabbit with, 448–49
Caviar, 834–35
Cayenne peppers, 125
Celeriac purée, potato and, 343–44
Celeriac sauce, roast rack of lamb with mint and, 343–44
Celery, 595
braised, with basil, 613–14
Celery root, 593
Cellulose, 594
Center-cut fish, 473
Cephalopods, 456, 467
Ceramic cookware, 85
Certification of milk, 149
Ceylon tea, 144
Chafing dishes, 94
Chalazae cords, 536
Challah, 932–33
Champagne Sabayon, 1044
Channel catfish, 458
Chantilly cream (crème Chantilly), 988–89, 1048
Chantilly sauce. *See* Mousseline
Chapel, Alain, 7
Charcuterie, 204, 786–826. *See also* Pâté
brining, 808
chopped chicken liver, 821
chorizo, 807, 823
and date rumaki, 842
southwestern scrambled eggs with green chile and, 550
duck prosciutto with fresh mango, 825–26
forcemeats, 788–807
basic, 791, 793–95
basic game, 816
country-style, 791–93
equipment for preparing, 790
in galantines, 797–98, 804–5
ingredients of, 788–90
mousseline, 791, 795–96
in pâté, 797–98, 803–3
quenelles, 797
sausages, 805–7
in terrines, 797–801
galantine, 797–98, 804–5
smoked duck and foie gras, on a pear galette, 812–13
of turbot and lobster, 820–21
gravlax, 461, 807, 824
mousse
roasted red pepper, 819
salmon, 819–20
pork products, 808–9
salt-curing, 807
sauce chaud-froid, 809–11
sausage. *See* Sausage(s)
smoked salmon with seared tuna, 824–25
smoking, 808
terrine
liver, 817–18
salmon and sea bass, with spinach and basil, 816–17
vegetable, 818
vegetable, in brioche, 814–15
Chard, Swiss, 585
with lemon and pine nuts, 628–29
Charles II, King of England, 145
Charlotte, 1049
Chasseur sauce (Hunter's sauce), 203
Châteaubriand, 300, 303
Châteaubriand sauce, 203
Château potatoes, 640
Chaud-froid, 809–11
mayonnaise, 810
Chayotes, 583
Cheddar, 158–59
béchamel sauce, 198
potato cheddar cheese bread, 926
soufflé, grits and, 668
Cheddar and Leek Soup, 255
Cheese(s), 154–62
American, 161
cream. *See* Cream cheese
firm, 158–60
fresh or unripened, 155–56
goat's-milk, 160–61
hard, 160
imitation, 161
leftover, 157
macaroni and, 675
natural, 154–61
nutritional values of, 154
processed, 161
rissotto with Four (*al Quattro Formaggi*), 650
sandwich, southwestern grilled, with chipotle purée and avocado, 777
as sandwich filling, 764
semi-soft, 157–58
serving, 162
soft, 156
terminology of, 162
wine and, 163
Cheese Blintzes, 555
Cheesecake(s), 1044, 1045–46
blackberry chiffon, 1064–66
New York-style, 1064
pistachio citrus, 1063–64
Cheesecloth, 88
Chef de salle (head waiter), 12
Chef d'étage (captains), 12
Chef de vin (wine steward), 12
Chef du cuisine, 11
Chefs, 13–16
dedication of, 15
executive, 12–13
judgment of, 15
knowledge of, 13–14
nutrition and, 54–56
pride of, 16
skill of, 14
taste of, 14–15
types of, 11, 12–13
Chefs de partie (station chefs), 11
Chefs de rang (front waiters), 12
Chef's fork, 79
Chef's knife, 80
Chemical contaminants, 20, 27–28
Cherry(ies), 732–33
chilled, soup, 246
Cherry Clafouti, 1067
Cherry Confit, 753–54
sautéed lamb loin with stuffed rösti potatoes and, 351
Cherry Pie, 953–54
Cherrystones, 465
Chervil, 121, 129
Chestnut(s), 133, 134
dressing, roast turkey with, and giblet gravy, 397–98
gratin, spicy sweet potato and, 664
Chevre, 161
Chevre Tarts, 855
Chevreuil sauce, 203
Chewy Date Bars, 989
Chiappetti's Lamb Shank with Lentils and Country Vegetables, 353
Chicken, 379–80. *See also* Poultry
bones, for stock, 181
boning leg, 390
braised, with apple cider and cashew butter, 420–21
breast, poached, with tarragon sauce, 406–7
canapés, curried, 846
carving, 400
classes of, 379
coq au vin, 414
free-range, 378
Roman-style, 419
livers
chopped, 801, 821
sautéed, 427
pan-fried, with pan gravy, 404–5
salad
Asian, 714–15
chutney, 699
sautéed, with Kentucky bourbon, 420
wrap, southwestern grilled, 781–82
Yakitori, 416
Chicken and Sausage Gumbo, 257–58
Chicken and Snow Peas in Black Bean Sauce, 417
Chicken Cacciatore, 415
Chicken Curry, 417–18
Chicken Fricassee, 409–10
Chicken Pesto and Feta Cheese Sandwich, 771
Chicken Sauté with Onions, Garlic and Basil, 402–4
Chicken Soup with Matzo Balls, 251–52
Chicken Stuffed with Spinach and Ricotta Cheese in Saffron Sauce, 418–19
Chicken with 40 Cloves of Garlic, 415–16
Chicken Yakitori, 416
Chickpeas with Olive Oil and Lemon, 610–11
Chicory, 684
Chiffon, 955, 1048, 1050–51
filling, 949, 955
lime, 1050–51
Chiffonade, 109

Chiffon cakes, 998, 1005–6
  orange, 1005–6
Chiffon pie, chocolate, 1068–69
Chile(s), 125
  ale-steamed mussels with tasso, leeks and, 517
  coriander, mix, 509–10
  green, southwestern scrambled eggs with chorizo and, 550
  tomato, hollandaise, 554
  types of, 580
  yellow hot, grilled lobster with, and chipotle pasta and chipotle beurre blanc, 529–30
Chili, black bean, venison and, 446
Chili Con Carne, 288, 309–10
Chilled, defined, 473
Chilled Beet and Buttermilk Soup, 258–59
Chilled Cherry Soup, 246
Chilled Chinese Noodle Salad, 677
Chilled Poached Salmon Roulade with Thai Noodle Salad and Soy Molasses Vinaigrette, 504–5
Chilled Roasted Red Pepper Coulis, 260
Chilled Shellfish Platter, 514
Chilli-Rubbed Venison with Caramelized Berry Sauce, 444–45
China cap, 87
Chinese anise (star anise), 124
Chinese Barbecued Spareribs, 369
Chinese chives (garlic chives), 121
Chinese five-spice powder, 128
Chinese gooseberries, 735
Chinese mustards, 138
Chinese noodles salad, chilled, 677
Chinois, 87
Chinook (king) salmon, 461
Chioggia beets, 596
Chipotle Beurre Blanc, 530
Chipotle Pasta, 529–30
Chipotle Purée, 777
Chives, 121, 129
  crab meat flan with red pepper coulis and, 527
Chocolate, 876–80
  bittersweet and semisweet, 878
  city, 972
  cocoa butter, 877, 879
  cocoa powder, 877, 879
  dark, sauce, 1077
  history of, 877
  hot and cold, 1076–77
  imitation, 879
  melting, 878
  milk, 878
  mousse, classic, 1052
  nutritional values of, 879
  production of, 876–78
  storing, 880
  sweet, 878
  syrup, 1057
    dark, 1057
  tasting, 878
  truffles, 1019
    dark, 1019
  unsweetened, 878
  white, 879
    buttercream, vanilla raspberry layer cake with, 1026–27
    frangelico Bavarian, 1068
    wine and, 141
Chocolate Angel Food Cake, 1004
Chocolate Chiffon Pie, 1068–69
Chocolate Cream Filling, 978–79
Chocolate Délice, 987–89
Chocolate Éclairs, 986–87
Chocolate Flourless Cake, 1033
Chocolate Fudge Sauce, 1078
Chocolate Ganache, 1018
Chocolate Hazelnut Marquis with Frangelico Sauce, 1075–76
Chocolate Ice Cream, 1076–77
Chocolate liquor (chocolate mass), 877
Chocolate Macadamia Nut Praline Torte, 977–79
Chocolate Pot Au Crème, 1062
Chocolate Soufflés, 1047
  warm, 1067–68
Chocolate Tart Batter, 1077
Chocolate Truffle Cake, 1034–35
Cholesterol, 40
  coronary heart disease and, 52
Chop, defined, 279
Chopped Chicken Liver, 801, 821
Choppers, 89
Chopping with knife, 111–12
Chorizo, 807, 823
  and date rumaki, 842
  southwestern scrambled eggs with green chile and, 550
Choron sauce, 209
Choucroute, 373
Chowders, 232, 243–44, 465
  clam, New England style, 244
  roasted corn, 257
Christmas (Santa Claus) melons, 729
Chuck, primal, 294
Churros, 961
Chutney, 214
  mango, 757–58
  star fruit, 228
    baked red snapper with, 486
Chutney Chicken Salad, 699
Cider, 745
Cider vinegar, 137
Cilantro, 121, 129
Cilantro Aïoli, 784
Cilantro Purée, 510, 852
Cinnamon, 125–26
Cinnamon buns, jumbo, 935
Cinnamon French Toast, 556
Citronella grass (lemon grass), 122
Citrus, 722–24
  cutting peels, 724
  sautéed pork medallions with red pepper and, 371–72
  segmenting, 723
  zesting, 723
Citrus Beurre Blanc, 224
City Chocolate, 972
City roast coffee, 140
Clafoun, cherry, 1067
Clam chowder, New England style, 244
Clam Dip, 836
Clam knives, 81
Clams, 465
  opening, 480–81
Clams Casino, 515–16
Clam shell mushroom, 586
Clarified butter, 152–53
Classic Chocolate Mousse, 1052
Classic cuisine, 5–6, 7
Classic Dacquoise, 988
Classic Genoise, 1001–2
Classic Poundcake, 999
Classic Rice Pilaf, 669
Classic Spongecake, 1002–3
Clean, defined, 30
Cleanliness, personal, 29–30
Clearmeat (clarification), 236
Clear soups. *See under* Soup(s)
Cleaver, 81
Clingstones, 733
Cloverleaf rolls, 914
Cloves, 126, 129
Club roll, 916
Club Sandwich, 783
Coagulation, 171
Cobbler(s), 744
  blackberry, 975–76
Cobb Salad, 712–13
Cocci, 21
Cockles, 466
Cockroaches, management of, 32
Cocoa butter, 877, 879
Cocoa powder, 877, 879
Coconut cake, fresh, 1029–30
Coconuts, 133
Cod, 458–59
Coffee whiteners, 150
Coffee, 139–43
  brewing, 141
  decaffeinated, 142
  grinding, 140–41
  history of, 143
  other uses of, 142
  roasting, 140
  serving, 142
  tasting, 141–42
Coffeecake, sour cream, 904
Coffee cream, 150
Cognac, roast pheasant with apples and, 449–50
Coho (silver) salmon, 461
Colander, 87
Colby cheese, 159
Cold smoking, 808
Coleslaw, creamy, 716
Collagen, 181
Collagen casings, 806
Columbus, Christopher, 336, 581, 877
Combination cooking methods, 172, 176–77
Commis (apprentices), 11, 13
Commis de rang (back waiters), 12
Common bacon, 808
Complex carbohydrates, 39
Composition, 1057
Compote
  berry, 756
  fruit
    dried, 748
    sundried, with honey ice cream, 1072
Compound butters, 211–12, 217
Compound (small) sauces, 191, 196
Comprehensive Meat Inspection Act (1906), 267
Compressed yeast, 909
Concassée, tomato, 235, 582
Concentrate, fruit (fruit paste), 748
Concentrated milk, 149–50
Conch, 465
Conchiglie, 653
Conching, 878
Condiments, 126, 138–39
Conduction, 168–69, 170
Confectioner's sugar, 869
Confiseur, 11
Confit(s), 801
  cherry, 753–54
    sautéed lamb loin with stuffed rösti potatoes and, 351
  duck, 422–23
    rolled in brick dough, 423
Connective tissue, 181, 264–65
Consommé, 232, 236–38
  beef, 237
  classic, 248
  double, 236
  perfumed shrimp, 253
Consumer(s)
  food service operations and, 10
  nutrition concerns of, 54, 55
Containers, 85, 90
Contamination, 21–32
  cross-contamination, 20, 28–32
  defined, 20
  direct, 21–28
    biological contaminants, 20, 21–27
    chemical contaminants, 20, 27–28
    defined, 20
    physical contaminants, 28
Continental Brownies, 1035
Convection, 169, 170
Convection oven, 91
Convection steamers, 93, 176
Conversion charts, 115–16
Conversion factor (C.F.), 66
Conversions, recipe, 66–68
Converted rice, 643
Cooked sausages, 805
Cooked syrups, 871
Cookery, defined, 4
Cookies, 965–68
  bar, 967
  cut-out or rolled, 967
  drop, 966
  gingerbread, 991
  icebox, 966–67
  madeleines, 990
  mixing methods, 966
  oatmeal, spiced, 992
  pecan, lacy, 993
  pressed, 967
  spritz, 991–92
  storing, 968
  sugar, 990–91
  textures, 967–68
  Toll House®, original, 969
  tuiles, 993
  wafer, 967
Cooking, defined, 4
Cooking bananas (plantains), 734
Cooking principles, 166–77
  heat effects, 170–72
  heat transfer, 168–70
  methods, 172–77
    combination, 172, 176–77
    dry-heat, 172, 173–75
    moist-heat, 172, 175–76
Cookware, 84–87
Coq au Vin, 414
Coq d'Inde, 382
Coriander, 126
Coriander Chile Mix, 509–10
Coriander-Crusted Yellowfin Tuna with Braised White Beans and Roasted Peppers, 509–10
Corn, 589, 642–43
  blue, and shrimp tamales, 858–59

Corn, (*cont.*)
creamed, with basil, 624
cutting kernels off ears of, 589
introduction to Europe, 581
smoked, grilled lamb chops with wild mushroom polenta and pumpkinseed cream and, 349–50
Cornbread, deep-fried (hush puppies), 902
Cornice pears, 731
Cornish game hen, 379
roast, with wild rice stuffing, 413
Cornmeal, 643
Corn muffins, basic, 902
Corn pudding, smoked, achiote-basted rack of venison with, 440–42
Cornstarch, 194–95
Corn syrup, 870
Coronary heart disease, 52, 54
Cortez, Hernando, 877
Cost(s)
calculation of, 69–70
controlling, 70–71
per portion, 69
recipe, 69–70
unit, 69
Cottage Fries, Shoestring Potatoes, French Fries, Steak Fries, 666
Cotton tofu, 592
Coulis, 191, 212–13, 217, 1056
red pepper, 213
chilled roasted, 260
crab meat flan with chives and, 527
vegetable, 212, 213
Count, defined, 64
Country Biscuits, 891
Country ham, 807, 809
Country-Style Forcemeat, 791–93, 792
Country-Style Tomato and Cucumber Salad, 710
Country vegetables, Chiappetti's lamb shank with lentils and, 353
Coupe, 1055
Court Bouillon, 180, 189–90
Couscous, 645
Couscous Salad, 716–17
Crab(s), 468
softshell, po' boy sandwich, 526–27
Crab Cakes, 553
blue, with fresh salsa, 489–90
Thai, 528–29
Crabcakes Benedict, 553–54
Crab Meat Flan with Red Pepper Coulis and Chives, 527
Cracked wheat, 645
Cracking, 642
Cranberry(ies), 721
-orange sauce, fresh, 757
stuffing, wild rice and, 670–71
Crayfish (crawfish; crawdad), 467–68
butter, 211
Crayfish Étouffée, 532
Cream, 150–51
garlic, mushroom tarts with, 219
pumpkinseed, grilled lamb chops with smoked corn and wild mushroom polenta and, 349–50
sour, braised antelope in, 443–44
Cream cheese, 155
as Danish pastry filling, 938
frosting, 1028
carrot cake with, 1028
Cream desserts, 1048–52
almond, 985
as Danish pastry filling, 938
fresh peach tart with, 984–85
Bavarian, 1048–50
fresh fruit, 1049–50
white chocolate frangelico, 1068
chiffon, 955, 1048, 1050–51
lime, 1050–51
chocolate pot au crème, 1062
components of, 1051
crème brûlée, 1060–61
crème Chantilly, 988–89, 1048
crème chiboust, 1061
mousse, 1048, 1051–52
chocolate, classic, 1052
Kirsch, 1060
raspberry, 1069
pastry, 971–72, 1040, 1041, 1042–43
pie, basic, 950
puffs, 961
Creamed Corn with Basil, 624
Creamed fat mixing method, 997, 998–1000
Cream filling(s), 949–50
chocolate, 978–79
diplomat, 1027
Creaming method of mixing, 881, 893–95
Cream of Broccoli Soup, 239–40
Cream sauces, 197, 659
herbed, goat-cheese ravioli in, 672–73
Cream Scones, 897
Cream soups, 232, 233, 238–40
Creamy Coleslaw, 716
Creamy Polenta with Wild Mushrooms, 667–68
Crème Brûlée, 1041, 1060–61
Crème caramel, 1044–45
Crème Chantilly (chantilly Cream), 988–89, 1048
Crème Chiboust, 1041, 1061
Crème fraîche, 151
gratin of fresh berries with, 752–53
herbed, fried oysters with, 518
Crenshaw melons, 728
Creole Rémoulade Sauce, 526–27
Creole sauce, 205
Crêpes, 548–49
buckwheat, with sausage and apple stuffing, 554–55
sweet, 549
Crisp (strudels), 744
Croissants, 921–23
Croquembouche, 961
Croquettes, 566
salmon, 566
Cross-contamination, 20, 28–32
Croutons, 918
garlic, for salads, 708
Crudités, 835
Crullers, 961
Crumple (strudels), 744
Crushed chiles, 125
Crustaceans, 456, 467–69
Crusts, pie and tart, 943–49
baking, 948–49
crumb, 949
flaky and mealy doughs, 945–46
pie dough, basic, 944
shaping, 946–48
shortcake tart, 982–83
sweet dough, 944–45
Cryovac®, 268
Cube sugar, 869
Cucumbers, 583
and tomato salad, country-style, 710
Cucumber-Yogurt Salad, 630
Cucurbitaceae, 583
Cuisine
classic, 5–6, 7
ethnic, 10
grande, 5, 6, 7
national, 10
nouvelle, 7–8
regional, 10
Cuisine bourgeoisie, 5
Cuisine classique, 5–6, 7
Culinary (table) salt, 131
Cullises, 233
Cultivation, disappearance of traditional methods of, 597
Cultured dairy products, 151–52
Cumin, 126, 129
Cups, measuring, 82
Curing salt, 789
Curly endive, 684
Curly parsley, 123
Currants, 721, 727
dried, 742
Curried Chicken Canapés, 846
Curry
chicken, 417–18
powder, 128
sauce, Thai, 499–500
shallot, oil, 216
Curry Paste, 500
Custard filling, 954–55
Custards, 1040–47
baked, 1040, 1044–46
bread pudding, 1044, 1046, 1066
cheesecakes. *See* Cheesecake(s)
crème caramel, 1044–45
cherry clafouti, 1067
flan, mint-milk, with orange water, 1062–63
soufflés, 1046–47
chocolate, 1047
warm chocolate, 1067–68
stirred, 1041–44
pastry cream, 971–72, 1040, 1041, 1042–43
sabayon, 1040, 1043–44
vanilla custard sauce, 1040–41, 1042
Cutlet, defined, 279
Cut-out cookies, 967
Cutting, 881, 1085–86
Cuttlebone (pen), 467
Cycle menu, 60–61
Cyclospora, 26

D

Dacquoise, classic, 988
Daikons (Asian radishes), 593–94
Dairy products, 146–63
cheeses. *See* Cheese(s)
imitation and artificial, 150
milk, 148–53
butter. *See* Butter(s)
concentrated, 149–50
cream, 150–51
cultured dairy products, 151–52
processing techniques, 148–49
nutritional values of, 153–54
Damson plums, 734
Dandelion, for salads, 684
Danish Pastries, 937–39
dough for, 937–38
fillings for, 938–39
Danish Tilsit, 158
Darjeeling tea, 144
Dark Chocolate Syrup, 1057
Dark Chocolate Truffles, 1019
Date(s), 735
chewy bars, 989
multigrain bread, 928
Date and Chorizo Rumaki, 842
Decaffeinated coffee, 142
Decline (negative) growth phase, 24
Decoction, 141
Decorateur, 11
Decorator's icing (royal icing), 1011, 1016–17
Dedication of professional chef, 15
Deep-fat fryers, 93
Deep-Fried Catfish Fillets with Tartar Sauce, 565
Deep-Fried Cornbread (Hush Puppies), 902
Deep-fried sandwiches, 766
Deep-frying, 174–75, 558–71
croquettes, 566
determining doneness, 569–70
equipment for, 560–61
fats for, 561–62
fritters, 568–69
apple, 569
banana, 754–55
fruits, 746
methods of, 562–63
potatoes, 640
preparing foods for, 563–69
battering, 567–68
breading, 564–66
seasoning, 563
selecting foods for, 563
vegetables, 607
Deer, 433, 435, 437. *See also* Venison
Deglazing, 185
Degreasing, 183
Deionized water, 41
Délices de la Campagne, les (Bonnefon), 911
Demerara (turbinado) sugar, 868, 869
Demi-chefs (assistants), 11, 13
Demi chefs de rang (back waiters), 12
Demi-Glace, 202
Demineralized water, 41
Dessert(s). *See also* Cake(s); Cream desserts; Cookies; Pie(s); Tarts
assembling, 1058
brownies, 1007
applesauce, 1035–36
continental, 1035
with ingredient substitutes, 50
traditional fudge, 50
charlotte, 1049
chocolate, hot and cold, 1076–77
crème brûlée, 1041, 1060–61
fillings, 1058
frozen, 1052–55
ice cream and gelato, 1052, 1053–54

semifreddi, 1052, 1055
sherbets and sorbets, 1052, 1055
longchamp, 1059–60
Dessert sauces, 1056–57
butterscotch, 1078
caramel sauce, 1056–57
chocolate fudge, 1078
chocolate syrup, 1057
espresso, 1078
espresso and dark chocolate, 1077
fruit purées, 1056
Detrempe, 957
Devil's Food Cake, 1031
Diagonal cuts, 109
Dicing, with knife, 112–15
Diet, food service operations and, 9–10
Dietary fiber, 39
Dietary Guidelines for Americans, The, 44
Diet-disease links, 52–53, 54
Dijon mustard, 138
Dill, 121–22, 129
new potato salad with mustard and, 715
Dining room manager (*maître d hotel*), 12
Diplomat Cream Filling, 1027
Dips, 835–36
clam, 836
spinach and artichoke, 850–51
Direct contamination, 21–28
biological contaminants, 20, 21–27
bacteria, 21–24
fungi, 27
parasites, 24–26
viruses, 26–27
chemical contaminants, 20, 27–28
defined, 20
physical contaminants, 28
Disease-diet links, 52–53, 54
Dish cleanliness, 30–31
Dishers, 83
Dishwashers, mechanical, 30–31, 93–94
Distilled vinegar, 137
Distilled water, 41
Docking, 917, 948
Dofino, 158
Dogfish, 463
Domestication of animals, 266
Domestic Dover sole, 464
Dominant meat, 788–89
Dorado (mahi-mahi), 460
Double-acting baking powder, 889
Double-basket method of deep-frying, 563
Double consommé, 236
Dough(s), 881
brick, duck confit rolled in, 422–23
cookie, 966
for Danish pastries, 937–38
fermenting, 913
mixing and kneading, 911–13
pasta, basic, 655
pastry, 942–45
basic pie, 944
flaky and mealy, 943–44
rolling and shaping for crusts and tart shells, 946–48
sweet, 944–45
pâté, 801–2
pizza, 930
portioning, 913
punching down, 913
quiche, 974
rolled-in, 920–23
croissants, 921–23
Doux de Montagne, 157
Dover sole, 464
skinning, 476
Drawn fish, 472
Dressed fish, 472
Dressing
garlic yogurt, 783
meat, 265
salad. *See* Salad dressing(s)
Dressing (bread stuffing), 396
chestnut, roast turkey with, and giblet gravy, 397–98
Dried beans, 590–91
Dried Fruit Compote, 748
Dried fruits, 742
Dried sausages, 805
Driers, for cakes, 997
Drinking water, 41
Drop cookies, 966
Drop (plain) dumplings, 654
Drum sieve, 87
Drupes (stone fruits), 732–34
Dry aging, 268
Dry-heat cooking methods, 172, 173–75
Dry measuring cup, 82
Dry milk powder, 150
Dry yeast, 909
Duchesse Potatoes, 640, **641**
Duck, 380
breast, warm salad with Asian spices and hazelnut vinaigrette, 421–22
classes of, 380
confit, 422–23
rolled in brick dough, 422–23
liver
canapé with candied rhubarb, sautéed, 849
à l'orange, 424
roast, with rösti potatoes, 411–13
sauce, basic, 412–13
smoked, and foie gras galantine on a pear galette, 812–13
Duck à l'Orange, 424
Duck Confit, 422–23
Duck Confit Rolled in Brick Dough, 423
Duck eggs, 536
Duckling, 380
Duck Prosciutto with Fresh Mango, 825–26
Dumplings, 654
filled, 654
plain (drop), 654
Dungeness crabs, 468
Durum wheat, 645
Dusting plates, 1090–91
Duxelles, 619
sautéed foi gras on wild mushroom, with toasted brioche, 427–28
Duxelles Sauce, 221

E. coli, 25
Earl Gray tea, 144
Eastern (Atlantic) oysters, 466
East India Company, 145
Éclairs, 961
chocolate, 986–87
paste, 956, 961–63
basic, 962–63
Edible pea pods, 591
Eel, 459
Eggplant, 578
grilled, warm mushroom salad with white truffles and, 621–22
ratatouille, 624
Eggplant and Sun-Dried Tomato Pizza, 785
Eggs, 534–56
baking, 540–42
basted, 546
as binders, 789
blintzes, cheese, 555
composition of, 536–37
crabcakes benedict, 553–54
crêpes, 548–49
buckwheat, with sausage and apple stuffing, 554–55
sweet, 549
French toast, cinnamon, 556
frittatas, 544–45
artichoke, 551–52
garden, 545
grading of, 537
in-shell cooking (simmering) of, 547
nutritional values of, 538–39
omelet
folded, 543
French-style, 544
shrimp and avocado, 543–44
pan-frying, 545–46
poached, 547–48
products of, 538
quail, 536
quiche Lorraine, 541–42
as sandwich filling, 764
sanitation of, 538
sautéing, 542–45
scrambled, 542–43
Greek-style, 551
Southwestern, with green chile and chorizo, 550–51
shirred, 540
with ham, 540–41
storage of, 537–38
substitutes for, 538
whites, 536
whipped, 539
Eggs Benedict, 552
Elastin, 264
Elizabeth I, Queen, 145
Émincé, defined, 279
Emmenthaler cheese, 159
Emu, 382
Emulsification, 206, 788
Emulsified fats, 874
Emulsified sauce, 691
Emulsified Vinaigrette Dressing, 694
Emulsions, as flavorings, 876
Enamelware, 85
Endive
Belgian, 684
curly, 684
Endosperm, 642
English Breakfast tea, 144
English Cheddar, 159
English Muffin Loaves, 925–26
English mustards, 138
English sole, 463
Enokidake mushroom, 586
Entrecôtes Bordelaise, 305–6
Entrée, defined, 60
Entremetier, 11
Equipment. *See also* Tools and equipment
cleanliness of, 30–31
deep-frying, 560–61
recipe conversion and, 68
for sausage making, 806
stationary, 31
Escargot in Garlic Butter, 854–55
Escargots (snails), 465
Escarole, 684
Escoffier, Auguste, 6, 7, 14, 193, 233
Espagnole (Brown Sauce), 201–2, 201–4, 217
Espresso, 142
Espresso and Dark Chocolate Sauces, 1077
Espresso machiatto, 142
Espresso roast (Italian roast), 140
Espresso Sauce, 1078–79
Essence (broth), 215
Ethnic cuisine, 10
Ethnic Cuisine: The Flavor Principle Cookbook (Rozin), 130
Ethylene gas, 740
European flat oysters, 466
Evaporated milk, 149–50
Evaporation
recipe conversions and, 68
of water, 171–72
Ewe's milk, 148
Executive chef, 12–13
Extractors, 90
Extracts, as flavorings, 876
Extra virgin olive oil, 136
Extrusion, 651

Fabricated cuts, 264
Fabricating meat, 265
Facultative bacteria, 24
Faisan à la sainte-alliance, 436
Falafel, 778–79
Fancy, defined, 473
Farfalle, 653
Farmer, Fanny Merritt, 65
Fat(s), 873–74
all-purpose shortening, 873
during baking, 882
butter and margarine, 874
coronary heart disease and, 52, 54
for deep-frying, 561–62
emulsified shortening, 874
as essential nutrients, 39, 40
in forcemeats, 789
lard, 874
melting of, 172
nutritional values of, 137, 874
oil. *See* Oil(s)
smoke point of, 137
subcutaneous, 264
substitutes for and alternatives to, 48
Fat-Free Raspberry Vinaigrette, 703
Fat-soluble vitamins, 41
Fat thermometers, 83
Fenil, 126, 129
Fennel, 596
grilled loin of rabbit with spinach, white beans and, 446–48
Fennel and Mushrooms à la Grecque, 627–28

Fenugreek, 126
Fermentation, 27, 865
of yeast bread dough, 913
Feta cheese, 155
sandwich, chicken pesto and, 771
Fettuccine, spinach, 652
Fettuccine Alfredo, 673
Fettuccine con Pesto alla Trapanese, 672
Feuilletées, 959, 960–61
Fiber, 39
cancer and, 52
Fiddlers, 458
Figs, 724, 740
Figs with Berries and Honey Mousse, 751
Filbert, 133, 134
Filet mignon, 300
Filled dumplings, 654
Fillets, fish, 472
skinning, 476
Fillets of Sole Bonne Femme, 496
Filling(s)
cream, 949–50
chocolate, 978–79
diplomat, 1027
for Danish pastries, 938–39
dessert, 1058
ganache, 988, 1011, 1017–19, 1034
chocolate, 1018
chocolate truffles, 1019
macadamia, 978
persimmon, 982
for pies and tarts, 949–55
blueberry pie, 952–53
chiffon, 955
cooked juice, 952
cream, 949–50
custard, 954–55
fruit, 949, 950–52
fruit, baked, 952–54
prepared or canned, 954
for sandwiches, 764–65
Fine herbs, 121, 122
Fire extinguishers, 95
First-aid kits, 95
Fish, 454–533. *See also specific species*
anadromous, 458
baking and roasting, 485–86
bones, for stock, 181
broiling, 483–85
combination cooking methods, 497–98
fillets, 472
skinning, 476
flatfish, 456, 463–64
bone structure of, 456, 457
filleting, 475
pan-dressing, 474
freshness of, 471
fumet, 187–88
grading of, 470–71
grilling, 483–85
inspection of, 470–71
nutritional value of, 469–70
pan-frying, 489–90
poaching, 493–96
shallow, 494, 495
submersion, 493–94
purchasing, 472–73
round fish, 456, 458–63
bone structure of, 457
cutting steaks from salmon-sized, 477
filleting, 475
as sandwich filling, 764
sautéing, 487–89
scaling, 474
steaming, 491–93
storing, 473
structure and muscle composition of, 456–57
trash, 463
Fish Fumet, 188
Fish sauce, 139
velouté, 199
Fish station chef (*poissonier*), 11
Fish Stock, 180, 187–88
Flaky dough, 943–44
Flan, 943
crab meat, with red pepper coulis and chives, 527
Flank of beef, 297
Flash-frozen, defined, 473
Flatbread, Roman (focaccia), 929–30
Flatfish, 456, 463–64
bone structure of, 456, 457
filleting, 475
pan-dressing, 474
Flat top, 91
Flavor(s)
of coffee, 142
concepts of, 130
Roberts on, 132
Flavored butters, 191
Flavored coffees, 142
Flavored oils (infused oils), 136, 191, 216, 217
Flavored vinegars, 137
Flavoring(s), 875–80
alcoholic beverages, 880
for cakes, 997
chocolate, 876–80
defined, 120
emulsions and extracts, 876
vanilla, 876
Flies, management of, 32
Flounder (sole), 463–64
Flours(s), 864–67
aging and bleaching, 865
all-purpose, 865
composition of, 865–66
nutritional values of, 867
purchasing and storing, 867
specialty, 866–67
wheat, 864–65
Flour sifter, 88
Flowers, for salads, 685
Fluoridated water, 41
Foamed milk, 142
Foam frosting, 1011, 1014
Focaccia (Roman Flatbread), 929–30
grilled BBQ portabella mushroom sandwich on, 776
Foie gras, 383
galantine on a pear galette, smoked duck and, 812–13
jerk, with green lentils in balsamic vinegar, 428–29
sautéed, on wild mushroom duxelles with toasted brioche, 427–28
terrines, 799
Folate, 42
Folding, 881
Fond, defined, 279
Fondant, 1011, 1015
Fond lié, 203
Fondue, 158
Fontal (fontinella), 157
Fontina cheese, 157
Fontina Val D'Aosta, 157
Food and Cookery for the Sick and Convalescent (Farmer), 65
Food chopper, 89
Food Guide Pyramid, 45–47, 54
Food in History (Tannahill), 268, 382
Food mill, 88
Food processor, 89
Food Safety and Inspection Service (FSIS), 267
Food safety and sanitation, 10, 18–35
contamination, 21–32
cross-contamination, 20, 28–32
defined, 20
direct, 21–28
HAACP systems, 32–33
safe worker, 33–34
Food service chemicals, 28
Food service operations, 8–13
consumers and, 10
kitchen brigade, 10–13
classic, 10–11
defined, 10
modern, 12–13
new foods in, 9
new technologies in, 8–9
nutrition and diet concerns in, 9–10
Forcemeat(s), 788–807
basic, 791, 793–95
basic game, 816
country-style, 791–93
equipment for preparing, 790
in galantines, 797–98, 804–5
ingredients of, 788–90
mousseline, 791, 795–96
in pâté, 797–98, 801–3
quenelles, 797
sausages, 805–7
in terrines, 797–801
Foreign soups, 233
Foresaddle, lamb, 338
Foreshank, veal, 314–16
Fork, chef's, 79
Formed (boneless) ham, 809
Formosa Oolong tea, 144
"Fowl plague," 384
Foyot sauce, 209
Frangelico sauce, chocolate hazelnut marquis with, 1075–76
Free-range chickens, 378
Roman-style, 419
Freestones, 733
Freezer burn, 270
French Apple Tart, 979
French bread, basic, 924
French Buttercream, 1014
French dressing, basic. *See* Vinaigrette(s)
French fries, 666
Frenching, 338, 339
French knife, 80
French (mousseline) buttercream, 1013–14
French Onion Soup, 252–53
French roast, 140
French service, 12
French toast, cinnamon, 556
Fresh, defined, 473
Fresh beans, 589–90
Fresh Berry Tart, 981
Fresh Coconut Cake, 1029–30
Fresh (compressed) yeast, 909
Fresh Cranberry-Orange Sauce, 757
Fresh-frozen, defined, 473
Fresh ham, 363, 809
Fresh Peach and Yogurt Soup, 259
Fresh Peach Tart with Almond Cream, 984–85
Fresh sausages, 805
Fresh shelling peas, 591
Fresh Strawberry Pie, 975
Fresh Strawberry Shortcake, 898
Fresh Tomato Sauce for Pasta, 222
Fresh Water Shrimp Wrapped in Potato, 524–25
Fricassee(s), 287, 288, 290
chicken, 409–10
veal, 333
Fried Oysters with Herbed Crème Fraîche, 518
Frittatas, 544–45
artichoke, 551–52
garden, 545
Fritters, 568–69
apple, 569
banana, 754–55
Friturier (fry station chef), 11
Frogs, 436
Fromage blanc, 155
Fromage fort, 157
Fromage frais, 155
Front waiters (*chefs de rang*), 12
Frosting(s), 1010–19. *See also* Cake(s)
buttercream, 1011–14
French, 1013–14
Italian, 1012–13
simple (American-style), 1011–12
white chocolate, vanilla raspberry layer cake with, 1026–27
cream cheese, 1028
foam, 1011, 1014
fondant, 1011, 1015
fudge, 1011, 1014–15
basic, 1015
marble sheet cake with, 1028–29
ganache, 988, 1011, 1017–19, 1034
chocolate, 1018
chocolate truffles, 1019
glaze, 190–91, 1011, 1015–16
sugar, basic, 1016
sugar, powdered, 935
prepared, 1017
royal icing (decorator's icing), 1011, 1016–17
troubleshooting chart for, 1018
Frozen, defined, 473
Frozen foods, safety for, 23
Fruit(s), 718–58
acidulation of, 741
baking, 744–45
Bavarian, fresh, 1049–50
berries, 720–21
broiling, 743–44
canned, 741
citrus, 722–24
cutting peels, 724
sautéed pork medallions with red pepper and, 371–72
segmenting, 723
zesting, 723
deep-frying, 746

diseases linked to deficiency in, 52
doneness of cooked, 743
dried, 742
compote, 748
exotics, 724–26
frozen, 741–42
grading, 739
grapes, 726–27
gratin of fresh berries with crème fraîche, 752–53
grilling, 743–44
irradiated, 741
juicing, 742–43
kebabs, grilled, 753
melons, 728–29
nutritional value of, 738, 739
as pie and tart filling, 950–52
baked, 952–54
poaching, 747–48
pomes, 730–32
preserving, 748–49
purchasing, 740, 741–42
purées. *See* Coulis
ripening, 739–40
sautéing, 745–46
savory, for roast pork, 746
simmering, 748
stone (drupes), 732–34
storing, 741–42
tropical, 734–38
with passion fruit purée, 750
salad with yogurt dressing, 752
Fruitcake, French-style, 999
Fruit salads, 695, 701
Fruit-vegetables, 577–82
avocados, 577–78
and shrimp omelet, 543–44
southwestern grilled cheese sandwich with chipotle purée and, 777
eggplants, 578
grilled, warm mushroom salad with white truffles and, 621–22
ratatouille, 624
peppers. *See* Pepper(s)
tomatillos, 581
tomatoes. *See* Tomato(es)
Fry Bread Canapés, 847–48
Fryers, deep-fat, 93
Frying, 174–75. *See also* Deep-frying; Pan-frying
Fry station chef (*friturier*), 11
FSIS (Food Safety and Inspection Service), 267
Fudge brownies, traditional, 50
Fudge frosting, 1013, 1014–15
basic, 1015
marble sheet cake with, 1028–29
Fudge sauce, chocolate, 1078
Fumet, 180, 187–88
Fungi, 27
Fungicides, 50
Fusilli, 653

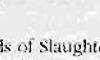
G

Galantine(s)
foie gras, on a pear galette, smoked duck and, 812–13
forcemeats in, 797–98, 804–5
of turbot and lobster, 820–21
Galantine of Turbot and Lobster, 820–21
Galle d'India, 382
Game, 430–52
antelope, 432, 435, 437
braised, in sour cream, 443–44
bison (American buffalo), 433–34, 435
grilled steak, 449
Cornish hen, 379
roast, with wild rice stuffing, 413
deer, 433, 435, 437. *See also* Venison
forcemeat, basic, 816
identifying, 432–36
feathered or winged game, 434–36
furred or ground game, 432–34
inspection of, 438
marinating, 270, 438–39
red-wine marinade, 439
nutritional values of, 436–37
partridge, 435
egg, 536
pheasant, 435
faisan à la sainte-alliance, 436
roast, with cognac and apples, 449–50
stuffed breast of, 450
purchasing, 438
quail, 435–36
egg, 536
grilled, with potato galette, artichoke wedges and balsamic raspberries, 451–52
rabbit, 433–34, 435
braised, with cavatelli pasta, 448–49
butchering, 434
grilled loin of, with spinach, fennel and white beans, 446–48
storing, 438
wild boar, 434, 435
Ganache, 988, 1011, 1017–19, 1034
chocolate, 1018
truffles, 1019
Ganache Coating, 1035
Ganache Filling, 1034
Garde-manger (pantry chef), 11, 678
Garden Frittata, 545
Garlic, 587–88
balsamic and roasted garlic vinaigrette, 704
butter, escargot in, 854–55
chicken sauté with onions, basil and, 402–4
chicken with 40 cloves of, 415–16
chopping, 112
roasted, sauce, 220
shrimp with olive oil and, 521–22
toasted, pan-fried trout with, 506–7
Garlic chives, 121
Garlic Cream, 219
mushroom tarts with, 219
Garlic Croutons for Salads, 708
Garlic-oil sauces, 659
Garlic sauce, noisettes of lamb with, 356
Garlic Timbales, 625
Garlic Yogurt Dressing, 783
Garnish(es), 1085
canapés, 831, 832
of composed salads, 697
dessert, 1058
in forcemeat, 790
on plates, 1091–93
for soups, 233, 247–49
Garum, 193
Gas grill, 92
Gastrique, 204
Gastronomy, defined, 14
Gâteau, 943
Gâteau St. Honoré, 970–72
Gaufrette, 117
Gauge of material, 84
Gazpacho, 247
Gelatin, 181, 875
concentrations, 800
Gelatinization, 171, 192, 865, 882
Gelato, 1052, 1053–54
Genoise, 997, 1001–2
classic, 1001–2
Geoducks, 465
Germ, 642
Giblet gravy, roast turkey with chestnut dressing and, 397–98
Giblets, 382
Ginger, 126, 129
-potato purée, 666–67
shrimp poached in orange juice, sauterne and, 522
steamed scallops with basil, orange and, 519
whole sizzling catfish with ponzu sauce and, 571
Gingerbread Cookies, 991
Ginger Caramel Sauce, 977
Gizzards, poultry, 382–83
Glaçage, 209
Glace de poisson, 190
Glace de viande, 190
Glace de volaille, 190
Glacier, 11
Glass cookware, 85
Glaze, 190–91, 1011, 1015–16
orange, 1006
sugar
basic, 1016
powdered, 935
Glazed, defined, 473
Glazed Pearl Onions, 623
Glucose, 39, 1015
Gluten, 865
Glycogen, 268
Gnocchi, potato, 677–78
Goat-Cheese Ravioli in Herbed Cream Sauce, 672–73
Goat's milk, 148
Goat's-milk cheese, 160–61
Golden, Harris, 43
Golden Delicious apples, 730
Golden raisins, 742
Golden whitefish caviar, 834
Gold honeydews, 729
Gold watermelons, 729
Goose, 380
classes of, 380
roast, with cabbage and apples, 424–25
Goose eggs, 536
Goosefish. *See* Monkfish
Gorgonzola, 157
red potatoes with walnuts and, 853
Gouda cheese, 158
Goulash, 288
Hungarian, 308
Gourds, 583–84
Gourmand, 14
Gourmet, 14
Gourmet foods, 14
Graff, Richard H., 141
Grains, 642–51
barley, 645–46
buckwheat/kasha, 646
corn. *See* Corn
doneness of, 647–48
molding, 1086–87
nutritional values of, 646–47
oats, 646
pilaf method of cooking, 650–51
purchasing, 647
rice. *See* Rice
risotto method of cooking, 648–50
simmering, 648
storing, 647
wheat. *See* Wheat
Grams, converting to ounces, 66
Grana, 160
Granadillas (passion fruits), 737
purée, tropical fruit with, 750
Grande cuisine, 5, 6, 7
Granny Smith apples, 730
Granulated white sugar, 868
Grapefruit, 722
broiled, 744
Grapefruit Sorbet, 1055
Grapes, 726–27
Gratin Dauphinoise, 638–39
Gratin of Fresh Berries with Crème Fraîche, 752–53
Gravlax, 461, 807, **824**
Gravy
giblet, roast turkey with chestnut dressing and, 397–98
pan, 191, 212, 217
pan-fried chicken with, 404–5
as sauce, 191
Great American Seafood Cookbook (Loomis), 463
Great Northern beans, 590
Greek salad, 713
Greek-Style Scrambled Eggs, 551
Green bean(s), 589–91
ragout, roasted veal chop with morel and, 325
Green cabbages, 576
Green chile, southwestern scrambled eggs with chorizo and, 550
Green Goddess Dressing, 706
Green Lentils in Balsamic Vinegar, 429
Green olives, 136
Green peppercorns, 127
Greens, 584–85
Green salads, 695–98
composed, 695, 697–98
tossed, 695–96
Greenshell mussels, 466
Green tea, 143
Griddlecakes, 895–96
Griddles, 91
Grillardin (grill station chef), 11
Grilled BBQ Portabella Mushroom Sandwich on Focaccia, 776
Grilled Buffalo Steak, 449
Grilled Chilean Sea Bass with Anasazi Bean Stew and Nopal Cactus Salsa, 500–502
Grilled Fruit Kebabs, 753
Grilled Lamb Chops with Herb Butter, 273
Grilled Lamb Chops with Smoked Corn and Wild Mushroom Polenta and Pumpkinseed Cream, 349–50

Grilled Lobster with Yellow Hot Chiles and Chipotle Pasta with Chipotle Beurre Blanc, 529–30
Grilled Loin of Rabbit with Spinach, Fennel and White Beans, 446–48
Grilled Portabella Mushrooms, 619
Grilled Potato Salad, 662–63
Grilled Prawn Brochette with Butternut Squash Risotto, 522–24
Grilled Quail with Potato Galette, Artichoke Wedges and Balsamic Raspberries, 451–52
Grilled Rack of Lamb with Rosemary and Spicy Bell Pepper Jelly, 348
Grilled Red Snapper Burger with Mango Ketchup, 774
Grilled Salmon Club with Cilantro Aïoli, 784
Grilled sandwiches, 766
Grilled Seckel Pear Salad with Sherry Bacon Vinaigrette, 710–11
Grilled Shrimp with Prosciutto and Basil, 859
Grilled Squab with Basil Butter, 393–94
Grilled Vegetable Skewers, 604
Grilling, 173
  fish, 483–85
  fruits, 743–44
  meat, 271–73
  poultry, 392–94
  shellfish, 483–85
  vegetables, 603–4
  vitamin retention and, 43
Grills, 92
Grill spatula, 79
Grill station chef (*grillardin*), 11
Grimrod sauce, 209
Grinders, 763
Grinding, 642
Grits, 643
Grits and Cheddar Soufflé, 668
Groat, 646
Grosse piece, 1101–2
Grosse viande, la, 4
Grouper, 460
Grouper Sandwich with Lemon Rémoulade, 772
Gruyère cheese, 159
Guacamole, 850
Guava, 724–25
Guérard, Michel, 8
Guide culinaire, Le (Escoffier), 7, 14, 233
Guilds, 4
Guinea, 380–81
  classes of, 381
Guinea fowl egg, 536
Gull egg, 536
Gumbo, chicken and sausage, 257–58
Gum paste, 1020
Gunpowder tea, 143, 144

HACCP systems, 32–33
Haddock, 459
Half-and-half, 150
Half-hitch method of tying meat, 365
Halibut, 464
  sautéed, with three-color peppers and Spanish olives, 488–89
Ham(s), 809
  boneless (formed), 809
  Bourbon baked, 370
  country-style, 807, 809
  fresh, 363, 809
  prosciutto (Parma ham), 809
    duck with fresh mango, 825–26
    grilled shrimp with basil and, 859
  salt-cured, 807
  shirred eggs with, 540–41
  Westphalian, 809
Hamburger, 773
Hand tools, 79–81
Hand washing procedure, 29
Hard cheese, 160
Hard-cooked (hard-boiled) eggs, 547
Hard sausages, 805
Hard water, 41
Haricots verts, 589
Havarti cheese, 158
Hazard Analysis Critical Control Points (HACCP) systems, 32–33
Hazelnut, 133
  chocolate marquis, with frangelico sauce, 1075–76
  rack of lamb with mustard and, 344–45
  vinaigrette, warm duck breast salad with Asian spices and, 421–22
Head waiter (chef de salle), 12
Hearts, poultry, 382–83
Hearty Vegetable Beef Soup, 235–36
Heat conduction, metals and, 84–86
Heat effects on cooking, 170–72
Heat lamps, 94
Heat transfer, 168–70
Heavy cream, 150
Heavy equipment, 91–94
Heavy whipping cream, 150
Hen of the woods, 586
Henry V, King of England, 1053
Hepatitis A, 26
Herb butter, 211
  broiled black sea bass with sautéed leeks and, 484–85
Herbicides, 50
Herb Mayonnaise, 780
Herb Oil, 228
Herbs, 120–23, 129–30
  garnishing plates with, 1091–92
  for salads, 685–86
Heros, 763
Herring, 460
Hershey, Milton, 877
High carbon stainless steel construction, 80
High-ratio cakes, 997, 1000
  yellow, 1000
High-Ratio Yellow Cake, 1000
High tea, 145
Hillel, Rabbi, 767
Hindsaddle, lamb, 338
Hippen masse, garnishing plates with, 1092–93
HIV, 29
Hoagies, 763
Hogs. *See also* Pork
  New World history of, 363
  skeletal structure of, 361
Hoisin sauce, 139
Hollandaise, 205–9, **207**, 217
  rescuing broken, 206
  small sauces, 208–9
  temperatures and sanitation concerns, 206
  tomato chile, 554
Hollandaise, Blender Method, 208
Home-Style Meatloaf, 303–4
Hominy (posole; samp), 643
Homogenization, 149
Honey
  mousse, figs with berries and, 751
  as sweetener, 870
Honeydew melons, 728–29
Honey mousseline, 1070–71
Honey-Mustard Denver Ribs, 350
Honey Wheat Tuile, 1063
Hoods, ventilation, 95
Hors d'oeuvre, 828–59
  blue corn and shrimp tamales, 858–59
  buckwheat blini, 846–47
  chevre tarts, 855
  cold, 830–39
    canapés. *See* Canapés
    caviar, 834–35
    crudités, 835
    dips, 835–36, 850–51
    sushi (zushi), 836–39
  escargot in garlic butter, 854–55
  grilled shrimp with prosciutto and basil, 859
  guacamole, 850
  hot, 840–43
    brochettes, 840–41
    filled pastry shells, 840
    meatballs, 841
    other, 843
    rumaki, 842
    stuffed wonton skins, 842–43
  hummus, 849–50
  kalamata olive and asiago crostini, 848
  lamb satay, 852–53
  pickled vegetable rolls, 851–52
  preparation guidelines, 831
  red potatoes with walnuts and gorgonzola, 853
  serving, 843–45
    buffet service, 844–45
    butler service, 844
  shrimp crumple, 856–57
  spanakopitta, 856
  spinach and artichoke dip, 850–51
  spring rolls, 857–58
  stuffed mushroom caps, 854
Horseradish, 200
  sauce, apple, 226
Hot and Cold Chocolate, 1076–77
Hotel pans, 87
Hot peppers, 580
Hot smoking, 808
Houten, Conrad van, 877
Hughes, Mike, 437
Hull (husk), 642
Hulling, 642
Humane Methods of Slaughter Act (1978), 267
Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), 29
Hummus, 849–50
Hungarian Goulash, 308
Hungarian sauce, 201
Hung game, 438
Hunter's sauce (chasseur sauce), 203
Hush Puppies (Deep-Fried Cornbread), 902
Husk (hull), 642
Hybrid menu, 61
Hydrogenation, 40
Hydrometer, baume, 871
Hygroscopic sweetener, 870
Hypertension, 52

Iceberg lettuce, 683
  coring, 688
Icebox cookies, 966–67
Ice carvings, 1110
Ice cream, 1052, 1053–54
  caramel, 1071
  chocolate, 1076–77
  honey, 1072
    sundried fruit compote with, 1072
  oatmeal stout, 976–77
Ice Cream Base, 1054
Iced tea, 144
Icing. *See* Frosting(s)
Imitation cheese, 161
Imitation chocolate, 879
Imitation sour cream, 150
Incidental food additives, 49
Indianische Henn, 382
Indian saffron (turmeric), 128, 129
Individually quick frozen (IQF), 742
Induction, 170
Infections, bacterial, 22–24
Infrared cooking, 169–70
Infused oils (flavored oils), 136, 191, 216, 217
Infusion, 141
Instant oats, 646
Instant (quick-cooking) rice, 643
Instant-read thermometer, 83, 274
Instant yeast, 909
Institutional cook, 13
Institutional Meat Purchasing Specifications (IMPS), 269
Insulated carriers, 94
Intentional food additives, 49
Interferents, 872
Intoxication, bacterial, 22–24
Irish coffee, 142
Irish Lamb Stew, 353–54
Irish Potato Famine (1846–1848), 581
Irish Soda Bread, 901
Irradiation of food, 269, 599, 741
Issuing standards, 71–72
Italian Buttercream, 1012–13
Italian buttercream, 1012–13
Italian Meringue, 964–65, **965**, 1041
Italian parsley, 123
Italian roast (espresso roast), 146
Italian sausage, artichokes stuffed with, 625–26
Ivory sauce, 201



Jalapeño
  coring, 580
  roast leg of lamb with, 346–47

Jam, 748, 749
  quince, 749
Jamaican pepper (allspice), 124, 129
Japanese (Pacific) oysters, 466
Jarlsberg cheese, 159
Jelly, 748, 749
  aspic, 799, 800
    glazing pâté slice with, 803
Jerk Foie Gras with Green Lentils in Balsamic Vinegar, 428–29
Jicama, 593
John Dory (St. Peter's fish), 460
Jonathan apples, 730
Judgment of professional chef, 15
Juice, cooked, as pie and tart filling, 952
Juicers, 90
Juicing fruits, 742–43
Julienne, 112, 114
Jumbo Cinnamon Buns, 935
Jungle, The (Sinclair), 267
Juniper, 126
Jus lié, 203

K

Kaiser roll, 916
Kalamata Olive and Asiago Crostini, 848
Kale, 576
Kasha, 646
Kasha Varnishkes with Wild Mushrooms, 671–72
Kebab(s)
  fruit, grilled, 753
  shish, 345
  veal, 327
Keemum tea, 144
Kentucky bourbon, sautéed chicken with, 420
Kentucky Hot Brown Sandwich, 779
Kerr, Graham, 55
Ketchup, 138
  mango, 774–75
Kettles, steam, 93
Kidneys
  lamb, broiled, 346
  veal, 318, 324
King (Chinook) salmon, 461
King crabs, 468
Kirsch Mousse, 1060
Kitchen brigade, *See* Brigade
Kitchen Culture: Fifty Years of Food Fads (Schremp), 1005
Kitchen design, food safety and sanitation and, 31
Kiwis, 735
  dried, 742
Kneading, 881
Knife/knives, 80–81, 104–17
  care of, 107
  controlling, 108
  cutting with, 109–16
    chopping, 111–12
    dicing, 112–15
    mincing, 116
    slicing, 109–10
    tourner, 116
  gripping, 107
  safe use of, 106
  sharpening, 107
Knowledge of professional chef, 13–14
Kohlrabi, 577
Kolschitzky, Franz George, 143
Kosher foods, 1099
Kosher salt, 131
Kumquats, 722

L

Labeling. *See* Package labeling
Lactobacillus bulgaricus, 151
Lacy Pecan Cookies, 993
Ladels, 83
Ladyfingers, 1032–33
Lag phase, 24
Lamb, 334–56
  blanquette of, 354–55
  butchering of, 339–41
  chops
    grilled with herb butter, 273
    grilled with smoked corn and wild mushroom polenta and pumpkinseed cream, 349–50
  cuts of, 336–39, 342
  Irish stew, 353–54
  kidneys, broiled, 346
  leg of, 338–39, 340
    carving, 278
    roasted with Jalapeño, 346–47
    stuffed, 347–48
  loin of, 338, 340–41
    sautéed, with stuffed rösti potatoes and cherry confit, 351
  noisettes of, 341
    with garlic sauce, 356
  rack of, 338, 339
    grilled with rosemary and spicy bell pepper jelly, 348
    with mustard and hazelnuts, 344–45
    roasted with mint and celeriac sauce, 343
    shish kebab, 345
  ribs, honey-mustard Denver, 350
  salad of, with bourbon vinaigrette, 714
  shanks, Chiappetti's, with lentils and country vegetables, 353
  skeletal structure of, 337
Lambert, Paula, 155
Lamb Navarin, 355–56
Lamb Patties with Mint, 345–46
Lamb Satay, 852–53
Lamb Sausage with Tricolor Bean Salad, 813–14
Lamb Shank with Persillade, 352
Lamps, heat, 94
Langoustine, 469
Lapsang Souchong tea, 144
Lard, 874
Larding meats, 271
L'Art de la cuisine au XIXe siecle (Carême), 6
Lasagna, 652
Lavender, 122
  salad of ahi tuna seared with, and pepper with whole-grain mustard sauce, 711–12
Lead consumption, 85
Leading (mother) sauces, 191, 196
Leaf lettuce, 683
Leaveners, 882
  for cakes, 997
Le Cuisinier français (Varenne), 193
Leek(s), 588
  ale-steamed mussels with tasso, chiles and, 517
  and cheddar soup, 255
  cleaning, 588
  sautéed, broiled black sea bass with herb butter and, 484–85
  steamed mussels with carrots and, 516
  vichyssoise (cold potato-leek soup), 245
Legumes, 589–91
Legumier (vegetable station chef), 11
Lemon, 722
  chickpeas with olive oil and, 610–11
  sole, 464
  steamed salmon with olive oil and, 492
  Swiss chard with pine nuts and, 628–29
  turkey scallopine with capers and, 426–27
Lemon Curd, 755
Lemon grass, 122
Lemon Grass Mayonnaise, 528
Lemon Grass Oil, 528–29
Lemon Meringue Pie, 974–75
Lemon Rémoulade Sauce, 772
Lemon sauce, white wine, sautéed veal scallops with, 280–81
Lemon Sorbet, 1073
Lemon Tea Bread, 903–4
Lemon Vinaigrette, 702–3
Lentil(s), 590
  beluga, 661–62
  Chiappetti's lamb shank with country vegetables and, 353
  green, in balsamic vinegar, jerk foie gras with, 428–29
  salad, quinoa, red rice and, with truffle vinaigrette, 660–62
Lettuce, 682–83
  baby, 683
  Boston, 683
  cutting, 687
  iceberg, 683, 688
  leaf, 683
  mâche (lamb's lettuce), 685
  Romaine, 629–30, 683, 687
  washing, 688–89
Liaison, 195
Light cream, 150
Light Rye Bread, 920
Light whipping cream, 150
Lime Chiffon, 1050–51
Limes, 722
Line cooks, 13
Linzer Tart, 973
Liqueurs, 880
Liquid measuring cup, 82
Liquor, 880
  chocolate (chocolate mass), 877
Listeria, 25
Littlenecks, 465
Liver
  calves', 317, 323
  chicken
    chopped, 801, 821
    sautéed, 427
  duck, canapé with candied rhubarb, sautéed, 849
  poultry, 382–83
Liver Terrine, 799, 817–18
Livre des menus, Le (Escoffier), 7
Lobster(s), 463, 468–69
  boiled, 497
  broiling, 479
  butter, 211
  grilled, with yellow hot chiles and chipotle pasta with chipotle beurre blanc, 529–30
  removing meat from shell, 480
  sautéing live, 479
  skillet of, and mushrooms provençale, 531–32
  and turbot, galantine of, 820–21
Lobster à l'Américaine, 530–31
Lobster Beurre Blanc, 225
Lobsterette, 469
Log phase, 24
Loin
  lamb, 338, 340–41
    sautéed with stuffed rösti potatoes and cherry confit, 351
  pork, 362–63
    boning, 364
    chops from, 366
  veal, 316, 327–28
Lola rosa baby lettuce, 683
London broil, marinated, 302
Longchamp, 1059–60
Long-grain rice, 643
Longhorn cheese, 159
Loomis, Susan Herrmann, 463
Lotte. *See* Monkfish
Low-Fat Blue Cheese Dressing, 707
Lowfat milk, 149
Low tea, 145
Lox, 461
Lozenge cut, 110
Lukins, Sheila, 763
Lumpfish caviar, 834–35
Lyonnaise Potatoes, 639–40

M

Macadamia Filling, 978
Macadamias, 133, 134
  praline torte, chocolate, 977–79
Macaroni, 651
Macaroni and Cheese, 675
Mace, 127
Mâche (lamb's lettuce), 685
McIntosh apples, 730
Mackerel, 460
Ma cuisine (Escoffier), 7
Madeira sauce, 203
Madeleines, 990
Mahi-mahi, 460
Maine lobsters, 468
Maître d'Hôtel butter, 211
Maître d'hotel (dining room manager), 12
Maître d'hotel français, Le (Carême), 6
Major minerals, 43, 44
Malassol, 835
Mallet, meat, 79
Maltaise sauce, 209
Malt vinegar, 137
Mandoline, 89, 117
Mango, 736
  duck prosciutto with fresh, 825–26
Mango Chutney, 757–58
Mango Ketchup, 774–75
Manicotti, 653
Manila clam, 465
Maple-Glazed Carrots, 623

Maple syrup, 870
Marble Sheet Cake with Fudge Frosting, 1028–29
Marbling, 264
Marchand de vin sauce, 203
Marco Polo, 651
Margarine, 153, 874
Marinated Loin of Venison Roasted with Mustard, 442–43
Marinated London Broil, 302
Marinating
  game, 270, 438–39
    red-wine marinade, 439
  meats, 270
  poultry, 390–91
Marjoram, 122, 129
Market menu, 61
Marmalade, 748, 749
  orange, sweet, 758
Marquis, 1055
  chocolate hazelnut, with frangelico sauce, 1075–76
Marzipan, 1020
Masa harina, 643
Mascarpone, 155–56
Matzo balls, chicken soup with, 251–52
Mayonnaise, 691–93, **692–93**
  herb, 780
  lemon grass, 528
  as sandwich spread, 763
Mayonnaise Chaud-Froid, 810
Mealy dough, 943–44
Mealy (starchy) potatoes, 636
Measurements, 63–65, 82, 115–16
  formats, 63–64
  systems of, 64–65
Measuring devices, 82–83
Meat, 262–91. *See also* Beef; Ham(s); Lamb; Pork; Veal
  aging, 268
  barding, 270
  braising, 284–87
  broiling, 271–73
  butterflying, 300
  dominant, 788–89
  doneness of, 272, 274
  in forcemeats, 788–89
  grading of, 266–67
  grilling, 271–73
  history of safety measures, 267
  inspection of, 266
  larding, 271
  marinating, 270
  muscle composition, 265–66
  nutritional values of, 265–66
  pan-frying, 281–82
  purchasing, 268–69
  roasting, 273–78
  sausage, 806
  sautéing, 278–81
  simmering, 283–84
  stewing, 287–90
  storing, 268–70
Meatballs, 841
  Swedish, 841
Meat Buyers Guide, The, 269
Meatloaf, home-style, 303–4
Meat mallet, 79
Mechanical convection, 169
Medallion, defined, 279
Media, cooking, 172
Medium-grain rice, 643
Medjool, 735
Medrich, Alice, 880
Melon(s), 728–29
  salsa, Thai, 227
  squab salad with, 425–26
Melon ball cutter, 79
Melting, 172
Menu(s), 60–62. *See also* Buffet presentation
  controlling food costs and, 71
  language of, 61–62
  meat purchase and, 268–69
  nutritional statements in, 62
  nutrition labeling for, 54
  planning and designing, 1098–99
  types of, 60–61
Meringue, 956, 963–65
  baked, 987
  common, 964
  hard, 963–64
  Italian, 964–65, 1041
  lemon, pie, 974–75
  soft, 963
  Swiss, 964
  troubleshooting chart for, 965
Meringue buttercream, 1012–13
Mesclun, 683
Mesclun Salad with Raspberry Vinaigrette, 697
Metabolism, defined, 41
Metals
  heat conduction and, 84–86
  toxic, 28
Metric system, 64–65
Mexican fiesta, buffet presentation for, 1104
Mice, management of, 32
Microorganisms, 21
Microwave cooking, 170
  vegetables, 614–15
Microwave ovens, 91
Mignonette, 279
Mignonette Sauce, 222
Milanaise sauce, 205
Milk, 148–53
  butter. *See* Butter(s)
  concentrated, 149–50
  cream, 150–51
  cultured dairy products, 151–52
  evaporated, 149–50
  ewe's, 148
  foamed, 142
  goat's, 148
  lowfat, 149
  -mint flan with orange water, 1062–63
  processing techniques, 148–49
  skim (nonfat), 149
  steamed, 142
  sweetened condensed, 150
  water buffalo's, 148
Milk chocolate, 878
Milkfat removal, 149
Mille-Feuille with Honey Mousseline, 1069–71
Miller, Mark, 15
Mincing with knife, 116
Minerals, 39, 43
Mineral water, 41
Minestrone, 254
Minimax lifestyle, 55
Mint, 122
  lamb patties with, 345–46
  roast rack of lamb with celeriac sauce and, 343–44
Mint and Celeriac Sauce, 344
Mint-Milk Flan with Orange Water, 1062–63
Minute Steak Dijonaise, 304–5
Mirepoix, 180, 181
  caramelizing of, 185–86
Mixed Bean Salad, 626
Mixers, electric, 90
Modern Housewife, The (Soyer), 96
Moisteners, for cakes, 997
Moist-heat cooking methods, 172, 175–76
Moisture, bacterial growth and, 24
Molasses, 868
  as sweetener, 870
  vinaigrette, soy, 505
Molding foods, 1086–87
Molds, 27, 87
  paté, 798
Mollusks, 456, 465–67
  bivalves, 456, 465–67
  cephalopods, 456, 467
  univalves, 456, 465
Monkfish, 460, 463
  baked, with bacon, 512–13
Monounsaturated fats, 40
Montague, Sir John, 767
Monte Cristo Sandwich, 766, 779
Monter au beurre, 196
Monterey Jack cheese, 159–60
Montezuma, 877
Montmorency cherries, 733
Montpelier butter, 211
Morel, 586
  roasted veal chop with, and green bean ragout, 325
  sautéed salmon with asparagus and, 503
Morello cherries, 733
Mornay sauce, 198
Morning Glory Muffins, 899–900
Mortadella, 807
Mother (leading) sauces, 191, 196
Mousse, 800, 1048, 1051–52
  chocolate, classic, 1052
  Kirsch, 1060
  raspberry, 1069
  roasted red pepper, 819
  salmon, 819–20
Mousseline, 209, 1041
  buttercream, 1013–14
  honey, 1070–71
  of shrimp, paupiettes of sole with, 513–14
Mousseline Forcemeats, 791, 795–96
Mozzarella, 155, 156
  tomato and asparagus salad with fresh, 700–701
Muffin method of mixing, 892–93
Muffins
  berry, 899
  blueberry, 892–93
  bran, 900
  corn, 902
    blue, 902–3
  English muffin loaves, 925–26
  morning glory, 899–900
  sour cream, 894
Muffuletta, 763
Multigrain Date Bread, 928
Mushroom(s), 586, 587
  caps, stuffed, 854
  duxelles, 427–28, 619
  fennel and, à la Grecque, 627–28
  fluting, 587
  morel, 586
    roasted veal chop with, and green bean ragout, 325
    sautéed salmon with asparagus and, 503
  porcini, 586
    rosemary-roasted veal chops with, 326–27
  portabella, 586
    grilled, 619
    grilled BBQ sandwich of, on focaccia, 776
    roasted, with summer squash and spicy vegetable broth, 620–21
  provençale, skillet of lobster and, 531–32
  salad, warm, with grilled eggplant and white truffles, 621–22
  sauce, 200, 203
  shiitake, 586
    and rabbit skewers, 840–41
    stir-fried asparagus with, 607
  wild
    duxelles, sautéed foie gras on, with toasted brioche, 427–28
    kasha varnishkes with, 671–72
    polenta, grilled lamb chops with smoked corn and pumpkinseed cream and, 349–50
    soup, with foie gras, 250–51
    and veal soup, 251
Mushroom Tarts with Garlic Cream, 219
Mussels, 466
  ale-steamed, with tasso, chiles and leeks, 517
  cleaning and debearding, 482
  steamed, with leeks and carrots, 516
Mustard
  marinated loin of venison roasted with, 442–43
  new potato salad with dill and, 715
  prepared, 138
  rack of lamb with hazelnuts and, 344–45
  sauce, salad of ahi tuna seared with lavender and pepper with whole-grain, 711–12
Mustard greens, 585
Mustard seeds, 127
Muth, James J., 433

N

Nage, 190, 215
Nantua sauce, 198
Napa, 577
Napoleon of Shrimp and Scallops, 519–21
Nasturtiums, 685
National Association of Meat Purveyors (NAMP), 269
National cuisine, 10
National Restaurant Association, 32
Native Seeds/SEARCH, 597
Natural casings, 806
Natural convection, 169
Natural water, 41
Navarin, 288
  lamb, 355–56
Navel oranges, 723
Neapolitan, 1055
Necks, poultry, 382–83
Nectar, 743
Nectarines, 733–34
Negative (decline) growth phase, 24
Nero, Emperor, 1053
Nestlé, Henri, 877
New Book of Cookery, A (Farmer), 65

New England Boiled Dinner, 284
New England Style Clam Chowder, 244
New Orleans-Style Muffaletta Sandwich, 780–81
New potatoes, 634
New Potato Salad with Mustard and Dill, 715
Newton apples, 730
New York steak, 299
New York-style cheesecake, 1064
Niacin (vitamin B_3), 42
Nibs, 877
Nigiri Zushi, 837–38
Noisette, 279
  beurre, 209–10, 609
Noisettes of Lamb with Garlic Sauce, 356
Nonfat (skim) milk, 149
Nonpareils, 124
Nonstick coatings, 86
Nonwheat flours, 866
Noodles. *See also* Pasta
  Asian, 652, 653
    chilled Chinese noodle salad, 677
  bean starch, 654
  buckwheat, 654
  Chinese, chilled salad, 677
  rice, 654
  Thai, salad, 504–5
  wheat, 653–54
Nopal Cactus Salsa, 502–3
Nopales, 596
Norimaki Zushi, 838–39
Normandy sauce, 199
Norwalk virus, 26
Nougat, 1020
Nouvelle cuisine, 7–8
Nova, 461
NSF International (NSF), 78
Nutmeg, 127, 129
Nut oils, 136
Nutrasweet® (aspartame), 48
Nutrition, 36–57
  chef and, 54–56
  consumer concerns about, 54, 55
  essential nutrients, 38–43
    carbohydrates, 39–40
    defined, 38
    fats, 39, 40
    minerals, 39, 43
    proteins, 39, 40–41
    vitamins, 39, 41–42
    water, 39, 41
  food service operations and, 9–10
  guidelines for, 43–47
    Food Guide Pyramid, 45–47, 54
    health organization recommendations, 43–45
    Recommended Dietary Allowances (RDAs), 45
  ingredient substitutes and alternatives, 47–48
  package labeling, 49–54
    nutritional information, 53
    nutrition labeling for restaurant menus, 54, 62
  product claims, 50–53
  product identification, 49–50
Nuts, 132–35

O

Oat bran, 646
Oatmeal, 646
  cookies, spiced, 992
Oatmeal Stout Ice Cream, 976–77
Oats, 646
Oblique cuts, 110
Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA), 33–34
Ocean pout, 463
Octopus, 467
Offal, 299
Oil(s), 135–37, 874
  flavored, 136, 191, 216, 217
  herb, 228
  lemon grass, 528–29
  olive, 136
    chickpeas with lemon and, 610–11
    shrimp with garlic and, 521–22
    steamed salmon with lemon and, 492
  shallot curry, 216
  vegetable, 40
  in vinaigrette dressings, 690
Okra, 591
Old Bay seasoning, 139
Olestra, 48
Olive(s), 136
  kalamata, asiago crostini and, 848
  Spanish, sautéed halibut with three-color peppers and, 488
Olive oil. *See under* Oil(s)
Olympias, 466
Omelet
  folded, 543
  French-style, 544
  shrimp and avocado, 543–44
Onion brûlée, 236
Onion piquet, 130–31
Onion rings, beer-battered, 567
Onions, 587–88
  chicken sauté with garlic, basil and, 402–4
  dicing, 115
  pearl, glazed, 623
  sautéed calves' liver with, 329
Onion soup, French, 252–53
Ono (wahoo), 463
Oolong tea, 144
Opal basil, 120
Orange(s), 722–23
  cranberry sauce, fresh, 757
  duck à l'orange, 424
  marmalade, 749
    sweet, 758
  steamed scallops with ginger, basil and, 519
  sugared zest and sauce, 432
Orange Chiffon Cake, 1005–6
Orange Glaze, 1006
Orange juice, shrimp poached in ginger, sauterne and, 522
Orange roughy, 461
Ordering techniques, 71
Oregano, 122
Organic farming, 50
Organizations, professional, 1113–14
Organ meats, 299, 317–18
Original Toll House® Cookies, 969
Orzo, 653
Osetra caviar, 834
OSHA, 33–34
Osso Buco, 331
Osteoporosis, 52
Ostrich, 382
  egg, 536
  spiced tenderloin of, 426
Ounces, converting grams to, 66
Outhier, Louis, 8
Ovens, 91–92
Oven spring, 917
Over-easy, 545
Over-hard, 545
Overhead broiler, 92
Over-medium, 545
Overrun, 1053
Ovo-lacto-vegetarian, 574
Oyster(s), 466
  fried, with herbed crème fraîche, 518
  opening, 481
  sauce, 139
Oyster knives, 81
Oyster mushroom, 586
Oysters Rockefeller, 517–18

P

Pacific clams, 465
Pacific cod, 459
Pacific oysters, 466
Package labeling, 49–54
  nutritional information, 53
  nutrition labeling for restaurant menus, 54, 62
  of organically grown foods, 50
  product claims, 50–53
  product identification, 49–50
Packaging, vacuum, 268
Paddleford, Clementine, 763
Paella, 515
Paillard, 279
Pain de Pyrenees, 157
Palmiers, 986
Panadas, 789
Pancakes, 895–96
  buttermilk, 896
  potato, 665
Pancetta, 809
Pan Coating, 1006, 1006–7
Pan-dressed fish, 472
Pan-Fried Chicken with Pan Gravy, 404–5
Pan-Fried Trout with Toasted Garlic, 506–7
Pan-frying, 174
  eggs, 545–46
  fish, 489–90
  meat, 281–82
  potatoes, 639–40
  poultry, 403–5
  shellfish, 489–90
  vegetables, 607
Pan gravy, 191, 212, 217
Pans, 86
  cake, 1007
  hotel, 87
  paté, 798
Pan-Seared Sea Bass with Beet Vinaigrette, 511–12
Pansies, 685
Pantothenic acid, 42
Pantry chef (*garde-manger*), 11, 678
Papain, 736
Papaya, 736–37
  pineapple papaya salsa, 751–52
  teriyaki salmon with, 505
Paprika, 125
Parasites, 24–26
Parboiling, vegetables, 608
Parfait, 1055
Paring knife, 81
Paris-Brest, 961
Parisienne potatoes, 640
Parker house rolls, 914
Parma ham. *See* Prosciutto
Parmentier, Antoine-Augustin, 581
Parmigiano-Reggiano (parmesan), 160
Parsley, 123
  chopping, 111
Parsnip Purée, 616
Parsnips, 593
Par stock, 71
Partridge, 435
  egg, 536
Passion fruits (*granadillas*), 737
  purée, tropical fruit with, 750
Pasta, 651–59
  accompaniments to, 658–59
  Asian noodles, 652, 653
    chilled Chinese noodle salad, 677
  boiling, 658
  cavatelli, braised rabbit with, 448–49
  chipotle, 529–30
  doneness of, 657
  extruded, 651
  fresh tomato sauce for, 222
  Italian-style, 652–53
    ribbons, 652
    shapes of, 653
    tubes, 653
  macaroni, 651
    and cheese, 675
  nutritional values of, 654, 655
  pepe, with shrimp, tomato and tarragon, 673–74
  preparing fresh, 654–57
    basic dough, 655
    filling, 656–57
    ravioli, 657
    rolling and cutting, 656
  purchasing, 654
  storing, 654
  wheat noodles, 653–54
Pasta station, 1102
Paste. *See also* Sauce(s)
  curry, 500
  éclair, 956, 961–63
Pasteur, Louis, 911
Pasteurization, 148, 538
Pasteurized processed cheese, 161
Pastillage, 1020
Pastry(ies), 943, 956–65
  cannoli alla Siciliana, 972–73
  doughs, 942–45
    basic pie, 944
    flaky and mealy, 943–44
    rolling and shaping for crusts and tart shells, 946–48
    sweet, 944–45
  éclair paste, 956, 961–63
    basic, 962–63
  gâteau St. Honoré, 970–72
  linzer tart, 973
  meringue, 956, 963–65
    baked, 987
    common, 964
    hard, 963–64
    Italian, 964–65, 1041
    lemon, pie, 974–75
    soft, 963
    Swiss, 964
    troubleshooting chart for, 965
  palmiers, 986
  puff, 219, 956–61
    preparing, 957–58
    quick (blitz), 957, 983–84
    shaping, 959–61

Pastry chef (*patissier*), 11, 13
Pastry Cream, 971–72, 1040, 1041, **1042**, 1042–43
Pastry shells, filled, 840
Pâté, 797–98, 801–3
  molds, 87
  rabbit, en croûte, 821–22
Pâté à choux. *See* Éclairs: paste
Pâté à Cigarette Batter, 1075
Pâté Dough, 801–2
Pâte feuilletée. See **Puff Pastry**
Pâtés en croûte, 797, 801–3
Pâté Spice, 789–90
Pathogenic bacteria, 22
Pâtisserie, advanced, 1020
Patissier (pastry chef), 11, 13
Patissier royal parisian, le (Carême), 6
Paupiette, 513
Paupiettes of Sole with Mousseline of Shrimp, 513–14
Paysanne, 113, 114
Peaches, 733–34
  fresh, and yogurt, soup, 259
Peanuts, 134
Peanut Sauce, 226
Pear(s), 731–32
  dried, 742
  galette, smoked duck and foie gras galantine on a, 812–13
  poached, 980
  prickly, 725–26
  seckel, 731
    grilled, salad with sherry bacon vinaigrette, 710–11
Pear Financier, 979–81
Pearling, 642
Pearl onions, 587
  glazed, 623
Pearl tapioca, 875
Pears Poached in Red Wine, 747
Peas, 590
  fresh shelling, 591
  snow, 591
    chicken and, in black bean sauce, 417
    stir-fried, with dried shrimp, 622
Pecan(s), 134
  butter, brussels sprouts in, 609
  cookies, lacy, 993
Pecan Pie with Oatmeal Stout Ice Cream and Ginger Caramel Sauce, 976–77
Pecan Sticky Buns, 936
Pecorino Romano cheese, 160
Pectin, 732
Peeler, vegetable, 79
Pen (cuttlebone), 467
Penne, 653
Pepe Pasta with Shrimp, Tomato and Tarragon, 673–74
Pepper(s), 579–80
  bell, 125, 348
  capsicum, 125
  cayenne, 125
  hot, 580. *See also* Chile(s)
  red
    coulis, chilled roasted, 260
    coulis, crab meat flan with chives and, 527
    mousse, roasted, 819
  roasted
    coriander-crusted yellowfin tuna with braised white beans and, 509–10
    procedure for, 580
    wilted spinach salad with, 709
  salad of ahi tuna seared with lavender and, with whole-grain mustard sauce, 711–12
  sansho, steamed black bass with, 512
  sweet, 579
  three-color, sautéed halibut with Spanish olives and, 488
Peppercorns, 125, 127
Peppermint, 122
Pepperoni, 807
Pepper Steak, 306
Perforated spoons, 79
Perfringens, 25
Perfumed shrimp consommé, 253
Périgourdine, 204
Périgueux sauce, 204
Persillade, lamb shank with, 352
Persimmon Filling, 982
Persimmons, 725
  dried, 742
Persimmon Shortcake Tart, 982–83
Personal cleanliness, 29–30
Peru, 382
Pesticides, 50
Pest management, 31–32
Pesto Sauce, 224
Peter, Daniel, 877
Petrale sole, 463
pH, 24, 25
Pheasant, 435
  faisan à la sainte-alliance, 436
  roast, with cognac and apples, 449–50
  stuffed breast of, 450
Physical contaminants, 28
Pickapeppa sauce, 139
Pickled Vegetable Rolls, 851–52
Pickles, 138
Pickling spice, 128
Pico de Gallo (tomato salsa), 214
Pie(s), 942–56
  apple-cranberry, 951–52
  assembling, 955–56
  blackberry cobbler, 975–76
  cherry, 953–54
  chiffon, chocolate, 1068–69
  cream, basic, 950
  crusts, 943–49
    baking, 948–49
    basic pie dough, 944
    crumb, 949
    flaky and mealy doughs, 943–44
    shaping, 946–48
    sweet dough, 944–45
  fillings, 949–55
    blueberry pie, 952–53
    chiffon, 949, 955
    cooked juice, 952
    cream, 949–50
    custard, 949, 954–55
    fruit, 949, 950–52
    fruit, baked, 952–54
    prepared or canned, 954
  lemon meringue, 974–75
  pecan, with oatmeal stout ice cream and ginger caramel sauce, 976–77
  pumpkin, 954–55
  storing, 956
  strawberry, fresh, 975
  troubleshooting chart for, 956
Pigeon, 381
  classes of, 381
  squab, 381
    grilled, with basil butter, 393–94
    salad, with melon, 425–26
Pilaf
  bulgur, 650–51
  rice
    brown, with pine nuts, 669–70
    classic, 669
Pilaf method, 650–51
Pineapple, 737–38, 740
  papaya salsa, teriyaki salmon with, 505
Pineapple Papaya Salsa, 751–52
Pine nuts, 134
  brown rice pilaf with, 669–70
  Swiss chard with lemon and, 628–29
Pink peppercorns, 127
Pinto beans, 590
Piping techniques, 1022–25
Pippin apples, 730
Piquant sauce, 204
Pirate lettuce, 683
Pistachio Citrus Cheesecake, 1063–64
Pistachios, 134
Pizza, eggplant and sun-dried tomato, 785
Pizza Dough, 930
Plain (drop) dumplings, 654
Plain spoons, 79
Plancha, 763
Plantains (cooking bananas), 734
Plastic containers, 85
Plate presentation, 1082–95
  food, 1084–87
    cutting, 1085–86
    molding, 1086–87
    proper preparation, 1085
  plate, 1087–94
    arranging foods on, 1089–90
    choosing, 1088–89
    dusting, 1090–91
    garnishing, 1091–93
    sauce decoration of, 1093–94
Platters, 1088
Plums, 734
Poached Breast of Chicken with Tarragon Sauce, 406–7
Poached Eggs, 548
Poached Pears, 980
Poaching, 175, 176
  eggs, 547–48
  fish, 493–96
    shallow, 494, 495
    submersion, 493–94
  of poultry, 405–7
  shellfish, 493
Po' boy sandwich, 763
  softshell crab, 526–27
Pods, 589–91
Point, Fernand, 7–8
Poissonier (fish station chef), 11
Poivrade sauce, 193, 204
Polenta, 667
  creamy, with wild mushrooms, 667–68
  cutting, 1086
Pollock, 459
Polytetrafluoroethylene (Teflon), 86
Polyunsaturated fats, 40
Pomegranates, 725
Pomes, 730–32
Pom pom blanc, 586
Ponzu sauce, whole sizzling catfish with ginger and, 571
Poppy seeds, 127
Porcini mushroom, 586
  rosemary-roasted veal chops with, 326–27
Pork, 358–74. *See also* Ham(s)
  butchering of, 364–67
    chops, 366
    half-hitch method for tying boneless roast, 365
    loin, 364
    tenderloin, 367
  cassoulet, 373–74
  in charcuterie, 808–9
  chops, stuffed, 372
  choucroute, 373
  cuts of, 360–63
    belly, 362
    Boston butt, 360–62
    fresh ham, 363
    loin, 362–63
    shoulder, 360
    using, 367
  marinating, 270
  medallions, sautéed with red pepper and citrus, 371–72
  ribs, Carolina barbecued, 368
  roast, savory fruit for, 746
  as sandwich filling, 764
  shipment of, 363
  spareribs, Chinese barbecued, 368
  tenderloin, beer-marinated, 371
Pork Loin with Prunes, 369–70
Portabella mushrooms, 586
  grilled, 619
  grilled BBQ sandwich of, on focaccia, 776
  roasted, with summer squash and spicy vegetable broth, 620–21
Port du Salut, 158
Portion control (P.C.), 269
Portioning devices, 82–83
Portions, standardized, 72
Portion scale, 82
Portion scoops, 83
Portion size conversion, 66, 67–68
Port sauce, 203
Posole (hominy; samp), 643
Potager (soup station chef), 11
Potato(es), 634–41
  anna, 640
  baking, 637–39
  boiling, 640–41
  boulangère, 640
  candied sweet, 663–64
  château, 640
  cottage fries, 666
  deep-frying, 640
  doneness of, 637
  duchesse, 640, 641
  escalloped, 1086
  french fries, 666
  fresh water shrimp wrapped in, 524–25
  grading of, 636
  gratin, 1086
  gratin dauphinoise, 638–39
  introduction to Europe, 581
  Lyonnaise, 639–40
  mealy (starchy), 636
  new, 634
  nutritional values of, 635
  pan-frying, 639–40
  Parisienne, 640
  purchasing, 636
  purple, 634
  red, 634

with walnuts and gorgonzola, 853
roasting, 637–39
rösti. *See* **Rösti Potatoes**
russet, 634–35
salad
grilled, 662–63
with mustard and dill, new, 715
sautéing, 639–40
shoestring, 666
spicy sweet, and chestnut gratin, 664
steak fries, 666
storing, 636–37
sweet, 635
vichyssoise (cold potato-leek soup), 245
waxy, 636
white, 635
yams, 635
Potato and Celeriac Purée, 343–44
Potato Cheddar Cheese Bread, 926
Potato Galette, 452
Potato-Ginger Purée, 666–67
Potato Gnocchi, 677–78
Potato Pancakes, 665
Potato Salad, 715–16
Potentially hazardous foods, 22
Pot roast, aunt Ruthie's, 287
Pots, 86
Roman, 85
Poulette, 200
Poultry, 376–429. *See also* Chicken; Duck; Goose; Guinea; Pigeon; Turkey; Ratites
broiling, 392–94
butchering of, 385–90
boneless breast, 388
boneless leg, 390
chicken leg, 390
cutting into pieces, 386–87
halving, 385–86
suprême or airline breast, 388–90
carving roasted, 399–400
combination cooking of, 407–10
foie gras, 383
gallantine, 804–5
gizzards of, 382–83
grading of, 384
grilling, 392–94
hearts of, 382–83
identifying, 379–83
inspection of, 384
livers of, 382–83
marinating, 390–91
muscle composition of, 378–79
necks of, 382–383
nutritional values of, 383
pan-frying, 403–5
poaching, 405–7
purchasing, 384
roasting, 397–400
safety measures for, 384
as sandwich filling, 764
sautéing, 400–403
simmering, 405–7
storing, 384–85
stuffing, 396–97
trussing, 394–96
Poultry Products Inspection Act (1957), 384
Poundcake, classic, 999
Powdered sugar, 869
Powdered Sugar Glaze, 935
Prawn, 469
grilled brochette, with butternut squash risotto, 522–24
Prawn Sauce, 523–24
Prawn Stock, 524
Prepared mustard, 138
Presentation, 1081, 1084. *See also* Buffet presentation; Plate presentation
Preservation techniques, 8–9
Preserve, 748
Pressed caviar, 834
Pressed cookies, 967
Pressure steamers, 93
Prickly pears (cactus pears; barbary figs), 725–26
Pride of professional chef, 16
Primal cuts, 264. *See also specific meats*
Prime rib of beef au jus, roast, 275–76
Prix fixe, 61
Processed cheese food, 161
Processing equipment, 88–90
Product claims, on labels, 50–53
Product identification, on labels, 49–50
Product labeling. *See* Package labeling
Professional cooking, defined, 4
Professionalism, 1–16
historical background, 4–8
in modern food service operations, 8–13
classic kitchen brigade, 10–11
consumers, 10
modern kitchen brigade, 12–13
new foods, 9
new technologies, 8–9
nutrition and diet concerns, 9–10
professional chef, 13–16
dedication of, 15
judgment of, 15
knowledge of, 13–14
pride of, 16
skill of, 14
taste of, 14–15
Professional organizations, 1113–14
Profiteroles, 833–34, 961
Proofing, 913, 916–17
Prosciutto, 809
duck, with fresh mango, 825–26
grilled shrimp with basil and, 859
Protein(s), 39, 40–41
coagulation of, 171
in flours, 866
Provolone cheese, 160
Prunes, 734
pork loin with, 369–70
Pudding
bread, 1044, 1046
with bourbon sauce, 1066
smoked corn, achiote-basted rack of venison with, 440–42
Puff Pastry, 219, 956–61, **958–59**
preparing, 957–58
quick (blitz), 957, 985–86
shaping, 959–61
bouchées, 959–60
feuilletées, 959, 960–61
vol-au-vents, 959–60
Pulled sugar, 1020
Pumpkin, 586
Pumpkin Pie, 954–55
Pumpkinseed Cream, 350
grilled lamb chops with smoked corn and wild mushroom polenta and, 349–50
Punching down, 913
Purchasing techniques, 71
Purée
chipotle, southwestern grilled cheese sandwich with avocado and, 777
cilantro, 510, 852
fruit. *See* Coulis
parsnip, 616
passion fruit, tropical fruit with, 750
potato and celeriac, 343–44
potato-ginger, 666–67
soups, 232, 233, 240–41
turnip, 628
vegetable, as sandwich spread, 763
Purée of Split Pea Soup, 241
Purified water, 41
Purple potatoes, 634
Putrefactives, 21

Q

Quahogs, 465
Quail, 435–36
egg, 536
grilled, with potato galette, artichoke wedges and balsamic raspberries, 451–52
Quality grades, 266
Quatre-épices, 128
Quenelles, 797
Quiche, 541–42
Quiche Dough, 974
Quiche Lorraine, 541–42
Quick breads, 886–904
buttermilk pancakes, 896
country biscuits, 891
cream scones, 897
griddlecakes, 895–96
hush puppies (deep-fried cornbread), 902
Irish soda bread, 901
leavening agents for, 888–89
lemon tea bread, 903–4
mixing methods, 889–95
biscuit method, 889–91
creaming method, 893–95
muffin method, 892–93
muffins
berry, 899
blueberry, 892–93
blue corn, 902–3
bran, 900
corn, 902
English, loaves, 925–26
morning glory, 899–900
sour cream, 894
shortcakes, 898
fresh strawberry, 898–99
sour cream coffeecake, 904
streusel topping, 895
troubleshooting chart for, 896
zucchini bread, 901
Quick-cooking (instant) rice, 643
Quick-cooking oats, 646
Quick Puff Pastry, 957, **983–84**
Quick-rise dry yeast, 909
Quince, 752
Quince Jam, 749
Quinoa, Red Rice and Lentil Salad with Truffle Vinaigrette, 660–62

R

Rabbit, 433–34, 435
braised, with cavatelli pasta, 448–49
butchering, 434
grilled loin of, with spinach, fennel and white beans, 446–48
Rabbit and Shiitake Skewers, 840–41
Rabbit Pâté en Croûte, 821–22
Rabbit Sauce, 448
Rack of lamb, 338, 339
Rack of Lamb with Mustard and Hazelnuts, 344–45
Radiation, 169–70
of food, 269, 599, 741
Radicchio, 684
risotto with, 650
Radishes, 593–94
Raft, 236
Ragout, 288
Ragus, 659
Rainier cherries, 732
Raisins, 727
golden, 742
Rancidity, 135
Rape. *See* Monkfish
Raspberry(ies), 721
balsamic, 452
salad, 1073–74
trio of sorbets with, 1073–75
vanilla layer cake with white chocolate buttercream, 1026–27
vinegars, 137
Raspberry Mousse, 1069
Raspberry Sauce, 1056
Raspberry Syrup, 1027
Raspberry Vinaigrette, 703
fat-free, 703
mesclun salad with, 696
Ratatouille, 624
Ratatouille Crusted Salmon, 502
Ratites, 382
Rats, management of, 32
Ravioli
goat-cheese, in herbed cream sauce, 672–73
preparing, 657
Raw sugar, 868
Reach-in refrigerators, 93
Reamers, 90
Receiving standards, 71
Recipe(s), 62–70
conversions for, 66–68
cost calculation, 69–70
defined, 62
measurements, 63–65
formats, 63–64
systems of, 64–65
standardized, 62–63
Recommended Dietary Allowances (RDAs), 45
Recovery time, 561
Red cabbages, 576
Red d'Anjou pears, 731
Red Delicious apples, 730
Red Flame grapes, 727
Red kidney beans, 590
Red Mountain trout, 462
Red onion, 587
Red Onion Vinaigrette, 704
Red papayas, 737
Red pepper
butter, 212
mousse, roasted, 819

Red pepper (*cont.*)
sautéed pork medallions with citrus and, 371–72
Red Pepper Coulis, 213
chilled roasted, 260
crab meat flan with chives and, 527
Red potatoes, 634
Red Potatoes with Walnuts and Gorgonzola, 853
Red radishes, 593
Red Rice, 661
Red sails lettuce, 683
Red seedless watermelons, 729
Red snapper, 461
baked, with star fruit chutney, 486
burger, grilled, with mango ketchup, 774
Red Snapper en Papillote, 492–93
Red Snapper Veracruz, 506
Reduction, 196
Red-Wine Game Marinade, 439
Red wine jus, venison, 442
Red-Wine Thyme Sauce, 220
Refined (table) sugar, 868
Reform Club, 96–97
Refreshing vegetables, 608
Refrigerators, 93
Regional cuisine, 10
Regular granulated sugar, 868, 869
Relishes, 138, 191, 214, 217
as sauce, 191
Remouillage, 185
Rendering, 241
Reptiles, 435
Residual chemicals, 27–28
Restaurants, history of, 4–5
Retrogradation of starch, 883
Reuben Sandwich, 776–77
Rhea, 382
Rhubarb, 726
braised, 755–56
candied, sautéed duck liver canapé with, 849
Rib
primal beef, 296
veal, 316
Riboflavin (vitamin B_2), 42
Rice, 643–45
arborio, 644
basic simmered, 648
basmati, 644
brown, 643, 644
converted, 643
cooking guidelines, 644–45
instant (quick-cooking), 643
long-grain, 643
medium-grain, 643
pilaf
brown, with pine nuts, 669–70
classic, 669
red, quinoa, and lentil salad with truffle vinaigrette, 660–62
risotto Milanese, 649–50
saffron, 670
vinegar, 137
white, 643
wild, 644
cranberry stuffing and, 670–71
roast Cornish game hen with stuffing of, 413
wild pecan, 644
Rice noodles, 654
Rich Chicken Broth, 252
Ricotta cheese, 156
chicken stuffed with spinach and, in saffron sauce, 418–19
Rigatoni, 653
Rigid whisks, 79
Rillettes, 801
Rind, on cheeses, 155
Ripe, defined, 720
Risers, 1105
Risotto
barley, 441–42
butternut squash, 523
with Four Cheeses (*al Quattro Formaggi*), 650
with Radicchio (*al Radicchio*), 650
with Smoked Salmon (*al Salmone Affumicato*), 650
Risotto Cakes, 507–8
Risotto method, 648–50
Risotto Milanese, 649–50
Roast Beef and Blue Cheese Sandwich, 780
Roast Cornish Game Hen with Wild Rice Stuffing, 413
Roast Duck with Rösti Potatoes, 411–13
Roasted Corn Chowder, 257
Roasted Garlic Sauce, 220
Roasted Portabella Mushroom with Summer Squash and Spicy Vegetable Broth, 620–21
Roasted Red Pepper Mousse, 819
Roasted Veal Chop with Morel and Green Bean Ragout, 325
Roast Goose with Cabbage and Apples, 424–25
Roasting, 174
fish, 485–86
meat, 273–78
potatoes, 637–39
poultry, 397–400
shellfish, 485–86
vegetables, 605
vitamin retention and, 43
Roast Leg of Lamb with Jalapeño, 346–47
Roast Pheasant with Cognac and Apples, 449–50
Roast Prime Rib of Beef Au Jus, 275–76
Roast Rack of Lamb with Mint and Celeriac Sauce, 343–44
Roast station chef (*rotisseur*), 11
Roast Turkey with Chestnut Dressing and Giblet Gravy, 397–98
Roast Veal Loin, 327–28
Roberts, Chef Michael, 132
Robert sauce, 193, 204
Robusta coffee beans, 139
Rock Cornish game hen, 379
Rock sea bass. *See* Black sea bass
Rodents, management of, 32
Rod-shaped bacteria, 21
Roll cut, 110
Rolled cookies, 967
Rolled-in doughs, 911, 920–23
croissants, 921–23
Rolls
soft yeast dinner, 918–19
sundried tomato, 926–27
Romaine lettuce, 683
braised, 629–30
cutting, 687
Roman flatbread (focaccia), 929–30
Roman-Style Free-Range Chicken, 419
Rome apples, 730
Rondeau, 86
Rondelles, 109
Roots, 591–94
Roquefort, 158
dressing, 706–7
Roquefort Dressing, 706–7
Rosemary, 123, 129
grilled rack of lamb with spicy bell pepper jelly and, 348
Rosemary-Roasted Veal Chops with Porcini Mushrooms, 326–27
Rösti Potatoes, 640, **665–66**
roast duck with, 411–13
sautéed lamb loin with cherry confit and, 351
Rotelle, 653
Rotisserie, 92
Rotisseur (roast station chef), 11
Round fish, 456, 458–63
bone structure of, 457
cutting steaks from salmon-sized, 477
filleting, 475
Rounding, 913
Round mesh strainer, 87
Round of beef, 298
Rounds, 109
Roundsman, 11
Roux, 192–94
guidelines for using, 194
incorporating into a liquid, 194
preparing, 192–94
types of, 192
Royal Icing, 1011, 1016–17, **1017**
Rozin, Elisabeth, 130
Rubber spatulas, 79
Ruby grapefruits, 722
Rumaki, 842
date and chorizo, 842
Russet potatoes, 634–35
Russian service, 12
Rutabagas, 594
Rye bread, light, 920

S

S.A.F.E, 32
Sabayon, 1040, 1043–44
champagne, 1044
Saccharin, 48
Sacher Torte, 1030–31
Sachet, 131
Safety. *See* Food safety and sanitation
Safety equipment, 94–95
Saffron, 128, 129
sauce, chicken stuffed with spinach and ricotta cheese in, 418–19
Saffron Rice, 670
Sage, 123, 129
St. Peter's fish (John Dory), 460
Salad(s), 680–89
arugula for, 684
bound, 695, 698–99
as sandwich filling, 764
bread, 717
calamari, spicy, 525–26
chicken, Asian, 714–15
chicory, 684
chilled Chinese noodle, 677
chutney chicken, 699
cobb, 712–13
country-style tomato and cucumber, 710
couscous, 716–17
creamy coleslaw, 716
cucumber-yogurt, 630
dandelion for, 684
edible flowers for, 685
fruit, 695, 701
garlic croutons for, 708
Greek, 713
green, 695–98
composed, 695, 697–98
tossed, 695–96
grilled potato, 662–63
grilled seckel pear, with sherry bacon vinaigrette, 710–11
herbs for, 685–86
lettuce, 682–83
mâche (lamb's lettuce), 685
matching salad dressings and, 695
mesclun, with raspberry vinaigrette, 696
mixed bean, 626
nutritional values of, 686
potato, 715–16
with mustard and dill, new, 715
preparing, 687–89
purchasing greens, 686
raspberry, trio of sorbets with, 1073–75
seafood, 702–3
sorrel for, 685
spinach, 685, 688
wilted, with roasted peppers, 709
sprouts for, 685
squab, with melon, 425–26
storing, 686–87
tabouli (bulgur wheat), 671
Thai noodle, 504–5
tomato and asparagus, with fresh mozzarella, 700–701
tricolor bean, lamb sausage with, 813–14
tropical fruit, with yogurt dressing, 752
vegetable, 695, 700–701
warm duck breast, with Asian spices and hazelnut vinaigrette, 421–22
warm lamb, with bourbon vinaigrette, 714
warm mushroom, with grilled eggplant and white truffles, 621–22
watercress for, 685
Salad dressing(s), 689–701
blue cheese, 707
Caesar, 704–5
for composed salads, 697
green goddess, 706
matching salad greens and, 695
mayonnaise, 691–93
Roquefort, 706–7
sauce gribiche, 705
sun-dried tomato and basil aioli, 707–8
tartar sauce, 708
thousand island, 705–6
vinaigrette, 690–91
balsamic and roasted garlic, 704
fat-free raspberry, 703
lemon, 703–4
raspberry, 703
red onion, 704

yogurt, tropical fruit salad with, 752
Salad Niçoise, 698
Salad of Ahi Tuna Seared with Lavender and Pepper with Whole-Grain Mustard Sauce, 711–12
Salamander (broiler), 92
Salarin, 48
Sales, cost control and, 72
Salmon, 461
chilled poached roulade, with Thai noodle salad and soy molasses vinaigrette, 504–5
cutting steaks from, 477
gravlax, 807, 824
grilled club, with cilantro aïoli, 784
pulling pin bones from fillets of, 476–77
ratatouille crusted, 502
sautéed, with asparagus and morels, 503
smoked
risotto with (*al Salmone Affumicato*), 650
with seared tuna, 824–25
steamed, with lemon and olive oil, 492
teriyaki, with pineapple-papaya salsa, 505
whole poached, 495
Salmon and Sea Bass Terrine with Spinach and Basil, 816–17
Salmon caviar, 835
Salmon Croquettes, 566
Salmonella, 22, 25
Salmon mousse, 819–20
Salsa, 191, 214, 217
avocado, 848
blue crab cakes with fresh, 489–90
nopal cactus, 502–3
pineapple papaya, 751–52
Thai melon, 227
tomatillo, 227
tomato (Pico de Gallo), 214
Salt, 131–32
substitutes for and alternatives to, 48
Salt-curing, 789, 807
Salted butter, 152
Sambuca, scallops and shrimp, 521
Samp (posole; hominy), 643
Sanding sugar, 869
Sandwich(es), 760–85
chicken pesto and feta cheese, 771
closed, 765–68
club, 783
grilled salmon club with cilantro aïoli, 784
cold, 766–68
deep-fried, 766
eggplant and sun-dried tomato pizza, 785
falafel, 778–79
grilled, 766
grilled BBQ portabella mushroom, on focaccia, 776
grilled red snapper burger with mango ketchup, 774
grouper, with lemon rémoulade, 772
hamburger, 773
heros, 763
history of, 767
hot, 765–66
ingredients for, 762–65
bread, 762
filling, 764–65
spread, 762–63
Kentucky hot brown, 779
Monte Cristo, 766, 779
multidecker, 766–67
New Orleans-style muffaletta, 780–81
nutritional values of, 770
open-faced, 766, 768
po' boy, 763
softshell crab, 526–27
preparing, 768–69
presenting and garnishing, 769–70
reuben, 776–77
roast beef and blue cheese, 780
sanitation for, 764
southwestern grilled cheese, with chipotle purée and avocado, 777
southwestern grilled chicken wrap, 781–82
steak, blackened, 775–76
veggie wrap, 782–83
wrapped, 765
Sandwich bar, 769
Sandwich bread, white, 925
San Francisco Sourdough Bread, 931–32
Sanitary, defined, 30
Sanitary Assessment of the Food Environment (S.A.F.E), 32
Sanitation, defined, 20. *See also* Food safety and sanitation
Sansho pepper, steamed black bass with, 512
Santa Claus (Christmas) melons, 729
Santa Rosa plums, 734
Sardines, 460
Sashimi, 836
Saturated fats, 40
Sauce(s), 191–228. *See also* Salad dressing(s)
albufera, 201
allemande, 198, 199–200
apricot, 843
au jus, 215, 275
aurora, 200
barbecue, 139, 221
béarnaise, 208
béchamel, 197–98, 217
beurre blanc, 191, 209–10, 217
citrus, 224
lobster, 225
beurre rouge, 191, 209–10, 217
black bean, chicken and snow peas in, 417
Bolognese, 223
Bordelaise, 203
bourbon, 1066
broth, 215
cameline, 193
cardinal, 199
celeriac, roast rack of lamb with mint and, 343–44
chasseur (Hunter's sauce), 203
châteaubriand, 203
chevreuil, 203
choron, 209
chutney, star fruit, 228
compound butter, 211–12, 217
contemporary, 213–14
coulis. *See* Coulis
cranberry-orange, fresh, 757
cream, 197, 659
herbed, goat-cheese ravioli in, 672–73
creole, 205
rémoulade, 526–27
curry, Thai, 499–500
decorating plates with, 1093–94
demi-glace, 202
dessert. *See* Dessert sauces
dipping, tempura shrimp and vegetables with, 569
duck, basic, 412–13
duxelles, 221
emulsified, 691
espagnole (brown sauce), 201–4, 217
finishing techniques for, 196
fish, 139
flavored butters, 191
flavored oils, 136, 191, 216, 217
foyot, 209
frangelico, chocolate hazelnut marquis with, 1075–76
garlic, noisettes of lamb with, 356
garlic-oil, 659
garum, 193
ginger caramel, 977
grimrod, 209
herb oil, 228
history of, 193
hoisin, 139
Hollandaise. *See* **Hollandaise**
horseradish, apple, 226
Hungarian, 201
ivory, 201
jus lié, 203
leading (mother), 191, 196
lemon rémoulade, 772
madeira, 203
Maltaise, 209
marchand de vin, 203
mignonette, 222
Milanaise, 205
mornay, 198
mousseline. *See* Mousseline
mushroom, 200, 203
nage, 190, 215
nantua, 198
Normandy, 199
orange, 412
oyster, 139
pan gravy, 191, 212, 217
pasta, 659
peanut, 226
périgueux, 204
pesto, 224
pickapeppa, 139
piquant, 204
poivrade, 193, 204
ponzu, whole sizzling catfish with ginger and, 571
port, 203
poulette, 200
prawn, 523–24
rabbit, 448
red-wine thyme, 220
relish, 191, 214, 217
roasted garlic, 220
for roasted meats, 275
Robert, 193, 204
saffron, chicken stuffed with spinach and ricotta cheese in, 418–19
salsa. *See* Salsa
seafood, 659
small (compound), 191, 196
sorrel, 225
soubise (modern), 198
soy, 138
Spanish, 205
suprême, 198, 200–201
tabasco, 139
taillemaslé, 193
tarragon, poached breast of chicken with, 406–7
tartar, 708
deep-fried catfish fillets with, 565
thickening agents for, 192–95
arrowroot, 195
beurre manié, 195
cornstarch, 194–95
liaison, 195
roux, 192–94
tomato, 204–6, 217
fresh, baked ziti with, 675–76
fresh, for pasta, 222
sun-dried, 520–21
uncooked, 659
using, 217–18
vanilla custard, 1040–41, 1042
curdled, 1041
vegetable, 659
vegetable juice, 214–15
velouté, 198–201, 213, 217
white wine lemon, sautéed veal scallops with, 280–81
whole-grain mustard, salad of ahi tuna seared with lavender and pepper with, 711–12
worcestershire, 139
Sauce chaud-froid, 809–11
mayonnaise, 810
Sauce Grand Veneur, 204
Sauce Gribiche, 705
Sauce mère (mother sauce), 191, 196
Sauce pan, 86
Sauce pot, 86
Saucier (sauté station chef), 11
Sausage(s), 805–7
buckwheat crepes with apple stuffing and, 554–55
and chicken gumbo, 257–58
components of, 806
Italian
artichokes stuffed with, 625–26
spicy, 823
lamb, with tricolor bean salad, 813–14
preparing, 806–7
turkey, Tex-Mex, 822–23
types of, 805
Sautéed calves' liver with onions, 329
Sautéed Chicken Livers, 427
Sautéed Chicken with Kentucky Bourbon, 420
Sautéed Duck Liver Canapé with Candied Rhubarb, 849
Sautéed Foie Gras on Wild Mushroom Duxelles with Toasted Brioche, 427–28
Sautéed Halibut with Three-Color Peppers and Spanish Olives, 488
Sautéed Lamb Loin with Stuffed Rösti Potatoes and Cherry Confit, 351
Sautéed Pork Medallions with Red Pepper and Citrus, 371–72

Sautéed Salmon with Asparagus and Morels, 503
Sautéed Veal Scallops with Calvados, 328
Sautéed Veal Scallops with White Wine Lemon Sauce, 280–81
Sautéing, 174
  eggs, 542–45
  fish, 487–89
  fruits, 745–46
  live lobsters, 479
  meat, 278–81
  potatoes, 639–40
  poultry, 400–403
  shellfish, 487–89
  vegetables, 606–7
Sauterne, shrimp poached in orange juice, ginger and, 522
Sauté station chef (*saucier*), 11
Sauteuse, 86
Sautoir, 86
Savory, 123
Savory Fruit for Roast Pork, 746
Savory Hippen Masse, 1092
Scales, 82
Scallions, 588
Scallops, 467
  defined, 279
  Napoleon of shrimp and, 519–21
  steamed, with ginger, basil and orange, 519
Scallops and Shrimp Sambuca, 521
Scampi, 469
Schilling Cookery for the People, A (Soyer), 97
Schremp, Gerry, 1005
Scimitar, 81
Scones, 890
Scrambled eggs, 542–43
  Greek-style, 551
  Southwestern, with green chile and chorizo, 550–51
Scrod, 459
Sea bass
  Chilean, grilled, with anasazi bean stew and nopal cactus salsa, 500–502
  pan-seared, with beet vinaigrette, 511–12
  and salmon terrine with spinach and basil, 816–17
Sea Bass with Thai Curry Sauce and Wok Vegetables, 498–500
Seafood, 457. *See also* Fish; Shellfish
  sauces, 659
Seafood Salad, 702–3
Searobins, 463
Sea salt, 131
Seasoning(s)
  for deep-frying, 563
  defined, 120
  in forcemeats, 789–90
  for stock, 182
Seckel pears, 731
  grilled, salad with sherry bacon vinaigrette, 710–11
Seed banks, 597
Seeds, 128, 589–91
Seiche, 533
Seizing, 878
Self-rising flour, 866
Seltzer water, 41
Semi à la carte, 61
Semifreddi, 1052, 1055
Semisweet chocolate, 878
Service, 1084
  cost control and, 72
Sesame seeds, 128
Sesame Swordfish, 508
Seviche, 533
Sevruga caviar, 834
Sfoglia, 654
Shallot butter, 212
Shallot Curry Oil, 216
Shallots, 587, 588
  mincing, 116
Shank, 294–96
Sharks, 462
Sharpening equipment, 80, 81
Sharpening knives, 107
Shell, egg, 536
Shellfish, 454–533
  baking, 485–86
  broiling, 483–85
  calamari (squid), 467
    spicy salad, 525–26
  chilled platter, 514
  clams
    casino, 515–16
    opening, 480–81
  combination cooking methods, 497–98
  crab cakes, 553
    blue, with fresh salsa, 489–90
    Thai, 528–29
  crab meat flan with red pepper coulis and chives, 527
  crayfish étouffée, 532
  crustaceans, 456, 467–69
  freshness of, 471
  grading of, 470–71
  grilling, 483–85
  inspection of, 470–71
  lobster(s), 463, 468–69
    boiled, 497
    broiling, 479
    grilled, with yellow hot chiles and Chipotle Pasta with Chipotle Beurre Blanc, 529–30
    à l'Américaine, 530–31
    removing meat from shell, 480
    sautéing live, 479
    skillet of, and mushrooms provençale, 531–32
    and turbot, galantine of, 820–21
  mollusks, 456, 465–67
    bivalves, 456, 465–67
    cephalopods, 456, 467
    univalves, 456, 465
  mussels, 466
    ale-steamed, with tasso, chiles and leeks, 517
    cleaning and debearding, 482
    steamed, with leaks and carrots, 516
  nutritional value of, 469–70
  oysters, 466
    fried, with herbed crème fraîche, 518
    opening, 481
    Rockefeller, 517–18
    sauce, 139
  paella, 515
  pan-frying, 489–90
  poaching, 493
  prawn, 469
    grilled brochette with butternut squash risotto, 522–24
  purchasing, 472–73
  roasting, 485–86
  as sandwich filling, 764
  sautéing, 487–89
  scallops, 467
    Napoleon of shrimp and, 519–21
    and shrimp sambuca, 521
    steamed, with ginger, basil and orange, 519
  seiche, 533
  shrimp. *See* Shrimp
  simmering, 496–97
  softshell crab, po' boy sandwich, 526–27
  steaming, 491–93
  storing, 473–74
  structure and muscle composition of, 456–57
Shelling peas, fresh, 591
Shen Nung, Emperor, 145
Sherbets, 1052, 1055
Shiitake mushrooms, 586
  and rabbit skewers, 840–41
  stir-fried asparagus with, 607
Shirred Eggs with Ham, 540–41
Shish Kebab, 345
Shoestring potatoes, 666
Shortcakes, 898
  fresh strawberry, 898
  tart crust, 982–83
Shortening, 135
  all-purpose, 873
  emulsified, 874
Short-grain rice, 643
Short loin of beef, 297
Short order cook, 13
Short plate, 296
Shoulder
  lamb, 337
  pork, 361
  veal, 314
Shrimp, 469
  and blue corn tamales, 858–59
  butterflying, 478
  consommé, perfumed, 253
  dried, stir-fried snow peas with, 622
  fresh water, wrapped in potato, 524–25
  grilled, with prosciutto and basil, 859
  mousseline of, paupiettes of sole with, 513–14
  Napoleon of, and scallops, 519–21
  peeling and deveining, 478
  pepe pasta with tomato, tarragon and, 673–74
  and scallops sambuca, 521
  and vegetables tempura, and dipping sauce, 568
Shrimp and Avocado Omelet, 543–44
Shrimp Bisque, 242–43
Shrimp Crumple, 856–57
Shrimp Poached in Orange Juice, Ginger and Sauterne, 522
Shrimp with Olive Oil and Garlic, 521–22
Side masking, 1021
Sieves, 87–88
Sifting, 881
Silk tofu, 592
Silver (coho) salmon, 461
Silver stone, 86
Simmering, 175, 176
  eggs, 547
  fruits, 748
  grains, 648
  meat, 283–84
  poultry, 405–7
  shellfish, 496–97
  stock, 182
Simple Buttercream, 1011–12
Simple carbohydrates, 39
Simplesse, 48
Simple syrups, 871
Sinclair, Upton, 267
Single-acting baking powder, 889
Sink, three-compartment, 30
Sirloin, 297
Skate, 463
Skillet
  cast iron, 86
  tilting, 92–93
Skillet of Lobster and Mushrooms Provençale, 531–32
Skill of professional chef, 14
Skimmer, 88
Skimming, of stock, 182
Skim (nonfat) milk, 149
Slashing, 917
Slicer, 81, 88–89
Slicing with knife, 109–10
Slipper lobster, 469
Slotted spoons, 79
Slurry, 195
Small (compound) sauces, 191, 196
Smoked Corn Polenta, 349–50
Smoked Corn Pudding, 441
Smoked Duck and Foie Gras Galantine on a Pear Galette, 812–13
Smoked Salmon with Seared Tuna, 824–25
Smoked sausages, 805
Smoke point, 135, 137, 561
Smoker, 808
Smoking, 808
Snails (*escargots*), 465
  in garlic butter, 854–55
Snapper. *See* Red snapper
Snow peas, 591
  chicken and, in black bean sauce, 417
  stir-fried, with dried shrimp, 622
Snow (spider) crabs, 468
Soda water, 41
Sodium, hypertension and, 52
Sodium bicarbonate, 888
Soft-cooked (soft-boiled) eggs, 547
Soft-shell clams, 465
Softshell Crab Po' Boy Sandwich, 526–27
Soft water, 41
Soft Yeast Dinner Rolls, 918–19
Sole, 463–64
  fillets of, bonne femme, 496
  paupiettes of, with mousseline of shrimp, 513–14
Solid pack cans, 741
Somelier (wine steward), 12
Soppressata, 807
Sorbet(s), 1052, 1055
  apricot, 1074
  grapefruit, 1055
  lemon, 1073
  strawberry, 1074
  syrup, 1074
  trio of, with raspberry salad, 1073–75
  white peach, 1074
Sorghum molasses, 870
Sorrel, 585

in salads, 685
Sorrel Sauce, 225
Soubise (modern) sauce, 198
Soufflés, 1046–47
chocolate, 1047
warm, 1067–68
grits and cheddar, 668
Soup(s), 230–60
bisques, 232, 233, 242–43
shrimp, 242–43
cheddar and leek, 255
chicken, with matzo balls, 251–52
chicken and sausage gumbo, 257–58
chowders, 232, 243–44, 465
clam, New England style, 244
roasted corn, 257
clear, 232, 233–38
broths, 232, 233–36
consommé, 232, 236–38
cold, 232, 244–47
chilled beet and buttermilk, 258–59
chilled cherry, 246
chilled roasted red pepper coulis, 260
fresh peach and yogurt, 259
gazpacho, 247
vichyssoise (cold potato-leek soup), 245
consommé, 232, 236–38
beef, 237
classic, 248
double, 236
perfumed shrimp, 253
cream of broccoli, 239–40
cullises, 233
Escoffier's classification of, 233
foreign, 233
French onion, 252–53
garnishing, 233, 247–49
hearty vegetable beef, 235–36
minestrone, 254
service, 249
southwestern black bean, 256
spelt, 255–56
thick, 238–41
adjusting consistency of, 240–41
cream soups, 232, 233, 238–40
purée soups, 232, 233, 240–41
vegetable, 233, 234–35
veloutés, 233
wild mushroom, with foie gras, 250–51
wild mushrooms and veal, 251
Soup station chef (*potager*), 11
Sour cream, 151
braised antelope in, 443–44
imitation, 150
Sour Cream Coffeecake, 904
Sour Cream Muffins, 894
Sourdough bread
basic, 930–31
San Francisco, 931–32
Sourdough *Starter*, 910, 932
Sous-chef, 11, 13
Southwestern Black Bean Soup, 256
Southwestern Grilled Cheese Sandwich with Chipotle Purée and Avocado, 777
Southwestern Grilled Chicken Wrap, 781–82
Southwestern Scrambled Eggs with Green Chile and Chorizo, 550
Soyer, Alexis, 96–97
Soy Molasses Vinaigrette, 505
Soy sauce, 138
Spaetzle, 678
Spaghetti, 652
Spaghetti squash, 584
Spanakopitta, 856
Spanish olives, sautéed halibut with three-color peppers and, 488
Spanish sauce, 205
Spatulas, 79
Spearmint, 122
Spelt, 255–56
Spice blends, 128
Spiced Oatmeal Cookies, 992
Spiced Ostrich Tenderloin, 426
Spices, 120, 124–28, 129–30
garnishing plates with, 1092
history of, 124
pâté, 789–90
Spicy Calamari Salad, 525–26
Spicy Italian Sausage, 823
Spicy Sweet Potato and Chestnut Gratin, 664
Spicy Vegetable Broth, 620–21
Spider, 88
Spider (snow) crabs, 468
Spinach, 585
chicken stuffed with ricotta cheese and, in saffron sauce, 418–19
fettuccine, 652
grilled loin of rabbit with fennel, white beans and, 446–48
removing midrib from, 688
salad, 685
wilted, with roasted peppers, 709
salmon and sea bass terrine with basil and, 816–17
Spinach and Artichoke Dip, 850–51
Spinach Au Gratin, 618
Spiny lobsters, 469
Spira, 653
Spirilla, 21
Split pea soup, purée of, 241
Spongecakes, 997, 1002–3
classic, 1002–3
Sponge method, 911, 912–13
Spoons, types of, 79, 82
Spores, 21
Spreads
canapés, 831
for sandwiches, 762–63
black bean, 782
Spring Rolls, 857–58
Spring water, 41
Spritz Cookies, 991–92
Sprouts, for salads, 685
Spun sugar, 1020
Squab, 381
grilled, with basil butter, 393–94
Squab Salad with Melon, 425–26
Squash(es), 583–84
butternut, baked, 605
summer, roasted portabella mushroom with spicy vegetable broth and, 620–21
Squash blossoms, 685
Squat lobster, 469
Squid. *See* Calamari (squid)
Stainless steel construction, 80
Stainless steel cookware, 84
Staling, 883
Stalks, 594–96
Standard breading procedure, 564
Standardized recipe, 62–63
Standard portions, 72
Staph infections, 25
Staples, 118–45
bouquet garni, 130–31
coffee, 139–43
condiments, 120, 138–39
herbs, 120–23, 129–30
nuts, 132–35
oils, 135–37
sachet, 131
salt, 131–32
spice blends, 128
spices, 120, 124–28, 129–30
tea, 143–45
vinegars, 137–38
Star anise (Chinese anise), 124
Starch(es)
gelatinization of, 171, 882
retrogradation, 883
Starchy (mealy) potatoes, 636
Star Fruit Chutney, 228
baked red snapper with, 486
Star fruits, 726
Static menu, 60
Stationary equipment, 31
Station chefs (*chefs de partie*), 11
Steak
buffalo, grilled, 449
fish, 473
minute, Dijonaise, 304–5
New York, cutting from boneless strip loin, 299
pepper, 306
sandwich, blackened, 775–76
Swiss, 306–7
T-bone, 302
Steak fries, 666
Steamed Black Bass with Sansho Pepper, 512
Steamed milk, 142
Steamed Mussels with Leeks and Carrots, 516
Steamed Salmon with Lemon and Olive Oil, 492
Steamed Scallops with Ginger, Basil and Orange, 519
Steamers, 93
Steaming, 176
fish, 491–93
shellfish, 491–93
vegetables, 611–12
Steam kettles, 93
Steel-cut oats, 646
Steel (tool), 81, 107
Steeping, 1045
Stem table pans (hotel pans), 87
Stem-type thermometer, 83
Stencils, 1021
Sterilized, defined, 30
Stew(s)
anasazi bean, 501
brown, 287
Irish lamb, 353–54
terminology for, 288
white, 287, 290
Stewing, 177
meat, 287–90
of poultry, 408–10
vegetables, 612–14
Still-frozen desserts (semifreddi), 1052, 1055
Still-frying method, 639
Stills, Southern, 85
Stilton cheese, 158
Stir-Fried Asparagus with Shiitake Mushrooms, 607
Stir-Fried Snow Peas with Dried Shrimp, 622
Stir-frying, 174
Stirring, 881
Stock(s), 180–91
brown, 180, 185–87
court bouillon, 180, 189–90
fish, 180, 187–88
glaze, 190–91
ingredients for, 180–82
nage, 190, 215
prawn, 524
principles of making, 182–83
troubleshooting chart for, 191
vegetable, 189
white, 180, 184
Stock pot, 86
Stone crabs, 468
Stone fruits (drupes), 732–34
Storage, 8–9
cost control and, 71
vitamin concentrations and, 43
Storage containers, 90
Stoves, cast-iron, 8
Stove tops, 91
Straight (cake) spatula, 79
Straight dough method, 911, 912
Straight tongs, 79
Strainers, 87–88
Straining, 196
of stock, 182–83
Strawberries, 721
Strawberry Napoleon, 985
Strawberry Sorbet, 1074
Strep, 25
Streptococcus lactis, 151
Streptococcus thermophilus, 151
Streusel Topping, 895
Striped bass, 458
Strudels, 744
Stuffed Breast of Pheasant, 450
Stuffed Breast of Veal, 331–32
Stuffed Leg of Lamb, 347–48
Stuffed Mushroom Caps, 854
Stuffed Pork Chops, 372
Stuffing, poultry, 396–97
Subcutaneous fat, 264
Submarines, 763
Subprimal cuts, 264. *See also specific meats*
Substitutes, ingredient, 47–48
Sucrose, 867
caramelization of, 171
Sugar(s), 40, 867–69
brown, 869, 1020
caramelizing, 171, 872, 883
cooking, 871–73
cube, 869
glaze, basic, 1016
history of, 868
manufacturing of, 868
powdered or confectioner's, 869
pulled, 1020
raw, 868
refined (table), 868
regular granulated, 868, 869
sanding, 869
spun, 1020
superfine or castor, 869
turbinado (Demerara sugar), 868, 869
Sugar beet, 867
Sugar cane, 867
Sugar Cookies, 990–91
Sugared Orange Zest and Orange Sauce, 412
Sugar syrups, 871
Sulfured molasses, 870

Sultanas, 727
Summer savory, 123
Summer squash, 584
  roasted portabella mushroom with spicy vegetable broth and, 620–21
Summer Vegetables with Tarragon Aioli, 617–18
Sundae, 1055
Sundried Fruit Compote with Honey Ice Cream, 1072
Sun-Dried Tomato and Basil Aïoli, 707–8
Sundried Tomato Rolls, 926–27
Sun-Dried Tomato Sauce, 520–21
Sunnette (Acesulfane K), 48
Sunny-side up, 545
Superfine sugar, 869
Suprême Sauce, 198, **200–201**
Surf clams, 465
Surimi, 459
Sushi. *See* **Zushi (Sushi Rice)**
Sweating, 188
Swedish Meatballs, 841
Sweet basil, 120
Sweetbreads, 317, 322
  cleaning and pressing, 322
Sweetbreads Grenoble, 330
Sweet cherries, 732–33
Sweet chocolate, 878
Sweet cicely (chervil), 121, 129
Sweet Crêpes, 549
Sweet Dough, 945
Sweetened condensed milk, 150
Sweetener(s), 869–71
  artificial, 48
  corn syrup, 870
  honey, 870
  hygroscopic, 870
  maple syrup, 870
  molasses, 870
  nutritional values of, 870–71
Sweet laurel (bay), 121
Sweet marjoram, 122
Sweet Orange Marmalade, 758
Sweet peppers, 579
Sweet potatoes, 635
Swimming method of deep-frying, 563
Swing cook, 11
Swiss chard, 585
Swiss Chard with Lemon and Pine Nuts, 628–29
Swiss meringues, 964
Swiss Steak, 306–7
Swordfish, 462
  blackened, with risotto cake, 507–8
  sesame, 508
Syrup(s)
  chocolate, 1057
    dark, 1057
  cooked, 871
  corn, 870
  maple, 870
  raspberry, 1027
  simple, 871
  sorbet, 1074
  sugar, 871

T

Table cream, 150
Table (culinary) salt, 131
Table d'hôte, 61
Table (refined) sugar, 868
Tables
  buffet, 1100
  work, 31
Tabouli (Bulgur Wheat) Salad, 671
Taillemaslée sauce, 193
Taillevent (Guillaume Tirel), 193
Tamis, 87
Tangerines, 723
Tannahill, Reay, 268, 382
Tapioca, 875
Taproots, 591–94
Tarragon, 123, 129
  pepe pasta with shrimp, tomato and, 673–74
  sauce, poached breast of chicken with, 406–7
Tarragon Aïoli, 617–18
Tartar Sauce, 708
  deep-fried catfish fillets with, 565
Tartlets, 833–34, 943
Tarts, 942–56
  apple, French, 979
  assembling, 955–56
  berry, fresh, 981
  chevre, 855
  crusts, 943–49
    baking, 948–49
    basic pie dough, 944
    crumb, 949
    flaky and mealy doughs, 943–44
    shaping, 946–48
    sweet dough, 944–45
  fillings, 949–55
    chiffon, 949, 955
    cooked juice, 952
    cream, 949–50
    custard, 949, 954–55
    fruit, 949, 950–52
    fruit, baked, 952–54
  linzer, 973
  mushroom, with garlic cream, 219
  peach, fresh, with almond cream, 984–85
  persimmon shortcake, 982–83
  storing, 956
  troubleshooting chart for, 956
Tasso, ale-steamed mussels with chiles, leeks and, 517
Taste, 14–15
T-Bone Steak, 302
Tea, 143–45
  brewing, 144
  flavors of, 144
  history of, 145
  serving, 144
  types of, 143–44
Tea (broth), 215
Technologies, new, 8–9
Teflon (polytetrafluoroethylene), 86
Temperature, bacterial growth and, 22–23
Temperature danger zone, 22–23
Tempering, 195, 1041
Tempura Shrimp and Vegetables with Dipping Sauce, 568
Tenderizers, for cakes, 997
Tenderloin
  beef, trimming, 300
  pork, 367
    beer-marinated, 371
Teriyaki Salmon with Pineapple-Papaya Salsa, 505
Terrine(s), 797–801
  liver, 817–18
  salmon and sea bass, with spinach and basil, 816–17
  vegetable, 818
  in brioche, 814–15
Terrine (mold), 798
Tex-Mex Turkey Sausage, 822–23
Thai Crab Cake, 528–29
Thai Curry Sauce, 499–500
Thai Melon Salsa, 227
Thai Noodle Salad, 504–5
Theme, 1098
Thermometers, 83, 274
Thiamine (vitamin B_1), 42
Thickening agents, 192–95, 874–75
  arrowroot, 195
  beurre manié, 195
  cornstarch, 194–95
  liaison, 195
  roux, 192–94
Thick soups. *See under* Soup(s)
Thompson Seedless grapes, 727
Thousand Island Dressing, 705–6
Thyme, 123, 129
  sauce, red-wine, 220
Thyme-Scented Celery Essence, 215
Tiger shrimp, 469
Tilapia, 462
Tilting skillets, 92–93
Timbale molds, 87
Time-and-temperature principle, 23
Timers, 83
Tirel, Guillaume (Taillevent), 193
Tisanes, 144
Tobasco sauce, 139
Tofu (bean curd), 592
Tohono O'odham Indians, 597
Tomatillos, 581
Tomatillo Salsa, 227
Tomato(es), 581–82
  broiled, 618–19
  concassée, 235, 582
  and cucumber salad, country-style, 710
  pepe pasta with shrimp, tarragon and, 673–74
  salad, vine-ripened, 712
  sun-dried, and basil aïoli, 707–8
  sun-dried pizza, eggplant and, 785
  sundried tomato rolls, 926–27
Tomato and Asparagus Salad with Fresh Mozzarella, 700–701
Tomato Chile Hollandaise, 554
Tomato Salsa (Pico de Gallo), 214
Tomato Sauce, 204–5, 204–6, 217
  fresh
    baked ziti with, 675–76
    for pasta, 222
  sun-dried, 520–21
Tomato Vinaigrette, 223
Tongs, straight, 79
Tools and equipment, 75–102
  for bakeshop, 883–84
  buffet equipment, 94
  cookware, 84–87
  hand tools, 79–81
  heavy equipment, 91–94
  measuring and portioning devices, 82–83
  processing equipment, 88–90
  for professional kitchen, 95–101
  safety equipment, 94–95
  selecting, 79
  standards for, 78–79
  storage containers, 90
  strainers and sieves, 87–88
Topnecks, 465
Toque, 16
Torte(s), 943
  chocolate macadamia nut praline, 977–79
  sacher, 1030–31
Tossing method, 639
Total recipe cost, 69
Toughening, 997
Tournant, 11
Tournedos Rossini, 304
Tourner, 116
Toxic metals, 28
Toxin-mediated infection, 22
Toxins, 22
Trace minerals, 43, 44
Traditional fudge brownies, 50
Tranches, cutting, 477
Trash fish, 463
Trichonella spiralis, 26
Trichonosis, 26
Tricolor Bean Salad, 814
Trio of Sorbets with Raspberry Salad, 1073–75
Troisgros, Jean and Pierre, 7
Tropical Fruit Salad with Yogurt Dressing, 752
Tropical Fruit with Passion Fruit Purée, 750
Tropp, Barbara, 602, 1085
Trout, 462
  pan-fried, with toasted garlic, 506–7
  Truffle(s), 586–87
  chocolate, 1019
    cake, 1034–35
    dark, 1019
  white, warm mushroom salad with grilled eggplant and, 621–22
Truffle Vinaigrette, 662
  quinoa, red rice and lentil salad with, 660–62
Trussing, poultry, 394–96
Truth in advertising requirement, 62
Tubers, 591–94
Tulipe Cookies, 993
Tuna, 462–63
  ahi, seared with lavender and pepper with whole-grain mustard sauce, 711–12
  seared, smoked salmon with, 824–25
  yellowfin, 463
    coriander-crusted, with braised white beans and roasted peppers, 509–10
Tunneling, 892
Turbinado (Demerara) sugar, 868, 869
Turbot, 464
  and lobster, galantine of, 820–21
Turkey, 381–82
  carving, 399
  classes of, 381
  egg, 536
  roast, with chestnut dressing and giblet gravy, 397–98
  sausage, Tex-Mex, 822–23
Turkey Scallopine with Capers and Lemon, 426–27
Turmeric, 128, 129
Turnip greens, 585
Turnip Purée, 628
Turnips, 594
Turtle egg, 536

U

Uexoloti, 382
Ultra high temperature processing (UHT), 148–49
Ultra-pasteurization, 148
Uncooked sauces, 659
Uniform, professional chef's, 16
Unit costs, 69
United States
  Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), 47
  Department of Agriculture (USDA), 45, 47, 50
    IMPS publication, 269
    meat grading by, 266–67
  Food and Drug Administration (FDA), 47, 49–51
  National Institutes of Health (NIH), 47
  system of measurement, 64
Univalves, 456, 465
Unsulfured molasses, 870
Unsweetened chocolate, 878
Utility knife, 81

V

Vacuum packaging, 268
Valencia oranges, 722
Vanilla, 876
Vanilla Crème Glace, 981
Vanilla custard sauce, 1040–41, 1042
  curdled, 1041
Vanilla Raspberry Layer Cake with White Chocolate Buttercream, 1026–27
Vanilla Sauce, 1042
Vanillin, 876
Varenne, François Pierre de La, 193
Veal, 312–33
  bones, for stock, 181
  breast of, stuffed, 331–32
  butchering of, 318–24
    boneless chops, 320–21
    calves' liver, 323
    emincé, 320
    leg, 318–19
    loin, 320–21
    scallops, 320
    sweetbreads, 322
    tying meats, 321
  calves' liver, sautéed with onions, 329
  chops
    roasted with morel and green bean ragout, 325
    rosemary-roasted with porcini mushrooms, 326–27
  cutlets, breaded, 282
  cuts of, 314–18
    foresaddle, 314–16
    hindsaddle, 316–17
    organ meat, 317–18
    using, 323
  leg of, 317
  loin roast, 327–28
  marinating, 270
  osso buco, 331
  sautéed scallops, with white wine lemon sauce, 280–81
  scallops, sautéed, with Calvados, 328
  sweetbreads grenoble, 330
  wild mushrooms and, soup, 251
Veal Fricassee, 333
Veal Kebabs, 327
Veal Marengo, 329–30
Veal Marsala, 332–33
Vegan, 574
Vegetable coulis, 212, 213
Vegetable juice sauces, 214–15
Vegetable oils, 40, 135
Vegetable peeler, 79
Vegetables, 572–630. *See also* Cabbage(s); Fruit-vegetables; Mushroom(s); Onions; *specific types of vegetables*
  acid/alkali reactions of, 601–2
  baby, 596
  baking, 605
  beef soup, hearty, 235–36
  blanching, 607–8
  boiling, 608–11
  braising, 612–14
  broiling, 603–4
  canned, 599–600
  cooking guidelines, 602–3
  country, Chiappetti's lamb shank with lentils and, 353
  in cream soups, 238
  deep-frying, 607
  diseases linked to deficiency in, 52
  dried, 600–601
  fresh, 598–99
  frozen, 600
  gourds and squashes, 583–84
  grading, 598
  greens, 584–85
  grilling, 603–4
  irradiated, 599
  microwaving, 614–15
  molding, 1087
  nutritional values of, 597–98
  pan-frying, 607
  parboiling, 608
  pods and seeds, 589–91
  preserved, 599–603
  purchasing, 598
  puréeing, 615–16
  purées, as sandwich spread, 763
  ripening, 598–99
  roasting, 605
  rolls, pickled, 851–52
  roots and tubers, 591–94
  salads, 695, 700–701
  as sandwich filling, 764
  sauces, 659
  sautéing, 606–7
  shocking, 608
  and shrimp tempura, and dipping sauce, 568
  skewers, grilled, 604
  soups, 233, 234–35
  stalks, 594–96
  steaming, 611–12
  stewing, 612–14
  storing, 599
  summer, with tarragon aioli, 617–18
  "sweating," 602
  terrines, 799
  truffles, 586–87
  vitamin concentration and retention for, 43
  wok, 499
Vegetable station chef (*Legumier*), 11
Vegetable Stock, 189
Vegetable Terrine, 818
Vegetable Terrine in Brioche, 814–15
Vegetarian, 574
Veggie Wrap, 782–83
Velouté, 198–201, **199**, 217, 233
Venison, 433, 437
  achiote-basted rack of, with smoked corn pudding, 440–42
  chilli-rubbed, with caramelized berry sauce, 444–45
  marinated loin of, roasted with mustard, 442–43
  medallions grand veneur, 445
  red wine jus, 442
Venison and Black Bean Chili, 446
Venison Medallions Grand Veneur, 445
Ventilation systems (ventilation hoods), 95
Vergé, Roger, 8
Vermont Cabot cheddar, 159
Vertical cutter/mixer (VCM), 89
Viandier, Le (Taillevent), 193
Vichyssoise (Cold Potato-Leek Soup), 245
Viennese roast coffee, 140
Vinaigrette(s), 690–91
  balsamic and roasted garlic, 704
  basic, 691
  basil, 663
  beet, pan-seared sea bass with, 511–12
  bourbon, warm lamb salad with, 714
  emulsified, 693–94
  hazelnut, warm duck breast salad with Asian spices and, 421–22
  lemon, 702–3
  raspberry, 703
    fat-free, 703
    mesclun salad with, 696
  red onion, 704
  sherry bacon, grilled seckel pear salad with, 710–11
  soy molasses, 505
  tomato, 223
  truffle, 662
Vinegar, 137–38
  balsamic, green lentils in, jack fore gras with, 628–29
  in vinaigrette dressings, 690
Vine-Ripened Tomato Salad, 712
Viruses, 26–27
Vitamins, 38, 39, 41–42
Vitis vinifera, 727
Vol-au-vents, 959–60
Volume
  defined, 64
  measurements by, 82

W

Wafer cookies, 987
Waffles, 895
Wahoo (ono), 463
Waters, 12
Wakefield, Ruth, 969
Walk-in refrigerators, 93
Walnuts, 435
  red potatoes with gorgonzola and, 853
Warm chocolate soufflé, 1067–68
Warm Duck Breast Salad with Asian Spices and Hazelnut Vinaigrette, 421–22
Warm Lamb Salad with Bourbon Vinaigrette, 714
Warm Mushroom Salad with Grilled Eggplant and White Truffles, 621–22
Washed rind, 155
Washes for yeast breads, 917
Washington, George, 1053
Waste, control of, 72
Water
  boiling point of, 176
  as essential nutrient, 39, 41
  evaporation of, 171–72, 882
  types of, 41
Water buffalo's milk, 148
Watercress, 685
Watermelons, 729
Water-soluble vitamins, 41
Waxy potatoes, 636
Weddings, buffet presentation for, 1108–9
Weight
  defined, 64
  measurements by, 82
Western barbecue, buffet presentation for, 1107
Westphalian ham, 809
Wet aging, 268
Wheat, 645
  flour, 864–65
  noodles, 653–54
  tabouli (bulgur wheat) salad, 671
  types of, 645
  whole, bread, 927
Wheel-cut fish, 473
Whetstone, 81, 107
Whipped butter, 152
Whipped eggs mixing method, 997, 1001–6
Whipped topping mixes, 150
Whipping, 881
Whipping cream, 150
Whisks, 79
White asparagus, 595
White Beans, 447
  braised, coriander-crusted yellowfin tuna with, and roasted peppers, 509–10
White chocolate, 879
White Chocolate Frangelico Bavarian, 1068
Whitefish, 463
White grapefruits, 722
White mushroom, 586
White onions, 587
White Peach Sorbet, 1074
White peppercorns, 127
White potatoes, 635
White rice, 643
White roux, 192
White Sandwich Bread, 925
White stews, 287, 290
White stock, 180, **184**
White truffles, warm mushroom salad with grilled eggplant and, 621–22
White wine lemon sauce, sautéed veal scallops with, 280–81
White Wine Marinade, 391
Whiting, 463
Whole fish, 472
Whole Poached Salmon, 495
Wholesale Poultry Products Act (1968), 384
Whole Sizzling Catfish with Ginger and Ponzu Sauce, 571
Wholesome Meat Act (1967), 267
Whole Wheat Bread, 927
Whole wheat flour, 866

Wild boar, 434, 435
Wild mushrooms. *See under* Mushroom(s)
Wild Mushrooms and Veal Soup, 251
Wild Mushroom Soup with Foie Gras, 250–51
Wild rice, 644
  pecan, 644
  stuffing, roast Cornish game hen with, 413
Wild Rice and Cranberry Stuffing, 670–71
Williams pears, 731
Wilted Spinach Salad with Roasted Peppers, 709
Wine(s), 880
  braised red cabbage with apples and, 629
  cheese and, 163
  chocolate and, 141
  grapes into, 727
  marinades based on, 270
  red, pears poached in, 747
Winesap apples, 730
Wine steward (chef de vin), 12
Wine vinegars, 137
Winter squashes, 584
Wisconsin Sharp cheddar, 159
Woks, 86
Wok Vegetables, 499
Wonton skins, stuffed, 842–43
  with apricot sauce, 842–43
Worcestershire sauce, 139
Workers, safety for, 33–34
Work sections, 98–100
Work stations, 98
Work tables, 31

Y

Yams, 635
Yeast, 908–10
  temperatures for developing, 909
  types of, 909–10
Yeast breads, 906–39
  baking, 917–18
  basic French, 924
  breadsticks, 928–29
  brioche, 933–34
  challah, 932–33
  cooling and storing, 918
  Danish pastries, 937–39
  doneness of, 918
  dough
    fermenting, 913
    mixing and kneading, 911–13
    pizza, 930
    portioning, 913
    punching down, 913
    rolled-in, 920–23
  English muffin loaves, 925–26
  focaccia (Roman flatbread), 929–30
  history of, 911
  jumbo cinnamon buns, 935
  light rye bread, 920
  multigrain date, 929
  pecan sticky buns, 936
  potato cheddar cheese, 926
  proofing, 913, 916–17
  rounding portions, 913
  scaling ingredients, 911
  shaping portions, 913–16
    bow knot rolls, 915
    butterflake rolls, 915
    cloverleaf rolls, 914
    free-form loaves, 916
    pan loaves, 916
    parker house rolls, 914
  slashing/docking of, 917
  soft yeast dinner rolls, 918–19
  sourdough
    basic, 930–31
    San Francisco, 931–32
  sundried tomato rolls, 926–27
  troubleshooting chart for, 923
  washes for, 917
  white sandwich, 925
  whole wheat, 927
Yeasts, 27
Yellow crookneck, 584
Yellowfin tuna, 463
  coriander-crusted, with braised white beans and roasted peppers, 509–10
Yellow hot chiles, grilled lobster with, and chipotle pasta and chipotle beurre blanc, 529–30
Yellow onion, 587
Yellow-red Royal Ann cherries, 733
Yield, 66–67
Yield grades, 267
Yogurt, 151
  cucumber-, salad, 630
  dressing, garlic, 783
  dressing, tropical fruit salad with, 752
  fresh peach and, soup, 259
Yolk, egg, 536

Z

Zester, 79
Ziti, 653
  baked, with fresh tomato sauce, 675–76
Zucchini Bread, 901
Zushi (Sushi Rice), 836–39, **837**
  nigiri, 837–38
  norimaki, 838–39

ON COOKING

A Textbook of Culinary Fundamentals

Second Edition

Culinary Excellence Updated & Expanded!

ON COOKING, 1ST EDITION – 1995 IACP Julia Child Cookbook Award Nominee.
– International Cookbook Revue 1997 Top Professional Book.
LABENSKY – 1998 James Beard Foundation Award Nominee.

- Features tips, techniques and celebrated recipes from fifty of today's hottest restaurants and expert chefs:
  - Wolfgang Puck, *Chinois on Main*, Santa Monica, CA
  - Mark Miller, *Coyote Café*, Sante Fe, NM
  - Alfred Portale, *Gotham Bar & Grill*, New York, NY

- Ease your conscience and pamper your palate! Authors focus on healthy cooking, with specially marked "healthful" recipes and a nutritional analysis for every recipe.

- Over 1450 exquisite, full-color photographs illustrate fresh ingredients, cooking techniques and plate presentation.
- 750 plus gourmet recipes reflect a wide range of cooking styles, from Classic French to New American.
- New chapters on Hors d'oeuvre and Canapés, Eggs and Sandwiches help you master the basics or host the perfect party.

- Techniques from expert chefs, essays on food history and nutritional analyses make ON COOKING much more than an ordinary cookbook!

"This book is simply the best one of its kind. A masterful collection of reliable recipes and step-by-step procedures, accompanied by brilliant food photography and lore, it is a must for every kitchen – home or professional."

– Noel Cullen, Certified Master Chef, President, American Culinary Federation

PRENTICE HALL
Upper Saddle River, NJ 07458

ISBN 0-13-862640-5
90000
9 780138 626402